

**THE TEXT IS  
LIGHT IN  
THE BOOK**

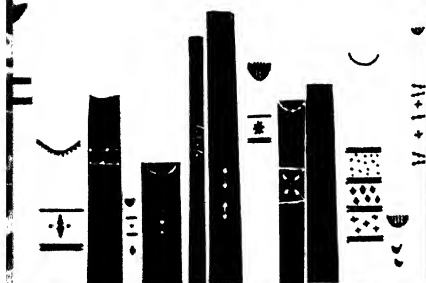




# reference collection book



kansas city  
public library  
kansas city,  
missouri











THE WORLD BOOK  
MODERN      ENCYCLOPEDIA      PICTORIAL  
COMPREHENSIVE

*Twelve Volumes and Guide*

---

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

M. V. O'SHEA

PROFESSOR OF EDUCATION, UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

MANAGING EDITOR

ELLSWORTH D. FOSTER

EDITOR FOR CANADA

GEORGE H. LOCKE

LIBRARIAN, PUBLIC LIBRARY, TORONTO

ART DIRECTOR

GORDON SAINT CLAIR

ASSISTED BY TWO HUNDRED FIFTY OUTSTANDING LEADERS IN  
THEIR RESPECTIVE FIELDS

---

*Guide Volume*

---

ROACH-FOWLER COMPANY

KANSAS CITY, MISSOURI

THE WORLD BOOK

Copyright: 1917, 1918, 1919, 1921, 1922, 1923, 1925, 1926, 1927, 1928

W. F. Quarrie & Company

---

THE WORLD BOOK ENCYCLOPEDIA

Copyright: 1930

W. F. Quarrie & Company

## *Preface to PART ONE*

---

THE alphabetical arrangement of encyclopedic material is the best plan that can be followed in making the world's knowledge available to the reader, without waste of his time or energy. Every user of THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia understands the advantage of being able to turn to any topic under its specific title without first consulting a supplementary index. The plan of listing in regular alphabetical order all topics and cross references has proved eminently satisfactory for the casual or average user who desires to consult the work for purely reference purposes. However, in laying plans for this new edition, the editors and publishers had in mind a special system of organization designed to meet the needs of the intensive user, such as the teacher, the serious-minded student, or the club woman, who wishes to find all available material in the set on any subject whatsoever.

Part I of this thirteenth volume provides this system of organization. It is appropriately named and described in the general preface to the publication as a Guide which "gives organization to the subject matter as a whole, reveals the underlying relationships, and furnishes a course of study for every branch of learning." In other words, the twelve volumes present a multitude of subjects in alphabetical order, while the Guide classifies this material according to inherent relationships and human interests and needs.

The Guide groups the entire contents of the Encyclopedia into thirty-eight main departments. These major divisions, arranged in alphabetical order, are listed in the Table of Contents. Each section is a classified grouping of all WORLD BOOK articles on a particular subject. Throughout there are references to page numbers, to facilitate the locating of any article or group of articles in which the reader may be interested. While the classifications sometimes vary in details, they are all uniform in respect to essential features. Each unfolds the general range and character of the subject treated, its main divisions, and the relationships of individual topics. The classifications, it can be seen, are much more than lists of article titles. By frequent use of explanatory phrases, and an illuminating method of indentation, they lead the reader from topic to topic until he understands the entire plan and scope of each department of knowledge. Thus, in Part I of this volume THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia provides an invaluable aid to reading and research.

M. V. O'SHEA, Editor-in-Chief

THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN





# CONTENTS

## *Part I—GUIDE TO READING*

Agriculture.....	7991	Geology.....	8232
Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene.....	8008	History.....	8237
Anthropology, Manners and Customs.....	8013	Home Economics.....	8325
Archaeology.....	8031	Industry.....	8339
Architecture.....	8033	Invention and Applied Mechanics.....	8352
Art.....	8041	Language.....	8362
Astronomy.....	8050	Law.....	8371
Biography.....	8057	Literature.....	8377
Biology.....	8093	Mathematics.....	8403
Botany.....	8097	Medicine and Drugs.....	8408
Business.....	8114	Music.....	8419
Chemistry.....	8121	Mythology, Folklore, and Legend.....	8425
Civics.....	8128	Philosophy.....	8444
Economics.....	8139	Physics.....	8447
Education and Child Training.....	8143	Psychology.....	8454
Engineering.....	8159	Religion.....	8458
Ethics.....	8166	Sociology.....	8468
Games and Recreations.....	8170	Transportation and Communication.....	8474
Geography.....	8173	Zoölogy.....	8479

## *Part II—GUIDE TO STUDY*

### UNITED STATES HISTORY

#### *In Nine Units*

One: How We Become Americans.....	8506	Five: How Our National Government Was Tested.....	8519
Two: Why We Have English Institutions.....	8509	Six: How Negro Slavery Was Destroyed.....	8523
Three: How America Became an In- dependent Nation.....	8512	Seven: How Americans Won the West.....	8526
Four: How We Secured Our National Government.....	8516	Eight: The Coming of Big Business.....	8529
		Nine: How America Became a World Power.....	8532

### COMMUNITY CIVICS

#### *In Twenty-five Units*

One: Group Life.....	8539	Four: The Church and Religion.....	8543
Two: The Family and the Home.....	8540	Five: Community Life.....	8545
Three: The School and Education.....	8541	Six: The Community and Immigration.....	8546

Seven: The Community and Health . . .	8548	Seventeen: How We Finance Our Gov-	
Eight: The Community and Protection. .	8551	ernment. . . . .	8568
Nine: The Community and Recreation. .	8553	Eighteen: International Relations. . . .	8570
Ten: Civic Beauty and City Planning. .	8554	Nineteen: Producing Goods. . . . .	8571
Eleven: The Care and Training of the		Twenty: Exchanging Goods. . . . .	8573
Handicapped. . . . .	8555	Twenty-One: Communication. . . . .	8575
Twelve: How We Govern Ourselves. . .	8558	Twenty-Two: Transportation of Goods	
Thirteen: How Laws are Made. . . . .	8561	and People. . . . .	8576
Fourteen: How Laws are Enforced. . .	8563	Twenty-Three: Thrift and Conservation.	8578
Fifteen: How Laws are Applied and In-		Twenty-Four: Choosing a Vocation. . .	8580
terpreted. . . . .	8564	Twenty-Five: Making a Living. . . . .	8581
Sixteen: How We Select Our Officials. .	8567		

## GENERAL SCIENCE

### *In Twenty-two Units*

One: Rocks as Records of the Earth's		Thirteen: The Water Supply of Modern	
History. . . . .	8584	Homes and Cities. . . . .	8623
Two: Magnets. . . . .	8588	Fourteen: The Nature and Control of	
Three: Animal Communities. . . . .	8591	Fire. . . . .	8626
Four: Bird Migration. . . . .	8594	Fifteen: Heating and Ventilating Our	
Five: Conduction of Heat. . . . .	8597	Buildings. . . . .	8629
Six: Air Pressure. . . . .	8599	Sixteen: The Work of the Body. . . . .	8636
Seven: Green Plants as Starch and Sugar		Seventeen: Dependent Plants. . . . .	8639
Factories. . . . .	8603	Eighteen: Germs and the Body. . . . .	8643
Eight: Adaptations of Animals to Their		Nineteen: Simple Machines for Doing	
Environment. . . . .	8605	Work. . . . .	8647
Nine: The Place of Our Earth in the		Twenty: Harnessing the Energy of	
Universe. . . . .	8609	Nature to Do Man's Work. . . . .	8651
Ten: Seeds and Gardening. . . . .	8613	Twenty-One: Generating and Using	
Eleven: Our Food. . . . .	8616	Electric Currents. . . . .	8655
Twelve: Our Weather. . . . .	8619	Twenty-Two: The Benefits of Light. . .	8661

## CHARACTER TRAINING

### *In Twenty Units*

#### Lower Level

One: Steadfastness and Obedience. . .	8667	Six: Friendliness. . . . .	8672
Two: Fair Play and Good Sportsman-		Seven: Thrift. . . . .	8673
ship. . . . .	8668	Eight: Trustworthiness and Willingness	
Three: Cleanliness. . . . .	8669	to Serve. . . . .	8674
Four: Gratitude. . . . .	8670	Nine: Kindness and Sympathy. . . . .	8675
Five: Self-Control. . . . .	8671	Ten: Industry and Perseverance. . . . .	8676

#### Upper Level

One: Honesty and Justice. . . . .	8678	Six: Coöperation. . . . .	8683
Two: Courage. . . . .	8679	Seven: Ambition. . . . .	8685
Three: Thoroughness. . . . .	8680	Eight: Loyalty and Patriotism. . . . .	8686
Four: Appreciation of Service. . . . .	8681	Nine: Unselfishness and Generosity. . .	8687
Five: Initiative and Vision. . . . .	8682	Ten: Self-Reliance and Independence. .	8688

*PART ONE*  
GUIDE TO READING  
A CLASSIFICATION OF  
UNIVERSAL KNOWLEDGE



# AGRICULTURE

## The Basic Industry

- Agriculture and Mankind, 93-94
  - How Men Lived in Early Times, 93, 1445-1446
  - Domestication of Animals, 93
  - First Cultivation of the Soil, 93
  - Invention of the Plow, 93, 5659
- The Foundation of Civilization
  - Webster's Tribute, 93
  - Story of the Adams Family, 92
  - The Farmer Feeds Them All, 95
- Important Elements of Modern Agriculture, 93-100
- Agriculture Round the World, 100-101
  - Interdependence of the Nations, 100
  - Lessons of the World War, 100
  - The American Food Administration, 7891
- Agriculture of the United States
  - Wealth in the Farms, 7373-7377
  - Tropical Products Imported, 100
  - Clothing Materials, 100
    - Cotton, 1709, 1712
    - Wool, 7843
- Agriculture of Canada, 1124-1127
- Agriculture in Europe
  - Density of Population Necessitates Importation of Food, 100
  - Intensive Farming Common, 3473
  - Effects of the World War, 100
    - Partition of Estates, 100
    - Modern Agrarian Laws, 88
  - German Progress, 100
    - Terraced Rhine Vineyards, 2774
    - Potash Fertilizer, 2400, 5778
  - Thrift and Industry of France, 100
    - A French Vineyard, 2575
  - Italian Development of Intensive Farming, 101, 3580
  - British Supremacy in Livestock, 101
  - European Agriculture in Pictures
    - An Alpine Farm, Opposite 234
    - Preparing Flax for Spinning in Belgium, 696
  - Roses for Perfume, in Bulgaria, 495
  - Rural Denmark, 1893
  - In the Dutch Polders, 4889
  - A Shepherd of Hungary, 3291
  - A Farm Scene in Ireland, 3525
  - Harvest Time in Norway, 5085
  - Peasant Life in Russia, 6259
  - Farm Labor in Spain, 6731
- Farm Life in Asia
  - Primitive Methods of India, 101, 3386
    - Millet and Rice Staple Foods, 101, 4488, 6107
    - Native Tea-Pickers, 7043
    - How Irrigation Wards off Famine, 3559
  - Chinese Thrift and Industry, 101
  - Human Power Used, 101
  - Intensive Labor on Small Areas, 1387
  - Farming on Rafts, 1387
  - Planting Corn, 1387
  - Plowing a Rice Field, opposite 6107
  - Primitive Irrigation Methods, 1388, 3557
- Farming in Japan, 101
  - Irrigated Rice Lands, 3631, 3557
  - Rice-Planting near Yokohama, 6108
  - Pulling Weeds in a Rice Field, 6109
  - Intensive Farming of Small Areas of an Acre or More, 3632
- Pictured Scenes in Asiatic Islands
  - Elephant Power in Ceylon, 2201
  - Black-Pepper Plants of the East Indies, 5479
  - Coffee Tree in Bloom in Java, 1528
  - Rice Terraces on the Hills in the Philippines, 6111
  - Drying Hemp in the Philippines, 3139
  - Filipino Rice Farmer and His Carabao, 5557
  - A Tobacco Plantation in Sumatra, 7193
- Egyptian Farming, 101
  - Egypt the Gift of the Nile, 5029, 101
  - Crude Methods and Tools, 2147, 2149

Importance of Irrigation, 2148, 3550  
 Aswan Dam, 2144  
 New Zealand and Australia, 101  
 A Round-up of Sheep in Australia, 511  
 Australian Farming Community, 4950  
 Australian Poultry Farm, 514

South America, 101  
 Corn-Shelling in Agricultural Argentina, 376  
 A Coffee Tree of Brazil, 1527  
 Harvesting Sugar Cane in Peru, 6909  
 Cane Harvest in Jamaica, 6909

## The Soil and Its Use

### Formation and Kinds of Soil

**Agencies of Soil Formation, 6676-6677**  
 Erosive Agencies, 2290-2291  
 The Atmosphere, 6676-6677  
 Chemical Effect of Oxygen, 6676  
 Effects of Wind, 6676-6677, 7790  
 As in Garden of the Gods, 2291, 2687, 2688, 2733  
 Sand Dunes, 2055, 6361, 6677  
 Rain Water, 2291  
 Decomposing Action, 2733  
 Running Water, 2291, 6677, 2733  
 Work of Rivers, 6136  
 Alluvium, 228  
 Delta, 1886  
 Flood Plain, 5642  
 Weathering, 6677, 2733  
 Talus, 7010  
 Erosive Effect of Ice, 2733-2734  
 Work of Glaciers, 2734, 2291, 2822, 6677  
**Soil-Making by Plants, 6677**  
 Decomposition and Oxidation, 2734  
 Mechanical Effect on Rocks, 2734  
 Effect of Fungi, 2637  
 Decomposing Action of Molds, 4573  
 Work of Lichens, 3975, 3976  
 Mosses as Soil-Makers, 4680  
**Soil-Making by Animals**  
 By Decomposition, 6677  
 By Burrowing, 6677  
 Work of Ants, 299, 303  
 Work of Earthworms, 6677, 2086  
 Transportation of Soil, 6677  
**Kinds of Soil, 6678**  
 Classification by Composition, 6678  
 Alkali Lands, 223  
 Clay, 1458  
 Humus, 3287  
 Loam, 4068  
 Loess, 4086-4087, 2059  
 Peat Soils, 5437  
 Sand, 6361  
 Classification by Texture, 6678

### Scientific Management of the Soil

**Necessity for Soil Management, 94**  
 A Matter of Applied Agronomy, 106  
**Important Phases**  
 Rotation of Crops, 94, 6213-6214  
 Conserves Plant Foods, 94, 2098, 6213  
 Checks Plant Pests, 94, 6213  
 Factors of a Good Cropping System, 94  
 A Suggested Plan of Rotation, 6214

Crop Rotation to Secure Nitrogen, 5034-5035, 107

Fertilization, 2398-2401, 96  
 Requirements of Plants  
 Ten Essential Elements, 2399  
 Importance of Soil Analysis, 2399  
 Use of Litmus Paper to Test Acidity, 4056-4057, 21  
**Sources of Nitrogen**  
 Ammonium Sulphate, 2399-2400, 262  
 Bone Fertilizer, 836  
 Dried Blood, 4365  
 Fish Fertilizer, 2443, 5035  
 Green Manure, 4273  
 Use of Clover, 1495  
 Other Legumes, 3925  
 Guano, 2973  
 Hoof Meal, 4365  
 Horn Pith, 4365  
 Nitrate of Soda (Chile Saltpeter), 2399, 5033, 6346  
 Peat, 5437  
**Sources of Phosphorus or Lime (Calcium)**  
 Bone Fertilizer, 836  
 Fish Fertilizer, 2443  
 Guano, 2973  
 Gypsum, 2992  
 Lime, 4006  
 Essential for Acid Soils, 107  
 Marl, 4295  
 Phosphate Rock, 5574, 2400  
**Sources of Potassium**  
 Kelp, 3752  
 Potash and Other Compounds, 5777-5778, 2400  
 Kainit, 2400  
 Farm Manure, 4272-4273  
 Mixing of Fertilizers, 2400  
**The Work of Bacteria, 96**  
 Live on Roots of Legumes, 107, 567, 3925  
 Manufacture Nitrogen into Available Compounds, 5034, 203  
 Artificial Inoculation Sometimes Necessary, 203

### Control and Use of Moisture

**Dry Farming, 2042-2044**  
 A System of Conserving Moisture, 2042, 7375  
 An Aid to Crop Production, 106  
 Determining Climatic Factors in the Problem, 2042  
 Dry-Farming Areas of the United States and Canada, 2043, 2044

- Principles of Dry Farming
  - Tillage the Key Process, 2044
  - Summer Fallowing, 2044
- Irrigation, 3553-3559
  - How Lands Are Irrigated, 3553
    - Conveyance of Water through Ditches
      - Main and Head Ditches, 3553
      - Irrigation Ditch in California, 3555
    - Flooding by Means of a Portable Dam, 3553
    - Running Water through Furrows, 3553
    - Overhead Irrigation, 3558
    - Control of Slopes, 3553
  - Irrigation in the United States
    - The Irrigated (Arid) Regions, 3553-3554. 380
      - Annual Rainfall Less than Ten Inches, 3554
      - Rainfall Map of the United States, 7370
  - Pioneers in Irrigation
    - The Indians, 3553, 3405
    - Pima Indians, 3425
    - Early Spaniards, 3554
    - Mormons, 4656, 7430, 3554
    - The Carey Act, 3554
    - The Reclamation Act, 3554

- Creation of Reclamation Service, 3554
- The Warren Act, 3555
- Creation of the Bureau of Reclamation, 3555, 6024
- New Policy Begun, 3555
- Construction Works, 3555, 3558. [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUIDE.]
- Irrigation in Canada, 3558, 1126
  - Alberta Projects, 186, 188
  - In British Columbia, 959
- Irrigation in Other Countries, 3559
  - India and Egypt. [See *Agriculture Round the World*, above.]
- Drainage, 2020-2021
  - Importance of Lowering the Water-Table in Wet Soils, 2020
  - How to Drain
    - Underground Drains Preferable to Ditches 2020
    - Location of Main and Branch Drains, 2020
    - Size and Position of Tiles, 2020
    - Shape of Drainage Tiles, 7177
  - Reclamation Projects, 2020-2021, 6023, 6024. [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUIDE.]

## Plants of Farm and Garden: Their Care and Use

### Plant Breeding

- Principles of Plant Breeding, 940-941
  - Two General Methods, 940, 890
- Hybridization, or Crossing, 940, 3302
  - Importance in Plant Husbandry, 96
  - Results of Successful Crossing, 940, 3302
- Burbank Creations
  - Primus and Phenomenal Berries, 1025
  - White Blackberry, 1025, 779
  - Plumcot and Pomato, 1025
  - Shasta Daisy, 1811
- Citrange, 941
- Disease-Resistant Grapes, 2908, 3302
- Hybrid Pears, 5432, 3302
- Marquis Wheat, 96
- Potatoes, 3302
- Walnut, 3302
- The Methods
  - Cross-Pollination by Man, 940, 1757
  - Organs of Pollination, 5713, 2491
  - Grafting, 2885
- Breeding by Selection, 941
  - Typical Results
    - Burbank Potato, 1024
    - Kanred Wheat, 96
    - Spineless Cactus, 1064
- Modern Breeding Based on Laws of Heredity, 890. [See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE.]

### Plant Enemies and Their Control

- Weeds, 7699-7700
  - The Term a Relative One, 7699, 885, 887
  - Classes of Weeds

- Annuals, 7699, 295
- Biennials, 7699, 734
- Perennials, 7699, 5485
- General Methods of Checking Weeds, 7700
- Use of Herbicides, 7700
- List of Injurious Weeds
  - Agrimony, 106
  - Bindweed (Field Bindweed), 741
  - Burdock, 1025-1026
    - Burdock Seeds, 6482
  - Canada Thistle, 1151
  - Cinquefoil, 1432
  - Cocklebur, or Clothbur, 1517
    - Prickly Seed Pods Easily Dispersed, 1517, 6483
  - Couch Grass, 1720
  - Dandelion, 1819-1820
    - Dandelion Seeds and Their Dispersal, 6482
  - Dock, 1984
  - Dodder, 1984-1985
    - A Common Adulterant of Seed, 6481
  - Goosefoot, or Chenopodium, 2873
  - Indian Mallow, 3401
  - Knotgrass, 3807
  - Milkweed, 4484-4485
    - Dispersal of Seeds by the Wind, 6482, 4485
  - Mullein, or Mullen, 4734-4735
  - Nettle, 4895-4896
  - Pigweed, 5613
  - Plantain, 5649
  - Purslane, 5888
  - Ragweed, 5972, 3099



- Sand Bur, or Bur Grass, 6362
- Sow Thistle, 6725
- Thistle, 7151-7152
  - Dispersal of Seeds by Wind, 7151, 6482
- Tumbleweed, 7292
  - Dispersal of Tumbleweeds by Wind, 6482
- Wild Barley, or Squirreltail Grass, 7760
- Plant Diseases, 1961. [See *Plant Pathology*, in Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]
- Injurious Insects, 3462-3463
  - Methods of Control
    - Clean-Up Methods, 3463
    - Rotation of Crops, 3463, 6213
    - Use of Parasites, 3463
      - Such as Ladybird Beetles, 3837, 6375
    - Use of Insecticides, 3465-3466
      - Poisons for Biting Insects
        - Paris Green, 3465, 5381
        - Arsenate of Lead, 3465
        - Calcium Arsenate, 3465
        - Hellebore, 3465, 3134
        - Poison Bait, 3465
      - Contact Insecticides
        - Nicotine, 3465
        - Whale-Oil Soap, 3465
        - Oil Emulsion, 3465-3466
        - Lime-Sulphur Solution, 3466
        - Sodium Fluoride, 3466
      - Gases, or Fumigants
        - Carbon Bisulphide, 3466
        - Hydrocyanic-Acid Gas, 3466
        - Paradichlorobenzene, 3466
  - List of Insects
    - Alfalfa Weevil, 7701
    - Aphides, 317
      - Pastured by Ants, 317, 303
    - Control
      - Natural Enemies, 317
      - Nicotine, 3465
      - Whale-Oil Soap, 3465
    - Apple-Tree Borers, 327
    - Apple Maggot, or Railroad Worm, 327
      - Larva of a Black-Banded Fly, 327
    - Control
      - Arsenate of Lead, 3465, 327
    - Army Worm, 418
    - Caterpillar of a Moth, 418
    - Control
      - Poison Bait, 3465
      - Dust Furrows, 418, 1401
    - Bark Insects, 621
      - Bark Beetle, 621
      - San Jose Scale. [See below.]
    - Bean Beetle, or Mexican Bean Beetle, 658
      - Control
        - Hand-Picking the Beetles, 659
        - Calcium Arsenate and Hydrated Lime, 659, 3465
    - Bean Weevil, 658
    - Beetles, 688
      - [See separate entries in this list.]
    - Black Ant, 303
- Boll Weevil, or Cotton Boll Weevil, 823-825
  - Most Serious Cotton Pest, 1718, 823
- Grayish-Brown Snout Beetle, 824
  - Control
    - Clean-Up Methods, 824
    - Calcium Arsenate, 3465
  - How the Boll Weevil Affected Farming Methods, 824-825
- Brown-Tail Moth, 980-981
  - Control
    - Destruction of Nests, 981
    - Arsenate of Lead, 3465
- Cabbage Worm, 1058
- Cankerworm, 1170-1171
  - Belongs to the Earth-Measuring Family, 4360
  - Control
    - Bands of Cloth or Paper around the Trunks, 1170-1171
    - Arsenate of Lead, 3465
- Cherry Fruit-Fly, 327
  - Related to the Apple Maggot, 327
- Chinch Bug, 1401
  - A Serious Pest of Grains, 1401
  - Attacks on Corn, 1684
  - Control
    - Clean-Up Methods, 1401
- Codling Moth, 1524
  - Control
    - Arsenate of Lead and Lime Sulphur, 1524
- Corn Borer, 1691-1692
  - Control
    - Clean-Up Methods Recommended by the Department of Agriculture, 1691
    - Parasitic Insects, 1691
    - New Machinery, 1692
    - Quarantine, 1692
- Corn Earworm, or Bollworm, 1692
  - An Especial Pest of Sweet Corn, 1692, 1684
  - Control
    - Fall Plowing, 1692
    - Early Planting of Corn, 1692
    - Arsenate of Lead on Sweet Corn, 1692
- Cotton Leaf Worm, 1718
- Cucumber Beetle, 1783
- Curculio. [See *Plum Curculio*, below.]
- Currant Worm, 1788
- Cutworms, 1794
  - Control
    - Poison Bait, 1794, 3465
- Elm-Leaf Beetle, 2216
- Fruit Flies, 2630
  - Mediterranean Fruit Fly. [See below.]
- Grain Weevils, 2889-2890
  - Rice Weevil, 2889
  - Granary Weevil, 2889-2890
- Control
  - Fumigation with Carbon Bisulphide, 3466

Grape Insects, 2909  
 Grasshopper (Short-Horned). [See *Locust*, below.]  
 Gypsy Moth, 2993-2994  
   Control  
     Destruction of Eggs, 2994  
     Banding Infested Trees, 2994  
     Arsenate of Lead, 2994, 3465  
 Hessian Fly, 3169-3170  
   Control  
     Use of Fertilizer, 3169  
     Timing the Planting, 3169-3170  
     Disking of Infested Fields, 3170  
 Japanese Beetle, 688  
 June Bug, or May Beetle, 3713, 3716  
   Controlled by Deep Fall Plowing, 3716  
 Locust, 4084  
   Life History, 2915  
   Control  
     Harrowing and Fall Plowing, 4085  
     Poison Bait, 3465  
 Maggot on Onions, 5202  
 Mediterranean Fruit Fly, 4370  
   Control  
     Limited Value of Parasites, 4379  
     Destruction of Larvae by Heat, 4379  
     Examination of Suspected Fruit Important, 4379  
 Mole Cricket, 4574  
 Onion Thrips, 5201-5202  
 Peach Borer, 5428  
   Destroyed by Paradichlorobenzene, 3466  
 Peach Moth, or Oriental Peach Moth, 5429  
   Control  
     Destruction of Insects and Injured Fruit, 5429  
 Phylloxera, 5587  
   Control  
     Grafting of European Vines on American Stock, 5587, 941  
     Inundation, 5587  
     Carbon-Bisulphide Saturation, 5587  
 Pink Bollworm, 5625  
 Plum Curculio, 1786  
   Control  
     Catching Infested Fruit and Beetles on Cloth, 1786  
     Arsenate of Lead, 1786, 3465  
 Potato Bug, or Colorado Beetle, 5781-5782  
   Control  
     Arsenate of Lead, 3465  
     Natural Enemies, 5782  
 Rose-Chafer, or Rose Bug, 6205  
   Control  
     Covering Plants, Hand Picking of Insects, 6205  
     Arsenate of Lead, 6205  
 San Jose Scale, 6375  
   Control  
     Natural Enemies, 6375  
     Oil Emulsion, 3465-3466  
     Lime-Sulphur Solution, 3466  
 Scale Insects, 6407

Kinds  
   San Jose Scale. [See above.]  
   Cottony Cushion and Cottony Maple Scales, 6407  
   Scurfy Bark Louse, 6407  
   Pine-Leaf and Rose Scales, 6407  
   Mealy Bug, 6407  
   Control  
     Ladybird from Australia, 6407  
     Oil Emulsion, 3465-3466  
     Lime-Sulphur Solution, 3466  
 Squash Bug, 6787  
   Control  
     Hand Picking and Trapping of Bugs, 6787  
     Protection of Plants, 6787  
 Strawberry Weevil, 6878  
   Control  
     White Hellebore and Kerosene Emulsion, 6878  
 Tent Caterpillar, 7109-7110  
   Control  
     Destruction of Webs, 7110  
     Arsenate of Lead, 3465  
 Termites, 7111-7112  
 Tobacco Worm, 7194  
   Larva of a Hawk Moth, 3088  
 Tussock Moth (Family), 7329  
   Gypsy and Brown-Tail Moths. [See above.]  
   White-Marked Moth, 7329  
 Weevils, 7701  
   Classed as Snout Beetles, 7701, 688  
   Alfalfa Weevil. [See above.]  
   Granary and Rice Weevils. [See *Grain Weevils*, above.]  
   Fruit Weevils, 7701  
     Plum Curculio. [See above.]  
     Strawberry Weevil. [See above.]  
 Wireworms, 7801  
   Larvae of Click Beetles, 1479  
   Control  
     Rotation of Crops, 7801, 1479  
     Destruction of Pupae by Plowing and Harrowing, 1479  
     Drainage in Wet Land, 1479  
     Treatment of Corn Seed before Planting, 7801  
**Other Pests**  
   Chipmunk, 1403  
   Gopher, 2873-2874  
   Ground Hog, 2968-2969  
   Hare, 3044-3045  
   Mites, 4561-4562  
   Mouse, 4701-4702  
   Opossum, 5227  
   Prairie Dog, 5795-5796  
   Rabbit, 5925-5927  
   Raccoon, or Coon, 5928  
   Rat, 5998-6000  
   Red Squirrel, 6789  
   Slug, 6645  
   Vole, 7564

Friends of the Farmer

Badger, 570-571  
 Bats, 648  
 Birds, 755  
 Earwig, 2087  
 Frog, 2626  
 Ichneumon Flies, 3336  
 Lace-Winged Flies, 3833-3834  
 Ladybird, or Ladybug, 3837  
 Mole, 4573-4574  
 Shrew, 6578-6579  
 Skunk, 6635-6636  
 Snakes, 6659-6661  
 Toad, 7189, 7191-7193  
 Wasps, 7658-7661  
 Weasel, 7686  
 [See, also, *Soil-Making by Plants and Soil-Making by Animals*, page 7992.]

Horticulture

Four Divisions of Horticulture, 3255  
 Pomology, or Fruit-Growing, 3255, 2629  
 [See below, *Fruits and Their Culture*.]  
 Olericulture, or Vegetable-Growing, 3255, 7471, 2684  
 Floriculture, or Flower-Growing, 3255, 2493  
 Landscape Gardening, 3255  
 Also Called Landscape Architecture, 3854, 3855  
 The Gardener an Artist, 2684  
 [See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Principles of Gardening, 2684-2687  
 Selection of a Garden Site, 2684  
 The Working Plan, or Diagram  
 To Show Size and Arrangement of Beds, 2684  
 Advantage of a Small Plot, 2684  
 Color Arrangement for a Flower Garden, 2493  
 Preparing the Soil  
 Value of Manuring, 2685, 2493  
 Necessity of Spading and Raking, 2685, 2493  
 Planting the Seed  
 Importance of Good Seed, 2685  
 How Seed Becomes Adulterated, 6481  
 Seed Testing, 6481  
 A Simple Testing Device, 6480  
 How and When to Plant, 2685-2686  
 Planting Table for Flowers, 2493  
 For Vegetables, 7471  
 Conditions for Germination, 2789  
 Temperature Table, 2790  
 Moisture and Oxygen Requirements, 2790  
 Cultivation  
 Includes Fertilizing, Stirring, Watering, 2686, 2493  
 Value of a Surface Mulch, 2686, 2493  
 Protecting the Garden  
 Fighting Weeds, 2686  
 Fighting Insects, 2686

Enlisting the Aid of Birds and Toads, 2686

[See *Plant Enemies and Friends of the Farmer*, above.]

Making a Garden Pay, 2686  
 Turning a Backyard to Profit, 2686, 2687  
 Finding a Market for Garden Produce, 2686-2687  
 Disposal by Local Selling and Parcel-Post Delivery, 2687  
 Raising Flowers for Sale, 2687  
 Educational Value of Gardening, 2684  
 The School Garden, 6428-6429  
 Development of the Movement, 6428  
 Problems of Management, 6428-6429  
 Special Horticultural Structures  
 Greenhouse, 2957  
 Hotbed and Cold Frame, 3257

Vegetable Crops

Vegetable Culture

Raising Vegetables for Market Known as Truck Farming or Gardening, 7470, 2684  
 A Form of Intensive Farming, 3474  
 What Vegetables Are  
 Plants with Edible Leaves, Stalks, Roots, or Tubers, 7470  
 Plants with Edible Fruiting Parts, 7470  
 Vegetables as Food. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 List of Vegetables  
 Artichoke, 430-431  
 Globe Artichoke, 430  
 Jerusalem Artichoke, 430  
 Asparagus, 452  
 Blanching, or Etiolation, 452, 2308  
 Bean, 657-658  
 Characteristic Habit of Germination, 2790  
 Kinds of Beans, 657  
 Soy Bean a Restorer of Nitrogen to the Soil, 657, 3925  
 Beet, 685-686  
 Mangels Grown as Cattle Food, 686  
 Sugar Beets, 686  
 Source of Beet Sugar, 6906-6907  
 Brussels Sprouts, 985  
 Cabbage, 1057-1058  
 Carrot, 1217-1218  
 Cauliflower, 1260  
 Celery, 1267  
 A Crop of Muck, or Peat, Soils, 1267, 5437  
 Blanching, or Etiolation, 1267, 2308  
 Chard, Swiss Chard, or Sea Kale, 1309-1310  
 Cress, 1741  
 Cucumber, 1782-1783  
 Eggplant, 2139  
 Endive, 2234  
 Blanching, or Etiolation, 2234, 2308  
 Garlic, 2694-2695  
 Gourd, 2881-2882  
 Kale, or Borecole, 3731  
 Kohl-Rabi, or Kohl-Rube, 3812  
 Leek, 3922

Blanching, or Etiolation, 2308  
 Lentil, 3935-3936  
 Lettuce, 3948  
 Mushrooms, 4754-4758  
 Okra, 5189  
 Onion, 5201-5202  
 Oyster Plant, or Salsify, 5286  
 Parsley, 5402  
 Parsnip, 5402  
 Pea, 5424-5425  
 Potato, 5779-5781  
     In the Nightshade Family, 884  
     Wide Distribution, 5779, 5781  
     Origin of Name Irish Potato, 5779  
     Edible Part a Tuber, 5779, 1013  
     Eyes Are Stem Buds, 5779  
     Results of Planting Seeds and Pieces of  
         Potato, 5779  
         Burbank Potato, 5779, 1024  
     Planting Methods, 5779  
         A Planting Machine, 5780  
     Harvesting, 5779, 5781  
         A Digging Machine, 5780  
     Industrial Uses  
         Potato Starch, 5781, 6810  
         Potato Flour, 5781  
         In Alcohol Manufacture, 5781, 194  
     Potato Clubs, 5781  
 Pumpkin, 5881  
 Radish, 5968  
 Rhubarb, or Pieplant, 6100-6101  
 Spinach, 6764-6765  
 Squash, 6787  
 Sweet Potato, 6960-6961  
 Tomato, 7205-7206  
     In the Nightshade Family, 884  
 Turnip, 7320-7321  
     Swedish Turnip, or Rutabaga, 7320-7321  
 Yam, 7926-7927

**Cultivated Flowers**

Abutilon, 12  
 Adonis, 51  
 Amaranth, 241  
     Garden Species Include Love-Lies-Bleeding,  
         Prince's Feather, and Cockscomb, 241  
 American Beauty Rose, 248  
 Asphodels, 454  
 Aster, 463  
     Michaelmas Daisy of England, 463  
     China Aster, 463  
 Begonia, 689-690  
 Bleeding Heart, 789-790  
 Calla Lily, or Ethiopian Lily, 1098  
     Belongs to the Arum Family, 437-438  
 Camella, 1106  
 Canterbury Bell, 1113  
 Candytuft, 1167, 1170  
     Garden Species: Purple, Bitter, and Ever-  
         green Candytuft, 1167, 1170  
 Canna, 1171  
 Carnation, 1202  
 Century Plant, 1290

Chrysanthemum, 1419  
     Japanese Origin of Chrysanthemum Shows,  
         1419  
 Cineraria, 1431  
 Cockscomb, 1518  
 Cosmos, 1703  
 Crocus, 1751  
     Grows from a Corm, 1679  
     An Autumn-Flowering Species Produces  
         Saffron, 6296  
 Cyclamen, 1795-1796  
 Daffodil, 1805  
 Dahlia, 1806  
 Day Lily, 1843  
 Easter Lily, 2088-2089  
 Forget-Me-Not, 2542  
 Four-O'Clock, or Marvel of Peru, 2552  
 Foxglove, 2555  
     Digitalis Derived from Purple Foxglove, 1947  
 Fuchsia, 2630  
 Gardenia, 2683  
     Cape Jasmine Species Common in America,  
         2683  
 Geranium, 2763-2764  
     Correctly known as Pelargonium, 2764  
 Gladiolus, 2827, 2829  
     Reproduces from Corms, 1679, 2829  
 Gloxinia, 2844  
 Heliotrope, 3131  
 Hibiscus, 3174  
     Swamp Rose Mallow and Rose of Sharon,  
         Ornamental Species, 3174  
     Chinese Mallow (Rose of China), Grown in  
         American Greenhouses, 3174  
 Hollyhock, 3198  
 Holy Spirit Plant, or Dove Plant, 3204  
 Hyacinth, 3301  
     Grown from Bulbs, 3301, 1012-1013  
     Commercial Culture in the Netherlands,  
         3301, 4890  
 Iris, 3531-3532  
     Orris Root a Product of Iris Florentina, 5262  
 Jonquil, 3696  
 Larkspur, 3881  
 Lily, 4005  
     Lilies Grow from Scaly Bulbs, 1012  
 Lily of the Valley, 4006  
 Lobelia, 4068  
 Lupine, 4156-4157  
     The Blue Bonnet, State Flower of Texas,  
         4157  
 Marigold, 4292  
 Mignonette, 4471  
 Moonflower, 4643  
 Morning-Glory, 4656-4657  
 Narcissus, 4809  
 Nasturtium, 4812-4813  
 Orchid, 5240  
     Tropical Orchids Are Air Plants, 151, 5240  
 Pansy, 5341  
 Peony, 5477-5478  
 Petunia, 5529-5530  
 Phlox, 5567-5568

Pink, 5625  
 Poinsettia, 5682  
     Foliage the Conspicuous Part, 5682  
 Poppy, 5737, 5739  
 Primrose, 5812  
 Rose, 6202-6204  
 Sensitive Plant, 6493  
 Shasta Daisy, 1811  
     Developed by Burbank, 1025  
 Slipperwort, 6643  
 Snapdragon, 6662  
 Snowdrop, 6665  
 Star of Bethlehem, 6812  
 Sunflower, 6927, 6929  
 Sweet Alyssum, 6959  
 Sweet Pea, 6959-6960  
 Sweet William, 6961  
 Tiger Lily, 7175  
 Tuberoses, 7288-7289  
 Wandering Jew, 7590  
 Yucca, 7956-7958  
 Zinnia, 7974  
     [For a list of ornamental shrubs and vines,  
     see *Landscape Gardening*, in the Outline  
     on Art, in this GUIDE.]

#### Fruits and Their Culture

##### Fruit Culture in North America, 2629

###### Areas of Development

In the United States, 2629, 7375-7376

In Canada, 1125

Favorable Climatic Conditions, 2629

###### Other Factors

Development of Transportation Facilities,  
 2629, 100, 7376

Cold-Storage Methods, 1532-1534

Refrigeration Cars, 6042, 6044

Preservation of Fruit by Canning, 2514-  
 2519

Dehydration, 1875

Food Value of Fruits. [See Outline on *Home  
 Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

##### Methods in Fruit Culture

Grafting, Insertion of Cion upon Stock,  
 2885-2888

Purposes of Grafting, 2885

###### Methods

Bud Grafting, or Budding, 2885-2886

Cion Grafting, or Grafting Proper, 2886

Whip Grafting, 2887

Cleft Grafting, 2887

Bark Grafting, 2887

Saddle Grafting, 2887-2888

Splice Grafting, 2888

Inarching, Grafting by Approach, 2888

Pruning, the Cutting Away of Parts, 5858

###### Purposes

To Limit Number of Buds, 5858

To Permit Proper Spraying, 5858

To Remove Dead Branches, 5234

Protection from Frost

Use of Smudge-Pots, 2629

A Protected Orange Grove, 5231

Protection from Insects and Disease, 2629  
 [See *Plant Enemies and Their Control*,  
 above.]

##### Culture of Small Fruits

Blackberry, 778-779

Blueberry. [See *Huckleberry*, below.]

Cranberry, 1732

Currant, 1788-1789

Distinction between Bush Currants and

Grape Currants, 1789

Dewberry

A Hybrid Produced by B. M. Young, 1926

Rediscovery by the Department of Agri-  
 culture, 1926

Gooseberry, 2873

Grape, 2908-2909

Checking the Phylloxera, 2908, 5587

Huckleberry, 3269-3270

Swamp and Low-Bush Huckleberries, 3269

The Blueberry, 3269

Loganberry, 4088-4089

Named for J. H. Logan, 4088

Raisins, 5989-5990

Dried Grapes, 5989

Drying Methods, 5989

Raspberry, 5998

Strawberry, 6877-6878

##### Culture of Tree Fruits

Apple, 324-327

Its Relatives in the Rose Family, 324, 6203

Beginnings of Apple Culture

Introduced into England by Romans,  
 324

Introduced into America by Colonials,  
 324

Johnny Appleseed, 324

Regions of Apple Culture, 324-325

Methods of Culture, 325-326

Kinds of Apples, 326

Seedless Apples, 326

Apricot, 329-330

Development in California, 329, 1088

How Apricots Are Dried, 330

Avocado, or Alligator Pear, 547

Breadfruit, 937, 938

Carob, 1205

Cherry, 1342-1343

Citron, 1436

Citrus Fruits, 1436

[See separate entries in this list.]

Crab Apple, 1731

Date, 1831-1833

Picking Dates in an Egyptian Oasis, 1832

Date Culture in the United States, 1831,  
 1833

California and Arizona (Graphic), 1086

Fig, 2413-2414

Regions of Cultivation, 2414

California and Texas (Graphic), 1086

Smyrna Figs

Depend upon the Fig-Wasp for Fer-  
 tilization, 2414

Grapefruit, 2910

Guava, 2977  
 Kumquat, 3818  
 Lemon, 3928-3929  
     Areas of Cultivation, 3928-3929  
     California Produces Most of the American Crop, 3929, 1086  
 Lime, 4006  
 Loquat, 4109  
 Mango, 4255-4256  
 Nectarine, 4869  
 Olive, 5192-5193  
 Orange, 5231-5234  
 Kinds of Orange  
     Washington Navel, a Seedless Variety, 5232  
     Valencia, a Seed Orange, 5232  
     Kid-Glove Oranges  
         Tangerine. [See below.]  
         Satsuma, 5234  
         Mandarin, 5234  
     Orange Culture, 5234  
 Pawpaw, 5422-5423  
     American Pawpaw Belongs to Custard-Apple Family, 5422  
     Tropical Pawpaw, or Papaya, 5422-5423  
     Belongs to Passion-Flower Family, 5422  
 Peach, 5427-5428  
     Well-Known Commercial Varieties, 5428  
     Nectarine. [See above.]  
 Pear, 5432-5433  
 Persimmon, 5503  
     Japanese Kaki Successfully Grafted upon American Stock, 5503  
 Plum, 5662-5663  
 Pomegranate, 5718-5719  
 Prune, 5857-5858  
     Dried Plum of Special Adaptation, 5857  
 Quince, 5922  
     Quince Stock Used for Dwarf Pears, 5922, 5433  
 Tamarind, 7011  
 Tangerine, 7015  
**Fruits of Herb and Vine**  
 Banana 594-597  
 Melons, 4384  
     Cassaba, 1229  
     Muskmelon, 4778-4779  
         Distinctions between Cantaloupes, Honeydew Melons, and Nutmeg Melons, 4778  
     Watermelon, 7669-7670  
 Pineapple, 5622-5624  
 Prickly Pear, or Indian Fig, 5810-5811  
     Cultivated in Mediterranean Countries for Its Fruit, 5810, 1064

#### Nuts and Nut-Bearing Trees

#### Commercial Importance of Nuts, 5119

Areas of Production, 5119  
 Nuts as Food. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Nuts as Sources of Perfumes, Dyes, Ink, Varnish, etc., 5119

Cultivation of Nut Trees, 5120  
 Fruitful Varieties Cannot Be Propagated from Seed, 5120  
 Seedling Trees Used as Stock for Grafting, 5120  
 Transplanting of Nut Trees, 5120  
 Suggestions for Planting Trees, 7260-7261  
**List of Nut Trees**  
 Almond, 231-232  
 Brazil Nut, or Para Nut, 934  
 Butternut, or White Walnut, 1050-1051  
 Chestnut, 1349-1350  
 Coconut, or Cocoanut, 1519-1522  
 Hazel Nut, or Filbert, 3102  
 Hickory, 3175  
 Ivory Palm, 3593  
     Nuts the Source of Vegetable Ivory, 3593  
         Vegetable Ivory Buttons, 1052  
 Litchi, or Leechee, 4046  
 Peanut, 5431-5432  
     Botanically a Legume, 5431  
 Pecan, 5437-5438  
 Pistachio, 5629  
 Walnuts, 7586-7587  
     Species Common in America  
         Butternut. [See above.]  
         Black Walnut, 7586-7587  
         Persian, or English, Walnut, 7587

#### Grain Crops

**Grains, Breadstuffs of the World, 2888-2889**  
 Distinction between the Terms Grains and Cereals, 2888  
 Importance of the Grains, 2888, 2889  
 Grain Continents and Countries, 2889  
 Chemical Composition of Grains, 2890  
 Food Value. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

#### List of Grains

Barley, 622-623  
     Economic Uses, 623  
         In Malting and Brewing, 4240-4241, 942, 944  
         [See *Brewing*, in the Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]  
         As a Forage Crop, 623  
 Buckwheat, 996-997  
     Economic Uses  
         Feed for Stock and Poultry in Europe, 996  
         In Making Beer and Cordials, 996  
         Source of a Brown Dye, 996  
         Bee Forage, 996, 3217  
 Corn, 1681-1691  
     Most Important Grain of the Western Hemisphere, 1681  
     Its Names  
         Native Name, Maize, 1681  
         Called Indian Corn by European Explorers, 1681  
         Corn a British Term for All Grains, 1681, 1694  
     Distribution and Production, 1681

Area of Corn Production in the United States, 1682  
 Description of the Plant, 1681-1682  
 Classification  
   Five Principal Groups and Hundreds of Varieties, 1682  
   Pop Corn, 1682  
   Flint Corn, 1682  
   Dent Corn, 1683  
   Sweet Corn, 1683  
   Flour, or Soft, Corn, 1683  
   Pod Corn, 1682  
 Culture of Corn  
   Importance of Seed Testing, 1683  
     How to Make Tests, 6481  
   Seeding Practices, 1683  
   Cultivation to Check Weeds, 1683  
 Methods of Harvesting, 1684  
   Types of Machinery, 1684  
   Use of Stock as Harvesters, 1684  
   Method of Shocking, 1684  
   Cutting Corn for Silage, 6612, 1685  
 Products, 1684-1688  
 [See *Corn Products*, in the Outline on *Industry*, in this GUME.]  
 Flax for Seed, 2465-2466, 2467-2468  
   Production of Flaxseed, 2467  
   Production of Linseed Oil and Meal, 2465-2466  
   Methods of Extracting Linseed Oil, 4036  
 Kafir Corn, or Kaffir Corn, 3729-3730  
   Grain Sorghum Grown Originally in South-Central Africa, 3729  
 Millet, 4488  
   Extensive Use as Human Food in the Orient, 4488  
   Use as Hay and Forage. [See below, under *Hay and Forage Crops*.]  
 Oats, 5136-5138  
   Value of Oats as Feed for Stock, 5138  
 Rice, 6107-6113  
   Preëminence of the Grain in Asia, 6107, 101  
   Thirsty Habits of Lowland Rice, 6108  
   Irrigation for Rice Culture, 6108  
     Japanese Water Wheel, 3557  
     Irrigation in Mexico, 4442  
   Upland Rice Grown without Water Culture, 6108  
   Cultivation of a Rice Field, 6108-6109  
     Plowing a Rice Field in China, opposite 6107  
   A Rice Farmer in the Philippines, 5557  
 Enemies of Rice  
   Drought, Freshets, Weeds, 6109  
   Ricebird, or Bobolink, 6109, 811  
   Weaver Birds, 7693  
   Java Sparrow, or Paddy Bird, 6109, 7693  
 Harvesting and Thrashing, 6109  
   Arduous Labor in Japan, 6110  
 Making Paddy into Rice, 6109-6110  
 Wild Rice, a Food for Birds and Indians, 6110

World Production, 6112-6113  
   Extensive Production in Louisiana, 4126, 6112  
   Growing Importance in the United States, 6113  
 Rye, 6286-6287  
   Hardest of the Cereals, 6286  
   Products and Uses  
     Flour, 6286.  
     Whisky, 7742  
   Other Liquors, 6286  
   Rye Bran, for Stock, 6287  
   Straw, for Manufactured Goods and Thatch, 6287  
 Sorghum, 6690-6691  
   White Milo and White Durra, or Jerusalem Corn, 6690-6691  
 Wheat, 7731-7736  
   Most Widely Cultivated of Food Cereals, 7731  
   Cultivated in Prehistoric Times, 7731  
   Remains of Wheat Grain Found in Lake Dwellings, 7731, 3844  
   Eight Principal Groups  
     Common Wheat, 7731  
     Durum Wheat, 7731-7732  
     High Gluten Content, 2845  
     Excellent for Macaroni, 4168  
     Club Wheat, 7732  
     Einkorn, 7732  
     Poulard Wheat, 7732  
     Polish Wheat, 7732  
     Spelt Wheat, 7732  
     Emmer, 7732  
   Agricultural Classification of Spring and Winter Wheat, 7732  
   Culture of Wheat, 7732-7733  
   Harvesting, 7733  
   Production and Trade, 7733-7734  
     Board of Trade, 808-810  
     Marketing Act, 4294  
   Wheat Products, 7734, 7736  
     Bran, Bread, Breakfast Foods, Macaroni. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUME.]  
     Flour, 2486-2490.  
     Screenings, 7736  
     Starch, 6810  
     Straw, 6876

#### Hay and Forage Crops

Hay, 3091-3092  
   Chief Hay Plants, 3091  
   Comparative Production of Hay and Forage in the United States, 7374  
 Silage, or Ensilage, 6611, 6612-6613  
   Green Crops Allowed to Ferment in Silos, 6611  
   Chief Plants Used, 6612  
   Importance as Winter Stock Food, 6612-6613  
 Meadow and Pasture Grasses, 2912  
   Blue Grass, or June Grass, 805

- Luxuriant Growth in Kentucky, 3758
- Missouri Blue Grass, 4553
- On the Tennessee Bottom Lands, 7096
- Creeping Bent, 1740
- Foxtail Grass, 2556
- Gama Grass, or Sesame Grass, 2672
- Kafir Corn, 3729-3730
- Millet, 4488
  - Important Species: Foxtail, Brown-Corn, and Barnyard Millet, 4488
- Sudan Grass, 6902
- Timothy, or Herd's Grass, 7180
  - Introduced into the Carolinas by Timothy Hanson, 7180
  - Most Important Cultivated Hay Grass of North America, 7180
- Leguminous Plants, 3925
  - Valuable as Forage Crops, 3925
  - Valuable as Green Manure, 4273
  - Alfalfa, or Lucerne, 202-203
    - Uses
      - Importance as a Hay Crop, 203
      - Comparative Feeding Qualities, 203
      - Alfalfa Meal, 203
      - Bee Forage, 3217
    - Enemies, 203
  - Clover, 1494-1495
    - Kinds
      - Red Clover, 1494-1495
        - Fertilization by the Bumblebee, 679
      - White Clover, 1495
        - Chief Honey Plant, 3217
      - Alsike or Swedish Clover, 1495
      - Crimson, Hop, and Rabbit-Foot Clovers, 1495
    - Melilot, or Melilotus, 4384
    - Vetch, 7512
      - Barley Sowed with Vetch as a Forage Crop, 623
- Straw, 6876
  - Use as Feed for Livestock, 6876

#### Fiber and Fiber Plants

- Vegetable Fibers, 2405
  - Kinds and Uses, 2405
- List of Fiber Plants
  - Abaca, or Manila Hemp, 5555, 3140
  - Boehmeria, 812
    - Genus Name of Plants Producing China Grass, Ramie, Rhea, 812
  - Bowstring Hemp, 3140
  - Broom Corn, or Broom Grass, 977
  - Cotton, 1708-1718
    - Antiquity of Cotton, 1708
    - Distribution and Production, 1709
      - Comparative Crops, 1712
    - Asiatic Species: Indian and Bengal, 1710
    - American Species: Sea-Island, Peruvian, and Upland, 1710
      - In a Southern Cotton Field, 1710-1713
    - Ginning the Cotton, 1713-1714
      - Cotton Gins, Old and New, 1718-1719
    - Cotton Manufacture, 1714

- Spinning and Weaving. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Products and By-Products, 1714, 1715, 1718
  - Cotton Fabrics. [See Outlines on *Home Economics* and *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
  - From Cottonseed, 1716
- Esparto, 2297-2298
- Flax, 2465-2468
  - Linen and Its Uses. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Hemp, 3138-3140
- Henequen
  - Produced Chiefly in Yucatan, 7956
- Jute, 3723-3725
- Palms
  - Coconut Palm, 1522
  - Palmyra Palm, 5321, 5323
  - Piassaba Palm, 5321
  - Raffia Palm, 5971
    - Use of the Fiber in Schools, 5971-5972
  - Rattan Palms, 6001
  - Sisal, 6626

#### Other Plants Important in Agriculture

- Aromatic Herbs and Spices. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Coffee, 1526-1530
  - Caffeine, or Theine, the Alkaloid Principle in the Coffee Berry, 1068, 1527
  - Preparation of the Berries for Market, 1528-1530
  - Production and Use by Different Countries, 1530
  - Varieties, 1530
- Hops, 3236-3237
- Sugar Cane, 6910
  - Sugar Manufacture. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Tea, 7042-7049
  - Caffeine and Tannin the Active Principles, 7042
  - The Tea Plant and Its Care, 7042
  - Chief Tea-Growing Countries of the World, 7044
  - Preparation for Market
    - Leaves Picked by Hand, 7044, 7043, 7047
    - Preparation of Fermented, or Black, Tea, 7044
    - Preparation of Unfermented, or Green, Tea, 7044
    - Adulteration and Scenting, 7046
    - Testing Tea for Purity, 7048
  - Legendary Story of the Origin of Tea, 7046, 7048
  - Its Spread over the World, 7048-7049
- Tobacco, 7193-7198
  - Manufacture. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Effects of Use, 7196
  - History of Tobacco, 7198
- Forest Plants
  - The Beauty of Our Forests, 2533



Changes in the Earth's Forested Areas, 2533  
 The Forest's Value to Man, 2534  
 Kinds of Forests, 2534. [See, also, Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Destroyers of the Forests  
     The Lumberman, 4145-4150, 2534, 2536  
     Fire, 2534  
     Forest Insects, 2536. [See *Injurious Insects*, above.]  
     Diseases of Trees, 2536. [See *Plant Pathology*, in the Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
     Livestock-Grazing, 2536  
     Winds, 2536  
 Forest Resources To-Day, 2536, 2538  
 Forests of Canada, 1124

Forests of the United States, 7369  
     Rapid Depletion of the Forests, 2538, 7370  
 Forestry, the Conservation of Trees, 2540-2541, 1622-1623  
 Forestry in the United States  
     Beginning of a National Policy, 2540  
     Creation of the Forest Service, 2540  
     The National Reserves, 2540  
     The Forest Service, 2540-2541  
         Life of the Ranger, 2540-2541, 2537, 2539  
         Superior Officers, 2541  
 Forestry in Canada, 2541  
 List of Trees. [See Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]

## Farm Animals and Their Care

### Breeding Domestic Animals

#### Main Purpose of Breeding

Development of Special Qualities, 940  
 As in Dairy Types of Cattle, 1255

#### Breeding by Selection

Results, 941, 97  
 Principles Applied  
     Heredity, 941, 3158  
     Genetics, 2716

Breeding by Hybridization, 941, 3302  
 Mule a Valuable Hybrid, 4734

### Diseases and Pests

#### Diseases of Animals, 1960-1961

Similarity between Man and Animals, 1960  
 Kinds of Animal Diseases, 1960-1961  
 [See diseases listed below.]  
 Importance of Disinfection, 307  
 Danger of Human Infection, 307  
 Inoculation a Preventive, 308

#### Veterinary Medicine, 7514

#### Infectious Diseases, 1960-1961

Anthrax, 307  
     Called Splenic Fever, 307  
 Distemper, 1966-1967  
     Most Common Infectious Disease of Dogs, 1966  
     Distemper of Colts Called Strangles, 1966  
 Foot and Mouth Disease, 2521-2522  
     Peculiar to Animals with Cloven Hoofs, 2521  
     Control  
         Quarantine, Killing, Burial in Quicklime, Disinfection, Isolation of Uninfected Animals, 2521-2522  
         Danger of Human Infection, 2522  
 Glanders, 2829-2830  
     Horses, Asses, and Mules Especially Susceptible, 2829  
     Gradual Onset and Intermittent Symptoms of Chronic Glanders, or Farcy, 2830  
 Rabies, or Hydrophobia, 3308-3309

Transmitted to Man by Bite of Infected Animal, 3308

Care of Infected or Suspected Dogs, 3309  
 Rinderpest, or Cattle Plague, 6129

#### Diseases Due to Poison, 1961

Larkspur Poisoning, 3881  
 Loco Weed Poisoning, 4083  
     Kinds of Loco: White, Purple, and Blue, 4083

#### Organic Diseases, 1961

Heaves, or Broken Wind, 3120  
 Loss of Cud, an Organic Symptom, 1258  
 Spavin, 6745

Bone Spavin, a Bony Enlargement inside the Hock, 6745

Bog Spavin, a Soft Swelling around the Joint, 6745

#### Diseases Due to Parasites, 1961, 5363

Botfly Infestation, 892-893  
     Species Injurious to Cattle Called Heel Fly, 892  
     Larvae Called Ox Warbles, 892

Injury Due to the Cattle Tick, 1258-1259  
     Texas Fever Transmitted by Bite of Tick, 1258

Eradication Methods of the Department of Agriculture, 1259

Flea Injuries, 2468

Gapes, 2681-2682

A Disease of Young Poultry Caused by Parasitic Worms, 2681

Control by Use of Extractor, Disinfection, and Removal of Flock, 2681-2682

Injury Due to the Horsefly, or Gadfly, 3251-3252

Lumpy Jaw, or Lump Jaw, 4154

Caused by a Fungus, 4154

Requires Surgical Treatment, 4154

Mange, 4255

A Skin Disease Caused by Mites, 4255, 4562

Also Called Itch and Scab, 4255

Affects Horses, Dogs, Cattle, and Sheep, 4255

- Nagana, 7285
- Transmitted to Animals by the Tsetse Fly, 7285
- Injuries Due to Ticks, 7170-7171
- Cattle Tick. [See above.]
- Miana Bug, a Pest of Poultry, 7171
- English Sheep Tick, 7171

#### Draft Animals

- Horse, 3243-3251
  - Characteristics of the Horse, 3243
  - Value to Mankind, 3243
  - Length of Life, 3243
  - Evolution and History, 3243, 3246
  - The Horse and His Relatives, 3250
  - Principal Types
    - Roadster Type, 3246-3247
    - Descended from Arabian Horse through the Thoroughbred, 3246, 3244
    - Represented by Standard-Bred, 3246-3247
    - Coach, or Heavy-Harness, Type
      - Represented by the Hackney, French and German Coach, and Cleveland Bay, 3247, 3249
  - Draft Type
    - Represented by Percheron, Clydesdale, Shire, Belgian, and Suffolk Punch, 3247, 3245, 3248
  - Care and Feeding of Horses, 3247
    - Rations, 3247
    - Feeding Systems, 3247, 3250
    - When to Water Horses, 3250
  - The Harness, 3047, 3048
- Mule, 4734
  - Hybrid of Male Ass and Mare, 4734, 456
  - Traits Inherited from Parents, 4734
  - Value of the Mule in Camps, Mines, Military Zones, and on Farms, 4734
- Ass, or Donkey, 455-456
  - Compared with the Horse and Zebra, 455, 3250
  - Wild and Domestic Asses Compared, 455
  - Value of Male Ass, or Jack, for Breeding, 4734, 455-456
  - Use of Female as Milk Animal, 456, 4481

#### Domestic Cattle and Their Products

- How Cattle Serve Mankind, 1250
- Belonging to the Cattle Group
  - American Buffalo, or Bison, 1003-1005
  - Water Buffalo of India, 1003
  - Carabao, 1188-1189
  - Zebu, 7970
- Ancestry of Cattle, 1250
- Familiar Breeds of Domestic Cattle
  - Distinguished through Color, Horn, and Type Differences, 1251
  - Hornless Breeds, 1251
  - Development of Polled Strains, 1251
- Dehorning Cattle
  - Preventing Horn Growth on Young Animals, 1251

- Clipping Horns of Older Animals, 1251
- Types of Cattle
  - Dairy Type, Bred for Production of Milk, Cheese, and Butter, 1251
  - Beef Type, Bred to Produce a Large Amount of Meat, 1251
  - Dual-Purpose Type, 1251
- Characteristics of Dairy Type
  - Body Wedge-Shaped from before Backwards, 1251
  - Diagram, Parts of a Cow, 1727
  - The Cow of Good Dairy Temperament Described, 1252
- Important Dairy Breeds
  - Holstein-Friesian, of Dutch Origin, 1252
    - A Three-Year-Old, 1255
  - Guernsey and Jersey, 1252
    - Originated on the Channel Islands, 1303
    - Three-Year-Olds, 1255
  - Ayshire, 1252
    - Originated in County Ayr, Scotland, 1252
- Minor Breeds
  - Brown Swiss, Dutch Belted, Kerry, Dexter, French Canadian, 1254
- Care and Feeding of Dairy Cattle, 1254-1255
  - Arrangement of Foods in the Dairy Animal's Daily Ration, 1255-1256
  - Rations for Young Stock, Bulls, and Non-Milkers, 1256
  - Importance of Light, Ventilation, Good Bedding, and Cleanliness, 1256
  - The Feeding of Calves Intended for the Dairy Herd, 1256-1257
- Characteristics of Beef Cattle
  - Shape of Body, Compactness, Even Fleshing, 1257
- Best-Known Beef Breeds
  - Shorthorn, or Durham, 1257
    - Origin in England, 1257
  - Bull, Cow, and Steer, 1253
  - Hereford, 1257
    - From County Hereford, England, 1257
  - Bull, Cow, and Steer, 1252
  - Aberdeen-Angus and Galloway, 1257
    - Angus Bull and Cow, 1254
    - Galloway Cow, 1254
- Feeding Beef Cattle, 1257
  - In the Grain-Growing Regions, 1257
  - Cattle Bred on the Range, 1257
    - Shipped to Grain-Growing Country for Fattening, 1257
  - Average Productive Life of Cows, 1257
- The Cattle Industries
  - Dairying, or Dairy Husbandry, 1807-1811
    - Different Animals Used for Dairy Purposes, 1807
    - American Industry Limited to Cows, 1807
    - Dairy Management, 1807-1810
      - The Herd
        - Selection of Cows, 1807-1808
        - Importance of the Daily Record in Showing Quantity of Milk and Percentage of Fat, 1808-1809

- The Stable
  - Importance of Ventilation and Cleanliness, 1809
- The Feed Problem
  - Fresh Grass Must Be Supplemented, 1809
  - Use of Silage, 1809-1810
  - Cleanliness in Milking, 1810
- Importance of Dairying
  - In the United States, 1810, 7377
  - In Canada, 1810-1811
- The Products of Dairying
  - Butter, 1041-1044
    - A Compact Mass of Solidified Fat Globules, 1041
  - Ancient Methods of Churning, 1041
  - Modern Butter-Making
    - Separating, 1042, 1737-1738
    - Principle of the Cream Separator, 1737, 1289
  - Ripening, 1042
  - Churning and Working, 1042-1043
    - Types of Churns, 1422
  - Creamery, or Factory, Butter, 1736
  - Qualities of Butter, 1043
    - Artificial Coloring, 55, 1043
  - Composition, Food Value, and Purity. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Butter Adulteration, 1043
  - Butter Substitutes, 1043, 56
    - Oleomargarine, 5191, 1043, 56
    - Hydrogenated Oils, 56
    - Renovated Butter, 1043, 56
  - Butter Production, 1043
  - Buttermilk, 1050
  - Cheese, 1326-1327
    - Food Value. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Milk, 4481-4482
    - [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Cattle-Raising on the Range, 1257-1258
  - Character of the Range Country, 1257-1258
  - Relation of the Range to the Farm, 1258
  - The Development of the Industry in South America, 1258
- Slaughtering and Meat Packing. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Beef and Other Cattle Products. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Sheep and Goats
  - Sheep, 6546-6550
    - Antiquity of Sheep, 6546
    - Characteristics of Wild Sheep, 6546
      - Wild Sheep of To-Day
        - Argali, 6546
        - Aoudad, 6547
        - Barbary, 6546
        - Bharal, 6546
        - Bighorn, 735-736
        - Marco Polo, 6546-6547
  - Mouflon, 6547
  - Domesticated Sheep, 6547-6550
    - Modern Breeding for Mutton and Lamb, 6547
    - Classes of Sheep according to Fleece
      - Long-Wooled, Medium-Wooled, Fine-Wooled, 6547
    - Terminology as to Wool
      - Lamb's Wool, First Shearing, 7843
      - Pulled Wool, Removed from Pelts of Slaughtered Sheep, 7843
      - Yolk, or Suint, Greasy Secretion on Healthy Wool, 7843
    - Points in Judging Marketable Wool
      - Condition: Quantity of Dirt and Grease, 7843
      - Shrinkage, 7843
      - Quality: Fineness of Fiber, 7843
      - Strength and Length of Fiber, 7843
      - Color of Fiber, 7843
    - Systems of Grading Wool
      - Rough Classification into Carding, Combing, and Blanket Wools, 7843
      - System of the Department of Agriculture, 7843
    - Periods and Methods of Shearing, 7844, 6549
    - Manufacture of Wool. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
    - Mutton. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
    - Fine-Wooled Breeds
      - Spanish Merino, Basis of All Fine-Wooled Sheep, 6547-6548, 7843
      - Delaine Type, 6548
    - Rambouillet, 6548
      - A Ram, 6547
    - Long-Wooled Breeds, of English Origin, 6548
      - Lincoln, Leicester, Cotswolds, 6548
    - Mutton Breeds, of English Origin
      - Shropshire, Southdown, Hampshire Down, Dorset Horn, 6548, 6550
      - Prize-Winners, 6547
- Goats, 2848
  - Usefulness in Furnishing Milk, Flesh, and Hide, 2848
  - How Goats Differ from Sheep, 2848
  - Terms Used for Goats
    - Billy Goat and Nanny Goat, 2848
    - Buck, Doe, and Kid, 2848
  - Importance of Goat's Milk, 2848
  - Importance of Goat Leather, 2848
    - Morocco, 4660
    - [See *Leather*, in the Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Hair-Producing Breeds
  - Angora, 2848, 2849
  - Mohair, 4567
  - Cashmere, 1228, 2848
- Milk-Producing Breeds
  - New Mexican, Nubian, Saanen, Toggenburg, 2848

Wild Goats  
 Ibex, 3324  
 Rocky Mountain White Goat, 6157-6158,  
 2849

**Other Animals Valuable for Wool or Hair**

Alpaca, 233  
 Camel, 1104  
 Guanaco, 2972  
 Llama, 4064-4065  
 Vicuña, 7523-7524  
 Yak, 7923-7924

**Hogs, or Swine**

**Origin, Characteristics, and Uses, 3191-3192**  
 Domesticated Hog a Descendant of the Wild  
 Boar, 3191, 807-808  
 Terms Applied to Hogs  
 Boar and Sow, 3191  
 Pigs and Shoats, or Shotes, 3191  
 The Flesh of Hogs, 3191  
 Bacon, Ham, Pork, Sausage. [See Outline  
 on *Home Economics*, elsewhere in this  
 GUIDE.]  
 Other Products and By-Products, 3192  
 [See *Meat and Meat Packing*, in the Out-  
 line on *Industry*, elsewhere in this  
 GUIDE.]

**Important Breeds**

Berkshire, 3102  
 Cheshire, 3102  
 Chester White, 3192  
 Durco-Jersey, 3192  
 Hampshire, 3192  
 Poland China, 3192  
 Spotted Poland China, 3192  
 Tamworth, 3192  
 Yorkshire, 3192

**Poultry and Poultry Products**

**Meaning of the Term Poultry**

Broad Sense: All of the Domesticated Birds,  
 5787

Limited Sense: Barnyard Fowl, 5787

**Origin and Domestication of the Fowl, 2553**

**Chicken-Raising as a Business, 5787**

Advantages and a Word of Caution, 5787

**Classification of Chickens, 5787-5788**

Classes, Breeds, Varieties, 5788

American Breeds: Plymouth Rock, Wy-  
 andotte, Java, Dominique, Rhode Is-  
 land Red, Buckeye, 5788

Asiatic Breeds: Brahma, Cochin, Lang-  
 shan, 5788

Mediterranean Breeds: Leghorn, Minorca,  
 5788

English Breeds: Dorking, Redcap, Orping-  
 ton, 5788

**Classification as to Utility**

Egg, Meat, and General-Purpose Breeds,  
 5788

Aristocrats of the Poultry World, 5789

**Parts of a Fowl, 5788**

**Care of Poultry, 5789-5790**

**The Range**

Importance of Drainage and Roominess,  
 5789

**The House**

Importance of Convenience, Cleanliness,  
 and Vermin-Proof Construction, 5789

**Feeding**

Importance of Adapting Rations to Dif-  
 ferent Types, 5790

An Egg-Layer's Balanced Ration, 5790

**Breeding and Hatching, 5790**

Importance of Breeding in Eliminating  
 Weaklings, 5790

Points of Difference between a Good and a  
 Weak Fowl, 5790

Artificial Hatching, 5790, 3375-3376

Arrangement of the Incubator, 3375

Regulation of Heat and Ventilation, 3376

**Poultry Products**

Eggs, 2136-2138. [See Outline on *Home  
 Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

Meat, 5790. [See Outline on *Home Econom-  
 ics*, in this GUIDE.]

Feathers, 2386

**Other Domesticated Birds**

**Ducks, 2048**

Common in America: Peking, Aylesbury,  
 Rouen, Muscovy, Cayuga, 2048

**Geese, 2872**

Raised for Their Flesh, Feathers, Quills,  
 and Eggs, 2872

Pâté de Foie Gras, 2872

Toulouse, Emden, and African, Important  
 Breeds, 2872

**Guinea Fowl, 2081**

Raised for Flesh and Eggs, 2081

**Peacocks, 5429**

**Turkeys, 7317**

Domesticated Turkey Descended from Wild  
 Turkey, 7317

Bronze Turkey Most Important Variety,  
 7317

Care of Turkeys, 7317

**Bees and Bee-Keeping**

**Life of the Honeybee, 673-678**

[See Outline on *Zoology*, in this GUIDE.]

**Commercial Bee-Keeping**

Honey Produced Chiefly in Apiaries, 678

**The Modern Hive**

Lower Section of Brood and Storage Cells,  
 678

Upper Story, or Super, for Comb Honey,  
 678

**Bee Enemies**

Mice, 678

The European and American Foul Brood,  
 679

Honey Production, 3217

Beeswax, 685

## Farm Equipment and Supplies

### Modern Use of Improved Implements, 94

#### Field Implements

Mowing Machine, 4729

Plow, 5659-5662

Evolution of the Plow, 5659, 93

Plows, Old and New, 5660

Types of Plows

Walking Plow, 5660

Sod, Stubble, General-Purpose, and

Breaker Moldboards, 5660

Riding, or Sulky, Plows, 5662

Gang Plows, 5662, 5661

Disk Plow, 5662

Rotary Plow, 5661

Reaping Machine, 6014-6018

Predecessors of the Modern Reaper

The Hand Scythe, or Sickle, 6014, 6015

The Cradle, 6015

The Earlier Reapers, 6015, 6014, 6017

The First McCormick Reaper, 98

The Modern Harvester, 6015-6016

From Self-Reaper to Self-Binder, 6015

The Header, 6016

Combined Harvester Thrasher, or Com-  
bine, 6016, 6018, 6019, 99

Thrashing (or Threshing) Machine, 7159-  
7160

The Flail, Its Predecessor, 2461-2462

Operation of the Winnowing Machinery,  
7159-7160

The Self-Feeding Mechanism, 7160

#### Power Devices

Gas Engine, 2700-2702

Storage Battery, 6849-6850

Traction Engine, or Tractor, 7233

Windmill, 7791-7792, 7680

[See Outline on *Inventions and Applied Me-  
chanics*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Miscellaneous Equipment

Acetylene, 19

Automobile, 534

Binder Twine, 740

Burlap, 1028

Calcimine, 1072

Candle, 1166

Concrete, 1597

Creosote, 1741

Dynamite, 2064

Flashlight, 2465

Fuel, 2631

Gas, 2698-2700

Kerosene, 3768

Lamp, 3848

Leather, 3908

Lightning Rod, 4003

Oils, 5179

Paint, 5298

Paraffin, 5357

Roofing Materials, 6561

Rope, 6199

Silo, 6611-6612

Soap, 6667

Tar, 7019

Turpentine, 7321

Varnish, 7464

Wax, 7684

## Agricultural Economics and Law

### Banking and Credit

Banks and Banking, 604-613

[See Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]

Rural Credits, 6251-6252

Federal Farm Loan Act, Providing for a  
National System of Rural Credits, 6251

Federal Farm Loan Board, 6251-6252

Federal Land Banks, 6252

Federal Land Bank Districts, 6251

National Farm Loan Associations, 6252

Amendment of 1923

Federal Intermediate Credit Banks  
Chartered, 6252

[See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

### Farm Records and Accounts

Farm Bookkeeping, 848

Farm Accounting, 18

### Agricultural Cooperation, 1662-1664

Origin of the Movement, 1662

Cooperation in the United States

Preliminary Efforts Following the War of  
Secession, 1662

The Problem of Waste, as Summarized  
by Herbert Hoover, 1662

What Cooperative Marketing Does for  
the Farmer, 1662

### Organization of the Movement

Local Coöperatives, 1662-1663

Federations of Locals, 1663

Centralized Regional Associations, 1662

### Representative Organizations

Bee-Keepers' Coöperatives, 3217

Cotton Growers' Associations, 1663,  
1714

Coöperative Creameries, 1736

Dairymen's Associations, 1663

Grain Coöperatives, 7734

Grain Elevators, 1663, 2888

Tobacco Growers' Associations, 1663

California Associations: Fruit, Nuts,  
Poultry, etc., 1663, 1088

### Special Legislation

Copper-Volstead Act, 1663

The 1926 Legislation, 1663-1664

Agricultural Marketing Act, 4294

Establishment of a Farm Board,  
Headed by Alexander Legge, 4294

Coöperation in Canada, 1664

Organization of Wheat Pools, 1664, 1125-  
1126

Other Coöperatives, 1664

Coöperation in Denmark, 1664, 1893

**Price Variations**

- Prices Determined by Supply and Demand, 6939
- Grain Prices and Boards of Trade, 7734, 808-809
  - How the Chicago Board of Trade Operates, 809
- Efforts of the Farm Board to Stabilize Prices, 7734, 4294
- The Tariff and Agricultural Prices, 7023-7024
- Additional Laws Affecting the Farmer**
  - Good-Roads Legislation, 6144-6145
  - Homestead Laws, 3213-3214
  - Disposal of Public Lands, 3853

- Meat-Inspection Laws, 4365, 4368
- Pure-Food Laws, 5884, 54-56
- Quarantine of Plants and Animals, 5904
- Political Action in Behalf of Agriculture**
  - In the United States, 5740
    - Leaders of the Populist Party, 5740
    - Thomas E. Watson, 7680-7681
  - Organizations of Farmers
    - Grange, or Patrons of Husbandry, 2897-2898
    - Farmers' Alliance, 5740
    - Non-Partisan League, 5072
  - In Canada
    - Rise of the Farmers' Party in the Dominion, 5706

**Agricultural Education and Extension**

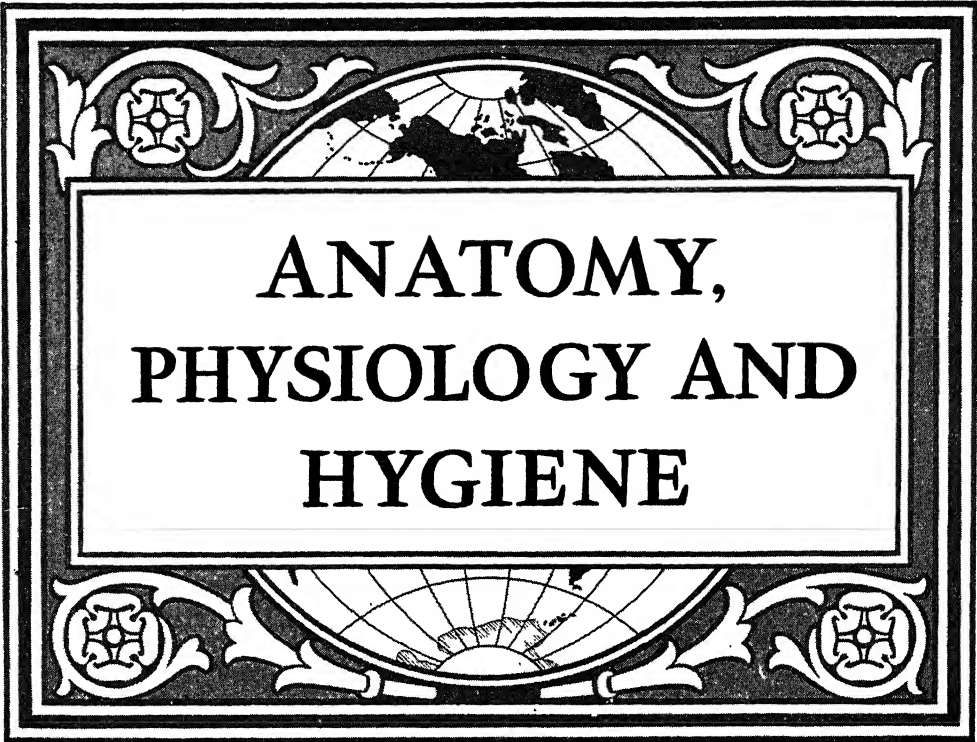
- Agricultural Education in America, 88-90**
  - Agricultural Colleges
    - The First Agricultural Courses, 88-89
    - Michigan State College, First of Its Kind in America, 89, 4459
  - Land-Grant Colleges, 89
    - Passage of the Morrill Acts, 89, 3853
    - Nelson Amendment, 89
  - Secondary Schools
    - Relatively Slow Development, 89
    - Federal Aid under the Smith-Hughes Act, 89-90, 6420
  - Elementary Schools, 90
  - Farmers' Institutes, 2371
- Agricultural Experiment Stations**
  - Origin of the Movement, 90
  - Federal Aid under the Hatch Act, 90
  - Additional Aid under the Adams and Purnell Acts, 90
  - Number and Kinds of Stations, 90
  - Lines of Investigation, 90-91
  - The Directing Office, 105
- Agricultural Extension Work**
  - Its Object, 91

- The Directing Office at Washington, 91, 105
- An Outgrowth of the Experiment Station Movement, 91
- How the Work Expanded, 91
- Development under the Smith-Lever Act, 91
- Agencies and Activities**
  - County Agent, 1721
  - A County Agent Instructing Boys, 1689
  - Boys' and Girls' Clubs, 903-908
    - Merged into One National Organization, 904
  - The 4-H Clubs, 904-908
    - Their Activities, 906, 907, 905
    - Canning Clubs, 1172-1173
    - Corn Clubs, 1688-1689, 1691
    - Supervision, 906, 908
- Agricultural Education in Canada, 90**
  - Agricultural Experiment Stations, List of, 91
    - Central Experimental Farm, 1126
    - Branch Stations, 1126-1127

**The Government and the Farmer**

- United States Department of Agriculture, 104-106**
  - First Official Recognition of the Country's Agricultural Interests, 104
  - Establishment of a Bureau in the Department of the Interior, 104
  - Bureau Raised to Rank of a Department, 104-105
  - Present Organization**
    - Weather Bureau, 105, 7687
      - Forecasting Service, 7687-7690
    - Bureau of Agricultural Economics, 105
    - Bureau of Animal Industry, 105
    - Bureau of Plant Industry, 105
    - Forest Service, 105, 2540
    - Bureau of Chemistry and Soils, 105
    - Bureau of Entomology, 105
    - Bureau of Biological Survey, 105

- Bureau of Public Roads, 105, 6145
- Bureau of Home Economics, 105
- Bureau of Dairy Industry, 105
- Office of Experiment Stations, 105
  - [See *Agricultural Experiment Stations*, above.]
- Office of Coöperative Extension Work, 105.
  - [See above.]
- Library, 105
- Plant Quarantine and Control, 105
- Food, Drug, and Insecticide Division, 105
- Grain Futures Administration, 105
- Organization of the Personnel, 105-106
- Canadian Department of Agriculture**
  - Branches and Activities, 1126-1127
- International Interest in the Farmer**
  - International Institute of Agriculture, Rome, 3485



# ANATOMY, PHYSIOLOGY AND HYGIENE

## The Study of the Human Body

Anatomy, the Study of Its Structure, 273  
Physiology, the Study of Its Functions, 5598

Hygiene, the Study of Its Health, 3312  
Life Extension, 3980-3992

## Structure of the Body

Cell, the Unit of Structure, 1268

Protoplasm, 5852

Cell Groups, or Tissues, 7183

Connective Tissue

Adipose Tissue (Fat), 2376

Bone

Composition, 835

Calcium, 1072

Gelatin, 2710

Structure

Compact and Cancellous Tissue,

Marrow, Medullary Cavity, Haversian Canals, 835-836

[See *Skeleton*, below.]

Cartilage, or Gristle, 1221

Dentine, 7054

Ligament, 3992

Sarcolemma, 4749

Tendons, or Sinews, 7093

Tendon of Achilles, 21

Epithelial Tissue

Cilia, 1425, 7231

Glands, 2830

[See *Work of the Glands*, below.]

Hair: Cuticle, Epidermis, Follicles, Pigment, 3006-3007

Nails: Lunula, Matrix, 4802

Skin: Epidermis, Dermis, Papillae, 6632, 6634

Scalp, 6408

[See *Elimination of Waste Products*, below.]

Muscular Tissue

Voluntary (Striated) Muscles, 4749

Arm Muscles: Deltoid, Extensors, Flexors, Pectoral, Pronators, Supinators, 405

Biceps, 733

Triceps, 4749

Diaphragm, 1934

Foot Muscles, 2520

Hand Muscles, 3033

Tongue, 7208

Diagram, *Muscular System*, 4750

Involuntary (Unstriated) Muscles, 4749, 4751

Peristaltic Action, 6844

Why Hair Stands on End, 3007

Heart Muscle, 3108

[See *The Process of Circulation*, below.]

Nervous Tissue, 4881

[See *How the Body Is Governed*, below.]

- Vascular Tissue  
 Blood: Corpuscles, Plasma, Hemoglobin, 797  
 Fibrin and Clotting, 797, 2405  
 Lymph, 4163  
 Tonsil, 7210
- Membranes of the Body**  
 Fibrous Membranes, 4385-4386  
 Dura Mater of the Brain, 919  
 Periosteum of Bone, 836  
 Sclera of the Eye, 2350  
 Mucous Membranes, 4385  
 Alimentary Canal, Lining of, 222  
 Conjunctiva of the Eye, 2349-2350, 3834  
 Mouth, Lining of, 4703  
 Nose, Lining of, 5090  
 Secretions  
 Mucus, 4732  
 Saliva, 6333  
 Serous Membranes, 4385  
 Arachnoid of the Brain, 919  
 Pericardium, Lining of, 5487  
 Peritoneum, 5489  
 Pleura, 5658  
 Synovial Membrane and Fluid, 4385, 3693
- Skeleton, the Body Framework**  
 Bones, Number and Classes, 835  
 Axial Skeleton, 6631  
 Bones of the Head  
 Face: Hard Palate, Lacrimals, Molars, Mandible, Maxillae, Nasal Bones,

- Turbinates, Vomer, Zygomatic Arch, 2358, 3103, 5309  
 Skull: Ethmoid, Frontal, Occipital, Parietal, Sphenoid, 3103, 919  
 Ossicles of the Middle Ear: Incus, Malleus, Stapes, 2075, 2077  
 Bones of the Neck  
 Cervical Vertebrae, 6631  
 Hyoid Bone, 7209  
 Bones of the Trunk  
 Coccyx, Sacrum, Sternum, Dorsal and Lumbar Vertebrae, 6631  
 Pelvis, 5449  
 Ribs, 6106  
 Appendicular Skeleton, 6631  
 Shoulder: Clavicle and Scapula, 6631  
 Arm: Humerus, Radius, Ulna, 405  
 Wrist (Carpals): Cuneiform, Os Magnum, Pisiform, Scaphoid, Semilunar, Trapezium, Unciform, 3033  
 Hand: Metacarpals and Phalanges, 3033  
 Leg: Femur, Fibula, Patella, Tibia, 6631  
 Foot and Ankle: Astragalus, Metatarsals, Phalanges, Tarsals, 2520  
 Joints of the Skeleton  
 Immovable, 3692  
 Movable: Ball-and-Socket, Hinge, Pivot, 3693  
 Protection of Joints, 3693  
 Synovial Fluid: What It Is; Its Functions, 4385, 6477

## Functions of the Body

- Digestion and Absorption of Food**  
 Principles of Nutrition. [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Constituents of Food, 2510  
 Proteins, 5851, 742, 2509, 5124  
 Amino Acids (Digestive Products) 5851  
 Nitrogen, a Unique Constituent, 5034  
 Types of Protein  
 Albumen, 192  
 Casein, 1228  
 Gelatin, 2710  
 Gluten, 2845  
 Carbohydrates, 1190-1191, 742, 2510  
 Cellulose, 1269  
 Starch, 6809  
 Dextrin, 1927  
 Glycogen, 4059  
 Sugars  
 Cane or Beet Sugar (Sucrose), 6906  
 Fruit Sugar (Fructose, Levulose), Malt Sugar (Maltose), Milk Sugar (Lactose), 742  
 Grape Sugar (Glucose, Dextrose), 2845  
 Fats, Compounds of Glycerine and Fatty Acids, 2376-2378, 2511  
 Fatty Acids, 742  
 Glycerine, 2846  
 Olein and Palmitin (Glycerides), 3879  
 Stearin, 6821

- Types of Fat  
 Butterfat, 1041  
 Fixed Oils, 5179  
 Lard, 3875  
 Inorganic, or Mineral, Substances, 2511, 5124  
 Ash, 439  
 Vitamins, 7549-7550  
 Human Growth, 3282-3284  
 Water, 2511  
 Food as Fuel, 2511, 5122-5123  
 Calorie, 1100  
 See, also, Composition Charts accompanying the various foods  
 Digestibility of Food, 2511, 2513  
 Appetite, 322  
 [See *The Diet and Health*, below.]  
 The Digestive Tract  
 Abdomen, 7  
 Alimentary Canal, 221-222  
 Mouth Digestion, 1946, 4702-4703  
 Soft Palate (between Mouth and Pharynx), 5309  
 Pharynx (Connecting Mouth and Oesophagus), 5532-5533  
 Function of the Epiglottis and Uvula, 5533  
 Teeth: Bicuspid, Canines, Incisors, Molars, 7053-7054



- Mastication, 4338  
 Fletcherizing, 2469  
 Tongue  
   Work in Chewing and Swallowing, 7208  
   Papillae and Taste Buds, 7209  
 Work of the Salivary Glands: Parotid,  
   Submaxillary, Sublingual, 6333  
   Ptyalin of Saliva, and Its Effects on  
   Carbohydrates, 4338, 6333  
 Stomach Digestion, 1946  
   Peristaltic Action, 6844  
   Secretion of Gastric Juice, 6844  
   Work of Enzymes (Ferments) on Pro-  
   teins, 2396, 6844-6845  
   Pepsin and the Creation of Peptones,  
   5480  
   Rennin and Its Effect on Milk, 1946  
   Work of Hydrochloric Acid, 6844  
   Chyme (Product of Digestion), 1422  
   Discharge of Food through the Pylorus,  
   6844  
 Intestinal Digestion, 1946, 3491  
   Divisions of Small Intestine: Duodenum,  
   Jejunum, Ileum, 222, 1946  
   Digestive Fluids and Their Effects  
   Bile, 736, 1946  
   Intestinal Juice, 1946, 3491  
   Pancreatic Juice, 1946, 5339  
   Ferments: Amylopsin, Trypsin, Ste-  
   apsin, 5340  
   Chyle, Lymph (Products of Digestion),  
   1422, 4163  
 Accessory Organs of Digestion  
   Gall Bladder, 2666  
   Diagram, showing Cystic, Hepatic, and  
   Common Bile Ducts, 736  
   Liver, 4058-4059  
   Pancreas, 5339  
 Absorption and Assimilation, 12, 457  
   The Carrying System  
   Capillaries, 1183-1184  
   Lacteals, 3835  
   Villi, 3491, 7529  
   Lymphatics, 4163  
   Thoracic Duct, 7156  
   Portal Circulation of the Blood, 798  
   Work of the Liver, 4059  
 Metabolism, Conversion of Food into Tissue,  
   4413-4414  
   (Includes under this designation Anabolism  
   and Katabolism)  
 Elimination of Waste Products, 2207  
   Large Intestine: Appendix, Caecum, Colon  
   (Ascending, Transverse, Descending), Rec-  
   tum, 221, 3491  
   Excretion of Feces, 5124  
   Kidneys: Bladder, Renal Vessels, Ureters,  
   Urethra, 3772  
   Excretion of Urea and Urine, 4059, 7421  
 Lungs  
   Expelling of Carbon Dioxide, 939-940,  
   4155  
   [See *The Process of Respiration*, below.]
- Skin  
   Sweat Glands, 6634  
   Secretion of Perspiration, 5505  
**The Process of Circulation**  
   Blood, the Life-Giving Fluid, 796-798  
   Heart, the Central Organ of Circulation  
   Auricles, Ventricles, Valves, Venae Cavae,  
   Pulmonary Veins and Arteries, 3109-  
   3110  
   Circulation through the Body (Systemic),  
   798  
   Arteries, 423  
   Aorta, 316  
   Blood Pressure (Diastolic, Systolic), 801  
   Pulse, 5879  
   Capillaries, 1183  
   Veins, 7473  
   Jugular Vein, 3707  
   For location and names of veins and ar-  
   teries, see color plate, opposite page 798  
   Circulation through the Lungs, 798, 4155  
   (diagram)  
**The Process of Respiration**, 939-940  
   Air and Its Gases, 108-110  
   How Oxygen Supports Life, 5281  
   Ozone, 5287  
   Lungs, Chief Organs of Respiration  
   Air Sacs, Bronchial Tubes, Capillaries,  
   Lobules, Lobes, 4155  
   Pleura, 5658  
 Accessory Parts  
   Larynx, 3882  
   Nose: Nasal Passages, Nostrils, Septum,  
   5090  
   Pharynx, 5532  
   Sinus, 6624  
   Trachea, 7231  
 The Act of Breathing  
   Inspiration and Expiration, 939, 4155  
   Chest and Ribs, 1348  
   Diaphragm, 1934  
   Lung Capacity, 939  
   Interchange of Oxygen and Carbon Di-  
   oxide, 939-940, 1193  
 Voice Development and Breathing, 7559,  
   6619  
   Larynx: Cricoid and Thyroid Cartilages,  
   Glottis, Vocal Cords, 3882  
   Adam's Apple, 35  
**Work of the Glands**, 2830  
 Secretions, 6477  
 Glands of External Secretion  
   Gastric Glands of the Stomach, 6844  
   Intestinal Glands, 1946  
   Kidneys, 3772  
   Urine, 7421  
   Lachrymal Glands, 3834  
   Liver, 4058-4059  
   Bile, 736  
   Lymphatic Glands, 4163  
   Mammary Glands, 2830  
   Mucous Glands, 4385  
   Mucus, 4732

- Pancreas, 5339
- Pancreatic Juice, 1946
- Salivary Glands, 6333
- Saliva, 6333
- Sebaceous Glands, 6634
- Sweat Glands, 6634
- Perspiration, 5505
- Ductless (Endocrine) Glands
- Hormones and Their Effects, 2830
- Childhood, Behavior in, 1374-1375
- Anger in Childhood, 282
- Important Ductless Glands
- Adrenals, or Suprarenals, 2830
- Adrenalin, 51-52
- Gonads, 2830
- Pancreas, 2830, 5339
- Insulin, Secretion of the Islands of Langerhans, 3470, 5339
- Pituitary Gland, 2830
- Spleen, 6770
- Thyroid, 2830
- Diagram, *Aorta*, 315
- Effects of Thyroid Secretion, 2855
- Transplanting of Glands, 2830
- How the Body Is Governed
- Brain, the Central Exchange, 4883
- Cerebellum, Cerebrum, Medulla Oblongata, Pons, Gray and White Matter, 918-920
- Nerves, the Connecting Wires, 4881
- Spinal Cord, the Central Trunk Line, 4883, 6765
- Structure of Nerve Cells
- Neurone, Axon, Dendrite, 4881
- The Peripheral Nervous System
- Motor and Sensory, Cranial and Spinal Nerves, 4882
- Reflex Action, 6036
- Sneezing, 6662-6663
- The Sympathetic (Autonomic) System, 4883
- Solar Plexus (Abdominal Brain), 6679
- Vaso-Dilator Nerves
- Blushing, 807

- The Special Senses and Their End Organs, 6492-6493
- Ear, the Organ of Hearing
- The External Ear: Auricle, Auditory Meatus, Tympanic Membrane, 2075
- The Middle Ear: Eustachian Tubes, Incus, Malleus, Stapes, 2075-2076
- The Internal Ear: Endolymph, Perilymph, Cochlea, Organ of Corti, Semicircular Canals, Vestibule, 2076
- Diagram, 2077
- How We Hear, 2076, 2078
- Principles of Sound, 6692, 6694
- Where There's No Ear to Hear, 6695
- Why We Hear Sounds by Radio, 6695
- Eye, the Organ of Sight, or Vision
- Eyelids: Orbicularis Oculi, Conjunctiva, 2349
- Eyeball: Cornea, Choroid Coat, Ciliary Muscle, Iris, Lens, Optic Nerve, Pupil, Retina, Sclera, Vitreous Humor, 2350, 2351
- How We See, 2351
- Nature of Light, 3993-3994
- Optical Illusions, 2352, 5227
- Defects of the Eye, 2352
- Color Blindness, 1564
- The Sense of Smell, 6645-6646
- Olfactory-Nerve Fibers in the Nose, 5090-5091
- Olfactory Lobes of the Brain, 6645
- See diagram, 6646
- The Sense of Taste, 7029, 7031
- Taste Buds of the Tongue, 7209
- The Sense of Touch, 7224
- Nerves in the Dermis of the Skin, 6634
- Reflex Action, 6036
- General (Interior) Sensations, 6492
- Fatigue, 2379-2380
- Muscle Sense, 4751
- Thirst, 7149

## Hygiene, the Preservation of Health

- A Tribute to Health by John Gay, 3104
- Hygiene as Related to Life Extension
- The Story of Luigi Cornaro, 3980-3981
- Sanitary Science, 6374-6375
- Personal Hygiene and Health Habits, 3312, 3104
- Fresh Air and Ventilation, 3982, 3118-3119
- Effect of Bad Air on the Lungs, 4156
- Breathing in Relation to Health, 940, 3983
- Hygienic Clothing, 3982, 3313
- Dress Reform, 2035-2036
- Sensible Shoes, 2521
- Exercise and Recreation, 3105-3106, 3982
- Muscular Development, 4751
- Physical Education, 5587-5589
- Simple Home Exercises, 5590

- [See Outline on *Games and Recreations*, in this GUIDE.]
- Sleep Habits, 3105, 3983, 6641
- Health of the Brain, 920
- Sleep and Nervous Energy, 4883
- How to Overcome Insomnia, 3467
- How to Avoid Nightmare, 5027
- The Diet and Health, 3983-3984, 3104
- Value of a Balanced Diet, 1944, 2511
- Food Groups and Typical Bills of Fare, 5125
- Vegetarianism, 7471-7472
- How Much to Eat, 2511, 2513, 3983, 5123
- Obesity: Diets for Reducing and Increasing Weight, 5139
- Tables of Average Heights and Weights, 5140

Fasting and Health, 2376  
 What Foods Do for Us  
   Carbohydrates, Fuel Foods, 1191  
   Fat in the Diet, 2378  
   Proteins, the Building Stones, 5851,  
     5123, 3984  
   Mineral Substances, Body Regulators,  
     5124  
   Vitamins: A, B, C, D, E, 7549-7550  
     Harry Steenbock's Experiments, 3282-  
       3284  
     Ultra-Violet Rays and Vitamins, 7348  
   Vitamins as Preventives of Disease  
     Beriberi, 7549  
     Pellagra, 7549, 5448  
     Rickets, 7550, 6121  
     Scurvy, 7550, 6462-6463  
   Proper Mastication, 3984, 4338  
 Elimination of Waste, 2207  
   Regular Evacuation, 3984-3985  
     Overcoming Constipation, 3491  
   Care of the Skin and Its Glands, 6634-  
     6635  
     Baths and Bathing, 650  
     Effect of Uncleanliness on the Kidneys,  
       3772  
 Correct Posture, 3985-3988  
   Diagrams, *U. S. Posture Standards*, 3986,  
     3987  
 Fighting Poisons and Infections  
   Abstinence from Narcotics and Alcohol,  
     3988  
     Effects of Cocaine, 1516  
     The Fight Against Opium, 5226  
 Personal Cleanliness, 3989, 3313  
   Care of the Hair, 3007  
   Care of the Mouth, 3989, 4703, 7054  
     Hygiene of the Teeth, 7056, 1904  
     The Infected Tonsil, 7210  
   Care of the Nose, 5091

The Dangerous Adenoids, 45  
 Sanitation in the Home, 3989  
 See Suggestions of N. Y. Health Depart-  
   ment, 7341  
 Moderation and Serenity, 3990-3992, 3105  
 Care of the Heart, 3110  
**The Health of Children**  
   The Baby  
     Cleanliness, 555  
     Fresh Air and Sleep, 556  
     Feeding: Natural and Artificial, 556-557  
     Other Suggestions, 558  
     Baby Clinics, 558  
   The Growing Child  
     Fatigue and Nervousness, 2380-2381,  
       1373-1374  
     Fear, 2383-2385  
     Value of Games and Play, 2674-2679  
   The Adolescent, 50  
 [See Outline on *Hygiene of Education*, in this  
   GUIDE.]  
**Public Hygiene**, 3313-3314  
   Board of Health, 808  
   Pure Food and Water  
     The Federal Food and Drugs Act,  
       5884  
     Adulteration of Foods, 54  
     Condiments, Preservatives, Coloring, 55  
     Milk, 55-56  
     Butter, Oleomargarine, Oils, 56, 1043,  
       5191  
     Meats, 56  
     Fruit Preserves, Extracts, Spices, 56  
     Candy, 56, 1167  
   Purification of Water, 7676-7679  
     Chlorine, 1406  
     Filter, 2419  
 Prevention of Disease and Epidemics. [See  
   Outline on *Medicine and Drugs and Sur-  
   gery*, in this GUIDE.]



# ANTHROPOLOGY, MANNERS AND CUSTOMS

## Meaning and Scope of Anthropology

Definition, 308

### Its Scope

Ethnography, the Study of Tribes, Races, and Nations, 2307

Ethnology, the Study of Customs, Laws, and Habits, 2308

Relation Similar to That between Geology and Geography, 2308

Archaeology. [See Outline on *Archaeology*, in this GUIDE.]

Biology. [See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE.]

## Cultural Development of Man

### Man in the Scale of Nature

A Primate, Most Highly Organized Animal, 4245, 5811

### Man's Origin

#### Two Theories

Evolution, 2337-2341, 4245-4246, 5931

Darwin, Formulator of Theory, 1830-1831, 4245, 4246

Special Act of Creation, 24, 4246, 5931

### Development of Man

Antiquity of Man, 5931

Proof of Existence during Glacial Epoch, 2819, 4245

Spread of Human Race, 3282

#### Stone Age

Neanderthal Man, 4854, 6845

Crô-Magnon, 6845

Civilization, in Process 100,000 Years, 1444

Climate an Important Factor, 1482

Lower Savagery, 1444-1445

Discovery of Fire, 1444-1445, 2426

Middle Savagery, 1445, 6845

Higher Savagery, 1445-1446

Lower Barbarism, 1446

Invention of Pottery, 1446, 5787

Middle Barbarism, 1446

Invention of Adobe, 49-50, 1446

Use of Animals for Burdens, 1446

Higher Barbarism, 1446-1447

Iron Age, 1446, 3534, 3535

Lower Civilization, 4000 B.C. to Fifteenth Century, 1448

Invention of Alphabet, 234, 1448, 5569, 6488

Progress in Arts and Sciences, 1448

Middle Civilization, Fifteenth Century to Close of Eighteenth, 1448-1449

Formulation of Copernican Theory, 1448, 1666

Invention of Printing, 1448, 5817

Invention of Steam Engine, 1449, 7681-7682

Higher Civilization

Triumph of Mind Over Matter, 1449

## Classification of Mankind

**Ancient Classification** · Hamitic, Semitic, Japhetic, 5931

**Deniker's Classification**, 5931

**Population According to Race**, 5931

**Classification by Color and Physical Features**, 5931

### Caucasian, or White, Race

#### Hamitic

Berbers, 711

Nomadic Form of Life, 617, 5039

Divisions

Tuaregs, 711, 6300

Kabyles and Shilluhs, 711

Riffians, 6124

Egyptians

Fellahs, Native Peasants, 2142

Copts, Christian Descendants of Ancient Egyptians, 1670, 2142

Ethiopians (Abyssinians), Hamitic and Semitic Intermixture, 2306

#### Semitic, 6488

Arabs, Highly Endowed People, 341-342, 6488

Nomads, 342, 5039-5040

Divisions

Amalekites, 240

Bedouins, 342, 671, 2142

Druses, 2041

Mohammedans in India, 3378

Moors, 4645

Syrians, 6087

Assyrians, 460-461, 408, 446, 6488

Energetic and Warlike, 460

Babylonians, 561

Hammurabi, 3029

Carthaginians, 6488, 1219-1220

Hannibal, 3037

Chaldeans, 1296, 6488

Hebrews, or Israelites, 6488

Phoenicians, 5569, 6488

Indo-European, or Aryan, 438

Development from Stone Age

Beginnings, in Asia Minor, 7302

Asiatic Groups

Afghans, 70

Armenians, 407-408

Traditional Descendants of Haig, Great-Grandson of Noah, 408

Baluchis, 591

Hindus, 707, 1292, 3378

Gypsies, or Romani, 2993

Newars (of Nepal), 4877

Hittites, Descendants of Heth, 3187

Medes, Inhabitants of Ancient Media, 408, 4372

Persians, 5495-5496

Persian Admixtures

Kurds, 3819

Leks and Lurs, 5495

Phrygians, 5586-5587

#### Graeco-Latin

Albanians, 180, 580

Cretans, 1742

Greeks (Ancient), Earliest Civilized Inhabitants of Europe, 2317, 2944

Achaean, 20, 2939

Aeolians, 68, 2939

Dorians, 2013, 2939

Spartans, 2939, 6743

Ionians, 2939, 3503

Athenians, 480, 2939-2940, 3503

Boeotians, Typical Dullards, 812, 2939

Greeks (Modern), 2942

French, Combination of

Celtic and Teutonic, 2568

Italians, 3573

Love of Beauty Predominant, 3573

Portuguese, 5757

Rumanians, 6241

Spaniards, 6726

Iberian Ancestry, 6726, 3324

Spanish Admixtures

Cubans, 1768

Mexicans, 4434

Creoles, Descendants of Portuguese, Spanish and French, 1741

Thracians, 7159

#### Celtic People

Regarded as the First Aryan Settlers in Europe, 1270

Early Settlements, 236, 654, 972

Gaelic, or Gadhelic Group, 1270, 2658

Scotch Highlanders, 6437

Irish, 3518

Manx, 4246

Cymric Group, 1270

Bretons, 972

Welsh, 7579-7580

#### Ancient Celts

Tribes of Gaul, 2705-2706

Belgae, 2705, 693, 4892

Boii, in Bohemia and Moravia, 813, 4648

Britons, Celts of England, 2253-2254

Inhabited the Orkney Islands, 5260

Galatians, Descendants of the Gauls, 2661, 7302

Helvetii, Early Inhabitants of Switzerland, 3136, 6977

Walloons, of Celtic Descent and French Speech, 693, 7585

Teutonic Peoples, 7117

#### Germanic Group

Germans (Deutsche), 2769

German-Speaking Swiss, 6968, 6970

English, 2243, 2244

Flemings, of Belgium, 693

Nederlanders (Called Dutch), 4884, 4885

Boers, 813

Scandinavians, 6409

Danes, 1892

Icelanders, 3331

- Norwegians, 2317, 3331, 5081  
 Historic Tribes and Peoples  
   Alemanni, 2782  
   Anglo-Saxons, 287-288  
     Angles, 285  
     Saxons, 6405  
     Jutes, 3725  
   Burgundians, 1027  
   Cimbri, 1425  
   Franks, 2597, 2782  
     Salians and Ripuarians, 2597-2598  
     Charlemagne, 1312  
   Frisii, 4892  
   Goths, 2782, 2878-2879  
     Alans, 6734  
     Ostrogoths, 2879, 6502  
     Suevi, 6734  
     Visigoths, 2879, 6734  
   Lombards, 4091  
   Northmen, Norsemen, or Vikings, 5073-5075  
     Normans of France, 5042-5043  
     Vandals, 7458, 2782  
     Genseric, 2719  
 Lettic, Nationality of the Letts, 3947-3948  
 Lithuanians, 4056  
 Slavic Peoples (Slavonians), 6640-6641  
   South Slavs  
     Founded Yugoslavia, 7958-7965  
     Croats, 580, 7960  
     Montenegriens, 4622, 7961  
     Serbs, 6502  
     Slovenes, 7958  
   West Slavs  
     Czechs, 1800  
     Slovaks, 1801, 6644-6645  
     Czechoslovakia Founded, 1800-1801  
     Poles, 5685  
   East Slavs, or Russians, 6258

#### The Mongolian, or Yellow, Race

#### Asiatic

- Anamites, of French Indo-China, 2610  
 Burmese, 1030-1031  
 Chinese, 1391-1392  
 Japanese, 3622  
 Kalmucks, a Western Branch of the Mongolian Race, 3732  
   Nomads of Mongolia, 4592  
 Koreans, 1409  
 Manchus  
   Original Inhabitants of Manchuria, 4248  
   Entered China in 1644 and Merged with Chinese, 1394  
 Mongols, a Branch of the Tartar Race, 4594  
   Genghis Khan, 2716  
   Kublai Khan, 3818  
 Siamese, 6581  
 Tibetans, 7168  
 Tartars, or Tatars, 7026  
 Turks, 7319  
   The People of New Turkey, 7304-7305

#### Other Turkish Peoples

- Kirghiz, 3797  
   In Turkestan, 7301  
 Siberian Tatars, 7319  
 Turkomans, 7318  
 Turko-Tatars, 6258

#### European

- Bulgarians, 1013, 2317  
   Of Turanian Stock, 5403  
 Estonians, 2300  
   A Finnish People, 2302  
 Finns, 2421, 2317  
 Lapps, 3876-3877  
 Magyars (Hungarians), 4221  
   Magyars in Other Countries, 4221, 3289  
   Related to Finns, 3292  
 Extinct Mongolian Peoples  
   Huns, Turanian Stock, 5403  
   Atilla, 497, 3293  
   Parthians, Turanian Stock, 5403

#### The Malayan and Polynesian Races

#### Malays, 4239

- Physical and Moral Characteristics, 4239  
 Geographical Distribution  
   Malay Peninsula, 4237-4239  
     Federated Malay States, 2390  
     Straits Settlements, 6873  
   Dutch East Indies, 2090  
     Borneo, 868  
       Dyaks (Origin Doubtful), 2062-2063  
     Celebes, 1266  
     Java, 3641  
     Sumatra, 6919  
   Formosa, 2543  
   Madagascar: Hovas, 4196  
 Philippine Islands  
   Filipinos, 5550  
   Igorrotes, 3348, 5549-5550  
   Ilongots, 5549  
   Moros, 5550, 5556

#### Polynesians

- Hawaiians  
   Natives Called Kanakas, 3077, 3732  
 Maoris, 4274  
   Maori Population of New Zealand, 4999  
 Marquesans  
   Superior Physically and Christianized, 5290  
 Samoans  
   Superior Physically, Socialized Christians, 6356  
 Tahitians  
   Found on the Society Islands, 5292-5293  
 Tongans (Friendly Islands), 5293

#### The Negroid Race

#### Terminology

- Distinction between Negroid and Negro, 4871  
   Distinction between African and Negro, 77  
 Typical Negro Characters, 4871  
 Negroes Proper, 78, 4871

Americo-Liberians, Descendants of American  
Slaves, 3963

**Bantus**, 614, 78

Bagandas of Uganda, 7345

Kaffirs, in Zululand, 3729

Zulus, Best-Known Tribe, 614, 7990

Zulu-Kaffir Admixtures

Hereros, Non-Agricultural, 614

Found in Southwest Africa, 6723

**Pygmies (Dwarfs)**

Stature below Normal, 2062, 5891

Negrillos, African Group, 5891

Shortest Human Beings on Earth, 5891

Negritos, Asiatic Group, 5891, 4871

Negritos in the Philippines, 5549

In the Malay Peninsula, 4239

Bushmen, 78, 1038-1039

**Hausas**

Most Advanced People of Nigeria, 5024

**Hottentots**, 3258-3259

In Southwest Africa, 6723

In Union of South Africa, 7354

**Mandingos**, 4253

**Tibbus**

Mixed Negro Stock in the Sahara, 6301

**Asiatic Negroid Peoples**

Dravidians, Aborigines of India, 445, 3378

Papuans

In the Malay Archipelago, 4237

In New Guinea, 4917

Negrillos. [See under *Pygmies*, above.]

**The Red Race, American Indians**

**Characteristics**

Most Picturesque of Primitive Races, 3401

**Origin**, 3402

**Numbers**, 3402

**Habitat of Early Indians**

Dwellers in Woods, on Plains, in Villages,  
3403

[See, also, *Manners and Customs*, below.]

**North American Indians**

Linguistic Families or Confederacies

Algonquian, Largest Family of Tribes,  
3409, 3827

Powhatan, Father of Pocahontas, 5793

Pocahontas, 5677, 5678, 5793, 5992, 6164

Uncas, 7350

Algonquian Tribes

Abnaki, 3409

Arapaho, 3409, 3413

Blackfoot, 3414

Chippewa, 3409, 3424

Cheyenne, 3409

Cree, 3409, 3416

Delaware, 3409, 3418

Fox, 3409, 3418

Illinois, 3409, 3419

Kickapoo, 3409, 3420

Menominee, 3409, 3420

Miami, 3409

Micmac, 3409

Mohican or Mahican, 3422

Narraganset, 3409, 3422

Ojibwa, 3424

Ottawa, 3409, 3424

Pontiac, Great Chief, 3409, 5726-5727

Passamaquoddy, 3409

Pequot, 3409, 3425

Potawatomi, 3409, 3425

Sac, or Sauk, 3409, 3426

Blackhawk, Great Chief, 781, 3409

Shawnee, 3409, 3426

Tecumseh, Great Chief, 3409, 7053

Wampanoag, 3428

Massasoit, Chief, Father of King

Philip, 3795, 4336

King Philip, 3409, 3795, 4336

Athapaskan, Peaceful and Imitative, 3409-  
3410

Natives of Alaska, 167

Athapaskan Tribes

Apache, 3410, 3413

Navaho, 388, 3410, 3422

Caddoan Tribes

Arikara, 3410

Caddo, 3410

Pawnee, 3410, 3424-3425

Wichita, 3410

Creeks, Warlike, 3410

Five Civilized Tribes, or Muskogean,  
3410-3411, 3412

Cherokee, 3410, 3414

Chickasaw, 3410, 3412, 3415-3416

Choctaw, 3410, 3412, 3416

Creek, 3410, 3412

Seminole, 2336, 3410, 3412, 3426

Osceola, Chief, 5265

Five Nations (Later Six Nations), Con-  
federacy of Iroquoian Tribes, 3411,  
3412

Cayuga, 3411, 3412, 3414

Mohawk, 3411, 3412, 3422

Joseph Brant, Brave Chief, 924

Hiawatha, Great Chief, 3411, 3412,  
3171, 3172

Oneida, 3411, 3412, 3424

Onondaga, 3411, 3412, 3424

Seneca, 3411, 3412, 3426

Tuscarora, 3411, 3412, 3427

Huron, or Wyandotte, Powerful Con-  
federacy, 3411

Pueblo, Southwestern Indians

Lived in Adobe Villages, 3412-3413

Cibola, Seven Villages, 1422

Descendants of Cliff Dwellers, 1480

Pueblo Tribes

Mohave, 388, 3422

Pima, 388, 3425

Yuma, 388, 3429

Zuñi, 3429

Shoshonean Tribes

Banaks, 3413

Comanche, 3416

Hopi, or Moqui, 388, 1480, 3413, 3418-  
3419

Shoshoni, or Snake, 3426  
 Ute, 3427-3428  
 Siouan, Second to Algonquian in Size, 3413  
 Siouan Tribes  
   Assiniboin, 3413-3414  
   Catawba, 3414  
   Crow, 3416  
   Iowa, 3419-3420  
   Kansa, or Kaw, 3420  
   Mandan, 3420  
   Omaha, 3413  
   Osage, 402, 3413, 3424  
   Ponca, 3413, 3425  
   Quapaw, or Arkansas, 402, 3413, 3425-3426  
   Sioux, or Dakota, 3413, 3426-3427  
     Sitting Bull, Chief, 1793, 6628-6629  
   Winnebago, 3413, 3428  
 Other Important Tribes  
   Bellacoola, 3414  
   Chinook, 3416  
   Conestoga, 3416  
   Haida, 5919  
   Kiowa, 3420  
   Klamath: Shastas, Modocs, 3420  
   Kutenai, or Kootenay, 3420  
   Makkah, or Makaw, 3420  
   Munsee, 3422  
   Nez Percés, 3423  
   Yakima, 3428  
**Mexican and Central American Indians, 1287,**  
   3214, 3216, 5014, 6347  
**Aztecs: Lived in Mexico from Twelfth Cen-**  
   **tury, 551**  
   Origin Unknown, 551  
   Civilization: Advanced but Inferior to  
     Maya, 551, 3403  
   Military Power, 3403, 3404  
   Montezuma, Last Ruler, 1701, 4628, 4444  
**Mayas, Seat of Race in Yucatan, 7956**  
   Civilization: Most Advanced of All In-  
     dians, 3402-3403, 4354  
   Descendants in Guatemala, 2974  
**Yaqui, Piman Stock, 3428**  
**South American Indians, 373, 925, 1541, 2060,**  
   7477  
   Civilization: All Degrees, 3402  
   Divisions  
     Araucanian, in Chile, 1377  
       Characteristics, 1380  
     Guarani, in Paraguay and Uruguay, 5357,  
       7423  
     Inca, Family of Peruvian Indians, 3372,  
       5509  
       Civilization, 3372, 3402  
       Atahualpa, Last Ruler, 478, 5641  
       Descendants To-Day, 817, 2103, 3372  
     Omagua, Once Very Powerful, 5197  
     Patagonian, Warlike, 1377-1388  
       Quichuas: Characteristics, 5506  
     Yaghans, in Southernmost Chile, 1378  
**West Indies Indians, 3402**  
   Of Amazon Indian Stock, 3402

Arawak, Tribe Originally Inhabiting Ja-  
 maica, 3613  
 Caribs, Approaching Extinction, 7713  
**Peoples of Mixed and Unknown Origin**  
**Mixed Races**  
   Mabas, Negroids of Nubian Origin, 7574  
   Mestizos, of Spanish and Indian Blood, 373,  
     817, 5325, 5506, 6347, 6698, 7477  
   Mexicans, 4433  
   Mulatto, 3010, 4733  
     Distinguished from Creole, 1741  
   Sambos, or Zambos, 5014, 5506  
**Peoples of Unknown Origin**  
   Aino, or Ainu, Probably First Race Occu-  
     pying Japan, 108  
   In Kurile Islands, 3819  
   Of Ancient Asia Minor  
     Cimmerians, 7302  
     Lydians, 7302  
   Australian Aborigines, 507-508  
     Civilization: Lower Barbarism, 508, 1446  
   Avars, Early Inhabitants of Serbia, 6502  
   Bugis, Highly Civilized People of Borneo, 868  
   Circassians, 6087, 7244  
     Called Tcherkesses by Russians, Adighes  
       by Themselves, 1432  
   Cossacks, Cruel and Skilful Fighters, 1704  
   Eskimos, 2293-2297  
   Branches  
     Aleuts, 198  
     Thlinkits, or Tlinkits, 167  
   Etruscans, 2310-2311  
     People of Etruria, 2310  
   Iberians, 3324  
     Original Inhabitants of Spain, 6726, 6734  
     Descendants  
       Basques, 644, 3324, 4839, 6726  
       Gascons, 4839, 2700  
       Picts, 3324, 5603  
       Vascones, 4839  
   Illyrians, Ancestors of Albanians, 580  
   Hill Tribes of India  
     Bhils, 3378  
     Brahms, 591  
     Gonds, 3378  
   Macedonians, 4178  
   Mazurs, 5858  
   Moabites, 4563  
   Pelasgians, 2944  
   Rhaetians, 6977  
   Sabines, 6290, 6182  
   Samnites, 6353  
   Singhalese, 1292  
   Troglodytes, 7273  
   Uzbeks, 7301, 7318  
   Yakuts, 3930  
**Historical Names of Peoples**  
   Caledonian, for Scots and Picts, 1075  
   Gentiles, Applied by Jews and Mormons,  
     2719-2720  
   Lusitanians, Poetic Name for Brazilians, 925  
   Saracens, Used for Various Peoples, 6385



## Migrations of People

**Cradle of Mankind**

Placed by Tradition in Southwestern Asia,  
446

Efforts of Roy Chapman Andrews to Locate,  
4594

**Effects of Migrations, 10****Aborigines, Earliest Known Inhabitants, 9-10**

Australians, 508

Bushmen, 1038

Cave Dwellers, 1262

Cliff Dwellers, 10, 1480

Crô-Magnons, 6845

Dravidians, 3378

Greeks, 2317

Mound Builders, 10, 4690

Neanderthal Men, 4853

North and South American Indians, 10,

3401-3402

Aztecs, 10, 551

Guaraní, 5357

**Prehistoric Migrations**

Indians to North America from Asia, 3402

Maoris to New Zealand from Samoa, 4999

**Historic Migrations****Caucasian****Semitic**

Arabs, from Crusading Zeal, 342

Into Tripoli, 3966

Migrations of the Moors

Into Barbary States, 617

Into Morocco, 4657

Into Portugal, 5757

Into Spain, 6734-6735

**Carthaginians**

Into Malta, 4241

Into Portugal, 5757

Into Sicily, 6592

Into Spain, 6734

Into Tripoli, 3966

**Phoenicians**

Into Corsica, 1700

Into Malta, 4241

Into Portugal, 5757

Into Sicily, 6592

Into Spain, 6734

**Indo-European****Asiatic**

Gypsies: Into Europe from Asia, 2993

**Graeco-Latin****Greeks**

Into Asia Minor, 7302

Into Ethiopia, 2306

Into Malta, 4241

Into Portugal, 5757

Into Sicily, 6592

Into Tripoli, 3966

Dorians, into the Peloponnesus, 2944

Romans in Search of Conquest, 6173-  
6176

Into Asia Minor, 7302

Into Bavaria, 654

Into Brittany, 972

Into Corsica, 1700

Into Dacia (Rumania), 6245

Into England, 2254-2256

Into Malta, 4241

Into Sicily, 6592

Into Spain, 6734

**Teutons, 1425**

Into Alsace-Lorraine, 236

Into Spain, 6726

**Alemanni**

Succeeded Helvetii in Switzerland,  
3136, 6978

**Anglo-Saxons**

Into Britain, 287-288

**Franks**

Into Bavaria, 654

Into Burgundy, 1027

Into France, 2581

Into Switzerland, 3136, 6978

**Goths**

Into Corsica, 1700

Into Italy, 3580

Into Portugal, 5757

Into Sicily, 6592

Into Sweden, 6954

**Lombards**

Into Serbia, 6502

**Northmen**

Into British Isles, 5073

Into Normandy, 5042, 5073

**Normans**

Into Britain, 5043

Into Malta, 4241

Into Sicily, 5043, 6592

**Vandals**

Into Moravia, 4649

Into Pomerania, 5719

Into Sicily, 6592

Into Spain, 6734

Into Tripoli, 3966

Slavs: From Region of Vistula to Balkan

Peninsula, 6640

**Mongolian Race**

Chinese, into Manchuria, 4248, 4250

**Huns**

Into Roman Empire, 3293-3294

Into Serbia, 6502

Into Siberia, 6590

**Mongols**

Into Asia and Europe, 445, 446, 723, 2317,

4594, 6258

**Turks**

In Asia, 444, 5495

In Asia Minor, 6987, 7301, 7302

From Asia into Africa, 617, 2142

From Asia into Europe, 580, 1013, 2317,

4179, 7311

## Dispersal of Mankind

## Americans (North), a Mixture of Peoples, 7367

In Hawaii, 3077

In Honduras, 3216

In Panama, 5326

In Porto Rico, 5750

## Americans (South), of Spanish and Portuguese

Descent, 6698

## Europeans, a Mixture of Peoples, 2317

In Australia, 6703

In Barbary States, 617

In Ceylon, 1292

In Dutch East Indies, 2090

In Egypt, 2142

In French Sudan, 2620

In Greenland, 2960

In Hawaii, 3077

In Honduras, 3216

In Hong Kong, 3220

In Kenya (East Africa), 3765-3766

In Madagascar, 4196

In Mauritius, 4349

In Mozambique, 4729

In Panama, 5325-5326

In Porto Rico, 5750

In Straits Settlements, 6873

In Tanganyika Territory, 7014

In Uganda, 7345

In the United States, 7367-7368

## Indians (Hindus), a Mixture of Peoples, 3378

In Africa, 3766

In British Guiana, 968

In Federated Malay States, 2390

In French Somaliland, 2620

In Hejaz, 3127

In Jamaica, 3612

In Mauritius, 4349

In Mozambique, 4729

In Panama, 5325

In Straits Settlements, 6873

## Caucasian Race

## Hamitic

## Berbers

In Algeria, 217

In Libia, 3966

In Morocco, 4657

In Senegal, 6492

## Egyptians

In Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 287

In Syria, 6990

## Ethiopians

In French Somaliland, 2620

## Semitic

## Arabs

In Algeria, 217

In Asia, 446

In Barbary States, 617

In Egypt, 2142

In Ethiopia, 2306

In French Somaliland, 2620

In Hejaz, 3127

In Malta, 4241

In Morocco, 4657

In Palestine, 5310

In Persia, 5495

In Sudan, 6902

In Syria, 6987

In Transjordan, 7244

In Zanzibar, 7969

## Jews

In Africa, 3674

In North America, 3674

In South America, 3674

In Asia, 3674

In Aushatasia, 3674

In Former Austria-Hungary, 529

In Algeria, 217

In Barbary States, 617

In Czechoslovakia, 1801

In Egypt, 2142

In Europe, 3674

In France, 2570

In Germany, 2780

In Latvia, 3889

In Libia, 3966

In Macedonia, 4179

In Morocco, 4657

In the Netherlands, 4886

In Palestine, 5310

In Persia, 5496

In Poland, 5685

In Rumania, 6241

In Russia, 6258

In Syria, 6987

## Indo-European

## Armenians

In Former Austria-Hungary, 529

In Ethiopia, 2306

In Persia, 5496

In Syria, 6987

## Gypsies

In Former Austria-Hungary, 529

In Rumania, 6241

In Persia, 5495

In Spain, 6726

## Persians

In Syria, 6987

In Afghan Turkestan, 7301

In Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic,

7318

Kurds: In Syria, 6987

## Graeco-Latin

Albanians: In Yugoslavia, 7960

## Italians

In Former Austria-Hungary, 522

In Libia, 3966

Portuguese: In Hawaii, 3077

Rumanians: In Yugoslavia, 7960

## Teutonic

## Danes

In Prussia, 5858

In Schleswig-Holstein, 2769

## Germans

In Austria and Hungary, 522, 3289

In Bohemia, 813

- In Czechoslovakia, 1801
- In Danzig, 1825
- In Estonia, 2300
- In Latvia, 3889-3990
- In Poland, 5685
- In Yugoslavia, 7960
- Nederlanders (Dutch): In Prussia, 5858
- Swedes: In Finland, 2421
- Slavic
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 528
  - In Balkan Peninsula, 580
  - In Bosnia and Herzegovina, 869
  - In Moravia, 4649
  - In Dalmatia, 1813
- Croats
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
  - In Bosnia and Herzegovina, 869
  - In Yugoslavia, 580
- Czechs
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
  - In Bohemia, 813
  - In Prussia, 5858
  - In Silesia, 2769
- Poles
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
  - In Czechoslovakia, 1801
  - In Galicia, 2662-2663
  - In Prussia, 5858
  - In Silesia and Posen, 2769
- Russians
  - In Estonia, 2300
  - In Finland, 2421
  - In Kamchatka, 3732
  - In Latvia, 3889
  - In Manchuria, 4250
- In Poland, 5685
- In Siberia, 6587, 6590
- In Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic, 7318
- Ruthenians
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
  - In Czechoslovakia, 1801
  - In Galicia, 2662-2663
- Ukrainians
  - In Poland, 5685
- Serbs
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
  - In Bosnia and Herzegovina, 868-869
  - In Yugoslavia, 580, 6502
- Slovaks
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
  - In Present Hungary, 3289
- Slovenes
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522
- Wends
  - In Prussia, 5858
  - In Saxony, 6406
- Mongolian Race**
  - Chinese
    - In Australia, 6703
    - In Borneo, 868
    - In British Guiana, 968
    - In Cuba, 1768

- In Federated Malay States, 2390
- In Hawaii, 3077
- In Hong Kong, 3220
- In Jamaica, 3612
- In Siam, 6581
- In Singapore, 6617
- In Straits Settlements, 6873
- Finns
  - In Norway, 5081
  - In Russia, 6258
  - In Sweden, 6949
- Japanese
  - In Hawaii, 3077
  - In Manchuria, 4250
- Kalmucks
  - In China, 3732, 4592
  - In Russia and Siberia, 3732
- Koreans
  - In Manchuria, 4250
- Lapps
  - In Finland, 2421
  - In Norway, 5081
- Magyars
  - In Former Austria-Hungary, 522, 528
  - In Czechoslovakia, 1801
  - In Yugoslavia, 7960
- Tatars, or Tartars
  - In Siberia, 6590
  - In Turkestan, 7301
- Malay and Polynesian**
  - Malays
    - Filipinos
      - In Hawaii, 3077
  - Polynesians
    - Maoris
      - In New Zealand, 4999
- Negroid Race**
  - Negroes Proper
    - In Barbary States, 617
    - In British Guiana, 968
    - In British Honduras, 969
    - In Cameroon, 1108
    - In Cuba, 1768
    - In Dutch Guiana, 2060
    - In French Equatorial Africa, 2609
    - In French Sudan, 2620
    - In Haiti, 3010
    - In Hejaz, 3127
    - In Honduras, 3214, 3216
    - In Jamaica, 3611
    - In Madagascar, 4196, 4197
    - In Mozambique, 4729
    - In Nicaragua, 5014
    - In Liberia, 3963
    - In Panama, 5325
    - In Porto Rico, 5750
    - In the Sahara, 6300-6301
    - In Senegal, 6492
    - In Southwest Africa, 6723
    - In the Sudan, 6902
    - Darfur, 1828
    - In the United States, 4871-4872
    - In the West Indies, 5750, 3611

Bantus

- In Belgian Congo, 690
- In Cameroon, 1108
- In Tanganyika Territory, 7014
- In Togo, 7199
- In Togoland, 7199
- In Union of South Africa, in All of Its States, 7354
- In Zululand, 3729, 7990

Pygmies

- Bushmen
- In Kalahari Desert, 3730
- In Union of South Africa, 7354

Peoples of Unknown Origin

- Eskimos
- In Alaska, 167
- In Baffin Land, 571
- In Greenland, 2960

Manners and Customs

Relating to the Occult

- Caballah, Tradition of Occult Learning, 5148
- Pseudo-Sciences and Mystic Beliefs
- Antecedents of Modern Science, 6434
- Mixture of Fact and Superstition, 6937-6938
- Alchemy, 193, 5148
- Predecessor of Chemistry, 1328
- Developed into Search for Transmutation of Base Metals into Gold, 193, 1328, 2855
- Astrology, 466-467, 5148, 6932
- Zodiac, Determining Influence, 467, 7976
- House, Parts of Body Associated with Signs of Zodiac, 6935
- Horoscope, 3242, 466
- Elaborate Product of Superstition, 6932
- Superstitions Surviving, 6933
- Associated with the Moon
- Clairvoyance, Alleged Power to See Beyond Range of Human Vision, 1452
- Somnambulists Credited with, 3319-3320
- Foundation of Telepathy, 7067
- Divination, the Practice of Determining Issue of Events by Signs and Omens, 1972
- Omens, Signs from the Spirits, 5199
- Comets, 1972
- Flight and Cries of Birds, 499
- Ravens, 6003
- Breaking Mirrors, 6935, 6936
- Sneezing
- Gesundheit or Felicita, 6935
- Signs in the Sky, Feeding of Sacred Chickens, Movements of Serpents or Other Animals, 499
- Augurs, Sacred College among the Romans, 499
- Members Interpreted Omens, 6931
- Oracles, Replies of Gods or Goddesses to Inquiries, 5230-5231
- Oracle of Delphi, 1885, 5231, 6931
- Divining Rod, 1973
- Fortune Telling
- Relation to Sorcery, 6931
- With Cards, 1972
- Spilling Salt, 1972-1973, 6934
- Stubbing Toe, 1973, 6936
- Stepping on Cracks, 1973, 6936
- Forgetting Article of Attire, 1973

- Teacups, 1973, 6936
- Faith Cure, Mental Healing, 2363-2364
- Use of Suggestion, 6913, 6935
- Hypnosis, 3319-3321
- Subconscious Guiding Action, 6884
- Use of Suggestion, 6887, 6913
- Victim in Trance, 6884, 7242
- Mesmerism, Predecessor of Hypnotism, 3319, 4412
- Magi, 4212
- Magic, 4212-4215
- Place in Primitive Culture, 1819, 4212, 4215
- Practices, 4214
- Incantations, Formulae Used, 3404, 3372, 6934
- Use of Runes, 6250
- Sympathetic Magic
- Source Destroying Enemy by Proxy, 6933
- Evil Eye, 6933
- Charms and Countercharms
- Offset Sympathetic Magic, 6933
- Amulet, 267
- Coral, 1673
- Horseshoe above Door, 6934, 6936
- Personal Names, 6934
- Mistletoe Used by Druids, 4560
- Mystic Words, 6934
- Scarab, 6409
- Swastika, 6948
- Voodoo, Survival of Magical Practice, 4214
- Use of Witchcraft, 7568
- Conjuring, 1612-1613
- Applies to Notions of Magic and Occult Forces, 1612
- Used in Voodooism, 7568
- Modern Art, 1612
- Famous Conjurer, Houdini, 1612, 3259-3260
- Necromancy, Black Art, or White Magic, Belief that Future May Be Revealed by Communication with Spirits of Dead, 4868
- Numerology, Belief that Name and Date Indicate Personal Characteristics, 5113-5114
- Palmistry, 5322, 6937
- Phrenology, 5585, 6937
- Founded by Franz Gall, 2665, 5585
- Physiognomy, 6937, 5597
- Spiritualism, 6767-6768

- Mediums, 4379  
   Of Doubtful Integrity, 6767  
   In State of Trance, 6884, 7242  
   Euspasio Paladino, 6768  
 Seance, Performance of Medium, 6767  
 Kinds of Spiritualistic Phenomena  
   Physical, 6768  
   Table Tipping, 6885  
   Revelational, 6768  
   Difficulty of Evaluating, 6768  
   Ouija Board, 6885  
   Planchette, 6885  
 Famous Men Interested in Spiritualism  
   Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, 2018  
   Sir Oliver Lodge, 4086  
   Houdini, 3259-3260  
 Investigation by Society for Psychical Research, 5863  
 Subconscious Phenomena  
   Automatic Writing  
     Accomplished through Subconscious, 6885  
   Mind Reading, 4497-4498  
     Determined by Subconscious, 6885  
     Interpretation of Muscular Reactions, 4498  
 Superstition, 6931-6938  
   Relation to Religion and Science, 6931  
   Superstitions Connected with Animals  
     Black Cat Crossing the Path, 6936  
     Deathwatch Foretelling Death in the House, 1851  
   Lynx: Belief in Ability to See through Walls, 4164  
   Carrying a Rabbit's Hind Foot, 6933, 6936  
   Phoenix Rising from Ashes, 5571  
   Werewolves: Transformation of Men into Wolves, 7708  
   Connected with Flowers, 1494, 2495  
   Connected with Gems. [See *Jewelry and Jewel Materials*, below.]  
 Belief in Ghosts  
   Shadowy Figures of Dead, 2800, 6934-6935  
   Vampire, a Ghost Which Sucks Blood of Living People, 7449  
   Haunted Houses  
     Inhabited by Ghosts, 2800  
     Exorcism of Ghosts, 6935  
     Investigated by Society for Psychical Research, 6767  
 Medical Superstitions  
   Disease Invades Body through a Foreign Spirit, 6934  
   Moon a Cause of Lunacy, 5565, 6935  
   Disease Cured by Exorcism, 6934-6935  
   King's Magic Touch, 6935  
   Doctrine of Sympathy: Take a Hair of the Dog That Bit You, 6936  
   Doctrine of Effects of Uncanny Objects  
     Macbeth: Eye of a Newt, Toe of a Frog, etc., 6936  
   Power of Plants  
     Asafetida, Protection against Scarlet Fever, 438  
     Ginseng, Curative Powers Accepted by Chinese, 2810  
     Liverwort, a Cure for Liver Disease, 4061  
 In Months of the Year  
   February  
     Second Day, Ground Hog Day, 2386, 2389, 2968  
   March  
     Comes in Like a Lion, Goes Out Like a Lamb, 4285, 4287  
     First Three Days Unlucky, 4287  
   May  
     Romans Believed Unlucky for Weddings, 3713  
   June  
     Lucky Month for Brides, 3713  
 Days of the Week  
   Friday the 13th, 6936, 6937  
 Numbers  
   Four Persons Shaking Hands Across, 6936  
   Thirteen, Unlucky, 6937  
 Photographs  
   Believed Part of Themselves by Primitives, 6935  
 Sailors' Superstitions  
   Survival Due to Venturesome Careers, 6938  
   Albatross, 182  
     Disaster Follows Its Destruction, 182  
     [See color plate, with article.]  
   Petrel or Mother Carey's Chickens, 5519  
   Torii Gate  
     Japanese Sailors, Opposite 3621  
   Tattooing, Protection against Shipwreck, 6933-6934  
 Some Every-Day Superstitions  
   Comet, Portent of Disaster, 1581-1582  
   Itching Skin Means Visitors, 6936  
   Blister on Tongue Result of Telling a Lie, 6936  
   Burning Ears, Someone Speaking of You, 6936  
   Cold Shivers, Someone Walking on Your Grave, 6936  
   Giving Knife Cuts Friendship, 6936  
   Signs of Bad Luck, 6936  
 Telepathy, Influencing of One Mind by Another at a Distance, 7067  
   Possible Explanation of Spiritualism, 6767  
   Investigation by Society for Psychical Research, 5862, 7067  
   Psychical Research, 5862-5864  
 Witchcraft, Belief in and Practice of Bewitchment by Casting a Spell, 7813, 7815  
   Involves Belief in Ghosts, 2800  
   Object Necessary, 7814  
   Used in Voodooism, 7568  
   Witches, 7814, 7815

## Primitive Religious Practices

- Altar, Used from Earliest Times, 237  
 Ancestor Worship, 274  
   Practiced by Chinese, 274, 1393  
     Koreans, 1410  
     Polynesians, 5289  
 Animal Worship, 292  
   Based on Fear of Animals, 292  
   Involves Belief in Transmigration of Souls, 7246  
 Sacred Animals  
   Of the Chinese  
     Dragon, 2019  
   Of the Egyptians  
     Apis, Sacred Bull, 317  
     Ibis, 3324  
     Phoenix, 5571  
     Scarab, 6409  
     Serpent, 4833  
   Of the Greeks  
     Owls, 5278  
   Of the Romans  
     Geese, 2873  
     Owls, 5278  
   Of the Hindus  
     Cobra, 4833  
   Of the Siamese  
     White Elephants, 7744-7745  
   Of the Ainos  
     Bears, 108  
   Of the North American Indians  
     Bears, 108  
     Ravens, 6003  
 Snake Worship  
   Used in Voodooism, 7568  
 Snake Dance  
   Ceremonial Dance of Hopi Indians, 3419, 6662  
 Animism, 292  
   Includes Exorcism, 6934-6935  
   Practiced by Ancient Phoenicians, 5569  
   By North American Indians, 3403-3404  
   In India To-Day, 3382  
 Asceticism, 439  
 Blasphemy, 787-788  
 Demonology, 1890  
   Legends Growing Out of Belief  
     Faust, 1890, 2383  
     Possession of Evil Spirits Causes Disease, 7815  
     Werewolves, 7708  
 Devil Worship, 1924  
   Practiced in Africa, 78, 1924  
 Druids, 2039  
   Priests of Ancient Briton, 2039  
     Of Scoti, 3526  
   Worshiped Gods of Greeks and Romans by Other Names, 2040  
   Wielded Strong Influence, 2254  
   Celebrated Harvest Festivals, 3022  
   The New Year, 4964  
   Used Mistletoe as Charms, 4560

## Temples

- Ruins on Scilly Islands, 6434  
 Stonehenge, 6847  
 Emerald, Worshiped by Natives of Peru, 2220  
 Exorcism, Driving Out of Evil Spirits, 6934  
   Accomplished by Medicine Men, 6934  
   By King's Touch, 6935, 6455  
 Fetish, Any Object Credited with Mysterious Powers, 2402, 4215  
   Worship Practiced by Aboriginal Australians, Polynesians, Negroes, Some Siberians, 2402  
   By Koreans, 1410  
   In Madagascar, 4196  
 Fire Worship, 2435-2436  
   Belief Based on Necessity of Fire to Man, 2426, 2435-2436  
   Practiced by Persians, 4833  
 Gold, Worshiped by Some Oriental Peoples, 2855  
 Ghost Dance, Religious Dance of North American Indians, 2800  
 Idolatry, Worship of Graven Images as Gods or Abodes of Gods, 3346  
 Idols, 3345-3346  
   Juggernaut, Hideous Indians Idol and His Throne, 3707  
 Lotus, Sacred to Hindus and Chinese, 4117  
 Masks, Used in Religious Rites, 4321  
 Medicine Men  
   In Nigeria, 5025  
   American Indians. [See *Shamanism*, below.]  
 Myrtle, Sacred to Ancient Greeks, 4785  
 Mythology. [See Outline on *Mythology*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Mysterious, Greeks and Roman Religious Ceremonies, 4785  
 Nature Worship, Adoration of Objects and Forces in Nature, 4833  
   Involves Belief in Ghosts, 2800  
   Practiced by Koreans, 1410  
 Oak Trees  
   Worshiped by Britons, Norsemen, and Slavs, 4833  
 Polytheism, Distribution of Faith and Worship among Many Gods, 5718  
 Sacrifice, Offering to Gods, 6294  
   Jews: Bloody and Unbloody, 6294.  
   Human Sacrifice  
     Practiced by North American Indians, 7222  
     By Phoenicians, 5569  
     Suppressed in India by British, 3379  
 Shamanism, Based on Powers of Shaman or Priest, 3404, 6539, 6934  
 Stonehenge, Group of Rough-Hewn Stones on Salisbury Plain, England, 6847  
   Used as Temple, 6847  
 Sun Dance, Religious Ceremony Performed by Plains Indians of North America, 6925  
 Sun  
   Worshiped as a God by All Savage Peoples, 6924

Recently Abandoned by North American Indians, 3404, 6924  
 Still Adhered to in India and China, 6924  
   By Yezidees, 1924  
 Basis of Shintoism, National Religion of Japan, 6561  
 Stonehenge Used by Worshipers, 6847  
**Temple**, 7092  
**Transmigration of Souls**, Belief That Souls Pass into Other Bodies for Purification, 7244, 7246  
**White**: Persian Divinities Clothed in White, 7744-7745

#### Customs Connected with the Dead

##### Disposal of the Body

Savage Custom of Exposing Bodies to Animals, 1027  
 Towers of Silence, 7227-7228, 1027  
   Custom of the Parsees, 5401  
 Cremation, or Burning, 1740  
   Burned Body Thrown into Ganges in India, 1027  
 Burial in Coffins, 1531  
   Phoenician Coffin, 5570  
   Sarcophagus, 6385-6386  
     Alexander's Sarcophagus, 201  
 Burial above Ground, by the Babylonians, 1027  
 Burial with Weapons, Food, etc., 1028

##### Preparation of the Body

Embalming, 2218-2219  
   Mummies of Ancient Egyptians, 1027, 2218-2219, 4739-4740

##### Burial Places

Catacombs, Subterranean Galleries and Caves, 1236-1238, 7206  
 Cemeteries, 1028  
   Arlington, 403-405  
   Churchyards as Burial Places  
     Stoke Poges, 2920  
 Churches, as Westminster Abbey, 7715-7717  
 Tombs, 7206-7208  
   Egyptian: Pyramids, 5893-5896  
   Jews: Rock Sepulchers, 7206  
   Greeks: Rock-Hewn and Raised Tombs, 7206  
     Tomb of Mausolus, 7207  
 [See, also, *Memorial Architecture*, in Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]

##### Epitaphs, 2281-2282

Shakespeare's, 6524

##### Funeral Rites, 2636

Obolus, Charon's Fee Buried with Greeks, 1319, 2636  
 Procession in Modern Egypt, 2145  
 Honoring the Dead in Java, 3642  
**Mourning**, External Symbols of Grief, 4701  
   Jews: Rend Clothes, Loud Wailing, 4701  
     Wailing Wall, 3659  
   Greeks: Shaved Heads, 4701  
   Romans: Allowed Hair and Beards to Grow, 4701  
     Soiled and Carelessly Arranged Toga, 7199

Modern Peoples: Limited to Wearing Certain Colors, 4701  
   Black, 778

Crape Used in Many Countries, 1734  
**Various Beliefs and Practices**

Banshee, 614  
 Cypress, Ancient Emblem of Death, 1798  
 Suttee: Hindu Practice of Burning Widow on Funeral Pyre of Her Husband, 3379, 6944  
 Wake, Vigil before Burial, 7578  
   Lykewake, Ancient Origin of Wake, 2636, 7578

#### Manners and Customs Regarding Shelter

##### Homes through the Ages, 1447

##### Pre-Historic Homes

Trees for Savages, 1444  
   Beds, Heap of Furs, 669  
 Caves, 1262-1263, 1445  
 Cliff Dwellings, 1480-1482, 5875  
   Mesas, 4411-4412  
 Lake Dwellings, 3843, 3844

##### Primitive Homes

Igloo, 2293  
 Tent, Portable Dwelling Place, 3876, 7108  
   Used by Bedouins, 671, 6988  
   Tepee, or Tipi, Used by Indians, 3406, 3418, 3421

##### Kraals, 7990

##### Rude Huts

Homes of Bolivian Natives, 817, 823  
 Home Sweet Home in Borneo, 868  
 How the Bushmen Live, 1038  
 Mud Huts of an Egyptian Village, 2147  
 Native Dwellings in Ethiopia, 2306  
 Temporary Home for Shepherds, 3180  
 Houseboats Near Canton, 1178  
 Central American Village, 1288  
 The Old and the New on the Fiji Islands, 5291, 5292

Gypsy Home in Hungary, 2992

Hawaiian Grass Hut, 3083

How People Live in Honduras, 3215

Zapotec Indian Scene, 4435

Conical Huts of Kaffirs, 3729

Wood or Sod Huts of Lapps, 3876

Malay Village or Kampong, 4238

A Typical Maori Home, 4275

Adobe Home of Mexican Peon, 4434

Typical Mongolian Hut, 4593

Homes of African Negroes, 80, 3765, 5025

Nicaraguan Huts, 5014

Humble Homes of Mestizos of Panama, 5329

Huts of Branches and Foliage Used by Pygmies, 5891

Native Residence of Samoa, 6354, 6355

Siamese Houseboat, Opposite 6581

Peasant Village of Siberia, 6586, 6589

Sumatra Chieftain's Home, 6919

Village in Western Tibet, 7169

Yaghan Hut, 1379

**Homes of Civilized Peoples**

- Village Homes in Afghanistan, 70
- Algerian Village, Opposite 217
- Home of a Manchurian Farmer, 4248
- North American Types
  - Early Colonial Homes, 1545, 1547, 1549
  - Pioneer Home in North Dakota, 5067
  - Shelter in a Typical Lumber Camp, 4145
  - French Village in Quebec, 5913
- South American Types
  - Rural Home in Paraguay, 5357
  - Prosperous Homes in a Peruvian City, 5507

Contrasts in Cuba, 1769

**British Isles**

- English Village and Town Houses, 2248
- Rural Home in England, 2243
- Scottish Highland Home, 6441, 6442
- Cottage in County Kerry, Ireland, 3525

**France**

- Modern Cliff Dwellings, 1480
- Characteristic Small Village, 2585
- Homes in Brittany, Opposite 972
- Norman House, 5042

**Germany**

Along the Rhine, 6088

Haiti, Village Street, 3013

Hungarian Peasant's Home, 3290

Courtyard of an Italian House, 3577

**Japan**

One-Story Wood House, 3622

Interior, 3623

Hibachi of Burning Charcoal, 3622

Beds of Straw Mats, 669, 3624

Stone Houses of Montenegrins, 7961

**The Netherlands**

Picturesque Dutch Houses, 4884, 4888-4889

Interior of a Home, 4892

Persian Nobleman's Home, 5497

Peasant's Home in Poland, 5688

Modest Cottage in Rumania, 6243

How Peasants Live in Russia, 6257

Spanish Farmhouse, 6733

Swiss Peasants Live in Surroundings Such as These, 6979

**Syrian**

Homes of Sun-Dried Bricks, 6989

Housetops in Damascus, 6988

[Also, see Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUMÆ.]

**Manners and Customs in Regard to Food****Food of Prehistoric Man**

Diet of Tough, Usually Raw Food, 4854

Products of Mother Earth, 93

**Food of Primitive Peoples**

Australian Aborigines: Any Animal, Usually Half-Raw, 508

Agricultural Products of Indians, 3405

**Food of Civilization**

Importance of Discovery of Art of Cooking, 1445

Legendary Story, 1649

**Food and Food Customs**

Avocado Called Midshipman's Butter, 547

Beef, Favorite Flesh Food of Man, 683

Bread, Staff of Life, 934-935

Most Widely Used Food, 934

Persian Peasant Women

Baking Bread in Mud Ovens, 5500

Outdoor Oven in Siberia, 6589

Fresh Bread in Pocket Wards Off Evil

Spirits, 6934

Breadfruit, 937

**Butter**

Discovered Accidentally by Arabs, 1041

Butter-Making in Egypt, 2147

Caviar Popular in Russia for Centuries, 1263

Chili Con Carne, Spanish Dish, 1382

Chop Suey, American, 594

**Coffee**

Arabia and Abyssinia, Original Homes, 1526

Social Hour in Palestine, 1530

Cranberry, 1732

Date, 1831

**Edible Birds' Nests**

Regarded as Delicacy by Chinese, 2107, 6961

Fig, 2414

Fish, Used from Earliest Days of History, 2442

Frijoles, Black Beans Eaten by Mexicans, 4434

Fruit Unknown to Your Great-Grandfather when a Boy, Opposite 2629

Garlic, Used from Earliest Times, 2695

Grape, 2908

**Honey**

Used in Place of Sugar by Ancients, 3217, 6908

Literary References: Pliny, Xenophon, 3217

Lentil, One of the First Food Plants Cultivated by Man, 3935

Macaroni, Italian Dish, 4168

Maté, South American Beverage, 3197, 4343

Meat, a Food of English-Speaking Peoples

Australians Heaviest Meat Eaters, 4360

Milk, Used as Food from Earliest Recorded Time, 4481

**Mushrooms**

Belief that Fairy Rings Caused by Feet of Elves, 4756

Mutton, Favorite Meat in England, 4783

Olive, 5192-5193

Paprika, 1188, 5353

Pemmican, 5449-5450

Poi, Hawaiian Dish, 3077

Pork, 5744

Potato, 5779

Raisins, 5989

Salt, 6341-6344



Sausage, 6401  
 Sugar, 6908  
 Tea, 7042-7048  
 Tortillas, Thin Cakes of Corn, 4434  
 Restaurants  
   Chinese Street Restaurant, 1389  
   Egyptian Traveling Restaurant, 2149  
   Syrian Delicatessen Shop, 6991  
 Mexican Market Place, 4441

### Dress and Adornment

#### Early Dress of Mankind

Love of Adornment a Motive, 2033  
 First Covering of Foliage, 1489  
 Skins of Animals, 1489, 2638  
 Wool of Sheep, First Cloth, 1489  
 Early Historic Dress Based on the Skirt, 2034

#### Evolution of Dress, 2034-2035

Trousers First Worn by Assyrian Horsemen, 2034

#### Modern Dress

Evolved from Skirt and Trousers, 2034  
 Dates from Close of French Revolution, 2035

How Fashions Change, 2375-2376

#### Primitive Adornment

Gigantic Leg Bracelets, Worn by Women of Central Africa, 79

Hornlike Scalp Lock of Pawnee Indians, 3424

Necklace of Brass Coil, Worn by Burmese Girl, 1031

Metal Corset, Worn by Dyak Women, 2063  
 Rings for Arms, Legs, Fingers, Toes, and Nose, 6129-6130

#### Self-Inflicted Wounds

Scarification, 7031, 508

Branding, 7031

Tattooing, 7031

Necessary Ceremonial in the South Seas, 5292

Practiced by Mohave Indians, 3422

Practiced by Maoris, 5007

#### Items of Dress

Armor, 410, 411, 1762, 1763, 2403, 5043

Helmet, 3135-3136, 410, 7352

Bloomers, 2036

Boots and Shoes, 861-862

Chopines, 1408

Sandals, 861, 2035, 2036, 2520

Wooden Shoes

Dutch Shoes, 4884

Sabots and Clogs, 861

Jackboots, 862, 7352

Breeches, 2035

Baggy Dutch Breeches, 4884

Butternut Uniforms, 1051

Buttons, 1051-1052

Cape, 2034

#### Caps

Fez, or Tarbush, 2404-2405

Neat Caps Worn by Dutch Women, 4884

Norwegian Cap, 5087

Liberty Cap, 3965

Chiton, 2034

Corduroy Garments, 1675

Crape: Used for Mourning, 1734

Doublet: Forerunner of Vest, 2034

Gabardine, 2655

Gauntlet, 2706

Used by Crusaders, 410

Throwing Down Gauntlet, a Challenge, 2706

Glove, 2843-2844

Hats, 3070-3074

Worn Very Little in Antiquity, 2035

Ceremonial Hats in New Guinea, 4917

Use of Feathers, 3073, 3414, 3423

Busbies Worn by English Guardsmen, 7352

Hat Customs, 3073-3074

#### Headdress

Of North American Indians, 3423

Moki Indians, 3009

Hopi Indians, 3418-3419

Manta of Guarani Indians, 5357-5358

Headdress Favored by Women of Natal, 7357

Headdress of Girls of South Seas, 5290

Tibetan Girl's Headdress, 7167

Zulu Belles, 7357, 7989

Himation, 2034

#### Holoku

Loose Garment Worn by Hawaiians, 3077

Prescribed by Missionaries, 3221

Kimono: Worn by Japanese, 3623, 3624

Lace, 3830

#### Leather

Used by Savages, Ancient Egyptians, Babylonians, and Hebrews, 3908

Leis, Garlands of Flowers

Used by Hawaiians to Decorate Arriving or Departing Friends, 3077

#### Linen

Used by Lake Dwellers, 2466

Found in Ancient Egyptian Tombs, 2466, 4031

Associated with Idea of Purity, 4032

Linsey-Woolsey Clothing, 4036

Obi, 3623, 3624

Palla: Mantle of Roman Matrons, 6844

Pantaloons

Worn by Ancient Phoenicians, 2034

#### Peplos

Woolen Shawl Worn by Greek Women, 2034

Ruff: Stiffly Starched Collar, 2034

Sarong: Square of Silk or Cotton, 4239

Cashmere Shawls, 3478

Stockings: Of Modern Origin, 2035

Stola, 6844

Tartan Garb

Each Scottish Clan Distinguished by Its Own Tartan, Opposite 6444, 7025

Toga, Roman Citizen's Garment, 7198-7199

Worn by Augurs, 499

Tunic, Roman Undergarment, 7198, 7293

Turban, 7298

Uniforms, Military and Naval, 7352-7353  
**National Costumes**  
 Armenian Men, 409  
 Bantu Women Dressed for Hunt, 70  
 Silks and Bright Colors Worn by Burmese, 1030  
 Black Coat and Turban Worn by Copts, 1670  
 Danish Woman, 1804  
 Costumes of Nederlanders (Dutch), 4884, 4886, 4887, 4888  
 Dyaks in Full Dress, 867  
 Hooded Jackets of the Eskimos, 2204, 2205  
 Filipino Senora's Gown, 5558  
 French Soldiers before the War, 7352  
 Greek Costumes of To-Day, 2039  
 Bright Colors of Gypsy Dress, 2993  
 Hungarian Peasant Costumes, 3290, 3291  
 North American Indians of To-Day, 3415  
 Indians of Peru in Costume, 5508  
 Japanese Royal Ceremonial Robes, 3185  
 Typical Costume of Montenegro, 4621  
 Moros Wear Pajama-Like Suits, 5550  
 Persians Like Cosmetic and Jewelry, 5496  
 Rumanians in Sunday Dress, 6245  
 Scots in Bright Plaid Kilts, 6437  
 Spanish Peasant Costumes, 6733  
 Sudanese Negro in Full Dress, 6902  
 Swedish Girls in National Costume, 6953  
 Swedish Peasant Family, 6957  
 Young Swiss Women in Holiday Dress, 6977  
 Tibetan Girl in Holiday Dress, 7167  
 Past and Present Costumes in Turkey, 7310  
 Welsh Women, 7579  
**Hair Customs**, 3808-3809  
 The Chinese Queue, 1394, 3219  
 Use of Wigs, 3008, 7758  
 Powdered Wigs, 1545, 2035  
 Survivals in English Courts, 7758  
 Modern Hairdressing  
 Chignon, 3008  
 The Bob, 3009  
 The Marcel Wave, 3009  
 The Beard, 663  
**Jewelry and Jewel Materials**, 3672  
 Beads, 656  
 Used as Money by Savages, 656  
 Wampum, 656, 7589, 7590  
 Birthstones, 773  
 Special Stone for Each Month, 773, 2711  
 Brooch, 975  
 Use by Romans, 975, 1051, 6844  
 Carnelian, 1204  
 Prized as a Charm, 1204  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Coral Superstitions, 1673  
 Gems, 2711-2713  
 Supernatural Powers Attributed to, 2711  
 Gem Customs and Beliefs  
 Amethyst, 261  
 February Birthstone, 261, 773  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Aquamarine, 333  
 March Birthstone, 333, 773

Beryl, 720-721  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Carbuncle, 1194  
 Diamond, 1028-1033  
 April Birthstone, 773  
 Emerald, 2220  
 May Birthstone, 773, 2220-2221  
 Worshipped by Peruvians, 2220  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Garnet, 2605  
 January Birthstone, 773, 2605  
 Heliotrope, or Bloodstone, 3131  
 March Birthstone, 3131, 773  
 Lapis Lazuli, 3874  
 December Birthstone, 773  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Moonstone, 2392  
 August and June Birthstone, 773  
 Opal, 5212  
 October Birthstone, 773, 5212  
 Superstitious Belief, 5212  
 Pearl (not a Stone), 5433-5435  
 June Birthstone, 773, 5433  
 Ruby, 6235  
 July Birthstone, 773, 6235  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Sapphire, 6384  
 September Birthstone, 773, 6384  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Sardonyx, 6387  
 Topaz, 7211  
 November Birthstone, 773, 7211  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Tourmaline, 7225  
 October Birthstone, 773, 7225  
 Turquoise, 7322  
 December Birthstone, 773, 7322  
 Ivory, Earliest Carved Specimens of Art, 3590  
 Jade, 3608  
 Jasper, 3640  
 In High Priest's Breastplate, 3178  
 Jet, 3671  
 Rings, 6129-6130  
 Scarab, 6409

### Social Organization of Mankind

**Caste**, 1231-1232  
 Hereditary Division of Society, 1231-1232  
 Caste System of India, 3379  
**Clans**, or Tribes, 1453-1454  
 Form of Government in Mountains of Albania, 180  
 Arabic Tribes  
 Sheik, Chieftain, 6550-6551  
 Form of Government in El Rif, 6124  
 Hebrew Tribes  
 Patriarch, Father or Ruler, 5415-5416  
 North American Indians, 3404, 3405, 3411  
 3404  
 Ancient Norwegian Tribes  
 Jarls, Chieftains, 5088  
 Scottish Clans, 1453-1454

Still Important in Scottish Life, 1454, 6437  
 Zulu Tribes  
   Headman Responsible to Chief of Tribe, 7990  
 Coolies, Chinese Laborers, 1390, 3389  
   In British Guiana, 968  
   In Jamaica, 3612  
 Fellahs  
   Peasants of Egypt, 2142, 2143  
 Kanakas, 3732  
 Nomads, or Wanderers, 446, 5039-5040  
   Caravans, 1104, 1189  
 Peonage, 5477  
 Serfs, 6503  
 Slavery, 6639-6640  
   In the Ancient World, 6639, 2942  
   Revival of Slavery, 6639-6640  
 Thane, 7134  
 Villeins, 7528  
  
**Marriage Laws and Customs**  
 Marriage, 4299-4301  
   Legal Aspects  
     Who May Marry, 4299-4300  
     Eugenics Law of Wisconsin, 4300, 2314  
     Intermarriage, 4301  
     Morganatic Marriage, 4301  
     Marriage by Proxy, 5857  
     Registration, 6045  
   Religious Aspects  
     Banns of Marriage, 614  
     Roman Catholic Sacrament, 6165  
     Mormon Marriage Beliefs, 4653  
   Sentimental Aspects  
     Wedding Anniversaries, 295  
     Wedding and Betrothal Rings, 6130  
   Symbols  
     Myrtle, Wedded Bliss, 2496  
     Orange Blossom, 2496, 5231  
 Husband and Wife, 3297  
 Plural Marriage  
   Bigamy, 735  
   Concubinage, 5716  
   Polyandry, Many Husbands, 5716  
     Practiced in Tibet, 7168  
   Polygamy, Many Wives, 5716  
     Among Mohammedans, 4571, 5716  
     In Egypt, 2143  
     In Turkey, 5716, 7314  
     Harem, 3045-3046  
     Zenana, 7971  
 Dissolution of Marriage  
   Causes or Grounds of Divorce, 1981  
   Not Permitted among Roman Catholics, 1981, 6165  
   Alimony, 222  
   Grass Widow, 2915-2916  
 National Marriage Customs  
   Bride and Bridegroom of Hungary, 3291  
   Child Marriage in India, 3379  
   Here Comes the Bride (Java), 3643  
   Bridal Crown of a Norwegian Girl, 5087  
   Present-Day Seminole Bride and Groom, 2483

Bride and Groom in Sumatra, 6919  
**Festivals and Holidays**  
 Festivals, 2401  
   Masks Often Used at Greek Festivals, 4320-4321  
   Four National Greek Games  
     Isthmian, 2401, 3569  
     Nemean, 2401, 4875-4876  
     Olympian, 2401, 5196  
     Pythian, 2401, 5898  
   Roman Festivals  
     Cerealia, 1291, 2401  
     Lupercalia, 2401, 4156  
     Saturnalia, 2401, 6398, 6399  
     Feast of Fools, Christian Form, 2519-2520  
   Christian Feasts and Festivals. [See Outline on *Religion*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Holidays, 3195  
   Legal Holidays, 3195  
   Arbor Day  
     Set Apart for Planting Trees, 330, 333, 344-346  
     Originated by Julius Sterling Morton, 344, 4665  
     Suggested Program for Celebration, 345  
   Bastille Day, French National Holiday, 647, 3709  
   Columbus Day, 1576  
     In Honor of Discovery of America, 5159  
   Dominion Day, Canadian National Holiday, 971, 2009, 3709  
   Empire Day, 2229, 4354  
   Flag Day, 2456, 3713  
   Forefathers' Day, December 21, 1859  
   Independence Day, or Fourth of July, 3376, 3709  
   Labor Day, 3822, 6499  
   May Day, 4351  
   Memorial Day, or Decoration Day, 4354, 4387-4388  
   Mothers' Day, 4684  
   New Year's Day, 3618, 4963-4964  
     Tournament of Roses, 5406  
     New Year's Eve, 1859  
   Sabbath, 6290  
   Sunday, 3195  
   Thanksgiving, 7135-7136, 5110  
  
**The Lore of Flowers**  
 Flowers as Emblems  
   List of State Flowers, 2494  
   National Flowers, 2494, 2495  
**Language of Flowers and Leaves, 2495**  
**Sentiments and Associations**  
   Amaranth, Immortality, 241, 2495  
   Anemone, Anticipation, Frailty, 2495  
   Apple Blossom, Admiration, 2495  
     State Flower of Arkansas and Michigan, 2494  
   Asphodel, 454  
   Belief of the Greeks, 454

- Aspen Leaf, Fear, 2495  
     The Quaking Aspen, 452  
 Bay Leaves, 656  
 Cactus, 2494, 2495  
 Calla, Magnificent Beauty, 2495  
 Camellia, Illness, 2495  
     Literary Reference, 1106  
 Candytuft, Indifference, 2495  
 Chrysanthemum, 1419  
     National Flower of Japan, 2495  
 Clover, 1494-1495  
     Four-Leafed Clover, Good Luck, 1494, 2495  
     Five-Leaf Clover, Bad Luck, 1494, 2495  
     Red Clover, State Flower of Vermont, 2494  
 Columbine, 1571  
     Suggested for National Flower, 1571, 2495  
     State Flower of Colorado, 1571, 2494  
 Cornflower, or Kaiser-Blume, 3730  
     Meaning Heaven, 2495  
     National Flower of Germany, 2495, 3730  
 Cowslip, Youthful Beauty, 2495  
 Cypress, Death, 1798, 2495  
 Daffodil, Unrequited Love, 2495  
 Daisy, Love and Fidelity, 1811  
     Simplicity and Modesty, 1811, 2495  
 Dandelion, Coquetry, 2495  
 Edelweiss, 2107  
     National Flower of Switzerland, 2107, 2495  
 Evergreen, Hope, 2495  
 Everlastings, Undying Affection, 2495  
 Fern, Forsaken, 2495  
 Forget-Me-Not, True Love, 2495, 2542  
     Friendship, 2542  
     In German Folklore, 2542  
 Foxglove, Insincerity, 2495  
 Gentian, Virgin Pride, 2495  
 Geranium, Deceit, 2495  
 Goldenrod, Encouragement, 2496  
     State Flower, 2494, 2862  
 Hazel, Belief about Forked Twig, 3102  
 Heather, Loneliness, 2496  
 Heliotrope, Devotion, 2496  
 Hepatica, Anger, 2496  
 Honeysuckle, Fidelity, 2496  
 Hyacinth, Sorrow, 2496  
 Ivy, Trustfulness, 2496  
 Laurel, Fame, 655-656, 2496, 3893  
     Mountain Laurel, Flower of Connecticut, 2494  
 Lavender, Sentimental Associations, 3896  
 Leek, Former Emblem of Wales, 3922, 2495  
 Lilac, Fastidiousness, 2496  
     Purple Lilac, State Flower of New Hampshire, 2494  
 Lily, Majesty, Purity, Innocence, 2496, 4005  
     White Lily, National Flower of Italy, 2495  
     Sego, State Flower of Utah, 2494  
 Lotus, Forgetfulness, 2496  
     National Flower of Egypt and India, 2494, 2495, 4118  
 Magnolia, Flower of Louisiana and Mississippi, 2494
- Maple Leaf, National Emblem of Canada, 2495  
 Marigold, Contempt, 2496  
 Mistletoe, Christmas Custom, 4560  
     State Flower of Oklahoma, 2494  
 Moss, Old Age, 2496  
 Myrtle, Wedded Bliss, 2496  
 Narcissus, Vanity, 2496  
     National Flower of China, 2495  
 Oak, Sturdiness, 5128  
     Oak Leaf, Power, 2496  
 Olive, 5193  
     Olive Leaf of Genesis, 5193, 1886  
     Victor's Crown of Olives, 5193  
     To Bear the Olive Branch, 5193  
 Orange Blossom, Marriage, 2496, 5231-5232  
     State Flower of Florida, 5232  
 Oxalis, Pangs of Regret, 2496  
 Palm Leaf, Conquest, 2496  
 Pansy, Thoughts, 5341, 2496  
     Quotation from Hamlet, 5341  
 Pomegranate, National Flower of Spain, 2495  
 Poppy, Oblivion, 2495, 2496  
     Golden Poppy, State Flower of California, 2494  
 Rhododendron, 6099  
     State Flower of Washington and West Virginia, 2494, 6099  
 Rose, Love, 2496  
     National Flower of England, 2495, 6202, 6539  
     Of Persia, 2495, 6202  
     State Flower, 2494, 6202  
     Yellow Rose, Jealousy, 2496  
 Rosemary, 2496, 6205  
 Rue, Repentance, 2496  
 Scarlet Geranium, a Kiss, 2496  
 Shamrock, National Flower of Ireland, 2495, 6539  
 Snowdrop, a Friend in Need, 2496  
 Sting Nettle, Rudeness, 2496  
 Sweet William, Gallantry, 2496  
 Thistle, National Flower of Scotland, 2495, 6539, 7151-7152  
 Tomato, Called Love Apple, 324, 7205  
 Tulip, Boldness, 2496  
 Violet, Modesty, 2496  
     National Flower of Greece, 2495  
     State Flower, 2494  
     Emblem of Yale College, 7532  
 Water Lily, Flower of July, 3709
- Miscellaneous Manners and Customs**  
 Ban, 594  
 Barbecue, 618  
 Bell Customs, 703  
     Curfew Bell, 703, 1786, 2920  
     Nautical Bell, 6568  
     Warning Bell, 703  
     Town Crier, 703  
 Betel Chewing, 722  
 Blood Feuds  
     Avenger of Blood, 800

- Cities of Refuge, 1435
- Blood Money, 4591
- Vendetta, 7476
- Sanctioned by Mohammedans, 4571
- Cannibalism**, 1171
  - Name Derived from Caribs, 1171
  - Reasons for Practice
    - Religious Rites and Beliefs, 1171
    - Hunger, 1171
  - Practiced by
    - African Negroes, 1171
    - Australians, 1171
    - Indians, 1171
    - South Sea Islanders, 5288, 5289
- Collecting**
  - Autographs, 532-533
  - Butterflies, 1050
  - Coins, 5114-5116
  - Stamps, 5770
- Color Symbolism**
  - Black, 778
    - Mourning Color of Western Peoples, 4701
    - Black Art, 4868
  - Blue, 803
  - Green, 2955-2956
  - Purple, 5887
  - Red, 6025
  - White, Purity, 7744-7745
- Dancing**
  - To Invoke Emotions, by Primitives, 1819
  - Savage Use of the Dance, 1445
  - Mandan Indian Buffalo Dance, 1819
  - Ghost Dance, 2800
  - Snake Dance, 6662
  - Sun Dance, 6925
  - National Dances, 1819
- Dueling**, 2050
- Etiquette**, Formal Observance of Customs, 2308
  - Washington's Rules, 2308-2309

- Ceremonial Etiquette of Betel Chewing, 722
- Of Tea Drinking, 7042
- Strict Social Etiquette of Japanese, 3622
- Social Precedence, 6669-6670
- Falconry**, or Hawking, 2365
- Flag Customs**, 2449
  - In Connection with Ships, 2449
  - Marine Signaling, 6598
  - Hand-Flag Code, 6599
  - Regimental Flag, 2449
  - To Strike, to Dip, 2449
  - Half Mast and Reversed, 2449
  - Flag of Truce, 2449, 7744
  - Yellow Flag, 2449
  - Red Flag, 2449, 6025
  - Black Flag, 2449
  - Civilian Customs, 2451-2453
- Head-Flattening**, 3416, 3418
  - Practiced by Cliff Dwellers, 1480
- Head-Hunting**
  - Dyaks, 868, 2063
  - Igorrotes, 3348, 5549-5550
  - Ilongots, 5549
  - Malays, 4239
- Salutations**
  - Bowing, by Japanese, 3622
  - Kissing, 3797-3798
  - Nose-Rubbing, 4275
- Smoking**, Ceremonial
  - Indian Peace Pipe, 1100
  - Marking Beginning and End of War, 3405
- Taboo**, or Tabu, 6994
  - Taboo of Holy Names, 6934
- Totem**, 7222
  - Involves Belief in Ghosts, 2800
  - Animal Usual Selection, 3404
  - Totem Poles, 7222
    - In Alaska, 169
    - Among Haida Indians, 5919

# ARCHAEOLOGY

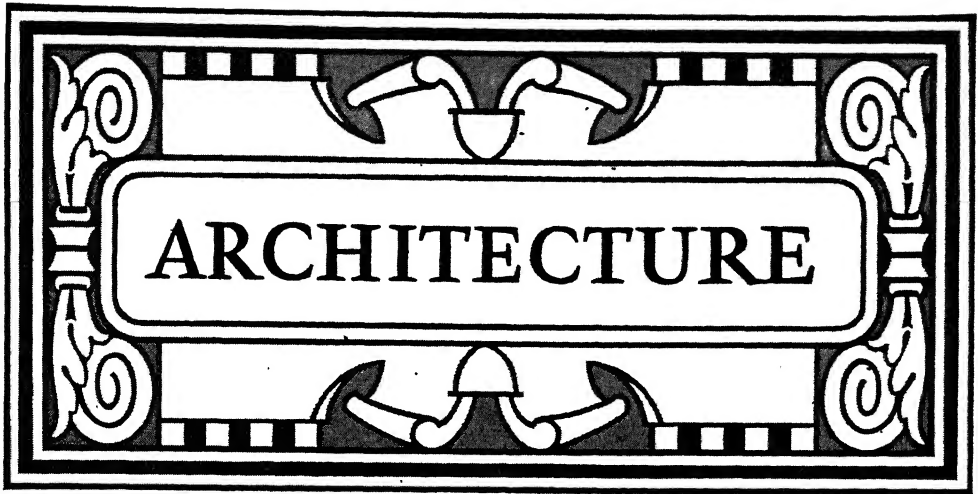
## Its Scope and Progress

- Varied Conceptions, 348
- The Province of General Archaeology, 350
  - Indebtedness to and Relations with Other Sciences, 350
- The Development of Archaeology
  - Its Beginning, 350
  - Researches of Thomsen, Worsaae, and Keller, 351
- Theory of Successive Cultural Ages, 351
  - Stone Age, 6845
  - Bronze Age, 975
  - Iron Age, 3534, 3535
- Organized Excavation
  - Interest of Many Progressive Governments, 351
  - Airplane, 351

## The Revelations of Archaeology

- Northern and Western Europe
  - Evidences of the Old Stone (Paleolithic) Age, 352, 6845
  - Flint and Stone Implements, 6845
  - Cave Dwellers, 1262
    - A Cave Home, 1447
  - Neanderthal Men, 4854
    - A Family Group, 4853
  - The Crô-Magnons, 6845
  - The New Stone (Neolithic) Age, 352, 6845
    - Kitchen Middens, 3799
    - Lake Dwellings, 3844
      - Some Interesting Remains, 3843
    - Flint and Stone Implements, 6845
  - The Bronze Age, 975
  - Stonehenge, 6847
  - Ancient Roman Baths in England, 649
  - Roman Walls, 6170
    - Hadrian's Wall, 3000
- Grecian Antiquities, 352, 354
  - Monuments of Athens, 481-482
    - Acropolis, 23, 482
    - Erechtheum, 2285
    - Parthenon, 5402-5403
      - Elgin Marbles, 2206
    - Temple of Jupiter, 480
    - Temple of Nike Apteros, 5029
    - The Restored Stadium, 2949
    - Theater of Dionysus, 7137
    - Theater at Epidaurus, 7137
    - Theseum, 7147
  - Columns of a Ruined Corinthian Temple, 1676
  - Crete, 1742
    - Labyrinth at Cnossus, 3829
    - Head of the Minotaur, 4523
    - Throne of Minos, 4523
  - Mycenae, City of Agamemnon, 4784
    - Reputed Tomb of Agamemnon, 84
  - Olympia
    - French and German Excavations and the Uncovering of the Altis, 5195
    - A Restoration of the Olympian Zeus, 3591
    - Temple to Poseidon at Cape Sunium, 4877
    - Work of Heinrich Schliemann, 6414
- Archaeology in Italy, 354
  - Discovery of the Apollo Belvedere and the Laocöon, 318, 3873
  - Excavation of Herculaneum, 3154-3156
    - Old Herculaneum Revealed, 3155
  - Excavation of Pompeii, 5722-5725
    - Entrance to the Court of Justice, 5720
    - Remains of the Temple of Apollo, 5721
    - A Garden Restored, 5722
    - Tombs; The Home of Olconio, 5723
    - Domestic Articles, 5724
    - An Amphitheater, 2239
    - A Restored Wall Decoration, 5724
  - Roman Antiquities, 6177
    - The Appian Way, 322, 323
    - Aqueduct of Claudius, 337
    - The Baths of Caracalla, 651

- Catacombs, 1236
- Colosseum, 1565
  - Interior View, 1566
- Arch of Constantine, 1625
- The Roman Forum, opposite 2547
- Baths and Villa of Hadrian, 3001, 3002
- Ruins of the Palace of the Caesars, 6175
- Pantheon, 5341-5342
- Arch of Titus, 7190
- Trajan's Arch, 7240
- Trajan's Column, 7241
- Wall of Romulus, 6182
- A Restoration of a Roman Atrium, 4428
- Etruscan Archaeology, 2311
  - Ruins in an Ancient Etruscan Center, 2310
  - An Etruscan Mirror, 2311
- Relics of Old Egypt, 354
  - Hieroglyphics, Old Egyptian Writing, 3176, 3177
  - Rosetta Stone, 6207, 6208
  - Work of François Champollion, 6208, 3177
- Colossi of Memnon, 4386
  - Vocal Memnon, 4387
- Colossi of Rameses II, 2153, 5993
- Columns and Gateway at Karnak, 2153
- Ruins of a Granite Temple, 5895
- Temple of Luxor, 361
- Manuscripts, 355
- Mummies, 4739-4740
  - Mummy of the Father-in-Law of Amenophis III, 2219
  - Head of the Mummy of Seti I, 6506
- Obelisks, 5138
  - Cleopatra's Needles, 1465
  - An Ancient Landmark of Heliopolis, 5138
- Tomb of Osiris, 354
- Pyramids, 5893-5896
  - The Oldest Stone Structure in the World, 5894
  - The Great Pyramid, or Pyramid of Cheops, 5895, 1342
  - A View of the Pyramids in Color, opposite 2142
- The Great Sphinx, 832, 2153, 2239, 6758
- Tutankhamen
  - Work of Lord Carnarvon and Howard Carter, 7330, 2155
  - Statue and Mummy of the King, 7329
  - Entrance to the Tomb, 2150
- Importance of the Necropolis, 4868-4869
- Egyptologists
  - James Henry Breasted, 938-939
  - Georg M. Ebers, 2092
  - W. M. Flinders Petrie, 5519, 355
- Elsewhere in Africa
  - Investigations at Carthage, 1219
  - The Site of the Ancient City, 1220
  - Remains of Roman Civilization in Leptis Magna, 349
  - The Temple of Isis at Petra (Illustration), 353, 5518
- Relics from Uganda, 356
- Discoveries in Western Asia, 355
  - Assyria
    - Excavation of Nineveh, 463
    - The Mounds of Nineveh, 3517
    - The Palace of Sennacherib (A Fancied Restoration), 2239
  - Babylonian Antiquities
    - Ruins of a Royal Palace, 560
    - Remains of a Palace of Nebuchadnezzar, 4865
    - As the Hanging Gardens Are Declared to Have Appeared, 4866
    - A Butcher Bill from Ur, 350
    - The Code of Hammurabi 3029
    - Excavations at Kish and Evidences of the Biblical Deluge, 355, 1886-1887
  - Cuneiform Writing, 1785
    - Work of Sir Henry Rawlinson, 1785
  - Excavation of the Temple of Diana at Ephesus, 2277, 1934
  - Archaeology in Palestine
    - Excavation at Armageddon, 406
    - Stables of Solomon, 6683
  - Archaeology in Persia
    - Ruins at Persepolis and Susa, 5497-5498
    - The Palace of Xerxes, 7916
    - Portals of the Palace of Darius, 1829
    - The Tomb of Darius, 1829
  - Phoenician Antiquities
    - Ruins of Tyre and Supposed Tomb of Hiram, 5570
  - Archaeology in Syria
    - Hittite Dignitaries (Relief Sculpture), 3187
    - Moabite Stone, 4563
    - Ruins of Nimrod's Castle, 5032
    - Temple of the Sun, View of Ruins in Palmyra, 6990
    - Triumphal Arch, Palmyra, 6990
    - Remains of a Crusaders' Castle, 1764
    - The Rediscovery of Troy, 7278, 351
  - Elsewhere in Asia, 356
    - Researches of Roy C. Andrews in Mongolia, 2850, 4594
- Archaeology in the New World, 355-356
  - Kitchen Middens, 3799
  - Relics of the Aztecs, 551
    - Pyramids of the Western World, 354
  - Cliff Dwellings of Prehistoric America, 1481
    - Cliff Homes in the Chaco Cañon, 4939
    - Mesa Encantada, 4411
    - Mesa Verde, 4412
  - Relics of the Mound Builders
    - Mounds of Varied Form, 4690
    - Pottery and Tools from the Mounds, 4691
  - Pueblo Homes, 5874
  - Pre-Pueblo Ruins in Nevada, 355
  - Civilization of the Maya Indians, 4354
    - Colonel Lindbergh's Expedition, 7956
    - The Marshall Field Expedition, 356
    - An Astronomical Congress (Relief Sculpture), 352



## The Principles of Architecture

Goethe's Definition and Its Meaning, 359

Combining Beauty and Utility, 359

As Applied by Great Builders

Giovanni Amadeo, 240

Creator of the Spire of Milan Cathedral,  
opposite 4472

Donato Bramante, 921

Plans for Saint Peter's Church, 6325-6327

Filippo Brunelleschi, 982-983

Creator of Dome of Florence Cathedral,  
983, 2472

Designs for the Pitti Palace, 5633

Giotto, 2811

Builder of the Campanile, Florence, 2472

Michelangelo, 4453-4456

Creator of Dome of Saint Peter's, 6325,  
6326, 366

Daniel H. Burnham, 1033

Architect of Union Station, Washington,  
D. C., 7641

Richard M. Hunt, 3294

Designs for Yorktown Monument, 7540

Charles F. McKim, 4187

Washington Arch, 4990

Hall of Fame, 3021

Sir Christopher Wren, 7895

Saint Paul's Cathedral, 4095

Towers of Westminster Abbey, 7715, 7714

Main Hall, William and Mary College,  
7771

## Architectural Construction

### The Materials of Architecture

Adobe, 49-50

An Adobe House in Mexico, 4434

Adobe Museum at Santa Fe, 4936

Asbestos, 438

Bamboo, 592-594

A Bamboo House, 592

Bamboo Framework for Hangars, 140

Brass, 924-925

Brick

Antiquity: Used by the Israelites in Egypt,  
by the Babylonians, Chinese, and  
Romans, 945

Brick-Making: Mixing, Molding, Firing,  
945, Varieties: Pavement, Facing, etc.,  
945

Brick-Laying, 945-946

Three Styles of Brick-Laying, 946

Used for the World's Largest Hotel, 1358

Bronze, 974-975

Building Stones, Kinds and Uses, 1012

Alabaster, 165

Dolomite, 2001

Granite, 2898

Jasper, 3640

Limestone, 4007

A Limestone Skyscraper (Tribune Tow-  
er), 1357

Marble, 4282-4284

Carrara Marble, 4284

Pentelic Marble, as Used in the Stadium  
at Athens, 2949

The World's Largest Marble Building,  
2411

Onyx, 5212

Sandstone, 6365-6366

Slate, 6638

Travertine, 7254

Durability of Building Stones, 1012

How Building Stone Is Laid: Rubble,  
Field Stone, Ashlar, 1010

Cement, Binder for Concrete, 1270

Early Cements, 1272

Age of Portland Cement, 1272

Processes of Construction, 1273-1282

Concrete

How It Is Made, 1597

Conditioning and Hardening, 1598



Its Many Uses, 1598  
 Reinforced Concrete and Concrete Blocks, 1598  
 Architectural Forms Made of Concrete, 1599  
 Copper, 1666-1669  
 Galvanized Iron, 2669-2670  
 Glass  
   Window Glass, 2834  
   Plate Glass, 2838-2841  
   Stained Glass, 6792, 6794  
 Insulating Material, 3469  
 Iron and Steel, 3534  
 Lumber 4152-4153  
   Timbers for Framing, Common Boarding, Shipboard, Matched Boards, Siding, Shingles, Planks, Laths, 4153  
   Kinds of Building Lumber  
     Arbor Vitae, 346  
     Beech, 683  
     Butternut, 1050-1051  
     Catalpa, 1238  
     Cypress (Bald), 1799  
     Douglas Spruce, or Fir, 6783, 5246, 4152  
     Eucalyptus, 2313  
     Hard Maple, 4278  
     Oaks, 5128-5131  
     Palm, 5320-5321  
     Palmyra Palm, 5323  
     Pines, 5620-5622  
     Redwood, 6501  
     Tulip Tree, 7291  
     Walnut, 7586-7587  
 Nails, 4802  
 Nickel, 5022  
 Plumbing, 5663  
 Putty, 5891  
 Shingles, 6561  
 Staff, 6792  
 Stucco, 6881  
 Terra Cotta, 7113  
   A Skyscraper Surfaced with Terra Cotta (Wrigley), 1357  
 Tiles  
   As Used in an Entrance to a Home, 1458  
 Tin Plate, 7181  
 Wire, 7800  
 Wire Glass, 7801  
 Zinc (Sheet Zinc), 7974  
 Materials for Interior Finishing  
   Burlap, 1028  
   Calcimine, 1072  
   Leather Substitutes, 3912  
   Paint, 5298

Plaster, 5650-5651  
 Varnish, 7464-7465  
 Wall Paper, 7585-7586  
 [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

### The Building Process

Work of the Architect, 1009, 359  
 Blue Prints, 805-806  
 An Architect's Conception of a Home, 360  
 A Plan for a Bungalow, 1021  
 Building Trades Represented, 1009  
 The Contractors, 1009-1010  
 Building the Substructure  
   Footings, Continuous and Isolated, 1010  
   Supporting Dead, Live, Snow, and Wind Loads, 1010  
   Use of Piles and Cofferdams, 5615, 1531  
 Foundations, 1010  
   Use of Caissons, 1071  
 Building the Superstructure  
   Two Types of Brick Buildings, 1011  
   Distribution of Weight  
     Slip and Lug Sills, 1011  
     The Lintel, 1011  
   Steel Frames, 1011  
 How a Carpenter Builds a House, 1207-1211  
 The Frame: Sills, Corner Posts, Studs, Joists, Plates, Ceiling Beams, Rafters, King Post, Partitions, and Window, Door, Chimney, and Cellar Openings, 1208-1209  
 The Outside: Sheathing, Building Paper, Siding, Corner Boards, Eaves, 1209  
 Shingles and Other Roofing, 6561, 1209  
 The Inside: Floors, Walls, Baseboards, Windows, Doors, Filling, 1209-1210  
 Cutting the Rafters, 1210  
 How the House Is Erected, 1210-1211  
 Fire Escapes, 2433  
 Fireproofing, 2434, 1011  
 The Work of Plastering  
   Preparing the Surfaces, 5649-5650  
   Nailing the Laths, 5650  
   How the Plaster Is Made, 5650  
   The Mortar, 5650-5651  
   Estimating Costs, 5651  
 The Principles of Modern Plumbing, 5663  
   Testing for Leaks, 5664  
 Provision for Heating, 3116-3118  
 Provision for Ventilation, 3118-3119  
   Ventilating Electric Fan, 2369  
 Provision for Inside Conveyance  
   Elevator, 2204-2205  
   Escalator, 2292

## Architectural Design and Decoration

### Architectural Forms

Arcade, 346-347  
 Examples, Old and New  
   Palace of the Doges, Venice, 1994  
   Leaning Tower of Pisa, 5628  
   A Moorish Adaptation, 347

As Used in Santa Barbara, 347  
 Arcade Building in San Salvador, 6348  
 The Arch and Its Parts  
   Voussoirs: Keystone and Skewback, or Springer, 347, 3770

Crown, Haunches, Intrados, Extrados,  
 Impost, Span, Rise, 347  
 The Ancient Lintel, 348  
 Three Types: Semi-Circular, Horseshoe,  
 Lancet, 348  
 Typical Examples  
 Arch of the City Hall, Los Angeles, 4114  
 Memorial Arch at Valley Forge, 7446  
 Washington Arch, New York, 4990  
 Arches of Triumph, Paris, 369, 5374  
 [See, also, *Roman Architecture*, below,  
 and *Arch Bridges*, under *Engineering*,  
 in this GUIDE.]  
 The Column and Its Parts  
 Base, Shaft, Capital, 1578  
 [For columns of the ancients, see *Egyptian*,  
*Greek*, and *Roman Architecture*, below.]  
 Later Use of Columns  
 Interior of Notre Dame, 5094  
 Colonnades of Saint Peter's, 6326  
 Colonnades of the British Museum,  
 970  
 Brandenburg Gate, Berlin, 714  
 Elks' Memorial, Chicago, 2213  
 Hall of Fame, 3021  
 Lincoln Memorial, 4008  
 Rotunda, University of Virginia, 7537  
 Scottish Rite Temple, Guthrie, Okla.,  
 5183  
 Loggia, 4090  
 Pilaster, 5614-5615  
 As Used on the Woolworth Building, 359  
 Pylon, 5892  
 Roofs and Their Embellishment  
 Purpose, Types, Materials, 6183  
 Terms Peculiar to Roofs: Pitch, Run,  
 Rise, 6183  
 Corrugated Roofs of Seoul, 1411  
 Gable Roofs, 6183, 2655-2656  
 Hawthorne's House of the Seven Gables,  
 3090  
 Gables of Medieval France, 7830  
 The Pediment (Low Gable), 5439  
 As Used on the Parthenon, 4811  
 On the Pantheon, Paris, 5376  
 On the Brussels Bourse, 984  
 Hip, Gambrel, and Lean-to Roofs, 6183  
 Mansard Roofs, 6183, 4268, 4269, 5042  
 A Thatched Roof in Scotland, 6442  
 The Dome and Cupola, 2002, 1785  
 Examples of Domes  
 Capitol, Washington, 7636  
 Pantheon, Rome, 362, 5341-5342  
 Pantheon, Paris, 5376  
 Use of Pendentives, 5455  
 As in Mehmedie Mosque, 4381  
 The Vault in Architecture, 364  
 Barrel, Dome, Groin, and Ribbed  
 Vaults, 7469  
 Vault Ornamentation, 7231  
 Vaulted Dungeon of Chillon, 1383  
 The Tower in Architecture, 7227

As an Individual Structure  
 Eiffel Tower, 2156, 5373  
 Mouse Tower, 4702, 2322  
 Refuge of the Bishop of Bingen, 4702  
 Singing Tower  
 The Gift of Edward Bok, 6619, 816  
 Materials and Dimensions, 6619  
 Work of Samuel Yellin, Lee Lawrie,  
 Milton B. Medary, 6619  
 The Carillon and Its Bells, 6621  
 Landscaping, by Frederick Law Olm-  
 sted, 6621  
 As the Tower Appears, 6620  
 Tower of London  
 A Group of Thirteen Towers, 7227,  
 7228  
 Description of White Tower, 7227  
 Chicago: Mather and Tribune Towers,  
 1355, 1357  
 Detroit: Eaton Tower, 1922  
 Minneapolis: Foshay Tower, 4509  
 Pittsburgh: Cathedral of Learning, 367  
 Seattle: Northern Life Tower, 6474  
 Berkeley, Calif.: Sather Tower, 1081  
 Princeton Campus: Cleveland Memo-  
 rial, 5817  
 Yale Campus: Harkness Tower, 7925  
 Towers of Medieval Structures  
 Kronberg Castle, Elsinore, 1895  
 Rheinstein, on the Rhine, 2322  
 Windsor Castle, 7793-7794  
 Entrance to Verdun, 7869  
 Gateway of York, 2247  
 Towers of Modern Buildings  
 Chicago  
 Board of Trade, 1355  
 Roanoke, 1363  
 Wrigley, 1357  
 On McKinlock Campus, 1361  
 Los Angeles: City Hall, 4115  
 Milwaukee: City Hall, 4495  
 New York  
 New York Central, 4995  
 Woolworth, 4983  
 Seattle: L. C. Smith, 6474  
 Memorial Library, Vassar, 7466  
 London: Clock Tower, Houses of Par-  
 liament, 4095  
 Architectural Decoration  
 Acanthus  
 As Used on the Corinthian Column, 1578  
 Arabesque, 338  
 A Bit of Detail, 338  
 Cartouche  
 As Used on the Ionic Column, 1223, 1578  
 Corbel, 1673  
 Dresden-China Ornamentation, 2032  
 Ectype, 2102  
 Finial, 2421  
 As Used on English Cathedrals, 2244  
 Fluting, 2497  
 As Used on Columns, 4428  
 Fresco Painting, 2620

Ceiling of the Vatican Library, 7467  
 Gargoyle, 2693  
 Dragon and Eagle on Notre Dame, 2693  
 Mosaics, 4666-4667  
 Oriel Window, 5258  
 Pendant, 5455  
 Relief Sculpture, 6049-6050

Frieze of the Parthenon, 644, 5402  
 A Hindu Temple, 362  
 Tracery: Geometric, Flowing, Flamboyant,  
 and Fan Tracery, 7231  
 Wood Carving, 7829  
 Carved Fronts on Houses in Medieval  
 Times, 7830

## Religious Architecture

### Christian Architecture

Abbey, 3  
 Cloister, 1488-1489  
 Church Buildings  
   Campanile, 1113  
     Giotto's Bell Tower, Florence, 2472  
     Leaning Tower of Pisa, 5628  
     Campanile of Saint Mark's, 1113, 7484  
 Cathedral  
   What Is a Cathedral? 1243  
   Cathedral-Building of To-Day and Long  
   Ago, 1244  
   Famous Cathedrals and Dimensions,  
   1246  
   Architectural Plan: Transepts, Nave,  
   Aisles, Apse, Choir Stalls, 1246  
   The Crypt, 1765  
 Representative Cathedrals  
   Belgium  
     Brussels, Saint Gudule, 984  
     Louvain, 694  
   Bulgaria: Sophia, 1016  
   Canada: Cathedral of Quebec, 5914  
   England  
     Canterbury, 2244  
     Lincoln, 1245  
     London, Saint Paul's, 1246  
     Oxford, 2244  
     Salisbury, 2244  
     York, 2247  
   France  
     Bourges, 366  
     Paris, Notre Dame, 1244, 5093, 5094,  
     5095  
     Reims, 366, 6047, 6048  
     Strassburg, 1245  
   Germany  
     Berlin, 2771  
     Cologne, 1541, 1540, 1245  
   Italy  
     Florence, Saint Mary's, 2472  
     Milan, 4473, opposite 4472  
     Rome, the Lateran, 3884  
     Venice, Saint Mark's, 6321-6322,  
     6320  
   Mexico: Mexico City, 4443  
   Panama: Panama City, 5328  
   Russia  
     Leningrad, Saint Isaac's, 6273  
     Moscow, Saint Xavier, 4669  
   Portugal: Lisbon, 5765  
   United States  
     New Orleans, Saint Louis, 4943

New York, Saint John the Divine,  
 4991  
 Saint Paul, Catholic Cathedral, 4517  
 Washington, Saints Peter and Paul,  
 7639  
 Other Churches  
   Christian Science Mother Church, 1414  
   A Mormon Temple, 1142  
   Churches for Lepers, at Carville, 3939,  
   3940  
   Trinity Church, New York, 4984, 4991  
   Little Church 'Round the Corner, 4986,  
   4987  
   The Church of Gray's Elegy, 2920  
   Where Shakespeare Lies, 6537  
 Westminster Abbey  
   Origin of the Name, 7715  
   Its Architecture, 7715  
   Tombs of Great Men, 7715, 7717  
   Poets' Corner, 7715, 7717  
   Interior View, 7716  
   Associated Edifices, 7717  
 Sainte Anne de Beaupré, 6305  
 Saint Peter's  
   Architectural Plan, 6325  
   Interior Proportions, 6327  
   The Church and Its Wondrous Dome,  
   6326  
 Church Fixtures and Decoration  
   Altar (Christian), 237  
   Censer, 1282  
   Façade, 2357  
   Font, 2508  
   Frescoes, 2620  
   Mosaics, 4667  
   Interior of Saint Mark's, 6321  
   Priest's Sanctuary, 7830  
   Reliquary, 6166  
   Rose Window: Catherine Wheel, Marigold,  
   Wheel Window, 6208  
   A Rose Window of Notre Dame, 5093,  
   opposite 6794  
   Stained Glass, 6794  
   Some Examples, opposite 6794  
 Church Spires and Towers, 6766-6767, 7227  
   Some Examples  
     Methodist Temple, Chicago, 4422  
     Cologne Cathedral, 1540  
     Milan Cathedral, opposite 4472  
     English Cathedrals, 2244  
 [See, also, *Gothic Architecture*, below.]  
 Jewish Architecture  
   Altar, 237

Synagogue  
 Contents: Holy Ark, Perpetual Lamp,  
 Candlesticks, Furniture, 6984-6985  
 Tabernacle  
 Holy of Holies and Holy Place, 6993  
 Ark of the Covenant, 396  
 Size and Furnishings, 6993-6994  
 Erecting the Tabernacle, 6993  
 Temple of Solomon  
 Work Begun by David, 7092, 1836  
 Completion by Solomon, 7092, 6682  
 Dimensions and Contents, 7092

Coöperation of Hiram of Tyre, 5570  
 The Cedars of Lebanon, 1265-1266  
 Religious Architecture of India, China, and  
 Japan  
 Pagodas, 5296-5297  
 Golden Temple, Amritsar, 3385  
 Hindu Temple at Gwalior, 362  
 Temple of Maha Bodhi, 1000  
 Temple of Heaven, Peking, 1395  
 A Japanese Temple, 3625  
 A Torii Gate, opposite 3621  
 [See, also, *Mohammedan Architecture*, below.]

## Memorial Architecture

Tomb, or Mausoleum  
 Types Adopted by Different Peoples, 7206-7208  
 Egyptian. [See *Egyptian Architecture*, below.]  
 Greek: Mausoleum at Halicarnassus, 7207, 6509  
 Roman  
 Along the Appian Way, 323, 6172  
 Hadrian's Tomb, 3001; opposite 3000  
 Excavated Tombs of Pompeii, 5723  
 Mohammedan. [See *Mohammedan Architecture*, below.]  
 Other Ancient Tombs  
 Absalom's, 10  
 Agamemnon's, 84  
 Tomb of Cyrus, 1799  
 Tomb of Darius, 1829  
 Tomb of Godfrey de Bouillon, 2851  
 Tomb of Rachel, 5933  
 Tomb of Theodoric, 7141  
 Some Modern Tombs  
 Brahms', 7207  
 Grant's, 2905  
 Jackson's, 3602  
 Lenin's, 3931  
 Lincoln's, 4019  
 McKinley's, 4192  
 Polk's, 5707  
 Strauss', 7207  
 Washington's, 4700  
 Wilson's, 7786  
 Tombs of the Unknown Soldiers, 7417  
 United States: Arlington, 7417, 7418, 403-404  
 France: Arc de Triomphe, 7417, 7418, 369  
 Great Britain: Westminster Abbey, 7417, 7418, 7716  
 Italy: Terrace of the Monument to Victor Emmanuel II, 7417, 7418, 7516  
 Belgium: Colonnade of the Congress, 7417, 7418, 984  
 Monuments and Memorials to the Great  
 Astor Column, 466  
 To Robert Burns, 1035  
 To George Rogers Clark, 1455  
 D. A. R. Memorial, 1833

Hall of Fame, 3021  
 To President Harding, 7455  
 To Andrew Jackson, 4127  
 Monument to Andrew Johnson, 3688  
 To Lafayette, 1007  
 To Lee, 3920  
 Lincoln Memorial, 4008  
 In Grant Park, Chicago, 4019  
 In Newark, N. J. 4011  
 Masonic Memorial to Washington, 4323  
 To the Signers of the Mecklenburg Declaration, 5061  
 To Nelson, 2250  
 Pilgrims' Memorial, 4324  
 To Scott, 2108  
 Statuary Hall, 6816-6817  
 The Strauss Memorial, 7526  
 To Victor Emmanuel II, 7516  
 To Seth Warner, 7601  
 To Longfellow, Westminster Abbey, 7715  
 Washington Monument, 7657  
 To Marcus Whitman, 7633  
 To the Round-the-World Fliers, 6475  
 To the Victims at Cawnpore, 6496  
 Honoring Historic Events  
 Battle of Bunker Hill, 31  
 The Founding of Belgium, 984  
 Fort Dearborn Massacre, 2544  
 World War Memorial, Hamilton, Ont., 3027  
 World War Memorial, Indianapolis, 3395  
 Column of July, 3709  
 World War Memorial, Kansas City, 3745  
 Confederate Monument, Louisville, 3763  
 Battle Monument, Leipzig, 3927  
 Pennsylvania Memorial, Gettysburg, 5473  
 On the Plains of Abraham, 5918  
 Battle of Lexington, 6076  
 Lion of Lucerne, 6973  
 Battleship Maine Memorial, 6740  
 World War Cenotaph, Toronto, 7215  
 Battle of Bennington, 7498  
 Yorktown, 7540  
 The Confederacy's Last Stand, 7618  
 Mound of the Lion, Waterloo, 7669  
 Canada at Ypres, 7856  
 Landing of First American Troops, 7877  
 American Victory at Cantigny, 7877  
 Wilkes-Barre Massacre, 7914

## Architecture of the Drama and the Opera

### Theaters, 7136-7140

Modern Theater: Auditorium, Balconies,  
Orchestra, Stage, Dressing Rooms, Flies,  
Exits, Curtain, 7136

Foyer, 2556

Acoustics, 7138, 22

Ventilation, 7138, 3119

Hippodrome, 3183

European Theaters and Opera Houses

At Valetta, Malta Island, 4241

Grand Opera House, Paris, 5374

Ekaterinsky Theater in Leningrad, 6265

Vienna Opera House, 7525

Richard Wagner Theater, Bayreuth, 7577

Interiors of European Theaters, 7139

In the New World

American Theaters, 7140

Historic Ford's Theater, 4018

Greek Theater, Berkeley, 1089

Interior of a Modern Moving-Picture

Theater, 7139

Municipal Theater in Brazil, 927

Ancient Theaters

Greek: Early Crude Form and Develop-  
ment, 7138

Theater of Dionysus, Athens, 7137

Theater at Epidaurus, 7137

Roman: Compared with the Greek; Cavea  
and Skene, 7138

In Shakespeare's Time

Early Performances in the Village Inn,  
7138

First Public Theater, built by James  
Burbadge, 7138

The Famous Globe Theater, 7138-7139

The Blackfriars, 7139

Meaning of "Pit," 7139

## The History of Architecture

### Egyptian Architecture

Dignity, Solemnity, Massiveness, 360

The Pyramids, Royal Tombs of the Dawn  
of History, Built by Slave Labor, 5893-  
5896

The Gizeh Group, 5893, 6508

The Great Pyramid of Khufu, or Cheops,  
5895, 1342

Pyramids of Chephren and Mycerinus,  
5894

The Step Pyramid of Sakhara, 5894

Others, 5896

Rock-Hewn Tombs, 2150, 7206

The Temples, with Massed Columns

Temple of Luxor, 361

Columns of the Temple at Karnak, 2153

Pylon, or Gateway, 2153

Temple at Philae, 2153

Lotus Capitals of Egyptian Columns, 1579

The Obelisks, Four-Sided Monoliths, 5138

Cleopatra's Needles, 1465, 1467

Erected by Thothmes III, 7158

The "Needle" in Central Park, 1465

The "Needle" in London, 4095

An Ancient Landmark at Heliopolis, 5138

The Monolith of the Place de la Concorde,  
5377

The Obelisk in the Piazza of Saint Peter's,  
6326

How the Obelisks Were Made, 5138

### Assyrian and Babylonian Architecture

Huge Temples and Palaces of Sun-Dried

Brick, 361, 461, 561-562

How Sennacherib's Palace Looked, 2239

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon, 560, 4866

### Greek Architecture

Faultless Proportion, Delicate Curves, Grace,  
Harmony, 361

Use of Sculpture and Painting, 361

The Three Greek Orders, 1579

Doric Column, Plain, Slightly Tapering

Capital: Abacus, Echinus, 1579

Entablature: Architrave, Frieze, Cor-  
nice, 1579

Ionic Column, Slender, Graceful, Decora-  
tive, 1579

Corinthian Column, with Elaborate Cap-  
ital, 1579

Use of the Acanthus Leaf, 14

Examples of the Greek Orders

Doric

Parthenon, the Perfection of Architec-  
ture, 361

Size and Decoration, 5402

Work of Phidias, Ictinus, Callicrates,  
5403

A Modern Reproduction, 4811

Theseum, 7147

Temple to Poseidon, 4877

Ionic

Erechtheum, 2285

Caryatides, 1225

Temple of Nike Apteros, 5028, 5029

Mausoleum at Halicarnassus, 6508

Greek Theaters. [See above.]

Roman Architecture, Impressive for Size, 361-  
362

Roman Orders: Tuscan, Doric, Ionic, Co-  
rinthian, Composite, 1579

Roman Ionic: Temple of Apollo, Pompeii,  
5721

Roman Corinthian: Portico of the Pan-  
theon, 362

Roman Composite: Capitals on the Arch  
of Titus, 7190

Typical Roman Structures

Amphitheaters, 2239

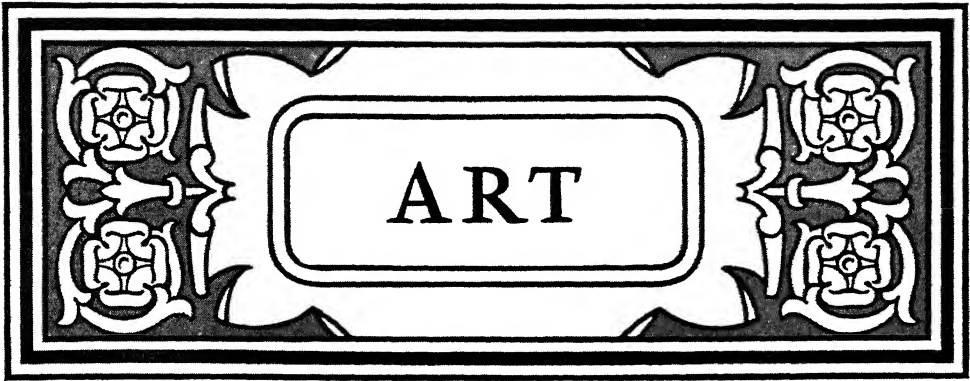
The Arch, 362

As Employed in Aqueducts, 337, 6729  
 Aqueduct Built by Claudius, 337  
 Aqueduct at Segovia, 6729  
 The Arcade, a Series of Arches, 347  
 As Employed in the Colosseum, 1565-1566  
 Use of the Arch in Bridge-Building, opposite 3000  
 The Arch as Used in the Construction of Colossal Baths, 651, 3001  
 In Sewer-Building, as the Cloaca Maxima, 6177  
 Triumphal Arches  
   Arch of Constantine, 1625  
   Arch of Titus, 7189, 7190  
   Arch of Trajan, 7240, 7242  
 The Atrium, 494  
   Typical Examples, Showing the Impluvium, 493, 5723, 4428  
 The Basilica, 639  
   An Entrance to a Basilica in Pompeii, 5720  
 The Roman Circus, 1434  
   Circus Maximus, 1435  
 Roman Use of the Dome  
   As in the Pantheon, 5341-5342, 2239, 362  
 The Roman Forum  
   Early Character, 2547  
   Architecture under the Emperors, 2547-2548  
   As Revealed by Excavation, opposite 2547  
 Other Forums, 2548  
   Trajan's Forum and a Priceless Relic, 7242, 7241  
**Byzantine Architecture**  
   Elaborate Interiors and Free Use of Brightly Colored Mosaics, 362, 1056  
   The Erection of the Dome on Square Walls by Means of Pendentives, 362-363, 5455  
   Mehemdie Mosque, 363, 4381  
   Details of Its Architecture, 4380  
   Saint Mark's Cathedral, 6320  
   Architectural Plan and Mosaics, 6321  
   Imposing Byzantine Towers, opposite 869  
**Mohammedan Architecture** (also Moorish or Saracenic)  
   A Typically Religious Architecture, 4568  
   Characteristics: Use of Domes, Arches, and Vaulting, Brilliant Colors and Elaborate Geometric Designs (Arabesques), 4569, 338  
   Architectural Forms: Mosque, Minaret, Tomb, Inn, Hospital, Bazar, Oratory, Fountain, Palace, 4569  
   Representative Structures  
     Alhambra, Palace and Fortress, 220  
     Bazar, 656  
     The Market Place of Mosul, 3515  
     Citadel of Cairo, 1070  
     Gateway in the Walls of Teheran, 5498  
     Kaaba, 3729

Mosque, for Prayer and Worship, 4674  
   Private Mosque of Former Turkish Sultans, 1627  
   Sultan Achmed Mosque, Constantinople, 7313  
   Great Mosque, Delhi, 1884  
   Mosque on the Site of Jonah's Tomb, 3694  
 Minaret, Prayer Tower, 4496  
   The Call to Prayer, 4496  
   Minarets in Baghdad, 3516  
   A Minaret in Cairo, 1070  
 Taj Mahal, the Costliest Private Tomb  
   Architecture and Decoration, 7007  
   Shah Jehan, Its Builder, 6524  
   A View in Color, opposite 7007  
 A Mohammedan Cemetery, 4568  
 Tombs of the Sultans of Morocco, 4658  
 Seraglio, 6501  
 Flat-Topped Roofs of Damascus Homes, 6988  
   A Characteristic Moorish City, 4659  
**Romanesque Architecture**  
   Early Churches Based on the Roman Basilica, 363, 639  
   Pillars, Clerestory, Apse, 363  
   Development of the Romanesque, 363-364  
   Adaptation of the Groined Vault, 364, 7469  
**Norman Architecture**  
   Cross-Groined Vault and Diagonal Ribs, 5042  
   Interior Passageways in Thick Walls, 5042  
   Donjon Type of Castle, 5042  
   The Castle and Its Parts: Moat, Drawbridge, Wicket, Merlon, Embrasures, Rampart, Portcullis, Donjon, Turret, Escutcheon, 1232-1233  
**Examples of Romanesque Architecture**  
   Baptistry, Cathedral, and Campanile of Pisa, 5628  
   Architecture of the Leaning Tower, 5627-5628  
   Tower of London, 7227-7228  
   Harlech Castle, Wales, 7579  
**Gothic, the Expression of a New Life**  
   Emerson's Characterization, 364  
   Characteristics: Pointed Arches, Piers, Flying Buttresses; Impressive Height, 364  
   Ribbed Vaults, 7469  
   As in the Interior of Notre Dame, 5094  
**Characteristic Ornamentation**  
   Corbel, 1673  
   Gargoyle, 2693  
   Rose Window, 6208  
   Tracery, 7231  
**Flamboyant, French Gothic, 2462**  
**Tudor, a Phase of English Perpendicular Gothic, 7289**  
   Oriel Window, 5258  
   Town Houses of Tudor Style, 2248  
   Shakespeare's Birthplace, 6529  
**Famous Gothic Churches**  
   Bourges Cathedral, 366

- Canterbury Cathedral, 2244
- Cologne Cathedral, 1540
- Cathedral of Saint Mary, Florence, 2472
- Lincoln Cathedral, 1245
- Milan Cathedral, opposite 4472
- Notre Dame Cathedral, 5093
- Reims Cathedral, 6048
- Saint Gudule, Brussels, 984
- Westminster Abbey, 7714
- Other Gothic Structures
  - Doges' Palace, Venice, 1994
  - Town Hall, Louvain, 694
- Renaissance Architecture**, Reflecting an Awakened Interest in Roman Art, 364
  - Beginning in Italy, with Brunelleschi, 982-983
  - The Revival in France, and Elsewhere, 366
- Characteristic Structures
  - Saint Peter's, Rome, 6326
    - An Analysis of the Dome, 366
  - Palace of the Medici, Florence, 4374
  - Pitti Palace, Florence, 5634
  - Saint Paul's, London, 4095
  - Château of Chambard and Chenonceaux, France, 2323
  - The Louvre, Paris, 4138
  - Palaces of the Tuileries and Versailles, France, 5372, 7509
    - Architecture of the Palace of Versailles, 7505
  - Petit Trianon, France, 4291
  - Escorial, Spain, 2292
- Modern Architecture**, 366-368
  - Adaptations of Former Architectural Modes
    - Classic Greek
      - Library of Athens (Doric), 2949
      - Field Museum, Chicago (Ionic), 2411
      - British Museum, London (Ionic Portico), 970
      - Virginia State Capitol (Ionic), 7535
      - Girard College, Philadelphia (Corinthian), 2813
      - Columns of Statuary Hall (Corinthian), 6816
  - Modern Gothic
    - Houses of Parliament, London, 5391

- Medical Arts Building, San Antonio, 7121
- Saint John the Divine Cathedral, 4991
- Tribune Tower, Chicago, 1357
- Modern Renaissance
  - United States Capitol, 1607
  - Library of Congress, 3974
  - Palace of Fine Arts, Chicago, 7848
- American Types of Architecture
  - Mission Architecture, 1092
    - Buildings of Stanford University, 6801-6802
  - San Juan Capistrano, 1092, 1093
  - San Fernando, 1092, 1093
  - Ramona's Marriage Place, 3605
  - A Mission Church in New Mexico, 4938
  - A Railway Station in San Antonio, 6361
- Colonial Architecture
  - A Colonial Kitchen, 3031
  - Mount Vernon, 4699-4700
  - White House, 3226, 7748
    - Its Architecture: South Portico, East, Blue, Red and Green Rooms, Private and Official Apartments, 7747, 7750
    - Interior Views, 7748, 7749
  - Colonial Religious Architecture, 7500
  - Monticello, Jefferson's Home (Southern Colonial), 3649
- The Era of the Skyscraper
  - Step-Back (or Set-Back) Style, 368
  - Bell Telephone Buildings: Saint Louis, 367; Cleveland, 1477
  - Chanin and New York Life, New York, 4995
  - Paramount, New York, 4993
- Air Rights
  - Utilization of Space over Railroad Tracks, 152-154
  - Merchandise Mart and Daily News Building, Chicago, 153
  - New York Central Building, New York, 4995
- [For Prehistoric and American Indian Architecture, see Outlines on *Anthropology*, *Manners and Customs* and *Archaeology*, in this GUIDE.]



## Principles and Definitions

- Art and the Arts, 422
- Scope of the Arts, 422
- Arts and Crafts, 437
- Domestic Art, 2003
- [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Esthetics, 2300
- Fine Arts, 2419-2420
- Household Arts in Education
- [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Industrial Art, 3433

## Sculpture

- Methods and Processes
- Sculpture in the Round
- The Clay Model and the Cast, 6455, 1231
- Reproduction of the Figure in Stone or Metal, 6456
- Colossus, 1565, 1567
- Relief Sculpture, 6049-6050
- Alto-Relievo, 238
- Bas-Relief, 644-645, 3187, 6038
- Mezzo-Relievo, 4450-4451
- Intaglio, 3473
- Sculptural Materials
- Alabaster, 165
- Bronze, 975
- Clay, 1458
- Modeling, 1991.
- Gold, 2855
- Granite, 2898
- Ivory, 3592
- Marble, 4282
- Carrara Marble, 4284
- Plaster of Paris, 5651
- Porcelain, 5741
- Stucco, 6881
- Terra Cotta, 7113
- Wax, 7684

## The Story of Sculpture

- Sculpture's Crude Origin, 6455
- The Cave Dwellers, 1262
- The Sculpture of Old Egypt
- Beginnings and Development, 6456
- Examples of Egyptian Sculpture
- Ammon and Mut (bas-relief), 262
- Colossi of Memnon, 4386, 2153
- Colossi of Rameses II, 2153, 5993
- Isis (bas-relief), 3564
- Merenpthah (bas-relief), 5531
- A Queen of Old Egypt (bust), 2153
- The Sphinx, 2153, 5895, 6758-6759
- Thothmes III, 7158
- Tutankhamen, 7329
- The Sculpture of Assyria, 461
- Winged Bull, 461, 7795
- Winged, Man-Headed Lion, 6457
- The Sculpture of Babylonia
- Bas-Relief of Warriors in Battle, 561
- Lion from Mimrud, 561
- Greek Sculpture
- Archaic Period, 6456-6457
- Female Head, Temple of Aphaea, 6457
- Attic, the Period of Glory, 6457
- Attica, 497
- Athens Under Pericles, 5487-5488
- Myron's Discus Thrower, 6457, 1958
- Phidias, the Master Sculptor, 5535
- The Elgin Marbles, 2205-2207
- Frieze for the Parthenon, 644, 6455 (panel)
- The Olympian Zeus, 3591, 5195
- Contemporary Sculptors
- Polyclitus and Paeonius, 6457
- Caryatides of the Erechtheum, 1225, 2285
- Later Attic School
- Scopas: Work on the Mausoleum at Halicarnassus, 6509, 7207
- Praxiteles, 5796, 6458
- Faun of Praxiteles (doubtful), 2383



- Hermes Group, 5796, 6458, 5195  
 Typical Statuary of the Period  
   The Villa Ludovisi Mars, 4303  
   Niobe, 5033  
 Lysippus, Leader of a New School, 4166, 6458  
 Hellenistic Period, 6458  
   Rhodian School  
     Colossus of Rhodes, 1565, 6097, 6508  
     Farnese Bull, 2371-2373  
     Laocoön, 3873-3874  
   Pergamene School  
     The Dying Gaul, 6458  
   Famous Hellenistic Masterpieces  
     Venus de Milo, 7489-7490  
     Winged Victory (Nike), 7795  
**Roman Sculpture, 6458**  
   Development of Bust Portraiture, 1039  
   Typical Examples, 1066, 1424, 7165, 7189  
   Relief Sculpture on Public Works  
     Arch of Constantine, 1625  
       Soldiers of the Roman Legion, 3923  
     Arch of Titus, 7190  
     Arch and Column of Trajan, 7240-7242  
   Characteristic Statuary  
     Agrippina the Younger, 106  
     Apollo Belvedere, 318  
**Period of Decline, 6459**  
**Byzantine Sculpture, 1056**  
**Italian Sculpture, 6459**  
   Thirteenth-Century Revival  
     Niccola Pisano, 6459  
     Giovanni Pisano, Founder of Italian Gothic Sculpture, 6459  
     Andrea Pisano's Reliefs on Giotto's Campanile, 6459, 2472  
     Andrea Orcagna, 6459  
   The Early Renaissance, 6459  
     Donatello, 2010  
       Bust of a Young Man, 6458  
       Statue of Saint John, 2010  
     Lorenzo Ghiberti, 2799  
       The Bronze Doors of the Baptistery, in Florence, 2799, 2474  
     Luca and Della Robbia, 6146  
   The High Renaissance, 6459  
     Michelangelo, 4453-4456  
       Bacchus, 6459  
       Head of Brutus, 985  
       Head of David, 1834  
       Statue of Moses, 4671  
       Saint John, Lorenzo de' Medici, The Slave, 4455  
       Masterpieces in Florence, 2474  
     Benvenuto Cellini, 1268-1269  
       Perseus with the Medusa's Head, 6460  
   Italy Since the Renaissance  
     Alessandro Algardi, 206  
     Lorenzo Bernini, Master of the Baroque Style, 6459  
       Apollo and Daphne, 1826  
     Antonio Canova and the Classicist Revival, 1176, 6459  
     Pauline (Bonaparte), Borghese, 2325  
     Perseus with the Head of the Medusa, 5492  
     Later Italian Sculptors, 6460  
**French Sculpture, 6460**  
   Michel Colombe, of Tours, 6460  
   Patronage of Francis I, 2590  
     Jean Goujon, 2879  
       Diana and the Stag, 6462  
       Tritons and Nereids, 2880  
   Patronage of Louis XIV, 4120  
     Building of the Palace of Versailles, 7505  
     Work of Pierre Puget, Francis Girardon, Charles Lebrun, 6460  
   Jean Antoine Houdon, 3260  
     Bust Portraiture, 1039  
   Joseph Bosio, 6460  
     Four Horses on the Triumphal Arch on the Place du Carrousel, 5374  
   Pierre Jean David, 1836  
   François Rude, 6235-6236  
     Bas-Relief on the Triumphal Arch of the Star, 369  
     Mercury Fastening His Sandal, 4408  
     Neapolitan Fisher Boy, 6237  
   Antoine L. Barye, 6460  
     The Centaur, 1284  
   Jean Baptiste Carpeaux, 6460  
     Sculptures on the Opera House, Paris, 5374  
   Henri Chapu's Joan of Arc, 2325  
   Frederic A. Bartholdi, 3965  
     Statue of Liberty, 3963-3965  
   Auguste Rodin, 6158-6159  
     Age of Bronze, 2325  
     The Inner Voice, 6461  
     The Thinker, 6158  
**German Sculpture, 6460**  
   Early Period  
     Adam Krafft and Peter Vischer, 6460  
       Vischer's King Arthur, 430  
     Veit Stoss, 6870  
   Later Sculptors  
     Christian D. Rauch, 6124  
     Ernst Rietschel, 6124  
     Johannes Schilling, 6412  
**English Sculpture, 6460-6461**  
   Early Sculptors: Nicholas Stone, Thomas Banks, John Flaxman, 6461  
   Classical School: John Gibson, John H. Foley, Patrick MacDowell, 6461  
   School of Naturalism: Alfred Stevens, Sir Frederick Leighton, George F. Watts, 6461  
     Biography of Leighton, 3926-3927  
   Later Sculptors: Thomas Brock, William H. Thornycroft, Alfred Gilbert, Edward O. Ford, John M. Swan, 6461  
     Biography of Swan, 6946  
   Typical Statuary  
     Alfred the Great, 2256  
     Sir Francis Drake, 2021  
     Edward the Confessor, 2134  
     Kitchener Memorial, 3799  
     Peter Pan, in Kensington Gardens, 630

Robert Raikes, 5972  
 Memorial Statuary in Westminster, 7716  
**Danish Sculpture**, 6461  
 Bertel Thorwaldsen, 7157-7158  
 Ganymede and Jupiter's Eagle, 2681  
 Lion of Lucerne, 6973  
 Saint Paul, 5419  
**Sculpture of the United States**, 6461  
 Thomas Ball, 583  
 George G. Barnard, 624  
 I Feel Two Natures Struggling Within  
 Me, 624  
 Paul W. Bartlett, 631-632  
 Gutzon Borglum, 866  
 Seated Figure of Lincoln, 4011  
 Mount Rushmore Memorial, 4698  
 Stone Mountain, 6848  
 Solon Borglum, 866  
 Henry K. Brown, 978  
 Thomas Crawford, 1735-1736  
 Freedom, on the Capitol Dome, 7637  
 Daniel C. French, 2606-2607  
 Lincoln Statue, Lincoln Memorial, 4009  
 The Minuteman, at Concord, 4526  
 Horatio Greenough, 2961  
 Design of Bunker Hill Monument, 6080  
 Harriet Hosmer, 3256  
 Henry A. Lukeman, 4144-4145  
 Stone Mountain Memorial, 6848  
 Frederick MacMonnies, 4195

Statue of Nathan Hale, 3016  
 William O. Partridge, 5405-5406  
 Hiram Powers, 5792-5793  
 John Rogers, 6162  
 Randolph Rogers, 6162  
 Augustus Saint Gaudens, 6306-6307  
 Grief, 6307  
 Lincoln Statue in Grant Park, Chicago,  
 4019  
 The Puritan, 5886  
 Memorial to Stevenson, 6833  
**Lorado Taft**, 6998  
 Black Hawk, 781  
 Spirit of the Great Lakes, 6997  
 Alma Mater, on Campus of the University  
 of Illinois, 7415  
 John Q. A. Ward, 7595  
**Emil R. Zettler**  
 A Detail in Alto-Relievo, 238  
 Job, 3680  
 Example of Majolica Statuary, 4234  
**Sculptures by American Women**  
 Buffalo Bill, by Mrs. Harry Payne (Ger-  
 trude Vanderbilt) Whitney, 7910  
 Joan of Arc, by Anna V. Hyatt, 3678  
 Young Pan, by Janet Scudder, 5324  
 Bas-Relief of Roosevelt, by Laura G.  
 Fraser, 6195  
 Statuary Hall, 6816  
**Modern Movements in Sculpture**, 6461-6462

## Painting

**Beauty and Inspiration in Painting**, 5299  
**How to Study a Picture**  
 Theme, Composition, Purpose, Message,  
 5299-5300  
**One Hundred Famous Paintings**, 5301-5305  
**The Twelve Greatest Paintings**, 5308  
 Assumption of the Virgin by Titian, 459  
 Aurora, by Guido Reni, 505  
 Beatrice Cenci, by Guido Reni, 2979  
 Last Communion of Saint Jerome, by Do-  
 menchino, 2002  
 Descent from the Cross, by Rubens, 6234  
 Descent from the Cross, by Volterra, 5308  
 Holy Night, by Correggio, 1699  
 Immaculate Conception, by Murillo, 4747  
 Last Judgment, by Michelangelo, 4454  
 Last Supper, by Da Vinci, opposite 7530  
 Sistine Madonna, by Raphael, 5996  
 Transfiguration, by Raphael, 3670  
**Influential Movements in Painting**  
 Barbizon Painters, 619  
 Jean Baptiste Corot (French), 1696  
 Dance of the Nymphs, 1697  
 George Inness (American), 3455  
 Path Through the Florida Woods, 3456  
 Philippe A. Jeanron (French), 3645  
 Jean François Millet (French) 4488-4489  
 The Angelus, 281-283  
 The Gleaners, opposite 4488

Feeding Her Birds, opposite 5301  
 Cubist School (Chiefly French), 1781-1782  
 Dance at the Spring, by Picabia, 1781  
 Work of Pablo Picasso (Spanish) and  
 Marcel Duchamps, 1781  
 Impressionist School (French), 3370-3371  
 Edouard Manet, 4254  
 Claude Monet, 4581  
 The Church of Vetheuil, 3371  
 Degas and Pissaro, 3372  
 Renoir, 3371, 3372  
 Pre-Raphaelites (English), 5799  
 Sir Edward Burne-Jones, 1032-1033  
 Circe, 2954  
 Summer, Winter, 5800  
 [William] Holman Hunt  
 Finding Christ in the Temple, 3664  
 Pot of Basil, 5800  
 Sir John Everett Millais: Huguenot  
 Lovers, 4486  
 Dante G. Rossetti, 6211  
 The Blessed Damsel, between 5306 and  
 5307  
**Famous Themes in Painting**  
 The Annunciation, 295  
 As Painted by Rubens, 2656  
 The Assumption, 460  
 As Painted by Titian, 459  
 The Holy Family, 3201

The Madonna and Her Babe, 4205-4208  
 Typical Madonna Paintings  
   Bellini's, 4208, 705  
   Giotto's, 2811  
   Raphael's, 5995-5997, 4206  
   Titian's, 7186  
 Other Madonna Painters  
   Fra Angelico, 281

Sandro Botticelli, 893  
 Giovanni Cimabue, 1425  
 Correggio, 1698-1699, 4208  
 Hans Holbein, 3194  
 Fra Filippo Lippi, 4041  
 Murillo, 4746  
 Andrea del Sarto, 6390  
 Leonardo da Vinci, 7530-7531

### The Story of Painting

**The First Picture-Making, 5300**  
 Paintings on Walls of Caves in the Stone Age, 6845  
**Ancient Greek Painters**  
   Apelles, 316  
   Parrhasius, 5398  
   Zeuxis, 7973  
**Early Christian Art, 5300**  
 Symbols in the Catacombs, 1236  
**Rise and Development of the Italian Schools**  
 The Early Florentine Painters, 5300  
   Giovanni Cimabue, the Apostle of Naturalism, 1425  
   Giotto, Cimabue's Great Pupil, 2811  
   The Madonna, 2811  
**Florentine Painters of the Fifteenth Century, 5300**  
   Fra Angelico, the Master of Religious Painting, 281  
   Group of Angels (Uffizi Gallery), 281  
   Fra Filippo Lippi and Son, 4041  
   Domenico Ghirlandajo, 2799-2800  
   Sandro Botticelli, 893  
   Spring, opposite 5306  
**Florentine Painters of the High Renaissance, 5300, 5306**  
   Leonardo da Vinci, 7530-7531  
   The Last Supper, opposite 7530  
   Mona Lisa, opposite 5307  
   Andrea del Sarto, "the Faultless Painter," 6390  
   Fra Bartolommeo, 632  
   The Resurrection, 6067  
 Michelangelo, Supreme Florentine Artist of the High Renaissance, 4453-4456  
   The Three Fates, 2379  
   Frescoes in the Vatican, 2620  
**The Venetian School and the Development of Color**  
   Giovanni Bellini, 705-706  
   Madonna, 4207  
   Portrait of Himself, 706  
   Giorgione, 2810-2811  
   Titian, the Supreme Colorist, 7185-7186  
   The Assumption, 459  
   Mary with Infant, 7186  
   Bacchus Finds Ariadne, 7186  
 Tintoretto, 7182-7183  
   Christ with Mary and Martha, 7182  
   The Worship of the Golden Calf, between 5300 and 5301  
 Paul Veronese, 7504-7505

Portrait of a Venetian Woman, 7504  
**The Umbrian School**  
 Perugino, 5512-5513  
**The Lombard School**  
 Correggio, 1698-1699  
**The Roman School**  
 Raphael, "Prince of Italian Painting," 5995-5997  
   The Sistine Madonna, 5996  
   Saint Cecilia, 1265  
   The Miraculous Draft of Fishes, 3664  
   The Transfiguration, 3670  
**Painting in the Seventeenth Century, 5306**  
**The Naturalist School**  
   Caravaggio, 1189  
   Head of Medusa, 4380  
   Salvator Rosa, 6201  
**The Eclectic School**  
   Founded by the Carracci Family, 1215  
   Domenichino, 2002  
   Guido Reni, 2978-2979  
   Aurora, 505  
   Atalanta's Race, 4798  
   Mater Dolorosa, 2978  
   Luca Giordano, 2810  
**Spanish Painting**  
**Seventeenth-Century Masters, 5306**  
   Velasquez, a Great Naturalist, 7473  
   Aesop, 69  
   Don Sebastian de Morra, 2062  
   The Forge of Vulcan, 7571  
   The Spinners, opposite 5306  
   The Topers, The Surrender of Breda, 7474  
   Philip IV, Marie-Anne of Austria, 7475  
   Murillo, 4746-4748  
   The Immaculate Conception, 4747  
   Francisco de Herrera (the Elder and the Younger), 3166  
**Later Artists**  
   Francisco Goya, 2884  
   Pablo Picasso, 1781  
   Sorolla, 5307  
**Flemish Painting, 5306**  
   The Van Eyck Family, Originators of a New Technique in Oil Painting, 2349  
   Hans Memling, Noted for the Delicacy and Finish of His Work, 4386-4387  
   Peter Paul Rubens, Second Only to Titian as a Colorist, 6231-6234  
   The Annunciation, 2656  
   The Wrath of Achilles, 3349

- Ceres, 4791  
 The Crucifixion, 3669  
 Judith, 3706  
 Minerva and Arachne, 4795  
 The Chained Prometheus, 5840  
 Pluto Seized Proserpina, 5849  
 The Abduction of the Sabine Women, 6291  
 Saint George and the Dragon, 6308  
 The Queen of Sheba Visits Solomon, 6682  
 The Death of Achilles, 7279  
 The Judgment of Paris, 7280  
 Anthonis Van Dyck, a Master of Portraiture, 7460-7461  
   Triple Portrait Study of Charles I, 1313  
   Peter Stuyvesant, 6883  
   The De Nole Family, 7461  
   The Earl of Warwick, 7623  
 David Teniers (Elder and Younger), Painters of Everyday Life (Genre), 7093-7094  
**The Dutch School of Realistic Painting, 5306**  
   Rembrandt, Portraitist and "King of Shadows," 6053-6055  
   The Night Watch, 6055  
   Portrait of a Young Man, 6054  
   Rembrandt's Mother, 6054  
   Rembrandt Leaning on a Stone Sill, opposite 5300  
 Frans Hals, Depicter of Types, 3023-3024  
   The Laughing Cavalier, opposite 5300  
 Jan Steen, the "Laughing Philosopher," 6823  
 Jacob Ruysdael, 6285-6286  
   A Landscape, 6285  
   The Windmill, between 5300 and 5301  
 Meindert Hobbema, 3188  
 Paul Potter, a Painter of Animals, 5306  
 Modern Dutch Painters  
   Sir Laurence Alma-Tadema (Dutch-English), 231  
   A Reading from Homer, 3211  
   Josef Israels, 3569  
   Mother and Children, 3570  
**German Painting, 5306**  
   Albrecht Dürer, the Great Master of the German Renaissance, 2056-2057  
   Charlemagne, 1312  
   Saint Jerome, 3657  
   The Four Apostles, 4742  
   Hans Holbein (Elder and Younger), 3194-3195  
   Examples of the Younger Holbein's Art:  
     Portrait of a Young Man, 3194; Erasmus, 2284  
 The Nazarene Painters, 5307  
   Peter von Cornelius, 1693  
   Julius Schnorr von Carolsfeld, 6414-6415  
 The Modern School, 5307  
   Wilhelm von Kaulbach, 3749  
     Scenes from Faust, 2767  
     The Pied Piper, 5604  
   Heinrich Hofmann, Painter of Religious Subjects, 3190  
   Christ Blessing Little Children, 3667  
   Head of Christ, 3662
- French Painting, 5307**  
 The Earlier Period  
   Nicolas Poussin, Originator of the Classic Element in French Art, 5791  
   Venus Leads Aeneas, 2278  
   Claude Gellée (Claude of Lorraine), 2710-2711  
   Landing of Aeneas, 2278  
   Antoine Watteau, the Interpreter of Social Graces, 7682  
   Jean Honoré Fragonard, 2567  
   Jacques Louis David, Father of the Modern School, 1836  
   The Coronation of Napoleon I, 830  
   The Coronation of Josephine, 3701  
**The Nineteenth Century and Later**  
   Jules Bastien-Lepage, 646  
   Rose Bonheur, 836-837  
   The Horse Fair, 837  
   Jules Adolphe Breton, 941-942  
   The Song of the Lark, 943  
   Fernand Corman, 1679  
   Paul Gustave Doré, 2013  
   Jean Léon Gerôme, 2790  
   Napoleon before the Sphinx, 832  
   The Death of Caesar, 1068  
   Diogenes, 1953  
   The Gladiator, 2828  
   Henri Lerolle, 3042  
   Arrival of the Shepherds, 3663  
   Jean Louis Meissonnier, 4382  
   Napoleon in 1814, 831  
   James Joseph Tissot, 7183  
   Vigée-Lebrun, 7528  
 [For artists of the Barbizon, Cubist, and Impressionist schools, see elsewhere in this Outline.]
- English Painting, 5307**  
 The Eighteenth Century  
   William Hogarth, "the Molière of Painting," 3192-3193  
   Thomas Gainsborough, Portraitist and Landscapist, 2659  
   Mrs. Siddons, 2659  
   Portrait of Himself, 2659  
   Sir Joshua Reynolds, "the Van Dyck of the Eighteenth Century," 6084  
   The Duchess of Devonshire, 6085  
   Miss Simplicity, opposite 5301  
   George Romney, 6181  
   James Northcote, 5064  
   J. M. W. Turner, Preëminent in the Medium of Water Color, 7319-7320  
   The Fighting Téméraire, 7319  
**The Nineteenth Century**  
   The Pre-Raphaelites. [See below.]  
   Sir Edwin H. Landseer, Distinguished Animal Painter, 3855-3856  
   The Stag at Bay, 6793  
   Lord Frederick Leighton, 3926-3927  
   Captive Andromache, 3926  
   Greek Girls Playing Ball, 3926  
   Parable of the Ten Virgins, 5355

Perseus on Pegasus, 5441  
 George F. Watts, Interpretation through Allegory, 7682  
 Sir Galahad, 2660  
 Love Triumphant, between 5306 and 5307  
 Hope, 7683  
 Frank Brangwyn, 923-924  
**Painting in the United States, 5307-5308**  
 Edwin A. Abbey, Painter of the Holy Grail Murals, 3  
 The Seat Perilous, 3202  
 John W. Alexander, 199  
 The Evolution of the Book, 852-853  
 Washington Allston, 228  
 George Bellows, 5305, 5307  
 Albert Bierstadt, 735  
 Edwin H. Blashfield, 787  
 George H. Boughton, 895  
 Pilgrims Going to Church, between 5306 and 5307  
 John S. Copley, 1666  
 Winslow Homer, 3212  
 William M. Hunt, 3294  
 George Inness, 3455  
 [See *Barbizon Painters*, above.]  
 George Inness, Jr., 3455  
 John LaFarge, 3837  
 Emanuel Leutze, 3948  
 Washington Crossing the Delaware, 6083

Maxfield Parrish, 5398-5399  
 Charles Wilson Peale, 5430  
 Rembrandt Peale, 5431  
 Coles Phillips, 5563-5564  
 Howard Pyle, 5891-5892  
 Frederic Remington, 6055  
 John S. Sargent, 6389  
 Frieze of the Prophets: Ezekiel, 2355;  
 Hosea, 3255; Isaiah, 3562; Malachi, 4236  
 Gilbert Stuart, 6880-6881  
 George Washington, 7646  
 John Trumbull, 5307  
 Signing of the Declaration of Independence, 1867  
 Surrender of Burgoyne, 6075  
 Battle of Trenton, 6075  
 Washington's Inaugural Address, 7652  
 Benjamin West, 7710  
 The Death of General Wolfe, 7711  
 James McNeill Whistler, 7743-7744  
 Whistler's Mother, 7744  
**Painting in Canada, 5308**  
**Other Countries**  
 Mihály Munkácsy (Hungary), 4744  
 Christ Before Pilate, 3665  
 Milton Dictating to His Daughters, 4493  
 Verestchagin (Russia), 7494  
 Sir David Wilkie (Scotland), 7763  
 A King Scolded by a Peasant, 204  
 Anders Zorn (Sweden), 7986

### The Technique of Painting

**Chiaroscuro, the Handling of Light and Shade, 1350**  
**Crayons and Crayon Paintings (Pastels), 1736**  
**Foreshortening, 2532-2533**  
**Fresco Painting, Executed on Plaster, 2620-2621**  
**Nimbus, or Halo, 5031-5032**  
**Perspective, 5504-5505**

**Ultramarine, 7346**  
**Umber, 7349**  
**Water Colors, 7666**  
 [For the theory of color, see Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 [For the other Major Fine Arts, see *Architecture, Music, and Poetry*, under *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

### The Minor Fine Arts

#### The Decorative Arts

**Illustration and Design**  
 The Principles of Design, 3434  
 The Making of a Booklet, 3434-3435, 900, 1344, 3089, 5131  
 Stick Printed Designs, 3436-3437  
 A Transformed Biscuit Box, 3437-3439  
 A Decorated String Box, 3439-3440  
 A Butterfly Flower Stick, 3440-3441  
 A Painted Match Box, 3441  
 A Painted Box for Silverware, 3441-3442  
 A Door Stop, 3442-3443  
 The Possibilities of Olive Bottles, 3443  
 A Redeemed Marshmallow Box, 3444  
 Bookplates, 851, 850  
 Silhouette, 6603  
 Cartoons and Caricatures, 1221-1223, 1198, 1199

**Famous Cartoonists**  
 Bruce Bairnsfather, 573  
 John W. Bengough, 708  
 Clare A. Briggs, 955  
 "When a Feller Needs a Friend," 2119  
 George Cruikshank, 1760-1761  
 Jay N. Darling, 1829  
 George L. Du Maurier, 2054  
 Harry C. (Bud) Fisher, 2445  
 William Hogarth, 3192  
 John T. McCutcheon, 4175  
 Thomas Nast, 4812  
 Frederick B. Oppen, 5227  
 Richard F. Outcault, 5276  
 Sir John Tenniel, 7103  
**Famous Illustrators**  
 Howard C. Christy, 1417  
 Walter Crane, 1734  
 Paul Gustave Doré, 2013

- Harrison Fisher, 2445  
 James M. Flagg, 2461  
 Charles D. Gibson, 2804  
 Kate Greenaway, 2956  
 William Morris, 4662, 4663  
 Maxfield Parrish, 5398-5399  
 Joseph Pennell, 5462  
 Howard Pyle, 5891  
 Tony Sarg, 6387  
 James McNeill Whistler, 7743-7744
- Carving, 1224**
- Ivory Carving, 3590
- French Fan, Japanese Carving, 3591
- Stone Carving
- An Aztec Calendar, 551
- Lotus Capitals of Old Egypt, 1579
- Cleopatra's Needle, 1465
- The Astor Column, 466
- Stone Carvings on Westminster Abbey, 364
- Over a Door of the White House, 366
- Jade Carving, 3608-3610
- Wood Carving, 7829
- Examples of Medieval Wood Carving, 7830
- Totem Poles of Alaska, 169, 7223
- Carved Furniture, 2647-2648, 669
- A Carved Elizabethan Gable, 2655
- Carved Trireme of Old Rome, 7272
- Ceramics, the Art of Pottery**
- Steps in Pottery-making, 5783
- Molding, Firing, Glazing, 5784
- Material Used
- Clay, 1458
- Kaolin, 3746
- The Decoration of Pottery
- China Painting
- Pigments, Brushes, and Pads, 1400
- Choosing and Drawing the Design, 1400
- The Actual Painting, 1400
- The Firing Process, 1401
- Enamel Work, 2231
- Kinds of Pottery
- Delft, 4885
- Dresden China, 2033
- Faïence, 2361
- Majolica, 4234-4235
- Porcelain, 5741
- Sèvres Porcelain, 5741
- Rookwood Pottery, 6183-6184
- Terra Cotta, 7113
- Wedgwood Ware, 7698
- Biography**
- Bernard Palissy, 5317
- Josiah Wedgwood, 7699
- Examples of Pottery**
- Nuptial Vases of Ancient Greece, 5784
- Hadrian's Vase, 5784
- Phoenician Vases, 5570
- An Egyptian Water Jar, 2147 (2)
- African (Bantu) Pottery, 79
- Pottery of the Mound Builders, 4691
- A Pilgrim's Bottle in Faïence, 2361
- Japanese Ware, opposite 3638
- Majolica Ware, 4235
- The Famous Portland Vase, 5740
- Porcelains from Many Lands, opposite 5741
- A Specimen of Rookwood, 6184
- Wedgwood Pottery, 7698
- Enameling, 2231-2233**
- Champlevé, 2233
- Cloisonné, 2233
- Cloisonné Art in China, 5785
- Basse-Taille and Surface Painted, 2233
- An Enameled Silver Vessel, 2231
- Five Examples of Enamel Work, 2232
- Gems and Their Use**
- Classed as Precious and Semi-Precious, 2711
- The Romance of Gems, 2711
- Their Cutting, Polishing, and Engraving
- The Art of the Lapidary, 3874
- The Raised Design of the Cameo, 1106-1107
- The Depressed Design of the Intaglio, 2711, 3473
- Principal Form of Cut Gems, 2712
- The Various Gems and Gem Materials
- Agate, 85-86
- Almandine, 231
- Amethyst, 261
- Aquamarine, 333
- Beryl, 720-721
- Carnelian, 1204
- Chalcedony, 1295-1296
- Corundum, 1701
- Diamond
- Origin, Characteristics, Value, 1930
- Diamond Cutting, 1930
- Uses of the Diamond, 1930-1932
- Famous Diamonds
- The Great Mogul, 1932
- The Kohinoor, 1932, 2712, 3812
- The Cullinan, 1933, 2712
- The Orloff, 1932, 2712
- The Regent (or Pitt), 1932, 2712-2713
- Star of the South, 1932
- Judging and Testing Diamonds, 1933
- Emerald, 2220
- Garnet, 2695
- Carbuncle, 1194
- Heliotrope, 3131
- Lapis Lazuli, 3874
- Onyx, 5212
- Opal, 5212-5213
- Pearl
- Origin (not a stone), Structure, Characteristics, 5433
- The Pelegrina Pearl, 2713
- Ruby, 6235
- Sapphire, 6384
- Sardonyx, 6387
- Topaz, 7211
- Tourmaline, 7225
- Turquoise, 7322
- The Use of Gems in Jewelry, 3672
- Brooches, 975

- Crowns, 1759-1760
  - Crown Jewels of England, 1759, 7228
  - Crown of Charlemagne, 1760
  - Crown Jewels of Russia, 6269
- Rings, 6130
- Etruscan Jewelry, 2311
- A Jeweled Manuscript Cover, 4274
- Imitation and Artificial Gems, 2712
- Decoration of Coins, Medals, Emblems**
- Numismatics: Meanings of Obverse, Reverse, Legend, Inscription, 5114
- Coinage as an Art, 4591
- Coins of Ancient Days, 5115
- A Coin of Claudius, 1458
- Denarius of Caesar, 1891
- Mithridates, 4562
- Titus, 7189
- Vespasian, 7510
- Honorary Medals**
- Awarded by the United States Army, 413
- Distinguished Service Medals, 1969
- Croix de Guerre, 1751
- Victoria Cross, 7522
- Carnegie Hero-Fund Medal, 1204
- Personal Medals or Medallions**
- Medals of Ancient Days, 5115
- John Cabot, 1063
- Joliet, 3694
- Kaunitz, 3749
- Richelieu, 6116
- Emblems of Knighthood, 3806
- Mosaics, 4666-4667**
- An Ancient Mosaic about Archimedes, 358
- A Mosaic from Ravello Cathedral, 4667
- Mosaic Work in Saint Mark's, 1056, 6321
- Interior of Mehmedie Mosque, 4381
- A Mosaic Pavement in Oporto, 5761
- Stained-Glass Mosaics, 6792, 6794, 2835
- Windows of Noted Churches and Chapels, opposite 6794
- Other Decorative Arts**
- Bookbinding through the Ages, 858
- Embossing, 2219
- Etching, 2274, 2303
  - An Etching by Rembrandt, 2303
  - Four Etchings by Queen Victoria, 2302
- Gilding, 2807, 2860
- Inlay, Marquetry, Damascening, 3455
  - Use of Inlay in Furniture Design, 2647-2648
- Japanning, 3639
- Lacquer Work, 3834-3835
  - An Old Chinese Chest, 3835
  - Lacquer Box and Panel of Japan, opposite 3638
- Manuscript Illumination, 4273-4274
- Niello, 5023
- Pyrography, 5896
- Stenciling, 6826
- Tapestry Weaving, 7016
  - The Famous Gobelin Tapestries, 7017
  - A Modern Belgian Tapestry, 7016
  - A Tapestry of Yale University, 7017

- Bayeux "Tapestry," an Example of Embroidery, 7018
- The Battle of Hastings, 3069

### Landscape Gardening (or Architecture)

- Purpose and Importance, 3854, 3855**
- A Type of Specialized Gardening, 2684**
- Exposition Landscaping, 3855, 2347**
  - Work of Frederick Law Olmsted, 5194
  - World's Columbian Exposition, 7847-7849
- Work of Jules Guerin, 3855
  - Panama-Pacific Exposition, 5337
- Landscaping and City Planning, 1440**
  - Garden Cities of England, 1441
- Formal and Informal Gardening, 3855**
  - Color Plate, opposite 3854
- Examples of Artistic Landscaping**
- In America**
  - Boston Common, 870, 875
  - Chicago Lake Front Plaza, 1359
  - Denver's Civic Center, 1906
  - Palm Walk, Los Angeles, 4113
  - Tea Gardens, Golden Gate Park, 6370
  - Grounds of Singing Tower, 6619-6621
  - White House Gardens, 7640, 7748
- Elsewhere**
  - A Scene in Japan, 3625
  - A Public Square in São Paulo, 927
  - Gardens at Mentone, 2577
  - At Windsor Castle, 2251
  - In Vienna, 524
  - Parliament House Grounds, Toronto, 5209
- Use of Fountains, 2551-2552**
  - Buckingham Fountain, Chicago, 1354
  - Electric Fountain, Denver, 1906
  - At Fairmount Park, Philadelphia, 5541
  - Fountains of Versailles, 7506
- Ornamental Shrubs and Vines**
  - Barberry, Japanese, 618
  - Black Haw (Stag-Bush), 780-781
  - Bridal Wreath, 946
  - Buckthorn, 996
  - Calycanthus (Strawberry Shrub), 1101
  - Candleberry, 1166
  - Cherry Laurel, 1343
  - Clematis, 1463
  - Elder, 2163
  - Grapevine, 2910
  - Green Brier, 2957
  - Honeysuckle, 3218
  - Hydrangea, 3303
  - Hyssop, 3322
  - Ivy (English and Boston, or Japanese), 3593
  - Jasmine, 3640
  - Kalmia (Mountain Laurel), 3731
  - Lilac, 4004
  - Magnolia (Large-Flowered and Sweet Bay), 4219-4220
  - Morning-Glory, 4656-4657
  - Myrtle, 4785
  - Oleander, 5191
  - Rhododendron, 6099
  - Snowball (Guelder-Rose), 6664-6665

Spiraea, 6766  
 Syringa (Mock Orange), 6992  
 Wistaria, 7813

### Photography

Diversified Uses of Photography, 5579

#### Processes

The Camera, 1107-1108, 5581  
 Exposure, Development, Printing, 5580-5582  
 Photographs of Negative and Positive, 5580

#### The Development of Photography

The Daguerreotype, 1805  
 Louis Daguerre, 1806  
 Work of John W. Draper, 5582  
 American Advance in the Manufacture of Parts, 5582  
 Aerial Photography, 5582  
 By Telephone and Radio, 5583-5584, 7074-7075, 5963-5966  
 Color Photography, 5584  
 Work of Ducos du Hauron, 5584  
 Kinemacolor, 3791  
 Technicolor, 4722  
 Moving-Picture Photography, 4706-4729  
 [See Outlines of *Moving Pictures*, under *Industry*, and *Moving-Picture Machines*, under *Invention*, in this GUIDE.]

### Dramatic Art

#### Early Greek Drama

Dramatic Elements of the Mysteries, 4785, 2023  
 The Greek Chorus, 1408  
 First Use of Dialogue and Addition of an Actor, 2023  
 Introduction of a Second Actor, by Aeschylus, 2026, 68

Use of Appropriate Scenery and Costumes, 2026

Innovations of Sophocles, 2026

Introduction of a Third Actor and Enlargement of the Chorus, 6680

Each Play a Unit, 6680

#### Religious Plays of the Middle Ages, 2027

Miracle Plays, Performed in Churches, 4528

Mystery Plays, Church Presentation of Bible Scenes, 4785-4786

Later Performance by Trade Guilds, 4786

Morality Plays, Personifying Abstract Ideas, 4647

#### Development of Dramatic Art in England

Student Actors of the Fifteenth Century, 2027

Growth of Professional Acting in Shakespeare's Time, 7138

Vogue of the Masque, 4324

First Public Theater, 7138

Development of Costuming and Properties in the Globe Theater, 7138, 7140

The Blackfriars Theater

Plays Given by Candlelight, 7140

Later Development of Roofed Theaters with "Pits," 7140

#### Development of the American Theater, 7140

Notable Players, 2023

#### Shakespearean Drama in Schools

Staging of *Midsummer Night's Dream*, 2027

Story of the Play, 6534

Costumes, 2028, 2024, 2025

#### Puppet Shows (Marionettes), 2028

Punch and Judy, 5882

A Back-Stage Scene in a Tony Sarg Production, 2029

Story of Tony Sarg, 6387

[Also, see *Drama*, under Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

## Art Museums, Organizations, and Exhibitions

#### American Academies, 13-14

American Academy of Arts and Letters, 247

American Academy of Design, 5308

#### French Organizations and Exhibitions

Academy of Fine Arts of the Institute of France, 3468

École des Beaux-Arts, 2097

Salon, 6339-6340

#### Museums, 4753

A Museum of the Ancient World, at Alexandria, 4753, 5870

Classes of Museums and Some Notable Ones, 4754

#### European Museums

Borghese Palace, Rome, 865

British Museum, London, 699-791

Sir Hans Sloane, 6643

Louvre, Paris, 4137-4138

Work of Jean Goujon and Pierre Lescot, 2879

Museum of the Zwinger, Dresden, 2032

Pitti Palace, Florence, 5633-5634

Uffizi Palace, Florence, 7344

Vatican, Rome, 7465-7468

#### American Museums

Corcoran Art Gallery, Washington, 1673-1674

William Wilson Corcoran, founder of Corcoran Gallery, 1674

Metropolitan Museum, 4427-4429

National Gallery of Art, Washington, 6653





## Development through the Ages

### Astronomy of the Ancients, 467-468

- Rise of Astrology, 466-467
- Importance of the Zodiac in Astrology, 467, 7976

### Astronomical Lore of the Chaldeans

- Prediction of Eclipses and Knowledge of Rotation, 468
- Probably Originated the Division of the Zodiac, 7976

### Appeal of Astronomy to the Greeks, 475

- Greek Origin of the Name Planet, 468

### Astronomers of Antiquity

- Pythagoras, 5898
- Held that the Earth Revolves about the Sun, 5898, 7414
- Hipparchus, 3182
- Ptolemy, 5871
- Originator of the Ptolemaic System: Earth Center of the Universe, 468, 5871

### Later Astronomers

- Copernicus, 1666
- Originator of the Copernican System: Earth Revolves about the Sun, 1666, 468, 1448, 1449, 7414
- Tycho Brahe, 916
- Galileo, 2664-2665

- Discovered the Law of the Pendulum, 2664, 5456

- Made the First Practical Telescope, 2665, 472, 7081

### Astronomical Discoveries, 2665

- Studied Phases of Planets, 2665

### Johann Kepler, 3766, 3768

### Isaac Newton, 4960-4963

- Formulated the Principle of Universal Gravitation, 4960, 2916

- Indebtedness to Kepler, 3768, 2916

### Edmund Halley, 3020

### Pierre S. Laplace, 3874

- Formulated the Nebular Hypothesis, 3874, 4867

### Herschel Family, 3167-3168

- Sir William, 3167-3168
- Discoveries, 3167, 3168, 7420
- Caroline Lucretia, 3168

### Sir John Frederick William, 3168

### Asaph Hall, 3019, 4302

### Charles A. Young, 7951

### Simon Newcomb, 4912-4913

- In 1882 Observed the Transit of Venus, 4913, 7488

### Richard A. Proctor, 5829-5830

### Mary Proctor, 5830

### Sherburne W. Burnham, 1033-1034

### Camille Flammarion, 2463

### Edward E. Barnard, 624

- Discoveries, 624, 3721, 4867

### Chamberlin and Moulton

- Originated Planetesimal Hypothesis, 4867-4868

### Albert A. Michelson, 4456-4457

- Invented the Interferometer, 4456, 3477

- Measurement of Star Diameters, 6807

- Michelson-Morley Experiments, 4456, 2158

- Measured Velocity of Light, 3996, 4457

## The Solar System

### The Sun and Its Family, 6679, 6921, 468

- Motion through Space, 6805

### Theories of Origin

#### Nebular Hypothesis, 4867

- Sun and Planets Evolved from a Rotating

- Mass of Gas, 4867, 2734

#### Planetesimal Hypothesis, 4867-4868, 2736

- Partial Disruption of Sun by Gravitational

- Influence of Another Star, 2083,

- 2736, 4638, 4868

### The Sun, 6921-6925

#### The Sun as a Star, 6921, 6804

- In a Local Star Cluster, 474, 6804

- Position in the Milky Way, 474

Distance from Nearest Star Group, 469-470  
 Center of the Solar System, 6921  
 Holds the Planets in Relative Position by Gravitation, 497, 2916  
 Gives Light and Heat to Bodies Revolving about It, 6679  
 Distance from Planets, 469, 5643, 5645  
 The Sun's Surface, 6921  
 Size and Density, 468, 6921, 6808  
 Gravity, 6922  
 Apparent Motion, 6922. [See *The Celestial Sphere*, below.]  
 Composition and Heat, 6922  
 Sun Spots, 6922, 6923, 6924  
 Solar Photography, 6924  
 Solar Phenomena  
   Aurora Borealis, or Northern Lights, 505-506  
     Associated with Earth Currents, 2083-2084  
   Aurora Australis, Similar Phenomenon in Southern Sky, 505  
   Corona, 1694, 6921  
     Visible only during a Total Eclipse, 6924, 2096  
   Eclipse. [See below.]  
   Halo, 3023  
   Parhelion, a False Sun, 5371  
   Rainbow, 5986, 1551  
   Sunrise and Sunset Colors, 6924  
   Zodiacal Light, 7976-7977  
 Astronomical Symbol of the Sun, 6984  
**The Planets**, 5643-5645  
   Called Wanderers by the Ancients, 468, 5643  
   In the Ptolemaic System, 5871  
   Planets Known To-Day, 5643  
   How They Differ from Stars, 5643, 5645  
   Sizes of the Planets, 5643-5645  
   Distances from the Sun, 469, 5643  
     Bode's Law of Distances, 6679  
   Positions as Related to Earth and Sun  
     Inferior Conjunction, 1610, 5645  
     Superior Conjunction, 1610, 5645  
     Opposition, 1610  
   Occultation, 5148  
   Transits, 7243  
   Classification of the Planets, 5645  
   Movements of the Planets  
     Revolutions in Orbits, 5645  
       Elliptical Orbits, 2213  
       Revolution Periods, or Years, 5643  
       Perturbations, 5506  
       Variations of Orbits, 5506  
     Rotations on Axes, 468, 5645  
   Satellites, or Moons of Planets, 6397, 468  
   Table of Satellites, 6397  
   Planetarium, or Orrery, 5645-5646  
**Mercury**, 4406-4407  
   Smallest of the Planets, 4406, 5643  
   One of Five Planets Known to Ancients, 468  
     Called Mercury When an Evening Star, 2334, 4406

Called Apollo When a Morning Star, 2334, 4406  
 Position in Solar System  
   Planet Nearest the Sun, 469, 4406  
     Difficulty in Seeing It, 474  
 Movements of Mercury, 4406  
   Compared with That of Venus, 7488  
   Transits of Mercury, 4407, 7243  
   Symbol of Mercury, 6984  
**Venus**, 7488  
   Most Brilliant of the Planets, 7488  
   One of Five Planets Known to Ancients, 468  
     Called Hesperus When an Evening Star, 474, 2334, 7488  
     Called Lucifer When a Morning Star, 474, 2334, 7488  
   Position in Solar System  
     Second in Distance from Sun, 469, 5643, 7488  
   Size, Surface, Density, 7488  
   Movements of Venus, 7488  
     Revolution  
       About 225 Days, 7488  
       Orbit Compared with Those of Other Inner Planets, 2082  
       Transits of Venus, 4407, 7243, 7488  
     Atmosphere of Venus, 7488, 4407  
     Symbol of Venus, 6984  
**Earth**, 2079-2083  
   The Planet on Which We Live, 468, 2079  
   Position in Solar System  
     Third in Distance from Sun, 2079, 2082  
     Distance from Sun in Miles, 6921  
   Form of the Earth, 2079  
   Size of the Earth, 2080, 2734  
     In Relation to Sun, 6921  
     In Relation to Moon, 4638  
     In Relation to Planets, 2079  
   Movements of the Earth  
     Rotation, 2080  
       Causes Apparent Motion of Sun, 6922  
       Opposite That of Neptune, 4879  
     Revolution, 2080  
       Shape of Orbit, 2082  
   Symbols of the Earth, 6984  
   Satellite of the Earth, or Moon, 4638-4643  
     Theories of Origin, 4638  
     Position in Solar System  
       Distance from the Earth, 4638  
   Size, 4638  
   Movement in Orbit, 4638  
     Apsides, 333  
       Perigee, 5488  
   Rotation on Axis, 4640  
   Variations of Motion, 4642  
   Atmosphere of the Moon, 4638, 4639  
     Life Such as Exists on Earth not Possible, 4640  
   Gravitational Force  
     Compared with Earth's, 4640  
     Sufficient to Cause Tides, 4640, 7171, 7172  
   Cause of Earth's Perturbations, 5506

Light of the Moon, 4640  
 The Moon's Surface  
     Made Known by Galileo, 2665  
     Revealed by Photography, 4641, 4642  
     Craters, 4642  
     The Man in the Moon, 4642  
 Lunar Phenomena  
     Eclipses. [See below.]  
     Phases of the Moon  
         The New Moon, 4640  
         First and Second Quarters, 4640  
         Harvest Moon, 3068  
         Third Quarter, 4642  
         Gibbous Moon, 4642  
         Symbols of Phases, 6984  
     Halo, 3023  
     Paraselenae, False Moon, 5371  
**Mars**, 4301-4302  
     Known from Earliest Times, 468, 4301  
     Position in Solar System  
         Fourth in Distance from Sun, 4301  
     Size of Mars  
         Second Smallest Planet, 4301  
         As Compared with Earth, 4302  
     Movements of Mars  
         Revolution in Orbit, 4301, 4302  
         Rotation on Axis, 4302  
     Satellites of Mars, 4302  
         Deimos and Phobos, 4302, 5144  
         Discovered by Hall, 3019, 4302  
         Size, 468, 4302  
     Life on Mars, 4302  
     Symbol of Mars, 6984  
**Jupiter**, 3720-3721  
     One of Five Known in Antiquity, 468  
     Position in Solar System  
         Fifth in Order from Sun, 3720  
     Size and Density of Jupiter, 3720-3721  
     Appearance through the Telescope, 3721  
     Surface Hidden by Clouds of Cold Gas, 3721  
     Movements of Jupiter, 3721  
         Reflecting Power, 3721  
     Nine Satellites of Jupiter, 468, 3721, 4642  
         Four Discovered by Galileo, 2665  
         Fifth by Barnard, 624  
         Sixth and Seventh by Perrine, 3721  
         Two of Retrograde Motion, 4642, 3721  
         Velocity of Light Discovered by Observa-  
         tion of Eclipses, 3721  
     Symbol of Jupiter, 6984  
**Saturn**, 6398-6399  
     Outermost of the Planets Known to the  
     Ancients, 468, 6398  
     Position in Solar System  
         Sixth in Distance from Sun, 6398, 5643  
     Size of Saturn, 5644, 6398  
     Movements of Saturn  
         Rotation, 6398  
         Detected by Herschel, 3168  
     Revolution in Orbit, 6398  
     Saturn's Three Rings, 6398, 5644  
         Dimly Revealed by Galileo's Telescope,  
         2665, 6398

Rotation Period Detected by Herschel,  
 3168  
 Satellites of Saturn  
     Nine or Ten in Number, 468, 4642, 6398,  
     6399  
     Two Discovered by Herschel, 3168  
     Symbol of Saturn, 6984  
**Uranus**, 7420  
     Discovered by Herschel, 470, 3167, 7420  
     Position in Solar System  
         Seventh in Distance from the Sun, 7420,  
         5643  
     Distance in Miles, 7420  
     Barely Visible to Naked Eye, 7420, 5643  
     Size and Density, 7420, 5644  
     Movements of Uranus  
         Revolution in Orbit, 7420  
         How Peculiarities Led to Discovery of  
         Neptune, 4878, 5506  
         Rotation on Axis, 7420  
     Four Satellites of Uranus, 4643, 7420  
     Symbol of Uranus, 6984  
**Neptune**, 4878-4879  
     Discovery by Leverrier and Adams through  
     Study of Uranus, 470, 472, 2916, 4878,  
     5506, 7420  
     Position in Solar System  
         Formerly Believed the Outermost Planet,  
         4878  
     Pluto, Trans-Neptunian Planet, a 1930  
         Discovery, 5643, 6679  
     Distance from the Sun, 469, 4878, 5643  
     Distance from Earth, 470  
         Never Visible to the Naked Eye, 474,  
         4878  
     Size of Neptune, 4878-4879, 5644  
     Reflecting Power, or Albedo, 4879  
     Movements of Neptune, 4879  
     Neptune's One Satellite, 4878, 4642  
**Asteroids**, or Planetoids, 463-464  
     Little Earths, 468, 470  
     Position in Solar System, 6679, 5645  
         Between Mars and Jupiter, 463  
         Occupying Place of Planet, 463  
     Theories of Formation, 464  
**Ceres**  
     Earliest Known, 463  
     Named for the Goddess Ceres, 1291  
     Symbol, 6984  
**Juno**, Pallas, and Vesta, 464  
     Symbols, 6984  
**Astraea**, 464  
**Eros**, 464  
**Meteors**, 4419-4421  
     Why Called Shooting Stars, 109, 469, 4419  
     Position in the Solar System, 6679  
     The Course of a Meteor, 4420  
     Meteoric Showers, 4419  
     Meteorites, 4421  
         Notable Meteors, 4421, 4419  
**Comets**, 1581-1582  
     Swarms of Loose Particles and Gaseous  
     Matter, 469

Their Journeys through Space, 469  
 Transients in the Solar System, 6679  
 Formation: Nucleus, Coma, Tail, 1581  
     Tail Repelled by Sun, 469, 1581  
 Discoveries of Comets, 624, 3168, 3020  
     Halley's Comet, 469, 3020, 1581

Biela's, Encke's, Great Comet, Donati's,  
 1582  
 Probable Effect of Collision with Earth, 1582  
**Eclipses in the Solar System**, 2094-2097  
 Eclipse of the Moon, 2095-2096  
 Eclipse of the Sun, 2096, 2097

## The Celestial Sphere

### The Basis of Astronomy

Study of the Night Sky, 467-468  
 Observation of the Visible Half of the Celestial Sphere, 6636

### Geography of the Celestial Sphere

Celestial Equator, 2283  
     Diagram, 6127  
 Celestial Pole, 5700  
     Diagram, 6127  
     Movement of the Pole, 5797  
 The Tropics, 7275  
 Nadir, Point Directly below Observer, 4801  
     Opposite of Zenith, 7972  
 Zenith, Point Directly above Observer, 473,  
 7972  
     Pole of the Horizon, 4801  
     Opposite of Nadir, 4801  
 Right Ascension and Declination of Stars,  
 6126-6127  
 Zodiac, 7976  
     Imaginary Belt Containing the Major  
     Planets, 2097, 7976  
     Found among Ancient Peoples, 7976  
     Used in Astrology, 467, 3242  
 List of Signs  
     Aries, the Ram, 380, 7976  
         Vernal Equinox, 2283  
     Taurus, 7031, 7976  
     Gemini, 2711, 7976  
     Cancer, 1166, 7976  
         Name Given Tropic, 7275

Leo, 3936, 7976  
 Virgo, 7547, 7976  
 Libra, 3966, 7976  
     Autumnal Equinox, 2283  
 Scorpio, 6435, 7976  
 Sagittarius, 6297, 7976  
 Capricornus, 1187, 7976  
     Name Given Tropic, 7275  
 Aquarius, 335, 7976  
 Pisces, 5628, 7976

### The Ecliptic, 2097

Apparent Yearly Path of Sun, 2097, 6922,  
 2080  
 Crossed by the Milky Way, 4485  
 As Related to the Celestial Equator  
     Equinox, 2283  
         Equinoctial Point, Where Ecliptic  
         Crosses Equator, 2283  
         Vernal Equinox, Spring Crossing, 2283,  
         6472  
         Autumnal Equinox, Fall Crossing, 2283,  
         6472  
     Precession of the Equinoxes, 2283, 5796-  
     5797  
     Uniform Movement, or Luni-Solar Pre-  
     cession, 5797  
     Variable Movement, or Nutations, 5797,  
     5120  
 Solstice, 6684  
     Summer Solstice, 6472  
     Winter Solstice, 6472

## Stars and Stellar Systems

### Stars

Our Sun as a Star, 6804  
**Origin of Stars**  
     Evolved from Nebulous Matter, 469, 6805  
**Stars and Planets**  
     "Fixed" Stars and Wandering Planets, 2448  
         Stars not Really Stationary, 2448, 468  
     Stars Twinkle, Planets Shine with a Steady  
     Light, 5643  
     Appearance through Telescopes, 5645  
     Relative Distances of Planets and Stars,  
     469-470  
**Star Movements**  
     All Stars Traveling Onward through Space,  
     6805  
     Two Main Star Streams, 468, 6805-6806  
     How Astronomers Detect the Proper Mo-  
     tions of Stars, 6806

Apparent Motion Due to Revolution of  
     Earth in Its Orbit, 6806  
     The Heavens in Spring and Summer, 472  
     The Heavens in Autumn and Winter,  
     473  
 Revolution of Stars in Pairs. [See *Double  
 Stars*, below.]  
**Naming the Stars**, 6806, 473  
**Star Magnitudes**, 4219, 6806  
     How Magnitudes Are Expressed, 6806  
     Number of Stars to 20th Magnitude, 6807  
     Stars of First Magnitude or Brighter  
         Aldebaran, 4219, 6806, 7031  
         Alpha Centauri, 1285, 6806, 473-474  
         Distance from Solar System, 1285, 6805  
         Alpha Eridani, 6806  
         Alpha Herculis, 722, 6808  
         Altair, 474  
         Antares, 305

Largest Known Star, 305, 474, 722, 6435, 6808  
 Arcturus, 474  
 Beta Centauri, 6806  
 Betelgeuse (Alpha Orionis), 3477, 6808  
     First to Be Measured, 4457, 6807  
     Compared with Planetary Orbits, 722  
 Canopus  
     Exceeds First Magnitude, 473, 1285, 4219, 6806  
     Distance from Sun, 470  
 Capella  
     Exceeds First Magnitude, 474, 6806  
 Fomalhaut, 474  
 Procyon, Little Dog, 6806  
 Regulus, 474, 3936  
 Rigel, 474, 6806  
 Sirius, Dog Star, 6626  
     Most Brilliant Star, 473, 474, 1170, 4219, 6626, 6806  
     Distance from Sun, 470, 6626  
 Spica, 474  
 Vega  
     Exceeds First Magnitude, 474, 4219, 6806  
**Distances and Diameters, 6807**  
     Methods of Measurement  
         Parallax, 5361-5362, 6807  
         Angle of Aberration, 9  
         Spectroscope, 6749  
         Interferometer, 6807  
**Double Stars, 2014-2015**  
     Kinds, 2014  
     Revolution about a Common Point, 469, 2014, 6806  
     Methods of Discovery, 2015  
     Many Discovered by Burnham, 1033  
     Some Famous Double Stars  
         Aldebaran, 474  
         Algol, 6808  
             "Demon," 220, 474  
             In Perseus, 220, 473, 474  
         Alpha Centauri, 469, 1285, 6805  
         Antares, 305  
         Betelgeuse, 722  
         Castor, 469  
         Gamma Virginus, 7547  
         Mira, 4528  
             Third Largest Star, 722, 4528, 6808  
         Mizar, 2014  
         Sirius, 6626  
**Variable Stars**  
     Theories of Cause of Variation, 6808  
         Eclipse, 6397, 6808  
     Famous Variables  
         Cepheids, 6808  
         Nova, 6808  
         Algol, 229, 474, 6808  
         Betelgeuse, 722  
         Mira, 4528  
         Sun, 6808, 6924  
**Polestars, 5797**  
     Former Polestar: Alpha Draconis, 5797

Present Polestar: North Star, 5075  
 Constantly Changing, 473  
 Location of North Star  
     In Little Bear, or Ursa Minor, 473, 5701  
     In Relation to Great Bear, or Big Dipper, 473, 663  
     Distance from Celestial Pole, 5700, 5076  
     From Solar System, 470  
 Future Polestar  
     Alpha Cephei, 5797  
     Vega, 473, 5797, 6805  
**Mariner's Stars, 6808-6809**  
     The Dipper and Southern Cross, 6809  
**Types and Evolution of Stars, 6808**  
**Constellations, 1629**  
     Natural Groupings, 473, 1629, 6806  
     Named by Ancients, 475, 6806  
         Alpha, Name Applied to Chief Star in Constellation, 233  
     Constellations of Northern Hemisphere, 472, 473, 474  
     Some Famous Constellations  
         Andromeda  
             Legendary Origin, 279  
             Location, 473, 474  
             Contains  
                 Cepheids, 6808  
                 Spiral Nebula, 470, 474, 4867, 6805  
         Aquarius  
             Eleventh Zodiacal Sign, 335, 7976  
             Contains Fomalhaut, 473, 474  
         Aries (The Ram)  
             First Zodiacal Sign, 380, 7976  
             Location, 473  
         Auriga (The Waggoner or Charioteer)  
             Legendary Origin, 505  
             Location, 472, 473, 505  
             Contains Capella, 472, 473, 505  
         Great Bear (Ursa Major, Wagon, Wain, and Plow)  
             Legendary Origin, 663  
             Location, 472, 473, 663  
             "Pointers," 663, 5075  
             Contains  
                 Big Dipper, 472, 473, 1629  
                 Dubhe, 472, 473, 2045  
                 Merak, 472, 473  
                 Mizar, 472, 473, 2014  
                 Relation to North Star, 473, 663  
                 Mariner's Guide, 6809  
         Little Bear (Ursa Minor)  
             Contains North Star, 472, 473, 5701  
         Boötes (The Huntsman)  
             Legendary Origin, 860  
             Location, 472, 859  
             Contains Arcturus, 372, 860  
         Cancer (The Crab)  
             Legendary Origin, 1166  
             Fourth Zodiacal Sign, 1166, 7976  
             Location, 473  
             Name Given Northern Tropic, 1166  
         Canis Major (The Dog)  
             Contains Sirius, 473, 1170, 6626

Capricornus (The Goat)  
 Legendary Origin, 1187  
 Tenth Zodiacal Sign, 1187, 7976  
 Cassiopeia (Lady in the Chair)  
 Legendary Origin, 1231  
 Location, 472, 473, 474, 1231  
 Centaurus  
 Legendary Origin, 1285  
 Contains Alpha Centaurus, 1285, 6806  
 Cetus (Whale)  
 Contains Mira, 473, 4528  
 Draco (Dragon)  
 Location, 472, 473  
 Gemini (The Twins)  
 Third Zodiacal Sign, 2711, 7976  
 Contains Castor and Pollux, 473, 474, 1233, 2711  
 Leo  
 Fifth Zodiacal Sign, 3936, 7976  
 Contains  
 Regulus, 472, 474, 3936  
 Nebula, 3936  
 Libra  
 Seventh Zodiacal Sign, 3966, 7976  
 Location, 3967  
 Orion (Warrior)  
 Legendary Origin, 5259  
 Contains  
 Betelgeuse, 473, 474, 722  
 Rigel, 473, 474  
 Nebula, 469, 474, 4867  
 Perseus  
 Legendary Origin, 5494  
 Contains Algol, 220, 473, 474, 4380  
 Pisces (The Fishes)  
 Legendary Origin, 5628  
 Twelfth Zodiacal Sign, 5628, 7976  
 Location, 473  
 Sagittarius (The Archer)  
 Legendary Origin, 6297  
 Ninth Zodiacal Sign, 6297, 7976  
 Location, 472, 6298  
 Contains Densest Part of Milky Way, 6298  
 Scorpio (Scorpion)  
 Legendary Origin, 6435  
 Contains Antares, 305, 472, 474, 6435  
 Southern Cross  
 Location, 1629, 6722  
 Contains Pointers to South Pole, 6722  
 Mariner's Guide, 6809  
 Taurus (The Bull)  
 Legendary Origin, 7031  
 Second Zodiacal Sign, 7031, 7976  
 Contains  
 Aldebaran, 473, 474, 7031  
 Hyades, 473, 7031

Pleiades, 473, 474, 5657, 7031, 7081  
 Legendary Origin, 474, 5260, 5658  
 Contains Alcyone, 7031  
 Virgo (The Virgin)  
 Sixth Zodiacal Sign, 7547, 7976  
 Contains  
 Spica, 472, 474, 7547  
 Gamma Virginis, 7547  
 Nebulae, 7547

### Stellar Systems

Our Stellar System, 6805  
 Has Shape of Watch or Grindstone, 6805, 474  
 Estimated Dimensions, 6805  
 Estimated Number of Stars, 6805  
 Milky Way, or Galaxy  
 A Vast Concourse of Stars, 4485, 6805  
 The Fundamental Plane of Our System, 4485, 6805  
 Stars Seen along the Long Diameter  
 Appear Densely Crowded, 4485, 6805  
 Position of Solar System, 474  
 A Selected Region, 471  
 Division into Two Parallel Parts, 4485  
 Nebulae in Our Stellar System  
 Huge Masses of Gaseous Matter, 469, 4867  
 Discoveries of Caroline Herschel, 3168  
 Classes of Nebulae  
 Dark Nebulae, 4867  
 Studied by Barnard, 624  
 Coalsack of Sailors, 4485  
 Luminous Nebulae, 4867  
 Some Well-Known Nebulae  
 In Leo, 3936  
 In Orion, 469, 474, 4867  
 Near Virgo, 7547  
 Spiral Nebulae. [See *External Stellar Systems*, below.]  
 Baffling Distances, 469-470  
 Measurements in Light Years, 470  
 Measurements in Parsecs, 470  
**External Stellar Systems**, 6805  
 Spiral Nebulae, or Island Universes, 4867, 6805  
 Nebula of Andromeda, 470, 6805  
 Number and Forms of Spiral Nebulae, 6805  
 The Milky Way Probably a Spiral, 6805  
 Evolution of a Spiral Nebula, 4867  
**Other Systems**  
 Magellanic Clouds and Other Star Clouds, 6805  
**The Superuniverse**, 7414  
 Einstein's Theory of a Finite and Measurable Universe, 7414, 2161

## Observatories and Instruments

Divisions of Labor, 470, 472-473  
 The Observatory, 5141-5146  
 Used for Observing Astronomical Data, 5141

Equipment, 5142  
 Famous Observatories  
 Greenwich, 2245, 2246, 4107, 4409, 5142

U. S. Naval Observatory, 5142, 5144  
 Harvard College, 5142  
 Lick, 5142  
 Mount Wilson, 5143, 5147, 6924, 7083  
 Yerkes, 1366, 5144-5146  
**Instruments of the Astronomer**  
**Ancient**  
 Astrolabe, 4841  
 Planisphere, 3182  
**In Use To-Day**  
 Camera, 1107  
 Celestial Globe, 2843  
     Importance in Astronomy, 472  
 Chronometer, 1418  
 Compass, 1591-1593  
 Interferometer, 3477  
     Invented by Michelson, 3477, 4456  
     Used for Measuring Diameters of Stars,  
         472, 6807  
     Antares, 305  
     Betelgeuse, 722  
     Used for Testing Velocity of Earth, 2158  
 Lens, 3934  
 Magnetic Needle, 4218  
 Sextant, 6521  
 Spectrograph  
     Combination of Telescope, Camera, and  
         Spectroscope, 472  
 Spectroscope, 6749  
     Prisms Attached to Telescope, 6749  
**Uses**  
     To Measure Distances of Stars, 6807,  
         6749

To Measure Light Radiation of Stars,  
 6808  
 To Separate Double Stars, 2014  
 Proved  
     Presence of Algol's Companion Star,  
         474  
     Composition of Stars, 474  
 Importance in Progress of Astronomy,  
 472  
 Telescope, 7081-7083  
     Inventor, Lippershey, 7081  
     First Extensive Use by Galileo, 472,  
         2665, 7081  
     Structure, 7081  
**Kinds**  
     Reflecting, 5142, 7081, 7083  
         Inventor, Newton, 4962  
         Largest at Mount Wilson, 5144,  
             5146, 7083  
         Plans for Still Larger, 5146, 5147,  
             7083  
     Refracting, 5142, 7081  
         Largest at Yerkes Observatory,  
             5145, 5146, 7083  
**Importance, 472**  
     Revolution of Man's Thought, 7081  
**Telescopic Camera, 472**  
**Uses**  
     In Discovery of Asteroids, 464  
     In Study of Moon, 4642  
     In Study of Sun, 6924  
 Theodolite, 7141  
 Transit, 7243

### Astronomy as Related to Man

#### Uses

In Observing and Recording Time, 475, 7179  
 In Fixing of Directions, 475  
 In Navigation, 475, 4840, 4841, 6809

In Dating of Seasons, 475, 6472

[For time measurements and information  
 on the calendar, see Outline on *Mathe-*  
*matics*, in this GUIDE.]

# BIOGRAPHY

## Actors and Actresses

### American

Adams, Maude Kiskadden, 35  
 Anderson, Marie Antoinette, 275  
 Barrett, Lawrence, 629  
 Barrymore (family)  
   Ethel, 631  
   John, 631  
   Lionel, 631  
 Barthelmess, Richard, 4726  
 Booth, Edwin Thomas, 860  
 Booth, John Wilkes, 860  
 Booth, Junius Brutus, 860  
 Bronson, Betty, 4726  
 Carter, Mrs. Leslie, 1219  
 Chaney, Lon, 4726  
 Chaplin, Charles, 4726  
 Cohan, George Michael, 1531  
 Cowl, Jane, 1728  
 Cushman, Charlotte Saunders, 1792  
 Dix, Richard, 4726  
 Drew, John, 2036  
 Elliott, Maxine, 2213  
 Fairbanks, Douglas, 4726  
 Ferguson, Elsie, 2395  
 Fiske, Minnie Maddern, 2446  
 Forrest, Edwin, 2543  
 Gillette, William Hooker, 2808  
 Gish, Lillian, 4726  
 Goodwin, Nathaniel Carl, 2871  
 Hackett, James Keteltas, 2999  
 Hammerstein, Elaine, 3028  
 Herne, James A., 3162  
 Hopper, [William] De Wolf, 3236  
 Houdini, Harry, 3259  
 Illington, Margaret, 3350  
 Janis, Elsie, 3616  
 Jannings, Emil, 4726  
 Jefferson, Joseph, 3645  
 Jolson, Albert, 3694  
 Lloyd, Harold Clayton, 4727

Mansfield, Richard, 4269  
 Mantell, Robert Bruce, 4269  
 Marlowe, Julia, 4296  
 Meighan, Thomas, 4727  
 Menjou, Adolph, 4727  
 Mix, Tom, 4727  
 Moore, Colleen, 4727  
 Morris, Clara, 4661  
 Payne, John Howard, 5423  
 Pickford, Mary, 4727  
 Rehan, Ada, 6046  
 Rogers, Will, 6162  
 Russell, Lillian, 6256  
 Russell, Sol Smith, 6256  
 Skinner, Otis, 6635  
 Sothorn, Edward Hugh, 6691  
 Stone, Fred Andrew, 6845  
 Swanson, Gloria, 4727  
 Talmadge, Norma, 4727  
 Thompson, Denman, 7154  
 Warfield, David, 7600

### British

Boucicault, Dion, 894  
 Forbes-Robertson, Sir Johnston, 2529  
 Garrick, David, 2695  
 Irving, Sir Henry, 3559  
 Kean, Charles John, 3750  
 Kean, Edmund, 3750  
 Keene, Laura, 3751  
 Kemble, Frances Anne, 3753  
 Langtry, Lillie, 3857  
 Lauder, Sir Harry, 3892  
 Mannerling, Mary, 4268  
 Nethersole, Olga, 4895  
 Siddons, Sarah Kemble, 6594  
 Terry, Ellen Alicia, 7115  
 Tree, Sir Herbert Beerbohm, 7261

### Canadian

Anglin, Margaret, 285



Arthur, Julia, 429  
 Lewis, Ida, see Arthur, Julia, 429

**French**

Bernhardt, Rosine (Sarah), 719  
 Blondin, Jean F. G., 796  
 Coquelin, Benoît Constant, 1671  
 Gravelet, Jean François. [See BLONDIN, 796.]  
 Rachel, 5931  
 Réjane, Gabrielle Réju, 6049

**Italian**

Duse, Eleanora, 2058  
 Ristori, Adelaide, 6135  
 Salvini, Tommaso, 6350

**Others**

Modjeska, Helena, 4566  
 Nazimova, Alla, 4852  
 Roscius, Quintus, 6201

**Adventurers**

Kidd, William, 3771  
 Lafitte, Jean, 3839  
 Morgan, Sir Henry, 4651

Riel, Louis, 6123  
 Rob Roy, 6150  
 Walker, William, 7582

**American Indian Chiefs**

Black Hawk, 781  
 Brant, Joseph, 924  
 Geronimo, 2790, 3413, 3901  
 King Philip, 3795  
 Massasoit, 4336  
 Metacomet, 3795

Osceola, 5265  
 Pontiac, 5726  
 Powhatan, 5793  
 Sitting Bull, 6628  
 Tecumseh, 7053  
 Uncas, 7350

**Architects****American**

Burnham, Daniel Hudson, 1033  
 Hunt, Richard Morris, 3294  
 McKim, Charles Follen, 4187  
 Olmsted, Frederick Law, 5194

**British**

Vanbrugh, Sir John, 7449  
 Wren, Sir Christopher, 7895

**Italian**

Algardi, Alessandro, 206  
 Amadeo, Giovanni Antonio, 240  
 Bramante, Donato, 921  
 Brunelleschi, Filippo, 982  
 Giotto, 2811  
 Michelangelo Buonarroti, 4453

**Artists**

[See *Architects, Cartoonists and Illustrators, Painters, and Sculptors*, in this Outline.]

**Astronomers****American**

Barnard, Edward Emerson, 624  
 Burnham, Sherburne Wesley, 1033  
 Hall, Asaph, 3019  
 Holden, Edward Singleton, 3195  
 Langley, Samuel Pierpont, 3857  
 Mitchell, Maria, 4561  
 Newcomb, Simon, 4912  
 Young, Charles Augustus, 7951

**British**

Halley, Edmund, 3020  
 Herschel (family), 3167- 3168

Proctor (family) 5829-5830

**French**

Arago, Dominique François, 343  
 Flammarion, Camille, 2463  
 Laplace, Pierre Simon, 3874

**Others**

Brahe, Tycho, 916  
 Copernicus, Nicholas, 1666  
 Galileo, 2664  
 Hipparchus, 3182  
 Kepler, Johann, 3766  
 Ptolemy (Claudius Ptolemaeus), 5871

**Authors, Miscellaneous**

[In their alphabetical order in this Outline, see *Dramatists; Editors and Journalists; Essayists, Critics, and Satirists; Fiction Writers; Historians; Humorists; and Poets*.]

**American**

Burroughs, John, 1038

Butterworth, Hezekiah, 1051  
 Carpenter, Frank George, 1207

Custis, George Washington Parke, 1793  
 Dana, Richard Henry, 1817  
 Dole, Nathan Haskell, 1906  
 Donnelly, Ignatius, 2011  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 2593, 5730  
 Fuller, Sarah Margaret. [See OSSOLI, SARAH  
 MARGARET FULLER, 5267.]  
 Furness, Horace Howard, 2646  
 Grady, Henry Woodfin, 2885  
 Hale, Edward Everett, 3015  
 Holmes, Elias Burton, 3198  
 Keller, Helen Adams, 3751  
 Kennan, George, 3755  
 Mahan, Alfred Thayer, 4221  
 Matthews, [James] Brander, 4346  
 Mitchell, Donald Grant, 4561  
 Ossoli, Sarah Margaret Fuller, 5267  
 Riis, Jacob August, 6127  
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 6185  
 Sheldon, Charles Monroe, 6551  
 Sparks, Jared, 6741  
 Stoddard, Richard Henry, 6843  
 Swinton, William, 6667  
 Tarbell, Ida Minerva, 7020  
 Taylor, [James] Bayard, 7036  
 Warner, Charles Dudley, 7600  
 Watson, Thomas E., 7680  
 Webster, Noah, 7697  
 White, Richard Grant, 7745  
 Willis, Nathaniel Parker, 7774  
 Worcester, Joseph Emerson, 7845

## British

Boswell, James, 880  
 Burke, Edmund, 1028  
 Caedmon, 1065  
 Chesterfield, Earl of, 1348  
 Chorley, Henry Fothergill, 1408  
 Dowden, Edward, 2017  
 Gosse, Edmund William, 2878  
 Holinshed, Raphael, 3195  
 Hoyle, Edmond, 3269  
 Johnson, Samuel, 3689  
 Landor, Walter Savage, 3852  
 Lang, Andrew, 3856  
 Lewes, George Henry, 3955  
 Malory, Sir Thomas, 4240

## American

Byrd, Richard Evelyn, 1053  
 Lindbergh, Charles Augustus, 4025  
 Rickenbacker, Edward Vernon, 6120  
 Wright, Orville, 7896, 118  
 Wright, Wilbur, 7896, 118

## Business Men and Women and Financiers

## American

Armour, Philip Danforth, 411  
 Astor (family), 465-466

Montagu, Lady Mary Wortley, 4600  
 Morley, John, 4652  
 North, Christopher. [See WILSON, JOHN, 7778.]  
 Paine, Thomas, 5297  
 Pepys, Samuel, 5481  
 Skeat, Walter William, 6630  
 Smiles, Samuel, 6647  
 Smith, Goldwin, 6649  
 Southey, Robert, 6722  
 Steele, Sir Richard, 6822  
 Strachey, Giles Lytton, 6872  
 Swift, Jonathan, 6962  
 Taylor, Jeremy, 7036, 3317  
 Tyndale, William, 7337  
 Walpole, Horace, 7587  
 Walton, Izaak, 7589  
 Wilde, Oscar, 7761  
 Wilson, John, 7778

## French

Fénelon, François de Salignac, 2394  
 France, Anatole, 2589  
 La Fontaine, Jean de, 3840  
 Proudhon, Pierre Joseph, 5853  
 Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 6218  
 Staël-Holstein, Anne Louise Germaine, 6790  
 Taine, Hippolyte Adolphe, 7007  
 Voltaire, François Marie Arout de, 7565

## Others

Brandes, Georg Morris Cohen, 923  
 Ebers, Georg Moritz, 2092  
 Heine, Heinrich, 3127  
 Ion of Chios, 3503  
 Krylov, Ivan, 6278  
 Lessing, Gotthold Ephraim, 3944  
 Pliny, the Elder, 5658  
 Pliny, the Younger, 5659  
 Quintilian, 5923  
 Richter, Johann Paul Friedrich, 6120  
 Seton, Ernest Thompson, 6506  
 Strabo, 6872  
 Strindberg, August, 6879  
 Thomas à Kempis, 7153  
 Thompson, Ernest Seton. [See SETON, ER-  
 NEST THOMPSON, 6506.]  
 Varro, Marcus Terentius, 7465

## Aviators

## Others

Amundsen, Roald, 268  
 Nobile, Umberto, 5036  
 Santos-Dumont, Alberto, 6382  
 Wilkins, Sir George Hubert, 7763  
 Zeppelin, Ferdinand, Count von, 7972

Cooke, Jay, 1649  
 Corcoran, William Wilson, 1674  
 Cornell, Ezra, 1693  
 Curtis, Cyrus Herman Kotszschmar, 1791  
 Drexel, Anthony Joseph, 2036  
 Eastman, George, 2090  
 Field, Cyrus West, 2408  
 Field, Marshall, 2412  
 Firestone, Harvey Samuel, 2434  
 Fish, Stuyvesant, 2445  
 Ford, Henry, 2531  
 Frick, Henry C., 2622  
 Gary, Elbert Henry, 2697  
 Girard, Stephen, 2813  
 Gould, George Jay, 2880  
 Gould, Jay, 2880  
 Green, Hetty Howland Robinson, 2956  
 Hanna, Marcus Alonzo, 3036  
 Harriman, Edward Henry, 3050  
 Hays, Will H., 3101  
 Hewitt, Abram Stevens, 3170  
 Hill, James Jerome, 3179  
 Lick, James, 5143  
 Lincoln, Robert Todd, 4022  
 Mackay, Clarence Hungerford, 4184  
 Mackay, John William, 4184  
 Mellon, Andrew William, 4384  
 Moffat, David Halliday, 4567  
 Morgan, John Pierpont (Sr. and Jr.), 4650  
 Munsey, Frank Andrew, 4745  
 Peabody, George, 5425  
 Plant, Morton F., 5648  
 Pullman, George Mortimer, 5878  
 Rockefeller (family), 6153-6154  
 Rosenwald, Julius, 6205  
 Sage, Russell, 6297  
 Schwab, Charles M., 6432  
 Shuster, William Morgan, 6580

Stanford, Leland, 6800  
 Vanderbilt (family), 7458-7459  
 Wanamaker, John, 7590  
 Woolworth, Frank Winfield, 7844  
 Yerkes, Charles Tyson, 5146  
 Young, Owen D., 7952

## British

Ashburton, Lord, 440  
 Astor, William Waldorf, 466  
 Law, John, 3900, 4549  
 Lipton, Sir Thomas Johnstone, 4041  
 Rhodes, Cecil John, 6097, 6099, 80-81  
 Rothschild (family), 6214  
 Rylands, John, 6287  
 Wedgwood, Josiah, 7699  
 Yale, Elihu, 7926

## Canadian

Allan (family), 223  
 Hays, Charles Melville, 3101  
 Mount Stephen, George Stephen, 4600  
 Shaughnessy, Thomas George, 6544  
 Strathcona and Mount Royal, Lord, 6874  
 Van Horne, Sir William Cornelius, 7462  
 White, Sir William Thomas, 7740

## German

Baedeker, Karl, 571  
 Faust, Johann, 2383  
 Krupp, Friedrich Alfred, 3817  
 Stinnes, Hugo, 6835

## Others

Hirsch, Maurice, Baron de, 3185  
 Jecker, Jean Baptiste, 3645  
 Medici (family), 4373

## Cartoonists and Illustrators

## American

Briggs, Clare A., 955  
 Christy, Howard Chandler, 1417  
 Darling, Jay Norwood, 1829  
 Fisher, "Bud" (Harry C.), 2445  
 Fisher, Harrison, 2445  
 Flagg, James Montgomery, 2461  
 Gibson, Charles Dana, 2804  
 McCutcheon, John Tinney, 4175  
 Nast, Thomas, 4812  
 Oppen, Frederick Burr, 5227  
 Outcault, Richard Felton, 5276  
 Parrish, Maxfield, 5398  
 Pennell, Joseph, 5462  
 Phillips, [Clarence] Coles, 5563

## British

Crookes, Sir William, 1754  
 Davy, Sir Humphry, 1840, 2429

## British

Bairnsfather, Bruce, 573  
 Cruikshank, George, 1760  
 Du Maurier, George Louis Palmella Busson, 2054  
 Furniss, Harry, 2646  
 Greenaway, Kate, 2956  
 Hogarth, William, 3192  
 Morris, William, 4662  
 Tenniel, Sir John, 7103

## Others

Bengough, John Wilson, 708  
 Doré, Paul Gustave, 2013  
 Sarg, Tony, 6387

## Chemists

Faraday, Michael, 2370

## French

Curie, Pierre and Marie, 1787

Gay-Lussac, Joseph Louis, 2707  
 Lavoisier, Antoine Laurent, 3896  
 Pasteur, Louis, 5411, 3308

## German

Bunsen, Robert Wilhelm Eberhard, 1022  
 Leibig, Justus, Baron von, 3977

## Directors and Producers

De Mille, Cecil B., 1887  
 Frohman, Charles, 2626  
 Frohman, Daniel, 2626  
 Griffith, David Wark, 2966

Hammerstein, Arthur, 3028  
 Hammerstein, Oscar, 3028  
 Hays, Will H., 3101  
 Sarg, Tony, 6387

## Dramatists

## American

Ade, George, 44  
 Belasco, David, 690  
 Cohan, George Michael, 1531  
 De Mille, Cecil B., 1887  
 Fitch, Clyde [William], 2447  
 Gillette, William Hooker, 2808  
 Herne, James A., 3162  
 Moody, William Vaughn, 4637  
 O'Neill, Eugene Gladstone, 5200  
 Thomas, Augustus, 7152

## British

Barrie, Sir James Matthew, 629  
 Beaumont, Francis, 665  
 Boucicault, Dion, 804  
 Drinkwater, John, 2037  
 Dryden, John, 2041  
 Fletcher, John, 665  
 Galsworthy, John, 2668  
 Gilbert, Sir William Schwenk, 2806  
 Goldsmith, Oliver, 2863  
 Jerrold, Douglas, 3657  
 Jones, Henry Arthur, 3695  
 Jonson, Ben, 3696  
 Marlowe, Christopher, 4295  
 Pinero, Sir Arthur Wing, 5624  
 Reade, Charles, 6006  
 Shakespeare, William, 6524, 548  
 Shaw, George Bernard, 6545  
 Sheridan, Richard Brinsley Butler, 6556  
 Synge, John Millington, 6985  
 Vanbrugh, Sir John, 7449  
 Yeats, William Butler, 7931

## French

Beaumarchais, Pierre Augustin Caron de, 664  
 Corneille, Pierre, 1692

Daudet, Alphonse, 1833  
 Dumas, Alexandre, the Elder, 2053  
 Dumas, Alexandre, the Younger, 2054  
 Halévy, Ludovic, 3016  
 Le Sage, Alain René, 3943  
 Molière, 4575  
 Musset, Alfred de, 4781  
 Poquelin, Jean Baptiste. [See MOLIERE, 4575.]  
 Racine, Jean Baptiste, 5932  
 Rostand, Edmond, 6212  
 Sardou, Victorien, 6387  
 Scribe, Augustin Eugène, 6454

## German

Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von, 2853  
 Hauptmann, Gerhart, 3074  
 Lessing, Gotthold Ephraim, 3944  
 Schiller, Johann Cristoph Friedrich von, 6411  
 Sudermann, Hermann, 6902

## Greek

Aeschylus, 68  
 Aristophanes, 381  
 Euripides, 2316  
 Iophon, 3503  
 Sophocles, 6689

## Others

Alfieri, Vittorio, Count, 203  
 Ibsen, Henrik, 3325  
 Maeterlinck, Maurice, 4209  
 Ostrovsky, Alexander, 6278  
 Plautus, Titus Maccius, 5655  
 Strindberg, August, 6879  
 Terence (Baptismal name, Publius Terentius Afer), 7110  
 Vega Carpio, Lope Felix de, 7470

## Economists

## American

Babson, Roger, 553  
 Ely, Richard Theodore, 2217  
 George, Henry, 2752  
 Hadley, Arthur Twining, 3000  
 Seager, Henry Rogers, 6464  
 Walker, Amasa, 7582  
 Walker, Francis Amasa, 7582

## British

Jevons, William Stanley, 3671  
 Malthus, Thomas Robert, 4242  
 Mill, James, 4485  
 Mill, John Stuart, 4485  
 Ricardo, David, 6106  
 Smith, Adam, 6647

King, William Lyon Mackenzie, 3792  
Marx, [Heinrich] Karl, 4309

## Others

Mavor, James, 4350

## Editors and Journalists

## American

Bennett, James Gordon (Sr. and Jr.), 709  
Bok, Edward William, 816  
Brisbane, Arthur, 956  
Bryan, William Jennings, 986  
Childs, George William, 1377  
Cobb, Irvin Shrewsbury, 1514  
Curtis, George William, 1791  
Dana, Charles Anderson, 1817  
Donnelly, Ignatius, 2011  
Garrison, William Lloyd, 2695  
Gilder, Richard Watson, 2807  
Grady, Henry Woodfin, 2885  
Greeley, Horace, 2954  
Grosvenor, Gilbert Hovey, 2968  
Harvey, George Brinton [McClellan], 3068  
Hearst, William Randolph, 3107  
Holland, Josiah Gilbert, 3196  
Howell, Clark, 3267  
Irwin, William Henry ["Will"], 3561  
Kilmer, Joyce, 3774  
Lorimer, George Horace, 4110  
Mabie, Hamilton Wright, 4167  
McClure, Samuel Sidney, 4173

Munsey, Frank Andrew, 4745  
Page, Walter Hines, 5296  
Perry, Bliss, 5491  
Pulitzer, Joseph, 5876  
Reid, Whitelaw, 6047  
Riis, Jacob August, 6127  
Schurz, Carl, 6431  
Scripps, Edward Wyllis, 6454  
Shaw, Albert, 6544  
Smith, Hoke, 6649  
Van Loon, Hendrik Willem, 7463  
Warner, Charles Dudley, 7600  
Washburn, Stanley, 7623  
Watterson, Henry, 7682  
Weed, Thurlow, 7699  
White, William Allen, 7746

## British and Canadian

Furnivall, Frederick James, 2654  
Laut, Agnes Christina, 3895  
Northcliffe, Lord Alfred, 5063  
O'Connor, Thomas Power, 5156  
Smith, Goldwin, 6649  
Stead, William Thomas, 6817

## Educators

## American

Angell, James Burrill, 281  
Angell, James Rowland, 281  
Armstrong, Samuel Chapman, 411  
Barnard, Frederick Augustus Porter, 1571  
Barnard, Henry, 624  
Butler, Nicholas Murray, 1040  
Dewey, John, 1927  
Eliot, Charles William, 2207  
Ely, Richard Theodore, 2217  
Frank, Glenn, 2592  
Garfield, Harry Augustus, 2688, 2692  
Gilman, Daniel Coit, 2808  
Goodspeed, Edgar Johnson, 2870  
Hadley, Arthur Twining, 3000  
Hall, Granville Stanley, 3019  
Harper, William Rainey, 3049  
Harris, William Torrey, 3052  
Hibben, John Grier, 5817  
Hopkins, Mark, 3235  
Hutchins, Robert Maynard, 3299  
James, William, 3614  
Jordan, David Starr, 3697  
Judson, Harry Pratt, 3706  
Low, Seth, 4139  
Lowell, Abbott Lawrence, 4139  
Lowell, James Russell, 4139  
Lyon, Mary, 4697  
Mann, Horace, 4267

Mason, Max, 4321  
Mather, Increase, 4345  
Matthews, [James] Brander, 4346  
Miller, Lewis, 4487, 1322  
Moton, Robert Russa, 4686  
Palmer, Alice Freeman, 5321  
Perry, Bliss, 5491  
Quincy, Josiah, 5922  
Schurman, Jacob Gould, 6430  
Scott, Walter Dill, 6451  
Shaler, Nathaniel Southgate, 6539  
Sparks, Jared, 6741  
Swinton, William, 6967  
Vincent, George Edgar, 7530  
Washington, Booker Taliaferro, 7634  
Wheeler, Benjamin Ide, 7730  
White, Andrew Dickson, 7745  
Willard, Emma C. Hart, 7766  
Willard, Frances Elizabeth, 7766  
Wilson, William Lyne, 7778  
Wilson, [Thomas] Woodrow, 7778  
Wirt, William Albert, 7801  
Young, Ella Flagg, 7952

## British

Arnold, Thomas, 420  
Dowden, Edward, 2017  
Geddes, Sir Auckland Campbell, 2709  
Locke, John, 4075

Owen, Robert, 5277  
 Pitman, Sir Isaac, 5632  
 Spencer, Herbert, 6755  
 Yale, Elihu, 7926

**French**

Delsarte, François Alexandre, 1886  
 Fénelon, François de Salignac, 2394  
 Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 6218

**German**

Fröbel, Friedrich Wilhelm August, 2624  
 Herbart, Johann Friedrich, 3153  
 Jahn, Friedrich Ludwig, 7321, 5592

Mommsen, Theodor, 4578  
 Sandow, Eugene, 6365

**Others**

Comenius, John Amos, 1580, 4649  
 Dawson, Sir John William, 1842  
 Erasmus, Desiderius, 2284  
 Loyola, Saint Ignatius of, 4142  
 Mavor, James, 4350  
 Montessori, Maria, 4623  
 Pestalozzi, Johann Heinrich, 5513, 5514  
 Plato, 5652  
 Wyss, Johann Rudolf, 7914

**Engineers****American**

Eads, James Buchanan, 2071  
 Ericsson, John, 2285  
 Fulton, Robert, 2634  
 Goethals, George Washington, 2852  
 Gorgas, William Crawford, 2875  
 Hammond, John Hays, Sr., 3029  
 Hoover, Herbert Clark, 3226  
 Westinghouse, George, 7714

**British**

Armstrong, Lord William George, 412  
 Bessemer, Sir Henry, 721  
 Nasmyth, James, 4812

Stephenson, George, 6828  
 Stephenson, Robert, 6828  
 Stevenson, Robert, 6832  
 Watt, James, 7681

**Others**

Andrée, Salomon August, 278  
 Eiffel, Alexandre Gustave, 2156  
 Fleming, Sir Sandford, 2468  
 Kingsford, William, 3795  
 Lesseps, Ferdinand, 3943  
 Marconi, Guglielmo, 4287  
 Nobile, Umberto, 5036, 268  
 Tesla, Nikola, 7116

**Essayists, Critics and Satirists****American**

Baker, Ray Stannard, 574  
 Crane, Frank, 1733  
 Curtis, George William, 1791  
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 2221  
 Furness, Horace Howard, 2646  
 Hearn, Lafcadio, 3107  
 Higginson, Thomas Wentworth, 3177  
 Holmes, Oliver W., 3199  
 Howells, William Dean, 3267  
 Hubbard, Elbert, 3269  
 Ingersoll, Robert Green, 3451  
 Irving, Washington, 3559, 3560  
 LeGallienne, Richard, 3922  
 Mabie, Hamilton Wright, 4167  
 Matthews, Brander, 4346  
 Mencken, Henry Louis, 4390  
 Morley, Christopher, 4652  
 Repplier, Agnes, 6059  
 Stedman, Edmund Clarence, 6822  
 Thoreau, Henry David, 7156  
 Van Dyke, Henry, 7460  
 Warner, Charles Dudley, 7600  
 Winter, William, 258

**British**

Addison, Joseph, 37

Arnold, Mathew, 419, 577  
 Bacon, Francis, 564  
 Burke, Edmund, 1028  
 Carlyle, Thomas, 1200  
 Chesterton, Gilbert Keith, 1349  
 De Quincey, Thomas, 1912  
 Hazlitt, William, 3102  
 Jones, Henry Arthur, 3695  
 Lamb, Charles, 3846  
 Landor, Walter Savage, 3852  
 McCarthy, Justin, 4173  
 Macaulay, Thomas Babington, 4170, 4171  
 Mavor, James, 1156  
 Mill, James, 4485  
 Montagu, Lady Mary Wortley, 4609  
 Morley, John, 4652  
 Newman, John Henry, 4934  
 North, Christopher. [See WILSON, JOHN, 7778.]  
 Paine, Thomas, 5297  
 Pepys, Samuel, 5481  
 Ruskin, John, 6255  
 Smiles, Samuel, 6647  
 Steele, Sir Richard, 6822  
 Stevenson, Robert Louis, 6832, 6833  
 Swift, Jonathan, 6962  
 Walton, Izaak, 7589  
 Wilson, John, 7778

## French

De Staël, Madame. [See STAËL-HOLSTEIN, 6790.]  
 Montaigne, Michel Eyquem de, 4609  
 Montesquieu, Charles de Secondat, 4623  
 Rabelais, François, 5927  
 Sainte-Beuve, Charles Augustin, 6306

## Others

Brandes, Georg Morris Cohen, 923  
 Heine, Heinrich, 3127  
 Maeterlinck, Maurice, 4209  
 Plutarch, 5664  
 Saltykov, Mikhail, 6278

## Explorers and Navigators

## American

Boone, Daniel, 858, 3762  
 Breasted, James Henry, 938  
 Byrd, Richard Evelyn, 1053  
 Carson, Christopher, 1218  
 Clark, William, 1455  
 Cook, Frederick Albert, 1648  
 Du Chaillu, Paul Belloni, 2045  
 Fremont, John Charles, 2605  
 Greely, Adolphus Washington, 2955  
 Kane, Elisha Kent, 3732  
 Kennan, George, 3755  
 Lewis, Meriwether, 3955  
 Lindbergh, Charles A., 4025  
 MacMillan, Donald Baxter, 4194  
 Muir, John, 4732  
 Peary, Robert Edwin, 5435  
 Pike, Zebulon Montgomery, 5614  
 Powell, John Wesley, 5791  
 Schwatka, Frederick, 6432

## British

Baffin, William, 571  
 Cook, James, 1649  
 Drake, Sir Francis, 2022  
 Franklin, Sir John, 2597  
 Frobisher, Sir Martin, 2623  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 2806  
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, 2877  
 Hawkins, Sir John, 3088  
 Hudson, Henry, 3270  
 Livingstone, David, 4061, 80  
 Parry, Sir William Edward, 5400  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 5991, 1827  
 Ross, Sir James Clark, 6210  
 Scott, Robert Falcon, 6448  
 Shackleton, Sir Ernest, 6522  
 Smith, Captain John, 6650  
 Speke, John Hanning, 6750  
 Stanley, Sir Henry Morton, 6802, 6803, 80  
 Vancouver, George, 7457  
 Wilkins, Sir George Hubert, 7763

## Canadian

Dawson, George Mercer, 1842  
 Dawson, Sir John William, 1842  
 Hearne, Samuel, 3107  
 Iberville, Pierre Le Moyne, Sieur D', 3324  
 Joliet, Louis, 3693  
 Mackenzie, Sir Alexander, 4185

Murray, Sir John, 4748  
 Thompson, David, 7154

## French

Bienville, Jean Baptiste Le Moyne, Sieur de, 735  
 Cadillac, Antoine de la Mothe, 1065  
 Cartier, Jacques, 1220  
 Champlain, Samuel de, 1301  
 La Salle, René Robert Cavelier, Sieur de, 3882  
 Marquette, Jacques, 4208  
 Monts, Pierre du Guast, 4634  
 Poutrincourt, Jean de Biencourt, Baron de, 5791  
 Ribault, Jean, 6106  
 Roberval, Jean François de la Roque, 6147

## Italian

Abruzzi, Duke of the, 10  
 Cabot, John, 1063  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 1063  
 Columbus, Christopher, 1572  
 Nobile, Umberto, 5036  
 Polo, Marco, 5714  
 Tonty, Henri de, 7210  
 Verrazano, Giovanni da, 7505  
 Vesputius, Americus, 7511

## Portuguese

Cabral, Pedro Alvarez, 1063  
 Dias, Bartholomeu, 1934  
 Gama, Vasco da, 2672  
 Henry, The Navigator, 3149  
 Magellan, Ferdinand, 4211

## Scandinavian

Amundsen, Roald, 268  
 Andrée, Salomon August, 278  
 Bering, Vitus, 712  
 Ericsson, Leif, 2286  
 Eric, The Red, 2286  
 Hedin, Sven Anders, 3125  
 Nansen, Fridtjof, 4804  
 Nordenskiöld, Nils, Adolph Eric, Baron, 5040  
 Rasmussen, Knud Johan Victor, 5998  
 Stefansson, Vilhjalmur, 6823

## Spanish

Alvarado, Pedro de, 240  
 Balboa, Vasco Nunez de, 576  
 Coronado, Francisco Vasquez, 1605, 3739  
 Cortez, Hernando, 1700, 4444

DeSoto, Fernando, 1917  
 Narvaez, Panfilo de, 4810  
 Pizarro, Francisco, 5640  
 Ponce De Leon, Juan, 5725

## Others

Emin Pasha, 2227  
 Hennepin, Louis, 3141

## Fiction Writers

## American

Abbott, Jacob, 3  
 Adams, William Taylor. [See OLIVER OPTIC, 5193.]  
 Alcott, Louisa May, 194  
 Alden, Isabella McDonald, 195  
 Aldrich, Thomas Bailey, 197  
 Alger, Horatio, 217  
 Allen, James Lane, 224  
 Atherton, Gertrude Franklin, 483  
 Bacheller, Irving, 563  
 Bacon, Josephine Dodge Daskam, 565  
 Bangs, John Kendrick, 599  
 Barr, Amelia Edith Huddleston, 628  
 Beach, Rex, 656  
 Brady, Cyrus Townsend, 916  
 Burnett, Frances Eliza Hodgson, 1033  
 Cabell, James Branch, 1058  
 Cable, George Washington, 1059  
 Canfield, Dorothy, 1170  
 Cather, Willa Sibert, 1247  
 Chambers, Robert William, 1299  
 Chester, George Randolph, 1348  
 Churchill, Winston, 1420  
 Clemens, Samuel Langhorne, 1463  
 Cobb, Irvin Shrewsbury, 1514  
 Cohen, Octavus Roy, 1531  
 Cooper, James Fenimore, 1659  
 Craddock, Charles Egbert. [See MURFREE, MARY NOAILLES, 4746.]  
 Crane, Stephen, 1733  
 Crawford, Francis Marion, 1735  
 Curwood, James Oliver, 1791  
 Dana, Richard Henry, 1817  
 Davis, Rebecca Harding, 1840  
 Davis, Richard Harding, 1840  
 Dawson, Coningsby [William], 1842  
 Deland, Margaret, 1876  
 Dixon, Thomas, Jr., 1983  
 Dreiser, Theodore, 2031  
 Eggleston, Edward, 2138  
 Ferber, Edna, 2394  
 Foote, Mary Hallock, 2529  
 Ford, Paul Leicester, 2531  
 Fox, John [William], Jr., 2555  
 Freeman, Mary E. Wilkins, 2602  
 French, Alice, 2606  
 Gale, Zona, 2661  
 Garland, Hamlin, 2694  
 Glasgow, Ellen Anderson Gholson, 2831  
 Grant, Robert, 2899  
 Green, Anna Katherine. [See ROHLFS, ANNA KATHERINE GREEN, 6163.]  
 Grey, Zane, 2965  
 Harris, Cora May White, 3052  
 Harris, Joel Chandler, 3052

Harte, [Francis] Bret, 3063  
 Hawthorne, Julian, 3091  
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 3089  
 Hearn, Lafcadio, 3107  
 Henry, O. [See PORTER, WILLIAM SYDNEY, 5747.]  
 Hergesheimer, Joseph, 3162  
 Herrick, Robert Welch, 3166  
 Holland, Josiah Gilbert, 3196  
 Holley, Marietta, 3196  
 Holmes, Mary Jane, 3198  
 Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 3199  
 Hough, Emerson, 3260  
 Howells, William Dean, 3267  
 Hughes, Rupert, 3277  
 Hurst, Fannie, 3296  
 Irwin, Wallace, 3561  
 Irwin, William Henry [Will], 3561  
 Jackson, Helen [Fiske] Hunt, 3604  
 James, Henry, 3614  
 Johnston, Mary, 3691  
 Kerr, Sophie, 3768  
 Kuyumjian, Dikran, 403  
 Kyne, Peter Bernard, 3820  
 Lardner, Ring W., 3879  
 Lea, Fanny Heaslip, 3901  
 Lewis, Sinclair, 3956  
 Lincoln, Joseph Crosby, 4021  
 London, Jack, 4099  
 Long, John Luther, 4100  
 Lorimer, George Horace, 4110  
 McCutcheon, George Barr, 4175  
 Major, Charles, 4235  
 Mark Twain. [See CLEMENS, SAMUEL LANGHORNE, 1463.]  
 Marvel Ik. [See MITCHELL, DONALD GRANT, 4561.]  
 Mitchell, Silas Weir, 4561  
 Morley, Christopher, 4652  
 Morris, Gouverneur, 4661  
 Munroe, Kirk, 4744  
 Murfree, Mary Noailles, 4746  
 Nicholson, Meredith, 5021  
 Norris, Charles Gilman, 5043  
 Norris, Frank, 5044  
 Norris, Kathleen, 5043  
 Oliver Optic, 5193  
 Page, Thomas Nelson, 5296  
 Pansy, see Alden, Isabella McDonald, 195  
 Parrish, Randall, 5399  
 Phillips, David Graham, 5564  
 Phillpotts, Eden, 5564  
 Poe, Edgar Allan, 5678  
 Porter, Gene Stratton, 5746  
 Porter, William Sydney, 5747  
 Putnam, Nina Wilcox, 5890



Read Opie, [Percival], 6005  
 Reeve, Arthur Benjamin, 6035  
 Rice, Alice Caldwell Hegan, 6113  
 Richmond, Grace Smith, 6118  
 Riggs, Kate Douglas Wiggin, 6126  
 Rinehart, Mary Roberts, 6129  
 Rives, Amélie, 6138  
 Roche, Arthur Somers, 6152  
 Roe, Edward Payson, 6159  
 Rohlf, Anna Katharine Green, 6163  
 Sedgwick, Anne Douglas, 6478  
 Simms, William Gilmore, 6615  
 Sinclair, Upton Beall, 6616  
 Singmaster, Elsie, 6622  
 Smith, Francis Hopkinson, 6649  
 Stockton, Francis Richard, 6842  
 Stowe, Harriet Elizabeth Beecher, 6871  
 Tarkington, Newton Booth, 7024  
 Terhune, Mary Virginia, 7111  
 Thanet, Octave, see French, Alice, 2606  
 Thompson, [James] Maurice, 7154  
 Train, Arthur, 7239  
 Trowbridge, John Townsend, 7277  
 Twain, Mark. [See CLEMENS, SAMUEL LANG-  
 HORNE, 1463.]  
 Van Dine, S. S., 7459  
 Van Dyke, Henry, 7460  
 Wallace, Lewis, 7583, 708  
 Ward, Elizabeth Stuart Phelps, 7594  
 Webster, Henry Kittell, 7697  
 Wharton, Edith Jones, 7730  
 White, Stewart Edward, 7746  
 Whitlock, Brand, 7752  
 Whitney, Adeline Dutton Train, 7753  
 Wieland, Christoph Martin, 7757  
 Wiggin, Kate Douglas. [See RIGGS, KATE  
 DOUGLAS WIGGIN, 6126.]  
 Williams, Ben Ames, 7771  
 Wilson, Augusta Jane Evans, 7777  
 Wister, Owen, 7813  
 Witwer, Harry Charles, 7817  
 Wright, Harold Bell, 7896  
 Wright, Willard Huntington. [See VAN DINE,  
 S. S., 7459.]

## British

Austen, Jane, 506  
 Barr, Robert, 628  
 Barrie, Sir James Matthew, 629  
 Bennett, [Enoch] Arnold, 709  
 Besant, Walter, 721  
 Blackmore, Richard Doddridge, 783  
 Brontë, Charlotte, 974  
 Bulwer-Lytton, Edward George Earle, 1020  
 Bunyan, John, 1022  
 Caine, [Thomas Henry] Hall, 1069  
 Carroll, Lewis, 1985  
 Chesterton, Gilbert Keith, 1349  
 Collins, [William] Wilkie, 1539  
 Conrad, Joseph, 1621  
 Conway, Hugh. [See FARGUS, FREDERICK  
 JOHN, 2370.]  
 Corelli, Marie, 1675

Craigie, Pearl Richards, 1731  
 Craik, Dinah Maria Mulock, 1731  
 Defoe, Daniel, 1873  
 Dickens, Charles, 1936  
 Disraeli, Benjamin, Earl of Beaconsfield, 1965  
 Dodgson, Charles Lutwidge, 1985  
 Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan, 2018  
 Du Maurier, George Louis Palmella Busson,  
 2054  
 Eliot, George, 2208  
 Fergus, Frederick John, 2370  
 Fielding, Henry, 2411  
 Galsworthy, John, 2668  
 Gaskell, Elizabeth Cleghorn, 2702  
 Glyn, Elinor, 2846  
 Goldsmith, Oliver, 2863  
 Haggard, Sir Henry Rider, 3003  
 Halévy, Ludovic, 3016  
 Hardy, Thomas, 3044  
 Harraden, Beatrice, 3050  
 Hawkins, Sir Anthony Hope, 3088  
 Henty, George Alfred, 3149  
 Hewlett, Maurice Henry, 3170  
 Hichens, Robert Smythe, 3174  
 Hobbes, John Oliver. [See CRAIGIE, PEARL  
 RICHARDS, 1731.]  
 Hope, Anthony. [See HAWKINS, SIR AN-  
 THONY HOPE, 3088.]  
 Hudson, William Henry, 3271  
 Hughes, Thomas, 3277  
 Jerome, Jerome Klapka, 3656  
 Kingsley, Charles, 3796  
 Kipling, Rudyard, 3796  
 Lever, Charles James, 3951  
 Lover, Samuel, 4138  
 Maclaren, Ian. [See WATSON, JOHN, 7680.]  
 Malory, Sir Thomas, 4240  
 Marryat, Frederick, 4301  
 Meredith, George, 4408  
 More, Sir Thomas, 4650  
 Mulock, Dinah Maria. [See CRAIK, DINAH  
 MARIA MULOCK, 1731.]  
 Oliphant, Mrs. Margaret, 5192  
 Ouida. [See RAMÉE, LOUISE DE LA, 5992.]  
 Porter, Jane, 5746  
 Quiller-Couch, Sir Arthur Thomas, 5922  
 Ramée, Louise de la, 5992  
 Reade, Charles, 6006  
 Reid, [Thomas] Mayne, 6046  
 Richardson, Samuel, 6115  
 Roberts, Charles George Douglas, 6146  
 Scott, Sir Walter, 6448  
 Shaw, George Bernard, 6545  
 Smollett, Tobias George, 6655  
 Sterne, Laurence, 6831  
 Stevenson, Robert Louis, 6832  
 Thackeray, William Makepeace, 7132  
 Trollope, Anthony, 7273  
 Wallace, Edgar, 7583  
 Walpole, Hugh Seymour, 7588  
 Ward, Mrs. Humphry, 7594  
 Watson, John, 7680  
 Wells, Herbert George, 7707 ..

Weyman, Stanley John, 7726  
 Wilde, Oscar, 7761  
 Wodehouse, Pelham Grenville, 7817  
 Yonge, Charlotte Mary, 7945  
 Zangwill, Israel, 7969

**Canadian**

Connor, Ralph. [See GORDON, CHARLES WILLIAM, 2874.]  
 Gordon, Charles William, 2874  
 Leacock, Stephen Butler, 3901  
 Moodie, Susanna, 4637  
 Parker, Sir Gilbert, 5382  
 Seton, Ernest Thompson, 6506  
 Strickland, Susanna. [See MOODIE, SUSANNA, 4637.]  
 Stringer, Arthur, 6879  
 Thompson, Ernest Seton. [See SETON, ERNEST THOMPSON, 6506.]  
 Traill, Catherine Parr, 7237

**French**

Balzac, Honoré de, 591  
 Bourget, Paul, 897  
 Daudet, Alphonse, 1833  
 Dumas, Alexandre, 2053  
 Dumas, Alexandre, The Younger, 2054  
 France, Anatole, 2589  
 Halévy, Ludovic, 3016  
 Hugo, Victor Marie, 3277  
 Le Sage, Alain René, 3943  
 Loti, Pierre, 4117  
 Maupassant, Guy de, 4349  
 Mérimée, Prosper, 4410  
 Perrault, Charles, 5491, 1431, 803  
 Rabelais, François, 5927  
 Saint-Pierre, Jacques Henri Bernardin de, 6327  
 Sand, George, 6361  
 Sue, Eugène [Marie Joseph], 6903  
 Thibault, Jacques Anatole. [See FRANCE, ANATOLE, 2589.]

**American**

Dana, James Dwight, 1817  
 Heilprin, Angelo, 3126  
 King, Clarence, 3792  
 Le Conte, Joseph, 3916  
 Muir, John, 4732  
 Powell, John Wesley, 5791  
 Shaler, Nathaniel Southgate, 6539  
 Winchell, Alexander, 7788

**Canadian**

Adams, Frank Dawson, 24  
 Bell, Robert, 704

Verne, Jules, 7503  
 Viaud, Louis Marie Julien. [See LOTI, PIERRE, 4117.]  
 Zola, Émile Edouard, 7977

**German**

Grimm, Jakob Ludwig, 2966  
 Grimm, Wilhelm Karl, 2966  
 Heyse, Paul Johann, 3170  
 Sudermann, Hermann, 6902

**Russian**

Dostoevsky, Feodor Mikhailovich, 2014  
 Gogol, Nikolai Vasilevich, 2854  
 Goncharov, Ivan, 6278  
 Gorki, Maxim, 2876  
 Herzen, Alexander, 6278  
 Merezhkovsky, Dmitri, 6278  
 Sologub, Feodor, 6278  
 Tolstoi, Alexei, Count, 7203-7204, 6278  
 Turgenev, Ivan Sergeevich, 7300

**Scandinavian**

Andersen, Hans Christian, 275  
 Björnson, Björnsterne, 778  
 Lagerlöf, [Ottilia Lovisa] Selma, 3840  
 Undset, Sigrid, 7351

**Others**

Alma-Tadema, Sir Laurence, 231  
 Annunzio, Prince Gabriele D', 295  
 Arlen, Michael, 403  
 Boccaccio, Giovanni, 811, 3571  
 Cervantes Saavedra, Miguel de, 1291  
 Ibañez, Vicente Blasco, 3323  
 Jokai, Maurus, 3693  
 Kuyumjian, Dikran, 403  
 Maartens, Maarten, 4167  
 Poorten-Schwartz, J. M. W. van der. [See MAARTENS, MAARTEN, 4167.]  
 Sabatini, Rafael, 6289  
 Sienkiewicz, Henryk, 6596

**Geologists and Geographers****American**

Coleman, Arthur Philemon, 1535  
 Dawson, George Mercer, 1842  
 Dawson, Sir John William, 1842  
 Murray, Sir John, 4748

**Others**

Geikie, Sir Archibald, 2709  
 Guyot, Arnold, 2990  
 Humboldt, Alexander, Baron von, 3285  
 Kropotkin, Peter, 3816  
 Lyell, Sir Charles, 4162  
 Mercator, Gerhard, 4403, 4276  
 Strabo, 6872  
 Tyndall, John, 7337

## Historians

## American

Abbott, John Stevens Cabot, 3  
 Bancroft, George, 597  
 Bancroft, Hubert Howe, 597  
 Beveridge, Albert Jeremiah, 723  
 Bradford, William, 915  
 Fiske, John, 2446  
 Ford, Paul Leicester, 2531  
 Hart, Albert Bushnell, 3063  
 Lodge, Henry Cabot, 4085  
 Lossing, Benson John, 4116  
 McMaster, John Bach, 4194  
 Motley, John Lothrop, 4685  
 Parkman, Francis, 5382  
 Prescott, William Hickling, 5801  
 Ridpath, John Clark, 6122  
 Sparks, Jared, 6741  
 Swinton, William, 6967  
 Tarbell, Ida Minerva, 7020  
 Thwaites, Reuben Gold, 7165  
 Van Loon, Hendrik Willem, 7463  
 Wilson, [Thomas] Woodrow, 7778

## British

Bede, 671  
 Bryce, James, Viscount, 988  
 Buckle, Henry Thomas, 995  
 Clarendon, Earl of, 1454  
 Creasy, Sir Edward Shepherd, 2413  
 Froude, James Anthony, 2628  
 Gardiner, Samuel Rawson, 2687  
 Geoffrey of Monmouth, 2721  
 Gibbon, Edward, 2801  
 Green, John Richard, 2956  
 Grote, George, 2968  
 Hakluyt, Richard, 3014  
 Hallam, Henry, 3020  
 Holinshed, Raphael, 3195  
 Hume, David, 3285  
 Lecky, William Edward Hartpole, 3916  
 Macaulay, Thomas Babington, 4170  
 McCarthy, Justin, 4173

## American

Ade, George, 44  
 Bangs, John Kendrick, 599  
 Billings, Josh. [See SHAW, HENRY WHEELER, 6545.]  
 Brown, Charles Farrar, 978  
 Burdette, Robert Jones, 1025  
 Clemens, Samuel Langhorne (Mark Twain), 1463  
 Cobb, Irvin Shrewsbury, 1514  
 Cohen, Octavus Roy, 1531  
 Dunne, Finley Peter, 2055  
 Irwin, Wallace, 3561  
 Lardner, Ring W., 3879  
 Leland, Charles Godfrey, 3928

Raleigh, Sir Walter, 5991  
 Rymer, Thomas, 6288  
 Smith, Goldwin, 6649

## French

Froissart, Sir Jean, 2627  
 Guizot, François Pierre Guillaume, 2982  
 Michelet, Jules, 4456  
 Renan, Ernest, 6056  
 Taine, Hippolyte Adolphe, 7007  
 Thiers, Louis Adolphe, 7149  
 Voltaire, François Marie Arouet de, 7565

## German

Ebers, Georg Moritz, 2092  
 Mommsen, Theodor, 4578  
 Ranke, Leopold von, 5994

## Greek

Herodotus, 3164  
 Plutarch, 5664  
 Polybius, 5716  
 Strabo, 6872  
 Thucydides, 7164  
 Xenophon, 7915

## Roman

Caesar, Caius Julius, 1066  
 Fabius, Quintus Pictor, 2356  
 Livy, Titus Livius, 4062  
 Nepos, Cornelius, 4877  
 Pliny the Elder, 5658  
 Pliny the Younger, 5659  
 Sallust, 6333  
 Tacitus, Publius Cornelius, 6995

## Others

Eusebius, 2329  
 Ferrero, Guglielmo, 2398  
 Jerome, Saint, 3657  
 Josephus, Flavius, 3702  
 Kingsford, William, 3795  
 Snorri Sturluson, 6664  
 Sulte, Benjamin, 6917

## Humorists

Locke, David Ross, 4075  
 Nasby, Petroleum Vesuvius. [See LOCKE, DAVID ROSS, 4075.]  
 Nye, Edgar Wilson, 5126  
 Partington, Mrs. [See SHILLABER, BENJAMIN PENHALLOW, 6561.]  
 Putnam, Nina Wilcox, 5890  
 Rogers, Will, 6162  
 Shaw, Henry Wheeler, Josh Billings, 6545  
 Shillaber, Benjamin Penhallow, 6561  
 Stockton, Francis Richard, 6842  
 Twain, Mark. [See CLEMENS, SAMUEL LANGHORNE, 1463.]  
 Ward, Artemus. [See BROWN, CHARLES FARRAR, 978.]

## British

Bairnsfather, Bruce, 573  
 Jerome, Jerome Klapka, 3656  
 Jerrold, Douglas, 3657  
 Smith, Sydney, 6652  
 Wodehouse, Felham Grenville, 7817

## Others

Eulenspiegel, Till, 2315  
 Gogol, Nikolai Vasilevich, 2854  
 Leacock, Stephen Butler, 3901  
 Rabelais, François, 5927  
 Richter, Johann Paul Friedrich, 6120

## Hymn Writers

## American

Brooks, Phillips, 976  
 Cary, Phoebe, 1224  
 Crosby, Fanny, 1755  
 Howe, Julia Ward, 3267  
 Stowe, Harriet Elizabeth Beecher, 6871  
 Whittier, John Greenleaf, 7754

## British

Baring-Gould, Sabine, 3318  
 Heber, Reginald, 3120

Elliot, Charlotte, 3318  
 Lyte, Henry Francis, 3317  
 Newman, John Henry, 4934  
 Palmer, Ray, 3318  
 Taylor, Jeremy, 7036, 3317  
 Tennyson, Alfred, 7105  
 Toplady, Augustus Montague, 7211  
 Watts, Isaac, 7683  
 Wesley, Charles, 7710

## German

Gerhardt, Paul, 2765  
 Luther, Martin, 4158

## Illustrators

[See *Cartoonists and Illustrators*, in this Outline.]

## Inventors

## American

Baldwin, Matthias William, 577  
 Bell, Alexander Graham, 703  
 Berliner, Emile, 717  
 Brush, Charles Francis, 983  
 Cooper, Peter, 1661  
 Curtiss, Glenn Hammond, 1791  
 De Forest, Lee, 1873  
 Eastman, George, 2090  
 Edison, Thomas Alva, 2108  
 Ericsson, John, 2285  
 Field, Cyrus West, 2408  
 Fitch, John, 2447  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 2593  
 Fulton, Robert, 2634  
 Gatling, Richard Jordan, 2705  
 Goodyear, Charles, 2871  
 Gray, Elisha, 2919  
 Hammond, John Hays, Jr., 3029  
 Haynes, Elwood, 3100  
 Henry, Joseph, 3147  
 Hoe, Richard March, 3190  
 Holland, John Philip, 3195  
 Howe, Elias, 3266  
 Langley, Samuel Pierpont, 3857  
 McCormick, Cyrus Hall, 4174  
 Maxim, Hudson, 4350  
 Morse, Samuel Finley Breese, 4664  
 Pullman, George Mortimer, 5878  
 Roosevelt, Nicholas J., 6184

Westinghouse, George, 7714  
 Whitney, Eli, 7754  
 Wright, Orville, 7896, 118  
 Wright, Wilbur, 7896, 118

## British

Arkwright, Sir Richard, 403  
 Armstrong, Lord William George, 412  
 Bessemer, Sir Henry, 721  
 Cartwright, Edmund, 1223  
 Davy, Sir Humphry, 1840, 2429  
 Hargreaves, James, 3046  
 Maxim, Sir Hiram Stevens, 4350  
 Nasmyth, James, 4812  
 Watt, James, 7681  
 Wheatstone, Sir Charles, 7736

## German

Bunsen, Robert Wilhelm Eberhard, 1022  
 Gensfleisch, Johann Henne. [See GUTENBERG, JOHANNES, 2989.]  
 Gutenberg, Johannes, 2989  
 Welsbach, Karl Auer, Baron von, 7708  
 Zeppelin, Ferdinand, Count von, 7972

## Others

Daguerre, Louis Jacques Mandé, 1806  
 Jacquard, Joseph Marie, 3608  
 Marconi, Guglielmo, Marquis, 4287  
 Tesla, Nikola, 7116

## Journalists

[See *Editors and Journalists*, in this Outline.]

## Labor Leaders

Debs, Eugene Victor, 1854  
Gompers, Samuel, 2868  
Henderson, Arthur, 3140

MacDonald, James Ramsay, 4175  
Mitchell, John, 4561  
Powderly, Terence Vincent, 5791

## Lawyers and Jurists

## American

Allen, Florence Ellingwood, 224  
Baker, Newton Diehl, 573  
Benjamin, Judah Philip, 709  
Brandeis, Louis Dembitz, 922  
Chase, Salmon Portland, 1320  
Choate, Joseph Hodges, 1407  
Choate, Rufus, 1406  
Davis, David, 1836  
Depew, Chauncey Mitchell, 1911  
Fairbanks, Charles Warren, 2361  
Field, David Dudley, 2408  
Field, Stephen Johnson, 2408  
Fuller, Melville Weston, 2632  
Gary, Elbridge Henry, 2697  
Gray, George, 2919  
Hamilton, Alexander, 3025  
Harlan, John Maynard, 3046  
Harrison, Benjamin, 3053  
Hoar, George Frisbie, 3187  
Holmes, Oliver Wendell, Jr., 3200  
Hughes, Charles Evans, 3276  
Ingalls, John James, 3451  
Ingersoll, Robert Green, 3451  
Jay, John, 3644  
Jefferson, Thomas, 3646  
Kent, James, 3755  
Key, Francis Scott, 3769  
Landis, Kenesaw Mountain, 3852  
Lincoln, Abraham, 4008  
Lindsey, Benjamin Barr, 4030  
Lockwood, Belva Ann Bennett, 4076  
Lowell, Abbott Lawrence, 4139  
Marshall, John, 4304  
Marshall, Thomas Riley, 4305  
Masters, Edgar Lee, 4337  
Moore, John Bassett, 4644

Morgan, John Tyler, 4652  
Olney, Richard, 5194  
Parker, Alton Brooks, 5381  
Quincy, Josiah, 5922  
Root, Elihu, 6197  
Rose, Uriah M., 6204  
Slidell, John, 4322  
Stephens, Alexander Hamilton, 6827  
Story, Joseph, 6851  
Taft, William Howard, 6908  
Taney, Roger Brooke, 7014, 2031  
Thurman, Allen Granbery, 7164  
Toombs, Robert, 7210  
Train, Arthur, 7239  
Waite, Morrison Remick, 7578  
Watson, Thomas E., 7680  
White, Edward Douglass, 7745  
Wickersham, George W., 7757  
Wilson, Woodrow, 7778  
Young, Owen D., 7952

## Canadian

Aylesworth, Sir Allen Bristol, 549  
Blake, Edward, 786  
Falconbridge, Sir [William] Glenholme, 2365  
Thompson, Sir John Sparrow David, 7155

## British

Alverstone, Lord, 240  
Blackstone, Sir William, 784  
Jeffreys, Lord George, 3653  
Littleton, Sir Thomas, 4058  
Reading, Marquis of, 6013

## Others

Grotius, Hugo, 2968  
Smuts, Jan Christian, 6656

## Mathematicians

## British

Kelvin, Baron, 3752  
Napier, John, 4805  
Newton, Sir Isaac, 4960

## French

Descartes, René, 1913  
Laplace, Pierre Simon, 3874  
Pascal, Blaise, 5406

## German

Einstein, Albert, 2162  
Helmholtz, Hermann von, 3136

Kepler, Johann, 3766  
Leibnitz, Gottfried Wilhelm, 3925

## Greek

Archimedes, 358, 2918  
Euclid of Alexandria, 2313  
Plato, 5652  
Pythagoras, 5898

## Others

Huygens, Christian, 3300  
Omar Khayyam, 5199  
Ptolemy, 5871

## Military Leaders

## American

Allen, Ethan, 224  
 Arnold, Benedict, 418  
 Beauregard, Pierre Gustave Toutant, 665  
 Bliss, Tasker Howard, 794  
 Bragg, Braxton, 916  
 Breckinridge, John Cabell, 940  
 Burnside, Ambrose Everett, 1036  
 Butler, Benjamin Franklin, 1039  
 Clark, George Rogers, 1455  
 Clark, William, 1455  
 Crockett, David, 1749  
 Custer, George Armstrong, 1792  
 Dearborn, Henry, 2543  
 De Kalb, Johann, Baron, 1875  
 Early, Jubal Anderson, 2079  
 Floyd, John Buchanan, 2496  
 Funston, Frederick, 2638  
 Gates, Horatio, 2704  
 Glover, John, 2844  
 Goethals, George Washington, 2852  
 Gordon, John Brown, 2875  
 Grant, Frederick Dent, 2899  
 Grant, Ulysses Simpson, 2899  
 Greely, Adolphus Washington, 2955  
 Greene, Nathanael, 2957  
 Hale, Nathan, 3016  
 Hampton, Wade, 3030  
 Hancock, Winfield Scott, 3032  
 Harrison, Benjamin, 3053  
 Harrison, William Henry, 3059-3062  
 Hood, John Bell, 3222  
 Hooker, Joseph, 3223  
 Houston, Sam, 3264  
 Hull, William, 3280  
 Jackson, Andrew, 3597  
 Jackson, Thomas Jonathan, 3605  
 Johnston, Albert Sidney, 3690  
 Johnston, Joseph Eggleston, 3690  
 Kearny, Philip, 3750  
 Kilpatrick, Hugh Judson, 3775  
 Knox, Henry, 3809  
 Lawton, Henry Ware, 3901  
 Lee, Charles, 3916  
 Lee, Henry, 3916  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 3917  
 Lee, Robert Edward, 3917  
 Liggett, Hunter, 3993  
 Logan, John Alexander, 4088  
 Longstreet, James, 4108  
 McClellan, George Brinton, 4173  
 March, Peyton Conway, 4287  
 Marion, Francis, 4293  
 Meade, George Gordon, 4357  
 Miles, Nelson Appleton, Gen., 4474  
 Montgomery, Richard, 4630  
 Morgan, John Hunt, 4651  
 Moultrie, William, 2545  
 Otis, Elwell Stephen, 5271  
 Pemberton, John Clifford, 5449

Pershing, John Joseph, 5494  
 Pickett, George Edward, 5602  
 Pike, Zebulon Montgomery, 5614  
 Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, 5619  
 Polk, Leonidas, 5712  
 Price, Sterling, 5810  
 Putnam, Israel, 5888  
 Revere, Paul, 6069  
 Rosecrans, William Starke, 6205  
 Saint Clair, Arthur, 6305  
 Schofield, John McAllister, 6415  
 Schurz, Carl, 6431  
 Schuyler, Philip John, 6431  
 Scott, Hugh Lenox, 6447  
 Scott, Winfield, 6451  
 Shafter, William Rufus, 6523  
 Sheridan, Philip Henry, 6555  
 Sherman, William Tecumseh, 6558  
 Shields, James, 6560  
 Smith, Edmund Kirby, 6648  
 Stark, John, 6811  
 Stuart, James Ewell Brown, 6881  
 Summerall, Charles Pelot, 6920  
 Thomas, George Henry, 7152  
 Warner, Seth, 7601  
 Warren, Joseph, 7621  
 Wayne, Anthony, 7685  
 Wheeler, Joseph, 7739

## British

Allenby, Edmund, 225  
 Amherst, Jeffrey, 261  
 André, John, 278  
 Baden-Powell, Robert Stevenson, 570  
 Braddock, Edward, 915  
 Brock, Sir Isaac, 973  
 Burgoyne, John, 1026  
 Byng, Julian, 1053  
 Carleton, Sir Guy, 1198  
 Chinese Gordon. [See GORDON, CHARLES  
 GEORGE, 2874.]  
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 1484  
 Clive, Robert, 1485  
 Connaught, Duke of, 1614  
 Cornwallis, Lord, 1694  
 Currie, Sir Arthur, 1790  
 French, Sir John, 2607  
 Gage, Thomas, 2658  
 Gordon, Charles George, 2874  
 Haig, [Sir Douglas], 3005  
 Haldimand, Sir Frederick, 3014  
 Hastings, Warren, 3070  
 Havelock, Sir Henry, 3075  
 Howe, Sir William, 3266  
 John of Gaunt, 3682  
 Kitchener, Horatio Herbert, 3798  
 Marlborough, John Churchill, 4295  
 Minto, Earl of, 4525  
 Monk, George, 4595  
 Monmouth, Duke of, 4597

Moore, Sir John, 4644  
 Murray, James, 4748  
 Outram, Sir James, 5276  
 Pakenham, Sir Edward, 5308  
 Roberts, Frederick Sleigh, 6147  
 Saint Leger, Barry, 6315  
 Warwick, Earl of, 7622  
 Wellington, Duke of, 7706, 803  
 Wolfe, James, 7818  
 Wolseley, Garnet Joseph, Viscount, 7820

**French**

Bayard, Pierre du Terrail, 654  
 Dreyfus, Alfred, 2036  
 Fayolle, 2383  
 Foch, Ferdinand, 2505  
 Joffre, Joseph Jacques Césaire, 3680  
 Lafayette, Marquis de, 3838  
 MacMahon, Marie Edme Patrice Maurice de, 4194  
 Montcalm De Saint-Veran, Louis Joseph, 4619  
 Murat, Joachim, 4745  
 Ney, Michel, 5008  
 Paris, Count of, 5380  
 Petain, Henri Philippe, 5514  
 Rochambeau, Comte de, 6150

**German**

Blücher, Gebhard Leberecht von, 803  
 Falkenhayn, Eric von, 2365  
 Hindenburg, Paul von Beneckendorff und von, 3181  
 Ludendorff, Erich, 4144  
 Moltke, Count von, 4577  
 Steuben, Frederick William Augustus, 6831  
 Tilly, Count of, 7178  
 Wallenstein, Albert Eusebius Wenzel von, 7584

**Greek**

Cimon, 1425  
 Epaminondas, 2276  
 Lysander, 4165  
 Miltiades, 4491, 4281  
 Nicias, 5021  
 Pelopidas, 5448  
 Phocion, 5568  
 Pyrrhus, 5898  
 Solon, 6684  
 Xenophon, 7915

**Mexican**

Arista, Mariano, 381  
 Diaz, Porfirio, 1935

**American**

Edwards, Jonathan, 2134  
 Eliot, John, 2209  
 Whitman, Marcus, 7752  
 Williams, Roger, 7772

Huerta, Victoriano, 3275  
 Iturbide, Augustin de, 3589  
 Obregon, Alvaro, 5140  
 Santa Anna, Antonio Lopez de, 6378

**Polish**

Kosciusko, Thaddeus, 3814  
 Pilsudski, Joseph, 5617  
 Pulaski, Casimir, 5876

**Roman**

Agricola, Gnaeus Julius, 88  
 Antony, Mark, 313  
 Fabius, Quintus Maximus (Cunctator), 2356  
 Fabius, Quintus Maximus (Rullianus), 2356  
 Marius, Caius, 4293  
 Pompey, 5725  
 Regulus, Marcus Atilius, 6046  
 Scipio (family)  
     Publius Cornelius, 6435  
     Publius Cornelius Aemilianus I, 6435  
 Sulla, Lucius Cornelius, 6915

**Spanish**

Alva, Duke of, 239  
 Gonsalvo De Cordova, Gonzalo Hernandez y Aguilar, 2869  
 Primo De Rivera, Miguel, 5811  
 Weyler, Nicolau Valeriano, 7726

**Others**

Alaric I, 166  
 Alexander The Great, 199  
 Charles Martel, 1316, 4645  
 Egmont, Count, 2140  
 Eugène, François, 2314  
 Genghis Khan, 2716  
 Genseric, 2719  
 Hamilcar Barca, 3025  
 Hannibal, 3037  
 Hasdrubal, 3069  
 Iberville, Pierre le Moyne, Sieur D', 3324  
 Jugurtha, 3707  
 Kruger, Stephanus Johannes Paulus, 3816  
 Kuropatkin, Alexei Nikolayevitch, 3819  
 Mazeppa, Ivan Stefanovitch, 4357  
 Nana Sahib, 4803  
 Nogi, Count Maresuke, 5039  
 Oyama, Prince Iwao, 5282  
 Panth, Dundhu. [See NANA SAHIB, 4803.]  
 San Martin, José de, 6377  
 Smuts, Jan Christian, 6656  
 Villa, Francisco, 7528

**Missionaries****British**

Augustine, Saint, 502  
 Boniface, Saint, 837  
 Heber, Reginald, 3120  
 Livingstone, David, 4061  
 Patrick, Saint, 5416

## Others

Grenfell, Sir Wilfred Thomason, 2962  
 Hennepin, Louis, 3141  
 Joliet, Louis, 3693

Marquette, Jacques, 4298  
 Paul, Saint, 5419  
 Xavier, Francisco de, 7915

## Musicians: Composers

## American

Berlin, Irving, 717  
 Bond, Carrie Jacobs, 835  
 Buck, Dudley, 994  
 Chadwick, George Whitefield, 1294  
 Damrosch, Leopold, 1816  
 Damrosch, Walter Johannes, 1817  
 De Koven, Reginald, 1875  
 Foster, Stephen Collins, 2550  
 Gottschalk, Louis Moreau, 2879  
 Herbert, Victor, 3154  
 MacDowell, Edward Alexander, 4177  
 Nevin, Ethelbert, 4906  
 Root, George Frederick, 6198  
 Stock, Frederick A., 6837

## British

Balfe, Michael William, 578  
 Coleridge-Taylor, Samuel, 1536  
 Elgar, Sir Edward, 2205  
 Henschel, Georg, 3149  
 Sullivan, Sir Arthur Seymour, 6915

## French

Berlioz, Hector, 718  
 Bizet, Georges, 778  
 Chaminade, Cécile Louise Stéphanie, 1300  
 Gounod, Charles François, 2881  
 Guilmant, Felix Alexandre, 2080  
 Leopold, Alexandre César. [See BIZET, GEORGES, 778.]  
 Massenet, Jules Émile Frédéric, 4336  
 Saint-Saëns, [Charles] Camille, 6328

## German

Abt, Franz, 12  
 Bach, Johann Sebastian, 563  
 Beethoven, Ludwig van, 686  
 Brahms, Johannes, 918  
 Flotow, Friedrich von, 2485  
 Gluck, Christoph Willibald, 2844  
 Handel, George Frederick, 3034

Humperdinck, Engelbert, 3287  
 Mendelssohn-Bartholdy, Jakob Ludwig Felix, 4390  
 Meyerbeer, Giacomo, 4450  
 Mozart, Johann C. W. A., 4730  
 Offenbach, Jacques, 5165  
 Schubert, Franz Peter, 6429  
 Schumann, Robert, 6430  
 Strauss, Richard, 6876  
 Wagner, Wilhelm Richard, 7575  
 Weber, Karl Maria Friedrich Ernest von, 7695

## Italian

Cherubini, Maria Luigi Carlo Zenobio Salvatore, 1344  
 Donizetti, Gaetano, 2010  
 Mascagni, Pietro, 4320  
 Palestrina, Giovanni Pierluigi da, 5316  
 Puccini, Giacomo, 5874  
 Rossini, Gioachino Antonio, 6212  
 Verdi, Giuseppe, 7492

## Russian

Grechaninoff, Alexander, 2938  
 Rachmaninov, Sergei, 5932  
 Rubinstein, Anton Gregorovich, 6234  
 Tschaikovsky, Peter Ilich, 7285

## Others

Chopin, Frédéric François, 1408  
 Dvorak, Antonin, 2061  
 Garcia, Manuel del Popolo Vicente, 2682  
 Grieg, Edvard Hagerup, 2965  
 Haydn, Josef, 3092  
 Joachim, Joseph, 3677  
 Liszt, Franz, 4045  
 Paderewski, Ignace Jan, 5294  
 Sinding, Christian, 6617  
 Smetana, Friedrich, 6647  
 Strauss, Johann, 6875  
 Ysaÿe, Eugene, 7955

## Musicians: Conductors and Directors

Bülow, Hans Guido von, 1020  
 Campanini, Cleofonte, 1113  
 Damrosch, Leopold, 1816  
 Damrosch, Walter Johannes, 1817  
 Gilmore, Patrick Sarsfield, 2808  
 Henschel, Georg, 3149

Polacco, Giorgio, 5685  
 Seidl, Anton, 6484  
 Sousa, John Philip, 6696  
 Stock, Frederick A., 6837  
 Thomas, Theodore, 7153



## Musicians: Instrumental

## American

Buck, Dudley, 994  
 Eddy, Clarence, 2106  
 Foote, Arthur, 2528  
 Gottschalk, Louis Moreau, 2879  
 MacDowell, Edward Alexander, 4177  
 Powell, Maud, 5791  
 Stock, Frederick A., 6837  
 Zeisler, Fannie Bloomfield, 7971

## German

Beethoven, Ludwig van, 686  
 Bülow, Hans Guido von, 1020  
 Mozart, Johann, 4730  
 Schumann, Robert, 6430

## Hungarian

Joachim, Joseph, 3677  
 Liszt, Franz, 4045  
 Reményi, Eduard, 6055

## Polish

Chopin, Frédéric François, 1408  
 Godowski, 2851  
 Hofmann, Josef, 3190  
 Paderewski, Ignace Jan, 5294

## Russian

Elman, Mischa, 2216  
 Heifetz, Jascha, 3126  
 Horowitz, Vladimir, 3242  
 Rachmaninov, Sergei, 5932  
 Rubinstein, Anton Gregorovich, 6234

## Others

Guilmant, Felix Alexandre, 2980  
 Kreisler, Fritz, 3815  
 Kubelik, Jan, 3818  
 Leschetizky, Theodor, 3943  
 Paganini, Nicolo, 5206  
 Smetana, Friedrich, 6647  
 Urso, Camilla, 7422  
 Ysaÿe, Eugene, 7955

## Musicians: Singers

## American

Eames, Emma, 2074  
 Farrar, Geraldine, 2374  
 Fremstad, Olive, 2606  
 Galli-Curci, Amelita, 2666  
 Garden, Mary, 2683  
 Gluck, Alma, 2844  
 Hackett, Charles, 2999  
 Homer, Louise, 3211  
 Kellogg, Clara Louise, 3752  
 Lewis, Mary Sybil, 3955  
 Marshall, Charles, 4304  
 Mason, Edith, 4321  
 Nielsen, Alice, 5023  
 Nordica, Lillian, 5041  
 Sankey, Ira David, 6376, 4637  
 Story, Emma Hayden. [See EAMES, EMMA, 2074.]  
 Talley, Marion, 7008  
 Van Gordon, Cyrena, 7462

## British

Henschel, Georg, 3140  
 Lauder, Sir Harry, 3892  
 McCormack, John, 4174  
 Melba, Nellie, 4383  
 Mitchell, Helen Porter. [See MELBA, NELLIE, 4383.]

## French

Calvé, Emma, 1100  
 Dalmorès, Charles, 1813  
 Muratore, Lucien, 4745  
 Roquer, Emma de. [See CALVÉ, EMMA, 1100.]

## German

Gadski, Johanna W. Tauscher, 2657  
 Hempel, Frieda, 3140  
 Schumann-Heink, Ernestine, 6430

## Italian

Caruso, Enrico, 1224  
 Cavalieri, Lina, 1260  
 Martinelli, Giovanni, 4308  
 Muzio, Claudia, 4783  
 Rimini, Giacomo, 6129  
 Ruffo, Titta, 6237  
 Schipa, Tito, 6412  
 Scotti, Antonio, 6452  
 Tetrizzini, Luisa, 7117

## Polish

Raisa, Rosa, 5989  
 Reszke, Edouard de, 6068  
 Reszke, Jean de, 6068  
 Sembrich, Marcella, 6487

## Spanish

Bori, Lucrezia, 866  
 Garcia, Manuel del Popolo Vicente, 2682  
 Garcia, Maria Felicita, 2682  
 Garcia, Pauline, 2682  
 Patti, Adelina Juana Maria, 5418

## Others

Chaliapin, Feodor Ivanovitch, 1296  
 Destinn, Emmy, 1918  
 Jeritza, Maria, 3656  
 Johnson, Edward, 3689  
 Lind, Jenny, 4025, 625  
 Nilsson, Christine, 5031

## Musicians: Miscellaneous

Amati (family), 241  
 Aristoxenus, 382  
 Chorley, Henry Fothergill, 1408  
 Choron, Alexander Etienne, 1408

Guido of Arezzo, 2978  
 Stradivarius, Antonio, 6872  
 [See also *Hymn Writers*.]

## Naturalists

## American

Agassiz, Alexander, 85  
 Agassiz, Louis John Rudolph, 85  
 Beard, Daniel Carter, 663  
 Heilprin, Angelo, 3126  
 Muir, John, 4732  
 Thoreau, Henry David, 7156

## British

Darwin, Charles Robert, 1830  
 Hudson, William Henry, 3271

Huxley, Thomas Henry, 3300  
 Murray, Sir John, 4748  
 Wallace, Alfred Russel, 7583  
 White, Gilbert, 7745

## Others

Cuvier, Baron, 1794  
 Fabre, Jean Henri, 2357  
 Lamarck, Jean, 3846  
 Linnaeus. [See LINNÉ, 4032.]  
 Linné, Karl von, 4032  
 Seton, Ernest Thompson, 6506

## Naval Leaders

## American

Bainbridge, William, 573  
 Barron, James, 630  
 Barry, John, 630  
 Decatur, Stephen, 1856  
 Dewey, George, 1926  
 Evans, Robley Dunglison, 2332  
 Farragut, David Glasgow, 2373  
 Foote, Andrew Hull, 2528  
 Hobson, Richmond Pearson, 3189  
 Jones, John Paul, 3695  
 Lawrence, James, 3900  
 Mahan, Alfred Thayer, 4221  
 Mallory, Stephen Russell, 4240  
 Maury, Matthew Fontaine, 4350  
 Perry, Matthew Calbraith, 5491, 3636  
 Perry, Oliver Hazard, 5492  
 Porter, David, 5745  
 Porter, David Dixon, 5746  
 Sampson, William Thomas, 6357  
 Schley, Winfield Scott, 6413  
 Semmes, Raphael, 6488  
 Sigsbee, Charles Dwight, 6601  
 Sims, William Sowden, 6616

Wilkes, Charles, 7762  
 Wood, Leonard, 7828

## British

Beatty, David, 664  
 Beresford, Lord Charles William, 711  
 Blake, Robert, 786  
 Bligh, William, 790  
 Drake, Sir Francis, 2022  
 Hawkins, Sir John, 3088  
 Howe, Richard, 3266  
 Jellicoe, Earl John Rushworth, 3654  
 Nelson, Horatio, 4872, 4875  
 Parry, Sir William Edward, 5400

## Others

Abruzzi, Duke of the, 10  
 Coligny, Gaspard de, 1536  
 Rojestvensky, Ziniv Petrovich, 6163  
 Ruyter, Michael Adriaanszoon de, 6286  
 Tirpitz, Alfred von, 7183  
 Togo, Heihachiro, 7199  
 Tromp, Martin Harpertsoon, 7274

## Novelists

[See *Fiction Writers*, in this Outline.]

## Orators

## American

Bryan, William Jennings, 986  
 Calhoun, John C., 1078  
 Clay, Henry, 1459  
 Depew, Chauncey Mitchell, 1911  
 Everett, Edward, 2334  
 Grady, Henry Woodfin, 2885

Hale, Edward Everett, 3015  
 Hayne, Robert Young, 3100  
 Henry, Patrick, 3147  
 Ingalls, John James, 3451  
 Ingersoll, Robert Green, 3451  
 Otis, James, 5271  
 Webster, Daniel, 7696  
 Yancey, William L., 7927

**British**

Bright, John, 955  
 Burke, Edmund, 1028  
 Fox, Charles James, 2554  
 Grattan, Henry, 2916  
 O'Connell, Daniel, 5155  
 Pitt, William, 5632  
 Sheridan, Richard B., 6556

**Greek**

Aeschines, 68

**American**

Abbey, Edwin Austin, 3  
 Alexander, John White, 199  
 Allston, Washington, 228  
 Blashfield, Edwin Howland, 787  
 Boughton, George Henry, 895  
 Copley, John Singleton, 1666  
 Homer, Winslow, 3212  
 Hunt, William Morris, 3294  
 Inness, George, 3455  
 Inness, George, Jr., 3455  
 La Farge, John, 3837  
 Leutze, Emanuel, 3948  
 Parrish, Maxfield, 5398  
 Peale, Charles Wilson, 5430  
 Peale, Rembrandt, 5430  
 Phillips, [Clarence] Coles, 5563  
 Poore, Henry Rankin, 5729  
 Pyle, Howard, 5891  
 Remington, Frederic, 6055  
 Sargent, John Singer, 6389  
 Stuart, Gilbert, 6880  
 Watteau, Antoine, 7682  
 West, Benjamin, 7710  
 Whistler, James Abbott McNeill, 7743

**British**

Brangwyn, Frank, 923  
 Burne-Jones, Sir Edward, 1032  
 Crane, Walter, 1734  
 Gainsborough, Thomas, 2659  
 Hogarth, William, 3192  
 Landseer, Sir Edwin Henry, 3855  
 Leighton, Frederick, 3926  
 Linton, Sir James Dromgole, 4036  
 Millais, Sir John Everett, 4486  
 Northcote, James, 5064  
 Reynolds, Sir Joshua, 6084  
 Romney, George, 6181  
 Rossetti, Dante Gabriel, 6211  
 Swan, John Macallan, 6946  
 Turner, Joseph Mallord William, 7319  
 Watts, George Frederick, 7682  
 Wilkie, Sir David, 7763

**Dutch**

Alma-Tadema, Sir Laurence, 231  
 Hals, Frans, 3023

Demosthenes, 1890  
 Isocrates, 3568  
 Pericles, 5487  
 Quintilian (Marcus Fabius Quintilianus), 5923

**Others**

Antony, Mark, 313  
 Brutus, Marcus Junius, 985  
 Cicero, Marcus Tullius, 1423  
 Kossuth, Louis, 3814  
 Mirabeau, Count de, 4528

**Painters**

Hobbema, Meindert, 3188  
 Israels, Josef, 3569  
 Rembrandt, 6053  
 Ruysdael, Jacob, 6285  
 Steen, Jan, 6823

**Flemish**

Eyck (family), 2349  
 Memling, Hans, 4386  
 Rubens, Peter Paul, 6231  
 Teniers, David, The Elder, 7093  
 Teniers, David, The Younger, 7093  
 Van Dyck, Anthonis, 7460  
 Van Eyck family. See *Eyck, Van*, 2349

**French**

Bastien-Lepage, Jules, 646  
 Bonheur, Rosa, 836  
 Breton, Jules Adolph, 941  
 Cormon, Fernand, 1679  
 Corot, Jean Baptiste Camille, 1696  
 David, Jacques Louis, 1836  
 Doré, Paul Gustave, 2013  
 Fragonard, Jean Honoré, 2567  
 Gelée, Claude (Lorrain), 2710  
 Gérôme, Jean Léon, 2790  
 Jeanron, Philippe Auguste, 3645  
 Lerolle, Henri, 3942  
 Lorrain, Claude. [See GELÉE, CLAUDE, 2710.]  
 Manet, Edouard, 4254  
 Meissonier, Jean Louis Ernest, 4382  
 Millet, Jean François, 4488  
 Monet, Claude, 4581  
 Poussin, Nicolas, 5791  
 Tissot, James Joseph Jacques, 7183  
 Vigée-Lebrun, Marie-Anne Elisabeth, 7528

**German**

Bierstadt, Albert, 735  
 Cornelius, Peter von, 1693  
 Dürer, Albrecht, 2056  
 Hofmann, Heinrich, 3190  
 Holbein, Hans, the Elder, 3194  
 Holbein, Hans, the Younger, 3194  
 Kaulbach, Wilhelm von, 3749  
 Schnorr von Carolsfeld, Julius, 6414

**Italian**

Allegri, Antonio. [See CORREGGIO, 1698.]  
 Angelico, Fra, 281

Bartolommeo, Fra, 632  
 Bellini, Giovanni, 705  
 Botticelli, Sandro, 893  
 Caravaggio, Michelangelo Merisi da, 1189  
 Carracci, Ludovico, 1215  
 Cimabue, Giovanni, 1425  
 Correggio, 1698  
 Domenichino, 2002  
 Filippo Lippi. [See LIPPI, FILIPPO, 4041.]  
 Ghirlandajo, Domenico, 2799  
 Giordano, Luca, 2810  
 Giorgione, 2810  
 Giotto, Di Bondone, 2811  
 Guido Reni, 2978  
 Lippi, Fra Filippo, 4041  
 Michelangelo Buonarroti, 4453  
 Perugino, Pietro, 5512  
 Porta, Baccio della. [See BARTOLOMMEO, FRA, 632.]  
 Raphael Santi, 5995  
 Rosa, Salvator, 6201  
 Sarto Andrea del, 6390

Tintoretto, 7182  
 Titian, 7185  
 Veronese, Paul, 7504  
 Vinci, Leonardo da, 7530

## Spanish

Goya, Francisco, 2884  
 Herrera, Francisco de, the Younger, 3166  
 Herrera, Francisco de, the Elder, 3166  
 Murillo, Bartolomé Estebán, 4746  
 Velasquez, Diego Rodriguez De Silva y, 7473

## Others

Apelles, 316  
 Fabius, Caius Pictor, 2356  
 Munkácsy Mihály, 4744  
 Parrhasius, 5398  
 Verestchagin, Vassili, 7494  
 Zeuxis, 7973  
 Zorn, Anders Leonhard, 7986  
 [See, also, *Cartoonists and Illustrators*, in this Outline.]

## Patriots

## American

Adams, John, 24  
 Adams, Samuel, 35  
 Allen, Ethan, 224  
 Decatur, Stephen, 1856  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 2593  
 Hale, Nathan, 3016  
 Hamilton, Alexander, 3025  
 Hancock, John, 3031  
 Henry, Patrick, 3147  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 3917  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 4008  
 Morris, Gouverneur, 4661  
 Morris, Robert, 4662  
 Revere, Paul, 6069  
 Ross, Betsy, 6208  
 Trumbull, Jonathan, 7281  
 Warren, Joseph, 7621  
 Washington, George, 7644  
 Wayne, Anthony, 7685

## British

Brock, Sir Isaac, 973

Bruce, Robert, 982  
 Emmet, Robert, 2227  
 Nelson, Horatio, 4872  
 O'Connell, Daniel, 5155  
 Wallace, Sir William, 7584

## Others

Aristides, 381  
 Bolivar, Simon, 817, 1544  
 Bozzaris, Marco, 914  
 Brutus, Marcus Junius, 985  
 Demosthenes, 1890, 5546  
 Gandhi, Mahatma Karamchand, 2679, 3390  
 Garcia y Ingues, Calixto, 2682  
 Garibaldi, Giuseppe, 2693, 3583  
 Hofer, Andreas, 3190  
 Joan of Arc, 3677  
 Kosciuszko, Thaddeus, 3814  
 Kossuth, Louis, 3814  
 Mazzini, Giuseppe, 4357  
 Pericles, 5487  
 Secord, Laura, 6476  
 Tell, Wilhelm [William], 7089  
 Winkelried, Arnold von, 7795

## Philanthropists and Social Workers

## American

Abbott, Grace, 1376  
 Addams, Jane, 35  
 Armour, Philip Danforth, 411  
 Barton, Clara, 632  
 Bergh, Henry, 712, 1760  
 Carnegie, Andrew, 1202, 2129  
 Childs, George William, 1377  
 Cooper, Peter, 1661  
 Corcoran, William Wilson, 1674

Cornell, Ezra, 1693  
 Drezel Anthony Joseph, 2936  
 Eastman, George, 2090  
 Girard, Stephen, 2813  
 Gould, Helen Miller. [See SHEPARD, HELEN MILLER GOULD, 2880.]  
 Hearst, George, 3107  
 Hearst, Phoebe Apperson, 3107  
 Lathrop, Julia Clifford, 3885, 1376  
 Peabody, George, 5425  
 Rockefeller, John Davison, 6153

Rockefeller, Jr., John Davison, 6153  
 Rosenwald, Julius, 6205-6206  
 Sage, Margaret Olivia Slocum, 6297  
 Shepard, Helen Miller Gould, 2880  
 Stanford, Leland, 6800  
 Tilden, Samuel Jones, 7177  
 Vassar, Matthew, 7465  
 Wanamaker, John, 7590

**American**

Dewey, John, 1927  
 Edwards, Jonathan, 2134  
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 2221  
 Fiske, John, 2446  
 James, William, 3614

**British**

Bacon, Francis, 564  
 Bacon, Roger, 565  
 Darwin, Charles Robert, 1830  
 Hobbes, Thomas, 3188  
 Hume, David, 3285  
 Jevons, William Stanley, 3671  
 Locke, John, 4075  
 Mill, James, 4485  
 Mill, John Stuart, 4485  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 4960  
 Paine, Thomas, 5297  
 Pascal, Blaise, 5406  
 Spencer, Herbert, 6755  
 Wallace, Alfred Russel, 7583

**French**

Abelard, Pierre, 8  
 Bergson, Henri Louis, 712  
 Comte, Isidore Auguste Marie François Xavier,  
 1595  
 Descartes, René, 1913  
 Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 6218  
 Voltaire, François Marie Arouet de, 7565

**American**

Blackwell, Elizabeth, 784  
 Gorgas, William Crawford, 2875  
 Gorrie, John F., 2877  
 Kane, Elisha Kent, 3732  
 Keeley, Leslie, 3751  
 Long, Crawford W., 4100  
 Mayo, Charles Horace, 4355  
 Mayo, William James, 4355  
 Morton, William Thomas Green, 4666  
 Rush, Benjamin, 6254  
 Shaw, Anna Howard, 6544  
 Whitman, Marcus, 7752

**British**

Harvey, William, 3068  
 Jenner, Edward, 3655

**Others**

Hirsch, Maurice, Baron de, 3185  
 Lipton, Sir Thomas Johnstone, 4041  
 Nightingale, Florence, 5026  
 Raikes, Robert, 5972  
 Rhodes, Cecil John, 6097, 80-81  
 Smithson, James, 6653  
 Yale, Elihu, 7926

**Philosophers****German**

Eucken, Rudolph Christoph, 2313  
 Fichte, Johann Gottlieb, 2406  
 Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von, 2853  
 Hegel, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich, 3125  
 Herbart, Johann Friedrich, 3153  
 Herder, Johann Gottfried von, 3158  
 Kant, Immanuel, 3746  
 Leibnitz, Gottfried Wilhelm, 3925  
 Nietzsche, Friedrich Wilhelm, 5023  
 Schopenhauer, Arthur, 6429

**Greek**

Anaxagoras, 274  
 Aristotle, 382, 5488  
 Diogenes, 1953  
 Epictetus, 2277  
 Epicurus, 2277  
 Hypatia, 3318  
 Longinus, [Dionysius] Cassius, 4105  
 Plato, 5652, 13  
 Pythagoras, 5898  
 Socrates, 6673  
 Thales, 7134, 4276  
 Zeno, 7972

**Others**

Aurelius, Marcus, 504  
 Seneca, Lucius Annaeus, 6491  
 Spinoza, Baruch, 6766  
 Swedenborg, Emanuel, 6958  
 Tagore, Sir Rabindranath, 7006

**Physicians and Surgeons**

Lister, Sir Joseph, 4045  
 McCrae, John, 4174  
 Simpson, Sir James Young, 6615  
 Sloane, Sir Hans, 6643

**German**

Emin Pasha, 2227  
 Gall, Franz Joseph, 2665  
 Hahnemann, Samuel Christian, 3005  
 Koch, Robert, 3811  
 Mesmer, Friedrich Anton, 4412, 3319  
 Paracelsus, 5356  
 Virchow, Rudolf, 7534

**Others**

Carrel, Alexis, 1216  
 Eustachio, Bartolommeo, 2329

Finsen, Niels Ryberg, 2423  
 Galen, Claudius, 2662  
 Galvani, Luigi, 2669  
 Grenfell, Sir Wilfred Thomason, 2962

Hippocrates, 3182  
 Osler, Sir William, 5265  
 Servetus, Michael, 6505

## Physicists

### American

Edison, Thomas Alva, 2108  
 Henry, Joseph, 3147  
 Michelson, Albert Abraham, 4456, 3996, 3477  
 Millikan, Robert Andrews, 4489  
 Morse, Samuel Finley Breese, 4664  
 Steinmetz, Charles Proteus, 6823

### British

Bacon, Roger, 565  
 Faraday, Michael, 2370  
 Herschel, Caroline Lucretia, 3168  
 Herschel, Sir John Frederick William, 3168  
 Herschel, Sir William, 3167  
 Kelvin, Baron, 3752, 1060  
 Lodge, Sir Oliver Joseph, 4086  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 4960, 2917  
 Tesla, Nikola, 7116  
 Tyndall, John, 7337  
 Watt, James, 7681  
 Wheatstone, Sir Charles, 7736

### French

Ampere, André Marie, 266  
 Arago, Dominique François, 343  
 Curie, Marie Skłodowska, 1787  
 Curie, Pierre, 1787  
 Foucault, Jean Bernard Léon, 2551  
 Gay-Lussac, Joseph Louis, 2707

### German

Bunsen, Robert Wilhelm Eberhard, 1022  
 Einstein, Albert, 2162, 3994, 2917  
 Fahrenheit, Gabriel Daniel, 2361  
 Helmholtz, Hermann von, 3136  
 Olm, Georg Simon, 5178  
 Roentgen, Wilhelm Konrad, 6162

### Others

Archimedes, 358  
 Galvani, Luigi, 2669  
 Guyot, Arnold, 2990  
 Huygens, Christian, 3300  
 Torricelli, Evangelista, 7220  
 Volta, Alessandro, 7565

## Pioneers and Colonists

Alden, John, 195, 1724  
 Austin, Stephen Fuller, 507  
 Boone, Daniel, 858, 3762  
 Buffalo Bill. [See CODY, WILLIAM FREDERICK, 1525.]  
 Carson, Christopher, 1218  
 Clark, George Rogers, 1455, 3762

Cody, William Frederick, 1525  
 Crockett, David, 1749  
 Fargo, William George, 2370  
 Lewis, Meriwether, 3955  
 Rolfe, John, 6164  
 Standish, Miles, 6800  
 Whitman, Marcus, 7752

## Poets

### American

Bond, Carrie Jacobs, 835  
 Bradstreet, Anne, 915  
 Bryant, William Cullen, 987  
 Carleton, Will, 1199  
 Cary, Alice, 1224  
 Cary, Phoebe, 1224  
 Dunbar, Paul Laurence, 2054  
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 2221  
 Field, Eugene, 2408  
 Gilder, Richard Watson, 2807  
 Guest, Edgar A., 2977  
 Halleck, Fitz-Greene, 3020  
 Hayne, Paul Hamilton, 3099  
 Holland, Josiah Gilbert, 3196  
 Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 3199, 975, 532  
 Howe, Julia Ward, 3267, 653  
 Jackson, Helen Fiske Hunt, 3604

Key, Francis Scott, 3769  
 Kilmer, Joyce, 3774  
 Lanier, Sidney, 3871  
 Larcom, Lucy, 3878  
 Le Gallienne, Richard, 3922  
 Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 4101  
 Loveman, Robert, 4138  
 Lowell, James Russell, 4139, 736  
 Markham, Edwin, 4294  
 Masters, Edgar Lee, 4337  
 Millay, Edna Saint Vincent, 4486  
 Miller, Cincinnatus Hiner (Joaquin), 4487  
 Monroe, Harriet, 4601  
 Moody, William Vaughn, 4637  
 Payne, John Howard, 5423  
 Poe, Edgar Allan, 5678  
 Read, Thomas Buchanan, 6005  
 Reese, Lizette Woodworth, 6035  
 Rexford, Eben Eugene, 6083

Riley, James Whitcomb, 6127  
 Sandburg, Carl, 6362  
 Saxe, John Godfrey, 6405  
 Seeger, Alan, 6484  
 Simms, William Gilmore, 6615  
 Smith, Samuel Francis, 6651  
 Stanton, Frank Lebby, 6804  
 Stedman, Edmund Clarence, 6822  
 Teasdale, Sara, 7052  
 Van Dyke, Henry, 7460  
 Whitman, Walt, 7753  
 Whittier, John Greenleaf, 7754  
 Wieland, Christoph Martin, 7757  
 Wilcox, Ella Wheeler, 7760  
 Willis, Nathaniel Parker, 7774

**British**

Addison, Joseph, 37  
 Arnold, Sir Edwin, 419  
 Arnold, Matthew, 419  
 Austin, Alfred, 507  
 Blake, William, 786  
 Bridges, Robert, 954  
 Browning, Elizabeth Barrett, 979  
 Browning, Robert, 979  
 Bulwer-Lytton, Edward Robert, 1021  
 Burns, Robert, 1034  
 Butler, Samuel, 1040  
 Byron, George Noel Gordon, 1054, 12  
 Caedmon, 1065  
 Campbell, Thomas, 1113  
 Chapman, George, 1304  
 Chaucer, Geoffrey, 1321  
 Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 1535  
 Cowper, William, 1728  
 Drinkwater, John, 2037  
 Dryden, John, 2041  
 Fitzgerald, Edward, 2447  
 Gay, John, 2707  
 Goldsmith, Oliver, 2863  
 Gray, Thomas, 2920  
 Hemans, Felicia Dorothea, 3136  
 Henley, William Ernest, 3141  
 Herrick, Robert, 3166  
 Hood, Thomas, 3223  
 Hunt, [James Henry] Leigh, 3294  
 Ingelow, Jean, 3451  
 Keats, John, 3750  
 Kipling, [Joseph] Rudyard, 3796  
 Landor, Walter Savage, 3852  
 Langland, William, 3857  
 Masfield, John, 4320  
 Meredith, Owen. [See BULWER-LYTTON, 1021.]  
 Milton, John, 4491, 5357  
 Montgomery, James, 4630  
 Moore, Thomas, 4645  
 Morris, William, 4662  
 North, Christopher. [See WILSON, JOHN, 7778.]  
 Noyes, Alfred, 5111  
 Owen Meredith. [See BULWER-LYTTON, 1021.]  
 Pope, Alexander, 5735  
 Procter, Adelaide Anne, 5829  
 Roscommon, Earl of, 6201

Rosetti, Christina Georgina, 6211  
 Rosetti, Dante Gabriel, 6211  
 Scott, Sir Walter, 6448  
 Shakespeare, William, 6524, 548  
 Shelley, Percy Bysshe, 6553  
 Sidney, Sir Philip, 6594  
 Southey, Robert, 6722  
 Spenser, Edmund, 6756  
 Stevenson, Robert Louis, 6832  
 Suckling, Sir John, 6902  
 Swinburne, Algernon Charles, 6967  
 Tennyson, Alfred, 7105  
 Thompson, Francis, 7154  
 Thomson, James, 7155  
 Watts, Isaac, 7683  
 Wilde, Oscar, 7761  
 Wilson, John, 7778  
 Wordsworth, William, 7845  
 Yeats, William Butler, 7931  
 Young, Edward, 7951

**Canadian**

Campbell, William Wilfred, 1114  
 Carman, [William] Bliss, 1201  
 Lampman, Archibald, 3848  
 McCrae, John, 4174  
 Roberts, Charles George Douglas, 6146  
 Sangster, Charles, 6374  
 Scott, Duncan Campbell, 6447  
 Service, Robert William, 6505  
 Sulte, Benjamin, 6917

**French**

Froissart, Sir Jean, 2627  
 Hugo, Victor Marie, 3277  
 La Fontaine, Jean de, 3840  
 Lamartine, Alphonse de Prat de, 3846  
 Musset, Alfred de, 4781  
 Racine, Jean Baptiste, 5932  
 Rostand, Edmond, 6212  
 Villon, François, 7529

**German**

Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von, 2853  
 Heine, Heinrich, 3127  
 Sachs, Hans, 6293  
 Schiller, Johann Christoph Friedrich von, 6411

**Greek**

Anacreon, 270  
 Epimenides, 2280  
 Euripides, 2316  
 Hesiod, 3168  
 Homer, 3210  
 Pindar, 5619  
 Sappho, 6384  
 Simonides, 6615  
 Theocritus, 7141  
 Thespis, 7148

**Italian**

Alfieri, Vittorio, Count, 203  
 Annunzio, Prince Gabriele D', 295

## BIOGRAPHY

Dante Alighieri, 1821, 3571, 664  
 Petrarch, Francesco, 5518, 3571  
 Tasso, Torquato, 7029

### Persian

Firdausi, 2425  
 Hafiz, 3002  
 Omar Khayyám, 5199  
 Sadi, 6295

### Roman

Catullus, Caius Valerius, 1259  
 Horace, 3237  
 Juvenal, Decimus, 3725  
 Lucretius, Titus Carus, 4144  
 Martial (Marcus Valerius Martialis), 4307

Adrian IV, 52  
 Adrian VI, 52  
 Alexander IV, 198  
 Benedict VIII, 706  
 Benedict IX, 706  
 Benedict XIV, 706  
 Benedict XV, 707  
 Boniface II, 837  
 Boniface VIII, 837  
 Boniface IX, 837  
 Calixtus I, 1098  
 Calixtus II, 1098  
 Calixtus III, 1098  
 Celestine III, 1267  
 Celestine V, 1267  
 Clement I, 1464  
 Clement VII, 1465  
 Clement VIII, 1465  
 Clement XIV, 1465  
 Gregory I, 2962  
 Gregory VII, 2962  
 Gregory XIII, 2962  
 Innocent I, 3455  
 Innocent II, 3455  
 Innocent III, 3455  
 Innocent XI, 3457  
 Innocent XII, 3457  
 John I, 3681  
 John XII, 3681  
 John XIX, 3682

### American

Adams, John, 24  
 Adams, John Quincy, 30  
 Arthur, Chester Alan, 425  
 Buchanan, James, 989  
 Cleveland, [Stephen] Grover, 1467  
 Coolidge, Calvin, 1651  
 Fillmore, Millard, 2415  
 Garfield, James Abram, 2689  
 Grant, Ulysses Simpson, 2899

8081

## BIOGRAPHY

Ovid (Publius Ovidius Naso), 5277  
 Plautus, Titus Maccius, 5655  
 Vergil, or Virgil (Publius Vergilius Maro), 7494

### Russian

Griboyedov, Alexander, 6278  
 Lermontov, Mikhail, 6278  
 Nekrasov, Nikolai, 6278  
 Pushkin, Alexander, 5888

### Others

Ling, Pehr Henrik, 4032  
 Snorri Sturluson, 6664  
 Tagore, Sir Rabindranath, 7006, 708  
 Tegner, Esaias, 7056  
 Vega Carpio, Lope Felix de, 7470

## Popes

John XXII, 3682  
 John XXIII, 3682  
 Julius I, Saint, 3708  
 Julius II, 3708  
 Julius III, 3708  
 Leo I, 3936  
 Leo III, 3936  
 Leo IX, 3936  
 Leo X, 3936, 4373  
 Leo XIII, 3936  
 Paul II, 5418  
 Paul III, 5419  
 Paul IV, 5419  
 Paul V, 5419, 865  
 Peter, Saint, 320, 5731, 6164  
 Pius II, 5638  
 Pius IV, 5638  
 Pius V, 5638  
 Pius VI, 5638  
 Pius VII, 5639  
 Pius IX, 5639  
 Pius X, 5640  
 Pius XI, 5640  
 Sixtus IV, 6629  
 Sixtus V, 6629  
 Urban II, 7421  
 Urban VI, 7421  
 Urban VIII, 7421

[A complete list of the Popes appears on pages  
 5734-5735.]

## Presidents

Harding, Warren Gamaliel, 3040  
 Harrison, Benjamin, 3053  
 Harrison, William Henry, 3059  
 Hayes, Rutherford Birchard, 3093  
 Hoover, Herbert Clark, 3226  
 Jackson, Andrew, 3597  
 Jefferson, Thomas, 3646, 7396, 27  
 Johnson, Andrew, 3683  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 4008, 4184, 3751, 7614  
 McKinley, William, 4188  
 Madison, James, 4199, 7396



Monroe, James, 4602  
 Pierce, Franklin, 5605  
 Polk, James Knox, 5707  
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 6185  
 Taft, William Howard, 6998  
 Taylor, Zachary, 7037  
 Tyler, John, 7332  
 Van Buren, Martin, 7450, 625  
 Washington, George, 7644, 2308  
 Wilson, [Thomas] Woodrow, 7778

#### *Wives of Presidents*

Adams, Abigail Smith, 28  
 Adams, Louisa Johnson, 34  
 Cleveland, Frances Folsom, 1472  
 Coolidge, Grace Goodhue, 1659  
 Fillmore, Abigail Powers, 2418  
 Fillmore, Caroline McIntosh, 2419  
 Garfield, Lucretia Rudolph, 2693  
 Grant, Julia Dent, 2906  
 Harding, Florence Kling, 3043  
 Harrison, Anna Symmes, 3062  
 Harrison, Caroline Scott, 3058  
 Harrison, Mary Dimmick, 3059  
 Hayes, Lucy Webb, 3099  
 Hoover, Lou Henry, 3235  
 Jackson, Rachael Robards, 3604  
 Jefferson, Martha Skelton, 3653  
 Johnson, Eliza McCardle, 3688  
 Lincoln, Mary Todd, 4019  
 McKinley, Ida Saxton, 4192  
 Madison, Dorothy Todd, 4203  
 Monroe, Elizabeth Kortwright, 4606  
 Pierce, Jane Means Appleton, 5611  
 Roosevelt, Alice Lee, 6194  
 Roosevelt, Edith Carow, 6194  
 Taft, Helen Herron, 7004  
 Taylor, Margaret Smith, 7042

### Reformers and Social Workers

#### American

Abbott, Grace, 1376  
 Addams, Jane, 35  
 Anthony, Susan Brownell, 307  
 Bergh, Henry, 712  
 Booth, Ballington, 860  
 Booth, Maud Ballington Charlesworth, 860  
 Booth, Evangeline, 861  
 Brown, John, 978  
 Catt, Carrie Chapman, 1249  
 Dow, Neal, 2017  
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 2695  
 Gough, John Bartholomew, 2879  
 Lathrop, Julia Clifford, 3885  
 Livermore, Mary Ashton Rice, 4059  
 Lockwood, Belva Ann Bennett, 4076  
 Mott, Lucretia Coffin, 4689  
 Phillips, Wendell, 5564  
 Sanger, Margaret, 6374  
 Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 6803  
 Willard, Frances Elizabeth, 7766

Tyler, Julia Gardiner, 7337  
 Tyler, Letitia Christian Tyler, 7335  
 Van Buren, Hannah Hoes, 7453  
 Washington, Martha Custis, 7655  
 Wilson, Edith Bolling Galt, 7788  
 Wilson, Ellen Axson, 7788

#### French

Carnot, Marie François Sadi, 1205  
 Deschanel, Paul Eugene Louis, 1913  
 Doumergue, Gaston, 2016  
 Fallières, Clément Armand, 2366  
 Grévy, François Paul Jules, 2963  
 Loubet, Emile, 4118  
 MacMahon, Marie Edme Patrice Maurice de, 4194  
 Millerand, Alexandre, 4487  
 Poincaré, Raymond, 5681  
 Thiers, Louis Adolphe, 7149

#### Mexican

Calles, Plutarco Elias, 1098  
 Carranza, Venustiano, 1215  
 Diaz, Porfirio, 1935  
 Huerta, Victoriano, 3275  
 Juarez, Benito, 3704  
 Madero, Francisco, 4198  
 Obregon, Alvaro, 5140  
 Santa Anna, Antonio Lopez de, 6378

#### Others

Bolivar, Simon, 817  
 Ebert, Friedrich, 2092  
 Hindenburg, Paul von, 3181  
 Kemal, Mustapha, 3752  
 Masaryk, Thomas Garrigue, 4320  
 Yuan Shi-Kai, 7955

#### British

Booth (family), 860  
 Booth-Tucker, Frederick Saint George de Latour, 861  
 Bright, John, 955  
 Godwin, Mary Wollstonecraft, 2852  
 Knox, John, 3809  
 Latimer, Hugh, 3885  
 Owen, Robert, 5277  
 Pankhurst, Emmeline, 5340  
 Raikes, Robert, 5972  
 Tyndale, William, 7337  
 Wycliffe, John, 7902

#### Others

Calvin, John, 1100  
 Huss, John, 3298, 4649  
 Jerome of Prague, 3657  
 Kropotkin, Peter, 3816  
 Luther, Martin, 4158  
 Melancthon, Philipp, 4382  
 Zwingli, Ulrich, 7990

## Religious Leaders

## Founders of Religions

Buddha, 1000, 419  
 Confucius, 1605  
 Gautama. [See BUDDHA.]  
 Jesus Christ, 3662, 1412  
 Mahomet. [See MOHAMMED.]  
 Mohammed, 4567  
 Zoroaster, 7987

## Non-Catholic: American

Abbott, Lyman, 4  
 Asbury, Francis, 438  
 Beecher, Henry Ward, 683  
 Booth (family), 860  
 Brady, Cyrus Townsend, 916  
 Brewster, William, 944  
 Brooks, Phillips, 976  
 Burdette, Robert Jones, 1025  
 Campbell, Alexander, 1957  
 Cartwright, Peter, 1223  
 Channing, William Ellery, 1303, 975  
 Clark, Francis Edward, 1455  
 Cotton, John, 1718  
 Dowie, John Alexander, 2017  
 Dwight, Timothy, 2062  
 Eddy, Mary Baker, 1413  
 Edwards, Jonathan, 2134  
 Eliot, John, 2209  
 Hale, Edward Everett, 3015  
 Harvard, John, 3065  
 Hutchinson, Anne, 3299  
 Mather, Cotton, 4345  
 Mather, Increase, 4345  
 Moody, Dwight Lyman, 4637  
 Muhlenberg, John Peter, 4732  
 Polk, Leonidas, 5712  
 Shaw, Anna Howard, 6544  
 Sheldon, Charles Monroe, 6551  
 Smith, Joseph, 6650  
 Smith, Samuel Francis, 6651  
 Sparks, Jared, 6741  
 Sunday, William Ashley, 6925  
 Talmage, Thomas De Witt, 7009  
 Van Dyke, Henry, 7460  
 Vincent, John Heyl, 7530  
 Williams, Roger, 7772  
 Young, Brigham, 7950

## Non-Catholic: British

Arnold, Thomas, 420  
 Bacon, Roger, 565  
 Bede, 671  
 Besant, Annie, 721  
 Booth (family), 860  
 Booth-Tucker, Frederick Saint George de  
   Latour, 861  
 Bunyan, John, 1022  
 Coverdale, Miles, 1726  
 Cranmer, Thomas, 1734  
 Drummond, Henry, 2040

Farrar, Frederic William, 2373  
 Fox, George, 2555  
 Heber, Reginald, 3120  
 Higgins, Edward John, 3177  
 Kingsley, Charles, 3796  
 Knox, John, 3809  
 Latimer, Hugh, 3885  
 Laud, William, 3892  
 Raikes, Robert, 5972  
 Ridley, Nicholas, 6122  
 Spurgeon, Charles Haddon, 6783  
 Swift, Jonathan, 6962  
 Taylor, Jeremy, 7036, 3317  
 Toplady, Augustus Montague, 7211  
 Tyndale, William, 7337  
 Watson, John, 7680  
 Watts, Isaac, 7683  
 Wesley, Charles, 7710  
 Wesley, John, 7708  
 Whately, Richard, 7730  
 Whitefield, George, 7746  
 Wilberforce, Samuel, 7760

## Non-Catholic: Others

Blavatsky, Helena Petrovna, 788, 721  
 Calvin, John, 1100  
 Erasmus, Desiderius, 2284  
 Huss, John, 3298, 4649  
 Jerome of Prague, 3657  
 Luther, Martin, 4158  
 Melancthon, Philipp, 4382  
 Servetus, Michael, 6505  
 Swedenborg, Emanuel, 6958

## Roman Catholic: American

Dougherty, Dennis J., 2015  
 Falconio, Diomede, 2365  
 Farley, John Murphy, 2371  
 Gibbons, James, 2802  
 Hayes, Patrick Joseph, 3093  
 Ireland, John, 3531  
 Mundelein, George, 4741  
 O'Connell, William Henry, 5155

## Roman Catholic: British

Becket, Thomas à, 668  
 Boniface, Saint, 837  
 Duns Scotus, Joannes, 2056  
 Dunstan, Saint, 2056  
 Lanfranc, 3856  
 Langston, Stephen, 3857  
 Manning, Henry Edward, 4268  
 Newman, John Henry, 4934  
 Patrick, Saint, 5416  
 Vaughan, Herbert, 7469  
 Wolsey, Thomas, 7820

## Roman Catholic: French

Abelard, Pierre, 8  
 Aquinas, Saint Thomas, 338  
 Bernard, Saint 718

Fénelon, François de Salignac, 2394  
 Peter, The Hermit, 5516, 1761  
 Xavier, Francisco de, 7915

#### Roman Catholic: Others

Anthony, Saint, 307  
 Augustine, Saint, 502  
 Bridget, Saint, 955  
 Cecilia, Saint, 1265  
 Chrysostom, Saint John, 1419  
 Eck, Johann Maier von, 2094  
 Francis of Assisi, 2591  
 George, Saint, 2753  
 Ignatius, Saint, 3347

James, Saint, 3614  
 Jerome, Saint, 3657  
 Loyola, Saint Ignatius of, 4142  
 Mercier, Desire Joseph, 4406  
 Nicholas, Saint, 5021  
 Photius, 5575  
 Polycarp, 5716  
 Savonarola, Girolamo, 6403  
 Tetzl, Johann, 7117  
 Thomas A Kempis, 7153  
 Torquemada, Tomas de, 7219  
 Valentine, Saint, 7441  
 See, *Saints, Popes, Hymn Writers, Reformers;*  
 also *Religion*, in this Outline.]

### Rulers

#### Assyrian

Assurbanipal, 460  
 Sardanapalus. [See ASSURBANIPAL.]  
 Sennacherib, 6492, 562  
 Tiglath-Pileser I, 7175  
 Tiglath-Pileser III, 7175

#### Austrian

Charles I (Karl I) of Austria, 1315  
 Francis Joseph I, 2590  
 Maria Theresa, 4289

#### Babylonian

Hammurabi, 3029  
 Nabopolassar, 4801  
 Nebuchadnezzar, 4864

#### Balkan

Alexander I, 199  
 Boris III, King, 867  
 Peter I, Karageorgevitch, 5516  
 Zogu, Ahmed, 7977

#### Belgian

Albert I, 183  
 Leopold I, 3937  
 Leopold II, 3937

#### Egyptian

Cheops, 1342  
 Cleopatra, 1465  
 Ptolemy I, 5870  
 Ptolemy II, 5870  
 Ptolemy III, 5871  
 Ptolemy V, 5871  
 Ptolemy XII, 5871  
 Rameses II, 5992  
 Saladin (Sultan), 6329  
 Seti I, 6506  
 Thothmes III, 7158  
 Tutankhamen, 7329

#### English

Albert, Francis Charles Augustus Emanuel, 182  
 Alfred the Great, 205  
 Anne, Queen, 293

Athelstan, 479  
 Baliol, John de, 579  
 Bruce, Robert, 982  
 Canute, 1179  
 Charles I, 1313  
 Charles II, 1314  
 Cosgrave, William Thomas, 1702  
 David I, 1836  
 Edward I, 2132  
 Edward II, 2132  
 Edward III, 2132  
 Edward IV, 2132  
 Edward V, 2133  
 Edward VI, 2133  
 Edward VII, 2133  
 Edward the Confessor, 2134  
 Egbert, 2135  
 Elizabeth, 2209, 816  
 Ernest, Augustus, 2290  
 Ethelred II, 2303  
 Ethelwulf, 2304  
 George I, 2750  
 George II, 2750  
 George III, 2751  
 George IV, 2751  
 George V, 2751  
 Hardecnute, 3039  
 Harold I, 3047  
 Harold II, 3047  
 Hengist and Horsa, 3140  
 Henry I, 3142  
 Henry II, 3142  
 Henry III, 3142  
 Henry IV, 3142  
 Henry V, 3143  
 Henry VI, 3143  
 Henry VII, 3143  
 Henry VIII, 3144  
 James I, 3613  
 James II, 3614  
 John, 3681  
 Josephine, Marie Rose, 3700  
 Macbeth, 4171  
 Mary I, 4310  
 Mary II, 4310  
 Mary Stuart, 4318, 893, 1829

Richard I, 6113  
 Richard II, 6113  
 Richard III, 6115  
 Stephen, 6827  
 Victoria, 7517  
 William I (The Conqueror), 7767  
 William II, 7768  
 William III, 7768  
 William IV, 7769

**French**

Bonaparte, Napoleon, 828, 4122, 369  
 Catharine De' Medici, 1242  
 Charles V, 1314  
 Charles VI, 1314  
 Charles VII, 1314  
 Charles VIII, 1315  
 Charles IX, 1315  
 Charles X, 1315  
 Francis I, 2590  
 Francis II, 2590  
 Henry II, 3145  
 Henry III, 3145  
 Henry IV, 3146  
 Hugh Capet, 3276  
 Louis I, 4122  
 Louis IX, 4118  
 Louis XI, 4119  
 Louis XII, 4119  
 Louis XIII, 4119  
 Louis XIV, 4120  
 Louis XV, 4120  
 Louis XVI, 4121  
 Louis XVII, 4121  
 Louis XVIII, 4122  
 Louis Philippe, 4134  
 Napoleon III, 4807  
 Pepin the Short, 5478  
 Phillip II, 5547  
 Philip IV, 5547  
 Philip VI, 5547  
 Theodoric, 7141

**German**

Barbarossa. [See **FREDERICK I.**]  
 Ernest Augustus, 2290  
 Frederick I (Barbarossa), 2601, 1764, 617  
 Frederick I (Prussia), 2600  
 Frederick II, 2600  
 Frederick III, 2601  
 Frederick William (Great Elector), 2601  
 Frederick William I, 2602  
 Frederick William III, 2602  
 Frederick William IV, 2602  
 Godfrey De Bouillon, 2851  
 Louis the German, 4135  
 William I, 7769  
 William II, 7769  
 [See also, **RULERS** under **HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE.**]

**Greek**

Alexander the Great, 199  
 Constantine I, 1625  
 Dionysius the Elder, 1954

George I, 2753  
 Leonidas, 3937  
 Otto I, 5275  
 Philip II, 5546  
 Pisistratus, 5628  
 Polycrates, 5716

**Hebrew**

Ahab, 107  
 Ahaz, 108  
 David, 1834  
 Herod Agrippa I, 3163  
 Herod the Great, 3163  
 Hezekiah, 3170  
 Jehoshaphat, 3653  
 Jeroboam I, 3656  
 Jeroboam II, 3656  
 Josiah, 3702

**Holy Roman Empire**

Charlemagne, 1312, 1760  
 Charles V, 1316  
 Charles VI, 1316  
 Ferdinand I, 2394  
 Ferdinand II, 2394  
 Francis I, 2590  
 Francis II, 2590  
 Henry III, 3146  
 Henry IV, 3146  
 Henry VI, 3146  
 Maximilian I, 4351  
 Otho I, 5270  
 Otho II, 5271  
 Otho III, 5271  
 Philip of Swabia, 5548

**Italian**

Humbert I, 3284  
 Odoacer, 5162  
 Victor Emmanuel II, 7517  
 Victor Emmanuel III, 7517

**Oriental**

Abdul-Hamid II, 8  
 Croesus, 1751, 4162  
 Genghis Khan, 2716  
 Harun-Al-Rashid, 3065  
 Hirohito, 3185  
 Kublai Khan, 3818, 4594  
 Mithridates, 4562  
 Mohammed V, 4568  
 Mutsuhito, 4782  
 Runjit Singh, 6250  
 Shah Jehan, 6524, 1883  
 Solymann II, 6685  
 Sun Yat-Sen, 6930  
 Tamerlane. [See **TIMUR**, 7180.]  
 Timur, 7180  
 Yoshihito, Harunomia, 7950  
 Zenobia, 7972

**Persian**

Cambyzes II, 1103  
 Cyrus, the Great, 1799, 562  
 Cyrus, the Younger, 1800

Darius I, 1828, 4281  
 Darius III, 1829  
 Riza Khan Pahlavi, 6139  
 Xerxes I, 7916  
 Xerxes II, 7917

## Roman

Augustus (Caius Julius Caesar Octavianus), 502  
 Aurelian, Lucius Domitius, 504  
 Aurelius, Marcus, 504  
 Caesar, Caius Julius, 1066  
 Caius, Julius Caesar Octavianus, 502  
 Caligula, Caius Caesar-Augustus Germanicus, 1097  
 Catiline, Lucius Sergius, 1247  
 Cincinnatus, Lucius Quinctius, 1430  
 Claudius, 1457  
 Constantine, Caius Flavius Valerius Constantinus, 1625  
 Diocletian, 1953  
 Domitian, 2009  
 Galba, Servius Sulpicius, 2661  
 Hadrian, Publius Aelius, 3000  
 Julian, Flavius Claudius, 3708  
 Justinian I, 3723  
 Lepidus, Marcus Aemilius, 3938  
 Nero, 4879  
 Nerva, Marcus Cocceius, 4880  
 Octavianus, Caius Julius Caesar. [See AUGUSTUS.]  
 Otho, Marcus Salvius, 5271  
 Severus, Lucius Septimius, 6510  
 Theodosius I, 7142  
 Tiberius (Tiberius Claudius Nero Caesar), 7165  
 Titus, 7189  
 Trajan (Marcus Ulpius Traianus), 7240  
 Valens, 7441  
 Valentinian I, 7442  
 Valentinian III, 7442  
 Valerian (Publius Licinius Valerianus), 7443  
 Vespasian (Titus Flavius Vespasianus), 7510

## Russian

Alexander I, 198  
 Alexander II, 198  
 Alexander III, 198  
 Catharine I, 1242  
 Catharine II, 1242  
 Ivan III, the Great, 3589  
 Ivan IV, the Terrible, 3590  
 Nicholas I, 5019  
 Nicholas II, 5020, 825  
 Peter I, 5515

## Scandinavian

Charles IX, 1315  
 Charles X, Gustavus, 1316  
 Charles XI, 1316  
 Charles XII, 1316  
 Christian IX, 1412  
 Christian X, 1412

Frederick VIII, 2601  
 Gustaf V, 2988  
 Gustavus I, 2988  
 Gustavus II, 2988  
 Gustavus III, 2989  
 Gustavus IV, 2989  
 Haakon VII, 2996  
 Hardecanut, 3039  
 Harold I, 3048  
 Harold III, 3048  
 Oscar I, 5264  
 Oscar II, 5264

## Spanish

Abu-Abdallah. [See BOABDIL.]  
 Alfonso XIII, 204  
 Boabdil, King, 807  
 Ferdinand V, 2395  
 Isabella of Castile, 3562  
 Philip II, 5548  
 Philip V, 5548

## Others

Atahualpa, 478  
 Attila, 497  
 Clovis, 1496, 5379  
 Dido, 1943  
 Ferdinand II, 2395  
 Ferdinand IV, 2395  
 Genseric, 2719  
 Iturbide, Agustin de, 3589  
 John III, 3682  
 Jugurtha, 3707  
 Liliuokalani, Lydia Kamekeha, 4004  
 Maximilian, 4351  
 Montezuma, 4628  
 Pedro II, 5439  
 Sobieski, John. [See JOHN III.]  
 Wilhelmina, 7762  
 William I, 7771

## Families of Rulers

Alexandra, 201  
 Anne of Austria, 293  
 Anne of Bohemia, 293  
 Anne of Brittany, 293  
 Anne of Cleves, 293, 3144  
 Anne of Denmark, 293  
 Boleyn, Anne, 816  
 Bothwell, Earl of, 893, 1830  
 Catharine of Aragon, 1243  
 Darnley, Henry Stuart, 1829, 893  
 Edward, the Black Prince, 2133  
 Edward, Prince of Wales, 2134  
 Eugénie-Marie De Montijo, 2315  
 Josephine, Marie Rose, 3700  
 Louise, Queen, 4123  
 Maintenon, Françoise d' Aubigne, 4233, 4120  
 Marie Antoinette, 4290  
 Maria Louisa, 4289  
 [Under the heading *Presidents, American*, see the subtitle *Wives of the Presidents*.]

## Saints

Anthony, Saint, 307  
 Aquinas, Saint Thomas, 338  
 Augustine (Aurelius Augustinus), Saint, 502  
 Augustine, or Austin, Saint, 502  
 Bernard, Saint, 718  
 Boniface, Saint, 837  
 Bridget, Saint, 955  
 Brigitta, or Birgitta. [See BRIDGET, SAINT.]  
 Cecilia, Saint, 1265  
 Chrysostom, John, Saint, 1419  
 Dunstan, Saint, 2056  
 Francis of Assisi, Saint, 2591  
 George, Saint, 2753  
 Ignatius, Saint, 3347  
 James, Saint, 3614  
 Jerome, Saint, 3657

Joan of Arc, Saint, 3677  
 Louis IX, Saint, 4118  
 Loyola, Saint Ignatius of, 4142  
 Luke, Saint, 4144  
 Mark, Saint, 4294  
 Michael, Saint, 4453  
 Nicholas, Saint, 5021  
 Patrick, Saint, 5416, 3526  
 Paul, Saint, 5419  
 Theresa, Saint, 7143  
 Valentine, Saint, 7441  
 Ursula, Saint, 7422  
 Xavier, Saint Francis, 7915  
 [For Popes who have been canonized, see 5734-5735. See, also, APOSTLES, 319-320.]  
 [See APOSTLES, 319-320.]

## Scientists

[In their alphabetical order in this Outline, see *Astronomers, Chemists, Geographers, Geologists, Mathematicians, Naturalists, and Physicists.*]

## American

Audubon, John James, 498  
 Breasted, James Henry, 938  
 Burbank, Luther, 1024  
 Conklin, Edwin Grant, 1613  
 Conn, Herbert William, 1614  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 2593  
 Gray, Asa, 2919  
 Hall, G. Stanley, 3019  
 Hyslop, James Herve, 3221  
 James, William, 3614  
 Loeb, Jacques, 4086  
 Ridgway, Robert, 6122  
 Steenbock, Harry, 3284

## Others

Albert, Prince of Monaco, 4579  
 Carrel, Alexis, 1216  
 Ebers, Georg Moritz, 2092  
 Galton, Sir Francis, 2669  
 Galvani, Luigi, 2669  
 Haeckel, Ernst, 3001  
 Hume, David, 3285  
 Lodge, Sir Oliver Joseph, 4086  
 Metchnikoff, Elie, 4418  
 Petrie, William Matthew Flinders, 5519  
 Schliemann, Heinrich, 6414  
 Smithson, James, 6653  
 Virchow, Rudolf, 7534

## Sculptors

## American

Ball, Thomas, 583  
 Barnard, George Grey, 624  
 Bartlett, Paul Wayland, 631  
 Borglum, Gutzon, 866  
 Brown, Henry Kirke, 978  
 Crawford, Thomas, 1735  
 French, Daniel Chester, 2606  
 Greenough, Horatio, 2961  
 Hosmer, Harriet, 3256  
 Lukeman, Henry Augustus, 4144  
 MacMonnies, Frederick, 4195  
 Partridge, William Ordway, 5405  
 Powers, Hiram, 5792  
 Remington, Frederic, 6055  
 Rogers, John, 6162  
 Rogers, Randolph, 6162  
 Saint Gaudens, Augustus, 6306  
 Taft, Lorado, 6998  
 Ward, John Quincy Adams, 7595

## French

Bartholdi, Frédéric A., 3965  
 David, Pierre Jean, 1836  
 Doré, Paul Gustave, 2013  
 Goujon, Jean, 2879  
 Houdon, Jean Antoine, 3260  
 Rodin, Auguste, 6158  
 Rude, François, 6235

## German

Dürer, Albrecht, 2056  
 Rauch, Christian Daniel, 6003  
 Rietschel, Ernst, 6124  
 Schilling, Johannes, 6412  
 Stoss, Veit, 6870

## Italian

Algardi, Alessandro, 206  
 Amadeo, Giovanni Antonio, 240  
 Canova, Antonio, 1176

Cellini, Benvenuto, 1268  
 Donatello, 2010  
 Ghiberti, Lorenzo, 2799  
 Michelangelo, Buonarroti, 4453  
 Robbia, Andrea della, 6146  
 Robbia, Luca della, 6146  
 Vinci, Leonardo da, 7530

## Others

Leighton, Frederick, Lord, 3926  
 Lysippus, 4166  
 Phidias, 5535  
 Praxiteles, 5796  
 Swan, John Macallan, 6946  
 Thorwaldsen, Bertel, 7157

## Socialists

Bebel, Ferdinand August, 668  
 Debs, Eugene Victor, 1854  
 Ebert, Friedrich, 2092  
 Marx, [Heinrich] Karl, 4309

Proudhon, Pierre Joseph, 5853  
 Saint-Simon, Claude Henri de Rouvroy, Comte de, 6328

## Statesmen

## American

[See, also, *Presidents*, above.]

Adams, Charles Francis, 24  
 Adams, Samuel, 35  
 Aldrich, Nelson Wilmarth, 197  
 Allison, William Boyd, 226  
 Austin, Stephen Fuller, 507  
 Baker, Newton Diehl, 573  
 Bayard, Thomas Francis, 655  
 Beauchamp, James. [See CHAMP CLARK.]  
 Bell, John, 703  
 Benjamin, Judah Philip, 709  
 Benton, Thomas Hart, 710  
 Beveridge, Albert Jeremiah, 723  
 Blaine, James Gillespie, 785  
 Bland, Richard Parks, 786  
 Borah, William Edgar, 864  
 Bowdoin, James, 898  
 Bradford, William, 915  
 Bryan, William Jennings, 986  
 Burlingame, Anson, 1030  
 Burr, Aaron, 1037, 790, 27  
 Butler, Benjamin Franklin, 1039  
 Calhoun, John Caldwell, 1078  
 Cannon, Joseph Gurney, 1173  
 Carroll, Charles, 1217  
 Carver, John, 1224  
 Cass, Lewis, 1229  
 Chase, Salmon Portland, 1320  
 Choate, Joseph Hodges, 1407  
 Choate, Rufus, 1406  
 Clark, Champ, 1454  
 Clay, Henry, 1459  
 Clinton, De Witt, 1484  
 Clinton, George, 1484  
 Colbaith, Jeremiah Jones. [See HENRY WILSON, 7777.]  
 Colfax, Schuyler, 1536  
 Conkling, Roscoe, 1614  
 Cox, James M., 1730  
 Cullom, Shelby Moore, 1783  
 Cummins, Albert Baird, 1784  
 Curtis, Charles, 1790  
 Davis, David, 1836  
 Davis, Jefferson, 1837

Davis, John William, 1839  
 Dawes, Charles Gates, 1840  
 Dorr, Thomas Wilson, 2014  
 Douglas, Stephen Arnold, 2015  
 Edmunds, George Franklin, 2111  
 Ellsworth, Oliver, 2214  
 Endicott, John, 2234  
 Evarts, William Maxwell, 2334  
 Everett, Edward, 2334  
 Fairbanks, Charles Warren, 2361  
 Ferguson, Miriam A., 2395  
 Fish, Hamilton, 2445  
 Floyd, John Buchanan, 2496  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 2593, 5730  
 Gallatin, Albert, 2666  
 Gerard, James Watson, 2764  
 Gerry, Elbridge, 2791  
 Glick, George Washington, 2842  
 Hamilton, Alexander, 3025  
 Hamlin, Hannibal, 3027  
 Hancock, John, 3031  
 Hanna, Marcus Alonzo, 3036  
 Hanson, John, 3039  
 Harlan, James, 3046  
 Hay, John, 3092  
 Hayne, Robert Young, 3100  
 Hays, Will H., 3101  
 Hendricks, Thomas Andrews, 3140  
 Henry, Patrick, 3147  
 Hewitt, Abram Stevens, 3170  
 Hoar, George Frisbie, 3187  
 House, Edward Mandell, 3261  
 Hughes, Charles Evans, 3276  
 Ingalls, John James, 3451  
 Jay, John, 3644  
 Johnson, Hiram Warren, 3689  
 Johnson, Richard Mentor, 3689  
 Kendall, Amos, 3753  
 Kenna, John Edward, 3755  
 King, William, 3792  
 King, William Rufus, 3793  
 Kirkwood, Samuel, 3797  
 Knox, Henry, 3809  
 Knox, Philander Chase, 3810  
 La Follette, Robert Marion, Jr., 3840  
 La Follette, Robert Marion, Sr., 3839

Lamar, Lucius Quintus Cincinnatus, 3846  
 Lansing, Robert, 3873  
 Laurens, Henry, 3893  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 3917, 25  
 Lincoln, Robert Todd, 4022  
 Livingston, Robert R., 4061  
 Lodge, Henry Cabot, 4085  
 Logan, John Alexander, 4088  
 Longworth, Nicholas, 4108  
 Low, Seth, 4139  
 McAdoo, William Gibbs, 4167  
 Mallory, Stephen Russell, 4240  
 Marshall, Thomas Riley, 4305  
 Mason, James Murray, 4322  
 Mellon, Andrew William, 4384  
 Moore, John Bassett, 4644  
 Morgan, John Tyler, 4652  
 Morris, Gouverneur, 4661  
 Morris, Robert, 4662  
 Morrow, Dwight Whitney, 4663  
 Morton, Julius Sterling, 4665  
 Morton, Levi Parsons, 4665  
 Morton, Oliver Perry, 4666  
 Muhlenberg, John Peter, 4732  
 Oglethorpe, James Edward, 5166  
 Olney, Richard, 5194  
 Otis, James, 5271  
 Page, Walter Hines, 5296  
 Parker, Alton Brooks, 5381  
 Pierpont, Francis Harrison, 5611, 6817  
 Pinchot, Gifford, 5619  
 Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, 5619  
 Platt, Thomas Collier, 5654  
 Quincy, Josiah, 5922  
 Randolph, John, 5992  
 Rankin, Jeannette, 5994  
 Reagan, John Henninger, 6013  
 Reed, James A., 6034  
 Reed, Thomas Brackett, 6035  
 Rice, Henry Mower, 6113  
 Roosevelt, Franklin, 6184  
 Roosevelt, Theodore, Jr., 6197  
 Root, Elihu, 6197  
 Ross, Nellie Tayloe, 6210  
 Rutledge, John, 6285  
 Saint Clair, Arthur, 6305  
 Schurz, Carl, 6431  
 Schuyler, Philip John, 6431  
 Seward, William Henry, 6514  
 Sherman, James Schoolcraft, 6557  
 Sherman, John, 6557  
 Sherman, Roger, 6558  
 Shoup, George Laird, 6576  
 Sigsbee, Charles Dwight, 6601  
 Smith, Alfred Emanuel, 6648  
 Smith, Hoke, 6649  
 Smoot, Reed, 6655  
 Stanton, Edwin McMasters, 6803  
 Stephens, Alexander Hamilton, 6827  
 Stevens, Thaddeus, 6831  
 Stevenson, Adlai Ewing, 6832  
 Stimson, Henry Lewis, 6835  
 Stockton, Richard, 6843

Straus, Oscar Solomon, 6875  
 Sumner, Charles, 6920  
 Thurman, Allen Granbery, 7164  
 Tilden, Samuel Jones, 7177  
 Tillman, Benjamin Ryan, 7178  
 Toombs, Robert, 7210  
 Trumbull, Jonathan, 7281  
 Tweed, William Marcy, 7330  
 Underwood, Oscar W., 7350  
 Vance, Zebulon Baird, 7455  
 Van Rensselaer, Stephen, 7463  
 Volstead, Andrew J., 7565  
 Washburne, Elihu Benjamin, 7623  
 Watson, Thomas E., 7680  
 Weaver, James Baird, 7692  
 Webster, Daniel, 7696  
 Weed, Thurlow, 7699  
 Welles, Gideon, 7705  
 Wheeler, William Almon, 7739  
 White, Andrew Dickson, 7745  
 Whitlock, Brand, 7752  
 Williams, John Sharp, 7772  
 Wilmot, David, 7777  
 Wilson, Henry, 7777  
 Wilson, James, 7777  
 Wilson, William Lyne, 7778  
 Winthrop, John, 7800  
 Wythe, George, 7914  
 Yancey, William Lowndes, 7927  
 Young, Owen D., 7952

## Austrian

Kaunitz, Wenzel, 3749  
 Kossuth, Louis, 3814, 3293  
 Maximilian, 4351, 4445, 4808  
 Metternich, Clemens, 4429

## British

Aberdeen, Earl of, 8  
 Andros, Sir Edmund, 279  
 Argyll, Duke of, 380  
 Ashburton, Lord, 440  
 Asquith, Herbert Henry, 455  
 Astor, Lady Nancy Langhorne, 465  
 Bacon, Francis, 564  
 Baldwin, Stanley, 578  
 Balfour, Sir Arthur J., 579  
 Baltimore, Lord, 590  
 Beaconsfield, Earl of. [See DISRAELI, BENJAMIN, 1965.]  
 Berkeley, Sir William, 713  
 Bright, John, 955  
 Bryce, James, 988  
 Buckingham, Duke of, 995  
 Bulwer-Lytton, Edward Robert, 1021  
 Burke, Edmund, 1028  
 Burns, John, 1034  
 Calvert, Sir George. [See BALTIMORE, LORD, 590.]  
 Carson, Sir Edward, 1218  
 Chamberlain, Joseph, 1297  
 Chamberlain, Sir [Joseph] Austen, 1298  
 Chesterfield, Philip Dormer Stanhope, 1348



Churchill, Winston Leonard Spencer, 1420  
 Clarendon, Earl of, 1454  
 Clive, Robert, 1485  
 Cobden, Richard, 1515  
 Connaught, Duke of, 1614  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 1752, 1314, 619  
 Cromwell, Thomas, 1754  
 Curzon, Lord, 1792  
 Davitt, Michael, 1840  
 Delaware, Lord, 1882  
 Derby, Earl of, 1912  
 Devonshire, Duke of, 1925  
 Dinwiddie, Robert, 1953  
 Disraeli, Benjamin, 1965  
 Dufferin, Lord, 2050  
 Durham, Earl of, 2057  
 Elgin, Earl of, 2205  
 Fox, Charles James, 2554  
 Gage, Thomas, 2658  
 Geddes, Sir Auckland Campbell, 2709  
 Gladstone, William Ewart, 2829  
 Grey, Earl, 2963  
 Grey, Charles, second Earl, 2964  
 Grey, Edward, 2964  
 Grey, Lady Jane, 2964  
 Haldane, Lord, 3014  
 Haldimand, Sir Frederick, 3014  
 Hampden, John, 3029  
 Hastings, Warren, 3070  
 Henderson, Arthur, 3140  
 Hutchinson, Thomas, 3300  
 Isaacs, Rufus Daniel. [See READING, MARQUIS OF, 6013.]  
 Jameson, Leander Starr, 3615  
 Lambton, John George. [See DURHAM, EARL OF, 2057.]  
 Lansdowne, Marquis of, 3872  
 Law, Andrew Bonar, 3899  
 Leicester, Earl of, 3926  
 Lisgar, Sir John Young, 4045  
 Lloyd George, David, 4065  
 Lorne, Marquis of. [See ARGYLL, DUKE OF, 380.]  
 Macaulay, Thomas Babington, 4170  
 McCarthy, Justin, 4173  
 MacDonald, James Ramsay, 4175  
 Metcalfe, Charles Theophilus, Baron, 4417  
 Mill, John Stuart, 4485  
 Milner, Alfred, 4490  
 Minto, Earl of, 4525  
 Monck, Viscount, 4580  
 Monmouth, James, Duke of, 4597  
 Montfort, Simon de, 4628  
 More, Sir Thomas, 4650  
 Morley, John, Viscount, 4652  
 Murray, James, 4748  
 North, Frederick, Lord, 5044  
 Outram, Sir James, 5276  
 Oxford and Asquith, Earl of. [See ASQUITH, HERBERT HENRY, 455.]  
 Palmerston, Henry John Temple, 5321  
 Pauncefote, Julian, 5421  
 Peel, Sir Robert, 5440

Petty-Fitzmaurice, Henry Charles Keith. [See LANSDOWNE, MARQUIS OF, 3872.]  
 Penn, William, 5460  
 Pitt, William, 5632  
 Pitt, William (The Younger), 5633  
 Pym, John, 5892  
 Reading, Marquis of, 6013  
 Rhodes, Cecil John, 6097, 80-81  
 Rosebery, Earl of, 6204  
 Rothschild, Lionel Walter, 6214  
 Rothschild, Nathan Mayer, 6214  
 Russell, Lord John, 6256  
 Salisbury, Marquis of, 6332  
 Shaftesbury, Earl of, 6523  
 Strafford, Earl of, 6872  
 Stuart, Charles Edward, 6880  
 Sydenham, Charles Edward, 6983  
 Walpole, Sir Robert, 7587  
 Warwick, Earl of, 7622  
 Wellington, Duke of, 7706  
 Wentworth, Thomas. [See STRAFFORD, EARL, 6872.]  
 Wilberforce, William, 7758  
 Willingdon, Lord, 7774  
 Wolsey, Thomas, 7820

## Canadian

Aylesworth, Sir Allen Bristol, 549  
 Blake, Edward, 786  
 Borden, Sir Robert Laird, 864  
 King, William Lyon Mackenzie, 3792  
 Laurier, Sir Wilfrid, 3894  
 Macdonald, Sir John Alexander, 4176  
 Macdonald, John Sandfield, 4177  
 Mackenzie, Alexander, 4184  
 Meighen, Arthur, 4382  
 Monck, Viscount, 4580  
 Parker, Sir Gilbert, 5382  
 Strathcona and Mount Royal, Lord, 6874  
 Taché, Sir Etienne Pascal, 6994  
 Thompson, Sir John Sparrow David, 7155  
 Tupper, Sir Charles, 7297  
 Tupper, Sir Charles Hibbert, 7298  
 White, Sir William Thomas, 7746

## Dutch

Botha, Louis, 893  
 Egmont, Count, 2140  
 Minuit, Peter, 4525  
 Smuts, Jan Christian, 6656  
 Stuyvesant, Peter or Petrus, 6883

## French

Barras, Paul François Jean Nicholas, Count de, 628  
 Bonaparte (family), 826-833  
 Briand, Aristide, 944  
 Clemenceau, George Benjamin Eugene, 1463  
 Danton, Georges Jacques, 1822  
 Delcassé, Théophile, 1883  
 Fallières, Clément Armand, 2366  
 Frontenac, Comte Louis, 2627  
 Gambetta, Leon, 2673

Genêt, Edmond Charles Edouard, 2715  
 Grévy, François Paul Jules, 2963  
 Lafayette, Marquis de, 3838  
 Marat, Jean Paul, 4280  
 Mazarin, Jules, 4356  
 Mirabeau, Count de, 4528  
 Necker, Jacques, 4868  
 Orleans (family)

Philippe I, 5260  
 Philippe II, 5260  
 Louis Philippe Joseph, 5261  
 Louis Philippe [Robert], 5261  
 Poincaré, Raymond, 5681  
 Richelieu, Armand Jean du Plessis Duc de  
 Cardinal, 6115  
 Robespierre, Maximilien, Marie Isidore, 6147  
 Sieyès, Emmanuel Joseph, 6597  
 Talleyrand-Périgord, Charles Maurice, 7008  
 Talon, Jean Baptiste, 7010  
 Thiers, Louis Adolphe, 7149

## German

Bernstorff, Johann Heinrich, Count, 720  
 Bethmann-Hollweg, Theobald Theodore von,  
 722  
 Bismarck-Schönhausen, Karl Otto Eduard  
 Leopold von, Prince, 774  
 Bülow, Bernhard Heinrich, Prince von, 1019  
 Wallenstein, Albert Eusebius Wenzel von, 7584

## Greek

Aeschines, 68  
 Alcibiades, 193  
 Aristides, 381, 5267  
 Cimon, 1425  
 Clisthenes, 1485  
 Demosthenes, 1890, 5546  
 Draco, 2018, 480  
 Lycurgus, 4162  
 Nicias, 5021  
 Pericles, 5487  
 Phocion, 5568  
 Photius, 5575  
 Solon, 6684  
 Themistocles, 7140  
 Venizelos, Eleutherios, 7487

## Irish

Davitt, Michael, 1840  
 Dillon, John, 1947  
 Emmet, Robert, 2227  
 Grattan, Henry, 2916  
 O'Connell, Daniel, 5155  
 O'Connor, Thomas Power, 5156  
 Parnell, Charles Stewart, 5397  
 Redmond, John Edward, 6031  
 Valera, Eamon de, 7442

## Italian

Cavour, Count Camillo Bensodi, 1263  
 Mahiavelli, Niccolo, 4179  
 Medici, Lorenzo the Magnificent, 4373  
 Mussolini, Benito, 4781

## Mexican

Diaz, Porfirio, 1935  
 Huerta, Victoriano, 3275  
 Obregon, Alvaro, 5140  
 Santa Anna, Antonio Lopez de, 6378

## Oriental

Herod Antipas, 3163  
 Ito, Hirobumi, Marquis, 3589  
 Li Hung Chang, 4004  
 Oyama, Iwao, Prince, 5282  
 Wu Ting-Fang, 7902

## Roman

Antony, Mark, 313  
 Brutus, Marcus Junius, 985  
 Cato, Marcus Porcius (The Censor), 1248  
 Cato, Marcus Porcius (of Utica), 1248  
 Cicero, Marcus Tullius, 1423  
 Coriolanus, 1677  
 Crassus, Marcus Licinius, 1735  
 Felix, Antonius, 2392  
 Feodorovitch, Michael, 2394, 6268  
 Festus, Porcius, 2402  
 Gracchus (family)  
 Caius Sempronius, 2884  
 Tiberius Sempronius (The Elder), 2884  
 Tiberius Sempronius, 2884  
 Pilate, Pontius, 5615  
 Pliny the Younger, 5659  
 Rienzi, Cola di, 6123  
 Sulla, Lucius Cornelius, 6915

## Russian

Kerensky, Alexander, 3768, 825  
 Lenin, Nikolai, 3930, 825  
 Plehve, Viatcheslaf Konstantinovich, 5657  
 Rykoff, Alexis Ivanovitch, 6287  
 Trotzky, Leon, 7276, 825  
 Witte, Sergei Yulievitch, Count, 7816

## Others

Aguinaldo, Emilio, 107, 4192  
 Alva, Duke of, 239, 2140  
 Dole, Sanford Ballard, 1996  
 Hannibal, 3037  
 Kruger, Stephanus Johannes Paulus, 3816  
 Paderewski, Ignace Jan, 5294  
 Pilsudski, Joseph, 5617  
 Primo De Rivera, Miguel, 5811  
 Toussaint, François Dominique, 7226

## Women of Note Not Otherwise Listed

Agrippina, 106  
 Aspasia, 452  
 Asquith, Margot, 455  
 Beatrice Portinari, 664, 1821  
 Bridgman, Laura Dewey, 955  
 Burr, Theodosia, 1038  
 Cavell, Edith, 1263  
 Corday D'Armont, Marie Anne Charlotte, 1674  
 Dare, Virginia, 1827

Du Barry, Marie Jeanne Bécu, Countess, 2044  
 Gwyn, Nell, 2990  
 Johnston, Harriet Lane, 994  
 McElroy, Mrs. Mary Arthur, 429  
 Mother Shipton, 4685  
 Octavia, 5156  
 Pitcher, Molly, 5630  
 Pocahontas, 5677  
 Pompadour, Jeanne Antoinette Poisson, Mar-  
   quise de, 5719  
 Recamier, Madame Julie, 6021  
 Roland De La Platière, Madam, 6164  
 Rosamond, 6201  
 Sacagawea, 3959  
 Secord, Laura, 6476  
 Shipton, Mother, 4685  
 Wills, Helen, 7775  
 Xanthippe, 7915

#### Miscellaneous

Barnum, Phineas Taylor, 625  
 Beau Brummell. [See BRUMMELL, GEORGE  
   BRYAN, 982.]  
 Bertillon, Alphonse, 720  
 Blennerhassett, Harman, 790  
 Blondel, 796  
 Bonaparte, Carlo, 826  
 Bonaparte, Napoleon François Charles Joseph.  
   [See REICHSTADT, DUKE OF.]  
 Borghese (family)  
   Camillo (Paul V) and Prince Camillo, 865  
 Borgia (family)  
   Cesare, 865  
   Lucrezia, 866  
 Brummell, George Bryan, 982

Camp, Walter, 1112  
 Caxton, William, 1263  
 Damocles, 1816  
 Elzevir, Louis, 2218  
 Farnese Family, 2371  
 Fawkes, Guy, 2383  
 Girty, Simon, 2817  
 Gobelins Family, 2850  
 Hagenbeck, Karl, 3002  
 Haman, 3024  
 Joseph of Arimathea, 3702, 2842  
 Kneipp, Sebastian, 3804  
 Lombroso, Cesare, 4091  
 Müller, Friedrich Max, 4735  
 Münchhausen, Von, Hieronymus Karl Fried-  
   rich, Baron, 4740  
 Napoleon II. [See REICHSTADT, DUKE OF,  
   6046.]  
 Orsini Family, 5262  
 Palissy, Bernard, 5317  
 Paris, Louis Albert Philippe d'Orleans, Count  
   of, 5380  
 Pinkerton, Allan, 5625  
 Poutrincourt, Jean de Biencourt, Baron de,  
   5791  
 Putnam, Herbert, 5888  
 Queensberry, Marquis of, 5919  
 Rasputin, Gregory, 5998  
 Reichstadt, Duke of, 6046  
 Selkirk, Alexander, 6486  
 Sequoyah, 6501  
 Spartacus, 6744  
 Tancred, 7013  
 Warbeck, Perkin, 7592  
 White, Peregrine, 7745

# BIOLOGY

## Its Scope and Division

**Definition:** The Science of Life, 748

### Main Divisions

Botany, or Plant Life, 748, 881

Zoölogy, or Animal Life, 748, 7980

[See Outline on *Botany* and *Zoölogy*, in this GUIDE; and for Human Biology, Outlines on *Anthropology*, *Anatomy*, *Physiology*, and *Hygiene*.]

### Subdivisions

Biochemistry, or Biological Chemistry, 741-743

Cytology, the Study of Cells, 1268

Ecology, the Relation of Organisms to Environment, 2097-2098

Embryology, Development from the Cell, 2220

Genetics, Dealing with Laws of Heredity and Variation, 2716

Histology, Microscopic Study of Tissues, 3185

Morphology, Dealing with Form and Structure, 4661

Paleontology, the Study of Fossils, 5309

[See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]

## The Composition of Living Matter

**Protoplasm**, the Vital Substance, 5852-5853

A Complex System of Colloids, 1539

A Variable Mixture of Different Compounds, 749

How It Differs from Lifeless Matter, 749

### Ten Essential Elements in Living Matter

Hydrogen, 3307

Carbon, 1192

Oxygen, 5281-5282

Nitrogen, 5034-5035

Phosphorus, 5575

Sulphur, 6916

Potassium, 5778

Magnesium, 4216

Calcium, 1072

Iron, 3535

### Others Sometimes Present

Chlorine, 1406

Fluorine, 2497

Iodine, 3501-3502

Manganese, 4255

Silicon, 6603

Sodium, 6675-6676

### Organic Compounds

Proteins, 5851, 742

Carbohydrates, 1190-1191, 742

Fats, 2376, 742

### Inorganic Compounds

#### Mineral Salts

Carbonates, 1192

Chlorides, 1406

Halogens, 3023

Chloride of Sodium, 6340

Nitrates, 5033-5034

Phosphates, 5574

Sulphates, 6916

Water, 7664

Carbon Dioxide, 1193

## The Organization of Living Matter

### Cell, the Unit of Structure

A Tiny Mass of Protoplasm, 1268, 5852

Size and Number, 1268

### Cell Nucleus

Poised in Cytoplasm, 1268, 5852

Chromatin and Chromosomes, 1268

Cell Membrane, 1268  
 Cell Wall, 1268  
   Plant Cells Have Walls of Cellulose, 1269  
 Properties of the Protoplasm, 5853  
**Types of One-Celled Organisms**  
   Bacterium (Plant), 566  
   Amoeba (Animal), 265  
**Structure of Complex Organisms**  
   Groups of Cells Form Tissues, 748, 7183  
   Examples of Plant Tissue  
     Alburnum, 192  
     Bark, 620-621  
     Cambium of Stems, 6825  
   Examples of Animal Tissue  
     Bone, 835  
     Muscle, 4749

Nerve, 4881  
 Groups of Tissues Form Organs, 1268  
   Examples of Plant Organs, 5648  
     Leaf, 3912  
     Stem, 6824  
     Root, 6198  
   Examples of Animal Organs  
     Antennae, 306, 298  
     Fins, 2440, 2443  
     Gills, 2808  
     Heart  
       Of Mammals, 4243  
       Of Insects, 3460  
     Spinnerets of Spiders, 6760  
**Plants and Animals Compared, 289, 5646**

### Life Processes of Living Matter

#### Nutrition

Nutrition in Green Plants  
   Absorption of Energy from the Sun by  
     Aid of Pigments  
     Chlorophyll, Predominant Pigment, 1406,  
       743, 889, 3913  
   Photosynthesis, the Process of Manufac-  
     turing Carbohydrates, 743, 889, 3913  
   Food Requirements of Plants, 2399  
     [See *Ten Essential Elements*, above.]  
     How Nitrogen Is Secured, 743, 5034  
   Conversion of Carbonic Acid, 743  
   A Few Plants Require Organic Food  
     Carnivorous Plants, 1205  
       Pitcher Plants, 5630  
       Sundew, 6926  
       Venus's Flytrap, 7490

Nutrition in Plants Lacking Pigments  
   Parasitism, 5363-5364  
   How Bacteria Secure Food, 567  
   Food Habits of Fungi, 2637  
     Mildew, 4473  
     Mold, 4572-4573  
     Mushrooms, 4755  
     Puffball, 5875  
     Rusts, 6281  
     Smuts, 6656  
     Yeast, 7930

#### Animal Nutrition

Animals Require Organic Food, 289  
 Energy Derived from Food, 742  
**Higher Animals**  
   Conversion of Food by Digestive Fer-  
     ments, 2396  
   Metabolism in Higher Animals, 4413-  
     4414  
   Assimilation, 457  
 Nutrition of One-Celled Animals (Proto-  
   zoa), 5853  
 Food Habits of Lower Many-Celled Ani-  
   mals, 7982

Parasitism, 5363  
**Distribution of Nutrients to Tissue**  
   By Sap in Plants, 6383  
     Osmosis, 6383  
   By Blood in Higher Animals, 798  
**Respiration**  
   Oxygen Necessary to All Life, 5281  
   Anaerobic Bacteria an Exception, 567  
   Carbon Dioxide Excreted by Both, 289  
   Breathing Organs of Plants  
     Air Spaces, 154  
     In Water Plants, 7670  
     Stomata of Leaves, 3915  
   Decomposition of Complex Substances Fun-  
     damental, 3915  
   Breathing Organs of Animals  
     Lungs, 4154  
     Gills, 2808  
     Spiracles and Tracheae of Insects, 3460  
**Excretion, or Elimination of Waste**  
   In Plants, 3915; in Animals, 2207  
**Reproduction and Development of New Life**  
   Asexual Reproduction in Plants  
     By Cell Division, as in Bacteria, 566  
     By Budding, as in Yeast, 7930  
     Reproduction by Spores, 6777  
   Sexual Reproduction in Plants  
     Organs of Reproduction in Flowers: Sta-  
       mens, Filament, Anther, Pistil, Ovary,  
       Style, Stigma, 2491  
     Pollen and Pollination, 5713  
       Cross-Pollination, 1757  
     Seeds, 6479  
       Germination, 2789-2790  
   Reproduction by Alternation of Generations  
     As in Ferns, 2397  
   Asexual Reproduction in Animals  
     By Cell Division, as in Amoebae, 265  
     By Budding, as in Hydras, 3302  
     By Simultaneous Division into Spores,  
       as in Malaria Protozoa, 5853  
   Sexual Reproduction in Animals  
     Union of Germ Cells of Parents, Giving  
       Rise to a New Cell, 3158  
     Eggs, 2136-2137

## The Origin and Evolution of Life

### Scientific Theory of Origin

Older View of Spontaneous Generation (Abiogenesis), 6777

Later View of Biogenesis, 744

Modern Theory of Living Things

Evolved from Non-Living Matter, 749

### Theory of Organic Evolution

Descent of Complex Life Forms from Simple Forms, 2337, 5648

Evolution and Darwinism not Identical Terms, 2337

Theory Held before Darwin by Aristotle, 7981

By Lamarck, 7981, 3846

Darwinism not a Theory of Monkey Descent, 2337-2338

### Lines of Evidence for Evolution

The Record of Fossils, 2548-2550, 2732

Chronological Sequence, 2338

What the Rocks Reveal

The Cambrian Period, 2338, 2740

The Devonian, 1925, 2338, 2740-2741

The Carboniferous, 2741, 1194

[See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]

Typical Fossil Forms

The Ammonites, 2338

Fossil Forms of the Horse, 2338, 3243, 3246

Pterodactyl, Reptilian Ancestor of Birds, 5869-5870

Dinosauria, 1948-1952

Comparative Anatomy

Division of Animals into Groups According to Structure, 2338, 7982-7983

Similarities Point to Common Descent, 2338

Evidence from Vestigial Organs, 2338

Embryology

Development of the Embryo Compared with Development from Simple Forms, 2338-2339

Physiology

Similarities of Function, 2339

Blood Tests, 2339

Geographical Distribution

Peculiarities of Island Life, 2339

Giant Turtles on the Galapagos Islands, 2660, 7326

### Factors and Causes of Evolution

Lamarck's Theory of Inheritance of Acquired Characters, 2339-2340

Darwin's Theory, 2340

Presented in *Origin of Species*, 1830-1831

Amplified in *Descent of Man*, 1831

Natural Selection the Directing Element, 2340, 4822

Materials of Evolution

Variation, the Struggle for Existence, Heredity, 2340, 4822

The Keynote: In the Struggle for Existence, the Fittest Survive, 2340

Importance of Adaptation to Environment, 2275-2276

Of Adaptation to Climate, 16

Of Protective Coloration, 5850

The Mechanism of Heredity

Organisms Possess Germ Cells and Soma Cells, 3158

Heredity Represents a Succession of Germ Cells, 3158

Germ Cells Contain Germ Plasm, Hereditary Material, 3158, 2340

Germ Plasm Contains Chromatin, the Special Hereditary Substance, 3158

This Condenses into Chromosomes, 3158, 2340, 1268

Chromosomes Contain Genes, the Hereditary Factors, 3158, 2340

Characteristics of Individuals Depend on Gene Arrangement, 3158, 2340

Are Acquired Characters Inherited?

Views of Modern Lamarckians, 2340

Criticisms of August Weismann's Experiments with Mice, 2340

Views of Most Biologists, 3159

The Laws of Heredity

Galton's Law of Ancestral Inheritance, 3159, 2669

Mendel's Law

Experiments with Peas of Contrasting Character, 3159

Dominants and Recessives, 3159

Examples of Recessives

Albinism, 191

Deaf-Mutism, 1846

Theory of Modern Darwinians

Selected Variations Are Alterations of the Germ Plasm, 2340

Two Types of Inherited Variations, 2341

Why Do Variations Arise?

Theory of a Guiding Force, 2341

Theory of Isolation, 2341

Modern Theories on Mutations

Groundwork Laid by Hugo de Vries, 2341

New Experiments with X-Rays, 7986

Evolution Supported by Breeding, 4822-4823

Plant Breeding, 940

Hybridization, 3302, 890

Hybrids May Be Atavistic, 478

Selection, 941, 890

Examples of Cross-Breeding

Citrange and Disease-Resistant Grapes, 941

Creations of Burbank

White Blackberry, 1025

Plumcot and Pomato, 1025

Shasta Daisy, 1811

Spineless Cactus, 1064

Animal Breeding, 941, 4823

Objections to the Theory of Evolution

On Religious Grounds, 2341

On Scientific Grounds, 2341

## Taxonomy: The Classification of Living Things

**Scientific Arrangement of Plants and Animals,**  
1456

**Contribution of Linné (Linnaeus),** 1456, 4032-  
4033, 7980

**Groups in Classification,** 1456, 888-889, 7982-  
7983

Species, 1457, 6747, 887

Examples

Meadow Violet (*V. cucullata*), 7532

Grizzly Bear (*U. horribilis*), 663

Variety, 1457, 7464

Genus, 1456, 2720, 887

Examples

Pinks (*Dianthus*), 5625

Camels (*Camelus*), 1106

Family, 1457, 883, 887

Examples

Buttercups (*Ranunculaceae*), 1044

Cats (*Felidae*), 1236

Order, 1457, 5241, 887

Examples

Rosales, 1457

Flesh-Eating Animals (*Carnivora*), 1204

Class, 1457, 887

Examples

Monocotyledons, Dicotyledons, 1720

Mammals (*Mammalia*), 4242

Phylum, 1457, 888, 7982-7983

Examples

Spermatophytes, 888

Chordata, 7983

Subphylum, 1457

Examples

Angiosperms, 284

Vertebrates, 7508, 7510

[For classification of all plants and animals,  
see Outlines on *Botany* and *Zoölogy*, in  
this GUIDE.]

# BOTANY

## The Story of Plants

### What a Plant Is

- Any Living Thing not an Animal, 5646
- Distinction between Plant and Animal, 5646, 289
- Locomotive Ability, 5646, 289
- Chlorophyll a Constituent of Plants, 5646, 1406
- Gas Exchange, 289, 5646, 3915
- Methods of Nutrition, 289, 5646
- Food Requirements, 289, 5646
- Widespread Distribution of Plants, 5647
- Cover Most of the Earth's Surface, 5647
- Conditions Unfavorable, 5647

- Hot Lava, 5647, 3895-3896
- Excessive Deposits Either of Salt or Alkali, 5647
- Continued Temperature Extremes, 5647
- Power of Adaptation, 5647
- Importance of Plants, 5647
- Complete Dependence of Animals on Plants, 5647
- Directly, 5647, 289
- Indirectly, 5647, 289
- Products of Plants, 5647-5648
- Necessities to Luxuries, 5648
- Furnish Food, Shelter, Clothing, etc., 881

## Scope and History of Botany

**Definition:** The Science of Plant Life, 881

### Subdivisions

- Anatomy, Study of Tissues, 887
- Cytology, Cellular Structure, 1268
- Ecology, Dealing with Plant Environment, 887, 2097-2098
- Genetics, Heredity and Variation, 2716
- Histology, Microscopic Study of Tissues, 3185
- Morphology, Structure of Plant Tissue, 887, 4661
- Physiology, Functions of Tissues, 887
- Taxonomy, which Deals with Classification, 887
- Botanical Terms. [See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE.]

### Derivation of Term and History

- Botany: Greek Word Meaning Plant, 881
- Physicians as First Botanists, 881
- Science in Embryo to Sixteenth Century, 881
- Eighteenth Century Introduced Systematic Classification, 882
- Floral Anatomy as a Basis for Classification, 882
- Linnaeus' Binominal System, 1456, 4032-4033, 7980
- Place in Schools To-Day, 882
- Nature Study an Introduction to Botany, 882, 4823-4833
- Definite Science in Higher Education, 882
- Herbarium, Important Tool for Teaching, 3153

## Some of Nature's Wonders

### Interrelation of Plants and Insects, 884

- Injurious Insects, 884
- Insects Responsible for Pollination, 884, 5713-5714
- Pollen Carriers, 884, 5713
- Attractive Power of Flowers, 5713
- Bright Colors, 2492, 5713
- Curious Shapes, 2491, 5713, 1757
- Nectars, 2492, 5713, 1757
- Sweet Scents, 2492, 5713, 1757
- [See *Pollination*, below.]

### Carnivorous Plants (Insect-Eating Plants),

- 1205
- Use Organic Material as Food, 1205
- Equipped with Mechanism for Capturing, 1205
- Soft Parts Digested by Fluid, 7490
- Devices for Trapping, 1205
- Pitcher Plant, 890, 5630
- Pitcher-Shaped Leaves, 890
- Sweet Secretion for Allurement, 5630
- Resembles Piece of Decaying Liver, 5850



- Sundew Plant, 6926  
 Rosettes of Leaves, 1205  
 Sticky Fluid Secreted by Glands, 6926  
 Animal Drowned in Secretion, 6926  
 Venus's Flytrap, 7490, 890  
 Leaves Serve as Traps, 7490  
 Butterwort, 1051  
 Basal Rosette of Fleshy Leaves, 1051  
 Insects Attracted by Sticky Substance, 1051  
 Bladderwort, 785  
 Bladders on Stems and Leaves, 785  
**Parasites**, 885, 5363-5365  
 Derive Nourishment from Host to Sustain Life, 885  
 Plant Diseases Caused by Parasites, 5363  
 Fungi Responsible for  
 Anthracnose of Beans, 658  
 Black Spot Canker of Apple, 5365  
 Brown Rot of Peaches, 5428  
 Downy Mildew on Grapes, Alfalfa, etc., 4473  
 Ergot of Rye, 2285  
 Potato Blight, 5779  
 Smut of Corn, 6656  
 Stem Rust of Wheat, etc., 6281-6282  
 Other Parasitic Fungi  
 Molds, 4572-4573  
 Mushrooms, 4754-4758  
 Puffballs, 5875  
 Parasitic Seed Plants, 5365  
 Dodder, 5365, 885-886, 1984-1985  
 Mistletoe, 5365, 886, 885, 4560-4561  
 Bacteria, 5365. [See Outline on *Medicine and Drugs*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Parasitic Diseases of Man Caused by Fungus, 5365  
 Ringworm, 5365, 6130-6131  
 Thrush, 7163  
**Weeds**, 885, 7699  
 Hardy Character of Weeds, 885  
 [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Plants with Food-Storage Organs**, 885  
 Biennials, or Two-Year Plants, 885  
 Store Food the First Year, 885-886
- Seed Dispersal**
- Transporting Devices**  
 Dispersal by Wind, 6482  
 Dustlike Seeds, 6482
- Orchid, 5240  
 Tufted Seeds, 6482  
 Dandelion, 1819-1820  
 Thistle, 7151-7152, 1593  
 Membranous Wings, 6482  
 Ailanthus, 108  
 Elm, 2215  
 Maple, 4278  
 Clusters of Fruit, 6482  
 White Pine Cone, 1601-1602  
 Smooth, Light Fruits Rolled Along, 6482  
 "Steppe Witches," 6482  
 Plant Itself, 6482  
 Tumbleweed, 6482, 7292  
 Sling Fruits, 6482  
 Catapult Fruits, 6482  
 Poppy, 5737  
 Morning-Glory, 6482  
 Dispersal by Water, 6482  
 Floating Seeds, 6482  
 Lotus, 4117  
 Palm Species, 6482  
 Moisture and Rain Open Capsules, 6483  
 Roses of Jericho, 6483, 3656  
 Ice Plants, 6483  
 Moisture Necessary for Propelling Fruit, 6483  
 Hopping or Creeping Fruits, 6483  
 Dispersal by Animals, 6483  
 Fruits Provided with Appendages, 6483  
 Sharp Spikes, Hooks, Claws, and Barbs, 6483, 1593  
 Edible Portions Enclosing Seeds, 6483  
 Scattered by Man and Animals, 6483  
 Carried in Claws of Birds, 6483  
 Buried by Squirrels and Other Animals, 6483
- Struggle for Existence
- Excess Production of Seeds**, 886  
 Does not Insure Wide Distribution, 886  
**Important Factors**  
 Struggle for Existence, 886  
 Competition in Livelihood, 886, 2340  
 Survival of the Fittest, 886  
 Enemies of Plant Life, 886  
 Equilibrium of Forces of Nature, 887  
 Effects of Man, 887  
 Destruction of Forests, 887, 2534  
 Tilling and Planting Barren Stretches, 887

## Survey of Principal Plant Families

[See, also, *Classification*, below.]

- Amaryllis Family (Amaryllidaceae)**, 241  
 Lilylike Plants with Highly Colored Flowers, 241  
**Buttercup Family (Ranunculaceae)**, 882, 884, 5995  
 Plants Common to Family, 5995  
**Composite Family (Compositae)**, 1593  
 Largest Family of Flowering Plants, 1593  
 Clustered Group of Small Florets, 1593
- Cone-Bearing Trees (Coniferae)**, 1601-1602  
 Important Division of Gymnosperms, 1601  
 Comprise Both Trees and Shrubs, 1601  
**Grass Family (Gramineae)**, 2912  
 Major Proportion Herbaceous, 2912  
**Heath Family (Ericaceae)**, 3115  
 Evergreen Shrubs, 3115  
**Iris Family (Iridaceae)**, 3531-3532  
 Floral Arrangement of Parts, 3531

**Laurel Family (Lauraceae)**, 3893  
 Family of Trees and Shrubs, 3893  
**Lily Family (Liliaceae)**, 883, 4005  
 Comprises 2,600 Species, 889  
 Structure of Typical Lily, 4005  
**Mallow Family (Malvaceae)**, 4240  
 Herbs, Trees, Shrubs, 4240  
**Maple Family (Aceraceae)**, 4278-4280  
 One Hundred Known Species of Trees, 4278  
 Leaf Characteristics, 4278  
**Mint Family (Labiatae or Menthaceae)**, 4525  
 Two-Lipped Corolla, 4525  
 Creeping Rootstocks, 4525  
**Mustard Family (Cruciferae)**, 4782  
 Flowers Shaped Like Greek Cross, 4782  
**Nightshade Family (Solanaceae)**, 884  
 Includes Herbs, Shrubs, and Tropical Trees, 5028  
**Orchid Family (Orchidaceae)**, 5240-5241  
 Over 6,000 Species, 5240  
 Striking Irregular Character of Flowers, 5240  
**Palm Family (Palmaceae)**, 889, 5319-5321  
 Extremely Important for Livelihood, 5319

Division, 5319  
 Fan Palm, 5319  
 Feather Palm, 5319  
 Habits of Growth, 5320  
**Parsley Family (Umbelliferae or Apiaceae)**, 7349  
 Both Herbs and Shrubs, 7349  
 Flowers Arranged in Umbrella-Like Clusters, 7349  
**Poppy Family (Papaveraceae)**, 884, 5737, 5739  
 Bleeding Heart, Bloodroot, Dutchman's Breeches, Poppy, 884  
**Pulse Family (Leguminosae)**, 884, 885, 3925  
 Second Largest Family of Flowering Plants, 3925  
 Most Legumes Bear Seeds in Pods, 3925  
**Rose Family (Rosaceae)**, 883, 6203  
 Includes Commercial Fruits and Ornamental Roses and Trees, 884  
 Structure of Typical Rose, 6203  
**Spurge Family (Euphorbiaceae)**, 6783  
 Herbs, Shrubs, Trees, 6783  
 Brilliant Colored Bracts, 6783

## Classification

[Accepted system of classification of all plants found in THE WORLD BOOK.]

### Seedless Plants

**Three Main Divisions**, 888  
**Thallophytes**, 888  
 Myxomycetes, Slime Molds, 6642  
 Schizophytes  
 Schizomycetes, Bacteria, 566-567  
 Algae, 205-206, 5153  
 Myxophyceae  
 Blue Green Algae, 206  
 Chlorophyceae  
 Green Algae, 206  
 Phaeophyceae  
 Brown Algae, 206  
 Kelp, 3752  
 Rhodophyceae  
 Red Algae, 206  
 Seaweed, 6475-6476  
 Irish Moss, or Carragheen, 3533-3534  
 Bacillariaceae  
 Diatom, 1934-1935  
 Fungi, 2637, 888  
 Phycomycetes  
 Zygomycetes  
 Black Molds, 4573  
 Ascomycetes  
 Protoscales  
 Yeast, 7930  
 Pyrenomycetales  
 Mildew, 4473  
 Plestacales  
 Blue and Green Molds, 4573  
 Basidiomycetes  
 Ustilaginales  
 Ustilaginaceae, Smuts, 6656

Uredinales  
 Rusts, 6281-6282  
 Acaricales  
 Acaricaceae, or Hymenomycetaceae  
 Mushrooms, 4754-4758  
 Lycoperdales  
 Puffball, 5875  
 Lichens, 3975, 3976  
 Take Character of Both Algae and Fungi, 888  
 Parmeliaceae  
 Iceland Moss, 3334  
 Lungwort, 4156  
**Bryophytes**, or "Moss Plants," 888  
 Hepaticae  
 Liverworts, 4061  
 Musci  
 Mosses, 4679-4680  
**Pteridophytes**, 888  
 Equisetales  
 Equisetaceae  
 Horsetail, or Scouring Rush, 3255  
 Filicales, True Ferns  
 Polypodiaceae  
 Boston Fern, 2397  
 Brake, or Bracken, 921  
 Holly Fern, 2397  
 Maidenhair, 4223, 2397  
**Seed Plants**  
**Spermatophytes**, a Phylum, 888, 1457  
**Gymnosperms (Naked Seeds)**, 2991, 1720  
 A Subphylum, 1457  
 Cycadales (Order)  
 Cycadaceae (Cycad Family)  
 Cycads, 1795

- Ginkgoales  
 Ginkgoaceae (Ginkgo Family)  
 Ginkgo, 2809
- Coniferales  
 Pinaceae (Pine Family)  
 Arbor Vitae, 346  
 Cedar, 1265-1266  
 Cypress, 1798-1799  
 Bald Cypress, 1799  
 Douglas Fir, 6783  
 Fir, 2425  
 Hemlock, 3137-3138  
 Juniper, 3719  
 Larch, 3878  
 Tamarack, 7010, 3878  
 Pine, 5620-5622  
 Sequoia, 6499-6501  
 Redwood, 6501  
 Spruce, 6782-6783
- Taxaceae  
 Yew, 7944
- Gnetales  
 Gnetaceae (Gnetum Family)  
 Welwitschia, 7708
- Angiosperms (Enclosed Seeds), 284  
 A Subphylum, 1457  
 Monocotyledoneae (One Seed Leaf), 1720  
 A Class, 1457  
 Pandanales (Order)  
 Typhaceae (Family)  
 Cat-Tail, 1250
- Graminales  
 Gramineae (Comprising the Grass Family), 2912  
 Bamboo, 592-594  
 Barley, 622-623  
 Blue Grass, 805  
 Broom Corn, or Broom Grass, 977  
 Corn, 1681-1691  
 Couch Grass, 1720  
 Creeping Bent, 1740  
 Esparto, 2297-2298  
 Foxtail Grass, 2556  
 Gama Grass, or Sesame Grass, 2672  
 Kafir Corn, 3729-3730  
 Millet, 4488  
 Oats, 5136-5138  
 Rice, 6107-6113  
 Rye, 6286-6287  
 Sand Bur, or Bur Grass, 6362  
 Sorghum, 6690-6691  
 Sudan Grass, 6902  
 Sugar Cane, 6906-6912  
 Timothy, or Herd's Grass, 7180  
 Wheat, 7731-7736  
 Einkorn, 2159  
 Wild Barley or Squirreltail Grass, 7760
- Cyperaceae (Sedge Family)  
 Bulrush, 1020  
 Papyrus, 5353-5354  
 Sedge, 6478
- Palmales  
 Phoenicaceae  
 Betel Palm, 721-722  
 Cabbage Palm, 1058  
 Cannon-Ball Tree, 1174  
 Coconut, 1519-1522  
 Date Palm, 1831-1833  
 Doom Palm, 2011-2013  
 Ivory Palm, 3593, 1052  
 Oil Palm, 5323  
 Palmetto, 5322  
 Palm, 5319-5321  
 Palmyra Palm, 5323  
 Rattan, 5320  
 Sago, 6298
- Arales  
 Araceae (Arum Family)  
 Arum, 437-438  
 Caladium, 1072  
 Calla, 1098  
 Colocasia, 1539  
 Jack-in-the-Pulpit, 3596  
 Sweet Flag, 6959
- Xyridales  
 Bromeliaceae (Pineapple Family)  
 Pineapple, 5622-5624  
 Commelinaceae (Spiderwort Family)  
 Wandering Jew, 7590
- Liliales  
 Amaryllidaceae (Amaryllis Family)  
 Blood Flower, 241  
 Century Plant, or Agave, 1290  
 Daffodil, 1805  
 Jonquil, 3696  
 Narcissus, 4809  
 Sisal, 6626  
 Snowdrop, 6665  
 Tuberose, 7288-7289
- Dioscoraceae (Yam Family)  
 Yam, 7926-7927
- Iridaceae (Iris Family)  
 Crocus, 1751  
 Gladiolus, 2827-2829  
 Iris, 3531  
 Orris Root, 5262
- Juncaceae (Rush Family)  
 Rush, 6254
- Liliaceae (Lily Family)  
 Aloe, 232-233  
 Asparagus, 452  
 Asphodel, 454  
 Colchicum, 1532  
 Day Lily, 1843  
 Dog-Tooth Violet, or Adder's Tongue, 1995  
 Easter Lily, 2088-2089  
 Garlic, 2694  
 Green Brier, 2957  
 Hyacinth, 3301  
 Leek, 3922  
 Lily, 4005  
 Lily of the Valley, 4006

Onion, 5201-5202  
 Smilax, 6647  
 Star of Bethlehem, 6812  
 Tiger Lily, 7175  
 Trillium, 7268-7269  
 Tulip, 7290-7291  
 White Hellebore, 3134  
 Yucca, 7956, 7958  
 Musales or Scitaminales  
 Cannaceae  
 Canna, 1171  
 Marantaceae  
 Arrowroot, 421  
 Musaceae  
 Abaca Tree, 6199  
 Banana, 594-597  
 Zinziberaceae  
 Cardamon, 1195  
 Tumeric, 7319  
 Orchidales  
 Orchidaceae (Orchid Family)  
 Holy Spirit Plant, or Dove Plant, 3204  
 Lady's Slipper, 3837  
 Moccasin Flower, or Pink Lady's  
 Slipper, 4564-4565  
 Orchid, 5240-5241  
 Vanilla, 7462-7463  
 Dicotyledoneae (Two Seed Leaves), 1720  
 A Class, 1457  
 Subclass Archichlamydeae  
 Piperales (Order)  
 Piperaceae (Pepper Family)  
 Betel Vine, 721-722  
 Pepper, 5479  
 Piper Cubeba, 1775-1776  
 Salicales  
 Salicaceae (Willow Family)  
 Aspen, or Trembling Poplar, 452-453  
 Balm of Gilead, 587  
 Cottonwood, 1719  
 Poplar, 5736  
 Willow, 7774-7775  
 Myricales  
 Myricaceae (Sweet Gale Family)  
 Bayberry, 655  
 Candleberry, or Wax Myrtle, 1166  
 Juglandales  
 Juglandaceae (Walnut Family)  
 Bitternut, 776-777  
 Bitternut, or White Walnut, 1050-  
 1051  
 Hickory, 3175  
 Pecan, 5437-5438  
 Walnut, 7586-7587  
 Fagales  
 Betulaceae (Birch Family)  
 Alder, 196  
 Birch, 750, 751  
 Hazel, 3102  
 Ironwood, or Hornbeam, 3552  
 Fagaceae (Beech Family)  
 Beech, 683

Chestnut, 1349-1350  
 Cork Oak, 1677-1679  
 Oak, 5128-5132  
 Urticales  
 Moraceae, or Urticaceae (Nettle Family)  
 Banyan, 614-615  
 Boehmeria, 812  
 Breadfruit, 937-938  
 Fig, 2413-2414  
 Hemp, 3138-3140  
 Hops, 3236-3237  
 Mulberry, 4733  
 Nettle, 4895-4896  
 Osage Orange, 5263-5264  
 Upas, 7419  
 Santales  
 Loranthaceae (Mistletoe Family)  
 Mistletoe, 4560-4561  
 Santalaceae (Sandalwood Family)  
 Sandalwood, 6362  
 Aristolochiales  
 Aristolochiaceae (Birthwort Family)  
 Canada Snakeroot, 6662  
 Ginger, 2809  
 Virginia Snakeroot, 6662  
 Polygonales  
 Polygonaceae (Buckwheat Family)  
 Buckwheat, 996-997  
 Dock, 1984  
 Knotgrass, or Knotweed, 3807  
 Rhubarb, 6100-6101  
 Sorrel, 6691  
 Chenopodiales  
 Amarantaceae (Amaranth Family)  
 Amaranth, 241  
 Cockscorn, 1518  
 Everlasting, 241  
 Pigweed, 5613  
 Tumbleweed, 7292  
 Chenopodiaceae (Goosefoot Family)  
 Beet, 685-686  
 Chard, or Swiss Chard, 1309-1310  
 Goosefoot or Chenopodium, 2873  
 Spinach, 6764-6765  
 Sugar Beets, 686  
 Nyctaginaceae (Four-O'Clock Family)  
 Four-O'Clock, 2552  
 Phytolaccaceae (Pokeweed Family)  
 Pokeweed, 5683, 5685  
 Caryophyllales  
 Caryophyllaceae (Pink Family)  
 Pink, 5625  
 Sweet William, 6961  
 Portulacaceae (Purslane Family)  
 Bitterroot, 777  
 Purslane, 5888  
 Silenaceae, or Caryophyllaceae  
 Carnation, 1202  
 Ranunculales  
 Anonaceae (Custard Apple Family)  
 Lancewood, 3851  
 Pawpaw, 5422-5423

- Berberidaceae (Barberry Family)  
   Barberry, 618-619  
 Calycanthaceae (Calycanthus Family)  
   Calycanthus, 1101  
 Lauraceae (Laurel Family)  
   Avocado, or Alligator Pear, 547  
   Bay Tree, 655-656  
   Camphor, 1115-1116  
   Cinnamon, 1431  
   Laurel, 3893  
   Sassafras, 6396-6397  
 Magnoliaceae (Magnolia Family)  
   Magnolia, 4219  
   Tulip Tree, 7291  
 Myristicaceae  
   Nutmeg, 5121  
 Nymphaeaceae (Water-Lily Family)  
   Lotus, 4117-4118  
   Water Lily, 7668-7669  
 Ranunculaceae (Crowfoot Family)  
   Aconite, 22  
   Adonis, 51  
   Anemone, 279  
   Bachelor's Button, 563  
   Black Snakeroot, or Cohosh, 6662  
   Buttercup, or Crowfoot, 1044  
   Clematis, 1463  
   Columbine, 1571  
   Cowslip, 1729-1730  
   Hellebore, 3134  
   Hepatica, 3150  
   Larkspur, 3881  
   Marsh Marigold, 4292  
   Peony, 5477-5478  
 Papaverales  
   Capparidaceae (Caper Family)  
     Caper, 1181  
   Cruciferae (Mustard Family)  
     Brussels Sprouts, 985  
     Cabbage, 1057-1058  
     Candytuft, 1167, 1170  
     Cauliflower, 1260  
     Cress, 1741  
     Horse-Radish, 3254  
     Jericho Rose, 3650  
     Kale, or Borecole, 3731  
     Kohl-Rabi, 3812  
     Mustard, 4782  
     Radish, 5968  
     Rape, 5995  
     Sweet Alyssum, 6959  
     Turnip, 7320-7321  
     Wall Flower, 7585  
     Woad, 7817  
   Fumariaceae (Fumitory Family)  
     Dicentra, 1935-1936  
   Papaveraceae (Poppy Family)  
     Bleeding Heart, 789-790  
     Bloodroot, 801  
     Dutchman's Breeches, 2061  
     Poppy, 5737-5739  
   Resadaceae (Mignonette Family)  
     Mignonette, 4471  
 Sarraceniales  
   Droseraceae (Sundew Family)  
     Venus' Flytrap, or Dionaea, 7490  
     Sundew, 6926  
   Sarraceniaceae (Pitcher Plant Family)  
     Pitcher Plants, 5630, 5632  
 Rosales  
   Crassulaceae (Orpine Family)  
     Houseleek, or Live-Forever, 3264  
   Hamamelidaceae (Witch-Hazel Family)  
     Witch-Hazel, 7815-7816  
   Leguminosae (Pulse Family)  
     Acacia, 13  
     Alfalfa, or Lucerne, 202-203  
     Bean, 657-658  
     Blackwood Tree, 6208  
     Broom, 977  
     Carob, 1205  
     Cassia, 1230  
     Clover, 1494-1495  
     Gram, or Chick Pea, 2890  
     Honey Locust, or Black Locust, 3218  
     Indigo, 3430  
     Judas Tree, 3704  
     Laburnum, 3829  
     Lentil, 3935-3936  
     Licorice, 3975  
     Loco Weed, 4083-4084  
     Logwood, 4090  
     Locust, 4084  
     Lupine, 4156-4157  
     Melilot, or Melilotus, 4384  
     Mesquite, 4412-4413  
     Pea, 5424-5425  
     Peanut, 5431-5432  
     Sensitive Plant, 6493  
     Shamrock, 6539  
     Sweet Pea, 6959-6960  
     Tamarind, 7011  
     Tare, 7020  
     Trefoil, 7262, 4118  
     Vetch, 7512  
     Wistaria, 7813  
   Plantanaceae (Plane Tree Family)  
     Sycamore, 6982-6983  
   Rosaceae (Rose family)  
     Agrimony, 106  
     Almond, 231-232  
     American Beauty Rose, 248  
     Apple, 324-327  
     Apricot, 329-330  
     Bramble, 921  
     Blackberry, 778-779  
     Bridal Wreath, 946  
     Cherry, 1342, 3893  
     Cherry Laurel, 1343  
     Cinquefoil, 1432  
     Crab Apple, 1731  
     Dewberry, 1926  
     Eglantine, 2139-2140  
     Hawthorn, 3089

Loganberry, 4088-4089  
 Loquat, 4109  
 Mountain Ash, 4697  
 Peach, 5427-5429  
     Nectarine, 4869  
 Pear, 5432-5433  
 Plum, 5662-5663  
 Portugal Laurel, 3893  
 Quince, 5922  
 Raspberry, 5998  
 Rose, 6202-6204  
 Scarlet Haw, 3089  
 Sloe, 6643  
 Spiraea, 6766  
 Strawberry, 6877-6878  
 Saxifragaceae (Saxifrage Family)  
     Currant, 1788-1789  
     Gooseberry, 2873  
     Hydrangea, 3303  
     Saxifrage, 6405  
     Syringa, 6992  
 Geraniales  
     Euphorbiaceae (Spurge Family)  
         African Teak, 7052  
         Cassava, 1230  
         Castor Oil Plant, 1233-1234  
         Manihot, 4257  
         Poinsettia, 5682  
         Rubber, 6223-6231  
         Tallow Tree, 7009  
     Geraniaceae (Geranium Family)  
         Geranium, 2763-2764  
         Cranesbill, 2764  
     Linaceae (Flax Family)  
         Coca, 1516  
         Flax, 2465-2468  
     Meliaceae  
         Mahogany, 4222-4223  
         Cedrela, 4222  
         Swietenia, 4222  
     Polygalaceae (Milkwort Family)  
         Senegal Snakeroot, 6662  
     Rutaceae (Rue Family)  
         Bergamot, 711  
         Citron, 1436  
         Grapefruit, 2910  
         Lemon, 3928-3930  
         Lime, 4006  
         Orange, 5231-5234  
         Kumquat, 3818  
         Prickly Ash, 5810  
         Tangerine, 7015  
     Simarubaceae (Quassia Family)  
         Ailanthus, 108  
     Tropaeolaceae  
         Nasturtium, 4812-4813  
     Zygophyllaceae (Caltrop Family)  
         Lignum-Vitae, 4004  
 Sapindales  
     Aceraceae (Maple Family)  
         Box-Elder, 900  
         Maple, 4278-4280

        Bird's-Eye Maple, 771  
         Curled Maple, 771  
     Anacardiaceae (Cashew Family)  
         Mango, 4255-4256  
         Pepper Tree, 5480  
         Pistachio, 5629  
         Poison Ivy, 3593-3594  
         Sumac, 6917-6918  
     Aquifoliaceae (Holly Family)  
         Holly, 3197  
         Maté, or Paraguay Tea, 4343  
         Winterberry, 7799  
     Buxaceae (Box Family)  
         Box Tree, or Boxwood, 902  
     Sapindaceae, or Hippocastanaceae  
         Buckeye, 995  
         Horse-Chestnut, 3251  
         Litchi, or Leeches, 4046  
     Rhamnales  
         Rhamnaceae (Buckthorn Family)  
             Buckthorn, 996  
             Cascara Sagrada, 1226  
         Vitaceae (Vine Family)  
             Currant, 1788-1789  
             Grape, 2908-2910  
             Ivy, 3593  
             Virginia Creeper, 7545-7546  
     Malvales  
         Malvaceae (Mallow Family)  
             Abutilon, 13  
             Balsa, 587  
             Cotton, 1708-1718  
             Hibiscus, 3174  
             Hollyhock, 3198  
             Indian Mallow, also called Velvet  
                 Leaf, 3401  
             Mallow, 4240  
             Marsh Mallow, 4306  
             Okra, 5189  
             Gumbo, 2986  
         Sterculiaceae  
             Bottle Tree, 894  
             Cacao, 1063  
         Tiliaceae (Linden Family)  
             Basswood, 646  
             Jute, 3723-3725  
             Linden, 4030  
     Violales, or Hypercales  
         Begoniaceae  
             Begonia, 689-690  
         Clusiaceae  
             Gamboge, 2673  
         Passifloraceae (Passion Flower Family)  
             Passion Flower, 5408  
         Ternstroemiaceae (Tea, or Camellia,  
             Family)  
             Tea Plant, 7042  
         Theaceae, or Ternstroemiaceae  
             Camellia, 1106  
         Violaceae (Violet Family)  
             Pansy, 5341  
             Violet, 7532

## Opuntiales

## Cactaceae (Cactus Family)

Cactus, 1063

Prickly Pear, or Indian Fig, 5810-5811

## Myrtales

## Lythraceae (Loosestrife, or Egyptian Privet Family)

Henna, 3141

## Myrtaceae

Bayberry, 655

Brazil Nut, or Para Nut, 934

Cloves, 1495

Eucalyptus, 2313

Guava, 2977

Myrtle, 4785

Pimento, 5618

## Onagraceae (Evening Primrose Family)

Fuchsia, 2630

## Punicaceae

Pomegranate, 5718

## Rhizophoraceae

Mangrove, 4256

## Umbellales

## Araliaceae (Ginseng Family)

Ginseng, 2809-2810

## Cornaceae (Dogwood Family)

Dogwood, 1995

Pepperidge, 5479-5480

## Umbelliferae, or Apiaceae (Parsley Family)

Anise, 292

Asafetida, 438

Caraway, 1190

Carrot, 1217-1218

Celery, 1267

Cicely (Sweet), 1423

Coriander, 1675

Cow Parsnip, 1728

Fennel, 2394

Parsley, 5402

Parsnip, 5402

Poison Hemlock, 3138

## Subclass Metachlamydeae

## Ericales

## Ericaceae (Heath Family)

Arbutus, 346

Azalea, 549

Blueberry, 3269-3270

Cranberry, 1732

Heath, or Heather, 3115

Huckleberry, or Whortleberry, 3269

Kalmid, 3731

Labrador Tea, 3829

Rhododendron, 6099

Sorrel Tree or Sourwood, 6691

Wintergreen, 7799-7800

## Primulales

## Primulaceae (Primrose Family)

Cyclamen, 1795-1796

Golden Loosestrife, 4166

Creeping Loosestrife, 4166

Primrose, 5812

## Ebenales

## Ebenaceae (Ebony Family)

Ebony, 2092

Persimmon, 5503

## Sapotaceae

Gutta-Percha, 2990

## Gentianales

## Apocynaceae (Dogbane Family)

Dogbane, 1993

Oleander, 5191

Vinca Minor, 4785

## Asclepiadaceae (Milkweed Family)

Milkweed, 4484-4485

## Gentianaceae (Gentian Family)

Gentian, 2719

## Loganidceae (Logania Family)

Gelsemium, or Yellow Jasmine, 2711

Nux Vomica, 5126

## Oleaceae (Olive Family)

Ash, 439

Fringe Tree, 2623

Jasmine, 3640

Lilac, 4004

Olive, 5192-5193

## Polemoniales

## Acanthaceae (Acanthus Family)

Acanthus, 14

## Bignoniaceae (Bignonia Family)

Bignonia, 736

Cross Vine, 736

Catalpa, or Indian Bean, 1238

## Boraginaceae (Borage Family)

Forget-Me-Not, 2542

Gromwell, 2967

Heliotrope, 3131

Lungwort, 4156

Stickseed, 6834

Viper's Bugloss, 7534

## Convolvulaceae (Convolvulus Family)

Bindweed, 741

Dodder, 1984-1985

Jalap, 3611

Moonflower, 4643

Morning-Glory, 4656-4657

Scammony, 6409

Sweet Potato, 6960-6961, 7926-7927

## Gesneriaceae

Gloxinia, 2844

## Labiatae, or Menthaceae (Mint Family), 4525

Balm, 586-587

Catnip, or Catmint, 1248

Ground Ivy, 3593

Horehound, 3238-3239

Hyssop, 3322

Lavender, 3896

Marjoram, 4293-4294

Pennyroyal, 5474

Peppermint, 5480

Rosemary, 6205

Sage, 6296

Spearmint, 6746-6747

Thyme, 7165

- Lentibulariaceae (Bladderwort Family)  
 Bladderwort, 785  
 Butterwort, 1051
- Polemoniaceae (Polemonium Family)  
 Phlox, 5567-5568
- Scrophulariaceae (Figwort Family)  
 Foxglove, 2555  
 Mullein, or Mullen, 4734-4735  
 Paintbrush, 5298  
 Slipperwort, 6643  
 Snapdragon, 6662  
 Toadflax, or Butter and Eggs, 7193
- Solanaceae (Nightshade Family)  
 Belladonna, 704-705  
 Bittersweet, or Woody Nightshade, 777  
 Capsicum, 1187-1188  
 Eggplant, 2139  
 Mandrake, 4254  
 Nightshade, 5028  
 Petunia, 5529-5530  
 Potato, 5779-5781  
 Solanum, 6678  
 Stramonium, 6873-6874  
 Tobacco, 7193-7198  
 Tomato, 7205-7206
- Verbenaceae (Vervain Family)  
 Teak, 7051-7052  
 Verbena, 7492
- Plantaginales  
 Plantaginaceae (Plantain Family)  
 Plantain, 5649
- Rubiales  
 Caprifoliaceae (Honeysuckle Family)  
 Black Haw, or Stag Bush, 780-781  
 Elder, 2163-2164  
 Honeysuckle, 3218  
 Linnaea, or Twin Flower, 4032  
 Snowball, 6664-6665
- Dipsacaceae (Teasel Family)  
 Teasel, 7052
- Rubiaceae (Madder Family)  
 Cinchona, 1426, 5923  
 Coffee, 1526-1530  
 Gardenia, 2683  
 Madder, 4197-4198
- Valerianaceae (Valerian Family)  
 Spikenard, 6764
- Campanulales  
 Campanulaceae (Comprising the Bluebell Family)  
 Bluebell, 803  
 Campanula, 1113
- Compositae (Composite Family)  
 Arnica, 418  
 Artichoke, 430-431  
 Aster, 463  
 Black-Eyed Susan, 780  
 Boneset, or Thoroughwort, 836  
 Burdock, 1025  
 Canada Thistle, 1151  
 Chamomile, 1301  
 Chicory, or Succory, 1368-1369  
 Chrysanthemum, 1419  
 Cineraria, 1431  
 Cocklebur, 1517  
 Coltsfoot, 1567  
 Cosmos, 1703  
 Dahlia, 1806  
 Daisy, 1811  
 Shasta Daisy, 1811  
 Dandelion, 1819-1820  
 Edelweiss, 2107  
 Elecampane, 2164  
 Endive, 2234  
 Feverfew, 2404  
 Fleabane, 2468  
 Goldenrod, 2862  
 Immortelle, 3369  
 Kaiser-blume, or Bachelor's Button, 3730  
 Lettuce, 3948  
 Marigold, 4292  
 Oyster Plant or Salsify, 5286  
 Ragweed, 5972  
 Safflower, 6296  
 Sagebrush, 6297  
 Sow Thistle, 6725  
 Sun Flower, 6927, 6929  
 Tansy, 7016  
 Thistle, 7151-7152  
 Wormwood, 7892-7893  
 Zinnia, 7974-7975
- Curcubitaceae (Gourd Family)  
 Calabash, 1071  
 Cassaba, 1229  
 Cucumber, 1782-1783  
 Gourd, 2881-2882  
 Melon, 4384  
 Muskmelon, 4778-4779  
 Pumpkin, 5881  
 Squash, 6787  
 Watermelon, 7669-7670
- Lobeliaceae (Lobelia Family)  
 Cardinal Flower, 1196-1197  
 Lobelia, 4068

## Plant Ecology

### Classification of Plants According to Habitat

- Water Plants, or Aquatic Plants, 7670  
 Plants Wholly or Partially Submerged, 7670  
 Term Does not Refer to Algae, 7670  
 Mechanisms of Water Plants, 7670  
 Air Bladders, 7670, 6388

- Air Pores, 7670, 154  
 Plant List  
 Bladderwort, 785  
 Bulrush, 1020  
 Cat-Tail, 1250  
 Lotus, 4117-4118



- Papyrus, 5353-5354  
 Water Lily, 7668-7669  
**Air Plants, or Epiphytes, 151**  
 Plants Attached to Other Plants, 151  
 Non-Parasitic, 151  
   Spanish Moss, 151  
   Mosses, 151, 4680  
   Lichens, 151, 3975  
   Injurious Effect, 151  
   Distribution, 151  
**Land Plants. [See other lists in this Outline.]**  
   **Classification Based on Duration of Life**  
**Annuals, 295, 734, 5485, 7699**  
   Life Cycle Complete within One Year, 295  
   New Seed Needed Yearly, 295  
   Examples  
     Bean, Pea, Tomato, Nasturtium, 295  
**Biennials, 734, 295, 5485, 7699**  
   Require Two Growing Seasons, 734, 295  
   Accumulate Food during First Year, 734  
   Produce Flowers the Second Year, 734  
   Examples  
     Viper's Bugloss, 7534  
     Black-Eyed Susan, 780  
**Perennials, 5485, 295, 734, 7699**  
   Live and Blossom over Two Years, 5485  
   Indefinite Life Cycle, 5485  
   Ambiguous Use of Term, 5485  
   Include Most of Trees, Shrubs, and Plants  
     of Economic Importance, 5485  
   **Classification According to Growth Forms**  
**Herbs, 3154**  
   Botanically, Plants Having No Woody  
     Tissue, 3154  
   Popular Usage, Herbaceous Plants of Eco-  
     nomic Value, 3154  
   Herbs not Included in Other Lists  
     Aconite, 22  
     Aloe, 232-233  
     Anemone, 279  
     Arnica, 418  
     Arrowroot, 421  
     Arum, 437-438  
     Asafetida, 438  
     Bachelor's Button, 3730  
     Belladonna, 704-705  
     Bitterroot, 777  
     Bittersweet, 777  
     Black-Eyed Susan, 780  
     Bladderwort, 785  
     Blood Flower, 241  
     Bloodroot, 801  
     Bluebell, 803  
     Boneset, 836  
     Bulrush, 1020  
     Buttercup, 1044  
     Butterwort, 1051  
     Calabash, 1071  
     Canada Snakeroot, 6662  
     Cardinal Flower, 1196-1197  
     Cassia, 1230  
     Castor-Oil Plant, 1233-1234

- Chamomile, 1301  
 Chicory, 1368-1369  
 Clematis, 1463  
 Colchicum, 1532  
 Columbine, 1571  
 Cow Parsnip, 1728  
 Cowslip, 1729-1730  
 Cranesbill, 2764  
 Daisy, 1811  
 Dicentra, 1935-1936  
 Digitalis, 1947  
 Dog-Tooth Violet, 1995  
 Dutchman's Breeches, 2061  
 Edelweiss, 2107  
 Elecampane, 2164  
 Everlasting, 2336  
 Feverfew, 2404  
 Fleabane, 2468  
 Gentian, 2719  
 Ginseng, 2809-2810  
 Goldenrod, 2862  
 Gram, or Chick Pea, 2890  
 Gromwell, 2967  
 Ground Ivy, 3593  
 Hellebore, 3134  
 Hepatica, 3150  
 Horehound, 3238-3239  
 Houseleek, 3264  
 Indigo, 3430  
 Immortelle, 3369  
 Jack-in-the-Pulpit, 3596  
 Jalap, 3611  
 Jericho Rose, 3656  
 Lady's Slipper, 3837  
 Lentil, 3935-3936  
 Lettuce, 3948  
 Licorice, 3975  
 Loco Weed, 4083-4084  
 Lungwort, 4156  
 Lysimachia, 4166  
 Madder, 4197-4198  
 Mandrake, 4254  
 Marsh Mallow, 4306  
 Marsh Marigold, 4292  
 Paintbrush, 5298  
 Papyrus, 5353-5354  
 Pennyroyal, 5474  
 Pitcher Plants, 5630  
 Pokeweed, 5683, 5685  
 Primrose, 5812  
 Rape, 5995  
 Rush, 6254  
 Safflower, 6296  
 Saxifrage, 6405  
 Scammony, 6409  
 Sedge, 6478  
 Senega Snakeroot, 6662  
 Shamrock, 6539  
 Snakeroot, 6662  
 Sorrel, 6691  
 Spikenard, 6764  
 Stickseed, 6834  
 Stramonium, 6873-6874

Sundew, 6926  
 Sweet Flag, 6959  
 Tansy, 7016  
 Tare, 7020  
 Toadflax, 7193  
 Trefoil, 7262, 4118  
 Trillium, 7268-7269  
 Turmeric, 7319  
 Vanilla, 7462-7463  
 Venus Fly-Trap, 7490  
 Verbena, 7492  
 Violet, 7532  
 Viper's Bugloss, 7534  
 Wallflower, 7585  
 White Hellebore, 3134  
 Woad, 7817

**Shrubs, 6580, 7259**

Woody, Self-Supporting Plants, 6580  
 Shrubs not Included in Other Lists

Azalea, 549  
 Barberry, 618-619  
 Black Haw, 780-781  
 Blueberry, 3269-3270  
 Bramble, 921  
 Bridal Wreath, 946  
 Broom, 977  
 Buckthorn, 996  
 Calycanthus, 1101  
 Candleberry, 1166  
 Cassava, 1230  
 Cherry Laurel, 1343  
 Coca, 1516  
 Currant, 1788-1789  
 Eglantine, 2139-2140  
 Elder, 2163-2164  
 Gardenia, 2683  
 Gelsemium, 2711  
 Heath, 3115  
 Honeysuckle, 3218  
 Hydrangea, 3303  
 Hyssop, 3322  
 Jasmine, 3640  
 Kalmia, 3731  
 Laburnum, 3829  
 Lilac, 4004  
 Magnolia, 4219  
 Marsh Mallow, 4306  
 Mesquite, 4412-4413  
 Mistletoe, 4560-4561  
 Myrtle, 4785  
 Oleander, 5191  
 Poison Ivy, 3593-3594  
 Rhododendron, 6099  
 Sagebrush, 6297  
 Sloe, 6643  
 Snowball, 6664-6665  
 Spiraea, 6766  
 Sumac, 6917-6918  
 Syringa, 6992  
 Welwitschia, 7708  
 Winterberry, 7799  
 Wintergreen, 7799-7800  
 Witch-Hazel, 7815-7816

**Herbaceous, or Shrubby Growth**

Acanthus, 14  
 Dogbane, 1993  
 Green Brier, 2957  
 Honeysuckle, 3218  
 Lotus, 4117-4118  
 Manihot, 4257  
 Nightshade, 5028  
 Passion Flower, 5408  
 Smilax, 6647  
 Solanum, 6678  
 Virginia Snakeroot, 6662  
 Wormwood, 7892-7893

**Trees, 7258-7260**

Thick, Woody, Self-Supporting Stem, 7258  
 Perennial Growth, 7259, 5485  
 Root System, 7259  
 Variation in the Crown  
 Unbranching Bole, 7259  
 Branching Bole, 7259  
 Age of Trees, 7260  
 Oldest Living To-Day, 6499-6500  
 Tree Enemies, 7260

**Tree List**

Abaca, 6199  
 Acacia, 13  
 African Teak, 7052  
 Ailanthus, 108  
 Alder, 106  
 Arbor Vitae, 346  
 Ash, 439  
 Aspen, 452-453  
 Balm of Gilead, 587  
 Balsa, 587  
 Bamboo, 592-594  
 Banyan, 614-615  
 Basswood, 646  
 Bayberry, 655  
 Bay Tree, 655-656  
 Beech, 683  
 Betel Palm, 721  
 Birch, 750, 751  
 Bird's-Eye Maple, 771  
 Bitternut, 776-777  
 Bottle Tree, 894  
 Box-Elder, 900  
 Box Tree, 902  
 Cabbage Palm, 1058  
 Cacao, 1063  
 Calabash, 1072  
 Camphor, 1115-1116  
 Cannon-Ball Tree, 1174  
 Catalpa, 1238  
 Cedar, 1265-1266  
 Cinchona, 1426, 5923  
 Cork, 1677-1679  
 Cottonwood, 1719  
 Cypress, 1798-1799  
 Date and Date Palm, 1831-1833  
 Dogwood, 1995  
 Doom Palm, 2011, 2013  
 Ebony, 2092  
 Elm, 2215-2216

Eucalyptus, 2312-2313  
 Fir, 2425  
 Fringe Tree, 2623  
 Gamboge, 2673  
 Ginkgo, 2809  
 Gutta-Percha, 2990  
 Hawthorn, 3088-3089  
 Hemlock, 3137-3138  
 Holly, 3197  
 Honey Locust, 3218  
 Horse-Chestnut, 3251  
 Ironwood, 3552  
 Ivory Palm, 3593, 1052  
 Judas Tree, 3704  
 Juniper, 3719  
 Laburnum, 3829  
 Lancewood, 3851  
 Larch, 3878  
 Laurel, 3893  
 Lignum-Vitae, 4004  
 Linden, 4030  
 Litchi, 4046  
 Locust, 4084  
 Logwood, 4090  
 Mahogany, 4222-4223  
 Mangrove, 4256  
 Maple, 4278-4280  
 Mountain Ash, 4697  
 Mulberry, 4733  
 Nettle Tree, 4896  
 Nux Vomica, 5126  
 Oak, 5128-5132  
 Osage Orange, 5263-5264  
 Palm, 5319-5321  
 Palmetto, 5322  
 Palmyra Palm, 5323  
 Pepperidge, 5479-5480  
 Pepper Tree, 5480  
 Pimento, 5618  
 Pine, 5620-5622  
 Poplar, 5736  
 Prickly Ash, 5810  
 Rosewood, 6208  
 Rubber, 6223-6231  
 Sandalwood, 6362  
 Sassafras, 6396-6397  
 Scarlet Haw, 3089  
 Sequoia, 6499-6501  
 Sorrel Tree, 6691  
 Spruce, 6782-6783  
 Sycamore, 6982-6983  
 Tallow Tree, 7009  
 Tamarack, 7010  
 Tamarind, 7011  
 Teak, 7051-7052  
 Tulip Tree, 7291  
 Upas, 7419  
 Willow, 7774-7775  
 Yew, 7944  
 [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE,  
 for fruit and nut trees.]

#### Shrubs, or Trees

Arbutus, 346

Bignonia, 736  
 Cascara Sagrada, 1226  
 Ebony, 2092  
 Hawthorn, 3088-3089  
 Henna, 3141  
 Holly, 3197  
 Maté, 4343  
 Rubber, 6223-6231  
**Vines, 7531**  
 Plants Which Require Support, 7531  
 Climbing Ability, 7531  
 Mechanisms for Attachment, 7531  
 Unrigid Classification, 7531  
 Herbaceous and Woody Forms, 7531  
**Plant List**  
 Betel Vine, 721  
 Grape, 2908-2909  
 Ivy, 3593-3594  
 Common or English Ivy, 3593  
 Boston or Japanese Ivy, 3593  
 Ground Ivy, 3593  
 Poison Ivy, 3593-3594  
 Morning-Glory, 4656-4657  
 Virginia Creeper, 7545  
 Wistaria, 7813  
**Plants Which May Take on Vine Habit**  
 Bittersweet, 777  
 Blackberry, 778-779  
 Clematis, 1463  
 Cranberry, 1732  
 Gourd, 2881  
 Green Brier, 2957  
 Honeysuckle, 3218  
 Smilax, 6647

#### Ecological Nomenclature

**Acclimatization, 16**  
 Adaptation to Foreign Climate, 16  
 Partial Acclimatization, 16  
**Adaptation, 2275-2276**  
 Adjustment of Plants, 2275-2276  
 Ever-Changing Environment, 2276  
**Environment, 2275**  
 Climatic Factors, 2275  
**Exotic, 2344**  
 Extraneous Species Introduced, 2344  
**Flora, 2472**  
 Plant Life of a Region, 2472  
**Geographic Botany, or Distribution of Plants**  
**Vegetational Zones, 7979**  
 Tropical Zones, 7979  
 Extension North and South of Equator,  
 7979  
 Vegetational Districts, 7275  
 Tropical Woodland, 7275  
 Tropical Grassland, 7275  
 Savanna, 6401-6402, 7275.  
 Steppes, 7275, 6828  
 Tropical Desert, 7275  
 Temperate Zones, 7979  
 Lies between Limits of Trees and Frosts,  
 7979. [See below.]

- Arctic Zone, 7979, 370, 371
  - Situated between Arctic Circle and North Pole, 370
  - Sparsity of Vegetation, 7979
  - Abundance of Mosses and Lichens, 371
- Antarctic Zone, 303-304
  - Vegetation, 304
- Mountain Zones, 7979
- Water Zone, 7979. [See *Water Plants*, above.]
- Formation Types**
  - Forests, 2533-2541
    - Kinds of Forests, 2534
    - Factors Delimiting Growth, 2534
  - Forest Types, 2534
    - Evergreens, 2534, 2336, 1860
    - Deciduous, 2336, 1860
    - Distribution of Forest Types in United States, 2534

## Plant Anatomy

- Plant Parts, or Organs**
- Roots**, 5648, 6198, 7259
  - Functions
    - Anchorage Organs, 6198, 5648, 7259
    - Absorb Solutes, 6198, 5648
  - Kinds of Roots
    - Primary, Secondary, Tertiary, Adventitious, 6198
  - Root Hairs, 6198
  - Classification According to Habitat
    - Soil, Aerial, Water, Parasitic, 6198
  - Growth Forms
    - Taproot, Fleshy, Fascicled, Fibrous, 6199
  - Anatomy of Root, 6199
  - Storage of Food, 6199
- Stems**, 6824-6825, 5648
  - Functions
    - Support Foliage, 5648, 6824
    - Distribute Solutes, 5648, 6824
    - May Manufacture Food, 6824
    - Buoy Leaves of Water Plants, 6825
  - Structure and Growth
    - Fibrovascular Bundles, 6825
      - Xylem (Woody Part)
        - Water-Conducting Vessels, 6825, 6383
      - Phloem, or Sieve Tubes, 6825
    - Cellular Structure
      - Bark, 620-621, 6825
        - Cork, 1677-1679
      - Fibrous Cells, 6825
      - Sieve Tubes, 6825
      - Woody Cells, 6825
      - Cambium, 192, 6825
      - Alburnum, or Sapwood, 192, 6383
    - Growth Rings, 192, 6825, 621
    - Rate of Growth, 7259-7260, 6825
  - Underground Stems, 6825
    - Food-Storage Organs, 1013, 6825
    - Bulb, 6825, 1012-1013, 1679
    - Corm, 1679, 1013
    - Rhizome, 1013
- World Distribution, 2536, 2538
- Grasslands
  - Llanos, 4065
  - Pampas, 5324
  - Prairie, 5795
  - Savanna, 6401-6402
  - Steppe, 6828, 7275
- Desert, 1916
  - Cactus, 1063-1065
  - Chaparral, 1303
  - Mesquite, 4412-4413
  - Sagebrush, 6297
- Mountain Vegetation, 2275
- Tundra, 7292
  - Extent of Region, 7292, 172
  - Vegetation, 7292, 171-172
- Oceans, 5150
  - Algae, 205-206, 5153
  - Water Plants, 7670
- Rootstock**, 6825
  - Orris Root, 5262
- Modified Stems**
  - Thorn, 7157
  - Reproduction by Stems, 6825
- Economic Uses of Stems**, 6825
  - Food Value, 6825
  - Building Purposes, 6825
- Injurious Insects**, 621, 7260
  - San Jose Scale, 6375
  - Scale Insect, 6407
  - Bark Beetle, 621
- Buds**, 997
  - Unopened Flower, 997
  - Flower Buds, 997
  - Leaf Buds, 997
- Leaves**, 3912-3915
  - Outgrowth of the Stem, 3912
  - Structure of the Leaf
    - Epidermal Layers, 3912
    - Stomata, 3915, 3912
    - Veins, 3912, 7476
  - Parts of a Leaf
    - Blade, Petiole, Stipules, 3912
  - Forms of Leaves
    - Classified by Prevailing Types, 3912
    - Simple, 3912
      - Compound, 3914, 3912
      - Pinnate, 3914, 3912
      - Palmate, 3914, 3912
  - Venation, 3913, 7476
    - Principal Plans, 7476
      - Network, 3913, 7476
      - Parallel-Veined, 3913
      - Dichotomy, or Forked Veining, 1936, 7476
      - Hidden-Veined, 7476
      - Veinless, 7476
- Leaf Arrangement**
  - Opposite, 3913
  - Alternate, 3913

- Functions of Leaf
  - Manufacture Carbohydrates, 6383, 3913, 5648
  - [See *Plant Physiology*, below.]
  - Transpiration, 3915
- Defoliation
  - Adjustment to Climatic Factors, 3915
  - Cause of Change in Color, 3915
- Flowers, 2490-2496
  - Modified Shoot, 2490
  - Function of a Flower
    - To Reproduce Itself, 2490, 5648
  - Structure of Typical Flower
    - Calyx, 2490
      - Composed of Sepals, 2490
    - Corolla
      - Within Calyx, 2490
      - Petals, Individual Leaves of Corolla, 2490
    - Stamens, Pollen-Bearing Organs, 2491
      - Filament, Threadlike Body Which Supports the Anther, 2491
      - Anther, Polliniferous Part of a Stamen, 2491
      - Pollen, Powdery Substance of Anther, 2491
    - Pistil, Innermost Organ, 2491
      - Structure
        - Ovule, Female Sex Organ, 2491
        - Style, Connects Stigma and Ovary, 2491
        - Stigma Necessary for Fertilizing, 2491
- Variation in Flowers, 2491
- Inflorescence, 3449, 3450
  - Determinate, or Cymose, 3449, 3450
  - Indeterminate, or Racemose, 3449-3450
  - Raceme, 5930
    - Bract, 914-915, 5930
    - Modified Leaf, 914
    - Ament, or Catkin, 1248
- Fruit, 5648, 2629
  - Nut, 5119-5120
- Seeds, 6479-6484
  - Parts of a Seed
    - Embryo, 6479, 2220
    - Germ, 2765
    - Seed Coat, 6479
  - Germinating Power of Seed, 6479, 2789-2790
  - Activation of Embryo, 2789
  - Differentiation into Organs
    - Hypocotyl, 2789
    - Cotyledon (First Leaves), 2789, 1719-1720, 6480
    - Plumule (Leaf Bud), 2789, 1719
  - Conditions Favorable for Growth
    - Temperature, 2789-2790
    - Moisture, 2789-2790
    - Oxygen, 2789-2790
  - Time Element for Germination, 2790
  - Methods of Growth, 2790
  - Varying Arrangement of Seeds, 6480-6481
- Spore, 6777
  - Reproductive Organ, 6777
  - Produced by Cryptogams, 6777, 1765

## Plant Morphology

- Cryptogams
  - Reproduce by Spores, 1765
- Thallophytes, 888, 206
  - Slime Molds, 6642
    - Resemble Minute Animals, 6642
    - Power of Locomotion, 6642
  - Bacteria, 566-567, 888
    - Simplest of Plants, 888
      - Minute Bits of Protoplasm, 566
    - Reproduction by Splitting, 566
    - Conditions Necessary for Growth, 566
    - Classification According to Shape
      - Bacillus (Rod-Shaped), 567, 569
      - Spirillum (Curved or Spiral), 567, 569
      - Micrococcus (Spherical), 567
    - Classification According to Environment
      - Aerobes, 569
      - Anaerobes, 569
      - Power of Locomotion, 569
      - Bacterial Activity, 567-569
        - Cause Disease, 1961
      - Power of Putrefaction, 5890
      - Fermentation, 2396
  - Algae, 205-206, 888, 5153
    - Myxophyceae (Blue-Green Algae), 206
    - Chlorophyceae (Green Algae), 206
    - Phaeophyceae (Brown Algae), 206
    - Extremely Massive Forms, 206
- Kelps, 3752
  - Seaweeds, 6475-6476
- Rhodophyceae (Red Algae), 206
  - Seaweeds, 6475-6476
    - Irish Moss, 3533-3534
  - Diatoms, 1934-1935
- Fungi, 2637, 888
  - Incapable of Manufacturing Food, 2637
  - Source of Food
    - Saprophytes, 2637
    - Parasites, 2637
  - Fungal Forms
    - Yeast, 7930-7931
      - Simple, One-Celled Plant, 7930
      - Reproduction by Budding, 7930
      - Power of Fermentation, 7930. [See *Plant Physiology*, below.]
    - Mildew, 4473
    - Mold, 4572-4573
    - Smuts, 6656
    - Rusts, 6281-6282
    - [See *Plant Pathology*, below.]
    - Mushrooms, 4754-4758
      - Flowerless Plants, 4754
      - Variation in Shape and Color, 4754
      - Habitat, 4754-4755
      - Source of Food, 4755
      - Stages in Life Cycle, 4755-4756

- Pinhead, 4755
- Button, 4755
- Cap Formation, 4755-4756
- Growth Habits, 4756
- Fairy Rings, 4756
- Edible and Harmless Kinds
  - Described and Illustrated, opposite 4754, 4756, 4757
- Puffballs, 5875
- Spores Completely Enclosed, 5875
- Devil's Snuff-Boxes, 4756
- Smokeballs, 4756
- Water-Measuring Earth-Star, 4756
- Table Mushroom, 4756, 4757
- Trembling Mushroom, 4756
- Poisonous Kinds
  - Described and Illustrated, opposite 4754, 4756, 4758
- Lichens, 888, 3975-3976
  - Classification according to Structure
    - Foliose (Leaflike), 3975
    - Crustaceous (Shell-Like), 3975
    - Fruticose (Shrublike), 3975
  - Forms
    - Iceland Moss, 3334
    - Lungwort, 4156
- Bryophytes**, 888, 989
  - "Mosslike Plants," 888
  - Absence of True Roots, 989
  - Spore Reproduction, 989, 6777
  - Alternation of Generations, 989
    - Different Phases in Life Cycle, 989. [See *Ferns*, below.]
  - Two Divisions
    - Liverworts, 4061
    - Mosses, 4679-4680
- Pteridophytes**, or Fern Plants, 888, 5869
  - Absence of Flowers and Seeds, 888
  - Include Ferns, Club Mosses, and Horsetails, 5869
  - Development of Roots and Stems, 5869
  - Rootstocks Generally Developed, 5869
  - Flourished in Carboniferous Period, 5869 [See *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Divisions
    - Equisetum, 3255
    - Horsetail, or Scouring Rush, 3255
  - Ferns, 2396-2398
    - Most Highly Developed of Flowerless Plants, 2397
    - Alternation of Generations, 2397
    - Relation of Sex and Sexless Generations, 2397
    - Luxuriant Growth in Carboniferous Periods, 2397
  - Forms
    - Brake or Bracken, 921

- Creeping Rootstock, 921
- Maidenhair, 4223

### Phanerogams

- Flowering Plants**, 5531, 1765
  - Presence of Stamens and Ovules, 5531
  - Development of the Seed and the Embryo, 5531
- Spermatophytes**, or Seed Plants, 888
  - Divisions: Gymnosperms and Angiosperms, 2991, 284
- Gymnosperms**, 888, 2991, 284
  - Naked-Seed Plants, 888, 2991
  - Made up of Trees and Shrubs, 2991
  - General Characteristics
  - Wind Pollination, 2991
  - Forms
    - Cycads, 1795
    - Ginkgo, 2809
    - Cone-Bearing Trees, or Conifers, 1601-1602
      - Pinaceae, Pine Family
        - Cypress: Scalelike Leaves, 1798
        - Bald Cypress, 1799
        - Fir: Short, Flat Needles, 2425
        - Juniper: Fruit in Berry, 3719
        - Pines: Character of Needles, 5620
        - Spruce: Needles and Leaves, 6782
      - Taxaceae, or Yews
        - Modified Fruit Form, 1602
    - Welwitschia, 7708
    - Short, Woody Trunk, 7708
- Angiosperms**, 888, 284, 2991
  - Variation in Size, 284
  - Pollination Commonly Accomplished by Insects, 284
  - Enticing Factors, 284
  - Two Primary Divisions
    - Monocotyledons, 888, 6480, 1720
      - One Seed Leaf, 888, 6480
      - About Forty Plant Families, 888
    - Dicotyledons, 889, 6480, 1720
      - Two Seed Leaves, 1720
      - Over 200 Families, 889
  - [See *Plant Anatomy*, above, for structure of root, stem, leaves, bud, flower, and fruit, and seed.]
  - Pollen, 5713-5714
    - Nature's Pollen-Carriers, 5713-5714, 1757
    - Function, 5713
  - Pollination, 5713
    - Transfer of Pollen to Stigma, 5713
    - Cross-Pollination, 5713, 1757
      - Characters of Two Individuals United, 1757
    - Self-Pollination, 5714, 1757
  - [For fossil forms, see Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]

## Plant Pathology

### Its Scope and Importance

- Definition:** Study of Plant Diseases, 892
- Economic Value**, 892

### Symptoms of Disease

- Abnormal Enlargement of Parts**, 6656, 5587
- Galls, 2668

Defoliation, 790  
 Discoloration, 326-327  
 Dwarfing, or Stunting, 4473  
 Replacement of Parts, (Ergot), 2285  
 Wilting, 790, 1961

#### Causes of Diseases

Fungi and Slime Fungi, 2637, 6642, 1961  
 Susceptibility of Plants, 1961  
 Main Pathways for Entrance  
   Root, Stem, Leaves, Fruit, 1961  
 Methods of Entry, 1961  
 Special Fungal Diseases  
   Anthracnose of Beans, 658  
   Apple Scab, 327, 3466  
   Blight, 790  
   Brown Rot of Peaches, 5428  
   Ergot, 2285  
   Leaf Curl, 5428  
   Mildew, 4473  
   Rusts, 6281-6282  
   Infests Seed Plants and Ferns, 6281  
   Life Cycle of Black Stem Rust of Wheat,  
     6281  
     Control, 6282  
   Apple Rust, 326-327  
   Other Rusts, 6281-6282

Smuts, 6656  
   Corn Smut, 6656  
   Wilt of Cotton, 1718  
   Slime Molds, 6642  
 Bacterial Diseases, 1961  
   Fatal Character of Disease, 1961  
   Diseases  
     Blight of Pears, 568, 790  
     Cabbage Rot, 568  
     Brown Rot of Potatoes, 1961  
     Crown Gall of Roses, 568  
     Diseases found on Corn, Celery, and Apples, 1961  
     Leaf Spot of Barberry, 568  
 Diseases Caused by Insects, 1961  
   Aphides, Plant Lice, 317  
   Grape Phylloxera, 5587  
   Symptoms, 5587  
   Control, 5587  
 Eelworm, 2135  
 Functional Disturbances, 1961  
   Forms of Functional Disturbances  
     Degeneration, 1874  
     Etiolation, 2308  
     Yellows, 5428  
 Diseases Due to Higher Plants  
   Dodder, 1984, 5365  
   Mistletoe, 5365, 4560

### Plant Physiology

#### Intake and Losses of Plants

Diffusion, 1946  
 Osmosis, 5266-5267  
 Osmotic Pressure, 5266  
   [See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE, for structure of cells; see, also, sections on the structure of root and stem under *Plant Anatomy*, above.]  
 Loss of Water  
   Transpiration, 2333, 3915  
 Other Losses  
   Fall of Leaves, 3915. [See *Plant Anatomy*, above.]  
   Loss of Bark, 621

#### Movements of Water and Solutions

Ascending Movement of Sap, 6383  
 Forces Involved  
   Osmosis, 6383  
   Pull, Resulting from Evaporation, 6383  
 Descending Sap, 6383  
   Moves through Soft Part of Wood, 6384  
   Carries Carbohydrates in Solution, 6383

#### Nutrition

Nature of Plant Food  
   Carbohydrates, 1191, 2510, 742, 889  
   Representatives, 742  
     Sugars, 742  
       Lactose, Levulose, Glucose, Dextrose,  
       Maltose, Sucrose, 742, 2845

Starches, 6809  
 Cellulose, 1269, 743  
 Fats, 742, 1191, 2376-2378, 2511  
   Composition, 742, 2376  
   Various Proportions Give Different Compounds  
     Glycerides, 2376  
     Triglycerids, 742  
   Lipoids, 742  
     Allied to Fats, 742  
 Storage Products  
   Oils, 5179  
     Castor Oil, 1233-1234  
     Corn Oil, 1687  
     Cotton Oil, 1716, 1718  
     Hemp Oil, 3140  
     Linseed Oil, 4036  
     Olive Oil, 5193  
     Palm Oil, 5321  
     Peanut Oil, 5432  
     Poppy Oil, 5737  
   Proteins, 742, 5851, 2509  
     Composition, 742, 5851  
     Chemical Nature not Understood, 742  
     Specific Proteins, 742  
     Disintegrate into Amino Acids, 5851  
 Food and Energy  
   Photosynthesis, 743, 3913, 1269, 6809, 6383, 889  
   Raw Materials, 3913, 1193, 6384  
   Carbon Dioxide (Life-Sustaining Element), 3913, 1193, 6383, 1269

- Admission of Carbon Dioxide, 3913, 3915, 1193  
 Stomata, 3912, 3915  
 Water, 6383, 6809, 1269, 7664  
 Obtained by Root, 3913  
 Chemical Reaction, 743, 3913  
 Chlorophyll, 1406, 889  
 Green Coloring Matter of Plants, 1406  
 Absorbs Radiant Energy from Light, 1406  
 Manufactures Organic Material, 1406  
 Energy, 2235, 3913, 743, 889  
 Derived from Sun, 2235, 3913, 743, 6809, 1406  
 Rearranges Carbon, Hydrogen, Oxygen, 3913  
 Process, 6809  
 Decomposition of Substances, 3915  
 Energy Released, 3915, 743  
 Storage of Energy, 743, 889  
 Sugar May Be Converted into Starch, Cellulose, etc., 743  
 Oxygen a By-Product, 3915  
 Liberation of Oxygen in Presence of Sunlight, 5282, 1193  
 Formation of Proteins, 5851  
 Nitrogen Needed, 743  
 Mineral Substances Combine with Carbohydrates, 889  
 Source of Nitrogen, 5034  
 Absorption of Salts of Ammonia of Nitric Acid, 5035  
 Bacterial Activity, 743, 5034  
 Nitrogen-Fixing Organisms, 5034, 743  
 Nodules of Legumes House Bacteria, 743, 5034  
 Other Essential Elements, 2399  
 [See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Other Ways of Obtaining Food  
 Parasitism, 5363-5364. [See *Plant Pathology*, above.]  
 Saprophytes. [See *Fungi* and *Bacteria*, under *Plant Pathology*.]  
 Carnivorous Plants, 1205  
 Symbionts, 3975. [See *Lichens*, in *Plant Morphology*, above.]  
**Excess Food**, 734  
 Places of Storage, 734, 886  
 Storage Forms, 734  
**Assimilation**, 457  
  
**Destructive Metabolism**  
**Respiration**. [See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Fermentation**, 2396  
 Enzymes Built Up by Bacteria, Molds, and Yeasts, 2396  
 Fermentation in Yeast, 2396, 7930  
 Fermentation Replaces Essential Elements in Soil, 2396  
 Conversion of Carbonic Acid, 743  
 Decomposition, 1869  
 Putrefaction, 5890  
  
**Waste Products and Ash**  
 Gaseous Wastes  
 Carbon Dioxide, 3915  
 Oxygen, 3913, 5282  
 Water, 3915  
 Volatile Oils, 5179  
 Obtained by Distillation, 5179  
 Gums and Resins  
 Gums, 2985  
 Examples  
 Cherry-Tree Gum, 2985  
 Gum Arabic, 2986  
 Tragacanth, 7236  
 Resins, 6065-6066  
 Gum Resins, 2986  
 Aloes, 6066  
 Asafetida, 6066, 438  
 Balsams, 587  
 Canada Balsam, 587, 1150  
 Black Spruce, 6783, 2985  
 Chicle, 2985, 1368  
 Gamboge, 2986, 2673  
 Lac, 3829-3830  
 Latex, 6223  
 Myrrh, 6066, 4784  
 Oleoresin, 6066  
 Rosin, 6208  
 Turpentine, 7321-7322  
 Resins Extracted by Solvent, 6065  
 Fossil Resins, 6065  
 Gum Copal, 6065  
 Amber, 6065, 243-244  
 Organic Acids  
 Citric Acid, 1436  
 Oxalic Acid, 5280  
 Tartaric Acid, 7025-7026  
 Tannins, 7015-7016  
 Vegetable Compound, 7015  
 Catechu, 1240  
 Alkaloids, 223  
 Chemical Compounds Found in Plants, 223  
 Occur in Fruits, Seeds, Bark, and Roots, 223  
 Poppy Fruit, 223, 5737  
 Opium, 223, 5226  
 Morphine, 223, 4661  
 Aconite Roots, 223, 22  
 Coca Leaves, 223  
 Cocaine, 223, 1516  
 Cinchona Bark, 223, 1426  
 Quinine, 223, 5923  
 Cinchonine, 223  
 Coffee Berries and Tea Leaves, 223  
 Caffeine, 223, 1068  
 Cacao Beans, 223  
 Theobromine, 223  
 Nux Vomica Seeds, 5126  
 Brucine, 5126  
 Strychnine, 6880, 5126  
 Tobacco Leaves, 223  
 Nicotine, 223, 5022-5023  
 Ash, 439. [See Outline on *Biology*.]



# BUSINESS

## Fundamental Principles

- Trade and Commerce, 1582
- Terms Often Interchanged, 1582
- Trade (Domestic or Local Exchange of Commodities), 1582
- Commerce or Foreign Trade (Exchange of Commodities, or Business Intercourse, between Nations), 1582
- Interstate Commerce (Trade Between the States of the American Union), 3490
- Balance of Trade, 576
- Index of a Country's Prosperity, 576
- Wealth (the name for Material Economic Goods), 7685
- Material Things, 7685
- Services, 7685
- [See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

## The Story of Commerce

- An Early Development of Civilization, 1582
- A Factor in International Relations, 1582
- Commerce Requires Peace, 1582
- Development through the Ages, 1582-1583
- Early Methods of Business, 1582, 631
  - Barter, or Exchange of One Article for Another, 631
  - Distinction Shown between Barter and Sale, 631
  - Barter Still Practiced in Remote Places, 631
- Trade Simplified by Use of Money, 1582
  - [See *Money*, below.]
- Rise of Merchants, 1582
  - Origin of the Name, 1582
- Arabs the First Merchants, 1582
  - Caravans, 342-343, 1582, 5569
- Greatest Merchants of Antiquity, 1582
- Phoenicians as Traders, 5569-5571
  - [See Outline on *History*, in this GUIDE.]
- Carthage and Its Commerce, 1582, 1219
- Founded as a Trading Post, 1219
- Tyre the Mother City, 1219, 5570
- Greatest Commercial Center of its Time, 1219
- A Menace to Roman Glory, 1220
- Destroyed in Third Punic War, 1220, 5883
- Ancient Restrictions on Commerce, 1583
- Early Mediums of Exchange, 4591
  - Articles of Personal Adornment, 4591
  - Grain, Oil, and Cattle, 4591
  - Uncoined Gold and Silver, 4591, 6551
  - Base Metals Used by Weight, 4591
  - Shekel, a Weight and a Coin in Ancient Times, 6551, 4591
  - Talent, a Famous Ancient Coin and Unit of Weight, 7007-7008
- Commercial Effect of the Crusades, 1764
- Merchants' Guilds of Europe, 2979
- Craft Guilds, 2979
- International Trade, 1582-1583
- Principal Ports of the World, 1583

## Money and Its Use

- Definition: A Medium of Exchange, 4582
- Valuable Only When Related to Experience, 631
- Evolution of Money, 4591
  - Early Mediums of Exchange, 4591
  - Early Coins, 4591, 4583
  - [See *Coinage*, below.]
  - Evolution of Paper Money, 4591, 4587
  - Cheap Money and Dear Money, 4582
  - Interest (in Economics), 3475-3476

[See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

**Interest** (in Business), 3474-3475

Definition: Money Paid for the Use of Money, 3474

Principal and Rate of Interest, 3474

Methods of Computing Interest, 3474-3475

The Direct Method, 3474

The 6% Method, 3474

The Thousand-Day Method, 3475

Interest Tables for Bankers, 3475

Legal Interest Rates in the United States, 3476

In Canada, 3476

Usury, 7426-7427, 610

**Gold and Silver Standards**, 4582-4583, 3096

Decline of Silver in Value, Compared with Gold, 4582

Gold Standard Adopted by Most Countries, 4583

Its Meaning, 4583

Silver Standard in China, 4583

Period of Uncertainty as to Standard, 4582

Bryan's Sixteen-to-One Plea, 4582, 986

Problems Created by Changing Values of Gold and Silver, 4583

Results of the Gold Discoveries in California, 4583

Gresham's Law, 2963, 4583

Bimetallism, 740

**Fiat Money**, 2405

**Monetary Conferences, International**, 4581

**Exchange**, 2342

Rate of Exchange, 2342, 739

**Discount**, 1957-1958

Bank Discount, 1957

Trade Discount, 1957-1958

**Credit**, 1738

Instruments of Credit, 1738

Promissory Notes, Bills, and Drafts. [See *Negotiable Paper*, below.]

Mortgages, 4664-4665

Bonds, 833-834

Public Credit, 1738

Purchase on Deferred Payments, 1738

**Profit**, 5830

[See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

**Coinage**, 4583-4586

Manufacture and Regulation of Coins as Money, 4583, 4591

Why Coins Are So Named, 4583

Why Stamped with a Symbol of Authority, 4583

Standard Metals for World's Money, 4583

Gold, 2855-2860

Silver, 6613-6614

Bronze, 4583, 975

Copper, 4583, 1667

Nickel, 4587, 5022

Why These Metals Are Chosen, 4583

Copper Employed for Small Coins Only, 4583, 1667

Used as an Alloy, 1667

Early Forms of Coinage, 4591

Early Greek Coins, 4591

Roman Coins with Portraits of Emperors, 4591

The Roman Penny, 4583

Value of Coins Formerly Regulated by Weight, 4583

Why Coins Are Stamped with Their Value, 4583

Shape of Coins, 4583

Octagonal, Oval, and Holed Coins of China and Japan, 4583

Qualities of Coins, 4583

Marks That Guarantee Quality, 4583

English Gold Sovereign, or Pound Sterling, 4583, 5790, 6723

Fineness, 6723, 2856

First Issued by Henry VII, 6723

Meaning of Sterling, 5790

Unit of British Currency, 6724

Standard Weight, 6724

Equivalents, 6724

American Gold Coin, 2856

Silver Dollar, 4583

Austrian Ducat, 2856

Canadian Coins, 4583

[See *Alloy and Metallic Money*, below.]

Classes of Coin, 4583

Standard Coins, 4583, 4586

Token Coins, 4583, 4586

Free Coinage, 4586

No Charge for Coining Gold in United States and England, 4586

Seigniorage, for Coining Silver, 4586

**Where Money Is Made**, 4524-4526, 4586

Mint, a Government Institution for Coinage of Money, 4523

United States Mints, 4525, 4586

First Mint in Philadelphia, 4525

Director of the Mint, 4525

Former Mints at New Orleans and Carson City, 4586

United States Paper Money Made in Washington, 4586

Bureau of Printing and Engraving, 4584-4586, 7255-7256

Mints in Other Countries, 4524-4525

**How Metal Money Is Made**, 4586

Bullion, Gold and Silver, 4586, 1019

Coins Delivered to Depositor of Bullion, 1019 Alloy, 227-228, 4587

Used to Give Hardness to Coins, 4587

Fineness of Gold and Silver Coins, 228, 4587

Carat, Meaning of, 228, 1189, 2856

Table of Alloys in U. S. Coins, 4587

Assaying, 456-457

Analysis of Metals or Ores, 456

Assay Office (United States Treasury Department), 457

**Safeguards for Money**, 4586

Counterfeiting a Crime against the Sovereign Power, 1720-1721

Penalty for Counterfeiting, 1721

**Monetary System of the United States**

- Laws Defining the System**, 4586, 3096  
 First Monetary System Established with Two Units (1792), 4586  
 Single Gold Dollar Unit Adopted (1873), 4586  
 Standard Silver Dollars Made Legal Tender (1878), 4586  
 Bland-Allison Act, 3096, 226, 786-787  
 Gold Standard Law (1900), 4586  
 Federal Reserve Act (1913), 4586  
**Standard Unit of Value**, 4582, 4586, 4587  
 Gold Dollar, 25.8 grains, Nine-tenths Pure, 4582, 4586, 4587  
 Ninety Per Cent Gold, Ten Per Cent Copper, 2856  
 Gold Dollars no Longer Coined, 2001  
**Legal Tender**, 4586-4587  
**Metallic Money**, 4587  
 Gold Coins, Denominations of, 4587  
 Standard Silver Dollars, 4587, 2001  
 Subsidiary Silver Coins, 4587  
 Minor Coins, Nickel or Bronze, 4587  
 Table of Denominations, Fine-Metal and Alloy Content, and Weight of United States Coins, 4587  
**Paper Money of the United States**, 4587-4589  
 Why Used, 4587  
 Only Partly Secured by Reserves, 4588  
 Credit Money Issued During War of 1812, 6747  
 Specie Payments Resumed (1817), 6747  
 Greenbacks Issued During War of Secession, 6747

- Purpose of Federal Reserve Bank Note Issues, 4588-4589  
 Seven Kinds of Paper Money in Circulation, 4588-4589  
 Size of Paper Money (Bills), 4589  
 Reduced Size Put in Circulation (1929), 4589

**Foreign Monetary Standards**

- Established Systems of Money**, 4589  
**Most Civilized Countries on Gold Basis**, 4583, 4589  
**Table of Monetary Units of Foreign Countries**, with United States and Canadian Equivalents, 4589  
**Approximate Value of Other Foreign Coins** (Table), 4590  
**Standard Coins of Various Countries**  
 [For equivalent values in United States and Canadian money, see pages 4589-4590 in *THE WORLD BOOK*. See, also, Outline on *Civics*, in this *GUIDE*.]

**Miscellany**

- Things Used as Substitutes for Money**, 4590  
 Beaver Skins, 665, 4590  
 Calico, 4590  
 Cowries, 1729  
 Salt, 6340-6344, 4590  
 Tea, 7042-7049, 4590  
 Tobacco, 4590, 7193-7198  
 Wampum, 7589-7590  
**Unusual Terms Sometimes Applied to Money**, 4591  
 [See Outline on *Civics*, in this *GUIDE*.]

**Modern Organization of Business**

- Partnership**, 5404-5405, 6836  
**Corporation**, 1696-1698  
 A Fictitious Person, 1698  
 Powers of Corporation, 1698  
 How Formed, 1698  
 Public Corporations, for Municipal Government, 1698  
 Private Corporations (Four Classes), 1698  
 Joint-Stock Corporations, 1698  
 Organization, 1698, 6836  
 Stock, Capital, 6836, 1698  
 Classification of Stock, 6836-6837  
 Bonds, 833-834  
 [See *Stocks and Bonds*, below.]  
 Joint-Stock Company (British), 3693  
 Use of Word Limited, 3693  
 Corporations in Commerce, 1698  
 Regulation by Government, 1698  
 Sherman Act (1890), 7284, 2111, 6557  
 Clayton Act (1914), 7284, 7782  
 Interstate Commerce Act, 3490-3491  
 Federal Trade Commission, 2390, 7284, 7782  
 Air Commerce Act (1926), 130-131  
 Trusts, 7282-7284, 4599

- Monopoly, 4599  
 [See Outline on *Economics*, in this *GUIDE*.]  
 Public Utility Corporations, 5872  
 Air Lines and Airports, 129-136  
 Electric Light and Power, 2178-2182, 2184-2187  
 Gas Lighting and Heating, 2698-2700  
 Railroads (Steam and Electric), 5973-5984, 2187-2190  
 Street Railways, 2188, 2204  
 Telegraph, 7058-7066  
 Telephone, 7067-7080  
**Banks and Banking**, 604-613  
 Functions of Banks, 604-606  
 Banks as Borrowers, 604  
 Banks as Lenders, 605-606  
 Bank Reserves, 605, 609  
 The Depositor's Checking Account, 1323-1325  
 Types of Banks, 607-613  
 National Banks, 607-608  
 State Banks, 613  
 Savings Banks, 610, 613  
 Postal Savings Banks, 613  
 School Savings Banks, 613

Labor Banks, 610, 3825  
 Warren F. Stone, 610  
 Branch Banks, 610  
 Bank of England, 601-602  
 Banking in Canada, 613  
 Famous Modern Bankers  
   Rothschild Family, 6214  
   J. P. Morgan & Company, 4650-4651  
 Clearing House System, 1461-1462  
 Trust Companies, 606  
 Coöperative Banking, 1664  
 Rural Credits, 6251-6252  
 Federal Reserve System, 608-609, 4586, 4589  
   Established by Federal Reserve Act, 608, 4586  
   Federal Reserve District (Map), 609  
   McFadden-Pepper Bill, 610  
 Negotiable Paper, 4870-4871  
   Check, or Cheque, 1323-1325, 4870  
   Draft, 2018-2019  
   Domestic Bill of Exchange, 739  
   Note, or Promissory Note, 5092, 5095  
   Bill of Exchange, 738-739  
   Bill of Lading, 739  
   Letter of Credit, 1738-1739  
   Travelers' Checks, 1739  
   Trade Acceptance, 7233-7234  
   I. O. U., 3503  
   Commercial Paper, 608, 4870  
 Origin of Banking, 606  
   Justinian's Code and Laws of Banking, 606, 3723  
 Banking in the United States, 606-610  
   Bank of the United States, 602, 3600-3602  
   The First Charter (1791), 602  
   Alexander Hamilton, 3025-3026

Thomas Jefferson, 3646-3651  
 James Madison, 4199-4203  
 The Second Charter, 602, 7396-7397  
 Andrew Jackson's Opposition, 602, 3600  
 Wildcat Banks, 7761, 607  
 Specie Payments, Resumption of, 6747  
 Stocks and Bonds, 6836-6837, 1696, 1698, 833-834  
 Stock Exchange, 6837-6838  
   Functions of Exchanges, 6838  
   The Curb Market, 6838  
 Stock Brokers, 973  
 Bears and Bulls, 664  
   Classes of Stock Brokers and Operators, 664  
 Stock Ticker, 6840-6842, 7059-7060  
   Printing Telegraph, 7059  
   Transmitting Quotations, 7059-7060  
 Bucketshop, 995  
 Blue-Sky Laws, 806  
 Bonds, 833-834  
   Kinds of Bonds, 833  
   Bonds as Investments, 834  
 Board of Trade, 808-810  
   Organization for Centralized Dealing in Grains, etc., 808  
 Influences Which Control Prices throughout the World, 809  
 Chicago and Liverpool the Greatest Markets, 809  
 Transaction of Business on the Board, 810  
 Chamber of Commerce, 1298  
 Chamber of Commerce of the United States, 1298-1299  
 No Official Relation to Government, 1298

### The Nation's Business

United States Government, 7387-7389. [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Revenue, Internal, 3482-3483  
   Customs Duties, 1793, 7021-7024  
 Budget, 1000-1001  
 Treasury Department, 7255-7256  
 Post Office Department, 5771-5777  
   Parcel Post, 5366-5367  
   Table of Rates, 5367  
   Postal Savings Banks, 613  
   Postage and Postage Stamps, 5768-5769  
   Postal Union, International, 5771  
   Air-Mail Service, 129-131  
   Dead-Letter Office, 1845  
   Money Orders, Canadian and United States, 4592  
 Department of Commerce, 1583  
   [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Federal Trade Commission, 2390  
   Bureau of Corporations, 1583  
 Interstate Commerce Commission, 3490-3491  
   Interstate Commerce Act, 3490  
   [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]

Capital and Labor. [See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Capital, 1184-1185  
 Corporation, 1696, 1698  
 Factory and Factory System, 2359-2360  
 Industry, 3445-3446  
 Interest, 3475-3476  
 Mill, John Stuart, 4486  
 Profit, 5830  
 Rent, 6057  
 Single Tax, 6621-6622  
 Smith, Adam, 6647-6648  
 Stock, Capital, 6836-6837  
 Trust, 7282-7283  
 Wages, 7574-7575  
 Labor, Department of, 3821  
 Labor Day, 3822  
 Labor, Division of, 3822  
 Labor Legislation, 3822-3824  
 Labor Organizations, English-Speaking, 3825-3826  
   American Federation of Labor, 3825  
   International Labor Organization, 3825  
   International Typographical Union, 3825

International Workingmen's Association, 3483, 3825  
 Knights of Labor, 3825  
 Trade-Unions, 3825  
 Blacklist, 783  
 Boycott, 903  
 Child Labor, 1375-1376  
 Collective Bargaining, 1536  
 Communism, 1587  
   Oneida Community, 5200  
 Convict Labor, 1647  
 Debs, Eugene V., 1854  
 Eight-Hour Day, 2156-2157  
 Five-Day Week, 2157  
 Gompers, Samuel, 2868  
 Henderson, Arthur, 3484, 3140  
 Industrial Workers of the World, 3445  
 Injunction, 6879, 3453  
 International, The, 3483-3484  
 Lockout, 6879  
 MacDonald, James Ramsay, 3484, 4175-4176  
 Marx, Karl, 3483, 4309  
 Minimum Wage, 4501-4502  
 Mitchell, John, 4561  
 Open Shop, 5213  
 Powderly, Terence V., 5791  
 Picketing, 6879  
 Sabotage, 6292  
 Socialism, 6668-6669  
 Strike, 6879  
   Sympathetic Strike, 6879  
 Syndicalism, 6985  
 Thomas, J. H., 3484  
**International Business Policy**  
   Protection as a National Policy, 5848, 5850  
     Henry Clay and the Home Market Theory, 5848, 1459  
     The Wages Theory, 5850  
     National Policy of Canada, 1143  
 Free Trade, 2604  
   Customs Duties for Revenue Only, 2604  
   Theory of Free Trade, 2604  
   Free Ports, 2603  
 Tariff, 7021-7024  
   Levied for Three Purposes, 7021  
   Tariff Laws in the United States, 7022-7023  
     First Tariff Act, 7022  
     The Tariff of Abominations (1828), 7022  
     Walker Act, 7022  
     Morrill Act, 7022  
     Mills Act, 7023  
     McKinley Tariff Act, 4189, 7023  
     Wilson Act, 7023  
     Dingley Act, 4189, 7023  
     Payne-Aldrich Act, 7023  
     Simmons-Underwood Act, 7023  
     Fordney-McCumber Act, 7023  
     Hawley-Smoot Act, 7023  
   The Tariff and the Farmer, 7023-7024  
 Reciprocity, 6022, 7021  
**Taxation, 7032-7034**

Levies for Government Purposes, 7032  
 Kinds of Taxes, 7032-7033  
   Poll Tax, 7032, 5714  
   Real Estate Tax, 7032  
   Personal Property Tax, 7032, 5044  
   Income Tax, 7032, 3374-3375  
   Inheritance Tax, 7032  
   Sales Tax, 6331-6332  
 Mathematics of Taxes, 7033  
 Income Tax in the United States, 3374-3375  
**Trading with the Enemy, 783**  
**Transportation, 7246-7251**  
   Aircraft, 112-151  
   Automobile, 534-546  
   Railroad, 5973-5984  
   Ship, 6562-6570  
   Merchant Marine, 4404-4406  
   Common Carrier, 1585-1586  
 [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Commercial Law, the Legal Rules of Modern Business, 1584**  
 [See Outline on *Law*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Commercial Agency, 1584**

#### Business Promotion

**Advertising, 60-66**  
 Objects and Scope, 60  
 Avenues of Approach, 60-62  
   Magazines and Newspapers, 60-61  
   Outdoor Advertising, 61  
   Direct-Mail Advertising, 62  
   Moving Pictures, 62  
   Radio, 62, 5940-5941  
 The Science of Advertising, 62-63  
 Advertising Agencies, 64  
 Advertising Associations, 64, 66  
 Vocational Courses, 66  
 Economic Status of Advertising, 66  
 Advertisements of a Former Day, 63  
**Letter Writing, 3947**  
   Suggestions for Business Letters, 3947  
   Dictaphone, 1941  
   Mimeograph, 4496  
   Stenotype, 6826-6827  
   Typewriter, 7330-7340  
**Postal Communication, 5768-5777**  
   Air Mail, 129-131, 5776  
   Free Delivery, 5774  
   Parcel Post and Rates, 5366-5367  
   Postage and Postage Stamps, 5768-5770  
   Railway Post Office, 5776  
   Rates of Postage, 5768-5769  
   Special Delivery, 5774  
**Telegraph, 7059-7066**  
   Cable, Submarine, 1060-1063  
   Telautograph, 7057  
**Telephone, 7067-7080**  
   Extent of Telephone Service, 7080  
 [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Business Records

**Accounting, 17**

Auditing, 17  
 Bookkeeping, 838-850  
   Double Entry, 838-846  
   Single Entry, 846-848  
 Business Statements, 842-843  
 Commercial Arithmetic, 383-386

Corporation Records, 845-846, 6836  
 Cost Accounting, 18  
   Overhead Expense, 18  
 Farm Accounting, 18, 848  
 Inventory, 842  
 Partnership Records, 845

### Manufacturing Business

[See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Wholesale Business

Automobile, 534-537  
 Book Publishing, 852  
 Books and Shoes, 861-862  
 Clothing  
   Dress, 2033-2036  
   Cloth, 1489-1491  
 Cold Storage, 1532-1535  
   Refrigeration, 6041-6044  
 Express Service, 2347-2348  
 Fur Trade, 2638-2645  
   Centers of the Industry, 2639  
   Imitations and Trade Names of Furs, 2645  
   Preparation of Furs, 2640-2645  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 3275, 2639, 1140  
   A Strong Factor in Canadian Development, 3275  
   The Rival North-West Company, 3275  
 Iron and Steel Trade, 3534-3551, 7411-7412  
   The Age of Iron, 3535  
   Steel Manufacture, 3539-3551  
   United States Steel Corporation, 7411-7412  
     J. Pierpont Morgan, 4650  
     Andrew Carnegie, 1202  
     Elbert H. Gary, 2697  
     Charles M. Schwab, 6432  
     Properties and Production, 7411  
     Stockholders, 7412  
     Not a Trust or Monopoly (Supreme Court Decision, 1920), 7412  
 Meat and Meat Packing, 4360-4368  
   Development of the Business, 4361  
   [See, Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Newspaper Publishing, 4953-4958  
 Oil (Petroleum), 5520-5529  
   Pennsylvania's First Oil Well, 5520  
   Growth of the Business, 5521  
   Distribution of Deposits, 5522  
     Known Oil Regions (Map), 5521, 5522  
   Standard Oil Company, 6798-6799  
     John D. Rockefeller, 6153  
     John D. Rockefeller, Jr., 6153-6154  
     William Rockefeller, 6154  
 Public Utilities, 5872  
   Railroad, 5973-5984  
   Telegraph, 7058-7066  
   Telephone, 7067-7080  
   [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Electric Light, 2178-2182  
   Waterworks, 7676-7680  
 Shipping (Merchant Marine), 4404-4406

United States Shipping Board, 4405  
 Merchant Marine Act (1920), 4405  
 The Jones-White Bill (1928), 4405  
 Traction (Street, Interurban, and Elevated Railways), 2188-2204  
   Electric Railway, 2187-2190  
   City Trolley Lines, 2188  
   Elevated Railways, 2204

#### Retail Business

Auction, 498  
 Automobile Business, 534-536  
 Book-Selling, 852  
 Chain Stores, 1295  
 Department Stores, 1910-1911  
 Hotel Business, 3257-3258, 1358  
   Commercial Hotels, 3258  
   The World's Largest Hotel, 1358, 3258  
 Mail-Order Houses, 62, 1295

#### Real-Estate Business

Real Property, 6014  
 Personal Property (Chattels), 6014, 5504  
 Abstract of Title, 12  
 Air Rights, 152-154  
 Deed, 1869-1870  
   Quitclaim Deed, 1869  
   Warranty Deed, 1869  
 Easement, 2087  
 Eminent Domain, 2227  
   Condemnation Proceedings, 2227  
 Fief, 2408  
   Fee Simple, 2408  
   Fee Tail, 2408  
 Franchise, 2589  
   Permit to Public-Service Companies, 2589  
 Husband and Wife, 3297-3298  
   Property Rights, 3297  
   Husband's Liability, 3297  
   Wife's Dower Right, 3297-3298  
 Joint-Tenancy, 3693  
 Landlord and Tenant, 7092-7093  
 Lease, 3906, 7092  
   Rent, 3906, 7093  
   Repairs, 7092  
 License, 3974  
 Lien, 3977  
 Mortgage, 4664-4665  
   Chattel Mortgages, 4665  
 Tenant, 7092-7093  
 Tenement, 7093  
 Title, 7187

Torrens System, 7220  
 Zoning System (for Cities), 1440  
 Building and Loan Associations, 1011-1012

### Insurance

Business Organization, 3471  
 Joint-Stock Companies, 3471  
 Mutual Companies, 3471  
 Brokers, 973  
 Underwriters, 3472, 4068  
 Kinds of Insurance, 3470, 3472  
 Life, 3470, 3471-3472  
 Fire, 3470, 3471  
 Marine, 3470, 3471  
 Accident, 3470  
 Automobile, 3472  
 Burglary, 3472, 1026  
 Explosion, 3472  
 Old Age, 3472, 5189-5190  
 Personal Accident and Health, 3472  
 Plate Glass, 3472  
 Public Liability, 3472  
 Rent and Rental Values, 3472  
 Riot and Civil Commotion, 3472  
 Sickness, 3470, 3472

Sprinkler Leakage, 3472  
 Steam Boiler, 3472  
 Tornado, 3472  
 Unemployment, 3470  
 Use and Occupancy, 3472  
 Workmen's Compensation, 3472, 2230, 7847  
 Fidelity Bonds, 3472  
 Surety Bonds, 3472  
 Policy, 3471, 3472  
 Premium, 3471  
 Rate, 3471, 3472  
 Life Insurance, 3471-3472  
 Expectation, 2344, 3472  
 Life, Length of, 3978-3979  
 Duration of Human Life, 3979-3980  
 Table of Mortality, 3980, 3472  
 Fire Insurance, 3471  
 Arson, 421-422  
 Fire Losses, 2426-2428  
 Fire Department, 2429-2433  
 Marine Insurance, 3471  
 Lloyd's (London), 4067-4068  
 Origin of A1, 1  
 Insurance in Arithmetic  
 Problems and Solutions, 3472-3473

## Bankruptcy

Meaning of Bankrupt, 603  
 Origin of the Term, 603  
 Distinct from Insolvency, 603  
 Voluntary and Involuntary Bankruptcy, 603  
 United States and State Laws, 603  
 Federal Act of 1898, 603  
 Referee in Bankruptcy, 603

Receiver, 6022  
 Conditions leading to, 6022  
 Five Acts of Bankruptcy, 603  
 The Settlement, 603  
 Discharge of the Bankrupt, 603  
 Political Disqualification in England, 603  
 Bankruptcy in Canada, 603

## Business Miscellany

Agent, 87  
 Bill of Health, 739  
 Bill of Lading, 739  
 Bill of Sale, 740  
 Form of Bill of Sale, 740  
 Bonded Warehouse, 835  
 Broker, 973  
 Brokerage, or Commission, 973  
 Commission Merchant, 973  
 Contract, 1646  
 Requirements of Legal Contract, 1646  
 Common Carrier, 1585-1586  
 Copyright, 1670-1671  
 Garnishment, 2695  
 Good Will, 2871  
 Guaranty, 2973  
 Guardian, 2974

Injunction, 3453-3454  
 Patent, 5412-5414  
 Profit-Sharing, 5830  
 Receipt, 6021  
 Will, 7765-7766  
 Administrator, 49  
 Estate, 2299  
 Executor, 2343  
 Form of Will, 7766  
 Heir, 3127  
 Intestacy, 3491  
 Probate, 5829  
 Testator, 7766  
 Testatrix, 7766  
 Trustee, 7284  
 Business Men and Financiers  
 [See list, under *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]



# CHEMISTRY

## Its Scope and History

- What Chemistry Is, 1328
- Its Relation to Human Welfare, 1336
- Its Development
  - Alchemy, the Forerunner, 1328
  - Science of the Ancients, 192
  - Search for Transmutation of Gold, 192, 2855
  - Paracelsus, 192, 1328
- Cagliostro, Versatile Fraud, 193
- The True Science
  - Development through the Centuries, 1328
  - Discoveries of the Nineteenth Century
    - Electrical Basis of Matter, 1328, 2176
    - Roentgen (X-) Rays, 1328, 6159-6162
    - Radioactivity, 1328, 5934
    - Promise of the Future, 1329

## Structure and Behavior of Matter

- Definition of Matter, 4345
  - Basis of Material Universe, 1329
- Properties of Matter, 4346
  - [See Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]
- States of Matter
  - Solid, 6680
  - Liquid, 4041, 4042, 2496
  - Gaseous, 2698-2699
  - Laws of Gases. [See Outline on *Physics*.]
- Divisions of Matter
  - Elements, 1329, 1331
  - Compounds, 1329, 1335
- Composition of Elements
  - Atoms, 1329, 492, 4346
  - Dalton's Atomic Theory, 1329, 492
  - Modification of His Theory
    - Divisibility of Atoms, 1329, 492
    - Constituent Electrical Units, 4346, 1330
    - Electron, Negative, 1330, 2176
    - Proton, Positive, 1330, 492, 2176
    - Theory of Atomic Structure, 1330, 2176
  - Atoms and Molecules, 1330, 492, 4574

## The Elements

- Ninety-Two Known to Exist, 1331
  - Table of Ninety Already Discovered, 1332
- Theory of Stable Character
  - Disproved by Radioactivity, 1331, 5934
- Theory of Stable Weight, 493
  - Disproved by Isotopes, 1331
  - Correlation of Terms, 1331
- Periodic Law, 1331-1332
  - Introduced by Mendelyeev, 1331
  - Atomic Number Basis of the Law, 1332
- Transmutation of Elements
  - Nature's Method, 1334, 5969
  - Explanation of Radioactivity, 5934
    - Alpha, Beta, Gamma Rays, 1334, 5934
  - Artificial Transmutation, 1334
- Quantum Theory, 1334, 5902-5903
- Affirmation by Millikan, 1335
- Non-Metallic Elements
  - Preparation, Properties, and Uses
    - Hydrogen, 3307
    - Halogen Group
      - Chlorine, 1406, 1332
      - Bromine, 974, 1332
      - Iodine, 3501-3502, 1332
      - Fluorine, 2497, 1332
    - Nitrogen Group
      - Nitrogen, 5034-5035, 1334
      - Phosphorus, 5575, 1334
      - Arsenic, 421, 1332
    - Oxygen Group
      - Oxygen, 5281-5282, 1334



Sulphur, 6916, 1334  
 Selenium, 1334  
 Tellurium, 1334  
 Carbon Group  
 Carbon, 1192, 1332  
 Boron, 1332  
 Silicon, 6603, 1334  
 Helium Group  
 Helium, 3131-3134, 1332  
 Neon, 4876, 1334  
 Argon, 379, 1332  
 Krypton, 1332  
 Xenon, 1334  
 Radon, 1334

**Metallic Elements**

**Preparation, Properties, and Uses**

Alkali Group  
 Potassium, 5778, 1334  
 Sodium, 6675-6676, 1334  
 Lithium, 4054, 1334  
 Rubidium, 1334  
 Caesium, 1332

Alkaline Earths  
 Calcium, 1072, 1332  
 Strontium, 6880, 1334  
 Barium, 619-620, 1332  
 Radium, 5969-5971, 1334

Magnesium Group  
 Glucinum or Beryllium, 1332  
 Magnesium, 4216, 1334  
 Zinc, 7973-7974, 1334  
 Cadmium, 1332

Lead and Silver Group  
 Lead, 3902, 1332  
 Thallium, 7134, 1334

(Silver Group)  
 Copper, 1666-1669, 1332  
 Silver, 6613-6614, 1334  
 Mercury, 4407, 1334

Cerium Group (Rare Earths)  
 Yttrium, 1334  
 Cerium, 1332  
 Lanthanum, 1332  
 Praseodymium, 1334  
 Neodymium, 1334  
 Erbium, 1332  
 Ytterbium, 1334  
 Terbium, 1334  
 Aluminum, 238-239, 1332

Indium, 1332  
 Gallium, 2667, 1332  
 (Other Metals of Rare Earths)  
 Scandium, 1334  
 Samarium, 1334  
 Gadolinium, 1332  
 Germanium, 1332  
 Europium, 1332  
 Thulium, 1334  
 Illinium, 1332  
 Dysprosium, 1332  
 Holmium, 1332  
 Lutecium, 1334

Iron Group  
 Manganese, 4255, 1334  
 Iron, 3534-3551, 1332  
 Cobalt, 1514, 1332  
 Nickel, 5022, 1334

(Chromium Group)  
 Chromium, 1417-1418, 1332  
 Molybdenum, 4577-4578, 1334  
 Tungsten, 7292-7293, 1334  
 Uranium, 7420, 1334

Tin Group  
 Tin, 7181  
 Titanium, 7184  
 Zirconium, 7976  
 Thorium, 7157  
 Actinium, 1332  
 Protoactinium, 1334  
 Hafnium, 1332

(Vanadium Group)  
 Vanadium, 7449  
 Antimony, 311  
 Bismuth, 775  
 Tantalum, 1334  
 Columbium, 1571  
 Polonium, 1334

(Platinum Group)  
 Gold, 2855-2860  
 Platinum, 5651-5652  
 Iridium, 3531  
 Osmium, 5266

(Ruthenium Group)  
 Ruthenium, 1334  
 Rhodium, 1334  
 Palladium, 5310

Demonstrated Spectroscopically  
 Masurium, 1334  
 Rhenium, 1334

## Chemical Compounds

**Properties of Compounds, 1335**  
 Mixtures and Compounds, 1335  
 Air, a Mixture, 108-109  
 Water, a Compound, 4574, 7664

**Chemical Affinity of Atoms, 1335, 69**  
 Reactions, 6005

**Combining Power of Atoms, 1335**  
 Combinations by Electronic Activity, 1335  
 Valence Electrons, 1335  
 Arrangement in Spheres, 1335

**Chemical Symbols, 1335-1336, 6984**  
 Formula, 1336, 6005

### Acids, Bases, and Salts

**Nature and Properties of Acids, 21**  
 Acid Indicator, 21, 4056-4057  
 All Acids Contain Hydrogen, 3307, 21  
 Specific Acids Described  
 Acetic, 19  
 Amino, 5851, 4414

By-Product of Protein Digestion, 2510  
 Aqua Regia, 333, 3308, 5034  
 Boracic (Boric), 862, 864  
 Carbolic, or Phenol, 1191-1192, 1964  
 Carbon Dioxide, 1193  
 Citric, 1436  
 Formic, 2542  
 Hydrochloric, or Muriatic, 3307  
 Hydrofluoric, 3307  
 Lactic, 3835-3836  
 Nitric, 5034, 5035  
 Oxalic, 5280  
 Phosphoric, 5575  
 Picric, 5603  
 Prussic, or Hydrocyanic, 5861  
 Salicylic, 6332  
 Sarcocollactic, 3836  
 Stearic, 6821  
 Sulphuric (Oil of Vitriol), 6917, 2168  
 Tannic, 7015-7016  
 Tartaric, 7025-7026  
 Uric, 7421  
**Nature and Properties of Bases, 633**  
 Chemical Opposites of Acids, 633  
 Exceptions to Insolubility in Water  
 Caustic Soda, 1260  
 Caustic Potash, 1260  
 Ammonium Hydroxide, 633  
**Substances with Basic Properties**  
 Alkalies, 222-223  
 Alkaloids, 223  
 Plant Alkaloids  
 Atropine, 223  
 Brucine, 5126  
 Caffeine, or Theine, 1068  
 Cinchonine, 223  
 Cocaine, 1516  
 Morphine, 4661  
 Nicotine, 5022-5023  
 Quinine, 5923  
 Strychnine, 6880, 5126  
 Theobromine, 223  
 Animal Alkaloid  
 Ptomaine, 5871  
 Aniline, 288-289  
 Ammonia, 262  
 Lime, 4006-4007  
 Magnesia, 4216  
 Potassium Hydroxide, 5778, 1260  
 Sodium Hydroxide, 6675, 1260  
**Nature and Properties of Salts, 6340**  
**List of Salts**  
 Barium Salts, 620  
 Benzoate of Soda, 711  
 Borax, or Sodium Tetraborate, 864  
 Carbonates, 1192  
 Calcium Carbonate, 1072  
 Sodium Carbonate, 6675  
 Sodium Bicarbonate, 6675  
 Carbonate of Copper, 1192  
 Carbonate of Iron, 1192  
 Carbonate of Potassium, 5777-5778  
 Cream of Tartar, 1737

Halogens, 3023  
 Bromides, 973  
 Chlorides, 1406  
 Calomel, 1099-1100  
 Chloride of Sodium (Salt), 6340-6344, 6676  
 Corrosive Sublimate, 1699-1700, 1964  
 Sal Ammoniac, 6330-6331  
 Silver Chloride, 6613-6614  
 Fluorides, 2497  
 Iodides, 3502  
 Nitrates, 5033-5034  
 Lunar Caustic (Silver), 6613, 1260, 4154, 5033  
 Saltpeter (Potassium), 5778, 5033, 6346  
 Chile Saltpeter (Sodium), 6676, 6346, 5033  
 Oxalates, 5280  
 Phosphates, 5574  
 Sulphates, 6916, 6917  
 Alum, 238  
 Blue Vitriol, or Copper Sulphate, 806, 6916, 1669  
 Copperas, or Green Vitriol, 1669  
 Epsom Salt, 2282-2283, 4216, 6347  
 Glauber's Salt, 2842, 6347, 6676  
 Rochelle Salt, 6347

#### Hydrocarbons

**Composition and Nature, 3306-3307**  
 Acetylene, 19-20  
 Benzene, 710-711  
 Ethylene, 2308  
 Methane, 3306  
 Fire Damp, 2429  
 Chloroform, 1406  
 Iodoform, 3502  
**Petroleum, 5520-5529**  
**Important Products**  
 Gasoline, 5526, 2703  
 Naphtha, 5526, 4805  
 Benzine, 5526, 711  
 Kerosene, 5529, 3768  
 Paraffin, 5357  
 Vaseline, 7465

#### Other Important Compounds

**Arsenic Compounds, 421**  
**Carbides, 1190**  
 Carbide of Calcium, 1073  
 Carbon Bisulphide, 1192-1193  
 Carbide of Iron, 1190  
**Gases, 2698-2700**  
 Carbonic-Acid Gas, 1193  
 Carbon Monoxide, 1194  
 Coal Gas, 2700  
 Cyanogen, 1795  
 Phosgene, 5574  
 Poison Gases, 5683  
 Sulphureted Hydrogen, 6917  
 Water Gas, 2700  
**Gold Compounds, 2858**  
**Hydrogen Peroxide, 3308**

**Magnesia Alba**, 4216  
**Oxides**, 4407  
 Nitrogen Oxides, 5035  
 Zirconia, 7976  
**Potassium Compounds**, 5778  
 Potassium Bichromate, 1418  
 Potassium Permanganate, 4255, 1964  
**Sodium Compounds**, 6676

**Subnitrate**, 775  
**Vanadium Compounds**, 7449  
**Water**, 7664-7665  
 Water Vapor, 7463-7464  
 Steam, 6817-6819  
 Ice, 3325-3329  
**Zinc Compounds**, 7974  
 Uses, 7974

## Chemical Terminology

**Affinity**, 69  
 [See *Chemical Affinity of Atoms*, above.]  
**Allotropy**, 227  
 Occurrence of Three Forms of Carbon  
 Charcoal, 227, 1308-1309  
 Graphite, 227, 2911-2912  
 Diamond, 227, 1920-1933  
 Ozone, Allotropic Form of Oxygen, 227, 5287  
 Sulphur, 227, 6916  
 Phosphorus, 227, 5575  
**Analysis**, 272  
**Attraction**, 497  
**Catalysis**, 1238-1239  
 Synthetic Processes, 1239  
**Colloid**, 1539  
 Protoplasm, Complex System of Colloids, 1539, 749  
**Crystallization**, 1765-1767  
 Thirty-Two Crystal Classes, 1766  
 Isometric, Tetragonal, Hexagonal, Orthorhombic, Triclinic, and Monoclinic Systems, 1766-1767

**Diffusion**, 1945-1946  
**Electrolyte**, 2193, 2174  
**Emulsion**, 2231  
**Energy**, 2235-2236  
 [See Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Essence**, 2299  
**Filter**, 2419  
**Flame**, 2462-2463  
 Combustion, 2462  
**Fulmination**, 2634  
 Explosives, 2345-2347  
**Hydrates**, 3303  
**Ion**, 3502, 2168  
 Cation (Hydrogen and Metallic Ions), 3502  
 Anions (Hydroxyl and Non-Metallic Ions), 3502  
**Phosphorescence**, 5574  
 Fluorescence (Light of Short Duration), 5574  
**Radical**, 5934, 3303  
**Solution**, 6685  
 Solute (Dissolved Substance), 6685  
 Solvent (Fluid in Which Solute Is Dissolved), 6685

## Chemical Processes

**Combustion**, 1580  
 Union of Oxygen with Some Substance, 1580  
 Generally Accompanied by Flame, 1580  
 Fire, 2426-2429  
 Heat and Light Result, 2426  
 Extinguished by Carbonic-Acid Gas, 2432  
 Spontaneous Combustion, 1580  
 Smoke, 6654  
 Soot, 6689  
 Bister, Soot Nearest Flame, 6689  
 Lampblack, Farther up Chimney, 3848  
**Decomposition**, 1869

**Putrefaction**, 5890  
 Decomposition of Dead Tissues, 5890  
**Distillation**, 1967-1968  
 Fractional Distillation, 1967  
 Destructive Distillation, 1968  
**Fermentation**, 2396  
 [See *Plant Physiology*, in Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Oxidation**, 5281  
 Rust, 6281  
 Oxides  
 Alumina, 238  
 Nitrous Oxide, or Laughing Gas, 5035

## Branches of Chemistry

**Organic Chemistry**  
 Chemistry of Organic Compounds, 1336, 1192  
**Inorganic Chemistry**  
 Compounds Lacking Carbon, 1336  
**Biochemistry**, or Physiological Chemistry, 741-743  
 [See, also, *Plant Physiology*, in Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Agricultural Chemistry**, 1336  
 [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]

**Electrochemistry**, 2190-2191  
 [See *Industrial Chemistry*, below.]  
**Industrial Chemistry**, 1336  
 Brewing, Chemistry of, 944  
 Electrolysis, 2192-2193  
 Essential Process in Electroplating, 2195  
 Use in Metallurgy, 4415  
 Electrotyping, 2196-2198  
 Etching, 2303  
 Lithography, 4054-4055  
 Photo-Engraving, 5576-5579

Photography, 5579-5584  
 Refrigeration, 6041-6044  
 Metallurgy, 4414-4415  
   Processes, 4415  
     Amalgamation, 4415  
       Amalgam Formed by Combining Mer-  
       cury with Gold or Silver, 240, 4407  
       Electrolysis, 4415, 2192-2193  
   Related Processes  
     Annealing, 293  
     Assaying, 456-457  
 Materials  
   Flux, 2498  
   Slag, a By-Product, 6636  
 Metals, 4415-4416  
   Properties  
     Ductility, 2050  
     Malleability, 4240  
   Alloys, 4416, 227  
     Aluminum Alloys, 239  
       Aluminum Bronze, 975, 239  
       Duralumin, 2056, 239  
       Magnalium, 239  
     Amalgam, 240  
       Magnesium Amalgam, 4216  
     Babbitt Metal, 552  
     Brass, 924-925, 1667  
     Bronze, 974-975  
       Bell Metals, 703, 1667  
       Gun Metal, 4416, 1667  
       Speculum Metal, 975  
       Phosphor Bronze, 975  
       Copper Cent, 975, 1667  
     Chromium Alloys, 1418  
     Gold Alloys, 2858  
     Manganese Alloys, 4255  
     Nickel Alloys, 5022  
       German Silver, 2768  
     Palladium Alloys, 5319  
     Permalloy, 5489  
     Pewter, 5530  
     Solders, 6679  
     Steel, 3539-3551  
       Chromium Steel, 1418  
       Harveyized Steel, 4851  
       Manganese Steel, 4255  
       Molybdenum, 228, 4578  
       Nickel Steel, 4851, 5022  
       Tungsten Steel, 228, 7292  
       Uranium Steel, 7420  
       Vanadium Steel, 7449  
     Stellite, 228  
**Mineralogy and Minerals**, 4498-4500  
   Character of Minerals, 4498  
     Distinguished from Plants and Animals,  
     4498  
   Classes of Minerals  
     Metallic, Non-Metallic, Submetallic, 4499  
   Origin and Formation, 4499  
   Characteristics, 4499-4500  
   Branches of Mineralogy  
     Crystallography, 4500, 1765-1767  
     Physical and Chemical Mineralogy, 4500

**Minerals Not Otherwise Classified**  
 Alabaster, 165  
 Asbestos, 438  
 Ash, Ashes, 439-440  
 Asphalt, 453-454  
 Bauxite, 653-654  
 Bitumen, 777-778  
 Calcite, 1072  
 Carborundum, 1194  
 Chalk, 1297  
 Chromite, 1417  
 Cinnabar, 1431  
 Coal, 1497-1507  
 Copper Glance, 1669  
 Corundum, 1701  
 Cryolite, 1765  
 Dolomite, 2001  
 Emery, 2222  
 Feldspar, 2391-2392  
 Flint, 2470  
 Fluor Spar, 2497  
 Galena, or Lead Glance, 2662  
 Graphite, 2911-2912  
 Gypsum, 2991-2992  
 Hematite, 3136, 3535  
 Hornblende, 3241  
 Iceland Spar, 3334  
 Jaderite, 3608  
 Jasper, 3640  
 Kaolin, 3746  
 Kernite, 864  
 Kyanite, or Cyanite, 3820  
 Labradorite, 3828-3829, 2392  
 Lapis-Lazuli, 3874  
 Limonite, 3535  
 Magnetite, 4218, 3535  
 Malachite, 4236  
 Meerschaum, or Sepiolite, 4380  
 Mica, 4451, 4453  
 Molybdenite, 4578  
 Moonstone, 2392  
 Nephrite, 3608  
 Ocher, or Ochre, 5155  
 Pitchblende, 5630  
 Pyrite, 5896  
 Pyroxene, 5898  
 Quartz, 5906-5907  
 Rutile, 6284  
 Salt, or Halite, 6340  
 Siderite, 3535  
 Silica, 6603  
 Talc, 7007  
 Tourmaline, 7225  
 Tripoli, 7271  
 Umber, 7349  
**Ornamental Minerals and Stones**  
 [See *Gems and Gem Materials*, in *Art.*]  
**Organic in Origin**  
 Amber, 243-244  
 Coral, 1671-1673  
 Ivory, 3590-3592  
 Odontolite, 7322  
 Pearl, 5433-5435

## Contributions of Chemistry to Human Welfare

**Commercial Products**

Alcohol, 194  
 Bakelite, 573, 1338  
 Baking Powder, 574  
 Blacking, 782  
 Bluing, 806  
 Boneblack, or Animal Charcoal, 836  
 Carbice, or Dry Ice, 1190-1191  
 Cellulose Products  
   Bagasse, for Artificial Lumber, 1339  
   Celanese, 1338  
   Cellophane, 1339  
   Celluloid, 1269  
   Fabrikoid, 1339, 3912  
   Guncotton, 2986-2987  
   Lacquers, 1339  
   Paper, 5343-5352  
   Rayon, 1338, 6004  
 Cement, 1270-1282  
   [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Charcoal, 1308-1309  
 Coal Tar, or Gas Tar, 1508  
 Coke, 1532  
 Explosives, Synthetic, 1339  
 Fertilizers, 2398-2401, 1339  
   [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Galvanized Iron, 2669-2670  
 Glass, 2832-2842  
   Superglass, 1339  
 Ice, 3328-3329  
   [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Ink, 3454  
 Insecticides and Fungicides, 3464-3467  
   [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Matches, 4339-4343  
 Perfumes, 5486  
 Pigments. [See *Pigments and Dyestuffs*, below.]  
 Rubber, 6223-6231  
 Soap, 6667  
 Soda Water, 6675  
 Sugars, 1339  
   Glucose from Cornstarch, 1339, 2845  
   Levulose from Artichoke, 1339, 430-431  
 Varnish, 1339, 7464-7465  
 Wall Board, 1339  
 Wood Alcohol, 1338, 7829

**Explosives, 2345**  
 Chemistry of Explosives, 2345  
   Intensified Combustion, 2345  
   Conditions Necessary, 2345  
   Types of Explosives, 2345  
 Specific Explosives  
   Dynamite, 2664, 2345  
   Greek Fire, 2952  
   Guncotton, 2986-2987, 2346, 1269  
   Gunpowder, 2345, 2987-2988  
   Liquid Fire, 4044  
   Nitro-Compounds, 2346  
     Picric Acid, 2346, 5603  
     Trinitrotoluol, 2346

Nitroglycerine, 2346, 5035  
 Smokeless Powder, 2346, 6654-6655  
 Mechanical Mixture, 6654, 1309  
 Powder Used in Rifles

Poudre B., 6655  
 Ballistite, 6655  
 Cordite, 1675, 6655

Detonators, or Fulminates, 2634

Fulminate of Mercury, 2634

Dust Explosions, 2060

**Pigments and Dyestuffs**

Divisions of Dyestuffs on Basis of Origin, 2063

Natural Dyes, 2063

Catechu, 2063, 1240

Cochineal, 2063, 1516-1517, 3845

Carmine, 1202

Indigo, 2063, 3430

Vegetable Source of Blue, 803

Henna, 3141

Lac, 2063, 3829-3830

Logwood, 2063, 4090

Madder, 2063, 4197-4198, 3845

Alizarin and Purpurin Extracts, 222, 4197

Sepia, 6496

Obtained from Ink Bags of Cuttlefish, 6496

Treated with Caustic Alkali and Acids, 6496

Turmeric, 2063, 7319

Used in Making Tests for Alkalinity, 7319

Synthetic Dyes and Minerals Dyes, 2063

Aniline, 288-289

Made from Nitrobenzene, 288

Chrome, 1417

Chrome Yellow: Chromic Acid and Lead, 1417, 1418

Chrome Green: Chromium and Oxygen, 1417, 1418

Chrome Red: Chromium and Lead, 1417

Cobalt, 1514

Cobalt Blue, 1514, 803

Mixture of Aluminum and Cobalt Salts, 803

Coeruleum, New Blue, Smalt, Cobalt Yellow, and Green, 1514

Green, 2955-2956

Preparation: Copper Acetate and Solution of Arsenic and Oxygen, 2956

Also Derived from Products of Coal Tar, 2956

Indigo, 3430

Synthetic Product, 3430

Indigotin, 3430

Ink, 3454

Red Ink: Carmine and Ammonia, 3454

Blue Ink: Prussian Blue and Oxalic

Acid, 3454  
 Green Ink: Methyl Green and Water,  
 3454  
 India Ink: Lampblack and Glue or  
 Gum, 3454  
 Lampblack, 3848  
 Mountain Green, 4236  
 Ocher, or Ochre, 5155  
 Orange, 5234  
     Prepared from Coal Tar, 5235  
 Paris Green, 5381  
     Prepared from Arsenic Acid and Cop-  
     per Acetate, 5381  
 Prussian Blue, 5860-5861  
     Compound of Iron and Cyanogen,  
     5860  
 Red, 6025  
     Red Ochres, Coal-Tar Products, 6025  
 Ultramarine, 7346  
     Extracted from Lapis-Lazuli, 7346,  
     803  
 Umber, 7349  
     Raw Umber, 7349  
     Brown Coloring Matter, 978  
     Burnt Umber, 7349  
 Verdigris, 7493, 19  
     Preparation: Action of Acetic Acid  
     on Copper, 7493  
 Vermilion, 7496  
     Several Methods of Preparation, 7496  
     Mercury and Sulphur, the Main  
     Constituents, 7496

Cinnabar, Mercuric Sulphide, Known  
     as Vermilion, 7496  
 White Lead, 7750  
     Mixture of Lead Hydroxide and Lead  
     Carbonate, 7750  
     Dutch Method of Preparation, 7750  
     Yellow, 7932  
 Zinc White, 7974  
     Compound of Zinc and Oxygen, 7974  
 Allied Subjects  
     Lakes, 3845  
         Insoluble Coloring Substances, 3845  
         Preparation: Metallic Salts and Dye-  
         stuff, 3845  
         Two Groups, 3845  
         Natural and Coal-Tar Colors, 3845  
     Basic Mordants, 4649  
 Mordants, 4649, 2064  
     Substances Uniting with Chemicals Pro-  
     ducing Insoluble Compounds, 4649  
     Basic Mordants, 4649  
         Salts of Chromium, Tin, Iron, etc.,  
         4649  
     Acid Mordants, 4649  
         Tannic, Lactic, and Oleic Acids, 4649  
 Paints, 5298  
     Combinations of Pigments and Vehicles,  
     5298  
     [See *Pigments*, above.]  
     Linseed Oil Is Used as Vehicle, 5298,  
     4036  
     Composition of Fireproof Paint, 5298

# CIVICS

## The Science of Government

- Civil Government, 1442
- Purpose of Government, 2882
- Principles of Government, 1442
- Forms of Government
  - Aristocracy, 381
  - Autocracy, 2882
  - City States, 1441
  - Clan System, 1453
  - Communism
    - Amana, 240-241
    - Brook Farm, 975
    - Alcott, Amos B., 195
    - Dana, Charles A., 1817
    - Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 2221
    - Transcendentalism, 7242
  - Oneida Community, 5200
  - Noyes, John Humphrey, 5200
  - Perfectionists, 5200
  - Russia under Communism, 1587, 6257
  - Lenin, Nikolai, 3930
  - Rykoff, Alexis, 6287
  - Soviet, 6724
  - Trotsky, Leon, 7276
- Democracy, 1888
  - Pure Democracy, 1888
  - Andorra, 277
  - San Marino, 6376
  - Representative Democracy, 1888
    - Examples: Canada, 1117; France, 2568; Germany, 2768; United States, 7362
- Dictator, 1941
  - Caesar, Julius, 1066
  - Cincinnatus, 1430
  - Sulla, 6915
  - Mussolini, Benito, 4781, 3585
  - Pilsudski, Joseph, 5617, 5690
  - Primo de Rivera, 5811, 6738
- Empire, 2228-2229
  - British Empire, 965
  - Ethiopia, 2305
  - Japan, 3621
- Fascism, 2374
  - Italy, 3585
  - Mussolini, Benito, 4781
- Federal Districts
  - Brazil, 930
  - Canberra, 1163
  - District of Columbia, 1970
- Feudal System, 2402
- Chivalry, 1404
  - Accolade, 1404
  - Esquire, 1404
  - Knighthood, 1404
- Crusades, 1761
  - History of Each, 1761, 1764
  - Results, 1764
  - In England, 2257
  - In France, 2402-2403
  - In Japan, 3634
  - Samurai, 6359
  - Serfs, 6270, 6503
  - Strength and Weakness, 2403
  - Villeins, 7528-7529
- Monarchy, 4579
  - Absolute, 4579
    - Divine Right of Kings, 1973, 1313
  - Limited, 4579
    - British Empire, 965
- Oligarchy, 5192
- Principality (Liechtenstein), 3977
- Republic, 6062-6063
  - [See RULERS OF THE WORLD, Countries with Presidents; 6239.]
  - Representative Democracy, 6063, 1888
- Socialism, 6668, 6669
- Soviet, 6267, 6724. [See *Russia under Communism*, above.]
- Theocracy, 7141
- Tribal Government, 3674
  - Civilization, 1444-1448
- Vatican City, 7468
  - Papal States, 5343

### Sovereign Rights and Powers

### Citizenship, Obligations and Privileges

- Alien, 221
  - Alien and Sedition Laws, 221
- Citizen, 1435
  - Cable Act, 1436
- Naturalization, 4820
  - Americanization, 249
  - Those Refused Naturalization, 1435

- Special Status of Women, 4821
  - In Canada and Great Britain, 4821
  - In Other Countries, 4822
- Conservation, 1622-1623
  - Coal, 1497-1507. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Forests, 2533-2541. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Minerals, 4498-4500. [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Water, 7664-7665
    - Water Power, 7670-7674
- Elections, 2164
  - Ballot, 586
    - Australian Ballot, 521
    - Short Ballot, 6571-6572
  - Election of President and Vice-President
    - Electoral College, 2166, 5804, 1638
    - Electoral Commission, 2167
  - Initiative, 3452
  - Primary Election, 5811
  - Recall, 6021
  - Referendum, 3452
  - Registration of Voters, 2165
  - Suffrage, 6904-6905
    - Amendment XV, Constitution of the United States, 1642
    - Grandfather's Clause, 2896
    - Woman Suffrage, 7822-7825
  - Voting Machine, 7569-7571
- Census, 1282-1284
- Civil Service, 1449-1452
  - Civil Service Law, 1449
  - Civil Service Commission, 1450
  - Civil Service in Canada, 1451
  - Civil Service Reform, 1450
  - Pendleton Act, 426
- Colonies and Colonization, 1550
- Copyright, 1670, 1671
  - International Copyright, 1671
- Customs Duties, 1793. [See *Taxes and Duties*, below.]
- Emigration and Immigration, 2222-2226
- Interstate Commerce
  - Interstate Commerce Act, 3490
  - Interstate Commerce Commission, 3490
- Money, 4582-4592
  - Assaying, 456
    - Assay Offices, 457
  - Bullion, 1019
  - Cheap and Dear Money, 4582
  - Coinage, 4583
    - Five Parts of a Coin, 5114
    - Free Coinage, 4586
    - Planchets, 4586
    - Quality of Coins, 4583
      - Alloy, 227
    - Seigniorage, 4586
  - Counterfeiting, 1720
  - Evolution of Money, 4591
  - Fiat Money, 2405
  - Gold and Silver Standards, 4582
    - Bimetallism, 740
    - Monometallism, 4598
  - Inflation, 4587
  - Legal Tender, 3923
  - Mint, 4523-4525
  - Monetary Conferences, 4581
  - Numismatics, 5114
  - Safeguards for Money, 4586
  - Specie Payments, 6747
  - Unusual Terms for, 4591
    - Added Money, Almighty Dollar, Blood Money, Call Money, Cargo Money, Conscience Money, Fiddler's Money, Guinea Money, Pin Money, Soft Money, White Money, 4591
- United States Money, 4586
  - Decimal System, 1860
  - Where It Is Made, 4586, 4523, 7255
  - Metallic Money, 4587
  - Paper Money, 4587, 4589
- Foreign Monetary Units, 4589-4590
  - Argentina: Argentino, 4590; Peso, 4589
  - Austria: Crown, Gulden, Heller, 4590; Schilling, 4589; Florin, 2485
  - Belgium: Franc, 2567, 4589
  - Bolivia: Boliviano, 4589
  - Brazil: Cruzeiro, 4589; Milreis, 4491, 4590
  - British Honduras: Dollar, 2001, 4589
  - Chile: Condor, Doubloon, Escudo, 4590; Peso, 4589, 5513
  - China: Cash, Cent, Tael, 4590; Yuan Dollar, 4589
  - Colombia: Condor, Peso, 4589, 4590, 5513
  - Costa Rica: Colon, 4589
  - Cuba: Peso, 4589, 5513
  - Denmark: Crown, 1760, 4589
  - Ecuador: Condor, 4590; Sucre, 4589
  - Egypt: Pound, 4589, 5790
  - Finland: Markka, 4589
  - France: Centime, Napoleon, 4590; Franc, 2567, 4589
  - Germany: Pfennig, 4590; Reichsmark, 4589
  - Great Britain: Farthing, Penny, Shilling, Sixpence, Sovereign, 4590; Pound, 4589, 5790; Crown, 1760; Florin, 2485
  - Greece: Drachma, 2018, 4589
  - Guatemala: Peso, 4590, 5513
  - Haiti: Gourde, 4589
  - India: Rupee, 4589, 6250
  - Indo-China: Piaster, 4589, 5601
  - Italy: Lira, 4044, 4589; Scudo, Soldo, 4590
  - Japan: Sen, 4590; Yen, 4589
  - Liberia: Dollar, 4589, 2001
  - Mexico: Centavo, 4590; Peso, 4589, 5513
  - Netherlands: Florin, 2485, 4589; Guilder, 4590
  - Newfoundland: Dollar, 2001, 4589
  - Nicaragua: Cordoba, 4590
  - Norway: Crown, 1760, 4589
  - Panama: Balboa, 4589
  - Paraguay: Peso, 4589, 5513
  - Peru: Dinero, Sol, 4590; Libra, 4589



Philippine Islands: Filipino, 4589; Peso, 4590, 5513  
 Portugal: Escudo, 4589; Milreis, 4491, 4590  
 Rumania: Leu, 4589  
 Russia: Köpeck, 4590; Ruble, 4589, 6235  
 Salvador: Peso, 4590, 5513  
 Santo Domingo: Dollar, 2001, 4589  
 Siam: Tical, 4589  
 Spain: Piaster, 5601; Peseta, 4589, 5513  
 Sweden: Crown, 1760, 4589; Ore, 5242  
 Switzerland: Franc, 2567, 4589  
 Turkey: Medjidie, Onluk, Para, 4590; Lira, 4044; Piaster, 4589, 5601  
 Uruguay: Peso, 4589, 5513  
 Venezuela: Bolivar, 4589  
 Yugoslavia: Dinar, 4589  
 Coins of Olden Times  
 Denarius, 1891  
 Drachma, 2018  
 Ducat, 2045  
 Florin, 2485  
 Obolus, 5140, 1319  
 Pine-Tree Shilling, 5624  
 Talent, 7007-7008  
 Wampum, 7589  
 Patent, 5412-5413  
 Taxes and Duties  
 Direct Taxes, 7032. [See, also, Outline on *Economics and Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Income Tax, 3374  
 Inheritance Tax, 3451  
 Personal Property Tax, 7032  
 Poll Tax, 5714  
 Real Estate Taxes, 7032  
 Sales Tax, 6331  
 Single Tax, 6621  
 Indirect Taxes, 7032  
 Excise (Canada), 3454, 3483  
 Inland Revenue (Canada), 3454  
 Internal Revenue, 3482-3483  
 Stamp Tax, 6796  
 Tariff, 7021-7024  
 Kinds of Duties, 1793  
 Poundage, 7021  
 Tonnage, 7021  
 Free Trade, 2604  
 Protection, 5848  
 The Theory, 5848, 7022  
 Reciprocity, 6022, 1144  
 Trade-Mark, 7233-7235  
 Vital Statistics, 7548  
 Registration Areas, 7549

#### Pertaining to Legislation

Act, 737  
 Amendment, 246  
 Bill, 737, 3898  
 Caucus, 1259  
 Committee, 1609  
 Committee of the Whole, 1585  
 Enabling Act, 2231  
 Gerrymander, 2791

Law, 3898. [See Outline on *Law*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Legislative Bodies, 3924  
 Aldermen, Board of, 197  
 Althing, 3334  
 Assembly, 3924  
 Bundesrat, 1021  
 Burgesses, House of, 1026  
 Common Council, 1586  
 Trustees, 7284  
 Congress, 1607. [See *United States Government*, below.]  
 Continental Congress, 1644  
 Cortes, 6734  
 Dail Eireann, 1806, 3524  
 Seanad Eireann, 3524  
 Deputies, Chamber of, 2579  
 Diet, 1945  
 Duma, 2052-2053, 6271  
 Folkething, 1894  
 General Assembly, 3924  
 Lagthing, 5088  
 Landsting, 1894  
 Legislative Assembly, 3924  
 Legislature, 3924  
 Narodno Skupstina, 7964  
 Narodno Sobranye, 1015  
 National Assembly, 2579, 7311  
 Nationalrat, 6977  
 Odelsting, 5088  
 Parlement, 5391  
 Parliament, 5391-5395  
 Reichsrat, 2782  
 Reichstag, 2782, 6046  
 Rigsdag, 1894  
 Senate, 6488, 6491  
 Ständerat, 6977  
 States-General, 6815  
 Storthing, 5088  
 Zemstvo, 7971  
 Lobby and Lobbying, 4068  
 Parliamentary Law, 5395, 5396  
 Quarantine, 5903, 5394  
 Quorum, 5924  
 Repeal, 6059  
 Speaker, 6745-6746  
 Veto, 7514

#### Political Organizations and Issues

##### Organizations in the United States

Abolitionists, 9  
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 2695  
 Phillips, Wendell, 5564  
 Whittier, John Greenleaf, 7754-7756  
 American Party, 260  
 Anti-Federalists, 310, 5705  
 Anti-Masonic Party, 310, 5705  
 Anti-Monopoly Party, 311  
 Anti-Renters, 311  
 Barnburners, 625  
 Bucktails, 996  
 Bull-Moose Party, 4647  
 Constitutional Union Party, 1631

Bell, John, 703-704  
 Democratic Party, 1888, 5705  
   Jefferson, Thomas, 3648  
 Democratic-Republican Party, 1889  
 Federalist Party, 2390, 5705  
 Free-Soil Party, 2603, 5705  
 Greenback Party, 2956, 5705  
   Cooper, Peter, 1661  
 Know-Nothings, 3808, 5705  
 Liberal-Republican Party, 3961  
 Liberty Party, 3965-3966  
 Loco-Foco-Party, 4076  
 National Republican Party, 32  
   Adams, John, 32  
 People's Party, 5478  
 Populist Party, 5740  
   Watson, Thomas E., 7680-7681  
   Weaver, James B., 7693  
 Progressive Party, 5831, 5705  
   LaFollette, Robert M., 3839  
   Roosevelt, Theodore, 6193-6194  
 Prohibition Party, 5833, 5705  
   Good Templars, 2870  
 Republican Party, 6063, 5705  
 Socialist Party  
   Socialism, 6668  
 Whig Party, 7740, 5705  
**Political Issues in the United States**  
   Free Trade, 2604  
   Free Silver, 4582  
     Bryan, William J., 986  
   Gerrymander, 2791  
   League of Nations, 3904-3906  
   Open-Door Policy, 5213  
     Hay, John, 3092  
   Permanent Court of International Justice, 5489  
   Prohibition  
     Anti-Saloon League, 312  
     Constitution, Amendment XVIII, 1643  
     Good Templars, 2870  
     Jones Law, 3696  
     License, 3974  
     Local Option, 4071  
     Prohibition Party, 5833  
     Volstead Act, 7565  
   Protection, 5848  
   Spoils System, 6771  
   Tammany Society, 7011  
     Tweed, William M., 7330  
   Tariff, 7021. [See, also, Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Politics in Other Countries**  
   Chartism, 1320  
   Conservatives, 1624  
     Borden, Sir Robert, 864  
     Chamberlain, Joseph, 1298  
   Fenians, 2394  
   Girondists, 2817  
   Guelphs and Ghibillenes, 2977  
   Irredentism, 3552  
   Jacobins, 3608  
   Junkers, 3719

Labor Party, 2929  
   MacDonald, James Ramsay, 4175-4176  
 Land League  
   Davitt, Michael, 1840  
 Liberals, 3961  
   Asquith, Herbert H., 455  
   Chamberlain, Joseph, 1297  
   Gladstone, William E., 2829  
   Laurier, Wilfrid, 3894  
   Lloyd George, David, 4065  
 Nihilists, 5028  
 Roundheads, 6217  
 Soviet, 6724  
   Russia, 6267  
 Tory, 7222  
 Whig, 7740

### International Relations

**Intercourse between Nations, 3487**  
   Diplomacy, 1955  
     Ambassador, 243  
     Attaché, 494  
     Chargé d' Affaires, 1310  
     Exterritoriality, 2348  
     Ministers, 243  
   Emigration and Immigration, 2222. [See, above.]  
   Interparliamentary Union, 3489  
   Reciprocity, 6022, 1144  
   Treaty, 7256. [See, also, Outline on *Law*, in this GUIDE, for lists of treaties.]  
   Kinds of Treaties, 7256-7257

### War and Its Operation

  Armor, 410  
     Gauntlet, 2706  
     Helmet, 3135  
   Army, 412-418  
     Development, 412  
     Grades of Soldiers, 413  
     Supplies, 413  
     Types of Divisions, 414  
   Armies of the World  
     Canada, 416  
     France, 417  
     Germany, 416  
     Great Britain, 416  
     Italy, 417  
     United States, 415  
   Organization  
     Aircraft, 127  
     Artillery, 434  
     Brigade, 955, 414  
     Cavalry, 1261, 414  
     Division, 414  
     General Staff, 2715, 415  
     Infantry, 3447, 414  
     Military Academy, 4475  
     Military Preparedness, 4477  
     Military Schools, 4480  
     Military Training Camps, 7239  
     Militia, 4480  
     Reserve Officers' Training Corps, 6065  
   Arsenal, 421

Blockade, 794  
 Blockhouse, 796  
 Causes of War, 7591  
 Conscription, 1621  
     Selective Draft, 7888  
 International Law in War, 3486  
 Limitation of Armaments, 406-407  
 Magazine, 4210  
 Marque and Reprisal, 4298  
 Martial Law, 4307  
 Military Oaths, 5136  
 Navy, 4842  
     What a Navy Does, 4842  
     Admiralty, 49  
     Personnel, 4844  
     Warships, 4844  
         Early Period, 4850  
         Trireme, 7271  
         Frigate, 2622  
         Middle Period, 4850  
         Age of Steam, 4851  
         Ironclad Warships, 4851  
         Squadron, 6784  
 Navy of the United States, 4846, 4648  
     Navy Yards, 4848  
     Organization  
         Aircraft, 127  
         Marine Corps, 4292  
         Naval Academy, 4835  
         Naval Bases, 7382  
         Naval Reserves, 4839  
         Naval Militia, 4839  
         Warships, 4844  
             Airplane Carrier, 128  
             Battleship, 4844, 4848  
             Cruisers, 4848  
             Destroyers, 4845  
             Gunboat, 2986  
             Submarine, 6886-6893  
                 Submarine Chasers, 4845  
             Torpedo Boat, 7219  
             Privateer, 5827  
             The Alabama, 5828, 164  
 Neutrality, 4898  
     An Example 3,400 Years Ago, 4898  
     A Modern Instance, 7883  
 Projectiles. [See *Weapons and Ammunition*,  
     below.]  
 Signals and Signaling, 6598, 6600  
     Heliograph, 3130  
 Uniforms and Insignia, 7352  
     Uniforms of Three Wars (Color Plate),  
         facing 7352  
     A Well-Dressed Soldier, 7591  
 War, 7591  
     Cost of Wars, 7592  
 Weapons and Ammunitions  
     Ammunition, 262  
         Explosives, 264, 2345  
         Amatol, 2346  
         Ballistite, 264  
         Cordite, 264  
         Dynamite, 2064

Guncotton, 2986  
 Gunpowder, 2987  
     Smokeless, 6654  
 Lyddite, 264, 2346  
 Melenite, 2346  
 Picrates, 2346  
 Tri-nitro-toluol, 264, 2634, 2346  
 Fulmination, 2634  
 Artillery, 434  
     Anti-Aircraft Gun, 436  
     Armstrong Gun, 411-412  
     Coast Defense Gun, 435  
     Disappearing Gun and Carriage, 435  
     Field Artillery, 434  
     Heavy Artillery, 434  
         Howitzer, 3268  
         Siege Howitzer, 435  
     Mortar, 434  
     Siege Gun, 435  
     Siege Mortar, 435  
     The "75", 434  
 Battering Ram, 652  
 Bomb, 825  
 Boomerang, 858  
 Bow and Arrow, 897  
 Bullet, 1018  
     Dum-Dum Bullet, 1018  
     Explosive Bullet, 264  
     Tracer Bullet, 264  
 Cannon, 1173, 435  
 Cartridge, 1223  
 Firearms, 2429  
     Benet-Mercie Gun, 4181  
     Blunderbus, 806  
     Enfield Rifle, 2236  
     Gatling Gun, 2704  
     Hotchkiss Gun, 4181  
     Machine Gun, 4181  
     Maxim Gun, 4181, 4350  
     Musket, 4777-4778  
     Revolver, 6083  
     Rifle, 6124-6126  
     Shotgun, 6575-6576  
 Fireball, 2429  
 Grenade, 2962  
 Shell, 6553  
 Shield, 6559  
 Shot, 6575  
 Shrapnel, 6576-6578  
 Sling, 6642-6643  
 Submarine Mine, 6893-6894  
 Sword, 6981  
     Broadsword, 972  
     Tomahawk, 7205  
     Torpedo, 7214-7219  
 Military and Naval Terms  
     Amnesty, 265  
     Brevet, 942  
     Bugle Calls, 1008-1009  
     Contraband, 1646  
     Enemy, 2234  
     Flag of Truce, 2461  
     Foreign Legion, 2532

Grenadier, 2962  
 Intervention, 3491  
 Janizaries, 3616  
 Legion, 3923-3924  
 Phalanx, 5530  
 Prisoners of War, 5827  
 Rank, 5994  
   In Army  
     Marshal, 4304  
     Field Marshal, 4304  
     General, 2714  
     Lieutenant General, 2714  
     Major General, 2714  
     Brigadier General, 2714  
     Colonel, 1545  
     Lieutenant Colonel, 5994  
     Major, 4235  
     Captain, 1188  
     First Lieutenant, 3977  
     Second Lieutenant, 3977  
     Sergeant, 6504  
     Corporal, 1696  
   In Navy  
     Admiral, 49  
     Admiral of the Navy, 49  
     Vice Admiral, 49  
     Rear Admiral, 49  
     Commodore, 1585  
     Captain, 1188  
     Commander, 5995  
     Lieutenant, 3978  
     Junior Lieutenant, 3978  
     Ensign, 2274  
 Siege, 6595

Spy, 6783-6784  
 Swiss Guards, 6968  
 Unknown Soldier, 7417  
 Volunteers, 7567  
 Peace Movements  
   Arbitration, International, 344  
   Armaments, Limitations of, 406  
   Dawes Plan, 1841  
   Geneva Conference, 2716  
   Genoa Conference, 2718-2719  
   Hague Peace Palace, 3004  
   International Settlements, Bank for, 3488, 7600  
   League of Nations, 3904-3906  
   Locarno Conference, 4071  
   Pan-American Congresses, 5337  
   Pan-American Union, 5339  
   Peace Conference, International, 5425  
   Permanent Court of International Justice, 5489-5490  
   Settlement of War Debts, 7595, 7598  
     British Refunding Plan, 7596  
     War Debt Commission, 7596  
     Young Plan, 7598  
   Treaty for the Renunciation of War, or Kellogg Pact, 6058  
 Organizations Growing Out of War  
   American Legion, 250-252  
   Daughters of the American Revolution, 1833  
   Confederate Army Societies, 1602, 1603  
   Grand Army of the Republic, 2893  
   Sons of Veterans, 6688  
   Veterans' Bureau, 7512

## United States Government

Americanization, 249  
 Annapolis Convention, 292  
 Articles of Confederation, 432, 7393  
 Constitution of the United States, 1631-1643  
   Adoption of the Constitution, 1632, 1634  
   Amendments, 1634, 1640-1643  
     First Ten: American Bill of Rights, 1634  
   Relation to State Constitutions, 1631  
   Summary of the Seven Articles, 1632  
   Text of the Constitution, 1635-1643  
     [See, also, Outline on *The United States*, in the Outline on *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Courts. [See Outline on *Law*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Declaration of Independence, 1865  
   Adoption, 1866  
   Text of the Declaration, 1866, 1868  
 Flag of the United States, 2449, 2456  
   Flag Code, 2454  
   Flag Customs, 2449  
   Flag Day, 2450  
     Flag Day Program, 2456  
   Historic Development, 2449  
   How to Honor the Flag, 2451-2454  
   How to Make a Flag, 2456  
   Oration on Makers of the Flag, 2455  
   Pledge to the Flag, 2456

Star-Spangled Banner, 6812-6813  
   Birth of the American Flag (Color Plate), facing 6812  
 State Flags (Color Plates), between 7386 and 7387  
   What the Flag Stands for, 2451  
   United States Flags, color plate, facing 2449  
 General Organization of the Government, 1632, 7388  
 Ordinance of 1787, 5242

### Departments of the Federal Government

#### Executive Department

President of the United States, 5802, 7389  
   Cabinet, 1058-1059  
   Electoral College, 2166  
     Constitution, Art. II, Sec. 1, 1637  
   Electoral Commission, 2167  
   Inauguration, 5806  
   Powers and Duties, 1637  
   Presidential Election Results, 5704  
   Presidential Succession Act, 5801-5802  
   Presidents of the United States. [See list, in the Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Qualifications for the Presidency, 5802

Six Roads to the White House, 5804-5805  
 Veto, 7514  
 Constitution, Art. I, Sec. 7, 1636  
 White House, 7747-7750  
**The Executive Departments**  
 State, Department of, 6814, 1059  
   Bureaus and Divisions, 6814  
   Consul, 1643  
     Consul-General, 1643  
     Commercial Agent, 1643  
   Great Seal of the United States, 6814  
   Passport, 5411  
   Secretary of State, 6814  
     Succession to the Presidency, 5801, 6815  
   Treaty Making, 7257  
 Treasury Department, 7255, 1059  
   Assay Office, 457  
   Budget, 1001  
   Bureau of Engraving and Printing, 7255  
   Coast Guard, 1509, 1513  
   Coinage and Money. [See *Money*, under *Sovereign Rights and Powers*, above.]  
   Counterfeiting, 1720  
   Income Tax, 3374  
   Internal Revenue, 3482  
   Secretary of the Treasury, 7255  
     Succession to the Presidency, 5801-5802  
   Secret Service, 6477  
   Smuggling, 6655  
 War Department, 7600, 1059  
   Army. [See *Army*, section *International Relations*, above.]  
   Assistant Secretary of War for Commercial Aviation, 130  
   Secretary of War, 7600  
     Succession to the Presidency, 5801-5802  
 Justice, Department of, 3722, 1059  
   Attorney-General, 3723  
     Succession to the Presidency, 5801-5802  
   Prohibition Enforcement, 3723  
     Bootlegging, 6655  
   United States District Courts. [See *Outline on Law*, section *Courts*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Postoffice Department, 5771-5777, 1059  
   Air Mail, 129  
   Dead-Letter Office, 1845, 5772  
   Money Orders, 4592, 5772  
   Parcel Post, 5366, 5772  
   Pony Express, 5728  
   Postage and Postage Stamps, 5768  
   Postal Savings Banks, 613, 5772  
   Postmaster-General, 5772  
     Succession to the Presidency, 5801-5802  
   Rates of Postage, 5768  
   Star Routes, 6812  
 Navy, Department of, 4852

Assistant Secretary of the Navy for Commercial Aviation, 130  
 Navy. [See *Navy*, under *International Relations*, above.]  
 Navy Day, 4852  
 Secretary of the Navy, 4852  
   Succession to the Presidency, 5801-5802  
**Interior, Department of the, 3478, 1059**  
 Bureaus  
   Education, 2127  
   Indian Affairs, 3407  
   Mines, 3478  
   Pensions, 5476  
   Reclamation, 6024  
   General Land Office, 3854  
   Geological Survey, 2731  
   National Monuments, 4634. [See *National Monuments*, below.]  
   National Parks, 5383. [See *National Parks*, below.]  
   Secretary of the Interior, 3478  
     Succession to the Presidency, 5801-5802  
 Agriculture, Department of, 104  
   Forest Service, 105, 2540-2541  
   National Monuments, 4634. [See *National Monuments*, below.]  
   National Parks. [See *National Parks*, below.]  
   Secretary of Agriculture, 105  
 Commerce, Department of, 1583, 1059  
   Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Commercial Aviation, 130  
   Secretary of Commerce, 1583  
 Labor, Department of, 3821, 1059  
   Secretary of Labor, 3821  
 Vice-President, 7515  
   President of the Senate, 7516  
   Succession to the Presidency, 7516  
   Vice-Presidents of the United States, 7515  
**Legislative Department**  
 Congress of the United States, 1607-1609  
   Congressional Record, 1607  
   Committee of the Whole, 1585  
   How a Bill Becomes a Law, 3898  
   Mace, 4178  
   Order of Procedure, 1609  
   Organization, 1607  
   Powers of Congress, 1608  
     Constitution, Art. I, Sec. 8, 1636  
 Representatives, House of, 6060  
   Congressman-at-Large, 6062  
   Delegate, 1883  
 Officers  
   Speaker, 6062, 6746  
   Sergeant-at-Arms, 6062, 6504  
   Originates Revenue Bills, 6062  
   Power of Impeachment, 6062, 3369  
 Senate, 6488-6491  
   Court to Try Impeachments, 6490, 3369  
   Officers  
     President, 6491

Vice-President, 7515  
 Sergeant-at-Arms, 6491, 6504  
 Power over Treaties, 7256

**Judicial Department**

Constitutional Provision for, 1639  
 Organization, 1722  
 Supreme Court, 1722, 6940. [See Outline  
 on *Law*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Inferior Courts. [See *Law*, as above.]

**Public Domain****Lands, Public, 3853**

American Annexations, 294, 3853, 7385  
 Alaska, 166, 175  
 Florida, 2482, 294  
 Gadsden Purchase, 2657, 294  
 Louisiana Purchase, 4134, 294  
 Mexican Cession, 4431, 2971, 294  
 Oregon Country, 5710, 294  
 Texas, 7130, 294  
 Commissioner of Land Office, 3854  
 Ranges, Sections, Townships, 3854

**National Monuments, 4634**

(Department of Interior Control)

Aztec Ruin, 4636, 4940  
 Capulin Mountain, 4635, 4940  
 Carlsbad Cavern, 4636, 1200  
 Casa Grande, 4636, 394  
 Chaco Canyon, 4635, 4940  
 Colorado, 4635, 1557  
 Craters of the Moon, 4636, 3339  
 Devil's Tower, 4635, 7907  
 Dinosaur, 4635, 7428  
 El Morro, 4635, 4940  
 Fossil Cycad, 4636  
 Glacier Bay, 4636  
 Gran Quivira, 4635, 4940  
 Hovenweep, 4636, 7428  
 Katmai, 4636  
 Lewis and Clark Cavern, 4635  
 Montezuma's Castle, 4635, 390  
 Muir Woods, 4635  
 Natural Bridges, 4635, 4819, 7428  
 Navajo, 4635  
 Papago Saguaro, 4635  
 Petrified Forest, 4635, 1557, 389  
 Pinnacles, 4635  
 Pipe Spring, 4636  
 Rainbow Bridge, 4635, 7428  
 Scott's Bluff, 4636, 4857  
 Sitka, 4635  
 Shoshone Cavern, 4635  
 Tumacacori, 4635  
 Verendrye, 4635  
 Wupatki, 4636  
 Yucca House, 4636

(Department of Agriculture Control)

Bandelier, 4636, 4940  
 Bryce Canyon, 4636, 7428  
 Chiricahua, 4636  
 Devil Postpile, 4636

Gila Cliff Dwellings, 4636, 4940  
 Holy Cross, 4636, 1561  
 Jewel Cave, 4636  
 Lehman Caves, 4636  
 Mount Olympus, 4636, 7625  
 Old Kasaan, 4636  
 Oregon Caves, 4636  
 Timpanogos, 4636, 7428  
 Tonto, 4636  
 Walnut Canyon, 4636  
 Wheeler, 4636, 1557

(War Department Control)

Big Hole Battlefield, 4636  
 Cabrillo, 4636, 1091  
 Castle Pinckney, 4636  
 Fort Matanzas, 4636  
 Fort Marion, 4636  
 Fort Pulaski, 4636  
 Fort Wood, 4636  
 Meriwether Lewis, 4636, 3956  
 Mound City Group, 4636, 4690

**National Parks, 5383**

General Grant, 5384, 5386  
 Glacier, 5386, 2823  
 Grand Canyon, 2894  
 Grand Teton, 5386  
 Great Smoky, 5386  
 Hawaii, 5386, 3079  
 Hot Springs, 3258, 5386  
 Lafayette, 619, 5386  
 Lassen, 5388  
 Mesa Verde, 5388, 4412  
 Mount McKinley, 4187, 5388  
 Mount Rainier, 5987, 5388  
 Platt, 5388  
 Rocky Mountain, 5388, 5390  
 Sequoia, 5390, 6500  
 Shenandoah, 5390  
 Sully's Hill, 5390, 5067  
 Wind Cave, 5390, 6715  
 Yellowstone, 5390, 7935  
 Yosemite, 7947  
 Zion, 5390, 7428

**American State and Local Governments****The State, 6813, 7389**

Executive Officers  
 Governor, 2883  
 Lieutenant Governor, 3978  
 Other Officers. [See each state, subhead  
*Government.*]

**Judicial Officers**

Judge, 3705  
 Justice of the Peace, 3723  
 Other Officers. [See each state, subhead  
*Government.*]

**Political Divisions**

County, 1721  
 County Officers, 1721  
 Sheriff, 6557  
 Parish

Louisiana, 4130  
 Township  
   Separate from Municipal Government, 4742  
   Town Meeting, 7228  
   City and Village. [See below.]  
 State Police, 5702  
 State's Rights, 6815  
**City Government**  
   Charter, 1319, 1437  
   City, 1437  
   City Manager, 1439  
   Civil Service, 1450  
   City Planning, 1440-1441  
     Air Rights, 152, 1356  
     Garden Cities, 1440  
     Types of Projects  
       Buffalo Water Front, 1006  
       Canberra (by an American), 1163  
       Chicago Lake Front, 1354, 1359  
       Cleveland Civic Center, 1475  
       Philadelphia Terminals, 5540  
       Springfield (Mass.) Civic Center, 6780  
       Washington (D. C.), 7636  
   Zoning System, 1440  
   Commission Form, 1584  
     Began in Galveston, 2672  
     Des Moines Plan, 1584-1585  
     Working Plan, 1584  
   Council-Mayor Plan, 4743  
     Alderman, 197  
     Mayor, 4356  
   Community Interests, 1588  
     Community Forum, 1589  
**Departmental Control**  
   Fire Department, 2429-2433  
   Health Department  
     Board of Health, 808

Public Hygiene, 3314  
 Fly Eradication, 2499  
 Medical Inspection in Public Schools 6425  
 Mosquito Eradication, 4678  
 Public Baths, 649  
 Quarantine, 5903  
 Sewage Disposal, 6511, 1367  
 Police Department, 5702  
   Police Dog, 5702, 1988  
**Public Service**  
   Electric Light, 2178  
   Franchise, 2589  
   Gas Supply, 2699  
   Telephone, 7070  
   Transportation  
     Electric Railways, 2187  
     Elevated Railroads, 2204  
     Subway, 6897  
     Taxicabs, 7034-7035  
   Roads and Streets. [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUMÆ.]  
 Water Supply  
   Aqueduct, 335  
   Filter, 2419  
   Reservoir, 6065  
   Waterworks, 7676  
 Development of Municipal Government, 4742  
 Municipal Ownership, 4743  
 Cities, Largest, 1438  
**Village Government**  
   Development, 4743  
   Why Villages Are Organized, 1437  
   Common Council, 1586  
     Board of Trustees, 1586, 7284  
   Constable, 1624  
   President, 1586

## The British Dominions

**The Empire**, 965  
   Crown Colonies, 965  
   Extent of the Empire, 967  
   Free Dominions, 966  
     Australia, 507  
     Dominion of Canada, 1117  
     Irish Free State, 3524  
     Newfoundland, 4913  
     New Zealand, 4999  
     Union of South Africa, 7353  
   Flags of the Empire, facing 2922  
   Imperial Conference, 965, 1146, 4915  
   Privy Council, 5828  
**Australia**, 516  
   Federation of States, 516  
   Ballot, 586  
     Australian Ballot, 521  
   Courts, 516  
   Federal District  
     Canberra, 517, 1163  
   Governor-General, 516, 2883  
   Ministry

  Premier, 516, 5798  
   Parliament, 516  
   Unusual Constitutional Powers, 516  
**Dominion of Canada**, 1133  
   Struggle for Responsible Government, 1139-1140  
   British North America Act, 971, 1133  
   Confederation, 1140  
   Governor-General, 1134, 2883  
   Courts, 1137  
   Ministry, 1134  
     President Privy Council, 1134  
     Premier, 1135, 5798  
     Other Ministers, 1135  
   Parliament, 1136  
   Provincial Government  
     Lieutenant Governor, 3978  
     Jurisdiction, 1137  
     [See subhead *Government*, in articles on the various provinces.]  
**Great Britain**, 2924  
   Constitution, Largely Unwritten, 2924-2925

- Acts, Decrees, etc., 2925
  - Act of Settlement, 2925
  - Act of Union with Ireland, 2925, 3528
  - Act of Union with Scotland, 2925, 6445
  - Bill of Rights, 739
  - Irish Free State Act, 3529
  - Magna Charta, 4215
- Central Government
  - Foreign Office, 2532
  - The Sovereign, 2925
  - Prince of Wales, 5815-5816
  - The Ministry, or Cabinet, 2925
    - Premier, or Prime Minister, 1059, 5798
  - Other Ministers, 1059
  - Orders in Council, 5241-5242
- Legislative Branch, 2925
  - Parliament, 2925, 5395
    - House of Commons, 2925, 5394
    - House of Lords, 2925, 5395
    - Speaker, 6746
  - The Courts, 2926
  - Local Government, 2926
- Irish Free State, 3518, 3524
  - Irish Free State Act, 3524, 3529
  - Executive Council, 3526
  - Fianna Fail, 3529
  - Parliament, 1806
    - Dail Eireann, 1806, 3524, 3529
    - Seanad Eireann, 1806, 3524
  - Sinn Fein, 3529, 6623
- Northern Ireland (not a part of the Irish Free State), 3524, 3526
  - Governor-General, 3526
  - Legislature, 3526
- Newfoundland, 4913-4916
  - The Dominion, 3826, 4913
  - Labrador, 3826
  - Newfoundland, 4913
  - Executive Department, 4915
    - Governor-General, 4915, 5798
    - Premier, 4915, 5798
  - Legislative Department, 4915
- New Zealand, 5004
  - Executive Department
    - Governor-General, 5004, 5008, 2883
    - Premier, 5798
  - Legislative Department, 5008
    - Advanced Legislation
      - Compulsory Arbitration, 5008, 344
      - Government-Owned Utilities, 5008
      - Government Purchase of Estates, 5008
      - Minimum-Wage Laws, 5008, 4501
      - Old-Age Pensions, 5008, 5190
      - Strikes Unlawful, 5008
      - Unique Land Tax, 5008
- Union of South Africa, 7353-7360
  - Political Divisions
    - Cape of Good Hope, 7358
    - Natal, 7358
    - Orange Free State, 7358
    - Transvaal, 7360
  - Executive Department
    - Governor-General, 7354, 2883
    - Premier, 7354, 5798
    - Executive Council, 7354
  - Parliament, 7354, 5395
  - Provincial Government, 7356
    - Dual Language for Laws, 7356

### Government in Other Countries

[For details of the various governments of the world not outlined above, see each country, described in its alphabetical place in **THE WORLD BOOK**.]

### Other Titles and Honors

- Titles, 7188
  - Administrator, 49
  - Archduke, 2051
  - Archon, 369
  - Assessor, 457
  - Auditor, 498
  - Bailiff, 572
  - Baron, 627
  - Baronet, 628
  - Burgomaster, 1026
  - Censor, 1282
  - Chancellor, 1302
  - Count, 7188
  - Czar, 1800, 7188
  - Dauphin, 1834
  - Dey, 1927
  - Doge, 1993
  - Duke, 2051
  - Earl, 2078
  - Emperor, 2228
  - Exchequer, Chancellor of the, 2342
  - Ghazi, 7314
  - Grace, 2884
  - Grandee, 2896
  - High Commissioner, 5315
  - Imperator, 3370
  - Intendant, 3473
  - Khan, 3770
  - Khedive, 3770
  - King, 3792
  - Legate, 3923
  - Lictor, 3975, 3977
  - Magi, 4212
  - Mahdi, 4222
  - Majesty, 4234
  - Mandarin, 4252
  - Margrave, 4289
  - Marquis, 4299
  - Marshal, 4304
  - Mikado, 4471
  - Negus, 4872
  - Patrician, 5416
  - Peer, 5440
  - Pharaoh, 5531



Plebeian, 5657  
 Polemarch, 369  
 Pontifex Maximus, 5727  
 Praetor, 5793  
 Prince, 5812  
 Prince Consort, 5813  
 Proprietor, 5847  
 Public Defender, 5871  
 Quaestor, 5901  
 Queen, 5918  
     Queen Consort, Queen Dowager, Queen  
         Regnant, 5918  
 Quirites, 5923  
 Rajah, 5990  
 Regent, 6044  
 Sheik, 6550  
 Shogun, 6571  
 Sultan, 6917  
 Tetrarch, 7117  
 Tribune, 7267  
 Vali, 7311  
 Viceroy, 7516

Viscount, 7548  
 Vizier, 7550  
**Other Military and Naval Terms**  
 Adjutant, 49  
 Aid-de-Camp, 108  
 Cadet, 1065  
 Chaplain, 1303  
 Flag Officer, 2461  
 Gendarme, 2713  
 Grenadier, 2962  
 Hussar, 3298-3299  
 Provost, 5857  
**Military and Naval Honors**  
 Croix de Guerre, 1751-1752  
 Congressional Medal of Honor, 1968-1969  
 Distinguished Service Cross, 1969  
 Distinguished Service Medal, 1969  
 Distinguished Flying Cross, 1969  
 Iron Cross, 3551  
 Legion of Honor, 3924  
 Victoria Cross, 7522  
 Victory Medal, 1969

### Miscellaneous Terms in Civics

Autonomy, 546  
 Bounty, 896  
 Budget, 1000-1001  
 Bureau, 1026  
 Chartism, 1320  
 Coalition, 1507  
 Commune, 1587  
 Eminent Domain, 2227  
 Franking Privilege, 2593  
 Great Seal of the United States, 6470  
 Home Rule, 3212  
 Imperialism, 3370  
 Junta, 3720  
 Lynch Law, 4163

Mace, 4178  
 Monroe Doctrine, 4608  
 Nullification, 2530, 3600, 5111  
 Patroon System, 5418  
 Peonage, 5477  
 Personal Liberty, 5504  
 Petition, 5517  
 Petition of Right, 5517  
 Postal Union, 5771  
 Province, 5856  
 Religious Liberty, 6052  
 Royal Supremacy, 6939  
 Sovereignty, 6724  
 Witenagemot, 7816

# ECONOMICS

## Fundamental Principles

- Definition of Economics, 2098
- Modern Name for Political Economy, 2098
- The Science of Wealth, 7685
  - Includes Fundamental Principles of Industry and Business, 2098, 3445
  - [See *Wealth*, below.]
- Service of Economics to Humanity, 2098
- The Field of Economic Investigation, 2098-2101
  - Study of the Many Ways of Getting a Living, 2098
  - Study of Money and Credit, 2098-2099
  - Study and Investigation of Prices, 2099
  - Investigation of National Wealth and Debts, 2100
    - Distribution of Ownership and of Annual Products, 2100
    - Distribution of Income (Chart), 2100
  - Study of National Efficiency, 2100
  - Other Economic Problems, 2100
    - Hours of Labor, 3823, 3824
    - Immigration, 2222-2227
- Interest, 3475-3476
- Monopolies, 4599
- Profits, 5830
- Taxation, 7032-7033
- Wages, 7574-7575
- Is There a Law of Supply and Demand? 2100, 6939, 7447-7448
- Adam Smith, Famous Founder of the Science, 6647
  - The Wealth of Nations, an Epochal Book, 6647-6648
- Wealth, in Economics, 7685
  - What Is the Meaning of Material Economic Goods, 7685
  - Essential Attributes—Utility, Scarcity, Transferability, 7685
  - Four Phases of Study
    - Consumption, 7685, 1643-1644
    - Production, 7685, 3445
    - Exchange, 7685, 2342
    - Distribution, 7685

## Consumption

- Principles of Consumption, 1643-1644, 7685
  - Nature of Human Wants, 1643, 7685
  - Wants Are Satisfied by Use of Commodities, 1644
  - Economic Meaning of, the Term Consumption, 1644
  - Difference between Consumption and Destruction, 1644
  - Laws to Control Consumption, 1644
    - Sumptuary Laws, 6920-6921
    - Liquor License Laws, 3975
    - Prohibition, 5831-5833
      - Anti-Saloon League, 312
      - Jones Law, 3696
      - Local Option, 4071
      - Prohibition Party, 5833-5834
  - Temperance, 7090
  - Volstead Act, 7565
  - Population, Study of, 5739-5740
    - Overpopulation, 5740
    - Malthus and The Ideas He Advanced, 5740, 4242
    - Methods of Limiting Population, 5740
  - Immigration, 2222-2227
    - [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Advertising Considered as an Economic Problem, 60-66
    - Advertising Increases Demand and Hence Production, 66
    - Raises Standards of Living, 66
  - Coöperation, 1662-1664
    - [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]

## Production

- Principles of Production**, 7685, 3445  
 Factors of Production—Land, Labor, Capital, and Enterprise, 7685  
 Land the Great Natural Source of Wealth, 6621  
   Agriculture the Basic Industry, 3445, 93-104  
 Manufacturing Industry, 3445  
 Conservation of Natural Resources, 1622-1623  
 Supply and Demand, 6939, 7447, 2100  
   Effect on Production, 3445  
   Effect on Price of Commodity, 6939  
   Effect on Value, 7447  
   [See *Value*, below.]  
 Laws of Supply and Demand—the Modern Economic View, 2100  
**Factory System of Production**, 2359-2360  
   Development of the System, 2359  
   Machines Supersede Hand Labor, 2359  
   Factors of Growth, 2360  
   Benefits of the System, 2360  
   Evils of the System, 2360  
   Employment of Women and Children, 2360  
   [See *Child Labor*, below.]  
 Notable Results of the Factory System, 2360  
   Labor Organizations, 3825  
   Combinations of Capital in Production, 7282  
   [See *Capital*, below.]  
 Handicraft Period of Industry, 3822  
 Guilds of the Middle Ages, 2979  
 The Industrial Revolution, 3822  
   New System of Economics, 3822  
 Early Industrial Development, 3823  
 Effects of War on Industry (Production) and Commerce, 7591, 1583  
 Coöperation in Industry, 1662  
 Standardization in American Industry, 6707-6798  
   Mass Production Made Possible, 6797  
   Growth of Standardization, 6797  
   The Automobile Industry Standardized, 6797  
   The World War and Standardization, 6798  
   Department of Commerce Aid, 6798  
**Capital**, 1184-1185  
   Its Meaning in Economics, 1184  
   A Factor of Production, 7685  
   Wealth That Is Capital, 1184  
   Wealth That Is Not Capital, 1184  
   Capital Abundant in Present-Day Business, 1184  
   What Abolition of Capitalism Means, 1184  
   How Capital Has Been Accumulated, 1184  
   How Capital Is Consumed, 1185  
   Maintenance and Increase Necessary, 1185  
   Banks and Banking. [See *Money*, below.]  
 Corporations, 1696, 1698  
   Stock, Capital, 6836-6837  
   Stock Exchange, 6837-6838  
 Monopoly, 4599  
 Trust, 7282-7284  
   Control of Price the Test of a Trust, 7282  
   Pools, 7282  
   Voting Trust, 7282  
   Modern Trust, 7282-7283  
     Standard Oil Company, 6798  
     United States Steel Corporation, 7411  
   Explanation of the Trust Movement, 7283  
   Advantages of Trusts, 7283  
   Disadvantages, 7284  
   Trust Legislation, 7284  
     The Sherman Act, 6557-6558  
     The Clayton Act, 7782  
     Federal Trade Commission Act, 2390, 7782  
**Labor, Its Functions and Organizations**  
   Labor, Division of, 3821-3822  
   Labor Legislation, 3822-3825  
     In England, 3822-3823  
     Elsewhere in Europe, 3823  
     In Australasia, Strikes Prohibited, 3823  
     In the United States, 3823-3824  
     Legal Relation of Employer and Employee, 3823  
     General Welfare Laws of the States, 3824  
     Supreme Court Decisions Affecting Labor, 3824  
   Department of Labor Created by Congress, 3821, 3824  
     Children's Bureau, 1376-1377, 3821  
     Lathrop, Julia C., 3885, 1376  
     Abbott, Grace, 1376  
     Secretary of Labor, 3821  
   Employer's Liability Laws, 2230  
   Labor Organizations, 3825-3826  
     Labor Banks, 3825  
     Collective Bargaining, 1536  
     Eight-Hour Day, 2156-2157  
     Five-Day Week, 2157  
     Open Shop, and Closed Shop, 5213  
     Peonage, 5477  
     Sweatshop System, 6948  
   Labor Theory of Value, 7448  
 Child Labor, 1375-1376  
 Communism, 1587  
   Amana Society, 240-241  
   Oneida Community, 5200  
   Bolsheviks, 825  
   The Third International, 3484  
     Russia (Revolution of 1917), 6271-6272, 6276  
   Lenin, Nikolai, 3930-3932  
 Socialism, 6668-6669  
   Principles, 6668  
   Karl Marx, 4309  
   The Communist Manifesto, 6668  
     The International, 3483-3484  
     In the United States, 6668

As a World Movement, 666g  
 Syndicalism, 6985  
 Industrial Workers of the World (I.W.W.),  
     6985, 3445  
 Boycott, 903  
 Sabotage, 6292

Strike, 6879  
 Productive Industries  
 [See complete list of productive industries  
 and other facts which contribute to them  
 in the related subjects under INDUSTRY,  
 in THE WORLD BOOK, 3445-3446.]

### Exchange

**Principles of Exchange** (in Economics), 2098,  
     7685  
 Transfer of Economic Goods, 2098, 7685  
 Commerce, 1582-1583  
     Exchange of Commodities, 1582  
     Balance of Trade, 576  
 Barter, Earliest Method of Exchange, 631,  
     1582  
 Earliest Commodities Exchanged in Com-  
 merce, 1583  
 Value, 7447  
     Exchange Power of a Commodity in Terms  
     of Other Commodities, 7447  
     Value and Utility, 7448  
     Value and Scarcity, 7448  
     Labor Theory of Value, 7448  
 Price, 6939, 7447, 2099-2100  
     Exchange Power of a Commodity in Terms  
     of Money, 7447  
     Determined by Relation between Supply  
     and Demand, 6939  
     Distinct from Value, 7447. [See below.]  
     Prices in World War Period, 7447  
     Economic Significance of Reduced Prices  
     (Bargains), 7447  
     Investigation of Prices, 2099  
     Effect of War on Prices, 2099  
     Prices a World Problem, 2100  
     Price-Fixing, 2100  
     List Price and Net Price, 1957  
     Trade Discount, 1957  
 Money, in Economics, 2098, 4582-4592  
     An Instrument of Taxation and Bargain-  
     ing, 2098  
     A Medium of Exchange, 4582  
     Adam Smith's View of Money, 576

Money the Center of Political Economy  
 (Economics), 2098  
 Real Money (Gold) not Used by the  
 People, 2098  
 Bank Credit the Substitute for Real  
 Money, 2098-2099  
     The Check System, 2099, 1323-1325  
     Relation to Prices, 2099  
 Gold the Most Stable Unit of Monetary  
 Systems, 4582  
 Cheap Money and Dear Money, 4582  
     Gresham's Law, 2063  
 Monetary System of the United States,  
     4586-4589  
     [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Monetary Exchange, 2342  
 Foreign Exchange, 2342  
     Bill of Exchange, 2342, 738-739, 2018  
     Form of Bill, 739  
     Rate of Exchange, 2342, 739  
     Premium, 2342  
     Discount, 1957-1958, 2342  
     Bank Discount, 1957  
     Trade Discount, 1957  
     Par Exchange Values of Foreign Mone-  
     tary Units and Coins, 4589-4590  
 Domestic Exchange, 2342  
     Check, 1323-1325  
     Form of Check, 1324  
     Draft, 2018-2019  
     Form of Draft, 2019  
 Credit, 1738-1739  
 Rural Credits, 6251  
     [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Banks and Banking, 604-613  
     [See Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]

### Distribution

**Distribution of Wealth** (Economic), 7685  
 Apportionment among the Factors of Pro-  
 duction (which see, above), 7685  
 Rent, 6057-6058  
     Technical Meaning in Economics, 6057  
     To Whom Does Rent Belong? 6058  
     The Single Tax Theory, 6621-6622  
     Land Laws of New Zealand, 5008  
 Wages, 7574-7575  
     An Important Branch of Economic Study,  
     7574  
     How Wages Are Determined, 7574  
     How to Restrict the Supply, 7575  
     Collective Bargaining, 1536  
     Minimum Wage, 4501-4502

Ricardo's Iron Law of Wages, 6106  
 Interest (in Economics), 3475-3476  
     Price Paid for Services of Capital, 3475  
     Rate Depends on Demand for Capital,  
     3475  
 Profit, 5830  
**Distribution of Commodities**, 7685  
 Transportation, 7246-7252  
     Aircraft, 129-138  
     Automobile, 534-535  
     Canal, 1157-1162  
     Canoe, 1174-1175  
     Caravan, 1189-1190  
     Common Carrier, 1585-1586  
     Merchant Marine, 4404-4406

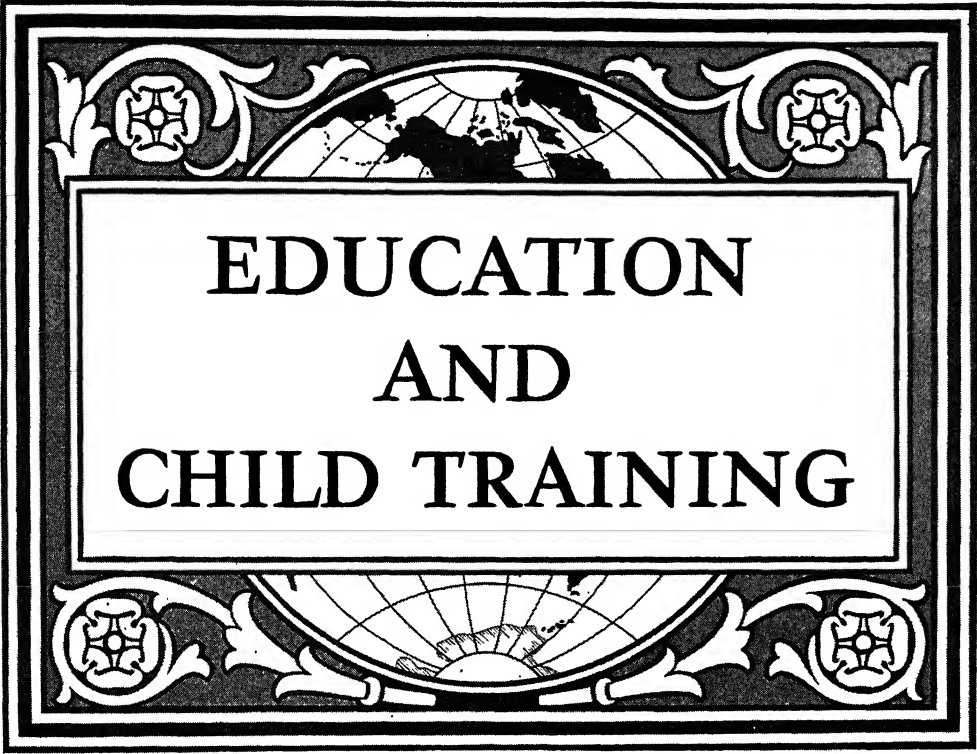
Ship, 6562-6570  
 Shipping Subsidies, 4405  
 Ocean Routes, 5152, 5154  
 Railroad, 5973-5984  
   Economic Effects in United States and  
     Canada, 5973  
   Increased Land Values, 5974  
   Short-Haul Competition, 5981-5982  
   Rebating, 3490, 6020  
   Regulation by Government, 5982  
     Interstate Commerce Act, 3490  
     Interstate Commerce Commission,  
       3490-3491  
     Esch-Cummins Act, 5982  
   Government Ownership and Operation,  
     5982  
   [See Outline on *Transportation and Com-  
     munication*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Roads and Streets, 6140-6145  
   [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this  
   GUIDE.]  
 Effects of War on Distribution of Com-  
 modities, 7591  
**Government Policies Affecting Production and  
 Exchange**  
 Protection, 5848, 5850, 7022-7024  
 Protective Tariff System, 1793  
 Theory of Protection, 5848  
 Arguments of Defenders, 5848-5850  
   Henry Clay, 1459-1460

Tariff, 7021-7024  
   Customs Duties, 1793  
   Import and Export Duties, 1793  
   Specific Duties, 1793  
   Ad Valorem Duties, 1793  
   Purposes of Tariffs, 7021  
   Tariff Laws of the United States, 7022-  
     7024  
   [See Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Free Trade, 2604  
 Reciprocity, 6022  
 Subsidy, 6894-6895  
 Taxation, 7032-7034  
   Direct Taxes, 7032  
     Poll Tax, 7032, 5714  
     Real Estate Taxes, 7032  
     Income Tax, 3374-3375  
     Inheritance Tax, 3451-3452  
     Sales Tax, 6331-6332  
     Single Tax, 6621-6622  
   Indirect Taxes, 7032  
     Customs Duties, 1793  
     Excise Duties, 3483  
   Theory of Taxation, 7033  
     Obligation of the Individual to Con-  
       tribute, 7033  
   Taxation in Practice, 7033  
     Work of Assessors, 7033, 457  
     How the Tax Rate Is Determined, 7033  
   Mathematics of Taxes, 7033-7034

### Economic Miscellany

**National Debts**, 4813-4814  
**Thrift**, 7160-7162  
   Comprehensive Meaning of the Term, 7161  
   American Society for Thrift, 7161  
   Teaching of Thrift, 7162  
   Individual and Family Budgets, 7162, 1001  
**Income Distribution**, 3373-3374  
   Expenditures of the Average Family, 3373  
   Distribution among Individuals in the United  
     States (Chart), 2100  
   Waste, 3374

**Pauperism**, 5421  
**Noted Economists**  
   Adam Smith, 6647  
   Thomas R. Malthus, 4242  
   David Ricardo, 6106  
   John Stuart Mill, 4485-4486  
   Karl Marx, 4309  
   Henry George, 2752  
   Francis Walker, 7582  
   [See Outline on *Economists*, under *Biography*,  
   in this GUIDE.]



# EDUCATION AND CHILD TRAINING

## Introductory

### Definitions of Education

Development of All the Powers of Man, 2112

A Process of Directed Development, 3789

Training Obtained in Educational Institutions, 2112

### Applications of the Term

Broad Sense—Education Extends through Life, 2112

Restricted Sense—Confined to the School Age, 2112

Present and Former Views of Education, 2112  
[See Section on *History of Education*, below.]

## The Child's Early Years

### Pre-School and Primary Phase of Development

#### Pre-School Life

The Baby, 554-560, 1370-1372

Pre-Natal Precautions, 554

Child Like the Parent, 3158-3159

The Baby's Heritage—Right to Be Well Born, 554

Biography of a Baby, 1370

Care of the Baby

Cleanliness, Fresh Air and Sleep, Feeding, 555-557

Typical Progress, Physical and Mental 558

Suggestions to Mothers, 554-558

Baby Clinics, 558

Average Age of Children for Walking and Talking, 558

Saving the Babies—an Educational Movement, 554

American Association for Study and Prevention of Infant Mortality, 554

#### The Growing Child, 1369-1374

Development of the Child, 1369

Influences of Heredity, 3159-3161

Galton's Law of Ancestral Inheritance, 3159

Mendel's Law, 3159

Inheritance of Intellectual and Moral Traits, 3160-3161

Racial Distinctions, 3160

Development of the Senses, 1370-1371

Muscular Control, 1372

First Means of Expression, 1372

Measurements of the Perfect Child, 558

Differences in Mental Capacity, 3160

Distribution of Temperament, 3161

Basis of Social Traits, 3161

Child-Guidance Clinics, 4400

Federal Children's Bureau, 554, 1376-1377

Directors—Julia Lathrop, Grace Abbott, 3885, 1376

- Societies for Children, 1376  
 Nursery Schools  
     Development, Function, and Organization, 5117-5118  
 [See *Montessori Method*, below.]  
**The Kindergarten Child**, 3776-3791  
     Age for Instructive Play, 2624, 3780  
     Filling the Gap between Home and School, 3776  
     Purpose and Method of the Kindergarten, 3776-3777  
     Friedrich Froebel, the Founder, 2624, 3776  
     The Kindergarten in American Life, 3785  
     Support of William T. Harris, 3786, 3052  
     How the Kindergarten Meets the Children's Needs, 3777  
     Purposes of the Games, 3777-3778  
     Purposes of the Work with Materials, 3778-3779  
     Other Needs Met by the Kindergarten—Needs for Out-of-Door Work and Play, for a Vocabulary, for Songs, 3779-3880  
     The Kindergarten in the Home, 3780  
     Play Material for Little Children—Toys, Colored Beads, Pegboard, and Sand, 3782  
     Child's Play from Two to Four Years, 3782-3783  
     Froebel Material vs. Ordinary Toys, 3783  
     Play Material for Children from Four to Six Years, 3783-3784  
     Expensive vs. Home-Made Toys and Gifts, 3785  
     Some Results of Kindergarten Training, 3787  
     Its Value to Mothers, 3788  
     Principles of Kindergarten Procedure, 3788  
**The Montessori Method**, 4623-4628  
     Maria Montessori (Biography), 4623  
     How the Method Developed, 4623  
     The "Children's House" in Rome, 4624  
     Spread of the Method, 4624  
     Treatment of Children and Correction of Careless Movements, 4624  
     Use of the Frames, 4624-4627  
     Education of the Senses, 4625  
     Apparatus Used: Cylinders, the Long Stair, the Broad Stair, the Tower, the Geometric Insets, and the Colors, 4625-4626  
     Relation of Senses to Environment, 4626  
     Scientific Aspects of the Method, 4627-4628  
**The School Child**, 1372-1374, 2112-2116, 2118-2126  
     Development of Age Six, 1372  
     School, Home, and Playground Equally Important, 1373  
     Duty of Parent and Teacher, 1373, 2112  
     Influence of Environment, 2115, 2275-2276, 3159-3160, 5118  
     Hereditary Factors in Development of Character, 3160  
     Hyperkinetics, and Hypokinetics, 3161  
     General and Special Training, 3160  
     Intelligence Tests, 3160, 4399-4403  
         What Is a Mental Test, 4399  
         Why Intelligence Tests Are Used in Schools, 4400  
         National Intelligence Tests of the National Research Council, 4400, 4816  
         Tests in Child-Guidance Clinics, 4400  
         Galton's Suggestion of the Test Method, 4401  
         Binet-Simon Intelligence Method and Scale, 4400-4402  
         Improvements by Terman, Kuhlmann, and Herring, 4402  
         The Stanford Revision, 4402  
         The "Intelligence Quotient" (IQ), 3160, 4402  
         Uses and Value of the Test Method, 4400, 4402-4403  
     The Exceptional Child, 1374, 4402  
         Results of Tests, 4402  
     Faults of Juveniles and Some Remedies  
**Anger in Childhood**, 282, 284  
**Behavior in Childhood** (as Affected by Gland Development), 1374-1375  
**Dishonesty in Children**, 1962-1964  
     Causes of Falsification, 1962-1963  
     Misinterpretation of Facts, 1963  
     Dealing with Extreme Cases of Lying and Stealing, 1964  
**Fear in Childhood**, 2383-2385  
     Effect of Threats and Wrong Training, 2383-2384  
     Remedy, 2384  
     Helping the Timid Little Girl, 2385  
     The Inferiority Complex, 2386  
**Mental Conflict**, Cause of Misconduct in the Young, 4395-4396  
**Troublesome Habits in Childhood**, 2998-2999  
**Character Training**, or Character Building.  
 [See section under that title, Part Two, in this GUIDE.]

## General Public Education

(IN THE UNITED STATES)

- The Story of Schools**, 6417-6428, 2112-2123, 3716-3719  
     Founders of the Republic Interested in Schools, 6417  
     Results of Education in the United States, 6418  
     Education Free, from Kindergarten to University, 6418  
     All Public Schools under State Control, 6418, 6420  
     No National School System, but an American System, 6420  
     Compulsory Education, 2115-2116  
     Rural Education, 6252-6253

- Elementary and Secondary Education, 2116  
 Higher Education, 2116  
 Vocational and Continuation Education, 2117-2118  
 Measuring Results of Education, 2118  
 School Organization of the Future, 3719  
 United States Office (formerly Bureau) of Education, 6420  
 [See *Educational Organizations*, later in this Outline.]  
 National Educational Association, 6420  
 [See *Educational Organizations*.]  
**Elementary, or Common, Schools**, 2116, 6418-6421  
 The First American Common School, 6418  
 Dame Schools of the Colonial Period, 6419  
 Friends' Public School, Philadelphia, 5464  
 Elementary Instruction Given in the Modern School, 6418, 2116  
 Years, or Grades, of Work, 6418, 2116  
 Tendency to Reorganize Grades, 2116  
 Improvement of Elementary Schools, 3717  
 School Credits for Home Work, 6425-6426  
 The "Fundamental Arts"—Reading, Writing, and Arithmetic, 2115, 6418  
 Reading—a Basic Subject of Study, 6008-6009  
 Many Methods of Teaching, 6008  
 Reading Materials, 6009  
 Children's Preferences, 6009  
 Oral and Silent Reading, 6009  
 Tests of Reading, 6009, 2122  
 Selections for Study, 6009-6012  
 The Village Blacksmith, 6010  
 Incident of the French Camp, 6011  
 Spelling, 6750, 6752-6756, 5262-5263, 233-234  
 Origin of the Alphabet, 233-234  
 The Spelling Vocabulary, 6752, 6754  
 Results of Research Work, 6752-6755  
 Cook and O'Shea's List of Words in Common Use, 6753-6754  
 Use of Rule in Spelling, 6755  
 Standard Tests of Spelling, 2122-2123  
 Use of Typewriter by Children an Aid to Spelling, 7901  
 Orthography, 5262  
 Phonetics, 5571  
 Simplified Spelling, 6755, 5262-5263, 5571-5572, N. E. A. List of Reformed Spellings, 6755  
 Simplified Spelling Board Recommendations, 6755  
 Writing, 5458-5460, 7898-7901, 6572-6573, 3175-3177, 1784-1785  
 Ancient and Medieval Writing, 7898, 233-234  
 Picture Writing, 7898, 7900  
 The First Phonetic Alphabet, 7900  
 Hieroglyphics, 3175-3177  
 The Egyptian Symbols, 3176  
 Cuneiform Inscriptions, 1784-1785  
 [See Outline on *Language*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Instruments Used for Writing, 5450-5455, 7339  
 Pens, 5450-5451  
 Pencils, 5451-5455  
 Stylus, 5450, 7900  
 Typewriter, 7339-7341  
 Penmanship, 5458-5460, 2121  
 Illustrated Exercises, 5459-5460  
 Measuring Scale for Handwriting, 2120-2121, 5458  
 Ayres Scale, 2121  
 Thorndike's Scale, 2120-2121  
 Standards of Quality and Speed  
 Freeman's and Starch's, 2122  
 Ashbaugh and Newcomb's Iowa Standards, 2122  
 Shorthand Writing, 6572-6574  
 Typewriter Replacing the Pen, 7900-7901, 7339-7340  
 Arithmetic, 383-388, 4343-4345  
 [See Outline on *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Bookkeeping, 838-850, 17-18  
 Nature Study and Elementary Science, 4823-4833  
 Nature and the Child, 4823  
 Aims of Nature Study, 4824  
 Its Value to the Child, 4824-4825  
 Drawing as an Aid, 4825  
 What a Garden Teaches, 2684, 4825  
 The Teacher: Mental and Material Equipment Required, 4825-4826  
 School Equipment for Nature Study, 4826-4827  
 Suggestions for Study, 4827-4830  
 Subjects for Study, 4828-4830  
 Birds, 751-770, 2385-2386  
 Fish, 2440-2445  
 Frogs and Their Relatives, 2625-2626, 4830-4831, 652  
 Insects, 3459-3464  
 Mammals, 4242-4243  
 Plant Life, 5646-5648  
 Reptiles, 6062, 6659-6661  
 Rocks and Soil, 2732-2745, 6153, 6677-6678  
 Sky and Weather, 6636, 7686-7692, 1482-1483, 4418-4419  
 Stars, 6804-6809  
 Toys and Inventions (to illustrate Elementary Science principles), 4830, 7229-7231, 3493-3500, 4368-4370  
 Books on Nature Study and Elementary Science 4830, 4832  
**High Schools**, 2116-2117, 6421, 6422  
 Secondary Education in the United States, 2116, 6421  
 The First High School, 6421  
 Early School Laws of Massachusetts, 6421  
 The Grammar Schools of New England, 6421  
 The Colonial Academies, 6421  
 Free Public High Schools Established, 6422  
 Development in the Nineteenth Century, 3717, 6422



- Variety of Curricula, 2116, 6422
- Secondary Education in Europe, 2116
- The American System, 2117
- Graduation Statistics, 6422
- The Typical Four-Year School, 6422
- Junior High Schools**, 3716-3719, 2116
  - Reorganization of Grades, 2116
  - Recommendation of the Committee of Ten, N. E. A. (1890), 3717
  - First Junior High Schools Established (1910), 3717
  - Present Field of the Junior High, 3717
  - Changes in Educational Psychology and Philosophy, 3718
  - Progress of Reorganization, 3718-3719
  - School Organization of the Future, 3719
- Consolidated Schools**, 6423-6424, 3719
  - Disadvantage of the Rural School, 6423
  - Growth of the Consolidation Movement, 6424
- All-Year Schools**, 228-230
  - A Modern Development of Vacation Schools, 228
  - Purposes and Plan, 229
  - Merits of the All-Year Plan, 229
  - Objections to the Plan, 230
- Vacation Schools**, 6424, 228-229
  - The First Summer Schools in Boston, 228
  - Public Vacation Schools Established in Newark, N. J., 229
  - Aim of the Schools, 229, 6424
  - Playground an Important Factor, 229, 6424
  - Regular School Work Offered, 229, 6424
- Continuation, or Part-Time, Schools**, 1645-1646, 2117
  - Education for Employed Children, 1645
  - A Perplexing Problem, 2117
  - Part-Time School Laws, 1645
  - Aims of the Schools, 1646
- Evening Schools**, 6423
  - Purpose of the Schools, 6423
  - Three Classes of Pupils, 6423
  - Evening Classes of Private and Philanthropic Institutions, 6423
- Moonlight Schools**, 4643-4644, 3363-3364
  - [See *Special Schools*, later in this Outline.]
- Vocational Schools**, 2117, 7556-7559, 7052-7053, 6420
- Administration of the Public-School System**, 6418-6421
  - The Early District System, 6420
  - All Public Schools under State Control, 6418
  - Organization in Various States, 6420
  - State Department of Public Instruction, 6420
  - City Board of Education (or School Board), 6421
  - County Superintendent of Schools, 6421
  - Local Boards in Rural Districts, 6421
- Laws Affecting Education**
  - Order of the General Court of Massachusetts (1647), 6418
  - School Law of Connecticut (1650), 6418
  - Early School Laws of Massachusetts, 6421
  - William Penn's Charter, 6418, 5461, 5463
  - Penn's Frame of Government, 5461, 5464
  - Chief Justice Marshall's Decision in the Dartmouth College Case, 1830
  - Federal Land-Grant (Morrill) Act of 1862, 89, 5884
  - Michigan Supreme Court Decision in the Kalamazoo Case (1862), 6422
  - Second Morrill Act (1890), 89
  - Nelson Amendment (1907), 89
  - Smith-Hughes Act (1917), 89, 6420
  - Teacher-Tenure Laws, 7049
  - Public-School Laws of Various States. [See *Education*, in THE WORLD BOOK article on each state.]
- Support of the School System**, 6418-6420
  - Before the Revolutionary War, 6419
  - After the Revolution, 6419
    - State and Local Taxation for Schools, 6419
  - The Ordinance of 1787 and Its Effect, 6418-6419, 5242
  - Present Apportionment of State General School Funds, 6419-6420
  - Recent Federal Aid to Schools, 6420
    - The Smith-Hughes Act, 6420
    - Federal Board of Vocational Education Created, 6420
- Standardization of Schools**, 6421
- Compulsory Education**, 2115-2116
  - First Compulsory School Law in the United States (Massachusetts), 2115
  - Measurement of Educational Progress, 2115-2116
- Illiteracy**, 3363-3366, 2113-2116
  - Various Standards, Based on Ability to Read or Write, 3363
    - United States Census Bureau Rule, 3363, 2113
  - Percentages of Illiteracy (Graphic Tables), 2113, 2114
  - Where Low Percentages Prevail, 2115-2116
  - Percentages of Elementary School Population, 2116
  - Illiteracy in the United States, 3365, 3366, 6418
    - State Percentages Shown in Map Form, 3365
    - Great Reduction among Negroes, 4871
  - Illiteracy in the Canadian Provinces, 3366
  - Elimination of Illiteracy, 3363-3366, 6418
    - Origin of Elimination Work in Kentucky, 3363-3364, 4643
    - Moonlight Schools, 3364, 4643
    - World War Development, 3364
      - Extent of Illiteracy Discovered by the Draft, 3364
  - Post-War Progress, 3364
    - Illiteracy now Fought in Many Countries, 3364
    - Work of the United States Office (formerly Bureau) of Education, 3364
  - Elimination Work among the Indians, 3364

Among the Negroes, 4871  
**Child Training**, 1369, 1372, 2112, 5369-5370  
 Parental Responsibility, 2112, 1373  
 Training Should Be Appropriate to Individual Child, 3160  
 Home Bookkeeping for Children, 849-850  
 Teaching Value of Money, 850  
 Relations of Teacher and Parent, 2118  
 Relations of Parents and Teachers to Play, 5657  
 Necessity of Play, 5656  
 Training the Character, 1304-1307  
 Inheritance of Moral Traits, 3160-3161

Influence of Great Educators, 1305  
 Thomas Arnold, 420, 1305  
 William R. George and the George Junior Republic, 1305, 2753-2754  
 Develop the Child's Imagination by Use, 1305  
 Encourage Consideration for Others, 1305, 1306  
 A First Step in Moral Training, 1306  
 Encourage Thoughtfulness as to Effects of Actions, 1306  
 History of Human Progress Interesting and Valuable to Children, 1307-1308

## Hygiene of Education

**Promoting Principles of Health in Home and School**, 2123  
**Health and Physical Development**, 2115  
**Making a Good Start in Life**, 2123  
**Importance of Personal Health Habits**, 2123  
**Health the Only Real Wealth**, 2123  
**Medical Inspection in Schools**, 6425, 2115  
 Treatment and Correction of Defects, 6425  
 The School Nurse, 6425, 5116, 2115  
 Clinical Psychologists Employed, 2115  
**Physical Defects and Diseases**, 1373-1374, 2123-2126  
 Adenoids, 45, 2123-2124  
 Defective Teeth, 2125, 7053-7056  
 Orthodontia, 2125  
 Some Results of Bad Teeth, 2125  
 Teeth and Their Growth, 7055  
 Diseased Tonsils, 45, 2124-2125, 7210  
 Sore Throat a Danger Signal, 2124  
 Cryptic Tonsils, 2125  
 Eye Defects, 464, 791, 1373, 2125, 2352  
 Astigmatism, 464, 6749  
 Test for Astigmatism, 465  
 Atrophy of the Optic Nerve, 792  
 Cataract, 791  
 Conjunctivitis, 791  
 Ectropion, 2102  
 Farsightedness, 6749

Glaucoma, 791  
 Myopia (Nearsightedness), 792, 4784  
 Ophthalmia neonatorum, 791  
 Trachoma, 791  
 Use of Glasses, 792  
 Report of the Eyesight Conservation Council, 2354  
 Education of the Blind, 792-794  
**Ear Defects**, 1846-1847, 1373, 2075  
 Care of the Ear, 2078  
 Medical Attention for School Children with Defective Hearing, 1848  
 Education of the Deaf, 1847-1849  
**Fatigue and Nervousness**, 1373-1374, 2125, 2380-2382  
 Signs of Fatigue, 1374  
 Treatment, 2382  
 Causes, 2380-2381  
**Nervous Disorders of Children**, 2125-2126  
 Epilepsy, 2126  
 Habit Spasms, 2126  
 Morbid Fears and Night Terrors, 2126  
 St. Vitus Dance, 2126  
 Stammering and Stuttering, 2126, 6795-6796  
 Development of Speech Disorder, 6795  
 Treatment, 6796  
**Mental Handicaps**, 4397-4399

## School Subjects

**Algebra**, 206-216  
 [See *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Anatomy**, 273-274  
 [See *Structure of the Body*, in *Anatomy*, *Physiology*, and *Hygiene*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Arithmetic**, 383-388  
 [See *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Astronomy**, 467-478  
 [See *Astronomy*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Bookkeeping**, 838-850  
 [See *Business College*, in this Outline.]  
**Botany**, 881-892  
 [See *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Calculus**, 1074  
 [See *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]

**Chemistry**, 1328-1341  
 [See *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Civil Government**, 1442-1443  
 [See *Community Civics*, in Part Two, and *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Cookery**, 1649-1650  
 [See *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Drawing**, 422  
 [See *Art*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Geography**, 2721-2731  
 [See *Geography*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Geology**, 2732-2745  
 [See *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Geometry**, 2745-2749  
 [See *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]

- Grammar**, 2890-2893  
 [See *Language*, in this GUIDE.]
- Home Economics**, 3205-3210  
 [See *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Household Arts**, 3262-3264  
 [See *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Industrial Art**, 3433-3444  
 [See *Art*, in this GUIDE.]
- Language**, 3858-3869  
 [See *Language*, in this GUIDE.]
- Literature**, 4047-4053  
 [See *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]
- Mineralogy**, 4498-4500  
 [See *Geography* and *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Music**, 4759-4776  
 [See *Music*, in this GUIDE.]
- Nature Study**, 4823-4833  
 [See this Outline.]
- Penmanship**, 5458-5460  
 [See *Writing*, in this Outline.]
- Philology**, 5565-5566  
 [See *Language*, in this GUIDE.]
- Philosophy**, 5566-5567  
 [See *Philosophy*, in this GUIDE.]
- Physics**, 5594-5597  
 [See *General Science*, in Part Two, and *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Physiology**, 5598  
 [See *Functions of the Body*, in *Anatomy*, *Physiology* and *Hygiene*, in this GUIDE.]
- Psychology**, 5865-5869  
 [See *Psychology*, in this GUIDE.]
- Reading**, 6006-6012  
 [See this Outline.]
- Rhetoric**, 6086  
 [See *Language*, in this GUIDE.]
- Sewing**, 6514-6519  
 [See *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Shorthand**, 6572-6574  
 [See this Outline.]
- Sociology**, 6671-6673  
 [See *Sociology*, in this GUIDE.]
- Spelling**, 6750, 6752-6755  
 [See this Outline.]
- Trigonometry**, 7268  
 [See *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Zoölogy**, 7980-7986  
 [See *Zoölogy*, in this GUIDE.]

### Special Schools and Instruction

- Adult Education**, 52-54  
 Range of Adult Education, 53  
 Many Instrumentalities Available, 53  
 University Extension and Correspondence Courses, 53, 7416-7417, 1699  
 Y. M. C. A. and Y. W. C. A. Classes, 7952-7954, 7954-7955  
 Evening and Continuation Schools, 6423, 1646  
 American Library Association, 53  
 Americanization, 249
- Blind**, Education of the, 792-794  
 Progress in the Nineteenth Century, 792  
 The Perkins Institution (Massachusetts School for the Blind), 793  
 Laura Bridgman's Case, 793, 955  
 Helen Keller's Case, 3751
- Books and Apparatus**, 793
- Business College**, 1039, 2127  
 Special Training for Commercial Life, 1039  
 High Schools and Colleges now Offer Commercial Courses, 1039  
 Subjects of Special Study in Business Colleges
- Bookkeeping and Accounting, 838-851, 17-18  
 Classes of Accounts: Assets, Liabilities, Proprietary Interest, Income, and Expense, 844  
 Labor-Saving Books, 848-849  
 Partnership Bookkeeping, 845  
 Corporation Bookkeeping, 845-846  
 Cost Accounting, 18  
 Farm Accounting, 18, 848  
 Accountancy Discussed as a Profession, 17-18
- Commercial Arithmetic, 383-388  
 [See Outline on *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Commercial Geography, 2728  
 [See Outline on *Geography*, in this GUIDE.]
- Commercial Law, 1584, 3897-3899  
 [See Outline on *Law*, in this GUIDE.]
- Languages (French, German, or Spanish), 3869-3871  
 [See Outline on *Language*, in this GUIDE.]
- Political Economy, 2098-2101  
 [See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Shorthand Writing, 6572-6574  
 Standard Systems, 6572-6573  
 Other Systems, 6573  
 Pitmanic Shorthand, 6573-6574  
 Gregg Shorthand, 6574  
 A, B, C Systems (Abbreviated Long-hand), 6574  
 History of Shorthand, 6574  
 Typewriting, 7339-7340, 7900-7901
- Correspondence Schools**, 1699, 7416  
 University Extension Movement, 1699, 7416-7417  
 Courses Given by Mail, 7416  
 [See *University*, later in this Outline.]
- Deaf-Mutes**, Education of, 1847-1849  
 Jerome Cardan's Work in the 16th Century, 1847  
 First School for Deaf-Mutes, 1847  
 Progress in the Nineteenth Century, 1847  
 Helen Keller's Remarkable Case, 1849, 3751  
 Deaf and Dumb Alphabets 1847-1848

- Lip-Reading for Deafened Adults, 1848
- Methods of Instruction, 1848
  - The Bell System, 1848
  - A. Melville Bell and Alexander Graham Bell, 703
  - Use of Sign Method Decreasing, 1848
- Feeble-Minded, Education of the, 2391, 4398
  - Three Classes of Mental Defectives, 2391
  - Methods of Training, 2391
  - Tests of Mental Deficiency, 4398
  - Detection of the Feeble-Minded in School, 4398
- Government Schools, 6427-6428
  - Alaska, 167-168, 2127-2128, 6427
  - Schools Administered by United States Office (formerly Bureau) of Education, 6427
  - Every Teacher a Social Worker, 6427
  - District of Columbia, 6428
  - Schools Partly Maintained by Government, 6428, 1970
  - Guam, 2972, 6427
  - Hawaii, 3078, 2127, 6427
    - Mission Schools Since 1820, 3078
  - Panama Canal Zone, 6427, 5336
  - Philippine Islands, 5549, 5552, 6427
    - Importation of American School Teachers, 5552
    - Normal School Maintained by Government, 6426
    - University of the Philippines, 5552
  - Porto Rico, 5751, 2127, 6427
    - Elementary Schools on the American Plan, 5751
    - Schools for Indians, 3408
- Moonlight Schools, 4643-4644, 3363-3364
- Normal Schools, 6426-6427
  - State, County, and City Systems for Training Teachers, 6426
- Open-Air Schools, 6424
  - For Undernourished, Anaemic, and Tubercular Children, 6424
- Parochial Schools, 6428
  - Term Applied to Elementary Schools Only, 6428
- Physical Education, 5587-5593, 485-487, 2115, 2991
  - Development through the Centuries, 5589-5992
    - Reasons for Body Training, 5589
    - Greek and Roman Systems, 5589
      - The Olympian Games, 5196, 2679
    - In the Period of Chivalry, 5592
  - Modern Developments in Europe, 5592-5593
    - Great Writers Justify Physical Education, 5592
      - Locke, 4075
      - Luther, 4158-4159
      - Milton, 4491-4494
      - Montaigne, 4609
      - Pestalozzi, 5513-5514
      - Rabelais, 5927-5928
      - Rousseau, 6218
    - Johanna Basedow and His School at Dessau, 5592
    - Other Pioneers in Modern Physical Education, 5592
    - England's National Program of Sports and Games, 5592
  - American Progress in Physical Education, 5593
    - Work of Three German Refugees (Beck, Follen, and Leiber), 5593
    - Catherine Beecher's Calisthenics for Girls, 5593
    - Dio Lewis and His Work, 5593
    - Progress in Colleges (Amherst, Harvard, and Yale), 5593
    - Since the War of Secession
      - Dudley A. Sargent's Work at Harvard, 5593
      - The North American Turnerbund, 5593
      - Turnvereins, 7321
    - Department of Physical Education in Y. M. C. A. Training School Organized (Luther Gulick, Director), 5593
    - The Folk Dance Movement, 5593
    - Boy Scouts, Camp Fire Girls, and Girl Scouts Organized, 5593, 909, 1114
    - Physical Education Made Compulsory in Most States, 5593
  - Modern Emphasis on Physical Development, 2115
  - Rational Supervision of Play and Games, 2115, 2674
  - Value and Aim of Play, 2674-2675
  - Public Games, Value of, 2679
  - Athletics, 485-487
  - "Natural" Physical Education, Aims and Objectives of, 5587-5589
  - Simple Home Exercises in Physical Culture, 5590-5591
  - Physical Education Program, 5588-5589
    - Natural Activities, 5588
      - Play, 5655-5657
      - Athletic and Dramatic Games, 5587
      - Dancing, 1818
      - Swimming, 6962, 6965-6967
      - Calisthenics, 1098
      - Camping, 1109-1112, 912, 2815
      - Scouting, 912, 2814
    - Free Play and Games, 5588, 2674
    - Athletics and Sports, 5588, 484
      - Baseball, 633-639
      - Basket Ball, 639-641
      - Football, 2522-2528
      - Golf, 2864-2868
      - Hockey, 3189-3190
      - Indoor Baseball, 637-639
      - Tennis, 7103-7105
      - Volley Ball, 7564-7565
    - Club Activities, 5588
    - Health and Medical Examinations before Activities, 5589
    - Athletic Activities Suitable and Unsuitable for Girls (List), 5589

**Safety Education**, 15-16  
 Accident Prevention, 15  
 Safety Instruction in Schools, 15  
 National Safety Council, 4819  
 Warning Which Should Be Heeded, 16

**Special-Type Schools and Classes**, 6424-6425  
**Teachers' Colleges, or School of Education**, 6427  
**Technical Schools**, 6428  
**Trade Schools**, 6428, 7052

### Modern Methods in Education

**Coeducation**, 1525-1526, 1537-1538  
 Earliest Schools for Boys Only, 1525  
 Coeducation Established Early in America, 1525  
 Arguments against Coeducation, in High Schools, 1525-1526  
 Arguments for Coeducation, 1526  
 Coeducation in Colleges, 1526  
 Women in Medical Colleges, 1538  
**Correlation of Studies**, 1699  
 Arrangement of Studies in Their True Relations, 1699  
 Dalton School, or Laboratory, Plan, 1813-1814, 6267  
**Deductive Method of Teaching**, 1869  
**Education Week**, 2131  
 Week of November 18 to 24 Selected, 2131  
 Sponsors National Education Association, 4814-4815  
 American Legion, 250-252  
 United States Bureau of Education, 2127-2128  
 Suggested Program for the Week, 2131  
**Elective Studies**, 2165  
 Freedom of Selection Allowed, 2165  
 First Offered by University of Virginia, 2165, 7536-7537  
**Gary School Plan**, 2608, 5653  
 [See *Platoon School*, below.]  
**Measuring Results of Education**, 2118-2123  
 New Relation of Teachers and Parents, 2118  
 How Is the Child Progressing? 2118  
 Methods of Grouping Pupils, 2119  
 Variations in Standards of Promotion, 2120  
 Work of Thorndike, Ayres, Blan, and Strayer, 2120  
 Why Educational Measurement Is Necessary, 2120  
 Measurement of Handwriting, 2120-2121  
 Thorndike's Scale, 2120  
 Ayres' Scale, 2121  
 Freeman's Standard of Quality and Speed, 2121-2122  
 Starch's Standards, 2122  
 Ashbaugh and Newcomb's Iowa Standard, 2122  
 Measurement of Composition, 2122  
 Hilligas' Scale, 2122  
 Ballou's Scale, 2122  
 Measurement of Arithmetic, 2122  
 Work of Rice, Stone, and Courtis, 2122  
 Measurement of Reading, 2122  
 Work of Gray, Kelley, Jones, Courtis, and Thorndike, 2122  
 Measurement of Spelling, 2122-2123

Work of Ayres, Buckingham, and Courtis, 2122-2123  
 Measuring High School Subjects, 2123  
 Work of Starch, Ballou, Monroe, and Breslich, 2123  
 Measurements a Check on Methods, 2123  
 Measurements Develop School Efficiency, 2123  
 Educational Surveys Indicate Public Interest in Measuring Results, 2123  
 [See *Mental Measurement*, below.]  
**Medical Inspection in Schools**, 6425  
**Mental Measurement**, 4399-4403  
 Mental Measurements Test Extent of Capacity, not of Achievement, 4399  
 Now an Important Branch of Psychology, 4399  
 Pioneer Work of Alfred Binet, 4399, 4401  
 The Binet Scale, 4400  
 [See *Measurement of Intelligence*, below.]  
 Improvements by American Psychologists, 4400  
 National Intelligence Tests of the National Research Council, 4400  
 Where Tests Are Used, 4400  
 Mental Measurement a Scientific Effort, 4401  
 [See *Measuring Results of Education*, above.]  
 Measurement of Intelligence, 4401  
 Francis Galton's First Suggestion, 4401  
 Binet-Simon Intelligence Scale (1908), 4401  
 Advantage of the Age-Grade Method, 4401-4402  
 Improvement of the Binet-Simon System, 4402  
 The "Intelligence Quotient" (IQ), 4402  
 Significance of Various Intelligence Quotients, 4402  
 Uses of Intelligence Tests, 4402 4403  
 Group Tests of Intelligence, 4403  
 [See *The School Child*, in this Outline.]  
**Moving Pictures in Education**, 4722-4724  
**Platoon School**, 5653-5654  
**Motivation of Teaching**, 7049-7051, 5834-5835  
**Project Method in Teaching**, 5834 5837  
 Meaning of "Project" and "Problem," 5834 5835  
 Project Method Included Problem, Motivation, Interest, 5835  
 Major Projects in Elementary Schools, 5835  
 I. Building a Farm on the Sand Table, 5836-5837  
 II. Building a Town on the Sand Table, 5837-5839  
 Subjects for Project Treatment, 5839

Lists Prepared by the State Department  
of Education of Wisconsin, 5839  
Supervised Study, 6938-6939  
The Pueblo Plan: Supervised Study in  
Pueblo, Colo., Schools, 6939  
The Batavia Plan: Periods of Supervised

Study to Supplement Class Instruction  
(Batavia, N. Y., Schools), 6939  
Unit Plan of Instruction, 7412-7413  
[See contents of Part Two of this GUIDE  
for exposition of the Unit Plan.]  
Winnetka Schools Technique, 7796-7797

## Higher Education

College, 1537-1538  
Use of Term "College" in United States, 1537  
Distinct from University, 1537  
Instruction Confined to Liberal Arts, 1537  
Universities Teach Professions Also, 1537,  
7414-7417  
[See *University*, later in this Outline.]  
Some Colleges Are Universities, 1537  
Tufts College, 876, 4326, 4372  
Colleges within Universities, 1537  
Use of Term "College" in Canada, 1537  
Collegiate Institutes, 1537  
Use of Term "College" in Europe, 1537  
Medieval Colleges, 1537  
College of Cardinals, 1537, 1196  
Colleges in University of Paris, 1537,  
5381  
The Sorbonne, 6689-6690  
Colleges of English Universities, 1537  
Oxford, 5280-5281  
Cambridge, 1103  
English Preparatory Schools, 1537  
Eton College, 2310  
First Colleges in America, 1537  
Harvard, 3066  
William and Mary, 7771  
Yale, 7924  
College of New Jersey (Princeton), 5816  
King's College (Columbia), 1570  
Franklin's Academy (University of Penn-  
sylvania), 5465  
Colleges for Women, 1537  
Mount Holyoke, 4697  
Mary Lyon, Founder, 4697-4698  
Smith, 6652  
Sophia Smith, Founder, 6652  
Wellesley, 7705-7706  
Henry Fowle Durant, Founder, 7706  
Barnard, 1571  
Frederick A. P. Barnard, Founder, 1571  
Radcliffe, 3068  
Ann Radcliffe, 3068  
Coeducation in American Colleges, 1526,  
1537  
Student Enrollment, 1537  
Selective Standards for Students, 1537-1538  
Intelligence Tests Used, 1538, 4399-4403  
Medical Colleges, Enrollment in, 1538  
Junior Colleges, 6422-6423  
Fellowship, 2392  
[See *Scholarships and Fellowships*, below.]  
Fraternity, 2599-2600  
Greek-Letter Societies, 2599

Origin at William and Mary College, 2599,  
5534, 7771  
Phi Beta Kappa, 2599, 5534-5535, 7771  
Oldest College Fraternity, 5534  
Motto Adopted by Founders, 2599  
Character Changed from Secret Society  
to Honorary Fraternity, 2599, 5534  
Organization of Fraternities, 2599-2600  
Sigma Xi, 5535  
Views Regarding Fraternities, 2600  
Princeton Alone Excludes Them, 2600  
An Important Social Factor in American  
College Life, 2600  
High-School Fraternities, 2600  
Sorority, 6691  
Corresponds to Fraternity for Men, 6691  
Higher Education for Negroes, 4871  
Educational Work of the Freedmen's Bureau,  
4871, 2602  
Howard University Established, 3266,  
4871  
Industrial Schools Established, 4871  
Hampton Normal and Agricultural In-  
stitute, 3030  
Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute,  
157, 7329, 7636, 4687  
Booker T. Washington, 157, 7634, 7636  
Robert R. Moton, 4686-4687  
Appropriations for Vocational Instruction  
under Morrill Act, 89  
Agricultural and Industrial Work, 4871  
General Education Board, 2714  
Southern Educational Board, 4871  
Government Extension Services, 104-105,  
2127  
Atlanta University, 2755  
Fisk University, 2447  
Clinton B. Fisk, 2447  
Howard University, 3266  
Special Funds for Negro Education, 2131,  
6206, 6639  
Phelps Stokes Fund, 2131  
Rosenwald Fund, 6206  
Julius Rosenwald, 6205-6206  
Slater Fund, 2131, 6639  
John F. Slater, 6639  
[See *Educational Endowments*, later in this  
Outline.]  
Reduction of Illiteracy among Negroes, 4871  
Negro Development in Literature and the  
Arts, 4871  
Colleges and Universities for Negroes  
Fisk University, 2447

- Hampton Normal and Agricultural Institute, 3030  
 Howard University, 3266  
 Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute, 157  
 [For other schools for the colored, see the subhead *Education* in the state articles on Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Georgia, Kentucky, Louisiana, Maryland, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia.]
- Land-Grant Colleges, 89**  
**Scholarships and Fellowships, 6415-6417, 2392**  
 Nature of Scholarships Offered, 6415  
 Sources of Information Regarding Scholarships, 6415  
     National Research Council, 6415, 4816, 4819  
     Institute of International Education, 6415, 6416  
     Smith College, 6415, 6652  
     State Boards of Education, 6420  
     United States Office (formerly Bureau) of Education, 2127  
 Rhodes Scholarships, 6099, 6416  
     Established by Cecil Rhodes, 6097-6098  
     Three Years' Study at Oxford University, Provided for Selected Students, 6099, 5280  
     Apportionment of Scholarships, 6099  
     Purposes of the Founder, 6099  
     Selection of Scholars, 6099  
 Other International Scholarships, 6416-6417  
     Henry P. Davidson Fund, 6416  
     Foreign Study Scholarships, 6416  
     Penfield Foundation, 6416  
     Georgetown University Scholarships, 6416  
**University, 7414-7417, 1537**  
     Term Loosely Used in United States, 7415  
     Alma Mater, 230  
     Enrollment in Universities and Colleges, 1537  
     Usual Requirements for Admission, 7414-7415  
     Usual Departments of Colleges, 7415  
     Additional Departments in Larger Universities, Schools, or Colleges, 7415  
         Science, 6433-6434  
         Mathematics, 4343-4345  
         Theology (except in State Universities), 7142, 6050-6053  
         Education, 2112-2127, 6417-6428  
         Commerce, 1582-1583  
         Agriculture, 88-106  
         Engineering, 2237-2242  
         Law, 3897-3899  
         Medicine, 4375-4377  
         Music, 4759-4776  
         Journalism, 3703  
         Dentistry, 1903-1905  
         Pharmacy, 5531-5533, 2039  
 State Universities, 7415-7416  
 [See the division of *Education*, in each State article in THE WORLD BOOK.]
- European Universities, 7416  
 Examples: Berlin, 716  
     Bologna, 3574  
     Cambridge, 1103  
     Dublin, 2045  
     Edinburgh, 2108  
     Heidelberg, 3125-3126  
     Jena, 2773  
     Oxford, 5280-5281  
     Paris, 5381  
     Sorbonne, 6689-6690  
     Vienna, 7527  
 Two Types of Organization, 7416  
 Fagging, 2360  
**Journalism, Schools of, 3703, 7415**  
 Object: Training of Newspaper Writers, 3703  
 Branch of the English Department, 3703  
 Leaders in the Movement, 3703  
     University of Missouri, 3703, 4551  
         Bachelor of Journalism, 3703  
     Northwestern University, 3703, 370, 5076-5077  
         Joseph Medill School of Journalism, 3703, 4957  
     Columbia University, 3703, 1570-1571  
         School of Journalism Founded by Joseph Pulitzer, 3703, 5876-5877  
         Pulitzer Prizes, 5877  
         Pulitzer Scholarship Fund, 5877  
**Medical Schools, 4372-4373**  
 Have Existed Since Hippocrates, 4372, 3182-3183  
 Modern Schools Usually Connected with Universities, 4372  
**University Extension, 7416-7417**  
 Three Plans for Extension Work, 7416  
 Origin of Extension Work, 7416  
 The Movement in America, 7416-7417  
     American Society for Extension of University Teaching, 7416  
     University of Pennsylvania, 7416, 5465  
     University of Chicago, 7416, 1366-1367  
     University of Wisconsin, 7416, 7803-7804  
 Extension Work in Canada, 7417  
**Colleges and Universities in the United States**  
 [For list of colleges and universities in each state, including state universities, see the subhead *Education* in the various state articles in THE WORLD BOOK.]  
**Colleges and Universities for White Students Described in THE WORLD BOOK in Alphabetical Order**  
     American University, 261  
     Amherst College, 261  
     Barnard College, 1571  
     Boston University, 880  
     Bowdoin College, 897-898  
     Brown University, 981-982  
     Bryn Mawr College, 989  
     Cambridge University, 1103

Catholic University of America, 1247  
 Chicago, University of, 1366-1367  
 Cincinnati, University of, 1429-1430  
 Clark University, 1456  
 College of the City of New York, 1538  
 Columbia University, 1570-1571  
 Cornell University, 1693  
 Dartmouth College, 1830  
 Edinburgh University, 2108  
 Eton College, 2310  
 Georgetown University, 2754  
 George Washington University, 2754  
 Girard College, 2813  
 Harvard University, 3066-3068  
 Johns Hopkins University, 3682  
 Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 4335  
 New York University, 4998

Northwestern University, 5076-5077  
 Notre Dame, University of, 5095  
 Oxford University, 5280-5281  
 Paris, University of, 5381  
 Princeton University, 5816-5817  
 Purdue University, 5884  
 Radcliffe College, 3068  
 Rugby School, 6237-6238  
 Smith College, 6652  
 Stanford University, 6801-6802  
 Syracuse University, 6987  
 Tulane University, 7289  
 Vanderbilt University, 7459  
 Vassar College, 7465  
 Wellesley College, 7705-7706  
 William and Mary College, 7771  
 Williams College, 7773-7774  
 Yale University, 7924-7926

### Educational Organizations and Agencies for Research

#### Academy, 13-14

Derivation of the Name, 13  
 Plato and Academies, 13, 5652-5653  
 Five Academies in the Institute of France, 3468  
 French Academy, 13, 3468  
 Organized by Richelieu (1635), 6115-6117  
 Academy of Inscriptions and Belles Lettres (the Little Academy), 3468  
 Academy of Sciences, 3468  
 Academy of Fine Arts, 3468  
 Academy of Moral and Political Science, 3468

#### Other European Academies, 13

#### American Academies, 13

American Philosophical Society (1743), 13  
 American Academy of Arts and Sciences (1780), 13  
 Academy of Natural Sciences (1812), 13  
 American Academy of Arts and Letters (1904), 13-14, 247  
 Typical of the Membership  
 Samuel L. Clemens, 1463-1464  
 Daniel C. French, 2606-2607  
 Joel Chandler Harris, 3052  
 William Dean Howells, 3267-3268  
 Henry James, 3614  
 Joseph Jefferson, 3645  
 Edward A. MacDowell, 4177-4178  
 Thomas Nelson Page, 5296  
 Theodore Roosevelt, 6185-6197  
 Augustus St. Gaudens, 6306-6307  
 Woodrow Wilson, 7778-7788

#### National Academy of Sciences, 4813

Sections of the Academy, 4813  
 Funds and Medals Established, 4813

#### Military Academy, United States, 4475-4477

Established at West Point (1802), 4475  
 Earl Kitchener's Tribute, 4475  
 Course of Study, 4475

#### Number and Distribution of Cadets, 4475

Examinations for Appointment, 4477  
 Pay of a Cadet, 4477  
 Scenes at West Point, 4475-4476  
 Naval Academy, United States, 4835-4839  
 Established at Annapolis (1845), 4835  
 How Nominations Are Made, 4835  
 Entrance Requirements and Studies, 4835  
 Midshipman's Pay and Expenses, 4835  
 Administration of the Academy, 4839  
 Scenes at Annapolis, 4836-4837

#### American Federation of Teachers, 7049

#### Office (Formerly Bureau) of Education, United States, 2127-2128

Bureau in Department of the Interior, 2127  
 Commissioner of Education Appointed, 2127  
 Commissioners Since 1867, 2128

Henry Barnard, 624-625  
 John Eaton, 2128  
 Nathaniel H. R. Dawson, 2128  
 William T. Harris, 3052  
 Elmer E. Brown, 2128  
 Philander P. Claxton, 2128  
 John J. Tigert, 2128  
 William J. Cooper, 2128

#### Divisions of the Office, 2127

Higher Education, 1537, 2116, 7414-7417  
 Rural Education, 6252-6253  
 City Schools, 6417-6428  
 Service, 2127

Industrial Education, 2117-2118, 3445, 7052-7053

Commercial Education, 2127

Home Economics, 3205-3210

Adult Education, 52-54

Foreign Education Systems, 2127

School Legislation, 2127

Physical Education and School Hygiene, 5587-5593, 2123-2126



- Alaska, 166-179  
 A Clearing House for Information on Education, 2127  
 Educational Surveys Made, 2127  
 How Information Is Disseminated, 2127  
 The "Biennial Survey of Education," 2127  
 Statistical Publications, 2127-2128  
 Annual Report of Commissioner of Education, 2128  
 Office Appropriations and Expenditures, 2128  
 Activities in Alaska, 2128  
 Schools, Boarding Schools, and Hospitals, 2128, 167-168  
 Reindeer Industry Supervised, 2128, 167-168  
**Carnegie Foundation.** [See *Educational Foundations*, below.]  
**Carnegie Libraries**, 1204, 3968-3970  
 Andrew Carnegie, Donor, 1202-1203  
 Growth of Public Library System Due to Carnegie, 1204, 3970  
 Carnegie Library Architecture, 1204  
 Total of Grants to Public Libraries, 3970  
 [See *Library*, below.]  
**Chautauqua**, 1322-1323  
 Growth of the Movement, 1322  
 The Chautauqua Institution, 1322  
 Founders of the Movement: Bishop John H. Vincent and Lewis Miller, 1322, 7530  
 The Summer Assembly, 1323  
 Chautauqua Literary and Scientific Circle, 1323  
**Smithsonian Institution**, 6652-6654  
 James Smithson, Founder, 6653-6654  
 Established by Congress (1846), 6652  
 Administration, 6652  
 Library, 6653  
 Field Explorations and Research, 6653  
 Government Bureaus Administered, 6653  
 Joseph Henry, 3147  
 Samuel P. Langley, 3857  
 John W. Powell, 5791  
**Educational Foundations**, 2128-2131, 1203-1204  
 Nature and General Purpose, 2128  
 Extent and Influence, 2128  
 Various Purposes of Foundations, 2128  
 Appropriations for Research, 2128  
 Foundations That Maintain Research Staffs, 2129  
 No Charitable Aid to Individuals or Emergency Relief, 2129  
 American Foundations for Education and Research, 2128  
 Carnegie Benefactions, 1203-1204, 2129-2130  
 Andrew Carnegie, 1202-1203  
 Amounts of Gifts, 1203  
 Commonwealth Fund, 2130  
 Mrs. Stephen V. Harkness, 2130  
 Milbank Memorial Fund, 2131  
 Mrs. Elizabeth Milbank Anderson, 2131  
 Rockefeller Benefactions, 2129, 6154  
 John D. Rockefeller, and Son, 6153-6154  
 Total of Gifts, 6154  
 Rosenwald Fund, 6206  
 Julius Rosenwald, 6205-6206  
 Russell Sage Foundation, 2130-2131  
 Russell Sage and Margaret O. S. Sage, 6206-6207  
 [See below, for further reference to the above benefactions and foundations.]  
 Barnes Foundation, 2131  
 Duke Endowment, 2131, 5054  
 James B. Duke, 5054  
 Washington Duke, 5054  
 Engineering Foundation, 2131  
 John S. Guggenheim Foundation, 2131  
 Julliard Musical Foundation, 2131  
 Albert Kahn Foundation, 2131  
 Phelps Stokes Fund and John F. Slater Fund (for Negro Education), 2131  
**Carnegie Benefactions**, 2129-2130  
 The Carnegie Corporation, 2130  
 Its Educational Purpose, 2130  
 Grants to Colleges and Libraries, 2130  
 To Teachers' Insurance and Annuity Association, 2130  
 National Academy of Sciences, 4813.  
 [See *Academy*, above.]  
 National Research Council, 4816, 4819  
 [See below.]  
 American School of Classical Studies (Athens), 2130  
 Institute of Economics, 2130  
 National Bureau of Economic Research, 2130  
 Institute for Research in Land Economics and Public Utilities, 2130  
**Carnegie Endowment for International Peace**, 1203, 2130  
**Carnegie Foundation for Advancement of Teaching**, 1203-1204, 2130  
 Educational Research Fund Added, 1203, 2130  
 Standards Set for Schools Benefited, 1204  
 The Carnegie Institution, 1204, 2130  
**Rockefeller Benefactions**, 2128-2129  
 General Education Board, 2129  
 [See below.]  
 Laura Spelman Rockefeller Memorial Fund, 2129  
**Rockefeller Foundation**, 2129, 6154  
 Object: To Promote Well-Being of Mankind, 6154  
 Promotes Public Health and Medical Education, 2129  
**Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research**, 2129, 6154-6155  
 Special Field: Prevention and Cure of Disease, 6154, 2129  
 Dr. Simon Flexner, Director, 6154, 4392

- Flexner's Serum, 4392  
 Crusades against Hookworm and Yellow Fever, 6155  
 University of Chicago (Rockefeller Gifts), 6154, 1367  
 Commonwealth Fund, 2130  
 Special Fields: Child Guidance, Mental Hygiene, and Child Health, 2130  
 Milbank Memorial Fund, 2131  
 Object: Improvement of Human Conditions, etc., 2131  
 Rosenwald Fund, 6206  
 Object: Negro Education in Rural Districts of the South, 6206  
 Russell Sage Foundation, 2130-2131, 6297  
 Object: Improvement of Social and Living Conditions, 2130  
**General Education Board**, 2129, 2714  
 Established for Promotion of Education in the United States, 2129  
 Large Contributions by John D. Rockefeller, 2129, 2714, 6154  
 Main Activities of the Board, 2129  
**International Education Board** (Gift by Rockefeller), 6154  
**National Education Association**, 4814-4815, 6422  
 American Normal School Association and National Superintendents' Association Added, and Present Name Adopted, 4814  
 Purpose: Association and Information of Teachers, 4815  
 Department of Superintendence Meets in February, 4815  
**National Research Council**, 4816, 4819  
 Purpose: Scientific Research for Benefit of Mankind, 4816  
**National Safety Council**, 4819, 16  
 Object: Promotion of Safety for the Individual, 4819  
 Accident Prevention, 15-16  
 Safety Education in the Schools, 15-16  
 "Learn Safety, Avoid Sorrow," facing 16  
**Parent-Teacher Associations**, 5369-5370  
 National Congress of Mothers, Organized by Mrs. Theodore W. Birney, 5369  
 National Congress of Parents and Teachers, 5370  
**Peabody Education Fund**, 5425  
 Object: Advancement of Education in the South, 5425  
 George Peabody, Donor, 5425  
**Regional Associations of Schools and Teachers**, 6422  
 Association of Colleges and Preparatory Schools of the Middle States and Maryland, 6422  
**Library**, 3967-3974, 1204  
 Definition and Derivation of Name, 3967  
 Alexandrian Library, 202  
 Private Libraries, 3967  
 Public Libraries, 3967-3970  
 [See *The Modern Public Library*, below.]  
 Free Reference Libraries, 3967  
 Boston Athenaeum Library, 876  
 John Crerar Library, Chicago, 1360  
 Newberry Library, Chicago, 1360  
 Peabody Institute Library, Baltimore, 4311  
 Pratt Institute Free Library, Brooklyn, 3967  
 Rev. Thomas Bray and Colonial Libraries, 3967  
 Franklin's Philadelphia Library, 3968, 5542  
 Oldest Subscription Library in America, 5542  
 Tax-Supported Free Libraries Originated in America, 3968  
 Carnegie Libraries, 3970, 1204  
 The Modern Public Library, 3968-3969  
 New York Public Library, 3968, 4988  
 Chicago Public Library, 1360  
 Philadelphia Free Library, 5541-5542  
 Boston Public Library, 876  
 Detroit Public Library, 1920  
 Cleveland Public Library, 1476  
 [See articles on other cities in *THE WORLD BOOK*.]  
 American Library Association, 252, 3968  
 Organization of Librarians, 3968  
 Membership, 252, 3968  
 Publications, 252  
 Library Science, 3968  
 Library Extension, 3969-3970  
 Public Libraries in Canada, 3970  
 Librarianship as a Profession, 3970-3972  
 Classification of Books, 3970  
 Schools for Training Librarians, 3970-3971  
 University of Chicago, Graduate Library School, 3972  
 Columbia University, School of Library Service, 3972  
 University of Michigan, Library School, 3972  
 University of Illinois, Library School, 3972  
 Library Commissions, 3972  
 Library of Congress, 3972-3974  
 Deposit of Copyright Books, 1671  
 Bibliothèque Nationale, 733  
 Copies of All Books Printed in France Deposited Since 1536, 733  
 British Museum, 969-970  
 Sir Hans Sloane, 969, 6643  
 Other National Libraries, 3972  
 Library of the Vatican, 3972, 7466-7467  
 Founded by Pope Nicholas V, 3972  
**Museum**, 4753-4754  
 Meaning and Derivation of Name, 4753  
 Ptolemy's Museum and Library, 5870, 202  
 Nature of Museum Collections, 4753  
 Origin of Famous Museums, 4753-4754  
 The Louvre, Paris, 4137-4138  
 The Vatican, 7465-7468  
 British Museum, 969-971  
 [See *Library*, above.]

[Also, see Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]

American Museums, 4754  
 Smithsonian Institution, 6652-6654  
 National Museum of the United States, 4816, 4754  
 Metropolitan Museum of Art, 4754, 4988  
 Boston Museum, 4754  
 Field Museum of Natural History, 2411-2412

Carnegie Institute Museum, 4754  
 Peabody Museum, Harvard, 4754  
 Rosenwald Industrial Museum, 4754, 6206  
 Art Institute of Chicago, 1354, 1360  
 Worcester Art Museum, 7845  
 Corcoran Gallery, Washington, 7642, 4754  
 Other Museums of Note, 4754, 4988  
 [Also, see Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]

## State Systems of Education

[See the subhead devoted to Education in each of the state articles in THE WORLD BOOK.]

## Education in Foreign Countries

Afghanistan, 70  
 Albania, 180  
 Argentina, 376, 1003  
 Australia, 516  
     No Politics in School System, 516  
     Central Australia, 1288  
     New South Wales, 4949-4952  
     North Australia, 5051  
     Queensland, 5920-5921  
     South Australia, 6703-6705  
     Victoria, 7520-7521  
     Western Australia, 516, 7710  
         State University at Perth, 7713  
 Austria, 523  
     High Educational Standards, 523  
 Belgium, 693  
     A Political-Religious Problem, 693  
     University of Brussels, 693, 985  
     University of Louvain, 693, 694  
 Bolivia, 818  
 Brazil, 926-927  
 Bulgaria, 1013-1014  
 Burma, 1030  
 Canada, 1133, 2116-2117  
     Compulsory Laws in All Provinces but Quebec, 1133  
     An Open Door of Opportunity for All, 2116-2117  
     Medical Inspection in Schools, 6425  
     The Separate School Question, 1133  
     Alberta, 189  
     British Columbia, 960, 962  
     Manitoba, 4262, 4265  
     New Brunswick, 4911  
     Nova Scotia, 5100-5101  
     Ontario, 5208  
         University of Toronto, 5208, 7214  
         Queen's University, 5208  
         McMaster University, 5208, 7214  
         University of Western Ontario, 5208  
         Upper Canada College, 5208  
         Technical School, Toronto, 7216  
     Prince Edward Island, 5814  
     Quebec, 5911-5912  
         McGill University, 4179, 5912, 4632  
         University of Montreal, 4632  
         Laval University, Quebec, 5915

Saskatchewan, 6393, 6395  
 Chile, 1379  
 China, 1392-1393  
 Chosen, 1410  
 Costa Rica, 1704  
 Cuba, 1771  
     University of Havana, 1771, 3075  
 Czechoslovakia, 1801-1802  
 Denmark, 1894  
 Dutch East Indies, 2090  
 Ecuador, 2103, 2106  
 Egypt, 2143-2144  
 England, 2248-2249  
     Private Schools of Dicken's Time, 2249  
     Government Support of Local Schools, 2249  
     Continuation Schools, 2249  
     Universities, 2249  
         Oxford, 5280-5281  
         Cambridge, 1103  
         London, 2249  
         Durham, 2249  
         Victoria (Manchester), 4247  
         Birmingham, 2249  
         Liverpool, 4060  
             School of Tropical Medicine, 4060  
         Leeds, 2249  
         Sheffield, 2249, 6550  
         Bristol, 2249  
 Estonia, 2300  
 Falkland Islands, 2365  
 Finland, 2421-2422  
 France, 2569-2574  
     University of Paris, 5381  
     The "New Sorbonne," 6689-6690  
 French Guiana, 2609  
 French Indo-China, 2610  
 French Sudan, 2620  
 Georgia (Tiflis), 2763  
 Germany, 2778, 2780  
     Twenty-three Universities, 2780  
     The Most Famous  
         Berlin, 716  
         Bonn, 2772  
         Munich, 4742  
         Leipzig, 3927  
         Heidelberg, 3125-3126  
         Göttingen, 2780

- Freiburg, 2780  
 Halle, 2773  
 Jena, 2773  
 Würzburg, 2780
- Greece, 2944  
 National University (Athens), 2944  
 Capodistria University, 2944  
 Education in Ancient Greece, 2940
- Guatemala, 2974
- Haiti, 3010-3011
- Holland. [See *Netherlands*.]
- Honduras, 3216
- Hungary, 3289, 3292
- Iceland, 3331-3332
- India, 3380  
 Universities, 3380  
   Calcutta, 3380, 1074  
   Bombay, 826  
   Madras, 4208-4209  
   Allahabad, 3380, 3382  
   The Punjab, 5883
- Iraq, 3514-3517
- Ireland, Northern, 3519
- Irish Free State, 3519, 2045  
 Irish Language Taught, 3519  
 University of Dublin (Trinity College), 2045  
 National University of Ireland, 3519
- Italy, 3573-3574, 3575-3576
- Ivory Coast, 3592-3593
- Japan, 3624-3626, 3628
- Jugoslavia. [See *Yugoslavia*, below.]
- Korea (Chosen), 1410
- Labrador, 3827  
 Sir Wilfred T. Grenfell, 3827, 2962-2963
- Latvia, 3890
- Lithuania, 4056
- Luxemburg, 4161
- Madagascar, 4197
- Manchuria, 4250
- Mesopotamia, 4412
- Mexico, 4434, 4449  
 University of Mexico, 4434, 4449  
 National University of the Southeast, 4434  
 University of Guadalajara, 4434
- Natal. [See *South Africa*, below.]
- Netherlands, The, 4886, 4888
- New Brunswick. [See *Canada*, above.]
- Newfoundland, 4914
- New South Wales. [See *Australia*, above.]
- New Zealand, 4999-5000
- Nicaragua, 5014-5015
- Norway, 5082
- Nova Scotia. [See *Canada*, above.]
- Ontario. [See *Canada*, above.]
- Orange Free State. [See *South Africa*, below.]
- Palestine, 5310  
 Three Official Languages, 5310  
 Hebrew University at Jerusalem, 5310, 7975
- Panama, 5326
- Paraguay, 5360
- Persia, 5496  
 American College of Teheran, 5496
- Peru, 5509
- Poland, 5685-5686
- Portugal, 5758-5760
- Prince Edward Island. [See *Canada*, above.]
- Quebec. [See *Canada*, above.]
- Queensland. [See *Australia*, above.]
- Rumania, 6245
- Russia, 6266-6267  
 Dalton Plan in Operation, 1813, 6267
- Salvador, 6347
- Santo Domingo, 6381
- Saskatchewan. [See *Canada*, above.]
- Scotland, 6438  
 Royal Technical College, Glasgow, 6438  
 Universities, 6438  
   Saint Andrews, 6438  
   Glasgow, 2831  
   Aberdeen, 6438  
   Edinburgh, 2108  
 National Library of Scotland, 6438  
 Carnegie Trust Funds, 6438, 6439
- Siam, 6582
- Siberia, 6587  
 [See *Russia*, above.]
- South Africa, Union of, 7356  
 Four Universities, 7356
- Spain, 6726-6728, 6730
- Straits Settlements, 6873
- Sweden, 6949-6950
- Switzerland, 6970, 6972-6973
- Syria, 6987  
 American University of Beirut, 6991
- Tasmania, 7027  
 University of Tasmania, 7027
- Transvaal. [See *South Africa*, above.]
- Turkey, 7305-7306  
 University of Constantinople, 1629, 7306  
 American Colleges in Constantinople and  
   Smyrna, 7306  
   Robert College, 1629, 7306  
   American College for Women, 1629
- Union of Socialist Soviet Republics. [See  
*Russia*, above.]
- Union of South Africa. [See *South Africa*,  
 above.]
- Uruguay, 7422-7425
- Venezuela, 7477-7478
- Victoria. [See *Australia*, above.]
- Yugoslavia, 7960

## History of Education

- In Ancient Egypt, 2151-2152  
 Alexandria as an Intellectual Center, 201,  
   2152  
 Alexandrian Library, 201  
 Geometry in Egypt, 2746
- In Ancient Greece, 2940  
 Training the Spartan Boy, 6743-6744  
 The Athenian System, 2940  
 Only Men Educated, 2940  
 Athens the Intellectual Center, 480

- The First Greek Philosopher, 5566
- Socrates as a Teacher, 5566, 6673-6675
- Plato's "Academy," 5652, 5566
  - His System of Philosophy, 5652-5653
- Aristotle, Creator of Natural Science, 382
  - Teacher of Alexander the Great, 382
  - The Peripatetic School, 382, 5566
  - H. G. Wells on Aristotle and His Work, 382
- Pythagoras and His School, 5898
  - His Famous Theorem, 2746, 5898
- Archimedes, the Mathematician and Physi-  
cist, 358, 2918
- In Ancient Rome, 6170-6176**
  - The First Written Laws, 6172
  - How Cicero Was Educated, 1423
  - Schooled in Law, Philosophy, and Oratory,  
1423
  - Quintilian the Rhetorician, 5923
    - His School of Oratory, 5923
  - Roman Philosophy, 5566
  - Athenaeum, School on the Capitoline Hill,  
479
    - Founded by Hadrian, 479
- The Dark Ages, 1829, 6055**
  - A Period of Intellectual Obscurity, 6055
- The Middle Ages, 4470, 6056**
  - Learning Confined to the Clergy, 6056
  - Beginning an Era of Inquiry, 6056
- The Renaissance, 6055-6056**
  - Knowledge Humanized, 6056
  - Revival of Learning in Northern Europe,  
6056
  - A Period of Glory for the Arts and Litera-  
ture, 6056
- Comenius, Pioneer in Modern Educational  
Methods, 1580-1581**
  - The First Illustrated Textbook, 1581
  - His Great Work, Gate of Tongues Unlocked,  
1580-1581
- Pestalozzi, Educational Reformer, 5513-5514**
  - His First Industrial School, 5514
  - Training Colleges for Teachers at Burgdorf  
and Yverdeen, 5514
  - Pestalozzi's Influence on Modern Education,  
5514
  - Instruction Based on Psychology, 5514
- The Nineteenth Century, 2112**
  - Radical Changes in Theories and Systems,  
2112
- Modern Tendencies in Education, 2112-2118**
  - Changing Views in Last Century, 2112
    - The Older Conception, 2112
    - The Modern View, 2112
  - Education as Natural Growth, 2113
  - Improved Methods of Teaching, 2113
    - Example: Deductive Method, 1869
  - What Educational Experience Means, 2113
    - Real Problems for the Child, 2114
  - Emphasis on Social Phase of School Life,  
2114
  - The Dalton School Plan, 1813-1814, 2114
  - Emphasis on Health and Physical Educa-  
tion, 2115
  - Fundamental Arts More Effectively Taught,  
2115
  - Education Made Compulsory in Recent  
Years, 2115
  - Tendency to Reorganize the Elementary  
Grades, 2116
  - Development of Secondary Education, 2116
  - Vocational and Continuation Education  
Provided, 2116

### Famous Educators

[See list of *Educators*, in Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]

# ENGINEERING

## Its Scope and Importance

- Definition, 2237
- The Engineer and Civilization, 2237
- Antiquity of Engineering, 2237
- Engineering Schools, 2237
- Contributions to Human Welfare
  - Man's Struggle in the Past, 2238
  - The Benefits of Drainage, Irrigation, Filtration, and Hydraulics, 2238, 2240
- Power and Transportation, 2240
- Safety on the Ocean, 2240
- Conquest of the Air, 2240
- The Contributions of Mechanical and Electrical Engineering, 2240
- Famous Engineers. [See division of *Engineers*, in the Outline on *Biography*, in this Guide.]

## Civil Engineering

- Construction of Bridges and Viaducts
- Construction Principles, 948-953, 7515
- Foundations and Supports
  - Caisson, 1070-1071
  - Cofferdam, 1531
  - Pier, 5605
  - Pile, 5615
- Materials
  - Brick, 945
  - Concrete, 1597-1598
    - Reinforced Concrete, 1598
  - Granite, 2898
  - Iron and Steel, 3534-3551
    - Cast Iron, 3538
  - Wrought Iron, 3538
  - Nickel Steel, 5022
  - Limestone, 4007
- Timber
  - Alder, 196
  - Beech, 683
  - Elm, 2215
  - Eucalyptus, 2313
  - Larch, 3878
  - Oak, 5128-5131
  - Pine, 5620-5622
- Mechanical Principles Involved
  - Strength of Materials, 6878
    - Tensile, Compressive, Shearing, and Torsional Stresses, 6878
  - Comparative Strength of Steel, Iron, and Wood, 6878-6879
  - Composition of Motions and Forces, 1593
- Timber Bridges
  - Simple-Truss Bridge, 948
    - Effects of Tension and Compression, 948
  - More Elaborate Trusses, 949
  - The Howe Truss, 949
- Examples of Timber Bridges
  - A Primitive Bridge in India, 950
  - Corduroy Bridge in Ceylon, 951
  - The "Bridge That Arched the Flood," 4526
  - Railway Trestle on Alaskan Railway, 173
- Arch Bridges
  - Effects of Thrusts, 949
  - Faults of Improperly Built Arches, 949-950
- Stone Arch Bridges
  - Old Bridge, Florence, 2473
  - Bridge across the Tiber, opposite 3000
  - Traffic Bridge in France, 951
  - Old Bridge at Bull Run, 7615
- Arch Combined with Metal Truss
  - Eads Bridge, Saint Louis, 2071, 2072
  - Hell Gate Bridge, New York, 950, 3135
  - International Peace Bridge, 1006
- Concrete Arch
  - On the Columbia River Highway, 1569
  - Connecticut Avenue Bridge, Washington, 2241

- Mendota Bridge, Minnesota, 4513  
 Bridge in Pasadena, Calif., 1598  
 Bridge over the Tigris, 3517
- Iron Beam and Truss Bridges**  
 Mechanical Principles, 950, 952  
 Examples  
   Hawkesbury Bridge, New South Wales, 4950  
   Highway Bridge over the Missouri River, 6718  
   Municipal Bridge over the Mississippi River, Saint Louis, 6318
- Suspension Bridges**  
 Beauty, 952  
 Flexibility a Weakness, 952  
 How Constructed, 952  
 Examples  
   Bear Mountain Bridge, 4967  
   Brooklyn Bridge, 976, 427  
   Hudson River Bridge, 4970  
   Manhattan Bridge, 950  
   Philadelphia-Camden Bridge, 5543
- Cantilever Bridges**  
 How Constructed, 952  
 Advantages, 952-953  
 Examples  
   Firth of Forth Bridge, 2544, 2545  
   Quebec Bridge, 949, 5911  
   Victoria Falls Bridge, 7523
- Suspension-Cantilever Type**  
 Golden Gate Bridge (Projected), 6371  
 South Shore Bridge, Montreal, 4631
- Movable Bridges**  
 Swinging, Drawbridge, Lift, Bascule, 953, 952  
 Examples  
   Lift Bridge across the Trent, 2241  
   A Bascule Bridge in Chicago, 954  
   Historic Tower Bridge, London (Bascule), 4092
- Pontoon Bridges, 953**  
 [See *Military Engineering*, page 8164, in this Outline.]
- Viaduct, 7515**  
 Gandy Bridge, Florida, 7013  
 Overseas Railway Viaduct, Florida, 2479 (5)  
 Pecos Viaduct, 7125  
 Tunkhannock Viaduct, 952  
 In Rio de Janeiro, 930  
 In a Swiss Canton, 6971
- Of Historic Interest**  
 Bridge of Sighs, Venice, 953, 954
- Canal Engineering**
- Transportation Canals, 1157-1162**  
 Ancient Canals of Egypt, Assyria, India, China, and Babylon, 1158  
 Construction of Modern Canals  
   The Canal of One Reach, 1158  
   Cape Cod Canal, 1180  
   The Canal of Several Levels, Requiring Locks, 1158  
   Locks on the Göta Canal, 1159  
   Lock 28A, New York Barge, 1158

- Locks on the Panama Canal, 5332, 5333, 5335  
 Peterborough, Lift Lock, 1131  
 Canal Dimensions, 1158  
 Accessory Structures, 1158
- Notable Canals of the United States**  
 Canal at South Hadley, Mass., 1158  
 Erie Canal, 1158, 1161  
   Between Buffalo and Albany, 2287-2288  
   Effect on New York Cities, 2288, 4973  
   Preliminary Efforts, 2288-2289  
   Work of DeWitt Clinton, 2289, 1484  
   Enlargement after 1835, 2289  
   Merged with New York Barge, 4997  
 Illinois and Michigan, 3363, 3359, 1161  
 Chesapeake and Ohio, 1345, 1161  
 Sault Ste. Marie (1855-1919), 1159, 1161  
   Weitzel, Poe, Davis, and Sabin Locks, 6400  
 Muscle Shoals, 4751  
 Hennepin, 3141-3142, 1161
- Panama**  
 Early Work of De Lesseps, 5331, 3943-3944  
 Construction under Goethals, 5331, 2852-2853  
 Cost of the Canal, 5331-5332  
 Sanitary Triumphs, 5332  
   Achievements of Gorgas, 2875  
 Canal Tolls, 5332  
   Hay-Pauncefote Treaty, 3101  
 Fortifications, 5332, 5334  
 Economic Benefits, 5334  
 Peculiarities of Location, 5334-5335  
 From Breakwaters to Gatun Lake, 5335  
 Through the Gaillard (Culebra) Cut, 5335  
 Pedro Miguel Lock and Miraflores Lake and Locks, 5335
- The Canal Zone**  
 Location and Size, 5336  
 Treaty Rights, 5336, 5330  
 Administration, 5337  
 Authorization of Alhajuela Dam, 5337
- New York State Barge**  
 Authorization, 4997  
 A Union of the Erie, Champlain, Oswego, and Cayuga-Seneca Canals, 4997, 1161  
 Dimensions and Locks, 4998  
 Commercial Importance, 4998
- Cape Cod**  
 Location and Dimensions, 1180, 1161  
 Importance to Navigation, 1180-1181  
 History, 1181
- Dalles-Celilo, 1568, 1813, 1159, 1161  
 Lake Washington, Seattle, 6473, 1161  
 Chesapeake and Delaware, 1878, 4316, 1161  
 Industrial Canal, New Orleans, 4943  
 Ohio River Canalization, 1159, 5178
- Projected Canals**  
 Lakes-to-Gulf Waterway, 3845  
 Saint Lawrence Waterway, 6314-6315  
 Nicaragua Canal, 5018-5019
- [For other canal systems, see table on page 1161.]

- Canals of Canada, 1130-1131, 1161  
 Westward from Montreal; Lachine, Soulanges, Cornwall, Farran's Point, Rapide Plat, Galop, Welland, Sault Ste. Marie, 1131  
 Sault Ste. Marie, 6400  
 Welland, 7704  
 New Ship Canal, 7704-7705  
 Murray, Ottawa-Rideau, Chambly, and Trent Canals, 1131  
 Proposed Georgian Bay Canal, 1131, 2763  
**Canals of Europe, 1159-1162**  
 Belgium, 1160  
 Bruges, City of Bridges, 693  
 Brussels and the Willibroek Canal, 985  
 Meuse System, 4429  
 Scheldt System, 6410  
 British Isles, 1162  
 Manchester Ship Canal, 4247-4248  
 Canals of Ireland, 3524  
 Canals of Scotland, 6443  
 France, 1160, 2579  
 Languedoc Canal, 1160  
 Marseilles-Rhone Canal and Rove Tunnel, 4304  
 Germany, 1160, 2778  
 Hohenzollern Canal, 1160, 1161  
 Kiel Canal, 3772-3773, 2163  
 Greece, 1160  
 Corinth Canal, 1675-1677  
 Netherlands, 4891  
 Amsterdam Canals, 267  
 At Haarlem, 4889  
 Russia, 1160, 6264  
 Of Historic Interest  
 Venice and Its Canals, 7484-7485  
**Suez Canal**  
 Between the Mediterranean and Red Seas, 6903  
 Linking Port Said and Suez, 2146, 6904  
 (Map), 4379, 6033  
 A View of Port Said, 2143  
 Construction of the Canal, 6903  
 Building of Port Fuad, 6903  
 Contribution of De Lesseps, 6903, 3943  
 How the Work Was Financed, 6903-6904  
 Disraeli's Purchase of Shares in behalf of England, 6904, 1965  
 Aden, an Important Coaling Station, 45

### Railroad Engineering

#### Railroad Construction

- Making the Surveys, 5980  
 Preparing the Grades, 5980  
 How Grades and Curves Are Modified, 5978  
 American and Canadian Grades and Curves Compared, 5978-5979  
 Horseshoe Curve, on the Pennsylvania, 5466  
 Difficulties of Mountain Grades  
 On Lookout Mountain, 7103  
 On Pike's Peak, 5614

- A Loop over the Rockies, 5979  
 Putting down the Ties and Rails, 5980  
 Use of Ballast, 5980  
 A Track Laid through the Royal Gorge, 6221, 6222  
 Standard and Narrow Gauge, 5980  
 Construction of Bridges and Viaducts. [See above.]  
 Construction of Tunnels  
 Blasted or Drilled through Rock, 7295  
 Driven through Soft Earth, 7295  
 Submarine Tunnels  
 Compressed-Air Method, 7295  
 Tunnel-Shield Method, 7295  
 Use of Cylindrical Sections, 7295  
 Subways, 6897  
 The Open Cut, 6898, 6899  
 As in New York, 6899  
 The Boring Method, 6900  
 A Section of London's Underground Railway, 6898  
 Freight Subways, Chicago, 1352  
 A Subway for Senators, 6490  
 Vehicular Tunnels  
 [See *Roads and Streets*, below.]  
 Notable Tunnels  
 Arlberg, 7297  
 Cascade, 1226  
 Entrance to the New Tunnel, 7296  
 Hoosac, 3225-3226  
 Hudson River  
 William G. McAdoo, 3274, 4167  
 Location and Size of Tunnels, 3274-3275  
 Loetschberg, 7297  
 Moffat, 4567, 1555  
 Its Builder, 4567  
 Mont Cenis, 4621  
 Saint Gotthard, 6308-6309  
 Simplon, 6615  
**Aerial Railways**  
 Up Mont Blanc, 4619, 4620  
 Over the Niagara Whirlpool, 5010, 5012, 5013  
**Elevated Railways, 2204**  
**Monorail Railroad**  
 System Built by Eugen Langen, 4599  
 Location of Trusses, Trucks, Wheels, and Rail, 4599  
 Advantages, 4599  
**World-Famous Railroads**  
 Cape-to-Cairo  
 Work of Cecil Rhodes, 6097-6098  
 Longest Continuous Line, 1181, 1182  
 (Map)  
 Built between 1889 and 1926, 1181  
 Construction of Victoria Falls Bridge, 1182, 7523  
 Difficulties Overcome, 1182  
 Northern and Southern Portions, 1182  
**Trans-Siberian**  
 Extent and Location, 7252  
 Contribution of Count Witte, 7252, 7816



- Difficulties of Construction, 7252
- Its Use in War, 7253
- A Trans-Siberian Station, 6590
- Railroads Owned by the United States
- Alaskan, 172-173
- Panama, 5335
- Built by Stephens, Aspinwall, and Chauncey, 5336
- Purchase and Rebuilding, 5336
- Motive Power and Operation**
- [For the construction and operation of steam and electric locomotives, see Outlines on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, and *Electricity*, in this GUIDE. For other supplementary material, see Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]
- Road Engineering**
- Construction of Roads and Streets**
- Our Debt to Rome, 6140
- Appian Way, the Queen of Roads, 322, 323
- Roads in Europe
- National and Local Roads, 6140
- Excellence of European Roads, 6140
- A Highway along the Mediterranean, 2577
- Napoleon's Road over the Simplon Pass, 6615
- In Canada and the United States
- Problems Peculiar to Newly Developed Countries, 6140
- Construction of Improved Roads and Pavements
- Stone-Block Pavements, 6141
- Granite, 6141
- Macadam and Concrete, 6141, 1598, 1600
- Examples of Concrete Roads, 6142
- Asphalt, 6141, 453-454
- Brick, 6141, 945
- Wood Block, 6141
- A Street Paved with Planks, 169
- Comparative Cost and Life of Pavements, 6142
- Examples of Improved Streets
- Broadway and Riverside Drive, New York, 4993, 4987
- Thames Embankment, London, 4095
- Champs Élysées, Paris, 1302
- A Business Street in Sydney, 4951
- A Thoroughfare in Vienna, 524
- An Improved Highway in Egypt, 2145
- Some Factors in Road-Making
- Heavy Grades and Drainage, 6144
- Scenic Effects and Trees, 6144
- Ditches and Culverts, 6144
- Vehicular Tunnels**
- Holland (Hudson River), 7297, 7296, 2241
- Mitchell's Point and Oneonta, Columbia Highway, 1568, 1569
- Mersey River, 7297
- Good-Roads Movement**
- Conditions before 1900, 6142-6143

- Effect of the Bicycle and Automobile, 6143, 734, 534
- Economic Benefits of Good Roads
- To the Farmer, 6143
- To the Community, 6143
- Social Advantages**
- Better Schools and Their Use as Social Centers, 6143-6144
- Improved Mail Service, 6144
- Increased Neighborliness, 6144
- Esthetic Value, 6144
- Financial Problems**
- State and County Appropriations, 6145
- National Road-Building Work of the Bureau of Public Roads, 6145, 6139, 105
- Federal Appropriations
- How Allotted to States, 6145
- Annual Expenditures, 6145
- Highways in the United States**
- Columbia River Highway, 1568, 1570
- A Scenic Portion of the Route, 1570
- Cumberland Road**
- Also Called National Road and Great National Pike, 1784
- Map of the Route, 1784
- Efforts of Henry Clay, 1784, 4604
- Dixie Highway**
- Map of the Route, 1982
- Historic and Scenic Interest on the Highway, 1982-1983
- Its Sponsors, 1983
- Lincoln Highway, 4022**
- Carl H. Fisher and Organizers Associated with Him, 4024
- How Financed, 4024
- Details of the Route, 4024
- Its Influence on Road-Building, 4024
- Scenes along the Highway, 4023
- Main Street of America**
- All-Weather Route U. S. 66, 4232
- Details and Map of the Road, 4233
- Meridian Road, 6145**
- National Parks Highway, 6145
- Trails of Early Days**
- Transportation in Pioneer Days, 7237
- Three Stages in the Process of Road-Building, 7237-7238
- Some of the Pioneer Trails**
- Braddock's Road, 7238
- Cumberland Road. [See above.]
- Lancaster Turnpike, 7238
- Mohawk Trail, 7238
- Oregon (Overland) Trail, 7238
- Surveyed by John C. Fremont, 2605
- Pennsylvania State Road
- Built by John Forbes, 7238-7239
- Santa Fe Trail, 7239
- Map of the Route, 7238
- Wilderness Road, 7239

### Hydraulic Engineering

- Harbor Engineering**
- Breakwaters

For the Protection of Harbors, 938  
 Construction and Materials, 938  
 A Breakwater at Cape Town, 1183  
 Docks (Wharves) and Piers, 1984, 1985  
 Chicago Navy Pier, 1366  
 Docks on East River, New York, 4975  
 Steamer Docks at Hoboken, 4929  
 Along San Francisco Bay, 6372  
 Docks of Liverpool, 4060  
 Ivory Docks in London, 3592  
 Typical Harbor Construction  
 Buffalo, 1007  
 Cleveland, 1478  
 Halifax, N. S., 3018  
 Montreal, 4633  
 Rio de Janeiro, 6131  
 Victoria, B. C., 961  
 Removal of Obstructions by Dredging, 2030-2031  
**Protection of Land from Tides and Waves, 2471**  
 Dikes, 1947  
 How the Hollanders Rescued Their Country, 4890  
 Jetties, 3671  
 Mississippi Jetties, 3671, 4548  
 Galveston Sea Wall, 2672  
 Levees, 3948, 3950  
 Mississippi Levees, 4547, 3949  
**Reclamation of Land by Draining, 2020-2021, 6022**  
 Draining the Everglades, 2335, 2476  
 Dikes and Canals, 2336  
 Reclamation of the Belgian Marshes, 6024  
 Swamp Drainage in Germany, 6023  
 Dairying in the Dutch Polders, 4890  
 Draining the Zuider Zee, 7988  
**Construction of Irrigation Projects**  
 Dams, 1814, 3555, 3558-3559  
 American Falls, Idaho, 3340  
 Arrowrock, Idaho, 3340, 3341  
 Coolidge, Arizona, 1659, 1660  
 Elephant Butte, Texas, 2202, 2203  
 Roosevelt, Arizona, 390, 391  
 Shoshone, Wyoming, 7906  
 Aswan (Assuan), Egypt, 2144, 3559  
 Canals, Tunnels, Inverted Siphons, Bulkheads, 3555, 3558  
 Reservoirs, 3555, 3558, 6065  
 [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Power Projects**  
 Power Derived from Streams, 7670  
 Cascade Plan, 7670  
 The Water Wheel, 7674  
 Overshot Wheel, 7676, 7674  
 Undershot Wheel, 7676, 7674  
 How Water Power Is Measured, 7670-7671  
 Classified as Low-Head, Medium-Head, High-Head, 7671  
 Types of Plants for the Development of Water Power, 7671  
 Hydroelectric Development, 7671-7672  
 As Developed at Niagara Falls, 5013  
 Efficiency of the Turbine Wheel, 7672

Operation, 7298-7299  
 Pressure Turbine, 7299  
 Steam Turbine, 7299  
 Uses of Hydroelectricity, 7672  
 Modern Equipment Contrasted with the Mill Wheel, 7673  
**Notable Power Dams**  
 In Alabama: Mitchell, Jordan, and Martin, 160  
 Badin, North Carolina, 5057  
 Boulder (Intended also for Irrigation), 895-896  
 Keokuk  
 Capacity of Generators, 3766  
 Dimensions of Dam, 3766  
 Views of Dam and Generators, 3767  
 Low-Head Type, 7671  
 Other Mississippi River Dams, 4548  
 Muscle Shoals Project, 4751  
 Wilson Dam, 4753, 159  
 Power House, 4752  
 Near Wotree, South Carolina, 6707  
**Lighthouse Engineering**  
**Lighthouse Construction, 3998-4001**  
 Ancient Lighthouses  
 The First Beacons, 4000  
 Pharos of Alexandria, 4000, 5532, 6508, 202  
 Roman Light Towers, 4000  
 Modern Lighthouses  
 Form and Material Determined by Location and Purpose, 4000  
 Keeper's Quarters, 4000  
 The Story of Grace Darling, 4000  
 A Keeper on the Coast of Newfoundland, 4915  
**The Light**  
 Size and Construction, 4000  
 Signals: Intermittent (Occulting) and Group Flashing, 4000  
 Fuel: Mineral Oils, Coal and Oil Gas, Acetylene, Electricity, 4000  
 Notable Lighthouses, 3999, 4000-4001  
 Lightships, 4001  
 Other Aids to Navigation, 4001  
 Buoys: Significance of Color; Bell, Whistle, Lantern, Spar, and Nut Buoys 1024

#### Sanitary Engineering

**Construction of Waterworks, 7676-7680, 3305**  
 Artificial Reservoirs, 6065  
 The Ashokan, 336, 4994  
 The Croton, 7677, 335  
 The Mohawk, 7291  
 Cistern, 6065  
 Standpipes, 6065  
**Natural Sources of Supply**  
 Lakes, 3841, 7676  
 Lake Michigan and Chicago, 1360  
 Rivers, 7676  
 Owens River (Calif.), 337, 4113  
 Well Boring, 7705

Artesian Wells, 424  
 Conveyance of Water  
 Aqueducts, 335  
   The Croton, 335-336  
   The Catskill, 336  
   The Los Angeles, 336-337  
     Designed by Mulholland, 4113  
   The Hetch Hetchy, 337, 6371-6372  
   The Tulsa, 337, 7291  
 Gravity and Siphon Methods, 338, 3306,  
 6625, 7676  
 Pumping Systems, 7676, 5881  
 Filtration Plants, 2419  
 A Home-Made Water System, 7680  
 A Simple Force, Pump, 7676  
 Windmill, 7791-7792  
**Sewerage Systems, 6511-6514**  
   Water-Carriage System, 6511  
   Construction of Pipes and Conduits, 6511  
   Manholes, 6511  
 Disposal of City Sewage

### Military Engineering

#### Forts and Strongholds

Blockhouse, 796  
 Old Blockhouse at Mackinac, 4466  
 Castle, 1232  
   Old Morro Castle, 5751  
 Ehrenbreitstein, 2155  
 Gibraltar, 2802-2803  
 Quebec Citadel, 5914  
 Fortifications of Valetta, Malta, 4241

#### Forts of Historic Interest

Dearborn, 2543  
 Duquesne, 2544  
 Monroe, 2544  
 Moultrie, 2544-2545  
 Niagara, 2545  
 Saint Augustine, 2481  
 Sumter, 2545-2546

#### Pontoon Bridges, 5727

#### Siege Works, 6595

Seas, Lakes, Rivers, 6511  
 Chicago Drainage Canal, 1367  
 Chemical Treatment, 6511  
 Activated-Sludge Process, 6511-6512  
 Sewage Disposal on Farms 6512-6513

### Surveying

#### Land Surveying, 6943

How Public Lands Are Surveyed, 3854  
 Geodetic Surveys, 2720  
 Triangulation, 2720  
 Work of the Federal Bureau of Surveys,  
 1508  
 Geological Surveys, 2731-2732

#### Coast Surveying, 1508

#### Instruments of the Surveyor

Chain, 1205  
 Compass, Surveyor's, 1592  
 Level, 3950  
 Theodolite, 7141  
 Transit, 7243

#### Military Signaling

Work of the Signal Corps, 6597-6598  
 Use of Aircraft, 6601, 7876  
 Use of Balloons, 585

#### Types of Signals

Radio, 6600  
 Wire Communication, 6600  
 Visual Signals, 6600  
 Flag, 6600

Codes, 6599  
 Heliograph, 3130  
 Rocket, 6155  
 Messenger Service, 6600  
 Carrier Pigeon, 1216-1217  
 Dog, 1988  
 Motorcycle, 4688

Cipher Code, 6600-6601

[See, also, *Weapons and Ammunitions*, in Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]

### Marine Engineering

#### Commercial Shipbuilding

The Modern Steamship, 6562-6566  
 Interiors of the Republic, George Washington, and Leviathan, 6563, 3953, 3954  
 Size, Structure, and Speed of Leviathan and Majestic, 6562, 6564  
 History of the Leviathan, 3952  
 Speed Records of Mauretania and Bremen, 6564  
 Motor Ship, 6566  
   The Diesel Engine, 1944  
 Rotor Ship, 6568, 6214-6215  
 Sailing Ship, 6566-6569  
   The Caravel, 1190  
   Niña, Pinta, and Santa Maria, 1574

**Marine Engineering in Connection with War**  
 Armor-Plated Battleship, or Dreadnaught, 4844

The Colorado: Armor, Motive Power, Personnel, Guns, 4844-4845  
 The Texas, 4843  
 American and British Battleships, 4847  
 Armor Plate and Its Development, 4851  
 Naval Guns, 4848  
 Battle Cruiser, 4845  
 Frigate, 2622-2623, 4850  
   The Constitution, 1630, 4849  
 Gunboat, 2986, 4851  
 Monitor Type, 7618-7620, 4849  
   John Ericsson, Inventor, 2285-2286  
 Submarine, 6886  
   Original Vessel of Van Drebbel, 6889  
   David Bushnell's Turtle, 6892  
   Robert Fulton's Nautilus, 6892  
   The Confederate Davids, 6892  
   The Gymnôte and Goubet, 6892

The Holland Submarine, 6887, 3195-3196  
 Recent Improvements, 6887-6888  
 Longitudinal Section of a Modern Boat,  
 6888-6889  
 Interior Views, 6890, 6891  
 Exterior Views, 6892  
 In the World War, 7878  
 The Periscope, 6887, 5488-5489  
 Submarine Chaser, 4845-4846  
 Torpedo Boat, 7219  
 Warships of Long Ago  
 Galley, 2666, 4850  
 Bireme, 2666  
 Trireme, 2666, 4850, 7271  
 Three-Masted Roman Galley, 4850  
 Viking, Egyptian, and Venetian, 4849  
 The Two-Decker, 4849  
 English Ship-of-the-Line, 4850, 4849  
 Anti-Submarine Devices  
 Camouflage, 6889, 7880  
 Depth Bombs, 6889, 7880  
 Hydrophone, 6889  
 Invented by Max Mason, 4321  
 Paravane, 6889, 7880  
 Smoke Screens, 6889  
 Submarine Mines, 6893-6894  
 Torpedo  
 Invented by Robert Whitehead, 7219  
 Operation and Construction, 7217  
 Lengthwise Section, 7218  
 How Fired, 7217-7218  
 Speed in Water, 7218  
 The Controlled Torpedo, 7218  
 John H. Hammond, Jr., 3029

Launched from Aircraft, 7218  
 Earlier Devices by Bushnell, Fulton, and  
 Others, 7218  
 How the Torpedo Boat Came into Use,  
 7219  
**Ship Repairing and Renovation**  
 The Dry Dock, 1984  
 Modern Liners in Dry Dock, 6566  
 A Battleship in Dry Dock, 4845  
 The Dewey, Floating Dry Dock, 1984  
**Equipment and Devices**  
 Anchor, 274-275  
 Compass (Mariner's), 1591  
 Cardinal Points and Degrees, 1591-1592  
 Deviation, 1592  
 Boxing the Compass, 1592  
 Gyroscope, 2995  
 Gyroscopic Compass, 2995  
 Log, 4087  
 Log Book, 4088  
 Radio Apparatus, 5940  
 Radio Compass, 1592, 5940  
 Sounding Devices, 6696  
 Lead, 3903  
 Plummet, 5664  
**Marine Signaling, 6598**  
 SOS Radio Signal, 6598, 5940  
 International and Flag Codes (Illustrated),  
 6598, 6599  
 Semaphore, 6598  
 Ardois Light Signals, 6600  
 Fog Signals, 2505  
 Siren, 6626  
 Rocket, 6155

### Other Branches of Engineering

**Aeronautics.** [See *Aircraft*, in Outline on *In-vention and Applied Mechanics*, in his GUIDE.]  
**Chemical Engineering.** [See Outline on *Chem-istry*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Electrical Engineering.** [See *Electricity*, in Out-

line on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Mechanical Engineering.** [See Outline on *In-vention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Mining Engineering.** [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]

# ETHICS

## Its Scope and Development

### The Nature of Ethics

- The Science of Right and Wrong, 2304
- Answers Our Questions Generally, not Specifically, 2304-2305
- Everyday Phases of Ethics
  - Ethical Training Begins in the Home, 2305
  - Suggestions for Dealing with Children, 2305
- [For an expansion of this topic, see sections below.]

### Ethical Ideas of the Greeks and Romans

#### Pre-Socratic Period

- Pythagoras and His Formation of a Brotherhood, 5898
- Ethical Principles of Socrates, 6673-6675**
  - Reduction of Wants to a Minimum, in Order to Approach Perfection, 6673
  - Discomfort Valuable for Self-Discipline, 6673
  - Traditional Account of Xanthippe, 7915
  - Love Emphasized in Persuading Athenian Youths to Lead Nobler Lives, 6673
  - Self-Knowledge the Basis of Conduct, Wick- edness Results from Ignorance, 6673
  - Identity of the Good, the Useful, and the Beautiful, 6673
  - Wilful Evil-Doing Non-Existent, 6673
  - Love of Virtue Can Be Taught, 6673
  - Best Rulers Are the Wisest, 6673, 6675
  - Plato's Eulogy, 6675

#### Immediate Followers of Socrates

- Antisthenes, Founder of the Cynic School, 1798
  - His Doctrine: Virtue Constitutes True Happiness, 1798
- Diogenes, Disciple of Antisthenes, 1953
  - Emphasized Value of Self-Control and Simple Living, 1953
- Plato, Founder of the Academy, 5652-5653
  - His Theory of the Ideal State, 5652
  - His Ideas of Virtue, 5652

#### From Aristotle to Marcus Aurelius

- Aristotle, the Pupil of Plato, 382
  - Made Ethics a Department of Philosophy, 5488
  - His Ideal: To Know More of Life and

Serve the King, 382

Epicurus, Founder of the Epicurean School, 2277, 2279

His Ethical Theory Called Hedonism, 3125

Pleasure the Chief End of Life, 2279

Fear the Great Evil of Man, 2279

Zeno, Founder of the Stoic School, 7972

His Ideas a Development of Cynic Thought, 7972, 1798

Virtue for Its Own Sake the Highest Good, 6843

Cardinal Virtues

Self-Control, Courage, Temperance, Jus- tice, and Repression of Emotion, 6843

Doctrine of a Universal Brotherhood, 6843

The New Stoics, 6844

Epictetus, Leader, 2277

Teachings Approach Spirit of Chris- tianity, 2277

Seneca, 6491

Taught That Virtue Is the Highest Aim in Life, 6491

Marcus Aurelius, 504-505

Lived for the Happiness of His People, 504

Christian Spirit of His Meditations, 505

### Oriental Systems of Ethics

#### Originating in India

- Ethical Principles of Brahmanism, 917
- The Meaning of Salvation
  - Merging Oneself with Brahma, 917
- The Way to Salvation
  - Purification of the Soul by Meditation, Self-Control, and Self-Denial, 917
- Origin of Caste System, 917
- Ethical Teachings of Buddha, 999-1000
- The Meaning of Salvation
  - Release from Existence, or Nirvana, 999
- The Way to Salvation, 999

#### Originating in China

- The Ethics of Confucius, 1605
- Emphasis on Righteous Living, Goodness for Its Own Sake, Man's Duty to His Fellow Men, Respect for Parents, 1605

- Golden Rule of Confucius, 1605
- Ethical Principles of Taoism, 7016
- Cardinal Virtues
  - Simplicity, Unselfishness, and Frugality, 7016
- Fundamental Precept
  - One Should Find Contentment amid Poverty and Privations, 7016
- Originating in Persia
  - Ethical Teachings of Zoroaster, 7987
  - Central Idea: Supernatural Powers All Ranged on the Side of Good or Evil, 7987
  - Man's Great Duty
    - To Choose the Better Way as to Thought, Word, and Deed, 7987
- Moral Laws of Judaism
  - The Decalogue, or Ten Commandments, 1855
  - The Jewish System of Sacrifices, 6294
- Ethical Teachings of Jesus
  - Stated in the Sermon on the Mount, 3668
  - The Golden Rule, 2862
- Ethics of Mohammedanism, 4569-4571
  - Four Cardinal Works
    - Prayers, 4570
    - The Prescribed Attitude, 4569
    - Prayer Ordered Five Times Daily, 4570, 4497
    - Rite of Feet-Washing before Prayer, 4570
  - Almsgiving, 4570
    - Fasting during Ramadan, 4570, 2376
    - Modifications of Rules, 4570
  - Pilgrimage to Mecca, 4570-4571, 4368
  - Marriage Regulations, 4571
  - Sanction of Blood Feud, 4571
  - Killing of Infidels Rewarded, 4571
  - Forbidden Practices
    - Use of Intoxicating Liquors, 4571
    - Gambling and the Taking of Usury, 4571
    - The Making of Images of Living Objects, 4571
- Ethical Developments of the Middle Ages
- The Influence of Monasticism, 4579-4580
  - Element of Asceticism, or Self-Denial, 4579, 439
  - Saint Simeon Stylites, 4580
  - Austerity of the Carthusians, 1220
  - Austere Rules of the Trappists, 7253-7254
- Element of Devotion to the Needy
  - Francis of Assisi, 2591
  - Knights Hospitalers, 3805
  - Development of Hospitals, 3256
- Ethical Code of Chivalry, 1404
  - Oath of the Knight
    - Faithfulness, Protection of Ladies and Orphans, Abstinence from Lying and Slander, Harmony, Protection of the Church, 1404
  - Honor and Respect for Women Fostered, 2404
  - Influence of Knighthood on the Life of the Middle Ages, 3805
- The Morality Play, 4647
  - Characters Personify Virtue, Vice, etc., 4647
  - Ethical Purpose: To Teach Reform, 4647
  - A Sermon in Dramatic Form, 2027
- Medieval Attitude toward Crime
  - Blood Money Paid for Security from Vengeance or as a Reward, 4591
  - Conditions under Which Criminals Could Be Slain, 4591
- Rise of Mohammedanism, 4569. [See *Oriental Systems of Ethics*, above.]
- Ethical Trends Since the Middle Ages
- Revival of Hedonism, 3125
  - Utilitarianism, 7436
    - Welfare of the Greatest Number the Criterion of Right and Wrong, 7436
    - John Stuart Mill, an Exponent of the Theory, 4485-4486
- Metaphysical Ethics, 4417
  - Introduced by Descartes, 1913
  - Elaborated by Baruch Spinoza, 6766
  - Pantheism a Fundamental Concept, 5341
  - Idealism of Immanuel Kant, 3746
  - Theories of Johann Fichte, 2406
    - Extension of Ethics to Education, 2406
  - Theories of George Hegel, 3125
    - Material World a Manifestation of Intelligence, 3125
- Evolutionary Ethics
  - Influence of Darwin's Theory of Organic Evolution, 1830-1831
  - Extension of the Theory to Ethical World by Herbert Spencer, 6756
  - Application by Friedrich Nietzsche, 5023
  - Nietzsche's Guiding Principle, 5023
- The Note of Pessimism, 5513
  - As Elaborated by Schopenhauer, 6429
- Other Ideas Related to Ethics
  - The Equality of Man, as Preached by Rousseau, 6218
  - The Worship of Humanity, as Expounded by Comte, 1595
  - The Exaltation of Work and Duty, as Voiced by Carlyle, 1200
  - The Value of Frugality, Industry, Temperance, etc., 2594, 5730
  - The Fundamental Importance of Self-Reliance, 2221

[See Outline on *Philosophy*, in this GUIDE.]

## Theoretical and Applied Ethics

- Theories Concerning the Basis of Moral Conduct
  - Dependence on Supernatural Authority, 6931

- Exemplified by the Christian Idea of God as a Moral Personality, 2851
- Dependence on Rationalism, 6001

Revolt against Authority and Emphasis on Reason as the Source of Moral Ideas, 600r

Exemplified by Freethinkers, 2603

Voltaire as an Exponent of the Sovereignty of Reason, 7566

### Man as a Moral Agent

Fatalism, Belief That Human Action Is Controlled by Fate, 2378

Free Will, Implying Freedom of Choice, 2604-2605

Determinism the Counter-Theory, 2605

Modern Discussion Concerned with Ethical Aspect of Man's Ability to Choose a Course of Action, 2605

Predestination, Opposed to Free Will, the Religious Aspect, 5797

### Some Factors That Influence Character

Environment, 2275

Slothful Habits Acquired in a Climate Too Hot for Comfort, 2275

Stolidity and Lack of Ambition Produced by Extreme Cold, 2275

Vicious Environment a Source of Criminality, 1748

The Home a Character Laboratory, 1307

Importance of Proper Environment for the Child, 2276

Habits, 2997-2998

Sow a Habit, Reap a Character, 2997

Hereditary Factors, 3160-3161

Relation between Heredity and Environment, 3160

Thought and Its Influence on Character, 7159

### Ethical Training in Home and School

Some General Suggestions for Teachers and Mothers, 2305

Importance of Teaching Self-Control by Guidance rather than Censure, 2305

Importance of Inculcating Right Principles, 2305

Higher Emotions Should Be Cultivated, 2305

Positive Training Better than Negative, 2305

Value of Wholesome Recreation and Work, 2305

Importance of the Right Atmosphere, 2305

Importance of Daily Tasks and Decisions, 2305

Value of Inspirational Stories and Noble Examples, 2305

Importance of Training for Active Life, 2305

Fundamentals of Character Training

Importance of the Power to Realize Other's Feelings, 1305-1306

Importance of the Power to Trace the Effects of One's Actions, 1306

Importance of Doing, or Putting, the Feelings into Action, 1306-1307

Importance of Developing a Sense of Obligation, 1307

Importance of Good Example in the Home, 1307

Importance of Emphasizing the Idea of Progress, 1307-1308

Value of Team Work, 1308

Our Social Inheritance, 1308

The Underlying Spirit of Character Education, 1308

### Specific Problems

How to Deal with Anger, 282

How to Deal with Dishonesty, 1962-1964

How to Prevent Fear and Worry, 2383-2385

How to Deal with Mental Conflicts Affecting Behavior, 4395-4396

[See Outline on *Education*, in this GUIDE; and the section on *Character Training*, in Part II of this GUIDE.]

### Typical Qualities Regarded as Good

Altruism, Subordinating Self, 238

The Opposite of Egoism, 238

In Everyday Life

The Golden Rule Applied, 1304

Unselfishness Fundamental in Altruism, 1304

Examples of Altruistic Conduct

On the Titanic, 1304, 7184

During the San Francisco Fire, 1304-1305

Sir Philip Sidney's Heroic Deed, 6595

Ambition, 245

Examples of Creditable Ambition, 245

Ambition as Distinguished from Emulation, 245

How to Cultivate the Spirit of Ambition, 245-246

The Type of Ambition to Avoid, 244

Honor, 3221-3222

Loyalty to Friends

The Story of Damon and Pythias, 1816

Loyalty to Country, or Patriotism, 5417

Spirit of Charity, 1311

Temperance, 7090

True Temperance Means Moderation in All Phases of Life, 7090

Thrift, 7160-7162

What the Bible Says of Thrift, 7160

Sayings of Famous Men, 7160

Distinction between Thrift and Avarice, 7161

Thrift Organization and Investigation, 7161-7162

Instruction in Thrift, 7162

## The Ethical Note in Literature

- The Inspirational Power of Literature, 4049**  
 Presents Types of Men Who Achieve and the Motives That Guide Them, 4049  
 Makes for Better Character by Expression of Lofty Sentiments, 4049  
 Good Books the Means to Self-Culture, 6007
- Examples of Inspiration to Noble Living**  
 Bryant's *Thanatopsis*, 988  
 Holmes' *Chambered Nautilus*, 3200  
 Kipling's *Recessional*, 3797  
 Tennyson's *Sir Galahad*, 2659
- The Note of Courage and Optimism**  
 Exemplified by Browning, 980  
 Emerson's *Terminus*, 2222  
 Henley's *Invictus*, 3141  
 Milton's on His Blindness, 6688
- The Value of Wholesome Everyday Life**  
 Louisa M. Alcott's *Stories*, 194-195  
 Jane Austen's *Novels*, 506  
 Goldsmith's *Deserted Village*, 2864  
 Longfellow's *Village Blacksmith*, 6010  
 Miss Mulock's *John Halifax*, 1732  
 Wordsworth's *Michael*, 7847
- The Note of Kindness and Sympathy**  
 Poetry of Burns, 1036  
 Coleridge's *Ancient Mariner*, 275
- The Beauty of Loyalty**  
 Longfellow's *Evangeline*, 14, 2329  
 Story of Ruth, 6282-6284
- The Beauty of Devotion to Duty**  
 Mrs. Hemans' *Casabianca*  
 Tennyson's *Charge of the Light Brigade*, 1310
- The Tragedy of Spiritual Conflict**  
 George Eliot's *Novels*, 2209  
 Ellen Glasgow's *Stories*, 2831  
 O'Neill's *Dramas*, 5200, 2023  
 Edith Wharton's *Stories of Modern Social Life*, 7730
- Revolt against Social Injustice**  
 Dickens' *Novels*  
   *Oliver Twist: Workhouse Abuses*, 1937  
   *Bleak House: The Law's Delays*, 1937  
   *Little Dorrit: Evils of Debtor's-Prison System*, 1937  
   *Hard Times: Attitude of Capital toward Labor*, 1937  
 Galsworthy's *Studies of Social Problems*, 2668-2669  
 Ibsen's *Prose Dramas*, 3325  
   *An Enemy of the People*, 3325  
 Helen Hunt Jackson's *Ramona, and A Century of Dishonor*, 3604  
 Kingsley's *Alton Locke and Yeast, a Problem*, 3796
- Sir Thomas More's Utopia*, 7436  
 Charles Reade's *Never Too Late to Mend, and Hard Cash*, 6006  
 Shelley's *Queen Mab, The Revolt of Islam, and Prometheus Unbound*, 6555  
 Upton Sinclair's *Jungle*, 6616  
 Harriet Beecher Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, 6871  
 Tolstoi's *Writings*, 7204  
 Turgenev's *Stories of Peasant Life*, 7300  
 Socialistic *Novels of Wells*, 7707  
 Whittier's *Poems of Freedom*, 7756
- Revolt against Cruelty to Children**  
 Mrs. Browning's *Cry of the Children*, 979  
 Dickens' *Nicholas Nickleby and David Copperfield*, 1937, 1938
- Portrayal of Moral Weakness**  
 Novels of Dumas the Younger, 2054  
 Thackeray's *Vanity Fair*, 7132  
 Becky Sharp, 668-669  
 Zola's *Novels*, 7977
- Retribution for Evil-Doing**  
 Hamlet, 6531  
 King Lear, 6532  
 Macbeth, 6533, 4171-4173  
 Merchant of Venice, 6534  
 Richard III, 6536  
 Story of Esther, 2299-2300
- The Note of Regeneration**  
 Dickens' *Christmas Carol*, 1417  
 The Regeneration of Scrooge, 1417  
 George Eliot's *Silas Marner*, 2208  
 Redemption through the Influence of a Child, 2208  
 Goethe's *Faust, Part II*, 2854  
 Salvation through Useful Labor, 2854  
 Hugo's *Les Misérables*, 3943  
 The Regeneration of Jean Valjean, 3277
- The Power of Conscience**  
 Hawthorne's *Scarlet Letter*, 6410  
 The Effect of Sin Concealed, 6410  
 Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, 6533  
 Effect on Macbeth  
   Sees an Apparition of the Murdered Banquo, 6533  
 Effect on Lady Macbeth  
   Becomes a Prey to Sleepwalking, 6533
- The Note of Individualism**  
 Hauptmann's *Dramas*, 3074
- Moral Lessons in Fables and Allegories**  
 Aesop's *Fables*, 69  
 La Fontaine's *Fables*, 3840  
 Bunyan's *Pilgrim Progress*, 1022  
 Spenser's *Faerie Queene*, 6757



# GAMES AND RECREATION

Athletics, 484-486

Amateur, 484

An Aid to Health, 485

Professional, 484

Training, 484

Where Athletic Games Are Held, 679

Types of Stadiums, 679i

In the High School, 485

Teams Should Be Subordinate to Study, 485

"Making" a Team the Road to Distinction, 485

For Girls, 486

Best Physical Development, 486

## Sports and Games

### In Which Contest Enters

Archery, 357

Bow and Arrow, 897

Boy Scouts Develop Poise, 911

Girl Scouts at Practice, 2816

Targets, 357

Backgammon, 564

Baseball, 633-639

As a Science, 633

Details of the Game, 634

The Ball, 636

The Diamond, 634

How the Game Is Played, 635

Indoor Baseball, 637

Organized Baseball, 634

Outline and Questions, 638

Subjects for Essays, 637

Basket Ball, 639-641

Beginnings, 639

How Played, 639

Course of the Game, 641

Scoring, 641

For Girls, 641

Nasmith, Originator, 641

Outline and Questions, 640

Battledore and Shuttlecock, 653

Billiards, 737-738

How the Game Is Played, 737

Bowling, 898-900

Scoring, 899

Bowls, 899

Boxing, 901-902

Advantages, 902

Marquis of Queensbury Rules, 901

Technique, 901

Card-Playing, 1197

Bridge, 946-948

Auction Bridge, 946

Contract Bridge, 947

Regular Bridge, 947

Other Varieties, 948

Cassino, 1230-1231

Cribbage, 1742-1743

Euchre, 2313

Piquet, 5627

Solitaire, 6681

Checkers, 1325-1326

Chess, 1345-1348

Pieces, 1345, 1346

Cockfighting, 1517

Cricket, 1744-1745

Croquet, 1755

The Field, 1755

Curling, 1787-1788

Discus-Throwing, 1958

Dominoes, 2009

Fencing, 2393  
 Some of the Terms, 2394  
 Football, 2522-2528  
   In the United States, 2522  
     Diagram of the Field, 2523  
     How the Game Is Played, 2523  
     Lineup (Illustration), 2524  
     Officials, 2525  
     Canadian Rugby, 2526  
     English Rugby, 2526  
 Golf, 2864-2868  
   Clubs Required, 2865-2866  
   Diagram of a Course, 2865  
   How the Game Is Played, 2865  
 Hammer-Throwing, 3028  
 Hand Ball, 3033  
   Details of the Game, 3033  
 Hockey, or Shinny, 3189-3190  
   Ice Hockey, 3190  
 Hurdling, 3295  
 Jujutsu, 3708  
 Lacrosse, 3835

Lawn Tennis. [See *Tennis*, below.]  
 Mah-Jongg, 4222  
 Ping Pong, 5624-5625  
 Poll Vault, 5701  
 Polo, 5714  
   A Game for Men of Leisure, 5715  
 Pool, 5728  
 Prize-Fighting, 5828  
   Heavyweight Champions, 5829  
 Putting the Shot, 6575  
 Quoits, 5924  
 Race, 5928, 5930  
   Aircraft Races, 146  
   Automobile Races, 5930  
   Balloon Races, 586  
   Horse Races, 5930  
     Speed Records, 5930  
   Whippet Races, 5930  
 Roque, 1755  
 Shuffleboard, 6580  
 Tennis, 7103-7105  
 Wrestling, 7895, 7896

## Recreation

### Indoor Recreations

Conjuring, 1612-1613  
 Dancing, 1818-1819  
   Fandango, 2370  
   Lancers, 1818  
   Minuet, 1818  
   Polka, 1818  
   Quadrille, 1818  
   Schottische, 1818  
   Sensational Dances, 1819  
   Two-Step, 1818  
   Virginia Reel, 1818  
   Waltz, 1818  
   Primitive and National Dances, 1819  
 Hippodrome, 3183  
 Legerdemain, 3923  
 Theater, 7136-7140  
   American Theaters, 7140  
   Ancient Theaters, 7137  
   In Shakespeare's Time, 7138  
   Moving Pictures, 4703-4729.  
     [See *Outlines on Art and Industry*, in  
       this GUME.]  
   Television, 7084  
   Vaudeville, 7469

### Outdoor Recreations

Angling, 286-287  
   Trolling, 7273  
 Aquaplaning, 333  
 Bicycle, 733-734  
 Bull Fighting, 1018, 1019  
 Camp and Camping, 1109-1112  
   Boy Scouts' Camp Inspection, 911  
   Camp Fire Girls, 1114-1115  
   Camp Fires, 1110  
   Discipline, 1112  
   Equipment, 1109

Girl Scouts' Camp, (Illustrations), 2815-2816  
   Location, 1110  
 Canoe and Canoeing, 1174-1175  
   Art of Canoeing, 1174  
   Kinds of Canoes, 1175  
   Motor Attachments, 1175  
 Circus, 1434, 1435  
 Ice Yachting, 3334  
   How to Build an Ice Yacht, 3335  
 Kite Flying, 3799-3802  
   How to Make a Kite, 3799  
   Kites of Other Lands, 3801  
   Various Models, 3800, 3801  
 Motor Boating, 4687  
   Parts of a Motor Boat, 4687  
   Outboard Motor, 4687, 4688  
 Rowing, 6218  
   Terms Peculiar to Rowing, 6219  
 Skating, 6630  
 Ski and Skiing, 6632  
   Scene at a Tournament, 6633  
 Snowshoe and Snowshoeing, 6666  
 Swimming, 6962, 6965-6967  
   Artificial Aids, 6967  
   Breathing, 6967  
   Diving, 1973-1974  
   Steps in Learning, 6962  
   Strokes  
     Scissors Kick, 6965  
 Tobogganing, 7198  
   In the City of Quebec, 5916  
 Tournament, 7225  
 Yachting, 7918  
   Diesel Yacht, 7919  
   Types of Rigs, 7922, 7923  
   Sailing, 6301

## Children's Games and Play

### Games and Play, 2674-2679, 5655-5657

- Aim of Play, 2674
- Necessity and Value of Play, 7674, 5656
  - Trains in Coöperation and Loyalty, 5656, 1308, 2814
- Dolls, 1996-2001
  - Modern Dolls, 1996
  - Paper Dolls, 1997-1999, 2001
  - In a Doll Factory (Illustration), 2000
- Hopscotch, 3237
- Jackstones, 3607
- Marbles, 4284
- Toys, 7229-7231

### Games for Young Children, in detail

- In the Schoolroom
  - Catch the Squirrel, 2676
  - Do As I Do, 2675
  - Follow the Leader, 2675
  - Playing Train, 2675
- In the Home
  - My Lord's Toilet, 2676
  - Ring Toss, 2676
  - The Garden Gate, 2676
- Out-of-Doors

### Bean Bag Games, 2676

- Cat and Mouse, 2676
- Drop the Handkerchief, 2677
- Frog in the Middle, 2677
- London Bridge, 2677
- Moon and Morning Stars, 2677
- Posture, 2676-2677

### Games for Older Children, in detail

- In the Schoolroom
  - Bean Bag Game, 2678
  - First In, First Out, 2678
  - Overhead Race, 2678
- Out-of-Doors
  - Catch the Salmon, 2678
  - Run, Sheep, Run, 2678
  - Tug of War, 2678

### Quiet Games, in Detail

- Beast, Bird, or Fish, 2679
- Buzz, 2679
- Hot or Cold, 2678
- Kitty Miaou, 2679
- Rhyme Words, 2678
- Ten Questions, 2678-2679

## Games of Chance

- Dice, 1935
- Rouge-et-Noir, 6216

### Roulette, 6216

## Ancient Games

- Isthmian, 3569
- Marathon, 4281
- Nemean, 4875

### Olympian, 5196

- Modern Olympian Games, 5197
- Pythian, 5898

## Puzzles

- Acrostic, 23
- Anagram, 271

### Charade, 1308

### Riddle, 6121

## Miscellaneous

- Calisthenics, 1098
- Delsarte System, 1885-1886
- Dumb-Bells, 2054
- Gymnastics, 2991
- Physical Education, 5587-5593
  - Boy Scouts, 909-914
  - Camp Fire Girls, 1114-1115
  - Development through the Centuries, 5589

### Girl Scouts, 2814-2817

- Physical Education Program, 5588
  - Athletics for Girls Analyzed, 5589
- Simple Home Exercises, 5590, 5591
- Viewpoint of Adults
  - Aims and Objectives, 5587
- Viewpoint of Youth
  - Aims and Objectives, 5587

# GEOGRAPHY

## The Story of Geography

- Geography as a Science, 2721, 2724**
  - What Geography Is, 2721
  - Derivation of the Term, 2721, 5593
  - History and Geography Connected, 2721
- Related Sciences, 2721**
  - Anthropology, 308
    - Ethnography, 2307-2308
    - Ethnology, 2308
    - Sociology, 6671-6673
  - Biology, 748-750
    - Botany, 881-892
    - Ecology, 2097-2098
    - Zoölogy, 7980-7986
  - Economics, 2098-2101
  - Geology, 2732-2745
    - Paleontology, 5309
  - Physics, 5594-5597
- Ancient Ideas of the World, 2721-2722**
  - Early Superstitious Notions, 2722
  - Progress by Phoenicians, 2722
  - Maritime Achievements, 5569
- Greek Interest in Geography, 2722**
  - Aristotle, 382, 2079
  - Eratosthenes, 2079
  - Ptolemy's Map of the World, 2722
- The Age of Discovery, 2722-2723**
  - Medieval Ignorance, 2722
  - Knowledge of Spherical Earth was Lost, 2722
    - What an Old World Map Showed, 2722
  - Marco Polo's Contributions, 5714, 5716
  - Behaim's Map of the World, 2723
  - Columbus' and Toscanelli's Map, 2722
  - Western Hemisphere Discovered, 2723

## Divisions and Study of Geography

- Mathematical Geography, 2724-2726**
  - Cartography, or Map-Making, 2724-2726, 4274, 4276-4278
- Physical Geography, or Physiography, 2726**
  - Land, Sea, and Air, 2726
  - Hydrography, 3308
  - Meteorology, 4418-4419
  - Oceanography, 5154
    - [See outlines below.]
- Biogeography, 2726-2728**
  - Plant Geography, 2726
    - [See Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Animal Geography, 2726
    - [See Outline on *Zoölogy*, in this GUIDE.]
- Human Geography, 2726-2728**
  - Anthropogeography, 2726
    - Races of Men, 5931
    - Anthropology, 308
      - [See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Political Geography, 2728
- Economic, or Commercial, Geography, 2728**
  - [See outlines of countries, states, and provinces below; also outlines on *Agriculture*, *Business*, *Economics*, *Industry*, and *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]
- Interesting Ways of Studying Geography, 2728-2731**
  - Home Geography, 2728-2729
    - Learning from Familiar Things, 2728
  - Study by Comparison, 2729
  - Study of Boundary Lines, 2730
  - The Human Interest Side, 2730
  - Study by Outlines, 2730-2731
    - General Outlines on Geographical Subjects, 2730
      - City, 1439
      - Province, 5856
      - State, 6814
    - [See THE WORLD BOOK articles under the respective names.]

## Mathematical Geography

- Earth, the Planet on Which We Live**, 2079, 5643  
 Planet, 5643-5645  
 Solar System, 6679  
 Sun, 6921-6925  
 Distance from Sun, 2082  
 Relation to Other Planets, 5643, 5644
- Form of the Earth**, 2079, 6758  
 Shortness of Polar Diameter, 2079, 2916  
 Axis, 548  
 North and South Poles, 5700  
 Equator, 2283  
 Hemispheres, 3137
- Dimensions of the Earth**, 2079, 2082, 5643
- Weight of the Earth**, 2080, 2082
- Satellite of the Earth**, 2079  
 The Moon, 4638-4643  
 [See Outline on *Astronomy*, in this Guide.]
- Properties of the Earth**, 497  
 Attraction, 497, 2916, 2082  
 Gravitation, 2916-2917  
 Newton's Law, 2916, 4960-4963  
 Einstein's Theory of Relativity, 2160-2161  
 Magnetism, 2082, 4218  
 Behavior of the Compass Needle, 1591-1592, 2082
- Motions of the Earth**, 2080, 2082  
 Rotation on Its Axis, 2082  
 Time of Rotation, 1842, 2082  
 The Sidereal Day, 1842, 6594  
 Inclination of Earth's Axis, 548, 2082  
 Revolution around the Sun, 2080, 2082  
 Earth's Planetary Movement, 2080, 5645  
 Time of Complete Circuit, or Year, 2080  
 The Sidereal Year, 2080, 6594, 7930  
 The Ecliptic, 2097
- Effects of Earth's Motions**, 2082  
 Apparent Motion of the Sun, 2082  
 Day and Night, 1842, 3260  
 Month, 4630  
 Days of the Week, 7700  
 Seasons, 2082, 6472  
 Natural Divisions of the Year, 6472  
 The Seasons Illustrated, 6472  
 Astronomical Seasons, 6472  
 Duration of Seasons, 6472  
 Equinoxes, 2082, 2283-2284, 6472  
 Precession of the Equinoxes, 2283, 6472  
 Solstices, 6472, 6684
- Zones of the Earth**, 2082, 7978-7979  
 Five Great Climatic Belts, 7978  
 Torrid Zone, 2082, 7275, 7978  
 The Tropics, 7275  
 Days and Nights Equal, 7979  
 North and South Temperate Zones, 2082, 7978  
 Days and Nights of Varying Length, 1842, 7979  
 North and South Frigid Zones, 7979  
 Arctic Circle, 369-370, 7979  
 Antarctic Circle, 303, 7979  
 North and South Poles, 5700
- Polar Days and Nights, 303, 370, 7979  
 Zone Temperatures Merge into One Another, 7979  
 Solar and Climatic Zones (Diagrams), 7978  
 Zones of Vegetation, 7979  
 [See Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Zones of Animal Life, 7979  
 [See Outline on *Zoology*, in this GUIDE.]
- Determining Direction and Distance**, 1591-1593, 4106, 4840-4841, 6943-6944  
 Surveying, 6943-6944  
 Aerial Surveys, 5582-5583  
 Map-Making. [See below.]  
 Navigation, 4840-4841  
 Using an Astrolabe, 4840  
 Chart, 1319  
 Compass, 1591-1593  
 Points of the Compass, 1591-1592
- Latitude and Longitude**, 3888, 4106  
 Latitude, 3888  
 Measured from Equator, 2283, 3888  
 Degrees of Latitude, 1874, 3888  
 Length of a Degree, 2082, 3888  
 Parallels of Latitude, 3888  
 Arctic Circle, 369-370, 3888  
 Antarctic Circle, 303, 3888  
 Tropic of Cancer, 3888, 7978  
 Tropic of Capricorn, 3888, 7978
- Longitude**, 4106  
 Meridians, 4106  
 The Principal Meridian, 4106  
 Meridian of Greenwich, 4106, 7180  
 Greenwich Observatory, 2245, 2246, 4106  
 Degrees of Longitude, 1874, 4106
- Longitude and Time**, 4106-4107  
 [See Outline on *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Maps and Map-Making**, 2724-2726, 4276-4278  
 Cartography, 2724  
 Various Kinds of Maps, 2724, 4274  
 Maps of Historical Changes, 4276, 7392, 7395  
 Maps of Political Changes, 184, 4276  
 Contour Maps, 4276  
 Relief Maps, 4276, 4277  
 Relief Maps of the United States, 4276, 7366  
 Charts, 1319
- Early Maps and Map-Makers**, 4276  
 Ptolemy, 4276, 5871  
 Behaim's Map of the World, 2723  
 Map of the World (1522), 2727  
 Map of the New World (1540), 4278  
 Peter Apianus' World Map (1545), 4278  
 Mercator, 4276, 4403  
 [See *Mercator's Projection*, below.]  
 First Map of Cuba, 2729  
 The First Globe, 4276  
 Thales of Miletus, 4276, 7134  
 Terrestrial Globe, 2843  
 The Romance of Maps, 2725

Difficulties of Map-Making, 2725  
 Flat Maps Inaccurate, 2725, 4276  
 Map-Making in School, 2725-2726  
 Projections, 2725, 4276  
 Mercator's Projection, 2725, 4276  
 Scale of Maps, 4276, 4278  
 Aids to Map-Making, 1508, 2720, 6944

Geodesy, 2720  
 Spherical Surveying, 1508  
 Land Surveying, 6943  
 Plane Surveying, 6943  
 Coast and Geodetic Survey, 1508-1509  
 International Geodetic Survey, 2720

### Physical Geography

Physical Geography, or Physiography, 2726, 5594  
**The Earth as a Whole**, 2079-2083, 5594  
 Relation to Solar System, 5643-5645  
 [See *Mathematical Geography*, above.]  
 Structure, 2736  
 [See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]  
**The Atmosphere**, 108-111, 5594, 2079-2080  
 Effects of Temperature, 1482, 7090-7091  
 Movements of the Air, 6851, 7789  
 Seasons, 6472  
 Zones, 2082  
 [See *Mathematical Geography*, above.]  
 Rainfall, 5984-5986  
 Snow, 6664  
**The Water Envelope**, 5594  
 Ocean Waters, 5149-5152  
 Seas, Gulfs, and Bays, 2731

Lakes, 3841-3844 -  
 Rivers, 6135-6138  
 [See *Waters of the Earth*, below.]  
**The Land Envelope**, 5594  
 Continents, 2737  
 Islands, 3564-3566  
 Plains, 5641-5643  
 Plateaus, 5651  
 Mountains, 4691-4697  
 Valleys, 7443-7445  
**Changes of Surface Appearance**, 5594  
 [See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Origin of the Earth**, 2082, 2734-2737  
 Nebular Hypothesis, 2083, 2734-2736, 4867  
 Pierre Simon Laplace, 3874  
 Planetesimal Hypothesis, 2083, 2736, 4867-4868  
 Chamberlin and Moulton, 2736, 4867

### Waters of the Earth

**The Hydrosphere**, 2080, 2733  
 Extent of the Water Envelope, 2080, 7664  
 Covers Three-Fourths of the Earth, 5149  
 Area of the Oceans, 2080  
 Water, 7664-7665  
**The Story of the Ocean**, 5149-5154  
 Oceanography, 5154  
 One Ocean in Five Parts, 5149  
 Atlantic, 489-490, 5149  
 Pacific, 5149, 5293  
 Indian, 3401, 5149  
 Arctic, 370, 5149  
 Antarctic, 305, 5149  
 Map of the Oceans (The World), between 1550 and 1551  
 Boundaries of the Oceans, 5149  
 Water Pressure, 5150  
 Freezing Point of Sea Water, 5151  
 Bed of the Ocean, 5149-5150  
 Results of Soundings, 5149, 6389  
 Nature of the Ocean Bed, 5149  
 Continental Deposits, 5150  
 Plant and Animal Life, 5150  
 Recent Discoveries, 6389  
 Phosphorescence in Sea Water, 5575  
 Life in the Ocean Depths (Illustration), 5153  
 Photographing the Sea Bottom, 4724  
 Temperature of the Ocean, 5150, 5151  
 Origin of the Ocean's Salt, 5150-5151  
 Ocean Movements, 7171-7172, 7684  
 Waves, 7684

Tides, 7171-7172  
 Long a Scientific Problem, 7171  
 Newton's Key to Solution, 4962, 7171  
 Cause of Tides, 7171  
 How Attractive Forces Operate, 497, 7171-7172  
 Height of Tides, 7172  
 Bores, 865, 7172  
 Project for Utilization of Tidal Waves, 2636  
 Ocean Currents, 5151-5152  
 Causes of Currents, 5151  
 Movements of Currents, 5151-5152  
 Principal Ocean Currents (Map), 5151  
 Currents of the North Atlantic, 5152  
 Gulf Stream, 2982-2983  
 Sargasso Sea, 6388-6389  
 Labrador Current, 3828, 5152  
 Currents of the South Atlantic, 5152  
 Currents of the Pacific, 5152  
 Currents of the Indian Ocean, 5152  
 Japan Current, 3639  
 Labrador Current, 3828  
**Atlantic Ocean**, 489-490  
 Origin of Name, 489  
 Atlas Mountains, 491  
 Two Oceans in One, 489  
 Area of Basin, 489  
 The Ocean Bed, 489, 5149  
 Telegraph Plateau, 489, 5149  
 Atlantic Cable, 1061, 1062  
 Deposits of the Ocean, 489

- Most Important Islands, 490
  - British Isles, 969
  - Canary Islands, 1162-1163
  - Iceland, 3331-3334
  - Greenland, 2957-2960
  - Newfoundland, 4913-4916
  - West Indies, 7713-7714
  - Azores, 550-551
  - Cape Verde Islands, 1183
- Temperature of Waters, 490
- Currents in the Atlantic, 490, 5152
  - [See *Ocean Currents*, above.]
- Life in the Waters, 490
  - Sponges, 490, 6772-6777
  - Smaller Forms, 490
- Grand Banks, 2894
  - Fogs, 2505-2506
- Icebergs, 3329
  - Illustrations, 3330
- Tides and Waves, 7171-7172, 7684
  - [See *Ocean Movements*, above.]
- Pacific Ocean**, 5293
  - The Ocean Bed, 5149, 5293
  - Coral Reefs, 1673
  - Atolls, 491
  - Shore Lines and Coast Waters, 5293
  - Islands, 5293
    - Australia (Island Continent), 507-521
    - New Zealand, 4999-5008
    - Tasmania, 7026-7028
    - Pacific Islands, 5288-5293
    - Oceania, 5154
  - Currents, 5151-5152, 5293
  - Trade Winds, 5293, 7235-7236
  - Typhoons, 5293, 7341
  - Map of Oceania, between 5202 and 5293
- Indian Ocean**, 3401, 5149
  - Two Great Basins, 3401
  - Arabian Sea, 341
  - Bay of Bengal, 708
  - Separated by India, 3378, 3401
  - River Feeders, 3401
  - Islands, 3401
  - Hurricanes, 3296, 3401
- Arctic Ocean**, 370, 5149
  - Continental Shores, 370
  - Ocean Connections, 370
  - Bering Strait, 712
  - Davis Strait, 370
  - Islands, 370
    - Artic Archipelago, 370
    - Baffin Land, 571
    - Franz Josef Land, 2598
    - Greenland, 2957-2960
    - Spitsbergen, 6768-6770
  - Ice Formation, 371-372
    - Paleocrystic Ice, 371
    - Glaciers, 2820-2823
    - Humboldt Glacier, 371
  - Icebergs, 371-372, 3329
    - Forms of Sea Ice, 372
  - Arctic Lands, 370, 371, 372
    - Maps, 371, 5693, 371, 371, 372
    - Airplane View of Arctic Regions, 5694
- Antarctic Ocean**, 305, 5149
  - Currents, 305, 5151-5152
  - Temperature of Waters, 305
  - Ice Formation, 305
    - Icebergs of Huge Size, 305, 3329
  - Antarctic Lands, 304
    - Maps, 304, 5695
  - View of Shackleton's Ship in the Ice, 5697
- Ocean Routes**, 5152, 5154
- Seas, Gulfs, and Bays**, 2731
  - Seas That Are Lakes, 3841
  - Polar Seas Classed as Oceans, 5149
    - [See *Arctic Ocean*, *Antarctic Ocean*, above.]
- Adriatic Sea**, 52
  - Arm of the Mediterranean, 52, 4378
  - Venice, 7484-7487
- Aegean Sea**, 66-67
  - Innumerable Islands, 66
    - Aegean Archipelago, 66
    - Cyclades, 1795
    - Delos, 1795
    - Patmos, 5415
    - Rhodes, 6097
    - Samos, 6356
- Arabian Sea**, 341
  - Arms of the Sea, 341
    - Red Sea, 6033-6034
    - Persian Gulf, 5503
  - Commercial Importance, 341
    - Suez Canal, 6903
- Azov, Sea of**, 551
  - [See *Black Sea*, below.]
- Baffin Bay**, 571
  - Life in the Waters, 571
  - Baffin Land and Bay (Map), 571
- Baltic Sea**, 587
  - Straits Connecting with Ocean, 587
    - Kattegat, 3748
    - Skagerrak, 6629-6630
  - Islands, 587
    - Aland Archipelago, 166
  - Gulfs, 587
- Bay of Bengal**, 708
  - Rivers, 708
    - Ganges, 2680
    - Brahmaputra, 917-918
    - Irrawaddy, 3552
  - Islands, 708
    - Andamans, 708
    - Volcanic Islands, 708
- Bay of Biscay**, 773
  - Ancient Name, 773
  - Basques, 644, 773
    - Origin of Name Biscay, 773
  - Bay Noted for Storms, 773
    - Spanish Armada, 405-406
- Bay of Fundy**, 2635-2636
  - Branches, 2635
    - Rivers, 2635-2636
    - International Boundary, 2635

- High Tides, 2636, 7172
- Height of Bore, 865, 2636
- [See *Ocean Movements*, above.]
- Coast Islands, 2636
- Bering Sea, 712-713
- Named for Vitus Bering, 712-713
- Islands, 712
- Pribilofs, 5810
- Life in the Waters, 712
- Fur Seals, 6466-6468
- Bering Sea Controversy, 713
- [See Map of *Alaska*, between 176 and 177.]
- Black Sea, 783-784
- Pontus Euxinus, or Euxine, 783
- Opened to All Nations, 784
- Treaty of Lausanne, 3895
- Rivers Flowing into Black Sea, 783
- Sea of Azov, 551
- Sea of Marmora, 4296
- Bosporus, 869, 1627
- Internationalized, 869
- Dardanelles, 1826-1827
- Internationalized, 1826
- Important Black Sea Ports, 784
- Carribean Sea, 1197
- Formerly the Spanish Main, 1197
- Broadest Entrance, 1197
- Yucatan Channel, 4448
- Commercial Importance, 1197
- Effect of the Panama Canal, 5331-5337
- Caspian Sea, 1229
- [See Map, 6260-6261.]
- Commercial Importance, 1229
- Oil Industry (Baku), 550
- Most Important Port, 1229
- Astrakhan, 6258
- Cattegat. [See *Kattegat*, below.]
- Chesapeake Bay, 1345, 4312, 7538
- Indian Name, 1345
- United States Naval Academy, 4835-4839
- Hampton Roads, 7538
- China Sea, 1401
- Typhoons, 1401, 7341
- Rivers, 1401
- Mekong, or Cambodia, 4382
- Menam, 6582
- Important Ports, 1401
- Island, 1401
- Darien. [See *Gulf of Darien*, below.]
- Dead Sea, 1845-1846
- Salt Inland Lake, or Sea, 1845
- Located in Palestine, 5314
- Arabian Name, 1845
- Jordan River, 3697-3698
- Delagoa Bay, 1875-1876
- Delaware Bay, 1882
- Delaware River, 1882-1883
- Delaware Water Gap, 1883
- Cities Served by the Delaware, 1882-1883
- Canals, 1161, 1883
- English Channel, 2264-2265
- French Name, 2264
- Islands, 2264
- Channel Islands, 1303
- Isle of Wight, 7758
- Channel Tunnel Proposals, 2264-2265
- Channel Swimmers, 2265
- Strait of Dover, 2017
- North Sea, 5075
- Firth of Forth, 6440
- Meaning of Firth, 2439
- Firth of Tay, 6440
- Florida Straits, or Gulf of Florida, 2485
- Former Name, 2485
- Gulf Stream, 2982-2983
- Galilee. [See *Sea of Galilee*, below.]
- Georgian Bay, 2763
- Ship Canal Project, 1131, 2763
- Gulf of Aden. [See *Red Sea*, below.]
- Gulf of Bothnia, 893
- Gulf of California, 1097
- Most Important Tributary, 1097
- Colorado River, 1563-1564
- Islands Numerous, 1097
- Gulf of Darien, 1828
- Balboa, 576
- Darien Scheme, 1828
- Gulf of Finland, 2423
- Fresh-Water Supply, 2423
- Navigation Factors, 2423
- Coast Ports, 2423
- Gulf of Florida. [See *Florida Straits*, above.]
- Gulf of Guinea, 2980
- [See Map of *Africa*, opposite page 80.]
- Gulf of Mexico, 4448
- Gulf Stream, 2982-2983
- Gulf of Pechili. [See *Yellow Sea*, below.]
- Gulf of Riga, or Livonia, 6126
- Riga, 3800
- Gulf of Saint Lawrence, 6311
- Discovered by Jacques Cartier, 1221, 6311
- Outlet of the Great Lakes, 2934, 6311
- Saint Lawrence River, 6312-6314
- Connections with the Sea, 6311
- Belle Isle Strait, 705
- Cabot Strait, 6311
- Canso Strait, 1179
- Islands, 6311
- Prince Edward Island, 5813-5815
- Anticosti, 309
- Fisheries, 6311
- Gulf of Suez. [See *Red Sea*, below.]
- Hudson Bay, 3271-3272
- Discovered by Henry Hudson, 3270, 3271
- Ocean Outlets, 3271
- James Bay, 3615
- Climate and Development, 3615
- Hudson's Bay Company, 3275
- Hudson Bay Railway, 3271-3272
- Ionian Sea, 3503
- Irish Sea, 3534
- Saint George's Channel, 6308
- North Channel, 3534
- Islands, 3534
- Anglesey, 7579



- Isle of Man, 4246
- James Bay. [See *Hudson Bay*, above.]
- Japan Sea, or Sea of Japan, 3621
  - Colored Map, opposite 3630
- Juan de Fuca Strait. [See *Puget Sound*, below.]
- Kattegat, or Cattegat, 3748
  - Boundaries, 3748
  - Denmark, 1891
  - Sweden, 6949
- Long Island Sound, 4105
  - River Feeders, 4105
  - Thames, 1616, 4105
  - Housatonic, 3261
  - Mystic, 872, 4105
  - Connecticut, 1621
- Manila Bay, 4259
  - Harbors, 4259
  - Manila, 4257-4259
  - Cavite, 5552
  - Pasig River, 4257, 4259
- Philippine Islands, 5549-5563
- Mediterranean Sea, 4378-4379
  - Historic Significance, 4378
  - Phoenician Navigators, 5569
  - Absence of Tides, 2804
  - Gibraltar, 2802-2804
    - Strait of Gibraltar, 2804
  - Present Commerical Importance, 4379
    - Suez Canal, 6903-6904
  - Smaller Seas, 4378-4379
    - Tyrrhenian, 4378
    - Adriatic, 52
    - Ionian, 3503
    - Aegean, 66-67
    - Black, or Euxine, 783-784, 4379
- Islands, 4379
  - Cyprus, 1799
  - Crete, 1742
  - Sicily, 6592
  - Sardinia, 6387
  - Corsica, 1700
- Center of World War Naval Activity, 4379
  - Bosporus, 869
  - Dardanelles, 1826-1827
- Moray Firth, 6440
- Mozambique Channel, 4730
  - Comoro Islands, 4730
- Narragansett Bay, 4810
- North Sea, 5075
  - Formerly German Ocean, 5075
  - Location and Size, 5075
  - Nations with North Sea Ports, 5075
  - Connections with the Baltic, 5075
    - Skagerrak, 6629-6630
    - Kattegat, 3748
    - Kiel Canal, 3772-3773
  - Links with the Atlantic, 5075
    - Strait of Dover, 2017
    - English Channel, 2264
  - Rivers, 5075
- Persian Gulf, 5503
  - Link with Gulf of Oman, 5190, 5503
- Strait of Ormuz, 5503
- Rivers, 5503
  - Euphrates, 2315
  - Tigris, 7175-7177
  - Shat el Arab, 5503
  - Karun, 5503
- Islands, 5503
  - Bahrein Group, 5503
  - Ormuz, 5503
  - Kishm, 5503
- Pearl Fisheries, 5434, 5503
- Principal Ports, 5503
- Puget Sound, 5876
  - Lake Washington Canal, 1161, 5876, 6473
  - Ports on the Sound, 5876
  - Commercial Importance, 5876
    - Fisheries, 5876, 7630
    - Canning Industries, 5876, 7630
    - Lumbering, 5876, 7630
- Red Sea, 6033-6034
  - Commercial Importance, 6033
    - Suez Canal, 6903-6904
  - Gulf of Aden, 45
  - Biblical History (Exodus XIV), 6033
- Sea of Azov. [See *Black Sea*, above.]
- Sea of Galilee, 2663-2664
  - Biblical Names, 2663, 2718
  - Below Sea Level, 5314
  - Fed by River Jordan, 2663, 3697, 5314
- Sea of Japan. [See *Japan Sea*, above.]
- Sea of Marmora. [See *Black Sea* above.]
- Sea of Okhotsk, 5180
- Skagerrak, 6629-6630
- Solway Firth, 6685
- White Sea, 7752
- Yellow Sea, 7935
- Yucatan Channel, 4448
- Zuider Zee, 4890, 7988
- Waterspout, 7674-7675
  - [See under *Whirlwind*, in Outline on *Meteorology*, below.]
- Whirlpool, 7742
  - Niagara River Whirlpool, 5010, 5011
  - Ocean Whirlpools, 7742
    - Maelstrom, 4087, 4209
      - Famous Tidal Current, 4209
      - Off Coast of Norway, 5084
      - In Lofoten Islands, 4087
    - Charybdis, 4413, 6463
- Lakes, 3841-3844
  - Lakes above Sea Level, 3841
    - Lake Titicaca, 7187
  - Lakes below Sea Level, 3841
    - Dead Sea, 1845-1846
  - Lakes Due to Glacial Action, 3841
    - Cayuga Lake, 1265, 3845
    - Minnesota Lakes, 3841, 4514
    - Glacial Epoch, 2817-2819
      - Lake Agassiz, 85
  - Lakes That Have No Outlet, 3841
    - Great Salt Lake, 2935-2937
  - Effect upon Temperature, 3841, 3843
  - Upon Agriculture, 3843

- Largest Fresh-Water Lakes of the World (Illustrated), 3842  
 [See below, for Outlines of WORLD BOOK articles on the above lakes and many others.]
- Lakes of Africa**, 74, 3843  
 Albert Nyanza, or Albert Lake, 191  
 Discovery and Origin of Name, 191  
 Sir Samuel Baker, 191, 6750  
 Chad, or Tchad, 1294  
 Lake Edward, 2134  
 Nyassa, or Nyasa, 5126  
 Lake Rudolph, 6237, 7345  
 Tanganyika, 7014  
 Stanley Found Livingstone Here, 6302, 4061, 7014  
 Victoria Nyanza, 7523  
 Second Largest in World, 3842  
 Headwaters of River Nile, 5029, 7523  
 Discovered by Speke, 7523, 6750  
 Islands Depopulated, 7523  
 Sleeping Sickness, 6641-6642  
 Tsetse Fly, 7285-7286  
 Railway Connection, 7523
- Lakes of Asia**, 3844  
 Aral Sea, 343  
 Baikal, 572  
 Railway Connection, 572  
 Trans-Siberian Railway, 7252-7253  
 Balkash Sea, 582, 583  
 Caspian Sea, 1229  
 Dead Sea, 1845-1846  
 Sea of Galilee, 2663-2664  
 [See *Seas, Gulfs, and Bays*, above.]
- Lakes of Canada**, 3844  
 Athabaska, 479  
 Bras d'Or, 924, 1180  
 Champlain, 1301  
 Lake Erie, 2286-2287, 2933-2935  
 [See *Lakes of the United States*, below.]  
 Great Bear Lake, 2921-2922  
 Fort Franklin, 2922  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 3275  
 The Great Lakes, 2933-2935  
 [See *Lakes of the United States*, below.]  
 Great Slave Lake, 2937  
 Part of Mackenzie River System, 2937, 4185-4186  
 Outlet, the Mackenzie, 4186  
 Lake Huron, 3295-3296  
 [See *Lakes of the United States*, below.]  
 Georgian Bay, 2763, 5203  
 Trent Canal, 1131, 2763  
 Georgian Bay Ship Canal, 1131, 2763  
 Lake Louise, 4123  
 Location in Alberta, 184, 4123  
 Rocky Mountains Park, 5391  
 Banff, 599  
 Named for Princess Louise, 380  
 Illustration, opposite 4123  
 Lake of the Woods, 3844-3845  
 On International Boundary, 3844  
 Feeder, Rainy River, 5989
- Manitoba Lake, 4261, 4266, 7797  
 Memphremagog, 4390, 5908  
 Outlets to Saint Lawrence, 4390  
 Outlets to St. Lawrence, 4390  
 Magog River, 4390  
 Saint Francis River, 4390, 5908  
 Muskoka Lakes, 4779  
 Near Georgian Bay, 2763  
 Lake Muskoka, 4779  
 Rosseau Lake, 4779  
 Joseph Lake, 4779  
 Waterfalls and Rivers, 4779  
 Nipigon, 5033  
 Nipissing, 5033  
 Lake Ontario, 5212  
 [See *Lakes of the United States*, below.]  
 Canadian Lake Ports, 5212  
 Maps, 2933, 5212  
 Rainy Lake, 5987-5988  
 Outlet to Lake of the Woods, 3844  
 Rainy River, 4514, 5989  
 Reindeer Lake, 3842, 6391  
 Lake Saint Clair, 6304  
 Between Lakes Huron and Erie, 6304  
 In Michigan and Ontario, 4457, 5202  
 Inlet and Outlet, 6304  
 Saint Clair River, 6305  
 Detroit River, 1923  
 Lake Simcoe, 5203  
 Lake Superior, 2933-2935, 6930-6931  
 [See *Lakes of the United States*, below.]  
 Ports in Canada, 6931  
 Lake Winnipeg, 7797  
 Origin in Glacial Epoch, 2817-2819, 7797  
 Lake Agassiz, 85  
 Reservoir of Great River System, 7797  
 Saskatchewan River, 6396  
 Red River of the North, 6032  
 Winnipeg River, 7799  
 Outlet to Hudson Bay, 7797  
 Nelson River, 4875  
 Islands  
 Reindeer Island, 7797  
 Big Island, 7797  
 Winnipegosis, 7798-7799  
 Origin Prehistoric, 7799  
 Lake Agassiz, 85
- Lake of Central America**, 3844  
 Lake Nicaragua, 5019  
 Proposed Nicaraguan Waterway, 5019  
 Nicaragua Canal, 5018-5019
- Lakes of Europe**, 2320, 3844  
 Avernus (Lago d'Averno), 547  
 Caspian Sea, 1299, 3841  
 [See *Seas, Gulfs, and Bays*, above.]  
 Lake Como, 1590, 3577, 3578  
 Lake Constance (German Konstanz), 6974  
 Inlet and Outlet, 6974  
 River Rhine, 6088  
 Interesting Surroundings, 6974  
 Lake Dwellings, 3844  
 Lake Garda, 3576  
 Lake Geneva, 6974

- Chateau of Chillon, 1382  
   Lord Byron, 1054  
   View of Lake and Chateau, opposite 1382  
 Katrine (Loch Katrine), 3748, 6441  
   Immortalized by Scott, 3748, 6441  
 Ladoga, 3836-3837, 6261  
 Loch Lomond, 4091, 6441  
 Lucerne, 6974  
   Tale of William Tell, 7089-7090  
   Tell Memorial, Altdorf, 7090  
   The Lion of Lucerne (Illustration), 6973  
 Lugano (Lago Ceresio), 6974  
 Maggiore (Lago Maggiore), 3576, 4212  
 Neuchâtel, 6974  
   Most Important Town, 6974  
   Neuchâtel, 6972  
   Ancient Home of Lake Dwellers, 6974  
   Lake Dwellings, 3844  
 Omega, 5200, 6260, 6261  
 Lake Zurich, 6974  
**Lakes of South America, 6699**  
   Titicaca, 277, 819, 6699, 7187  
   Poopo, 277  
**Lakes of the United States, 3844**  
   Cayuga Lake, 1265  
     One of the Finger Lakes, 1265, 4970  
     Scene of Aquatic Sports, 1265, 1693  
   Lake Champlain, 1301, 4970, 7498  
     Outlet to Saint Lawrence  
       Richelieu River, 6117-6118  
     Discovered by Samuel de Champlain, 1302  
     Plattsburg, N. Y., 1301, 6065, 7240  
   Chautauqua Lake, 1322, 1323, 4970  
     Home of Chautauqua Institution, 1322-1323  
   Lake Erie, 2286-2287, 2933-2935  
     International Boundary Line, 2286  
     Canal Connections, 2286  
       Welland Canal, 7704-7705  
       Erie Canal, 2287-2289  
       New York State Barge Canal, 4997-4998  
     Principal Ports, 2286  
   Lake George, 4970  
   The Great Lakes, 2933-2935  
     Lake Superior, 6930-6931  
     Lake Michigan, 4467  
     Lake Huron, 3295-3296  
     Lake Erie, 2286-2287  
     Lake Ontario, 5212  
   Connecting Links,  
     Saint Mary's River, 6322, 6400  
     Sault Ste. Marie Canals, 6400  
     Strait of Mackinac, 4467  
     Saint Clair River, 6305  
     Lake Saint Clair, 6304  
     Detroit River, 1923  
     Niagara Falls, 5010-5013  
     Welland Canal, 7704-7705  
   Drainage Basin, 2934, 2935  
     South of Height of Land, 1119, 2934  
   Size and Elevation, 2934, 2935  
   Bays and Islands  
     Georgian Bay, 2763  
     Mackinac Island, 4187  
 Great Salt Lake, 2935-2937, 7430  
   One of the Natural Wonders, 2935  
   In Northwestern Utah, 2935, 7430  
   Near Salt Lake City, 6344  
   Peculiar Character of Lake, 2936  
   Annual Product of Salt, 2936  
   Mormon Salt Industry, 2936  
   Glauber's Salt, 2842  
   Points of Interest  
     Saltair Beach, 2936, 6344, 7433  
     Lucin Cutoff, 2935, 2936  
   Origin of the Lake, 2935  
     Lake Bonneville, 7430  
 Lake Huron, 3295-3296  
   Elevation and Comparative Levels, 2934, 3295  
   Sources of Supply, 3295  
     Lake Superior, 6930-6931  
     Lake Michigan, 4467  
     Saint Mary's River, 6322  
     Strait of Mackinac, 3295, 4467  
   Outlet, Saint Clair River, 3296, 6305  
   Islands, 3296  
     Mackinac Island, 4187  
 Lake of the Woods, 3844-3845  
   Outlet, Winnipeg River, 7799  
 Memphremagog, 4390  
   Outlet to the Saint Lawrence, 4390  
   Magog River, 4390  
   Saint Francis River, 5908  
 Lake Michigan, 4467  
   Connections with the Mississippi, 4467  
   Chicago Drainage Canal, 1362, 1367-1368  
   Chicago River, 1351-1352  
   Illinois and Michigan Canal, 3363  
   Illinois River, 3363  
   Bays, 4467  
   Shore, Cities and Towns, 4467  
 Okeechobee, 2335-2336, 2476, 5180  
   In the Florida Swamp Lands, 5180  
   Everglades, 2335-2336, 2476  
   Map, between 2474 and 2475  
   Great Drainage Project, 2336, 2476, 5180  
 Oneida Lake, 4970, 5200  
   Commercial Importance, 5200  
   Section of State Barge Canal, 4997  
 Lake Ontario, 2933-2935, 5212  
   Connections with Lake Erie,  
     Niagara River and Falls, 5010  
   Outlet to the Atlantic, 5212  
   St. Lawrence River, 6312  
   Connections, 5212  
     Erie Canal, 2287-2289  
     State Barge Canal, 4997  
     Genesee River, 2715  
     Oswego Canal, 1161  
     Hudson River, 3272-3274  
     Welland Canal, 1161, 7704-7705  
   Harbors and Fisheries, 5212  
   Pontchartrain, 4943, 5726  
   Near New Orleans, 4942

Bayou Saint John, 5726  
 Watson-Williams Bridge, 4943  
 Rainy Lake, 4514, 5987  
 Outlet to Lake of the Woods, 3844  
 Rainy River, 5989  
 Lake Saint Clair, 6304-6305  
 Connecting Links, 6304  
 Saint Clair River, 6305  
 Detroit River, 1923  
 Between Lakes Huron and Erie, 2934  
 Salton Sea, 6345-6346  
 Below Sea Level, 6346  
 Irrigation Operations, 2238, 6346  
 Imperial Valley Flooded, 1082, 6346  
 Seneca Lake, 6491-6492  
 Largest of the Finger Lakes, 4970, 6491  
 Fed by Keuka Lake, 6492  
 Canal Connections, 6492  
 New York State Barge Canal, 4997-4998  
 Lake Superior, 2933-2935, 6930-6931  
 Most Elevated of the Great Lakes, 2934, 6930  
 [See Diagram, 2934.]

Two Hundred River Feeders, 6930  
 Saint Louis River, 6312  
 Source of the Saint Lawrence, 6312, 6930  
 Outlet in Lake Huron, 3295, 6930  
 Saint Mary's River, 6322  
 Sault Ste. Marie Canals, 6400  
 Pictured Rocks, 6930  
 Islands, 6930  
 Isle Royale, 3567  
 Saint Ignace, 6930  
 Michipicoten, 6930 (Map)  
 Apostle Group, 6930  
 Grand Island, 6930  
 Manitou, 6930  
 Lake Tahoe, 1085, 4900, 7006  
 In Sierra Nevadas, 6597, 7006  
 Outlet, 7006  
 Pyramid Lake, 4900  
 Utah Lake, 7435  
 Fresh-Water Lake in Utah, 7430, 7435  
 Fed by Mountain Streams, 7435  
 Watach Range, 7623  
 Flows into Great Salt Lake, 7435  
 Jordan River, 7428, 7435

#### Lands of the Earth

**The Lithosphere**, 2080, 2736  
 Outermost Shell of the Earth, 2736  
 Granitic Rock, 2736  
 Surface Veneer, 2736-2737  
 Soil, 6676-6677  
 Extent of the Land Envelope, 2080  
 Area of Land Surface, 2082  
 Areas of the Continents (Diagram), 5594  
 Main Divisions of Earth's Crust, 2737  
 [See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]

**The Hemispheres**, 2283, 3137  
 Halves of the Earth, 3137  
 Eastern Hemisphere, 2080, 3137  
 Western Hemisphere, 2080, 3137  
 Northern and Southern Hemispheres, 3137  
 Equator the Dividing Line, 2283  
 North and South Poles, 5700

#### Parts of the Land Surface, 5594

Continents, 2737  
 Islands, 3564-3566  
 Plains, 5641-5643  
 Plateaus, 5651  
 Mountains, 4691-4697  
 Valleys, 7443-7445

#### The Continents, 5594

Africa, 72-84  
 Asia, 440-451  
 Australia, 507-520  
 Europe, 2316-2328  
 North America, 5044-5051  
 South America, 6697-6703  
 Antarctica, 304  
 [See detailed Outlines of the continents, below.]

**Continental Coast Formations**  
 Isthmus, 3569

Corinth, 1675, 3569  
 Greece, 2943  
 Peloponnesus, 1675, 5449  
 Kra, 4237  
 Malay Peninsula, 4237  
 Siam, 6581  
 Panama, 3569, 5331  
 North America, 5047  
 South America, 6697  
 Perekop, 1746, 5458  
 Crimea, 1746  
 Russia, 6257  
 Suez, 3569, 6903  
 Africa, 72  
 Asia, 440  
 Peninsula, 5458  
 Arabia, 338  
 Crimea, 1746  
 Florida, 2474  
 Greece, 2939  
 Iberian Peninsula, 3324, 5458  
 Spain, 6725  
 Portugal, 5757  
 India, 3378  
 Italy, 3572, 3576, 5458  
 Malay Peninsula, 4237  
 Burma, 1030  
 Indo-China, 3431  
 Siam, 6581  
 Bays and Gulfs. [See *Seas, Gulfs and Bays*, above.]  
**Continental Deposits**, 5150  
**Continental Divide**, 1971-1972  
 Watershed, 1971  
**Continental Shelf**, 5150  
**Continental Slope**, 5150

**Islands, 3564-3566**

- Archipelago, 358
- Agean Sea, 66-67
- Australia an Island-Continent, 507
- Continental Islands, 3564
  - Parts of the Continent, 3564
  - British Isles, 969
- Floating Islands, 3564
- Oceanic Islands, 3564
  - Origin, 3564
  - Coral Reefs, 1673, 3564
  - Volcanic Eruptions, 3564
  - Hawaii, 3076-3086
- Islands of Special Interest, 3564
- World's Largest Islands (in order of size), 3565

**Mountains, 4691-4697**

- Origin, 2737
- Geologic Agencies, 2737
- Igneous Activity, 2737, 4691
  - Volcanoes, 7560
  - [See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]
- Dome-Shaped Mountains, 2737
- Erosion, 2290, 2737
  - Catskill Mountains, 1249, 2737
- Dynamic Movements of Earth's Crust, 2737, 4691
  - Folding of Outer Rocks, 2737, 2739
  - Isostasy, 2737
- Formation of the Alps, 4691
- Composition of Mountains, 4691
  - Core of Granite, 4691
  - Sedimentary Rock Strata, 4691
- World's Highest Mountain, 4696
  - Mount Everest, 2334, 3180
- How Elevation is Determined, 4696
- World's Loftiest Mountains, 4692-4695
  - [For lists of mountains, see under the various continents, below.]

**Plateau, 5651**

- Origin of Plateaus, 2737, 5651
- Plateau and Plain, 5651
- Notable Plateaus, 5651
  - Allegheny Plateau, 7365
  - Catskills, 1249, 7365
    - Once a River Plateau, 1249
  - Bolivian Plateau, 819
  - Guiana Highlands, 7478
  - Laurentian Plateau, 1119, 3893
- Loftiest Plateaus on Earth, 5651
  - In Himalaya Regions, 3180
  - Tibet, 7168
- Mesas, 4411, 5651
  - Table-Lands of United States, 4411
    - Along the Colorado River, 1563-1564
  - Mesa Encantada, 4411
  - Mesa Verde, 4412
    - Cliff Dwellers, 1480-1482
  - Mesa Verde National Park, 5388
- Low Plateaus Used for Grazing, 5651
- Appalachian Plateaus, 7364
  - Coal Deposits, 5651

**Plain, 5641-5643****Coastal Plains, 5642**

- Atlantic Coastal Plain, 5642, 7364
  - Fall Line, 2368
- Interior Plain (United States), 5641, 7365
- Flood Plains, 5642
  - Mississippi River, 4547
  - River Po, 5677
  - Ganges, 2680
  - Nile, 5029-5031
- Llanos, 4065, 6698
  - Treeless Plains of South America, 6698
    - Colombia, 1541
    - Venezuela, 7478
- Pampas, 5324, 6698
  - Grass Plains of South America, 6698
    - Especially in Argentina, 375
  - Between Two Rivers, 5324
    - Rio Negro, 6134
    - Rio Salado, 5324
- Prairies, 5795
  - Grass Lands of North America, 5795
  - In Central Valleys, 5795
    - Mississippi River, 4547
    - Ohio River, 5178
  - The Prairie States, 5795
    - Illinois, 3354
    - Indiana, 3392
    - Iowa, 3506
    - Missouri, 4551
    - Ohio, 5169
    - Wisconsin, 7804
- Prairie Provinces, 5795
  - Alberta, 184
  - Manitoba, 4260
  - Saskatchewan, 6391
- Underlying Deposits, 5795
  - Limestone, 4007
  - Sandstone, 6365
- Savanna, 6401-6402
  - Plains Classed as Savannas, 6401
    - Pampas, 5325
    - Prairies, 5795
    - Steppes, 6828
  - Central African Plains, 6402
- Selvas, 6487
  - Important Products
    - Rubber, 6224
    - Bamboo, 592
    - Valuable Woods, 6487
      - Rosewood, 6208
- Steppes, 6828
  - Extent, 6828
    - From Caspian Sea, 1229
    - To Altai Mountains, 236
  - Other Plains classed as Steppes, 6828
    - Pampas, 5324
- Tundras, 7292
  - The Alaskan Tundra, 172, 7292
  - The Siberian Tundra, 6587-6588
- Deserts, 1916
  - Characteristics, 1916
  - Deserts Hot or Cold, 1916
    - Sahara Hot, 6298

Siberian Tundras Cold, 6587  
 Rainless Regions as Deserts, 1916  
 Arid Region, 380  
 Animal and Vegetable Life, 1916  
 Camel, 1103-1106, 1916  
 Cactus, 1063-1065  
 Lizards, 4064  
 Protective Coloration, 4064, 5850  
 Protection from Sand, 1916  
 Desert Dwellers, 1916  
 Arabs, 342  
 Bedouins, 671  
 Nomad Life, 5039-5040  
 Nomad Encampment, 5039  
 Sahara Desert Life, 5135  
 Village in Algerian Oasis, opposite 217  
 Irrigation, 1916, 3556  
 Oases, 1916, 5133, 6299  
 Causes and Characteristics, 1916, 5133  
 North American Oases, 5133  
 A Typical Oasis, 1914  
 An Algerian Oasis, 5134  
 An Ancient Oasis, 5133  
 Siwa, 5136  
 The Desert of Song and Story, 1916  
 Algerian Desert, 217  
 Arabian Desert, 338, 6298  
 Arabia an Arid Region, 339  
 Central Asian Desert, 444, 1916  
 Desert of Gobi, 2850  
 Caravan Trade, 2850, 4592  
 Great Salt Lake Desert, 7428  
 Kalahari Desert, 3730  
 Region of Southern Africa, 3730  
 Libyan Desert. [See *Sahara*, below.]  
 Sahara, 1916, 6298-6301  
 Outstanding Feature of Africa, 73  
 Location. [See *Economic Map of Africa*, following page 80.]  
 Crossed by the Nile, 5029, 6298  
 Surface Features, 6298  
 Mountain Ranges, 6298  
 Climate Dry and Hot, 6299  
 Khamsin, 3770  
 Sand Storms, 6299  
 Simoom, 6615  
 Sirocco, 6626  
 Sahara Oases, 6299  
 Date Palms, 1831, 1832  
 Irrigation, 6299  
 Animal Life, 6299  
 Camel, 1103-1106  
 Ostrich, 5268-5270  
 Inhabitants of the Sahara, 6300-6301  
 Arabs, 342  
 Bedouins, 671  
 Berbers, 711  
 Tuaregs, 711, 6301  
 Jews, 3675  
 Moors, 4645  
 Negroes, 4871, 6301  
 Tibbus, 6301  
 Commerce of the Desert, 6300

Camel Caravans, 1189  
 Tractor Routes, 6300  
 Airplanes, 6300  
 Radio Communication, 6300  
 Chief Articles of Trade, 6301  
 Trans-Saharan Railway Project, 6300  
 Mineral Resources, 6300  
 French Political Control, 2580, 6300  
 River, 6135-6138  
 [Though a part of the hydrosphere, rivers are treated here because of their close connection with the physiography of the land.]  
 Source of a River, 6135  
 Springs, 6778  
 Melting Glaciers, 2820  
 Wearing a Channel, 6135  
 Erosion, 2290-2291  
 Bed of the Stream, 6135  
 Banks, 6135  
 Longest Rivers of the World (Illustrated), 6137  
 [See Outlines of the respective countries, states, and provinces, below.]  
 Divide, 1971-1972, 6136  
 Height of Land, 1119, 1971  
 Continental Divide, 1971-1972  
 Two Divides Illustrated, 1971  
 Deltas, 1886, 6136  
 Alluvial Plains, 228  
 How Deltas Are Formed, 1886, 2291  
 Silt Deposits, 6136  
 Notable Deltas, 1886  
 Ganges, 2680  
 Mississippi, 4547, 6136  
 Delta Area, 1886  
 Map, 4548  
 Nile, 5029, 6136  
 River Po, 5677  
 Estuaries, 6136  
 Broad Mouths of Rivers, 6136  
 A Notable Example  
 Rio de la Plata, 6133  
 Cataracts and Canyons, 6136  
 [See below, under *Waterfall* and *Valleys*.]  
 Waterfall, 7666-7668  
 Causes, 7666  
 Varieties of Waterfall, 7668  
 Noted Cataracts, 6136, 7668  
 Niagara Falls, 5010-5013  
 Victoria Falls, 7522-7523  
 On Zambezi River, 7968  
 Discovered by Livingstone, 4061  
 Crossed by Cape-to-Cairo Railway, 1182  
 Falls of the Iguassu, 6701  
 Paraná River, 5363  
 Cascades of Great Height, 7668  
 Yosemite Falls, 7948, 7950  
 Sutherland Falls, 7668  
 Staubbach Falls, 6973  
 Highest Waterfalls of the World (Illustrated), 7669  
 Some Interesting Comparisons, 7666

Other Noted Waterfalls, 7668  
 Montmorency Falls, 4630  
 Multnomah Falls, 5244  
 Falls of the Yellowstone, 7942  
 Great Falls of Labrador, 7668, 3828  
 Noted American Rapids, 7668  
 Sault Ste. Marie, 6400  
 St. Lawrence River, 6312-6314  
 The Fall Line, 2368, 7668  
 Water Power, 7670-7673  
 [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Valley**, 7443-7445  
 How Formed, 2291, 7443  
 Folding of Earth's Crust, 7443  
 Mountain Valleys, 4691  
 Erosion, 2291, 7443  
 Effect of Mountain Streams, 2291  
 Intermontane Valleys, 7443  
 Great Western Valley, 7443  
 Shenandoah Valley, 6555  
 In the Appalachians, 321  
 Longitudinal Valleys, 7444  
 Transverse Valleys, 7444

Passes, 7444  
 Himalayas, 3180  
 Khyber Pass, 3770-3771  
 Alps, 234  
 Mont Cenis, 234, 4621  
 Simplon, 234, 6615  
 Saint Bernard Passes (Great and Little), 6303  
 Andes, 276-277  
 Uspallata Pass, 277  
 Water Gaps, 7444  
 Delaware Water Gap, 1883  
 Valleys in Arid Regions, 7444  
 Formed by Erosion, 2290  
 Canyons, 1179, 6136  
 Grand Canyon, 2894-2896  
 Yellowstone Canyon, 7940  
 Royal Gorge, 1555, 6221  
 Cut by Arkansas River, 403  
 Drowned Valleys, 7445  
 Delaware Bay, 1882  
 New York Bay, 4981  
 Hanging Valleys, 7445  
 Glacial Valleys, 7445

### The Continent of Africa

**Second Largest Continent**, 72  
**Position**, 73, 82  
 Boundaries, 73  
 Atlantic Ocean, 489  
 Indian Ocean and Red Sea, 3401, 6033  
 Mediterranean, 4378  
**Size**, 72-73, 82  
**Form and Coast Line**, 73  
 Islands Comparatively Few, 73  
 Madagascar, 4196  
 Madeira, 4198  
 Canary Islands, 1162  
 Cape Verde Islands, 1183  
 Reunion, 73, 3401  
 Mauritius, 4349  
 Zanzibar, 7969  
 Delagoa Bay, 1875-1876  
 Mozambique Channel, 4730  
**Surface Features**, 73  
 Mountains, 73  
 Atlas Range, 491  
 Mount Kenia, 73  
 Kilimanjaro, 3774  
 Ruwenzori, 73  
 Drakensberg, 73  
 Sahara Desert, 6298-6301  
**Rivers**, 73  
 Nile, 5029-5031, 6137  
 Importance to Egypt, 2142, 5029  
 Source in Victoria Nyanza, 7523, 5029  
 Delta, 5031  
 Aswan (Assuan) Dam, 2148  
 Cataracts of the Nile, 5031  
 The Nile Valley (Map), opposite 2154  
 Congo, 73, 1606, 6137  
 Explored by Stanley, 1606, 6802

Niger, or Joliba, 5024, 6137  
 Zambezi, 6137, 7968  
 Victoria Falls, 7522-7523  
 Explored by Livingstone, 4061  
 Orange River, 5235  
 Gambia River, 2673  
 Senegal River, 6492  
**Lakes**, 74  
 [See *Lakes of Africa*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]  
**Climate**, 74  
 High Temperature, 74, 7000  
 Rainfall Deficient, 74, 5985  
 Rainless Desert Areas, 74, 1916  
**Vegetable Life**, 74-76  
 Wheat in Northern Belt, 74  
 Oasis Vegetation, 74, 5134  
 Southern Savannas, 76, 6402  
 Ostrich Farms, 5269  
 Equatorial Region, 76  
 Map of Vegetation Zones, 74  
**Animal Life**, 76  
 [See Outline on *Zoölogy*, section on *Zoögeography*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Mineral Resources**, 77  
 Diamonds, 1932  
 Gold, 2859  
 Transvaal, 7354  
 Coal, 77  
 Copper, 1668  
 Belgian Congo, 691  
 Tin, 7181  
 Nigeria, 5024  
 Other Metals and Minerals, 7354  
**Inhabitants**, 77-78  
 [See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]

Maps of Africa, between pages 80 and 81  
 Ownership of Africa (Map), 77

Three Scenes in Africa, 81  
 Cape-to-Cairo Railway, 1181-1182

### The Continent of Asia

Derivation of the Name, 440

Position, 448

Boundaries, 441

Arctic Ocean, 370

Indian Ocean, 3401

Europe, 2316

Caspian Sea, 1229

Black Sea, 783

Mediterranean, 4378

Red Sea, 6033

Bering Strait, 712

Pacific Ocean, 5293

Size, 440, 448

Shape and Coast Line, 441, 448

Deep Indentations, 441

Bering Sea, 712

Sea of Okhotsk, 5180

Japan Sea, 3621

Yellow Sea, 7935

South China Sea, 1401

Bay of Bengal, 708

Arabian Sea, 341

Persian Gulf, 5503

Islands, 441

Japan, 3621-3639

Philippines, 5549-5563

Borneo, 867-868

Sumatra, 6918-6919

Java, 3641-3643

New Guinea, 4917

Small Islands of the Malay Archipelago,  
 4237

Climate, 441-446

Sub-Zero in Siberia, 441

Extreme Heat in Arabia, 339

Aden, 45, 441

Surface Features, 441-442

A Land of Contrasts, 441

Mount Everest, 2334, 3180

Dead Sea, 1845

Mountain Systems, 441

Himalayas, 3179-3181

Mount Everest, 2334

Kanchanjanga, 3180

Altai Mountains, 236

Caucasus, 1259

Elburz Range, 2163

Ghats, or Ghauts, 2797

Hindu Kush, 3181

Karakoram, 442, 3180

Pamir Plateau, 5324

Stanovoi Range, 6803

Taurus Ranges, 7032

Tian-Shan Range, 7165

Ural Mountains, 7420

Yablonoi Range, 7918

Historic Mountains

Mountains of Lebanon, 3915

Mount Nebo, 4854

Mount of Olives, 5194

Mount Tabor, 6994

Fujiyama, 2632, 2633

Sacred Mountain of Japan, 3627

Rivers

Amur, 269, 6137

Brahmaputra, 917-918, 6137

Euphrates, 2315, 6137

Ganges River, 2680, 6137

Sacred River of India, 2680, 3382

Flows into Bay of Bengal, 708

Tributaries, 2680

Jumna, 3712

Holy Cities on Banks, 2680

Benares, 3383

Allahabad, 3382

Landing Places, 2680

Ghats, 2680, 2797

Hwang (Hoang-ho), 3301, 6137, 1385

Flows into Gulf of Pechili, 7935

Hugli, 3277

Indus, 3433

Irrawaddy, 3552

Principal River of Burma, 1032

Flows into Bay of Bengal, 708

Jordan River, 3697-3698

Historic Stream in Palestine, 5314

Source in Syria (Illustrated), 3698

Sea of Galilee, 2663-2664

Lena River, 3930, 6137

Mekong River, 4382, 6137

Largest Stream of Indo-China, 4382, 3431

Flows into China Sea, 1401

Nerbudda, 4879

Ob, 442, 5141, 6137, 6588

Sutlej, 6944

River of the Punjab, 5883

Tigris River, 7175, 7177

Sister Stream of Euphrates, 2315

Ancient Valley of Mesopotamia, 4412

Now Iraq, 3514-3517

The United Rivers, 7177

Scene on the Tigris, 7176

Irrigation Project, 2315

Yalu River, 7926

Yangtze River, 6137, 7927

Disastrous Floods, 1385, 7928

Yenesei River, 6137, 7943

Animal Life (Illustrated), 443

[See Outline on *Zoölogy*, section on *Zoögeography*, in this GUIDE.]

Lakes. [See *Lakes of Asia*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]

Maps of Asia, between pages 444 and 445

Inhabitants, 442, 444, 445, 446, 447

Numerous Races of Men, 5931

[See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]



*Geographic Divisions of Asia*

- Northern Asia, 442, 444
  - Territory Included, 442
  - Siberia, 6586-6591
  - Area, 442
  - Surface Features, 442
  - Great Rivers, 442
    - Lena, 3930
    - Ob, 442, 5141, 7943
    - Yenesei, 7943
  - Wide-Stretching Plains, 442
  - Desert Regions in South, 442
    - Nomad Life, 5039-5040
  - Arctic Tundra Belt, 7292
  - Temperate Grassy Region, 442
    - Grain Crops, 442
- Inner Asia, 444
  - Territory Included, 444
  - Tibet, 7166-7170
  - Mongolia, 4592-4594
  - Turkestan, 7301
    - Chinese Turkestan, 7301
    - Sin Kiang, 6623, 7301
  - Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic, 7318
  - Climate and Weather, 444
    - Part Desert, 444, 1916
  - Surface Features
    - Steppes, 6828
  - Plateaus, 444, 5651
    - Gobi Desert, 2850, 4592
  - China Nominally Supreme, 444
  - Inhabitants, 444
  - Animal Life, 444
    - Bactrian Camel, 1104
    - Yak, 7923-7924, 7169
  - Minerals in Abundance, 444
- Eastern Asia, 444, 445
  - Territory Included, 444
    - China Proper, 1385
    - Japan, 3621
    - Chosen (Korea), 1409
    - Manchuria, 4248, 4252
    - French Indo-China, 2610-2612
  - Rivers, 445
    - Hwang, 3301
    - Yangtze, 7927
  - Climate, 444
    - Rainfall, 444, 5986
  - Soil and Vegetation, 444
  - Inhabitants, 445
    - Mongol Race Predominates, 445, 4594, 5931
  - [See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Mineral Resources, 444, 445
    - Gold, 2859
    - Silver, 6614
    - Copper, 1666
    - Mercury, 4407
    - Coal, 1499
- Southern Asia, 445-446
  - Territory Included, 445
  - India, 3377-3390
  - Burma, 1030-1032
  - Siam, 6581
  - Malay Peninsula, 4237-4239
  - Strait Settlements, 6873
  - Federated Malay States, 2390-2391
  - Surface Features, 445
  - Mountain Systems in North, 445
  - Rivers, 445
    - Ganges, 2680
    - Indus, 3433
    - Brahmaputra, 917-918
    - Irrawaddy, 3552
  - Climate, 445
  - Inhabitants, 445
    - [See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Animal Life, 445, 446
    - Distinctive Animals, 445
    - Elephant, 2198, 2202
    - Rhinoceros, 6089-6090
    - Tiger, 7173-7175
    - Other Animals, 445
    - Wolves, 7817-7818
    - Monkeys, 4595-4597
  - Reptiles, 6062
  - Birds, 445
  - Vegetation, 445
    - Breadfruit Tree, 937-938
    - Coconut, 1519-1522
    - Sago Palm, 6298
  - Agricultural Products, 445
    - Cotton, 1709, 1710
    - Rice, 6107-6113
    - Sugar, 6906-6913
- Southwestern Asia, 446
  - Territory Included, 446
    - Arabia, 338
    - Armenia, 407
    - Asia Minor, 451
    - Iraq (Mesopotamia), 3514
    - Palestine, 5310
    - Persia, 5495
    - Syria, 6987
    - Transjordan, 7244
    - Turkey in Asia, 7302
  - Scene of Ancient Civilization, 446
    - Garden of Eden, 2107
  - Ancient Empires, 446
    - Assyria, 460-463
    - Babylonia, 560-562
    - Chaldea, 1296
    - Persia, 5495
  - Influence on Western Civilization, 446
  - Surface Features, 446
  - Climate, 446
  - Inhabitants, 446
    - [See RACES OF MEN, 5931, and Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Vegetable Products, 446
    - Date Palm, 5319-5320

## The Continent of Australia

**Most Detached Grand Division,** 507

**Meaning of Name,** 507

**Position,** 507

Surrounding Seas, 507

Indian Ocean, 3401

Pacific Ocean, 5293

**Size,** 507, 518

**Shape and Coast Line,** 509

Oblong, Compact Mass, 518

Indentations, 509

Great Australian Bight, 2921

Gulf of Carpentaria, 5919

Near-By Islands, 509

Tasmania, 7026-7028

New Guinea, 4917

Great Barrier Reef, 509, 5919

Coral Formation, 1673

**Surface Features,** 509

Great Australian Plain, 509

Eastern Section, 509

Murray River Basin, 4748

Western Section, 509

Rivers, 510

Murray River, 4748-4749

Darling, 4748

Lachlan, 510

Murrumbidgee, 4749

Other Streams, 510

Cooper's Creek, 510, 1664

Lakes, 510

**Climate and Rainfall,** 510

**Inhabitants,** 507-508

[See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]

**Plant and Animal Life,** 510-512

Tropical Vegetation, 512

Acacias, 13

Wattle Tree, 13

Bottle Tree, 894

Eucalyptus, 2312

Interior and Southern Plants, 512

Animal Life. [See Outline on *Zoölogy*, section on *Zoögeography*, in this GUIDE.]

**Resources and Industries,** 512, 513-514

Mineral Resources, 512

Gold, 2859-512

Silver, 6614, 512

Rivals Gold Production, 513

Copper, 1668

Coal, 1500

Agriculture, 513

Water Supply, 513

Agricultural Regions (Map), 513

Products, 513

Fruits, 513

Stock-Raising, 514

Great Flocks of Sheep, 514, 6548

Manufactures, 514

Communication and Commerce, 514

Railways, 514

Chief Exports, 516

Wool, 516

Hides, 516

Wheat, 7731

Butter, 1042

Meat, 4360, 4364

Gold, 2859

**Map of Australia,** between pages 512 and 513

**Development of the Continent** (Map), 513

**Types of Scenery,** 511

**Common Scenes** (Illustrations), 515

**The New Capital City** (*Canberra*), 517

## The Continent of Europe

**Continent of Greatest Historic Importance,** 2316-2317

**Geographically a Peninsula,** 2316

Most Points Near the Sea, 2317

**Position,** 2318, 2327

**Size and Shape,** 2318

**Physical Features,** 2318, 2320

Highest Altitude, 2318

Mont Blanc, 4619

Lowest Depression, 2318

Caspian Sea, 1229

Coast Waters, 2318

[See *Seas, Gulfs, and Bays*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]

**Islands,** 2318, 2320

British Isles, 969

Great Britain, 2922-2931

Ireland, 3517-3531

Channel Islands, 1303

Hebrides, 3122-3123

Isle of Man, 4246

Isle of Wight, 7758

Orkneys, 5260

Silly Islands, 6434

Shetlands, 6559

Aegean Archipelago, 67

Balearic Isles, 578

Majorca, 578

Minorca, 578

Capri, 1187

Corsica, 1700

Crete, 1742

Cyclades, 1795

Cyprus, 1799

Elba, 2162

Euboea, 2312

Helgoland, 3129

Iceland, 3331-3334

Ionian Islands, 3503

Malta, 4241

Melos, or Milo, 4385

Monte Cristo, 4621

Nova Zembla, 5103

Osel, 2300

Patmos, 5415

Rhodes, 6097

Salamis, 6330  
 Sardinia, 6386  
 Sicily, 6592-6594  
 Spitsbergen, 6768-6770  
 Highlands and Lowlands, 2320  
 Mediterranean Highland District, 2320  
   Alps, 234-236  
     Jungfrau, 3716  
     Matterhorn, 4346  
     Mont Blanc, 4619  
     Monte Rosa, 4622  
   Apennines, 317  
   Balkans, 580  
   Pyrenees, 5896  
   Sierra Nevada (Spain), 6731  
 Central Mountain System  
   Black Forest, 780  
   Carpathians, 1206  
   Cevennes, 1292  
   Harz Mountains, 3069  
   Jura Range, 3721  
   Riesengebirge, 6123  
   Valdai Hills, 7441  
   Vosges Mountains, 7569  
 Northwest Highland Region, 2320  
   Finland, 2422  
   Norway, 5082  
   Sweden, 6950  
   Scotland, 6440  
   Ireland, 3520  
 Historic Mountains, 2943  
   Mount Helicon, 3130  
   Mount Olympus, 5197  
   Parnassus (Likeri), 5397  
 Volcanoes, 7560-7564  
   Etna, 2309-2310  
   Stromboli, 7562  
   Vesuvius, 7512  
 Great Lowland Provinces, 2320  
 Rivers, 2320  
   Arno, 3576  
   Avon, 548  
     Stratford-on-Avon, 6874  
   Clyde, 1497  
     Glasgow, 2830-2831  
   Danube, 1824-1825  
   Dnieper, 1983, 6261  
   Dniester, 1983, 6261  
   Don, 2000-2010, 6261  
   Elbe, 2162-2163  
   Garonne, 2695  
     Estuary, 2695  
     The Gironde, 2695, 2817  
   Loire, 4090

Main, 2775  
 Marne, 4297-4298  
   Tributary of the Seine, 6485  
 Meuse, 4429-4430, 7493  
 Moselle, 4670  
   Tributary of Rhine, 6088  
 Neva, 6260  
   Outlet of Lake Ladoga, 3836, 6260  
 Oder, 5161-5162  
 Po, 5677  
 Rhine, 6087-6089  
   Importance in Europe, 6087  
   Byron's Tribute, 6087  
   Die Wacht am Rhein, 7573  
 Rhone, 6100  
   Flows through Lake Geneva, 6974  
 Saône, 6383  
 Save, 6402  
 Scheldt, 6410  
   Special Value to Belgium, 695  
 Seine, 6484-6485  
   The River of Paris, 5372, 5374  
 Somme, 6687  
 Thames, 7134  
   Flows through London, 4092  
 Tiber, 7166  
   Historic River of Rome, 3576, 6180  
 Ural, 6261, 7420  
 Vistula, 7548  
 Volga, 6261, 7564  
 Lakes, 2320  
   [See *Lakes of Europe*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]  
**Climate and Vegetation**, 2320-2321  
 Extremes of Climate (Illustrated), 2319, 2321  
**Animal Life**, 2321  
   [See Outline on *Zoölogy*, section on *Zoögeography*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Mineral Wealth**, 2321, 2324  
 Value of Total Output, 2321  
   Coal, 1500  
   Iron (Graph), 3551  
 Other Metals and Minerals, 2321, 2324  
   Gold, 2859  
   Copper, 1668  
   Lead, 3902  
   Zinc, 7973  
   Platinum, 5652  
   Quicksilver, 4407  
   Petroleum, 5529  
   Marble, 4282-4284  
**Inhabitants**, 2317  
 Languages Spoken, 2317-2318

### The Continent of North America

Third Largest of the Continents, 5049  
 A Continent of Wonders, 5046  
 Position, 5045, 5049  
   Relation to Other Continents, 5045  
   Relation to South America (Map), 5047  
 General Boundaries, 5045

Shape and Size, 5045  
 Coast Line and Coast Waters, 5045  
   West Coast Line Straight, 5045  
   Gulf of California, 1097  
   North and East Coasts Broken, 5045  
   Baffin Bay, 571

Hudson Bay, 3271  
 Gulf of St. Lawrence, 6311  
 Long Island Sound, 4105  
 Delaware Bay, 1882  
 Gulf of Mexico, 4448  
 Caribbean Sea, 1197  
 [See *Seas, Gulfs, and Bays*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]  
 Harbors, 5046  
 Islands, 3566  
   Aleutian Islands, 197  
   Anticosti, 309  
   Baffin Land, 571  
   British West Indies, 971  
     Bahamas, 572  
     Barbados, 616  
     Bermudas, 718  
     Jamaica, 3611  
     Leeward Islands, 3922  
     Tobago, 971  
     Trinidad, 7269-7270  
     Windward Islands, 7794  
   Catalina, 1238  
   Cuba, 1767-1775  
   Dry Tortugas, 2044  
   Florida Keys, 2485  
   Greenland, 2960  
   Guadeloupe, 2971  
   Haiti, 3010  
   Long Island, 4105  
   Manhattan Island, 4256-4257  
   Mare Island, 4288-4289  
   Marthas Vineyard, 4307  
   Martinique, 4308  
   Melville Island, 4385  
   Nantucket, 4805  
   Porto Rico, 5750-5756  
   Pribilof Islands, 5810  
   Prince Edward Island, 5813-5815  
   Queen Charlotte Islands, 5919  
   St. Pierre and Miquelon, 6327-6328  
   Staten Island, 6815  
   Vancouver Island, 7457-7458  
   Virgin Islands, 7546-7547  
**Mountains and Plains**, 5045  
   Laurentian Plateau, 3893  
   Great Central Plain, 5045  
   Mountain Systems East and West, 5045  
     Appalachian, 321  
     Cordilleras, 1674-1675  
       Rocky Mountains, 6156-6157  
       Sierra Nevada, 6597  
       Coast Range, 1514  
       Cascade Range, 1226  
       Alaska Range, 1675  
       British Columbia Range, 958  
   Other Mountain Ranges, 5045  
     Adirondack, 46  
     Allegheny, 224  
     Berkshire Hills, 713  
     Black Hills, 781-782  
     Black Mountains, 783  
     Blue Ridge, 806

    Catskill, 1249  
     Cumberland, 1783  
     Green Mountains, 2961  
     Ozark, 5287  
     Saint Elias Mountains, 6306  
     Selkirk, 6486-6487  
     Sierra Madre, 6597  
     Taconic, 6997  
     Uinta, 7345  
     Wasatch, 7623  
     White Mountains, 7750-7752  
**Noted Mountain Peaks**, 4696  
   Mountain Assiniboine, 457-458  
   Mount Holyoke, 3203  
   Mount Hood, 3223  
   Mount Hooker, 3223  
   Iron Mountain, 3552  
   Katahdin, 3748  
   Mount Logan, 4088  
   Lookout Mountain, 4109  
   Mount McKinley, 4187  
   Pike's Peak, 5614  
   Popocatepetl, 5737  
   Mount Rainier, 5987  
   Mount Robson, 6150  
   Mount Shasta, 6543-6544  
   Stone Mountain, 6848-6849  
   Mount Whitney, 7754  
**Rivers**, 5045-5046, 6138  
   Alabama, 164  
   Allegheny, 224  
   Apalachicola, 316  
     Rises in Georgia, 316, 2756  
   Arkansas, 403, 6137  
     Royal Gorge, 6221, 6222  
   Assiniboine, 458  
     Source in Saskatchewan, 458, 6391  
   Atchafalaya, 478  
   Athabaska, 479  
     River of Alberta, 185  
     Part of Mackenzie System, 4186  
     Unites with Peace River, 5426  
   Bighorn, 736  
     Tributary of the Yellowstone, 7942  
   Brazos, 934  
   Canadian, 1157  
     Tributary of the Arkansas, 1157, 403  
     Flows Through Panhandle, 1157  
   Chattahoochee, 1321  
     Between Georgia and Alabama, 153, 2756  
     Becomes the Apalachicola, 316  
   Chaudière, 1322  
     Scenic River of Quebec, 1322, 5908  
   Churchill, 1421  
     Flows into Hudson Bay, 3271  
     Connected with MacKenzie System, 4185  
     Fort Churchill, 3272  
   Colorado, 1564  
     Important River of Texas, 1564, 7122  
     Empties into Gulf of Mexico, 4448  
   Columbia, 1567-1568  
     Boundary between States, 1568  
     Oregon, 5243

- Washington, 7624
- Columbia River Highway, 1568-1570
- Connecticut, 1621
- Cumberland, 1784
- Tributary of the Ohio, 1784, 5178
- Navigable to Nashville, 4811
- Delaware Bay and River, 1882-1883
- Tributaries, 1882
- Schuylkill, 6431-6432
- Lehigh, 3925
- Delaware Water Gap, 1883
- Detroit River, 1923
- Connects Lakes Erie and Saint Clair, 2286
- East River, 2091
- Between Manhattan and Brooklyn, 4981
- Connecting Link for Navigation, 2091
- Long Island Sound, 4105
- New York Harbor, 4992
- Bridges and Piers, 2091, 4990
- Navy Yard (Brooklyn), 4848
- Fraser, 2598
- Important to British Columbia, 959
- Genesee, 2715, 6152
- Tributary of Lake Ontario, 5212
- Gila River, 2806
- Tributary of the Colorado, 2806
- Flows across Arizona, 389
- Great Kanawha, 2933
- Tributary of the Ohio, 5178
- Waterway of West Virginia, 7720
- Great Slave River, 2937
- Link in MacKenzie River System, 4186
- Outlet of Athabaska Lake, 479
- Joined by Peace River, 5426
- Green River, 2961
- Tributary of the Ohio, 5178
- Flows Through Kentucky, 2961, 3759
- Mammoth Cave, 4243-4245
- Echo River, 4243
- Housatonic, 3261
- Enters Long Island Sound, 4105
- Hudson River, 3272-3275
- Source in Adirondacks, 46, 3272
- Course to the Atlantic, 3272
- The Highlands, 3272
- West Point, N. Y., 3273, 4475
- The Palisades, 4929, 5317, 5318, 3273
- Tributaries, 3272
- Mohawk, 4571
- Humboldt, 3285, 4900
- Illinois, 3354, 3363
- Empties into Mississippi, 4545
- Navigability, 3363
- Chicago Drainage Canal, 1367
- Illinois and Michigan Canal, 3363
- Part of Lakes-to-Gulf Waterway, 3845
- James River, 3615
- Largest Stream in Virginia, 3615, 7538
- Length and Outlet, 3615
- Hampton Roads, 7538
- Chesapeake Bay, 1345
- Kennebec, 3755
- Valuable River of Maine, 4226
- Kentucky, 3765
- Rises in Cumberland Mountains, 1783
- Flows Through Kentucky, 3759
- Kootenay, 3813
- Kootenay District, 960, 3813
- Lackawanna, 3834
- Lehigh, 3925
- Tributary of the Delaware, 1882
- Flows Through Pennsylvania, 5466
- MacKenzie, 4185-4186
- Combination of Several Rivers, 4186
- Finlay River, 4185
- Parsnip River, 4186
- Peace River, 5426
- Slave River, 4186
- Athabaska River, 479
- Great Slave Lake, 2937
- Merrimack, 4411
- Minnesota, 4522
- Miramichi, 4531
- River of New Brunswick, 4909
- Mississippi, 4544-4549, 6137
- Tributaries, 4545
- Minnesota, 4522
- Wisconsin, 7813
- Illinois, 3363
- Missouri, 4559
- Ohio, 5178
- Arkansas, 403
- Zazoo, 7929
- Red, 6031-6032
- Character of the River, 4547
- Floods, 4547-4548
- Levees, 3948-3950
- Jetties, 3671
- Mississippi-Missouri System, 4545
- Power Dams, 4548
- Keokuk Dam, 3766-3767
- Missouri, 4559, 6137
- Joined by the Yellowstone, 4559, 7942
- Other Tributaries, 4559
- Mobile, 4564
- Union of Two Rivers, 4564
- Alabama River, 164
- Tombigbee River, 7208
- Mohawk, 4571
- Largest Tributary of the Hudson, 3272
- Monongahela, 4598-4599
- Component of the Ohio, 5178
- United with the Allegheny, 224
- Moose, 4647
- Outlet in Hudson Bay, 3271
- Moose Factory, 4647
- Nelson, 4875, 6137
- Outlet of Lake Winnipeg, 7797
- Flows to Hudson Bay, 3271
- Port Nelson, 4875
- Niagara, 5010-5013
- Length and Navigability, 5010
- Welland Canal, 7704
- The Falls and Whirlpool, 5010
- Ohio River, 5178
- Formed by Union of Two Rivers, 5178

- Allegheny, 224
- Monongahela, 4598
- Confluence at Pittsburgh, 5634
- Power Dam at Louisville, 4135, 5178
- Ottawa, 5274
- Rideau Canal, 5272
- Georgian Bay Ship Canal, 1131, 2763
- Ouachita, 5275-5276
- Peace River, 5426-5427
- Rises in British Columbia, 5426
- Flows Across Alberta, 185
- Joins Great Slave River, 2937
- Pecos, 5438
- Tributary of Rio Grande, 5438
- Carlsbad Cavern, 1200
- Penobscot, 5475
- Largest Stream in Maine, 4226
- Platte, 5655
- Tributary of the Missouri, 4559
- Important Waterway of Nebraska, 4858
- Potomac, 5782
- Boundary of States, 5782
- Maryland, 4312
- Virginia, 7538
- West Virginia, 7720
- Magnificent Estuary, 5782
- Chesapeake Bay, 1345
- Rappahannock, 5997
- Waterway of Virginia, 7538
- Rises in Blue Ridge, 806
- Flows into Chesapeake Bay, 1345
- Raritan, 5997-5998
- River of New Jersey, 4928
- Red River, 6031-6032
- Southern Tributary of Mississippi, 4545
- Red River of the North, 6032
- Rises in Minnesota, 4514
- Flows into Lake Winnipeg, 7797
- Restigouche, 6066
- Richelieu, 6117, 1301
- Tributary of Saint Lawrence, 6312
- Rio Grande, 6133-6134, 6137
- Bounds United States and Mexico, 4440
- Source in Colorado, 1556
- Course between Texas and Mexico, 7122
- Empties into Gulf of Mexico, 4448
- Roanoke, 6146
- River Rising in Virginia, 7538
- Flows into North Carolina, 5056
- Sabine, 6290, 7122
- Flows into Gulf of Mexico, 6290
- Sabine Lake, 6290
- Sabine Pass, 6290
- Sacramento, 6294
- Largest River in California, 1084-1085
- Saguenay, 5908, 6298
- Saint John River, 6309
- A Waterway of New Brunswick, 4908
- Empties into Bay of Fundy, 2635
- Saint John, N. B., 6309
- The Reversing Falls, 6309-6310
- Saint Lawrence River, 6312-6314
- Drains Basin of Great Lakes, 6312
- International Boundary, 4065
- Original Source in Minnesota, 6312
- Saint Louis River, 6312
- Outlet of Lake Ontario, 5212
- Chief Tributaries, 6312
- Ottawa River, 5274
- Saint Maurice, 5908
- Montmorency, 4630
- Saguenay, 6298
- Saint Regis, 6312
- Richelieu, 6117
- Chaudiere, 1322
- Navigation, 6314
- Canalization, 6314
- Welland Canals, 7704
- Saint Lawrence Waterway, 6314-6315
- Nature of the Project, 6314
- Detail Map, 6315
- Gulf of Saint Lawrence, 6311
- Saint Mary's River, 6322
- Link of Lakes Superior and Huron, 2933
- Sault Ste. Marie Canals, 6400
- San Joaquin, 6375
- River of California, 1084
- Saskatchewan, 6396
- Great River of Canada, 1120, 6391
- Saskatchewan System, 4875, 6396
- Nelson River, 4875
- Savannah, 6402
- Partial Boundary of Georgia and South Carolina, 2754
- Schuylkill, 6431-6432
- Stream in Pennsylvania, 5466
- Scioto, 6435
- Tributary of the Ohio, 5170
- Drains Central Ohio, 5170
- Shenandoah, 6555
- Historic Stream of Virginia, 7538
- Unites with the Potomac, 6555
- National Park in Valley, 5390
- Skenna, 6630-6631
- Slave River. [See *Great Slave River*, above.]
- Snake River, 3339, 6662
- Stikine, 6834
- Susquehanna, 6944
- Empties into Chesapeake Bay, 1345
- Tennessee River, 7103
- Chief Tributary of the Ohio, 5178
- Course Across States, 7103
- Alabama, 158
- Kentucky, 3759
- Tennessee, 7096
- Rapids Utilized for Power, 7103
- Muscle Shoals, 4751-4753
- Horse Power Developed, 4751
- The Wilson Dam, 4753
- Illustrations, 4752
- Tombigbee, 158, 7208, 4538
- Wabash, 3392, 7573
- Tributary of the Ohio, 5178
- Partly Bounds Illinois and Indiana, 3390
- Washita. [See *Ouachita River*, above.]

White River, 7752  
 Chief Tributary of the Wabash, 3392  
 Willamette, 7766  
 River of Western Oregon, 5244  
 Flows into the Columbia, 1568  
 Wisconsin River, 7813  
 Chief Waterway of Wisconsin, 7804  
 Canal Connection, 7813  
 Fox River, 7804  
 Dells of the Wisconsin, 7813  
 Yazoo, 7929-7930  
 Formed by Joining Waters, 7929  
 Yalobusha River, 7929  
 Tallahatchie River, 4538  
 Mississippi Bayous, 7929  
 The Yazoo Delta, 4536, 7930  
 Yellowstone River, 7940, 7942  
 Beautiful Waterway of Montana, 4612, 7942  
 Chief Tributary of the Missouri, 4559  
 Source in Wyoming, 7906  
 Flows into Yellowstone National Park, 7940, 7942  
 Yellowstone Lake, 7940  
 Great Falls, 7942  
 Grand Canyon of the Yellowstone, 7942  
 Yukon River, 7966-7967  
 Greatest in Alaska and the Yukon, 170, 7966  
 Upper Yukon, 7967  
 Tributaries, 7967  
 Lewes, 7966  
 Pelly, 7966  
 Porcupine, 7967  
 Selwyn, 7967  
 White, 7967  
 Stewart, 7967  
 Klondike, 3803  
 Forty-Mile, 7967  
 Lower Yukon, 7967  
 Klondike, 3803-3804  
**Lakes**, 3842, 3844, 5045-5046  
 [See *Lakes of Canada* and *Lakes of the United States*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]

Lake Nicaragua, 5019  
 Nicaragua Canal Project, 5018-5019  
**Climate**, 5046  
**Vegetation**, 5047  
 In the Northern Regions, 5047  
 Lichens, 3975  
 Reindeer Mosses, 5047  
 Willows, 7774-7775  
 Spruce, 6782-6783  
 Fir, 2425  
 Hemlock, 3137-3138  
 Pine, 5620-5622  
 On the Pacific Coast, 5047  
 Big Trees, 1086, 6499, 6501  
 In Eastern Highlands, 5047  
 Hardwoods, 5047  
 Pine, 5620-5622  
 In the South, 5047  
 Yellow Pine, 5620-5621  
 Cypress, 1798-1799  
 Magnolias, 4219  
 Great Plains Generally Treeless, 5047  
 Cactus in Southwest, 1063-1065  
 Gulf Coast Vegetation, 5047  
 Mangroves, 4256  
 Palms, 5319-5321  
 Giant Bamboos, 592-594  
 Rubber Plant, 5047  
 Logwood, 4090  
 Mahogany Tree, 4222-4223  
 Cultivated Plants, 5047  
 Cereals, 2888-2889  
 Fruits, 2629-2630  
 Cotton Plant, 1709-1715  
 Sugar Cane, 6910-6912  
 Tobacco Plant, 7195  
**Animal Life**, 5047-5048  
 [See Outline on *Zoölogy*, section *Zoögeography*, in this GUIDE.]  
**The People**, 5048  
 [See Outlines on *Anthropology* and *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Maps of North America** (Physical, Economic, and Political), between pages 5044 and 5045

### The Continent of South America

**Southern Continent of the New World**, 6697  
**Connected with North America**  
 By Isthmus of Panama, 5331, 6697  
**Racial Connection with Central America**, 6697-6698  
**Position**, 6698  
 Latitude and Longitude (see Map, opposite page 6699)  
 Relation to North America (Map), 5047  
 General Boundaries (see Map)  
**Shape and Size**, 5698  
**Coast Line and Coast Waters**, 6698-6699  
 Principal Indentations, 6698  
 Gulf of Darien, 1828  
 Mouth of Amazon, 242  
 Bay of Rio de Janeiro, 6131

Rio de la Plata, 6133  
 Blanca Bay, 6699  
 Gulf of San Matias, 6699  
 Gulf of St. George, 6699  
 Gulf of Guayaquil, 6699, 2103  
**Islands**, 6699  
 Falkland Islands, 2365  
 Galapagos Islands, 2660  
 Marajo, or Joannes, 242, 4280  
 Tierra del Fuego, 7173  
 Trinidad, 7269  
 [See under *North America*, above.]  
**Mountains**, 6698  
 Andes, 276-277  
 Cordilleras, 276, 1674-1675  
 Backbone of Continent, 6698

- Highest Peaks, 6698, 276, 4694  
 Aconcagua, 22, 276, 4694, 6698  
 Tupungato, 4694  
 Mercedario, 4694  
 Huascarán, 4694  
 Sorata, or Illampu, 276, 4694, 819  
 Illimani, 819, 4694, 276  
 Sahama, 819, 4694, 276  
 Llullaillaco, 4694  
 Chimborazo, 1383, 4694, 2104, 276, 6698  
 San José, 4694  
 Arequipa, 4694  
 Cotopaxi, 1708, 2104, 4694, 276, 6698  
 Todos Santos, 819  
 Antisana, 4694, 6698  
 Cayambi, 4694  
 Santa Marta, 276  
 Chorolque, 819  
 Tolima, 1542, 4694  
 Altar, 4694  
 Maipu, 4694, 6698  
 Sangai, or Sangay, 4694, 6698  
 Tunguragua, 4694, 276
- Coastal Plain, 6698
- Great Central Plain, 6698  
 Pampas, 5324  
 Brazilian Highlands, 927, 6698  
 Amazon Basin, 242, 927  
 Guiana Highlands, 6698, 7478, 968  
 Orinoco Basin, 6698, 7478  
 Llanos, 4065, 7478
- Rivers, 6138, 6699  
 Amazon, 241-242, 6137  
 Greatest River of South America, 241  
 World's Largest River System, 241, 928  
 Mouth of the River, 242  
 Island of Marajo, 242, 926, 4280  
 Bore, 865  
 Colorado, 6699  
 Madeira, 4198, 6137  
 Principal River of Bolivia, 819  
 Formed by Union of Other Rivers, 4198  
 Beni and Mamore, 819  
 Magdalena, 1542, 4210  
 Orinoco, 5258-5259, 6137, 7478  
 Bounds Colombia and Venezuela, 5258  
 Connects with Rio Negro, 5288, 6134  
 Tributaries, 5259  
 Apure, 5259  
 Guaviare, 1542  
 Meta, 1542  
 Delta on Atlantic, 5258
- Paraguay, 5361  
 Tributary of the Paraná, 5363  
 Longest Tributaries, 5361  
 Pilcomayo, 819  
 Bermejo, 5361
- Paraná, 5363  
 Important to Three Countries, 5363  
 Argentina, 375  
 Brazil, 927  
 Paraguay, 5359  
 Plata-Paraná, 6137
- Rio de la Plata  
 Estuary of Paraná and Uruguay, 6133  
 Harbors  
 Montivideo, 7423  
 Buenos Aires, 1001  
 Joined by the Uruguay, 5363, 7426  
 Pilcomayo, 819, 5361  
 Rio Negro, 6134, 6137  
 Ocean Route from Manáos, 926, 6134  
 São Francisco, 6383  
 River of Eastern Brazil, 927-928  
 Tapajos, 7016  
 Tocantins, or Para, 926, 6699  
 Empties into Atlantic, 6699  
 Uruguay River, 7426  
 Part of Paraná-Plata System, 5363, 375  
 Separates Three Countries, 7426  
 Argentina, 375  
 Brazil, 7426  
 Uruguay, 7423, 7426  
 Discharges in Rio de la Plata, 6133
- Lakes, 6699, 277  
 [See *Lakes of South America*, under *Waters of the Earth*, above.]
- Climate, 6699-6700  
 Northern Part in Tropics, 6699, 7275  
 Southern in Temperate Zone, 6699  
 Arid Region of Patagonia, 375, 5412
- Vegetation, 6700  
 In the Tropics and Subtropics  
 Selvas, or Tropical Forests, 6487, 6700, 2538  
 Amazon Valley, 928-929  
 Giant Trees, 928, 6700  
 Lianas and Flowers, 6700  
 Valuable Tropical Trees  
 Cinchona, 1426  
 Source of Quinine, 5923  
 Coca Tree: Source of Cocaine, 1516  
 Coffee Tree, 1528, 1529, 6700, 929  
 Rubber Tree, 6224, 6226, 6229, 928-929  
 Banana Tree, 594  
 Mahogany Tree, 4222
- Other Trees  
 Bamboo, Cedars, Ebony, 6700  
 Brazil Nut, 934, 929, 6700  
 Cannon-Ball Tree, 1174, 6700
- Cultivated Plants  
 Cotton, 1709, 1710, 6700  
 Rice, 6108, 6700  
 Sugar Cane, 6908, 6700  
 Tobacco, 7196, 6700
- In the Temperate Region  
 Wax Palms, 5321, 6700  
 Holly, 3197, 6700  
 Used to Make Maté, 3193, 4343  
 Grasslands: Pampas, 6700, 5324
- Animal Life, 6700-6701  
 [See Outline on *Zoölogy*, section *Zoögeography*, in this GUIDE.]
- Mineral Resources, 6701  
 Gold and Silver Deposits, 6701  
 Bolivia, 820



Brazil, 930  
 Colombia, 1543  
 Guiana, 968, 2060, 2609  
 Venezuela, 7480  
 Silver Production in Bolivia, 6701, 6614  
 Other Abundant Minerals, 6701  
   Borax, 6701  
   Coal, 1500, 6701  
   Copper, 1668  
   Diamonds, 1932, 929  
   Emeralds, 2220  
   Iron Ore, 930, 6701  
   Lignite, 6701  
   Manganese, 4255  
   Mica, 4451

Nitrates, 5033-5034  
 Petroleum, 5521, 7580  
 Platinum, 1543  
 Tin, 820, 6701, 7181  
**The People, 6698**  
 [See RACES OF MEN, 5931, and Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]

### Antarctica

**Antarctica, 304**  
 The South Polar Continent, 304  
 [See ANTARCTIC LANDS AND SEAS, 303-305, and POLAR EXPLORATION (Antarctic Exploration), 5695-5699, in THE WORLD BOOK.]

### Meteorology

#### General Survey

Definition, 4418  
 Principal Subjects of Study, 4418  
 Meteorological Instruments, 4418, 7688  
   Anemometer, 7790-7791  
   Barometer, 625-627  
   Hygrometer, 3314-3315  
   Rain Gauge, 5987  
   Thermometer, 7144-7145  
     Thermograph, 7144  
 Air, or Atmosphere, 108-111, 2079  
   Relation to Earth  
     Envelops the Earth, 2079  
     Integral Part of Earth, 2079  
     Bound to Earth by Gravity, 2079, 2916  
     Necessary to Support Life, 108, 2079  
   Weight of the Air, 109  
     First Observed by Galileo, 109, 2664  
   Torricelli's Experiment, 626, 7220-7221  
     Barometer, 625-627  
   Weight of an Inch Column, 109, 2079  
   Height of the Air Envelope, 109, 2079  
     Proof of Great Height, 109  
     Shooting Stars, 109, 4419  
     Aurora Borealis, 109, 505-506

#### Atmospheric Pressure, 109, 2079

Barometric Readings at Various Heights, 110  
 Isobars, 3567-3568

#### Atmospheric Electricity (Lightning). [See below.]

#### Climate, 1482

Influence of Climate, 1482  
   On Civilization, 1444, 1482, 3888  
   On Vegetation, 1482, 7275  
   On Animal Life, 289  
 Factors of Climate, 1482  
   Temperature, 7090-7091  
     Coldest Spot on Earth, 7091  
       Verkhoyansk, Siberia, 7091  
     Coldest in United States, 7091  
   Hot Places, 7091  
     Azizia, North Africa, 7091  
     Death Valley, Cal., 1850, 7091.  
   Thermometer, 7144-7145

Climate and Temperature Chart, 1482  
   Isothermal Lines, 3568-3569, 1483  
 Latitude, 1482, 3888  
 Altitude, 1482  
 Distance from the Sea, 1482  
 Winds, 1483, 7789  
   In Equatorial Regions, 1483  
     Trade Winds Modify Heat, 1483, 7235  
   In Temperate Zones, 1483  
 Prevailing Westerlies, 1483, 5809  
   Cold Ocean Currents, 1483  
     [See *Winds and Storms*, below.]  
 Mountains Affect Rainfall, 1483, 5984  
 Inclination of Earth's Axis, 1483, 6472  
 Rainfall, 1483, 5984-5986  
   [See below.]  
 Soil and Vegetation, 1483  
 Acclimatization, 16  
 Ocean Currents, 5151-5152  
   Effect on Climate, 1483  
   Gulf Stream, 2982-2983  
   Japan Current, 3639  
   Labrador Current, 3828  
 Zones, 7978-7979  
   [See *Zones of the Earth*, under *Mathematical Geography*.]

#### Clouds, 1491-1494

How Clouds Are Formed, 1492  
 Evaporation, 2333  
 Vapor, 1492, 7464  
 Expansion and Condensation, 1492  
 Atmospheric Dust, 2058  
 Clouds and Fog, 1492  
   Fog, or Mist, 2505  
     Clouds at Low Level, 2505, 1491-1492  
     [See *Humidity*, below.]  
   Fogs at Sea, 2505, 2894  
   Fog Signals, 2505  
 Cloud Forms (Illustrated), 1492-1493  
 Cloud-Burst, 1494  
 Rain. [See below.]  
**Atmospheric Electricity, 2172-2173, 4418**  
 Lightning, 4001-4004  
   Thunderstorms, 5985  
   [See *Rain and Rainfall*, below.]

- Dew**, 1925  
     How Dew Is Formed, 1925  
     Regions of Heaviest Dews, 1925  
     Dew and Frost, 1926, 2628  
         Freezing Point, 2605  
         [See *Frost*, below.]
- Dust (Atmospheric)**, 2058-2060
- Evaporation**, 2333, 7464  
     Water Vapor in Air, 109, 7464  
     Humidity, 3285, 3286  
     Sources of Water Vapor, 2333  
     Condensation of Water Vapor, 7464  
     Atmospheric Results, 7464  
         Clouds, 1492  
         Dew, 1925  
         Fog, 2505  
         Rain, 5984  
         Snow, 6664  
     Evaporation of Plant Moisture, 2333  
     Transpiration, 2333, 3915
- Fog, or Mist**. [See *Clouds*, above.]
- Frost**, 2628  
     Frost and Dew, 1926, 2628  
     [See *Dew*, above.]  
     Freezing, 2605
- Hail**, 3005-3006
- Humidity**, 3285-3286  
     How Moisture in Air Is Determined, 3286  
         Hygrometer, 3314-3315  
         Humidity Shown by Clouds, 2333
- Rain and Rainfall**, 5984-5986  
     Formation of Rain, 5984  
         Moisture from Earth's Surface, 5984  
         Changed to Water Vapor by Evaporation, 5984, 7464, 2333  
         Forms Clouds, or Water Dust, 5984, 1492  
     Effect of Atmospheric Dust, 2058  
     Condensation of Water Vapor, 5984  
         Reduction of Temperature, 5984  
         Saturation, or Dew Point, 3286, 5984  
     Raindrops and Their Work, 5984  
         Weathering Effects, 2733  
     Why Rainfall Varies, 5984-5985  
         Highest Rainfall Recorded, 5985  
             Assam, India, 456  
         Lowest Rainfall, 5985  
     Lands That always Have Rains, 5985  
         Himalaya Region, 5985  
         Amazon Region, 242, 6700  
     Belts of Light Rainfall, 3252  
     Rainless or Arid Regions, 5986, 380  
         Desert Lands, 1916, 5986  
         [See *Deserts*, under *Lands of the Earth*, above.]  
         Polar Regions, 5986  
     Rain Gauge, 5987  
     Irrigation the Substitute for Rain, 3553-3559  
     Thunderstorms, 5985, 6851  
     Rainbow, 5986
- Snow**, 6664-6665  
     Nature and Cause, 6664  
     Snow Crystals Six-Rayed, 6664  
     Color of Snow, 6664  
     Cause of Whiteness, 6664  
     Reflection of Light, 3997  
     Red and Green Snow, 6664  
     Greenland, 2957  
     Granular Snow, a Form of Hail, 3005  
     Snow in Polar Regions, 6664  
     Temperate Regions of Heaviest Snowfall, 6664  
     Snow Line, 6666  
     Avalanches, 547, 6970
- Storms**, 6851  
     Characteristics, 6851  
     [See *Wind*, below, and *Rain and Rainfall*, *Snow*, *Hail*, above.]  
     General Causes, 6851  
     Cyclonic and Anti-Cyclonic Storms, 6851, 1796  
     Thunderstorms, 6851  
     [See *Rain*, above.]  
     Blizzard, 794  
     Hurricane, 3296  
         Hurricanes in United States, 3296  
             Florida, 2482, 2485  
         Typhoon, 7341  
     Tornado, 7212  
         Areas of Occurrence, 7212  
         Waterspouts at Sea, 7674, 7675  
         Similar to Tornadoes, 7674
- Wind**, 7789-7791  
     Causes of Wind, 7789  
     Windless Areas of the Ocean, 7790  
         Regions of Calms, 1099  
             Calms of Cancer and Capricorn, 1099, 7790  
             Equatorial Calms, 1099  
                 Doldrums, 1995  
                 Horse Latitudes, 3252  
     Conditions Affecting Surface Currents, 7790  
     Classification of Winds, 7790  
         Steady Winds, 7790  
             Trade Winds, 7235  
         Periodic Winds, 7790  
             Land and Sea Breezes, 3851-3852  
             Monsoons, 4609. [See below.]  
     Variable Winds, 7790  
     Effects of Wind, 7790  
         Capacity for Moisture, 7790  
         Wind a Destructive Agent, 7790  
         [See *Hurricane*, *Tornado*, above.]  
         Agent in Soil Formation, 7790  
             Weathering, 2733  
             Sand Dunes, 7790, 6361, 2055  
     Measurement of Wind Velocity, 7790-7791  
     Chinook, 1402-1403  
     Cyclone. [See *Storms*, above.]  
     Doldrums, 1995  
     Hurricane. [See *Storms*, above.]  
     Khamsin, Hot Wind of Sahara, 3770  
     Land and Sea Breezes, 3851-3852  
         Great Lakes Breezes, 3852  
     Monsoon, 4609  
     Norther, 5072, 7123  
     Prevailing Westerlies, 5809

Sandstorm, 6299  
 Simoom, 6615  
 Sirocco, 6626  
   Region of Occurrence, 6626  
     Mediterranean Countries, 4378  
     Dry Sirocco Dust-Laden, 6626  
     Blows from Sahara, 6298  
     The Scourge of Sicily, 6592, 6626  
 Tornado. [See *Storms*, above.]  
 Trade Winds, 7235-7236  
   Effect of Earth's Rotation, 7235, 7789  
 Typhoon. [See *Storms*, above.]  
 Whirlwind, 7742  
   Occurrence in Deserts, 1916, 7742  
   Waterspout, 7674-7675, 7742  
**Weather**, 1482, 7686-7692  
   Weather and Climate, 1482  
     [See *Climate*, above.]  
   United States Weather Bureau, 105, 7687-7692  
     Organization, 7687  
     Department of Agriculture, 105

Personnel, 7687  
 Special Services, 7688-7689  
   Warnings of Storms, 7689, 6851  
   Warnings of Frost, 7689, 2628  
   Radio Broadcasting Service, 7689, 5942  
   Special Forecasts for Aviation, 7688, 7690, 7692, 132, 5942  
   Other Special Services, 7688, 7689  
 A Typical Field Unit, 7687  
 Work of Bureau in Detail, 7687-7692  
 Daily Weather Forecasts, 7687  
   Daily Notations and Calculations, 7687  
   Daily Weather Maps, 7689, 7690  
   Classification of Clouds, 1492  
   Barometric Readings, 625-627, 7687  
   Humidity, 3285  
   Temperature, 7090  
 Local Weather Records Kept, 7688  
 Standard Instruments Used, 4418, 7688  
   [See *Meteorological Instruments*, above.]  
 Varied Uses of Weather Bureau Data, 7689

### Political Geography

**Geographic and Political Conditions**, 2728  
**Economic**, or Commercial Geography, 2728  
   Subjects of Study, 2728  
     Industries of the World, 2728  
     Agriculture, 92-106  
     Manufacturers, 2728, 3445

Mineral Resources, 4498-4500  
 Transportation, 7246-7252  
 Commerce and Trade, 1582-1583  
 [See Outlines on *Agriculture*, *Business*, *Civics*, *Economics*, *Industry*, and *Transportation*, in this GUIDE.]

### Africa

**Independent Countries**, 78  
   Egypt, 2142-2155  
   Ethiopia, 2305-2307  
   Liberia, 3961-3963  
**Neutral Zone**, 78  
   Tangier, 7015  
**Dependencies**, 78  
   Belgian Possessions, 78  
     Belgian Congo, 690-692  
   French Possessions, 78, 2580  
     Algeria, 217  
     Madagascar, 4196  
     Comoro Islands, 1590  
     French Sudan, 2620  
     French Somaliland, 2619, 6685  
     Senegal, 6492  
     Guinea, 2980  
     Ivory Coast, 3592  
     Dahomey, 1806  
     Niger Territory, 78  
     Mauretania, 4349  
     Tunisia, 7293  
     Morocco Protectorate, 4657  
     French Equatorial Africa, 2609  
       Wadai, 7574  
     Sahara, 6300, 6301  
     Reunion, 2580  
 British Possessions, 78, 967  
   Union of South Africa, 7353-7360

Kenya Colony, 3765  
 Uganda, 7344  
 Zanzibar, 7969  
 Nyassaland, 5126  
 Tanganyika Territory, 7014  
 Southwest Africa, 6723  
 Basutoland, 647  
 Bechuanaland, 668  
 Somaliland, 6686  
 Swaziland, 6948  
 Nigeria Colony, 5024  
 Gambia Colony, 2673  
 Gold Coast Colony, 2860  
   Ashanti, 440  
   Sierra Leone, 6596  
   Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 287  
     Darfur, 1828  
     Nubia, 5111  
   Mauritius, 4349  
   Rhodesia, 6098  
     Mashonaland, 4320  
   Saint Helena, 6309  
   Zululand, 7988-7990  
 Italian Possessions, 78  
   Eritrea, 2289-2290  
   Somaliland, 6686  
   Libia, 3966  
 Portuguese Possessions, 78, 5767  
   Cape Verde Islands, 1183

Guinea, 2980, 5767  
 Angola, 288  
 Mozambique, 4729  
 Madeira, 4198  
 Spanish Possessions, 78, 6734  
 Rio de Oro, 6133  
 Guinea, 2980

Fernando Po, 78  
 Morocco Protectorate, 4658  
 Former German Holdings, 78  
 Kamerun (Cameroon), 1108  
 German East Africa, 2765  
 German Southwest Africa, 2768  
 Togoland, 7199

*Political Divisions in Detail*

**Abyssinia.** [See *Ethiopia*, below.]

**Algeria,** 217-220

Boundaries, 217  
 Mediterranean, 4378  
 Morocco, 4657  
 Tunisia, 7293  
 Sahara Desert, 6298  
 Surface Features, 217  
 The People, 217  
 Native Berbers, 711  
 Arabs, 341  
 Jews, 3672

Resources, 217-218

Government, 218

The Cities, 218-220

Algiers, 218-220

Oran, 220

Constantine, 220

Bona, 220

Tlemcen, 220

Philippeville, 220

Mascara, 220

Mostaganem, 220

**Anglo-Egyptian Sudan,** 287

Products, 287

Egyptian Cotton, 1710

Gum Arabic, 2986

Ivory, 3590

The Cities, 287

Khartum, 287

On the Nile, 5029

Omdurman, 287

[See *Darfur*, below.]

**Angola,** 288

Capital and Chief City, 288

São Paulo de Loando, 288

**Ashanti,** 440

Inland from Gold Coast, 440, 2860

Products, 440

Cocoa, 1518

Rubber, 6228

Gold, 2859

Administration, 440

**Basutoland,** 647

Inhabitants Basutos, 647

Bantu Stock, 614

Administration, 647

**Bechuanaland Protectorate,** 668

**Belgian Congo,** 690-692

Formerly Congo Independent State, 690,  
 6802

Population, 690

Story of Development, 691

Henry M. Stanley, 6802

Leopold II of Belgium, 3937-3938

Communications, 691

Congo River Highways, 691, 1606

Railroads, 691

The Towns, 691

Government and Religion, 692

Fetichism, 692, 2402

**Cameroon, or Kamerun,** 1108

Mandated to Britain and France, 1108, 4253

Location and Size

Between French Congo and Nigeria, 2609,  
 5024, 1108

Population

Few White Residents, 1108

Natives Bantus and Sudanese, 614, 1108

**Dahomey,** 1806

**Darfur,** 1828

Division of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1828, 487

Capital, El Fasher, 1828

**Egypt,** 2142-2155

Flood Plain of the Nile River, 5029-5031

Location and Size, 2142, 2146

North and South Boundaries, 2142

Mediterranean Sea, 4378

Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 287

East and West Boundaries, opposite 2154

Red Sea, 6033-6034

Libia, 3966

Lower Egypt, 2146

Cairo to Mediterranean, 1069, 4378

The Nile Delta, 1886, 2146

Upper Egypt, 2146

Sudan to Cairo, 287

Libyan Desert, 2146, 6299

Oases, 5133-5136, 6299

The People, 2142-2144

Climate, 2146

Agriculture, 2146

Made Possible by Irrigation, 2146, 3559

Irrigation Methods and Projects, 2146,  
 2148, 2149

Old and New Methods, 3559

The Nile Floods, 2148,

Great Dam at Aswan, 2148, 2144

Gebel Aulia Dam Project, 2148

Other Industries, 2148

Mineral Resources, 2148

Commerce and Transportation, 2148

Caravan Trade with Interior

Ivory, 3590-3592

Ostrich Plumes, 5268-5270

The Nile as a Waterway, 2150, 5029-5031

- Suez Canal, 6903-6904  
 Modern Cities, 2144  
 Alexandria, 201-202  
 Aswan, or Assuan, 2144  
 Asyut, or Assiut, 2146  
 Cairo, 1069-1070  
   Location on the Nile, 5029  
   University, El-Azhar, 1069, 2117  
   History, 1070  
   View of Cairo, 81  
   The Citadel, 1070  
   A Minaret in Cairo, 1070  
   Pyramids and Sphinx. [See below.]  
   Cape-to-Cairo Railway, 1181-1182  
 Damietta, 2146  
 Mansura, 2146  
 Port Said, 2143, 2146  
   Entrance to Suez Canal, 2146, 6903  
 Suez, 2146  
   At Head of Red Sea, 6033  
 Tanta, 2146  
 Government, 2150  
 Ancient Egypt and Its Cities  
   [See under *The Ancient World*, in Outline  
   on *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Nineteenth-Century Egypt, 2152, 2154  
   Period of British Control, 2154  
   Egypt a Kingdom, 2155  
 Modern Excavations, 2155  
   [See Outline on *Archaeology*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Pyramids of Egypt, 5893-5896  
   The Gizeh Pyramids, 5894-5896  
   The Great Pyramid, 5894-5895  
   Cheops, 1342  
   Step Pyramid of Sakhara, 5894  
   Colored View of Pyramids, opposite 2142  
 The Great Sphinx, 6758-6759  
 Illustrations of Present-Day Egypt, 2142-  
   2153  
   Freighters on the Nile, 2142  
   Suez Canal and Port Said, 2143  
   Aswan Dam, 2144  
   Every-Day Scenes, 2145  
   How the Natives Live, 2147  
   Industrial Life, 2149  
   Physical Map of Egypt, 2148  
   Nile Valley and Northern Sudan (Map),  
   opposite 2154  
**Eritrea**, 2289-2290  
**Ethiopia**, 2305-2307  
   Location and Size, 2305  
   South of Red Sea, 6033  
   Eritrea on the North, 2290  
   East and West Boundaries. [See Map,  
   opposite 81.]  
   Italian Somaliland, 6686  
 The People and Their Occupations, 2306  
   Descended from Ham, 5036  
   Products of the Soil, 2306  
   Coffee, 1526  
   Cotton, 2306, 1708  
   Sugar, 6006  
   Citrus Fruits, 2306, 1436  
   Dates, 1831  
   Tobacco, 7193  
 Towns and Communication  
   Capital, Addis Ababa, 2306  
   Harrar, 2307  
   Dirre Daoua, 2307  
   Railroad to Jibuti, 6685  
   Telegraphs and Telephones, 2306  
   Government, 2307  
**Fernando Po**, 78  
**French Equatorial Africa**, 2609  
   [See Map of *Africa*, opposite 81.]  
**French Guinea**, 2980  
**French Somaliland**, 2619, 6685  
   The Somali Coast, 6685  
   Industries and Products, 2619  
   Harbor and Capital, 2619  
   Jibuti, 2619  
   Other Towns, 2620  
   Administration, 2620, 6685  
**French Sudan**, 2620, 6902  
   Towns and Schools, 2620  
   Bamako (the Capital), 2620  
   Timbuktu, 2620, 7178  
   Site Settled in Eleventh Century, 7178  
   By Tuaregs, 711  
   Trading Center, 7178  
   Camel Caravans, 1189  
**Gold Coast**, 2860  
   Coast Line on Gulf of Guinea, 2860, 2980  
   Government, 2860  
   Administrative Divisions, 2860  
   Ashanti, 440  
   Northern Territory, 2860  
   Chief Towns, 286  
   Kumasi (Capital of Ashanti), 440  
   Accra, 2860  
   Cape Coast Castle, 2860  
   Keta, 2860  
   Sekondi, 2860  
   Winnebah, 2860  
**Guinea**, 2980  
   Extent, 2980  
**Italian Somaliland**, 6686  
   [See *Somaliland*, above.]  
**Ivory Coast**, 3592-3593  
   Location and Size, 3592  
   Coast Line, 3592  
   Gulf of Guinea, 2980  
   Bingerville (the Capital), 3592  
**Kenya Colony and Protectorate**, 3765-3766  
   Named for Mount Kenya (Kenia), 4692, 4693  
   Formerly East Africa Protectorate, 3766  
   Lakes in the Colony, 3766  
   Lake Rudolph, 6237  
   Victoria Nyanza, 7523  
   Native Homes in Kenya (Illustration), 3765  
**Liberia**, 3961-3963  
   Monrovia, the Capital, 3963  
   Named for President Monroe, 4602  
   Occupations and Products, 3961  
   American Rubber Project, 3961, 6231  
   Review of Laborers, 6231

- Government and History, 3963  
 Illustrations, 3962-3963
- Libia**, 3966  
 One of the Barbary States, 617  
 Two Administrative Divisions, 3966  
   Tripolitania, 3966  
     Capital, Tripoli, 3966  
   Cyrenaica, 3966  
     Capital, Bengazi, 3966  
 Ancient Name Restored by Italy, 3966  
 Population, 3966  
 Native Berbers, 711
- Madagascar**, 4196-4197  
 French Colony off African Coast, 4196  
   Separated by Mozambique Channel, 4730  
 Surface Features, 4196  
 The People, 4196  
 Trees of the Eastern Forests, 4196  
   Bamboo, 592  
   Rosewood, 6208  
   Raffia Palm, 5971  
   Coconut Palm, 1591  
   Mangoes, 4256  
   Papaws, or Pawpaws, 5422  
 Animal Life, 4196  
   Lemurs Peculiar to Island, 3930  
 The Cities, 4197  
   Tananarivo, the Capital, 4197  
   Tamatave, 4197  
   Antsirabe, 4197  
   Majunga, 4197
- Mashonaland**, 4320  
 Part of Southern Rhodesia, 6098, 4320  
 Population, 4320  
   Bantu Negroes, 614  
 Chief City, Salisbury, 4320  
 [See *Rhodesia*, below.]
- Mauritius**, 4349  
 Scene of Saint Pierre's Romance, 4349, 6327
- Morocco**, 4657-4660  
 Country of Northwest Africa, 4657  
 Location and Size, 4657  
   Total Area, 4657  
     Area of Spanish Zone, 4657  
     Area of Tangier, 4657, 7015  
 Surface Features, 4657  
 The People, 4657  
   Berbers, 711  
   Arabs, 342  
   Moors, 4645  
 Occupations, 4657  
 Population of French Zone, 4657  
 Government, 4657  
   Now a French Protectorate, 2580, 5851  
   Spanish Zone on Mediterranean, 4657  
   Tangier Internationalized, 4657  
   [See *Tangier*, below.]
- The Cities**, 4660  
 Sultan's Four Capitals, 4658  
   Morocco, 4660  
   Morocco Leather, 3908, 4660  
   Fez, 4660  
   Rabat, 4660
- Meknes, 4660  
 Casablanca, 4660
- Mozambique**, 4729-4730  
**Nigeria**, 5024  
**Nubia**, 5111  
 Northeast Corner of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 287  
 Formerly Part of Ethiopia, 2307
- Numidia**, 5114  
 Jugurtha (Numidian Prince), 3707-3708
- Portuguese East Africa**, 4729  
 [See *Mozambique*, above.]
- Portuguese Guinea**, 5767
- Rhodesia**, 6098-6099  
 British Possession in South Africa, 6098  
   Named for Cecil Rhodes, 6097-6098  
 Railway Transportation, 6099  
   Cape-to-Cairo Railway, 1181  
 Administration, 6098-6099  
   Northern Rhodesia, 6098  
   Southern Rhodesia, 6099  
     Mashonaland, 4320  
     Matabeleland, 4339  
 Victoria Falls, 7522-7523  
 Zambezi River, 7968
- Rio de Oro**, 6133
- Senegal**, 6492  
 French Colony in West Africa, 6492  
 Location between Rivers, 6492
- Senegambia**, 6492  
 [See *Senegal*, above.]
- Sierra Leone**, 6596
- Somaliland**, 6685-6686
- Somaliland Protectorate**, 6686
- Southwest Africa**, 6723  
 Formerly German Southwest Africa, 6723  
 Mandated to Union of South Africa, 4253, 6723  
 Population, 6723  
   Native Races, 6723  
     Hottentots, 3258-3259  
     Bushmen, 1038-1039
- Sudan**, 6902  
 Anglo-Egyptian Sudan (see above), 287  
 French Sudan (see above), 2620
- Tanganyika Territory**, 7014-7015  
 Mandated to Great Britain, 4253, 7014  
 Part Annexed to Belgian Congo, 690  
 Surface Features, 7015  
   Kilimanjaro, 3774
- Tangier**, 7015  
 Railroad to Fez, 4660, 7015
- Togo and Togoland**, 7199  
 Mandated Territories of West Africa, 4253, 7199
- Tunisia**, 7293-7295  
 Formerly Called Tunis, 7293  
 One of the Barbary States, 617  
 Location on the Mediterranean, 4378  
 Capital City, 7294  
   Tunis, 7294  
   Replaced Carthage, 1219-1220  
 Scene in Tunia, 7294

Other Towns, 7295  
**Uganda**, 7344-7345  
 British Protectorate in East Africa, 7344  
 Lakes Wholly in Uganda, 7344  
 Lakes Partly in Uganda, 7344  
   Victoria Nyanza, 7523  
   Albert Nyanza, 191  
   Lake Edward, 2134  
   Lake Rudolph, 6237  
 Towns, 7345  
**Union of South Africa**, 7353-7360  
 Independent State of the British Empire, 965  
 Location and Size, 7353  
   Boundaries on the North, 7353  
     Southwest Africa, 6723  
     Bechuanaland, 668  
     Rhodesia, 6098  
     Portuguese East Africa (Mozambique), 4729  
   Location Maps, 1183, 7353  
 Provinces of the Union, 7353, 7354  
   Cape of Good Hope, 7354, 7358  
   Natal, 7354, 7358  
   Orange Free State, 7354, 7360  
   Transvaal, 7354, 7359  
 Mandated Territory, 4253, 7353  
   Southwest Africa, 6723  
 Physical Features, 7354  
 Climate Generally Healthful, 7354  
 Agriculture, 7354  
 Mineral Deposits, 7354  
   Gold and Diamond Production, 2859, 3775, 7354

The People, 7354  
 Native Peoples, 7354  
   Bantus, 614  
   Bushmen, 1038-1039  
   Hottentots, 3258-3259  
 Government, 965-966, 7354, 7356  
 Education, 7356  
 Transportation and Communication, 7356  
   Cape-to-Cairo Railway, 1181-1182  
 The Towns, 7356  
   Johannesburg, 3681  
     Center of Witwatersrand, 3681, 7360  
   Cape Town, 1182-1183  
     Seat of Union Parliament, 7356  
     Capital of Cape Province, 7357  
     On Table Mountain, 1182  
   Darban, 2056  
   Pretoria, 5809  
     Provincial Capital, 7357  
   Port Elizabeth, 5745  
     Feather Market, 5745  
   Kimberley, 3775  
   Bloemfontein, 796  
     Headquarters of Union Judiciary, 7356  
   Pietermaritzburg, 7357  
 Scenes in South African Towns, 7355, 7359  
**Wadai**, 7574  
 Annexed to French Equatorial Africa, 2609, 7574  
 Chiefly Desert or Plain, 7574  
 Animal Life, 7574  
 Capital, Abeshir, 7574  
 Zululand, 7988-7990

## Asia

**Independent Countries**, 441  
 Bhutan, 723  
 Chinese Republic, 1384-1399  
   China Proper, 1385  
   Manchuria, 4248, 4252  
   Mongolia, 4592-4594  
   Sin-Kiang (Chinese Turkestan), 6623, 1385  
   Tibet, 1385  
 Japan, 3621-3639  
   Chosen (Korea), 1409-1411  
 Siam, 6581-6586  
 Persia, 5495-5503  
 Afghanistan, 70-72  
 In Arabia, 338-340  
   Oman, 339  
   Hejaz, 339  
   Yemen, 339  
   Nejd, 339  
 Nepal, 4876-4877  
 Turkey, 7302-7317  
   Asia Minor (Anatolia) 273, 451  
 Russia in Asia, 441  
   Siberia, 6586-6591  
   Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic, 7242  
   Armenia, 407-410

Azerbaijan, 550  
 Georgia, 2763  
 Uzbek Socialist Soviet Republic, 7437-7438  
 Bokhara, 7438  
 Khiva, 7438  
**Dependencies**, 441  
 French Possessions, 441, 2580  
   Pondicherry (India), 441  
   French Indo-China, 2610-2612  
     Annam (Anam) 2610-2611  
     Cambodia, 2611  
     Cochin-China, 2611-2612  
     Laos, 2612  
     Tonking, 2612  
   Kwang Chau Wan (Caseo from China), 441, 2612  
 British Possessions, 441, 967  
   India, 3377-3390  
     British Provinces, 3387  
     Burma, 1030-1032  
     Native States, 3387  
   Ceylon, 1292-1294  
     Maldiv Islands, 4239  
   Aden Protectorate, 45, 339  
   Bahrein Islands, 5503

Straits Settlements, 6873  
 Federated Malay States, 2390  
 Other Malay States, 967  
 British North Borneo, 867, 967  
 Hong Kong, 3218-3220  
   Weihaiwei, 967, 6542  
 Portuguese Possessions, 441  
   Macao (China), 441  
   Goa (India), 441

United States Possessions, 7362  
   Philippines, 5549-5563  
**Mandated Territories**, 441, 4253  
   Iraq, 3514-3517  
   Transjordan, 7244  
   Syria, 6987-6991  
   Palestine, 5310-5316  
**Former German Leasehold**, 441  
   Kiao-chow, 6541

*Political Divisions in Detail*

**Aden**, 45  
   Location on Gulf of Aden, 45  
**Afghanistan**, 70-72  
   Independent Kingdom of Central Asia, 70  
   Location and Size, 70  
   Physical Features, 71  
     Hindu Kush Range, 3181  
   Climate, 71  
   The People, 70  
     Afghan Tribes, 70  
     Fanatical Mohammedans, 70, 4569  
   Industries and Trade, 71-72  
   Transportation and Communication, 72  
     Railroad from Jamrud (India), 72  
     Khyber Pass, 3770-3771  
   Government, 72  
   The Cities, 70-71  
**Anatolia**, 273, 7304  
   [See *Asia Minor* and *Turkey*, below.]  
**Annam**. [See *French Indo-China*, below.]  
**Arabia**, 338-340  
   Divisions of Arabia, 339  
     Aden, 45  
     Asir, 339  
     Hejaz, 3127-3128  
     Nejd, 4872  
     Oman, 5199  
     Palestine, 5310-5316  
     Transjordan, 7244-7245  
     Yemen, 7942-7943  
   [See *Aden*, above, and outlines of the other divisions, below.]  
   The People, 339  
     Arabs, 341-343  
     Wahhabis, 7577-7578  
   Transportation, 339  
**Armenia**, 407-410, 6257, 7242  
   Socialist Soviet Republic, 407  
     Part of Transcaucasia, 407, 7242  
     [See *Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic*, below.]  
   The People, 407  
     Chiefly of Aryan Origin, 407, 438  
     Victims of Moslem Persecution, 407, 408  
   Land and Resources, 408  
   The Towns, 408  
     Erivan, The Capital, 408  
     Leninakan, 408  
   Phases of Life in Armenia (Illustrations), 409  
**Asia Minor**, 451  
   Now Called Anatolia, 273, 451

Chief Part of Modern Turkey, 7304  
   [See *Turkey*, below.]  
**Azerbaijan**, 550, 6257, 7242  
   [See *Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic*, below.]  
   Baku, the Capital, 550  
**Bahrein Islands**, 967, 5503  
**Baluchistan**, 591  
   Province of British India, 591  
   Location East of Persia, 591  
**Bhutan**, 723  
   Inhabitants, 723  
   Capital, Punakha (Dosen), 723  
**Bokhara**, 7437, 7438  
   [See *Uzbek*, below.]  
**Borneo**, 867, 967  
   In the Malay Archipelago, 4237  
     Dutch East Indies, 2090  
   British North Borneo  
     Brunei, 967  
     Sarawak, 967  
   Articles of Commerce, 868  
   Edible Birds' Nests, 2107  
   Gutta-Percha, 2990  
   Rattan, 6001  
   Trepang, 7264  
   Native Inhabitants, 868  
**Burma**, 1030-1032  
   Illustrations of Burmese Life, 1030-1031  
**Cambodia**, 2611  
   [See *French Indo-China*, below.]  
**Ceylon**, 1292-1294  
   Surface Features, 1292  
     Coast Line of Coral Reef, 1292, 1673  
   People, 1292  
     Chief Center of Buddhism, 1000  
   Vegetable and Animal Life, 1294  
     Banyan, 615  
     Ceylon Elephants, 2201  
     [See *Color Plate*, opposite 2198.]  
   Agriculture the Chief Occupation, 1294  
   Pearl Fisheries, 1294  
   Colombo, Capital and Chief Seaport, 1294  
**China**, 1384-1399  
   Provinces, 1385  
     Chinese Turkestan (Sin-Kiang), 6623  
     Manchuria, 4248-4252  
     Mongolia, 4592-4594  
     Tibet, 7166-7170  
   [See *Outlines of these Provinces*, below.]



- Physical Features, 1385  
 [See *Rivers of Asia*, under *Physical Geography*, above.]  
 Lakes, 1386  
 Floating Islands, 1386, 3564  
 Climate, 1386  
 Plants and Animals, 1386-1387  
 Bamboo, 592-594  
 A Bamboo Plantation, 593  
 Cultivated Plants  
 [See *Agriculture*, below.]  
 Agriculture, 1387-1388, 1390  
 Chief Crops, 1388  
 Rice, 1388, 6107-6113  
 Tea, 1388  
 Mulberry, 1388, 4733  
 Poppy, 5737  
 Other Crops, 1388  
 Planting Corn (Illustration), 1387  
 Plowing a Rice Field (Colored Plate), opposite 6107  
 Manufactures, 1390  
 Typical Products of Factory and Home, 1390  
 Silks, 6610  
 Embroideries, 2220  
 Filigree Work, 1390  
 Lacquer Ware, 3834-3835  
 Wood and Ivory Carvings, 1224  
 Bronze Castings, 1390  
 Pottery, 1390, 5787  
 Cloisonné Art in China (Illustrations), 5785  
 Mineral Resources, 1390-1391  
 Commerce and Transportation, 1391  
 The People of China, 1391-1392  
 Mongolian Race, 5931  
 Government, 1399  
 Cities and Towns, 1399  
 Amoy, 265  
 Canton, 1177  
 Fu-Chau, or Foo-Chau, 2630  
 Hangchow, 3036  
 Hankow, or Han-Kau, 3036  
 Hong Kong, 3218-3220  
 Kiao-Chow, 6541  
 Port of Shantung Province, 6541  
 [See *Shantung*, below.]  
 Nanking, 4803-4804  
 Located on Yangtze River, 7928  
 Ning-Po, 5032  
 Peking, 5442-5446  
 New Name, Peiping, 5442  
 Ancient Capital of China, 5442  
 Five Walled Districts, 5443  
 Shanghai, 6539-6541  
 Three Parts of the City, 6539  
 [See Map, 6540.]  
 Tien-Tsin, 7172-7173  
 Chosen, 1409-1411  
 Now a Province of Japan, 3622  
 Industry and Commerce  
 Agriculture the Chief Occupation, 1410  
 Principal Products, 1410  
 Rice, 6108  
 Ginseng, 2810  
 Mineral Resources, 1410  
 Transportation  
 Railway Mileage and Connections, 1410  
 Trans-Siberian Railway, 7252-7253  
 Government, 1410  
 The Cities, 1411  
 Seoul (Keijo), the Capital, 1411  
 Chemulpo, Its Port, 1411  
 On Yellow Sea, 7935  
 Railway Connections, 1411  
 Fusan, 1411  
 Taikyu-fu, 1411  
 Pingyang, 1411  
 Annexation to Japan (1910), 1411  
 Cochin-China, 2611-2612  
 [See *French Indo-China*, below.]  
 Dutch East Indies, 2090, 4884, 4893  
 Holland's Empire in the Far East (Map), 4893  
 In the Malay Archipelago, 4237, 2089  
 Physical Features, 2090  
 Dense Forests, 2090  
 Cinchona Trees, 1426  
 Chief Source of Quinine, 5923  
 Coconut Trees, 1519-1522  
 Rubber Trees, 6225  
 Mineral Products, 2090  
 Coal, 1497  
 Tin, 7181  
 The People, 2090  
 Natives of Malay Race, 5931  
 Batavia, the Capital City, 3643  
 Government, 2090, 4892  
 Borneo, 867  
 Celebes, 1266-1267  
 Macassar, the Capital, 1266, 7264  
 Java, 3641-3643, 4893  
 Climate and Rainfall, 3641  
 Thunderstorms, 5985, 6851  
 Honoring the Dead in Java, 3642  
 Native Bridal Procession, 3643  
 Moluccas, or Spice Islands, 2090, 4577  
 [See Map of *Asia*, opposite 445.]  
 Islands Noted for Spices, 4577, 6760  
 Animal Life  
 Brilliantly Colored Birds, 4577  
 Chief City, Amboina, 4577  
 New Guinea, or Papua, 4917  
 Divisions, 4917  
 Dutch New Guinea, 4917  
 British New Guinea, 4917  
 Territory of Papua, 4917  
 Kaiser Wilhelmsland, 4917  
 Mandated to Australia, 4253, 4917  
 Animal Life, 4917  
 Birds of Paradise, 771-772  
 Illustrations, 4916, 4917  
 Dinner Time in New Guinea, 4916  
 Ceremonial Hats and Masks, 4917  
 Sumatra, 6918-6919

Illustrations  
   Battak Women and Children, 6918  
   Types of Sumatra Natives, 6919  
 Smaller Islands, 2090  
**East Indies**, 2089-2090  
   General Name for Southeastern Asia, 2089  
**Federated Malay States**, 2390-2391, 4237  
   Four Mohammedan States in Malay Peninsula, 2390  
   Natural Wealth, 2390  
     Important Source of Tin, 7181  
     Center of Rubber Culture, 6226  
   Government, 2690  
     British Protectorate, 2690, 5851  
**French Indo-China**, 2610-2612  
   French Possessions in Southeast Asia, 2610  
     Anam, 2610-2611  
     Cambodia, 2611  
     Cochin-China, 2611-2612  
       Saigon, the Capital, 2612  
     Laos, 2612  
     Tonking, 2612  
     Kwang-Chau Wan 2612  
   Physical Features, 2610  
   Highways of Commerce, 2610  
     Mekong River, 4382  
     Red River, 2610  
   Government and Capital, 2610  
     Hanoi, the Capital, 2610  
     Haiphong, its Port, 2612  
**Georgia**, 2763  
   Allied with Armenia and Azerbaijan, 407, 550  
   Transcaucasian Federated Socialist Soviet Republic, 2742. [See below.]  
   Cities, 2763  
     Batum, 2763  
       Harbor on Black Sea, 783  
     Tiflis, the Capital, 2763  
**Goa (India)**, 441  
**Hejaz, or Hedjaz**, 3127-3128  
   Vassal State of Nejd, 3128, 4872  
   Part of Arabian Peninsula, 338  
   The Cities, 3127-3128  
     Mecca, 4368  
       Birthplace of Mohammed, 4567  
       Objects of Interest, 4368  
       The Great Mosque, 3127, 4368  
       The Kaaba, 3729, 4368  
       Pilgrimages, 4368  
     Medina, 4378  
       Tomb of Mohammed, 4568  
     Jedda, 3127  
       Seaport of Mecca, 4368  
**Hong Kong**, 3218-3220  
   [See under *China*, above.]  
**India**, 3377-3390  
   Locations and Size, 3378  
   Coast Line and Coast Waters, 3384  
   Islands, 3384  
     Ceylon (see above), 1292  
       Adam's Bridge, 3384  
   Political Divisions, 3378, 4208

**Important Provinces of British India**, 4208  
   Assam, 456  
   Bengal, 707-708  
     One of the Three Presidencies, 707  
     Capital, Calcutta, 708, 1074  
   Bihar and Orissa, 3383  
   Bombay, 826  
   Burma, 1030-1032  
   Central Provinces and Berar, 4208  
   Madras, 4208-4209  
     Eastern and Western Ghats, 2797  
   Punjab, 5883-5884  
   United Provinces of Agra and Oudh  
     3382, 4208  
   Northwest Frontier Province, 4208  
   British Baluchistan, 591  
**Important Native States**  
   Baroda, 3382-3383  
   Hyderabad, 3383, 4208  
     Nizam's Dominions, 3383  
   Jaipur, or Jeypore, 3383  
   Kashmir, or Cashmere, 3747-3748  
   Mysore, 3382, 4208  
     Native State in Southwest India, 4382  
   Rajputana Agency, 5990  
   Central India Agency, 4208  
**Surface Features**, 3384  
   Himalaya Mountain Region, 3384  
   Mount Everest, 2334  
**Climate**, 3384  
   Rainfall and Seasons, 3384  
   Monsoons, 4609  
   Famines, 2369  
**The People**, 3378-3379  
   A Medley of Races, 3378  
   Caste, 917, 3379  
   Brahmanism, 917  
**Agriculture**, 3386  
**Mineral Resources**, 3384  
**Manufactures**, 3386  
**Transportation and Commerce**, 3386  
**Government**, 3387  
   Dependency of British Crown, 3387  
   Crown Represented by Viceroy, 7516  
**The Cities**, 3382-3384  
   Agra, 3382  
     Taj Mahal, 7007  
   Allahabad, 3382  
   Bangalore, 3382  
   Benares, 3383  
     On the River Ganges, 2680  
   Pilgrimages, 2680  
   Bombay, 825-826  
     Parsees the Trading Class, 5401  
     Towers of Silence, 7227-7228  
   Calcutta, 1074  
     Capital of Bengal Presidency, 708  
     Commerce, 1074  
       On Hooghly River (Hugli), 3277  
     On the Ganges River, 2680  
       Brahmaputra, 917  
   Cawnpore, 3383

- Sepoy Rebellion, 6496  
 Delhi, 1883-1885  
   Capital of British India, 1883  
   In the Punjab, 1883, 5883  
   Scene of Great Durbars, 2056  
 Hyderabad, 3383  
 Jaipur, 3383  
 Lahore, 3383  
   Capital of the Punjab, 5883  
 Lucknow, 4143  
 Madras, 4208-4209  
   Madras Presidency, 4208-4209  
 Patna, 3383  
   On the Ganges River, 2680  
 Poona, 3383  
 Srinagar, 3383  
   Capital of Kashmir, 3747-3748  
 Simla, 3383  
   In the Himalayas, 3180  
 Surat, 3384  
 Illustrations, 3379-3389  
   The New Capitol at Delhi, 3388  
   Scenes of Splendor, 3385  
     The Taj Mahal, 3377, 7007  
   Open-Front Store in Cashmere, 3381  
   A Mohammedan School, 3380  
   Child Bride and Groom, 3379  
   On the Sacred Ganges, 3382  
   A Ruling Prince, 3386  
   Scenes of Common Life, 3389  
 Maps of India, 4208 and opposite 445 (Asia)  
**Indo-China**, 3431  
   Provinces in Southeastern Peninsula of Asia, 3431  
     Burma, 1030-1032  
     French Indo-China, 2610-2612  
     Siam, 6581-6586  
 [See separate Outlines of above Provinces.]  
**Iraq**, 3514-3517, 7175  
   Formed from Mesopotamia, 4412  
   The New Kingdom, 3514  
   Effects of World War, 3514  
   The Cities, 3514-3517  
     Baghdad, 3516-3517  
       Scene of Arabian Nights Tales, 340  
       Baghdad Railway, 3517  
     Mosul, 3514  
       Center of Oil Field, 3514, 5521  
**Japan**, 3621-3639  
   Beauty the Magic of Japan, 3621  
   Japan Proper, 3621-3622  
     Four Islands, 3621  
   Other Japanese Islands, 3622  
     Kuriles, 3819  
       Original Inhabitants, 3819  
       Ainos, 108  
     Loo-Choo Islands, 4108  
     Sakhalin, or Saghalien, 6329  
       Southern Portion Japanese, 6329  
       Karafuto, 6329  
   Formosa, or Taiwan, 2542-2543  
     Chief Town, Tainan, 2542  
     Port, Tamsui, 2542  
   Pescadores, 3622  
   Bonin Islands, 3622  
   Former German Possessions, 3622  
     Caroline Islands, 5288  
     Mariana Islands, 5290  
     Marshall Islands, 5290  
   Physical Features of Japan, 3628-3631  
     Highest Peaks, 3628  
       Fujiyama, 2632, 3628  
       Illustrations, 2633, 3627  
     Waters, 3628  
     Earthquakes, 3628, 3630  
       Greatest Ever Recorded, 3637-3639  
       Causes, 3629  
       Tuscarora Deep, 3630  
   Climate, 3630  
     Typhoons, 7341  
   The People, 3622-3624  
     Characteristics, 3622  
     Practice of Jujutsu, 3708  
     Native Dress, 3623  
     Education, 3624  
     Some Social Aspects (Illustrations), 3623-3625  
   Flora and Fauna, 3630-3631  
     A Land of Flowers, 3630  
     Cherry Blossoms, 1342  
     Cherry Festival Time, 1342  
     Chrysanthemum, 1419  
     The National Flower, 3630  
   Trees, 3630  
     Maidenhair Trees (Ginkgo), 2809  
     Bamboo, 592  
     Lacquer Tree, 3834  
     Camphor Tree, 1116  
     Animal Life, 3630-3631  
   Industries, 3631-3632  
     Agriculture, 3631  
       Rice the Chief Crop, 3631, 6107-6113  
     Mining, 3631  
       Metal Resources Depleted, 3631  
   Fisheries, 3631  
   Home Industries, 3632  
   Manufacturing, 3632  
     Historic Products, 3632  
       Lacquer Ware, 3834-3835  
       Pottery, 5787. [See Colored Plate, opposite 3638.]  
       Carved Ivory, 3632  
     Modern Factory Products, 3632  
   Transportation and Commerce, 3632, 3634  
     Railway Mileage, 3634  
     City Transportation, 3634  
     Jinrikisha Disappearing, 3677  
   The Cities, 3626, 3628  
     Tokyo, the Capital, 7199-7201  
       Effects of Earthquake, 7201  
     Yokohama, 7944-7945  
       The Seaport of Tokyo, 7201  
     Kobe, 3626  
     Kyoto, or Kioto, 3626  
     Nagasaki, 3626, 3628  
     Nagoya, 3628

- Osaka, 3628
- Government of Japan, 3634
  - Constitutional Monarchy, 3634
  - The Term Mikado, 3634
  - Legislature (Imperial Diet), 3634
  - Local Government, 3634
- Java, 3641-3643
  - [See *Dutch East Indies*, above.]
- Johore, 3692
  - Small State in South Malay Peninsula, 4237
  - Johore Bahru, the Capital, 3692
- Kashmir, or Cashmere, 3747-3748
  - Cashmere Shawls, 3748
  - Srinagar, the Largest Town, 3748
- Khiva, 7437, 7438
  - [See *Uzbek*, below.]
- Kiao-Chow, 6541
  - [See *China* (Cities and Towns) above.]
- Korea, 1409-1411
  - [See *Chosen*, above.]
- Kurdistan, 3818-3819
  - Large Region of Western Asia, 3818
  - Divided among Three Countries, 3818
    - Iraq, 3514
    - Persia, 5495
    - Turkey, 7302
- Kwang Chau Wan, 2612. [See *French Indo-China*, above.]
- Laos. [See *French Indo-China*, above.]
- Levant, 3948
  - Levant Morocco, 3948
- Macao (China), 441
- Malay Archipelago, 4237
  - Moluccas, 4577
  - New Guinea, 4917
  - Philippine Islands, 5549-5563
  - Sunda Islands, 6925
  - Dependent Groups, 4237
    - See Map, between pages 5292-5293
- Malay Peninsula, 4237-4238
  - Political Division, 4237
    - Siam, 6581
    - British Possessions, 5967
    - Federated Malay States, 2390
    - Other Malay States, 4237
  - Singapore, 6617-6618
    - [See *Straits Settlements*, below.]
  - The People, 4239
- Maldiv Islands, 4239
- Manchuria, 4248-4252
  - Part of Greater China, 1384
  - Chief Cities, 4250
    - Dairen, or Dalny, 4250
    - Harbin, 4250
    - Mukden, 4250
    - Port Arthur, 4250
      - Japanese Naval Station, 4250
      - At End of Liaotung Peninsula, 4250, 6280
  - Illustrations, 4248-4252
- Mongolia, 4592-4594
  - Gobi Desert in Center, 2850
  - Chief Town, Urga, 4592
    - Mongolian, or Yellow Race, 5931
    - Typical Mongolian Hut, 4593
- Nejd, 4872
  - Sultanate in Central Arabia, 339
  - Home of the Wahhabs, 7577-7578
    - Ibn Saud, 339, 4872
    - King of Hejaz, 3128, 4872
  - Capital, Riyadh, 4872
- Nepal, or Nepaul, 4876-4877
  - Independent Kingdom of Northern India, 4876
    - Surface Features, 4876
      - Himalaya Region, 3180
        - Mount Everest, 2334
        - Mount Dhawalagiri, 4876
      - Katmandu, the Capital, 4876
- New Guinea, 4917
  - [See *Dutch East Indies*, above.]
- Oman, 5199
  - Sultanate in Southeast Arabia, 339, 5199
  - Muscat, the Capital, 4749
    - Mattra, a Nearby Resort, 4749
- Palestine, 5310-5316
  - The Holy Land, 5310
  - Modern Palestine, 5310
    - Map of Modern Jerusalem, 3658
  - The People, 5310
    - Moslems, 4571
    - Jews, 3674
    - Christians, 1413
    - Zionist Movement, 7975
    - Education, 5310
  - The Land, 5314-5315
    - Jordan, 3697
    - Dead Sea, 1845-1846
    - Sea of Galilee, 2663
    - Mountains of Lebanon, 3915
      - Mount Hermon, 3916, 5311
    - Judean Hills, 5314
  - Resources and Development, 5315, 7975
  - Ancient Towns of Palestine, 5310, 5312
  - Cities of Modern Significance
    - Acre and Gaza, 5314
    - Haifa, 5314
    - Jaffa (Ancient Joppa), 5314
      - Tel-Aviv, Suburb, 5314
    - Jerusalem, 3658-3661
      - The Holy City, 3658
      - Effects of World War, 3660
        - General Allenby, 225, 5316
        - The Modern City, 3661
  - Illustrations, 3659, 3661, 5311, 5315
- Persia, 5495-5503
  - Ancient Name, Iran, 3513-3514
  - Surface Features, 5500
    - Inclosed by Mountains, 5500
      - Elburz Range, 2163
      - Demavend, 2163
  - The People, 5495-5496
    - Ancient Iranians, 3514
    - Now a Mixed Race, 5495
    - Education, 5496
      - American College, Teheran, 5496

- Industries, 5498
- Mineral Resources, 5499
- Transportation and Communication, 5499
- Ancient Cities, 5497-5498
- Cities of Present Importance
  - Ishpahan, 5496
  - Meshhed, or Mesheo, 5496
  - Tabriz, 5497
  - Teheran, 5497
    - The Capital City, 5497
- Illustrations, 5495-5502
  - Parliament House, 5495
  - One of Teheran's Gates, 5498
  - Entrance to Shah's Palace, 5501
  - Reza Khan and the Crown Prince, 5502
  - A Persian Nobleman's Home, 5497
  - Weaving Mats from Reeds, 5499
- Philippine Islands, 5549-5563**
  - United States Possession in the Pacific, 5549
  - Physical Features, 5554-5555
    - Mountain Ranges Rising from Sea, 5554
    - Active Volcanoes, 5554
    - Mount Apo, 5554
    - Coral Reefs, 1673, 5554
  - Plant and Animal Life, 5554, 5555
    - Animals, 5554
      - Carabao, 1188-1189
  - The People, 5549-5552
    - Filipinos and Other Races, 5549
      - Negritos, 4871, 5891
      - Ilongots, 5549
      - Igorrotes, 3348
      - Malays, 4239
      - Moros, 5550
    - Mestizos, 5550
  - Principal Islands, 5555-5556
    - Luzon, 5555
    - Mindanao, 5556
      - Volcanic Character, 5556
      - Earthquakes, 2084
    - Sulu Islands, 5556
    - Negros, 5556
    - Cebu, 5556
    - Palawan, 5556
      - Culion, Leper Colony, 5556
    - Mindoro, 5556
      - Climate Unhealthful, 5556, 3942
      - Typhoons, 7341
      - Forest Products, 5556
    - Panay, 5556
  - The Cities, 4257, 5552-5554
    - Manila, 4257-4259
      - Capital of the Philippines, 4257
      - Divided by Pasig River, 4257
      - The Old Town (Intramuros), 4259
      - Binondo, 4259
    - Suburbs, 4259
      - Tondo, 4259
      - San Miguel, 4259
      - Malacanan, 4259
      - Baguio, 4259, 5554
      - Main Street of Manila (Illustrated), 4258
    - Harbor Facilities, 4259
    - Exports, 4259
      - Abaca (Manila Hemp), 3139, 3140
      - Sugar, 6908
      - Tobacco, 7196
    - Founder, Legaspi, 4259
  - Batangas, 5552
  - Cavite, 5552, 5554
    - United States Naval Station, 5552
      - On Manila Bay, 4259
  - Cebu, 5554
    - Scene of Magellan's Landing, 4212
  - Iloilo, 5554
    - Textile Manufacture, 5554
    - Piña, 5554, 5624
  - Zamboango, 5554
  - Map of the Philippines, between 5554 and 5555
  - Illustrations, 5550-5560
    - An Avenue of Stately Palms, 5551
    - Baguio, the Summer Capital, 5554
    - A Native Rice Mill, 5555
    - Labor in Rural Sections, 5557
  - American Type of High School, 5559
  - Philippine Farm, 5559
- Pondicherry, 441**
  - French Possession on East Coast of India, 441
- Russia in Asia, 6257-6258**
  - Soviet Republics, 6257
  - Siberia, 6586-6591
  - Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic, 7242
  - Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic, 7318
  - Uzbek Socialist Soviet Republic, 7437-7438
  - [See outlines above and below, of these political divisions.]
- Sakhalin, or Saghalien, 6329**
  - Island off South Coast of Siberia, 6329
  - Divided Ownership, 6329
    - Russia, 6329
    - Japan, 3622
- Shantung, 654-6542**
  - Kiao-Chow, the Port, 6541
  - Tsinan, the Capital, 6542
  - Weihaiwei, District, 6542
- Siam, 6581-6586, 3431**
  - Independent Kingdom of Indo-China, 3431
  - The People, 6581
  - Industries and Resources, 6584
  - Transportation and Communication, 6584
  - The Capital City, 6581
    - Bangkok, 6581
  - Illustrations, 6580-6585
    - Scene in Bangkok Harbor, 6582
    - Throne Hall of the King, 6581
    - Siamese Homes on Stilts, 6583
    - A Floating Home (Color Plate), between 6580-6581
    - Scene on a Bangkok Canal, 6583
    - Temple in Palace Grounds, 6583
    - Lotus Plants in Ancient Moat, 6584
- Siberia, 6586-6591**
  - Included in Soviet Russia Proper, 6257

- The People and Cities, 6587  
 Omsk, 6587  
 Irkutsk, 6587  
 Tobolsk, 6587  
 Tomsk, 6587  
 Vladivostok, 6587  
 Terminus of Trans-Siberian Railway, 6587, 7252  
 The Land, 6587-6588  
 Four Distinct Regions, 6587  
 The Tundra, 7292  
 The Taiga, 6588  
 The Black-Soil Belt, 6588  
 The Steppes, 6828  
 Mountains, 6587  
 Altai Range, 236-237  
 Yablonoi Range, 7918  
 Stanovoi Range, 6803  
 Rivers and Lakes, 6588  
 Four Great River Systems, 6588  
 Amur, 269  
 Lena, 3930  
 Ob, 6588  
 Yenesei, 7943  
 Lake Baikal, 572  
 Agriculture, 6588  
 Fisheries, 6589  
 Minerals and Mining, 6589  
 Manufactures, 6589  
 Transportation, 6589  
 Trans-Siberian Railway, 6589, 7252-7253  
 World's Longest Single Line, 6590  
 The Manchurian Section, 7253  
 A Siberian Railway Station, 6590  
 Air Lines, 6590  
**Sin-Kiang**, 6623  
 Includes Chinese Turkestan, 6623, 7301  
 Chief Towns, 6623  
 Urumchi, the Capital, 6623  
 Kashgar, 6623  
 Yarkand, 6623  
**Straits Settlements**, 6873  
 British Colony of Malay Peninsula, 4237, 6873  
 Settlements Included, 6873  
 Singapore, 6617-6618  
 Christmas Island, 6873  
 Labuan Island, 6617  
 Penang, 6873  
 Malacca, 4235  
 Singapore, 6617-6618  
 Island and City, 6617  
 The City, 6617-6618  
 Penang, 6873  
 Island Settlement off West Coast, 6873  
 Prince of Wales Island, 6873  
 Malacca, 4235, 6873  
 Settlement on Peninsula Coast, 4235  
 Malacca, the Capital, 4235  
 Strait of Malacca, 4236  
**Sumatra**, 6918-6919  
 [See *Dutch East Indies*, above.]  
**Syria**, 6987-6991  
 Independent State in Asia Minor, 6987  
 Now Mandated to France, 4253  
 Includes Four Territories, 6987  
 Syria, 6987  
 Alaouite, 6987  
 Great Lebanon, 6987  
 Jebel Druze, 6987  
 The People and Their Occupations, 6987  
 The Cities, 1814, 6990-6991  
 Damascus, 1814-1816  
 Ancient Origin, 1814  
 The Street Called Straight, 1815  
 Aleppo, 6990-6991  
 Antioch, 6991  
 Town on the Old Site, 6991  
 Antakiyeh, 6991  
 Beirut, or Beyrout, 6991  
 Palmyra, 6990, 6991  
 Illustrations, 6988-6990  
**Tibet, or Thibet**, 7166-7170  
 Nominally Part of China, 7166  
 Earth's Most Elevated Large Area, 7168  
 Surface Features, 7168  
 Mountain Ranges, 7168  
 Himalayas, 3180  
 Kuen-Lun, 3818  
 Table-Lands, 7168  
 Brahmaputra River, 917  
 The People, 7168  
 Religion, Lamaism, 3846  
 Lamas, 7168  
 The Capital City, 7168  
 Lhasa, 7168  
 Center of Caravan Trade, 1189, 7168  
 Resources, 7168  
 Yaks as Beasts of Burden, 7168-7169, 7923  
 Exclusion of Europeans, 7168  
 W. W. Rockhill, 7168  
 Illustrations, 7167-7170  
 [See *Maps of Asia*, between 444 and 445.]  
**Tonking**, 2612  
 [See *French Indo-China*, above.]  
**Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic**, 7242  
 Includes Three Communistic States, 7242  
 Armenia, 407-410  
 Azerbaijan, 550  
 Georgia, 2763  
 Capital, Tiflis, 2763  
 Circassian Inhabitants, 1432  
 [See outlines of the respective states, above.]  
**Transjordania**, 7244-7245  
 Section of Arabia, 339  
 Subject to British Mandate, 7244  
 Chief Town, Amman, 7244  
 Sciencs in Transjordania, 7245  
**Turkestan**, 7300-7301  
 Russian Turkestan, 7301  
 [See *Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic* and *Uzbek*, below.]  
 Chinese Turkestan, 7301  
 [See *Sin-Kiang*, above.]

Afghan Turkestan, 7301  
**Turkey**, 7302-7317  
 Now a Minor State, 7302  
 National State of Turkey, 7302  
 Turkey in Europe, 7304  
   Constantinople, 1626-1629  
   Adrianople, 7307  
   Small Part of Thrace, 7159  
 Turkey in Asia, 7304  
   Anatolia, or Asia Minor, 273, 451  
   Mediterranean Islands, 7304  
     Imbros, 7304  
     Tenedos, 7304  
     Rabbit Islands, 7304  
 The People, 7304  
   Social Life, 7305  
   Religion and Education, 7304-7306  
   Adoption of Latin Alphabet, 7306, 7309, 7316  
 The Land and Rivers, 7308  
   Table-lands of Anatolia, 7308  
   The Levant, 3948  
   Taurus Mountains, 7032  
 Agriculture, 7308-7309  
 Mining, 7309  
   Meerschaum, 4380  
   Oil in Mosul Area, 7309  
 Manufactures, 7309  
 Transportation, 7309-7310  
 The Cities, 1626, 7306-7308  
   Constantinople, 1626-1629  
     Ancient Byzantium, 1056  
     Former Capital of Turkey, 1626  
     At Southern End of Bosphorus, 869, 1627  
     Stamboul, the Moslem Center, 1628  
     Sea of Marmora, 4296  
     Golden Horn, 2861-2862  
     Suburbs, 1628  
       Galata, 1628, 2861  
       Pera, 1628, 2861  
       Scutari, 1628  
   Interesting Features, 1628  
     Mehmedie Mosque, 4380-4382  
   Educational Center of Turkey, 1629  
     Robert College, 1629, 7306  
     American College for Women, 1629  
 Adana, 7306  
 Adrianople, 7307  
 Angora (Ankara), 7307  
   Capital of New Turkey, 7307  
 Brusa, 7308  
 Konia, 7308  
 Samsun, 7308  
 Smyrna, 6657  
 Trebizond, 7308  
 Maps of Turkey, 7304-7307  
   The Empire (1481), 7304

Boundaries (1683), 7305  
 After Congress of Berlin (1878), 7306  
 National State of Turkey, 7307  
 Illustrations, 1626-1628, 7302, 7303, 7308, 7310-7314  
   Constantinople and Vicinity (Map), 1626  
   Airplane View of Constantinople, 1628  
   Galata Bridge (Color Plate), opposite 1628  
   Sultan's Palace and Mosque, 1627  
   Scenes on the Bosphorus, 7302  
     Color Plate, opposite 869  
   Views of Mehmedie Mosque, 4381  
   Mosque of Sultan Achmed, 7313  
   University of Law and Letters, 7313  
   Street Scenes in Constantinople, 7303  
   Views of Modern Angora, 7308  
   Women's Costumes, Past and Present, 7310  
**Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic**, 7318  
   Also Called Turkmenistan, 7318  
   Includes Turkestan, 7301  
   Sheep and Cattle Raising, 7318  
   Astrakhan Fur, 466  
   Mineral Resources, 7318  
   Ozocerite, 7318  
   Askabad, the Capital, 7318  
**Uzbek, or Uzbekistan**, 7437-7438, 6258  
   Territory Included, 7437  
     Formerly Autonomous Soviet Areas  
       Tadzhik, 7437  
       Badakshan, 7437  
       Oasis of Khiva, 7437  
       Samarkand, 7437  
       Former Khanate of Bokhara, 7437  
   The Land and Industries, 7438  
   Bokhara, 7438  
     Important Towns, 7438  
       Bokhara, the Capital, 7438  
       Karshi, 7438  
   Transcaspian Railway, 7438  
   Khiva, 7438  
     Capital City, Khiva, 7438  
   Samarkand, 7438  
     Capital of Uzbek Republic, 7438  
     Tomb of Timur, 7180  
   Tashkend, 7438  
     Former Capital of Russian Turkestan, 7301  
   Other Towns of Uzbek, 7438  
**Weihaiwei**, 6542  
   [See *Shantung*, above.]  
**Yemen**, 339, 7942-7943  
   Noted for Coffee, 1530, 7942  
   Towns, 7943  
     Sana, the Capital, 7943  
     Hodeida, the Seaport, 7943  
     Mocha (Mokha), 7943

### Australia

**Political Divisions**, 507, 516  
 Commonwealth of Australia, 507, 516  
 British Dominion, 516

Capital, Canberra, 517, 1163  
 [See *Australia*, under *Lands of the Earth*, in *Physical Geography*, above.]

A Dominion of the British Commonwealth of Nations, 965  
 States and Capitals, 508  
   New South Wales, 4949-4952  
     Sidney, 4952  
   Victoria, 7519-7521  
 Melbourne, 7520  
 Queensland, 5919-5921  
   Brisbane, 5921  
 South Australia, 6703-6704  
   Adelaide, 6704

Western Australia, 7710-7713  
   Perth, 7713  
 Tasmania, 7026-7028  
   Hobart, 7028  
 Territories, 507  
   North Australia, 5051  
   Darwin, 5051  
   Central Australia, 1288  
   Alice Springs (Capital), 5073  
   Federal Capital Territory, 1163  
   Canberra, 1163

*States and Territories in Detail*

**Central Australia**, 1288, 5073  
 Territory of the Commonwealth, 1288  
   Formerly South Half of Northern Territory, 5073  
   Artesian Wells, 424, 5073  
   Seat of Administration, 5073  
   Alice Springs, 5073  
   Northern Territory, 5073  
   [See *North Australia*, below.]  
**Federal Capital Territory**, 1163  
   Canberra, 517, 1163  
**New South Wales**, 4949-4952  
   Britain's First Colony in Australia, 4949  
   The Land, 4949  
     Many Good Harbors, 4949  
     Botany Bay, 517  
   Great Dividing Range, 509, 4949  
   New England Mountains, 509  
   Blue Mountains, 4949  
   Australian Alps, 509  
   Loftiest Peak, 4949  
   Mount Kosciuszko, 509, 4949  
   Chief Rivers  
     Murray, 4748  
     Darling, 4748  
     Murrumbidgee, 4749  
     Hunter, 4949  
     Hawkesbury, 4950  
   Resources and Industries, 4949  
     Wool Output, 4949  
     Mineral Resources, 4949  
   Communication and Trade, 4952  
   The Cities, 4952  
     Newcastle, 4952  
     Sydney, 4952  
   Illustration, 4951  
**North Australia**, 5051  
   Territory of the Commonwealth, 5051  
   Formed from Northern Territory, 5073  
   [See *Central Australia*, above.]  
   Seat of Administration, 5073  
   Darwin, or Port Darwin, 5073  
   Area of the Former Northern Territory, 5073  
   Location Maps, 516, 5073  
**Queensland**, 5919-5921  
   Second Largest State of Australia, 5919  
   Coast Line and Coast Waters, 5919  
   Gulf of Carpentaria, 5919

Great Barrier Reef, 509, 1673, 5919  
 Surface Features, 5919  
 Industries, 5920  
   Agriculture, 5920  
     Aided by Artesian Wells, 424, 5920  
   Mineral Resources, 5920  
   Exports, 5920  
   Brisbane, the Capital City, 5921  
**South Australia**, 6703-6704  
   Borders on Great Australian Bight, 2921  
   Rivers and Lakes, 6703  
     Murray River, 4748-4749  
     Lake Alexandria, 4749  
     Encounter Bay, 4749  
   Industries, 6703-6704  
   Transportation and Commerce, 6704  
   Adelaide, the Capital, 6704  
     Port Adelaide, 6704  
**Tasmania**, 7026-7028  
   Former Name, Van Dieman's Land, 7026  
   Animal and Plant Life, 7027, 7028  
   Industries, 7027  
   Hobart, the Capital, 7028  
   Illustrations, 7026-7027  
     Hobart and Mount Wellington, 7027  
     A Mountain Torrent (King River), 7026  
**Victoria**, 7519-7521  
   Southeastern State of the Commonwealth, 7519  
   Coast Line and Indentations, 7519  
   Port Phillip Bay, 7519  
   Surface Features, 7519  
   Australian Alps, 7519  
     Mount Bagong, 7519  
   Murray River, 5748-4749  
   Agriculture, 7519  
   Cities, 7520-7521  
     Ballarat, 7520  
     Melbourne, 7520-7521  
     Capital of Victoria, 7520  
     Port Melbourne, 7520  
     Yarra River, 7520  
**Western Australia**, 7710-7713  
   Largest State of the Commonwealth, 7710  
   Area and Population, 7710  
   Physical Features, 7712  
     Darling Range, 7712  
     Stirling Range, 7712  
   Government and History, 7712



Perth, the Capital, 7713  
 View, from King's Park, 7712  
**New Zealand**, 4999-5008  
 Member of British Commonwealth of Nations, 965  
 Two Great Islands, 4999  
 North Island, 5000  
 South Island, 5000  
 Other Islands in the Dominion, 5008  
 Mandated Territories, 4253, 4999  
 Surface Features, 5000, 5002  
 Rugged Coast and Fiords, 5000  
 Mountains and Volcanoes, 5000, 5003  
 Mount Ngauruhoe, 5003  
 Tarawera, 2795  
 Geysers and Hot Springs, 2793, 2795  
 Southern Alps, 5002  
 Mount Cook, 5002  
 Rivers, 5002  
 Plants and Animals, 5002

The People, 4999  
 Maoris, 4274, 4999  
 Maori Home, 4275  
 Rubbing Noses, 4275  
 Maori Chieftain, 5007  
 The Haka Dance, 5007  
 Women in Native Garb, 5001  
 Cook Islanders, 4999  
 Education, 4999  
 Industries, 5004  
 Principal Cities, 4999-5000  
 Auckland, 5000  
 Christchurch, 5000  
 Provincial Capital, 5000  
 Dunedin, 5000  
 Wellington, 5000  
 Capital of the Dominion, 5000  
 New Zealand's Flag and Coat of Arms, 4999  
 Map of New Zealand, with Australia, between pages 512-513

### Pacific Islands

**Map**, between pages 5292-5293  
**Geographic Classification**  
 Australasia, 5288  
 [See *Australia* and *New Zealand*, above.]  
 Melanesia, 5288  
 Micronesia, 5288  
 Polynesia, 5288  
**Bismarck Archipelago**. [See *New Britain Archipelago*, below.]  
**Caroline Islands**, 5288-5289  
 Yap, 7929  
 Mandated to Japan, 4253, 5289  
**Easter Island**, 5289  
**Fiji Islands**, 5289  
 British Possession, 967, 5289  
 Fiji Huts, 5291, 5292  
 Color Plate, between 5288-5289  
 Vitilevu, the Capital, 5290  
**Friendly Islands**, 5289  
 [See *Tonga Islands*, below.]  
**Gilbert Islands**, 5289  
 British Colony, 967, 5289  
**Guam**, 2972  
 One of the Mariana Islands (see below), 5290  
**Mariana Islands**, 5290  
 Mandated to Japan, 4253, 5290  
**Marquesas Islands**, 5290  
**Marshall Islands**, 5290

Mandated to Japan, 4253, 5290  
**New Britain Archipelago**, 5290, 5292  
 Former Name, Bismarck Archipelago, 5290  
 Mandated to Australia, 4253, 5290  
**New Caledonia**, 5292  
 One of Oceania's Largest Islands, 5792  
 Numea, the Chief Port, 5292  
 Bourail, the Capital, 5292  
**New Hebrides**, 5292  
**Oceania**, General Term for All the Islands, 5288-5293  
**Samoa**, or **Samoan Islands**, 6353-6356  
 American Samoa, 6356  
 Tutuila and other Islands, 6356  
 Pagopago, 6356  
 Naval Station, 6356  
 Territory of Western Samoa, 6353  
 Mandated to New Zealand, 4253, 6353  
 Savaii, 6353  
 Upolu, 6353  
 Mount Vaea, 6353  
 Apia, the Chief Town, 6353  
**Society Islands**, 5292-5293  
 Also Called Tahiti Archipelago, 5292  
 Papeete, the Chief Town, 5293  
**Solomon Islands**, 5293  
**Tonga Archipelago**, 5293  
 Native Kingdom, British Protectorate, 5293

### Europe

**Albania**, 179-180  
 The Towns, 179-180  
 Durazzo, the Seaport, 179  
 Scutari, Largest Town, 180  
 Tirana, the Capital, 180  
**Andorra**, 277-280  
 Small Republic in the Pyrenees, 5896  
**Austria**, 522-527  
 Former State in Dual Monarchy, 522

**Austria-Hungary**, 528  
 Physical Features, 523  
 Danube River, 1824  
 Industry and Commerce, 523  
 The Cities, 523  
 Gratz, 523  
 Innsbruck, 523  
 Capital of Tyrol, 523, 7343  
 Vienna, the Capital, 7524-7527

Scenes in Vienna, 524, 7524-7526  
**Austria-Hungary**, 528-532  
 Austria-Hungary as It Was (Map), 530  
 Austria and Hungary as They Are, 531  
**Belgium**, 692-702  
 Physical Features, 695  
 Dunes, 2055  
 Polders, 695, 4890  
 The Campine, 695, 696  
 The Flemish Plain, 695  
 Rivers, 695  
 Scheldt, 6410  
 Meuse, 4429  
 Yser, 695  
 Division into Provinces, 698  
 Flanders, East and West, 2463-2465  
 Brabant, North and South, 914  
 The People and Their Languages, 692-693  
 Flemings, 693  
 Walloons, 7585  
 Industries, 695-696  
 Commerce, 697  
 The Cities, 693-694  
 Antwerp, 314-315  
 On the River Scheldt, 6410  
 Bruges, 693  
 Brussels, 983-985  
 Capital City, 983  
 Industries, 985  
 Lace, 985, 3830  
 Ghent, 2797  
 Capital of East Flanders, 2797  
 Liège, 693-694  
 On the River Meuse, 4429  
 Louvain, 694  
 Malines (Mechlen), 694  
 Namur, 694  
 Ostend, 694  
 Ypres, 694-695  
 Ruins of Ypres Cathedral, 7859  
 Reconstruction, 695  
**Bulgaria**, 1013-1017  
 Surface Features, 1014  
 Balkan Mountains, 1014  
 Lowland Region, 1014  
 Rivers, 1014  
 Danube, 1824  
 Maritsa, 1014  
 Climate and Vegetation, 1014  
 Roses, 1015, 6202-6203  
 The People, 1013-1014  
 Industries, 1014-1015  
 Attar of Roses, 494  
 The Cities, 1014  
 Sofia, the Capital, 1014  
 Philippopolis, 1014  
 Varna, 1014  
**Czechoslovakia**, 1800-1803  
 Territory Included, 1800  
 Bohemia, 813  
 Moravia, 4648-4649  
 Part of Silesia, 6603

Slovak Territory of Former Hungary, 1800, 6645  
 Carpathian Ruthenia, 1800  
 The People, 1801  
 Czechs, 1800  
 Slovaks, 6644  
 Commerce and Industry, 1801-1802  
 Principal Cities, 1801  
 Prague, or Praha, 5795  
 Brünn, or Brno, 1801  
 Carlsbad, 1199-1200  
 Pilsen, 1801  
 Pressburg, or Bratislava, 1801  
**Denmark**, 1891-1898  
 Physical Features, 1892  
 Jutland, the Peninsula, 1892  
 Skagerrak, 6629  
 Kattegat, 3748  
 Baltic Sea, 587  
 The Sound, 1892  
 Islands, 1892-1893  
 Fiords and Dunes, 1892  
 Denmark's Only River, 1892  
 The People, 1892  
 Industries, 1893-1894  
 Transportation and Commerce, 1894  
 The Cities, 1892  
 Copenhagen, the Capital City, 1665-1666  
 Aalborg, 1892  
 Aarhus, 1892  
 Odense, 1892  
 Faroe Islands, 2373  
 Greenland, 2957-2960  
 World's Largest Island, 2957, 3565  
 Eskimo Natives, 2293-2297  
 Occupations, 2960  
**England**. [See *Great Britain*, below.]  
**Estonia**, 2300-2303  
 The Cities, 2300  
 Tallinn, the Capital, 2300  
 Formerly Called Reval, 2300  
 Tartu (Dorpat), 2300  
 Parnu, 2300  
 Narva, 2300  
**Finland**, 2421-2423  
 Coast Waters, 2421  
 Gulf of Bothnia, 893  
 Gulf of Finland, 2423  
 Surface Features, 2422  
 Land of Lakes, 2422  
 Lake Ladoga, 3836-3837  
 Lake Saimaa, 2422  
 The Cities, 2422  
 Abo, or Turku, 2422  
 Helsingfors, 2422  
 Capital and Commercial Center, 2422  
 View of the Market Place, 2423  
 Tammerfors, or Tampere, 2422  
**France**, 2568-2589  
 Physical Features, 2574  
 The Coast, 2574  
 Highlands and Lowlands, 2574  
 Alps, 234-236

- Cevennes, 1292
- Pyrenees, 5896
- Rhone Valley, 6100
- Argentiers Glacier, 2575
- Rivers, 2576
  - Garonne, 2695
  - Loire, 4090
  - Rhone, 6100
  - Seine, 6484-6485
- Lake Geneva, 6974
- Islands, 3566
  - Corsica, 1700
    - Area and Population, 1700
    - Ajaccio, the Capital, 1700
- The People, 2568-2570
- Resources and Industries, 2576-2579
- Transportation and Commerce, 2579
  - Canals, 1160
- Interesting Cities, 2570-2574
  - Paris, the Capital, 5372-5381
    - Fifth City of the World, 1438, 5372
  - Marseilles, 4303-4304
  - Reims, 6047
  - Lyons, 4164
  - Versailles, 7505-7507
    - Palace of Versailles, 2568, 7505-7507
- Amiens, 2570
- Bordeaux, 2570
- Brest, 2570
- Calais, 2571
- Cherbourg, 2571
- Dijon, 2571
- Havre, 2571
- Le Mans, 2571
- Lille, 2571
- Limoges, 2572
- Metz, 2572
- Nancy, 2572
- Nantes, 2572
- Nice, 2572
- Nimes, 2572
- Orleans, 2572
- Rennes, 2573
- Roubaix, 2573
- Rouen, 2573
- Saint Etienne, 2573
- Strassburg, 2574
- Toulon, 2574
- Toulouse, 2574
- Tours, 2574
- Verdun, 7494
- Alsace-Lorraine, 236
  - Territory Returned to France, 236, 7508
- Colonies, 2580
- Germany, 2768-2789**
  - What Germany Comprises, 2769
  - Territory Lost by World War, 2769, 7882
  - Colonial Possessions Lost, 2778
  - Danzig Corridor, 1825
- Surface Features, 2775
  - Highland and Lowland, 2775
    - Riesengebirge Mountains, 6123
    - Black Forest, 780
  - Harz Mountains, 3069
- Rivers and Lakes, 2775
  - Danube, 1824
  - Rhine, 6087-6089
  - Weser, 7708
  - Elbe, 2162
  - Oder, 5161
  - Moselle, 4670
- The People, 2769
  - Language and Dialects, 2765, 2769
    - Plattdeutsch, 5654-5655
- Industries and Resources, 2776-2778
- Transportation and Commerce, 2778
  - Railway Mileage, 2778
  - Waterways, 2778, 1160
    - Kiel Canal, 3772-3773
- Divisions of the Republic, 2769
  - Former Kingdoms, 2780
    - Prussia, 5858-5860
      - Brandenburg, 922
        - Berlin, 714
      - Pomerania, 5719
      - Silesia, 6602-6603
    - Bavaria, 654
      - Saxony, 6405-6407
      - Württemberg, 7901-7902
  - Former Grand Duchies, 2780
    - Baden, 569-570
      - Hesse, 3169
    - Mecklenburg-Schwerin, 4371
    - Mecklenburg-Strelitz, 2769
    - Oldenburg, 5190
    - Saxe-Weimar, 6407
  - Former Duchies, 2780
    - Anhalt, 2769
    - Brunswick, 983
  - Former Principalities, 2780
    - Waldeck, 2769
    - Lippe, 2769
    - Schaumburg-Lippe, 2769
  - Free City States, 1441, 2602, 2780
    - Hamburg, 3025
    - Lübeck, 4143
    - Bremen, 941
  - Saar District, 2769, 6289
- Principal Cities, 2770-2775
  - Berlin, the Capital, 714-717
    - World's Third City, 714, 1438
  - Hamburg, 3025
  - Leipzig, 3927-3928
  - Lübeck, 4143
  - Munich, 4741-4742
    - Capital of Bavaria, 654
  - Dresden, 2032-2033
    - Capital of Saxony, 6406
  - Dresden China, 2033
  - Cologne, 1539-1541
    - Cologne Cathedral, 1540, 1245
  - Frankfort-on-the-Main, 2592-2593
  - Bremen, 941
  - Aix-la-Chapelle (Aachen), 2770
  - Altona, 2770
  - Augsburg, 2770

Baden, 2770  
 Barmen, 2770  
 Bayreuth, 2772  
     Wagner Theater, 7577  
 Bingen, 2772  
     Mouse Tower, 4702  
 Bonn, 2772  
 Breslau, 2772  
 Brunswick, 2772  
 Cassel, 2772  
 Chemnitz, 2772  
 Coblenz, 2772  
 Dortmund, 2772  
 Düsseldorf, 2772  
 Elberfeld, 2772  
 Erfurt, 2773  
 Essen, 2773  
     Krupp Industries, 3817  
 Halle, 2773  
 Hanover, 3038  
 Heidelberg, 2773, 3126  
     Heidelberg University, 3125-3126  
 Jena, 2773  
 Karlsruhe, 2773  
 Kiel, 2773  
 Königsberg, 2773-2774  
 Krefeld, 2774  
 Lübeck, 4143  
 Magdeburg, 2774  
 Mainz, 2774  
 Mannheim, 2774  
 Nuremberg, 2774  
 Oberammergau, 5411  
 Potsdam, 2774  
 Stettin, 2775  
 Stuttgart, 2775  
 Wiesbaden, 2775  
 Worms, 2775  
**Great Britain, 2922-2931**  
     Nucleus of the British Empire, 965-968, 2922  
     One of the British Isles, 969  
     Coast Line and Coast Waters, 2922  
         North Sea, 5075  
         Strait of Dover, 2017  
         English Channel, 2264  
         Saint George's Channel, 6308  
         Irish Sea, 3534  
         North Channel, 2922  
         Atlantic Ocean, 490  
     Islands, 2922  
         Orkney Islands, 5260  
         Shetland Islands, 6559  
         Hebrides, 3122  
         Channel Islands, 1303  
         Isle of Wight, 7758  
         Isle of Man, 4246  
         Anglesey, 7579  
     Surface Features, 2923  
     Mineral Wealth, 2923  
     Manufactures, 2923-2924  
     Transportation and Communication, 2924  
     Commerce, 2924

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, 7361  
     England, 2243-2264  
     Scotland, 6436-6447  
     Wales, 7579-7582  
     Northern Ireland, 3524  
     [See individual outlines, below.]  
 British Empire, and British Commonwealth of Nations, 965-968  
     Free Dominions, 965  
         Canada, 1117-1150  
         Newfoundland, 4913-4916  
         Australia, 507-520  
         New Zealand, 4999-5008  
         Union of South Africa, 7353-7360  
         Irish Free State, 3517-3531  
     Self-Governing Colonies, 966  
         Malta, 4241  
         Rhodesia, 6098  
     Crown Colonies, 966  
     Protectorates, 966  
     India and Indian States, 3377-3390  
         [See *Countries of Asia*, above.]  
     Mandated Territories, 967-968, 4253  
     Total Area and Population, 968  
     Extent of the Empire (Table), 967  
 England, 2243-2264  
     Meridian of Greenwich, 4409  
     Coast Line and Coast Waters, 2243  
     Surface Features, 2249  
         Highlands and Lowlands, 2249  
         Lake District, 2249  
     Rivers, 2249  
         Thames, 7134  
         Severn, 6510  
         Humber, 3284  
         Mersey, 4411  
     The People, 2243-2245  
         Characteristics, 2244  
         English Language, 2265-2267  
     Industries, 2251-2252  
     Principal Cities, 2245  
         London, the Capital, 4092-4099  
             Largest City in the World, 1438  
         Liverpool, 4059-4060  
         Birmingham, 773  
         Manchester, 4247  
             Manchester Ship Canal, 4247-4248  
         Sheffield, 6550  
         Leeds, 3921-3922  
         Bristol, 957  
     Other Towns of Importance, 2245-2248  
         Bath, 2245  
         Bradford, 2245  
         Brighton, 2245  
         Cambridge, 2245  
         Canterbury, 2245  
         Chester, 2245  
         Coventry, 2245  
         Croydon, 2245  
         Dover, 2245  
         Gloucester, 2245  
         Greenwich, 2245

Greenwich Observatory, 2246, 5142  
 Hull, 2245  
 Kenilworth, 3753-3755  
 Leicester, 2246  
 Lincoln, 2246  
 Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 2246  
 Nottingham, 2246  
 Oldham, 2246  
 Oxford, 2246  
 Plymouth, 2246-2247  
 Portsmouth, 2247  
 Preston, 2247  
 Salford, 2247  
 Southampton, 2247  
 Stratford-on-Avon, 6874  
 Sunderland, 2247  
 Yarmouth, 2247  
 York, 2247-2248  
 Scotland, 6436-6447  
   The People, 6437  
     Highlanders, 6437  
     Lowlanders, 6437  
     Gretna Green, 2963  
     Highland Homes, 6441, 6442  
     A Laird and His Castle, 6440  
   Surface Features, 6440  
     Northern Highlands, 6440  
     Grampian Hills, 6440  
       Ben Nevis, 710  
     Chevoit Hills, 1350  
     Sea Lochs, 6440  
       Firth of Clyde, 1497  
       Firth of Forth, 2544  
       Moray Firth, 6440  
       Firth of Tay, 7042  
       Solway Firth, 6685  
   Islands, 6440  
     Orkneys, 5260  
     Shetlands, 6559  
     Hebrides, 3122  
   Rivers and Lakes, 6440-6441  
     Clyde, 1497  
     Forth, 2544  
     Tay, 7042  
     Loch Lomond, 4091  
     Loch Katrine, 3748  
   Resources and Industries, 6441-6443  
   The Cities, 6438-6439  
     Edinburgh, the Capital, 2107-2108  
     Glasgow, 2830-2831  
       Second City in Britain, 2830  
       Harbor on the Clyde, 1497  
     Aberdeen, 6438  
     Ayr, 6438  
     Dundee, 6438  
     Dunfermline, 6439  
     Inverness, 6439  
     Leith, 6439  
     Paisley, 6439  
 Wales, 7579-7582  
   Surface Features, 7579  
   Snowdon, 7579  
   Rivers and Lakes, 7579

Anglesey, 7579  
 Island-County of Wales, 7579  
 The People, 7579-7580  
   Cimri, 7580  
   Principal Cities, 7580  
     Cardiff, 7580  
     Swansea, 7580  
     Merthyr Tydfil, 7580  
 Northern Ireland, 3517, 3518, 3523, 3524, 3526  
   Part of United Kingdom, 7361  
   Ulster, 3528  
   Counties Included, 3518. [See Map.]  
   The Cities, 3519-3520  
     Belfast, the Capital, 690  
     Londonderry, 3520  
 Greece, 2939-2950  
   Republic of Southeastern Europe, 2939  
   Ancient Greece, 2939-2942  
     [See *The Ancient World*, in the Outline on *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Modern Greece, 2942-2944  
   Islands  
     Crete, 1742  
     Cyclades, 1795  
       Delos, 1795  
     Euboea, 2312  
     Ionian Islands, 3503  
       Ithaca, 3503  
     Melos, 4385  
       Venus de Milo, 7490  
     Salamis, 6330  
   The Peloponnesus (Morea), 5449  
   Principal Cities, 2942  
     Athens, the Capital, 480-483  
       The Acropolis, 482  
       Public Buildings, 482, 2949  
       The Ancient City, 480-482  
     Corinth, 1676  
     Piraeus, 2942  
       Port of Athens, 2942  
     Saloniki, 2942  
   Macedonia, 4178-4179  
   Physical Features, 2943  
   Transportation and Commerce, 2944  
     Corinth Canal, 1676  
 Holland. [See *The Netherlands*, below.]  
 Hungary, 3288-3293  
   Former State of Austria-Hungary, 528  
   Territory Lost in World War, 3288, 7958, 7960  
   Transylvania, 6241  
   Croatia and Slavonia, 1749  
   Old and New Hungary (Maps), 3289  
   Population, 3289  
   Chiefly Magyars, 4221  
   Principal Cities, 3289  
     Budapest, the Capital, 998-999  
       Buda and Pest, 999  
       Danube River, 1824  
   Szeged, 3289  
   Debreczen, 3289  
   Physical Features, 3292

- Iceland, 3331-3334
  - Surface Features, 3332
  - Volcanoes, 3332
    - Mount Hekla, 3128
  - Glaciers and Geysers, 2793, 2820, 3332
  - Reykjavik, the Capital, 3334
- Irish Free State, 3517-3531
  - Dominion of British Empire, 965
  - Ireland as an Island, 3518
    - Physical Features, 3520-3521
      - Coast Irregularities, 3520
      - The Land Surface, 3520
        - Bogs and Peat, 5436-5437
      - Rivers and Lakes, 3522
        - River Shannon, 6541
        - River Boyne, 903, 3522
        - Lake Neagh, 4854
        - Lakes of Killarney, 3521, 3774
    - Climate and Rainfall, 3522
    - Emerald Isle, 2221
  - People of the Free State, 3518
  - Gaelic Division of Celts, 1270
  - Resources and Industries, 3523
  - The Cities, 3519-3520
    - Dublin, the Capital, 2045
    - Cork, 3519-3520
    - Galway, 3520
    - Kilkenny, 3520
    - Killarney, 3520
    - Limerick, 3520
    - Queenstown, or Cobh, 3520
      - Seaport of Cork, 3519
    - Waterford, 3520
- Italy, 3572-3588
  - Position and Boundaries, 3572
  - Colonies in Africa, 3572
  - Coast and Surface Features, 3576
    - The Italian Alps, 234-236
    - The Apennines, 317
    - Vesuvius, 7512
    - Rivers and Lakes, 3576
      - Po, 5677
      - Tiber, 7166
      - Lake Maggiore, 4212
      - Lake Lugano, 3579 6974
      - Lake Como, 1590
  - Islands, 3566
    - Capri, 1187
    - Elba, 2162
    - Monte Cristo, 4621
    - Patmos, 5415
    - Rhodes, 6097
    - Sardinia, 6386-6387
    - Sicily, 6592-6594
      - The Cities, 6592-6594
        - Catania, 6592
        - Messina, 6594
        - Palermo, 6594
  - Territory Acquired through the World War, 3585
    - Tyrol, 7343
  - The People, 3573
  - Language and Literature, 3569-3571
  - Resources and Industries, 3578-3580
    - Carrara Marble, 4282, 4284
  - Transportation and Commerce, 3580
  - Principal Cities, 3574
    - Rome, the Capital, 6170-6181
    - Florence, 2472-2474
    - Genoa, 2718
    - Milan, 4472
    - Naples, 4805-4807
    - Turin, 7300
    - Venice, 7484-7487
  - Other Towns of Importance, 3574-3576
    - Amalfi, 3574
    - Arezzo, 3574
    - Bari, 3574
    - Bologna, 3574
    - Catania (Sicily), 6592-6594
    - Fiume, 2448
    - Herculaneum, 3154-3156
      - Destroyed by Vesuvius, 7512
    - Leghorn, 3575
    - Messina (Sicily), 6594
    - Modena, 3575
    - Padua, 3575
    - Palermo (Sicily), 6594
    - Parma, 3575
    - Pavia, 3575
    - Pisa, 3575
    - Pompeii, 5720-5725
      - Destroyed by Vesuvius, 7512
    - Taranto, 3576
    - Trieste, 3576
    - Verona, 3576
    - Vicenza, 3576
    - Zara, 3585
    - Vatican City. [See below.]
- Lapland, 3874-3877
  - Divided among Three Countries, 3874
    - Norwegian Provinces, 3876
      - Nordland, 3876
      - Tromsø, 3876
      - Finmarken, 3876
    - Swedish Territory, 3876
    - Northern Finland, 3876
- Latvia, 3889-3892
  - Republic on the Baltic, 587, 3889
  - The Cities, 3890
    - Riga, the Capital, 3890
    - Libau, 3890
  - The Land, 3890
- Liechtenstein, 3977
  - Small Rhine State, 3977
- Lithuania, 4055-4056
  - Republic on the Baltic, 587, 4055
  - The land and Products, 4056
- Luxemburg, 4160-4162
  - Independent Grand Duchy, 4160
  - Luxemburg, the Capital City, 4160-4161
- Monaco, 4578-4579
  - Three Small Towns, 4578
  - Monaco, the Capital, 4578
  - La Condamine, 4578
  - Monte Carlo, 4578

**Montenegro**, 4621-4622[See *Yugoslavia*, below.]**The Netherlands**, or Holland, 4884-4895

Commercial and Colonial Power, 4884

Colonial Possessions, 4884, 4893

Location in the Rhine Delta, 6088

The People, 4884-4885

Nederlanders, or Dutch, 4884

The Land, 4890

Part Below Sea Level, 4890

Dikes, 4890

Zuider Zee, 4890, 7988

Rivers, Canals, and Railroads, 4891

Rhine, 6088

Meuse, 4429

Scheldt, 6410

Railway Mileage, 4891

Canals, 4891

Industries, 4890

Commerce, 4890-4891

The Cities, 4885

Amsterdam, 267

Rotterdam, 6215

The Hague, the Capital, 3003-3005

Arnhem, or Arnheim, 4885

Delft, or Delf, 4885

Groningen, 4885

Haarlem, 4885

Leyden, or Leiden, 4885

Utrecht, 4886

**Norway**, 5080-5090

Land of the Midnight Sun, 5080, 5081

In the Scandinavian Peninsula, 5080, 6409

Extends to North Cape, 5052

Water Boundaries

Arctic Ocean, 370

North Sea, 5075

The Skagerrak, 6629-6630

The Atlantic Ocean, 489

Outlying Province, Spitsbergen, 6768-6770

Physical Features, 5082-5083

The Land, 5082

Fiords, 5082, 2423-2425

Rivers and Lakes, 5084

Resources, Industries, and Trade, 5084-5088

The Cities, 5081-5082

Oslo, the Capital, 5266

Bergen, 5081

Hammerfest, 5081

Nidaros, or Trondhjem, 5082

Stravanger, 5082

**Poland**, 5685-5691

Republic of Central Europe, 5685

Communication and Commerce, 5687

State-Controlled Railways, 5687

The Danzig Corridor, 1825

Vistula River, 7548

Free City of Danzig, 1825

Gdynia, a New Port, 5687

The Cities, 5685-5686

Cracow, 5685

Lemberg, 5685

Ledz, 5685

Posen, 5686

Vilna, 5686

Warsaw, the Capital, 5686

**Portugal**, 5757-5767

Location and Size, 5757

Surface Features, 5759

The People, 5757

Resources and Industries, 5759-5760

Agriculture, 5759

Port Wine, 5767

Olive Oil, 5759

Cork, 1677

The Cities, 5757-5759

Lisbon, the Capital, 5757-5758

Oporto, 5758

Island Possessions, 5760

Azores, 550-551

Madeira, 4198

Colonies, 5760

**Rumania**, 6240-6249

Provinces Added by World War, 6241-6242

Transylvania, 6241

Bessarabia, 6241

Bukowina, 6242

The People, 6241

Surface Features and Climate, 6242

Natural Resources, 6242-6244

Commerce and Industry, 6244-6245

The Cities, 6241

Bucharest, the Capital, 994

Cernauti, 6241

Cluj, 6241

Chisinau, 6241

**Russia**, 6257-6276

Union of Socialist Soviet Republics, 6257

[For Outline of Asiatic Russia, see *Political Divisions of Asia*, above.]

Republics in European Russia, 6257

Russian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic, 6257

Soviet Russia Proper, 6257

Siberia, 6586-6591. [See *Asia*, above.]

Ukrainian Socialist Soviet Republic, 7345-7346

White Russian Socialist Soviet Republic, 6257

Surface Features, 6260-6261

Ural Mountains, 7420

Caucasus Mountains, 1259

Volga Basin, 7564

Great Central Plain, 6260

Caspian Sea, 1229

Rivers and Lakes, 6260-6261

Volga, 7564

Dnieper, 1983

Dniester, 1983

Don, 2009-2010

Lake Ladoga, 3836

Lake Onega, 5200

Plant and Animal Life, 6261-6262

Sources of Russia's Wealth, 6262-6264

Transportation, 6264, 7252

Trans-Siberian Railway, 7252-7253

- The People, 6258, 6266
- Principal Cities, 6258-6260
  - Moscow, the Capital, 4667-4670
  - Leningrad, 3932-3934
    - Formerly Saint Petersburg and Petrograd, 3932
    - Renamed for Lenin, 3930-3932
  - Archangel, 6258
  - Astrakhan, 6258
  - Kazan, 6258
  - Kronstadt, 6258
  - Minsk, 6258
  - Nizhni Novgorod, 6258
  - Saratov, 6260
  - Sebastopol, 1747
    - Crimea, 1746-1747
- San Marino**, 6376-6377
  - San Marino, the Capital, 6377
- Spain**, 6725-6738
  - Canary Islands, 1162-1163
  - Balearic Islands, 578
    - Majorca and Minorca, 578
  - Colonies, 6734
  - The People, 6726
  - The Land, 6730-6731
    - Pyrenees, 5896
    - Sierra Nevada Mountains, 6731
    - Treeless Table-Land, 6730
    - Rivers and Lakes, 6731
  - Resources and Industries, 6731-6732
    - Cork Production, 1677
  - Transportation and Commerce, 6732
  - The Cities, 6727-6730
    - Madrid, the Capital, 6728
    - Barcelona, 6727
    - Cadiz, 6727
    - Cordova, 6727
    - Granada, 6728
      - Alhambra, 220
    - Malaga, 6728
    - Murcia, 6728
    - Saragossa, 6730
    - Seville, 6730
    - Valencia, 6730
    - Valladolid, 6730
- Sweden**, 6949-6958
  - Location and Size, 6949
    - Boundaries, 6949
    - Gulf of Bothnia, 893
    - Baltic Sea, 587
    - Kattegat, 3748
    - Skagerrak, 6629
  - Physical Features, 6950-6952
  - The People, 6949
  - Resources and Industries, 6952-6953
  - Transportation and Commerce, 6953
  - The Cities, 6949-6950
    - Stockholm, the Capital, 6838-6840
    - Gothenburg, 6949
      - Port on the Kattegat, 3748
    - Malmö, 6949
- Switzerland**, 6968-6981
  - Physical Features, 6973-6974
  - Mountainous Country, 6973
    - The Alps, 235
      - Monte Rosa, 4622
      - Matterhorn, 4346
      - Jungfrau, 3716, 6978
    - Jura Mountains, 3721
  - Rivers and Lakes, 6973-6974
    - Rhine, 6087
    - Rhone, 6100
    - Lake Constance, 6974
    - Lake Geneva, 6974
    - Lake Lucerne, 6974
    - Lake Lugano, 6974
    - Lake Neuchâtel, 6974
    - Lake Zurich, 6974
  - The People, 6968-6970
    - French, Italians, and Germans, 6968
    - Distinct Swiss Character, 6968-6970
  - Resources and Industries, 6974-6976
  - Transportation, 6976
    - Simplon Tunnel, 6615
    - Saint Gotthard Tunnel, 6308
  - The Cities, 6970-6973
    - Basel, 6970
    - Bern, the Capital, 6972
    - Geneva, 6972
      - League of Nations, 3904-3906
    - Interlaken, 6972
    - Lausanne, 6972
    - Lucerne, 6972
    - Neuchâtel, 6972
    - Saint Moritz, 6972
    - Zurich, 6972-6973
- Turkey in Europe**, 7304
  - Territory Included, 7304
    - Constantinople, 1626-1629
    - Adrianople, 7307
    - Small Part of Thrace, 7159, 7304
      - [See *Turkey*, under *Political Divisions of Asia*, above.]
- Vatican City**, 7468
  - Independent Papal State in Rome, 7468
    - Area and Population, 5732
    - The Vatican, 7465-7467
  - The Former Papal States, 5343
- Yugoslavia**, 7958-7965
  - The People, 7960
    - Union of Southern Slavs, 6640-6641
  - Languages and Dialects, 7960
  - Surface Features, 7960
    - The Dalmatian Coast, 1813, 7960
    - The Karst Plateau, 7960
    - Julian and Dinaric Alps, 235, 7960
    - River Save, 6402
  - Transportation and Commerce, 7962
  - Principal Cities, 7962-7964
    - Belgrade, the Capital, 7962
      - Former Capital of Serbia, 6502
      - Semlin Annexed, 7965
    - Zagreb, 7962
    - Serajevo, 7856, 7962, 869
    - Cettinje, 7964
    - Susak, 7964, 2448



Provinces of Yugoslavia, 7958, 7960-6961  
 Serbia, 6502-6503  
 Montenegro, 4621-4622  
 Bosnia and Herzegovina, 868-869

Dalmatia, 1813  
 Croatia and Slavonia, 1749  
 Slovenia, 7958  
 Vojvodina, 7958

## North America

### Political Divisions, 5048

English-Speaking Countries, 5048

United States of America, 7362-7411

[For list of the forty-eight member states, territories, and insular possessions, see the headings *The States of the Union and Territories of the United States*, below.]

Dominion of Canada, 1117-1149

[For list of members of the Dominion, see the headings below.]

Newfoundland and Labrador, 4913-4916, 3826-3828

British West Indies, 971

British Honduras, 969

Spanish-Speaking Countries, 5048

Mexico, 4433-4450

Guatemala, 2974-2977

Salvador, 6347-6349

Honduras, 3214-3217

Costa Rica, 1704-1706

Cuba, 1767-1775

Dominican Republic (Santo Domingo), 6381

Nicaragua, 5014-5019

Panama, 5325-5331

French-Speaking Countries, 5048

French Colonies, 5048

Saint Pierre and Miquelon, 6327-6328

Guadeloupe, 2971

Martinique, 4308

Haiti, 3010-3014

Danish-Speaking Country, 5048

Greenland, 2957-2960

### Political Divisions in Detail

#### The United States

United States of America, 7362-7411

Republic of Forty-eight States, 7386-7387

[See states listed below.]

Continental Territory, 7362

Alaska, 166-179

Outlying Possessions, 7362

Hawaii, 3076-3086

Samoa, 6353-6356

Guam, 2972

Philippine Islands, 5549-5563

Porto Rico, 5750-5756

Virgin Islands, 7546-7547

Panama Canal Zone, 5336-5337

Location and Size, 7362

Latitude and Longitude, 7406.

Boundaries, 7362

Canada, 1117

Mexico, 4433

Atlantic Ocean, 489

Gulf of Mexico, 4448

Pacific Ocean, 5293

Comparative Areas, 7362, 7365

Relations with Other Countries, 7362-7364

The Revolutionizing Panama Canal, 5331, 7363

Coast Line and Coast Waters, 7364

Gulf of California, 1097

Chesapeake Bay, 1345

Delaware Bay, 1882

Long Island Sound, 4105

Gulf of Mexico, 4448

Narragansett Bay, 4810

Puget Sound, 5876

Islands, 3566

Aleutian Islands, 197

Catalina, 1238

Dry Tortugas, 2044

Ellis Island, 2214

Florida Keys, 2485

Governor's Island, 2883

Isle Royale, 3567

Long Island, 4105

Mackinac Island, 4187

Manhattan Island, 4256

Manitoulin Islands, 4266

Mare Island, 4288

Marthas Vineyard, 4307

Nantucket, 4805

Pribilof Islands, 5810

Staten Island, 6815

Welfare Island, 7704

Growth in Area and Population, 7385-7387

Physical Features, 7364-7366

Atlantic Coastal Plain, 5642, 7364

Appalachian Highland, 321, 7364

Interior Plain, 7365

Cordilleran Highland, 1674, 7366

Pacific Slope, 7366

Mountains, 7410. [See under *North America*, in the Outline on *Physical Geography*, above.]

Rivers, 7410

Alabama, 164

Allegheny, 224

Apalachicola, 316

Arkansas, 403

Royal Gorge, 403  
 Atchafalaya, 478  
 Bighorn, 736  
 Brazos, 934  
 Canadian, 1157  
 Chattahoochee, 1321  
 Colorado, 1563-1564  
   Grand Canyon, 2894-2896  
   Boulder Dam, 895-896  
 Colorado (Texas), 1564  
 Columbia, 1567-1570  
 Connecticut, 1621  
 Cumberland, 1784  
 Delaware Bay and River, 1882  
   Delaware Water Gap, 1883  
 Detroit, 1923  
 East River, 2091  
 Genesee, 2715  
 Gila, 2806  
 Great Kanawha, 2933  
 Green, 2961  
 Housatonic, 3261  
 Hudson, 3272-3274  
   Hudson River Tunnels, 3274  
 Humboldt, 3285  
 Illinois, 3363  
 James, 3615  
 Kennebec, 3755  
 Kentucky, 3765  
 Lackawanna, 3834  
 Lehigh, 3925  
 Merrimack, 4411  
 Minnesota, 4522  
 Mississippi, 4544-4549  
   Mississippi-Missouri System, 4545,  
     6137  
   Lakes-to-Gulf Waterway, 3845  
 Missouri, 4559-4560  
 Mobile, 4564  
 Mohawk, 4571  
 Monongahela, 4598  
 Niagara Falls and River, 5010-5013  
 Ohio, 5178  
 Ouachita, 5275  
 Pecos, 5438  
 Penobscot, 5475  
 Platte, 5655  
 Potomac, 5782  
 Rappahannock, 5997  
 Raritan, 5997  
 Red River, 6031  
 Red River of the North, 6032  
 Rio Grande, 6133-6134  
 Roanoke, 6146  
 Rock, 6156  
 Sabine, 6290  
 Sacramento, 6294  
 Saint Lawrence, 6312-6314  
   Saint Lawrence Waterway, 6314-6315  
 Saint Mary's, 6322  
 San Joaquin, 6375  
 Savannah, 6402  
 Schuylkill, 6431

Scioto, 6435  
 Shenandoah, 6555  
 Snake, 6662  
 Susquehanna, 6944  
 Tennessee, 7103  
 Tombigbee, 7208  
 Wabash, 7573  
 White, 7752  
 Willamette, 7766  
 Wisconsin, 7813  
 Yazoo, 7929  
 Yellowstone, 7942  
   Yellowstone National Park, 7935-7942  
 Lakes, 3844. [See *Lakes of North America*,  
   under *Physical Geography*, above.]  
 Climate, 7366-7367  
   Rainfall, 7367  
     Annual Rainfall in Inches, 7370  
 The People, 7367-7368, 7389-7393  
   Phases of Settlement, 7389-7391  
   Emigration and Immigration, 2222-2227  
   American Indians, 3401-3429  
   Negroes, 4871-4872  
   Religion, 7368  
   Education, 2112-2127, 7368. [See Outline  
     on *Education*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Principal Cities, 7386  
   [See under *States of the Union*, below.]  
 Natural Resources, 7368-7377  
   Furs and Fish, 7368-7369  
     Fur and Fur Trade, 2638-2645  
   Forest Resources, 7369-7370  
 Minerals, 7370-7371  
   Quarry and Quarrying, 5904-5906  
   Fertilizers, 7371  
   Metals, 7371-7373  
   Minerals Fuels, 7373  
     Petroleum, 5520-5529  
     Natural Gas, 4819, 7373  
   Wealth in the Farms, 7373-7375  
   [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this  
     GUIDE.]  
 Manufacturing Industries, 7377-7380  
   [See Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Transportation and Commerce, 7380-7385  
   Trails of Early Days, 7237-7239  
   Water and Rail, 7380  
     Great Lakes, 2933-2935  
     Canals, 1158-1159, 1161  
       Cape Cod, 1180-1181  
       Chesapeake and Ohio, 1345  
       Chicago Drainage, 1367  
       Erie, 2287-2289  
       Hennepin, 3141-3142  
       Illinois and Michigan, 3363  
       New York State Barge, 4997  
       Sault Ste. Marie, 6400  
     Railroads, 5976-5977  
   Motor Car and Airplane, 7381  
   Automobile, 534-546  
   Aircraft, 112-151  
 Maps of the United States, between 7362  
   and 7363

*The States of the Union*

- List of the States, 7387**  
**Flags of the States, between 7386 and 7387**  
     State Stars in National Flag, 2451  
**State Flowers, 2494**  
     [For cities and towns of each state, other than those listed below, see back of the state map in each state article.]  
**Alabama, 155-164**  
     Hydroelectric Development, 160-161  
         Wilson Dam, 159, 4752  
         Muscle Shoals, 4751-4752  
     Principal Cities, 161  
         Birmingham, 772  
         Mobile, 4564  
         Montgomery, the Capital, 4629  
**Arizona, 388-396**  
     The Land and Rivers, 389  
         Grand Canyon, 2894-2896  
         Painted Desert, 389  
         Petrified Forest, 4635  
         Montezuma's Castle, 4635  
     Irrigation, 391  
         Coolidge Dam, 1659-1600  
         Roosevelt Dam, 390-391  
**Arkansas, 396-403**  
     People and Cities, 396  
         Little Rock, the Capital, 4057-4058  
     Mineral Springs, 397  
     Hot Springs National Park, 399, 3258  
     Ozark Mountains, 5287  
**California, 1080-1097**  
     Surface Features, 1082-1084  
         The Mountains, 1082  
             Coast Range, 1514  
             Sierra Nevada, 6597  
                 Mount Whitney, 7754  
                 Mount Shasta, 6543  
         Yosemite National Park, 7947-7950  
     Southern California, 1082-1084  
         Fertile Valleys, 1082  
         Imperial Valley, 1082  
         Desert Areas, 1084  
             Death Valley, 1050  
     The Great Valley, 1084  
     Rivers and Lakes, 1084-1085  
         Colorado, 1563-1564  
         Sacramento, 6294  
         San Joaquin, 6375  
         Salton Sea, 6345-6346  
         Lake Tahoe, 7006  
     Distinctive Plants and Animals, 1086-1087  
         Sequoia, 6499-6501  
         Redwood, 6501  
         Sequoia National Park, 5390  
     Moving-Picture Industry, 1090, 4714-4716  
     Principal Cities, 1097  
         Berkeley, 713  
         Fresno, 2621  
         Long Beach, 4100  
         Los Angeles, 4111-4116  
         Oakland, 5132  
         Pasadena, 5406  
         Sacramento, the Capital, 6293  
         San Diego, 6363-6364  
         San Francisco, 6366-6374  
             Golden Gate, 2861  
         Stockton, 6842  
**Colorado, 1553-1563**  
     People and Cities, 1554  
         Denver, the Capital, 1905-1910  
     Surface Features, 1554-1556  
         Rocky Mountains, 6157  
         Pike's Peak, 5614  
         Rocky Mountain National Park, 5388, 5390  
     Rivers, 1556  
         Arkansas, 403  
         Colorado, 1563-1564  
         Platte, 5655  
         Rio Grande, 6133-6134  
     Scenic Wonders, 1557  
         Garden of the Gods, 2687  
         Royal Gorge, 6221  
         Mesa Verde, 4412, 5388  
         Mountain Flora, 1557  
     Transportation, 1559-1560  
         Moffat Tunnel, 4567  
**Connecticut, 1615-1620**  
     Principal Cities, 1617  
         Bridgeport, 953-954  
         Hartford, the Capital, 3064-3065  
         New Britain, 4908  
         New Haven, 4924-4925  
         New London, 1617-1618  
         The Whaling Industry, 7728  
**Delaware, 1876-1882**  
     The People and Cities, 1876  
         Wilmington, 7775-7776  
         Dover, the Capital, 1876  
     The Land and Rivers, 1878  
         Delaware Bay and River, 1882  
**Florida, 2474-2475**  
     Florida Keys, 2485  
     Florida Straits, 2485  
     The People and Cities, 2475  
         Seminole Indians, 3426  
         A Typical Family, 2482  
         Jacksonville, 3606-3607  
         Miami, 4451  
         Saint Petersburg, 6324-6325  
         Tampa, 7012-7013  
         Tallahassee, the Capital, 2475  
     The Land, 2476  
         Everglades, 2335-2336  
         Lake Okeechobee, 5180  
     Birds and Animals, 2476  
         Singing Tower, 6619-6621  
     Transportation and Commerce, 2480-2481, 2485  
         Overseas Line to Key West, 2479, 2485  
         Gandy Bridge at Tampa, 7013  
**Georgia, 2754-2763**

- Principal Cities, 2755
  - Atlanta, the Capital, 487-488
  - Augusta, 499, 502
  - Columbus, 1577
  - Macon, 4196
- The Land, 2756
  - Blue Ridge Mountains, 806
  - Piedmont Region, 5604
  - Fall Line, 2368, 2756
- Rivers, 2756
  - Chattahoochee, 1321
  - Savannah, 6402
- Idaho**, 3337-3345
  - Physical Features, 3339
    - Buttes, 1040, 3339
    - Craters of the Moon, 3339, 4636
    - Rivers, 3339
      - Snake, 6662
      - Salmon, 3339
- Illinois**, 3351-3363
  - Principal Cities, 3352
    - Chicago, 1350-1367
    - Peoria, 5478
    - East Saint Louis, 2091
    - Rockford, 6155-6156
    - Springfield, the Capital, 6779-6780
    - Decatur, 1855-1856
    - Evanston, 2332
  - Physical Features, 3354-3356
    - Rivers and Lakes, 3354
      - Illinois River, 3363
      - Starved Rock, 3354, 3355, 3884
    - Great Lakes, 2933
  - Transportation, 3358-3359
    - World's Greatest Railway Center, 3358
  - Canals, 3359
    - Chicago Drainage Canal, 1367
    - Hennepin Canal, 3141-3142
    - Illinois and Michigan Canal, 3363
  - Great Lakes Commerce, 2935
  - Lakes-to-Gulf Waterway, 3845
- Indiana**, 3390-3399
  - Principal Cities, 3391
    - Indianapolis, the Capital, 3400-3401
    - Evansville, 2332-2333
    - Fort Wayne, 2546
    - Gary, 2697-2698
    - Hammond, 3029
    - Muncie, 4741
    - South Bend, 6704-6705
    - Terre Haute, 7113
  - Surface Features, 3392
    - Rivers, 3392
      - Ohio, 5178
      - Wabash, 7573
      - White, 7752
    - Wyandotte Cave, 7902
- Iowa**, 3504-3513
  - Principal Cities, 3504
    - Des Moines, the Capital, 1916-1917
    - Cedar Rapids, 1266
    - Davenport, 1834
    - Sioux City, 6624-6625
- Kansas**, 3734-3742
  - Principal Cities
    - Topeka, the Capital, 7211
    - Kansas City, 3742
    - Wichita, 7756
  - Physical Features, 3735
    - Rivers, 3735
      - Arkansas, 403
      - Missouri, 4559
  - Transportation, 3737-3738
    - Santa Fe Trail, 7239
- Kentucky**, 3756-3765
  - Chief Cities, 3756
    - Louisville, the Capital, 4135-4136
    - Covington, 1726
    - Lexington, 3959-3960
    - Frankfort, 3756
  - Physical Features, 3758-3759
    - Cumberland Mountains, 1783
    - Blue-Grass Region, 805, 3758
    - Rivers, 3759
      - Cumberland, 1784
      - Green, 2961
      - Kentucky, 3765
      - Mississippi, 4544-4549
      - Ohio, 5178
      - Tennessee, 7103
    - Mammoth Cave, 4243-4245
  - Transportation, 3761
    - Dixie Highway, 1982-1983
- Louisiana**, 4123-4134
  - Principal Cities, 4124
    - New Orleans, 4942-4948
    - Shreveport, 6578
    - Baton Rouge, the Capital, 4124
  - Physical Features, 4125
    - Mississippi River and Delta, 4544-4549
      - Floods, 4547
    - Red, 6031
    - Ouachita, 5275
    - Sabine, 6290
    - Lake Pontchartrain, 5726
  - Transportation, 4130
    - New Orleans Ship Canal, 4130
- Maine**, 4223-4232
  - Principal Cities, 4224
    - Portland, 5747-5748
    - Augusta, the Capital, 4224
  - The Land, 4226
    - Mount Katahdin, 3748
  - Rivers and Lakes, 4226
    - Kennebec, 3755
    - Penobscot, 5475
    - Moosehead Lake, 4226
  - Mount Desert Island, 4697
  - Bar Harbor, 619
  - Lafayette National Park, 5386, 5388
- Maryland**, 4310-4318
  - Principal Cities, 4311
    - Baltimore, 588-590
    - Annapolis, the Capital, 4311
  - The Land, 4312
    - Appalachian Region, 321

- Blue Ridge Range, 806
- Waterways, 4312
  - Chesapeake Bay, 1345
  - Rivers, 4312
    - Potomac, 5782
    - Susquehanna, 6944
- Transportation, 4316
  - Chesapeake and Delaware Ship Canal, 1161, 4316
- Massachusetts**, 4324-4335
  - The Land, 4327
    - Berkshire Hills, 713
  - Islands, 4327
    - Nantucket, 4805
    - Marthas Vineyard, 4307
  - Waterways
    - Cape Cod Canal, 1180-1181
    - Connecticut River, 1621
    - Merrimack River, 4411
    - Housatonic River, 3261
  - Principal Cities, 4325
    - Boston, the Capital, 869-879
    - Cambridge, 1102-1103
    - Chelsea, 1327
    - Fall River, 2368
    - Haverhill, 3075-3076
    - Holyoke, 3203
    - Lawrence, 3901
    - Lowell, 4141
    - Lynn, 4163
    - Malden, 4239
    - Medford, 4372
    - Newton, 4963
    - Pittsfield, 5638
    - Quincy, 5922
    - Salem, 6331
    - Somerville, 6686-6687
    - Springfield, 6780-6781
    - Worcester, 7845
- Michigan**, 4457-4467
  - Shores on Great Lakes, 2933
  - Islands
    - Mackinac Island, 4187
    - Isle Royale, 3567
  - Principal Cities, 4466
    - Detroit, 1919-1923
    - Battle Creek, 652
    - Bay City, 655
    - Flint, 2470
    - Grand Rapids, 2897
    - Jackson, 3604
    - Kalamazoo, 3730
    - Lansing, the Capital, 3872
    - Muskegon, 4777
    - Pontiac, 5727
    - Saginaw, 6297
  - Minerals, 4462
    - Famous Copper Mines, 1668, 4462
    - Calumet and Hecla, 85, 4462
  - Manufactures, 4462-4464
    - Automobiles, 536, 4462
    - Furniture, 2654
  - Transportation, 4464
    - Great Lakes Commerce, 2935
- Minnesota**, 4512-4522
  - Surface Features, 4514
    - Mesaba Range, 4516
    - Red River Valley, 6032
  - Rivers and Lakes, 4514-4516
    - Mississippi, 4544-4549
      - Minnesota, a Tributary, 4522
    - Red River of the North, 6032
    - Lake Itasca, 4515, 4545
    - Rainy Lake, 5987
    - Red Lake, 4516
    - Lake Minnetonka, 4514
    - Lake Superior, 6930
  - Principal Cities, 4522
    - Duluth, 2052
    - Minneapolis, 4509-4511
    - Saint Paul, the Capital, 6322-6324
- Mississippi**, 4534-4544
  - Physical Features, 4536-4538
    - Mississippi River, 4544-4549
      - Levees, 3948-3950
      - Floods, 4536, 4547
    - Yazoo River and Delta, 7929-7930
    - Tombigbee River, 7208
  - Principal Cities, 4534
    - Jackson, the Capital, 4534
- Missouri**, 4549-4558
  - Principal Cities, 4551
    - Saint Louis, 6316-6320
    - Kansas City, 3743-3746
    - Saint Joseph, 6310
    - Springfield, 6781
    - Jefferson City, the Capital, 4551
  - The Land, 4551
    - Ozarks, 5287
  - Rivers and Lakes, 4551-4552
    - Mississippi, 4544-4549
    - Missouri, 4559-4560
- Montana**, 4610-4619
  - Principal Cities, 4610
    - Butte, 1040-1041
    - Helena, the Capital, 4610
  - Physical Features, 4611-4612
    - Rocky Mountains, 6156-6157
    - Bitterroot Range, 777, 4612
    - Mountain Peaks, 4612
    - Glacier National Park, 2823-2827
    - Yellowstone National Park, 7935-7942
    - Buttes, 1040, 4611
  - Rivers, 4612
    - Missouri and Tributaries, 4559-4560
    - Yellowstone, 7942
- Nebraska**, 4855-4864
  - Physical Features, 4856-4858
    - The Land, 4856
      - Bad Lands, 571
    - Rivers and Lakes, 4858
      - Missouri, 4559-4560
      - Platte, 5655
  - Principal Cities, 4855
    - Omaha, 5198-5199
    - Lincoln, the Capital, 4021-4022

- Nevada**, 4898-4904  
 The People and Cities, 4899  
 Sparse Population, 4899  
 Reno, 4899  
 Carson City, the Capital, 4899  
**The Land**, 4900  
 Cross of Mount Tallac, 4901  
 Rivers and Lakes, 4900  
 Colorado, 1563-1564  
 Humboldt, 3285  
 Lake Tahoe, 7006  
**New Hampshire**, 4918-4924  
 The Land, 4919-4920  
 White Mountains, 7750  
 Presidential Range, 7750  
 Franconia Range, 7750  
 Profile Mountain, 7750, 7751  
 Great Stone Face, 7751  
 Rivers and Lakes, 4920-4921  
 Connecticut, 1621  
 Merrimack, 4411  
 Lake Winnepesaukee, 4921  
 Cities and Towns, 4918  
 Manchester, 4248  
 Concord, the Capital, 4918  
**New Jersey**, 4926-4934  
 The Land, 4927-4928  
 Kittatinny Range, 4927  
 Delaware Water Gap, 1882, 1883  
 The Highlands, 4927  
 The Palisades, 3273, 4929, 5317, 5318  
 The Pines, 4928  
 Rivers and Lakes, 4928  
 Delaware Bay and River, 1882  
 Raritan River, 5997  
 Principal Cities, 4926  
 Atlantic City, 488-489  
 Bayonne, 655  
 Camden, 1103  
 East Orange, 2091  
 Elizabeth, 2210  
 Hoboken, 3188  
 Jersey City, 3658  
 Newark, 4906-4907  
 Passaic, 5407  
 Paterson, 5414-5415  
 Perth Amboy, 5505-5506  
 Trenton, the Capital, 7262-7264  
 Union City, 7353  
**New Mexico**, 4935-4942  
 Albuquerque, 4936  
 Rivers and Lakes, 4937  
 Rio Grande, 6133-6134  
 Canadian River, 1157  
 National Monuments, 4940  
**New York**, 4964-4979  
 Physical Features, 4968-4969  
 Eastern Mountain Belt, 4968  
 Plateau Region and Catskills, 1249, 5651  
 The Adirondacks, 46  
 The Mohawk Valley, 4571  
 Rivers, 4970  
 Hudson, 3272-3274  
 Mohawk, 4571  
 Genesee, 2715  
 Delaware, 1882  
 Susquehanna, 6944  
 Allegheny, 224  
 Waterfalls, 4970  
 Niagara Falls, 5010-5013  
 Genesee Falls, 2715  
 Lakes, 4970  
 Champlain, 1301  
 Chautauqua, 1322, 4970  
 Finger Lakes, 4970  
 Cayuga, 1265  
 Seneca, 6491  
 Lake George, 2753  
 Oneida, 5200  
 Lake Erie, 2286  
 Lake Ontario, 5212  
 Transportation, 4973-4974  
 Erie Canal, 2287-2289  
 New York State Barge Canal, 4997  
 Principal Cities, 4978  
 New York, 4980-4997  
 Albany, the Capital, 180-182  
 Binghamton, 741  
 Brooklyn, 975-976  
 Borough of New York City, 4981  
 Buffalo, 1005-1008  
 Elmira, 2216  
 Jamestown, 3616  
 Mount Vernon, 4700-4701  
 Niagara Falls, 5009  
 Rochester, 6152-6153  
 Schenectady, 6410-6411  
 Syracuse, 6986-6987  
 Troy, 7280-7281  
 Utica, 7435-7436  
 Yonkers, 7945-7946  
**North Carolina**, 5052-5063  
 Principal Cities, 5053  
 Charlotte, 1318  
 Durham, 2057-2058  
 Greensboro, 2961  
 Raleigh, the Capital, 5053  
 Wilmington, 5053  
 Winston-Salem, 7799  
 Asheville, 5055  
 Physical Features, 5056  
 Coast Line, 5056  
 Albemarle Sound, 182  
 Cape Hatteras, 3074  
 Dismal Swamp, 5056  
 Piedmont Plateau, 5604  
 Blue Ridge Mountains, 806  
 Roanoke River, 6146  
 Tennessee River, 7103  
**North Dakota**, 5065-5072  
 Cities and Towns, 5065  
 Bismarck, the Capital, 5065  
 The Land, 5066  
 Red River Valley, 6032  
 Bad Lands, 571, 5068  
 Rivers and Lakes, 5066-5067

Red River of the North, 6032  
 James River, 6716  
 Missouri River, 4559  
 Devils Lake, 5067  
**Ohio**, 5167-5177  
   Rivers, 5170  
     Muskingum, 5170  
     Ohio, 5178  
   Principal Cities, 5168, 5177  
     Akron, 155  
     Canton, 1177  
     Cincinnati, 1426-1430  
     Cleveland, 1474-1479  
     Columbus, the Capital, 1577-1578  
     Dayton, 1843-1844  
       Wright Airplane Field, 5173  
     Lakewood, 3845  
     Lima, 4006  
     Springfield, 6781-6782  
     Toledo, 7201-7202  
     Youngstown, 7954  
**Oklahoma**, 5180-5189  
   Principal Cities, 5181  
     Oklahoma City, the Capital, 5189  
     Tulsa, 7291-7292  
   Rivers and Lakes, 5183  
     Red River, 6031  
     Arkansas River, 403  
     Canadian River, 1157  
**Oregon**, 5242-5251  
   Principal Cities, 5243  
     Portland, 5748-5749  
     Salem, the Capital, 5243  
   The Land, 5244-5246  
     Cascade Mountains, 1226  
     Mount Hood, 3223, 5244  
     Hood River Valley, 5244  
     Walla Walla Valley, 5244  
     Willamette Valley, 7766  
   Rivers and Lakes, 5244  
     Columbia, 1567-1568  
     Snake, 6662  
     Willamette, 7766  
     Crater Lake, 5244, 5246  
   Transportation, 5247-5248  
     Columbia River Highway, 1568-1570  
**Pennsylvania**, 5463-5474  
   Surface Features, 5465-5466  
     Plateaus and Valleys, 5465  
     Delaware Water Gap, 1882, 1883  
   Rivers, 5466  
     Delaware, 1882  
     Lehigh, 3925  
     Schuylkill, 6431  
     Ohio, 5178  
       Allegheny, 224  
       Monongahela, 4598  
     Susquehanna, 6944  
     Genesee, 2715  
   Principal Cities, 5464  
     Philadelphia, 5535-5546  
     Pittsburgh, 5634-5638  
     Allentown, 225

Altoona, 237-238  
 Bethlehem, 722  
 Chester, 1348  
 Erie, the Lake Port, 2287  
 Harrisburg, the Capital, 3052-3053  
 Johnstown, 3691  
 Lancaster, 3850-3851  
 McKeesport, 4184  
 New Castle, 4912  
 Reading, 6012-6013  
 Scranton, 6452-6453  
 Wilkes-Barre, 7762-7763  
 York, 7947  
**Rhode Island**, 6090-6097  
   Principal Cities, 6091  
     Providence, the Capital, 5855-5856  
     Pawtucket, 5423  
     Woonsocket, 7844-7845  
   Summer Resorts, 6092  
     Newport, 4810  
     Narragansett Pier, 6092  
   The Land, 6092  
     Coast and Inlets, 6092  
       Narragansett Bay, 4810  
     Islands, 6092  
       Rhode Island, 6090  
       Conanicut, 6092  
       Prudence, 6092  
       Block Island, 6092  
     Rivers and Lakes, 6092, 6094  
**South Carolina**, 6705-6713  
   Principal Cities, 6705  
     Charleston, 1317  
     Columbia, the Capital, 1567  
   The Land, 6707  
     Blue Ridge Mountains, 806  
     Piedmont Region, 5604  
   Rivers, 6708  
     Savannah, 6402  
**South Dakota**, 6714-6722  
   Cities and Towns, 6714  
     Pierre, the Capital, 6714  
   The Land, 6715  
     Black Hills, 781-782, 6719  
       Harney Peak, 6715  
       Mount Rushmore Memorial, 4698  
       Homestake Mine, 782  
     Bad Lands, 571, 6717  
   Rivers and Lakes, 6715-6716  
     Missouri River, 4559-4560  
       James River, 3615  
     Minnesota River, 4522  
     Sylvan Lake, 6719  
**Tennessee**, 7094-7103  
   Principal Cities, 7094  
     Chattanooga, 1321, 7616  
     Knoxville, 3810-3811  
     Memphis, 4389-4390  
     Nashville, the Capital, 4811-4812  
   The Land, 7095-7096  
     Cumberland Mountains, 1783  
     Lookout Mountain, 4109, 7616  
     Scenery in Eastern Tennessee, 7097

Rivers and Lakes, 7096  
 Cumberland, 1784  
 Mississippi, 4544-4549  
 Tennessee, 7103  
**Texas**, 7118-7130  
 Principal Cities, 7119  
 Dallas, 1811-1812  
 El Paso, 2217  
 Fort Worth, 2547  
 Galveston, 2671-2672  
 Houston, 3265-3266  
 San Antonio, 6359-6360  
 The Alamo, 165-166, 7121  
 The Land, 7120-7122  
 Great Plains, 7120  
 Llano Estacado, 7120  
 Panhandle, 5340, 7120  
 Rivers and Lakes, 7122-7123  
 Rio Grande, 6133-6134  
 Pecos, 5438  
 Brazos, 934  
 Canadian, 1157  
 Colorado, 1563-1564  
 Red, 6031  
 Sabine, 6290  
 Caddo Lake, 7123  
**Utah**, 7427-7435  
 The People, 7427, 7431  
 Mormons, 4653-5656  
 Chief Cities, 7427  
 Salt Lake City, the Capital, 6344-6345  
 The Land, 7428  
 Rocky Mountains, 6156-6157  
 Sierra Nevada Mountains, 6597  
 Uinta Mountains, 7345  
 Wasatch Mountains, 7623  
 Great Salt Lake Desert, 7428  
 Zion National Park, 5390  
 National Monuments, 4635, 7428  
 Natural Bridges, 4819  
 Rivers and Lakes, 7428  
 Colorado, 1563-1564  
 Green, 2961  
 Great Salt Lake, 2935, 2937, 7433  
 Saltair, 2936, 7433  
 Lucin Cutoff, 2936  
 Utah Lake, 7435  
**Vermont**, 7496-7503  
 Principal Cities, 7497  
 Montpelier, the Capital, 7497  
 The Land, 7497  
 Green Mountains, 2961  
 Islands in Lake Champlain, 7497  
 Rivers and Lakes, 7497-7498  
 Connecticut River, 1621  
 Lake Champlain, 1301  
 Lake Memphremagog, 4390  
**Virginia**, 7535-7547  
 Principal Cities, 7535  
 Richmond, the Capital, 6118-6120  
 Newport News, 4948  
 Norfolk, 5041  
 Roanoke, 6145-6146

The Land, 7537-7538  
 Peninsulas of Chesapeake Bay, 1345, 7538  
 Allegheny Mountains, 224  
 Blue Ridge Range, 806  
 Luray Caverns, 4157  
 Natural Bridge, 4818, 4819  
 Piedmont Region, 5604  
 Dismal Swamp, 7538  
 Rivers and Lakes, 7538-7539  
 James, 3615  
 Potomac, 5782  
 Rappahannock, 5997  
 Roanoke, 6146  
 Shenandoah, 6555  
 Lake Drummond, 7539  
**Washington**, 7624-7635  
 Principal Cities, 7624  
 Seattle, 6473-6475  
 Spokane, 6771, 6772  
 Tacoma, 6996-6997  
 Olympia, the Capital, 7624  
 The Land, 7625  
 Cascade Range, 1226  
 Mount Rainier, 5987  
 Coast Range, 1514  
 Columbia Plateau, 7626  
 Coast Waters, 7624  
 Pacific Ocean, 5293  
 Juan de Fuca Strait, 3703  
 Strait of Georgia, 7624  
 Puget Sound, 5876  
 Rivers and Lakes, 7626  
 Columbia, 1567-1570  
 Snake, 6662  
 Cascade Mountain Lakes, 7626  
**West Virginia**, 7718-7726  
 Principal Cities, 7726  
 Charleston, the Capital, 1317-1318  
 Huntington, 3295  
 Wheeling, 7739-7740  
 The Land, 7719  
 Allegheny Mountains, 224  
 Blue Ridge, 806  
 Cumberland Plateau, 1783  
 Harper's Ferry, 3050  
 Painted Rocks, 7719  
 Hawks Nest, 7719  
 Rivers, 7719-7720  
 Great Kanawha, 2933  
 Monongahela, 4598  
 Ohio, 5178  
 Potomac, 5782  
**Wisconsin**, 7802-7803  
 The Land, 7804  
 Glacial Origin, 2818, 7804  
 Dalles (Dells), 1812-1813, 7805, 7813  
 Rivers and Lakes, 7804-7805  
 Mississippi, 4544-4549  
 Rock, 6156  
 Wisconsin, 7813  
 Lake Geneva, 7806  
 Lake Mendota, 4205  
 Great Lakes, 2933



Principal Cities, 7813  
 Kenosha, 3755  
 Madison, the Capital, 4205  
 Milwaukee, 4494-4496  
 Racine, 5933  
**Wyoming**, 7904-7913  
 Cities and Towns, 7904  
 Cheyenne, the Capital, 7904, 7912  
 The Land, 7906  
 Rocky Mountains, 6156  
 Black Hills, 781-782  
 Devil's Tower, 4635, 7907  
 Yellowstone National Park, 7935-7942  
 Geysers, 7935-7938  
 Old Faithful, 7936-7938  
 Black Warrior, 7941  
 Hot Springs, 7938  
 Mammoth Hot Springs, 7940  
 Grand Canyon, 7942  
 The Needles, 7909

Rivers and Lakes, 7906, 7908  
 Yellowstone, 7042  
 Shoshone, 7906  
 Snake, 6662  
 Bighorn, 736  
 Yellowstone Lake, 7940  
 Irrigation, 7908  
 Shoshone Dam, 7906, 7908  
**District of Columbia**, 1970-1971  
 Federal District of United States, 1970  
 Coextensive with City of Washington, 1971  
 Washington, D. C., 7636-7644  
 Capital of the United States, 7636  
 Important Buildings, 7637-7639  
 The Capitol, 1607, 7636, 7637  
 The White House, 7747-7750  
 Department Buildings, 7637-7638  
 Library of Congress, 3972-3974  
 Plan of Washington, 7638  
 Views of the City, 7640-7641, 7643

### *Territories of the United States*

**Alaska**, 166-179  
 Northwest Peninsula of North America, 167  
 Purchased from Russia, 166, 175  
 Coast Waters, 167  
 Islands, 179  
 Aleutian, 197-198  
 Unalaska, 198  
 Bering, 712  
 Kodiak, 3811-3812  
 Pribilof, 5810  
 The People, 167  
 Natives, 167  
 Aleuts, 198  
 Eskimos, 2293-2297  
 Alaska's Towns, 168  
 Physical Characteristics, 168-169  
 Pacific Coast, 168-169  
 Coast Range, 1514  
 Saint Elias Mountains, 6306  
 Glaciers, 2820-2823  
 Malaspina, 2822  
 Muir Glacier, 2823  
 Central Plateau, 170  
 Rocky Mountains, 6156

Arctic Slope, 170  
 Animal and Plant Life, 171  
 Fur Seal, 6466  
 Salmon, 6334-6339  
 Reindeer, 171, 6047, 6049  
 Forests, 171  
 Mosses, 172, 4679  
 Commerce and Communication, 172, 174  
 Alaska Railroad, 172  
 Yukon River, 7965-7966  
 Kuskokwim River, 3819-3820  
 Radio Stations, 174  
**Panama Canal Zone**, 5336-5337  
 Territory on Isthmus of Panama, 5331  
 In Panama Republic, 5330  
 Panama Canal, 5331-5337  
 Panama Railroad, 5335-5336  
 Map of the Canal Zone, opposite 5331  
**Porto Rico**, 5750-5756  
 Island of the West Indies, 5750  
 Acquired by United States, 5750  
 Cities and Towns, 5750  
 San Juan, the Capital, 5750  
 Ponce, 5750

### **Canada**

**Dominion of Canada**, 1117-1150  
 Member, British Commonwealth of Nations, 965  
 Relative Position, 1118  
 Provinces and Territories, 1117  
 [See list of provinces, below.]  
 Area of the Dominion, 1117  
 The People of Canada, 1118-1119  
 Physical Features, 1119-1121  
 Eastern Canada, 1119  
 Laurentian Plateau, 3893-3894  
 Hudson Bay Basin, 3271  
 Saint Lawrence Valley, 6312

Interior Plains, 1120  
 Mountain Belt, 1120  
 \* Cascade Range, 1226  
 Canadian Rockies, 6157  
 Mount Assiniboine, 457-458  
 Mount Athabaska, 479  
 Mount Columbia, 184, 1567  
 Mount Hooker, 3223  
 Saint Elias Mountains, 6306  
 Mount Logan, 4088, 4089  
 Mount Saint Elias, 6306  
 Selkirk Mountains, 6486-6487  
 Rivers of Canada, 1150

Assiniboine, 458  
 Athabaska, 479  
 Chaudière, 1322  
 Churchill, 1421  
 Columbia, 1567-1570  
 Fraser, 2598  
 Great Slave, or Slave, 2937  
 Kootenay, 3813  
 Mackenzie, 4185-4186  
 Miramichi, 4531  
 Montmorency, 4630  
 Moose, 4647  
 Nelson, 4875  
 Ottawa, 5274  
 Peace, 5426-5427  
 Red River of the North, 6032  
 Saguenay, 6298  
 Saint Lawrence, 6312-6314  
 Saskatchewan, 6396  
 Skeena, 6630-6631  
 Slave. [See *Great Slave*, above.]  
 Stikine, 6834  
 Winnipeg, 7799  
 Yukon, 7966-7967  
 Lakes, 1146. [See *Lakes of North America*,  
 under *Physical Geography*, above.]

Parks of Canada, 5390-5391  
 Climate, 1121-1122  
 Plant and Animal Life, 1122-1124  
 Principal Animals Found in Canada (Illustrated), 1123  
 Natural Resources, 1124-1130  
 Forest Areas, 1124  
 Agriculture, 1124-1126  
 Fisheries, 1127-1128  
 Mining, 1128-1130  
 Coal, 1128, 1500  
 Gold, 2859  
 Klondike, 1128, 3803  
 Silver and Lead, 1128, 1130  
 Asbestos, 438  
 Cobalt, 1514  
 Nickel, 5022  
 Manufactures, 1130  
 Transportation, 1130-1133  
 Canals, 1130-1131  
 Welland Canal, 7704-7705  
 Sault Ste. Marie Canals, 6400  
 Georgian Bay Ship Canal, 2763  
 Railroads, 1132-1133  
 Canadian National Railways, 1132-1133  
 Canadian Pacific Railway, 1132

### *The Provinces of Canada*

Alberta, 183-191  
 Formation of the Province, 183, 184  
 Assiniboia, 457  
 Athabaska, 479  
 Physical Characteristics, 184  
 Pleasure Grounds, 184  
 Rocky Mountains Park, 5391  
 Jasper Park, 5391  
 Lake Louise, 4123  
 Drainage, 185  
 Athabaska River, 479  
 Peace River, 5426  
 Saskatchewan River, 6396  
 Lake Athabaska, 479  
 Lesser Slave Lake, 185  
 Cities and Towns, 184  
 Banff, 599, 600  
 Calgary, 1078  
 Edmonton, the Capital, 2111  
 Medicine Hat, 4377-4378  
 British Columbia, 957  
 Surface Features, 958  
 The Cordillera, 1674-1675  
 Shore Line, 958  
 Elevation of the Land, 959  
 Rivers, 965  
 Columbia, 1567-1570  
 Fraser, 2598  
 Kootenay, 3813  
 Peace, 5426-5427  
 Skeena, 6630-6631  
 Kootenay District, 3813  
 Islands, 958  
 Vancouver Island, 7457-7458

Queen Charlotte Islands, 5919  
 Cities and Towns, 957  
 Vancouver, 961, 7455-7457  
 Victoria, the Capital, 961, 7521-7522  
 Manitoba, 4260-4266  
 Surface Features, 4260-4261  
 Red River Valley, 6032  
 Lakes and River, 4261  
 Lake Manitoba, 4266  
 Lake Winnipeg, 7797  
 Lake Winnipegosis, 7798-7799  
 Assiniboine River, 458  
 Churchill River, 1421  
 Nelson River, 4875  
 Red River of the North, 6032  
 Winnipeg River, 7799  
 Cities and Towns, 4265  
 Winnipeg, the Capital, 4263, 7797-7798  
 Brandon, 923  
 Saint Boniface, 6303-6304  
 New Brunswick, 4908-4912  
 Coast Waters, 4908  
 Bay of Fundy, 2635-2636  
 Gulf of Saint Lawrence, 6311  
 Physical Features, 4909  
 Miramichi River, 4531  
 Restigouche River, 6066  
 Saint John River, 6309-6310  
 Cities and Towns, 4912  
 Fredericton, the Capital, 2602  
 Saint John, 6309  
 Airplane View of Harbor, 4911  
 Nova Scotia, 5097-5103  
 Part of the Former Acadia, 14

Location and Size, 5098  
 Cape Breton Island, 1179-1180  
 Coast Waters and Tidal Bore, 5098  
 Strait of Canso, 1179  
 Bay of Fundy, 2635-2636  
 Gulf of Saint Lawrence, 6311  
 Atlantic Ocean, 489-490  
 Surface and Drainage, 5098-5099  
 Shubenacadie River, 5098, 5099  
 Cities and Towns, 5103  
 Annapolis Royal, 292-293  
 Grand-Pré, 2896-2897  
 Halifax, the Capital, 3018-3019  
 Sydney, 6983  
**Ontario, 5202-5212**  
 Formerly Upper Canada, 5210  
 The People, 5202-5203  
 United Empire Loyalists, 7361  
 Physical Features, 5203  
 Laurentian Plateau, 3893  
 Niagara Escarpment, 5203  
 Rivers, 5203  
 Ottawa, 5274  
 Rainy, 5203  
 Saint Lawrence, 6312-6314  
 Saint Mary's, 6322  
 Lakes, 5203  
 Lake of the Woods, 3842, 3844  
 Muskoka Lakes, 4779  
 Nipigon, 5033  
 Nipissing, 5033  
 Rainy Lake, 5203, 5989  
 Cities and Towns, 5210  
 Toronto, the Capital, 7214-7216  
 Ottawa, Dominion Capital, 5272-5274  
 Fort William, 2546  
 Hamilton, 3026-3027  
 Kingston, 3796  
 London, 4099

Niagara Falls, 5009-5010  
 Port Arthur, 5745  
 Sault Ste. Marie, 6399  
 Windsor, 7793  
**Prince Edward Island, 5813-5815**  
 Smallest Province of Canada, 5813  
 In Gulf of Saint Lawrence, 6311  
 Charlottetown, the Capital, 5814  
**Quebec, 5907-5914**  
 Formerly Lower Canada, 5913  
 The People, 5907  
 French Language, 2612  
 Rivers and Lakes, 5908  
 Saint Lawrence, 6312-6314  
 Ottawa, 5274  
 Chaudière, 1322  
 Richelieu, 6117-6118  
 Saguenay, 6298  
 Lake Memphremagog, 4390  
 Principal Cities, 5914  
 Montreal, 4631-4634  
 Quebec, the Capital, 5914-5917  
**Saskatchewan, 6390-6395**  
 Formation of the Province, 6390  
 Assiniboia, 457  
 Athabaska, 479  
 Surface and Drainage, 6391  
 Rivers and Lakes, 6391  
 Assiniboine, 458  
 Athabaska, 479  
 Churchill, 1421  
 Saskatchewan, 6396  
 Lake Athabaska, 479  
 Quill Lakes, 6391  
 Climate and Rainfall, 6391  
 Chinook, 1402  
 Principal Cities, 6395  
 Regina, the Capital, 6045  
 Saskatoon, 6396

### *The Territories of the Dominion*

**Northwest Territories, 5078-5079**  
 Northern Part of Canada, 5078  
 Exclusive of Yukon Territory, 7965  
 Physical Features, 5078  
 Laurentian Plateau, 3893  
 Mackenzie River, 4185-4186  
 Great Bear Lake, 2921-2922  
 Great Slave Lake, 2937  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 3275  
 Royal Canadian Mounted Police, 6219-6221

**Yukon, 7965-7966**  
 Northwest Territory of Canada, 7965  
 Population, 7965  
 Dawson, the Capital, 7965  
 Physical Characteristics, 7965-7966  
 Rocky Mountains, 6157  
 Mount Logan, 4088  
 Yukon River, 7966-7967  
 Natural Resources, 7966  
 The Rush for Gold, 7966  
 Klondike, 3803-3804

### **Newfoundland and Labrador**

**Newfoundland, 4913-4916**  
 Island off North American Coast, 4913  
 Across Gulf of Saint Lawrence, 6311  
 Dominion of British Empire, 965  
 Includes Labrador, 3826  
 Coast Waters, 4913  
 Belle Isle Strait, 705

Cabot Strait, 6311  
 Physical Features, 4914  
**Labrador, 3826-3828**  
 Dependency of Newfoundland, 3826  
 The People, 3827  
 Eskimos, 2293-2297  
 Algonquian Indians, 3409

## Other English-Speaking Countries

**British West Indies, 971**

British-Owned Islands of the Antilles, 310

Location, 971. [See Map.]

Bahama Islands, 572

Barbados, 616

Bermuda Islands, 718

Hamilton, the Capital, 718

Jamaica, 3611-3612

Kingston, the Capital, 3612

Leeward Islands, 3922

Windward Islands, 7794

Trinidad, 7269-7270

Source of Asphalt, 453-454

Pitch Lake, 453

[See Asphalt, 453.]

**British Honduras, 969**

Location in Central America, 969

Belize, the Capital, 969

## Spanish-Speaking Countries

**Mexico, 4433-4448**

Position and Size, 4433

The People, 4433-4434

Indians and Half-Breeds, 4433, 4434

Mestizos, 4433

Physical Features, 4438-4440

Coast Line, 4438

Sierra Madre, 6596-6597

Volcanic Peaks, 4438

Popocatepetl, 5737

Peninsulas, 4433

Lower California, 4141-4142

Yucatan, 7956

Mérida, 4437

Maya Indians, 4354

Henequen, 6626-6627, 7956

Sisal, 6626, 6627

Rivers and Lakes, 4440

Resources and Industries, 4440-4444

Principal Cities, 4436-4438

Mexico City, the Capital, 4448-4450

Aguas Calientes, 4436

Chihuahua, 4436

Guadalajara, 4436

Guanajuato, 4436

León, or León de Los Aldamas, 4437

Mérida, 4437

Monterey, 4437

Puebla, 4437

San Luis Potosi, 4437

Tampico, 4438

Vera Cruz, 4438

**Central America, 1287-1288**Connects North America and South America,  
1287Republics of Central America, 1287. [See  
below.]

British Honduras, 969. [See above.]

Coast Waters, 1287

Caribbean Sea, 1197

Gulf of Panama, 5326

Gulf of Darien, 1828

Gulf of Fonseca, 2508

Map of Central America, between 1288 and  
1289

Guatemala, 2974-2977

Climate, Land, and Products, 2974, 2976

The Cities, 2976

Guatemala City, the Capital, 2976-2977

Salvador, 6347-6349

Smallest Central American Republic, 1287

Climate, Land, and Products, 6347, 6349

San Salvador, the Capital, 6349

**Honduras, 3214-3217**

Climate, Land, and Products, 3216

The Cities, 3216

Tegucigalpa, the Capital, 3216

**Costa Rica, 1704-1706**Most Southerly Republic of Central  
America, 1704

Surface and Climate, 1704

The Cities, 1706

San José, the Capital, 1706

**Nicaragua, 5014-5018**

Largest Republic of Central America, 1287

Cities and Seaports, 5014-5015

Bluefields, 5015

Granada, 5015

León, 5015

Managua, the Capital, 5015, 5017

Climate, Land, and Products, 5015

Lake Nicaragua, 5019

Mosquito Coast, 4679

Transportation and Commerce, 5015

Nicaragua Canal Project, 5018-5019

Proposed Route, 5018

**Cuba, 1767-1775**

Pearl of the Antilles, 1767

Physical Features, 1769

Agricultural Development, 1770-1771

Sugar, 6908, 6910

Tobacco, 7196

Principal Cities, 1768

Havana, the Capital, 3074-3075

Morro Castle, 1771

Camagüey, 1769

Cienfuegos, 1769

Matanzas, 1769

Santiago de Cuba, 1769, 6741

Isle of Pines, 3566-3567

**Panama, 5325-5331**

Republica on Isthmus of Panama, 5331

Physical Features, 5326

The Cities, 5326

Panama, 5326

Colon, 5326

Panama Canal, 5331-5337

Canal Zone, 5336-5337

View of Balboa, 5334

Contour of Canal Country, 5335

**Santo Domingo** (Dominican Republic), 6381-6382  
 Republic on Island of Haiti, 3010

[See *Haiti*, under *French-Speaking Countries*, below.]  
 Santo Domingo, the Capital, 6382

#### French-Speaking Countries

**Saint Pierre and Miquelon**, 6327-6328  
 French Possessions in North America, 2580, 6327  
**Guadeloupe**, 2971-2972  
 French Colony in West Indies, 7713  
**Martinique**, 4308  
 Island in the Lesser Antilles, 310  
 Birthplace of Empress Josephine, 3700-3702

Mont Pelée, 4308, 7562  
**Haiti**, 3010-3014  
 Large Island of the West Indies, 7713  
 Divided into Two Republics, 3010  
 Haiti and Santo Domingo, 6381. [See below.]  
 Republic of Haiti, 3010  
 The Cities, 3011  
 Port-au-Prince, the Capital, 3011

#### Danish-Speaking Country

**Greenland**, 2957-2960  
 Denmark's Only Colony, 1891  
 Physical Features, 2960  
 Ice Cap, 2960  
 Glacial Epoch, 2817-2819

Glaciers, 2820-2823  
 Climate and Resources, 2960  
 Cryolite, 1765  
 Settlements, 2960  
 Polar Exploration, 5691-5695

#### South America

**Argentina**, 373-379  
 Position in South America, 374  
 Coast Line and Boundaries, 374  
 Surface Features, 375  
 Andes Mountains, 276-277  
 Aconcagua, 22, 4694  
 Rivers, 375  
 Paraná, 5363  
 Rio de la Plata, 6133  
 Uruguay, 7426  
 Pampas, 5324  
 Principal Cities, 373-374  
 Buenos Aires, the Capital, 1001-1003  
 Bahia Blanca, 373  
 Cordoba, 373  
 La Plata, 374  
 Mendoza, 374  
 Rosario, 374  
 Santa Fé, 374  
 Tucumán, 374  
 Partly Owned by Argentina  
 Patagonia, 5412  
 Tierra del Fuego, 7173  
 Strait of Magellan, 4212  
**Bolivia**, 817-823  
 Named for Simon Bolivar, 817  
 The People, 817  
 Indian Descendants of Incas, 3372  
 Mestizos, 817  
 The Land and Its Waters, 819  
 Andes Mountains, 276-277  
 Illimani, 4694  
 Sahama, 819, 4694  
 Sorata, 4694  
 Madeira River, 4198  
 Lake Titicaca, 7187

Climate and Animal Life, 819  
 Llama, 4064-4065  
 Condor, 1600  
 Agriculture, 820  
 Principal Cities, 818  
 La Paz, the Capital, 818  
 Sucre, 818  
 Cochabamba, 818  
 Oruro, 818  
 Potosí, 818  
**Brazil**, 925-934  
 The People, 925-926  
 Portuguese Origin and Language, 925, 5763  
 Highlands and Lowlands, 927  
 Rivers and Transportation, 927-928  
 Amazon, 241-242  
 Madeira, 4198  
 Paraguay, 5361  
 Paraná, 5563  
 São Francisco, 6383  
 Tapajos, 7016  
 Uruguay, 7426  
 Rio Teodoro, 928, 6194  
 Railway Mileage, 928  
 The Great Forests, 928-929  
 Rubber Industry, 6224, 6226  
 Agricultural Products, 929-930  
 Coffee, 1527-1530  
 Principal Cities, 926  
 Rio de Janeiro, the Capital, 6131  
 Bahia, 926  
 Fortaleza, 926  
 Maceio, 926  
 Manáos, 926  
 Nichteroy, 926  
 Para, or Belém, 926

- Porto Alegre, 926
- Pernambuco, or Recife, 926
- Santos, 926
- São Paulo, 926
- British Guiana, 968-969**
  - Georgetown, the Capital, 968-969
- Chile, 1377-1382**
  - Location and Size, 1377
    - Includes Part of Patagonia, 5412
    - Part of Tierra del Fuego, 7173
    - Cape Horn Island, 3241
  - Land Surface and Climate, 1378
    - Andes Mountains, 276-277
      - Tupungato, 4694
      - Llullaillaco, 4694
      - San José, 4694
      - Maipu, 4694
  - Mineral Resources, 1378
    - Nitrate, 5033-5034
  - Principal Cities, 1378
    - Valparaiso, 7447
    - Santiago, the Capital, 6380-6381
    - Concepcion, 1378
    - Iquique, 1378
    - Magallanes, 1378
  - Juan Fernandez Islands, 3703-3704
    - Alexander Selkirk, 6486
      - Robinson Crusoe, 6150, 6151
  - Arica Awarded to Chile, 6995
- Colombia, 1541-1545**
  - Physical Features, 1542
    - Andes Mountains, 276-277
      - Cordilleras, 1674
        - Tolima, 4694
    - Magdalena River, 4210
    - Orinoco River, 5258-5259
  - Mining and Manufactures, 1543
    - Emeralds, 2220
    - Platinum, 5652
    - Panama Hats, 1543
  - Transportation and Communication, 1543-1544
  - Principal Cities, 1541-1542
    - Bogota, the Capital, 1542
    - Medellin, 1542
    - Barranquilla, 1542
    - Cartagena, 1542
- Dutch Guiana, 2060-2061**
  - Paramaribo, the Capital, 2061
- Ecuador, 2103-2106**
  - Physical Features, 2104
    - Andean Plateau, 276
  - Mountain Peaks, 2104
    - Chimborazo, 1383, 4695
    - Cotopaxi, 1708, 4695
    - Antisana, 4694, 4695
    - Cayambi, 4694, 4695
    - Altar, 4694, 4695
    - Sangai, 4694, 4695
    - Tunguragua, 4694, 4695
  - Montaña Region, 2104
  - Principal Cities, 2103-2104
    - Guayaquil, 2103
    - Quito, the Capital, 2103-2104
  - Galapagos Islands, 2103, 2105, 2660
    - Habitat of Rare Birds and Animals, 2660
- French Guiana, or Cayenne, 2609-2610**
  - Transportation and Communication, 2609
    - Cayenne, Chief Port and Capital, 2610
  - Devil's Island, 2609, 2610
- Paraguay, 5357-5361**
  - Physical Features, 5358-5359
    - Paraguay Proper, 5358
      - Paraguay River, 5361
      - Paraná River, 5363
    - The Chaco, 5358
  - Products and Commerce, 5359-5360
    - Maté, or Paraguay Tea, 4343
    - Quebracho Timber, 5918
  - Cities and Towns, 5358
    - Asunción, the Capital, 5358
- Peru, 5506-5512**
  - Includes Tacna Province, 6995
    - Tacna-Arica Award, 6995
  - Physical Features and Climate, 5508
    - Andes Mountains, 276-277
      - Arequipa, 4694, 4695
      - Huascaran, 4694, 4695
      - The Montaña, 5508
  - Resources and Industry, 5508-5509
    - Guano, 2973
    - Forest Products, 5509
      - Peruvian Bark, 5513
      - Cinchona, 1426
      - Quinine, 5923
  - Principal Cities, 5506-5508
    - Arequipa, 5506
    - Callao, 5507
    - Cuzco, 5507
    - Lima, the Capital, 5507-5508
- Uruguay, 7422-7426**
  - Physical Features, 7423
    - Rivers, 7423
      - Paraná, 5363
    - Uruguay, 7426
    - Río de la Plata, 6133
  - Principal Cities, 7423
    - Montevideo, the Capital, 7423
- Venezuela, 7477-7483**
  - United States of Venezuela, 7477
  - Principal Cities, 7477-7478
    - Caracas, the Capital, 7477-7478
    - Maracaibo, 7478
    - Valencia, 7477
    - La Guaira, Port of Caracas, 7478
      - Street Scene in La Guaira, 7481
  - Physical Features and Climate, 7478
    - Llanos, 4065
    - Guiana Highlands, 7478
    - Andes Mountains, 276-277
      - Sierra Nevada de Mérida, 7478
    - Rivers, 7478
      - Orinoco, 5258-5259
      - Río Negro, 6134

# GEOLOGY

## The Story of The Earth

- Reconstructing the Past by Reading the Present, 2732
- Rock Formation, 6153, 2732
- Fossil Record, 2548, 2732
- Work of the Atmosphere, 2732
- Weathering, 2733, 2290-2291
- Mechanical Disintegration, 2733, 7790
- Chemical Decomposition, 2733, 5281, 1193
- Work of the Hydrosphere, 2733
- Running Water as an Erosive Agent, 2733, 6135-6136
- Ground Water Functional in Formation of Caves and Caverns, 2733, 1262
- Work of Ice, 2733
- Movement and Deposition of Ice Masses, 2822, 2734
- Origin and Structure of Glaciers, 2820
- [See *Pleistocene Epoch*, below.]
- Work of Plants and Animals, 2734
- Decay of Plant Tissue, 2734, 5436
- Carbonation and Decarbonation, 2734, 1193
- Formation of Coral Reefs by Animal Organisms, 2734, 1671-1672
- Earth Movements and Volcanoes, 2734
- Views on Origin and Causes of Earthquakes, 2084
- Theory of Explosive Power of Steam, 2084
- Theory of Fracture and Faults, 2086, 2382
- Popular Theory Based on "Leaky Oceans," 2086
- Use of the Seismograph, 2084, 6485-6486
- Important Earthquakes, 2086
- Faults, 2382
- Occurrence of Faults, 2382, 2734
- Volcanoes, 2734
- How a Volcano Is Formed, 7560-7561, 2734
- Derivation of Term, 7560
- From Vulcan, 7571-7572
- Size and Structure of Volcanoes, 7562
- Causes of Eruption, 7562, 2734
- Predecessors of Earthquakes, 7562
- Products of Eruption, 7562
- Constituents of Volcanic Ash, 7562-7563
- Lava, Molten Rock, 3895-3896
- Classes of Volcanoes: Active, Dormant, Extinct, 7563
- Extinct Volcanoes, 7563
- Mount Aconcagua, Argentina, 22
- Mount Ararat, Asia, 7563, 343
- Mount Hood, Oregon, 3223
- Mount Kilimanjaro, Africa, 3774
- Mount Mazama, Oregon, 7563, 5244, 5246
- Mount Rainier, Washington, 7563, 5388
- Mount Shasta, California, 7563, 6543-6544
- Mount Sinai, Asia, 7563, 6616
- Dormant Volcanoes, 7563
- Mount Fujiyama, Japan, 2632, 2633, 7564
- Mount Orizaba, Mexico, 4438, 7564
- Lassen Peak, California, 7563, 5388
- Mont Pelée, Martinique, 4308, 7562
- Mount Popocatepetl, Mexico, 5737, 7564, 4438
- Active Volcanoes, 7564
- Mauna Loa, Hawaii, 4346, 4348, 4349, 7564
- Mount Cotopaxi, Ecuador, 1708, 7564
- Mount Etna, Sicily, 7562, 2309-2310
- Mount Kilauea, Hawaii, 3773-3774, 7564
- Mount Stromboli, 7564
- Mount Vesuvius, 7562, 7512, 7513
- Origin of the Earth, 2734
- Nebular Hypothesis, 2734, 4867, 2082-2083
- Definition of Nebula, 4866-4867

Introduced by Kant and Laplace, 2734, 3874  
 Moon as an Offspring of the Earth, 4638  
 New Theories Disprove This Old Idea, 2736, 4867  
 Planetesimal Hypothesis, 2083, 2736, 4867-4868  
 Satellites Formed from Knots of Matter, 2736, 4638  
 Modifications, 2736, 4868  
 Darwin's Origin of the Moon by the Tidal Theory, 4638  
**Structure of the Earth**, 2736  
 Support of Theories, 2736  
 Interior of Earth Hot and Molten, 2736  
 Lava and Hot Vapors of Volcanoes, 2736, 7560-7564  
 Hot Springs, 6779, 7143, 397-398, 2736  
 Temperature Increases in Descent of Mines, 2736  
 Interior of Earth not Molten, 2736  
 Concentric Zonal Structure of the Earth, 2736  
 Heavy, Metallic Core, or Centrosphere, or Barysphere, 2736, 2080

Rock Sphere, or Lithosphere, 2736, 2080  
 Character and Extent of Sphere, 2736, 2080  
**Origin of Air and Water Spheres**, 2737  
**Continents and Ocean Basins**, 2737  
 Eruptions of Basaltic Lava, 2737, 5149  
 Yielding of Rocks Due to Extreme Weight, 2737, 2080, 5149  
 Isostasy, 2737  
**Mountains and Plateaus**, 2737, 4691, 5651  
 Origin of Mountains, 2737, 4691  
 Igneous Activity, 2737, 3347, 4691  
 Volcanoes, 7560-7564  
 Rocky Mountains, 6156-6157  
 Erosion, 2737, 4696, 4691, 2290-2291  
 Dynamic Movements, 2737, 2064, 4691  
 Origin of Plateaus, 5651  
 [See *Origin of Mountains*, above.]  
 Grand Canyon of Arizona, 2894-2896, 2895  
 Catskill Mountains, 1249  
 Himalaya Region, 3179, 3181  
 Tibet, 7168  
 Mesa, 4411  
 Plain, 5641  
**Reading the Rocks**, 2737-2738

## Divisions of Geologic Time

**Era**, 2738  
 Largest Unit of Geologic Time, 2738, 2282  
 Distinguishing Features, 2738  
 The Eras, 2738  
 [See below, for details of Eras.]  
**Periods**, 2738  
 Division of Era, 2738, 2282  
**Epochs**, 2738  
 Division of Period, 2738  
**Duration of Eras**, 2738  
**Age of the Earth**, 2738  
**Archeozoic Era**, 2740, 357  
**Proterozoic Era**, 2740, 5851  
 Second Era of Geologic Time, 2740, 5851  
 Sedimentation, Principal Rock Formation, 2740, 5851  
 Algonkian System of Rock Formation, 220, 5851  
 Life of the Era, 5852  
 Protozoans, Sponges, Worms Recorded, 5852, 5853, 2740, 7982  
 Marine Algae Indicated, 2740, 5852, 205  
**Azoic Era**, 550  
**Paleozoic Era**, 2740, 5309-5310  
 Third Great Era of Geologic Time, 5309  
 Cambrian Period, 2739-2740, 5309  
 Derived from Cambria, Meaning Northern Wales, 1102  
 First Crustacean, 1765, 2740  
 Ordovician Period, 5242, 5309, 2739-2740  
 Derived from Ordovici, a Tribe in Wales, 5242  
 Cephalopoda Dominate Animal Group, 2740, 1290, 4576

Silurian Period, 2739-2740, 5309  
 Derived from Silures, a Tribe of Ancient Britain, 6613  
 Animal Life Almost Wholly Marine, 6613  
 Formation of Coral Reefs, 2740, 1671-1673  
 Atoll, 491  
 Appearance of Scorpions, Air-Breathing Animals, 343, 2740, 6435-6436, 7982  
 Highly Specialized Echinoderms, 7982, 2093  
 Devonian Period, 1925, 2739-2740, 5309  
 Old Red Sandstone, Important British Formation, 1925, 5191  
 Fish Reach High Development, 1925  
 Land Life, 1925, 2740  
 Carboniferous Period, 2741, 5309  
 Derivation: Extensive Coal Seams, 1193  
 Outstanding Economic Resources, 2741  
 Mississippian Epoch, or Lower Carboniferous, 1193  
 First Growth Rings Recorded, 2741  
 Pennsylvanian Epoch, or Upper Carboniferous, 2739, 2741, 1194  
 World's Greatest Supply of Workable Coal, 1194  
 Advent of Gymnosperms, 2741, 2991  
 Permian Epoch, 2741, 2739  
 Extensive Development on all Continents, 5490  
 Impoverishment of Plant and Animal Life, 5490, 2741  
 Glaciation in Torrid and Temperate Zones, 2741, 5490



Life Forms, 5490  
**Mesozoic Era**, 4412, 2741  
 Fourth Great Division of Geologic Time, 4412, 2741  
 Triassic Period, 2739, 2741  
 Deposits Resemble Permian, 7267  
 Reptilian Life Highly Advanced, 2741, 7267  
 Advent of Dinosauria, 7267, 1948-1952  
 Remains of Earliest Mammals, 7267, 2741  
 Development of Cycads, or Coniferous Trees, 7267, 1795  
 Jurassic Period, 2741, 2739  
 End of Period Marked by Mountain-Making Disturbances, 3721  
 Oldest Known Bird, 2741  
 Cretaceous Period, 2741  
 Allied to Great Chalk Beds of England and France, 1297, 1741  
 Outcroppings Widely Distributed, 1742  
 Lower Cretaceous or Comanchean, 1742, 2739  
 Sudden Appearance of Angiosperms, 1742, 284  
 Upper Cretaceous, 2741, 2739  
**Cenozoic Era**, 2742  
 Latest of Geologic Eras, 1282  
 Steady Progress toward Modern Life, 2742  
 Tertiary Period, 7116  
 Divided into Four Epochs, 7116

Eocene Epoch, 2739, 2742  
 Modern Plant and Animal Life Well Defined, 2276  
 Oligocene Epoch, 5192, 2739  
 Miocene Epoch, 4526, 2739, 2742  
 Pliocene Epoch, 5659  
 Quaternary Period, 5907, 2739  
 Age of Man, 5907  
 Pleistocene, or Glacial, Epoch, 5907, 2817, 2742  
 Existing Glaciers, 2820  
 Famous Glaciers, 2822  
 Glacier Bay, Alaska, 4636  
 Malaspina, Alaska, 2822  
 Mer de Glace, 2822  
 Muir, Alaska, 2823, 4733  
 Tasman, New Zealand, 5002  
 Effects of Ice Movement, 2818  
 Drift Material Called Moraines, 4647  
 Temporary Lakes Formed, 4647  
 Lake Agassiz, 4647, 85  
 Manitoba (Surface), 4260  
 Red River of the North, 6032  
 Winnipeg, Lake, 7797  
 Winnipeg, Man., 7797  
 Intermittent Ice Ages, 2818-2819  
 Life of the Epoch, 2819  
 Holocene, or Human, Epoch, 3280, 3282, 2739  
 Spread of Human Race, 3282, 2341

### Geological Materials

**Rocks**, 6153  
 Processes of Formation, 6153  
 Igneous Rocks, 3347, 6153  
 Dike, 3347, 1947  
 Sills, 3347, 1947  
 Vein, 7472  
 Character Depends upon Rate of Cooling, 3347  
 Amphibole, 3347  
 Hornblende, 3241  
 Basalt, 632-633  
 Diabase, 1927  
 Feldspar, 2391-2392, 3347  
 Albite, 2392  
 Anorthite, 2392  
 Granite, 2898, 1765  
 Kaolin, 2392, 3746  
 Labradorite, 2392, 3828-3829  
 Orthoclase, 2392  
 Trachyte, 7231, 7233  
 Gabbro, 3347  
 Gneiss, 2847  
 Leucite, 3347  
 Magnetite, 3347, 4218  
 Lodestone, 4218  
 Mica, 3347, 4451, 4453  
 Biotite, 4451  
 Granite, 2898, 1765  
 Isinglass, 3563, 4451  
 Muscovite, 4451

Nephelite, 3347  
 Obsidian, 5146  
 Olivine, 3347  
 Porphyry, 5744  
 Pumice, 5880  
 Pyroxene, 3347, 5898  
 Augite, 5898  
 Diopside, 5898  
 Salite, 5898  
 Quartz, 5906-5907, 3347  
 Compound of Silicon and Oxygen, 5906  
 Amethyst, 261, 5906  
 Bristol Diamond, 5906  
 Chalcedony, 1295-1296, 5906  
 Agate, 85-86  
 Carnelian, 1204  
 Onyx, 5212  
 Sardonyx, 6387  
 Emery, 2222  
 False Topaz, 5906  
 Granite, 2898, 1765  
 Jasper, 3640, 5906  
 Rock Crystal, 5906  
 Smoky Quartz, 5906  
 Syenite, 2898  
 Tachylite, 6994-6995  
 Sedimentary Rocks, 6153, 6479  
 Deposited by Water or Wind, 6479  
 Usually Stratified, 6875  
 Coal, 1497-1507

Conglomerate, 6479, 1606  
   Agglomerate, 1606  
   Breccia, 1606  
   Pudding Stone, 1606  
 Diatomaceous Earth, 1934-1935  
 Flint, 2470, 5906  
 Graphite, 2911-2912  
 Gypsum, 2991  
   Selenite, 2991  
 Halite, 6340-6344  
 Hematite, 3136  
 Limestone, 6479, 4007  
   Chalk, 4007, 1297  
   Tripoli, 7271  
   Coral, 4007, 1671  
   Madrepore, 1673  
   Dolomite, 4007, 2001  
   Pearl Spar, 2001  
 Limonite, 4008  
 Peat, 5436-5437  
 Sandstone, 6365, 6479  
   Berea of Ohio, 6365  
   Old Red Sandstone of Great Britain,  
     1925, 6365, 5191  
   Potsdam Sandstone of N. Y., 6365  
   Triassic Brownstone of Connecticut,  
     6365  
 Shale, 6479, 6538-6539  
 Metamorphic Rocks, 6153, 4416  
   Change in Character after Deposition,  
     4416  
   Agencies Causing Changes, 4416  
   Sedimentary and Igneous Rocks May Be  
     Metamorphosed, 4416  
   Gneisses, 4416, 2847  
   Marble, 4416, 4282-4284, 1765  
   Sandstone, 4416, 6365-6366  
   Schists, 4416, 4453

Shale, 4416, 6538-6539  
 Serpentine, 6504  
 Crystalline Rocks, 1765  
   Granite, 1765, 2898  
   Marble, 1765, 4416, 4282-4284  
 Lava, 3895  
   Chief Forms of Rock, 3895  
     Tufa, 3895, 7289, 4007  
     Basalt, 3895, 632-633  
     Trachyte, 3895, 7231, 7233  
   [See *Volcano*, above.]  
 Fossils, 2548  
   Paleontology, the Study of Fossils, 2548, 5309  
   Petrified Forest of Arizona, 2548, 4635,  
     389  
   Petrified Forest of Colorado, 1557  
   Time Markers of Geology, 2548, 2338  
   Importance of Fossil Record, 2548, 2550  
   Evolutionary Evidence, 2550, 2338  
   [See *Fossil Record According to Periods*,  
     above.]  
 Dinosauria, 1948  
   Appearance in Triassic, 1948, 7267  
   Allosaurus, 1950  
   Brontosaurus, 1948, 1950  
   Diplodocus, 1951  
   Ichthyosaurus, 3336  
   Stegosaurus, 1949, 1950  
   Trachodon, 1952  
   Triceratops, 1951  
 Glyptodon, 2846-2847  
   Related to Armadillo, 2847  
 Iguanodon, 1948, 3348-3349  
 Mammoth, 4243  
 Mastodon, 4338-4339  
 Nummulite, 5116  
 Orthoceras, 5262  
 Pterodactyl, 5869-5870

### Forms and Processes

**Bed**, 670  
   Non-Stratified Rocks Called Massive, 670  
   Lamination, 670  
   Cross-Bedding, 670  
**Boulder**, 895  
**Butte**, 1040  
**Cave**, 1261  
   Origin of, 1261, 2733  
   Deposits of Calcite, Basalt, or Ice, 1261  
   Stalactites, 1261, 6794  
   Stalagmites, 6794  
   Used as Dwellings, 1262  
   Caves and Caverns of Note, 1262  
   Carlsbad Cavern, 1200, 4636  
   Fingal's Cave, 1262, 2420  
   Formation of Basaltic Columns, 2420,  
     632-633  
   Luray Caverns, 1262, 4157  
   Mammoth Cave, 1262, 4243-4245  
   Wyandotte Cave, 1262, 7902, 3392  
   Wind Cave National Park, 5390, 1262, 6715  
**Cleavage**, 1462-1463

  Rocks Capable of Cleavage, 1462  
   Schists and Slates, 1462, 4416, 6638-6639  
**Dip**, 1954  
**Drift**, 2037  
   Glacial Drift, 2037, 2818  
   Moraine, 4647  
   Till, 2037  
   Glacial Outwash, 2037  
   Stratified Drift, 2037  
**Fulgurite**, 2632  
**Geysers**, 2793-2797  
   Origin of Geysers, 2793, 2795-2796  
   Distribution, 2795  
   Iceland, 2795, 3331  
   New Zealand, 2795  
   Yellowstone National Park, 2795, 2797,  
     7935-7938  
**Hot Springs**, 6779, 397-398, 7143  
   Theories as to the Origin of Hot Waters, 7143  
   Location  
     Hot Springs, Arkansas, 397-398  
     Yellowstone National Park, 7938

New Zealand, 5002  
 Joints, 3692  
   Exfoliation, 3692  
 Soil, 6676-6678  
   [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Clay, 1458  
 Fuller's Earth, 2632

Kaolin, 3746  
 Humus, 3287  
 Loam, 4068  
 Loess, 4086  
 Marl, 4295  
 Quicksand, 5921  
 Sand, 6361

### Geology and Mythology

Relation of the Two Subjects, 2742  
 Derivation of Term Geology, 2732  
   Gaea, or Terra (Mother Earth), 4788, 2732  
 Explanation of Natural Phenomena, 2732  
   Living Gods the Progenitors of Nature, 2732  
     Gaea (Mother Earth), 2732, 4788  
     Uranus (Heaven), 2732, 7420-7421  
     Husband of Gaea, 4788  
   Descendants. [See Outline on *Mythol-*

*ogy, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Manifestations of Gods, 2732  
 Creation of the World, 4788-4789  
 [See Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Greek and Roman Idea, 4788  
 Egyptian Idea, 6005  
 Hindu Idea, 916-917

### Contributions of Geology to Human Welfare

Geology as Related to Other Branches of Science, 2742  
 Birth of Three New Sciences, 2742  
   Geophysics, 2742  
   Geochemistry, 2742  
   Paleontology, 2742, 5309  
 Geophysics, 2742  
   Newer Methods Employed in Exploration, 2743  
     Torsion Balance, 2743, 7221  
     Seismograph, 2743, 6485  
     Electrical Apparatus, 2743  
     Radioactivity, 2743, 5934  
     X-Ray Photographs, 2743  
 Paleontology and Oil, 2743-2744

Study of Fossils, 5309  
 Petroleum Restricted to Rocks of Definite Age, 2744  
 Geology as an Applied Science, 2744  
   Mining of Metals, 2744  
   Search for Petroleum and Coal, 2744  
   Engineering, 2744  
     Reservoir Construction, 2744, 6065  
     Tunnel Construction, 2744, 7295-7297  
   [See Outline on *Physics*, subhead *Electricity*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Assemblage and Organization of Geologic Knowledge, 2744  
 Geologic Importance of Expeditions, 2745  
 Geology as a Progressive Science, 2745

# HISTORY

## THE ANCIENT WORLD

### Prehistoric Era

#### Before the Time of Written History

##### How We Learn about Prehistoric Man

Excavations of Archaeologists, 348-356  
Plant and Animal Life Revealed in Fossils, 2548

##### Study of Primitive People of To-Day,

1444-1449

In Africa, 79, 80

In Asia, 447

In the Pacific Islands, 5288-5292

[See Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]

##### Ages of Man Determined by His Tools

The Stone Age (100,000 B.C. to 5000 B.C.)

Paleolithic, or Old Stone Age, 6845

Flint Most Commonly Used, 2470

Neanderthal Man, 4854, 4245-4246

Life of the Neanderthal Family,

4853, 4854

Cave Dwellings, 1262, 1445, 1447

Crô-Magnon, 4854, 6845

Neolithic or New Stone Age, 6845

#### Crude Land Cultivation and Domesti-

cation of Animals, 1446, 6845, 6846

Lake, or Pile, Dwellers, 3844, 6846

Life in the Stone Age, 6846

Early Inventive Genius, 3494

#### Travel

Pack Trains, 5983, 7251

Use of Fire, 2426, 3494

Weapons and Warfare

Equipment of a Warrior in the Stone Age, 411

Stone Weapons, 3494

#### Ages of Metal Tools

The Bronze Age, 87, 975

Egyptians and Chaldeans the First to Use Metals, 6845

Egyptians First to Use Copper, 1668

#### The Iron Age

When Tools Were Made of Wrought

Iron, 3534, 3535, 86-87

Iron Weapons First Used by Assyrians, 460

### Ancient Egypt

#### Influence of the Nile, 2151, 5029

Annual Floods Made Fertile Soil, 2471

#### Civilization of Old Egypt

Hieroglyphics Developed by Egyptians,

2151, 3175-3177, 7899, 7900

On Obelisks and Tombs, 3176, 5138

On Pyramids, 5893-5896

Rosetta Stone, 6208

#### Art and Architecture

Egyptian Sculpture, 6456

[See Outlines on *Architecture* and *Art*, in this GUIDE.]

Pottery, Filigree, and Enamel Work, 2151, 5787, 2231

Barbering, 618

Cosmetics, 1702

Dentistry, 1905

Domestic Arts

Spinning, 6765

Flax, 2151, 2466

Stone Needles, 4869

Dress, 2034

Royal Egyptian Costume (1000 B.C.), following 1706

Language

[See Outline on *Language*, in this GUIDE.]

Learning, 2151

Arithmetic, 2151

- Astrology, 2151, 466-467
- Astronomy, 468
- Measuring of Time, facing 7180
  - Calendar, 1075
- Mechanical Devices, 2151
- Occupations
  - Agriculture, the Basis of Civilization, 93
    - A Threshing Scene, 2147
  - Brick-Making, 945-946
- Religion, 2151
  - Animal Worship, 292
  - Immortality, 2151
    - Transmigration of the Soul, 7244-7246
  - Embalming of the Dead, 2151, 2218-2219
  - Egyptian Gods
    - [See Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]
- Sports and Amusements
  - Archery, 357
  - Checkers, 1326
  - Dice, 1935
  - Marbles, 4284
    - [See Outline on *Games and Recreations*, in this GUIDE.]
- Status of Women, 2151
- The Early Egyptian Empire**
  - Pharaoh, the Title of the Kings, 5531
  - Memphis and Thebes, Early Capitals, 2144
  - Era of the Thirty Dynasties, 2152
    - Menes, First Ruler and the Builder of Memphis, 2144
  - Fourth Dynasty, Age of Pyramids, 2152
    - Cheops (2900 B.C.)
      - Great Pyramid, 1342, 5893-5896
      - Repaired the Sphinx, 6758
    - Chephren: Built Second Pyramid, 5894
    - Mycerinus: Built Third Pyramid, 5894
  - Egypt under Foreign Sovereigns, 2152
  - Hyksos Line, the Shepherd Kings (1700 B.C.), 3315
    - Joseph Associated with a Pharaoh of Hyksos Line, 3315, 3698-3700
      - [See *The Jews*, below.]
- The New Empire**
  - Theban Kings, the Eighteenth Dynasty, 2152
    - Prosperity under Thothmes III (1528 B.C.), 7158
      - Territory Added by Conquest
        - Syria, Palestine, and Part of Mesopotamia, 7158
      - An Era of Great Building
        - Obelisks, 7158
        - Cleopatra's Needles, 1465, 1467
        - Temples, 7158
    - Amenophis, or Amenhotep III (1500 B.C.), 2144
      - Buildings
        - Temple at Luxor, 2144
        - The Famous Colossi of Memnon, 4386
    - Amenhotep IV, or Ikhnaton (1370 B.C.), 7330
      - Religious Reforms, 7330
  - Tutankhamen (1358 B.C.), 7329-7330
    - Tomb Opened in 1922, 7330
- Nineteenth Dynasty and the Beginning of Decline, 2152
  - Seti I, a Builder King (1350 B.C.), 6506
    - Hall of Columns at Karnak, 6506, 2144, 2153
  - Rameses II (about 1330-1273 B.C.), 5992, 3187
- Exodus of the Jews from Egypt (1250 B.C.)
  - [See *The Jews*, below.]
- Decline of the Empire and Foreign Rule, 2152
  - Period of Assyrian Rule (670 B.C.), 2152
  - Persian Invasion, 2152
    - Cambyes II, 1103, 5500
    - Darius I, 1828
    - Xerxes I, 7916
  - Era of Alexander the Great, 199-201
    - Received as a Deliverer, 2152
    - Conquered Egypt about 332 B.C., 200
    - Introduced Greek Culture, 201
    - Founded City of Alexandria, 201-202
    - Empire of Alexander Divided among His Generals, 201, 2152
- Egypt under the Greeks and Romans**
  - Macedonian Dynasty, or Ptolemaic Period (323 to 30 B.C.)
    - Ptolemy I, Surnamed Soter, 5870
      - General of Alexander the Great, 2152
    - Alexandrian Age, 86
      - When Alexandria Led the World, 86, 201
      - Capital of Ptolemy's Empire, 2152
      - Alexandrian Library, 202
      - Alexandrian Museum, 4753
        - [For the cultural and scientific developments of this age, see *Ancient Greece*, below.]
    - Ptolemy II, Surnamed Philadelphus, 5870
      - Canal Built from the Red Sea to the Nile, 5870
      - Lighthouse on Pharos, 5532, 4000
        - One of the Seven Wonders of the World, 6508-6509
    - Ptolemy III, Surnamed Euergetes, or Benefactor (246-222 B.C.), 5871
    - Ptolemy V, Surnamed Epiphanes, or Illustrious, 5871
      - Rosetta Stone Made for Ptolemy V, 6208
    - Ptolemy XII, Surnamed Dionysus, 5871
      - Deposed by His Sister-Wife Cleopatra, 5871
    - Cleopatra, 1465, 2152
      - Cleopatra Lost Her Throne, 5871, 1465
      - Caesar Restored Cleopatra to Power, 1067, 1465
      - Mark Antony Enamored of Cleopatra, 1465, 314
      - Antony Divorced Octavia for Cleopatra, 1465, 5156

War with the Romans, 32-31 B.C.  
 Caused by Excesses of Antony and  
 Cleopatra, 1465, 314  
 War Declared by Roman Senate, 314  
 Octavianus Upheld the Senate, 503

Battle of Actium, 31 B.C., 23, 314, 503  
 Antony and Cleopatra Defeated, 314,  
 1465  
 Egypt a Province of the Roman Empire,  
 2152

## Early Oriental Civilizations

### The Far East

**Mongolia**, 4594  
 Archaeological Expeditions, 4594  
**China**, 1393  
 The Chow Dynasty, about 1122 B.C., 1393  
 Civilization of Early China, 1393  
 Dress (2000 B.C.), following 1706  
 Effect of the Philosophies of Confucius, 1605  
 Lao-Tse, Contemporary of Confucius, 7016  
 Tsin, or Chin, Dynasty  
 Events  
   Built the Great Wall, 1393, 1394  
   Destroyed Old Literature, 1393  
 Reasons for Chinese Seclusion, 1393  
**Korea (Chosen)**  
 Founded about 1122 B.C., 1410  
 Annexed to Chinese Empire (108 B.C.), 1410  
**India**  
 Early History Obscure, 3387  
 Dravidians, the Aborigines of India, 3378  
 Great Epic Poems Tell History  
   Mahabharata, 4221  
   Ramayana, 5992  
 Conquered by Hindus (about 2000 B.C.), 3387  
 Architecture and Religion  
   The Splendor of Ancient India, 362  
   [See Outlines on *Architecture* and *Art*, in  
   this GUIDE.]  
   Vedas, the Oldest Sacred Writing, 7469  
   Hindu Gods. [See Outline on *Mythology*,  
   *Folklore*, and *Legend*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Brahmanism, 917  
   The Rise of Buddhism, 999-1000  
 Foreign Invasions  
   The Persians under Darius I, 1828-1829  
   Alexander the Great, 200  
   Builder of the City of Bucephala, 201  
 Reign of Asoka (264 to 228 B.C.), 999  
   Brahmanism Succeeded by Buddhism,  
   999-1000  
**Japan**, 3634  
 Emperor Gimmo (660 B.C.), 3634  
 Founder of Present Dynasty, 3634

### The Near East

**Babylonia**  
 Geographical Features  
   Euphrates River, 2315  
   Tigris River, 7175  
 Ancient Divisions  
   Akkad, or Accad, 560  
   Shumar, or Shinar, 560  
   Chaldea, 1296  
 Culture of Early Babylonians

System of Writing  
   Cuneiform Characters, 1784-1785  
   Example of Writing and Translation,  
   561, 1785  
 Art and Architecture, 561-562  
   [See Outlines on *Architecture* and *Art*,  
   in this GUIDE.]  
 Mode of Life, 561  
 First Line of Kings Date from 4500 B.C., 562  
 Sargon of Akkad (about 3800 B.C.), 560  
 Reign of Hammurabi (2124 to 2080 B.C.),  
   562, 3029  
 Achievements, 560, 3029  
 Period of Foreign Rule  
   Kassites from Media, 562  
   Conquered by Thothmes III, 7158  
 A Province of Assyria, 462, 562  
 Tiglath-Pileser, 7175  
 Sargon II, 462  
 Sennacherib, 6492, 562  
 Esarhaddon, 462, 560  
 New Babylonian or Chaldean Empire  
   Nabopolassar, the Chaldean, 4801  
   Extended Empire by Conquests  
     Chaldea United with Babylonia, 1296  
     Destroyed Assyrian Empire, 4801,  
     562, 462, 4372  
     Laid Waste Nineveh (606 B.C.), 463,  
     562  
   Improvements, 4801  
   Splendor of Reign of Nebuchadnezzar  
     (604-561 B.C.), 4864-4866  
     Son of Nabopolassar, 4801  
     Captured Jerusalem (586 B.C.), 4866,  
     3674, 3660  
   Held Jews in Captivity, 4866, 3674  
     [See *The Jews*, below.]  
   Siege of Tyre, 4866, 5570  
   Invasion of Egypt, 4866  
   Rebuilt Babylon, 560  
     Hanging Gardens of Babylon, 560,  
     561, 4866  
     Restored Canal Connecting Tigris  
     and Euphrates, 1158  
   Madness of Nebuchadnezzar, 4866  
   Foretold by Daniel, 1820  
 Decline and Fall of Babylonia, 562  
 Nabonidus, 1800  
 Conquered by Cyrus the Great (538 B.C.),  
   562, 1800  
   [See *Persia*, below.]  
 In the Alexandrian Empire (331 B.C.), 562  
   Conquered by Alexander the Great, 200  
   Babylon Made the Capital, 201  
 Under Parthian Control, 560, 562

Excavations by Modern Archaeologists, 560  
 Babylonia Now a Part of Iraq, 560, 3514

### Assyria

Assyrians a Semitic Race, 6488  
 History and Customs Similar to Babylonia  
 Settled by Babylonian Colonists (2500 B.C.), 460  
 [See *Babylonia*, above.]  
 Culture, Religion, and Art  
 Warlike and Cruel Character, 460  
 Literature  
 Wrote on Baked Clay Tablets, 460  
 Used Cuneiform Characters, 461, 1784-1785  
 Hymns, Poems, Law, Science, and History, 461  
 Government, 461  
 Religion, 460  
 Fine Arts  
 Architecture, 461, 361  
 [See Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Sculpture, 461, 6457  
 [See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Industrial Arts, 461  
 First Skilled Workers in Metals, 3535  
 Nimrod Founded Nineveh, 2300 B.C.  
 According to Bible Narrative, 462, 5032  
 Early Period of Military Campaigns (2250 B.C.), 461  
 Conquered by Thothmes III of Egypt, 7158  
 Era of Assyrian Supremacy  
 Tiglath-Pileser I (1120 B.C.), 461, 7175  
 Conquests, 6897, 7175, 5587  
 Tiglath-Pileser II (950-930 B.C.), 7175  
 Period of Assyrian and Babylonian Rivalry  
 Assurnazirpal (883 B.C.), 462  
 Conquests, 6987, 4372, 5570  
 Tiglath-Pileser III, or Pulu (745-727 B.C.), 7175  
 Shalmaneser IV, 7175  
 Sargon II (721-606 B.C.), 462  
 Babylonia under Assyrian Control, 462, 562  
 Hittites Conquered (717 B.C.), 3187  
 Kingdom of Israel Subjugated, 462, 3674  
 Sennacherib, 6492  
 Conquests: Sidon, Ashkelon, and Ekron, 6492  
 War on Hezekiah, 6492, 3172  
 Completely Conquered Babylonia (689 B.C.), 562  
 Destroyed Babylon, 560, 6492  
 Esarhaddon (680 B.C.), 462  
 Rebuilt Babylon, 560  
 Assyria at Its Height  
 Assurbanipal (668-624 B.C.), 460, 462, 463  
 Decline and Fall of the Assyrian Empire  
 Nabopolassar (606 B.C.), 462, 562, 4801  
 [See *Babylonia*, above.]  
 Nineveh Destroyed, 463

Partitioning of Assyria between Babylonia and Media, 462, 4372

### Persian Control

Cyrus the Great Conquered the Medes, 462, 5500  
 Among the Conquests of Alexander the Great, 462, 200  
 Under Parthian, Roman, and Persian Rule, 462

### Persia

Geographical Background, 5500  
 Earliest Inhabitants of Persia, 5495-5496  
 Iran, the Ancient Name of Persia, 3513-3514  
 Iranian Culture  
 Language, 3514  
 Cuneiform Inscriptions, 3514, 1784-1785  
 Iranian Religion  
 Zoroastrianism, 7987  
 Zend-Avesta, 7971-7972, 7987  
 The Founding of the Medo-Persian Empire  
 Cyrus the Great, 1799-1800  
 Grandson of Astyages, 1799  
 Overthrew Astyages, 1800  
 Subjugated the Medes, 4372  
 Defeated Croesus of Lydia, 1800, 1751, 4162  
 Captured Babylon (538 B.C.), 562, 1800  
 Released the Jews, 1800, 3675  
 Conquered Parthia, 5403  
 Extent of the Empire under Cyrus, 5500  
 Extension of the Empire  
 Cambyses II, the Tyrant (529 B.C.), 1103  
 Conquests  
 Phoenicia (Tyre), 5500, 5570  
 Cyprus, 5500  
 Invasion of Egypt (525 B.C.), 1103, 2152, 5500  
 Darius I (521 B.C.), 1828  
 Overthrew Gautama, the Usurper, 1828  
 New System of Government, 1828, 5500  
 Other Improvements, 1829  
 Conquests and Reverses  
 Punjab, in India, 1829, 3387  
 War with Scythians, 1829  
 Defeated by the Greeks at Marathon, 1829, 2413, 2946, 4281, 4491  
 Beginning of Western Influence, 5500  
 [See *Ancient Greece*, below.]  
 Inscriptions of Darius on Behistun Rock, 1785, 1828  
 Key to Cuneiform Inscriptions, 1785  
 Persepolis, Darius' Capital, 5497  
 Xerxes I, 7916  
 Ahasuerus, Biblical Identification of  
 Xerxes I, 107-108  
 Story Told in Esther, 2299-2300  
 Haman, a Favorite of Ahasuerus, 3024  
 Repressed Revolt in Egypt, 7916  
 Unsuccessful Invasion of Greece (480 B.C.), 7916, 2946  
 Beginning of the Decline of Persia, 5498

Last Years of Xerxes I, 7917  
 Palace of Xerxes at Persepolis, 7916  
 Artaxerxes I (402 B.C.)  
   Son of Xerxes I, 7917  
   Brother of Cyrus the Younger, 1800  
   Nehemiah, Cupbearer to, 4872  
   Expedition of Cyrus against Artaxerxes, 1800  
   Xenophon Joined Cyrus, 7915  
   Battle of Cunaxa (401 B.C.), 1800, 7915  
   Cyrus Killed, 1800, 7914  
   Retreat of the Greeks, 1800, 7915-7916  
   The Anabasis, 270, 1800  
   Xerxes II's Brief Reign (424 B.C.), 7917  
 Beginning of Macedonian Invasion  
   Darius III (336 B.C.), 1829  
   Plans of Philip of Macedonia, 5547, 1829  
 Conquests of Alexander the Great  
   Campaign Renewed (334-330 B.C.), 199-200, 1829, 5500, 5547  
   Important Defeats of Darius  
     Issus (333 B.C.), 199, 1829  
     Arbela (331 B.C.), 200, 462, 1829  
     One of the Fifteen Decisive Battles, 2413  
     [See *Ancient Greece*, below.]  
   Death of Darius, 200, 1829  
   Alexander Rules Persia, 200, 5500  
 Empire of Alexander Divided, 201  
   Seleucus Nicator Controlled Part of Persia, 6991  
 Part of Parthian Empire, 5403  
 New Persian Empire, Sassanian Dynasty, 5403  
**The Jews**  
   The Terms Jews, Hebrews, and Israelites, 3672, 3607  
   Members of the Semitic Race, 3674, 6488  
   Home of the Jews  
     Palestine, 5310-5316  
     Ancient Cities  
       Acre, 5310  
       Beersheba, Bethel, Bethlehem, Hebron, Jericho, Nazareth, 5312  
       Samaria, 5314  
   Early Occupations and Life, 3674, 5039-5040  
   Hebrew Calendar, 1076  
   The Bible as a Source of Hebrew History  
     Story of the Jews Told in  
       Genesis, 2715  
       Exodus, 2344  
       Leviticus, 3955  
       Numbers, 5113  
       Deuteronomy, 1924  
       Joshua, 3702  
       Judges, 3705  
       Ruth, 6282-6284  
       Books of Samuel, 6357, 6359  
       Books of Kings, 3795  
       Books of Chronicles, 1418  
       Ezra, 2355  
       Nehemiah, 4872

Esther, 2300  
 Isaiah, 3562-3563  
 Jeremiah, 3656  
 Ezekiel, 2354  
 Daniel, 1820-1821  
 Story of the Deluge, 1886-1887  
 Noah Chosen to Preserve Life, 5036, 306  
 Noah's Sons  
   Shem, 5036, 6488  
   Ham, 5036  
   Japheth, 5036  
 Founders of the Jewish Race, the Patriarchs, 5415-5416  
   Abraham, Founder of the Israelites, 10  
     Associated with Beersheba, Bethel, and Hebron, 5312  
   Isaac, Son of Abraham, 10, 3561-3562  
   Ishmael, Son of Abraham, 3563  
   Bedouins, 671  
   Ishmaelites, 3563  
   Jacob, Son of Isaac, 3607, 2292  
     Wives of Jacob  
       Leah, 3607  
       Sons  
         Gad, 2657  
         Settled in Gilead, 2807  
         Zebulun, 7970-7971  
         Rachel, Tribal Mother, 5932  
         Name Changed to Israel, 3667, 5312  
         Derivation of Term Israelite, 3607  
   Joseph (1700-1590 B.C.)  
     Son of Rachel, 5932  
     Sold into Egypt, 3699  
     The Prime Minister, 3700  
     Benjamin, Brother of Joseph, 709, 3700  
     Israelites Led into Egypt, 3700, 3608  
     Settled in Goshen, 2877  
     Persecuted by the Egyptians, 4670, 2152, 2344  
 Exodus of the Jews from Egypt  
   Story Told in Exodus, 2344  
   Moses, Leader of the Israelites, 4670-4674, 3674  
   Aaron, Spokesman of Moses, 2  
   Miracles on the Journey, 4672  
   Joshua, 3702  
     [See *Conquest of Canaan*, below.]  
   Great Work of Moses, 4672-4674  
 Conquest of Canaan  
   The Land of Canaan, 1116  
   Palestine, the Philistine Name, 3515  
   Nations of Canaan  
     Hittites, 3187  
     Hivites, 1116  
     Jebusites, 1116  
     Moabites, 4563  
   Worship of the Canaanites, 1116  
     Baal, 552  
   Palestine Theoretically a Province of Egypt, 3660  
   Joshua Succeeded Moses as Leader, 3702  
   Crossed the Jordan, 3698  
   Took Jericho, 5312



The Amalekites, 240  
 Israel under the Judges  
   Story Told in the Book of Judges, 3705  
   Deborah, Hebrew Prophetess, 1853-1854  
   Aided Barak against Sisera, 1853, 6994  
   Gideon, 2805  
   Eli, 2207  
   Samson, 6357, 6358  
     Trouble with the Philistines, 6357, 5563  
     At Gaza, 2708  
     Delilah, Betrayer of Samson, 1885  
     The Final Tragedy of Samson, 6358  
   Samuel, 6357-6359  
     Reared by Eli, 2207  
 The Kingdom of Israel, 1834  
   Tribes United under Saul, 3674, 6399  
     Anointed by Samuel, 6359  
   War with the Philistines, 5563  
   Served by David, 1834  
   Death of Saul and Jonathan, 6399, 5563  
 David (1041-970 B.C.), 1834-1836  
   Member of the Tribe of Judah, 3674  
   Made Hebron the Capital, 5312  
   Conquered the Philistines, 5563  
   Subjugated Moabites, 4563  
   Took Jerusalem from the Jebusites, 3660  
 Israel under Solomon, 6681-6684  
   Expansion of the Kingdom, 3674  
   Achievements of Solomon  
     Built the Temple and Palace, 6682, 7092  
     Reasons for His Decline, 6682, 6683  
     Succeeded by His Son Rehoboam, 6684  
 Division of Israel and Judah, 3674, 3656, 3660, 6681 (Map)  
   Jerusalem Remained the Capital of Judah, 3660  
   Jeroboam Ruled Ten Tribes of Israel (931 B.C.)  
     Idolatry Introduced, 3656  
   Samaria, Capital of Northern Kingdom, 5314  
   Ahab, Seventh King of Israel, 107  
     Opposed by Elijah, 107, 2207  
   Jehoshaphat, King of Judah (850 B.C.), 3653  
   Jehu, King of Israel (842 B.C.), 3653, 107  
   Jeroboam II (790 B.C.), 3656  
   Hebrew Prophets  
     Hosea, 3255-3256  
     Amos, 3656  
   Uzziah (740 B.C.)  
     Isaiah, Prophet, 3562  
 Decline of the Kingdom of Israel  
   Ahaz, King of Judah (736-728 B.C.)  
     Idolatry Practiced, 108  
     Prophecy  
       Micah, 4453  
       Isaiah, 3562  
     Alliance with Assyria, 7175  
   Hezekiah, King of Judah (724 B.C.)  
     Suppressed Idolatry, 3170  
     Victorious over Philistines, 3172

Defeated Sennacherib, the Assyrian, 3172, 6492  
   [See *Assyria*, above.]  
 Period of the Captivities  
   Assyrian  
     Samaria Captured (722 B.C.), 5314  
     Sargon II Subjugated the Israelites, 462, 3674  
     [See *Assyria*, above.]  
   Babylonian  
     Zedekiah, Last King of Judah, 7971  
     Nebuchadnezzar Captured Jerusalem (586 B.C.), 3660, 3674, 4866  
     Destroyed Temple of Solomon, 7092  
     Daniel, 1820-1821  
     Ezekiel, 2354-2355  
 The Prophets, 3674-3675  
   Founded Judaism, 3675  
   Chronological List of the Important Prophets  
     Samuel, 6357, 6359  
     Elijah, 2207  
     Elisha, 2209  
     Jonah, 3694-3695  
     Isaiah, 3562  
     Hosea, 3255-3256  
     Amos, 3656  
     Micah, 4453  
     Nahum, 4801  
     Joel, 3680  
     Zephaniah, 7972  
     Jeremiah, 3655-3656  
     Habakkuk, 2996  
     Ezekiel, 2354-2355  
     Haggai, 3003  
     Zechariah, 7971  
     Malachi, 4236  
     John the Baptist, 3691-3692  
   [See additional mention of these characters above; also Outline on *Religion*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Release from Captivity, and Restoration  
   Cyrus the Great Captured Babylon (538 B.C.), 562, 1800  
   Released the Jews from Captivity, 1800, 3660, 3675  
   Better Times under Persian Rule, 3675  
   Granted a Form of Self-Government, 3675  
   Temple at Jerusalem Rebuilt, 3660, 3675, 7092  
 The Dispersal and Greek Domination  
   Alexander the Great, 3660, 3675, 199-200  
   Persian Rule Ended (332 B.C.), 3675  
   [See *Persia*, above.]  
   Alexander's Empire Divided, 201  
   Rule of Ptolemy I, 3660, 3675, 5870  
   [See *Ancient Egypt*, above.]  
   Conflict between Greeks and Jews, 3660, 3675  
 The Maccabees, 4173, 3660, 3675  
   Matthias, 4173  
   Sanhedrin Established, 6374

- Coming of the Romans, 3675  
 Pompey Conquered Palestine (63 B.C.), 3660  
 Herod the Great, King of Judea, 3163, 2663  
 Archelaus Succeeded Herod, 3163  
 Herod Antipas, 3163  
   Beheaded John the Baptist, 3163, 3691-3692  
   In Power during Life of Christ, 3163  
   Story of Jesus Christ, 3662-3671  
   Last Years of Herod, 3163  
 Jews under Roman Procurators  
   Pontius Pilate, 5615  
   Trial of Jesus, 5615, 3668  
 Herod Agrippa I (A.D. 41), 3163  
 Palestine under Direct Roman Rule, 3163  
 Herod Agrippa II, 3163  
 Antonius Felix, a Roman Procurator (A.D. 52-60), 2392  
   Paul Tried before Felix, 5420  
 Porcius Festus (A.D. 60-62), 2402  
   Story of Paul, 2402, 5420  
 Rise of Christianity  
   In the East  
     Antioch, 6991  
     Corinth, 1676  
     Egypt, 2152  
     Greece, 2947  
   In the West  
     Rome, 6176  
       Church Founded by Saint Peter, 5731  
       [See *Rise and Fall of the Roman Empire*, below.]  
 Revolt against Rome  
   Vespasian Led Roman Forces, 7510  
   Titus Destroyed Jerusalem (A.D. 70), 7189, 3675, 7510  
   Arch of Titus, 7189, 7190  
   [See *Rise and Fall of the Roman Empire*, below.]  
 Dispersion of Jews through Roman Empire, 3675  
 Persecutions of the Jews, 3676
- Lesser Countries of Asia Minor**
- Armenia**  
 Location Map, 408  
 Importance in Bible History  
   Mount Ararat, 343, 1886-1887, 5036  
 Foreign Control, 408  
 Independence Regained, 408  
 Conquered by Alexander the Great (325 B.C.), 408  
 Divisions of Armenia, 408  
 Under Roman Rule  
   Conquered by Pompey, 5725  
   Annexed under Trajan, 7240  
 Persian and Arabian Rule (A.D. 387), 408
- Lydia**  
 Location Map, 4162  
 Sardis, the Capital City, 4162  
 Contributions to Civilization, 4162
- Reign of Croesus (560 to 546 B.C.), 1751, 4162  
 War with Persia (546 B.C.), 1751, 1800  
 Victory of Cyrus the Great, 1800, 4162  
   [See *Persia*, above.]
- Media**, 4372  
 Invaded by Scythians, 6463  
 Joined Babylonia against Assyria (606 B.C.), 462, 562  
   [See *Babylonia*, above.]  
 Conquered by the Persians (549 B.C.), 4372, 5500  
 Astyages Overthrown by Cyrus the Great, 1799-1800  
   [See *Persia*, above.]
- Parthia**  
 The People, 5403  
 Political History  
   Conquered by Cyrus the Great, 5403  
   Organized into a Satrapy by Darius, 5403, 1828  
   Conquered by Alexander the Great, 5403  
 Independent Kingdom, 5403  
 Empire Extended, 5403  
   Babylon under Parthian Rule, 562  
   Assyria under Parthian Rule, 462  
   Hecatompylos, the Capital, 5403  
 In the Mithridatic Wars, 4563  
 Resisted Roman Invasion  
   Campaigns of Trajan, 7240  
   Battle of Nisibis (A.D. 217), 5403  
 A Part of the New Persian Empire, 5403  
   [See *Persia*, above.]
- Phoenicia**, Land of the First Traders  
 Semitic Race, 6488  
 Home of the Phoenicians, 5569  
 Cities  
   Sidon, Tyre, 5570  
 The People and Their Occupations  
   First Great Commercial Power, 5569, 1582  
   Knowledge of Navigation, 5569, 4841  
   Ideas of Geography, 2722  
 Colonies of the Phoenicians  
   Southern Coast of Asia Minor, Southern Spain, Sicily, and North Africa, 5569  
   Cyprus, 1799  
   Sardinia, 6386-6387  
   Cadiz, 6727  
   Utica, 7435  
   Carthage, 1219  
 Industries Developed to Supply Trade  
   Textiles, Metallic Arts, Mining, Sculpture, and Building, 5569  
   Dyeing and Dyestuffs, 2063  
   Famous Purple of Tyre, 2063, 5570  
   Glassware, 2832  
 Spread of Civilization, 5569  
   Developed the Alphabet, 233-234  
 Other Cultural Developments  
   Buildings, 5570  
   Pottery: Phoenician Vases, 5570  
 Religion  
   Animistic Worship, 5569  
   Baal, 552

Astarte, Principal Phoenician Goddess, 463  
 Milk, a Phoenician God, 5569  
**Political History**  
 No Political Ambitions, 5570  
 Conquered by Assyrians, 462  
 Conquered by Babylonians (606 B.C.), 5570  
   [See *Babylonia*, above.]  
 Persian Rule  
   [See *Persia*, above.]  
 Alexander the Great, 5570, 199  
 Egyptian Rule under Ptolemy, 5570,  
   5870  
 Identity Lost under Roman Rule, 5570  
**Pontus**, 5728

Reign of Mithridates (135-63 B.C.), 5728,  
   4562-4563  
 Mithridatic Wars, 4563, 6175  
 Pompey, 5725, 6175  
   [See *The Rise and Fall of the Roman Em-*  
   *pire*, below.]  
**Phrygia**  
 The People, 5587  
 Occupations, 5586-5587  
 Traditional History  
   Gordius, Peasant Who Tied Gordian  
   Knot, 2874  
   Midas, Mythical King, 4469-4470  
 Absorbed by the Roman Empire, 5586

## The Rise of Western Civilization

### Ancient Greece

#### Legendary Beginnings

Hellen, the Traditional Ancestor, 2939  
 Four Tribes of Greece  
   Achaeans, 20, 2939  
   Aeolians, 68, 2939  
   Dorians, 2013, 2939, 2944  
   Ionians, 3503, 2939, 451  
 Legendary History of Athens and Sparta,  
   480, 6743

#### Geography of the Ancient Grecian World

Influence of Geography on the History of  
   Greece, 2721, 2939, 2943  
 Divisions of Ancient Greece  
   Northern Greece

  Epirus, 2281  
   Illyria, the Present Albania, 180  
   Macedonia, 4178  
   Thessaly, 7148

#### Central Greece

  Acarnania, Aeniania, Doris, Malis, Me-  
   garis, Oetaea, 348 (Map)  
   Aetolia, or Atolia, 348, 7148 (Maps)  
   Attica, 497  
   Athens, the Capital, 480

#### Boeotia, 812

  Thebes, the Principal City, 7140  
   Locris, 348, 7148 (Maps)  
   Phocis, 348, 7148 (Maps)

#### The Peloponnesus, 5449

  Achaea, 20  
   Arcadia, 347, 348 (Map)  
   Argolis, 348 (Map)  
   Also Called Corinthia, 1677 (Map)  
   Corinth, the Principal City, 1675-  
   1677

  Mycenae, an Ancient City, 4784

  Elis, 348 (Map)

  Laconia, 3834

    Home of the Spartans, 6743

  Messenia, 4413

Islands of the Aegean Sea, 66-67

  "Stepping Stones" to Asia Minor, 2939

  The Cyclades, 1795

  Crete, 1742

  Archaeological Findings, 354

  Euboea, 2312, 348 (Map)

  Ionian Islands

    Corfu, Ithaca, and Cephalonia, 3503

  Lemnos, 67

  Lesbos, 67

  Melos, or Milo, 4385

  Patmos, 5415

  Rhodes, 6097

  Salamis, 6330

  Samos, 6356-6357

#### Ancient Cities and Division of Asia Minor

  Abydos, 12

  Arbela, an Assyrian City, 462

    Captured by Alexander the Great, 200,  
     2413

  Bithynia, 776

  Cappadocia, 5587 (Map)

  Caria, 5587 (Map)

  Cilicia, 776 (Map)

  Galatia, 2661

  Lycania, 776 (Map)

  Lycia, 2661 (Map)

  Lydia, 4162

    [See *Lesser Countries of Asia Minor*,  
     above.]

  Mysia, 5587 (Map)

  Pamphylia, 776 (Map)

  Paphlagonia, 5587 (Map)

  Phrygia, 5586

    [See *Lesser Countries of Asia Minor*,  
     above.]

  Pisidia, 5587 (Map)

  Pontus, 5728

    [See *Lesser Countries of Asia Minor*,  
     above.]

  Tarsus, 7025

#### Asiatic Greeks

  Aeolia, 68

  Ionians, 3502

#### Heroic Age, Legendary History, 86

  Mycenae, an Important City, 4784

    [See Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and*  
     *Legend*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Greek Middle Age, 2944-2945

  Achaeans of Southeastern Thessaly, 20

- Dorian Migration, 2013, 2944
  - Driven Out of Thessaly, 2013
  - Ancestors of the Spartans, 2013, 6743
  - Pushed out the Achaeans, 20
- Ionians of Attica, 3503
  - Athenians Descendants of Ionians, 497, 3503
  - Colonization in Asia Minor, 451
    - Miletus, 4474
    - Ephesus, 2277
- Samos, 6356-6357
  - Polycrates, 5716
- Greek Colonization, 1550, 2946
  - Sicily, 6592
    - Syracuse, 6986
    - Naxos, 6592
    - Agrirentum, 6592
  - Italy, Magna Graecia, 2946
- Development of Government, 2946
  - Aristocracy, 381
  - Oligarchy, 5192
  - Democracy of Early Greece, 2883, 2946
  - The City State, 1441, 2946
    - Important City States
      - Athens, 480-483
      - Sparta, 6743-6744
      - Thebes, 7140
    - [For details of the history of these cities, see below.]
- Economic Development
  - Trade and Commerce
    - Corinth, 1675-1676
    - Ephesus, 2277
    - Miletus, 4474-4475
- Manners and Customs of the Ancient Greeks**
  - Sources of Information
    - Homer, 3210
      - The Iliad, 3349-3350
      - The Odyssey, 5162-5165
    - Excavations of Troy, 7278
      - Work of Heinrich Schliemann, 6414
    - Excavations at Mycenae, 4784
  - Dress
    - Himation, 2034
    - Greek Tunic, the Chiton, 7293, 2035
    - Peplos, 2034
    - Sandals, 2036
    - Costume 500 B.C., following 1706
    - Jewelry, 3672, opposite 3672, 3673
  - Furnishings in the Home, 2647
  - Lamps for Lighting, 3848, 3849
  - Language and Writing
    - Greek Alphabet, 233-234
    - [See Outline on *Language*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Greek Coins, 5114, 5115
  - Life of the Spartan Youth
    - [See *Ancient Sparta*, below.]
  - Education
    - [See *Ancient Athens*, *Ancient Sparta*, below.]
  - Chronology, or Measurement of Time, 5195
  - Warfare
    - Armor, 410, 411
    - Shield, 6559-6560
    - Weapons
      - Battering-Ram, 652
      - Catapult, 1239
      - Sling, 6642-6643
      - Sword, 6981
    - Order of Battle: Phalanx, 5530
- Slavery, 2942
  - Famous Slaves
    - Aesop, 69
    - Epictetus, 2277
- Religion, 2940
  - Mysteries, 4785
    - [See Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]
- Status of Women, 2940
- Sports and Amusements, 2679
  - Hippodrome, 3183
  - Stadiums, 6790
  - National Festivals, 2401
    - Olympian Games, 5196-5197
    - Nemean Games, 4875-4876
    - Pythian Games, 5898
    - Isthmian Games, 3569
  - Events
    - Boxing, 901, 2679
    - Chariot Racing, 1310, 2679
    - Discus Throwing, 1958
    - Marathon Races, 5928
    - Racing, 4875, 5928
    - Wrestling, 7895
  - Prizes
    - Laurel Wreath, 3893, 5928
    - Palm Branch and Crown of Parsley, 4875
    - [See Outline on *Games and Recreations*, in this GUIDE.]
- Theaters and Plays, 7138
- Ancient Athens**
  - Legendary Kings
    - [See Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Athenian Life
    - Luxury-Loving People, 2939
    - Education of Children, 2940
    - Pedagogues, 5439
  - Government
    - Aristocracy of Athens, 381
    - Archons, 369
    - Court of Justice, 372
  - Acropolis, 23, 481, 482
  - Draco, the Law-Giver, 2018, 480
  - Reforms of Solon, 6684, 480
  - Benevolent Tyranny of Pisistratus, 5629
    - Public Works and Improvements, 5629
      - Built the Lyceum, 5629, 4162
    - Left Rule to His Sons Hippias and Hipparchus, 480, 5629
  - Constitutional Reforms of Clisthenes, 480, 1485
    - Suffered Ostracism, 1485, 5267
- Ancient Sparta**
  - Location Map, 6743

- Legendary History  
   [See Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Descendants of the Dorians, 2013  
 Life Based on Rigid Discipline, 6743, 2314  
 System of Education, 2940, 6743  
 How the Spartans Lived, 6744  
 Conquered Subjects  
   Helots, Slaves of the Upper Class, 3136, 6744  
   Perioeci, 6744  
 Traditional Constitution of Lycurgus, 4162, 6743  
 Sparta's Rise to Supremacy, 6744  
   Messenia, 4413, 6744  
**The Persian Wars**  
   Ionians under Persian Rule, 2946  
   Athenians Aided Ionians, 480, 2946  
   Attempts of Darius I to Conquer Greece, 2946, 5500, 1829  
   Second Expedition  
     Battle of Marathon, One of the Fifteen Decisive Battles, 2413, 1829, 2946, 4281, 4491  
     Miltiades, the Athenian General, 4491  
     Decided Supremacy of Western Civilization, 2413, 5500  
     Made Athens the First Grecian Power, 2946  
   Athenian Policy of Preparedness, 480  
     Urged by Aristides, 381  
   Themistocles, Rival of Aristides, 7140-7141  
   Third Persian Expedition  
     Unsuccessful Invasion of Xerxes (480 B.C.), 2946  
   Persian Victories at Artemisium and Athens, 7917  
   Battle of Thermopylae, 7146  
   Greek Allies, 7146, 2946  
   Leaders  
     Leonidas, King of Sparta, 3937  
     Xerxes, 7917  
   Treachery of Ephialtes, 7146, 3937  
   Heroism of Leonidas, 3937, 7146  
   Victory for Persians, 2946, 3937, 7146, 7917  
   Naval Battle at Salamis, 2946, 5500, 6330, 7917  
   Themistocles Commanded Greek Fleet, 7140  
   Cimon, Athenian General, 1425-1426  
   Xerxes Fled to Sardis, 7917  
   Greek Victory at Plataea, 2946, 7917  
   Result of Persian Wars  
     Ended Persian Invasion in Europe, 2946  
     Beginning of Persian Decadence, 5500  
**Organization of Confederacy of Delos, 480**  
**Period of Athenian Supremacy, 480, 6744**  
   Themistocles Rebuilt Athens, 7140, 2942  
   Age of Pericles, 5487-5488, 86, 481  
   Athens in the Time of Pericles, 481-482, 2939  
 Architecture and Art  
   The Glory That Was Greece, 361, 2941  
   [See Outlines on *Architecture and Art*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Drama and the Theater  
   Aeschylus, 68  
   Aristophanes, 381-382  
   Euripides, 2316  
   Sophocles, 6689  
 Sculpture, 6456-6457  
   Phidias, 5535, 6457  
   [See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Literature  
   [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Reforms of Pericles, 5487-5488  
   Opposed by  
     Cimon, 1426  
     Thucydides, 5487, 7164  
   Aspasia, the Wife of Pericles, 452  
**Rivalry of Sparta and Athens**  
   Underlying Causes of Peloponnesian War, 5448  
   Athens Organized Confederacy of Delos, 480  
   Sparta Jealous of Athenian Supremacy, 480, 2946-2947, 5448, 5488, 6744  
   Immediate Cause of the War, 5448  
   Athens Aided Corcyra against Corinth, 5448  
   Spartan Ultimatum to Athens, 5448, 4801  
   Theban Attack on Plataea, 7140  
   Beginning of the War (431 B.C.)  
   Relative Military Strength, 5449, 2947  
   Allies of Sparta  
     Boeotian League, 812  
     Corinth, 1676  
   Sparta's Plan of Offense, 5448, 2947  
   Athenian Defense  
     People Brought within Walls of Athens, 5449, 5488  
     Avoided Land Battles, 5449, 2947  
     Plague in Athens, 2947, 5449  
     Death of Pericles, 2947, 5488  
   Thucydides Commanded Athenian Fleet, 7164  
   Peace of Nicias (421 B.C.), 5022  
   Hostilities Renewed, 193  
   Athenian Expedition to Sicily, 5449, 2947  
   Alcibiades Chosen to Lead, 193  
   Succeeded by Nicias, 5022  
   Naval Battle of Syracuse (413 B.C.)  
     One of the Fifteen Decisive Battles, 2413  
   Treason of Alcibiades, 194  
   Surrender of Nicias, 5022  
   Results: Checked Westward Expansion of Greeks, 2413  
   Return of Alcibiades, 194  
   Second Downfall of Alcibiades, 4165  
     Sought Refuge in Asia Minor, 194  
   Surrender of Athens (404 B.C.), 2947, 4165, 5549, 480  
   Sparta Supreme in Greece, 2947, 6744

## Period of Spartan Supremacy

Despotic Rule, 6744, 2947

Rule of the Thirty Tyrants at Athens, 480, 7150

## New Persian Wars

Expedition of Cyrus the Younger, 1800

Xenophon, 7915-7916

Told Story in Anabasis, 270, 7916

Return of the 10,000 Greeks, 7916

[See *Persia*, above.]

## Theban Revolution

Pelopidas, 5448

Epaminondas, 2276

Battle of Leuctra (371 B.C.), 2947, 5448, 7140

Sparta Lost Its Supremacy, 6744

## Period of Theban Supremacy

Epaminondas, Leader, 2276, 7140

Freed Messenia, 4413

Death of Epaminondas, 2947

End of Theban Supremacy, 7140, 2947

## Period of Foreign Rule

Reason for Foreign Invasion, 2947

Macedonian Conquest, 4178

Philip II, 5546

Learned Military Tactics from the Greeks, 5546

Phalanx Formation, 5530, 5547

Demosthenes Opposed Philip

Famous Philippics, 1890, 2947, 5546

Phocion, Opponent of Demosthenes, 5568

Battle of Chaeronea (338 B.C.), 2947, 5547

Demosthenes, 1890

Ctesiphon, 1890, 68

Aeschines, 68

Result of Macedonian Conquests, 2947

## Alexandrian Empire

Alexander the Great (336-323 B.C.), 199-201

Son of Philip II, 5547

Educated by Aristotle, 382

Quelled Rebellious Greeks, 199, 7140

Spared Home of Pindar, the Poet, 5619

Conquest of the World

Persia (334 B.C.), 199, 5500

Defeat of Darius III at Issus, 1829

[See *Persia*, above.]

Phoenicia (332 B.C.), 199, 5570

Palestine, 199, 3660, 3675

Egypt, 200

Received as Deliverer, 2152

[See *Ancient Egypt*, above.]

Second Contest with Darius III, 200

Arbela (331 B.C.), 1829, 2413

India, 200, 3387

Founded Alexandria, 200

Explorations of Nearchus, 200-201

Built Bucephala, 201

Babylon, the Capital of the Empire, 201

Results of Alexander's Conquests, 201

[For cultural and scientific advances, see below.]

Division of Alexander's Empire, 201

## Alexandrian Age, 86, 201

[See *Ancient Egypt*, above.]

Important Cities besides Alexandria

Antioch, 6991

Rhodes, 6097

Conquest of Greece by Rome (146 B.C.), 2947

Capture and Destruction of Corinth, 1676

[See *Rise and Fall of the Roman Empire*, below.]

Summary of Greek Contributions to Civilization, 2324

Created Highest Standards of Architecture, 361-362

The Glory That Was Greece, 2941

[See Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]

Founded Scientific Astronomy through Achievements of Hipparchus, 3182

[See Outline on *Astronomy*, in this GUIDE.]

Embodied Beauty in the Physical and the Intellectual, 2939-2940

Beauty in the Arts, 2940

Olympian Games, 5196

Originated European Drama, 2022, 2023, 2026

[See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

Developed Distinct System of Education, 2940, 6743-6744

Advanced New Theories in Geography, 2721-

2722

Eratosthenes, 2079, 2722

Created the Artistic Form of History

Herodotus, 3164

Thucydides, 7164

Xenophon, 7915-7916

Made Advances in Music, 4760

[See Outline on *Music*, in this GUIDE.]

Perfected the Art of Poetry, 4048

[See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

Discovered New Facts in Mathematics

Apollonius of Perga, 86

Geometry

Archimedes, 358, 2746

Euclid, 2313-2314, 2746

Plato, 5898

Pythagoras, 5898

Trigonometry

Hipparchus, 3182

Developed Realism in Painting

Apelles, 316-317

Parrhasius, 5398

Zeuxis, 7973

Created Highest Standards of Sculpture

[See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]

Founded the Science of Philosophy, 5566

[See Outline on *Philosophy*, in this GUIDE.]

Discovered New Facts in Physics

Archimedes, 358

Archimedean Screw, 357

Mechanical Principles

Lever, 358, 3950-3951, 4369

Pulley, 358, 4369, 5877-5878

- Screw, 358, 4369, 6453-6454
- Specific Gravity, 358, 2918
- Hydrostatics, 358, 3309
- Mirror, 358, 4532
- [See Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]

### Rise and Fall of the Roman Empire

### The Land and People

- Favorable Geographic Location, 3572
- Central Position in the Mediterranean, 4378-4379

### Seven Hills of Rome

- Quirinal, 5923, 6171, 6180
- Capitoline, Viminal, Esquiline, Palatine, Aventine, and Caelian, 6171, 6180

### Ancient Divisions of Italy

- Aequi, Apulia, Bruttii, Calabria, Campania, Freutani, Gallia Cisalpina, Liguria, Lucania, Peucetii, Picenum, Sabini, Samnium, Umbria, Venetia, 3889 (Map)

### Etruria, 2310-2311

- The Present Tuscany, 7328

### Latium, 3888, 3889

### Racial Divisions of Italy

- Gauls in the North, 2705-2706
- Etruscans North of the Tiber, 2310-2311
- Latins, Hernicans, Volscians, Auruncans, and Aequi, in the Center, 3888
- Sabines, 6290
  - Location map, 3889
- Samnites, 6353
  - Location Map, 3889
- Greeks in Southern Italy, 2946
- Sicily, 6592

### Legendary Beginnings

- Aeneas, the Legendary Founder, 67, 6171
  - Story Told in the Aeneid, 67
- Romulus, Founder of Rome (753 B.C.), 6181-6182, 6171
  - Romulus and Remus Nourished by the Wolf, 6182
- Seven Legendary Kings of Rome, 6171
  - Romulus, the First Legendary King. [See above.]
- Numa Pompilius (715 to 672 B.C.), 5112
- Tullius Hostilius and Ancus Martius, 6171
- Tarquinius Lucius (616-578 B.C.), 7025
  - War with Sabines and Etruscans, 7025, 2311
- Circus Maximus, 7025, 1434, 1435
- Servius Tullius (578 B.C.), 6505-6506
- Lucius Tarquinius, 7025
  - Story of Horatius at the Bridge, 3238

### Civilization, Manners, and Customs

- Example of Lower Civilization, 1448
- Dress, 2034
  - Citizen, Statesman, Tribune, 2035
- Jewelry, 3672, facing 3672, 3673
  - Old Forms of Rings, 6130
- Sandals, 861
- Toga, 7198-7199
- Tunic, 7293

### Home

- Atrium, or Living Room, 494, 493
- Roman Dining Table, 6172
- Articles from Homes of Pompeii, 5724
- Furniture, 2647
- Lamps for Lighting, 3848, 3849
- Gods and Goddesses
  - Lares and Penates, 3879-3880
  - Vesta, 7511-7512

### Public Baths, 651

### The Forum, Center of Roman Life, 2547

### Drainage System

- Cloaca Maxima, 2547, 6177

### Castles, or Fortifications, 1232

### Transportation

- Beasts of Burden, 7251
- Galleys, 2666
- Triremes, 7271, 7272
- Chariots, 1310

### Warfare

- Roman Legions, 3923-3924
- Praetorian Guard, 5793
- Campus Martius, 1116

### Sports and Amusements

- The Roman Circus, 1434, 1435
  - A Hippodrome, 3183
- Campus Martius, 1116
- Colosseum, 1565
- Gladiators, 2827
  - Spartacus, 6744, 6745
- Wrestling, 7895
- Theaters, 7138
  - Pantomime, 5342
  - [See Outline on *Games and Recreations*, in this GUIDE.]

### Religion

- [For the Roman gods and goddesses and their functions, see Outline on *Mythology, Folklore, and Legend*, in this GUIDE.]

### Festivals, 2401

- Cerealia, in Honor of Ceres, 1291
- Lupercalia, 4156
- Saturnalia, 6399

### Augurs, a Sacred College, 499

### Pontifex, 5727

### Ancient Asylums, 478

### Woman under Roman Domination, 6178, 6180

### Writing and Language

- [See Outline on *Language*, in this GUIDE.]

### Classes in Early Rome, 6171-6172

### Patricians, 5416

- Derivation of the Term Citizen, 1436

### Plebeians, or Lower Class, 5657, 6172, 6505

### Government

- The Senate of Rome, 6491
- The Assembly, or Comitia
  - Comitia Curiata, 1582
  - Comitia Centuriata, 1582
  - Comitia Tributa, 1582
- The Roman Magistrates
  - The Roman Consul, 1643

- Dictator, 1941
- Tribunes of the People, 7267
- Praetors, or Judges, 5793
- The Two Censors, 1282
- Quaestors, Assistants to Consuls, 5901
- Imperator, 3370
- Attendants to the Officials
  - Lictors, 3975, 3977
  - Fasces, 2374
  - Praetorian Guard, 5793
- Other Titles, Offices, and Honors
  - Citizens Called Quirites, 5923
  - Emperor, 2228
  - Caesar, 1066
  - Augustus, 502
  - Military
    - The Military Tribunes, 7267
    - Imperator, 3370
    - Triumph, the Highest Military Honor, 7272
- Early Days of the Republic
  - Republic Established (509 B.C.), 6172
  - Kings Replaced by Consuls, 6172, 1643
  - Provision for Dictator, 1941
  - Struggle of the Plebeians for Power, 5657
    - First Concessions to Plebeians
      - Revolted in 494 B.C., 7267
      - Granted a Tribune of the People, 6172, 7267
      - Assembly of Patricians and Plebeians (Comitia Centuriata), 1582
    - Coriolanus and the Famine, 1677
    - The Story of Cincinnatus, 1430
    - Written Laws
      - Plebeians Demanded a Regular Code, 6172
      - Decemvirs Appointed, 1859
      - Laws of the Twelve Tables (452 B.C.), 7331
  - Other Plebeian Gains
    - Social Equality, 6173, 5416
    - Fight for the Office of Consul
      - Assembly by Tribes (Comitia Tributa) Recognized, 1582, 6172
    - Military Tribunes with Consular Powers, 6173, 7267
    - Licinian Laws (367 B.C.), 6173
    - Praetor, 5793, 5657
- Rome Extends Its Boundaries
  - Conquests of the People of Italy
    - Etruscans, 2311
    - Volscians and Aequians, 6173
  - Gallic Invasion (390 B.C.)
    - Sacked and Burned Rome, 6173, 2705
    - Heroism of Manlius, 6173
    - Aroused by the Sacred Geese, 2872-2873
  - Revolt of the Latins (338 B.C.)
    - Crushed and Incorporated in Rome, 6173, 3888
  - Struggle with the Samnites (343-290 B.C.), 6173, 6353
  - Building the Appian Way
    - Construction Begun by Appius Claudius, 322
- The Struggle with Pyrrhus, 5898
- Rivalry of Rome and Carthage
  - Importance of the Mediterranean Sea, 4378
  - Carthage, 1219, 1220
  - The Punic Wars (264-146 B.C.)
    - First Punic War (264-241 B.C.), 5883, 6173, 1220
    - Marcus Atilius Regulus, 6046
    - Hamilcar Barca, Carthaginian General, 3025
    - Romans Victorious, 5883
    - Second Punic War (218-201 B.C.)
      - Hamilcar Barca in Spain, 3025
      - Plans Executed by Hasdrubal, 3060
      - Hannibal Destined to Avenge Carthaginians, 3037
      - Use of Elephants, 2198, 3037
      - Crossing the Alps, 234, 3037-3038
      - Fire-Cold Method of Blasting, 788
      - Battle with Scipio at Ticino, 3038, 6435
      - Fabius Cunctator, Roman Dictator, 2356
      - Other Prominent Romans
        - Cato the Elder, 1248
        - Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, 2884
      - Battle of Cannae, 1171, 3038
      - Demoralization at Capua, 3038
      - Philip V of Macedon an Ally of Hannibal, 3038, 6174
      - Capture of Tarentum (212 B.C.), 3038
      - Battle of Metaurus River, 2413
      - Scipio's African Campaign, 3038, 6435
      - Battle of Zama (202 B.C.), 3038, 6174, 6435
      - Result of Second Punic War
        - Rome Gained Possession of Carthage, 6174
        - Spain, 5883, 6734
        - Carthaginian Navy and Elephants, 6174
    - Third Punic War (149-146 B.C.)
      - A Siege of Carthage, 1220, 6174
      - Carthage Destroyed, 5883, 6174
      - Scipio Africanus Minor, Roman Consul, 6435
    - Conquered Districts Became Provinces, 5856
    - Restlessness in Spain, 6174
    - Jugurtha, the Numidian Prince, 3707
    - Tiberius Gracchus, Roman General in Spain, 2884
    - Scipio Africanus Minor, Roman Commander in Spain, 6435
    - Numantines Conquered, 6435
    - Caius Marius, 4293
- Roman Conquests in the East
  - Parthians Resisted Roman Invasion (217 B.C.), 5403
  - [See *Parthia*, above.]
  - The Macedonian Wars (215-146 B.C.)
    - Causes of the War, 6174
    - Battle of Cynoscephalae (197 B.C.)



Thessaly Under Roman Rule, 7148  
 Defeat of the Greeks (146 B.C.), 6174,  
 2947  
 Corinth Destroyed by Lucius Mummius,  
 1676  
 Rome Supreme in Greece, 2947  
 [See *Ancient Greece*, above.]  
**Last Century of the Republic**  
 Decline of Religious Life, 6174  
 Political Liberty Waning, 6174  
 Government Became an Aristocracy, 381  
 Increase in the Power of the Senate, 6401  
 Attempted Reforms of the Gracchi, 2884  
 Agrarian Laws, 88  
 Rivalry of Marius and Sulla  
 The First Invasion of the Germans  
 Cimbri Began Southern March (113  
 B.C.), 1425  
 Marius Checked Barbarian Invasion,  
 1425, 4203  
 Battles at  
 Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.), 1425  
 Vercelli (101 B.C.), 1425  
 Jugurthine War Conducted by Marius,  
 4203  
 Jugurtha Dissatisfied with Numidia,  
 3707  
 Location of Numidia, 5114  
 Betrayal of Jugurtha, 3707-3708  
 Captured and Punished by Marius, 3708  
 The Social War (91 B.C.)  
 Cause: Italians Demanded Citizenship,  
 6174  
 Service of Sulla, 6915  
 The Mithridatic War (88 B.C.)  
 Mithridates, King of Pontus, 4562  
 Sulla Conducted Roman Defense, 6915  
 The Civil War, 6175  
 Jealousy of Marius for Sulla, 4293, 6174,  
 6915  
 Marius Led Lower Classes, 6174  
 Sulla Led Patricians, 6174  
 Sulla Victorious, 6174, 6915  
 Marius Fled to Africa, 4293  
 Second Mithridatic War (87-83 B.C.)  
 Sulla Forced Surrender of Mithridates,  
 4563, 6915  
 Marius Returned to Rome, 4293  
 Dictatorship of Sulla, 6915  
 Aid of Marcus Crassus, 1735  
 Popularity of Pompey, 5725  
 Rivalry of Pompey and Caesar, 5725  
 War of the Gladiators (73-71 B.C.)  
 Spartacus, Leader, 6744-6745, 2827  
 Two Roman Consuls Curb Uprising  
 Crassus, 1735, 6745  
 Pompey, 5725  
 Pompey as Consul, 5725  
 The Third Mithridatic War (66-63 B.C.)  
 Victory of Pompey, 4563, 5725  
 Pontus, 5725, 5728  
 Captured Jerusalem, 3660, 5725  
 [See *The Jews*, above.]

The Conspiracy of Catiline  
 Consulship of Cicero, 1423-1424  
 Catiline's Plot, 1247  
 Cicero's First Oration against Catiline, 1247, 1424  
 The First Triumvirate (60 B.C.), 7273  
 Why It Was Formed, 5725  
 Members  
 Pompey, 5725  
 Julius Caesar, 1066  
 Crassus, 1735  
 Caesar Elected Consul (59 B.C.), 1066  
 Caesar's Gallic Campaigns (58-50 B.C.)  
 Sent to Gaul as Proconsul, 1066, 2706  
 Campaigns Against  
 Helvetii, 1066, 3136  
 Belgae, 698, 1066  
 Germans, 1066, 2782  
 Caesar in Britain (55 B.C.), 1066, 2254-  
 2255  
 Civil War  
 Pompey Jealous of Caesar's Power,  
 1066, 5725  
 Caesar Crossed the Rubicon (49 B.C.),  
 1066, 5725, 6234  
 Caesar's Expedition to Spain, 1067  
 Lepidus, Dictator, 3938  
 Caesar Made Dictator on His Return  
 from Spain, 1067  
 Caesar in Thessaly  
 Defeated Pompey at Pharsalia (48  
 B.C.), 1067, 5725  
 Brutus Fought with Pompey, 985  
 Mark Antony Second in Command,  
 314  
 Death of Pompey, 5725  
 Caesar at the Height of His Power  
 Caesar Declared Dictator, Consul, and  
 Tribune for Life, 1067  
 Campaign in Egypt  
 Restored Cleopatra to Power, 1067,  
 1465, 2152  
 Caesar under the Spell of Cleopatra  
 [See *Ancient Egypt*, above.]  
 Campaign in Asia Minor  
 At Pharnaces, 1067  
 Campaign in Africa  
 Defeated Pompey's Allies at Thapsus,  
 1067  
 Suicide of Cato, 1067, 1248-1249  
 Made Dictator for Ten Years, 1067  
 Campaign in Spain  
 Defeated Sons of Pompey (45 B.C.),  
 1067  
 Made Imperator for Life, 1067, 3370  
 Derivation of Title Emperor, 2228  
 Constructive Work of Caesar  
 Revised the Roman Calendar, 1067,  
 1075-1076  
 Calends, Nones, and Ides, 4630  
 Rebuilt Corinth, 1676  
 Assassination of Caesar, 1067, 1068  
 Betrayal of Brutus, 985

- Funeral Oration of Mark Antony, 985, 1067, 314
- Mark Antony, the Foremost Man of Rome
- Consul with Caesar, 314
- Triumvirate Formed against Brutus, 314, 7273
- Octavius (Later Augustus), 502-503
- Antony, 314
- Lepidus, 3938
- Brutus Defeated at Philippi (42 B.C.), 314, 503, 985
- Suicide of Brutus, 985
- Antony and Cleopatra, 314, 1465
- Octavius Angered at Excesses of Antony, 314, 503, 1465
- War between Cleopatra and Rome
- [See *Ancient Egypt*, above.]
- The Establishment of the Empire**
- Triumph of Octavius Celebrated, 503
- Achievements of Augustus (27 B.C.-A.D. 14)
- Ruled Rome as an Empire, 503
- Honor of Roman Citizenship, 6175-6176
- Brought Rome to Its Height, 6175
- The Augustan Age in Literature, 86
- Vergil, 7494-7496
- Horace, 3237-3238
- Ovid, 5277
- Livy, 4062
- Extent of the Empire at His Death, 503
- Defeat of the Roman Legions by Germans (A.D. 9)
- Battle of Teutoburg Forest, 2782, 2413
- Rome in Its Greatest Glory
- How the City Looked, 6177
- Sewers, the Cloaca Maxima, 2547, 6177
- Aqueducts, 337
- Famous Buildings, 6177-6178
- Baths of Caracalla, 651
- Baths of Hadrian, 3001
- Campus Martius, 1116
- A Hippodrome, 3183
- Circus Maximus, 1434, 1435
- Colosseum, 1565
- Forum, 2547-2548
- [See *Civilization, Manners, and Customs*, above.]
- Forum of Trajan, 7242
- Hadrian's Tomb, following 3000, 3001, 6173
- Pantheon, 5341-5342, 6177
- Temple of Jupiter on Capitoline Hill, 1186
- Triumphal Arches
- Arch of Constantine, 1625
- Arch of Titus, 7189, 7190
- Arch of Trajan, 7240, 7242
- The Reign of Tiberius (A.D. 14-37)**
- Tyranny of His Rule, 6176, 7166
- Christ Crucified during Reign, 6176
- Established Praetorian Guard, 5793
- Beginnings of Christianity
- [See *The Jews*, above.]
- Caligula, the Mad Ruler (A.D. 37-41)
- His Insanity and Excesses, 1097, 6176
- Assassination, 1097
- Claudius (A.D. 41-54)
- Declared Emperor by the Soldiers, 1457
- Extension of Citizenship to Gallic Nobles, 1457
- Laws Protecting Slaves, 1457-1458
- Conquests in Britain, 1458, 2255, 6176
- Built Claudian Aqueduct, 337, 1458
- Poisoned by Agrippina, 106, 1458
- Nero (A.D. 54-68)
- Early Life, 4879
- Son of Agrippina, 106, 4879
- Tutored by Seneca, 4879, 6491
- A Reign of Murder and License, 4879, 6176
- Insurrection in Britain
- Boadicea, 4879
- Rome Burned and Rebuilt (A.D. 64)
- Christians Blamed for the Fire, 4879, 6176
- City Rebuilt on Magnificent Scale, 4880
- Nero Committed Suicide, 4880
- Galba (A.D. 68-69)
- Success as General and Proconsul, 2661
- Murdered by Otho, 5271
- Otho (A.D. 69)
- Secured the Throne by Murder, 5271
- Not Recognized by Germans
- Declared Vitellius Emperor, 5271
- The Flavian Emperors**
- Vespasian (A.D. 70-79)
- Proclaimed Emperor by His Soldiers, 7510
- Conquest of Jerusalem
- Titus Destroyed Jerusalem (A.D. 70), 3600, 7189, 7510
- Colosseum Begun, 1565, 7510
- Eruption of Mount Vesuvius (A.D. 79), 7512
- Destruction of
- Pompeii, 5720-5725, 7512
- Herculaneum, 3154-3156, 7512
- Titus (A.D. 79-81)
- Fame as a Builder
- Completed Colosseum, 1565, 7189
- Magnificent Baths, 7189
- Domitian, the Cruel Emperor (A.D. 81-96)
- Persecuted Christians, 2009
- Agricola's Conquests in Britain (A.D. 85), 88, 2255
- Built Forts in England, 88, 2256, 2009
- Roman Walls, 6170
- Subjugated Tribes in North Wales, 88
- Brought Roman Civilization to the Britons, 2256
- Built Arch of Titus, 7189, 7190
- Domitian Assassinated, 2009
- The Five Good Emperors**
- Nerva (A.D. 96-98)
- Served as Consul, 4880
- Adopted Trajan, 4880, 7240
- Trajan (98-117)
- Early Life and Education, 7240

- Campaigns and Conquests, 7240
- Roman Empire at Its Greatest Extent, 6173, 6176
- Games to Celebrate Triumphs, 7240
- Gladiatorial Exhibition, 2827
- Persecution of the Christians, 7242
- Hadrian (117-138)
  - Policy of Peace, 3001
  - Hadrian's Wall in England
    - From the River Tyne to the Solway, 3001, 6170
  - Hadrian's Tour of the Empire, 3001
  - Buildings and Improvements in Athens, 482
  - Founded Adrianople, 7307
  - Revolt of the Jews, 3001
- Antoninus Pius (138-161), 6176
- Marcus Aurelius (161-180)
  - Fame as a Philosopher, 504
  - Followed Stoic School, 6843-6844
  - War with Parthians, 504
  - Campaigns against Germanic Tribes, 505
  - Persecution of the Christians, 505
- The Decline of the Empire**
  - Commodus (181-192), 6176
  - The Barrack Emperors
  - Septimius Severus (193-211), 6510
  - Alexander Severus (222-235), 6176
  - Valerian (253-260)
    - Wars in the East and West, 7443
  - Aurelian (270-275)
    - Conquered Zenobia, 504, 7972
    - Reforms and Public Improvements, 504
    - Built Fortifications for Rome, 6177
- Reorganization of the Empire**
  - Diocletian (284-313), 1953
    - Division of the Empire
      - East and West Empires, 6176
      - Maximian a Joint Ruler, 1953, 6176
    - Diocletian and Maximian Resigned, 1953
  - Constantine and the Reunion of the Empire
  - Chosen Emperor of the West (306), 1625
  - Empire Reunited (323)
    - Constantine Sole Ruler, 1625, 6176
  - Abolished Praetorian Guard, 5793
  - Christianity Made the State Religion, 1625, 6176
    - Council of Nice, or Nicaea, 5019
  - Capital Moved to Byzantium, 1056, 1625, 6176
    - Name Changed to Constantinople, 1056, 1625, 1626, 6176
  - Empire Divided among His Sons
    - Constantine, Constantius, and Constans, 1625
  - Julian and Paganism (361-363)
    - Defeated the Germans at Strassburg, 3708
    - Restored Paganism, 3708, 6176
  - Valentinian I, Roman Emperor of the West, 7442
  - Valens, Roman Emperor of the East
    - Put Down Procopius, the Usurper, 7441
    - Beginning of the Gothic Invasions
- Battle of Adrianople (August 9, 378), 7441
  - Victory of the Goths and Its Significance, 7441
- The Fall**
  - Reign of Theodosius I, 7142, 6176
    - Colleague of the Emperor Gratianus, 7142
  - Byzantine, or Eastern, Empire
  - Final Division of the Empire (395)
    - Honorius and Arcadius, 1055
  - Theodosius II (408-450), 1055
    - Pulcheria, the Real Chief of State, 1055
    - Invasions of Attila, the Hun, 497, 1055, 3293-3294
  - The Western Empire**
    - Honorius, Emperor of the West, 1055
    - Barbarian Invasions
      - Rhine River the Boundary, 6087
      - The Visigoths, 2879
      - The Sack of Rome (410)
        - By Alaric, 166, 2879, 6176
      - Romans Withdrawn from Britain, 2256
    - Valentinian III and the Dismemberment of the Empire
      - Continued Barbaric Invasions, 7442
      - Visigoths Conquered Spain and Southern France, 2879, 6176
      - Vandals Conquered Northern Africa, 6176, 7442, 7458
      - Conquests of Genseric (429), 2719, 7458
      - Carthage, the Vandal Capital, 1220, 2719, 7458
    - The Huns, 3293-3294**
      - Battle of Châlons (451), 497, 2413, 6176
        - Attila against Romans and Visigoths, 497, 2413, 7442
      - Aëtius, the Roman General, 497, 7442
      - Theodoric, the Visigoth, 497
      - Victory for Romans and Visigoths, 2413, 7442
        - Rome Saved from the Huns, 2413
      - Attila's Second Invasion of Rome, 497
      - Rome Saved by Leo I, 497, 3936, 6176
    - Gradual Dismemberment of the Empire, 7442
    - Rome Pillaged by the Vandals (455)
      - Genseric Marched Against Rome, 2719, 7458
      - Revenge for Eudoxia, 2719
      - Rome Plundered, 2719
    - Barbarian Rulers**
      - Ricimer, the Sueve, 6176
      - Odoacer, 5162
        - Emperor Nepos in Exile, 5162
        - Romulus Augustus, the Last Roman Emperor, 5162
        - Odoacer Dethroned Romulus, 5162, 6177

The End of the Western Empire (476),  
5162, 6177  
Contributions of the Romans to Civilization  
Laid Foundations of Modern Jurisprudence  
The Twelve Tables, 6172-6173, 7331  
Preserved and Advanced Science and Art of  
the Older Nations, 6171  
[See the Outlines on *Architecture*, *Art*, *Literature*, and the Sciences, in this GUIDE.]

Began a System of Paved Roads, 6140  
Appian Way, 322, 323  
Other Engineering Feats, 6177  
Aqueducts, 337  
Ancient Engineering Skill, 2230  
Magnificent Baths, 651  
Sewers, the Cloaca Maxima, 6177  
[See *Rome in Its Greatest Glory*, above.]  
Revised the Calendar, 1075-1076

## THE MEDIEVAL WORLD

### The Background

#### Definition of Terms

Medieval Ages, an Arbitrary Division, 4470  
Dates and Events Adopted by Various Authorities, 4470, 3186  
Beginning of Middle Ages  
Fall of Rome, 4470, 3186  
Coronation of Charlemagne, 4470  
Death of Charlemagne, 4470, 3186  
Treaty of Verdun, 4470  
End of Middle Ages  
Fall of Constantinople, 4470, 3186  
Discovery of America, 4470, 3186  
End of German Reformation, 4470  
End of Thirty Years' War, 4470

#### Dark Ages

Name Applied to an Historical Period, 1829  
Duration (A.D. 475 to A.D. 1137), 1829  
End of Period, 1312

#### Byzantine, or Later Roman, Empire

#### Achievements

Guarded Culture Left by Ancients, 1055  
Evolved a Distinct Byzantine Culture, 1056  
Architecture

In Constantinople, 1628-1629  
Imposing Towers, opposite 869  
Mehmedie Mosque (Formerly Saint Sophia), 362-363, 3723, 1628

In Venice, 7484  
Saint Mark's 363, 6320-6322, 7484  
In Marseilles, 4304

In Cernauti, Rumania, 6241

Decorative Arts, 1056

Sculpture, 1056

Transmission of Two Cultures to the West,  
1056

Through Scholars, 1056, 2324, 1629, 6056  
Effect of Two Cultures on Russia, 6268

#### Reign of Justinian I

Conquests, 1055

In Africa, 3723

Capture of Carthage by Belisarius, 7458,  
1220

In Italy, 3723, 3580

Warred on Ostrogoths, 2879

Captured Rome, 6180

In Sicily: Vandals Conquered by Belisarius, 6592

In Persia, 3723  
Extent of Empire, 1055  
Justinian Code, 1055, 3723  
Foundation of Civil Law, 1449  
Laws on Banking, 606  
Foundation of Code Napoleon, 1523  
Public Improvements, 3723  
Decline of the Empire  
In Italy, 1055, 4091  
Advance of the Lombards, 3580, 2782  
A German Tribe, 2782, 4091  
Devastated Modena, 3575  
Accepted Roman Catholicism, 4091,  
5732  
In Serbia, 6502  
Wars with Persia and Avars, 1055  
Danger from Rise of Mohammedanism, 1055  
[See below.]

#### Spain and Portugal

Vandalusia (now Andalusia): Conquered by  
Vandals, 6734, 7458

Galicia and Portugal: Conquered by Alans and  
Suevi, 6734

#### Visigothic Kingdom

Made Possible by Alaric I, 166, 2879

#### Included

Spain, 6734, 2879

Portugal, 5762, 5757

Southern Gaul, 2879

Acquired by Clovis, 1496, 2879

[See *Frankish Kingdom*, below.]

Fall of the Kingdom, 2879

[See *Rise of Mohammedanism*, below.]

#### The British Isles

#### England

#### Invasions

By Scots and Picts, 2256

Britons Call upon Jutes for Aid, 2256,  
3141

By Jutes, 2256, 3725, 288

Under Hengist and Horsa, 3140-3141,  
3725

By Angles and Saxons, 288, 285, 3725, 6405

Conflict between Invaders, 2256, 5603,  
6443

Conflict between Anglo-Saxons and Britons, 7582

Britons Escape  
 Into Wales, 2256, 3725, 7579, 7580  
 King Arthur, 430, 2256, 3347, 4410  
 Into Armorica (Brittany), 972  
 Britons Accepted Christianity, 2256, 502  
 Beginnings of a Real Kingdom  
 Heptarchy, 2256, 3150  
 Essex, Sussex, and Wessex, 3150  
 Anglia, Mercia, and Northumberland,  
 3150  
 Founded by Angles, 285  
 Kent, 3150  
 In Possession of Jutes, 3140-3141, 288  
 Union into Kingdom of England (827), 2256  
 Under Egbert, King of Wessex, 2135,  
 2256, 3150  
 Anglo-Saxons: Fusion of Angles, Sax-  
 ons, Jutes, and Britons, 7117, 287  
 Reign of Alfred The Great  
 Conflict with the Danes, 205, 2256, 5073  
 Concession of Alfred: Danelagh, 205, 2256,  
 285  
 Estimate of His Rule, 205, 2256, 671, 288  
 Athelstan, First to Use Title, King of Eng-  
 land, 479, 288  
 Anglo-Saxon Institutions  
 Witenagemot, Supreme Council, 7816  
 Powers, 7816, 2256  
 Thanehood, System Similar to Knight-  
 hood, 7134  
 [See *Feudal System*, below.]  
 England under Danes, or Northmen, 2256,  
 5073  
 Canute, 2256, 1895  
 Harold I, 2256, 3047  
 Hardecnut (Harthacnut), 2256, 3039  
 Renewal of the Anglo-Saxon Line  
 Edward The Confessor, 2256  
 Builder of Westminster Abbey, 2134,  
 7715  
 Position in Political Affairs, 2134  
 [See *Norman Conquest*, below.]  
 Harold II, Last Anglo-Saxon King, 3047-  
 3048

Norman Conquest (1066), 2256, 5042  
 Invasion of England by William of Nor-  
 mandy, 7767, 2257, 5043  
 Battle of Hastings, 2256, 5043, 7768  
 One of Fifteen Decisive Conflicts in His-  
 tory, 3069, 2413  
 William's Reign  
 Subjugation of England, 2257  
 Subjugation of Scotland, 7767, 6444  
 Introduction of the Peerage, 5440  
 Preparation of the Domesday Book, 7548,  
 7768  
 Origin of the Jury System, 3722  
 Scotland  
 Establishment of the Kingdom, 6443-6444  
 Union of Picts and Scot under Kenneth  
 McAlpin, 6443  
 Reign of Macbeth, 6443-6444, 4171  
 Subjugation by William the Conqueror,  
 7767, 6444  
 Wales  
 Small States Constantly at War, 7581-7582  
 Ireland  
 Invasion of the Northmen, or Danes, 3526,  
 5073  
 Limerick, an Important Danish Settle-  
 ment, 3520  
 Overthrow of Northmen by Brian Boru,  
 3526  
 Acceptance of Christianity, 5416, 3526  
 Other Divisions of Europe  
 Armorica (Modern Britany), 972  
 Denmark  
 Danes Invaded Continent, 1895  
 Canute. [See *England*, above.]  
 Introduction of Christianity, 1895  
 Norway  
 Founding of a Monarchy, 5088, 3048  
 Introduction of Christianity, 5088  
 Exploits of Harold III, 3048, 7767  
 Sweden  
 In State of Constant Warfare, 6954  
 Russia, 6268

## Rise of Mohammedanism

### Its Origin and Growth

#### Arabia

Before the Rise of Mohammedanism, 340  
 The Advent of Mohammed, 4567  
 Beginning of the Mohammedan Era  
 The Hegira (622), 4568, 3125  
 Spread of Mohammedanism by the Sword,  
 4568  
 Teaching of the Koran, 4571, 3814  
 Organization of the Caliphate, 1097, 4571  
 The Conquests of Mohammedanism  
 In Asia  
 Syria, 6087, 4571, 1055, 6991  
 Palestine, 5315  
 Jerusalem, 3660

Judea, 1055  
 Armenia, 408  
 Georgia, 2763  
 Persia, 7301, 4571  
 Bokhara, 7301  
 Herat, 71  
 Merv, 4411  
 Samarkand, 7301  
 India, 3378, 3387  
 In Africa, 450  
 Byzantine Possessions, 1055  
 Egypt, 2152  
 Capture of Alexandria, 201-202  
 Founding of Cairo, 1069, 2152  
 Decline of Memphis, 2144  
 Northern Africa, 4571, 80, 342

- Destruction of Carthage, 1220
- Destruction of Utica, 7435
- Numidia (Modern Algeria), 5114, 218
- Libia, 3966
- Morocco, 4658
- The Moors, 4645
  - Founded Algiers, 218
  - Founded Oran, 220
- In Europe, 2324
  - Sicily, 6592, 80
    - Messina and Palermo, 6594
  - Kingdom of Two Sicilies, 6591
  - Spain, 80, 450, 4571
    - Visigothic Kingdom, 2879, 6734
  - France, 4645
    - Invasion Turned Back at Tours (732), 2413
      - [See *Frankish Kingdom*, below.]
- Establishment of Powerful Kingdom in
  - Spain, 4645, 4839
  - With Aid of Moors, 4645, 4658
- Conquests
  - Cadiz, 6727
  - Malaga, 6728

## Frankish Kingdom

### Its Rise and Development

#### The Frankish People

- Their Origin, 2597, 2782
- Their Divisions
  - Ripuarrians, 2597-2598, 6135
  - Salians, 2597-2598, 6332

#### The Merovingian Dynasty, 4411

- Kingdom of Clovis
  - In Gaul, 2324, 2402
    - Overthrow of Roman Authority, 4411, 2581, 1496
  - Overthrow of Visigothic Power, 2581, 2879, 1496
  - Conquest of Belgica (Modern Belgium), 1496
  - Overthrow of Teutonic Tribes, 4411

#### In Germany

- Assimilation of German Tribes, 2782
- Founding of the Frankish Monarchy, 1496, 4411
  - Paris, the Capital, 5379
  - Acceptance of Christianity, 2581, 1496
  - Compilation of Salic Law, 6332
  - Birth of France, 2581, 2706
- Decline of the Dynasty, 4411, 1206
  - Frankish Dominions (A.D. 575), 2598
  - Conquest of Burgundy, 1027
- Rise of the Mayors of the Palace, 5478, 1206, 4411
  - Pepin (or Pippin) the Elder, 5478
  - Pepin (or Pippin) of Heristal, 5478, 2581
  - Charles Martel (the Hammer), 1206
    - Battle of Tours (732), 1316, 2581, 5683
    - One of Fifteen Decisive Battles, 2413, 2574

- Murcia and Seville, 6730
- Cities Founded
  - Cordova, 6735, 6727
  - Granada, 6728
  - Madrid (a Fortified Outpost), 6728
  - Toledo, 6735
  - Valencia, 6735, 6730

### Mohammedan (Moorish or Saracenic) Civilization

- Preservation and Development of Culture, 4645, 4411, 7301
- Architecture. [See *Mohammedan Architecture* in the Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]
- Decorative Arts
  - Arabesque, 338
  - Pottery, 4234
  - Wood Carving, 7829
- Agriculture, Commerce, and Education, 6735
- Art and Literature, 4645
- Mathematics, 4344, 341
- Games: Chess, 1348
- Science, 446, 4645

### Beginning of the Carolingian Dynasty, 1206, 4411

#### Pepin (or Pippin) the Short

- Son of Charles Martel, 1317, 1206, 2581
- Invasion of Italy
  - As an Ally of the Pope, 4091, 5418
  - Overthrow of the Lombards, 4091, 5479, 3580
- Result: Founding of the Papal States, 5479, 4091, 5343
  - [See *Papal States*, below.]
- Consolidation of the Kingdom, 2581

### Charlemagne's Empire

#### King of the Franks, 5479, 2581

- Sole Ruler after Death of Carloman, 1312
- War with the Lombards, 1312, 4091
- Results

- Confirmation of Papal Claims to Temporal Sovereignty, 5343, 1312, 3580
  - [See *Papal States*, below.]

- Charlemagne Crowned with Iron Crown of Lombardy, 1312, 1760, 3580, 4091

#### Conquests

- Of the Moravians, 4649
- Of the Saxons, 6405, 1312
- Of the Saracens (Moors) In Spain
  - Battle of Pass of Roncesvalles, 1312
  - Basis of Legends of Roland, 6163-6164, 1312
- Grant of Independence to Andorra, 277-278
- Campaign Celebrated in Spanish Ballads, 6726

### Emperor of the Romans (800 A.D.)

- Crowned by Pope Leo III, 1313, 3936

Theoretical Founding of the Holy Roman Empire, 1313, 3203, 2228, 6177  
 Claims of the Popes, 5732  
 Claims of the Emperors, 5732, 3582  
 [See *Papal States* and *Holy Roman Empire*, below.]  
 Loss of Influence by Pagan Rome, 5732  
 Plan for Union of Byzantine and Western Empire, 1055  
 Empire of Rome (New Empire of the West)  
 In Effect a German Empire, 2581, 2324, 2782  
 Extent  
 Modern France, 2324, 2581, 1313  
 Much of Modern Germany, 2324, 2782, 1313  
 Bavaria, 654  
 Aix-la-Chapelle, Site of Charlemagne's Palace, 2770

Founding of Frankfort-on-the-Main, 2592, 2598  
 Nucleus of Modern Austria, 524, 2324  
 Modern Belgium, 2324, 1313  
 Modern Hungary, 1313  
 Part of Modern Italy, 3582, 4091, 1313  
 Modern Netherlands (Holland), 2324, 4892, 1313  
 Part of Modern Spain, 1313  
 Modern Switzerland, 2324, 6978, 1313  
 Government, 1313  
 Effect on Western Europe, 2598, 1312  
 Treasures of Rome Given to World, 2598  
**Division of the Empire**  
 Louis I, 1313, 7494, 1206, 4122  
 Treaty of Verdun (843 A.D.), 7494, 1313  
 Birth of Modern European Nations, 2782, 2783, 1314

## The Feudal Age

### The Rise and Fall of the Feudal System

#### Origin of the Feudal System

Agreement of Warriors to Protect Their Lords, 2403

#### Organization

Fief, the Landed Estates, 2403, 2408, 2299  
 Castle, Defense of the Fief, 1232-1233  
 Chivalry

System of Education for the Nobles, 1404

Page, 1404, 1405

Esquire or Squire, 1404, 6788, 2298

Knight, 1404, 1405, 3805

#### Orders of Knighthood

Knights of the Bath, 648

Order of the Garter, 2696

Order of the Thistle, 7152

Modern Usage of Term, 3805

Religious Orders of Knighthood. [See *Crusades*, below.]

#### Heraldry

Science of Coat of Arms, 3151-3153

Origin: Emblazoning of the Shield, 3151, 6560, 410

Appointment of Herald, 3150, 3151

Analysis of Heraldic Devices, 3151, 3152

Eagle, 2074

Lion, 4038

Unicorn, 7352

Maltese Cross, 1756

[See, also, *Titles of Honor*, below.]

#### Serfdom

Slaves, 6503, 7529

Serfs, 2403, 6503, 7529

Villeins, 7528

#### Decline of Feudalism

Causes, 2403

Rise of Absolute Monarchies. [See below.]

Crusades. [See below.]

Growth of Towns. [See below.]

Invention of Gunpowder, 2403, 1738, 2987

Devastations of the Plague (Black Death), 5641

#### Results of Feudalism

Origin of the Nobility, 7188, 5038

Peer and Peerage of England, 5440-5444

Titles of Honor, 7188

#### Strength and Weakness, 2403-2404

Effects Still Visible in Civil Government, 1442

### France in the Feudal Age

#### Beginnings of the Kingdom, 2324

[See *Treaty of Verdun*, above.]

End of the Carolingian Dynasty, 1206

Charles the Bald, 1206, 2782

Charles III (The Simple), 1314

Granted Fief of Normandy to Rollo,

1314, 5042, 5043, 2581

[See *Fief*, above.]

Louis V, Last of the Line, 1206

Development of Feudal System. [See above.]

#### Consolidation of the Kingdom

Founding of the Capetian Dynasty

By Hugh Capet, 3276, 1181, 2581

Paris Becomes Capital, 5379

Reign of Henry I, 3145

Growth of Royal Power

Under Philip Augustus, 2582

The Soldier, 3681, 5547, 6113

The Statesman, 5547

Under Louis IX (Saint Louis), 4118

In the Sixth and Seventh Crusades.

[See *Crusades*, below.]

Under Philip IV (the Fair)

Contest with the Papacy, 5547

[See *Papal States*, below.]

Summoned First States-General (1302),

5547, 6815, 1181

Persecution of the Templars, 5547, 7091

Union of Navarre, 4839

Under Charles IV, 1314

Last of the Capetian Line, 1181, 2582  
**Hundred Years' War (1337-1453)**

**Causes**

Accession of Philip VI (House of Valois),  
 5547, 7445, 2582  
 French Crown Claimed by Edward III,  
 King of England, 2132, 3288  
 French Aid to Scotland, 2258, 580, 6444  
 Military Events to the Peace of Troyes  
 Battle of Crécy, 3288, 5547, 2132  
 Use of Gunpowder, 1738, 2987  
 Capture of Calais by English, 2132  
 Battle of Poitiers, 3288, 1314, 2133  
 French Successes under Charles V, 1314  
 Withdrawal of England, 2132  
 Renewal of the War, 3288  
 Battle of Agincourt, 1314, 3143  
 Practical Destruction of French Nobility, 87

**Treaty of Troyes**

Charles VI Acknowledges Henry V as His  
 Heir, 1314, 3288, 3143

Joan of Arc, Heroine of the War, 3677-3679,  
 2582

The Peasant Maid Leads an Army, 3678

Battle of Orleans, 3678, 1315, 3143

One of Fifteen Decisive Battles, 2413

Coronation of French King, 2413,  
 1315, 6047, 3678

The Great Leader Captured, 3678

Died a Martyr's Death, 3679, 1315, 2573

France at the End of the War, 3288, 2582

Some of the Conquests

Gascony, 2700

Normandy, 5042

Reorganization of the Government under

Charles VII, 1315

**Rise of an Absolute Monarchy**

Ruthless Methods of Louis XI, 2582, 4119

Acquisition of Burgundy, 1027

**Germany in the Feudal Age**

**Beginnings, 2324**

[See *Treaty of Verdun*, above.]

Struggle with the Moravians, 2783, 4649

Invasion of the Magyars, 2783, 4221

**Kings and Nobles**

Election of the Kings by the Nobles (Elec-  
 tors), 2783, 3204, 2166

Selection of Henry the Fowler, Creator of  
 the German Empire, 2783

**The Holy Roman Empire**

Theoretical Founding of the Empire. [See  
*Charlemagne's Empire*, above.]

Actual Founding by Otho I, the Great  
 (Otto)

Defeat of Rebellious Nobles, 5271, 2783

Crowned Emperor by Pope John XII,  
 368, 3204

Otho Becomes Nominal Ruler of  
 Italy, 3582

Conflict with the Papacy, 2783, 3582

John XII Deposed by Otho I, 3681

Nominations to Papal Chair Made by  
 Henry III, 3146

Investiture Quarrel between Henry IV and  
 Gregory VII, 2062

Henry's Penance at Canossa, 3146, 2783

Final Victory of Henry, 3146, 2962

Conflict with Urban II, 7421

Growing Strength of the Papacy, 2784

Conflicts within the Empire

During Reigns of Otho II and Otho III,  
 5271

Rise of the Hohenstaufens, 3193-3194

Frederick I (Barbarossa)

Struggles in Italy, 2601, 2977

With Pope Adrian IV, 52

Extent of His Dominions, 2783

First to Use Holy in Title, 3204

[For his part in Crusades, see below.]

Henry V Concluded Concordat of Worms  
 with Calixtus II, 1098, 6166

Henry VI

Success in Defying Pope Celestine III,  
 1267

Conquest of Sicily, 3147, 6591, 6594

Imprisonment of Richard the Lion-  
 Hearted, 3147, 6113, 1267

Period of Anarchy, 2784

Rise of the Hapsburgs, 3039

Election of Rudolph, 2784

Founding of the Duchy of Austria, 2784,  
 522. [See *Austria*, below.]

Proclamation of the Golden Bull, 2784,  
 2861

Authorization of the Electors, 2166

[See *Kings and Nobles*, above.]

Some of the Vassal States

Alsace-Lorraine, 236

Austria. [See below.]

Bavaria, 654

Bohemia, 813, 1802

Brandenburg, 5859

Home of Hohenzollern Family, 3194

Berlin, an Important Community, 715

Brunswick, 983

Hanover, Part of the Duchy, 3038

Luxemburg, 4161

Palatinate, 5309

Saxony, 6406

Switzerland. [See below.]

**England in the Feudal Age**

**Development of Sovereign Power**

Under William II, 7768

Under Henry I, 3142, 2257

Dark Reign of Stephen, 6827

Under Henry II

First of Plantagenet Line, 5649, 6827

Conquest

Of Scots, 3142, 2257

Of Ireland, 3526, 3142, 2257

Aided by Pope Adrian IV, 52

In France, 663, 2164

Bordeaux, 2570



English Possessions (Map), 2259  
 Waning Power of the Nobles, 3142, 2257  
 Struggle with the Clergy, 3142, 2258  
 Murder of Thomas à Becket, 668  
 [See *Papal States*, below.]  
 Establishment of Orderly Government,  
 3142, 2258  
 Reign of Richard the Lion-Hearted  
 [For his part in the Crusades, see below.]  
 Imprisonment by Henry VI, 3147, 6113,  
 1267  
 Quarrel with Philip Augustus, 6113, 5547  
 Loss of Sovereign Power, 2258  
**Foundation of Constitutional Liberty**  
 Magna Charta (1215), 2258, 4215, 1319  
 Signed by John at Runnymede, 4216, 6250,  
 3681  
 Some of the Principles Embodied in It  
 Habeas Corpus, 4216, 2997  
 Trial by Jury, 3721-3722  
**Beginning of Modern Parliamentary System**  
 Struggle between Henry III and the  
 Nobles, 3142  
 Battle of Lewes, 3142, 4628  
 Summoning of Parliament, 5391  
 By Simon de Montfort, 4628, 3142  
 Contribution of Edward I, 2132, 2258  
 Development of the Privy Council, 6115  
 Henry IV, 3142, 2258  
**Wars and Uprisings**  
 In Wales  
 Conquest by Edward I, 2132, 2258, 7582  
 Origin of Title, Prince of Wales, 7582,  
 5815-5816  
 In Scotland  
 Baliol Crowned King, 6444, 579, 2132  
 Deposed by Edward I, 580, 7584  
 William Wallace Led Scottish Uprising,  
 7584, 6444  
 Battles Around Ayr, 6438  
 Robert Bruce Gained Scottish Independ-  
 ence, 982  
 Battle of Bannockburn, 613, 2258, 6444,  
 2132  
 In France  
 Hundred Years' War, 2258. [See *France*,  
 above.]  
 In England  
 Wat Tyler's Rebellion, 7683-7684, 6115  
 Cause: Levying of Poll Tax, 5714  
**Wars of the Roses**  
 Cause: Struggle for the Throne, 2258, 6206  
 Factions  
 House of Lancaster, 6206, 3850  
 House of York, 6206, 7946  
 The Conflict  
 Rise of the House of Lancaster, 3850, 3682  
 Henry IV, 3142  
 Forced Abdication of Richard II,  
 6115, 3850  
 Henry V, 3143  
 Henry VI, Last of the Line, 3850, 3143  
 House of York in Possession of the Throne

Edward IV, Successor of Deposed  
 Henry, 2132, 3143, 6206  
 Warwick, the King-Maker, 7622-7623  
 Brief Restoration of House of Lancaster,  
 3850  
 Reinstatement of Henry VI, 3143, 6206  
 Final Victory of the House of York, 7946,  
 2258  
 Return of Edward IV, 2132, 6206  
 Usurpation by Richard III, 2258, 6115  
 Murder of Edward V, 2133, 7946  
 Overthrow of Richard, 6206  
 At Bosworth Field, 2258, 3143  
 The Settlement  
 Union of the Two Houses, 6206, 2258,  
 7289  
 Accession of Henry VII, 3143, 7946  
**Results of the Wars**  
 Death of Most of the Powerful Nobles,  
 2258  
 Growth of Absolute Monarchy, 2258, 6206  
  
**Italy in the Feudal Age**  
**Division and Anarchy, 3582**  
 Disposition after Death of Charlemagne  
 [See *Treaty of Verdun*, above.]  
 Part of the Holy Roman Empire, 3582  
 [See *Holy Roman Empire*, above.]  
**Papal States.** [See below.]  
**Period of City States**  
 Centers of Brilliant Life, 3582, 1441  
 Rivalry between Guelphs and Ghibellines,  
 3582, 2977  
 Attempts of Innocent III to Promote  
 Peace, 3457  
 Amalfi, 3574  
 Florence, 3582  
 Ruled by Merchant Guilds, 2474  
 [For development of guilds, see below.]  
 Genoa, 3582  
 Presided over by Doges, 2718, 1993  
 Milan, 3582, 4473  
 Rome  
 Rienzi, Last of the Tribunes, 6123  
 Pisa, 3582, 3575-3576  
 Venice, 3582  
 Presided over by Doges, 7485, 1993  
**Kingdom of the Two Sicilies (Kingdom of  
 Naples)**  
 Invasion of the Normans, 6591, 5043  
 Imprisonment of Pope Leo IX, 3936  
 Dominion of the Hohenstaufens, 6591, 6594  
 Conquests of Henry VI, 3147, 6591  
 Rule of Charles of Anjou, 6591, 3582  
 Naples, the Capital, 4807  
  
**Other European Countries in the  
 Feudal Age**  
**Austria**  
 Margraviate of the Holy Roman Empire, 524  
 Creation of the Duchy, 524, 2787  
**Balkan Countries**  
 Albania: Invasion of the Slavs, 180

- Bulgaria: Fusion of the Slavs and Bulgars, 1015  
 Greece: Part of the Byzantine Empire, 2947  
 Rumania: Invasion of Barbarians, 6246  
 Serbia: Establishment of an Independent Kingdom, 6502  
 Montenegro, Part of the Kingdom, 4622  
**Baltic Countries**  
 Estonia: Invasion of Danes and Germans, 2302  
 Finland: Under Swedish Domination, 2422  
 Latvia: Under German Rule, 3890  
 Lithuania: An Independent State, 4056  
**Hungary**  
 Establishment of a Kingdom, 3292, 524  
 Invasion of the Mongols, 4594  
**Low Countries**  
 Flanders: Famous Market Center, 2463, 2465  
 Netherlands: Constant Warfare between Petty Rulers, 4892  
 Malta: In Possession of the Normans, 4241  
**Monaco**: Ceded by Otho I to House of Grimaldi, 4578  
**Poland**  
 Independent Kingdom Involved in Numerous Wars, 5687-5688  
 Invasion of the Mongols, 4594, 5688  
**Portugal**  
 Extension through Conquests of Moors, 5762, 5763  
**Russia**  
 Overrun by the Mongols, 6268, 4594  
 [See *Oriental Countries*, below.]  
**Scandinavian Countries**  
 Denmark, 1895-1896, 5088  
**Spain**  
 Aragon  
 Capture of Cadiz from Moors, 6727  
 Saragossa, the Capital, 6730  
 Castile  
 Subjugation of the Moors, 6735, 1232  
 Granada  
 Capital of Remaining Moorish Dominions, 220, 4645, 2893  
 Navarre  
 Established by Visigoths, 6735  
 Period of Greatest Power, 4839  
**Switzerland**  
 Part of Holy Roman Empire, 6978  
 War with Austria, 6978, 2784  
 Heroism of William Tell, 6978, 7089-7090

- Herosim of Arnold Winkelried, 6978, 7795-7796  
**Oriental Countries in the Feudal Age**  
**Mongol Invasions**  
 Conquests of Genghis Khan, 2716-2717, 3770  
 Afghanistan, 72  
 China, 1393, 2716, 4594  
 Persia, 5500, 4594  
 Turkestan, 7301, 2716, 4594  
 Conquests of Ogotai, 4594  
 Reign of Kublai Khan, 2716, 3818  
 In China, 1393, 4594  
 Peking, the Capital, 4594, 5446  
 Visit of Marco Polo, 3818, 1393, 4594  
 Importance of Marco Polo's Book, 5714, 5716  
 Conquests of Timur (Tamerlane), 7180, 7181  
 Armenia, 408  
 Ephesus, 2277  
 Herat, 71  
 India, 3387, 7181  
 Persia, 5500, 7180-7181  
 Samarkand, Residence of Timur, 4594, 7438, 7301  
 Turkestan, 7301, 7180  
 [See *Other European Countries*, above.]  
 Kingdom of the Moguls  
 In India, 4594, 3387  
 Lahore, Royal Residence, 3383  
 Reign of Shah Jehan, 6524, 4594  
 Builder of the Capital, Delhi, 1883-1884  
 Builder of Taj Mahal, 7007, opposite 7007  
 At Agra, 3382, 4594  
**Burma**  
 Period of Small Powerful Kingdoms, 1032  
**Japan**  
 Development of a Feudal Régime, 3634, 3636  
 Shogun, the General with the Real Power, 3634, 6571  
 Daimos, Feudal Chiefs, 1807, 3634, 6359  
 Samurai, Military Retainers, 6359, 3634  
 Hara-Kiri, Method of Suicide, 3039  
**Pontus**  
 Kingdom under Alexius Comnenus, Byzantine Emperor, 5728  
**Siam**  
 Beginning of the Kingdom, 6585  
**Tartary**  
 Name Applied to Part of Eurasia, 7026

## Papal States

- Rise of Papal Sovereignty**  
 Division of Church into Roman and Greek Branches, 2951  
**Causes**  
 Political Division of Roman Empire, 2951  
 Controversy of the Iconoclasts, 3336, 1055

- Second Council of Nicaea, 5019, 3337  
 The Great Schism, 2951, 6166  
 Pontificate of Gregory I, 5732, 2962  
**Origin of the Papal States**  
 Gift from Pepin the Short, 5479, 4091, 5343  
 Confirmation of Gift by Charlemagne, 5343, 1312, 3580  
 [See *Charlemagne's Empire*, above.]

**Conflicts between Church and States**

[For ecclesiastical domination in social life,  
see *Medieval Civilization*, below.]

Holy Roman Empire. [See above.]

**England**

Murder of Thomas à Becket, 3142, 2258,  
668

Quarrel between Pope Innocent III and  
King John, 3455, 3681

Supremacy of Pope Acknowledged, until  
1534, 6939

**Height of Papal Power, 5732**

Pontificate of Innocent III, 3455, 5547

**The Crusades (Holy Wars)****Causes**

Conquests of Seljuks (Saracens) in Holy  
Land, 450, 1055, 6385

Persecutions of Christian Pilgrims, 1761,  
6486

Desire to Recover Jerusalem, 1761, 3660

**First Crusade**

Inspired by Peter the Hermit, 5516-5517,  
1761, 2570

Exhortations of Pope Urban II, 7421, 1761

**Leaders, 1761**

Peter the Hermit, 5516-5517, 1762

Godfrey de Bouillon, 1761, 2851

Tancred, 7013-7014

**Conquests**

Acre, 5310, 5311

Bethlehem, 7013

Antioch, 6791, 7013, 1761

Edessa, 1761, 7014

Jerusalem, 2851, 1761

Nicaea, 1761

Syria, 6987, 7014

Tyre, 5571

**Second Crusade**

Inspired by Saint Bernard, 718-719, 1764

**Third Crusade**

Cause: Conquests of Saladin, 6329, 1764

**Leaders**

Frederick I (Barbarossa), 1764, 2601, 2784

Philip Augustus, 1764, 5547, 6113

Richard the Lion-Hearted (Coeur de  
Lion), 1764, 6113, 5312

**Important Events**

Siege of Acre, 5312, 6329, 1764

Instituted Fourth Crusade, 1764, 3457

[See *Crusades*, below.]

**Babylonish Captivity**

Preceded by Struggle for Papal Supremacy  
in France, 5547, 837

Removal of Papal Court to Avignon, 5732,  
5547

**The Great Schism of the West**

Began with Urban VI, 7421

Antipope, Clement VII, 5735

Council of Pisa, 5627

**Restoration of Unity**

Council of Constance, 5627, 5732, 3682

Truce with Saladin, 6329, 1764

**Fourth Crusade (False Crusade)**

Instituted by Pope Innocent III, 3457,  
1764

Capture of Constantinople, 1056, 3457, 1629

**Later Crusades**

Fifth Crusade, 1764

Sixth Crusade

Led by Louis IX (Saint Louis), 4118

Invasion of Egypt, 1764, 80, 2152

Seventh Crusade

Led by Louis IX and Edward I, 1764,  
2132

Capture of Mansura, 2146

**Children's Crusade**

Led by Stephen, 1764

Led by Nicholas, 1764

Basis of Pied Piper of Hamelin Legend,  
5604

**Religious Military Orders Founded during  
Crusades**

Knights Hospitalers of Saint John, 3805, 4580

In Defense of Jerusalem, 1761, 7091

Headquarters in Syria, 1764

Headquarters Moved to Malta, 4241

Knights Templars, 3805, 4580, 719

In Defense of Jerusalem, 1761, 7091

Disbanding of the Order, 7091, 5547

Teutonic Knights, 3805, 4580

**Results of the Crusades**

Spread of Civilization, 2324, 1764, 4362

Stimulation of Commerce, 1582, 1764

Helped Destroy Feudalism, 2403, 1764

Aroused Religious Enthusiasm, 2784

**Medieval Civilization****Survivals of Roman Culture**

In the Laws, 6171, 1586, 1524

In Government, 6171, 3451

Custom of Wearing a Crown, 1759

[See *Titles of Honor*, above.]

**Engineering Feats, 2237**

Aqueduct, 337, 1458

Roads, 6140

Science: Pliny's Natural History, 5659

**Ecclesiastical Domination****Development of Church Power**

Made State Religion by Constantine, 6176,  
1625, 6166

Through Missionary Zeal

Of Gregory the Great, 2962

Of Saint Augustine, 502, 2962, 2256, 4533

Of Saint Boniface, 837, 4533

Of Saint Olaf, 5088, 6954

Of Saint Patrick, 5416, 3526, 4533  
[See, also, countries listed under *Background*, above.]

#### Through Organization

The Hierarchy, 6164

Sovereign Pontiff (Pope), 5730-5731

Infallibility, 1973, 6164, 6037

Papal Bulls, 6470, 2861, 1017

Powers

Of Excommunication, 2342

Of Anathema, 2343

Of Canonization, 1176

Sacred College of Cardinals, 6294, 1195-1196, 5732

Elects the Pope, 5731

Congregations, 6164, 3377

Archbishops, 356

Bishops, 774

Delegates (Legates), 3923

Nuncio, 5116

Vicars, 7515

Abbots, 6164

Political Power, 3

#### Monasticism

Wealth and Power of Monasteries, 3

In France, 4580

La Grande Chartreuse, 1220

Clairvaux, 719

In Germany

Abbey of Fulda, 837

In Italy

Certosa di Pavia, 3575, 1220

#### Orders

Benedictines, 5732, 707, 4580

Capuchins, Famous Missionaries, 1188

Carthusians, Noted for Hospitality and Charity, 1220

Mendicant Orders, 4391

Dominicans, 2009

Franciscans, 2590

Founded by Francis of Assisi, 2591

Orders of Knighthood. [See *Crusades*, above.]

#### Importance of Theological Doctrines

Teachings of the Church Accepted without Question, 6052

Cross Prefixed to Civil Documents as a Consecration, 1756

Thought of Future Life a Controlling Factor, 6055

Doctrine of Predestination, 2165

Mysticism Permeated Monasticism and Church, 4786

Some Religious Conceptions

Antichrist Believed to be Mohammed, 308

#### The Rise of Towns

#### Origin of the Towns

Grew Up around Castles, 1232

Grew Up around Bishoprics

Aarhus (Denmark), 1892

Canterbury and Croydon (England), 2245

#### Characteristics

Citizenship Privileges Allowed only to Taxpayers, 7032

Fortifications, 2573, 2247

Freedom and Independence, 2784

**Hanseatic League (Hansa).** 3039

#### Members

Lübeck, the Leader, 3039, 4143

Arnhem, 4885

Antwerp, 315

Bergen, 5081

Bremen, 3039

Bruges, 603

Brunswick, 2772, 3039

Cologne, 1541

Danzig, 1825

Dortmund, 2772

Groningen, 4885

Hamburg, 3039

Königsberg, 2773

Magdeburg, 2774

**Free Cities,** 2602

**City States.** [See *Italy*, above.]

#### The Guilds

Origin, 2979, 695

#### Kinds

Merchants, 2979

Development in Brussels, 985

Hall of Clothworker's Guild in Ypres, 695

Craft, 2979

Mastersingers, 4338

Lapidaries (Stone Cutters), 1930

#### Learning in the Middle Ages

#### Encouragement of Learning by Rulers

Charlemagne, 1313

Alfred the Great, 205

Charles V, Founder of Bibliothèque Nationale, 1314

#### Importance of Great Churchmen

Saint Augustine, 502

The Venerable Bede, 671

Saint Dunstan, 2056

Saint Jerome, 3657

Thomas à Kempis, 7153-7154

[See *Scholasticism*, below.]

#### Universities of the Middle Ages

Originated in Monasteries, 4580, 707

Mendicant Orders Founded Universities, 4391

Dominicans, 2009

Franciscans, 2590

#### Types

Organized Bands of Students, 7416

Bologna, 7416, 3574

Padua and Pavia, 3575

Organization of Teachers, 7416

Paris, 7416, 5381

Oxford, 5281

Heidelberg, 3125-3126, 7416

Other Medieval Universities

Cambridge, 1103

Cracow, 5685

Dublin (Trinity College), 2045  
 Leipzig, 3927  
 Naples, 4807  
 Sarbonne, 5381  
 Toulouse, 2574  
 Vienna, 7527

**Limitations of Knowledge**

Alchemy, 192-193  
 Incorrect Interpretation of Facts, 4414, 1329  
 Geography  
 Received Little Attention, 2722

**Medicine**

Theory of Composition of Body, 1328

**Mathematics**

Study Neglected, 4344  
 Algebra, 206  
 Arithmetic, 386  
 Introduction of Arabic Numbers, 341  
 Use of Abacus, 2  
 Geometry, 2746

**Scholasticism, 6417, 6056, 5566****Great Schoolmen**

Pierre Abelard, 8  
 Condemned by Pope Innocent II, 3455  
 Albertus Magnus, 193, 2009  
 Thomas Aquinas (Saint), 2009, 338  
 Roger Bacon, 565  
 Joannes Duns Scotus, 2056

**Culture in the Middle Ages****Architecture**

Gothic Cathedrals, 1244  
 [See *Gothic*, in Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]

**Decorative Arts**

Stained Glass, 6794, 2835  
 Gems, Excellent Imitations, 2712  
 Mosaics, 4667  
 Wood Carving, 7829, 7830  
 Wood Engraving, 2272, 7831

**Literature and Drama**

[See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

**Music**

Guido of Arezzo, Father of Modern Music, 2978  
 [See Outline on *Music*, in this GUIDE.]

**Painting**

Used in Service of the Church, 5300  
 [See *Early Florentine Painters*, in Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Verona, an Art Center, 3576  
 Example: Quaint Picture of David, 1835

**Sculpture**

Revival of the Art in Italy, 6459  
 [See *Italian Sculpture* in Outline on *Sculpture*, in this GUIDE.]

School of Terra Cotta Sculpture, 7113  
 Founder, Luca della Robbia, 6146

**How People Lived in the Middle Ages****Dress**

Of Early Teutonic Tribes, 2034  
 From A. D. 600 to 1470, opposite 1706  
 Armor, 410  
 [See, also, *Dress and Adornment*, in Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]

**Food**

Boar's Head, 808  
 Sugar, a Luxury, 6908  
 [See *Manners and Customs in Regard to Food*, in Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]

**Furniture**

Chair, Couch, and Table, 2647  
 Bed, 670

**Games and Amusements****Outdoor**

Boar Hunting, 807  
 Falconry, 2365  
 Tournament, 7225-7226

**Indoor**

Dwarfs, 2062  
 Jesters or Fools, 3661  
 Wandering Minstrels, 4523  
 Bards, 619  
 Minnesingers, 4511  
 Skalds, 6630  
 Troubadours, 7276

**For Women**

Tapestry Weaving, 7018

**Justice and Law**

Avenger of the Blood, 800  
 Blood Money, 4591  
 Cities of Refuge, 478, 1435  
 Equity, 2284  
 Trial by Ordeal and Combat, 3722, 5241  
 Punishment by Torture, 7221  
 No Prisons, 5824  
 Sumptuary Laws, 6920-6921  
 Tariff Conditions, 7021  
 Taxation Methods, 7032

**Some of the Customs**

Abandonment of Public Baths, 651  
 Curfew, 1786, 703  
 Ethics, 1404. [See, also, *Chivalry*, above.]  
 Respect for Women, 2784  
 Flag Came into General Use, 2449  
 Marriage. [See *Marriage Laws and Customs*, in Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]

**THE MODERN WORLD****Europe****The Renaissance****A Transitional Period**

From the Dark Ages to the Cultural Develop-

ment of the Modern World, 6055, 2324  
 Forces and Events Which Awakened Europe  
 The Crusades, 1761-1764  
 [See *The Medieval World*, above.]

- The Turks' Capture of Constantinople, 1629, 2324, 6056, 7311
- Epochal Inventions and Improvements
- Printing Movable Type, 5817
- Invented by Gutenberg, 2989
- Introduced into England by Caxton, 1263, 5817
- The Mariner's Compass, 1593
- Manufacture of Paper, 5344-5345
- Gunpowder, 2987
- Rebirth of Independent and Creative Thought, 6055
- Revival of the Pursuit of Learning and Culture
- Development of Science
- Alchemy, 192-193
- [See Outline on *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Roger Bacon Established Scientific Method of Investigation, 565
- Important Advances in Astronomy
- [For the work of Copernicus, Brahe, Galileo, Kepler, Newton, and Halley, see Outline on *Astronomy*, in this GUIDE.]
- Medical Science
- Paracelsus, a Pioneer in Medicine, 5356
- William Harvey, Discoverer of the Circulation of the Blood, 3068-3069
- Microscope of Zacharias Janssen, 4469
- Italy, Where the Renaissance Began
- Literary Scholars and the Revival of Learning
- Dante Alighieri, 1821-1822
- Petrarch, 5518-5519
- Boccaccio, 811-812
- Lorenzo de' Medici, 4373
- [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]
- Fine Arts
- [For the work of Brunelleschi, Bramante, and Michelangelo, see Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE; for the painters, Cimabue, Giotto, Leonardo da Vinci, Michelangelo, Raphael, Correggio, and Titian, see Outline on *Art*.]
- Science
- Leonardo da Vinci, First to Study Anatomy, 7530
- Geographical Study Renewed, 2722
- Astronomy
- Copernicus, 1666
- Galileo, 2664-2665
- [See Outline on *Astronomy*, in this GUIDE.]
- Political and Social Conditions
- Florence under the Rule of the Medici, 2474
- Cosmo de' Medici, Uncrowned King of Florence, 4373
- Lorenzo de' Medici, Patron of Learning, Absolute in Power, 4373
- Building of the Pitti Palace, 5633
- Preaching and Republican Influence of Savonarola, 6403
- Invasion of Charles VIII of France, 1315, 3582, 6403
- Intrigues of Cesare Borgia, 865
- Associations with Machiavelli, 4179-4180
- Creation of the Grand Duchy of Tuscany, 2474
- Milan, 4473
- Civil Dissension in Genoa, 2718
- Waning Power of Venice, 7485
- Age of the Invasions Which Spread the Spirit of the Renaissance
- French Conquests
- Charles VIII and His March on Naples, 1315, 3582
- Louis XII and His Ambitions to Possess Milan, 4119
- Spanish and German Conquests
- Charles V, 3582, 1316
- Sack of Rome, 3582, 1316
- Imprisonment of Pope Clement VII, 1316, 1465
- Kingdom of the Two Sicilies under Spain, 6591-6592
- Comparative Freedom of the Papal States, 3582, 5343
- The Inquisition, 3457-3458
- Disintegration of Political Power in Italy, 3582
- Germany, 6056
- France
- Literary Leaders, 4575, 5932, 1692, 2613, 4609, 1100, 5927
- [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]
- Painters and Sculptors, 6460, 2879, 5306, 2349, 6231, 7460, 7093, 5796, 2710
- [See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]
- Political History
- Louis XI, the Terrible King, 4119, 2582
- Feudal Power Broken, 4119
- [See *The Medieval World*, section on *The Feudal Age*.]
- Territorial Expansion
- Provence, Maine, and Anjou, 4119
- Burgundy, 1027, 2582, 4119
- Development of an Absolute Monarchy, 2582, 4119
- Charles VIII and the Invasion of Italy, 1315, 2582
- [See *Italy*, above.]
- Brittany Added, 1315, 2582
- Louis XII and the Continued Invasion of Italy, 4119
- [See *Italy*, above.]
- War with England, 4119
- Francis I and the Period of Wars
- Conference with Henry VIII, 2590, 3144
- Hope of an Alliance, 2590, 3144
- Field of the Cloth of Gold, 2412
- Struggle with Charles V, 1316, 2590, 2582
- Results
- Defeat of Francis at Pavia, 2590

Francis Taken as Prisoner, 2582,  
2590

Alliance with Solyman of Turkey,  
6685, 1316, 2590

[See *Italy*, above.]

## Spain

### Literary Leaders

Cervantes Saavedra, 1291

Lope Felix de Vega Carpio, 7470

### Spanish Painting

[See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE.]

### Political History

Marriage of Ferdinand and Isabella, 1232,  
2395, 3562, 6735

Union of Aragon and Castile, 1232, 6735

Expulsion of the Moors, 6735, 4645

[For the Spanish explorers and their  
discoveries, see Outline on *The  
United States*, below.]

## England

Forerunners of the English Renaissance,  
6056

Geoffrey Chaucer, 1321-1322

John Wycliffe, 7902-7903

[See the *Reformation*, below.]

### Literary Leaders

[For the writers of the Renaissance Period  
and the Elizabethan Age, see Outline  
on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

Renaissance Developed with the Reforma-  
tion, 6056

[See *The Reformation*, below.]

## Age of the Great Discoveries

### Conditions Which Led to Discoveries

Stories of Marco Polo, 5714

Accounts Read by Columbus, 1572

Influence of Prince Henry the Navigator,  
3149, 4841

Expeditions Sent along African Coast,  
3149, 5762

Portuguese Sailors and Their Discoveries  
Baldaya, Tristam, and Cadamosto,  
5762

Dias, 1934

Discovered Cape of Good Hope,  
80, 1934, 2870, 5763

Pedro Cabral, 1063

Azores, 551

### Other Portuguese Discoveries

Madeira Islands, 4198

Cape Verde Islands, 5763, 1183

Need for a Shorter Route to India, 3377,  
5077

Turkey's Conquest of Constantinople,  
1629, 7311, 5077

### Instruments for Navigation

Astrolabe, 4840-4841

Mariner's Compass, 1591-1593

Columbus and the Discovery of America,  
1572-1577, 2079, 2722, 2324

[For the details of the voyages and dis-  
coveries of Columbus, see Outline on  
*The United States*, below.]

Revolutionary Results of Columbus's  
Voyages

Ushered in the Modern Age, 2722

Proved that the Earth Is Round, 2079,  
2722-2723

[For the discoveries of Vespucci, the Cabots,  
Da Gama, Ojeda, Pinzon, Cabral, Ma-  
gellan, Balboa, Ponce de Leon, Cortez,  
Verranzo, Cartier, Frobisher, Davis, Hud-  
son, and Baffin, see Outline on *The United  
States*, below.]

## The Reformation

### Background of the Reformation

Power of the Church of Rome, 6037, 6166

Beginning of Decline of Papal Power, 5732

Rise of the Power of Sovereigns, 6037

#### In Spain

Union of Aragon and Castile, 1232, 6735

Spanish Inquisition, 3457-3458, 6735

#### In France

Absolute Monarchy of Louis XI, 4119,  
2582

#### In England

The Reigns of Henry VII and Henry  
VIII, 3143-3144, 2258

#### In Germany

Imperial Power at Its Height under  
Charles V, 2784, 1316

The Renaissance and the Revival of Learn-  
ing, 6037, 6056. [See above.]

### Forerunners of the Reformation

John Wycliffe in England, 7902-7903, 6037  
Theory of Bible-Reading for Laymen,  
7902

Translations Opposed by Church-  
men, 725

Wycliffe's Version of the Bible, 7903

Anti-Papal Policies, 7902

Supported by John of Gaunt, 3682

Lollards, the Followers of Wycliffe,  
4091, 7903

John Huss in Bohemia, 3298, 6037

The Hussites, Disciples of Huss, 3298

Desiderius Erasmus in Holland, 2284, 6037

Ulrich Zwingli in Switzerland, 6037, 7990

Savonarola in Italy, 6403. [See *The  
Renaissance*, above.]

### Germany, Where the Reformation Began

#### Political Setting Ripe for the Reformation

Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, 4351  
Efforts to Establish a United Empire,  
4351, 2784

Claims to Burgundy, 1027, 4351

Struggle with Louis XI, 4119, 4351

Claims to the Netherlands, 4351, 4893

Charles V, 1316, 2784

Occupied with Warfare, 1316

Wars with Francis I of France, 1316,  
2590

Imprisonment of the Pope, 1316

Wars with Solyman II of Turkey,  
1316, 6685

[See *The Renaissance*, above; *Period of National Rivalries*, below.]

Martin Luther, Dominant Reformer

Early Life and Training, 4158

Aroused by Papal Indulgences, 3433, 4158

Johann Tetzel, 4158, 7117

Ninety-Five Theses Posted at Wittenberg, 4158, 6037, 2784

Debate with John Eck, 2094, 4158, 6037

Luther Denied Supremacy of the Pope, 2094, 4158

Papal Bull Threatening Excommunication, 2094, 3936, 4158, 6037

Diet at Worms, 4159, 6038

Luther's Translation of the Bible, 725, 4159

Peasant War (1524-1525)

Revolt of the Lower Classes, 5436, 6038

Attitude of Luther, 4159, 5436

Confession of Augsburg (1530)

Statement of the Protestant Faith, 498-499

Written by Philip Melancthon, 499, 4383

Foundation of Lutheran Church, 4160

Schmalkaldic League (1531)

Secured Religious and Political Freedom of Protestants, 6038, 6414

Use of the Term Protestant, 6038, 5852

Peace of Augsburg (1555), 2784

Charles V Compelled to Make Concession to Protestants, 1316

### Calvinism

Switzerland, the Home of Calvinism, 1101

Preachings of Zwingli, 7990, 6038-6039, 6978

John Calvin and His Creed, 1100-1101

Genoa Became a Religious Center, 1101, 6039

Differences between Lutherans and Calvinists, 1101, 6039, 6041

Doctrine of Predestination, 5797, 1101

Founder of Presbyterian Church, 5801

Reformed Church Based on Calvinistic Creed, 6041

France and the Huguenots

Protestantism in France, 2582, 2584, 3279, 6039

Persecution of the Protestants under Henry II, 3145, 2582, 3279

Concessions Made by Henry III, 3145

Religious Wars in France

Catholic Leaders

Duke of Guise, 2981, 3145, 3279

Catharine de' Medici, 1243

Huguenot Leaders

Henry of Navarre (Henry IV), 3145, 3146, 2584, 3279

Louis, Brother of Henry, 3279

Prince of Condé, 3279

Admiral Coligny, 1536

Massacre of Saint Bartholomew's Day, 6302, 6303, 3146

Planned by Catharine de' Medici, 1243, 1536, 6303

Henry of Navarre Forced to Accept Catholic Faith, 3146

War of the Three Henries, 3279

Assassination of Duke of Guise, 2981, 3279

Charles IX Defeated at Arques and Ivry, 2081, 3146

Assassination of Henry III, 3145, 3146

Accession of Henry of Navarre as Henry IV, 2584, 3146, 3279

First of the House of Bourbon, 896

Edict of Nantes, 3146, 2584, 4805, 3280

Political Privileges Revoked by Richelieu, 6116, 3280

Scotland and the Presbyterian Creed

John Knox, 3809-3810, 6445

A Pupil of Calvin, 1101, 6040

Covenant to Protect Protestantism, 5801, 1726

Presbyterian Church Established by Reform Party, 5801, 6445, 3810

Difficulties with Catholic Royalty

Mary Queen of Scots, 3810, 4318

Her Ill-Fated Marriages, 3810

Henry S. Darnley, 1829-1830

James H. Bothwell, 893

Abdication in Favor of James VI, 3810, 3613, 4319

Covenanters, 1726

### Scandinavia

Sweden

Reformation Spread from Germany, 6039, 6954

Norway

Roman Catholic Religion Discarded, 6039

Denmark

Lutheranism Adopted, 6039

### The Netherlands

Protestantism Prevailed before Luther, 4892

Revolt against Spain

Persecution by Charles V, 1316

By Philip II, 5548, 4893

Tyranny of the Duke of Alva, 239

William of Orange Made Stadtholder, 7771

Result of the Revolt

Spain Lost the Netherlands, 4893, 5548, 6040

Belgium Remained Spanish and Catholic, 698, 6040

Success of the Reformation in the Netherlands, 698, 4893, 6040

### England during the Reformation

England Prepared by Wycliffe and the Lollards, 7902-7903

[See above.]

Quarrel of Henry VIII and the Pope

Henry Refused Divorce from Catharine of Aragon, 1243, 1465, 2258, 3144

Divorce Secured in Civil Court, 3144

Signed by Thomas Cramner, 816, 1734



Marriage of Henry VIII and Anne Boleyn, 816, 1243, 3144  
 Result of the Quarrel  
   England Became Independent of the Pope, 1465, 3144  
   Henry VIII Declared Head of the Church, 2258, 3144, 6040, 1421  
   Disapproval of Thomas More, 4650, 7227  
 Thomas Cramner Consecrated Archbishop of Canterbury, 1734, 356  
 Beginning of Protestant Reforms  
   Edward VI's Reign, 2133  
   Thirty-Nine Articles Drawn Up, 1421, 2133, 7150  
   Augsburg Confession a Basis, 499  
 Lady Jane Grey, the Nine-Day Queen, 2964-2965, 4310  
 Mary Tudor and Catholic Reaction, 2258  
   Persecutions, 4310, 2258, 6040  
   Formal Restoration of Church of Rome, 4310  
 Protestantism Established by Elizabeth, 2210, 2258, 1421, 6040  
   Thirty-Nine Articles Revised, 1421, 7150  
   Church of England Independent, 1421  
   Mary Queen of Scots and the Catholic Plots, 2210, 4319  
   Religious Toleration Established, 6040, 5040  
   Attempts to Reestablish Church of Rome, 6040  
**Ireland**  
   Henry VIII Extended Religious Reforms, 3527  
   Mary and the Return of Catholicism, 3527, 6040  
   Elizabeth and Establishment of the Church of England, 3527, 6040  
   Roman Catholic Character of Ireland, 6040  
**The Thirty Years' War (1618-1648)**  
   Causes, Political and Religious, 7150  
   Failure of the Peace of Augsburg, 2784, 6038, 7150  
**Leaders**  
   Gustavus Adolphus, Protestant, 2988-2989  
   Johann Tilly, Catholic, 7178  
   Albert Wallenstein, Catholic, 7584-7585  
 The Outbreak in Bohemia (1618-1623), 813, 7150  
   Ferdinand II, Ruler, 2394, 2784, 7150  
 The Danish Period (1625-1629), 1896, 7150-7151  
 The Swedish Period (1630-1635), 6955, 7151  
   Battles of Lützen, 4160, 2989, 7585  
 Swedish-French Period (1635-1648)  
   Richelieu's Policy, 6116, 7151  
 The Peace of Westphalia (1648), 7151, 7717-7718  
   Settled Religious Question in Germany, 2784, 7151, 7717-7718  
   Territorial and Political Settlements, 7718, 6978  
 Effects of the War, 7151, 2784, 813

## Results of the Reformation

Protestantism Established in Northwestern Europe, 6040  
 Catholicism Supreme in the South, 6040  
**Counter-Reformation**  
   Reforms within the Roman Catholic Church, 1721, 6040  
   Council of Trent, 1721, 5732, 6165, 7262  
   Work of the Jesuits, 1721, 3661-3662  
   Loyola, 4142-4143, 3662  
   Xavier, 7915  
 Loss of Political Power of the Church, 6040

## Period of National Rivalries

### Spain, the First to Dominate Europe

[For Spain during the Renaissance and Reformation, see above; for the discoveries and colonization in the New World, see Outline on *The United States*, in this GUIDE.]

### Charles V of the Holy Roman Empire

Formerly Charles I of Spain, 1316  
 [See *Italy, Where the Renaissance Began; Germany, Where the Reformation Began*, above.]

### Empire of Charles V Divided

Imperial Authority to Ferdinand I, 1316, 2394  
 Netherlands and Spain to Philip II, 1316, 5548

### Philip II

Character and Religious Policy, 5548, 6735  
 Marriage to Mary Tudor, 4310  
 War with France, 5548  
   Aided by Mary, 4310  
   England Lost Calais, 2571, 2582, 4310  
 Revolt in the Netherlands, 4893, 5548, 6735  
 [See *The Reformation*, above.]

### Spanish Armada

Purpose: To Humble England, 405, 2210, 5548  
 Ill-Fate of the Expedition, 406  
 Sir Francis Drake a Hero, 2022  
 Result of Spanish Defeat  
   Spain Lost Naval Supremacy to England, 405, 2210, 5548, 6735  
   Developed Feeling of Nationality in England, 2259

Turks Defeated in Battle of Lepanto, 7311, 5548

Gallantry of Cervantes Saavedra, 1291

Portugal Conquered, 5548, 5763

Trouble in Colonial Possessions

[For the rivalry of England and Spain in America, see Outline on *The United States*, below.]

Inquisition at Its Height, 5548,

Decline of Power, 6735 2324,

War of the Spanish Succession. [See below.]

## France and a Period of Civil Wars

[See *France and the Huguenots*, above.]

- Henry IV and Reconstruction, 3146, 2584  
Louis XIII and the Rise of Richelieu  
  Maria de' Medici, the Regent, 4119  
  Favored Richelieu, 6116  
  Richelieu, Most Powerful Man in France, 2584, 4120, 6116  
  Domestic Affairs  
    Made Royal Power Absolute, 2584, 4120, 6116  
    Destroyed Political Power of Huguenots, 3280, 4120, 6116  
    Crushed Feudal Nobility, 6116  
    Established French Academy, 13  
  Foreign Affairs  
    [See *Thirty Years' War*, above.]  
    Weakened the Austrian Hapsburgs, 4120, 6116  
    War with Spain and Italy, 6116-6117  
Louis XIV and the Glory of France  
  Belief in Divine Right of Kings, 1973  
  Domestic Affairs  
    Mazarin Succeeded Richelieu, 4356, 4120, 2584  
    Anne of Austria, the Regent, 298, 4120  
    The Fronde and Mazarin, 2627, 4120, 4356  
    Revocation of the Edict of Nantes, 4120, 3280, 4805  
  Foreign Conquests  
    War with Spain, 4120  
  Splendor of Court Life, 4120  
    Palace of Versailles, 7505  
    Madame de Maintenon, 4233-4234  
  Golden Age of Literature, 4120, 2614  
  [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]  
  French Art, 4120  
  Decline of French Supremacy, 2584, 4120  
  Grand Alliance Formed against Louis, 1507, 4120, 7769  
  [See *Accession of William III and Mary II*, below.]  
**England: the Puritan Revolution and the Restoration**  
  England Becomes Mistress of the Seas, 3675  
  A Result of the Spanish Armada. [See above.]  
  Adventurers Attack Spanish Ships in America  
    Sir John Hawkins, 3088  
    Sir Francis Drake, 2022  
  Early Attempts in American Colonization  
  [See Outline on *The United States*, in this GUIDE.]  
  The Divine Right of Kings, 1973  
  James I, 2259, 3613  
  First Stuart Ruler, 6881, 3613  
  Religious Difficulties  
    Catholics and the Gunpowder Plot, 2988, 3613  
    Guy Fawkes, 2383, 2988  
  Puritans and Colonization in America, 3613  
  [See Outline on *The United States*, below.]  
  Catholic Colonization in Ulster, 3527, 3613  
  Other Domestic Events  
    King James Version of the Bible, 725-726, 3613  
    Execution of Raleigh, 3613, 5991  
    Impeachment of Sir Francis Bacon, 3613-3614, 564-565  
  Charles I and the Conflict with Parliament  
    Petition of Right, 5517, 1313, 2259  
  Ship-Money Cases  
    Wentworth, 6872  
    Hampden, 3029  
  Rebellion of Covenanters in Scotland, 1314, 1726, 6445  
  Wentworth's Administration in Scotland, 6873  
  John Pym, Leader of the Puritans, 5892  
  Laud's Policy toward Puritans, 3892  
  The Long Parliament, 1314, 2259, 4107-4108  
  Parties  
    Cavaliers, (Royalists), Followers of Charles I, 1260-1261, 6221  
    Roundheads, Followers of Cromwell, 6217  
  Accomplishments  
    Abolished Star Chamber, 4107, 6810  
    Impeachment and Execution of  
      Laud, 3892, 4107  
      Wentworth, 4107, 6873  
    Dissension Caused by Religious Differences, 4107-4108  
    The Puritans, 5887  
**The Civil War**  
  Attempt to Seize Five Members of Parliament, 1314  
  Oliver Cromwell, 1752, 1314  
  Victories  
    Marston Moor, 1314, 4306  
    Naseby, 1314, 4811  
  Self-Denying Ordinance, 6486  
  Rump Parliament, 6249-6250, 4107-4108  
  Pride's Purge, 6250  
  Trial and Execution of Charles I, 1314, 1752, 2260  
**The Commonwealth of England, 1586, 1752-1753**  
  Navigation Act, 4841  
  Naval War with the Netherlands, 4895  
  Cromwell's Conquests  
    Ireland, 1752, 3527  
    Scotland, 1752  
  Dismissal of Rump Parliament, 1753, 4108, 6250  
  The Barebones Parliament, 619  
**The Protectorate**  
  Cromwell Made Lord Protector, 1753  
  England Regained World Prominence, 1753-1754, 2260

Death of Cromwell, Failure of Richard,  
1754, 2260, 6066  
Summary of Puritan Influence, 5887  
The Restoration (1660)  
George Monk Restored Stuarts, 4595,  
6066, 2260  
Reassembled Long Parliament, 6066,  
4108  
Charles II Became King, 1314, 2260, 4595,  
6066, 6881  
Foreign Policy of Charles II  
Influence of France, 2260  
War with the Netherlands, 1314, 2260,  
4895  
Domestic Affairs  
Test Acts, 7117  
Rye House Plot, 1314, 6287  
James Monmouth, 4597-4598, 6287  
Quarrel with Parliament  
Tories, 7222  
Whigs, 7740  
Habeas Corpus Act, 1314, 2997  
Immorality of the Court, 1314, 2260  
Overthrow of the Stuarts  
James II and Catholic Favoritism, 2260,  
3614  
Rule by Divine Right, 1973  
Glorious Revolution, 3614  
James II Forced to Abdicate, 2261,  
3614, 4310, 7768  
Accession of William III and Mary II, 2261,  
3614, 4310, 7768  
William and James in Ireland, 3614, 7769,  
3527  
Battle of the Boyne, 903, 3527, 3614,  
7769  
William's Ambition to Subdue Louis XIV,  
7768, 4120, 2261  
Coalition Formed, 1507  
Treaty of Ryswick, 6288  
Domestic Affairs  
Parliament and the Succession, 7769  
Results of the Revolution  
Bill of Rights, 739  
Act of Toleration, 5040  
Responsible Ministry, 2261  
Bank of England Founded, 601-602,  
7769  
Darien Scheme, 1828  
Queen Anne and the Union of Scotland and  
England, 293  
War of the Spanish Succession  
[See below.]  
Union of Scotland and England, 2261,  
6445, 293, 2927  
Augustan Age in Literature, 86, 293, 2261  
[See Outline on *Literature*, in this  
GUIDE.]  
Beginning of Great Britain, 293, 2927,  
2261  
Accession of House of Hanover, 2927, 7792  
George I, 2750, 2927  
Cabinet Government, 2927, 1059

Robert Walpole, the First Premier,  
2927, 7587  
The South Sea Bubble, 2750, 2927,  
7587  
George II and the Growth of Colonial  
Interests  
[See *War of the Austrian Succession*,  
below.]  
James Edward Stuart, the Pretender,  
2927  
Walpole Retained as Premier, 7587  
Colonial Development in America, 2927  
Empire Builders  
William Pitt, 5632, 2751  
Robert Clive and India, 1485, 2751  
Battle of Plassey, 1485, 2928, 3387  
John Wesley and the Rise of Meth-  
odism, 7708-7710, 4423, 2928  
George III and the Loss of the American  
Colonies  
Resignation of Pitt, 5632, 2751, 2928  
Lord North Made Prime Minister, 5044,  
2751, 2928  
Dictatorial Policy of George III, 2751,  
2928, 5044, 5632  
American Revolution, 2751, 2928, 5044,  
6071-6082  
[See Outline on *The United States*,  
in this GUIDE.]  
Trouble in Ireland, 3527-3528  
The Act of Union, 3528  
**Struggle for Balance of Power**  
Definition of Balance of Power, 575-576  
Ambitions of Louis XIV, 4120  
War of the Spanish Succession (1701-1714)  
Causes and Alliances, 6900  
Contenders for the Spanish Throne  
Charles VI, 1316  
Supported by Grand Alliance  
England, 2261, 6900  
Holy Roman Empire and Prussia,  
5859-5860, 6900  
Netherlands and Hesse, 6900  
Philip of Anjou (Philip V), 5548, 6900  
Supported by  
Louis XIV, 6900, 4120, 5548  
Spain, 6900, 5548  
Allied Generals  
Prince Eugene of Savoy, 2314, 6900  
Duke of Marlborough, 4295, 6900  
Important Battles, 6900  
Battle of Blenheim, 790, 2314, 2413,  
4295, 6900  
Treaty of Utrecht, 7436, 6900  
Philip Recognized as King, 5548  
Territorial Losses of Spain  
To England  
Gibraltar and Minorca, 2802, 5548,  
6735, 7436-7437  
To Austria, 524  
Naples, 6592, 6735, 7437  
Parma, 6735, 7437  
Sardinia, 6387, 6735, 7437

- Milan, 4473, 6735, 7437
- Catholic Netherlands, 7437
- To Savoy
- Sicily, 6592, 6735, 7437
- War of the Austrian Succession (1740-1748)
  - Causes
    - Pragmatic Sanction of Charles VI, 1316, 5793
    - Guaranteed Accession of Maria Theresa, 4289, 5793
    - Frederick II's Desire for Silesia, 6901, 2600
  - Events, 2600, 6901
  - Results
    - Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, 154, 6901
    - Loss of Silesia to Prussia, 2600, 6901, 4289
  - [For King George's War, the American phase of the War of the Austrian Succession, see *The United States*, below.]
- The Seven Years' War (1756-1763)
  - Cause
    - Frederick II's Possession of Silesia, 2600, 4290, 6509, 524
  - Maria Theresa's Allies
    - France, Russia, and Sweden, 2600, 6509
  - Alliance of Prussia and Russia, 6510
  - Treaty of Hubertsburg, 2600
  - Treaty of Paris, 5380, 6510
  - Influence in America, 6510
  - [See *The United States*, section on *French and Indian War*.]
- The Development of Russia
  - Beginning of Modern Russia, 6268
  - Ivan III, the Great, 3589-3590
  - Ivan IV, the Terrible, 3590
  - The House of Romanoff, 6168, 6268
  - Early Wars with Turkey, 6280
  - Peter the Great and Internal Reforms
    - Sought to Link Russia with Western Europe, 5515, 6270
  - Founded Saint Petersburg (now Lenin-grad), 3932, 5515
  - Marriage to Catharine I, 1242, 5515
- Expansion of Russia
  - On the Baltic Sea
    - War with Charles XII of Sweden, 1316, 5515, 6955
    - Battle of Pultowa, 2413
    - Estonia Ceded to Russia, 2302
    - Other Territorial Gains, 5515
  - On the Black Sea
    - War with the Turks, 5515, 6270, 6280, 7312
    - Importance of the Black Sea, 784
    - Catharine the Great's War with the Turks, 1242, 6270
  - In Poland, 5689
  - Maps Showing Partitions, 5689
  - Catharine the Great's Share in the Partitioning, 1242, 5690, 6270
  - In Siberia, 6590-6591
- Advancement of Russia under Catharine the Great, 1242, 6270
- Part in the Seven Years' War, 6509-6510. [See above.]
- Rise of Prussia
  - Foundations of the Kingdom, 5859
  - The Hohenzollerns in Brandenburg, 3194, 5859, 922
  - Frederick William the Great Elector, 2601, 5859
  - Meaning of Elector, 2166
  - Thirty Years' War, 2601, 7150-7151. [See above.]
  - Results of Treaty of Westphalia, 7151, 7717-7718
  - Other Wars
    - With Louis XIV, 2601, 4120
    - With Sweden, 2601, 6955
  - Protection Offered Protestants, 5859
- Establishment of the Kingdom
  - Frederick I Crowned King, 2600, 5860
  - Part in the War of the Spanish Succession, 2600, 6900. [See above.]
  - Frederick II, the Great
    - Part in the War of the Austrian Succession, 2600, 6901. [See above.]
  - The Seven Years' War, 2600, 6509
  - The Partition of Poland, 2600-2601, 5688, 5690, 5689
  - Domestic Policy
    - The Development of Prussia, 2601, 2785, 5860
    - Founded Modern Secret Service Organization, 6477
- Lesser European Countries
  - Austria
    - Early History, 524
    - [See *Charles V*, above.]
    - Ferdinand I and Consolidation of the Empire, 524, 2394
    - Racially Different States United
      - Bohemia, 2394, 813
      - Hungary, 3292, 2394
    - Gained by War with Turks, 524, 3292, 7311
  - Ferdinand II and the Thirty Years' War, 2394, 7150, 524. [See above.]
  - Leopold and the War of the Spanish Succession, 524, 1316, 6900. [See above.]
  - Joseph I, 524
  - Charles VI and the Pragmatic Sanction, 1316, 5793
  - Peace of Utrecht Favorable to Austria, 524, 7437
  - Maria Theresa Designated to Succeed
    - Charles VI, 4289, 1316, 5793, 524
  - Maria Theresa and the Struggle over Silesia, 4289-4290, 524
  - Seven Years' War, 6509, 524, 4290, 2600.
  - Partition of Poland (1772), 5689
  - Galicia, 2662
- Poland
  - Early History, 5687-5688

John Sobieski Became King John III, 3682, 5688  
 Preserved Europe from Turks, 3682, 5688, 7311  
 Partitioning of Poland, 5688, 5690  
 [See *The Development of Russia; The Rise of Prussia; Austria*, above.]  
 Armed Protest of Kosciuszko, 3814, 5690  
 War of the Polish Succession, 6900-6901  
 Sweden  
 The Leading Baltic Power, 6954  
 Gustavus Adolphus, 2988, 6954  
 Protestant Leader in the Thirty Years' War, 2988-2989, 7151  
 Charles X and the War with Frederick William, 1316, 6955, 2601  
 Charles XII, 1316  
 Invasions, 1316, 6955  
 Charles in Turkey, 1316  
 Decline of Swedish Power  
 Result of Foreign Wars, 6955  
 Loss of Territory to Peter the Great, 5515  
 Gustavus III and Restoration of Royal Power, 2989, 6955  
 The Balkan Countries  
 Description of the Balkan Peninsula, 580  
 Turkey and the Organization of the Ottoman Empire  
 Conquest of Constantinople, 7311, 1629  
 [For the far-reaching results of this event, see *The Renaissance*, above.]  
 Gained Control of Balkan States, 7311  
 Solyman II, 6685, 7311  
 Conquests  
 Belgrade, 6685, 7962  
 Battle of Mohács in Hungary, 3292, 6685  
 Vienna Threatened, 3292, 6685, 524  
 Rhodes, 6097, 6685  
 Alliance with Francis I, 2590, 6685  
 Early Wars with Russia, 6280  
 War with Spain and Venice, 7311  
 [See *Spain, the First to Dominate Europe*, above.]  
 Beginning of Decline  
 Raids on Vienna, 7311  
 Allied with Hungarians, 3292  
 Repulsed by John Sobieski, 3682, 5688, 7311  
 War with Russia, 6270, 7312  
 Peter the Great Took Azov, 5515  
 Charles XII in Turkey, 1316  
 Loss of Crimea to Russia, 7312, 6270  
 Scotland  
 First Stuart Rulers, 6445, 6881  
 James IV and the French Alliance, 6445  
 Mary Queen of Scots and Catholicism, 4318-4319  
 Execution of Mary, 4319, 2210  
 James VI, 3613  
 Crowned King of England as James I, 3613, 6445, 2259-2260

Religious Struggles and the Civil War  
 Religious Policy of Charles I, 6445, 1313  
 Rebellion of Covenanters, 1726, 6445  
 Cromwell's Campaign in Scotland, 1752-1753, 6445  
 Restoration and Revolution, 6445  
 Union of Scotland and England, 2261, 6445, 293, 2927  
 Ireland  
 Relations of Ireland and England, 3527  
 Earl of Strafford, 6873, 3527  
 Cromwell's Expedition, 1752-1753  
 James II in Ireland, 3527, 3614  
 Battle of the Boyne, 903, 3527, 7769  
 Repressive Laws, 3527  
 Union of England and Ireland, 3527-3528  
 William Pitt, the Younger, 5633  
**Leading Thinkers of the Period**  
 Literary Philosophers  
 John Milton, 4491-4494  
 John Bunyan, 1022-1024  
 [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Scientists  
 Christian Huygens, 3300-3301, 3993  
 Edmund Halley, 3020  
 Sir Isaac Newton, 4960-4963  
 Gottfried Leibnitz, 3925  
 Philosophers, Political and Social  
 Descartes, 1913  
 Spinoza and Pantheism, 6766, 5341  
 Locke, 4075  
**The French Revolution and Napoleon**  
**Decline of Absolute Monarchy**  
 Louis XV, Depression and Decay, 4120, 2584  
 Regency of Philippe, Duke of Orleans, 5260-5261  
 War of the Polish Succession, 6900-6901  
 Lorraine Ceded to France, 6900, 4120, 236  
 War of the Austrian Succession. [See above.]  
 [For the French and Indian Wars in which France lost its colonial possessions in America, see Outline of *The United States*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Licentious Court Life, 4121  
 Madame du Barry, 2044-2045, 4121  
 Madame de Pompadour, 5719  
 Abolition of the Parlement of Paris, 5391  
 Louis XVI and Attempted Reforms  
 Character of Louis XVI, 4121  
 Influence of Marie Antoinette, 4290-4292  
 Turgot Summoned in Crisis, 4121  
 Necker Replaced Turgot, 4868, 4121  
 Influences of Philosophers and Writers  
 Montesquieu's Spirit of the Laws, 4623  
 Voltaire's Attacks, 7566  
 Rousseau's Criticism, 6218  
 Diderot and the Encyclopedists, 2233  
**The Fall of Absolute Monarchy**  
 States-General Convened, 6815, 4121, 2615

Necker's Part, 4868, 4121  
 Increased Power of the Third Estate, 6815  
 Constituent Assembly Organized, 2615  
 Leaders  
   Sieyès, 6597  
   Mirabeau, 4528  
   Talleyrand-Périgord, 7008  
   Lafayette, 3838-3839  
 Jacobin Club, 3608, 4528  
 Beginning of Violence  
   Recall of Necker: Fall of the Bastille, 4868, 647, 2615  
   The Émigrés, 2227, 2615  
   March of the Women to Versailles, 2615, 7506  
   Royal Family Taken to Tuileries, Paris, 4121, 4290, 4292, 7289  
 Reforms of the Constituent Assembly, 2615  
   Declaration of Rights Suggested by Lafayette, 3838  
 Attempted Flight of Royal Family, 2615, 4121, 4292  
 Constituent Assembly Dissolved, 2615  
**The Revolution**  
 Legislative Assembly Rules France, 2615  
 Radical Leaders  
   Robespierre, 6147-6148  
   Danton, 1822, 1824  
   Marat, 4280-4281  
 Girondists, 2817  
   Madame Roland's Salons, 6164, 2817  
 War Declared on Austria, 526, 2615-2616  
 Disaffection Caused by Émigrés, 2227  
 Result of Defeats, 2616, 2227  
 Mob Attack on the Tuileries, 2616, 828, 4121, 6148, 7289  
   Swiss Guards Slain, 6968  
   Napoleon Made Captain, 828  
 Result of Victory at Valmy, 2413, 2616  
 September Massacre of Royalists, 2616  
 Organization of Commune of Paris, 1587  
   Originated by Jacobins, 3608  
**The Convention and Proclamation of the Republic**  
 Parties  
   Girondists, 2817  
   Jacobins: Radicals, 3608  
 Trial and Execution of the King, 2616, 4121, 4292  
 Overthrow of the Girondists, 2616, 2817  
 The Reign of Terror, 2616  
   Robespierre and Committee of Public Safety, 6148  
   Leader of the Jacobins, 3608  
 The Guillotine, 2980  
 Prominent People Guillotined  
   Marie Antoinette, 4292, 2616  
   Philip Égalité, 2616, 5261  
   Madame Roland, 6164  
 Marat Slain by Charlotte Corday, 1674, 4281  
 Fall of Danton, 1824

Execution of Robespierre, 2618, 6148  
 Reaction and Moderation, 2618  
 Bonaparte Saved the Convention, 2618-2619, 829  
 The Directory Rules France, 1956, 2619  
 Barras Member of the Directory, 628-629  
 Gave Napoleon Command in Italy, 629, 829  
 Foreign Wars Conducted by Napoleon  
   In Italy, 830, 2619, 3582, 3583  
   Peace of Campo Formio, 830, 3583  
   Territory Ceded by Francis II, 2590  
   In Egypt, 830, 2619  
   Battle of the Nile, 830, 4874  
   Battle of the Pyramids, 4242  
**The Napoleonic Empire**  
 Overthrow of the Directory, 830, 1956, 2619  
 Napoleon Made First Consul, 830  
   Sale of Louisiana to the United States, 830, 4134  
 War with the Second Coalition, 1507  
 Second Campaign in Italy, 830, 526, 3582-3583  
   March through Saint Bernard Pass, 6303  
   Battle of Marengo, 830, 4289  
   Treaty with Austria, 830  
   Peace with Great Britain, 830, 5633  
 Napoleon Becomes Emperor  
   The Coronation, 830-831  
   Crowned by Pius VII, 831, 5639  
   Josephine Crowned Queen, 3701  
 Internal Affairs, 831  
   Established Napoleonic Code, 1523  
**Domination of Europe**  
 War and Invasion Renewed, 831  
   Third Coalition Formed, 831, 1507, 5633  
   Alliance of Spain and France, 6735  
   Naval Power Lost at Trafalgar, 7236, 2928, 831  
   Heroism of Lord Nelson, 4874-4875  
   Victory at Austerlitz, 506, 526  
   Policy toward the German Countries, 2785, 5860  
   Confederation of the Rhine, 2785, 526, 2786 (Map)  
   Bavaria Made a Kingdom, 654  
   End of Holy Roman Empire, 3204  
 The Campaign against Prussia, 831  
   Frederick William III's Advance, 2602  
   Jena and Auerstadt, 831, 2602  
   Berlin Decree, 831, 4473  
   Beginning of Continental System, 1645  
   The Campaign against Russia, 831, 6271  
   Treaty of Tilsit, 831, 198, 5860, 6270  
 Napoleon Enthrones His Brothers  
   Joseph Bonaparte, King of Naples, 827, 3583, 831  
   King of Spain, 6735  
   Louis Bonaparte, King of Holland, 827, 831  
   Jerome Bonaparte, King of Westphalia, 827, 831

Continental System: Commercial Warfare  
 Berlin Decree, 1645, 4473. [See above.]  
 Milan Decree, 4473  
 Paper Blockades of the British Isles, 795  
 British Orders in Council, 1645, 5241-5242  
 Results of the Policy, 4473  
 Contributing Cause of the War of 1812, 7602  
 Beginning of the Downfall of Napoleon, 1645  
 Uprisings and Revolts in the Empire  
 Peninsular War  
 Rebellion in Spain, 831, 6735  
 Portugal Defies the Berlin Decree, 831, 5764  
 Great Britain's Aid to Spain and Portugal, 2928, 5764, 6736, 832  
 Victories of Duke of Wellington, 7706, 5764, 6736  
 Insurrection in Austria, 831, 526  
 Political Effects of Napoleon's Second Marriage, 831-832, 3702, 4289  
 Disaster in Russia  
 Napoleon's Invasion, 832, 6270  
 Dismal Outlook at Moscow, 832, 4670  
 Murat Left in Command, 832, 4745  
 Great Coalition against France, 1507, 832  
 Napoleon's Victory at Lützen, 832, 4160  
 Downfall of Napoleon  
 Defeated at Battle of Leipzig, 832, 3928  
 Abdication to Elba, 832, 2162  
 Restoration of the Bourbons, 86  
 Louis XVIII, 4122  
 Treaty of Paris (1814), 4122  
 Congress of Vienna. [See below.]  
 Napoleon's Return and the Hundred Days, 833, 2162  
 Louis XVIII Fled, 4122  
 Victory over Blücher at Ligny, 833  
 Waterloo, Decisive Battle, 7669, 2413, 833  
 Allied Generals  
 Wellington, 7706  
 Blücher, 803  
 Marshal Ney, 5008-5009  
 Second Restoration of Louis XVIII, 4122  
 Napoleon's Exile on Saint Helena, 833, 6309  
 Treaty of Paris (1815), 5380-5381  
**Period of Reaction**  
**Congress of Vienna**  
 Dominating Personalities, 7527  
 Talleyrand from France, 7009, 7527  
 Metternich from Austria, 4429, 7527  
 Settlements: Division of Empire, 7527  
 In Prussia, 5860, 7527  
 German Confederation, 2785  
 Austria at the Head, 2785, 7527, 526  
 Italy, 7527, 3583  
 Luxemburg, 4161  
 In the Netherlands, 4895

Belgium and Holland United, 698  
 In Switzerland, 6978  
 In Russia, 6270  
 In Sweden, 6955, 1896, 5088  
 In Great Britain, 2928  
**Alliances and Congresses**  
 The Holy Alliance, 3200-3201  
 Metternich's Influence, 4429, 3201, 526  
 Congress of Aix-la-Chapelle, 154  
 Congress of Verona, 6736  
**Reaction throughout Europe: Age of Metternich**  
 In France  
 Louis XVIII, 4122, 2584. [See above.]  
 Charles X and Revival of Despotism, 1315, 2584. [See below.]  
 In Spain  
 Ferdinand VII Restored, 6736  
 In Portugal  
 Return of John VI from Exile, 5764  
 Loss of the Colony Brazil, 933  
 Abrogation of the Constitution, 5764  
 In Italy, 3583  
 In Russia  
 Alexander I Reverted to Anti-Liberal Policy, 198  
 Nicholas I Continued the Autocratic Program, 5019-5020  
**Industrial Revolution and Democratic Effect**  
**Inventions and Improvements**  
 In the Textile Industry, 7131, 1709  
 Hargreaves' Spinning Jenny, 3046, 3500, 6765, 6766, 7131  
 Arkwright's Cotton-Spinning Machine, 403, 6765, 7131, 3500  
 Crompton's Spinning Mule, 6765  
 Cartwright's Power Loom, 1223, 7695  
 Whitney's Cotton Gin, 1718-1719, 1714, 7754  
 Jacquard's Loom, 3608, 7695  
 Howe's Sewing Machine, 3266-3267, 6519-6520  
**In Use of Steam**  
 Watt's Steam Engine, 6819-6820, 6818, 7681  
 Fulton's Steamboat, 2634-2635  
 Trevithick's Steam Locomotive, 4076, 4078  
 Stephenson's Locomotive, 4078, 6828  
 König's Power Printing Press, 5821  
**In Transportation**  
 Canals, 1157-1162  
 Railroads, 5973-5976, 7250  
 Macadam Roads, 6141  
**In Electricity**  
 Morse's Telegraph, 4664, 7064  
**In Farm Machinery**  
 McCormick's Reaper, 4174, 6015  
**Results of the Revolution**  
**Economic**  
 Development of Factory System, 2359-2360, 7131  
 Division of Labor, 3821-3822, 7754

Disappearance of Apprentice System,  
329

Accumulation of Capital or Wealth,  
1184-1185, 7685

Increased Production of Raw Material  
Cotton, 1719

#### Social

Higher Standard of Living, 2360

Evil of Child Labor, 1375-1376, 2360

Relation of Capital and Labor, 1184-  
1185, 2360

Labor Legislation, 3822-3823

Labor Organizations, 3825

Beginning of Socialism, 6668

#### National Readjustments and Developments to 1914

#### France

Downfall of the Bourbons

Louis XVIII. [See above.]

Charles X

July Revolution, 1315, 2584, 3709

Louis Philippe, the Citizen King, 4134-  
4135

Revolution of 1848, 2584, 4135, 4808

#### Second Republic

Louis Napoleon Elected President, 4808,  
2584

#### Second Empire

Louis Napoleon's Coup d'État, 2584, 4808

Crowned Napoleon III, 4808

Aggressive Foreign Policy

Crimean War, 4808, 1747. [See  
below.]

Aided Italy against Austria, 3583,  
4808

Maximilian in Mexico, 4445

Failure of the Enterprise, 4351,  
4445, 4808

Domestic Policy, 5379

Franco-German War (1870-1871)

#### Causes

Napoleon III's Desire to Crush Prussia,  
4808, 2584, 2591

Part of Bismarck's Unification Plans,  
775, 5860

Quarrel over Successor to Spanish  
Throne, 2584

#### Events, 2591, 2584

Napoleon III Captured at Sedan, 2591,  
4808

Siege of Paris, 2591-2592, 5379, 6505

#### Terms of Treaty of Frankfurt

Alsace-Lorraine Ceded to Germany,  
2584, 2591, 2786, 236

Large Indemnity Demanded from  
France, 2584, 2591-2592, 2786

#### Cost of the War, 7592

#### Results, Immediate and Ultimate

Overthrow of the Second Empire, 2584,  
2591

Factor in the World War, 2592, 236,  
7854

[See *Germany*, below.]

#### Third Republic

Period of Civil War, 2584

Commune of Paris, 1587

Presidents of France before the World  
War

Thiers, the First President, 7104

MacMahon, 2584, 4194

Grévy and Colonial Development, 2584,  
2588, 2063

Carnot and the Panama Scandal, 1205,  
2588

Faure and the Dreyfus Affair, 2036-  
2037, 2588

Loubet and Separation of Church, and  
State, 4118, 2588

Poincaré and the World War, 2588,  
5681. [See below.]

#### French Imperialism

In Africa, 78, 80, Map opposite 81

[See *Africa*, *French Possessions*.]

In Asia

[See *Asia*, *French Possessions*.]

#### Foreign Affairs

Defensive Alliances, 7271

#### Italy

Early Stages of Struggle for Unification

Effect of Napoleonic Reorganization, 3582-  
3583

Austrian Domination Reinstated, 526

Congress of Vienna, 526, 3583, 7527.  
[See above.]

Beginning of Resistance to Austria

Secret Societies, 3583

Mazzini and the Carbonari, 4357, 526

Young Italy, 3583, 4357, 7952

Charles Albert of Sardinia, 3583, 6387

Revolutionary Spirit Spread to Italy, 3583

Mazzini's Republic of Rome, 4357,  
6180

Charles Albert and the War with Aus-  
tria, 3583, 6387

#### Leadership of Sardinia

Cavour's Plan for Unification, 1263, 3583,  
7517

Participation in Crimean War, 1263,  
1747, 7517

Alliance with Napoleon III against  
Austria, 3583, 4808

War between Austria and Sardinia,  
1263, 526, 3583, 7517

Victories at Magenta and Solferino,  
3583, 4808, 7517, 1263

Withdrawal of Napoleon III, 3583

Peace of Villafranca, 3583, 4808

Treaty of Zurich

Lombardy and Milan Ceded to  
Italy, 1263, 3583, 4473, 7517

Other Italian Provinces United with  
Sardinia, 3583, 7517

Garibaldi's Conquest of Sicily and  
Naples, 2694, 1263, 2583, 3583, 6592,  
7517



Victor Emmanuel II, Proclaimed King of Italy, 3583, 7517, 2694  
 Unification Accomplished  
 Alliance with Prussia in Seven Weeks' War, 3583, 6507  
 Compensation: Venetia Freed from Austria, 6507, 7487, 7517, 527  
 Garibaldi's Invasion of the Papal States, 3583, 2694  
 Opposition of Pope Pius, 5732  
 French Troops Defend Pope, 3583, 2694, 6181  
 Rome Voted Annexation to Italy, 5343, 3583, 7517  
 Pope Deprived of Temporal Power, 3583, 5639, 5732, 7466  
 "Prisoner" in the Vatican, 5343, 5639, 5732, 6180, 7466  
 Rome Made Capital of Italy, 3583, 6180, 7517  
 The Modern Kingdom  
 Humbert I Succeeded Victor Emmanuel II, 3284, 7517, 3584  
 Victor Emmanuel III, 7517, 3584  
 Foreign Affairs  
 Imperialism in Africa, 78  
 Attempts to Annex Abyssinia (Ethiopia), 2307  
 Eritrea, 2289-2290  
 Italian Somaliland, 6686  
 [See *Tripoli*, below.]  
 Defensive Alliance, 7271, 3584  
 War with Turkey, 3584, 7312  
**Germany**  
 Rise of German Nationalism  
 Revolution of 1848 in Prussia, 5860, 2785  
 Frederick William IV Forced to Grant a Constitution, 2602, 5860  
 Attitude of Bismarck, 774  
 Unifying Influences  
 Zollverein Organized, 2785, 7978  
 Frankfort Parliament, 5860, 2785  
 Rivalry of Austria and Prussia, 2785, 527, 5860  
 Bismarck, Representative of Prussia, 774  
 Frederick William IV Chosen Ruler, 5860, 2785  
 Bismarck and the Making of an Empire  
 Accession of William I, 7769, 2785, 5860  
 Bismarck's Plans for Unification, 774  
 War with Denmark, 774, 1896  
 Seven Weeks' War (1866), 774, 527, 2785, 6507  
 Efficiency of Von Moltke, 4577  
 Battle of Sadowa, 6507  
 Treaty of Prague, 6508  
 German Confederation Dissolved, 6508  
 Schleswig-Holstein Annexed to Prussia, 6413, 6508, 1896  
 Venetia Annexed to Italy, 6507, 7487, 7517, 527

Hanover Incorporated with Prussia, 3038  
 Organization of North German Confederation, 775, 2786  
 Franco-German War (1870-1871)  
 [See *France*, above.]  
 Causes  
 Contest for Leadership in Europe, 775, 4808, 2591  
 Jealousy of Power of Hohenzollerns, 2584, 2786  
 Preparation in Prussia, 775, 2786, 2584  
 Dispute over Throne of Spain, 775, 2584  
 Ultimatum of France, 2584, 2591  
 Declaration of War, 2591  
 German Victories  
 Inadequate Forces of the French, 2591  
 Inefficiency of MacMahon, 4194  
 Strategy of Von Moltke, 2591, 4577  
 Battle of Sedan, 2591, 4808  
 Treaty of Frankfort, 2584, 2591-2592, 2786  
 Cost of the War, 7592  
 Results from Germany's Viewpoint  
 Last Step in Unification, 775, 2786, 2592, 5860  
 National Spirit Developed, 2786  
 Empire Organized under William I, 7769, 2786, 775  
 Increasing Enmity of France, 2592  
 Factor in World War, 2584, 2592, 236, 7854  
**The German Empire**  
 Constitution and Government  
 States and Divisions, 2780  
 Kingdoms  
 Bavaria, 654  
 Prussia, 5858-5860  
 Grand Duchies  
 Baden, 569-570  
 Hesse, 3169  
 Mecklenburg-Schwerin, 4371  
 Oldenburg, 5190  
 Others, 2780  
 Duchies  
 Brunswick, 983  
 Others, 2780  
 Principalities, 2780  
 Free Cities, 2602, 1441, 2780  
 Bremen, 941  
 Hamburg, 3025  
 Lübeck, 4143  
 King of Prussia the Hereditary Emperor, 2780  
 Office of Chancellor, 1302  
 Legislative Bodies  
 Bundesrat, 1021, 2780  
 Reichstag, 2780, 6046  
 Prussianization of the Empire, 5860  
 Bismarck, the First Chancellor, 775, 1302  
 Domestic Policy, 775  
 Anti-Socialist Agitation, 2786

- Foreign Policy
  - Imperialism Inaugurated, 775, 2778
  - Organization of the Triple Alliance, 775, 7271, 2786
- The Reign of William II
  - Resignation of Bismarck, 775, 2786, 7770
  - Succeeded by Caprivi, 2786, 7770
- Domestic Policies
  - Internal Development, 7770
    - Kaiser Wilhelm (Kiel) Canal, 3772-3773, 2778
    - Railroads, 2778
  - Opposition to Socialism, 7770
  - Militarism and Navalism, 7770
- Foreign Policies
  - Development of Colonies, 7770
    - [See, *Bismarck, the First Chancellor*, above.]
    - Kaiser Wilhelm's land (New Guinea), 4917
    - Caroline Islands, 5288-5289
    - Samoa, 6353
    - Kiao-Chau (Shantung), 2778, 2786, 6541
  - Economic Influence in Ottoman Empire, 7312
    - Baghdad Railway, 3517
  - Algeciras Conference, 216-217
- The World War
  - [See below.]
- Great Britain and the British Empire
  - England during the Napoleonic Era
    - Joined the Coalition against Napoleon, 1507-1508, 2928
    - [See *The Napoleonic Empire*, above.]
  - Congress of Vienna, 7527-7528
  - Colonial Accessions and Confirmations, 2928
    - [See *Period of Reaction*, above.]
  - War of 1812 with the United States
    - [See *The United States*, below.]
  - Uprisings in Ireland
    - Revolts, 3527, 2928
    - Act of Union, 3528, 2928
- The Reform Era
  - Gradual Decrease in Royal Power, 2928
  - Weak and Incapable Rulers
    - George IV (1820-1830), 2751
    - William IV (1830-1837), 7769
  - Opposition of the Tories to Democracy, 7222
  - Demands for Reform, 2928
    - Peel's Reform of the Criminal Laws, 2928, 5440
    - Opposition of Duke of Wellington, 7707
    - Repeal of Test Acts, 2928, 7117
- The Great Reform Bill of 1832
  - Resignation of Wellington, 7707
  - Earl Grey's Strategy, 2928, 2964, 7769
  - Ended Rotten Boroughs, 7769
  - A Whig Victory, 7222
- Other Reforms, 2929
  - Regulated Employment of Women and Children, 3823
- The Reign of Queen Victoria
  - Accession of Queen Victoria, 2929, 7518
  - Lord Melbourne's Ministry, (1835-1841)
  - Rebellion in Canada, 1140, 7518, 6020-6021
  - Present Postal System Established, 5771-5772
  - Opium War in China, 1396, 7518
  - Marriage of Victoria to Prince Albert, 182, 7518
- Sir Robert Peel and Economic Reforms
  - Repeal of the Corn Laws, 1694, 2929, 5440, 7518
  - Anti-Corn Law League
    - John Bright, 955-956
    - Richard Cobden, 1515
  - Potato Famine in Ireland, 5440, 3528
  - Opposition of Disraeli, 1965
  - Repeal Accomplished: Free Trade Begun, 1694, 2604, 7021
- Lord John Russell and Chartism (1846-1852) 6256, 1320
- Lord Russell and Ireland, 6256
- Lord Palmerston and Foreign Affairs
  - The Crimean War, 1747, 2929, 5322, 7518
  - Treaty of Paris, 5381
  - [See *Russia*, below.]
- The Sepoy Rebellion in India, 6496, 3388, 4803
- Siege of Lucknow, 4143, 6496
- Sir Henry Havelock, 3075, 6496, 5276
- Sir James Outram, 5276, 3075
- Sir Colin Campbell, 3075, 6496
- Result
  - Indian Affairs Transferred to the Crown, 3388, 6496, 4803, 2089, 2929, 7518
  - [See *Asia*, section on *India*, below.]
- The Second Palmerston Ministry, 5322
- The Enfranchisement of the Jews, 7518
- The American War of Secession
  - The Trent Affair, 7262, 4322
  - The Alabama: A Breach of Neutrality, 164
  - Attitude in England
    - Lord Russell, 6256
    - John Bright, 955
  - [See *The United States*, section on *The War of Secession*.]
- Lord Russell and the Reform Bill, 6256
- Derby-Disraeli Ministries, 1965
  - Franchise Reform of 1867, 2929
  - North America Act 1141, 7518
  - [See Outline on *Canada*, below.]
- Gladstone and the Irish Question
  - Influence and Power of Gladstone, 2829
  - John Bright, 956
  - The Education Act, 2829
  - Trade Union Act, 3823

The Irish Problem  
 Church Question, 3528  
 Reforms in Land Laws, 3528, 2829  
 Home Rule Question, 3212, 3528  
 Charles S. Parnell, 5397, 3212  
 Disraeli, the Imperialist  
 Foreign Affairs  
 Purchase of Suez Canal Shares, 1965, 6904, 2154  
 Queen Victoria Made Empress of India, 1965, 3388, 7518  
 Checked Russia's Designs on Turkey, 1965, 6270, 6281, 7312  
 Treaty of San Stefano, 6281  
 Congress of Berlin, 713-714  
 [See *Russia*, below.]  
 English Influence in Afghanistan, 72  
 Zulu War, 7990  
 Domestic Affairs  
 Poor Laws, 1965, 5729  
 Factory and Workshop Consolidation Act, 3823  
 Gladstone's Second Ministry  
 Parliamentary and Suffrage Reforms, 2829  
 The Irish Problem, 3212, 3528  
 Davitt and the Land League, 1840  
 Charles S. Parnell, 5397  
 Death of Disraeli, 1965  
 Foreign Affairs: Imperialism  
 In Egypt  
 Native Revolt and End of Dual Control, 2154  
 Gordon's Expedition into the Sudan, 2874, 2154, 287  
 In Africa  
 Discovery of Diamonds in South Africa, 1932, 7360  
 British Immigration to Transvaal, 7360, 7357  
 Basutoland, British Protectorate, 647  
 Lord Salisbury's First Ministry, 6333  
 Gladstone and the First Home Rule Bill  
 Home Rule Bill Introduced and Rejected, 2829, 3528, 3212, 5397  
 Leaders of the Opposition  
 John Bright, 955  
 Joseph Chamberlain, 1297  
 Salisbury's Second Ministry  
 Progress toward Irish Home Rule, 3212  
 Sir Arthur Balfour in Ireland, 579  
 Parnell and Charges of Conspiracy, 5397  
 Colonization in Africa  
 [See *Africa*, below.]  
 Gladstone's Fourth Ministry  
 Second Home Rule Bill, 2829, 3212  
 The Rosebery Ministry, 6204  
 Salisbury's Third Ministry  
 Foreign Affairs  
 The Venezuela Dispute, 6333, 7482-7483

Cleveland's Interpretation of the Monroe Doctrine, 1472, 7483  
 [See *The United States*, section on *Administration of Grover Cleveland*.]  
 Armenian Massacres, 408, 409  
 Intervention in Crete, 1742  
 Joseph Chamberlain and Economic Imperialism, 1297-1298  
 Kitchener and Recovery of the Sudan, 287, 3798  
 Fashoda Incident, 3812  
 The South African War  
 Causes  
 Boers Resented Foreign Settlers, 813, 6697  
 Kruger's Anti-British Policy, 3817, 6697  
 Jameson Raid, 3615, 6697, 7358  
 Role of Cecil Rhodes, 6098  
 Declaration of War  
 Orange Free State and Transvaal against Great Britain, 6697, 7358, 7360  
 Sir Alfred Milner's Mission, 4490  
 Lloyd George's Attitude, 4066  
 British Military Leaders  
 Lord Roberts, 6147  
 General French, 2607  
 Lord Kitchener, 3798  
 Lord Methuen, 6697  
 Boer Leaders  
 Louis Botha, 893  
 Piet Cronje, 6697  
 Events of the War, 6697  
 Treaty of Peace, 6697, 7360  
 Victorian Age, 86, 7519  
 [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]  
 The Twentieth Century  
 Accession of Edward VII, 2133, 2929  
 Balfour's Ministry  
 Irish Home Rule Question, 3212-3213  
 Irish Politicians  
 John Dillon, 1947  
 John Redmond, 6031  
 Land Purchase Bill, 3528  
 Controversy over Protective Tariff, 579  
 Campbell-Bannerman Ministry  
 Liberal Leaders in the Cabinet  
 Herbert Asquith, Chancellor of the Exchequer, 455  
 Sir Edward Grey, Foreign Affairs, 2964  
 John Morley, Secretary of State for India, 4653  
 Richard Haldane, Minister of War, 3014  
 David Lloyd George, President of the Board of Trade, 4067  
 The Asquith Ministry (1908-1916)  
 The Budget of 1909, 2929, 4067  
 Lloyd George, 4067

Death of King Edward, 2133  
 Accession of George V, 2752  
 Parliament Act of 1911, 5395, 4067  
 2929, 3528  
 Social Legislation  
   Old Age Pensions, 3823, 5190  
   Unemployment and Health Insurance, 3823, 4067  
 Disestablishment of Anglican Church in Wales, 2929  
 Home Rule for Ireland, 3213, 3528, 2929  
 Colonial Policy  
   Establishment of Union of South Africa, 7358  
 [See *The World War*, below.]

## Austria

Wars with the French Republic and Napoleon, 525-526  
 Accession of Francis II, 2590  
 Joined Coalition against France, 1507  
   Failure of Attempt to Crush Napoleon, 830, 526  
   Treaty of Campo Formio, 830, 2590, 3583  
   Loss of Austrian Territory  
     Belgium, 698, 830, 2590  
     Lombardy, 2590, 830  
     Venice Acquired, 526, 7487  
 The Second Coalition, 2590  
   Battle of Marengo, 4289, 830  
   Peace of Lunéville, 830, 526  
   Tuscany Ceded, 526  
 The Third Coalition, 831, 1507, 2590  
   Defeat at Austerlitz, 506, 526, 2590  
   Peace of Pressburg, 506  
   End of the Holy Roman Empire, 2590, 3204, 526  
   Austrian Empire Established, 526, 2590  
 Insurrection of 1809  
   Napoleon's Victories, 831, 526  
   Loss of Trieste, Tyrol, West Galicia, 526  
 Marriage of Napoleon to Austrian Princess, 526, 832, 3702, 4289  
 [See *The Napoleonic Empire*, above.]  
 Congress of Vienna  
   Austrian Possessions Restored, 526  
   German Confederation Formed, 2784, 7527  
 Metternich, Foremost Man in Austria, 526  
 The Holy Alliance, 3201, 4429, 2590  
 Revolts in the Empire  
   Italy Restless under Austrian Domination, 526, 3583  
   [See *Italy*, above.]  
 Bohemia, 526, 813  
 Galicia, 526, 2662  
 Hungary  
   Revival of Constitution and Language, 526  
   Revolution of 1848, 526, 3293  
     Kossuth, the Leader, 3815  
   Russian Intervention, 3293, 3815, 526

Resignation of Metternich, 526, 4420  
 Italians Gained Freedom from Austria, 526, 1263, 3583, 7517  
 [See *Italy*, above.]  
 Rivalry with Prussia, 527, 2591  
   Bismarck's Plans for a United Germany, 774  
   Intrigues Involving Austria, 527, 774  
   War with Denmark, 774, 1896  
   Seven Weeks' War, 527, 774, 2785, 6507  
 [See *Germany*, above.]  
 Concessions to Hungary, 527, 3293  
   Ausgleich, or Compromise of 1867, 527, 529, 3293  
 Formation of Dual Monarchy: Austria-Hungary, 527  
   Frances Joseph Crowned King of Hungary, 2591, 3293  
 Race Problems Resulting from Polygot Population, 529  
 Slavs, 6640-6641  
   Czechs, 1800  
   Magyars, 4221  
 Austria and the Balkans, 529-530  
   Russo-Turkish War, 530, 6281  
   Bosnia-Herzegovina Assigned to Austria, 530, 868, 714  
   Annexation, 530, 581  
 Balkan Wars, 530, 581  
 [See *The Balkan Countries*, below.]  
 Quarrel with Serbia, 530, 6503  
 [See *The World War*, below.]

## Russia

Accession of Alexander I, 198  
 Napoleonic Wars  
   Joined Coalition against Napoleon, 1507, 831, 6270  
   Defeat at Austerlitz, 6270, 506, 526  
   Napoleon's Russian Campaign, 831, 6270  
   Treaty of Tilsit, 831, 198, 5860, 6270  
   Napoleon's Disastrous March in Russia, 832, 198  
   Grand Coalition against Napoleon, 1507, 832  
   Battle of Lützen, 4160  
   Downfall of Napoleon, 832, 7669, 2413  
 [See *The Napoleonic Empire*, above.]  
 Congress of Vienna, 7527, 6270  
 The Holy Alliance, 3200-3201, 198  
 War with Turkey (1806-1812), 6281, 7312  
 Reign of Nicholas I  
   Reactionary Domestic Policy, 5019  
   Aggressive Foreign Policy, 5020  
   War with Persia, 5020, 5501  
   Acquisition of Persian Armenia, 408, 5020, 5501  
   War with Turkey (1828-1829), 6281, 5020  
   Russian Protectorate over Wallachia and Moldavia, 6246, 5020, 6281  
 Crimean War (1854-1856)

- Causes
  - Russian Encroachment in Turkey, 1747, 5020, 7312
  - England's Fear of Russia in Turkey, 1747, 2929
- Allies against Russia
  - England, 2929, 1747, 5020, 6281
  - France, 4808, 1747, 5020, 6281
  - Sardinia, 1263, 1747, 7517, 6281
  - Turkey, 7312, 1747, 5020, 6281
- Events of the War, 1747
  - Charge of the Light Brigade, 1310, 1747
  - Treaty of Paris, 5381, 1747
- Reign of Alexander II
  - National Reforms
    - Abolition of Serfdom, 198, 6270, 6503
    - Establishment of Zemstvos, 7971
    - Systems of Courts and Schools, 198
  - Unrest Despite Reforms, 6270
    - Political Suspects Sent to Siberia, 6270, 6587, 6591
  - Russo-Turkish War (1877-1878)
    - Cause, 6281
    - Events
      - First Use of Trenches, 6281
      - Russia Victorious, 6281, 6270, 7312, 1015
    - Treaty of San Stefano, 6281, 7312, 1015
    - Independent State Created
      - Bulgaria and Eastern Rumelia, 1015, 714
    - Cost of the War, 7592
  - Congress of Berlin
    - Rewrote Treaty of San Stefano, 714, 1015, 6281, 7312
    - Terms and Provisions, 714
      - Checked Russia's Power over Turkey, 714, 7312
      - Remade Map of Balkans, 714, 581
  - Rise of the Nihilists, 5028
  - Assassination of Alexander II, 198, 6270
- Reign of Alexander III
  - Reactionary Policies
    - Liberties in Finland Checked, 198
    - Jews Persecuted, 198, 6270, 3676
  - Extension of Russia into Asia, 198, 6270
    - Trans-Siberian Railway, 6270, 6591, 7252-7253
  - Negotiations Leading to Alliance with France, 6270, 7271
- The Reign of Nicholas II
  - Reactionary Policies, 5020
  - Russo-Japanese War (1904-1905)
    - Causes, 1402, 6279
    - Events
      - Blockade of Russian Squadron, 6279
      - Admiral Togo, 7199
      - Siege of Port Arthur, 6280
      - Work of Kuropatkin, 3819, 6280
  - The Treaty of Portsmouth
    - Peace Proposed by Roosevelt, 6291, 6280

- Terms Favorable to Japan, 6280, 3637
- [See *Asia, Japan*, below.]
- Revolutionary Movement of 1905
  - Causes
    - Rise of Democracy, 6270
    - Development of a Labor Class, 6172
  - Events, 6271
  - Results
    - Constitution Granted, 5021, 6267, 6271
    - Duma Established, 6267, 6271, 2053
    - Local Self-Government: Zemstvo, 6267, 7971
- The World War. [See below.]
- Russian Dependencies
  - Finland, 2422
  - Poland, 5690
- The Balkan Countries
  - Turkey
    - Napoleonic Wars
      - Loss of Egypt, 2152, 7312
    - Decline of Turkey in Europe
      - Greece and Independence, 2047, 7312
      - [See *Greece*, below.]
    - Russo-Turkish Wars, 6280-6281
      - Crimean War, 1747, 5020, 7320
      - War of 1877-1878, 8, 6281, 6270, 7312
      - [For details, see *Russia*, above.]
  - Congress of Berlin
    - What Turkey Gained, 714, 7312
    - What Turkey Lost, 8, 7306 (Map)
    - Thessaly, 2047, 7312, 7148
    - Epirus, 2281, 7312
    - Bosnia-Herzegovina, 868, 530
    - [See below.]
    - Albania, 181
    - Bulgaria, 1015
    - Montenegro, 4622
    - Rumania, 6246
    - Serbia, 6502
- The Period of "Reforms"
  - Abdul-Hamid II, 8
  - Massacres, Atrocities, and Revolts
    - In Armenia, 408
    - In Macedonia, 4179, 7312
  - Intervention of Powers, 410, 7312
  - The Young Turks, 7312, 7054, 8
  - Revolt of 1908-1909
    - Constitution Granted, 8, 7310, 7312
    - Deposition of Abdul-Hamid II, 8, 7312
  - Bosnia-Herzegovina Annexed by Austria-Hungary, 860, 530, 581
  - Accession of Mohammed V, 4568
  - War with Italy, 3584, 7312, 4568
    - Loss of Tripoli (Libia), 3584, 3066, 7312
- First Balkan War (1912-1913)
  - Balkan Alliance against Turkey, 581
  - Causes, 581
    - Oppression of Christians, 6502-6503
  - Events of the War, 582

Victories of the Allies, 582, 6503, 1015  
 Treaty of Peace  
   Turkey Practically Expelled from  
   Europe, 582, 7312, 1015  
 Territorial Adjustments  
   Bulgaria, 582  
     Adrianople and Part of Macedonia,  
       1015, 4179  
     [See *Bulgaria*, below.]  
   Greece, 582  
     Crete, 2950, 1742  
     Other Aegean Islands, 2950  
     Saloniki, 582, 2942  
   Serbia, 582  
     Part of Macedonia, 4179  
 The World War. [See below.]  
 Bulgaria  
   Freed from Turkey by Aid of Russia,  
     1015  
   Russo-Turkish War (1877-1878), 6281  
   [See *Russia*, above.]  
   Congress of Berlin  
     Bulgaria again under Turkey, 714, 1015  
   [See *Russia*; *Turkey*, above.]  
   Union of East Rumelia and Bulgaria, 1015,  
     6249  
   War with Serbia, 1015  
   Bulgarian Declaration of Independence,  
     1015  
   The First Balkan War, 1015, 581-582  
   [For details, see *Turkey*, above.]  
   The Second Balkan War  
     Causes  
       Bulgaria's Grievances, 582, 1015  
       Serbia's Grievances, 582, 6502  
     Serbia's Allies, 582  
     Defeat of Bulgaria, 582  
     Treaty of Bucharest, 582  
       Adrianople Retaken by Turkey, 582,  
         7307  
     Territorial Gains of Serbia, 582, 6503  
   Results of the Balkan Wars  
     Uneasiness in the Balkans, 582, 1015  
     Bitterness in Bulgaria, 1015, 6503  
     A Factor in the World War, 6503, 7854,  
       582  
   Bulgaria in the World War. [See below.]  
 Rumania  
   Under Turkey and Russia, 6246  
   Russo-Turkish Wars, 6246, 6281  
   Lost by Treaty of Paris (1856), 5381,  
     6246  
   [See *Russia*, above.]  
   Fight for Independence  
     Moldavia and Wallachia United, 6246  
     Russo-Turkish War, 6281  
     Independence Declared, 6246  
     Congress of Berlin  
       Independence Recognized, 6246, 714  
   Accession of Prince Charles, 6246  
   Second Balkan War, 6246, 582  
   [See *Bulgaria*, above.]  
   World War. [See below.]

Greece  
   Independence from Turkey  
     Unifying Influence of Greek Church,  
       2947, 2951  
   War for Independence, 2947, 7312  
 The Modern Kingdom  
   Accession of Otto I  
     Abdication, 2947, 5275, 2753  
   George I, 2753  
     Annexation of Ionian Islands, 2947,  
       3503  
   Congress of Berlin  
     Annexation of Thessaly, 2947, 7149,  
       7312  
   War with Turkey and Loss of Crete,  
     2947, 1742  
   The Balkan Wars, 2950, 581-582  
   [For details, see *Turkey*; *Bulgaria*,  
     above.]  
   Assassination of George I, 2753, 2950  
   Accession of Constantine I, 1625-1626,  
     2950  
   The World War. [See below.]  
 Serbia  
   Freed from Turkey by Congress of Berlin,  
     6502, 714  
   Accession of Peter I  
     Establishment of a Constitutional Mon-  
       archy, 5516, 6502  
   Pan-Slav Ideal, 6502, 6640-6641  
   Balkan Wars, 6502-6503, 581-582  
   World War. [See below.]  
 Montenegro  
   Nicholas I, 4622  
   Independence Recognized by Congress  
     of Berlin, 714, 4622  
   Reforms Granted, 4622  
   Balkan Wars, 581-582, 4622  
   World War. [See below.]  
 Albania  
   Under Turkish Domination, 180  
   Partial Independence, 180  
   First Balkan War  
     Independence Declared, 180  
     Recognition by Powers, 530  
 Iberian Peninsula  
   Spain  
     Napoleonic Era  
       War with France, 6735  
       Alliance with France against England,  
         6735  
       Defeat at Trafalgar, 6735, 7236,  
         4875  
       [See *The Napoleonic Empire*, above.]  
       Joseph Bonaparte Made King, 6735,  
         827  
       The Peninsular War  
       [See *The Napoleonic Empire*, above.]  
       Spain Freed from France, 6736  
   Restoration of Ferdinand VII, 6736  
   Queen Isabella and the Republic, 6736  
   Constitution of 1876, 6734  
   Reign of Alfonso XIII, 204

Spanish-American War, 6736, 6738-6741

[See *The United States*, section on *War and Prosperity*.]

[For recent history of Spain, see *Post-War Europe*, below.]

## Portugal

### Napoleonic Era

Peninsular War, 831, 5763-5764

[See *The Napoleonic Empire*, above.]

Exile of Royal Family in Brazil, 5764, 933

Constitutional Monarchy, 5764

Independence of Brazil, 5764, 933

Rise of Republican Sentiment, 5764

Revolution of 1910, 5764-5766

Republic Declared, 5766

The World War. [See below.]

## The Scandinavian Countries

### Denmark, 1896

#### Early Modern History

Loss of Sweden, 1896, 6954

### Napoleonic Era

Alliance with Napoleon, 1896

Loss of Norway to Sweden, 1896, 5088, 6955

Constitution of 1849, 1894

Reign of Christian IX, 1412

Schleswig-Holstein Affair, 1896, 6413, 774

[See *Germany*, above.]

Liberal Government Established, 1412

#### Prosperity of Recent Years

Frederick VIII, 1896, 2601

Christian X, 1412

## Sweden

### Napoleonic Era

Bernadotte Founded New Dynasty, 6955

Joined Third Coalition against Napoleon, 6955, 1507, 831

Rewarded by Annexation of Norway, 6955, 5088

Congress of Vienna, 7527

[See *The French Revolution and Napoleon*, above.]

Constitution of 1809, 6953

### Recent History

Quarrel of Norway and Sweden

Oscar II and Attempted Reconciliation, 5264, 6955

Norway Declared Its Independence, 6955, 5088, 5264

Reign of Gustaf V, 2988, 6958

### World War

Gustaf's German Sympathies, 2988

## Norway

Union with Denmark, 5088, 1896

Union with Sweden

Result of Napoleonic Wars, 5088, 6955, 7527

[See *Sweden*, above.]

Independence Achieved, 5088, 5090, 5264, 6955

[See *Sweden*, above.]

## Modern Progress

Haakon VII Chosen King by the Storting, 2996, 5090

Political, Social, and Economic Reforms, 5090, 7824

## The World War

### Underlying Causes

#### National Rivalries and Ambitions

Bismarck and the Franco-German War, 775, 2591-2592, 2584, 2786, 7854

[See *National Readjustments and Developments to 1914*, *France*, *Germany*, above.]

French Bitterness over Loss of Alsace-Lorraine, 236, 2584, 7854

Balkan Wars, 581-582

Serbian Gains Aroused Antagonism, 6503, 582, 7854

Bulgaria, 1015

Austria-Hungary, 530, 6503

Fear of Slav Union under Serbia, 530, 582, 7854

[See *National Readjustments and Developments to 1914*, *The Balkans*, above.]

The Balance of Power Endangered, 576, 7854

#### Internal Strife, 7854

In Russia, 6271

In German Countries, 7854

William II and Socialism, 7770, 7854

Austria-Hungary and Its Race Problem, 528-529, 7854

### Economic Causes

Germany's Commercial Development, 2777, 7770

Need for Outlets and Protection for Commerce, 7854

Army and Navy to Protect Commerce, 7854

Democracy Versus Autocracy, 7854, 7770

Militarism and Armaments, 7854

Compulsory Military Training, 416 417

Increased Navies, 7856

### Formation of Defensive Alliances

#### Triple Alliance

Germany, 775, 7271, 2786

Austria-Hungary, 531, 7271

Italy, 3584, 7271

Triple Entente, 7271

### Immediate Causes and the Outbreak

Increasing Tension between Austria-Hungary and Serbia, 530, 6503

Austria's Annexation of Bosnia-Herzegovina, 869, 530

Serbia Denied an Outlet on the Adriatic, 530

Assassination of Archduke Francis Ferdinand, 530, 1315, 6503, 7856

Austria's Harsh Ultimatum, 7856, 6503

Serbia's Reply, 7856, 6503, 530

Attitude of the Rest of Europe, 7856-7857  
 Austria Declared War, 530, 6503, 7856, 7857  
 Russia Entered to Support Serbia, 5021  
   Announced Mobilization, 7857  
 Dates of Declarations of War, 7851  
 The Nations Engaged, 7851  
   A World-Wide Call to Arms (Map), 7850  
 Attitude of Europe at the Outbreak, 7857  
**Developments in Warfare, 7591-7592**  
 Artillery and Explosives  
   Heavy Artillery, 434, 435, 3268  
   Machine Guns, 4181  
   Bombs, 825  
   Grenades, 2962  
   Other Explosives, 2346  
 Rifles, 6126  
 Submarines, 6887-6893  
   Submarine Mines, 6893-6894  
   Paravanes, 6894  
 Poison Gas, 5683  
 Camouflage, 6889, 7880  
 Aircraft  
   Airplanes and Air Raids, 127-129  
   Zeppelins, 7973, 115  
 Tanks, or Caterpillars, 7233, 7866-7867  
 Signaling and Signals, 6598-6601  
   Signal Corps, 6597-6598  
 Radio, 5940-5941, 6600  
**The Battle Fronts**  
 The Western Front, 7860-7861  
   Leaders of the Allies, 7861  
     Sir John French, 2607  
     Field Marshall Haig, 3005, 7852  
     Marshal Joffre, 3681  
     General Nivelle, 7861  
     General Pétain, 5514-5515  
     Marshall Foch, 2505, 7852  
     General Pershing, 5494-5495, 7852  
   Leaders of the Central Powers  
     Crown Prince Rupprecht, 7861, 7853  
     Crown Prince Frederick William, 7861, 7853  
 The Eastern Front, 7861  
   Leaders of the Allies  
     Grand Duke Nicholas, 7861  
     Nicholas II, 7861  
   Leaders of the Central Powers  
     Field Marshal Hindenburg, 3181  
     General Ludendorff, 4144  
     August von Mackensen, 7861  
 Other Fronts, 7862  
   Leaders of the Allies  
     Lord Byng, 1053, 7852  
     General Diaz, 7852  
**First Weeks of the Conflict**  
 Germany's Plan of Action, 7857  
 Violation of Belgian Neutrality, 7857-7858, 699, 4898  
 Cause for Great Britain's Entrance, 2929  
 Belgian Cities Attacked  
   Fall of Liège, 693, 701, 7858  
   Occupation of Brussels, 985, 7858  
   Bombardment of Antwerp, 315, 7858

Attack on Namur, 694, 7858  
 Destruction in Louvain, 694, 7858  
 Removal of Belgian Government to Havre, 701, 2571, 985, 7858  
 Luxemburg Invaded by Germany, 4161  
 Paris, the Chief German Objective, 5379  
 First Battle of the Marne, 4298, 7858  
   Paris Saved by Joffre, 3681, 4298, 7858, 5380  
**Land Operations to the End of 1915**  
 In the West  
   Battle of the Aisne, 154, 7861  
   Early Attacks of the Allies, 7861  
   Failure of German Offensive on Calais, 2571, 7861-7862  
   German Attacks on Ypres, 694-695, 7862  
   French and British Drives, 7862-7863  
 On the Eastern Front  
   Russian Invasion of Germany, 7863  
   Russian Successes in Galicia, 2662  
   Capture of Lemberg, 7863, 5686  
   Siege of Przemyśl, 7863, 2662  
   German Invasion of Russia, 7863  
 The Dardanelles Campaign, 7863  
   Attempt to Take Gallipoli, 2667, 7863  
   Failure of the Campaign, 7863, 7312, 1826-1827  
 Serbia Overwhelmed, 7863-7864, 6503  
   Bulgaria Joined Central Powers, 1015, 7864, 6503  
 The Saloniki Fiasco, 7864  
 Entrance of Italy on the Allied Side, 3584  
   Contrary to Terms of Triple Alliance, 7271  
   Austro-Italian Frontier Established, 3584  
 Turkish Atrocities in Armenia, 410  
**Events on Land in 1916**  
 In the West  
   The Central Powers Bid for Peace, 7864  
   Attack on Verdun, 7493, 7864  
     Map of Meuse River Region, 4429  
   Somme Offensive Begun, 6687, 7864  
 In the East, 7866  
 On the Italian Front; Goritz Captured, 7866  
 Rumania Crushed, 7866, 6246  
 On Other Fronts  
   In Armenia, 7866  
   In Greece, 7866, 2950  
   Revolt in Ireland, 7866, 3528-3529  
**Events on Land in 1917**  
 Entrance of the United States, 7867, 7883  
 [See *The United States*, section on *The World War*.]  
 In the West  
   Battle of the Somme Ended, 6687, 7867  
   Other Important Military Operations, 7867  
 In the East  
   Russian Catastrophe, 7867  
   Russian Revolution, 6271-6272  
   Russian Drive into Galicia, 7867, 6272  
   Kerensky's Efforts, 7867-7868, 6272  
   Bolsheviks Seize the Government, 825  
   Lenin, 3931, 7868  
   Trotzky, 7276, 7868



Separate Peace of Russia and Germany, 7868, 6272  
 Italian Reverses, 7868, 7870  
 The War in Asia  
   Capture of Kiao-chow (Shantung), 6541  
   British Invasions in Mesopotamia (Iraq), 3514, 7870  
   Rebellion of the Bedouins, 7244  
   Capture of Jerusalem, 7870, 3660, 5316  
   The Work of General Allenby, 225  
 Abdication of Constantine I of Greece, 7870, 1626, 2950  
**Events on Land in 1918**  
 Germany's Great Offensive, 7870  
 Foch Placed in Command of Allies, 2505  
 The Battle for Paris, 7871  
   The Second Battle of the Marne, 4298, 7871  
   Americans in the Battle of Belleau Wood, 7871, 7890  
   Château Thierry, 7871, 7890  
   Paris Saved, 7871, 5380  
 Germany on the Defensive, 7871  
 The Last Days  
   The Drive toward Metz, 7872, 2572  
   Campaign in the Argonne, 379, 380, 7872  
   Americans Engaged, 7890  
   Germany's Rapid Collapse, 7872-7873  
   Left by Its Allies, 7873  
   Abdication of the Kaiser, 7873  
   [See *The End of the War*, below.]  
 Collapse on Other Fronts, 7874  
**The War on the Sea**  
 Allies Supreme on the Sea, 7874  
 Submarines in the War  
   The "War Zone," 7878-7879  
   "Unrestricted Warfare," 7879  
   Actual Shipping Losses, 7879  
 The German Colonies  
   Lost for Lack of Naval Protection, 7876  
   [See *Africa*, below.]  
**The War in the Air**  
 Many Uses for Aircraft, 7876, 127-129  
 The Liberty Motors, 128, 7876, 7878  
 The Zeppelins, 7878  
 Air Raids, 128-129  
**The End of the War**  
 Peace Proposals  
   Pope Benedict XV, 707  
   Effort of E. M. House, 3261  
   Wilson's Principles, 7784  
 The Armistice  
   Terms Stated, 7873, 7874, 7880  
   The Loss of Man Power, 7880, 7882  
**The Peace Conference**  
 Membership: Thirty-Two Allied Nations, 7882  
 The Big Four, 7882  
   David Lloyd George, 4067  
   Woodrow Wilson, 7785-7786  
   Georges Clemenceau, 1463  
   Vittorio Orlando, 7883

Other Important Representatives  
 Jan C. Smuts, 6656  
 General Louis Botha, 893  
 Eleutherios Venizelos, 7487  
 Ignace Paderewski, 5295  
 The League of Nations, 3904-3906  
 President Wilson, Sponsor, 3904, 7785  
 The Treaty of Versailles with Germany  
   Terms, 7506, 7508, 7882  
   Territory Germany Lost  
     Alsace-Lorraine Ceded to France, 236, 7508  
     Silesia Ceded to Poland, 6602, 7508, 5690  
     Posen Ceded to Poland, 5767, 7508, 5690  
     Districts Ceded to Belgium, 7508  
     Danzig under Protection of League of Nations, 1825, 7508  
     District of Memel Internationalized, 4386, 7508  
     German Colonies  
       Assigned as Mandated Territories, 4253, 7508  
       Shantung District Given to Japan, 6541, 7508  
       [See *Africa*; *Asia*, below.]  
     Territory Occupied or Subjected to Vote  
       Schleswig, 7508, 6413  
       Saar Territory, 6289, 7508  
       Rhineland, 6087  
     Loss of Military and Naval Equipment, 7508, 7882  
     Most of Merchant Marine Delivered to Allies, 7508  
     Indemnity Imposed for Reparations, 7508, 7598, 7882  
     Incorporation of Covenant of the League of Nations, 7508, 3904, 3906  
       [See *Germany*, below.]  
     Ratification by Allies, 7506  
     Rejected by the United States Senate, 7508, 7785  
       [See *The United States*, section on *The World War*.]  
 Treaties with the Other Central Powers, 6308  
   Treaty of Trianon with Hungary, 7266  
   Treaty of Neuilly with Bulgaria, 1016  
   Treaty of Sèvres with Turkey, 6510, 7314

### Post-War Europe

#### New States Created

Czechoslovakia  
 Formed from Territory Ceded by Austria-Hungary, 1800, 532, 6308  
 Bohemia, 813, 1800  
 Moravia, 4648, 1800  
 Carpathian Ruthenia, 1800, 3289  
 Part of Silesia, 1800  
 Story of the Czechs under Foreign Domination, 1802

Spirit of Nationality, 1802, 1800, 6640-6641  
 Czechoslovakia in the World War, 1802-1803  
 Thomas Masaryk, the Father of Czechoslovakia, 4320, 1802-1803  
 Yugoslavia  
   How It Was Formed  
     From Remnant of Austria-Hungary, 7958, 7964, 6308  
       Bosnia-Herzegovina, 868  
       Dalmatia, 1813  
       Croatia and Slavonia, 1749  
       Slovenia, 7958  
       Voyvodina, 7958  
     From a Union of Slav States  
       Serbia, 6502-6503  
       Montenegro, 4621-4622  
 Alexander I of Serbia Chosen King, 199, 7964  
 Dispute over Fiume, 2448, 7964  
 D'Annunzio Occupied Fiume, 296, 2448  
 Treaty of Rapallo, 5995  
   Treaty Disregarded, 5995, 7964  
 Pact of Rome Formulated by Mussolini  
   Fiume Ceded to Italy, 2448, 5995, 3584, 7964  
   Yugoslavia Granted Outlet to the Sea, 2448, 5995, 7964  
 Internal Political Discord, 7964  
 Alexander I's Dictatorship, 7964-7965  
 The New Yugoslavia, 7965  
 Hungary  
   Made up of Hungary Proper, 3288, 6308  
   Territory Fixed by Treaty of Trianon, 7266  
   Republic Declared by Karolyi, 3293  
   Troubles of the New State, 3293  
 Austria  
   Resurrected with the Dissolution of the Dual Monarchy, 527, 532  
   Boundaries Defined, 527, 6308  
   Formation of the Federal Republic, 523-524  
   Financial Difficulties, 527  
 Poland  
   An Old State Restored along Ethnic Lines, 5690  
   Territory Granted by Treaty of Versailles, 5690, 7508  
   Boundary Agreement with Russia, 6276, 5690  
   Galicia Assigned by League of Nations, 2662, 5690  
   Formation of the Republic  
     Pilsudski, First President, 5617, 5690  
     Paderewski, Premier, 5295  
     Constitution of 1921, 5687  
   Boundary Disputes  
     With Czechoslovakia over Teachen, 5690  
     With Russia, 5690, 6276  
     With Lithuania over Vilna, 5691, 5686, 4056

Internal Problems, 5691  
 Other Baltic States  
   Estonia, 2302  
     Joined the League of Nations, 2302, 3906  
   Finland, 2421, 2423  
   Latvia, 3892  
     Joined the League of Nations, 3892, 3906  
   Lithuania  
     Formation of the Republic, 4055-4056  
     Dispute with Poland over Vilna, 4056, 5691, 5686  
     New Constitution, 4056  
 Albania  
   Influence of Italy, 180, 3588  
 Belgium  
   Reparations for Devastation of the War, 701  
   Occupation of Ruhr, 701-702, 6238  
   Young Plan, 7599  
   Belgian War Debt to the United States, 7596-7597  
   Locarno Conference, 4071-4073  
 Bulgaria  
   Abdication of Ferdinand, 1016  
   Boris III, Successor, 1016, 867  
   Treaty of Neuilly, 1016  
   Macedonia Awarded to Greece and Yugoslavia, 4179  
 Denmark, 1898  
 France  
   Period of Reconstruction  
     Cost of the War, 7880, 7891  
     Compensations  
       Germany's Financial Responsibility, 7598  
       [See *Germany*, below.]  
     Occupation of Saar Coal Fields, 2588, 6289, 7508  
     Occupation of the Ruhr Ore Mines, 6238, 2588  
     [See *Germany*, below.]  
   Leaders of the Post-War Period  
     Poincaré, 5681-5682  
     Millerand, 4487  
     Doumergue, 2016  
     Briand, 944  
   Stabilization of the Franc, 2588  
 Foreign Relations  
   Conflict in Syria, 7314, 6990  
   [See *Asia*, below.]  
   Conference on Limitation of Naval Power, 407  
   War Debts, 7595-7597  
   Locarno Conference, 4071-4073  
   Treaty for Renunciation of War, 6058-6059  
 German Republic  
   Formation of the Republic, 2780  
   Friedrich Ebert, First President, 2092  
   Paul von Hindenburg, First President  
     Elected by Popular Vote, 3181  
   Problems of Reconstruction  
     Reparations, 7598

- Germany Unable to Meet Payments, 2789
  - French Occupation of the Ruhr, 6238, 7598
  - Committee of Experts to Study Problem, 1841
    - Formation of Dawes Plan, 1841-1842, 2789, 6238, 7598
    - Young Plan, 7598, 1842, 7952
    - Bank for International Settlements, 3488
  - The Hague Conference, 7599
  - Rehabilitation of Industry, 2776-2777
  - Stabilization of Currency, 2776, 4294, 4587-4588
  - Hugo Stinnes, 6835-6836
  - Foreign Relations
    - Locarno Conference, 4071-4073
    - Treaty for Renunciation of War, 6058-6059
    - Membership in League of Nations, 2789, 3906
  - Great Britain
    - Imperial Problems and Solutions
      - Difficulties in Mandated Territories
        - Racial Disturbances in Palestine, 5310
        - Zionist Movement, 7975
        - Riots of 1929, 7975-7976
      - Movement for Independence in Iraq, 3514
        - [For the above and other mandated territories, see *Asia, Africa*, below.]
    - India's Agitation for Independence, 3390
      - Gandhi, the Leader, 2679-2680
    - Egyptian Protectorate Abolished, 2155
    - Home Rule Granted to Ireland, 3213, 2929
      - [See *Ireland*, below.]
    - Imperial Conference
      - Granted Political Independence to Dominions, 2931, 965-968
        - Canada, 1146, 965
        - Newfoundland, 4915, 965
        - Australia, 516, 965
        - New Zealand, 965, 5004
        - Union of South Africa, 965, 7354, 7356
      - Irish Free State, 965, 2931, 3531
  - Foreign Affairs
    - British War Debt, 7596
    - Settlement of German Reparations
      - Dawes Plan, 1841-1842, 2789, 6238, 7598
      - Young Plan, 7598, 1842, 7952
    - Hague Conference, 7599
    - Washington Conference on Naval Limitations, 407
    - Locarno Conference, 4071-4073, 2929
    - Treaty for Renunciation of War, 6058-6059
    - Recognition of Russian Soviet Government, 2929, 6276
  - Domestic Affairs
    - Downfall of Lloyd George's Coalition Ministry, 4067
      - Andrew Bonar Law, Premier, 3899
      - First Ministry of Stanley Baldwin, 578
      - Ramsay MacDonald's Labour Ministry, 4175-4176, 2929
      - Second Ministry of Stanley Baldwin, 578, 2929, 6879
      - MacDonald's Second Ministry, 4176
      - Visit to the United States, 7405
- Greece
  - Treaty of Neuilly, 1016, 4179
  - Treaty of Sèvres, 6510-6511
    - Led to War with Turkey, 2950
    - Defeat of the Greeks, 7314, 6657, 6511
  - Treaty of Lausanne. [See *Asia, Turkey*, below.]
  - Abdication of Constantine, 2950, 1626
  - The Republic, 2939
    - Venizelos, Premier, 2950, 7487
- Ireland
  - Home Rule Finally Achieved
  - Sinn Fein Movement, 6623-6624, 3529
  - Leaders
    - Eamon de Valera, 7442-7443
    - Arthur Griffith, 6623
    - Michael Collins, 6624, 3529
  - Uprisings and Rebellions, 3529, 6624
  - The Critical Period
    - Irish Republic Proclaimed, 3529, 6624
    - Home Rule Bill: Government of Ireland Act, 3213, 3529, 6624, 1807
      - Efforts of Lloyd George, 4067, 3529
    - Establishment of Irish Free State, 3529, 3213, 6624, 1807
      - The Dail Eireann, 1806-1807
  - Civil War Begun by Sinn Fein Party, 6624
    - Assassination of Collins, 3529, 6624
    - William T. Cosgrave, 1702, 3529
  - Improvement in Economic Conditions, 3529, 3531
  - Change in Political Status
    - Imperial Conference of 1926, 965, 2931, 3531, 1807
    - [See *Great Britain*, above.]
- Italy
  - Territorial Gains from World War, 3585
  - Fascism
    - Internal Chaos in Italy, 3585
    - Rise of the Fascisti, 2374
      - Benito Mussolini, 4781, 2374, 3585
      - Philosophy of Fascism, 2375
      - Meaning of the Name, 2374, 2375, 3585, 3975-3976
    - Overthrow of the Government, 2374, 3586
      - Attitude of Victor Emmanuel III, 7517, 3586
      - Mussolini Made Premier, 3586, 4782
  - Dictatorship of Mussolini
    - Abolition of Democratic Features, 3586
    - Changes in Government, 3586, 3588

## Foreign Policies

Ambitions for Mediterranean Leadership, 3588, 4782

Dispute over Fiume, 2448, 3585, 7964  
[See *Yugoslavia*, above.]

Influence in Albania, 3588, 180

## International Conferences and Treaties

Washington Conference on Naval Limitations, 407

Locarno Conference, 4071-4073

War Debts, 7597, 7599

Peace with the Vatican

Temporal Power Restored to the Pope, 4782, 5343, 5640, 5732, 7466, 7517

Organization of Vatican City, 7468

[See *Vatican City*, below.]

The Concordat, 5734

## Netherlands

Effect of the World War, 4895

The Refuge of Former Kaiser, 7770

Internal Improvements, 4895, 7988

## Norway

Active in International Peace Movements, 5090

Arbitration Treaties

With Sweden, 5090, 6958

With Denmark, 5090

Acquisition of Spitsbergen, 5090, 6768, 6770

## Portugal, 5766

## Russia

The Revolution of 1917

[See *The World War*, above.]

Causes

Evolution of Democracy, 6271

Influence of the *Zemstvo*, 6271, 7971

Success of the Revolution of 1905, 6271

Uniting Influence of the War, 6272

Inefficiency and Tyranny of the Bureaucracy, 6271, 6272, 5021, 3931

Intrigues for Separate Peace with Germany, 6272

Dissatisfaction in the Army, 6272

Abdication of Nicholas II, 6272, 5021, 7867

The Moderate Socialists Form a Government, 6272

Alexander Kerensky, Head of Provisional Government, 3768, 6272, 6267

The Bolshevik Overthrow Kerensky's Government, 825, 3768

Soviet Republic, 6267, 6724

Dictatorship of Lenin, 3931-3932, 6272

Trotsky Minister of War, 6272, 7276

Treaty of Brest-Litovsk with Germany, 6272, 7868

Murder of the Royal Family, 5021, 6272

Russian Territory Alienated

Estonia, 2300, 2302

Latvia, 3889, 3892

Finland, 2421-2423

Poland, 5690

Ukraine, 7345

Lithuania, 4055-4056

Troubles of the New Government, 6272

War with Poland, 6276, 5690

[See *Poland*, above.]

Lenin's New Economic Policy, 3932, 6276

Union of Socialist Soviet Republics Formed, 6257, 6724

Members, 6257, 6724

Russian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic, 6257

Ukrainian Socialist Soviet Republic, 7345, 6257

White Russia Socialist Soviet Republic, 6257

Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic, 6257, 7242

Armenia, 407-410

Georgia, 2763

Azerbaijan, 550

Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic, 7318

Recent History, 6276

## Rumania

Reforms to Relieve Peasants, 6246

The Semitic Problem, 6248

Accession of King Ferdinand and Queen Marie, 6248

New Constitution Adopted, 6245, 6248

Domestic Difficulties of Royal Family, 6248

Accession of King Michel, 6248

Decline of Influence of Bratianu Family, 6249

Stabilization Loan, 6249, 6244

Carol Returned to Power, 6249

## Spain

Internal Political Disturbances, 6736

Revolt in Catalonia, 6736, 6727

Attempt to Retrieve Colonial Empire, 6736

[See *Africa*, *Spanish Possessions*, below.]

Period of Rivera's Dictatorship

Bloodless Coup d'État, 6738, 5811

Military Dictatorship, 6738

Reforms, 5812

Establishment of Civil Government, 6738, 5812

Downfall, 6738

(Rivera Died in 1930)

## Sweden

Economic Development, 6958

Arbitration Treaty with Norway and Denmark, 6958, 5090

## Vatican City

An Independent Papal State, 7468, 5343

Created by Treaty, 5640, 7468, 7466, 4782, 5732

Significance of the New State

Provided Temporal Domain for the Pope, 7468, 5640

Released Pope from Voluntary Imprisonment, 5343, 5732, 7466

Provided Pope with Diplomatic Power, 5732, 7468

## Latin America

## Geographical Background

## Three Main Divisions

South America, 6697-6698

Dominant Colonizing Races, 6698, 6701

Spanish, 6726, 6735

Portuguese, 5757, 5763

South American Nations

Argentina, 373-379

Bolivia, 817-823

Brazil, 925-934

Chile, 1377-1382

Colombia, 1541-1545

Ecuador, 2103-2106

Paraguay, 5357-5361

Peru, 5506-5512

Uruguay, 7422-7426

Venezuela, 7477-7483

Central America, 1287-1288

Colonized by Spanish, 1287, 6735

Central American Nations

Costa Rica, 1704-1706

Guatemala, 2974-2977

Honduras, 3214-3216

Nicaragua, 5014-5018

Panama, 5325-5331

Salvador, 6347-6349

Mexico, 4433-4450

Colonized by Spanish, 4444, 6735

## History of the South American Nations

## Argentina

First Visited by Juan Diaz de Solis, 377

Estuary of La Plata Discovered, 6133

La Plata Named by Sebastian Cabot, 377, 6133, 1063

Spanish Rule Established, 377

Founding of Buenos Aires, 1003

Independence Established, 377

Later History

War with Paraguay, 5361

Patagonian Territory Acquired, 5412

Settlement of Boundary Disputes, 377

Reconciliation with Chile, 1380

Christ of the Andes, 377

Neutrality during World War, 377, 379

One of the A-B-C Powers, 6, 4445

## Bolivia

Early History

Included in the Inca Empire, 820, 3372

Conquest by Pizarro, 820, 5640

Founding of Settlements, 818

Era of Independence

Constitution Framed by Bolivar, 817

Independence Proclaimed at Sucre, 820, 818

Schemes of Santa Cruz, 820, 823

War with Chile, 823, 1380, 6995

## Brazil

Exploration and Settlement, 933

First Visited by Pinzon, 933, 6701

Voyage of Cabral, 1063

East of Line of Demarcation, 1887, 1063

Introduction of African Slavery, 933

Rio de Janeiro, Temporary Portuguese Capital, 933

Establishment of an Independent Empire

Pedro I as Emperor, 933

Reign of Dom Pedro II, 5439, 933

War with Paraguay, 5361

Establishment of the Republic

Abdication of Dom Pedro, 5440

Later History

War Declared on Germany, 7851, 934

Amicitia, 933

One of the A-B-C Powers, 6, 4445

## Chile

Early History, 1380

Invasion of Almagro, 6701

Conquest of the Araucanians, 1380

Founding of Cities

Valparaiso, 7447

Santiago, 6380

Concepcion, 1378

Independence Established, 1380

Aid of San Martin, 6377

Later History

Boundary Disputes, 1380

Acquisition of Tacna and Arica, 1380

Settlement of Dispute, 6905

Cession of Patagonian Territory, 5412

Visit of Herbert Hoover, 1380, 3234

One of the A-B-C Powers, 6, 4445

## Colombia

Exploration and Settlement, 1544

Ojeda, Bastida, 1544, 6701

Columbus, 1541, 1575, 1828

Balboa, at Darien, 576, 1828, 6701

Pizarro, Almagro, 5640

Originally Called New Granada, 1544

Founding of Settlements, 1542

Establishment of Independence, 1544

Aid of Bolivar, 817

The Republic of Colombia, 1544

Secession of Venezuela and Ecuador, 1544, 2106, 7482

Constitutional Changes, 1544

Controversy with United States

Rejection of Hay-Herran Treaty, 1544, 5330

Organization of Panama, 1545. [See *Panama*, below.]

Final Treaty of Indemnity, 5337

## Ecuador

Era of Conquest, 2106

Originally a Part of New Granada, 1544

Establishment of the Republic, 2106

## Paraguay

Early History, 5358, 5360

Era of Independence

Despotism of Francia and Antonio Lopez, 5360-5361

Disastrous Warfare  
Oppression of F. Solano Lopez, 5361  
Enemy Countries, 5361

Later History, 5361

#### Peru

The Empire of the Incas, 5509, 3372  
Conquest by Pizarro, 5641, 5509-5510, 6701  
The Death of Atahualpa, 478  
Destruction of Cuzco, 5507

#### Under Spanish Rule

Founding of Arequipa, 5506  
Founding of Lima, 5507-5508  
Pezuello, Last of the Spanish Rulers, 5510  
Incidents of the Spanish Era, 5512

Winning of Independence, 5512  
Help of Sucre and Bolivar, 5512, 817

Secession of Bolivia, 817

Later History, 5512

Loss of Tarapaca, 6995, 5512  
Settlement of Tacna-Arica Dispute, 6995, 5512

#### Uruguay

Exploration and Settlement, 7423-7425  
Winning of Independence, 7425  
Subsequent History, 377, 5361, 7425

#### Venezuela

Exploration and Settlement, 7482  
Discovery by Columbus, 7482, 1575, 6701  
Visited by Vesputius, 7482, 7511  
Establishment of Settlements, 7482  
Establishment of Independence, 7482  
Aid of Bolivar, 817  
Secession from Greater Colombia, 7482, 1544  
Later History, 7482-7483

#### History of the Central American Nations

#### Early History of Central America

Home of the Maya Indians, 4354  
Visited by Columbus on Fourth Voyage, 1287, 1575  
Spanish Conquest, 1287  
Pedro de Alvarado, 1287, 240, 6347

#### Era of Independence

Winning of Independence, 1287-1288  
Division into Five States, 1288  
Addition of Panama, 5330  
Treaty of Peace and Friendship, 1288

#### Late History of the Separate States

Costa Rica, 1705-1706  
Boundary Dispute with Panama, 5330  
Guatemala, 2976  
Honduras, 3216  
Filibuster Expedition of Walker, 7582  
Nicaragua, 5016, 5018  
Controversy over Mosquito Coast, 4679  
Canal-Route Treaty, 5016, 5019  
Intervention of United States Marines, 5016, 5018, 1656  
Panama, 5328, 5330  
Its History as a Part of Colombia, 5328, 5330  
Formation of a Separate Republic, 5330

President Roosevelt's Part, 6190, 1545  
Panama-Canal Treaty, 5336  
Boundary Dispute with Costa Rica, 5330  
Canal-Zone Treaty, 5330  
Claims of Panama, 5330, 5331

Salvador, 6349

Treaties of Coöperation and Friendship, 6349

Opposition to American Policies, 6349

#### History of Mexico

#### Period of the Aztecs, 4444

Their Civilization and History, 551  
Founding of Tenochtitlan (Mexico City), 4450

#### The Spanish Period, 4444

Conquest of Cortez, 1700-1701

Montezuma, 4628

Revolt against Spain, 4445

#### First Years of Independence, 4445

Texas Becomes a Province of Mexico, 7130

Iturbide, First Emperor, 3589

Relations with Santa Anna, 6378

Establishment of a Republic, 4445

War with Texas, 7130

Capture of the Alamo, 165-166, 6359, 6360

Defeat of Santa Anna at San Jacinto, 6378, 3265, 7130

War with the United States, 4430-4432

Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 2971

Cessions of Territory (Map), 4432

Gadsden Purchase, 2657

#### Period of Internal Disorder, 4445

Dictatorship of Juarez, 3704

Brief Rule of Emperor Maximilian, 4351, 4445

#### Development under Diaz, 1935, 4445

#### Period of Civil War, 4445-4446

Mexico under Madero, 4445, 4198-4199

Revolt of Huerta, 3275-3276

Administration of Huerta, 4445, 3276

Attitude of President Wilson, 7782

The Tampico Incident, 4445, 7782, 7784

Carranza as Provisional President, 4445, 1215-1216

Recognition by United States, 7784

Villa Raids, 4446, 7528, 5495

#### Mexico since 1917

Adoption of a New Constitution, 4444, 4446

Election of Carranza, 4446

New Revolt under Adolfo de la Huerta, 4446, 5141

Administration of Obregon, 4446, 5141

Administration of Calles, 1098-1099

Foreign Ownership of Land, 4446

Mediation of Dwight Morrow, 4446, 4448, 1657

Religious Controversy, 4446

Election and Assassination of Obregon, 4446, 5141

Election of Portes Gil, 4446

Election of Ortiz Rubio, 4446

### Matters of Common Interest

Monroe Doctrine, 4608

Pan-American Congress, 5337-5338

Pan-American Union, 5339

League of Nations, 3904

Latin-American Members, 3906

## Asia

### Independent Nations

#### Afghanistan

British Attempt to Gain Supremacy

Afghan Wars, 3388, 72

Service of Sir James Outram, 5276

Constitutional Monarchy, 72

Province: Afghan Turkestan, 7301

**Bhutan**, Subsidized by British Government, 723

#### China

Early Modern Period

Portuguese and Spanish Navigators, 1394

In Amoy, 265

In Ning-Po, 5032

Fall of the Ming Dynasty, 1394

Founding of the Manchu Dynasty, 4252, 4248, 1394

Invasion of Peking, 5443-5444, 5446

Tai-Ping Rebellion

Capture of Nanking, 1396, 4803

Gordon, Commander, 2874

Relations with the Western World

Policy of Exclusion, 1384, 1394

Beginning of European Dominance

Opium War, 1396, 7518

Result of British Victory

Hong Kong, a British Colony, 3220

Establishment of Treaty Ports, 1396, 7258

War with Great Britain and France

Capture of Peking, 5446, 1396

Results of European Victory, 1396

Trade Treaties, 1396, 7258

Tien-Tsin Opened to Trade, 7172

Treaty with Russia, 4252

Treaty with the United States, 1030

Intervention of Western Powers after Chinese-Japanese War

[For causes and events of the war, see *Japan*, below.]

Forced Japan to Cede Liaotung Peninsula Back to China, 1402, 6279

Secured Important Trade Concessions, 1402, 1396, 900

Hangchow Opened to Trade, 3036

Nanking Opened to Trade, 4803

Cession of Territory

Kwang-Chau-Wan Leased to France, 2610, 2612

Liaotung Leased to Russia, 4252, 6279, 6591

Shantung Seized by Germany, 6541

Weihaiwei Leased to Great Britain, 6542

Open Door Policy, 5213

Instituted by John Hay, 3092

Boxer Rebellion

Uprising against Foreign Domination, 900, 1396, 7955

Siege of Peking, 900, 5444, 5443

Revolt Crushed, 900, 4190

Assaults on Tien-Tsin, 900, 7173

Settlement of Peace Terms, 900

Revolution

Overthrow of Manchu Dynasty, 1396, 4252, 1394, 7955

Organization of Provisional Republic, 1396

Sun Yat Sen, President, 6930

Republic: Presidency of Yuan-Shih-Kai, 7955-7956, 6930, 1399

World War

Shantung Captured, 6541, 3637

Attack of Japanese Fleet on Tsingtau, 7876

China's Entrance into the War, 1399

Results: Japanese Possession of Shantung Confirmed by Versailles Treaty, 6541, 1399

Shantung Returned to China, 1399

Civil War

Establishment of South China Republic, 1177, 7956

Sun Yat Sen, Leader, 6930

Gains of the Nationalist Party, 1399

Nationalist Government

Presidency of Chiang-Kai-shek, 1399

Nanking, the Capital, 4803, 4804, 5442, 5446

Relations with Outlying Territory

Manchuria, 4252

Mongolia, 4592, 4593

Sin-kiang, 6623

Turkestan, a Part of the Province, 7301

Tibet

Practically Independent, 7167-7168

#### Hejaz and Nejd

Former Turkish Possessions, 340

Kingdom of Hejaz

Establishment, 3128, 7312

Power of King Hussein (Husein), 339, 3128, 1097

Conquest by Sultan of Nejd, 3128, 339, 4872

Sultanate of Nejd

Under Leadership of Ibn Saud, 4872, 339, 3128

#### Japan

End of the Seclusion, 3636

Perry's Expedition, 5608, 7399, 5491-5492

Trade Treaty with the United States, 5492, 3636, 2418, 4783

Dissolution of the Feudal System, 3636, 4783

Abolishment of Shogunate, 3636, 6571  
 Abolishment of Samurai, 6359  
 Establishment of a Constitution, 3639, 3589, 7950  
 Rise to Position as World Power, 3621, 4783  
 Chinese-Japanese War  
   Causes  
     Jealousy of China, 3636  
     Disagreement over Korea, 3636, 1402  
   Japanese Victory, 1402, 3636, 1396  
   Treaty of Shimonoseki  
     Korean Independence Established, 1396, 3637, 1410  
     Cessions, 1402  
       Formosa (Taiwan), 2543, 1396, 3936  
       Liaotung Peninsula, 1396, 6279  
     Indemnity, 1402, 1396  
     [For intervention of western powers, see *China*, above.]  
 Russo-Japanese War  
   [For causes and events, see *National Readjustments and Developments to 1914*, *Russia*, below.]  
   Results Favorable to Japan  
     Cession of Half of Sakhalin, 3637, 6280, 3621, 6329  
     Acquired Lease of Liaotung Peninsula, 4252, 6270  
     Port Arthur, 6280, 3637, 4250  
     Recognition of Sphere of Influence in Korea, 6280, 1411, 6270  
 Annexation of Korea, 3637  
   Renamed Chosen, 1411, 1402  
 World War  
   Declared against Germany, 3637  
   Taking of Shantung, 3637, 6541  
   Result. [See *China*, above.]  
 Post-War Development  
   Hirohito, Emperor, 3639  
   Successor of Mutsuhito, 3639, 4782-4783, 3039  
   Sympathetic with Modern Progress, 3185, 4471  
 International Relations  
   Russian Soviet Government, 3639, 6276  
   Renewal of Lease on Liaotung Peninsula, 3639, 4252  
**Nepal:** Relations with Great Britain, 4877  
**Oman**  
   Early Independence, 340, 339  
   Recent Relations with Great Britain, 5199  
**Persia**  
   Founding of the Kadjar Dynasty, 5501, 5502  
   International Relations  
     With Russia, 5501, 5502, 408  
     With Germany, 5501  
     With Great Britain, 5501, 5502  
       Expedition of 1857, 5276  
       Influence in Baluchistan, 591  
   Internal Disturbances, 5501  
     Appointment of Shuster, 6580, 5501  
     Rise of Reza Khan Pahlavi, 5502, 6139  
**Siam**, 6581-6585

## Turkey

The Nationalist Movement  
   Outcome of the Terms of the Armistice, 7312  
   National Congress at Erzerum, 7313, 2291  
   National Pact, Turkish Declaration of Independence, 7307, 7314  
 Period of Two Governments  
   That of the Sultan, 7314  
     Concluded Treaty of Sèvres, 7314, 6510  
     Confirmed Greek Occupation in Smyrna, 6657, 2950  
   Nationalist Government in Asia Minor, 7314  
     Declaration of War by Greece, 2950  
     Defeat of the Greeks, 7314, 6657, 6511  
     Threat to Neutral Zone, 3752, 3895  
     Led Uprising against French Rule in Syria, 6990, 7314  
 The Republic  
   Proclaimed National State of Turkey (Anatolia), 3752, 273  
   Ankara (Angora), the Capital, 1629, 7307, 6511  
   Abolishment of the Caliphate, 7314, 1097, 3753  
 Relations with European Powers  
   Treaty of Lausanne, 3895  
   Abrogated Treaty of Sèvres, 3895, 6511  
   Awarded Eastern Thrace, 3895, 7159, 2950  
 Other Terms  
   Patriarch of Greek Orthodox Church to Remain in Constantinople, 3895, 2951  
   Compulsory Exchange of Populations, 3895, 7314  
   Loss of Syria, Mesopotamia (Iraq), and Palestine, 3895, 3514. [See *British* and *French Mandates*, above.]  
   Dardanelles and Bosphorus Made Neutral Territory, 3895, 1827  
 The New Turkey  
   Reforms Instituted by Kemal, 3753, 7314, 7316

## Yemen

Former Turkish Possession, 340  
 Under the Rule of Three Sultans, 339, 7942-7943

## British Possessions

### India and the Indian States

Coming of the Europeans, 3387, 4208, 4209  
 Monopoly of the British East India Company  
   Dominance Insured by Clive, 1485  
   Black Hole of Calcutta, 1074, 782  
   Conquest of Bengal, 708  
   Victory of Plassey, 2089, 3387  
 Administration of Hastings, 3387-3388, 3070, 708



Impeachment for Maladministration,  
3070, 1028, 2555, 6557  
Wars with the Sikhs, 6f 2  
Sepoy Rebellion  
Causes  
Revolt against Western Ideas, 6406  
English Disregard for Religious Beliefs,  
6496, 3388

## Events

Massacre at Cawnpore, 6496, 3383, 4803  
Siege of Lucknow, 4143, 6496, 6595  
Defense by Havelock and Outram,  
3075, 5276  
Relief by Campbell, 3075, 6496  
Support of the Sikhs, 6602  
Transfer of Government to the Crown,  
6496, 3388, 2089, 4803

## Under British Rule

Queen Victoria Proclaimed Empress, 3388,  
1885, 1965, 7518  
The Last Half Century  
Afghan Wars. [See *Afghanistan*, above.]  
Annexation of Burma, 3388, 1030, 1032  
Visit of George V, 3388  
Durbar, 2056, 3388, 1885  
The World War, 3388, 966  
Gandhi's Movement for Independence,  
3390, 2679-2680

## Colonies

Ceylon, 1292, 1294  
Maldiv Islands, 4239  
Hong Kong, 3218, 3220  
[See *China, Relations with the Western  
World*, above.]

Straits Settlements, 6873, 4237  
Singapore, 6617-6618  
Malacca, 4235

## Protectorates

Aden, 45, 339, 7942  
Federated Malay States, 2300, 4237  
Other Malay States, 4237  
Johore, 3692

## Mandates

Iraq, 4253, 3514  
Formerly Mesopotamia, 3514, 4412  
Definition of Status  
In Treaty of Sèvres, 6510  
In Treaty of Lausanne, 3895  
Turkish Demands Concerning Mosul Prov-  
ince

Rejected, 3514, 7314  
Palestine, 5315, 4253, 339  
Definition of Status  
In Treaty of Sèvres, 6510  
In Treaty of Lausanne, 3895  
Jerusalem, 3661  
Transjordan  
Under Palestine Mandate Officials, 339,  
7244  
Leased Territory  
Weihaiwei (Returned to China), 6542

## French Possessions

Indo-China, 2610, 2580  
Colony  
Cochin-China, 2611-2612  
Protectorates  
Anam, 2610  
Cambodia, 2611  
Tonking and Laos, 2612  
Leased Territory  
Kwang Chau Wan, 2610, 2612  
[See *China, Relations with the Western  
World*, above.]

## Mandate

Syria, 4253, 6987, 2580, 2581  
Sykes-Picot Agreement, 6990  
Definition of Status  
In Treaty of Sèvres, 6990, 6510  
In Treaty of Lausanne, 6990, 3895  
Damascus, 1814

## Union of Socialist Soviet Republics in Asia

## Siberia

Colonization, 6501  
Trans-Siberian Railway an Aid, 6501,  
7252, 6587  
Integral Part of the Russian Socialist Feder-  
ated Soviet Republic, 6257, 6586, 6591

## Transcaucasian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic

Armenia, 407, 6257, 7242  
Azerbaijan, 6257, 7242, 407, 550  
Georgia, 6257, 7242, 407  
Period of the Republic, 2763

## Turkestan

Turkoman Socialist Soviet Republic, 6257,  
7318, 7301  
Uzbek Socialist Soviet Republic, 6258, 7437,  
7438, 7301

## Africa

## Explorations

## Early Portuguese Discoveries

Inspired by Search for a New Route to India,  
5762

## List of Discoveries

Shape of the Continent, 3149  
Cape of Good Hope  
Voyage of Diaz, 1934, 5763  
Voyage of Da Gama, 2672, 2870, 80, 7358

Cape Verde Islands, 5763, 1183

Mauritus, 4349

Mozambique, 4729

Saint Helena, 6309

## Colonization

[See *Portuguese Possessions*, below.]

## Explorations in "Darkest Africa"

James Bruce

Visited Abyssinia, 80

Mungo Park  
 Explored the Niger Country, 80, 5024

David Livingstone  
 Map of His Explorations, 4062

First Expedition  
 Discovery of Victoria Falls, 80, 7522  
 First European to Visit Zambezi River, 7968, 4061

Second Expedition  
 Explored Lake Nyassa Region, 4061, 5126

Third Expedition  
 Believed Lost in Tanganyika Region, 80, 4061  
 Found by Stanley, 7014, 6802, 709  
 Estimate of His Work, 4061

Henry M. Stanley  
 Expedition in Search of Livingstone [See above.]

Second Expedition  
 Explored Congo from Its Source to Its Mouth, 6802, 1606, 80, 2134  
 Result, Founding of Congo Free State, 6802, 691, 80  
 [See Belgian Possessions below.]

Expedition in Relief of Emin Pasha, 2227, 6802

Estimate of His Work, 6802, 80

John Hanning Speke  
 Discovered and Named Victoria Nyanza, Source of the Nile, 6750, 7523  
 First European to View Lake Tanganyika, 7014

**Independent and Nominally Independent Countries**

**Egypt**  
 Loss of Control by Turkey  
 Power of the Mamelukes, 2152, 4242  
 Invasion of Napoleon, 2152, 4242, 830  
 Turkish Rule Restored  
 With British Aid, 2152, 830  
 Practical Independence of the Pashas  
 Mehemet Ali, 2152, 7312, 4242  
 Established a Dynasty, 1070  
 Said, 2154  
 Construction of Suez Canal, 6903-6904, 3943

Under British Control  
 Through Purchase of Controlling Shares of Suez Canal, 2154, 6904, 1965  
 Short Period of Dual Control with France, 2154  
 The Protectorate, 2154  
 Creation of the Kingdom, 2155

**Ethiopia (Abyssinia)**  
 An Independent State, 2305, 78  
 Saved from Foreign Intervention, 2307

**Liberia**  
 An Independent State, 78, 2305, 3961

**Belgian Possessions**

**Colony**  
 Congo, 78

Former Congo Free State, 80  
 Organization by Leopold II, 3938, 6802  
 Recognition by European Powers, 691  
 Annexation, 80, 691

**Mandate**  
 Tanganyika (Ruanda)  
 Former German Tanganyika, 78, 7014  
 Mandated to Belgium, 4253, 7014  
 Map, opposite 1550

**British Possessions**

**Commonwealth, or Free Dominion**

Union of South Africa  
 Cape of Good Hope (Cape Colony)  
 Discovery. [See Early Explorations of the Portuguese, above.]  
 Dutch Colony, 7358, 80, 813  
 British Rule, 7357, 7358, 813, 4895  
 Cecil Rhodes, Premier, 6098  
 Plan for Cape-to-Cairo Railway, 6098, 81, 1181-1182

Natal  
 Republic Organized by Dutch, 7358  
 Annexation by the British, 7357, 7358  
 Inclusion of Zululand, 7358, 7990

Orange Free State  
 The Great Trek, 7358, 813  
 Development of the Province, 7358, 7360

Transvaal  
 Result of the Great Trek, 7360, 813  
 Conquest of the Matabeles, 4339  
 Period as the South African Republic, 7360  
 Discovery of Diamonds, 7357, 6697, 7360

The South African War (1899-1902)  
 Causes and Events. [See *Great Britain*, above.]

Results  
 Annexation of Orange Free State and Transvaal by British, 7357, 7360, 6697

Establishment of the Union, 7358  
 Leaders in the Movement  
 Louis Botha, 893  
 Jan Smuts, 6656

The World War  
 Conquest of German Southwest Africa, 7358, 6656, 6723, 7876  
 Conquest of German Southeast Africa, 893, 6656, 7876

Results  
 Representation at Peace Conference, 893, 6656, 7358  
 Mandated German Southwest Africa, 7353, 4253, 6723  
 Post-War Government, 7358, 6656  
 Creation of the Commonwealth, 965, 7353

**Self-Governing Colony**  
 Rhodesia (Southern), 966  
 Surrendered to Rhodes by Matabeles, 6098, 4339  
 Annexation by the Crown, 6098, 4339

- Divisions
  - Mashonaland and Matabeleland, 4320
- Colonies
  - Gambia, 2673
  - Rhodesia (Northern), 6099
- Colonies and Protectorates
  - In West Africa
    - Nigeria, 5024, 5851
    - Gold Coast, 2860, 5851
    - Ashanti, 440
    - Sierra Leone, 6596, 5851
  - In East Africa
    - Kenya, 3765-3766, 5851
- Protectorates
  - In South Africa
    - Basutoland, 647, 5851
    - Bechuanaland, 668, 5851
    - Swaziland, 6948, 5851
  - In East Africa
    - Nyassaland, 5126, 5851
    - Somaliland, 6686, 5851
    - Uganda, 7344-7345, 5851
    - Zanzibar, 7960, 5851
- Anglo-Egyptian Sudan
  - Mahdi Revolts
    - Disaster at Khartum, 287, 2154
    - Gordon's Heroic Defense, 2874
    - Attempted Rescue by Wolseley, 7820
    - Kitchener's Campaigns, 2154, 3798
    - Kodok (Fashoda), Incident, 3812
    - Joint Rule of Great Britain and Egypt, 287, 5851, 6902
  - Divisions
    - Darfur, 1828
    - Nubia, 5111
- Minor Dependencies
  - Mauritius
    - Scene of Saint-Pierre's Novel, Paul and Virginia, 4349, 6327
  - Saint Helena
    - Place of Napoleon's Exile, 6309, 833
- Mandates
  - Cameroon
    - Former German Colony, Kamerun, 1108, 78
    - Mandated to Great Britain, 4253, 1108
  - Tanganyika
    - Former German East Africa, 78, 7014-7015
    - Mandated to Great Britain, 4253, 7014
  - Togoland
    - Former German Colony, 78, 7199
    - Mandated to Great Britain, 4253, 7199
- [See also *Union of South Africa*, above, and *French Possessions*, below.]
  - Map, opposite 1550
- French Possessions
  - Colonies
    - Algeria, 78, 2580
    - Formerly Numidia, 5114
    - Period of Piracy, 618, 218
    - Peace Treaty with the United States, 618

- Activities of Decatur, 1856, 4645
- Annexation, 80, 218
- Equatorial Africa, 78, 2580
  - Also Known as Congo, 2609
  - Consolidation of Three Colonies, 2609
  - Wadai, Part of Chad Colony, 7574
- Madagascar, 78, 2580
  - Tribal Government, 4197
  - Protectorate, 4197, 5851
  - Became a Colony, 4197
- Mayotte and the Comoro Islands, 78, 4196, 4730, 2580
- West Africa, 78, 2580
  - Consolidation of Seven Colonies and the Territory of Niger, opposite 81
  - Dahomey, 1806, 78
  - Guinea, 2980, 78
  - Ivory Coast, 3592, 78
  - Mauritania, 4349, 78
  - Senegal, 6492, 78
  - Sudan, 2620, 78
  - Upper Volta, opposite 81
  - Niger Territory, 78, opposite 81
- Somaliland, 6685, 78, 2580
  - Annexation, 2619-2620
- Protectorates
  - Morocco, 78, 2580
    - Period Preceding European Control, 4658
    - End of Piracy, 618, 4658
    - Establishment of the Protectorate, 618
    - Resistance of European Powers, 4657
    - [For Spanish Zone, see *Spanish Protectorates*, below.]
    - [For International Zone, see below.]
  - Riffian Warfare, 4658, 6124
- Tunisia, 78, 2580
  - Period Preceding French Control, 617-618
  - Establishment of Protectorate, 7203, 618
- Mandates
  - Cameroon
    - Formerly German Colony, Kamerun, 1108, 78
    - Mandated to France, 4253, 1108
  - Togo
    - Formerly German Togoland, 7199, 78
    - Mandated to France, 4253, 7199
    - [See also *Mandates, British Possessions*, above.]
    - Map, opposite 1550
- Italian Possessions
  - Colonies
    - Eritrea, 2289-2290, 78
    - Libia, 78
    - Former Tripoli, 3966
    - War with the United States, 618, 1856, 3966
    - Dependency of Turkey, 618, 7312
    - Annexation, 3966, 7312, 3584
  - Colony and Protectorate
    - Somaliland, 6686, 5851, 78
    - Map, opposite 1550

**Portuguese Possessions****Colonies**

- Angola (Portuguese West Africa), 78
- Formerly Great Slave Market, 288
- Cape Verde Islands, 1183
- Guinea, 78
- Ownership Confirmed, 5767
- Mozambique, 78
- Early Settlements, 4720
- Domination of German Interests, 4730
- Kionga Triangle Awarded to Portugal, 4730, 5766
- Other Colonies, 78
- Map, opposite 1550

**Spanish Possessions****Colonies**

- Canary Islands, 1162-1163, 78

**Pacific Islands****Australasia (British Dominions)****Commonwealth of Australia****Colonial Period**

- Exploration, 517, 520
- Portuguese Navigators, 517, 5920
- Discoveries of Dutch Mariners
- Abel Jansen Tasman, 7028, 517
- Van Diemen's Land, 7026, 7028
- Advent of the English
- Discoveries of Captain Cook, 517, 1649
- New South Wales, 4952, 1649, 5920
- Norfolk Island, 5042
- Explorations in South Australia, 6704
- Colonization
- New South Wales, First Colony, 4949
- Originally a Penal Colony, 4952, 517, 5920-5921
- Separation
- Of Victoria, 4952, 7520
- Of Queensland, 4952, 5920
- Systematic Plans for Settlement
- In South Australia, 6704
- In Western Australia, 7712
- Van Diemen's Land Renamed Tasmania, 7028

**Discovery of Gold**

- Gold Rush to Ballarat, 7520, 520
- Results of the Discovery
- Increase in Population and Prosperity, 4952, 7520, 7028
- Financial Panic Averted in Queensland, 5921

**Federation**

- Inauguration of the Commonwealth, 507, 520
- The Six Original States
- New South Wales, 4952
- Victoria, 7520
- Queensland, 5921

Rio de Oro and Adrar, 78, 6133

Guinea, 2980, 78

Fernando Po, 78

**Protectorate****Morocco**

- Riffian Warfare, 6736, 6738, 81
- Abd-el-Krim, Riffian Leader, 4658, 6124
- During Rivera's Dictatorship, 5812
- Spanish Zone, 4657
- [See, also, *French Possessions*, above.]
- Map, opposite 1550

**International Zone****Tangier**

- On Southern Shore of Gibraltar, 2804
- Establishment of Neutral Zone, 4658
- Administration, 7015, 78
- Map, opposite 1550

South Australia, 6704

Western Australia, 7712

Tasmania, 7028

Northern Territory Ceded by South

Australia, 6704

Division of the Territory, 5073, 520

North Australia, 5051

Central Australia, 1288

Establishment of Federal Territory

Named Yass-Canberra District, 517

Development of Canberra (the Capital), 1163

Papuan Territory: British New Guinea, 4917

Norfolk Island

Inhabitants, Descendants of Mutineers of the Bounty, 5042

**Modern Period**

Progress in Legislation, 520, 6704

The World War

Troops Furnished, the Anzacs, 520

Took Possession of New Guinea and Samoa, 7876

Result

Mandated Territories

New Guinea, 4917, 968, 4253

New Britain Archipelago, 5290

Solomon Islands, 5293

Made a Free Dominion, 965

**New Zealand****Discovery**

By Dutch: Named Nieuw Zeeland, 5004

By Captain Cook, 5004, 1649

**Colonization**

Contribution of the Missionaries, 5004

Treaty with the Maoris, 5004, 4274

**Dominion Government**

Social Legislation, 5008

The World War

Troops Furnished, the Anzacs, 520, 5008

## Result

## Mandated Territories

Former German Samoa, 6353, 4253

Naura Island, 4999, 4253

Post War Depression, 5008

Made a Free Dominion, 965

Map, opposite 1550

## Other British Possessions

## Oceania

Fiji and Gilbert Islands, 5289

New Hebrides, Joint Ownership, 5292

Pitcairn Island

Colonized by Mutineers from the Bounty,  
5629, 790Removal of Inhabitants to Norfolk Island,  
5042

Tonga Archipelago (Friendly Islands)

Discovery by Captain Cook, 5293, 1649

Map, opposite 1550

## Dutch East Indies

## Java and Madura

Mohammedan Conquest, 3641

Conquest by the Dutch East India Com-  
pany, 2090

Brief Rule of the British, 3641

Acquired by Holland, 2090, 3643

## Outpost Provinces

Borneo, 867, 2090

Celebes, 1266-1267, 2090

Moluccas

Discovery by the Portuguese, 4577

New Guinea (Papua), 4917

Sumatra

Discovery by the Portuguese, 6919

Timor

Dutch Control, 2090

Landing of the Victims of the Bounty  
Mutiny, 790, 5629[See Bounty Mutiny, Pitcairn Island,  
above.]

Other Islands, 2090

Map, opposite 1550

## United States Possessions

## Guam

Discovery by Magellan, 2972

Cession to the United States, 2972, 5381,  
6740

## Hawaii

Discovery by Captain Cook, 3084, 1649

Period of the Kingdom, 3084-3085

Revolt against Liliuokalani, 3085, 4004

## Transitional Period

Establishment of Republic, 3085

Sanford B. Dole, President, 1996

Overtures to United States for Annexation

During Administration of Harrison, 3058

Opposition of Cleveland, 1996, 4005,  
3058, 1471

## Annexation

Peaceful Cession, 294, 7402

During McKinley Administration, 4189

Organization of a Territorial Government,  
4189, 3085

Dole, First Governor, 1996

Progress in Legislation, 3085

## Philippine Islands

Discovery by Magellan, 4212, 5554, 5556

Period of Spanish Occupation

Founding of Manila, 4257, 4259, 5556

The Awakening

Revolt against Spanish Friars, 5558

Acquisition of the Territory by the United  
States[See *Administrations of McKinley and  
Wilson*, in the section on *The United  
States*, below.]

## Samoa

[For former German area in Samoa, see  
*New Zealand*, above.]

Territory of the United States Acquired by

Treaty of Berlin, 3085, 4190, 6356, 7402

Map, opposite 1550

## French Possessions

Marquesas Islands, 5290

New Caledonia, 5292

New Hebrides

Joint Ownership with England, 5292

Society Islands (Tahiti Archipelago), 5292,  
5293

Capture of Mutineers from the Bounty, 5629

Map, opposite 1550

## Japanese Mandates

Caroline Islands, 5288, 7929

Mariana and Marshall Islands, 5290

Map, opposite 1550

## Possession of Chile

## Easter Island

Famous for Stone Images and Carvings, 5289

Map, opposite 1550

## The United States

## Discovery and Exploration

## European Background

[For the political, social, and economic con-  
ditions of Europe when America was dis-  
covered, see *The Modern World*, section  
on *Europe*, above.]

## Underlying Motive of the Age

Need for a New Route to India, 3377, 5077

Turks Captured Constantinople, 1629

Controlled the Overland Route, 5077,  
1629, 7311

- Art of Navigation in the Fifteenth Century, 4841
  - Instruments
    - Astrolabe, 4841
    - Mariner's Compass, 1591-1593
  - Fear of Monsters in the Ocean, 1574
- Knowledge of Geography
  - What the Ancients Thought of the World, 2721-2722
  - Toscanelli's Map, 2722
  - Behaim's Map of the World, 2723
- Discovery
  - Traditional Voyages of Early Northmen, 5073, 7389
  - Greenland Discovered and Colonized, 2960
  - Leif Ericsson, 2286, 5073
    - Vinland, 7531
  - Where the Northmen Sailed, 5074
- Voyages of Christopher Columbus
  - The Great Idea, 1572-1573
  - Queen Isabella of Castile, 1573, 3562
  - Ferdinand V, 2395
- The First Voyage
  - Ships
    - Nina, Pinta, and Santa Maria, 1574
    - Caravel Type, 1190
  - Set Sail August 3 (1492), 1573
  - Landed October 12 (1492), 1574
    - On San Salvador, 1574
    - Probably the Present Watling Island, 572
  - Other Islands Visited
    - Cuba, 1574, 1772
    - Haiti, 1574, 3012
      - Called Española, 1574
    - Mistaken for Cipango (Japan), 3621
- Later Voyages
  - Discoveries
    - Porto Rico, 5754
    - Jamaica, 3613
    - Trinidad, 1575, 6701, 7270
    - Orinoco River, 5259
    - Mainland of South America, 6701
      - Venezuela, 7482
    - Costa Rica, 1705
    - Other Central American Regions, 1575, 1287, 6701
- Aborigines of America
  - Called Indians by Columbus, 7389
- Division of the New World, 5048
  - Line of Demarcation, 1887
    - Drawn by Pope Alexander VI, 198, 1887
- Results of Columbus's Voyages
  - New Continent Discovered Which Changed Course of History, 1575
  - Other Navigators Followed His Lead, 1575, 1063
- Voyage of Americus Vesputius, 7511
  - America Named, 7511, 1577
- Exploration
  - The Search for a Northwest Passage to India
    - Route to India Remained the Object of Exploration, 5077

- John and Sebastian Cabot, 1063, 5077, 5693
  - Sailed for Henry VII of England, 1063
  - Landed Near Cape Breton, 1063, 5101
    - First to Reach the Mainland, 1137, 5048
  - Explored Coasts of
    - Labrador, 3828, 7389
    - Newfoundland, 4915
    - Nova Scotia, 5101
  - Gave England Claim to the Mainland, 1063
  - Second Voyage
    - Blocked by Ice, 1063, 5077
    - Sailed as far as North Carolina, 1063
- Giovanni Verrazano
  - Sailed for Francis I of France, 7505, 5077
- Discoveries
  - Gulf of Maine, 4230
  - Hudson River, 3272
- Jacques Cartier
  - Sailed for Francis I of France, 1220
- Purpose
  - New Lands for France, 1220
  - A Northwest Passage to India, 1220, 5077
- Reached Newfoundland, 1221
- Claimed Lands for France, 1221
- Second Voyage
  - Saint Lawrence River, 1137, 6314
  - Established a Settlement, 7389
- Third Voyage
  - Built a Fort on Site of Quebec, 5916
- Sir Martin Frobisher, 2623-2624
  - Proceeded as far as Greenland, 2624
- John Davis, 5077, 5693
  - Rediscovered Greenland, 2960
  - Map of Route, following 370
- Henry Hudson
  - Explored Hudson River, 3270, 3272
    - Mistaken for Route to South Seas, 5077
  - Discovered Hudson Strait and Bay, 3271
  - Visited Spitsbergen, 6768
- William Baffin
  - Sailed from England, 571, 5077
  - Arctic Explorations
    - Map of Route, following 370
    - Greenland, 572
    - Baffin Bay, 572
- Robert Bylot, 5077
- Portuguese Navigators Tried Other Routes
  - Exploration of African Coast
    - Begun by Prince Henry the Navigator, 3149
  - Voyage of Bartholomeu Dias, 1934
    - Discovered Cape of Good Hope, 80, 1934, 2870
- Vasco da Gama
  - Reached India via Cape of Good Hope, 2672, 2870
- Pedro Alvarez Cabral
  - Set Out for India via Cape of Good Hope, 1063

Landed in Brazil, 1063  
 Territory Claimed by Portugal, 1063,  
     6701, 933, 1887  
 Finally Reached India, 1063  
**Ferdinand Magellan**  
     Followed a Southwestern Course, 4211  
     Reached South America, 4211, 6701  
     Discovered and Named Strait of Ma-  
     gellan, 4212  
     Entered and Named Pacific Ocean, 4212,  
     5293  
     Discovered Islands of Philippine Group,  
     5556  
     Voyage Completed by Survivors, 4212  
 Results of Portuguese Discoveries, 4212  
     Disproved Old Ideas of Geography,  
     2722-2723  
**Spanish Adventurers in America**  
**Alonso de Ojeda**  
     Visited Coast of South America, 6701  
     Accompanied by Pizarro, 5640  
**Vicente Pinzón**  
     First to Reach Brazil, 933, 6701  
**Ponce de Leon**  
     Conquest of Porto Rico, 5725, 5754  
     Object of Explorations  
     The Fountain of Youth, 2552, 5725  
     Discovered Florida, 2481, 5725  
**Balboa**  
     Sailed for America to Find Gold, 576  
     Crosses Darien in Search of Treasure,  
     576, 1828  
     First European to See Pacific from  
     American Shores, 576, 1828, 5293  
     Accompanied by Pizarro, 5640  
**Francisco Pizarro and the Conquest of  
 Peru, 5640**  
**Hernando Cortez, 1700-1701**  
     Sailed for America in Quest of Gold, 1700  
     Conquest of Mexico  
     Accompanied by Alvarado, 240  
     Landed at San Juan de Ulloa, 1700  
     Founded Vera Cruz, 4438  
     Encounter with the Aztecs, 551  
     Montezuma, 1701, 4628  
     Narvaez Ordered against Cortez, 4810

Destroyed Mexico City, 4450  
 Mexico Won for Spain, 1701, 4444  
 Second Voyage to Mexico, 1701  
**Narvaez**  
     Given Grant of Land in Florida, 4810  
     Interested in Fountain of Youth, 2552  
     Attempts to Explore Florida, 2481,  
     4810  
**Fernando De Soto**  
     Early Adventures in Peru, 1917  
     Governor of  
     Cuba, 1917  
     Florida, 1917, 2481  
     Discovered Mississippi River, 1917, 4545  
     Present States Whose Territory He  
     Crossed, 1918 (Map)  
**Francisco Coronado**  
     Led Search for the Seven Cities of  
     Cibola, 1695, 1422  
**Summary and Extent of Spanish Explora-  
 tions up to 1542**  
**South America, 6701**  
     Argentina, 377  
     Bolivia, 820  
     Brazil, 933, 6701  
     Colombia, 1544  
     Ecuador, 2106  
     Paraguay, 5360  
     Peru, 5509-5510, 5640  
     Uruguay, 7425  
     Venezuela, 6701, 7482  
**Central America, 1287**  
     Costa Rica, 1705  
     Darien, 576, 1828  
     Guatemala, 1287  
     Honduras, 1287  
     Salvador, 1287, 6340  
     Mexico, 1700-1701, 4444  
**Lower Peninsula of California, 1701**  
**United States**  
     Florida, 2481, 4810, 5725  
     Mississippi River, 1917, 4545  
**West Indies, 7713**  
     Cuba, 1772, 1917, 5048  
     Haiti, 3012, 5048  
     Porto Rico, 5725, 5754

### First Settlements

#### France and Spain

##### French Huguenots

Led by Jean Ribault, 6106, 7389  
 Settled at Port Royal, 6106, 6711  
 Later Settlement Destroyed by Spaniards,  
     2482, 7389  
 [See *Settlement at Saint Augustine*, below.]

##### French in Canada

[See *Explorations of Cartier*, above.]  
 Motives of Exploration and Colonization  
 Fur Trading, 1137, 2638, 3882  
 Missionary Zeal, 1137-1138, 4533  
 Fisheries, 1137-1138

##### Sieur de Monts

Appointed Governor of New French Com-  
 pany of Canada, 4634  
 Given Fur Trade Rights, 1138, 4634  
**Chief Officers**  
     Samuel de Champlain, 1302, 4634  
     Poutrincourt, 4634, 5791  
 Explored Bay of Fundy, 4634  
 Founded Port Royal (Annapolis), 4634,  
     1302, 292  
 First White Settlement in British North  
 America, 5101  
 Territory Called Acadia, 14, 1138, 4634,  
     4911, 5101, 5791

Sent Expeditions to Canada, 4634  
 Poutrincourt Given Grant of Port Royal, 4634, 5791  
 Samuel de Champlain  
   Called Father of New France, 1138, 1301  
   Explored Saint Lawrence River, 1302  
   One of the Founders of Acadia and Port Royal, 1301, 4634, 292. [See above.]  
   Led an Expedition for Sieur de Monts, 4634  
   Founded Quebec, 1302, 1138, 4634, 5916  
   Reasons for Champlain's Success, 1138, 1302  
   Quebec Lost to England, 1302, 5916  
   Champlain, Lieutenant Governor of Quebec, 1302  
**The French Opened up the West**  
   Marquette, a Jesuit Missionary, 4298  
   Voyage of Marquette and Joliet  
     Joliet Sent out by Frontenac, 2627, 3694  
     Exploration of the Mississippi, 3694, 4298  
     Reached Mouth of Arkansas River, 3694, 4298  
     Returned via Illinois River, 3694, 4298, 3360  
     Joliet Lost Records, 3694  
   Marquette's Missionary Work in Illinois, 4299, 3360  
   Allouez's Missionary Work in Wisconsin, 7810  
   La Salle, 3882-3884  
     Lake Michigan and Overland to Illinois River, 3883, 3360  
     Returned to France and Received Honors, 3883  
     Returned to Canada with Tonty, 7210  
     Built First Sailing Vessel on Great Lakes, 3883  
     Claimed Louisiana Territory for France, 3883, 4131  
     Established Forts in Illinois Country  
       Fort Crèvecoeur, 3360, 3883  
       Tonty Placed in Command, 7210  
       Fort Saint Louis, 3360, 3883-3884  
       On Site of Starved Rock, 3354, 3355, 3357, 3360  
     Maintained Confederation of Indian Tribes, 3884  
     Returned to France, 3884  
     La Salle Lost on Return via Gulf of Mexico, 3884  
     Death of La Salle, 3884  
   Sieur d' Iberville  
     Founded Province of Louisiana, 3324  
     First Settlement at Biloxi, 3324, 4131, 4542  
     Obtained Tonty's Letter to La Salle, 3324  
     Tonty Joined Iberville, 7210  
   French Founded Mobile, 161-162, 7390  
**Spanish Settlements in the South**  
 [See the section *Spanish Adventurers in America*, above.]

In Florida

Maintained Control until 1819, 2481  
 Settlement at Saint Augustine, 6302, 2482  
 Destroyed French Settlements in the South, 2482, 7389  
 [See *French Huguenots*, above.]  
 Founded Pensacola, 2482

In Mexico

[See *Cortez, The Conquest of Mexico*, above.]  
 Called New Spain, 4444

### England

#### Reasons and Motives for Colonization

Henry VIII Founded English Navy, 3144, 4850  
 Religious Struggle  
   Church of England Founded by Henry VIII, 3144, 1422, 2258  
   Persecution of All Dissenters, 6053  
 Rivalry of England and Spain  
   Expeditions of English Adventurers  
     Sir John Hawkins, 3088  
     Sir Francis Drake, 2022  
     Set Out to Plunder Spanish Commerce, 2022  
   Voyages  
     Around the World, 2022  
     Burned Saint Augustine, 2482  
   Spanish Armada (1588). [See *The Modern World*, section on *Europe*.]  
   Later Voyages of Hawkins and Drake  
     West Indies, 3088

#### Early Attempts at Colonization, 7390

[For the Voyages of the Cabots, Sir Martin Frobisher, John Davis, and William Baffin, see *Exploration*, above.]  
 Sir Humphrey Gilbert  
   Early Voyages in Search of Route to India, 2806  
   Accompanied by Sir Walter Raleigh, 2806, 5991  
   Planted Colony Near Saint Johns, N. F., 4915, 2806  
 Sir Walter Raleigh  
   Early Life, 5991  
   Started on a Voyage with Gilbert, 2806, 5991  
   Granted Territory in Virginia, 7542  
   Sent out Expeditions to America  
     First Colony Discovered Roanoke Island, 5060  
     Third Colony Sent to Roanoke Island  
       Headed by John White, 1828, 5060  
       Virginia Dare, the First English Child  
       Born in America, 1827, 1828, 5060  
       Lost Colony of Virginia, 1827-1828  
     Failure of Colonization, 7542, 7390  
   Explorations along South American Coast, 5991  
**Why the English Were the Best Colonizers, 7390**  
 Settlements Based on Permanency, 1550  
 Brought Social Institutions, 7390



## The Thirteen Original Colonies

## Virginia

## The London Company

A Corporation to Establish Colonies in America, 4100

Charters Granted by King James I, 7390

Divided into Branches

Plymouth, or North Virginia, Company, 5669

Colonization Rights, 4100, 5669

[See *Massachusetts*, below.]

The London, or Virginia, Company, 4100

## Jamestown, First White Settlement to Survive

Founded by the London Company, 3615, 4100, 7390, 7542

Purpose of the Colony, 1545

Leaders

Captain Christopher Newport, 3615  
Newport News, Va., Named for Him, 4948

Bartholomew Gosnold, 2877

Captain John Smith, 6650

Services of Captain John Smith

Efficient Leadership Saved the Colony, 3616, 6650, 7542

Returned to England, 6650, 3616

Starvation Year for the Colony, 3616

Story of Pocahontas and Smith, 5677, 5793, 5794, 6650

Discouragement of Colonists and Relief Expedition

Survivors Ready to Leave for England, 3616

Arrival of Another Expedition under Lord Delaware, 1882, 3616

Delaware, the First Governor of Virginia, 1882

Hardships of the Early Years, 4100

Indian Attacks

Confederation Headed by Powhatan, 5793

Peace after the Marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe, 5677, 5793, 6164

[See *Colonial Life in America*, below.]

Introduction of Slavery, 3616, 7390, 7542

The House of Burgesses, 1026, 3616, 7390, 7542

## Virginia a Royal Colony

Charter Withdrawn by King James, 4100, 7542

Governorship of Sir William Berkeley, 713

Bacon's Rebellion, 566, 713, 7542

Causes, 566, 713

## Massachusetts

## The Pilgrims

Why They Left England, 1545, 5615, 3613

Called Separatists in England, 5615

Sailed for America

Received Grant from London Company, 7390

Ship Speedwell Abandoned, 5665

Embarked from Plymouth on the Mayflower, 4331, 5665

Description of the Mayflower, 5665

The Mayflower Compact, 5665-5666

Names of the 102 Who Sailed, 5666-5669

Landing of the Pilgrims, 5616

Plymouth Rock, 5670, 5665, 5666

## Founding of Plymouth Colony

John Carver

First Governor of Plymouth, 1224

William Bradford

Second Governor of Plymouth, 915

Wrote the History of Plymouth Plantation, 915, 5666

William Brewster

For Many Years the Only Preacher, 944

Miles Standish

Chosen Military Captain of the Colony, 6800, 6801

John Alden

Hired as a Cooper for the Mayflower, 195, 5669

Financial Backer and Business Agent of the Colony, 195-196

Romance with Priscilla Mullins

Told in Courtship of Miles Standish, 195-196, 1724-1726, 5885, 6800

Hardships of the Early Years, 4331

The First Thanksgiving in the New World, 4332, 7135

Massasoit and His Braves, 4336

[See *Colonial Life in America*, below.]

## Massachusetts Bay Colony

The Puritans

Why They Were Called Puritans, 5887

Purpose of Emigration, 1545, 5887

First Settlement at Salem, 4332, 4335, 6331

John Endicott, Leader and Governor, 2234

John Winthrop and the Founding of Boston

Arrived at Salem, 7800

Settled at Charlestown and Later Boston, 877, 7800

Intolerance of the Puritans, 4332, 5887

Anne Hutchinson Banished for Religious Belief, 3299, 7800

Roger Williams Convicted of Heresy, 6331, 7772

[See *Rhode Island*, below.]

Quakers Persecuted, 4332

Salem Witchcraft, 4332, 7815

## Territorial Extent of Massachusetts

Plymouth Company Grant between 40° and 45°, 5669

Attempts to Colonize Regions of Kennebec River, 5670

Massachusetts Purchased Maine, 4230

Map of Extent, 4333

## Other New England Colonies

## Rhode Island

Founded by Religious Exiles from Massachusetts, 7391

- Roger Williams  
 Offended Boston and Salem, 4332, 6331, 7772  
 Founded Providence, 5856, 7772, 6095  
 Organized First Baptist Church in America, 616, 7772
- Anne Hutchinson  
 Started a Settlement at Portsmouth, 3299  
 Assisted by John Clarke, 6095
- Settlement at Warwick, 6095
- The Settlements United  
 Roger Williams Secured a Charter, 6095, 7773
- Slavery  
 Rhode Island Made First Enactment against Slavery, 6639
- Connecticut**  
 Early Settlements  
 Dutch Trading Post at Hartford, 1618, 3065  
 English Settlers under Thomas Hooker, 3065, 7391  
 Windsor  
 Settled by Plymouth Trading Company, 1618, 7391  
 English Claims on Connecticut  
 Grant Made to Lord Saye and Sele, etc., 1618  
 New Haven Founded by Puritans, 1618, 4925  
 New Haven United with Connecticut, 4925, 7391
- Government**  
 Fundamental Orders, 1618, 7391  
 Model for Federal Constitution, 3065  
 New Haven Blue Laws, 805
- New Hampshire**  
 Included in the Province of Maine Granted to Mason and Gorges, 4922  
 Mason, the Founder of New Hampshire, 4924  
 New Hampshire and Maine, 4924, 7391
- The New England Confederation**  
 First Union of the Colonies, 4913, 7391  
 Organized by John Winthrop, 7800
- King Philip's War**  
 Wampanoag Indians Rise against Colonists, 3795  
 Battle Near Kingston, R. I., 3422

#### Other Southern Colonies

- Maryland**  
 Colonial Rights Granted Lord Baltimore, 590  
 Included Maryland and New Jersey, 4318  
 A Refuge for Roman Catholics, 590, 4318  
 Colonists Came for Wealth, 1546  
 Cavaliers from the Court of Charles I, 4310  
 Charter Rights Inherited by Second Lord Baltimore, 590  
 First Settlements, 7391  
 Saint Marys, the First Capital, 4318  
 Maryland Named for Henrietta Maria, 590  
 Claiborne's Rebellion, 1452
- The Carolinas**  
 [For Raleigh's settlement on Roanoke Island,

- see *Early Attempts at Colonization*, above.]
- First Settlements by Virginians, 7391  
 Called South Virginia, 5060  
 Grant to Sir Robert Heath, 5060  
 Grant to Eight Lord Proprietors, 5060, 7391  
 Fundamental Constitution Framed by John Locke, 4075, 5063, 6711, 7391  
 Settlement at Charles Town (Charleston), 1317, 6711  
 The End of Proprietor Government, 6711  
 Separation of North and South Carolina, 5063, 6711
- Georgia**  
 Oglethorpe, Founder of Georgia, 2759, 5166-5167, 7391  
 Purpose of the Colony  
 A Home for Imprisoned Debtors, 2759, 2762, 5167, 7391  
 A Refuge for Protestants, 2760  
 Charter from George II, 5167  
 First Settlement at Savannah, 2762, 5167, 6402  
 Early Difficulties, 2762  
 Oglethorpe Compelled to Return to England, 5167  
 A Royal Colony, 2762, 5167

#### Middle Atlantic Colonies

- New Netherland (New York)**  
 [For the explorations of Henry Hudson, see above.]  
 Dutch Claim to New York, 4976  
 Founded New Netherland, 7391
- Earliest Settlements**  
 Manhattan Island, 4976  
 Albany, 181, 4976  
 Purchase of Manhattan Island by Peter Minuit, 4256, 4525, 4976  
 Patroon System, 5418  
 Rivalry between Patroons and Governors, 4976  
 Administration of Peter Stuyvesant, 6883  
 Captured and Incorporated New Sweden (Delaware), 1880, 6883, 7391  
 Surrender to English Fleet, 6883, 7391  
 The English Period, 4976
- New Jersey**  
 Rivalry of Swedes and Dutch, 4931  
 English Control  
 Conquered by English, 4931-4932  
 Granted to Berkeley and Carteret, 4932, 7391  
 East and West Jersey  
 East Jersey Controlled by Carteret, 4932  
 West Jersey, First Quaker Colony, 4932  
 The Jerseys United Under the Crown, 4932
- Delaware**  
 First Settlement a Dutch Trading Post, 1880  
 Cornelis Mey Built Fort Nassau, 5470  
 Included in Lord Baltimore's Grant, 4318  
 Swedish Settlements  
 Called New Sweden, 7391  
 Minuit in the Employ of Sweden, 4526

- Built Fort Christiana, 4526, 7776
- Swedes Driven out by Dutch, 1880, 7391, 7776
- English Control, 1880, 7391, 7776
- Penn Secured the Territory, 1880, 5470, 7776
- Pennsylvania**
  - Dutch and Swedish Settlements on the Delaware River, 5470
  - [See *Delaware*, above.]
  - William Penn, Founder of Pennsylvania
  - Became a Quaker, 5460, 5901
  - Interested in America
    - As a Refuge for Quakers, 5461, 7391

## Colonial Life in America

- Character of the People, 1545-1546**
  - Bond of Union between the Colonies
  - Fear of a Common Enemy, the Indians, 1546
  - [See *The New England Confederation*, above.]
- How They Lived**
  - Home Life**
    - Most Necessities Homemade, 1546
    - Interiors of Early American Homes, 1545, 1547, 1548, 1549, 3031
    - An Early Form of Stove, 6871
  - Bedrooms**
    - Four-Poster Beds, 670, 1548, 2647
  - Lighting**
    - Candles, 1166, 1548
    - Lamps, 3848
  - How They Dressed, 1548, 5885, 5886
  - What They Ate, 1548
- How They Traveled, 1549, 7246**
- Education, Learning, and Religion**
  - What They Read and Thought
    - Bible, Hymn Book, and Almanac, 1540
    - One of the Earliest Almanacs, 230

- Grant of Territory by Charles II
  - Naming of Pennsylvania, 5461
  - Founding of Philadelphia, 5543
  - Form of Government, 5461, 5470
  - Attracted Many Settlers, 5470, 7391
  - Treaties with the Indians, 5461
- Troubled Years for Penn, 5461-5462
- Attempt to Make Pennsylvania a Royal Colony, 5462
- New Charter for Philadelphia, 5543
- Benjamin Franklin, Foremost Man in Philadelphia, 2593-2596, 5544

## Schools

- Private Pay Schools, 1540, 6418-6419
- Academies, 13
- Public Schools, 6418
- Universities**
  - Harvard, 3066
  - William and Mary, 7771
  - Yale, 7924-7926
- Education for the Wealthy Abroad, 1549
- Religion**
  - Strict Observance of the Sabbath, 1550, 6290
  - Blue Laws, 805
  - Witchcraft and Superstitions, 1540, 7815

## Amusements

- Parties and Dancing, 1549, 1818
- Fox Hunts, Horse Racing, and Drinking, 1549
- Cockfighting, 1517, 1549
- Punishments**
  - Ducking Stool, 5825
  - Pillory, 5616
  - Stocks, 1745, 6840
  - Whipping Post, 1745, 7741

## Colonial Development

- Relations between England and the Colonies**
  - Navigation Acts, 4841
  - Consolidation of New England Colonies
    - [See *Revolutionary War in America*, below.]
  - Andros Made Governor, 279
  - Tradition of the Charter Oak, 279, 1320, 1618
- French and Indian Wars**
  - King William's War, 2607-2608
  - Expeditions against Canada, 1139, 2608
  - Frontenac and the Defense of Quebec, 2627, 5916
  - Massacre at Schenectady, 6411
  - Peace of Ryswick, 1139, 2608, 2628, 6288
  - Queen Anne's War, 2608
  - French Attack from Canada, 2608
    - Acadia, 14
    - Port Royal Taken by England, 5101
  - Spaniards Attack from Florida, 2608
  - Peace of Utrecht, 2608, 7436
  - France Ceded to England

- Nova Scotia, 2608, 5101, 7436
- Newfoundland, 2608, 4015, 7436
- Hudson Bay Region, 2608, 7436
- Result**
  - Colonial and Commercial Supremacy of England, 7437
- King George's War, 2608
  - War in the South, 2608
  - War in the North
    - First Siege of Louisburg, 4122
  - Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, 2608, 154, 4122
- The French and Indian War, 2608
- Events**
  - George Washington's Mission, 2608, 7647-7648
  - Sent by Governor Dinwiddie, 1953
  - Braddock's Expedition, 915, 2608, 7648
    - Daniel Boone, 859
  - Braddock's Road, 7238
  - English Expeditions at
    - Crown Point, 1760, 2608

Fort Niagara, 2545, 2608  
 Fort Duquesne, 2544  
 Second Siege of Louisburg, 4123  
 French in Acadia Exiled, 14, 2608, 5101  
 Battle of Quebec  
   Part of Pitt's Campaign, 2608, 5632, 5917  
 Wolfe, the British General, 5917, 7818  
 Montcalm, the French General, 2608, 4619, 5917  
 England Won America, 2608, 1139, 5918, 7818  
 Treaty of Paris, 5380  
 France Surrendered Canada, 1139, 2608-2609, 5918, 7391  
   Island of Saint Pierre and Miquelon Retained, 2609  
 [For the European phases of these wars, see *The Modern World*, section on *Europe*.]  
**Westward Expansion**  
 [For the voyages of the French missionaries and explorers who opened up the West, see above.]  
 Scattered French Settlements in the West  
   Illinois, 3360  
   Kaskaskia, 3360  
   Fort Chartres, 3361  
   Indiana, 3396  
   Vincennes, 3396, 7529

Louisiana, 4131  
 Mississippi Bubble, 4549  
   Scheme of John Law, 3900, 4549, 4131  
 Acadians from Nova Scotia, 4131  
 New Orleans, 4948  
 Michigan, 4466  
   Sault Saint Marie, 4466  
   Detroit, 1923  
   Cadillac, 1065, 1923, 4466  
 Minnesota, 4520  
   Duluth, 2052, 4520  
 Mississippi, 4542  
   Biloxi, 4131, 4542  
   Iberville, 3324  
 Missouri, 4556  
 Ohio, 5174  
 Wisconsin, 7810  
 Virginia Traders in Tennessee, 7100  
 Pennsylvania Germans in West Virginia, 7722  
 The Ohio Company, 5177  
 Lawrence Washington, Manager, 7647  
 Fort Duquesne  
   Started by English, 2544, 5174  
   Seized by French and Named, 2544, 5174  
   [See *Braddock's Expedition*, above.]  
**Albany Convention**  
   First Scheme for Political Union, 182  
   Franklin's Idea for Union, 182, 2596, 7391

### Revolutionary War in America

#### Underlying Causes

**England's Colonial Policy, 6071**  
   Changes Brought About by the War  
   Colonies Less Dependent for Military Support, 7391  
 Disaffection of the Indians in the West  
   Pontiac's Conspiracy, 5726-5727  
   Attempt to Take Detroit, 1923, 5726  
 Proclamation of 1763, 6071-6072  
 Taxation to Pay for French and Indian Wars, 6071, 7391  
 Theories on Colonial Policy  
   Burke, 1028, 6071  
   Lord Grenville, 6071-6072  
 Navigation Acts  
   To Restrain Colonial Trade, 4841-4842, 7391  
   Sugar Act, 7392  
   Enforced by Writs of Assistance, 7901, 7392  
   Opposed by James Otis, 5271, 7901  
**Taxation without Representation**  
   Stamp Act, 6072, 6796, 7392  
   Townshend Act, 6072, 7392  
   Writs of Assistance Legalized, 7901  
   Policy of Lord North, 5044  
 Quartering Act, 6072  
   Boston Forced to Quarter English Soldiers, 6072  
   Boston Massacre, 879, 6072, 7392

#### Beginning of Organization and Leadership

Committees of Correspondence  
   To State Rights of the Colonists, 1585, 6072  
   Popularity, 1585, 6083  
**Leaders**  
   Patrick Henry, 3147-3149  
   James Otis, 5271  
   Samuel Adams, 35  
   Benjamin Franklin, 2593-2597  
   Thomas Paine, 5297  
   John Hancock, 3031  
   Joseph Warren, 7621-7622  
**Events Precipitating War**  
   British Ship Gaspee Burned, 6096  
   The Boston Tea Party, 879-880, 6073, 7392  
 Intolerable Acts, 3492  
   Boston Port Bill, 879, 3492  
   Trials of English Officers in England, 3492  
   Massachusetts Given a Military Governor, 3492  
   Equipment for English Soldiers, 3492  
   Quebec Act, 1139, 3492, 5918  
**First Continental Congress**  
   Met in Philadelphia, 1644, 5544, 7393  
   In Carpenters' Hall, 5538, 5544  
   Adopted a Declaration of Rights, 6073  
   Attitude of England, 7393  
   Burke's Speech on Conciliation, 1028, 6073

## The Story of the War

## Beginning of the War

- Preparations Made by Colonists, 6073
- Minutemen, 4526, 6073
- Lexington and Concord, 6080
- Immediate Cause
  - Gage's Orders to Remove Military Stores from Concord, 2658, 6073, 6080
- Paul Revere's Famous Ride, 6069, 6070, 6073-6074
- Americans Led by Captain Parker, 6074
- Service of Israel Putnam, 5890
- Where the Minutemen Met the British, 6078

## First Period

- Battle of Ticonderoga
  - Captured by Ethan Allen, 224, 6082
  - Benedict Arnold in the Expedition, 418
- Crown Point Captured by Seth Warner, 1760, 7601
- Second Continental Congress
  - Functioned as a Government for the Colonies, 1644
  - Appointed George Washington Commander in Chief, 6074, 7650
  - Assumed Command at Cambridge, 1103
- Proclamations of General Gage, 6074
- Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, 4370-4371, 5063
- Battle of Bunker Hill, 6074, 6070, 7393
- Gage Superseded by Howe, 2658, 3266
- Joseph Warren Killed, 7622
- Expedition into Canada, 6076, 7650
- Attack on Quebec
  - American Leaders
    - Benedict Arnold, 418-419
    - Richard Montgomery, 419, 4630
  - Americans Defeated, 419, 5916
  - Montreal Refused to Aid Colonists, 4634
- British Driven out of Boston, 6076
- Beginnings of the American Navy, 4846
- Loyalists in the Revolution
  - Tories, 7222
- Patriots Called Whigs, 7740
- British Repulsed at Charleston, 6713

## Second Period

- Declaration of Independence
  - Lee's Resolution, 1865, 3917
  - The Committee on Declaration, 1866
  - Signing of the Document, 1867
  - Liberty Bell Rung, 3965, 702
  - Text of the Declaration, 1866-1868
- Battle of Long Island, 6076
  - Sir Henry Clinton Occupied New York, 1484
- Battle of White Plains, 6082
- Washington's Retreat into New Jersey, 6076
- Washington's Victories over Cornwallis, 1694, 6077, 6082, 7264
- Battle of Trenton
  - Washington's Strategy, 6076-6077, 6082, 7651

- Crossing the Delaware, 6083
- Hessian Troops of Cornwallis, 3170, 6082
- Battle of Princeton, 6077, 6082
- Assistance of France
  - Beaumarchais Supplied Arms, 665
  - Franklin and Treaty of Alliance, 2597
  - Lafayette, Major General, 3838
- American Flag Designed, 2450, 6076
- Made by Betsy Ross, 6208, 6209
- Betsy Ross House, 5538
- Campaign on the Delaware
  - Howe's March to Philadelphia, 6077
- Battle of Brandywine
  - Commanders
    - Howe, British General, 3266, 6079
    - Washington, 6079
  - Other Leaders
    - Lafayette, 3838
    - Anthony Wayne, 7685
  - Victory for Howe, 3266, 6077, 6079
  - Howe Entered Philadelphia, 5544
- Battle of Germantown
  - Washington Defeated, 6084, 5544
- Winter of American Army at Valley Forge, 6077, 7445, 7651
- Washington's Headquarters at Valley Forge, 6081
- Campaigns in New York
  - Sir Guy Carleton, British General, 1108, 1199
  - Superseded by Burgoyne, 1109
  - Burgoyne's Plan of Action, 1026, 6077
  - Saint Clair Surrendered Fort Ticonderoga, 6305, 1026, 6082
  - Schuyler at Ticonderoga, 6431
- Battle at Bennington, Vt., 6070
  - Green Mountain Boys, 2060, 6070, 7503
  - Organized by Ethan Allen, 224, 2060
  - Led by Seth Warner, 7601
- Defeat of Burgoyne, 1026
- Battle at Oriskany, 4076, 6077
- Mohawk Indians Led by Brant, 924
- Saint Leger Defeated by Herkimer, 6315
- Expedition to Fort Stanwix, 6077, 6315
- Battles of Saratoga
  - First Battle Indecisive, 6082
- British Leaders
  - Burgoyne, 1026, 6082
  - Saint Leger, 6082, 6315
- American Leaders
  - Horatio Gates, 2704, 6082
  - Benedict Arnold, 419, 6082
- Surrender of Burgoyne, 1026, 2704, 4976, 6075, 6082, 2413
- Important Results of American Victory, 6077, 1026

## Third Period

- Episode of Conway Cabal, 1057, 6077
- Changes in Military Command
  - Clinton Succeeded Howe, 1484, 3266, 6077
  - Steuben Succeeded Conway, 6077, 6831

Articles of Confederation, 432-433, 7393  
 British Evacuated Philadelphia  
   Led by Clinton, 1484, 6077  
 Battle of Monmouth  
   Leaders  
     Clinton, 1484, 6080, 6082  
     Charles Lee, 3916  
     Washington Saved the Day, 3916, 6077, 6082  
 The War in the West  
   George Rogers Clark Won the West, 1455, 6078  
   Captured  
     Kaskaskia and Cahokia, 1455, 3360, 6078  
     Vincennes, 1455, 3360, 6078, 7529  
   Clark and Boone in Kentucky, 859, 3762  
 War in the South  
   Savannah Captured, 6078, 6402  
   Charleston Captured, 6078  
   Gates in Command in the South, 2704  
   Battle of Camden, 6078-6079, 1103  
   Nathanael Greene Succeeded Gates, 2704, 2957, 6079

### Beginnings of a New Nation

**The Problems of Government**  
 Constitutions Framed by the States, 7393  
 Failure of Articles of Confederation, 7393, 432  
   Movements toward Better Government  
     Work of Alexander Hamilton, 3026  
     The Annapolis Convention, 292, 1632  
**Framing the Constitution**  
   Convention Met at Philadelphia, 1632, 5544  
   In Independence Hall, 5537-5538, 5539  
   George Washington Presided, 1632, 7651  
   Prominent Members of the Convention, 7394  
 Difficulties Encountered, 7394  
   Powers and Term of President, 1632  
   Conflict between Large and Small States  
     over Representation, 1632  
     Virginia Plan, 7394  
     New Jersey Plan, 4932, 7394  
   Legislation on Slavery, 1632  
   Outline of the Constitution, 1632  
   [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Adoption or Ratification, 1632, 1634, 7394  
   Delaware, 1881  
   Pennsylvania, 5471  
   New Jersey, 4932  
   Georgia, 2762  
   Connecticut, 1634  
   Massachusetts, 4332  
   Maryland, 1634  
   South Carolina, 6713  
   New Hampshire, 4924  
   Virginia, 7542  
   New York, 4976  
   North Carolina, 5063  
   Rhode Island, 6096

### Aides

Daniel Morgan, 2957, 6079  
 Francis Marion, 4293, 6079  
 Henry Lee, 3917, 2957  
 Battle at King's Mountain, 6079  
 Tarleton's Defeat at Cowpens, 2957, 6079  
 Battle at Guilford Courthouse, 6079, 6080  
 Battle of Eutaw Springs, 3917, 4293, 6079  
**Naval Campaigns**  
 John Paul Jones 3695, 6078  
 Depreciation of Continental Currency, 4588  
 Reinforcements from France, 6150, 6152  
**Arnold's Treason**  
 Plot to Surrender West Point to the British, 419, 6078  
 Escape of Arnold, 419, 6078  
 André Hanged as a Spy, 278, 419, 6784  
 Siege of Yorktown, 6079, 6082  
**The Treaty of Peace**  
 Americans at Paris Peace Conference  
   John Adams, 26, 6079  
   Benjamin Franklin, 2597, 6079  
   John Jay, 26, 3644, 6079  
 Provisions of the Treaty, 5380, 6079

### Leaders Who Urged Ratification

James Madison, 4200-4201, 7394  
 Alexander Hamilton, 3026, 7394  
   Work on the Federalist, 2389-2390  
 George Washington, 7651  
 John Jay, 7394  
 Henry Lee, 3917, 7394

### The Critical Period

#### Issues and Events

**Financial Distress**  
 Debt Incurred during Revolution, 4814  
 Robert Morris, Superintendent of Finance, 4662  
   Assisted by Gouverneur Morris, 4661  
   Organized Bank of North America, 4662  
 Depreciation of Continental Currency, 4588  
 Shays' Rebellion in Massachusetts, 6545  
**Commercial Treaties**  
 Negotiated by  
   John Adams, 26  
   Benjamin Franklin and Thomas Jefferson, 3648  
**Disposal of Public Lands**  
 Map of the United States in 1789, 7390  
   Territorial Extent, 7385  
 Lands West of Allegheny Mountains Surrendered to National Government, 3853, 5080  
 Northwest Territory Won by George Rogers Clark, 5079, 5080  
**Westward Movement**  
 Organization of the Northwest Territory, 5080  
 Ohio Company, 5177, 5174

Ordinance of 1787, 5242, 5080  
 Arthur Saint Clair, Governor of Northwest Territory, 6305  
 Kentucky Settlements  
   Daniel Boone, 859  
 Tennessee, 7100  
 Ohio  
   Marietta, 5177  
   Cincinnati, 1429, 5177  
 George Washington's Administration  
 Establishment of the National Government  
   Washington Elected President, 7394, 7651  
   John Adams, Vice-President, 26, 7651  
   The Inaugural Address, 7652, 7653  
   Department of State Created, 6814  
   Supreme Court Organized, 6940  
   John Jay, First Chief Justice, 3644, 6942  
   Washington's First Cabinet, 1059  
   Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State, 3648, 7394, 7653  
   Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury, 3026, 7394, 7653  
   Edmund Randolph, Attorney-General, 7653  
   Henry Knox, Secretary of War, 3809, 7653  
 Organization of First Political Parties  
   Nationalists, or Federalists, 2390, 5705  
   Leaders  
     Washington, 2390  
     Alexander Hamilton, 3026  
     James Madison, 4200  
 Anti-Federalists, 310, 5705  
   Forerunner of Democratic Party, 1888  
   Platform of State Rights, 6815  
   Thomas Jefferson the Leader, 310, 1888, 2390  
 First United States Census, 1283  
 Domestic Affairs  
   Hamilton's Financial Policy  
     The First Tariff Act, 3026, 7022, 7394, 7653  
     Bank of the United States, 602, 3026, 7394, 7653  
     Assumption of State Debts, 3026, 7394, 7653  
     Involved in the Location of National Capital, 7653  
     Cities Which Have Been the National Capital, 1186  
     Funding the National Debt, 3026, 7394, 7653  
     Tax on Home Production (Excise), 3026  
 New States Added to the Union, 7653  
   By Ratification of the Constitution  
     North Carolina, 5063  
     Rhode Island, 6096  
   By Act of Congress  
     Vermont, 7503  
     Kentucky, 3762  
     Tennessee, 7100  
 First Ten Amendments to the Constitution  
   Called Bill of Rights, 7394, 1634  
   Text of the Amendments, 1640-1642

First Mint Established, 3026, 4525, 7653  
 Decimal System of Coinage, 4586, 7653  
 First Fugitive Slave Law, 2631  
 Washington Re-elected, 7395, 7654  
 Invention of the Cotton Gin by Eli Whitney  
   1718-1719, 1714, 3495, 7654, 7754  
 Indian Uprisings  
   Anthony Wayne's Expedition in Ohio, 5177, 7685  
   Battle of Fallen Timbers, 3396, 7395, 7654  
   Treaty of Greenville, 7685  
 Whisky Insurrection, 7742, 7395, 7654  
 Other Noteworthy Events  
   Yazoo Land Frauds, 7654  
   Western Reserves Ceded by Connecticut, 7654, 7713  
   Chisholm vs. Georgia Case, 7654  
     Led to the Eleventh Amendment, 1634, 1641, 7654  
 Washington's Farewell Address, 7655  
 Foreign Affairs  
   Attitude toward War in Europe, 7395, 7654  
   Citizen Genet's Plans, 2715, 7395, 7654  
   Washington's Proclamation of Neutrality, 7395, 7654  
   Political Results, 7395, 7654  
   Beginning of the Democratic-Republican Party, 7395, 1888  
     Jefferson the Leader, 1888, 3648, 7395  
   Jay's Treaty with England  
     Grievance to Be Settled, 3644-3645, 7395  
     Provisions of the Treaty, 3645, 7395  
   United States Treaty with Spain, 7395, 4544, 7654  
 Decline of Federalist Party  
 Administration of John Adams  
   Election of 1796, 26, 3648  
   Trouble with France  
     French Grievances, 7395, 7917  
     American Grievances, 7917  
     Ambassadors Sent to France, 26, 7395, 7917  
     Charles C. Pinckney, 5619  
     John Marshall, 4304  
     Elbridge Gerry, 2791  
     Ambassadors Insulted by Talleyrand, 27, 7009, 7917  
   XYZ Correspondence, 27, 7917  
   Threat of War  
     Washington Made Commander in Chief of Army, 27, 7395  
     Letters of Marque and Reprisal, 7395, 4298  
     Privateers, 7917  
     Naval Battles, 27, 7395  
   Friendly Relations Renewed, 7917  
   Directory Overthrown by Napoleon, 27, 7395  
 Alien and Sedition Laws, 221, 7395-7396  
 Violated Constitutional Rights, 27  
   Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 27, 3765, 7396

Other Events  
 Impeachment of William Blount, 3369  
 Death of Washington, 7655  
 Adams First President To Live in White House, 7747  
 John Marshall Made Chief Justice, 28, 4305  
**Contested Election of 1800**  
 Candidates  
   Federalists  
     John Adams and C. C. Pinckney, 27  
   Republicans  
     Aaron Burr, 1037  
     Thomas Jefferson, 3648  
 Split in Federalist Party, 7396  
 Tie Threw Election into House of Representatives, 27, 3648, 7396  
 Hamilton Supported Jefferson against Burr, 1037, 3650  
**Result**  
 Jefferson Elected President, 27, 1037, 3650, 7396  
 Aaron Burr, Vice-President, 1037, 3650, 7396  
 Ended Federalist Supremacy, 7396  
   Federalist Joined National Republicans, 1888  
**Jeffersonian Era**  
**Jefferson's Administrations**  
 Applied Theory of Strict Construction, 3650, 7396  
 Domestic Policy, 3650  
 Foreign Policy  
   Policy of Strict Construction Disregarded, 3650, 7396  
 War with the Barbary States, 7396  
   Causes, 617 3650, 5627  
   Tripoli Declared War, 618, 3650  
   Stephen Decatur Led United States Squadron, 1856, 3650  
   James Lawrence, Able Naval Officer, 3900  
 Result of War  
   Navy Won Respect of Europe, 4846  
   Stopped Piracy on Commerce, 3650  
 The Louisiana Purchase  
   Louisiana Ceded to France by Spain, 4131, 4134  
   Envoys Sent to Purchase Territory at the Mouth of the Mississippi, 4134  
     Robert R. Livingston, 4061  
     James Monroe, 4603  
   Entire Louisiana Province Purchased, 294, 3650, 4061, 4131, 4134, 4603, 4948, 7396  
**Other Notable Events**  
 Military Academy Founded, 3651, 4475  
 Ohio Admitted as a State, 3650, 3651, 5177  
 Twelfth Amendment Ratified, 1634, 3650, 7396  
 Impeachment Trials  
   John Pickering, 3369

Samuel Chase, 3369  
 Lewis and Clark Expedition, 3956-3050  
**Leaders**  
   Meriwether Lewis, 3955-3956  
   William Clark, 1455-1456  
   Sacagawea, the Only Woman, 3959, 9573  
 Results of the Expedition, 3651, 3959, 7396  
 Zebulon Pike's Expedition, 4520, 5614  
 Louisiana Organized as the Territory of Orleans, 4131  
 Duel between Hamilton and Burr, 1037, 3026, 3651  
 Burr's Conspiracy, 1037, 3651, 790  
   Conspiracy Suppressed, 1037, 7396  
 Abolition of Slave Trade, 3651, 6639-6640, 7396  
 Launching of Fulton's Steamship, the Clermont, 2634-2635, 3651, 7396  
**The Second War of Independence**  
**Relations between Europe and America**  
 Events Leading to the War of 1812  
   Effect of the Napoleonic Wars on United States Commerce, 3650-3651, 7396  
   Great Britain's Theory of Contraband, 7396  
   British Orders in Council, 3651, 5241-5242, 7396, 7602  
   Beginning of Continental System, 1645  
     The Berlin Decree, 4473, 7602  
     The Milan Decree, 4473, 7396, 7602  
     Paper Blockade, 795  
   Practice of Search and Seizure, 3651  
 Retaliation by the United States  
   Non-Importation Act, 7602  
   Chesapeake Affair, 3651, 7602  
   Embargo Act, 2219, 3651, 7396, 7602  
   Force Act, 7602  
   Non-Intercourse Act, 5040, 3651, 7396  
   [See *War of 1812*, below.]  
 Election of 1808  
   Jefferson Refused a Third Term, 3651  
   Madison Elected President, 4204  
   George Clinton, Vice-President, 1484  
**Madison's Administration**  
 Proclamation Forbidding Communication with France and England, 4202  
 Tecumseh's Plan for Indian Confederation, 4202, 7053  
 Suspension of Non-Intercourse Act, 7602  
 Macon Act, 7602  
 Harrison's Indian Campaign  
   Indians Dissatisfied with the Treaties of Land Cession, 3060, 7603  
   Tecumseh, Leader of the Indians, 7053  
   Battle of Tippecanoe, 3060, 7053, 7396, 7603, 7605-7606  
 Madison's Charges against Great Britain, 7603  
**Other Notable Events of the Administration**  
 John Jacob Astor Established Fur Trade, 465, 5248



## States Admitted to the Union

Louisiana, 4131

Indiana, 3396

The First Gerrymander, 2791, 4201

Death of the Federalist Party, 4202, 7396-7397

Hartford Convention, the Immediate Cause, 3065

## War of 1812

[See *Events Leading to the War of 1812*, above.]

An Unnecessary Conflict, 7601-7602

## The War Party

John C. Calhoun, 1079

Henry Clay, 1459

William H. Crawford, 7396

Declaration of War, 4202, 7603

## Attitude of the Nation

Strong Opposition in New England, 4202

Inadequate Preparation, 7603

## Campaign of 1812

Hull Ordered to Invade Canada, 3280, 7603

Harrison Scheduled to Relieve Hull, 3061

Hull's Surrender to Brock, 973, 1923, 3280, 7603

Battle at Queenston Heights, 7605

## American Commanders

Van Rensselaer, 7463, 7605

Smyth, 7605

Brock, the British General, 973

## Naval Battles

Constitution Defeated the *Guerrière*, 1630, 4201, 7603

Other Naval Battles, 7603-7604

## Year 1813 Was Indecisive

Raisin River Massacre, 7604, 7605

York, now Toronto, Captured, 7216, 7604

## Thames River Battle

Decisive Victory for Harrison, 3061, 7604, 7605

Death of Tecumseh, 3061, 7053, 7605

Proctor Court-Martialed, 7605

## National Development

## The Era of Good Feeling

## Administration of James Monroe

James Monroe Elected President, 4602

## Westward Expansion

Internal Improvements, 4604

Cumberland Road, 1784, 4604

Erie Canal, 2287-2289

## Western States Admitted to the Union

Mississippi, 4544, 4604

Illinois, 3360, 4604

Missouri, 4558, 4604

[See *Missouri Compromise*, below.]

## War with the Seminoles

Indian Raids in Georgia, 3599, 4604

Jackson Commander in South, 3599

Conquered Florida, 4605

## Naval Battles

Perry's Victory at the Battle of Lake Erie, 2286-2287, 5492, 5493, 7604

Defeat of James Lawrence, 3901, 7604

Detroit Retaken, 1923

Fort Niagara Captured by British, 2545

Buffalo Destroyed, 1008

Jackson's Campaign against the Creek Indians, 3598

## Third Year of War, 7604

## On the Niagara Frontier

British Defeat at Chippewa, 7604

Battle of Lundy's Lane, 7604, 7605

Capture and Burning of Washington, 7604, 7644

Attack on Baltimore, 590, 7604

Writing of the Star-Spangled Banner, 590, 6812-6813, 7604

Francis Scott Key, 3769-3770

British Defeat on Lake Champlain, 7604, 1301

The Hartford Convention, 3065, 4202, 7604

The Treaty of Ghent, 2797, 7605

## The Needleless Battle

Jackson's Battle of New Orleans, 2707, 3598-3599, 4131, 7604, 7605

Sir Edward Pakenham, the British General, 5308

Cost of the War, 7592

## Nationalist Tendencies Following the War

## Economic

Second Bank of the United States Chartered, 606, 4203, 7396

Protective Tariff of 1816, 4203, 7022, 7396

Internal Improvements, 4203, 6140

National Defense Strengthened, 4203

Relations between Federal and State Government

McCulloch vs. Maryland Case, 4203, 4305

Entrance of the West into National Politics, 7397

Treaty for Purchase of Florida Ratified, 2482, 4605, 294

Fisheries Convention with Great Britain, 32

The Missouri Compromise, 4558, 4605

Provisions of the Compromise, 4230, 4558-4559, 4605

The Monroe Doctrine, 4608

Ideas of the Doctrine Attributed to John Quincy Adams, 32, 4608

Feared Possible Outcome of the Holy Alliance, 32, 3200-3201

## The American System

Formulated by Henry Clay, 4605, 7022

Tariff of 1824, 4606, 7022

## Other Notable Events

Southern States Admitted to the Union

Mississippi, 4544

Alabama, 162  
 Act to Establish Flag of the United States, 2450  
 Dartmouth College Case, 1830, 7696  
**Contested Election of 1824**  
 Candidates 7397  
 John Quincy Adams, 32  
 John C. Calhoun, 1079  
 Henry Clay, 1459  
 William H. Crawford, 32, 7397  
 Andrew Jackson, 3599-3600  
 Election Thrown into House of Representatives, 32, 7397, 3599  
 Calhoun Withdrew, 32  
 Clay Eliminated, 1459  
 Support Went to Adams, 32, 1459  
 Accused of Corrupt Bargaining, 32, 3599, 7397  
 Result of Election  
 John Quincy Adams, President, 32  
 John Calhoun, Vice-President, 1079  
 Ill-Feeling of Jackson, 32, 3600, 7397  
 Adams Unable to Carry Out Policies, 32, 7397  
 Break in Political Parties, 32, 3600  
**Administration of John Quincy Adams**  
 Labored under Partisan Opposition, 32, 7397  
 Tariff of Abominations, 32, 7022  
 South Carolina's Exposition and Protest 5111  
 Prepared by John Calhoun, 1079  
 Oregon Dispute, 32  
 Conflict between Georgia and Government over Indian Lands, 32, 2762  
 Panama Congress, 32  
**Other Events**  
 Opening of the Erie Canal, 31, 32, 2287-2289  
 Visit of Lafayette, 3838  
 Corner Stone Laid for the Bunker Hill Monument, 32, 6080  
 First Railway, 32  
 Deaths of Former Presidents  
 John Adams, 28  
 Thomas Jefferson, 3651  
 Election of 1828  
 Issues and Parties, 32, 34  
 Results  
 Jackson Elected, 34, 3600  
 John Calhoun Re-elected Vice-President, 1079  
**The Jacksonian Era**  
**Administration of Andrew Jackson**  
 The Kitchen Cabinet, 3798  
 The Spoils System, 3600, 6771, 1450-1451  
 The Tariff and Nullification  
 [See *Tariff of Abominations*, above.]  
 South Carolina's Doctrine of Nullification, 3600, 5111, 7397  
 Webster-Hayne Debates, 3100, 3600, 7696-7697

Tariff of 1832, 3600, 7022, 5112  
 Force Bills, 2530, 3600  
 Calhoun Defended South Carolina, 1079, 3600  
 Compromise Tariff, 1079, 3600, 7022  
**Financial Affairs**  
 The Fight against the Bank  
 Bank Charter Vetoed, 602-603, 606, 3600  
 Government Deposits Withdrawn, 603, 3602  
 Roger Taney, 7014  
 Jackson Censured, 3602  
 Wildcat Banks, 7761  
 Specie Circular, 3602, 7397, 7761  
 Panic of 1837, 3602, 7397  
 [See *Administration of Van Buren*, below.]  
**Indian Affairs**  
 Indian Territory Set Aside, 3429, 5187  
 Removal of Indians to Indian Territory  
 Cherokee, 3414  
 Chickasaw, 3416  
 Choctaw, 3416  
 Creeks, 3410  
 Seminoles, 3426  
 Seminole War, 3426, 3602  
 Black Hawk War, 781, 3360  
 Troubles in Georgia and Florida, 3602  
**Foreign Relations, 3602**  
**Slavery**  
 Rise of the Abolitionists, 9, 3602  
 William Lloyd Garrison and the Liberator, 2695-2696, 3602  
 American Anti-Slavery Society, 9, 5546  
**Other Events**  
 States Admitted to the Union  
 Arkansas, 402  
 Michigan, 4436  
 Independence of Texas Declared, 3602, 7130  
 Deaths of Former Presidents  
 James Monroe, 4606  
 James Madison, 4203  
 Organization of the Whig Party, 7740  
 Invention of Reaping Machine, 3602, 4174, 6015, 98  
 Loco Focos in New York Politics, 4076  
 Lasting Influence of Jackson, 3602  
 Election of 1836  
 Candidates  
 Martin Van Buren, 7452  
 William Henry Harrison, 3061  
 Daniel Webster, 7452  
 Hugh L. White, 7452  
 W. P. Mangnum, 7452  
 Results  
 Van Buren Elected, 7452  
 Richard M. Johnson, Vice-President, 3689  
**Administration of Van Buren**  
 The Panic of 1837  
 Causes, 3602, 7397, 7452, 7761

## Results

Land Speculation Ended, 3853  
Specie Payments Suspended, 606-607,  
6747

Independent Treasury Bill, 7255, 7397,  
7452-7453

## Important Internal Affairs

Slavery Agitation  
William Lloyd Garrison Mobbed, 2696,  
7453  
Alton Riots, 7453  
Protest Meeting, Wendell Phillips,  
5564

Trouble with the Mormons, 4654-4655  
Second Seminole War, 3426, 7453

Osceola, Seminole Chief, 5265

Aroostook War in Maine, 4232, 7453

Disturbances on Mexican Border, 7453

Inventions and Discoveries

Telegraph, 4664, 7066, 7453  
First Photograph, Daguerreotype, 1805-  
1806, 5582, 7453

Vulcanization of Rubber, 7453  
Regular Steamship Connections Estab-  
lished, 7453

First Public Normal School, 6426

Election of 1840

## Candidates

Democrat, Martin Van Buren, 7453  
Whig, William Henry Harrison, 3062,  
7740

Liberty Party, James G. Birney, 3966

## Campaign

Log Cabin and Hard Cider, 3062, 7397  
Discontent over Financial Policy of  
Jackson, 3062, 7333, 7453

Harrison Elected President, 3062, 7397,  
7453

John Tyler, Vice-President, 7333

Death of Harrison, 3062, 7333, 7397

## The Advance of the American Frontier

## Administration of John Tyler

Quarrel with the Whigs, 7333, 7334, 7397

Tariff of 1842, 7022, 7334

Webster-Ashburton Treaty, 7334, 7398, 7697

Settled Boundary of Maine, 4232, 7335

Annexation of Texas, 7334

Opposition of Whigs, 7334

Efforts of Sam Houston, 3264-3265

## Internal Affairs

Dorr's Rebellion in Rhode Island, 2014,  
6096, 7335

Patron War in New York, 5418, 7335

Anti-Renters, 311-312

Trouble with the Mormons at Nauvoo,  
3360, 4655, 7335

Brook Farm Established, 975, 7335

Florida Admitted to the Union, 2482,  
7335

## Miscellaneous Events

First Successful Telegraph Line Con-  
structed, 4664, 7058, 7335

Bunker Hill Monument Dedicated,  
6079, 7335

Election of 1844

## Candidates

Democrat, James K. Polk, 5708, 7334

Whig, Henry Clay, 1460, 7741

Liberty Party, James G. Birney, 3966

## Platforms

Polk

Reannexation of Texas, Reoccupa-  
tion of Oregon, 5709, 7398

Clay

Refused a Stand on Texas Questions,  
5709, 7741

Birney

Anti-Slavery, 3966, 5709

Barnburners, 625

Election of Polk, 5709, 7334, 7398

George M. Dallas, Vice-President, 1812

## Expansion to the Pacific

## Administration of James K. Polk

Cabinet, 5709

James Buchanan, 990

George Bancroft, 597

War with Mexico

## Causes

Annexation of Texas, 4430, 5709, 7130,  
7398

Taylor's Activities on the Mexican  
Border, 4430, 5709, 7038

Battle of Palo Alto, 4432

Battle of Resaca de la Palma, 4432

Declaration of War, 4430, 5709

## Campaigns

Taylor's

Matamoros, 4430, 7038

Monterey, 4430, 4432, 7038

Buena Vista, 4430, 4431, 7038

Santa Anna, the Mexican Leader,  
6378

Scott's

Vera Cruz, 4431, 6452

Cerro Gordo, 4431, 4432, 6452

Contreras and San Antonio, 4431,  
6360, 6452

Churubusco, 4431, 4432, 6452

Molino del Rey, 4431, 6452

Chapultepec, 4431, 4432, 6452

Mexico City, 4431, 4450, 6452

## Other Campaigns

Kearny in New Mexico, 3750, 4431,  
4942

Doniphan at Chihuahua, 4431

California

Stockton, 4431

Fremont, 2606, 4431

Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 2971,  
4431

Territory Ceded to the United States  
(Maps), 4432, 5710, 294

Rio Grande River, the Boundary be-  
tween Texas and Mexico, 2971, 6133

Results of the War  
 [Note Territorial Additions above.]  
 Direct  
   Potential Slave Territory Increased, 443<sup>1</sup>, 739<sup>8</sup>  
 Indirect, 443<sup>2</sup>  
   Cost of the War, 759<sup>2</sup>  
 The Oregon Trouble, 571<sup>0</sup>  
 Domestic Affairs  
   Treaty with Colombia for Panama Canal Rights, 533<sup>1</sup>  
   Tariff of 1846, 571<sup>0</sup>, 702<sup>2</sup>  
   Wilnot Proviso, 570<sup>9</sup>, 777<sup>6</sup>  
   Growth of Squatter-Sovereignty Idea, 570<sup>9</sup>, 678<sup>7</sup>  
   Reestablishment of the Independent Treasury, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   Formation of the Free-Soil Party, 260<sup>3</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
 States Admitted to the Union  
   Texas, 571<sup>2</sup>, 713<sup>0</sup>, 733<sup>4</sup>  
   Responsibility of Calhoun, 107<sup>9</sup>  
   [See *Annexation of Texas*, above.]  
   Iowa, 351<sup>0</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   Wisconsin, 571<sup>2</sup>, 781<sup>1</sup>  
 Discoveries and Inventions  
   Ether as an Anesthetic, 230<sup>4</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>, 466<sup>6</sup>  
   Sewing Machine, 571<sup>2</sup>, 651<sup>9</sup>-652<sup>0</sup>, 326<sup>6</sup>  
   Cylinder Printing Press, 571<sup>2</sup>, 319<sup>0</sup>  
 Institutions Founded  
   United States Naval Academy, 483<sup>5</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   Smithsonian Institution, 571<sup>2</sup>, 665<sup>2</sup>  
 Immigration to the United States  
   Causes, 222<sup>3</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
 Election of 1848  
 Candidates  
   Democrat, Lewis Cass, 122<sup>0</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   Whig, Zachary Taylor, 571<sup>2</sup>, 703<sup>9</sup>, 774<sup>1</sup>  
   Free Soil, Martin Van Buren, 260<sup>3</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>, 745<sup>3</sup>

Taylor Elected, 571<sup>2</sup>, 703<sup>9</sup>, 739<sup>8</sup>  
 Millard Fillmore, Vice-President, 241<sup>7</sup>  
 Election Map, 703<sup>9</sup>  
**Westward Migration**  
 First Western Settlements  
   Oregon  
     Missionaries, True Pioneers, 525<sup>1</sup>, 775<sup>3</sup>  
     California, 109<sup>3</sup>  
 Explorations for Overland Routes  
   Fremont's Expedition, 260<sup>5</sup>, 733<sup>5</sup>  
     Accompanied by Kit Carson, 121<sup>8</sup>  
     Surveyed Oregon Trail, 723<sup>8</sup>  
 The Gold Rush  
   Gold Discovered in California, 109<sup>3</sup>, 285<sup>9</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   The Forty-niners, 109<sup>3</sup>, 254<sup>7</sup>, 739<sup>8</sup>  
 Routes  
   Oregon, or Overland Trail, 723<sup>8</sup>  
     Kansas, on the Line of March, 373<sup>9</sup>  
     Santa Fe Trail, 723<sup>9</sup>  
     Around Cape Horn, 109<sup>4</sup>  
   Suggested a Transcontinental Railroad, 597<sup>6</sup>  
 Mormon Settlements in Utah, 465<sup>5</sup>-465<sup>6</sup>, 634<sup>5</sup>, 743<sup>4</sup>  
   Led by Brigham Young, 795<sup>0</sup>-795<sup>1</sup>  
 Organization of Territories and States  
   Oregon, a Territory, 525<sup>1</sup>, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   California, 571<sup>2</sup>  
   [See *Compromise of 1850*, below.]  
   Minnesota, 452<sup>0</sup>  
   Kansas and Nebraska. [See below.]  
 Effects of Westward Expansion, 739<sup>8</sup>, 760<sup>7</sup>  
 [See *War of Secession*, below.]  
 Necessity of Communication  
   Projects for a Transcontinental Railroad, 597<sup>6</sup>  
   Water Route by Means of an Isthmian Canal, 703<sup>9</sup>  
   [See *Plans for an Isthmian Canal*, below.]

### Development of the Slavery Problem

**Extension of Slavery**  
**Administration of Zachary Taylor**  
 Cabinet, 703<sup>9</sup>  
 Plans for an Isthmian Canal  
   Treaty with Nicaragua, 703<sup>9</sup>  
   Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 146<sup>0</sup>, 703<sup>9</sup>  
**Slavery Issue**  
   Compromise of 1850  
     Rising Public Sentiment, 703<sup>9</sup>-704<sup>0</sup>  
     Great Speeches on the Question  
       Clay, 146<sup>0</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
       Calhoun, 107<sup>9</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
       Webster, 704<sup>0</sup>, 769<sup>7</sup>  
       Seward, 651<sup>4</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
     Terms of the Compromise, 704<sup>0</sup>  
     Texas Claims on New Mexico Liquidated, 159<sup>5</sup>

California Admitted as a Free State, 109<sup>4</sup>, 159<sup>5</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
 New Territories Organized  
   New Mexico, 159<sup>5</sup>, 494<sup>2</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
   Utah, 159<sup>5</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>, 743<sup>4</sup>  
 Slave Trade Suppressed in the District of Columbia, 159<sup>5</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
 Fugitive Slave Law, 159<sup>5</sup>, 263<sup>1</sup>, 704<sup>0</sup>  
**Immediate Results**  
   Postponed War of Secession, 704<sup>0</sup>, 739<sup>8</sup>  
   Death of Taylor, 704<sup>0</sup>  
**Administration of Millard Fillmore**  
 Change in Leadership in Congress  
   Deaths of Older Statesmen, 739<sup>8</sup>  
   Younger Men in Leadership  
     Anti-Slavery  
       Salmon P. Chase, 132<sup>0</sup>

- Stephen A. Douglas, 2015
- William H. Seward, 6514
- Thaddeus Stephens, 6831
- Charles Sumner, 6920
- Slavery Advocates
  - John Bell, 703-704
  - Judah P. Benjamin, 709
  - Jefferson Davis, 1838
  - Alexander H. Stephens, 6827
  - Robert Toombs, 7210
- Governmental Affairs
  - Compromise Bills Signed, 2417
  - Fugitive Slave Law, 2631
  - Result
    - Loss of Whig Support for Fillmore, 2417
    - Publication of Uncle Tom's Cabin, 2417, 6871
  - Aid for Kossuth, 2418, 3815
  - Lopez's Filibustering Expedition to Cuba, 1772-1773, 2415, 2418
  - Reduction of Postage Rate, 2418
  - The Know-Nothing Party, 3808
- Internal and Local Affairs
  - Corner Stone to the Capitol Laid, 2418
  - Underground Railroad, 7350
  - Prohibition in Maine, 2418, 5831
  - Pacific Railways Begun, 2418, 5977
- Election of 1852
  - Candidates
    - Democrat, Franklin Pierce, 2418, 5607
    - Whig, Winfield Scott, 2418, 6452
    - Free-Soil, John P. Hale, 5607
    - Pierce Elected, 2418, 5607, 7399
    - William R. King, Vice-President, 3793
  - Election Map, 5607
- Failure of Compromises
- Administration of Franklin Pierce
  - Governmental Affairs
    - Selection of Compromise Cabinet, 5607
    - Kansas-Nebraska Bill
      - Doctrine of Squatter Sovereignty, 5607, 6787
      - Formulated by Douglas, 2015
  - Effects
    - Kansas Turned into a Battleground, 3739, 5607
    - Repeal of the Missouri Compromise, 4559, 5607
    - Reopened Slavery Controversies, 7399
    - Ruined Pierce's Compromise Policy, 5608
    - Hastened the War of Secession, 3746
  - Birth of the Republican Party, 5608, 6063-6064
- Foreign Relations
  - The Martin Koszta Affair, 5608
  - Perry's Expedition to Japan, 2418, 3636, 5491-5492, 5608, 7399
  - Opening of Treaty Ports, 3636, 5608
  - Gadsden Purchase, 2657, 5608
- Extended Territory of New Mexico, 4942
- Canada Fisheries Question, 5608
- Ostend Manifesto, 5267, 5608, 7399
- Question of the Possession of Cuba, 1773
- Central American Problems
  - William Walker Filibustering Expedition in Nicaragua, 2415, 5609, 7582
- Internal Affairs
  - Yellow Fever Epidemics, 5609
  - First World's Fair, 5609
  - Railroad Expansion Westward, 5609, 5611
  - Land Grants, 3853, 5609, 5977
- Election of 1856
  - Candidates
    - Democrat, James Buchanan, 990
    - Republican, Fremont, 991, 2606, 6064
    - Whig and Know-Nothing, Fillmore, 990, 2418
  - Buchanan Elected, 990, 7399
  - John C. Breckinridge, Vice-President, 940, 990-991
  - Election Map, 992
- Administration of James Buchanan
  - The Slavery Issue
    - Dred Scott Decision, 991, 2031
    - The Questions at Issue, 2031
    - Constitutionality of the Missouri Compromise, 2031, 7399
    - Result: Increased Sectional Feeling, 2031, 7399
  - The Struggle for Kansas
    - Attempt to Secure Statehood
    - Anti-Slavery Constitution, 3739
    - Lecompton Constitution, 991, 3739
  - John Brown's Raid at Harper's Ferry, 978, 991-992, 3050, 3739, 7399
  - Lincoln and Douglas Debates, 2015, 4013-4014
- Other Events
  - Admission of States to the Union
    - Minnesota, 4522
    - Oregon, 5251
    - Kansas, 3739, 3742
  - Financial Panic of 1857
    - Suspended Railroad Building, 5977
  - First Atlantic Cable Laid, 1062
  - Petroleum Discovered in Pennsylvania, 5468, 5521
  - William Walker's Filibustering Expedition in Honduras, 7582
  - Death of Washington Irving, 3560
- Election of 1860
  - Candidates and Platforms
    - Split in the Democratic Party
      - Pro-Slavery, or Southern, Democrats, Breckinridge, 940, 992
      - Demanded Protection of Slavery in the Territories, 7399
    - Moderate, or Northern Democrats, Douglas, 992, 2015
  - Supported Squatter Sovereignty, 7399

Constitutional Union Party, John C. Bell, 704, 992  
 Republican, Abraham Lincoln, 992, 4014, 6064

Lincoln Elected, 992, 4014-4015, 6064  
 A Minority President, 7399, 4015  
 Hannibal Hamlin, Vice-President, 3027  
 Election Map, 4014

### The War of Secession

#### The Secession Movement

##### Summary of Causes

Disagreement over Negro Slavery, 1603, 7607  
 Political Aspect of Slavery, 7607

##### Famous Compromises

Missouri Compromise, 4558-4559  
 Compromise of 1850, 1595, 7039-7040  
 [For details, see above.]

Fugitive Slave Law, 2418, 2631

##### Slavery in the Territories

Territory Added after Mexican War, 4431, 4432

Doctrine of Squatter Sovereignty, 6787

Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 3746, 5607, 7607

[For details, see above.]

##### Political Parties Formed on Slavery Issue

Liberty Party, 3965-3966

Free-Soil Party, 2603

Republican Party, 6063-6064

##### Social Aspect of Slavery

Abolitionists, 9

Effect of Uncle Tom's Cabin, 2417, 6871

Difference in Economic Development of North and South

North, Interested in Protective Tariff, 7608

South, Interested in Low Tariff, 7022, 7603  
 John Calhoun's Stand, 1079, 7022

South Carolina's Attempts at Nullification, 3600, 5111, 7022, 7397, 7608

States' Rights Theory of the South, 6815-6816, 7608

#### The Crisis, the Months between Election and Inauguration

##### Secession

Election of Lincoln, a Signal for Secession, 992, 4015, 7399, 7608

South Carolina First To Secede, 992, 4015, 6713, 7399, 7608

Extreme Southern States Followed, 7608

##### Efforts at Compromise

Crittenden Compromise, 1749, 7400

South Carolina's Commission, 992

Buchanan's Vacillating Policy, 992, 7399

##### Formation of the Confederacy

Organized before Lincoln's Inauguration, 4015

Constitution Adopted, 1603

##### Presidential Election

Jefferson Davis Provisional President, 1603, 1839

Alexander H. Stephens, Vice-President, 1603, 6827

Cabinet, 1603-1604, 7609

Confederate Congress, 1604-1605, 7609

##### Border States

Support Sought by Both North and South, 1604

Douglas's Tour of Border States, 2016

Four Joined the Confederacy

Arkansas, 402

North Carolina, 5063

Tennessee, 7102

Eastern Virginia, 7542

Western Virginia Organized Separate Government, 7542, 7724

##### The Capital

Montgomery, Ala., 162, 1603, 4629-4630

Richmond, Va., 1604, 6120, 7542

##### In the North

Able Leaders Elected to Governorships, 7399

#### Administration of Abraham Lincoln

Inauguration, 4015, 7400

##### Cabinet

##### Leading Members

Edward Bates and Simon Cameron, 4015

Salmon P. Chase, 1320

William H. Seward, 6514

### The Call to Arms

#### Military Events of the War

##### Outbreak of the War

Fall of Fort Sumter in South Carolina, 2545-2546, 6713, 7609

Major Anderson, 2545-2546, 4015, 7609

General Beauregard, 665, 2545-2546, 4015-7609

Call for Volunteers, 7567, 7609

##### Military and Naval Leaders

##### Federal, 7611

Ambrose E. Burnside, 1036-1037

Benjamin F. Butler, 1039-1040

George A. Custer, 1793

David G. Farragut, 2373

John C. Fremont, 2606

Andrew H. Foote, 2528

Ulysses S. Grant, 2900-2902

Winfield S. Hancock, 3032

Joseph Hooker, 3223

Philip Kearny, 3750

George B. McClellan, 4173

George G. Meade, 4357-4358

Nelson A. Miles, 4474

David D. Porter, 5746

William S. Rosecrans, 6205

Winfield S. Schley, 6413

John M. Schofield, 6415  
 Philip H. Sheridan, 6555-6556  
 William T. Sherman, 6558  
 George H. Thomas, 7152-7153  
 Charles Wilkes, American Naval Officer,  
     7762  
 Confederate, 7613  
     Pierre G. Beauregard, 665  
     Braxton Bragg, 916  
     John C. Breckinridge, 940  
     Jubal A. Early, 2079  
     John B. Floyd, 2496  
     John B. Gordon, 2875  
     John B. Hood, 3222-3223  
     Stonewall Jackson, Major General, 3606  
     Albert S. Johnston, 3690  
     Joseph E. Johnston, 3690-3691  
     Robert E. Lee, 3917-3921  
     James Longstreet, Major General, 4108  
     John C. Pemberton, 5449  
     George E. Pickett, Major General, 5602  
     Leonidas Polk, 5712-5713  
     Sterling Price, 5810  
     Raphael Semmes, Naval Officer, 6488  
     Edmund K. Smith, 6640  
     James E. B. Stuart, 6881  
     Joseph Wheeler, 7739  
 The War in 1861  
     First Battle of Bull Run, or Manassas,  
         4016, 7615  
     Effect of Confederate Victory, 4016,  
         7615  
 Foreign Entanglements  
     Trent Affair, 4016, 4322, 7262, 7609  
     Participants  
         James Mason, 4322  
         John Slidell, 4322  
         Captain Wilkes, 7762  
 McClellan's Lack of Aggressiveness, 4173  
 Fremont's Premature Liberation of Slaves,  
     4016  
 Beginning of Jackson's Campaign in the  
 Shenandoah, 3606  
 The War in 1862  
     Plan of Campaign of the Union Army, 7610  
     In the West, Attempt to Break Confed-  
         erate Line  
         Fort Henry and Fort Donelson, 7102,  
             7610, 7616  
         Location Map, 7612  
         Battle of Shiloh, 7102, 7610, 7621  
         Confederate Leaders, facing 7612  
         Confederates Lost Western Tennessee,  
             7621  
         Battle of Murfreesboro, or Stone River,  
             7610, 7620  
     On the Mississippi  
         Attack on New Orleans, 4948, 7610  
         First Attempt against Vicksburg, 7610  
         Capture of Memphis, 4390  
     In the East  
         Monitor and Merrimac, 7618, 7620  
         Success of the Monitor, 7618, 7619

Invented by John Ericsson, 2285-  
     2286  
 McClellan's Peninsular Campaign  
     Battle of Yorktown, 7621  
     Battle of Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines,  
         7616  
     Lesser Engagements, 7610  
         Meade Aided McClellan, 4173  
     Battle of Malvern Hill, 7618  
     Result of Peninsula Campaign, 3910,  
         7610  
 Second Battle of Bull Run, 7615  
     Confederate Victory, 3919, 7610, 7615  
 Battle of Antietam  
     Lee's First Invasion of the North,  
         3919, 7614  
     Result of Federal Victory  
         Preliminary Emancipation Procla-  
             mation, 2218, 4016-4017, 7610,  
             7614-7615  
     Battle of Fredericksburg, 7610, 7617  
     Result of Confederate Victory  
         Burnside Replaced by Hooker,  
             1037, 7610, 7617  
 Civil Affairs  
     Suspension of the Writ of Habeas  
         Corpus, 7400  
 Abolition of Slavery in the District of  
 Columbia and Territories, 4016  
 Morrill Act, 89  
 Proclamation of Amnesty, 265  
 The War in 1863  
     Final Emancipation Proclamation, 2218,  
         4016-4017, 7610  
     In the West  
         Morgan's Raids, 4651-4652  
     On the Mississippi  
         Vicksburg Campaign  
         Federal Leaders  
             Farragut, Naval Forces, 2373,  
                 7610  
             Grant, Land Forces, 2901, 7610  
         Port Hudson, 7612  
     Battles of Chattanooga  
         Rosecrans at Chattanooga, 7612  
         [See *Battle of Chickamauga*, below.]  
     Engagements  
         Lookout Mountain, 7616  
         Missionary Ridge, 7616  
     Confederates Driven into Georgia,  
         7612, 7616  
     In the East  
         Battle of Chancellorsville, 7615-7616  
         Jackson Killed, 3605, 7616  
         Battle of Gettysburg, 7610, 7617-7618  
         Turning Point of the War, 7610, 7618  
         One of the World's Decisive Battles,  
             2413  
         Battle of Chickamauga, 7612, 7616  
         [See *Battle of Chattanooga*, above.]  
 Domestic Events  
     Conscription, 1622  
     National Banking Act Passed, 607

Free Mail Delivery Established, 5774  
 West Virginia Admitted to the Union, 7724  
 Lincoln's Gettysburg Address, 2793, 2794, 4017, 7618  
 The War in 1864  
 Grant Made Commander in Chief of Federal Armies, 2901-2902, 4018  
 Hammering Campaign Outlined, 7612  
 In Virginia  
 Wilderness Battle, 7621  
 Spottsylvania Court House, 7621  
 Cold Harbor, 7612  
 Victory for Lee, 7620  
 Beginning of Siege of Petersburg, 7620  
 Shenandoah Valley  
 Federal Leader, Sheridan, 6556, 7614  
 Confederate Leader, Early, 2079, 7614  
 Thomas Read's Poem, Sheridan's Ride, 6005, 7614  
 Sheridan's Message to Grant, 4018  
 In the South  
 Sherman's Atlanta Campaign, 6558, 7612  
 Battles at Resaca and Dalton, 7612  
 Kenesaw Mountain, 7618  
 John A. Logan, 4088, 7618  
 Capture of Atlanta, 488, 7612  
 Famous March to the Sea, 2762, 7612  
 Capture of Savannah, 6402  
 In the West  
 Nashville, Tenn., 4812, 7612  
 Result, 3223, 7153, 7612  
 Naval Battles  
 Mobile Bay, 7618  
 Herosim of Admiral Farragut, 2373  
 Battle of the Alabama and Kearsarge, 164, 7614  
 Result, 164, 6488, 7614  
 Domestic Affairs  
 Nevada Admitted to the Union, 4904  
 Election of 1864  
 Candidates  
 Republican, Lincoln, 4018, 7400  
 Democrat, McClellan, 4018, 4173, 7400  
 Platforms, 4018, 7400  
 Lincoln Relected, 4018  
 Andrew Johnson, Vice-President, 3684  
 The End of the War  
 Siege of Petersburg, 7620  
 Surrender of Lee at Appomattox Court House, 2902, 3920, 4018, 7614, 7620  
 Thirteenth Amendment, 1642, 4018  
 Lincoln's Second Inaugural, 4018  
 End of the Confederacy, 1604-1605, 7614  
 Davis Taken Prisoner, 1839  
 Assassination of Lincoln, 4018, 7614  
 John Wilkes Booth, 860  
 The Cost of the War  
 Casualties, 7614  
 Cost in Money, 7592, 7614

## Reconstruction

## Administration of Johnson

## Reconstruction Policies

Liberal Policy Outlined by Lincoln, 7400, 6024  
 Congressional, or Radical, Policy, 3686  
 Outlined by  
 Charles Sumner, 6920, 7400  
 Thaddeus Stevens, 6831-6832  
 Advocated  
 Enfranchisement of the Negro, 3686, 6832, 6920  
 Punishment of Southern Leaders, 3685, 3686  
 Military Government for the South, 6084  
 Change in Johnson's Views  
 Before Congress Met  
 Adoption of Lincoln's Policy, 3685, 3686  
 Virginia Restored to the Union, 3685  
 Military Governors Appointed, 3685, 6024  
 Results, 6024  
 After Congress Met  
 Attitude of Congress toward Liberal Policy, 3685-3686  
 Acts Proposed by Congress  
 Freedmen's Bureau Bill, 2602, 3686  
 Civil Rights Bill, 3686  
 Fourteenth Amendment, 1634, 1642, 3686  
 Quarrel between President and Congress  
 Bills Passed over Veto, 3686  
 Reconstruction Acts of 1867  
 South Divided into Military Districts, 6024  
 Results of Reconstruction Policy  
 Ignorant Negroes Ruled the South, 6024  
 Carpetbaggers Added to the Chaos, 1211, 6024  
 Ku-Klux Klan, 3818  
 Powers of President Curtailed, 3686  
 Tenure of Office Act, 3686, 7110, 7400  
 Removal of Stanton, 3686, 6803, 7400  
 Appointment of Grant, 2902, 3686  
 Impeachment of Johnson, 3686, 7400  
 Other Events of the Administration  
 Purchase of Alaska, 175, 3686, 294  
 Negotiated by Seward, 6514  
 Pribilof Islands Included, 5810  
 Protest against Presence of French Army in Mexico, 3688  
 Atlantic Cable Laid, 1062, 3688  
 Nebraska in the Union, 3688, 4864  
 Proclamation of Pardon, 3688, 265  
 Election of 1868  
 Candidates  
 Republican, Grant, 2902, 3688, 6064, 7400  
 Democrat, Horatio Seymour, 2902, 3688, 7400  
 Grant Elected, 2902, 7400



Schuyler Colfax, Vice-President, 1536  
 Election Map, 2902  
**Administrations of Ulysses S. Grant**  
 Reconstruction  
   Followed Congressional Plan, 6024  
   Fifteenth Amendment, 1634, 1642, 2902  
   Force Acts, 2530, 2904  
   Amnesty Act, 2904, 6024  
   Suppression of the Ku-Klux Klan, 3818  
   Intervention in Local Elections, 2904  
 Political Corruption and Financial Disorders  
   Credit Mobilier of America  
     Nature of the Fraud, 1739  
     Prominent People Involved  
       Oakes Ames, 1739  
       John A. Dix, 1739  
       Vice-President Colfax, 1536, 1739  
   Whisky Ring, 7742-7743  
   Salary Grab Act, 2904  
   Tweed Ring, 7011, 7330  
   Panic of 1873, 2904, 7401  
     Legislation to Relieve Depression  
       Inflation Bill, 2904  
       Resumption of Specie Payment, 2904, 6747  
   Other Financial Legislation  
     Coinage Act of 1873, 2904, 4586  
     Demonetized Silver, 7401  
   Civil Service Act, 1451  
     Congressional Appropriations Refused, 2906  
**Foreign Affairs**  
   Treaty of Washington, 7657  
   Geneva Arbitration, 2716  
     Arbitrators, 24, 164  
     Settlement of Alabama Claims, 164, 2716, 7657  
   Attempted Annexation of Santo Domingo, 2904  
   Virginus Massacre, 2904, 7547  
**Other Important Events**  
   Election of 1872  
     Liberal Republican Party Formed, 2904, 3961, 7400

### National Growth and Development

#### Economic Readjustment

**Contested Election of 1876**  
 New Political Party in the Field  
   Greenback Party, 2956  
**Candidates**  
   Republican, Rutherford B. Hayes, 3094  
   Democrat, Samuel J. Tilden, 7177  
   Greenback, Peter Cooper, 1661, 2957, 3095  
 Charges of Fraud, 3095, 7177  
 Decision by an Electoral Commission, 2167  
   Hayes Declared Elected, 3096, 7401  
   William A. Wheeler, Vice-President, 7739  
**Administration of Rutherford B. Hayes**  
 Important Leaders in the Cabinet

#### Leaders

Charles Francis Adams, 24, 2904, 7400  
 Horace Greeley, 2955, 7400  
 Carl Schurz, 2904, 6431, 7400  
 Charles Sumner, 2904, 6920, 7400  
**Candidates**  
   Republican, Grant, 2904, 7400  
   Liberal Republican, Greeley, 2904, 2955, 7400  
   Endorsed by Democrats, 7400  
 Death of Greeley, 2955  
 Support Divided  
   Thomas A. Hendricks, 2904, 3140  
   G. Gratz Brown and Others, 2904  
 Grant Re-elected, 2904, 7400  
 Henry Wilson, Vice-President, 7777  
 Election Map, 2902  
**Indian Uprisings**  
   Apache and Modocs, 2906, 7400  
   Sioux, 2906, 3427, 7400  
     Battle of Little Big Horn, 1793, 3427  
**Leaders**  
   George A. Custer, 1793  
   Sitting Bull, Sioux Chief, 6628  
   Custer and His Men Massacred, 1793, 2906, 3427, 6628  
**Organization of New Political Party**  
   National Prohibition Party, 2906, 5705, 5833-5834  
**Organization of Agricultural Interests**  
   The Grange, or Patrons of Husbandry, 2897, 2906, 7400-7401  
 Colorado Admitted to the Union, 1563  
 Centennial Exposition at Philadelphia, 1285, 5546  
 Two Cities Burned  
   Chicago, 1366, 2906  
   Boston, 870, 2906  
 Telephone Patented by Alexander G. Bell, 703, 7067  
 Union Pacific Railroad Completed and Event Celebrated, 5977

William M. Evarts, Secretary of State, 2334, 3096  
 John Sherman, Secretary of Treasury, 3096, 6557-6558  
 Carl Schurz, Secretary of Interior, 3096, 6431  
 End of Reconstruction, 3096, 7401  
 Labor Troubles, 3096  
**Financial Legislation**  
   Bland-Allison Act, 786, 3096, 7401  
   Resumption of Specie Payments, 3097, 6747  
**Civil Service Reform**  
   Removal of Collectors of New York Customhouse, 3097  
 Other Important Events, 3099

Election of 1880  
 Republican Candidates for Nomination  
   John Sherman, 2691, 6557-6558  
   James G. Blaine, 785, 2691  
   Grant, 2691, 2906  
   George F. Edmunds, 2111, 2691  
   James A. Garfield, 2691  
 Democratic Candidate  
   Winfield S. Hancock, 2691, 3032, 7401  
 Garfield Elected, 2691  
 Chester A. Arthur, Vice-President, 426  
 Election Map, 2691  
**Administration of James A. Garfield**  
 Important Leaders in the Cabinet  
   James G. Blaine, Secretary of State, 785, 2692  
   Robert T. Lincoln, Secretary of War, 2692, 4022  
 Appointments, 2692  
 Break with Conkling, 1614, 2692  
 Star Routes Fraud Case Tried, 2692, 6812, 7401  
 Assassination of the President, 2692, 7401  
 Arthur Took Oath of Office, 429  
**Administration of Chester A. Arthur**  
 Civil Service Reform, 426, 1451  
 The Tariff and Fiscal Matters  
   Surplus in the Treasury, 426, 7022, 7401  
   Tariff Commission Appointed, 7022  
   Tariff Act of 1883, 426, 7401  
 Other Important Legislation  
   Chinese Exclusion Act, 426, 1095, 1403, 7401  
   Edmunds Anti-Polygamy Act, 426, 7401  
 Other Governmental Affairs  
   Organization of Alaska as a Territory, 429  
   Two Cent Postage Adopted, 426, 429  
   Standard Time Adopted, 426, 6799  
 Miscellaneous Events  
   American Red Cross Society Organized, 429, 6026, 632  
   Brooklyn Bridge Completed, 426, 429, 976  
   Deaths of Famous Men  
     Emerson, 2221-2222  
     Longfellow, 4101-4105  
   Washington Monument Dedicated, 7657-7658  
   Immigration Records Broken, 429  
 Prosperity of the South and West  
   Industrial Expositions, 426, 488  
   Three Transcontinental Railroads Completed, 426, 5977  
 Election of 1884  
 Candidates  
   Republican, Blaine, 429, 785, 7401  
   Democrat, Grover Cleveland, 429, 1468, 7402  
 Issues and Campaign  
   Bitterly Fought, 429, 1468, 7402  
   Personal Contest, 429, 1468  
   Mugwumps Supported Blaine, 1468  
   Cleveland Elected, 429, 1468, 7402

Thomas A. Hendricks, Vice-President, 3140  
 Election Map, 1468  
**Political and Economic Reforms**  
**Administration of Grover Cleveland**  
 Civil Service Reform, 1470, 7402  
 Labor Troubles  
   Strikes, 1470  
   Power of Knights of Labor, 1470, 3825  
   Haymarket Riot in Chicago, 1366, 1470  
 Important Legislation  
   Contract Labor Law, 1470  
   Presidential Succession Act, 1470, 5801-5802  
   New Anti-Polygamy Law, 1470, 7434  
   Electoral Count Act, 1470, 2166  
   Interstate Commerce Act, 1470, 3490  
   Tariff  
     Mills Bill, 1470, 7023, 7402  
 Other Important Events  
   Apache Indian Uprising, 3413  
   Repeal of Tenure of Office Act, 7110  
   Department of Agriculture Established, 1059, 1470  
   Statue of Liberty Dedicated, 1470, 3963  
   Earthquake at Charleston, S. C., 1317, 1470  
 Election of 1888  
 Candidates  
   Republican, Benjamin Harrison, 1470, 3055  
   Democrat, Cleveland, 1470  
 Issue  
   Tariff, 1470, 3055, 7402  
   Harrison Elected, 1470-1471, 3055, 7402  
   Levi P. Morton, Vice-President, 4665-4666  
   Election Map, 3055  
**Administration of Benjamin Harrison**  
 Financial and Other Economic Legislation  
   Sherman Silver Purchase Act, 3055, 6558, 7402  
   McKinley's Draft of the Bill, 4189  
   Repealed Bland-Allison Bill, 787, 3057, 7402  
   McKinley Tariff Act, 4189  
   Provision for Higher Rates, 3055, 7023, 7402  
 Sherman Anti-Trust Law, 3055  
   Provisions, 7284  
   Framed by George F. Edmunds, 2111  
   Large Trusts Broken Up  
     American Tobacco Company, 7284  
     Standard Oil Company, 6798, 7284  
   Pension Bill to Reduce Surplus, 3057  
 Other Governmental Affairs  
   Power of the Speaker Increased, 3055  
   Reed Rules, 3055  
     Joseph G. Cannon, 1173-1174  
     Thomas B. Reed, 6035  
 Development of the West  
   Oklahoma Opened for Settlement, 3057, 3058, 5187

Admission of Western States to the Union  
 Idaho, 3342  
 Montana, 4618  
 North Dakota, 5072  
 South Dakota, 6722  
 Washington, 7634  
 Wyoming, 7911

#### Foreign Relations

Geary Act to Renew Chinese Exclusion,  
 1402, 3058  
 First Pan-American Congress, 3058, 5338  
 Under Leadership of Blaine, 785,  
 3058  
 International Copyright Act, 1671, 3058  
 Bering Sea Controversy, 713, 3058  
 Dispute with Chile, 1380, 3058  
 Attempt to Annex Hawaii, 3058

#### Other Events

Australian Ballot System Adopted, 522  
 Johnstown, Pa., Flood, 2471  
 Homestead, Pa., Riots, 5471  
 Death of John C. Fremont, 2605-2606

#### Election of 1892

Organization of the Populist Party, 3058  
 Candidates

Republican, Harrison, 3058  
 Democrat, Cleveland, 1471, 3058  
 Populist, James B. Weaver, 1471, 3058,  
 5740, 7692-7693

Issue: Tariff, 1471

Cleveland Elected, 3058

Adlai E. Stevenson, Vice-President, 6832

Election Map, 1471

#### Industrial Unrest

#### Second Administration of Cleveland

Financial Panic and Industrial Depression

Panic of 1893, 1471, 7402

Cleveland's Attempts to Relieve Depres-  
 sion

Special Session of Congress, 1471

Repeal of Sherman Silver Purchase Act,  
 1471, 7402

Labor Troubles, 1471, 1366, 3363

#### Tariff Revision

Wilson Bill, 1471, 7023

#### Foreign Affairs

Hawaiian Annexation Treaty Withdrawn,  
 1471

Treaty with China 1471

Cleveland's Interpretation of the Monroe  
 Doctrine, 1472, 4608

Venezuelan Boundary Dispute, 1472,  
 4608, 7482-7483

Statesmanship of Olney, 5194-5195

#### Other Events

World's Columbian Exposition, 1366,  
 2347, 7847-7849

Utah Admitted to the Union, 7434

#### Election of 1896

##### Candidates

Republican, William McKinley, 4189

Democrat, William J. Bryan, 986

National Democrat, John M. Palmer,  
 7402

#### Issues and Campaign

Gold Standard, 4189

Free Silver, 986, 7023

Bryan's Campaign, 986

McKinley Elected, 4189, 7402

Garret A. Hobart, Vice-President, 7515

Election Map, 4190

#### War and Prosperity

#### Administrations of William McKinley

##### Governmental Affairs

Dingley Tariff Bill, 4189, 7023, 7402

##### Annexation of New Territory

Hawaiian Islands, 294, 3085, 4189, 7402

Tutuila, and Other Samoan Islands

4189-4190, 6356, 7402

The Anti-Trust Movement, 7403

Gold Standard Act, 4190, 4583, 7402

##### Spanish-American War

##### Causes

Spain's Unjust Colonial Administration  
 in Cuba, 6738

Insurrections in Cuba, 1773, 6738

Cruelty of Weyler, the Spanish Governor  
 of Cuba, 7726

Destruction of the American Battleship,  
 Maine, 1773, 4190, 6739

##### Events

Declaration of War by Spain, 6739

##### The War in the Philippines

Admiral Dewey Ordered to the  
 Philippines, 1926

Purpose of Campaign, 1926, 6739

##### Battle of Manila Bay

Leaders in Naval Encounter

Dewey, 1926, 6740

Montejo, 6740

Leader of American Land Forces,  
 Merritt, 6741

##### Result

Philippines in the Possession of  
 the United States, 5588, 6741

##### The War in Cuba and the Caribbean

##### American Naval Leaders

Captain Richard C. Hobson, 3189

Commodore William T. Sampson,  
 6357, 6739

Winfield S. Schley, 6413

Charles D. Sigsbee, 6601

##### American Military Leaders

Henry L. Lawton, 3901

Nelson A. Miles, 4474

William R. Shafter, 6523

Joseph Wheeler, 7739

Spanish Naval Leader, Admiral Cer-  
 vera, 6740

Rough Riders, 6216

##### Leaders

Theodore Roosevelt, 6188

Leonard Wood, 7828

Sinking of the Merrimac, 6740

- Work of Hobson, 3189, 6740
  - Battle of Santiago
    - American Leaders
      - Sampson, 6357, 6741
      - Schley, 6413, 6741
    - Spanish, Cervera, 6741
  - Land Battles at San Juan Hill and El Caney
    - Shafter at San Juan, 6523, 6740
    - Leaders at El Caney, 3901, 6740
    - Work of the Rough Riders, 6188, 6216, 6740, 7828
  - General Miles in Porto Rico, 4474, 5755
  - Treaty of Peace and Results, 5381, 6740
  - Cost of the War, 6740, 7592
  - Effect of the War on the United States, 4190
  - United States in the Philippines
    - Insurrection in the Islands, 4190
    - Aguinaldo's Guerrilla Welfare, 107, 5558
    - First Philippine Commission Appointed
      - Members
        - Charles Denby, 5558
        - George Dewey, 1926, 5558
        - Elwell S. Otis, 5271, 5558
        - Jacob G. Schurman, 5558, 6430-6431
    - Civil Government for the Philippines, 5560
    - Second Philippine Commission, 4192
    - William H. Taft, Governor, 5560, 7000
  - Other Problems Involving Dependencies
    - Foraker Act for Porto Rico, 5754
    - Cuba's Constitution Framed, 4192
    - Regulation of Trade, 4192
  - Other Events of the Late Nineties
    - Galveston Flood, 2671-2672, 4190
    - Boxer Rebellion, 900-901, 4190
    - Wireless Telegraphy First Used, 5940
    - Grant's Tomb Dedicated, 2906
    - Gold Discovered in Klondike, 172, 3803
    - Open-Door Policy in China, 5213
      - Advanced by John Hay, 3092, 5213
    - Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo, 1008, 5338-5339
  - Election of 1900
    - Candidates
      - Republican, McKinley, 4190
      - Democrat, Bryan, 986
    - Issues, 4192, 7403
    - McKinley Reëlected, 4192, 7403
    - Theodore Roosevelt, Vice-President, 6190
    - Election Map, 4190
  - Assassination of the President, 4192
  - Roosevelt Became President, 6190
- Progress and Reform**
- Administration of Theodore Roosevelt**
    - Conservation of Natural Resources, 1623
      - Gifford Pinchot, a Leader in Conservation, 5619
    - Organization of the Bureau of Forestry, 2540
    - Bird Reservations Established, 766
  - Reclamation Act, 6190
  - Appropriated Proceeds from Sale of Public Lands for Irrigation, 3853
  - Construction of Irrigation Systems in West, 3554, 6190
  - Creation of Reclamation Service, 7403
  - Reforms in Industry
    - Department of Commerce and Labor
      - Organized, 1583, 6190, 6192
    - Attacks on Big Business, 6192, 7283
    - Hepburn Railway Rate Act, 6190
    - Meat Inspection Act, 4365, 6190
    - Federal Pure Food and Drug Act, 5884, 6190, 54
  - Banking Reform
    - Aldrich-Vreeland Bill, 608, 6190, 197
  - Other Legislative Affairs
    - Immigration and Naturalization
      - Bureau of Immigration Established, 6190
      - Chinese Exclusion Act Extended, 1402, 6190
      - Uniform Naturalization Law, 6190
      - Restricted Emigration of Japanese Laborers, 1095
    - Census Bureau Created, 1283, 6190
    - Salary Increases, 6190
  - Foreign Relations
    - Panama Canal Question
      - Ratification of the Hay-Pauncefote Treaty, 6190
      - Negotiators of the Treaty
        - John Hay, 3092, 3101
        - Sir Julian Pauncefote, 3101, 5421
      - Provisions of the Treaty
        - Abrogated Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 1460, 3101
    - Negotiations with Colombia
      - Rejected Treaty Providing Canal Concession, 1544, 5330, 5331, 6190
    - Revolt of Panama, 1545, 5330
    - Independence Recognized by the United States, 1545, 5330, 5331, 6190
    - Government of Canal Zone Established by Taft, 7000
  - Roosevelt's Corollary of the Monroe Doctrine
    - Venezuela's Indebtedness to European Countries, 6190, 7403, 7483
    - Plans to Collect by Warlike Methods, 6190, 7483
    - Arrangements for Arbitration Made by Roosevelt, 6190, 7483
    - Statement of Roosevelt's Policy, 7403
    - Santo Domingo's Indebtedness to European Countries, 6382
    - Roosevelt's Modus Vivendi, 6382
    - Santo Domingo Virtually a Financial Protectorate of the United States, 6190-6191
  - Alaska Boundary Dispute
    - Alaska Boundary Tribunal, 176

- British Negotiators
  - Lord Alverstone, 176, 240
  - Sir Allen Aylesworth, 176, 549
  - Sir Louis A. Jette, 176
- American Negotiators
  - Henry C. Lodge, 176, 4085-4086
  - Elihu Root, 176, 6197-6198
  - George Turner, 176
- Relations with Cuba, 6192, 1773
- Roosevelt as a Mediator between Russia and Japan, 6192, 7403
- Treaty of Portsmouth, 6192, 6280
- Awarded Nobel Peace Prize, 5037, 6192
- Cruise of the United States Fleet Around the World, 4848, 6192, 7403
- Internal Affairs
  - Election of 1904
    - Candidates
      - Republican, Roosevelt, 6190
      - Democrat, Alton B. Parker, 5381-5382, 6190
    - Roosevelt Reëlected, 6190, 7403
    - Charles W. Fairbanks, Vice-President, 2361-2362
    - Election Map, 6190
  - Alaska Coal Lands Withdrawn from Entry, 176
  - Financial Crisis of 1907, 6192
  - Anthracite Coal Strike, 6192, 7403
  - Expositions
    - Louisiana Purchase at Saint Louis, Mo., 4134, 6192, 6319
    - Lewis and Clark at Portland, Ore., 3959, 5749, 6192
    - Jamestown Tercentennial at Hampton Roads, 3616, 6192
  - San Francisco Earthquake and Fire, 6192, 6374
  - Laying of the Pacific Cable, 1062, 6192
  - Oklahoma in the Union, 5187, 6192
  - Death of Ex-President Cleveland, 1467
  - Election of 1908
    - Candidates
      - Republican, William Howard Taft, 7000
      - Democrat, Bryan, 986, 6192, 7000
    - Platforms, 7403
    - Taft Elected, 6192, 7001, 7403
    - James S. Sherman, Vice-President, 6557, 7001
    - Election Map, 7000
  - Administration of William Howard Taft
    - Expected to Follow Policies of Roosevelt, 6193, 7001
  - Domestic Affairs
    - Payne-Aldrich Tariff Law, 7001, 7023, 7403
    - New Postal Services Established
      - Postal Savings Banks, 613, 7001
      - Parcel Post, 5366, 7001
    - Organization of Commerce Court, 7001
    - Auxiliary to Interstate Commerce Commission, 3491
  - Civil Government Provided for Alaska, 174, 7001
  - Prosecution under Anti-Trust Law, 6798
  - Exemption of American-Owned Ships from Panama Canal Tolls, 5332, 7001
  - Creation of Department of Labor, 3821, 7001
  - Foreign Relations, 7001
    - Dollar Diplomacy, 7001
    - Mexican Trouble
      - Civil War in Mexico, 4445
      - Diaz Overthrown, 1935, 4445, 7001
      - Madero Became President, 1935, 4198, 4445, 7001
      - Counter-Revolution Led by Huerta, 3276, 4445, 7001
    - [See *Administration of Woodrow Wilson*, below.]
  - Internal and Local Affairs
    - Extension of Woman Suffrage, 7002, 7003, 7823
    - Social Reforms
      - Prohibition Movement, 7002
      - Children's Bureau Created, 1376-1377, 3821
    - Economic Changes
      - Federal Income Tax Authorized, 3374, 7002
      - Sixteenth Amendment to the Constitution, 1634, 1642, 3374, 7002
    - Investigations into Fundamental Economic Practices
      - Tariff Board Appointed, 7002
    - Banking Reform
      - National Monetary Commission, 608, 7002
      - Nelson W. Aldrich Chairman, 197, 608, 7002
  - Ballinger-Pinchot Controversy, 7002
  - Fraudulent Practices Involving Alaska Coal Lands, 179
  - Widened Breach between Taft and Roosevelt, 6193, 7002
  - Admission of Two States
    - Arizona, 394, 7003, 7004
    - New Mexico, 4942, 7003, 7004
  - Completion and Dedication of the Roosevelt Dam, Arizona, 390, 391, 394, 3555, 7004
  - Hudson-Fulton Celebration, 2635, 7004
  - Glacial National Park Opened, 2823-2827, 7004
  - Break in the Republican Party
    - Causes, 7004, 7304
  - Election of 1912, 6193, 7004, 7404
    - Republican National Convention
      - Leading Candidates for Nomination
        - Taft, 7004
        - Robert M. La Follette, Sr., 7004
      - Supported by Roosevelt Faction, 6193
    - Nomination of Taft, 7004

Dissatisfaction of Radical Group, 6193, 7004, 7404  
 Nomination of Roosevelt by Mass Meeting, 7004  
 Organization of the Progressive Party, 5831, 6193-6194, 7004, 7404  
 Leaders of the Party  
   Roosevelt, 5831, 6193, 7004  
   Hiram M. Johnson, 3689  
 Democratic Candidate, Woodrow Wilson, 7004, 7781  
   Nomination Due to Bryan, 986, 7781  
   Campaign and Platforms, 6194, 7004  
 Election of Wilson, 5831, 6194, 7004, 7404, 7781  
 Thomas R. Marshall, Vice-President, 4395  
 Election Map, 7782  
**The Administration of Woodrow Wilson**  
 Leaders in the Cabinet  
   Bryan, Secretary of State, 986  
   Robert Lansing, Secretary of State upon Resignation of Bryan, 987, 3873  
   William G. McAdoo, Secretary of the Treasury, 4167-4168  
   Newton D. Baker, Secretary of War, 573-574  
 Constructive Legislation  
   Simmons-Underwood Tariff Law, 7023, 7404, 7781  
   Income Tax Provisions, 3374-3375, 7782  
   Glass-Owen Federal Reserve Act, 7404, 7782  
   Created Federal Reserve Banks, 608-609  
   [See Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Federal Trade Commission, 2390, 7782  
   Clayton Anti-Trust Act, 7284, 7782

Repeal of Panama Canal Tolls Exemption Clause, 5332, 7404, 7782  
 [See *Administration of Taft*, above.]  
 Adamson Law, 35  
**The Mexican Problem**  
   Watchful Waiting Policy, 4445, 7404, 7782  
   Huerta Government Not Recognized, 3276, 7404, 7782  
   Tampico Episode, 4445, 7782  
   Border Raids by Villa, 4445-4446, 7784  
   Pershing's Expeditions into Mexico, 4446, 5494-5495, 7786  
   Carranza's Government Recognized, 1216, 4446, 7784  
**Other Foreign Relations**  
   Alien Problem  
     Japanese in California, 1095, 7784  
   Recognition of the Chinese Republic, 7784  
   Treaty with Nicaragua, 5016, 7784  
   Financial Protectorates  
     Haiti, 3013, 7784  
     Santo Domingo, 6382, 7784  
**Other Events of the Administration**  
   Completion of Panama Canal, 5331, 7786  
   Expositions Celebrating Panama Canal  
     Panama-Pacific at San Francisco, 5337, 7786  
     Panama-California at San Diego, 6363, 7786  
   Seventeenth Amendment to the Constitution, 1632, 1642  
   Popular Election of Senators, 6490  
   Question of Self-Government for the Philippines, 5561  
   Civil Government for Porto Rico, 5754  
   Purchase of the Virgin Islands, 7546

## The World War

### The Period 1914-1917

Wilson's Proclamation of Neutrality, 7784, 7883  
 American Commerce with European Belligerents, 7404  
   Interference with American Trade, 7404, 7784  
   The War Zone, 7878  
 Sinking of the *Lusitania*, 7784, 7879, 7884  
 Two Years of Diplomatic Correspondence, 7784, 7883  
   Colonel Edward M. House, Unofficial Ambassador, 3261  
**Steps toward Preparedness**  
   Chamberlain-Hay Bill for Reorganization of the Army, 415, 4480  
   Merchant Marine Increased, 4405, 7785  
   Appropriations for a Larger Navy, 4848  
**Election of 1916**  
 Candidates  
   Republican, Charles Evans Hughes, 3276-3277  
   Democrat, Woodrow Wilson, 7784

### Campaign

"He Kept Us Out of War" Slogan, 7404, 7784  
 Wilson Re-elected, 7404, 7784  
 Marshall Re-elected Vice-President, 4305  
 Election Map, 7782  
**Wilson's Advances as a Peacemaker, 7784**

### America "Over There"

**Causes of America's Entrance into the War, 7883, 7884**  
   Germany's Unrestricted Submarine Warfare, 7404, 7784, 7879, 7884  
   The Mexican Plot, 7886  
   Intrigue in South America, 7886  
**Wilson's Dilemma**  
   The Appeal to Congress, 7888  
   Declaration of War, 7404, 7784, 7888  
**War Preparations**  
   Unpreparedness of the Nation, 7888  
   National Guard Mobilized, 415  
   Selective Draft  
   Conscription Act, 415, 7888

- Military Training Camps, 7239-7240
- The Navy at Work, 7889, 6616
- Soldiers in France**
  - Pershing in Command, 5494-5495, 7890
  - Submarine Menace, 6889, 7890
  - American Divisions Placed at Disposal of Foch, 2505, 7890
  - American Facilities in Europe, 7890
- Americans in Battle**
  - Statistics on Battles, 7890
  - Principal Battles in Which Americans Were Engaged
    - Meuse-Argonne, 379-380
    - Belleau Wood, 7871, 7890
    - Château Thierry, 7871, 7890
    - Second Battle of Somme, 7890
    - Saint Mihiel, 7890
- How the Crisis Was Met at Home**
  - War Measures
    - Embargoes on Foodstuffs, etc., 7785
    - Food Administration Board, 7785, 7891
    - Herbert C. Hoover, Chairman, 3231
    - Fuel Administration Board
      - Harry A. Garfield, Chairman, 2692-2693, 7785
    - Government Control of Railroads, 5982, 7785, 7891
    - William G. McAdoo, Director General, 4168, 7785
    - Other Public Utilities Under Federal Control, 7891
  - Citizen Soldiers at Home
    - Shipbuilding, 7890-7891
    - Extension of Powers of Shipping Board, 4405
  - Red Cross Activities, 6026, 7891
  - Financing the War
    - Liberty Bonds, 7785, 7891

- Thrift Stamps, 7892
- Registration and Conscription, 7785
- President's Moral Leadership, 7785
- Celebrated Fourteen Points, 7785, 7506, 7508
- The Armistice, 7785, 7880**
  - Terms of the Armistice, 7880
  - Celebrations, 7785
- Cost of the War**
  - The American Effort Summarized, 7890
  - Loss of Man Power, 7880, 7890
  - Cost in Money, 7890, 7891, 7592

#### Peace and the League of Nations

- The President Headed United States Delegation, 7785, 7882**
  - Four Other Members of the Delegation
    - General Tasker H. Bliss, 794, 7404
    - Edward M. House, 3261, 7404
    - Robert Lansing, 3873, 7404
    - Henry White, 7404
  - Basic Principles of Peace According to Wilson, 7785
- Efforts in Behalf of the League of Nations, 3904, 7785, 7883**
- Terms of the Treaty of Peace, 7882**
  - League of Nations Embodied in the Treaty, 3904, 7506, 7507, 7785, 7883
  - What Germany Lost, 7508
- Treaty Submitted to the United States Senate, 7785**
  - Defeated because of League of Nations Clause, 7405, 7508, 7785
- Effects of Defeat on Wilson, 7785**
  - Complete Breakdown, 7785
- Separate Treaty Negotiated Later, 7508**
  - [See *Administration of Warren G. Harding*, below.]

#### Post-War America

##### Period of Readjustment

##### Return to Peace Times

- Changes in the Political and Economic Status of Women
  - Women Admitted to the Professions, 7826
  - Organization of Professional Clubs, 7826
  - Woman Suffrage Movement, 7823-7824
  - Organization of National League of Women Voters, 4815-4816
  - Amendment to the Constitution Enfranchising Women, 1632, 1642, 7786, 7824
- Organizations Sponsoring Prohibition
  - Prohibition Party, 5833-5834
  - Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 7822
  - Anti-Saloon League, 312
- Movement in the States, 5831
  - Maine, the First, 4232
  - Wet and Dry Map, 5832
  - Prohibition as a War Measure, 7786, 5823

- Constitutional Amendment, the Eighteenth, 1632, 1642, 5832-5833, 7786
- Volstead Act, 7565
  - Passed over Wilson's Veto, 7565, 7786
- Bootlegging, 6655-6656
- Other Domestic Legislation
  - Esch-Cummins Railroad Act, 5982
  - Merchant Marine Act, 4405
  - Act Limiting Size of the Army, 415-416
  - Immigration Bill, 2226
- Election of 1920
  - Candidates
    - Republican, Warren G. Harding, 3041, 7405
    - Democrat, James M. Cox, 1730, 3041, 7405
  - Platforms and Issues
    - Ratification of the Peace Treaty, 3041, 7405
    - League of Nations, 7405
    - Separate Treaty of Peace, 3041
    - Harding Elected, 3041, 7405

Calvin Coolidge, Vice-President, 1653  
 Election Map, 3041  
**The Administration of Warren G. Harding**  
 Cabinet Appointments  
 Three Strong Men in the Highest Posts  
 Charles Evans Hughes, Secretary of State, 3041, 3277  
 Andrew Mellon, Secretary of Treasury, 3041, 4384  
 Herbert Hoover, Secretary of Commerce, 3041, 3231  
 Three Unfortunate Appointments, 3041-3042  
 Budget Reform  
 Budget Law, 1000-1001  
 Charles G. Dawes, Director of Budget, 1001, 1841  
 Federal Budget System Established, 3042  
 Washington Conference on Limitation of Armaments, 407, 3042  
 Other Foreign Relations  
 Ratification of Colombia Treaty, 1545, 3043  
 Controversy over the Island of Yap, 7929  
 Treaties of Peace with Germany and Austria, 3043, 7405, 7508  
 Advocacy of the World Court at The Hague, 3042  
 Teapot Dome Scandal, 3042-3043  
 [See *Administration of Calvin Coolidge*, below.]  
 Other Administration Events  
 Restriction of Immigration, 3043  
 Farm Legislation, 3043  
 Rural Credits Facilitated, 6252  
 Aid to Disabled Veterans, 3043  
 Veterans' Bureau Created, 7512  
 Appointment of Taft as Chief Justice, 7004  
 Fordney-McCumber Tariff Act, 7023  
 Pan-American Congress, 5338  
 Death of the President, 3043, 7405  
 Coolidge Succeeded to the Presidency, 1653  
  
**Economy, Progress, and Prosperity**  
**Administrations of Calvin Coolidge**  
 Teapot Dome Investigation, 1654, 3042  
 Election of 1924  
 Candidates  
 Republican, Coolidge, 1654, 1656, 7405  
 Democrat, John W. Davis, 1656, 1839, 7405  
 Progressive, Robert M. La Follette, Sr., 1656, 3840, 5831, 7405  
 Campaign and Issues  
 Coolidge's Record, 1654  
 Radical Planks in the Progressive Platform, 5831  
 Coolidge Elected, 1656, 7405  
 Charles G. Dawes, Vice-President, 1656, 1841  
 Election Map, 1656  
 Coolidge Economy  
 Tax Reduction, 1656

National Debt Reduced, 1656, 4814  
 Thrift and Efficiency in Government Affairs, 1656  
 Coöperation of Secretary Mellon, 1656, 4384  
 Foreign Affairs  
 Treaty for the Renunciation of War, 6058, 6059  
 Adjustment of European Debts, 1656, 7596-7600  
 German Reparations, 7598  
 Dawes Plan, 1841, 7598  
 [See *The Modern World*, section on *Post-War Europe*.]  
 Latin America  
 Tacna-Arica Dispute, 6995  
 Isle of Pines  
 Ratification of Treaty Confirming Cuba's Claims, 3567  
 Nicaragua  
 United States Marines Landed to Protect American Property, 1656, 5016, 5018  
 Mexico  
 Rights of Foreign Property Owners in Mexico, 1657, 4446  
 Diplomacy of Dwight W. Morrow, 1657, 4446, 4663-4664  
 Pan-American Congress, 5338  
 Panama  
 Treaty Regulating Intercourse between Panama and the Canal Zone, 5330  
 Farm Relief  
 McNary-Haugen Bill Vetoed, 1657  
 Progress and Prosperity  
 Few Labor Troubles, 1657  
 Development of Revolutionizing Inventions, 1657  
 Radio Communication, 5935-5943  
 Aircraft, 115, 151  
 Moving Pictures, 4703-4720  
 Milestones of Progress, 4717  
 Pictures That Talk, 4717, 4720-4722  
 Teletype, 7083  
 Television, 7084-7086, 7405  
 Televox, 7087-7089  
 Robot, 1222, 7089  
 [See Outline on *Invention*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Lindbergh's Epoch-Making Flight, 147-150, 4025-4030  
 Polar Explorations  
 Arctic, 5694-5695  
 Richard E. Byrd, 105, 142, 1053  
 Soldiers' Bonus Granted, 6679-6680  
 Immigration Law, 2226  
 Mississippi River Flood, 2471, 4548  
 Election of 1928  
 Candidates  
 Republican, Hoover, 3232, 7405  
 Democrat, Alfred E. Smith, 3232, 6649, 7405



Campaign  
 Personality of Smith, 3232, 6649  
 Religion and Prohibition, 3232, 6649, 7405  
 Overwhelming Republican Victory, 3232-3233, 6648, 7405  
 Solid South Broken, 3232, 7405  
 Charles Curtis, Vice-President, 1790-1791  
 Election Map, 3232  
**Administration of Herbert Hoover**  
 South American Journey of Good Will, 3234  
 Cabinet Leaders  
 Henry L. Stimson, Secretary of State, 3235  
 Andrew Mellon, Secretary of Treasury, 4384  
**Domestic Problems**  
 Law Enforcement Commission, 3235  
 George Wickersham, Chairman, 3235, 7757

Farm Relief  
 Agricultural Marketing Act, 3235, 4294  
 Census and Reapportionment Bill, 3235  
 Tariff Law, 7023  
 Stock Crash and Industrial Depression, 7409  
**Foreign Affairs**  
 War Debts  
 German Reparations Commission, 3235, 7409  
 Owen D. Young, Chairman, 3235, 7598, 7952  
 Formulation of the Young Plan, 3235, 7598-7599, 7952  
 Creation of a Bank for International Settlements, 3488-3489, 7599, 7600  
 Limitation of Armaments, 406-407  
 Ramsay MacDonald's American Visit, 7405  
 Flights of the Graf Zeppelin, 7409  
 World Court, 5490

## Canada

### The Age of Discovery and Colonization

#### Early Explorers

John and Sebastian Cabot, 1063, 1137  
 Discovery of Labrador and Newfoundland, 3828, 4915  
 Landing on Cape Breton Island, 5101, 5077  
 Territory Claimed for England, 5048  
 Jacques Cartier, 1220-1221, 1137  
 Prince Edward Island Visited, 5815  
 Discovery of the Saint Lawrence, 5077, 6311, 6314  
 Location of Hochelaga, 4632, 1137, 6314  
 Territory Claimed for France, 5916, 1220  
 Henry Hudson, 3270-3271  
**Fishermen and Fur Traders**  
 The Lure of the Grand Banks, 1137-1138, 2894  
 The Quest for Fur, 2638

#### The First Colonizers

Sieur de Monts, 4634  
 Aids: Champlain and Poutrincourt, 1302, 5791  
 Founding of Port Royal, 4634, 1302, 292, 5101  
 Grant of Acadia, 5101  
 Samuel de Champlain, 1138, 1301-1302  
 Founding of Quebec, 5916  
 Sieur de Maisonneuve, 1138  
 Founding of Montreal, 4632  
 French Trading Companies, 1138  
 The Company of New France, 1138  
 [See, also, *French in Canada*, in the section on *The United States*, above.]

#### New France under Royal Government, 1138-1139

Governorship of Frontenac, 1138-1139, 2627-2628  
 Encouragement of Exploration

Joliet and Marquette, 3693-3694, 4298  
 La Salle, 3883-3884  
 Aided by Tonty, 7210  
 Settlement of Mackinac, 4187  
**The Struggle for Supremacy**  
 Claims of France and England, 1139, 2607  
 Rivalry among the Fur Traders, 1139  
 Encroachment of Hudson's Bay Company, 3275  
**The French and Indian Wars**  
 King William's War, 2607-2608, 1139  
 Treaty of Ryswick, 6288  
 Queen Anne's War, 2608  
 Treaty of Utrecht, 7436-7437, 2608  
 French Losses  
 Acadia (Nova Scotia), 14, 5101  
 Newfoundland, 4915  
 Hudson Bay Country, 2608, 3271  
 King George's War, 2608  
 Louisburg Captured, 4122  
 Restored by Treaty of Aix-La-Chapelle, 4122, 154  
 French and Indian War, 2608-2609  
 Expulsion of Acadians, 14, 5097  
 Basis of Evangeline, 2329-2332  
**French Defeats**  
 Second Siege of Louisburg, 4123  
 Capture of Fort Duquesne, 2544  
 Capture of Fort Niagara, 2545  
 Capture of Crown Point, 2608  
 Battle of Quebec, 2608, 5917-5918  
 Montcalm and Wolfe, 4619, 7818  
 Treaty of Paris, 5380, 2608  
 Canada Lost to France, 2608, 1139, 7391  
 Saint Pierre and Miquelon Retained, 2609, 6327

## From the Treaty of Paris to Confederation

## Early Years of British Rule, 1139

War with Pontiac, 1139, 5726-5727, 3424

## Organization of Provinces

Main Colony Named Quebec, 1139

Prince Edward and Cape Breton Islands

Joined to Nova Scotia, 1139, 5101

Discontent of French-Canadians, 5918

The Quebec Act, 5918

Fortunate Effect on French-Canadians,  
1139, 5913

Discontent of English Colonists, 5918

The American Revolution, 6071, 1139

Unsuccessful Attack on Quebec, 5916, 6076

Arnold and Montgomery, 418, 4630

Futile Invasion of Montreal, 4634

Migration of United Empire Loyalists,  
7361, 1139

Into New Brunswick, 4911-4912

Into Nova Scotia, 5101

Into Quebec, 5913

Administration of Sir Frederick Haldimand, 3014-3015

The Struggle for Responsible Government,  
1139-1140

## The Constitutional Act

Upper and Lower Canada Created, 1140,  
5913, 5210York Made Capital of Upper Canada,  
7216

## The War of 1812, 7601-7606

Loyalty of the Canadian Settlers, 5913,  
1140

## Invasions of Canada

Campaign of Hull, 3280, 7603

Surrender of Detroit to Brock, 973

Battle of Queenston Heights, 7605

Death of Brock, 973

Capture of York (Toronto), 7604, 7216

Battle of the Thames, 7605

Result of Battle of Lake Erie, 2286-  
2287

Won by Army of Harrison, 3061, 7605

Death of Tecumseh, 7053

Battle of Lundy's Lane, 7605, 7604

Provision for Boundary Commission, 7605

## Development of the West, 1140

Expansion of Hudson's Bay Company,  
3275Absorption of Northwest Company,  
1140

## Exploration and Discovery

Sir Alexander Mackenzie, 4185

David Thompson, 7154

Simon Fraser, 1140

Revolt against the Government, 1140, 5913

## Rebellion of 1837

In Lower Canada, 6020

Louis J. Papineau, Leader, 1140

In Upper Canada, 6020-6021

William Lyon Mackenzie, Leader,  
1140, 5210

## Results

Appointment of Earl of Durham, 1140

His Services to Canada, 2057

Act of Union, 7353, 1140

Consummated by Sydenham, 6983

## Canada under the Act of Union

Disappointing Results, 1140

## Notable Statesmen of the Period

Baron Metcalfe, 4417-4418

Earl of Elgin, 2205

Sir Etienne Tache, 6994

Sir John A. Macdonald, 4176-4177

George Brown, 1140

John S. Macdonald, 4177

Boundary Adjusted by Webster-Ash-  
burton Treaty, 7698

## Confederation

Conference of Delegates, 1140

Final Conference at Quebec, 1141

## Report Accepted by

Upper and Lower Canada, 1141

New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, 1141,  
4912, 5103

Influence of Sir Charles Tupper, 7297

## Rejected by

Newfoundland, 1141, 4915

## Later Acceptance by

Prince Edward Island, 5815

British North America Act, 971

## The Dominion of Canada

## Organization under the Act of Confederation

## A Union of Three Original Provinces, 971, 1141

Province of Canada Divided into Two

Upper Canada Becomes Ontario, 5210

Lower Canada Becomes Quebec, 5913

Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, 971

## Plan of Federal Government

Governor-General, 1134, 2883

Viscount Monck, First Governor-General,  
4580-4581

The Ministry, 1134-1135

The Premier, 1135-1136, 5798

Sir John A. Macdonald, First Premier,  
4176-4177

Parliament, 1136

## Expansion of the Dominion

## The Hudson's Bay Company

Surrender of Territorial Rights, 1141, 3275

Rupert's Land, 6251, 183

Northwest Territory, 5079

## New Provinces

Manitoba, 1141, 4265

Early Settlement by Selkirk, 7798, 4265

British Columbia, 1141

**Early Explorers**

- George Vancouver, 962, 7457
- Sir Alexander Mackenzie, 962, 4185
- Rule of Hudson's Bay Company, 962
- Organization of the Province, 962, 964
- Canadian Pacific Railway, 1132, 964
- Prince Edward Island, 1141, 5815
- Reorganization of Northwest Territories, 1141, 5079
- Alberta Province Created, 190
- Saskatchewan Organized, 6395
- Later Enlargement of Manitoba, Ontario, Quebec, 1141-1142

**Macdonald and Mackenzie Ministries****First Ministry of Macdonald**

- Domestic Affairs
  - Compromise with Nova Scotia, 1142
  - Organization of Departments, 1142
  - Purchase of Hudson's Bay Company Rights, 4177, 3275
  - Red River Rebellion, 6032-6033
  - Led by Louis Riel, 6123
  - Crushed by Wolseley, 7820
- Foreign Affairs, 1142
  - Treaty of Washington, 7657, 4177
- Governor-Generals of the Period
  - Viscount Monck, 4580-4581
  - Sir John Lisgar, 4045
  - Earl of Dufferin, 2050
- Fall of the Conservatives, 1142, 4177
  - Charges against Sir Hugh Allan, 1142, 223

**Mackenzie and Liberal Rule**

- Policies of Alexander Mackenzie, 4184-4185
- Important Legislation
  - Supreme Court Created, 1137
  - Australian Ballot Adopted, 522
  - Northwest Territories Organized, 5079
  - Mounted Police Organized, 6219-6220
- Intercolonial Railway Opened, 1132
- Fall of the Liberals, 1143

**Second Macdonald Ministry**

- Protective Tariff the National Policy, 4177
- Canadian Pacific Railway Completed, 1132
  - Donald A. Smith, 1143, 6875
  - George Stephen, 1143, 4699
- Saskatchewan Rebellion, 6395-6396
  - Louis Riel, 6123
- Governor-Generals
  - Duke of Argyll, 380
  - Lord Lansdowne, 3872
  - Earl of Derby, 1912-1913

**To the End of the Laurier Ministry****Four Short-Lived Ministries**

- Sir John J. C. Abbott, 1143
- Sir John Thompson, 7155

**Bering Sea Controversy, 1143, 713**

Earl of Aberdeen, Governor-General, 8

Sir Mackenzie Bowell, 1143

Sir Charles Tupper, 7297-7298

**The Liberal Ministry of Laurier**

Policies of Laurier, 3894-3895

Canada and the Empire

The South African War, 3894, 1143

Cable Connection with Australia, 1062

Penny Postage Established, 1143

Preferential Tariffs for British Goods, 1143, 3894

Tercentenary of Quebec, 1143, 5917

**Internal Development**

Railroad Construction, 1143, 1133

Rush of Prospectors to Yukon, 7966

Organization of Alberta and Saskatchewan. [See above.]

**Foreign Relations**

The Joint High Commission, 1144, 175

Settlement of Alaska Boundary, 1144, 176

**Governor-Generals**

Earl of Minto, 4525

Earl Grey, 2963-2964

Reciprocity with the United States, 1144

Treaty Ratified by Congress, 7001

Defeated in Canadian Election, 1144, 3894

Opposition Led by Robert Borden, 865

Resignation of Laurier, 1144

**Borden, the World War, and Later History****The Conservative Ministry of Borden**

Extension of Provincial Boundaries, 1144

Manitoba, 4260

Ontario, 5202

Quebec, 5907

Attempted Change in Naval Policy, 1144

**Governor-Generals**

Duke of Connaught, 1614

Duke of Devonshire, 1925

Canada in the World War

Canada's Military Effort, 1144-1145

Heroism at Ypres, 7862, 701

Woman Suffrage Granted, 7824

Consolidation of Railroads, 1132

**First Conservative Ministry of Arthur Meighen**

Defeat in Elections, 1146, 4382

**First Liberal Ministry of W. L. M. King**

Government by Compromise, 1146

Defeat in House of Commons, 1146, 3793

**Second Ministry of Meighen**

Defeat in General Election, 4382

**Second Ministry of King**

Imperial Conference in London, 1146

Canada and the British Commonwealth of Nations, 965-966, 1134

**Ministry of R. B. Bennett, 1146**

# HOME ECONOMICS

## Basic Principles as Related to Home and School

- Home-Making a Profession, 3205
  - The Home-Maker's Responsibility, 3205-3206
- Problems of Home Management, 3206-3210
  - [See *Home Management*, below.]
- Household Arts in Schools, 3262-3264
  - Congressional Support, 3262
  - The Smith-Hughes Act, 3209, 6420
- Influence of Manual Training, 3262-3263
  - The Educational Program in Household Arts, 3208, 3263-3264
  - Importance of Practice, 3264
- The Dwelling House
  - Characteristics of a Harmonious Home, 359
  - Architect's Plan of a Home, 360
  - Plan for a Bungalow, 1021

## Equipment of the Home

- Provision for Heating, Ventilation, and Lighting
- Principles of House-Heating, 3115-3116
  - Value of a Household Thermometer, 3982
  - Purpose of a Chimney, 1383-1384
  - Use of a Thermostat, 7146-7147
- Direct Radiation, 3116
  - By Means of Stoves, 6870
  - By Means of Fireplaces, 3116, 1545
- Indirect Radiation
  - Warm-Air Furnace, 3116, 2646
  - Hot-Water and Steam Plants, 3116
  - Principle of the Steam Boiler, 814
- Combustion Fuels
  - Soft and Hard Coal, 2631, 1499
  - Coke, 1532
  - Lignite, 1499
- Gases, 2631
  - Natural Gas, 2631, 4819-4820
  - Coal Gas, 2631
  - Types of Gas Heaters, 3118
- Oil, 2631
  - Principle of the Oil Burner, 3116-3117
- Peat, 5436-5437
- Wood, 2631, 4146
- Electric Heating, 3117-3118, 2171
- The Ventilation Problem, 3118
  - Its Connection with Heating, 3115
  - Ventilation of Rooms, 3982, 3118-3119
  - Use of the Electric Fan, 2369
- Lighting Systems
  - Earlier Methods
    - Lighting with Candles, 1166
    - Rushlights, 6254
    - Lighting with Oil Lamps, 3848
    - The Argand Lamp, 3848
  - Illumination with Gas, 2699-2700
  - Acetylene, 19
  - Electric Lighting, 2178-2180
    - Modern Lamps in the Home, 3478, 3479
    - Hanging and Wall Lights, opposite 3478
    - Electric Meter, 2183-2184
- Interior Decoration
  - Its Origin and Development, 3478-3479
  - How to Use Color, 1552, 1553, 3480-3481
  - Correct Principles of Furnishing
    - Influence of Arts and Crafts, 437
    - Maxim of William Morris, 4662
    - Beautiful Simplicity in Japan, 3481
  - Wall Decoration, 3480
    - Materials Used
      - Burlap, 1028

Calcimine, 1072  
 Paint, 5298  
 Stucco, 6881  
 Tapestry, 7016-7017  
 Terra Cotta, 7113  
 Tiles, 7177-7178  
     Enameled Tiles, 945  
 Wall Paper, 7585-7586, 3480  
     Good and Poor Selections, 3482  
**Woodwork Finishing**  
     Use of Paint, 3480  
     Use of Varnish, 7464-7465  
**Floor Coverings**  
     Principles of Selection and Arrangement,  
         3479-3480  
     Carpets and Rugs  
         Use of Plain Color, opposite 3478  
         Wilton and Body Brussels, 1212, 1214  
         Axminsters, 1214  
         Velvet and Tapestry, 1214  
         Chenille, 1214  
         Oriental Rugs, 1214-1215  
         Mohammedan Prayer Rug, 1215  
     Other Floor Coverings  
         Linoleum, 4033  
         Oilcloth, 5179  
**Window Coverings, 3480**  
     Well-Chosen Drapes, opposite 3478  
     Chintz for Bedroom Drapes, 3480  
     Colors for Curtains, 1553  
     Materials for Curtains or Drapes  
         Brocade, 973  
         Cretonne, 1742  
         Dimity, 1947  
         Gingham, 2809  
         Jute, 3725  
         Lace, 3830  
         Linen, 4031  
         Madras, 4209  
         Muslin, 4780  
         Net, 4884  
         Poplin, 5736-5737  
         Rayon, 6004  
         Satin, 6397  
         Silk, 6611  
         Taffeta, 6997-6998  
         Velvet, 7476  
         Voile, 7559-7560  
**Furniture, 2647-2649**  
     Notable French Periods, 2647  
         Louis XIV: Curved Line Established,  
             2647  
         Famous Collection of Beds, 670  
         Louis XV: Elaborate Ornamentation,  
             2647  
         Louis XVI: Use of Mahogany and Wal-  
             nut, 2647  
         Furniture of the Period, 2648  
         A Carved and Gilt Bedstead, 669  
     English Development under the Georges,  
         2647-2648  
         Thomas Chippendale, Master of Line, 2648  
         Famous Chippendale Chairs, 2648, 2647

        A Chippendale Bed, 669  
         George Heppelwhite, Exponent of Ele-  
             gance, 2648  
         Thomas Sheraton, the Purist, 2648  
         Sheraton Chairs, 2647  
     Modern Taste in Furniture  
         Period Furniture in Homes of Wealth, 2648  
         Simplicity in Homes of Moderate Means,  
             2649, 3481  
         Examples of Well-Chosen Furniture, 3478,  
             3479, 3480  
         City Tendencies, 2649  
**Furniture Woods**  
     Basswood, 646  
     Beech, 683  
     Birch, 750, 751  
     Bird's-Eye Maple, 771  
     Box-Elder, 900  
     Chestnut, 1350  
     Ebony, 2092  
     Holly, 3197  
     Juniper, 3719  
     Mahogany, 4222  
     Maple, 4278  
     Oak, 5129-5130  
     Pine, 5620, 5622  
     Rattan, 6001  
     Rosewood, 6208  
     Sandalwood, 6362  
     Satinwood, 2648  
     Sycamore, 6982  
     Teak, 7051-7052  
     Walnut, 7586  
     Willow, 7775  
     Yew, 7944  
**Other Furniture Materials**  
     Mother-of-Pearl Inlay, 4684, 6552  
     Veneers, 7476  
         Popular Wood Veneers  
             Mahogany, 4222  
             Maple, 4278  
             Rosewood, 6208  
             Walnut, 7586  
             Ivory, 3590  
             Malachite, 4236  
**Upholstery Materials**  
     Brocade, 973  
     Corduroy, 1675  
     Cretonne, 1742  
     Damask, 1816  
     Haircloth, 3008, 3251  
     Leather, 3908  
         Imitation Morocco, 4660  
     Linen, 4031  
     Mohair, 4567, 2848  
     Plush, 5664  
     Rayon, 6004  
     Tapestry, 7016-7017  
     Silk, 6611  
     Satin, 6397  
**Other Articles of Furnishing**  
     Baskets, 642-644  
     Mirrors, 4532

## Pictures

Artistic Hanging, 3481

How a Picture Effect May Be Spoiled, 3482

Pictures Used with Judgment, opposite 3478

Pottery, 5782-5787

Faience, 2361

Majolica, 4234-4235

Rookwood, 6183-6184

Sèvres, 5741

Wedgwood, 7698-7699

Cut Flowers for House Decoration, 2492

[See *Cultivated Flowers* in Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]

## Tableware and Other Equipment

## Tableware

Earthenware and Stoneware, 5786

Porcelain, or China, 5787, 5741

Dresden China, 2033

Wedgwood Ware, 7698-7699

Glassware, 2834

Cut Glass, 2835

Colored Glassware, 2835

Cutlery: Table Knives, 3804, 3805

Metals Used in Tableware

German Silver, 2768

Gold, for Gilding, 2856, 2807

Pewter, 5530

Silver, 6613

## Electrical Devices

Electrical Servants, Illustrated, 2177

Electricity in the Home, 2178

Electric Refrigerator, 6042

Vacuum Cleaner, 7440

## Cooking Equipment

Fireless Cooker, 2433-2434

Stoves, 6870-6871

Fuels for Cook Stoves

Coal, 1499

Electricity, 2171

Gas, 2631

Gasoline, 2703

Kerosene, 3768

Wood, 2631, 4146

Thermos Bottle, 7146

## Feeding the Family

## Principles of Nutrition

Nature and Purpose of Food, 2508-2509, 5121

## Chemistry of Foods

Elements Found in Food, 2508, 2509

## Most Important Elements

Nitrogen, 5034

Hydrogen, 3307

Oxygen, 5281

Carbon, 1192

## Next in Importance

Calcium, 1072

Phosphorus, 5575

Iron, 3535

## Substances Found in Food

Proteins, 2509-2510, 5851, 5124, 742

Only Group Containing Nitrogen, 5034

Their Dual Role, 742, 4414, 5851

Resolved into Amino Acids, 2510

Effect on Nutritive Value, 5851

Why Gelatin Is Not Nutritive, 2710

## Types of Protein

Albumen, White of Egg, 192

Casein, in Milk, 1228

Gluten, in Cereals, 2845

## Typical Protein Plant Foods

Grains, 2890

Beans, 657

Peas, 5424-5425

Nuts, 5119

## Animal Sources of Protein

Cheese, 1327

Eggs, 2137

Meat, 4360-4361

Milk, 4482

Carbohydrates, 2510-2511, 1190-1191, 742

Composition, 1191

Functions, 742, 4414

## Types of Carbohydrates

Sugars, 2510, 1191

Glucose, in Grapes, 742, 2845

Fructose, Levulose, 742

Maltose, 742

Lactose, in Milk, 742

Sucrose, in Cane and Beet, 742, 6906

Starch, 6809, 1191

Dextrin, 1927

Glycogen, 4059

Cellulose, 1269

Value in Vegetables, 7470

Pectin, 5438-5439

Use in Jelly-Making, 3654

## Typical Carbohydrate Foods

Fruits, 2629

Grains, 2890

Jerusalem Artichoke, 430-431

Potatoes, 5781

Sweet Potatoes, 6960

Fats, 2511, 2376-2378

## Composition

Carbon, Hydrogen, Oxygen, 2376

Glycerine and Fatty Acids, 742, 2846

Called Glycerides, 2376

## Chief Fatty Acids

Palmitic, 2376, 2378

Stearic, 2376, 2378, 6821

Oleic, 2376

## Corresponding Glycerides

Palmitin, 3879

Stearin, 6821-6822

Olein, 3879

## Other Fatty Acids

Butyric, 2378

Lauric, Myristic, Linolic, 742

Hard Fats, 2376  
   Mutton, 4783  
   Spermaceti, 6757, 7684  
 Soft Fats, 2376  
   Butter, 1043  
   Lard, 3879  
 Liquid Fats, 2376  
   The Oils, 5179  
 Typical Fatty Foods  
   Egg Yolk, 2137  
   Nuts, 5119  
   Olive Oil, 5193  
   Pork, 5744  
   Fats as Energy Food, 2511, 2378  
 Inorganic (Mineral Substances), 2511, 5124  
   Present in Ash Left from Burning of Food, 439-440  
   Examples of Minerals  
     Iron, in Spinach, 6764  
     Calcium (Lime), in Milk, 2511, 5124  
   Valuable Sources of Minerals  
     Fruit Acids, 2629  
       Citric Acid, 1436  
       Malic Acid, 21  
       Tartaric Acid, 7025  
     Vegetables, 7470  
   Functions of Minerals  
     To Regulate, 2511  
     To Build Tissue, 2511  
 Water, 2511  
   Necessary for Life, 7664  
   Health Requirements, 3313, 3105  
   High Content in Fruits, 2629  
   In Vegetables, 7470  
 Refuse, 2511  
   As Found in Purchased Food, 2510  
 Vitamins, 7549-7550, 3282-3284, 5124  
   Vitamin A, Fat-Soluble, 7549, 2378  
     Contributes to Vigor, 7549  
     Typical Vitamin-A Foods, 7549  
   Vitamin B, Water-Soluble, 7549-7550  
     A Mixture of Two Vitamins, 7549  
       B<sub>1</sub>, Preventive of Beriberi, 7549, 4897  
       B<sub>2</sub>, Preventive of Pellagra, 7549, 5448  
       Sources of B<sub>1</sub> and B<sub>2</sub>, 7549  
   Vitamin C, Water-Soluble, 7550  
     Prevents Scurvy, 7550, 6463, 2629  
     Typical Vitamin-C Foods, 7550  
   Vitamin D, Fat-Soluble, 7550  
     Found in Same Foods as A, 7550  
     Prevents Rickets, 7550, 6121, 835  
   Vitamin E, Fat-Soluble, 7550  
     Prevents Sterility, 7550  
     Sources, 7550  
 Food as Fuel  
   Consumption of Combustible Food Materials, 5121-5122  
 Energy Needs of the Body  
   Variation according to Sex, Age, etc., 5122, 2511, 2513  
   Relation to Meal-Planning, 2513

Heat Quantity Measurement  
   By Means of the Calorimeter, 5122  
   The Calorie, or Unit, 1100, 5122, 2511  
   Fuel Value of Different Foods, 5123-5124  
   Values of Specified Groups, 5125-5126  
 Digestibility of Food, 2511, 2513  
   Appetite, 322  
 Importance of Flavor and Taste, 5124  
   Significance of Sugar and Fat, 5124  
 Value of a Mixed Diet, 2511, 1944  
 Buying for the Table. [See *Home Management*, below.]  
 [See, also, *The Diet and Health*, in the Outline on *Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene*, in this GUIDE.]

### Dairy Products

Milk and Its Uses, 4481-4484  
   Composition  
     Albumin (Protein), 192, 4481  
     Casein (Protein), 1228, 4481  
     Fat, 4481  
     Milk Sugar (Carbohydrate), 742, 4481, 1191  
     Ash, 439-440, 4481  
     Water, 4481  
     Composition Charts, 4483  
   Fat Globules of Milk  
     Separation to Form Cream, 1737, 4481, 1042  
     Composition of Cream, 4481  
     Source of Vitamins A and D, 7549, 7550  
   Care and Testing of Milk  
     Handling after Milking, 4481-4482  
     Sterilization, 568  
     Pasteurization, 4482  
       Certification, 56, 557, 4482  
       The Babcock Test, 4482-4483  
   Milk as Food, 4482  
     Nourishment in a Quart of Milk, 4482  
     Food Units in a Pound of Milk, 937  
     A Unique Food, 5124  
     Contains Vitamins A, B<sub>1</sub>, D, 7549, 7550  
 Principal Milk Products  
   Butter, 1041-1044  
     Old Uses and Methods, 1041  
     Modern Butter-Making, 1042  
       Development of Lactic Acid, 3835  
       Churning, 1422  
     Qualities of Butter, 1043  
     Composition  
       Fat, 2376, 2510, 1043  
       Protein, Ash, Water, 1043  
     Food Value, 1043  
       Important as a Fuel Food, 2511  
       Source of Vitamins A and D, 7549, 7550  
       A Supplement for Bread, 937  
     Adulterants and Imitations, 1043  
       Distinction between Butter and Oleo-margarine, 5191  
       Tests of Purity, 1043-1044  
   Cheese, 1326-1327  
     Made from Curds of Milk, 1326

**Hard Cheese**

Edam, Parmesan, Gorgonzola, Swiss,  
Cheddar, 1326, 1327

**Soft Cheese**

Cottage Cheese, Roquefort, Neufchâtel,  
Camembert, Limburger, 1326

Composition of Full-Cream and Cottage  
Cheese, 1326

Food Value, 1327

Source of Protein, 2510, 5851

Casein, 1228, 4482

Contains Vitamins A and D, 7549, 7550

**Other Milk Products**

Buttermilk, 1050, 4483 (Chart)

Condensed Milk, 4483

Source of Vitamin A, 7549

Malted Milk, 4483

Powdered Milk, 4483-4484

Ice Cream, 3331

Koumiss, or Kumiss, 3815

**Eggs****Eggs of the Domestic Fowl, 2136-2138**

Composition of Whole Egg, 2136, 2137

Composition of Yolk

Fat, 2511, 2137

Protein, Ash, Water, 2137

Source of Iron, 2511

Source of Vitamins A, B, D, 7549, 7550

Composition of White

Protein, 5851, 2510, 2137

Albumen, 192

Fat, Ash, Water, 2137

Food Units in a Pound of Eggs, 937

Methods of Cooking Eggs, 2137-2138

How to Test Eggs, 2138

**Spawn, Eggs of Lower Animals, 6745**

Roe of Fish Used for Caviar, 1263

Sources of Fish Caviar

Sturgeon, 1263, 6882, 6883

Paddlefish, 5294

Shad, 6522-6523

Contains Vitamin A, 7549

Eggs of Mullet Used for Botarcha, 4735

Turtle Eggs, 7328

**Meat and Meat Products****Nature and Use of Meat**

Source of Fat and Protein, 4360, 4361

Protein in Muscle Fiber, 5851

Liver a Source of Vitamins, 7549, 7550

Digestibility of Meat, 4361

How to Use Cheaper Cuts, 3207

How to Judge Meat, 3207

Foods to Supplement the Meat, 3084

**Beef and Beef Products, 683-684**

Man's Favorite Flesh Food, 683

Food Value of Beef, 684

Fuel Value of Different Cuts, 2512

Units in a Pound of Steak, 937

Standard Cuts of Beef, 684

Beef Products

Corned and Canned Beef, 684

Canning Recipes, 2519

Beef Extract, 684, 2348

Pemmican, 5449-5450

Sweetbreads, 6959

Tallow, 7009

Tripe, 7270

Veal, 3207

Cookery of Beef, 3207

Time Required for Different Cuts, 1650

**Mutton and Lamb, 4783**

Color and Fat of Mutton, 4783, 3207

Stearin in Mutton Suet, 6821

Composition Chart of a Chop, 4783

Food Units in a Pound of Mutton, 937

Cookery of Mutton and Lamb, 1650

**Pork and Pork Products, 5743-5744**

The Flesh of Swine, 5743, 3191

Points to Consider in Selection, 3207

Location of Different Cuts, 5743

Savoriness of Young Pigs, 5743, 1649

Food Value

Superior Fuel Food, 5744

Composition of Pork Loin, 2512

Composition Chart of Chops, 5744

**Pork Cookery**

Time Required, 1650

Importance of Thorough Cooking, 5744,

7267

**Pork Products**

Bacon, 564

Ham, 3024

Ham Cookery, 1650

Lard, 3879

Olein, Palmitin, Stearin, 3879, 6821-

6822

Classed as a Soft Fat, 2376

Sausage, 6400-6401

Preparation, 6400

**Poultry and Game Birds****The Common Fowl, 5790**

How to Select Good Specimens, 3207-3208

Composition of Broilers and Fowls, 5790

Time Required for Cooking, 1650

Some Chicken Dishes

Boudins Blancs (Sausage), 6401

Chile con Carne, 1382

**Other Domesticated Birds**

Curassow, 1786

Duck, 2048

Time Required for Cooking, 1650

Goose, 2872

Time Required for Cooking, 1650

Pâté de Foie Gras, 2872

Guinea Fowl, 2981

Pigeon (Squabs), 5612

Time Required for Cooking, 1650

Turkey, 7317

Time Required for Cooking, 1650

**Edible Game Birds**

Wild Duck, 2046, 2048

Choice Varieties for the Table, 2046, 2048

Time Required for Cooking, 1650



## Grouse

Ruffed Grouse, 2970

Prairie Chicken, 2970-2971

Quail, or Bobwhite, 5901

## Reedbirds, Ricebirds, 811

## Sea and Fresh-Water Fish

## Fish as Food, 2442

Selection of Fish, 3208

Wholesomeness and Digestibility, 2442, 2513

Food Units in a Pound of Fish, 937

Time Required for Cooking, 1650

## Kinds of Edible Fish

Alewife, 198

Bass, 645

Time Table for Boiling, 1650

Bluefish, 805

Time Tables for Cooking, 1650

Candlefish, 1166-1167

Carp, 1206

Catfish, 1242

Cod, 1522-1523

Time Table for Boiling, 1650

Dogfish, 1993

Eel, 2135

Source of Fat, 2511

Flatfish, 2465. [See separate entries in this list.]

Flounder (a Flatfish), 2486

Flying Fish (California), 2504

Grayling, 2921

Grunt, 2971

Haddock, 2999

Time Table for Boiling, 1650

Hake, 3014

Whiting, 3014

Halibut (a Flatfish), 3017-3018

Time Table for Boiling, 1650

Herring, 3166-3167

Whitebait, 3167

Time Table for Frying, 1650

Mackerel, 4186-4187

Menhaden, 4392

Mullet, 4735

Muskellunge, 4777

Paddlefish, 5294

Perch, 5485

Pickerel, 5602

Pike, 5613

Pilchard. [See *Sardine*, below.]

Pilot Fish, 5616-5617

Pompano, 5719-5720

Redfish, 6031

Salmon, 6333-6339

Time for Roasting and Boiling, 1650

Recipe for Canning, 2519

Salmon a Source of Fat, 2511

Salmon Trout, 6339

Sardine, 6386

Young of the Pilchard, 6386

Cheaper Grades the Young of Various

Small Fish, 6386, 3167

Sardines Anchois  es, 6386

Sculpin, 6455

Shad, 6522-6523

A Source of Fat, 2511

Time Table for Broiling, 1650

Shark, 6543

Smelt, 6646-6647

Time Table for Frying, 1650

Sole (a Flatfish), 6680

Sprat, 6778

Sturgeon, 6882-6883

Swordfish, 6982

Tilefish, 7177

Trout, 7276-7277

Time Table for Frying, 1650

Tunny, 7297

Turbot (a Flatfish), 7299-7300

Whitefish, 7747

Wolf Fish, 7819

## Shellfish

Classed as Mollusks and Crustaceans, 4576, 1765

Use as Food, 2442

## Edible Shellfish

Abalone, 2-3

Clam, 1453

Time Required for Boiling, 1650

Crab, 1730-1731

Crawfish, 1735

Lobster, 4068-4070

Mussel, 4780

Oyster, 5282-5286

Digestibility, 2442

Time Required for Boiling, 1650

Scallop, 6408

Shrimp, 6579-6580

## Other Flesh Foods

## Wild Game

Bear, 660

Deer

Venison, 1872

Caribou, 1198

Reindeer, 6047, 6049

Opossum, 5227

Rabbit, 5926

Raccoon, 5928

## Unclassified

Frog's Flesh

Fried Legs a Delicacy, 2626

Snail: Especially Popular in France, 6658

Turtle

Snapping Turtle, 7325

Terrapin, 7326

Sea Turtle

Green Turtle, Used in Soup, 7328

Loggerhead, 7328

Whale Flesh, 7728

## Grains and Grain Products

## Grains, Breadstuffs of the World

Six Grains of Chief Importance, 2888

Their Value as Food, 2889

- Their Composition, 2890
- Their Digestibility, 2513
- Most Important Grains**
- Wheat, 7731-7736
  - Wheat Products
    - Bran, 921-922, 7734, 2486
    - Bread and Flour. [See below.]
    - Breakfast Foods, 938
    - Macaroni, 4168-4170
    - Importance of Gluten, 2845
  - Composition of the Grain, 7731
  - Germ (Embryo)
    - Source of Vitamins B<sub>1</sub> and E, 7549, 7550
- Rice, 6107-6112
  - Asia the Rice Continent, 6107, 2889, 101
  - Rice Bread, 935
  - Food Value of Rice
    - Rich in Starch, 6110, 2512
    - Source of Laundry Starch, 6810
    - Deficient in Fat and Protein, 6110, 2512
    - Good Rice Combinations, 6110
    - Source of Vitamin E, 7550
  - Beriberi from Exclusive Use of Polished Rice, 6110, 7549
- Corn, 1681-1691
  - Corn as Food for Man, 1686
  - Breakfast Foods, 938
  - Ear Corn, Composition, 1688
    - Time Table for Boiling, 1650
  - Dried Corn, Composition, 1688
  - Corn-Meal Dishes, 1688, 2512
    - Corn Pone, Corn Bread, 935
  - Pop Corn, 1682
  - Corn Oil, 1687
  - Glucose Syrup, 2845
  - Starch, 6810
  - Tortillas, 935, 4434
  - Vitamin E in Yellow Corn, 7550
- Oats, 5136-5138
  - Food Value
    - Composition of Oatmeal, 5137, 2512
    - Scottish Oat Cakes, 935
    - Oat Dishes as Winter Food, 5138, 938
    - Vitamin E in Rolled Oats, 7550
- Barley, 622-623
  - Scottish Bannocks, 935
  - Pearled Barley, Barley Water, and Soup, 623
- Rye, 6286-6287
  - Rye Bread, 934, 6286
- Other Grains**
  - Buckwheat, 996
  - Kaffir Corn, 3729
  - Millet, 4488
    - Valuable Human Food in Asia, 4488, 101
- Grain Products**
  - Flour, 2486-2490
    - Wheat Flour Most Valuable, 2486
      - Composition of Wheat Grain, 7732
      - Nutritive Qualities of White Flour
        - Starch, Gluten, Fat, Minerals, 2486, 2512

- Special Quality of Gluten, 2845
- Different Grades, 3207
- Other Wheat Flours, 2486
- Rye Flour, 6286
- Value of Whole-Grain Flours, 3207
- Manufacture of Flour, 2487-2489
- Bread, the Staff of Life, 934-937
  - Two Principal Kinds
    - Unleavened, 935
      - Mazzoth, 5411
    - Leavened, 935, 936
      - Salt-Rising, 935
      - Aerated, 935
      - Gluten, 935-936, 2845
  - Oaten Cakes, Bannocks, Corn Pone, Crackers, 936
  - Pumpernickel, 5881
  - Rye Bread, 6286
    - White Bread, 935, 2512
    - Whole-Wheat Bread, 935
    - Other Wheat Breads, 2486
    - Biscuits, Muffins, Brown Bread, 936
  - Leavening Agents
    - Baking Powder, 574
    - Baking Soda, 6675
    - Yeast, 7930-7931
  - How Yeast Bread Is Made, 936
    - The Chemistry of Fermentation, 7930-7931, 2396
    - Time Table for Baking, 1650
  - Test of Purity, 936
  - Food Value of Bread, 937
    - Vitamin A in Whole-Wheat Bread, 7549
  - Breakfast Foods, 938
    - [See various grains, above.]

### Vegetables

#### Vegetables in the Diet

- Supply What Animal Foods Lack, 7470
  - Carbohydrate Content, 1191, 2510, 2513
  - A Source of Vitamins, 7549-7550
  - Stalks and Leaves Contain Cellulose, 1270
  - Contribute to a Mixed Diet, 2511, 3984, 7470
  - A Source of Minerals, 3208
  - Methods of Cooking, 3208
    - Time Tables, 1650
  - Canning. [See *Methods of Preserving Foods*, below.]
- Proper Selection of Vegetables, 3208**
  - Expensive Kinds Unnecessary, 7471
- The Leaf Vegetables**
  - Beet Greens, 685
  - Cabbage, 1057-1058
    - Sauerkraut, 1058
    - Time Table for Boiling, 1650
  - Source of Vitamins A, B, C, 7549-7550
  - Chard, or Sea Kale, 1309
    - Leaves Source of Vitamins A and B, 7549
  - Cress, 1741
  - Dandelion Leaves, 1820
    - Source of Vitamins A and B, 7549
  - Endive, 2234
  - Kale, 3731

Lettuce, 3948  
 Source of Vitamins A, B, E, 7549, 7550  
 Spinach, 6764-6765  
 Value as Food  
 Source of Iron, 2511, 6764  
 Source of Vitamins A and B, 7549  
 A Roughage Food, 3985, 6764  
 Need of Thorough Washing, 6765  
 Time Table for Boiling, 1650  
**Flowers and Fruiting Bodies as Vegetables**  
 Cauliflower, 1260  
 Cucumber, 1782-1783  
 Used for Pickling, 5602-5603  
 May Be Cooked, 1650  
 Mushroom, 4758  
 Okra, 5189  
 Pods Used for Gumbo Soup, 2986, 5189  
 Pumpkin, 5881  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Squash, 6787  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Tomato, 7205-7206  
 Source of Vitamins A and B, 7549  
 Source of Vitamin C, 7550  
 A Scurvy-Preventing Food, 6463  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
**Seed Vegetables, or Legumes, 3925**  
 Nutritious Protein Foods, 7470  
 Beans, 657  
 High Food Value, 657, 2510, 2512  
 Food Units in One Pound, 937  
 Time Tables for Cooking, 1650  
 Vitamin A in String Beans, 7549  
 Vitamin B in Dried Beans, 7549  
 Lentils, 3935-3936  
 Peas, 5424-5425  
 Food Value and Use, 5424-5425  
 Source of Protein, 2510  
 Vitamin A in Green Peas, 7549  
 Vitamin B in Dried Peas, 7549  
 Importance for Canning, 5425  
 Time Tables for Cooking, 1650  
**Stems, Stalks, Bulbs, Roots, and Tubers**  
 Economic Uses of Stems, 6825  
 Some Valuable Underground Stems  
 Bulbs, 1012-1013  
 Onion, 888  
 Tubers, 1013  
 Potato, 5779  
 Food Storage in Roots, 6190  
 Examples, 888  
 Stems and Stalks  
 Asparagus, 452  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Celery, 1267  
 Food Value  
 Source of Lime and Iron, 1267  
 Source of Vitamin B, 7549, 1267  
 Vitamin A in Green Celery, 7549  
 Cellulose in Celery, 1270  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Chard (Rib and Stalk), 1309  
 Kohl-Rabi, 3812

Leek, 3922  
 Rhubarb, 6100-6101  
 Source of Vitamin C, 7550, 6101  
**Bulb Vegetable**  
 Onion, 5201  
 Source of Vitamin C, 7550, 5201  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
**Root Vegetables**  
 Beet, 685  
 Source of Sugar Carbohydrate, 2510  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Carrot, 1217-1218  
 Source of Sugar Carbohydrate, 1218  
 Source of Vitamins, 1218, 7549-7550  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Oyster Plant, or Salsify, 5286  
 Parsnip, 5402  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Radish, 5968  
 Sweet Potato, 6960-6961  
 Source of Vitamin A, 7549  
 Source of Starch and Sugar, 6960  
 Time Required to Boil or Bake, 1650  
 Turnip, 7320  
 Time Required to Stew, 1650  
 Yam, 7926-7927  
**Tubers**  
 Jerusalem Artichoke, 430-431  
 Potato, 5779-5781  
 High Content of Starch, 5781, 2510, 6810  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
**Buds as Vegetables**  
 Brussels Sprouts, 985  
 Time Table for Cooking, 1650  
 Globe Artichoke, 430

### Fruits

#### Fruits in the Diet

Important for Acids and Salts, 2629, 21  
 Important as Laxative Foods, 2629, 3985  
 Nutritive Material in Fruit  
 Carbohydrates, 2629, 2510, 1191  
 Small Amounts of Fat and Protein, 2629  
 Vitamins, 7549-7550  
 Use of Fruits for Jelly, 3654  
 Importance of Pectin, 5438-5439  
 Canning, Preserving, and Drying. [See  
*Methods of Preserving Food*, below.]

#### Small Fruits

Blackberry, 778  
 Blueberry. [See *Huckleberry*, below.]  
 Cranberry, 1732  
 Currant, Red, 1788  
 Source of Citric Acid, 1436  
 Dewberry, 1926  
 Elderberry, 2163  
 Gooseberry, 2873  
 Source of Citric Acid, 1436  
 Grape, 2908-2910  
 Composition, 2909  
 Glucose, or Grape Sugar, 2845  
 Tartaric Acid, 7025  
 Uses, 2909-2910

Seedless Grapes, or Currants, 1789, 2910

Dried Grapes. [See *Raisins*, below.]

Grape Juice, 2910

Brandy, 923

Wine, 7794

Huckleberry, 3269

Blueberry, 3269-3270

Loganberry, 4088-4089

Raisins, 5989-5990

Raspberry, 5998

Strawberry, 6877-6878

**Tree Fruits**

Apple, 324-326

Excellent Regulatory Food, 326

Source of Malic Acid, 21

Products

Cider, 1424

Apple Butter, 1425

Cider Vinegar, 1425, 7531

Apricot, 329-330

Avocado, or Alligator Pear, 547

Breadfruit, 937

Cherry, 1342

Citron, 1436

Citrus Fruits, 1436

[See separate entries in this list.]

Crab Apple, 1731

Date, 1831-1833

Fig, 2413-2414

Grapefruit, 2910

Source of Vitamins B and C, 7549, 7550

Guava, 2977

Kumquat, 3818

Lemon, 3928-3930

Source of Vitamins B and C, 7549, 7550

Lime, 4006

Loquat, 4109

Mango, 4255-4256

Nectarine, 4869

Olive, 5192-5193

Orange, 5231-5234

Source of Vitamins A, B, C, 7549-7550

Pawpaw, 5422

Pawpaw, or Papaya, 5422-5423

Peach, 5427-5429

Pear, 5432-5433

Persimmon, 5503

Plum, 5662-5663

Dried Plums. [See *Prune*, below.]

Pomegranate, 5718-5719

Prune, 5857-5858

Quince, 5922

Tamarind, 7011

Tangerine, 7015

**Fruits of Herb and Vine**

Banana, 594-597

Melons, 4384

Cassaba, 1229

Muskmelon, 4778-4779

Watermelon, 7669-7670

Pineapple, 5622-5624

Plantain, 5649

Prickly Pear, or Indian Fig, 5810, 1064

**Nuts****Nuts in the Diet, 5119-5120**

Small Percentage of Waste, 5120

Source of Vitamin B, 7549

Caution for One of Overweight, 3983

**Nuts for the Table**

Almond, 232

Brazil Nut, or Para Nut, 934

Butternut, 1050

Chestnut, 1349-1350

Coconut, 1519-1522

Hazel Nut, or Filbert, 3102

Hickory, 3175

Litchi, or Leechee, 4046

Peanut, 5431-5432

Pecan, 5437-5438

Pistachio, 5629

Walnut, 7586-7587

**Edible Fats and Oils****Butter Substitutes, 1043, 56**

Oleomargarine, 5191

Hydrogenated Oils, 56

**Beef, Mutton, and Pork Fat.** [See *Meat and Meat Products*, above.]**Vegetable Oils, 56, 5179**

Coconut Oil, 1520, 1522

Corn Oil, 1687

Cottonseed Oil, 1715, 1718

Olive Oil, 5193

Palm Oil, 5323

Peanut Oil, 5432

Poppy Oil, 5737

**Animal Oils, 5179**

Cod-Liver Oil, 1524-1525

A Preventive of Rickets, 6121

Source of Vitamins A and D, 7549, 7550

**Sugars, Syrups, and Confectionery****Sugar in the Diet, 6906, 1190-1191**[See *Principles of Nutrition*, above.]**Sugars for the Table**

Cane Sugar, 6906

Beet Sugar, 6906-6907, 686

Maple Sugar, 6907, 4278

Sugar from Wood, 6907-6908

Honey, 3217, 673

**Syrups**

Glucose, from Cornstarch, 1687, 2845

Maple Syrup, 4278, 4280

Molasses, 4572

Sorghum, 6690

**Candy, 1167****Ingredients and Accessories**

Chocolate, 1407

Cocoa Butter, 1519

Glucose, 1686

Molasses, 4572

Nuts, 5119

Sugar, 6906-6907

**Candied Fruits and Herbs**

Cherry, 1342

Citron, 1436

Ginger, 2809  
 Horehound, 3238-3239  
 Marsh Mallow, 4306  
 Orange, 5234  
 Sweet Flag, 6959  
 Extracts and Flavors  
   Caraway, 1190  
   Cloves, 1495-1496  
   Lemon, 3929  
   Licorice, 3975  
   Lime, 4006  
   Peppermint, 5480  
   Spearment, 6746-6747  
   Vanilla, 7462  
   Wintergreen, 7799-7800

#### Miscellaneous Foods

**Arrowroot**, 421  
   Used in Blanc-Mange, 786  
**Cassava**, 1230  
   Roots the Source of Tapioca, 7018  
   Cassareep from the Juice, 1230  
**Colocasia**, 1539  
   Hawaiian Poi from Roots, 3077  
**Edible Birds' Nests**, 2107  
   Made by Swifts, 6961  
**Gelatin**, 2710  
   Identical with Isinglass, 3563  
   An Animal Jelly, 3654  
   A Protein, 5851  
**Iceland Moss**, 3334  
   A Lichen Used by Icelanders, 3334, 3975  
**Irish Moss, or Carrageen**, 3533-3534  
**Sago**, 6298

#### Food Adjuncts

**Herbs and Spices**  
   Use as Flavors and Seasoning, 3154, 6760  
   Aid to Digestibility, 55  
 Allspice, 228  
   Derived from the Pimento, 5618  
 Anise, 292  
 Balm, 586  
 Capsicum, 1187-1188  
   Source of Red Pepper, 1187, 5479  
   Source of Paprika, 1188, 5353  
 Caraway, 1190  
 Cardamom, 1195  
 Cassia Bark, 1230  
   A Substitute for Cinnamon, 1431  
 Cicely, Sweet, 1423  
 Cinnamon, 1431  
 Cloves, 1495-1496  
 Coriander, 1675  
 Cubebs, 1775  
 Fennel, 2394  
 Garlic, 2694  
 Geranium Leaves, 2764  
 Ginger, 2809  
 Mace, 4178, 5121  
 Marjoram, 4293-4294  
 Nutmeg, 5121  
 Paprika, 5353

Parsley, 5402  
 Pepper, 5479  
   Black, White, 5479  
   Red (Cayenne) Pepper, 5479, 1187  
 Poppy Seeds, 5739  
 Saffron, 6296  
 Sage, 6296  
 Turmeric, 7319  
 Wild Ginger, 2809

#### Flavoring Extracts and Oils

Oil of Cinnamon, 1431  
   Oil of Cassia a Substitute, 1431, 1230  
 Oil of Cloves, 1496  
 Extract and Oil of Ginger, 2809  
 Extract of Lemon, 3929  
 Oil of Mace, 5121  
 Oil of Peppermint, 5480  
 Oil of Poppy, 5737  
 Oil of Safflower, 6296  
 Oil of Spearmint, 6746-6747  
 Extract of Vanilla, 7462-7463  
 Oil of Wintergreen, 7799-7800

#### Relishes and Ingredients of Sauces

Caper, 1181  
   Nasturtiums a Substitute, 4813  
 Capsicum Fruits, 1188  
   Horse-Radish, 3254  
 Ketchup, or Catsup, 3769  
 Mustard Preparations, 4782  
 Pickles, 5602-5603  
 Vinegar, 7531

**Salt, a Mineral Seasoning**, 6340-6344

#### Beverages

**Tea**, 7042-7049  
   Selection of Teas, 3208  
   How to Make Tea, 7042  
   Difference between Green and Black, 7044  
   Testing Tea for Purity, 7048

#### Other "Teas"

Maté, or Paraguay Tea, 4343, 5359  
 Sage Tea, 6296  
 Sassafras Tea, 6396

#### Coffee, 1526-1530

Selection of Coffee, 3208  
 Effects as a Stimulant, 1527  
 Methods of Making Coffee, 1527  
 Adulterants, 1530  
   Chicory, 1368-1369

#### Cacao Products, 1063

Cocoa, 1518-1519  
 Chocolate, 1407

#### Fruit Juices and Drinks

Citronade, 1436  
 Grape Juice, 2910  
 Lemonade, 3929  
 Limeade, 4006  
 Orange Juice, 5234  
 Sweet Apple Cider, 1424

#### Charged Drinks

Ginger Ale, 2809  
 Maté, Aerated, 5359  
 Soda Water, 6675

## Methods of Preserving Food

- Purpose of Food Preservation, 2514
- Effects of Bacteria on Food, 567, 2396, 5890
- Preservation by Heat
  - Canning Fruits and Vegetables, 2514-2517, 1172-1173
  - Definitions for Girl Canners, 1172
  - Hot-Pack (Open-Kettle) Method, 2514
  - Cold-Water Method, 2514
  - Cold-Pack Method
    - Equipment, 2515-2516, 1172
    - Recipes for Fruits, 2516, 1172
    - Recipes for Vegetables, 2516-2517, 1172-1173
- Recipes for Other Canned Products
  - Fruit Preserves, 2517-2518
  - Soups, 2518
  - Poultry, 2518-2519
  - Fresh and Corned Beef, 2519
  - Pork, 2519
  - Salmon, 2519
- Curing of Meats
  - Preliminary Steps, 564, 3024
  - The Smoking, 564, 3024
  - Hickory Smoke, 3175
- Preservation by Drying
  - Methods of Dehydration, 1875
  - Popular Dried Fruits
    - Apple, 326

- Apricot, 330
- Currants, 2910, 1789
- Date, 1831
- Fig, 2413-2414
- Peach, 5429
- Pear, 5433
- Prune, 5857
- Raisins, 5989-5990
- Popular Dried Vegetables
  - Beans, 657
  - Corn, 1688
  - Peas, 5424-5425
- Dried Milk
  - Malted Milk, 4483
  - Powdered Milk, 4483-4484
- Dried Meat
  - Dried Beef, 684
  - Pemmican, 5449-5450
- Dried Fish, 2442
- Preservation by Cold
  - In the Home
    - The Kitchen Ice Box, 6041
    - Use of Delivered Ice, 3328-3329
  - Electric Refrigeration
    - Principle of Electric Refrigeration, 6041-6042
    - Refrigeration by Gas, 6043
  - Commercial Cold Storage, 1532-1534
  - Carbice, or Dry Ice, 1190

## Clothing and Clothing Materials

## The History of Dress

- The Garb of Savagery, 2033, 1445
- In the Stone Age, 6846
- [See, also, Outline on *Anthropology, Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]
- How Cloth Came to Be Used, 1489
- Early Use of Animals, 93, 6547
- Antiquity of Cotton, 1708, 1709
- Ancient Use of Flax Fiber, 2466, 4031
- Dress of Ancient Peoples
  - Egypt, 2034
    - A Water Carrier, 2034
    - Royal Garb, following 1706
  - Assyria, 2034
    - Dress of Warriors, 461
  - Phoenicia, 2034
    - Priestly Robes, 5570
  - Greece, 2034
    - Himation and Chiton, 2034, 2035
    - Peplos, 2034, following 1706
    - Greek Sandals, 2036
  - Rome, 2034, 2035
    - Stola, 6844
    - Toga, 7198-7199
    - Tunic, 7293
- Costumes of the Middle Ages, 2034
  - Frankish, German, English, following 1706
  - The Garb of Chivalry, 1761, 1762, 1763, 1405
- Gay Costumes of Elizabethan England, 2034, 2035
- The Elizabethan Ruff, 2209
- Dress of American Colonials, 1548
- Modern Tendencies, 2035
  - Dress Reform, 2035-2036
- Influence of Fashion, 2375
  - Factors Causing Change of Styles, 2375-2376
- Articles of Wearing Apparel
- Boots and Shoes, 861
  - From Ancient to Modern Forms, 861-862
  - Materials in Modern Shoes
    - Leather, 3908, 862
      - Calfskin, 4365, 3909
      - Sheepskin, 4365, 3909
      - Pigskin, 4365
      - Goatskin, 2848, 3909
      - Reptile Skin, 3909
      - Sole Leather, 4365
      - Suède, 3909, 3912
      - Patent Leather, 3912
    - Other Material
      - Rubber, 862, 6230
      - Satin, 862, 6397
      - Velvet, 862, 7476
  - Wise Selection of Shoes, 3313
- Hats, 3070-3074
  - Materials Used
    - Felt, 3070, 2393
    - Rarity of Beaver, 667, 3070
    - The Derby, or Bowler, 3070

Silk, 3073  
 Straw, 3073  
   Leghorn Braids, 6876, 3575  
 Plush, 5664  
 Velvet, 7476  
 Jipijapa Fiber Panama Hats, 2405,  
   1543  
 Hat Trimmings, 3073  
 Plumage of Birds, 2386  
   Aigrettes, 2140, 2141  
   Plumage of Birds of Paradise, 772  
   Ostrich Plumes, 5269-5270  
   Effect of the Audubon Society, 498  
 Artificial Flowers, 2494  
 Fur, 3073  
 Ribbon, 6106  
**Gloves**, 2843-2844  
   Materials Used  
     Leather, 3908  
     Buckskin, 995, 1872  
     Kangaroo Skin, 3733  
     Other Skins, 2843  
     Meaning of Kid and Dogskin  
 Lisle, 4045  
 Stockinette (Jersey Cloth), 3658  
 Other Fabrics, 2843  
 Fur  
   Coyote, 1730  
   Otter, 5275

### Textiles

**Textile Groups**, 7130  
   Vegetable Fibers, 2405  
   Woolens and Worsted, 7834, 7843, 7893  
   Silks and Velvets, 6604, 7476  
   Synthetic Material, 7130, 6004, 1338  
**Textiles in the Schools**, 7131  
   Textile Study a Form of Art, 3433  
**Cotton and Cotton Fabrics**, 1714, 1716, 1718  
   Brocade, 973  
   Calico, 1079, 1491  
     Distinguished from Gingham, 2809  
   Cotton Cambric, 1102  
   Cotton Canvas, 1179, 1491  
   Chintz, 1716, 3480  
   Corduroy, 1675  
   Crape (Japanese, etc.), 1734-1735  
   Cretonne, 1742  
     Cheaper Grades Are Calico, 1079  
   Crinoline, 1749  
   Dimity, 1947, 1491  
     Gabardine, 2655  
   Gauze, 2706-2707  
   Haircloth, 3008  
   Cotton Jersey (Stockinette), 3658  
   Khaki, 3770  
   Lisle, 4045  
   Madras (for Drapery), 4209  
   Mercerized Cotton, 4403-4404, 1718  
   Muslin, 4780  
   Percalé, 5481, 1079  
   Sateen, 6397  
   Velveteen, 7476

Voile, 7559-7560  
**Linen and Linen Fabrics**, 4031-4032, 2465  
   Brocade, 973  
   Cambric, 1102  
   Canvas Duck, 1179, 4031  
   Crinoline (Former Use), 1749  
   Table Damasks, 1816  
   Haircloth, 3008  
   Lawn, 788  
   Huckaback, Crash, Tick, Dowlas, 4031  
**Silk and Silk Fabrics**, 6604, 6611  
   Adulteration of Silk, 57  
   Silks from the Domesticated Silkworm  
     Brocade, 973  
     Chiffon, 1369  
     Crape, or Crêpe, 1734  
       Crêpe de Chine, 1734  
       Crêpe Météor, 1734  
     Jersey Silk, 3658  
     Moiré, 4572  
     Net, 4884  
     Plush, 5664  
     Satin, 6397  
       Damask, 1816  
       Taffeta, 6997-6998  
       Velvet, 7476  
   Silks from Undomesticated Caterpillars  
     Pongee, Rajah, Shantung, 6611  
**Woolens and Worsted, 7843, 7893**  
   Fabrics from Sheep's Wool  
     Broadcloth, 972  
     Crape Cloth, 1735  
     Flannel, 2465  
     Gabardine, 2655  
     Homespun, 3213, 1548  
       Linsey-Woolsey, 4036  
     Kersey, 3768  
     Serge, 7893  
     Tartan, 7025  
     Tweed, 7330  
     Covert, Velour, 1491  
   Fabrics from Other Animals  
     Alpaca, 233  
     Camel's Hair Cloth, 1104  
     Cashmere, 1228, 2848  
     Llama Cloth, 4064  
     Mohair, 4567  
       From the Angora Goat, 2848  
     Vicuña Worsted, 7524  
     Yak Cloth, 7924  
**Other Fabrics**  
   Abaca (Manila Hemp), 3140, 5555  
   Asbestos Cloth, 438  
   Broom Cloth, 977  
   Burlap, 1028  
   Gingham (Various Fibers), 2809  
     Madras, 4209  
   Gold Lace, 2863  
   Hemp Sheeting and Toweling, 3140  
   Indian Cloth (Yucca), 7958  
   Jute Fabrics, 3725  
   Piña Muslin (Pineapple), 5624  
   Ramie (Boehmeria), 812

Rayon, 6004

A Synthetic Product, 1338, 57

Shoddy, 6570-6571, 57

### Furs and Fur-Bearing Animals

**Chief Fur-Bearing Animals**, 2638, 2639

Development of Fur Farming, 2639, 2645

### Furs in General Use

Astrakhan, 466

A Russian Lambskin, 466, 2639

Caracul from Young Lambs, 3747

Badger, 570

Bear, 660

Beaver, 666, 667

Importance in Canada, 2639

Broadtail, 2645

Chinchilla, 1401-1402

Also a Trade Name for Rabbit, 2645

Coyote, 1730

Ermine, 2290

Fur of Certain Weasels, 7686

Sources of Supply, 2639

Summer Ermine, 2290

A Trade Name for Rabbit, 2645

Fitch

Fur of the Polecat, 5701, 2645

Dyed to Imitate Sable, 2645

Fox, 2553-2554

Importance of Fox Farming, 2639, 2554

Genet, Cat Fur, 2645

Hare, 3045

Skin Is Dyed to Imitate Sable, Fox, Lynx, 2645

Hudson Seal. [See *Muskrat*, below.]

Jaguar, 3608, 3611

Karakul, 3746-3747

Lambskins Called Persian Lamb, 2639, 3747

Kolinsky

Fur of Red Sable or Siberian Mink, 2645

Krimmer, 2639

Leopard, 3937

Lynx, 4163

Importance in Alaska and Canada, 2639

Marmink

Mink-Dyed Prairie Dog, 2645

Naturally, Coarse, Gray-Brown Hair, 5795

Marmot, 4297

Dyed to Imitate Mink, Sable, 2645

Marten, 4307

Importance in Alaska and Canada, 2639

Mink, 4508

Importance in Alaska and Canada, 2639

Dyed to Imitate Sable, 2645

Imitations of Mink, 2645

Mole, 4574

Monkey (Sapajou), 6384

Muskrat, 4780

Natural Fur Called River Mink, 2645

Seal-Dyed Muskrat Called Hudson Seal, 2645, 4780

Importance in Canada and United States, 2639

Nutria

Fur of the South American Coypu, 2645

Its Trade Names, 2645

Ocelot, 5155

Otter, 5275

Importance in Alaska and Canada, 2639

Rabbit, 5926

Skins Sold under Numerous Trade Names,

5926, 2645

Importance in Australia and Belgium, 2639

Raccoon, 5928

Importance in United States, 2639

Sable, 6290

Importance in Russia and Siberia, 2639

Imitations, 6292, 2645

Seal, 6466, 6468

Imitations, 2645

Valuable Alaskan Product, 171, 2639

Skunk, 6636

Has Become of Importance in United States, 2639

Marketed as Black Marten, Alaska Sable, 2645

Squirrel, 6789

Beautiful Russian Fur, 2639

Weasel. [See *Ermine*, above.]

Wolf, 7818

Wolverine, 7821-7822

### Costume Study, Garment Making, and Needlework

**Value and Importance of Costume Study**, 1706, 1707

Inclusion in Household-Arts Courses, 3263

**Suggestions for Costume Designs**, 1707-1708

Use of Color Knowledge, 1553

Color Combinations, Pages in Color, following 2034

**The Decline and Revival of Sewing**, 6514-6515

Present Importance in Household Courses, 3263

Sewing a Domestic Art, 2003

### Fundamental Stitches in Hand Sewing

Basting, Running Stitch, Backstitching, 6515

Hemming, Overhanding, Overcasting, 6515-6516

**Practice Work**, 6516-6518

### Equipment for the Sewer

Sewing Machine, 6519-6520

Thread, 7160

Needle, 4869

Buttons, 1051-1052

### Darning and Mending, 6518

### Decorative Needlework

Practical Value of Fine Needlework, 2003

Designs and Patterns

Crochet Work and Fancy Stitches, 2004-2008

Embroidery, 2220

Lace-Making, 3830, 3833

Smocking, 6517



## Household Sanitation and Hygiene

## Plumbing and Water Supplies

- Sanitary Plumbing, 5663-5664
- Sanitary Water Supplies, 7664
  - Chlorine a Disinfectant, 1406
  - Filters, 2419
  - Prevention of Sewage Pollution, 6511

## Cleaning Methods and Agents

- Dry Cleaning, 1461
  - [See *Solvents*, below.]
- Laundering, 1461
  - Bluing, 806
  - Laundry Starch, 6810
  - Soap, 6667
  - Water Softeners
    - Aqueous Ammonia, 262, 6685
    - Borax, 864
    - Washing Soda, 6675, 1192
  - Electrical Equipment
    - Flatiron, Ironer, 2177
    - Washing Machine, 2178
- Solvents for Removing Stains and Dirt
  - Alcohol, 194
  - Benzine, 711
  - Carbolic Acid (Phenol), 1964
  - Carbon Tetrachloride, 1461
  - Gasoline, 2703
  - Glycerine, 2846
  - Lye (Caustic Soda), 1260
  - Naphtha, 4805
  - Potassium Permanganate, 1964
  - Turpentine, 7321
- Absorbents, 11
  - Boneblack, 836
  - Charcoal, 1309
    - Use as a Deodorizer, 11
  - Fuller's Earth, 2632
- Bleaching Agents, 788-789
  - Chloride of Lime, 4006, 1964

Hydrogen Peroxide, 3308

Lemon Juice, 3929

Sulphur Dioxide, 6916

Sunlight, 788

## Color Restorer for Acid Stains

Ammonia, 262

Disinfectants. [See *Prevention of Diseases and Epidemics*, in *Outline on Medicine and Drugs*, in this GUIDE.]

## Dust Removers

Brooms and Brushes, 977

Vacuum Cleaner, 7440

## Household Pests

- Ants, 303
  - Destroyed by Sodium Fluoride, 3466
- Bedbugs, 670
  - Destroyed by Fumigants, 670
  - Hydrocyanic Acid Gas, 3466, 670
  - Calcium Cyanide, 3466, 670
- Cockroaches, 1518
  - Sodium Fluoride, 3466
  - Other Remedies, 1518
- Flies
  - Harm Done by House Flies, 2499
  - Methods of Fighting Flies, 2500-2501, 2503
- Mice, 4701
  - Extermination of House Mice, 4702
  - The Family Cat, 1234
- Mosquitoes, 4674-4678
  - Campaign Methods and Weapons, 4678
- Moths That Damage Clothes, 4682
  - Methods of Control, 4683
  - Sandalwood Chests, 6362
  - Red Cedar Chests, 3719
- Rats, 5998-5999
  - Methods of Control, 5999-6000
- Molds, 4572-4573

## Household Management

- Family Expenditures, 3206
  - Value of a Family Budget, 1001
    - Applied Thrift, 7161
  - Apportionment of the Income, 3209
  - Constructive Buying vs. Extravagance, 3208
  - Buying for the Table
    - Principles of Food Selection, 3206, 3209
    - Suggestions for Purchasing
      - Bread and Flours, 3207
      - Meats and Poultry, 3207-3208
      - Vegetables, 3208
      - Tea and Coffee, 3208
  - Problems Involved in Shelter, 3209
  - Expenditures for Clothing, 3209
  - Higher-Life Expenditures, 3209
- Cost of Living Problems, 3210
- Value of a Bank Account, 3208
- Use of a Checking Account, 1323-1324
  - Banks as Borrowers, 604
- Family Relations, 3210
  - Care of Children. [See *Outline on Education*, in this GUIDE.]
- Care of Family Pets
  - House Birds, 755-756
    - Canary, 1162
    - Cockatoo, 1517
    - Parrot, 5399-5400
  - Goldfish, 2862-2863
  - Dogs, 1988-1990, 1991-1992
  - Rabbits, 5927

# INDUSTRY

## Fundamentals of Industry

- Definitions, 3445
- Object of Industrial Enterprise, 3445
- Agriculture the Basic Industry, 3445, 93
- Its Dependence upon Other Industries, 3445
- Giant Industries Subdivided, 3445
- Example: Automobile Industry, 3445, 544-545
- Kinds of Industries, 3445
- Service, 7685
- [See *Analysis of Industries*, below.]

## Development of Industry

- Primitive Man's Conquest of Fire, 1444-1445
  - Making of Weapons, 1445
- The Stone Age, 1445, 6845
- Invention and Making of Tools, 1445
  - Bone, Horn, and Ivory Used for Weapons, 1445
- Beginnings of Agricultural Industry, 1446
- Dwellings Built of Adobe, 49-50, 1446
- Iron Age; Forests Cleared with Ax, 1446, 3534
- Progress in Trade and House Building, 1447
- Land Cultivated by Slaves, 1448
- Barbarism Gives Way to Civilization, 1448
- Period of Lower Civilization, 1448
  - Ancient Egypt, 2151
  - Babylonia, 561-562
  - Phoenicia, 5569-5570
  - Carthage, 1219-1220
  - Greece, 2939-2942
  - Rome, 6171-6180
- Invention of Gunpowder, 1448, 2987
- Invention of Printing, 1448, 5817
  - Johannes Gutenberg, 2989-2990
  - William Caxton, 1263-1264
- The Mariner's Compass, 1591-1592
- The Handicraft Period, 3822
  - Craft Guilds of the Middle Ages, 2979
- Invention of the Steam Engine, 1449
- Application of Steam Power to Cotton Manufacture, 1449, 2359
  - Arkwright's Spinning Jenny, 403, 2359
  - Hargreaves' Inventions, 2359, 3046
- Cartwright's Power Loom, 1223, 2359
- The Industrial Revolution, 3822, 4180
  - [See *Period of Reaction*, in the Outline on *History*, subhead *The Modern World*, in this GUIDE.]
- Factory and Factory System, 2359-2360
  - Division of Labor, 2359, 3821-3822
- Twentieth-Century Progress in Industry, 3496, 5983, 7251
  - Invention, 3493-3500
  - Machine, 4180
  - Transportation, 7246-7252
- [See *Manufacturing Industries* and *Distributing Industries*, below.]
- Capital in Industry
  - Economic Definition of Capital, 1184
    - Means of Satisfying Human Wants, 7685
  - A Fundamental Factor in Industry, 1184
  - Combinations of Capital for Industrial Purposes, 6836
  - Partnership, 5404-5405
  - Corporation, 1696, 1698, 6836-6837
    - Legal Nature and Powers, 1698
    - Organization, 6836
    - Joint-Stock Corporations, 1698
    - Stock Capital, 6836-6837
    - Stock Exchange, 6837-6838
    - Curb Exchanges, 6838
    - Federal Trade Commission, 2390, 7782
    - Interstate Commerce Act, 3490-3491
  - Trust, 7282-7284

Pools, 7282  
 Wheat Pools in Canada, 1125  
 [See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

### Labor's Share in Industry

Chief Factor in Production, 1184  
 Labor Legislation, United States, 3823-3824, 2868  
 Eight-Hour Law for Government Employees, 2157, 2868  
 Laws Establishing Labor Day, 3822  
 Workingmen's Compensation Laws, 2230  
 Law Limiting Use of Injunctions, 2868, 3453  
 Law Exempting Labor Unions from Anti-Trust Acts, 2868, 3824

## Manufacturing Industries

**Agricultural Implements.** [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]

**Aircraft,** 112-151

Lighter than Air: The Gas-Bag Type, 115-118

Heavier than Air: The Airplane, 118-151

Airplane Construction, 118-126

Airplane Manufacture

In Dayton, Ohio, 1843

In Wichita, Kans., 7756

Curtiss Planes, 1791

De Haviland Biplanes, 129

Fokker Planes, 128

Ford All-Steel Planes, 2531

Liberty Engines, 7876, 7878

Lindbergh's Influence on Aviation, 4030

Commercial Flying, 129

The Air Commerce Act, 130-131

[See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]

**Aluminum,** 238-239

**Asbestos,** 438

**Asphalt,** 453-454

Gilsonite, Used in Paint Manufacture, 454

**Automobile,** 534-546

Beginnings of the Industry, 535-537, 544

Early Manufacturers, 536

Charles B. Duryea, 536

Elwood Haynes, 3100-3101

Alexander Winton, 536

Frank B. Stearns, 536

R. E. Olds, 536

Henry Ford, 536, 2531

Standardization, 2531, 6797

Construction and Operation, 540-542

Progress of the Industry, 544

**Baking,** 935-937, 2486, 3445

**Books and Bookbinding,** 851-858

Modern Bookmaking, 851-852

Typesetting, or Composition, 5817-5818

Printing, 5817-5823

Binding, 853-858

Arts and Crafts Movement, 437

William Morris, 437, 852, 4662

Elbert Hubbard, 437, 3269

Law Regulating Punishment for Contempt of Court, 2868, 1644

Child Labor Laws, 1376

Employer's Liability Laws, 2230

**Department of Labor Created,** 3821, 3824

**Labor Organizations,** 3825-3826

American Federation of Labor, 3825

Knights of Labor, 3807, 3825

Open Shop and Closed Shop, 5213

Collective Bargaining, 1536

Eight-Hour Day, 2156-2157

Five-Day Week, 2157

Strike, 6879

Lockout, 6879

Picketing, 6879

Book Publishing and Selling, 852

**Boots and Shoes,** 861-863

**Brass,** 924-925

Brass Works in Connecticut, 925, 1617

**Brewing,** 942, 944

Ale, 197, 685

Beer, 685

Fermentation, 2396

Fermented Liquors, 2397

Hops, 3236-3237

Malt, 4240-4241

Yeast, 7930-7931

Malting a Preliminary Process, 942, 4240-4241

Chemistry of Brewing, 944

**Brick-Making and Brick-Laying,** 945-946

[Also, see Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]

**Bronze,** 974-975

Alloys, 974, 227-228

**Building Industry,** 1009-1011

Building Trades, 1009

Carpentry, 1207-1211

[See below.]

Plastering, 5640-5651

Plumbing, 5663-5664

Roofing, 6182-6183

Contractors, 1009

[See Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]

**Building Stone.** [See *Quarry and Quarrying*, below.]

**Button,** 1051-1052, 4365

Mother-of-Pearl, 4684

Substitute for Pearl Oyster Shell, 1051

The Mississippi Mussel, 1051, 4781

Vegetable Ivory Buttons, 1052, 3593

Buttons from Horn, Hoofs, and Bone, 4365

**Cable, Submarine,** 1060-1063, 5489

Permalloy, 1061, 5489

How Wire Cables Are Made, 7801

**Candy-Making,** 1167, 1168-1169

[See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

**Canning,** 2514-2519, 1172-1173

Salmon Canning (Illustrated), 6335-6338

**Car-Building**, 5878, 5977-5978

First Pullman Sleeping Car, 5981

George M. Pullman, 5878

**Carpentry**, 1207-1211[See Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]**Carpets and Rugs**, 1211-1215

How Carpets and Rugs Are Made, 1211-1212

The Jacquard Loom, 3608, 1212

Modern Carpets and Qualities, 1212, 1214

Varieties of Oriental Rugs (Six Groups),  
1214-1215**Cement**, 1270-1282

The Binder for Concrete, 1270, 1597

Origin of Portland Cement, 1272

Standard Specifications Adopted, 1272, 6797

High-Alumina Portland Cement, 1339-1340

**Chemical Industries**, 1333, 1336-1340[See the Outline on *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]**Chewing Gum**. [See *Gum*, *Chewing*, below.]**Clock-Making**, 1487[See *Clock*, under *Machines*, in Outline on  
*Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this  
GUIDE.]**Cloth Manufacture**, 1489-1491, 7131, 7693-  
7695

Spinning, 6765-6766

Spinning Jenny (Hargreaves), 3046, 6765-  
6766Cotton-Spinning Machine (Arkwright),  
403, 6765

Mule Spinner (Crompton), 6765-6766

Weaving, 7693-7695

Loom, 1489, 7694-7695

Jacquard Loom, 7695

J. M. Jacquard, 3608

Power Loom, 7695

Edmund Cartwright, 1223

Warp and Weft, 1489, 7693

How Cloth Is Printed, 1491, 1079

Bleaching, Cloth Fabrics, 788-789

Kinds of Cloth, 1491, 7130, 7398

Alpaca, 233, 7893

Broadcloth, 972

Bunting, 2456

Burlap, 1028

Calico, 1079

Cambric, 1102

Canvas, 1179

Cashmere, 1228, 1491

Cheviot, 1491

Chiffon, 1369

Corduroy, 1675

Cotton, 1491, 1708-1718

Spinning, 6765-6766

Weaving, 7693-7695

Adulteration of Cotton, 56-57

Covert, 1491

Crape, 1734

Crash, 4031

Crêpe de Chine, 1491, 1734

Cretonne, 1079

Crinoline, 1749

Damask, 1816

Dimity, 1947

Dowlas, 4031

Duck, 1179

Flannel, 2465

Foulard, 1491

Huckaback, 4031

Gauze, 2706-2707

Georgette Crêpe, 1734

Gingham, 2809

Khaki, 3770

Lawn, 788

Linen, 1491, 4031-4032

Preparation of Fiber Flax, 4031, 2466-  
2467

Spinning Wheel, 6765

Spinning Jenny, 6766

Weaving, 7693-7695

Linen Fabrics, 4031-4032

Shirt and Collar Manufacture, 7281

Adulteration of Linen, 56-57

Mohair, 4567, 7893

Muslin, 1491, 4780

Percale, 1079, 5481

Plush, 5664

Pongee, 1491

Poplin, 5736-5737

Rajah, 6611

Ribbon, 6106

Satin, 1491, 6397

Serge, 1491, 7893

Shantung, 6611

Sheeting, 1491

Shoddy, 57, 6570-6571

Silk, 6604-6611

Silk Weaving, 6610, 7693-7695

Artificial Silk. [See *Rayon*, below.]

Wild Silk, 6611

Adulteration of Silk, 57

Surah, 1491

Taffeta, 1491, 6997-6998

Tapestry, 7016-7018

Gobelin Tapestries, 2850, 7017

Bayeux Tapestry, 7018

Tartan, 7025

Scottish (color plate), opposite 6444

Tick, 4031

Towelings, 1491

Tweeds, 1491, 7330

Twill, 7331, 7694

Velour, 1491

Velvet, 1491, 7476

Velveteen, 7476

Voile, 7559-7560

Wool and Woolens, 7834-7844

Wool-Bearing Animals, 7843

Alpaca, 233

Angora Goat, 2848

Astrakhan Lamb, 466

Cashmere Goat, 1228, 2848

Guanaco, 2972

Llama, 4064-4065

Sheep, 6546-6550

Vicuña, 7523-7524

Processes of Manufacture, 7844  
 Dyeing, 7844  
 Carding, 7844  
 Spinning, 6765-6766  
 Weaving, 7693-7695  
 The Making of Woolen Cloth (Illustrated), 7835, 7842  
 Adulteration of Wool, 57  
 Worsted, 1491, 7893  
**Clothing (Dress)**, 2033-2036  
 Formerly Made in the Home, 6514  
 Spinning Wheel, 6765-6766  
 Hand Weaving, 7694  
 Loom, 7694-7695  
 Sewing, 6514-6518  
 Revolution in Production, 6514  
 Sweatshop System, 6948  
 Textiles, 7130-7132  
 Costume, 1706-1708  
 Dress Accessories and Dressmakers' Supplies  
 Beads, 656  
 Buttons, 1051-1052  
 Needles, 4869  
 Pins, 5618-5619  
 [See *Cotton, Linen, Wool*, etc., under *Cloth Manufacture*, above; also, see *Textile Industry*, below.]  
**Coal**, 1497-1507  
 Methods of the Miner, 4506  
 Products and By-Products, 1501-1502, 1503  
 Fuel and Illuminating Gas, 2631, 2698-2700, 2702  
 Coke, 1502, 1532  
 Tar, 1502, 7019-7020  
 Accidents and Their Prevention, 4506  
 [See *Mining*, in this Outline.]  
**Collar (Troy, N. Y.)**, 7281  
**Concrete**, 1597-1600  
**Copper**, 1666-1669  
 A Factor of Many Alloys, 228, 1667  
**Cork**, 1677-1679  
 Uses of Cork  
 Life Preservers, 1512  
 Linoleum, 4033  
 Cork Production in Spain and Portugal, 6732, 5759  
**Corn Products**, 1684-1686, 1339  
 Alcohol, 194  
 Breakfast Foods, 938, 1686, 2888  
 Corn Oil, 1687  
 Cornstarch, 1686  
 Corn Sugar, 1339, 1686  
 Corn Syrup, 1686  
 Dextrin, 1687  
 Dextrose, 2845  
 Glucose, Commercial, 2845  
 Oleomargarine, 5191  
 Paper (Cornstalk), 1687, 1688, 5351-5352  
 Starch, 1687  
 Stock Feed, 1686, 1687  
 Miscellaneous Products, 1686  
**Cosmetics**, 1702-1703  
 Massage Creams, 1702

Face Powders, 1702  
 Perfumes. [See *Perfume*, below.]  
 Hair Tonics, 1702  
 Bay Rum, 655  
 Hair Dyes, 1702-1703, 3007-3008  
 Skin Lotions, 1702  
 The Cosmetic Art, 1703  
 Manicuring, 1703  
 Hair and Skin Treatments, 1703  
 Cosmetic Surgery, 1703  
**Cotton Manufacture**. [See *Cloth*, above.]  
**Dairy Industry**. [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Distillation**, 1967-1968  
 Production of Denatured Alcohol in the United States, 194  
 Apparatus for Distilling, 1967  
 Evaporation, 1967, 2333  
 Condensation, 1967  
 Beverage Products of Distillation  
 Absinth and Absinthol, 11  
 Oil of Wormwood, 7892  
 Applejack, or Cider Brandy, 1424  
 Cider, 1424-1425  
 Brandy, 923  
 Cherry Brandy, 923, 1342  
 Gin, 2808-2809  
 Juniper, 3719  
 Rum, 6240  
 Molasses, 4572  
 Whisky, 7742  
**Drugs**, 4374-4377  
**Dyeing and Dyestuffs**, 2063-2064  
 Natural Dyes, 2063  
 Catechu, or Cutch, 1240  
 Cochineal, 1516-1517  
 Indigo, 3430  
 Lac, 3829-3830  
 Logwood, 4090  
 Madder, 4197-4198  
 Turmeric, 7319  
 Synthetic Dyes, 2063  
 Mineral Dyes, 2063  
 Coal-Tar Products, 1502, 1508, 3430  
 Dyeing Processes, 2063-2064  
 Mordants, 2064, 4649  
 Calico-Dyeing, 1079  
 Alizarin, 222  
 Lakes, 3845, 4649  
**Electrical Industry**. [See *Electricity and Magnetism*, in the Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Electroplating**, 2195  
**Electrotyping**, 2196-2198  
**Engraving**, 2272-2274  
**Etching**, 2303  
**Explosives**, 2345-2347  
 [See Outline on *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Fats and Oils**, 2376-2378, 5179  
 [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Fats That Are Products or Objects of Industry, 2378

Ambergris, 244  
 Beeswax, 685  
 Blubber, 802-803  
 Butter, 1041-1044  
 Candle, 1166  
 Copra, 1669-1670  
 Lard, 3879  
 Oleomargarine, 5191  
 Sealing Wax, 6471  
 Soap, 6667  
 Spermaceti, 6757  
 Tallow, 7009  
 Wax, 7684  
   Paraffin Wax, 5357, 7684  
   Wool Wax, 7684  
 Oils, 5179  
   Fixed Oils, 5179  
   Volatile Oils, 5179  
   Essences, 2299  
   Uses in the Arts, 5179  
     Perfumery, 5486  
     [See *Perfume*, below.]  
 Oil Products of Industry, 2378, 5179  
   Castor Oil, 1233-1234  
   Cod-Liver Oil, 1523, 1524-1525  
   Cottonseed Oil, 1716  
   Linseed Oil, 4036  
   Olive Oil, 5193  
   Paint, 5298  
   Palm Oil, 5323  
   Peanut Oil, 5432  
   Sperm Oil, 6757  
 Fertilizer, 2398-2401  
 Fish and Fisheries, 2440-2445  
   [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this  
   GUIDE.]  
 Flax, 2465-2468  
   Linseed Oil, 4036  
   [See *Linen*, under *Cloth*, above.]  
 Flour, 2486-2490  
   Where Flour Is Made, 2488, 2490  
 Food Products, Preservation of, 2514-2519  
   [See *Canning*, above.]  
 Foundry, 2551  
 Fur and Fur Trade, 2638-2645  
   How Made Ready for Market (Illustrated),  
   2640-2644  
 Furniture, 2647-2654  
   Furniture in the Making (Illustrated), 2650-  
   2653  
 Gas, 2698-2700  
   Illuminating Gas, 2699-2700  
   Acetylene Gas, 19  
   Calcium Carbide, 19, 1073  
   Thomas L. Willson, 20  
   Natural Gas. [See under *Petroleum*, below.]  
 Gems, 2711-2713  
   Lapidary, 3874  
   Jewelry, 3672  
 Glass, 2832-2842  
   Bottle-Making Machines, 2832, 2837  
   Flint Glass, 2833  
   Bohemian Glass, 2833

Processes of Manufacture, 2833-2834, 2836-  
 2837  
   Window Glass, 2834  
   Annealing, 2834, 293  
   Cut Glass, 2835  
   Colored Glass, 2835  
   How Bottles Are Made, 894, 2837  
   Glass That Will Bend, 2835, 2838  
   How Plate Glass Is Made, 2838-2841  
   Stained Glass, 6792, 6794  
   Wire Glass, 7801  
 Gum, Chewing, 2985-2986  
   Black-Spruce Gum, 6783  
   Chicle, 1368, 2985  
   Flavors, 2986  
   Peppermint, 5480  
   Spearmint, 6746-6747  
   Licorice, 3975  
   Pineapple, 5622-5624  
   Wintergreen, 7799-7800  
 Hat, 3070-3074  
   Early Materials, 3070  
   Wool, 7843  
   Beaver, 667, 3070  
   Silk Hats, 3073  
   Straw Hats, 3073  
   Hats of the World, 3073  
 Ice, 3325-3329  
   Refrigeration, 6041-6044. [See below.]  
 Ice Cream, 3331  
   Introduction by Dolly Madison, 3331, 4203,  
   4205  
   Federal Food and Drugs Act, 5884  
 Iron and Steel, 3534-3551  
   Iron Manufacture, 3535-3539  
   Iron Ore the Raw Material, 3535, 3540-  
   3541  
   The Blast Furnace and Its Function, 3535-  
   3538, 3542  
   The Pig Machine, 3536, 3538  
   Pig Iron, 3538  
   Cast Iron, 3538  
   Wrought Iron, 3538  
 Steel Manufacture, 3539-3551  
   Former Methods of Manufacture, 3539  
   The Crucible Process, 3539  
   Electric Furnace, 3539, 3542  
   Heroult Furnace, 3539  
   Bessemer Steel, 3542, 3546, 3549  
     Bessemer, Sir Henry, 721  
   Open-Hearth Steel, 3549-3551  
   Acid Open-Hearth Process, 3550-3551  
 Alloys of Steel, 228  
   Used for High-Speed Tools, 228, 7292, 7420  
     For Airplane Engines, 228, 1418  
     For Armor Plate, 4851  
     For Auto Parts, 5022, 7449  
     For Mining Machinery, 4255  
     For Safes, 1418, 4255  
     For Steel Rails, 4255  
   Chromium Steel, 1418  
   Harveyized Steel, 4851  
   Manganese Steel, 4255

- Nickel Steel, 4851, 5022
  - Invar, 5022
- Stainless Steel, 1418
- Tungsten Steel, 228, 7292
- Uranium Steel, 7420
- Vanadium Steel, 7449
- The Story of Iron and Steel in Pictures, 3540-3549
- Jewelry.** [See *Gems*, above.]
- Jute**, 3723-3725
  - Uses of Jute Fiber, 3725
  - Bagging, 3725
  - Burlap, 1028
  - Upholstery Fabrics, 3725
  - Carpets, 3725, 1214
  - Cordage and Rope, 3725, 6199
  - Paper-Making, 3725, 5351
- Knife**, 3804-3805
  - Razor-Making, 6004
- Lace-Making**, 3830-3833
  - Hand-Made Lace
    - Needle-Point Lace, 3830-3831
    - Bobbin, or Pillow, Lace, 3830-3833
  - Gold and Silver Lace, 3833
  - Machine-Made Laces
    - Material: Cotton or Ramie, 3833, 812
- Leather**, 3908-3912
  - Buckskin, 995
  - Morocco, 4660
  - By-Product of the Meat Industry, 4365
  - Processes of Tanning, 3909-3912
  - Tannin, 7015-7016
  - Suède, Patent, and Artificial Leather, 3909, 3912
- Linen.** [See *Cloth*, above.]
- Linoleum**, 4033
  - Linseed Oil an Ingredient, 4033, 4036
  - Cork an Ingredient, 1678
- Linseed Oil**, 4036
  - Flax, 2465-2468
- Lithography**, 4054-4055
  - Printing of Lithographs, 4055
  - Offset Printing, 5165-5166
  - Color Process, 4055
  - Photolithography, 4055
- Locomotive**, 4076-4082
  - Types of Locomotives, 4078-4082
  - Electric Locomotives, 2188-2189, 4080, 4082
  - Locomotive Builders of America, 578, 5543, 6411
    - American Locomotive Company, Schenectady, N. Y., 6411
    - Baldwin Locomotive Works, Philadelphia, 578, 5543
    - M. W. Baldwin, 577-578
    - First Baldwin Locomotive, 578
    - Lima, Ohio, Locomotive Works, 4006
- Lumber**, 4145-4153
  - Utilizing Waste, 4150, 4152
  - Waste-Pile Products, 4152
    - Cellulose, 1269-1270
    - Charcoal, 1308-1309
    - Lath, 4152
  - Matches, 4339-4343
  - Rayon, 6004
  - Sash and Doors, 4152
  - Sawdust Products, 4152
  - Toothpicks, 4152
  - Turpentine, 7322
  - Wallboard, 4152
  - Wood Pulp, 1269, 5345
  - How Lumber Is Sold, 4152, 4153
- Machinery**, 4180-4181
  - [See Outline on *Inventions and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Matches**, 4339-4343
  - Phossy Jaw, in Match Factories, 4339, 5575
- Meat and Meat Packing**, 4360-4368
  - Development of the American Industry, 4361
  - Chicago the Great Packing Center, 4361, 1363
  - Organization of the Industry, 4364
  - Processes of Slaughtering and Dressing Cattle and Hogs, 4364
  - Cooling and Refrigeration, 4364-4365, 6044
  - Products, 1250, 4365
    - Fresh Meats, 4365, 3207
      - Beef, 683-684
      - Lamb, 3207, 4783
      - Mutton, 4783, 6547-6548
      - Pork, 5743-5744
      - Veal, 3207
    - Smoked Meats, 4365
      - Bacon, 564, 5743
      - Ham, 3024, 5743
    - Salted Meats, 684
      - Corned Beef, 684, 2519
      - Pork, 5743-5744
    - Lard, 3879
    - Tallow, 7009
    - Canned Meats, 684, 4365
    - Dried Beef, 684, 4365
    - Sausage, 6400-6401
    - Extract of Beef, 684, 2348
- By-Products**
  - Complete List, 4365
  - Government Inspection, 4365-4368
  - Pure-Food Laws, 5884
  - Cold Storage, 1532-1535
- Metallurgy**, 4414-4415
  - [See the Outline on *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Mining**, 4502-4508
  - The Stone Age, 4502, 6845-6847
  - The Bronze Age, 975, 4502
  - The Iron Age, 3534, 4502
  - Distribution of Minerals, 4502
  - Pioneers of Mining Industry, 4503
    - Phoenicians, 4503, 5569
    - Slavery in Spanish Mines, 4503
  - Lure of Precious Metals and Discoveries, 4503
    - Bonanza, 826
    - Mexico, 4440
    - Peru, 5506, 5508
    - British Columbia, 959

California, 1090  
 New South Wales, 4949  
 Transvaal, 7360  
 Alaska, 172  
     Klondike, 172, 7966  
 Yukon, 7966  
 Porcupine, 1128  
 Red Lake, Ontario, 5204  
 Prospecting, 4503  
 Kinds of Mines  
     Deep-Shaft Mines, 4506  
     Hillside Mines, 4506  
     Strip Mines, 4506  
     Surface Mines, 2858, 3535  
         Placer Mining, 2858, 4503  
 Importance of the Industry in the United States, 4506, 4508  
 A Typical Mining Camp, 4507  
 Gold-Mining  
     Taking Gold from the Ores, 2858  
     Where Gold Is Found, 2859  
         United States, 2859, 7371-7372  
         Canada, 1128, 2859  
         Africa, 2859  
     Gold-Beating, 2860  
         Gold Leaf, 2860  
     Alloys, 228  
     Use of Gold in Coinage, 4582-4587  
 Silver-Mining  
     Most Important Ores  
         Argentite, 6614  
         Other Sulphides, 6614  
         Horn Silver, 6614  
         Hessite, 6614  
         Galena, 6614, 2662  
         Copper Ores, 6614  
     Countries Leading in Production, 6614  
     Leading States and Provinces, 1128-1129, 6614, 7371-7372  
     Commercial Uses  
         Alloy, 228, 6613  
         Coinage, 6613, 4582-4587  
         Jewelry, 6613  
         Tableware, 6613  
         Silver Plate, 6613  
         Silver Wire, etc., 6613  
         Indelible Ink, 3454, 6613  
     Compounds, 6613  
         Silver Nitrate, 1260, 6613  
         Silver Chloride, 6613  
 Iron-Mining, 3535, 4504-4505  
     Underground and Surface Mines, 3535  
         The Mesaba Range, 3535, 4516  
     Open-Pit Mines, 4505  
     Iron Regions of Michigan, 4462  
     Varieties of Iron Ore  
         Magnetite, 3535, 4218  
         Hematite, 3535  
         Limonite, 3535  
         Brown Ore, 3535  
         Siderite, 3535  
     Ore-Mining with a Steam-Shovel, 3540  
 [See *Iron and Steel*, above.]

Copper-Mining, 1667-1668  
     Open Copper Mine in Utah, 7432  
     Michigan Copper, 4462  
         Calumet and Hecla Mine, 85, 4462  
 Aluminum-Mining  
     Extracted Commercially from  
         Bauxite, 239, 653-654  
         Cryolite, 239, 1765  
     Sources of Bauxite, 239, 654  
     Many Industrial Uses, 239, 124, 545, 2056  
     Alloys, 239  
         Aluminum Bronze, 239, 975  
         Duralumin, 124, 239, 2056  
         Magnalium, 239  
         Nickeloy, 239, 5022  
     Manufacture, 239  
         Electrolysis, 239, 2193  
         The Hall, or Heroult, Process, 239  
 Cobalt-Mining  
     Cobalt (Ontario) Mines, 5206  
     [See *Nickel-Mining*, below.]  
 Coal-Mining  
     Varieties of Coal, 1499  
     Distribution, 1499-1500  
     What We Get from a Ton of Coal, 1501  
     Products and By-Products, 1502  
     Conservation Movement, 1622  
     Preparation for Market, 1507  
     Sizes of Coal, 1507  
     Dangers and Remedies, 1504-1505  
         Fire Damp, 1504, 2429  
         Safety Lamp, 6295  
         Carbon Dioxide, 1504  
         Choke Damp, 1193  
         White Damp, 1504  
 Lead-Mining  
     Galena, or Lead Glance, the Chief Ore, 2662, 3902  
 Nickel-Mining  
     Sources of Supply, 5022  
         Ontario, 5204  
         New Caledonia, 5292  
         Tasmania, 5022  
     Uses of Nickel, 5022  
         As a Catalyst, 1238, 5022  
         Coinage, 5022, 4587  
     Alloys  
         Nickel Steel, 5022  
         Nickeloy, 5022  
         German Silver, 2768  
         Monel Metal, 5022  
 Tin-Mining  
     Tin Mines of Cornwall and Devon, 2251, 7181  
     Alloys, 7181  
         Babbitt Metal, 552, 7181  
         Bronze, 975, 7181  
         Solders, 6679, 7181  
         Type Metal, 7181, 7338  
 Zinc-Mining  
     Industrial Uses of Zinc, 7974  
         Galvanized Iron, 2669-2670  
         Roofing, 2670, 7974



Electric Batteries, 2168-2170  
 Zinc Etching, 7974  
 Zinc White (Paint), 7974  
 Alloys, 7974  
 Brass, 924  
 Bronze, 975  
 German Silver, 2768  
 Phosphate-Mining, 5574  
 A Pebble Phosphate Mine in Florida, 2399  
**Moving Pictures**, 4703-4729  
 Factors of a Prodigious Business, 4703  
 Development of the Industry in America, 4704-4721  
 Developments in Europe, 4708-4709  
 Evolution of the Picture Trust, 4711  
 Rise of the Independents, 4712  
 Motion Picture Producers and Distributors of America, Inc., 4717  
 Will H. Hays, President, 3101  
 Manual Trades Engaged in the Industry, 4709  
 Distributing the Film, 4728  
 Extent of the Industry, 4729  
**Musical Instruments**, 4776  
 [See Outline on *Music*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Newspapers**, 4953-4958  
 Invention Its Servant, 4953  
 Telephone, 7067-7080  
 Telegraph, 7058-7066  
 Cable, 1060-1063  
 Radio, 5935-5968  
 Camera, 1107-1108  
 Linotype, 4033-4036  
 Printing Press, 5820-5823  
 Great Editors of the Past, 4953  
 Horace Greeley, 2954-2955  
 Charles A. Dana, 1817  
 Joseph Medill, 4953, 4957  
 Henry Watterson, 7682  
 Getting and Writing the News, 4953-4954  
 Associated Press, 458, 4954  
 United Press, 458, 4954  
 International News Service, 458, 4954  
 William Randolph Hearst, 3107-3108  
 Business Management, 4954  
 Circulation, 4954  
 Advertising, 4954, 60-61  
 Distribution, 4955  
 Mechanical Development, 4955  
 Typesetting, 4955, 7338-7339  
 Linotype, 4033-4036  
 Monotype, 4600-4601  
 Stereotyping, 4955-4956, 6830  
 Printing, 4955, 5817-5820  
 Photography, 5579-5584  
 Photo-Engraving, 5576-5579  
 Newspapers in the United States, 4957  
 Tabloid Newspapers, 4958  
**Oilcloth**, 5179  
 Burlap Foundation, 5179, 1028  
 [See *Linoleum*, above.]  
**Oils**. [See *Fats and Oils*, above.]  
**Oleomargarine**, 56, 5191

Essential Ingredients, 5191  
 Butter Fat, 56  
 Lard, 3879, 5191  
 Beef Fat, 5191  
 Vegetable Oils, 5191  
 Coloring Matters, 5191  
 Prevention of Fraud, 1043, 56, 5191  
**Paint**, 5298  
 Oil Paints, 5298  
 Water-Color Paints, 5298  
 Water Colors for Artists, 7666  
**Pigments**, Mostly Mineral, 5298  
 White Lead, 7750  
 Zinc White, 7974  
 Red Lead, 3902  
 Ocher, 5155  
 Lead Chromate, 3902  
 Chrome Yellow, 3902  
 Cadmium Compounds, 5298  
 Lakes, 3845  
 Cobalt Compounds, 1514  
 Umber, 7349  
 Sepia, 6496  
 Carbon, 1192  
 Charcoal, 1309  
 Lampblack, 3848  
 Boneblack, 836, 1309  
 Ivory Black, 836  
 Indigo, 3430  
 Coal-Tar Indigo, 3430  
 Carmine, 1202  
 Cochineal, 1516-1517  
 Vehicles Used for Paint, 5298  
 Linseed Oil, 4036  
 Boiled Oil, 5298  
 Solvent, 5298  
 Turpentine, 7321  
 Drier, 5298  
 Lead and Manganese, 3902, 4255  
 Drying Oils Used in Paint-Making, 5179  
 Linseed, 4036  
 Hempseed, 3140  
 Walnut, 7586  
 Poppy, 5737  
 Candle-Nut, 5179  
 Sesame, 5179  
 Sunflower, 6927  
 Chinese Wood Oils, 5179  
 Fireproof Paint, 5298  
 Luminous Paint, 5298  
 Phosphorus, 5575  
 [Also, see *Varnish*, below.]  
**Paper**, 5343-5352  
 Papyrus in Ancient Egypt, 5343, 5353-5354  
 Ancient Parchment, 5344, 5367  
 Early Paper Made in Europe, 5344  
 Vellum, 5344  
**Modern Paper-Making**  
 Preparation of Rag Pulp, 5345  
 Cellulose, 1269  
 Preparation of Wood Pulp, 5345  
 The Paper-Making Machine, 5345  
 How Width of Paper Is Determined, 5351

Classification of Paper, 5351  
 Vegetable Parchment, 1269, 5351, 5367  
 Cornstalk Paper, 5351-5352  
 Conservation of Wood Pulp Supply, 5351  
 Forest Destruction, 5351, 1269  
 Process for Making New Paper from Old, 5351-5352  
 How Paper Is Made (Illustrations), 5346-5350  
**Pen**, 5450-5451  
 Processes of Manufacture, 5450-5451  
 Iridium Tips, 5351, 5450  
 Typewriter Replacing the Pen, 7900-7901  
**Pencil**, 5451-5455  
 Graphite, 2911-2912, 5451  
 Clay, 1458, 5451  
 Pine, 5455, 5620  
 Red Cedar, 1265, 5455  
 Redwood, 5455, 6501  
 Paper, 5455  
 How Pencils Are Made (Illustrated), 5452-5454  
 Metal and Bakelite Pencils, 5455  
 Bakelite, 573  
**Perfume**, 5486-5489  
 Where Perfumes Are Made, 5486  
 France, 2572, 5378, 5487  
 Bulgaria, 494, 495, 1015, 5487  
 Cyprus, 5486  
 China, 5486  
 India, 494  
 Persia, 494  
 Peru, 5486  
 Syria, 494  
 Turkey, 494, 5487  
 American Industry in Synthetic Perfumes, 5486  
 Animal Odors Used in Perfumery, 5486  
 Ambergris, 244  
 Castoreum, 668  
 Civet, 1442  
 Musk, 4776  
 Spermaceti, 6757  
 Vegetable Perfumes, 5486  
 Rose, 495, 6202-6203  
 Attar of Roses, 494, 1015  
 Violet, 7532  
 Heliotrope, 3131  
 How the Oils Are Extracted, 5486  
 Alcohol, 194  
 Where Vegetable Oils Are Found, 5486  
 In the Rind, 5486  
 Bergamot, 711  
 Orange, 5234  
 Lemon, 3929  
 In Leaves and Stems, 5486  
 Mints, 4525  
 Lavender, 3896  
 Peppermint, 5480  
 Rosemary, 6205  
 Spearmint, 6746-6747  
 In the Bark, 5486  
 Cinnamon, 1431

In the Wood, 5486  
 Rosewood, 6208  
 Cedar, 1265  
 Sandalwood, 6362  
 By Bruising or Cutting Trees, 5486  
 Gums, 2985  
 Artificial Perfumes, 5486  
 First Successful Synthetic Perfumes, 5486  
 Heliotrope, 3131  
 Lilac, 4004  
 Artificial Musk, 4776  
 Perfumes of Commerce, 5486  
 Lavender, an English Product, 3896, 5487  
 Perfumes Used in Soaps, Cosmetics, etc., 1702, 5487, 6667  
**Petroleum**, 5520-5529  
 How Early Pennsylvania Settlers Regarded Oil, 5521  
 The Kerosene Age, 5521  
 Coal Oil, 5521, 3768  
 Market Created for Gasoline, 5521, 2703  
 Known Oil Regions of the World, 5522  
 World Production, 5529  
 Principal Oil Fields of the United States, 5526-5529  
 California, 1090  
 Oklahoma, 5184  
 Texas, 7126  
 Arkansas, 400  
 Kansas, 3737  
 Wyoming, 7909  
 Louisiana, 4129  
 Oil-Refining Centers, 5526  
 Bayonne, N. J., 4930, 5526  
 Whiting, Ind., 3394, 5526  
 Pennsylvania, 5468, 5469  
 Illinois, 3358  
 Producing States. [See above.]  
 The Petroleum Industry, 5522-5529  
 How Wells Are Drilled, 5524  
 Cost and Hazards of Drilling, 5526  
 Pipe Lines and Their Owners, 5526-5527  
 Great Companies  
 Standard Oil Company, 6798-6799  
 John D. Rockefeller, 6153  
 William Rockefeller, 6154  
 Sinclair Oil Company, 5526  
 The Texas Company, 5526  
 Tank Steamers and Tank Cars, 5522, 5526-5527  
 Processes of Refining Oil, 5526, 5529  
 Commercial Products in Order of Release, 5526  
 Cymogene, 5526  
 Rhigolene, 5526  
 Petroleum Ether, 5526  
 Gasoline, 2703, 5526  
 [See below.]  
 Naphtha, 4805, 5526  
 Ligroine, 5526  
 Benzene, 711, 5526  
 Kerosene, 3768, 5529  
 Heavier Grades, 5529

- Boiling Points of Products, 5526  
 The Cracking Process, 5529  
 By-Products of Petroleum  
   Asphalt, 453  
   Paraffin, 5357  
   Vaseline, 7465  
 Petroleum from Coal, 5529  
 Shale Oil, 6539  
 Gasoline, 2703  
 Natural Gas, 4819-4820  
**Phonograph**, 5572-5574  
   Thomas A. Edison, 2110, 5573  
**Photo-Engraving**, 5576-5579  
   Halftone, 3016-3017  
   Screen, 3016  
   Etching, 2303, 3017  
   Electroplates, 2195, 3017  
 Gelatin Relief, 5579  
 Photogravure, 5579  
 Process of Photo-Engraving (Ten Illustrations), 5576-5578  
**Photography**, 5579-5584  
   First Practical Application, 5582  
   L. J. M. Daguerre, 1806  
   Daguerreotype, 1805-1806  
   Camera, 1107-1108  
   Hand Cameras, 1107  
     Kodak, 2090  
     Rolled Film, 1107, 2090  
   Uses of the Camera, 1107-1108  
   Moving Pictures, 4703-4729  
   Processes of Photography, 5580-5582  
   Printing, 5582  
     Special Paper, 5582  
     Nitrate of Silver, 5033, 5582  
     Bromide, 973, 5582  
     Blue Print, 805-806  
   Aerial Photography, 5582  
   Amateur Photography, 5582  
   Amateur Motion-Picture Photography, 5583  
   Photography by Telephone and Radio  
     Telephotos, 5583  
     Radiophotogram, 5583  
   Color Photography, 5584  
**Piano**, 5598, 5601  
**Plastering**, 5649-5651  
   Stucco, 5649, 6881  
   Staff, 6792  
   Plaster of Paris, 5651  
**Plumbing**, 5663-5664  
**Pottery**, 5782-5787  
   [See Outline on *Art*, in this GUIDE]  
**Printing**, 5817-5823  
   Invented by the Chinese, 5817  
   Introduction in Europe (1440), 5817  
   Johannes Gutenberg, 2989-2990  
   William Caxton, 1263-1264  
   First Printing Press in America, 5817  
   The Process of Printing, 5817-5819  
     Composition, 5817  
     Type, 7338-7339. [See below.]  
     Typesetting by Hand, 5817-5818  
     Machine Composition, 5818  
     Linotype, 4033-4036  
     Monotype, 4598-4601  
   Electrotyping, 2196, 2197  
   Stereotyping, 6830  
   Presswork, 5819  
     Printing Ink, 3454  
     Paper, 5343-5352  
     Printing Press. [See below.]  
   How a Thirty-Two-Page Form Is Laid Out, 5818  
 Illustrations, 5819  
   Wood Cuts, 5819, 7831  
   Photo-Engravings, 5819, 5579  
   Zinc Etchings, 5819, 7974  
   Halftones, 5819, 3016  
   Color Cuts, 5819  
   Four-Color Process, 5819  
   Printing Press, 5820-5823  
   Planographic Printing, 5820  
   Offset Printing, 5165-5166, 5820  
   Intaglio Printing, 5820  
   The Rotogravure Process, 5820  
**Quarry and Quarrying**, 5904-5906  
   Products of the Quarry, 5904  
     Marble, 4282-4284  
     Granite, 2898, 7501  
     Limestone, 4007  
     Sandstone, 6365-6366  
     Slate, 6638  
   Carrara Marble, 4282, 4284  
   Parian Marble, 4282, 4284  
   Building Stone, 1012  
**Radio**, 5935-5968  
   Development of Rapid Communication, 5935-5943  
     Marconi's Experiments, 4287-4288, 5940  
     Lee DeForest, 1873, 5941  
     Bell Telephone Engineers, 5941  
     General Electric Company, 5941  
   Broadcasting, 5941, 5962-5963  
   Apparatus for Radio Telegraphy, 5943-5948  
   For Radio Telephony, 5948-5956  
   [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Railroad Industry**, 5973-5984  
   Equipment, 5977-5981  
     Steam Locomotives, 4076-4082, 5980  
     Electric Locomotives, 4082  
     Passenger Cars, 5978  
     Freight Cars, 5978  
     Air Brake, 1111-1112  
     George Westinghouse, 7714  
     Steel Rails, 5980  
   Railroad Employees, 5980-5981  
   Safety Devices, 5981, 5982  
   Railroads of the World, 5984  
   American Railroad Systems, 5977  
   Railways of Canada, 1132-1133  
   [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Rattan**, 6001  
**Rayon**, 1338, 6004  
**Refrigeration**, 6041-6044

- Cold Storage an Important Business, 1532-1535, 6041  
 The Cold-Storage Plant, 1534  
 Ice Boxes for the Home, 6041  
 Electric Refrigeration, 6041-6042  
 Railroad Refrigeration, 6042  
 Modern Refrigerator Car, 6044  
 Theory of Refrigeration Illustrated, 1533, 6043
- Rope**, 6199-6201  
 Raw Materials of Rope, 6199, 2405  
 Abaca (Manila Hemp), 3140, 5555  
 Hemp, 3138-3140  
 Preparing for Market, 3139  
 Uses of Hemp, 6199  
 Oakum, 3140, 5133  
 Sisal, 6199-6626  
 Henequen, 7956  
 Jute, 3723  
 Flax, 2465-2468  
 Cotton, 6199  
 Coir, 1522  
 Vegetable Fibers (Including the above), 2405  
 Strength of Ropes, 6200  
 Wire Ropes, 6200  
 [See *Wire*, below.]  
 Binder Twine, 740-741  
 Sisal, 740, 6626, 6627-6628  
 Manila Hemp, 3140, 5555
- Rubber**, 6223-6231  
 Growth of the Industry, 6624  
 Vulcanization, Discovery of, 6824  
 Charles Goodyear, 2871  
 Development in Brazil, 6226, 929  
 Rubber Produced in Asia, 6226  
 How Crude Rubber Is Obtained  
 Brazilian Methods, 6226  
 Asiatic Methods, 6226-6227  
 Production of Rubber, 6228, 6231  
 American Rubber Plantations in Liberia, 6231, 3961  
 Many Uses of Rubber, 6228, 6230  
 Rubber Manufacture, 6227-6231  
 Automobile Tires, 5670-5675, 6227  
 United States Tire Production, 5675  
 Center of the Industry, Akron, Ohio, 155
- Salt**, 6340-6344  
 Sea Salt, 6340  
 Mediterranean Sea, 4378-4379  
 Dead Sea, 1845-1846  
 Black Sea, 783-784  
 Red Sea, 6033-6034  
 Caspian Sea, 1229  
 Caribbean Sea, 1197  
 Great Salt Lake, 2935-2937  
 Rock Salt, 6340  
 Views of the Salt Industry, 6340-6343
- Sewing Machine**, 6519-6520  
**Silk**. [See under *Cloth*, above.]
- Soap**, 6667  
 Home-Made Soft Soap, 6667
- Lye (Caustic Potash), 1260  
 Potash, 5777-5778  
 Hard Soap a Sodium Compound, 6667  
 Soda, 6675  
 Soap Manufacture, 6667  
 Laundry Soaps, 6667  
 Lye, 1260  
 Rosin, 6208  
 Salt, 6342  
 Tallow, 7009  
 Toilet Soaps, 6667  
 Perfume, 5487  
 Medicated Soaps, 6667  
 Transparent Soaps, 6667  
 Alcohol, 194  
 Glycerine, 2846  
 Floating Soaps, 6667  
 Coconut Oil, 1520, 1522  
 Soda, 6675  
 Salt-Water (Sailor's) Soap, 6667  
 Castile Soap, 6667  
 Olive Oil, 5193  
 Naphtha Soaps, 6667  
 Kerosene, 3768  
 Glycerine, a By-Product, 2846, 6667
- Spectacle-Making**, 6747-6749  
 Spectacles for Eye Defects, 6747, 6749  
 Nearsightedness, 2352, 6747  
 Farsightedness, 2352, 6749  
 Astigmatism, 464-465, 6749  
 Bifocals, or Divided Spectacles, 6749  
 How Spectacles Are Made (Illustrated), 6748
- Spinning**. [See under *Cloth*, above.]
- Steam Engine**  
 [See Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Sugar**, 6906-6912, 4572  
 Cane Sugar Manufacture, 6906  
 Molasses Forced Out in Centrifugals, 6906, 4572  
 Second and Third Sugars, 4572  
 Refining the Sugar, 6906  
 Use of Boneblack, 836  
 Beet Sugar, 6906-6907  
 Sugar Beets, 686  
 Maple Sugar, 6907, 4278  
 History of Sugar Trade, 6908
- Tanning**. [See *Leather*, above.]
- Tea**, 7042-7049  
 Tea Industry in India, 7048  
 East India Company, 2089  
 Sir Thomas Lipton, 4041, 7047
- Telegraph**  
 [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]
- Telephone**  
 [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]
- Textile Industry**, 7130-7132  
 [See *Cloth Industry*, above.]
- Tobacco**, 7193-7198  
 Manufactured Products, 7196  
 Cigars, 7196

Cigarettes, 1425, 7196  
 Smoking and Chewing Tobacco, 7196  
 Snuff, 6666  
 Tobacco Pipes, 5626  
   American Indian Pipes, 5626  
   Calumet, 1100  
   Pipestone, 1100  
   Brier-Root Pipes, 5626  
   Calabash Pipes, 1071-1072  
   Clay Pipes, 1458, 5626  
   Corncob Pipes, 1687  
   Meerscham Pipes, 4380  
   Porcelain Pipes, 5626  
   Hookah, 5626  
   Mouthpieces, 5626  
     Amler, 244  
     Bakelite, 573  
 Toys, 7229-7231  
   The Home-Made Toy, 7229  
   Toy-Making a Vast Industry, 7230-7231  
   A Home Industry in Germany, 7231  
   Nuremberg the Center of Factory Production, 7231, 2774  
   Toy Business of the United States, 7231  
   Doll Factories of America, 1996  
   Scenes in a Doll Factory, 2000  
 Typewriter, 7339-7340, 7900-7901  
 Varnish, 7464-7465  
   Constituents, 7464  
   Resinous Gums, 2986, 7464  
     Copal, 7009  
     Lac, 3829-3830  
     Mastic, 7464  
     Sandarac, 7464  
     Amber, 244  
     Asphalt, 453  
     Gilsonite, 454  
   Alcohol, 194  
   Linseed Oil, 4036  
   Turpentine, 7321-7322  
   Coloring Matters, 7464  
     Dragon's Blood, 7464  
     Saffron, 6296  
     Gamboge, 2673  
     Cochineal, 1516-1517, 2063  
     Turmeric, 7319  
   Coal-Tar Dyes, 1508, 2063

Solvents, 7464  
 Japan (Varnish), 7465  
 Japanning, 3639  
   Lacquer Ware, 3834-3835  
 Watch-Making, 7662-7664  
   Centers of American Manufacture, 7664  
   Waltham, Mass, 7664  
   Elgin, Ill., 7664  
   Canton, Ohio, 1177  
 Weaving, 7693-7695  
   [See *Cloth*, above.]  
 Welding, 7703-7704  
   Oxy-Acetylene Welding, 7703  
   Acetylene, 19  
   Oxygen, 5282  
   Blowpipe, 802  
   Filler Rod, 7703  
   Electric Welding, 7703-7704, 2190  
   Thermit Welding, 7704  
   Thermit Steel, 7704  
   Aluminum, 239  
   Iron Oxide, 5281  
 Well Boring, 7705  
   Artesian Well, 424  
   Depth of Wells, 424, 7705  
   [See *Petroleum*, above.]  
 Wine, 7794-7795  
   Fermented Juice of Grape, 7794, 2908  
   Kinds of Wine, 7794  
   Dry Wines, 7794  
     Champagne, 1301  
     Claret, 1454  
     Burgundy, 1027, 7794  
     Rhine Wine, 7794  
     Moselle, 4670  
     Sherry, 6559  
   Sweet Wines, 7794  
     Champagne, 1301  
     Madeira, 4198  
     Port, 7794  
   White and Red Wines, 7794  
   Still or Sparkling Wines, 7794  
   Fortified Wines, 7794  
   California Wine Industry, 7794  
 Wire, 7800-7801  
 Wool Industry, 7834-7844  
   [See under *Cloth*, above.]

### Selling Industries and Sales Factors

Advertising, 60-66  
   [See *Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Board of Trade, 808-810  
   How Grain Prices Are Fixed, 809  
   Supply and Demand, 809, 6939  
   World's Greatest Wheat Markets, 809  
     Liverpool, 809, 4060  
     Chicago, 809  
   Transaction of Business, 810

  Bears and Bulls, 664  
   Standard Grades of Grain, 809  
   Corners in Grain, 810  
 Chain Stores, 1295  
 Chamber of Commerce, 1208  
 Department Store, 1910-1911  
 Mail-Order Houses, 62  
 Cooperation, 1662-1664  
   [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]

### Distributing Industries or Factors of Industry

Aircraft, 129-138  
   Commercial Flying, 129

  The Air Mail, 129-131  
   Air Commerce Act, 130-131

Express and Freight Carried by Air, 131  
 Airplane Routes, 131  
 Airports and Airways, 135  
 Commercial Air Lines Successful, 136  
 Air Lines in Europe, 136-137  
 Newspaper Delivery by Airplane, 4955  
**Automobile**, 534-546  
 Advantages for Distributive Purposes, 539  
 [See *Manufacturing Industries*, above.]  
**Express**, 2347-2348  
**Railroads**, 5973-5984  
 Value to Settlement and Industry, 5974  
 Railroads in the United States, 5976-5977  
 Transcontinental Lines, 5976-5977  
 Other Class 1 Railroads, 5977  
 Short-Haul Competition, 5981-5982  
 Electric Trolley Lines, 5981  
 Motorized Service on Railroad Lines, 5982  
 Railroads of the World, 5984  
**Parcel Post**, 5366-5367  
**Shipping (Merchant Marine)**, 4404-4406  
 Commerce, 1582-1583  
 British Merchant Marine, 4404  
 American Merchant Marine, 4404-4406

Government and the Shipping Business, 4405  
 Sale of Shipping Board Ships, 4405  
 Great Lakes Commerce, 2935  
 Freight Carried, 2935  
 Iron Ore, 3535, 3551  
 Coal, 1497-1503  
 Grain, 2888-2890, 7731-7736  
 Lumber, 4145-4153  
 Flour, 2486-2490  
 Copper, 1667-1669  
 Package Freight, 2935  
 Shipping Facilities for Crops of Canada, 2935  
**Canals**, 1157-1161  
 Water Highways for Freight, 1157  
 Canals of the United States, 1158-1159, 1161  
 Canals of Canada, 1159, 1161  
 Canals of Europe, 1159-1160, 1161  
 The Panama Canal, 5331-5337  
 The Suez Canal, 6903-6904  
**Roads and Streets**, 6140-6145  
 [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]

### Service Industries

**Banks and Banking**, 604-613  
 Functions of a Bank, 604, 605  
 Trust Companies, 606  
 National Banks, 607  
 Federal Reserve System, 608  
 Federal Reserve Districts, 609  
 Branch Banking, 610  
 Savings Banks, 610, 613  
 Postal Savings Banks, 613  
 State Banks, 613  
 Banking in Canada, 613  
 Bank of England, 601-602  
 [See, also, Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Barber**. [See *Hairdressing*, below.]  
**Cleaning Processes (Industries)**, 1460-1461  
**Hairdressing**, 3008-3009  
 The Vogue of Wigs, 3008, 7758  
 Ancient Wigs, 7758  
 The Louis XIV Style, 3008  
 Modern Wigs, 7758  
 Extreme Styles in France, 3008  
 Nineteenth-Century Styles, 3008  
 The Chignon, 3008  
 Present-Day Development, 3008-3009  
 Barber, 618  
 An Ancient Industry, 618, 6005

Razor, 6004  
 Beard, 663  
 Beauty Shops, 618  
 Cosmetics, 1702-1703  
 Cosmetic Art, 1703  
 Perfume, 5486-5487  
**Hotel**, 3257-3258  
**Insurance**, 3470-3472  
 Risks of Enterprise and Industry, 3470  
 Fire Insurance, 3471  
 Marine Insurance, 3470, 3471  
 Accident Insurance, 3470, 3472  
 Life Insurance, 3471-3472  
 Organization of the Business, 3471  
 Joint-Stock Companies, 3471  
 Mutual Companies, 3471  
 Fraternal Societies, 2598, 3471  
 [See, also, Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Newspapers**, 4953-4958  
 [See under *Manufacturing Industries*, above.]  
**Radio**, 5935-5968  
**Telegraph**, 7058-7066  
**Telephone**, 7067-7080  
 [See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]

### Miscellany

**Accidents in Industry**, 16  
 Employers' Liability, 2220-2230  
 Workmen's Compensation, 2230  
**Industrial Insurance**, 2230, 3472  
**Industrial Legislation**, 3822-3824

[See Outlines on *Business* and *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Industrial Schools**, 3445  
 Trade Schools, 6428  
**Technical and Industrial Education**, 7052, 6428



# INVENTION AND APPLIED MECHANICS

## The Story of Invention

Underlying Forces and Motives, 3493, 3497

Edison's Definition, 2109

Protection to Inventors, 3497

Patent Rights and Laws, 5412-5414

Ancient and Modern Inventions

Illustrated, 3494-3496

Lists, 3497-3500

Some Inventions of Antiquity

Stone Implements and Weapons, 3494, 6845, 6846

Fire-Making Tools, 2426, 3494

Abacus, 2

Archimedean Inventions

Archimedean Screw, 357, 3500

Pulley and Lever, 358

Burning Glasses, 358

Battering-Ram, 652

Bow and Arrow, 897, 3494

Catapult, 1239, 3494

Galleys, 2666, 5074, 3494, 7272

Glass, 2832, 3494

Traditional Discovery by Phenicians, 5570

Irrigation Device (Chinese), 3557

Lock, 4073

Gallic Reaper, 3500

Sling, 6642-6643

Crude Steam Engine, 3500

Hero of Alexandria, 6819

Time-Measuring Devices

Sundial, 6927

Hourglass, 3261, 3494

Water Clock, 1485

Wheel and Axle, 3494, 7737

Important Inventions of the Middle Ages

Mariner's Compass, 1592-1593

Gunpowder, 2987-2988

Use at Battle of Crécy, 1738, 2987

Contributions of Bacon and Schwartz, 2987

Firearms, 2429, 3495

Invention of the Rifle, 6124-6125

Dial Clock of De Vick, 1486

Printing with Movable Type, 3495, 5817

Johannes Gutenberg, 2989-2990

Laurens Coster, 5817

William Caxton, 1263, 1264

Sailing Vessel, 3495

Canal Locks (Branca), 3500, 1158

Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries

Knitting Machine (Lee), 3807

Thermoscope (Galileo), 7145

Telescope (Lippershey), 7081

Alcohol Thermometer (Duke of Tuscany), 7145

Electric Machine, 2182, 2172

Stereopticon (Kircher), 4704, 6828-6829

Turbine (Barker's Mill), 621, 7298

Eighteenth-Century Inventions, 3500

Pianoforte, 3500

- Bartolommeo Cristofori, 5598  
 John Isaac Hawkins, 5598, 5600  
 Jonas Chickering, 5600  
 Caisson for Bridge-Building (Labeyle), 3500, 1070-1071  
 Stove, 3500, 6871  
   Benjamin Franklin, 2597  
 Lightning Rod (Franklin), 4003  
   Franklin's Experiment, 2173  
 Carding Machine, 3046  
 Spinning Jenny, 3500, 6766  
   James Hargreaves, 3046  
 Spinning Frame, 403, 3500  
   Sir Richard Arkwright, 403  
 Nail-Making Machine, 4802  
   Ezekiel Reed, 4802  
 Balloon, 584-586, 3497  
   Montgolfier Brothers, 3497  
 Cotton Gin, 3495, 3498, 7754  
   Eli Whitney, 7754  
 Steam Engine, 3499, 6810-6820  
   James Watt, 6818-6820, 7681-7682  
 Steel Plow (Wood), 3499, 5659-5662  
   John Deere, 5660  
 Submarine, 3499, 6892  
   David Bushnell, 6892  
   [See *Nineteenth-Century Inventions*, below.]  
 Voltaic Battery, 2168, 7565  
   Alessandro Volta, 7565  
**Nineteenth-Century Inventions**, 3493, 3497-3500  
   Acetylene Process (Woehler), 3497  
   Acetylene Gas, 19  
   Calcium Carbide, 19-20, 1073  
   Thomas L. Willson, 20, 1073  
   Adding Machine (D. E. Felt), 3496, 3497  
   Air Brake, 111-112, 3497  
   George Westinghouse, 111, 7714  
   Artificial Silk. [See *Rayon*, below.]  
   Automatic Block Signal (Hall), 3497, 5981  
   Automatic Telephone (Strowger), 3497, 7071-7073  
   Automobile, 534-546  
   [See *Machines*, below.]  
   Bessemer Process, 3497, 3542-3549  
   Sir Henry Bessemer, 721  
   Bicycle (Michaux), 3497, 733-734  
   Bunsen Burner, 1021-1022, 3497  
   Robert W. E. Bunsen, 1022  
   Calculating Machines (Felt), 1073-1074, 3497  
   Carpet Sweeper (Bissell), 3497  
   Cash Register, 1228-1229, 3497  
   James Ritty, 1228  
   Centrifugal Cream Separator (DeLaval), 3498, 1737-1738  
   Coal-Tar Products, 1338, 1508  
   Anthracene, 1508  
   Benzene, 710, 1508  
   Carbolic Acid, 1191-1192, 1508  
   Creosote, 1508, 1741  
   Naphthalene, 1508  
   Pyridine, 1508  
   Toluene, 1508  
   Aniline Dyes, 289, 1508  
   Artificial Perfume, 5486  
   Drugs, 1508  
   Explosives, 2346  
   Color Photography, 3498, 5584  
   Ducos du Hauron, 5584  
   Corn Planter, 1683  
   Lister Planter, 1683  
   Cyanide Process, 1795, 3498  
   Mac Arthur and Forrest Brothers, 3498  
   Cylinder Printing Press, 3498, 5820-5823  
   Richard Hoe, 3190  
   Friedrich König, 5821  
   Daguerreotype, 1805-1806, 3498  
   L. J. M. Daguerre, 1806, 5582  
   Diesel Engine, 1944, 3498  
   Rudolph Diesel, 1944  
   Dirigible Airship, 115, 3498  
   Henri Giffard, 115  
   Disk Records, 3498, 5573  
   Émile Berliner, 5573  
   Dynamite, 2064-2066, 2346, 5036  
   Alfred Nobel, 2064, 2346  
   Electrical Household Devices (Illustrated), 2177, 3496  
   Electric Arc Lamp, 2181, 3498  
   Charles F. Brush, 983  
   Electric Automobile (Grounelle), 3498  
   Electric Car, 3496  
   [See *Trolley Car*, below.]  
   Electric Elevator, 2204, 3498  
   Electric Furnace (Heroult), 2646, 3498, 3539, 3545  
   Electric Light, 2178-2182, 3498  
   Thomas A. Edison, 2108-2110  
   Electric Motor (Pacinotti and Gramme), 3498, 2184-2187  
   Michael Faraday, 2370  
   Electric Railway (Siemens and Halske), 2187-2190, 3498  
   Electric Storage Battery (Plante), 6849-6850, 3498  
   Electric Welder (Thomson), 3498, 2190  
   Elevator (Otis), 3498, 2204  
   Fountain Pen, 3497, 5450  
   Gas Engine (Otto), 3498, 2700-2702  
   Gas Lighting for Railway Cars (Pintsch), 2700, 3498  
   Gas Mantle, 3498, 7708  
   Karl A. Welsbach, 7708  
   Gasoline Automobile (Daimler), 534-546  
   Various American Inventors, 536  
   George B. Selden's Patent, 536  
   Gasoline Engine (Otto), 2702, 3496  
   Glider, 119, 150, 3498  
   Otto Lilienthal, 119  
   L. P. Mouillard, 119  
   Octave Chanute, 119  
   Percy Pitcher, 119  
   Wright Brothers, 119-120, 7896-7897  
   Gyroscope (Bohnenberger), 3498, 2994-2995  
   Hard Rubber, 3498, 6227



- Charles Goodyear, 2871  
 Hydraulic Elevator, 2204, 3498  
 Hydraulic Tunneling Shield (Beach), 3498, 7295  
 Ice-Making Machinery, 3328-3329, 3498  
 Induction Motor, 3498  
 Nikola Tesla, 7116-7117  
 Internal-Combustion Engine, 2700-2702  
 [See *Gas Engine*, above.]  
 Knitting Machinery (Lamb), 3498, 3807  
 Lace-Making Machine (Heathcot), 3498, 3833  
 Linotype, 3496, 3498, 4033-4036  
 Ottmar Mergenthaler, 4036  
 [See *Machines*, below.]  
 Locomotive, 3495, 3499, 4076-4082  
 Nicholas Cugnot, 4076  
 Richard Trevithick, 4076  
 George Stephenson, 4078, 6828  
 Stephenson's First Locomotive, 4076  
 Machine Gun, 4181-4184  
 The Maxim, 4181  
 Sir Hiram Maxim, 4350  
 The Hotchkiss, 4181  
 Benjamin B. Hotchkiss, 4181  
 Matches, 3498, 4339-4343  
 Walker and Phillips, 3498  
 Mechanical Ore-Unloader, 3499, 3541  
 Mercerizing Process, 3499, 4403-4404  
 John Mercer, 4403  
 Moving Pictures, 3499, 4703-4729  
 Thomas A. Edison, 2110  
 [See *Machines*, below.]  
 Multiplex Telegraph, 3499, 7063  
 Thomas A. Edison, 2110  
 Oil Engine, 1944, 3499  
 Rudolph Diesel, 1944  
 Oil Wells (Drake), 3499, 5520-5529  
 Phonograph, 3496, 3499, 5572-5574  
 Thomas A. Edison, 2109  
 Phosgene, 5574  
 Photograph Film, 3499, 5580  
 George Eastman, 2090  
 Photographic Negative (Talbot), 3499, 5582  
 Photography, 3495, 3499, 5582  
 Piano Player (White), 3499, 5600-5601  
 Henri Fourneaux, 5600  
 Pneumatic Tire (Dunlop), 3499, 5670-5675  
 Portland Cement (Lürman), 3499, 1270-1282  
 Joseph Aspdin, 1272  
 Radio, 3499, 5935-5968  
 [See *Wireless Telegraph*, below.]  
 Railroad Locomotive, 3499, 4076-4082  
 [See *Locomotive*, above; *Machines*, below.]  
 Rayon (De Chardonnet), 6004  
 Reaper, 3499, 6014-6019  
 Cyrus H. McCormick, 4174, 6015  
 Reinforced Concrete (Monier), 3499, 1598  
 Rubber Tires (Thevanon), 3499  
 Rubber Vulcanizing, 3499, 6227  
 Charles Goodyear, 2871  
 Safety Match (Pasch and Lundstrom), 3499, 4339  
 Screw Propeller, 3499, 5846  
 John Ericsson, 2286  
 John Fitch, 5846  
 Sewing Machine, 3499, 6519-6520  
 Elias Howe, 3266-3267  
 Thomas Saint, 6519  
 Barthélemy Thimonier, 6519  
 Wilcox and Gibbs, 6520  
 A. B. Wilson, 6520  
 Isaac Singer, 6520  
 Sewing Machine for Shoes (McKay), 3499, 6520  
 Sleeping Car, 3499, 5978  
 George M. Pullman, 5878  
 Steamboat, 3499, 6562-6567  
 Robert Fulton, 2634-2635, 6892  
 Steam Turbine (Parsons), 3499, 7299  
 Steel Pens, 5450  
 Joseph Gillott, 5450  
 Stereoscope, 6829-6830  
 Wheatstone, Brewster, Holmes, 6829  
 Stock Ticker (Laws), 3499, 6840-6842  
 E. A. Calahan, 6840  
 Submarine (Modern Type), 6886-6893  
 John P. Holland, 3195-3196, 6887  
 Submarine Cable, 1060-1063  
 Cyrus W. Field, 1062, 2408  
 Lord Kelvin, 1060, 3752  
 Swivel Truck (Winans), 3499  
 Telautograph, 3499, 7057  
 Elisha Gray, 2919  
 Telegraph, 3499, 7058-7066  
 Samuel F. B. Morse, 4664  
 Telephone, 3499, 7067-7080  
 Alexander Graham Bell, 703  
 Telephonograph (Poulsen and Pedersen), 3500  
 Thrasher (Roberts), 3500, 7159-7160  
 Torpedo, 7218  
 Robert Whitehead, 7219  
 Trolley Car, 3496, 3500, 2187-2190  
 Van Depoele and Sprague, 3500  
 Two-Cycle Gas Engine (Clerk), 3500, 2702  
 Typewriter (Thurber), 3500, 3496, 7339-7340  
 C. L. Sholes, 7339  
 S. W. Soule, 7339  
 Carlos Glidden, 7339  
 E. Remington & Son, 7339  
 Burt Typographer, 7339  
 Vacuum Cleaner, 7440  
 Vestibuled Cars (Sessions), 3500  
 Wax Removable Records, 3500, 5573  
 Chichester A. Bell, 5573  
 Charles S. Tainter, 5573  
 Wireless-Controlled Boats and Torpedoes  
 Nikola Tesla, 7116-7117  
 Wireless Telegraph (Radio), 3496, 3500, 5935-5968  
 Guglielmo Marconi, 4287-4288  
 Thomas Young, 5936  
 James C. Maxwell, 2194, 5936  
 Heinrich Hertz, 2194, 5937  
 Robert A. Millikan, 4489-4490, 5937

- Sir William Crookes, 1754, 5937  
 Edouard Branly, 5938  
 Sir Oliver Lodge, 4086, 5938  
 Professor Popoff, 5938  
 Lee De Forest, 1873, 5941  
 [See *Radio Apparatus*, under *Machines*, below.]  
 Wire Nails, 4802  
 X-Ray, 3500, 6159-6162  
   Wilhelm K. Roentgen, 6162  
   Crookes Tubes, 6159, 1754  
   The Coolidge Tube, 6159  
   W. D. Coolidge, 6159  
 Zeppelin, 115-118, 137-138, 7973  
   Ferdinand von Zeppelin, 7972-7973  
**Twentieth-Century Inventions**, 3496-3500  
 Acids, Alcohols, etc., from Water Gas, 1338  
 Airplane, 118-151, 3496, 3497  
   Wright Brothers, 118-121, 7896-7897  
 Artificial Leather, 1339  
   Fabrikoid, 1339  
 Artificial Lumber, 1339  
 Artificial Rubber, 1339  
 Audion, Triode, or Vacuum Tube, 5945-5946  
   Thomas A. Edison, 2108-2110  
   J. A. Fleming, 5946  
   Lee De Forest, 1873, 5946  
 Autogenous Welder, 2190, 3497, 7703-7704  
 Bakelite, 573, 1338  
   L. H. Backeland, 573  
 Carbice (Dry Ice), 1190, 1339  
 Caterpillar Tractor (Roberts), 3497, 7233  
 Cellophane, 1339  
 Cornstalk Paper, 1687-1688, 5351-5352  
   Bela Dornier, 5352  
 Electric Lighting for Trains. (Stone), 2181, 3498  
 Electric Refrigeration, 3496, 6041-6042  
 Gasoline Refining Process (Rittman), 3498, 5526-5529  
 Gas Refrigeration, 6042  
 Hydroaeroplane (Hydroplane, or Seaplane), 150, 3498  
   Glenn H. Curtiss, 1791  
 Hydrocarbons from Water Gas, 1338, 3306  
 Insulin, 1340, 3470  
   F. G. Banting, 614  
   J. J. R. MacLeod, 614  
 Levulose (Sugar from Artichokes), 430-431, 1339  
 Machine Gun (Lewis), 3498, 4181-4183  
 Mechanical Stoker, 3499  
 Methanol, 1338, 7829  
 Motor Fuels from Coal (Bergius), 1338  
 Multiple-Unit Control for Electric Cars (Sprague), 3499  
 Nitrogen from the Air, 5034  
 Optophone (D'Albe), 3499  
 Paraffin Paper, 5351  
 Pictures by Wireless, 3499, 5583-5584, 7075  
   Telephotos, 5583  
   Radio Corporation of America, 3499  
   R. H. Ranger, 5584  
 Stainless Steel, 1340, 1418  
 Chromium, 1417-1418  
 Talking Pictures, 4717-4721  
   Bell Telephone Laboratories, 4717  
   Theodore W. Case, 4717, 3499  
 Telephone Improvements, 7071-7077  
   Automatic Telephone, 7071-7073  
   Electrophone, 7073  
   Radio Telephony. [See *Wireless Telephony*, below.]  
   Railway Telephones, 7074  
   Recording Telephone, 7076  
   Kurt Stille, 7076  
   Louis Blattner, 7076  
   Trans-Atlantic Telephony, 5942, 7076-7077  
 Teletype, 7083-7084  
   Frank E. Gannett, 7084  
 Television, 3500, 7084-7087  
   C. Francis Jenkins, 7087  
   J. W. Baird, 3500, 7087  
   E. F. W. Alexander, 7087  
   H. E. Ives, 7087  
 Televox, 7087-7089  
   R. J. Wensley, 7087  
   Robot, 1222, 7089  
 Tungsten Lamp, 2179, 3500, 7292  
   Just & Hanaman, 3500  
 Vacuum Tube for Radio. [See *Audion*, above.]  
 Voice-Controlled Writing Machine (Flowers), 3500  
 Wallboard from Cornstalks, 1339  
 Wireless Controlled Torpedo, 7218  
   John Hays Hammond, Jr., 3029  
 Wireless Telephony, 5941-5968  
   Bell Company Engineers, 3500, 5941  
   General Electric Company, 5941  
 Wood Alcohol, Synthetic. [See *Methanol*, above.]

## Applied Mechanics

### Definitions of Mechanics, 4370

Sir Isaac Newton, 4960-4963

### Branches of Mechanics, 4370

Kinematics, 3972, 4370

Dynamics, 2064, 4370

Statics, 6816

Kinetics, 4370

Hydrostatics, 3309, 4370

Hydraulics, 3305-3306, 4370

Pneumatics, 5670

### Physics, 5594-5597

Science Which Includes Mechanics, 5594

How Man Uses Knowledge of Physics, 5595

[See Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]

### Mechanical Powers, 4368-4370

The Six Simple Machines (Illustrated), 4368-4369

Lever, 3950-3951

Wheel and Axle, 7737-7739

Pulley, 5877-5878

Block and Tackle, 795-796

The Endless Chain, 795

Inclined Plane, 3373

Wedge, 7698

Screw, 6453-6454

### Mechanical Units, 4370

Standards for Measuring Mechanical Quantities, 4370

Foot-Pound System, 2529, 2530, 4370

Poundal, 2070, 2529

C. G. S. System, 2070, 7360

Centimeter, 7360

Gram, 7360

Second, 7360

Dyne, 2070, 2529

Erg, 2070, 2529

Megadyne, 2070

Metric System, 4424-4427

Units of Velocity, 4370

Of Force, 4370

Of Work, 4370

Of Pressure, 4370

Denominate Numbers, 1898-1903

Electric Measurement, 2183, 7681

Ampere, 265-266

Ammeter, 266

Ohm, 5178

Ohm's Law, 5178

Volt, 7565

Voltmeter, 7566-7567

Watt, 7681

Kilowatt, 3775, 7681

### Machines in Common Use

**Air Brake**, 111-112, 1595

**Air Compressor**, 1594-1595

Practical Uses

Air Brake, 111

Pneumatic Tools, 5675-5676

Pneumatic Tubes, 5675-5676

Tunneling, 7295-7297

**Aircraft**, 112-151

Man's Early Efforts to Fly, 113, 584

The Balloon, 113-115, 584-586

Aircraft Lighter than Air, 115-118

Santos-Dumont's Experiments, 115, 6382-6383

Lebaudy Brothers' Airships, 115

Zeppelins, 115-118, 137-138, 7878, 7973

Count Zeppelin, 115, 7972-7973

The Graf Zeppelin, 115-117, 137-138, 7973

American Zeppelins, 116-117

Use of Helium Gas, 116, 3131-3134

Amundsen's Flight to the North Pole, 142-144

Roald Amundsen, 268-269

Aircraft Heavier than Air, 118-151

The Airplane, 118-126

Glider Experiments, 119

Sir Hiram Maxim's Work, 118, 4350

Professor Langley's Experiments, 118, 3857

Wilbur and Orville Wright, 118-121, 7896-7897

An Early Curtiss Model, 121

Glenn H. Curtiss, 1791

Flying Boat (Hydroplane), 1791

Materials of Construction, 124

Bamboo, 121, 593-594

Wood, 124

Fabric (Cloth, Silk, etc.), 124

Wires, 124

Metal, 124

Aluminum, 239

Duralumin, 124, 2056

Steel, 126

Details of Construction (Illustrated), 125-127

Autogyro, 138-139, 5846

Helicopter, 138

Airplane Carrier, 126-127

Aircraft in the World War, 127-129, 7876, 7878

Aeronautical Terms (Glossary), 150

Commercial Flying, 129-137

First Great Feats in Flying, 139-151

Lindbergh's Atlantic Conquest, 147-151

[See Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]

**Air Engine**, 1595

**Air Pump**, 151-152

Practical Applications, 151

Lift Pump, 151, 5880

Vacuum Cleaner, 7440

**Anemometer**, 7790-7791

Use by the Weather Bureau, 7791, 7687-7688

**Archimedean Screw**, 357-358

**Artillery**, 434-437

Howitzer, 3268

Machine Gun, 4181-4184

Naval Guns, 4848

Modern Artillery (Illustrated), 434-436

[See Outline on *Civics (Army and Navy)*, in this GUIDE.]

**Automobile**, 534-546

American Automobile Pioneers, 535-536

George B. Selden, 536

Charles B. Duryea, 536

Elwood Haynes, 535, 536, 3100

Alexander Winton, 536

Frank B. Stearns, 536

R. E. Olds, 536

Henry Ford, 536, 2531

Present-Day Motor Cars, 537

Construction and Operation, 540-542

The Automobile in War, 543

Armored Cars, 543

Tractors, 7233

Caterpillar Type, 7233

Tanks, 7233

- The Automobile Industry, 544-545
- Balance**, 575, 7701-7702
- Spring Balance, 575
- Steelyard, 575, 6822-6823
- Weighing Scale, 7701-7702
- Barker's Mill**, 621
- Barometer**, 625-627
- Battering-Ram**, 652
- Bell**, 702-703
- How Bells Are Made, 703
- Bell Metal, 703, 975
- Uses of Bells, 703
- Curfew Bell, 1786
- Nautical Bell, 6568
- Florida's Singing Tower, 2485, 6619-6621
- Edward W. Bok, 816
- Bellows**, 706
- Block and Tackle**. [See *Mechanical Powers*, above.]
- Blowing Machines**, 802
- Bellows. [See above.]
- Boiler**, 814
- Steam (Water Changed into Gas), 814, 6817-6819
- Watt Discovering Power of Steam, 6818
- Steam Gauge, 814, 2705
- Safety Valve, 814, 6295-6296
- Water Gauge, 2705
- Horse Power of Boilers, 815
- Mercury-Vapor Boiler, 815
- Boring Machines**, 866-867
- Power-Driven Machines, 867
- Drills, 867
- Boring Outfit for Drilling Wells, 7705
- Pneumatic Tools, 5675
- Calculating Machines**, 1073-1074
- Abacus, 2
- Modern Calculating Machines, 1073
- Cam**, 1102
- Automobile Cams and Cam Shaft, 540
- Camera**, 1107-1108, 5579
- Lens, the Eye of the Camera, 1107, 3934
- How Light Paints a Picture, 5581
- Hand Cameras, 1107
- Kodak, 2090
- George Eastman, 2090
- Moving-Picture Cameras, 4704-4717
- [See *Moving Pictures*, below.]
- The Story of Photography, 5579-5584
- The Camera in the World War, 5582
- Camera Lucida**, 1108, 1109
- Camera Obscura**, 1108, 1109
- Carburetor**, 1194-1195
- Accessory of Internal-Combustion Engines, 540, 1194, 2700-2702
- Cash Register**, 1228-1229
- Chain**, 1294-1295
- Chronometer**, 1418
- Clock**, 1485-1488
- Early Methods of Marking Time, 1485
- The First Sundial, 1485, 6927
- A Modern Sundial, 6928
- The Clepsydra, or Water Clock, 1485, 7666
- Candles, etc., Used to Keep Time, 1486
- The Hourglass, or Sand Glass, 1486, 3260-3261
- A Typical Hourglass, 3261
- The Modern Clock, 1486-1488
- Essential Parts, 1486
- Function of the Pendulum, 1486, 5456
- Escapement, 1486, 7663
- Modern Spring Clocks, 1487
- New Form of Dial (Illustrated), 1486
- Striking Clocks, 1487
- Electric Clocks, 1487
- Famous Clocks, 1487-1488
- Compass**, 1591-1593, 2995
- Mariner's Compass, 1591-1593
- Duration of the Compass, 1592
- Boxing the Compass, 1592
- Gyroscopic Compass, 1592, 2995
- Apparatus on Large Ships, 2995
- Radio Compass, 1592
- Earth-Induction Compass, 1592
- Lindbergh's Successful Use, 1592, 148, 4025-4030
- Surveyor's Compass, 1592
- Compressed-Air Machines**. [See *Pneumatic Tools*, below.]
- Cotton Gin**, 1718-1719, 1713-1714, 7754
- Crane**, 1733
- Electromagnet Cranes, 2193-2194
- Cream Separator**, 1737-1738
- Principle of the Separator, 1737
- Centrifugal Force, 1289
- Dictaphone**, 1941
- Dictograph**, 1943
- Used in Crime Detection, 1943
- Die**, 1944
- Diesel Engine**, 1944
- Similarity to Gas Engine, 1944, 2700-2702
- Diesel Marine Engines, 1944
- Motor Ships, 6566
- Dipping Needle**, 1956
- Device for Measuring Earth's Magnetism, 1956, 4218
- Dredge**, 2030-2031
- Electrical Apparatus**. [See *Electricity*, in Outline on *Physics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Engine**, 2236
- Air Engine. [See above.]
- Gas Engine. [See below.]
- Hydraulic Engine. [See below.]
- Solar (Heat) Engine. [See below.]
- Steam Engine. [See below.]
- Field Glass**, 2410-2411
- Filter**, 2419
- Filters in Common Use, 2419
- Charcoal, 1308-1309
- Sand, 6361
- Powdered Glass, 2419
- Coal Cinders, 2419
- Firearms**, 2429
- Artillery, 434-437. [See above.]
- Cannon, 1173
- Machine Gun, 4181-4184. [See below.]

- Musket, 4777-4778  
 Revolver, 6083  
 Rifle, 6575-6576. [See below.]  
 Shotgun, 6575-6576. [See below.]  
**Galvanometer**, 2670  
**Gas Engine**, 2700-2702  
   Used for Many Purposes, 2702  
     Automobile, 537-542  
     Motorcycle, 4688  
     Motorboat, 4687  
     Farm Uses, 2702, 2703  
     Industrial Uses, 2702, 2703  
**Gauge**, 2705  
   Steam Gauge, 2705  
   Water Gauge, 2705  
   [See *Boiler*, above.]  
**Gearing**, 2708, 2709  
   Many Forms of Gear, 2708  
   Cog Wheels, 2708, 2709  
   Endless Belts, 2708  
   Screws, or Worm Gear, 2708, 6453  
     Endless Screw, 6454  
     Friction Wheels, 2708  
**Governor**, 2883  
**Guillotine**, 2980  
   Used in the French Revolution, 2616-2618  
**Gyroscope**, 2994-2995  
**Hectograph**, 3123  
**Heliograph**, 3130  
   Morse Code Used, 3130, 7063  
   Distance Capacity, 7063  
**Hydraulic Engine**, 3303  
   Utilizes Power of Falling Water, 3303, 7670  
   Sir William (Lord) Armstrong, 412  
   Three Types in Use, 412  
   Water-Pressure Engines, 3303  
   Water Wheels, 7674, 7676  
   Turbines, 7298-7299  
**Hydraulic Press**, 3303-3304  
   How the Press Operates, 3304, 3305  
   Force Pump, 5880-5881  
   Water Pressure, 7671  
   Lever, 3950-3951  
**Hydraulic Ram**, 3304-3305  
**Hygrometer**, 3314-3315  
**Inclined Plane**. [See *The Six Simple Machines*, under *Mechanical Powers*, above.]  
**Injector**, 3453  
**Interferometer**, 3477-3478. [See Outline on *Astronomy*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Internal-Combustion Engine**. [See *Gas Engine*, above.]  
**Kaleidoscope**, 3731  
**Knife**, 3804-3805  
**Knitting Machine**, 3807  
**Lathe**, 3884, 3885  
**Lens**, 3934-3935  
**Level**, 3950  
**Lever**. [See *The Six Simple Machines*, under *Mechanical Powers*, above.]  
**Lightning Rod**, 4003-4004  
   Franklin's Experiment, 2173, 4003  
**Linotype**, 4033-4036  
**Lock**, 4073-4075  
**Locomotive**, 4076-4082  
   Early Locomotives, 4076-4081  
   Improvement in Locomotive Design, 4078  
   A Giant of the Present Day, 4077  
   Largest Steam Locomotive, 4078  
   Locomotives of the Twentieth-Century Limited, 5980  
   Modern Steam Locomotive, 4078, 4080, 4082  
   Electric Locomotive, 2188, 4080, 4082  
   Railroads Using Electrics, 4082  
     Chicago, Milwaukee, St. Paul & Pacific, 2188, 4082  
     Norfolk & Western, 2188  
     New York Central, 4082  
     New York, New Haven & Hartford, 4082  
     Illinois Central, 2188  
     Chicago & North Western, 4080  
     Virginian Railway, 4080, 4082  
   Modern Electric Locomotives (Illustrated), 2189, 4080, 4082  
   An Oil-Burning Electric, 4082  
   Electric Railway, 2187-2190  
**Loom**, 7694-7695  
   Jacquard Loom, 7695  
   Weaving a Bedspread, 7694  
   Power Loom, 7695  
   Edmund Cartwright, 1223, 7695  
   Weaving, 7693-7695  
   Cotton Weaving, 1714  
   Wool-Weaving Machines, 7839  
**Machine Gun**, 4181-4184  
   The Maxim, 4181  
   Sir Hiram Maxim, 4350  
   The Hotchkiss, 4181  
   Benjamin B. Hotchkiss, 4181  
   The Benet-Mercie, 4181  
   The Vickers, 4181  
   The Browning, 4181, 4184  
**Micrometer**, 4468  
**Microscope**, 4468-4469  
**Mimeograph**, 4496  
**Monotype**, 4598, 4599, 4600-4601  
**Moving-Picture Machines**, 4703-4729  
   Ancient Motion-Picture Devices, 4703  
   Egyptian Toys, 4703-4704  
   Magic Lantern, or Stereopticon, 4704  
   Development of Modern Machines, 4704-4717  
   Rôlet on Persistence of Vision, 4704  
   The Toy Thaumatrope, 4704, 4705  
   Phenakistoscope, 4704, 4705  
   Stroboscopic Disc, 4704  
   Disc Pictures Projected, 4704  
   Zoetrope, 4704, 4705  
   Motion Photographed, 4706  
   Kinematoscope, 4706  
   Phasmatrope, 4706  
   Muybridge's Experiments, 4705, 4706-4707  
   Zoöpraxoscope, 4705, 4707  
   Improved Cameras, 4707

- Marey's Photographic Gun, 4705, 4707  
 Edison Enters the Scene, 4707  
 Kinetoscope, 4705, 4707  
 Kinetograph, 4707  
 Celluloid Film, 4707  
 George Eastman, 2090  
 Motion Pictures Reach the Screen, 4707  
 Latham's Projector, 4708  
 Pantopikon, 4708  
 Enoch J. Rector, 4708  
 Developments in Europe, 4708-4709  
 Cinématographe, 4708  
 Lumière Brothers, 4708  
 The Lumière Camera, 4709  
 Paul's Projector, 4709  
 Birth of English Cinema, 4709  
 Modern Projector Evolved, 4709  
 Armat and Jenkins' Projector, 4709  
 Projector Principle Established, 4710  
 Subsequent Developments, 4710-4711  
 Effect of the Mutoscope, 4710  
 Vitascope Appears, 4710  
 Biograph in the Field, 4710  
 Competition and Patent War, 4710-4711  
 Edison's Projecting Kinetoscope, 4710  
 Vitagraph, 4710  
 Albert E. Smith, 4710  
 J. Stuart Blackton, 4710  
 Vitaphone, 4710  
 Selig Polyscope, 4711  
 Edison Licensees, 4711  
 The First Moving-Picture Trust, 4710  
 Moving-Picture Apparatus, 4724-4725, 4728-4729  
 Pictures That Talk, 4717-4722  
 Mechanism for Talking Pictures, 4720-4721  
 Sound-on-Disc Method, 4720  
 Microphones, 4720  
 Wax Disc Record, 4720  
 Synchronized Cameras and Disc, 4720  
 Reproduction, 4720  
 Sound-on-Film Method, 4720  
 Picture and Sound on Same Film, 4720  
 Recording Light, 4720  
 How the Sounds Reach Audience, 4718, 4720  
 Equipment Required, 4721  
 Dual Sound Projector System, 4721  
 Amateur Moving-Picture Machines, 4729  
**Mowing Machine**, 4729  
**Multigraph**, 4735  
**Numbering Machine**, 5113  
**Opera Glass**, 5225  
 Formation of the Image (Illustrated), 5225  
 [See *Field Glass*, above.]  
**Ophthalmoscope**, 5226  
**Paper-Making Machine**, 5345-5351  
 The Fourdrinier Machine, 5345  
**Pedometer**, 5439  
**Periscope**, 5488-5489, 6887  
**Phonograph**, 5573-5574  
 Development of the Phonograph, 5573  
 The First Talking Machine, 5573  
 Thomas A. Edison, 2108-2110  
 Edison's Tin-Foil Cylinder, 5573  
 The Wax Cylinder Invented, 5573  
 Chichester A. Bell, 5573  
 Charles S. Tainter, 5573  
 The Graphophone, 5573  
 Berliner's Gramophone, 5573  
 Both Cylinder and Disk Machines now Made, 5573  
 [See *Dictaphone*, above.]  
 The Electric Phonograph, 5573-5574  
 Recording Sound on Film, 4717-4722  
 [See *Pictures That Talk*, above.]  
**Pile Driver**, 5615  
 Driven by Steam Power, 5615  
 Steam Hammer, 6820  
**Planing Machine**, 5646  
**Plow**, 5659-5662  
**Plummet**, 5664  
**Pneumatic Tools**, 5675  
 Operated by Compressed Air, 5675, 1594-1595  
 Two General Classes, 5675  
**Polariscope**, 5699  
 Polarimeter, 5699  
 Saccharimeter, 5699  
**Power Machines**  
 [See under individual names, as *Steam Engine*, *Locomotive*, *Gas Engine*, in this Outline.]  
**Printing Press**, 5820-5823  
 Crude Early Presses, 5820  
 Nineteenth-Century Progress, 5821  
 Modern Presses, 5822-5823  
 An Offset Printing Press, 5821  
 Printing, 5817-5820  
 How WORLD BOOK Pictures in Colors Are Printed. [See Illustrations, opposite page 5819.]  
**Pulley**. [See *The Six Simple Machines*, under *Mechanical Powers*, above.]  
**Pulmotor**, 5878-5879  
**Pump**, 5880-5881  
**Radio Apparatus**, 5935-5968  
 Scientific Basis of Radio, 5936-5940  
 Wave Theory of Light, 2194, 5936  
 Electromagnetic Theory of Light, 2194, 5935-5936  
 Hertzian Waves, 2194, 5937  
 Apparatus for Radio Telegraphy, 5943-5948  
 Transmitting Apparatus, 5943-5944, 5946  
 Receiving Apparatus, 5944-5946  
 Apparatus for Radio Telephony, 5948-5968  
 Transmitting Apparatus, 5948-5949  
 Crystal and Vacuum-Tube Sets as Receivers, 5950  
 Grid-Bias Detection, 5946, 5950  
 Amplifiers, 5951-5955  
 Aerials and Antennae, 5955-5956  
 Mechanics of the Receiving Set, 5956-5960  
 Other Radio Devices, 5959-5960

- Radio Transmission of Pictures, 5963-5964  
 Broadcasting Apparatus (Illustrated), 5959, 5961, 5965  
 Symbols Used in Radio, 5947  
 Glossary of Radio Terms, 5967-5968  
 [See, also, Outline on *Transportation and Communication*, in this GUIDE.]
- Rain Gauge, 5987  
 Ratchet, 6000  
 Razor, 6004  
 Reaping Machine, 6014-6018, 6019  
   Devices of Former Days, 6014-6015  
     Ancient Sickle, 6014  
     Hand Sickles, 6014-6015  
     Scythe, 6015  
     Cradle (Illustrated), 6015  
     The First Reaper, 98, 6015  
     Cyrus H. McCormick, 4174, 6015  
     The Modern Harvester, 6015-6016  
     The Combine, 6016, 6018  
     Advance in Reapers (Illustrated), 98, 6016, 6017  
 Revolver, 6083  
   Invention of Samuel Colt, 1618, 6083  
 Rifle, 6124-6126  
 Saccharimeter. [See *Polariscope*, above.]  
 Safety Lamp, 6295  
   Protective Device for Miners, 6295  
   Fire Damp, 2429  
   The Davy Lamp, 6295  
   Sir Humphry Davy, 1840  
 Safety Valve, 6295-6296  
   Appliance for Steam Boilers, 814, 6295  
 Saw, 6404  
 Screw. [See *The Six Simple Machines*, under *Mechanical Powers*, above.]  
 Seismograph, 6485-6486  
 Sewer-Digging Machine, 6512  
   Form of Steam Shovel, 6821  
 Sewing Machine, 6519-6520  
   First Practical Machine, 6519, 6520  
     Elias Howe, 3266-3267  
   The Singer, 6520  
   Wilson's Earliest Pattern, 6520  
 Sextant, 6521-6522  
 Shotgun, 6575-6576  
 Slot Machines, 6644  
 Snowplow, 6666  
 Solar Engine, or Sun Motor, 6678  
 Solar Microscope, 6678  
 Spectroscope, 6749  
   For Study of Spectrum, 3998, 6749  
 Speedometer, 6750, 6751  
   Cyclometer, 6750  
   Mileage Register for Bicycles, 6751  
   Surveyors' Distance Indicator, 6751  
 Spinning Jenny, 6766  
   Replaced by Mule Spinner, 6765, 6766  
   Samuel Crompton, 6765  
 Spinning Wheel, 6765-6766  
 Spirometer, 6768  
 Steam Engine, 6819-6820, 6818  
   Early Experiments with Steam, 6819  
   Hero of Alexandria, 6819  
   Della Porta's Steam Fountain, 6819  
   First Steam Pump, 6819  
   The Newcomen Engine, 6819, 6820  
   Watt Discovering Power of Steam, 6818  
   James Watt, 7681-7682  
   Principal Parts of Steam Engine, 6819  
   Method of Operation, 6820  
   Applications  
     Locomotive, 4076-4082. [See above.]  
     Railroad, 5973-5984  
     Steamship, 6562-6567  
 Steam Hammer, 6820-6821  
   James Nasmyth, 4812  
 Steam Shovel, 6821  
   Use on Panama Canal, 6821  
 Steam Turbine, 7299. [See *Turbine*, below.]  
 Steelyard. [See *Balance*, above.]  
 Stencil, 6826  
 Stenotype, 6826-6827  
   W. S. Ireland, Inventor, 6827  
 Stereopticon, 6828-6829  
   Development of Magic Lantern, 4704  
   Athanasius Kircher, 4704  
   Principal Parts, 6828-6829  
 Stereoscope, 6829-6830  
   The First Stereoscope, 6829  
   Sir Charles Wheatstone, 7736-7737  
   Improved Instruments, 6829  
   Sir David Brewster, 6829  
   Oliver Wendell Holmes, 3199-3200  
   Stereoscopic Camera for Moving Pictures, 4721-4722  
 Stethoscope, 6831  
   The Phonendoscope, 6831  
 Telautograph, 7057  
   Instrument for Transmitting Handwriting, 7057  
   Elisha Gray, Inventor, 2919  
 Telegraph, 7058-7066  
   The Electromagnet, 2193, 7064  
   Sturgeon's Discovery, 7064  
   Joseph Henry, 3147, 7064  
   First Telegraphed Message, 7058  
   Samuel F. B. Morse, 4664, 7058, 7061, 7066  
   The First Morse Recorders, 7059  
   Principle of the Telegraph, 7060  
   A Simple Telegraph, 7060-7061  
   Simple Sounder and Key, 7060  
   Modern Key, Sounder, and Relay, 7062  
   Codes Used in Telegraphy, 7062-7063  
     Morse Code, 7063  
     Continental Code, 7063  
   Sending Simultaneous Messages over One Wire, 7063  
   Long-Distance Telegraphy, 7063  
   Use of the Dynamo, 2066-2070, 7063  
   Batteries, 7063  
   Storage Cells, 7063  
   Gravity (Daniell) Cells, 2169, 7063  
   Photographs by Telegraph, 7064  
   Submarine Cable, 1060-1063, 7065  
   Printing Telegraphs, 7059

- Simplex Automatic Printer, 7059, 7062  
 Multiplex Printer, 7059  
 Wireless Telegraph. [See *Radio Apparatus*, above.]  
**Telephone**, 7067-7080  
 Alexander Graham Bell, Inventor, 703  
 Brief History of the Telephone, 7077-7080  
 The Modern Telephone, 7067  
 Special Applications of the Telephone, 7073  
 Sending Pictures by Wire, 7074-7076  
   Receiving Apparatus of Telephotography, 7074-7075  
   Finger-Print Record Telephoned, 7075  
   Moving Pictures Sent by Wire (Illustration), 7075  
 Television. [See below.]  
 Trans-Atlantic Telephony, 7077  
 Improvement in Terminals, 7079  
 Wireless Telephony. [See *Radio Apparatus*, above.]  
**Telescope**, 7083  
   Inventor in Doubt, 7083  
   Galileo's First Telescope, 2665, 7081  
   The Modern Telescope, 7081-7083  
   Astronomical Telescopes, 7081  
     Refracting Type, 7081  
     Reflecting Type, 7081  
   Terrestrial Telescopes, 7081  
   Great Modern Telescopes, 7082-7083  
     Large Refractors  
       Yerkes Observatory, 5144-5146, 7083  
       University of Chicago, 1366-1367  
       Lick Observatory, 5142-5143, 7083  
     Large Reflectors, 7083  
       Mount Wilson Observatory, 5143, 5147, 7083  
       Dominion Observatory, Victoria, B. C., 5142, 7083  
       Lord Rosse's Telescope, 7083  
       Harvard University Telescope, 7083  
       Monster Telescope Planned, 5146, 7083  
**Teletype**, or Teletypesetter, 7083-7084  
 Frank E. Gannett, Inventor, 7084  
**Television Apparatus**, 7084-7087  
   Inventors and Developers, 7087  
   [See *Twentieth-Century Inventions*, above.]  
   Television in Color, 7086  
**Televox**, 7087-7089  
   The Mechanical Man, 7087  
   [See *Robot*, below.]  
   Televox at Work, 7087-7088  
**Robot**, 7088, 7089  
   Televox in Human Form, 7088  
   Rossum's Universal Robots (R.U.R.), 7089  
   A Robot at Work (Cartoon), 1222  
**Theodolite**, 7141  
**Thermograph**, 7144  
**Thermometer**, 7144-7145  
   Galileo's Thermoscope, 2664, 7145  
   Scale Improvements, 7144  
     Ferdinand of Tuscany, 7145  
     Fabri's Scale, 7145  
   First Mercury Thermometer, 7145  
   Gabriel D. Fahrenheit, 2361  
   Three Standard Scales, 7144  
     Fahrenheit, 7144  
     Centigrade, 1286, 7144, 7145  
     Reaumur, 7144, 7145  
   Rules for Changing Scales, 7144-7145  
**Thermostat**, 7146-7147  
**Thrashing Machine**, 7159-7160  
**Torpedo**, 7217-7219  
   First Successful Automatic Torpedo, 7217  
   Robert Whitehead, Inventor, 7219  
   How a Torpedo Is Operated, 7217-7218  
   Lengthwise Section of Torpedoes, 7218  
   Torpedo Tubes, 7217-7219  
   Controlled Torpedo, 7218  
   Torpedoes in History, 7219  
   Torpedo Boat, 7218  
   Torpedo-Boat Destroyers, 7218  
**Torsion Balance**, 7221  
   Galvanometer, 2670  
   Torsional, or Twisting, Stress, 6878  
**Traction Engine**, or Tractor, 7232-7233  
   Tanks, a War Product, 7233, 7865, 7866-7867  
**Transit**, 7243-7244  
**Treadmill**, 7254  
**Trip Hammer**, 7270  
**Turbine Wheel**, or Turbine, 7298-7299  
**Type-Casting Machine**, 7338  
**Typewriter**, 7339-7340  
**Vacuum Cleaner**, 7440  
**Vacuum Tube**. [See *Radio Apparatus*, above.]  
**Valve**, 7448-7449  
   Automatic Valves, 7449  
   Hydraulic Press, 3304  
   Pump, 5880  
**Vernier**, 7504  
   Vernier Calipers, 7504  
   Micrometer, 4468  
**Wall-Paper Printing Machine**, 7585-7586  
**Watch**, 7662-7664  
   Similarity to Clock, 7662, 1485-1488  
**Water-Power Machinery**, 7670-7672  
   Water Wheel, 7670, 7673, 7674  
   Turbine Wheel, 7298-7299  
   Dynamo, 2066-2070  
   Water Power of the World, 7672  
   [See *Turbine Wheel* above; *Water Wheel*, below.]  
**Water Wheel**, 7674, 7676  
**Wedge**, 7698  
   [See *The Six Simple Machines*, under *Mechanical Powers*, above.]  
**Weighing Scale**, 7701-7702  
**Wheel and Axle**, 7737-7738  
   [See *The Six Simple Machines*, under *Mechanical Powers*, above.]  
**Windlass**, 7791  
**Windmill**, 7791-7792  
**Wool-Working Machines** (Illustrated), 7835-7842  
**X-Ray Apparatus** (Illustrated), 6160-6162  
**Zeppelins**. [See *Aircraft*, above.]



# LANGUAGE

## The Language of Sign and Gesture

- Earliest Means of Communication, 3858, 6601
  - Indian Signs
    - The Smoke Signal, 7061
    - Snake Skin and Arrows, 7898
    - Movements of Body, 6601
  - Savage Drum Signal, 7061
- Survivals of Sign Language
  - Gestures of Board of Trade Brokers, 808, 810
  - Deaf-Mute Language, 1847, 1848, 6601
  - Pantomime, 5342-5343
  - Marine and Military Signals, 6598-6601
  - Flag and Pennant Codes, 6599

## Written Language

### Non-Phonetic Writing

- Simple Picture Writing, 7900
  - Use by Primitive Peoples, 1448
  - North American Indians, 7898, 3175
  - Called Ideographic Writing, 3176
- Hieroglyphics, 3175-3177
  - Pictures Used as Symbols, 7900
  - Employed by
    - Aztecs, 3175, 3177, 551, 3403
    - Mayas, 3177, 4354, 3403, 1287
    - Egyptians, 3175
  - Egyptian Hieroglyphics, 2151, 3176-3177
    - May Have Suggested the Alphabet, 233-234
  - Forms, 3176
  - Decipherment, 3177
    - Aid of Rosetta Stone, 970, 2151, 3177, 6207, 6208
  - Examples, 2153, 7899
    - On Obelisks, 1467, 5138
- Cuneiform Inscriptions, 1784-1785
  - Development from Picture Writing, 3177
  - The Characters
    - Wedge-Shaped, 1784, 1785, 461, 561, 7900
    - Possible Basis of Alphabet, 233
  - Assyrian Cuneiform Dictionary, 1942
  - Decipherment
    - Translation of Inscription of Darius, 1785, 1828
  - Characters Used by
    - Assyrians, 461, 1784, 6488

- Babylonians, 1784, 1785, 561
- Egyptians, 1784
- Persians, 1785, 3514
- Susians, 1785

### Chinese Writing

- Development from Picture Writing, 3177
- A Syllable Language, 1392
- Examples, 1391, 7077
- Japanese Writing, 3624, 3625, 3635

### Phonetic Writing

- Nature of Phonetic Writing, 7900, 5571
- Origin of the Alphabet
  - Its Relation to Picture Writing, 233
  - Its Invention
    - By Phoenicians, 233, 5569, 7900
  - A Landmark in Civilization, 1448
  - An Early Inscription
    - Moabite Stone, 4563-4564
- Spread of the Alphabet
  - Adoption by the Greeks, 234
  - Example of Greek Writing, 7899 (4)
  - Improvement over Phoenician, 234
  - Foundation of Modern Alphabets, 2952
  - Use of Greek Characters by Serbs, 7960
- Latin or Roman Alphabet
  - Derivative of the Greek, 3886
  - Examples of Roman Writing, 7899 (6, 7)
  - Use in Present-Day Languages
    - Danish, 1892
    - Gaelic, 2658
    - Croatian, 7960

- Expression of Numbers by Capital Letters, 5091
- Runes, 6250
- The English Alphabet**
  - Imperfect for Phonetic Spelling, 5263, 234
  - Its Adoption in Turkey, 7309
  - Story of the Letters
    - Two Main Divisions
      - Consonants, 1624
      - Vowels, 7571
    - Combinations of Vowels
      - Diphthongs, 1955
  - Story of the Consonants and Vowels
    - [At head of the alphabetical divisions of THE WORLD BOOK.]
- Varied Examples of Alphabetic Characters**
  - For the Handicapped
    - Braille, Used by the Blind, 791, 793
    - Manual, Used by the Deaf, 1847, 1848
  - Shorthand, 6572-6574
  - Anglo-Saxon, 7899 (8)
  - Coptic, 7899 (5)
  - Cufic, 2150
  - Ethiopian, 2306
  - Hebrew, 726, 3121
  - Sanskrit, 6377

#### Methods, Materials, and Tools

- Direction of Written Characters**
  - Cuneiform: Left to Right, 1785
  - Hieroglyphics: Dependent on Whim, 3177
  - Chinese: in Columns, 1392
  - Japanese: in Columns, 3623
  - Hebrew: Right to Left, 3121
  - Phoenician: Right to Left, 2952
  - Greek: Variations, 2952

#### Handwriting, or Penmanship, 5458-5460

[See Outline on *Education*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Materials

- Clay, 460, 561, 1784
- Stone, 561, 1784
- Wax, 5450, 4273
- Papyrus, 5353-5354
  - Preparation, 5344, 5354
  - Use
    - By Egyptians, 5450, 5451
    - For Manuscripts, 4273
- Parchment, 5367, 5368, 5344
- Paper, 5343-5352
  - Manufacture, 5345-5351
  - From Papyrus, 5354

- Classification: Linen, Wood-Pulp, Corn-stalk, 5351
  - India, 852
  - Modern Parchment, 5367
  - Ink, 3454
    - Sympathetic Ink (Cobalt Chloride), 1514
  - Hand Tools of the Writer**
    - Stylus, 7900
      - In Cuneiform Writing, 1784
      - By Romans, 5450
    - Reed (Kash)
      - Used on Papyrus, 5354, 5450
    - Brush
      - Use by Chinese, 5450
      - On Parchment, 5367
    - Pen, 5450
      - Quill, Steel, Gold, and Fountain, 5450
      - Bronze, 4273
      - Being Replaced by Typewriter, 7900
    - Pencil, 5451-5455
      - Manufacture, 5451-5455, 2911, 3848, 3902
  - Mechanical Tools**
    - Stenotype, a Shorthand Machine, 6826
    - Telautograph, 2919, 7057, 3499
    - Typewriter, 7339
      - Replacing Handwriting, 7900, 3500
  - Movable Type**
    - Invention by Gutenberg, 2989, 851, 3500, 5817
      - Influence on Civilization, 1448, 5263
      - On the Development of Music, 4762
    - First Printed Book, Bible, 725, 750, 851, 2990
    - Introduction into England by Caxton, 1263, 1264, 2268, 5817
    - Introduction into America, 5817
      - First Indian Printing Press, 3414
    - Revival of Art of Printing, 852
      - Contribution of William Morris, 437, 852, 4662, 4663
- [See, also, Outline on *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]

#### The Written Records of Man

- Manuscripts**, 4273-4274
  - Palimpsests, 4274
- Books**, 851
  - Evolution of Books, 852-853
  - [See Outline on *Literature* and *Industry*, in this GUIDE.]
- Newspapers**, 4953-4958

## Phonetics

- Definition**, 5571
  - Not a Division of Grammar, 2891
- Number of Sounds of Speech**
  - About Fifty in Any Language, 6750
    - English, More Than Forty, 3869, 3870
  - Differing Sound Values of Letters in Various Languages, 5843
- Speech, Communication of Ideas by Sound**, 6750
  - Origin: Sounds of Pleasure or Pain, 3858

- Organs of Speech**
  - Larynx, 3882
    - Vocal Cords, 3882, 7559, 5571
  - Mouth, 7208
  - Tongue, 4703
  - Faculties Connected with Nervous System, 4883
- Articulation, Clear and Distinct Utterance**, 433

Use in Instruction of Deaf, 1848, 5571  
 Relation to Language, 6750  
 Words, Symbols of Speech, 6084  
 More Progressive Than Written Language, 5263  
**Orthography**, Writing Words Correctly, 5263  
 Not a Division of Grammar, 2891  
 Simplified Spelling, 6755, 2996, 2298  
**Vowels**, Open Sounds, 7571  
 Contrasted with Consonants, 1624  
 Value in Modern Languages, 5844  
 Greek: Sounded Like German, 2952  
 Hawaiian: Numerous, 3077  
 Italian: Word Endings, 3569  
 English: A, E, I, O, U, 7571, 5571  
 [See *Alphabet*, above.]  
 Diphthong, 1955  
**Consonants**, Closed Sounds, 7571  
 Stopped, Mutes, 1624  
 Open, Vowel-Like and Spirants, 1624  
 Value in Modern Languages, 5844  
 Greek: Sounded Like English, 2952  
**Digraphs**, 2996  
**Pronunciation**  
 Value of a Dictionary, 5263  
 Relation to Orthography, 5263

Accent, 5844  
 English, 14, 2266, 5844  
 Indicates Stress, 2952  
 Greek, 5844  
 Indicates Pitch, 2952  
 Italian, 3569, 5844  
 Russian, 6277  
 Scottish Gaelic and Irish Gaelic, 2658  
 Swedish, 6950  
**Phonetic Characteristics of Languages**  
 North American Indian, 3403  
 Chinese, 1392  
 Czech, 1800  
 Danish, 1892  
 English, 5571-5572  
 French, 5571, 2613  
 Gaelic, 2658  
 German, 5571, 2765  
 Greek, 2952  
 Different from Latin, 3886  
 Hawaiian, 3077  
 Italian, 3569, 3869  
 Latin, 3886  
 Lettish, 3948  
 Spanish, 234, 5571

## Philology

**Nature and Scope of Philology**, 5565-5566  
 Development of Comparative Philology, 5565  
 Value of Study of Sanskrit, 5565, 6377  
 Study of Dialects and Idioms Leads to  
 Discovery of Likenesses, 1928  
 Valuable Aid in Study of Riddles, 6121  
 Contribution of Furnivall, 2654  
**Philological Classification**  
 Isolating: Chinese, 5565, 1392, 3869  
 Agglutinative: Turkish, 5565  
 Inflectional and Analytical, 5565  
**Etymology**, 2311-2312  
 [For grammatical definition, see *Grammar*, below.]  
 English, 2266  
 Enriched with Indian Words, 3403  
 Spelling Vocabulary for Americans, 6753-6755  
 Billingsgate: Rich in Inveective, 2252  
 Greek: Efforts to Retain Classic Words, 2952  
 Italian: Limitations, 3571  
 Spanish: Enriched with South American Indian Words, 3403  
 Volapük: Words from All European Languages, 7560  
**Valuable Tools**  
 Dictionary, 1941-1943, 2312  
 Johnson's, 1942, 3690  
 Webster's, 1942, 7697-7698  
 Oxford, 1943  
 Encyclopedia, 2233-2234  
 Glossary, 2843

Lexicon, 1942  
 Some Word Histories  
 Of Personal Names, 4803  
 Of Slav, 6640  
 Of English Place Names, 2256, 2265, 2312  
 Of Yod, 3323  
**Inflection**  
 Change in Form of a Word, 3449, 3869  
 Highly Inflected Languages  
 Greek, 2952  
 Latin, 1226, 2892, 3886  
 Romance Languages, 6168  
 German, 2765, 1590  
 Russian, 6277  
 Not Highly Inflected  
 English, 5565, 2266, 2892  
 Japanese, 3624  
 Total Lack of Inflection  
 Chinese, 5565, 1392, 3869

## Philological Relationships

**African**: Modification of Dutch, 7356  
**Albanian**: Relation to Latin and Greek, 180  
**Anglo-Saxon**: Composite Speech of Britain, 7117  
**Arabic**: Supplanted Syriac, 343  
**Aramaic**: Allied to Hebrew, 343  
**Babylonian**: Relation to Hebrew and Phoenician, 561  
**Bantu**: Parent of Forty Languages, 7199  
**Basque**: Probably Derivative of Iberian, 644, 3324  
**Bengali**  
 Relation to Sanskrit, 708

Resemblance to Persian, 708  
**Celtic**  
 Relation to Latin, 3885  
 Relation to French, 2612  
 Modification in Ireland, 3518  
**Czech**: Relation to German, 1800  
**Danish**: Relation to Swedish and Norwegian, 1892  
**Dutch**  
 Derivative of Gothic, 4888  
 Relation to Plattdeutsch, 5655  
 Parent of African, 7356  
**English**  
 Most Composite Language, 2265, 2244  
 Periods: Old English, Middle, and Modern, 2265-2266  
 Literary Form  
 Derived from West Saxon Dialect, 2265  
 Contribution of Caxton, 1263  
 Relation to  
 Dutch, 4888  
 French, 2266, 2613, 2244  
 German, 2892  
 Latin, 2892, 3886  
 Gaelic, 6437  
 Greek, 2953  
 Plattdeutsch, 5655  
 Sanskrit, 6377  
 Volapük, 7560  
**Estonian**: Relation to Hungarian and Finnish, 2421  
**Esperanto**: Use of Root Words Common to All Languages, 2298  
**Finnish**: Relation to Hungarian and Estonian, 2421  
**Flemish**: Literary Language, 2468  
**French**  
 Cosmopolitan, 2612, 2613  
 Expressive and Clear, 2612, 2613, 3869  
 Literary Form: Derived from Langue d'Oïl, 2612  
 Relation to  
 Celtic, 2612  
 Latin, 2612, 2613, 3886  
 Gaelic, 6437  
 Walloon, 7585  
 Purity Maintained in Quebec, 5913  
**Gaelic**  
 Difference between Written and Spoken Language, 2658  
 Revival of Irish Gaelic, 3532  
 Relation to  
 English, 2658, 6437  
 French, 6437  
 Latin, 2658  
**German**  
 Derivative of Gothic, 2765  
 Polysyllabic, 3869  
 Periods, 2765  
 Literary Form: High German, 2765, 2766, 2770  
 Contribution of Jakob Grimm, 2966  
 Relation to  
 Czech, 1800

Modern English, 2892  
 Plattdeutsch, 5655, 2765, 2770  
 Sanskrit, 6377  
 Volapük, 7560  
**Gothic**  
 Origin of  
 German, 4888, 2765  
 Dutch, 4888  
**Greek**  
 Precise, 2952  
 Relation to  
 Albanian, 180  
 Latin, 3885  
 English, 2953  
 Sanskrit, 6377  
**Hebrew**  
 Periods, 3121-3122  
 Relation to Babylonian and Phoenician, 561  
**Hungarian**: Relation to Finnish and Estonian, 2421  
**Iberian**: Relation to Basque, 644, 3324  
**Idiom Neutral**: Outgrowth of Volapük, 3869  
**North American Indians**, 3403  
**Italian**  
 Derivative of Latin, 3569, 3886  
 Literary Form: Derived from Tuscan Dialect, 7328, 3571  
 Relation to Rumanian, 6241  
**Japanese**, 3625  
**Landsmaal**: New Norwegian Language, 5082  
**Latin**  
 Compact, 3869, 3886  
 Periods, 3885  
 Language of Medieval Italians, 3569  
 Lingua Romana, 3886  
 Grammar, 2891-2892  
 Relation to  
 Celtic, 3885  
 Albanian, 180  
 Modern English, 2892, 3886-3887  
 French, 2612  
 Gaelic, 2658  
 Greek, 3885  
 Romance Languages, 3886, 6168  
 Sanskrit, 6377  
 Spanish, 6726  
 Volapük, 7560  
**Lettish**: Relation to Sanskrit, 3948  
**Lithuanian**: One of Oldest Living Languages, 4056  
**Norwegian**: Relation to Danish, 1892  
**Persian**  
 Iranian Origin, 3514  
 Relation to Bengali, 708  
**Phoenician**: Relation to Hebrew and Babylonian, 561  
**Plattdeutsch**  
 Relation to  
 German, 5655, 2765, 2770  
 English and Dutch, 5655  
**Portuguese**  
 Derivative of Latin, 3886  
 Relation to Spanish, 5757

**Provençal:** Literary Language, 5854  
**Pushtu:** Spoken Language of Afghanistan, 70

#### Romance Languages

Derivatives of Latin, 6168, 3886

Relation to

Modern English, 2892

Volapük, 7560

**Rumanian:** Derivative of Latin, 6241, 3886

**Russian:** Flexible and Expressive, 6277

#### Sanskrit

Derivation of Indo-European (Aryan) Group, 438, 2891

Periods: Vedic and Classical, 6377

Relation to

Modern Indic Languages, 3380

Bengali, 708

Lettish, 3948

**Serbo-Croatian:** Two Alphabets (Greek and Roman), 7960

#### Spanish

Derivative of Latin, 3886, 6726

Relation to

Portuguese, 5757

Literary Form

Derived from Several Castilian Dialects, 1232

**Syriac:** Difference between Ancient and Modern, 6992

**Volapük:** Relation to German, 7560

#### Dialects

**Modifications of Literary Languages,** 1928

Numerous throughout the World, 3870

**Albanian,** 180

#### Aramaic

Chaldean, 343

Syriac, 343, 6991-6992

**Celtic,** 2612, 1270

Breton, 972, 2569

Cornish, 1270

Welsh, 2318

**Chinese,** 1385

**Dravidian,** 445

#### Dutch

Not a German Dialect, 4888

Flemish (Spoken Language), 693

**English,** 2266, 2268, 1928

Lowland Scottish, 6437-6438, 1928

Pigeon, or Pidgin, English, 2267

**Ethiopian,** 6488

**Filipino,** 5552

#### French

Langue d'Oil, 2612

Langue d'Oc, 2612, 5854

Provençal, 5854, 6168, 7276

### Languages of the World

#### Geographic Distribution

**Distributed throughout the World,** 3870

Africa, 78, 4645

Asia, 444, 445, 446, 6987

Australia, 508

Europe, 2317, 2318, 528, 3977

French-Canadian, 1928

Creole, 1928, 3010, 4943, 7269-7270

**Greek,** 2952

**German,** 2765, 2770, 4160

**Gypsy,** 2318

#### Indic

Bengali (Spoken Language), 708, 3380

Hindi, 3181, 3380

Hindustani, 3380

Marathi, 3380, 4223

Telugu, 3380, 7090

**Iranian,** 3514

**Italian:** Tuscan, 3569, 3571, 7328

**In Labrador,** 3827

**Ladino,** 2318

**Latin,** 3569, 3886

**Maltese,** 4241

**Mandingo,** 4253

**Maya,** 4354

**Negro (United States),** 1928

**North American Indian,** 3403

**Norwegian,** 5082

**Romansh,** 6168, 6968

**Russian,** 6277, 2318

**Sanskrit,** 6277

**Slavic:** Slovene, 7960, 2318

#### Spanish

Castilian, Catalan, and Gallego, 6726

**Creole,** 6381, 7269-7270

**Turkish:** Tatar, 7026

**Walloon,** 693, 7585

**Yankee,** 1928

#### Idiom

#### Characteristics of Idiom

Form of Speech Peculiar to a Language, 3345

Different from Slang, 6637

Use in Tracing Language Likenesses, 1928

#### Idioms in Different Languages

**Sanskrit:** Literary, 6377

**English**

Double Possessive, 1228, 5798

Use of Prepositions, 5799

**Italian:** Add Color to Language, 3569

#### Slang

#### Characteristics of Slang, 6637

Sources

Current Events, etc., 6637

Sports: Soccer and Rugby, 2528

Geography: From Dan to Beersheba, 5312

**Characteristics:** Expressive, Usually Short-lived, 6637

**Danger in Usage**

Limiting of Vocabulary, 6638

**North America,** 5048

**South America,** 6698, 1002

[See, also, *Distribution of Peoples*, in the Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Indo-European Languages

**One of the Most Important Families,** 3858

**Sanskritic**

Sanskrit, 5565, 6377  
 Bengali, 708  
 Gypsy, or Romani, 2992-2993

**Iranian, 3514**

Bactrian, 3514  
 Persian, 3514, 5495, 5565  
 Pushtu, 70

**Slavic, 6640**

Bulgarian, 2318  
 Czech, 1800, 1801  
 Polish, 2318  
 Russian, 6277  
 Serbo-Croatian, 6502, 7960  
 Slovak, 1801, 6644

**Greek, 2952, 5565****Albanian, 180****Celtic, 1270, 2612**

Cymric, 1270  
 Gaelic, or Gadhelic, 1270, 3123  
 Irish, 2658, 3518, 3532  
 Manx, 2658, 4246  
 Scottish, 2658, 6437

**Teutonic, 7117**

Gothic, 2878  
 German, 2765, 5565  
 Plattdeutsch, 5654  
 Dutch, 4888  
 Flemish, 2469

**Anglo-Saxon, 2267**

English, 2265, 5565

**Norse, 5565**

Danish, 1892  
 Dano-Norwegian, 5082  
 Icelandic, 2317  
 Landsmaal, 5082  
 Swedish, 6950

**Latin, 3885, 5565****Romance or Neo-Latin Languages, 6168, 5565, 2318**

French, 2612, 6168  
 Provençal, 5854  
 Italian, 3569, 6168  
 Portuguese, 5757, 925, 6168  
 Rumanian, 6168, 6241  
 Spanish, 6726, 6168

**Baltic, or Lettic**

Lettish, 3948, 3890  
 Lithuanian, 4056

**Semitic****Northern, 6488**

Assyrian, 3858, 6488  
 Babylonian, 561, 6488  
 Aramaic, 3121, 3122, 6488  
 Moabite, 4563  
 Hebrew, 3858, 3121, 6488

Phoenician, 3858, 5569, 6488

Carthaginian (Punic), 5569

**Southern, 6488**

Arabic, 6488, 3858, 6987  
 Ethiopian (Abyssinian), 3858, 6488

**Southeastern Asiatic**

Chinese, 1392, 3858

**Ural-Altaic (Turanian)**

Estonian, 2300, 2421

Finnish, 3858, 2421, 3871

Hungarian (Magyar), 3858, 3871

Lapp, 3877

Livonian, 2318

Japanese, 3624

Kalmuk, 2318

Mongolian, 4594

Turkish, 3858, 7319

**South African**

Bantu, 3858, 614

**Independent****Africa**

African, 7356  
 Egyptian (Coptic), 2142  
 Negrillo, 5891

**Asia**

Anamese, 2610  
 Dravidian, 3380

**Malay Archipelago**

Malay, 4239, 3830  
 Javanese, 3641  
 Tagalog, 5552  
 Filipino, 5552  
 Negrito, 5891  
 Papuan, 4237

**Europe**

Basque, 2317, 3870, 3871  
 Iberian, 644, 3324

**North America**

Indian, 3403  
 Maya, 4354  
 Eskimo, 2293-2294

**South America**

Indian, 6698  
 Aymara, 817  
 Quichua, 817, 3372

Hawaiian, 3077

**International**

Bolak, 2298

Esperanto, 2298, 3869

French, in Diplomacy, 2612, 2613

Volapük, 2298, 3869, 7560

Idiom Neutral, 2298, 3869

**Grammar****Introductory Survey****Definition**

Science of Correct Usage, 2890

History of English Grammar, 2266

Old English Period, 2266, 1227

Middle English Period, 2266

- Tendency toward Simplicity, 2892, 2266, 5565
- Study of Grammar**, 2890-2891
- Beginning in Fourth School Year, 3867
  - Introduction of Sentence in Fifth Year, 3867
  - Introduction of Technical Principles in Seventh Year, 2891
- Divisions of Grammar**, 2891
- Etymology, 2891
  - [For philological definition, see *Philology*, above.]
- Syntax, 2891, 6985
- Etymology**
- The Grammar of Words**, 2891
- Mastery of Eight Parts of Speech, 5406, 2891
- Noun**, 5095-5097
- Classes of Nouns, 5095-5096
  - Nouns by Use, 5096
  - Properties of Nouns
    - Person, 5503-5504, 5096
    - Number, 5112, 5096
    - Gender, 2713, 5096
    - Case, 1226
      - Nominative, 1227, 5096
      - Objective, 1227
      - Use of Accusative and Dative, 5096  - Possessive, 1227-1228
  - Use of Genitive, 5096
- Parsing the Noun, 5401. [See *Sentence*, below.]
- Declension, or Inflection, 1868, 1610, 3449
- Number, 1869, 5112-5113
  - Gender, 2713, 5096
  - Case, 1226
- Errors in Usage, 5096-5097
- Pronoun**, 2891, 5841
- Study Begun in Fourth Grade, 3867
  - Classes, 5841-5842
  - Antecedent, 5841
  - Properties
    - Case, 1226, 5841
    - Number, 5841, 5112-5113
    - Gender, 2713, 5841
    - Person, 5503, 5841
- Parsing, 5401
- Declension, or Inflection, 1869, 3449
- [See *Noun*, above.]
  - Of Interrogative and Relative Pronouns, 1869
  - Of Personal Pronouns, 5841
- Uses
- In Place of Nouns, 5841
  - As Adjectives, 47, 5842
  - Objects of Prepositions, 5798
- Errors in Usage, 5843
- Adjective** (Including Articles), 46-47, 2891
- Descriptive Adjectives, 46
  - Limiting Adjectives, 47
    - Articles, 47, 431
- Comparison, or Inflection, 1590-1591, 3449
- Positive, Comparative, Superlative Degrees, 47, 1590

- Parsing, 47, 5401
- Errors in Usage, 47-48, 432, 1591
- Adverb**, 58-59, 2891
- Comparison with Adjective, 58
  - Position and Order, 59
  - Comparison, or Inflection, 1610, 3449
  - Parsing, 5401
  - Use
    - Modifier of Verb, Adjective, or Another Adverb, 58
    - In Comparison of Adjectives, 47
    - Consequent of a Preposition, 5798
- Errors in Usage, 59, 1591
- Verb**, 7490-7492, 2891
- Study Begun in Fourth Grade, 3867
  - Classes, 7491
  - Properties
    - Voice: Active and Passive, 7491, 7559
    - Mode, 7491, 4566
    - Tense, 7107-7108, 7491
    - Person, 7491, 5504
    - Number, 5112, 7491
- Parsing, 5401
- Conjugation, or Inflection, 1610, 3449, 7491
- Errors in Usage, 7491
- Verbals, 7491, 3448
- Infinitive, 3448, 7491
  - Properties
    - Case: Objective, 1227
    - Voice: Active and Passive, 3448
    - Tense: Present and Perfect, 3448, 7108
- Split Infinitive, 3448, 59
- Use
- As Noun, Adjective, or Adverb, 3448
  - As Consequent of a Preposition, 5798
- Errors in Usage, 3448
- Participle, 5404, 7491
- Preposition**, 5798-5799, 2891
- Parsing, 5402
  - Use
    - Connective or Relation Word, 5798
    - Of: Possessive Case, 1227
    - To and For: Dative Case, 1227
- Errors in Usage, 5799
- Conjunction**, 1611-1612, 2891
- Parsing, 5402
  - Errors in Usage, 1611-1612
- Interjection**, 3482
- Part of Speech, 2891, 3482
  - Parsing, 5402
  - Use, 3484

### Syntax

- The Grammar of Sentences**, 2891, 6985
- Treats of Relations between Words, 6986
  - Figures of Syntax, 2415
- Divisions of Syntax**, 2891
- Synthesis, 2891, 6986
  - Analysis, 271, 6495
    - Distinguished from Parsing, 5401
- Use of Diagrams, 272, 6495
- Value of Punctuation, 6493
- The Sentence**, 6493-6495

Foundation of All Speech, 2891  
 Unit of Speech Expressing Complete Thought, 6493  
 Characteristics of Excellence, 6495  
 Classification  
   As to Structure, 6494  
     Simple, 6494  
     Complex and Compound, 6494, 2892, 1611  
   As to Meaning, 6494  
     Declarative, Interrogative, and Imperative, 6494, 2892  
     Exclamatory, 6494  
 Parts of a Sentence, 6493-6494  
   Subject and Modifiers, 6493-6494  
   Predicate and Modifiers, 6493-6494, 7490  
   Subdivisions  
     Clauses: Independent and Dependent, 6494  
     Consequent of a Preposition, 5798

Phrases: Adverbial and Participial, 5404  
   Consequent of a Preposition, 5798  
 Order of Words, 2891-2892, 1227  
   Natural and Transposed, 6494  
 Interjection, an Independent Element, 3482  
 Parsing, 5401  
**Punctuation**, 5882-5883  
   Influence of Conjunctions, 1611  
   Capitalization, 6493  
   Period, 5882, 6493  
   Comma, 5882  
   Semicolon, 5882, 5883  
   Colon, 5883  
   Exclamation Point, 5882, 6493  
   Interrogation Point, 5882, 6493  
   Apostrophe, 5883, 5097  
   Parenthesis, 5883  
   Dash, 5883  
   Quotation Marks, 5882, 5883  
   Italics, 5883, 3571

## Rhetoric

**The Province of Rhetoric**, 6086  
**Its Relation to Composition**, 6086  
**Pertaining to Rhetoric**  
   Abbreviations  
     Contractions in Common Use, 4-6  
   Climax  
     Arrangement in Order of Importance, 1484  
     Anti-Climax, 1484  
   Euphuism, 2315  
   Pun, 5881  
   Figures of Speech, 2415  
     Euphemism, 2315

Irony: Conveying a Meaning Reverse of Wording, 3552  
 Metaphor: Implied Comparison, 4417, 2415  
   Distinguished from Simile, 4417, 6614  
   Mixed Metaphors, 4417  
   Hyperbole, 3318  
 Simile: Explicit Comparison, 6614, 2415  
 Metonymy, 4423-4424, 2415  
   Synecdoche, 6985  
 Personification, 5504, 2714  
 Oratorical Expression. [See *Oration*, in the Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Public Speaking**, 5872-5874

## The Study of Language

**Underlying Principles**, 3858-3859  
   **Language Work in the Home**  
**Duties of Parents**  
   Care in Speech, 3859  
   Encouragement, 3859  
   Teaching the Child Good Literature  
     Nursery Rhymes, 3859-3861  
     Mother Goose Rhyme, 4683-4684  
     Eugene Field's Verse, 2408-2410  
   Coöperation with the Teacher, 3861

### Language Work in School

**First Year**  
   Conversation Lessons, 3861  
   Story-Telling, 6852-6870  
   Reading, 3862, 6006-6012  
   [See Outline on *Education*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Written Work, 3862  
   Dramatization, 3862  
   Material, 3862-3864  
     Rhymes of Childhood, 6101-6106  
**Second Year**  
   Oral Composition, 3864

**Material**  
   Ant, 296-303  
   Bee, 672-682  
   Bird, 751-771  
   Cat, 1234-1236  
   Dog, 1986-1992  
   Programs for Special Days  
   [See Outline on *Literature*, in this GUIDE.]

Picture Study on a Holland Scene, 3864-3865

Written Work, 3865  
   Penmanship, 5458-5460  
   Selections for Memorizing, 3865-3866

### Third Year

Textbook, 3866  
 Oral Composition, 3866  
**Material**  
   Story of Flowers, 2490-2496  
   Mythology, 4787-4800  
   Robin Hood, 6149  
   Biographies  
     Daniel Boone, 858-859  
     Kit Carson, 1218



Columbus, 1572-1577  
 Benjamin Franklin, 2593-2597  
 Thomas Jefferson, 3646-3653  
 Robert E. Lee, 3917-3921  
 Lincoln, 4008-4021  
 Washington, 7644-7657  
 Theodore Roosevelt, 6185-6197

Written Work, 3866  
 Letter Writing, 3866, 3945-3947  
 Selections for Memorizing, 3867  
 Longfellow, 4101-4105  
 Stevenson, 6832-6834

**Fourth Year**

Oral Composition, 3867  
 Material  
   Clouds, 1491-1494  
   Wind, 7789-7791  
   Rain, 5984-5986  
   Snow, 6664-6665  
   Storms, 6851  
   Story of Geography, 2721-2731  
   Story of Polar Exploration, 5691-5699  
 Biographies  
   Richard E. Byrd, 1053, 145-146  
   Charles A. Lindbergh, 4025-4030,  
     147-150

History  
   Braddock's Defeat, 915  
   Wolfe's Capture of Quebec, 7818-  
     7819

Use of Dictionary, 3867, 1941-1943  
 Study of Selections, 3867  
   Paul Revere's Ride, 4101, 6069, 6070  
 Written Work, 3867

**Fifth Year**

Vocabulary, 3867  
 Study of Sentence, 3867  
   [See *Grammar*, above.]  
 Explanations of Activities, 3868  
   How to Make a Kite, 3799-3802  
   Story of Radio, 5935-5968  
   Story of Girl Scouts, 2814-2817  
   Story of Boy Scouts, 909-914  
   Story of Baseball, 633-639

Story of Aircraft, 112-151  
 Accident Prevention, 15-16  
 Correspondence, 3868  
 Material  
   Colonial Life in America, 1545-1550  
   French Revolution, 2615-2619  
   Revolutionary War in America, 6071-  
     6083, 3868  
   Story of Napoleon, 828-833

**Sixth Year**

Business Letters and Forms, 3868  
 Note, 5092  
 Receipt, 6021  
 Talks before the School, 3868  
 Material

Ambition, 244-246  
 Apple, 324-328  
 Coal, 1497-1507  
 Coffee, 1526-1530  
 Cotton, 1708-1718  
 Flags, 2449-2461  
 Patriotism, 5417-5418  
 Red Cross, 6025-6031  
 Silk, 6604-6611  
 Study of Literature, 3868, 4047-4053  
 Bryant, 988  
 Dickens, 1936-1941  
 Hawthorne, 3089-3091  
 Irving, 3559-3560  
 Longfellow's *Evangeline*, 2329-2332  
 Lowell, 4139-4141

**Seventh and Eighth Years**

Projects, 3869, 5834-5839  
 Study of Formal Grammar Begun, 3869  
 Debates, 3869  
   Organized Argument, 1851  
   Suggested Topics, 1851-1852  
   Outline of an Example, 1852-1853  
   Procedure: Affirmative and Negative, 1852  
   Rules, 5395-5396  
     Parliamentary Law, 5395-5396  
   Famous Debates: Lincoln-Douglas, 2015,  
     4013-4014  
 Literary Society, 3869

# LAW

## Fundamental Principles

### Ancient and Medieval Customs

- Avenger of Blood, 800
- Vendetta, 7476, 800
- Feud, 7476, 800
- Ordeal and Combat, 5241
- Benefit of Clergy, 707
- Cities of Refuge, 1435

### Modern Law Structure

- Blackstone's Commentaries, 784
- Law Defined and Explained, 3897
- Substantive Law, Adjective or Remedial Law, Constitutional Law, Administrative Law, Statutory Law, 3897
- International Law, 3485-3487, 3897
- Civil Law, 1449
- Common Law, 1586
- Courts, 1722. [See *Civil Law*, below.]
- Crime and Criminology, 1745-1746, 1747-1748. [See *Criminal Law*, below.]

### Bar Association, American, 616

### Barrister, 630

- Advocate, 630
- King's Counsel, 630

### Codes

- Code Napoleon, 1523-1524, 831
- Louisiana, 4131

Code of Hammurabi, 3029

Justinian Code, 3723

Equity, 2284

Ethics, 2304. [See Outline on *Ethics*, in this GUIDE.]

Impeachment, 3369-3370

Constitution of the United States, Art. 1, Sec. 2, 3

Representatives, House of, 6062

Senate (United States), 6490-6491

Jury and Trial by Jury, 3721-3722

Grand Jury and Petit Jury, 1724

Coroner's Jury, 1696, 3722

Inquest, 3457

Procedure, 1723-1724

Writ, 1723, 7897-7898

In Criminal Cases

Arrest, 420

Bail, 572

Grand Jury, 3722

Indictment, 3430

Scotch Verdict, 3722

Law Schools, 3897-3898

Who Should Study Law, 3898

Jurists and Lawyers. [See Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]

## International Law, or the Law of Nations

### Alien, 221

- Alien and Sedition Laws, 221
- Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 3765

### Arbitration, International, 344

### Contraband, 1646

### Enemy, 2234-2235

### Exterritoriality, 2348

### Extradition, 2348-2349

### Government. [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]

### High Seas, 3178-3179

Neutrality, 4898

Search, Right of, 6471-6472

### International Congresses

- Congress of Berlin, 713-714
- Congress of Vienna, 7527
- Geneva Convention, 2716

Peace Conference, International, 5425-5426

Locarno Conference, 4071

International Copyright, 1671

International Law, 3485-3487, 3897

Declarations of Paris and London, 3485

As Applied to War

Belligerents, 3486

Blockade, 794-795

Paper Blockade, 795

Pacific Blockade, 795

Neutrality, 3487, 4898

International Relations, 3487-3488

Canada and the United States, 3488

European States, 3487

International Settlements, Bank for, 3488

German Reparations, 7598

War Debts, 7595

Young Plan, 7598-7599  
**Interparliamentary Union**, 3489  
**League of Nations**, 3904-3906  
     Wilson, Woodrow, 7785  
     Versailles, Treaty of, 7508  
**Martial Law**, or **Military Law**, 4307-4308  
**Neutrality**, 4898  
**Permanent Court of International Justice**,  
     5489-5490  
     Hague, The, 3005  
     Hughes, Charles Evans, 3277  
     Moore, John Bassett, 4644  
**Red Cross Societies**, 6025-6030  
**Search**, Right of, 6471-6472  
     Contraband, 1646  
     Hague Conference, 6471  
**Smuggling**, 6655-6656  
**Treaty**, 7256-7258  
     Armaments, Limitation of, 406-407, 4850  
     Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 1460  
     Nicaragua Canal, 5018  
     Four-Power Treaty, 2552  
     Armaments, Limitation of, 406-407  
     Harding, Warren Gamaliel, 3042  
     Geneva Arbitration, 2716  
     Alabama Claims, 164  
     Washington, Treaty of, 7657  
     Ghent, Treaty of, 2797  
     Guadalupe Hidalgo, Treaty of, 2971  
     Mexican War, 4431  
     Gadsden Purchase, 2657  
     Hay-Pauncefote Treaty, 3101  
     Panama Canal, 5332  
     Jay Treaty, 3644-3645  
     Jay, John, 3644  
     Search, Right of, 6471-6472  
     Tory, 7222  
     Louisiana Purchase Treaty, 4134

Jefferson, Thomas, 3650  
 Livingston, Robert R., 4061  
 United States of America, 7396  
 Neuilly, Treaty of, 1016  
 Paris, Treaties of, 5380  
     Closing the Crimean War, 5381, 1747  
     Closing the Spanish-American War, 5381,  
     6740  
 Portsmouth, Treaty of, 6280  
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 6192  
 Russo-Japanese War, 6280  
 Witte, Sergei, 7817  
 Rapallo, Treaty of, 5995  
     Fiume, 2448  
     Yugoslavia, 7964  
     Italy, 3585  
 Renunciation of War, Treaty for, 6058  
     Kellogg, Frank B., 1656  
     Briand, French Foreign Minister, 6058  
 Saint Germain, Treaty of, 6308  
     Austria, 527  
 San Stefano, Treaty of  
     Berlin, Congress of, 713-714  
     Bulgaria, 1015  
     Russo-Turkish Wars, 6281  
 Trianon, Treaty of, 7266  
     Hungary, 3289  
 Versailles, Treaty of, 7506, 7508  
     League of Nations, 3904-3906  
     World War, 7882  
 Washington, Treaty of, 7657  
     The Alabama, 164  
     Geneva Arbitration, 2716  
 Webster-Ashburton Treaty, 7698  
 Aroostook War, 4232, 7453  
 Maine, 4232  
**World Court**. [See *Permanent Court of International Justice*, above.]

## Civil Law, Governing Citizens in Their Personal Relations

**Civil Law**, 1449  
     Justinian, 3723  
     Code Napoleon, 1523-1524  
**Commercial Law**, 1584  
     Abstract, 12  
     Of Title, 12  
     Agent, 87  
     Contract, 1646-1647  
     Barter, 631  
     Bill of Sale, 740  
     By-Law, 1053  
     Chattel, 1321  
     Chattel Mortgage, 4665  
     Common Carrier, 1585-1586  
     Interstate Commerce Commission, 3490  
     Contract, 1646-1647  
     Coroner, 1696  
     Coroner's Jury, 1696  
     Inquest, 3457  
     Corporation, 1696, 1698  
     Differs from Partnership, 5404  
     Federal Trade Commission, 2390

Stock, Capital, 6836  
 [See, also, Outline on *Economics*, in this  
 GUIDE.]  
 Debt, 1854-1855  
 Deed, 1869-1870  
     Abstract of Title, 12  
     Acknowledgment, 1870  
     Recording a Deed, 1870  
 Lease, 3906-3907  
     Rent, 6057  
     Tenant, 7092-7093  
 Mortgage, 4664  
     Chattel Mortgage, 4665  
     Mortgage Bond, 833  
     Mortgage Deed, 4664  
     Second Mortgage, 4665  
 Partnership, 5404-5405  
     Differs from Corporation, 5405, 1698  
**Courts**, 1722-1724  
 Courts of the United States  
     Supreme Court, 6940-6942, 1722  
     Chief Justice, 1369, 1722, 6942

- Associate Justices, 1722
- Jurisdiction, 1722
- Circuit Court of Appeals, 1723
- Court of Customs Appeal, 1723
- United States District Court, 1723
- Court of Claims, 1723
- Court of Common Pleas, 1586
- Court of Private Land Claims, 1723
- Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia, 1723
- Supreme Court of the District of Columbia, 1723
- Territorial Courts, 1723, 7115
- Admiralty Courts, 1723, 49
- Judge, 3705
- State Judicial Systems, 1722-1723
- Appellate Court, 1722
- Chancery, Court of, 1302-1303
- County, or Circuit, Court, 1723
- Equity, Court of, 2284
- Judge, 3705
- Justice Court, 1723
- Justice of the Peace, 3723
- Juvenile Court, 3725
- Juvenile Court Law, 3726
- Morals Court, 4648
- Municipal Court, 1723
- Probate Court, 5829
- Supreme Court, 1722
- Jurisdiction, Original and Appellate, 1722
- Court Officials
  - Administrator, 49
  - Probate Court, 5829
  - Bailiff, 572-573
  - Chief Justice, 1369, 6940-6942
    - Associate Justices, 6940
  - Constable, 1624
  - Coroner, 1696, 3457
  - Coroner's Jury, 1696, 3722
  - Executor, 2343
  - Will, 7765-7766
  - Judge, 3705
  - Justice of the Peace, 3723
  - Notary Public, 5091
  - Public Defender, 5871-5872
  - Receiver, 6022
  - Sheriff, 6557
  - Trustee, 7284
- Terms Employed in Civil Law**
  - Abandonment, 3
  - Abatement, 3
  - Freehold, 3
  - Nuisance, 3, 5111
  - Accident Prevention, 15
  - Adoption, 51
  - Affidavit, 69
  - Affirmation, 5136
  - Oath, 5136
  - Age, Legal, 86
  - Alimony, 222
  - Divorce, 1981
  - Pendente Lite, 222
  - Amendment, 246
  - Appeal, 321
  - Assignment, 457
  - Attachment, 494
  - Bankrupt, 603
  - Bill, 737
  - Bona Fide, 826
  - Boycott, 903
  - Civil Imprisonment, 1443
  - Copyright, 1670-1671
    - International Copyright, 1671
  - Damages, Measure of, 4359
  - Demurrer, 1891
  - Deposition, 69, 1912
  - Divorce, 1981
  - Dower, 3297
  - Ejectment, 2162
  - Eminent Domain, 2227
    - Condemnation Proceedings, 2227
  - Employer's Liability, 2229-2230
    - Workmen's Compensation, 2230
  - Enabling Act, 2231
  - Escheat, 2292
  - Escrow, 2292
  - Estate, 2299. [See *Real Estate*, below.]
    - Fief, 2408
    - Primogeniture, 5812
  - Evidence. [See, also, *Criminal Law Terms*, below.]
  - Executor, 2343
  - Ex Post Facto, 2347
  - Fief. [See *Estate*, above.]
  - Flotsam, Jetsam, and Ligan, 2486
  - Franchise, 2589-2590
  - Garnishment, 2695
  - Grace, Days of, 2884
  - Grandfather's Clause, 2896
  - Guaranty, 2973
  - Guardian, 2973-2974
    - Ward, 2974, 7594
  - Habeas Corpus, 2997
  - Heir, 3127
    - Heirlooms in Law, 3127
  - Holidays, 3195
  - Husband and Wife, 3297-3298
    - Juvenile Delinquency, 3726-3728
    - Marriage. [See below.]
    - Parent and Child, 5369
  - Idiot, 3345
  - Impeachment, 3369-3370
    - Representatives, House of, 6062
    - Trial in Senate, 6490-6491
  - Infant, 3446
  - Injunction, 3453-3454
  - Inquest, 3457
    - Coroner, Coroner's Jury, 1696
  - Insanity, 3458
  - Intestacy, 3491
    - Kin, Next of, 3775
  - Judgment, 3705
    - Execution, 1854
    - Lien, 3977, 3705
  - Lease. [See *Real Estate*, below.]
  - Legacy, 3922

Legal Tender, 3923  
 License, 3974-3975  
   Local Option, 4071  
 Lien, 3977, 3705  
   Mechanic's Lien, 4370  
 Mandamus, 4252  
 Marriage, 4299-4301  
 Measure of Damages, 4359-4360  
 Negotiable Papers. [See Outline on *Business*,  
   in this GUIDE.]  
 Oath, 5136  
 Parent and Child, 5369  
 Parliamentary Law, 5395-5396  
   Quorum, 5924  
 Patent, 5412-5414  
 Personal Liberty, 5504  
   License, 5504  
 Petition, 5517  
 Petition of Right, 5517  
 Power of Attorney, 5792  
   Agent, 87  
 Primogeniture, 5812  
 Probate, 5829  
   Administrator, 49  
   Executor, 2343  
   Intestacy, 3491  
   Will, 7765-7766  
 Property  
   Real Estate. [See below.]  
   Literary Property, 4046  
   Personal Property, 5504  
 Proxy, 5857  
 Quorum, 5924  
 Real Estate, or Real Property, 6014  
   Deed, 1869-1870  
   Easement, 2087  
   Escheat, 2292  
   Joint-Tenancy, 3693  
   Mortgage, 4664  
     Chattel Mortgage, 4665  
   Occupancy, 5148  
   Tenant, 7092-7093  
     Landlord and Tenant, 3906  
     Lease, 3906

Title, 7187  
   Abstract of Title, 12  
   Rent, 6057-6058  
   Torrens System, 7220  
 Receiver, 6022  
   Insolvency (Bankrupt), 603, 6022  
 Replevin, 6059  
 Retainer, 6068  
 Riparian Rights, 6135  
 Statute, 6817  
   Congress, 1606-1607  
   Enabling Act, 2231  
   Legislature, 3924-3925  
     Assembly, 457, 3924  
   Parliament, 5391-5395  
   Common Council, 1586  
 Subpoena, 6894  
   Witness, 7816  
 Tender, 3923  
 Tort, 7221  
 Trade-Mark, 7233-7235  
 Trespass, 7264  
   Assault and Battery, 456  
   False Imprisonment, 2368-2369  
 Trustee, 7284  
 Usury, 7426-7427  
   Interest Rates, 3476  
 Will, 7765-7766  
   Legacy, 3922  
   Testator, Testatrix, 7766  
 Witness, 7816  
   Perjury, 5489, 7816  
     Subornation of Perjury, 5489  
   Subpoena, 6894, 7816  
 Writ, 7897  
   Of Attachment, 494  
   Of Error, 7898  
   Of Fieri Facias, 2412  
   Of Habeas Corpus, 2997  
   Of Injunction, 3453  
   Of Mandamus, 4252  
   Of Replevin, 6059  
   Of Subpoena, 6894  
   Of Assistance, 7901

### Criminal Law, Concerning Offenses against the State

Courts. [See *Civil Law*, above.]  
 Crime, 1745-1746  
 Criminal Law, 1746  
 Criminology, 1747-1748  
   Juvenile Delinquency, 3726-3728  
   Juvenile Court, 3725-3726  
 Terms Relating to Criminal Law  
   Accessory, 15  
     Before and after the Fact, 15  
   Alias, 220  
   Alibi, 221  
   Apache of Paris, 316  
   Arraignment, 420  
   Arrest, 420  
     Warrant, 7621  
   Attainder, 494

Bail, Bond, or Surety, 572, 833  
 Bandit, 599  
 Brigand, 599  
 Capital Punishment. [See *Punishment for*  
   *Crimes*, below.]  
 Civil Death, 1442  
 Conspiracy, 1624  
 Contempt, 1644  
   Contempt of Court, 1644  
   Witness, 7816  
 Coroner, 1696  
   Coroner's Jury, 1696  
   Inquest, 3457  
 Detection and Capture of Criminals  
   Bertillon System, 720  
   Constable, 1624

- Finger-Print Identification, 2420-2421
- Marshal, 4304
- Police, 5701
  - Royal Canadian Mounted, 6219-6221
  - Scotland Yard, 6447
  - State Police, 5702
  - Police Dog, 5702
- Third Degree, 7149
- Evidence, 2336-2337
- Extenuating Circumstances, 2348
- Extortion, 2348
- Extradition, 2348-2349
  - Requisition, 2349
- False Imprisonment, 2368-2369
- Fine, 2419
- Habeas Corpus, 2997
  - Magna Charta, 4215
- Immunity, 3369
- Indeterminate Sentence, 3377
- Indictment, 3430
  - Grand Jury, 3722
- Lynch Law, 4163
- Organized Criminals
  - Apaches of Paris, 316
  - Bandits, or Brigands, 599
  - Buccaneers, 989
  - Camorra, 1109
  - Mafia, 4210
  - Pirate, 5627
  - Privateer, 5827-5828
- Ostracism, 5267, 381
- Pardon, 5367
- Parole, 5398
- Prisons and Reformatories
  - Bastille, 647
  - Fleet Street Prison, 2468
  - Prison, 5824-5827
    - Convict Labor, 1647
  - Reform, or Industrial, Schools, 6041
  - Sing Sing, 6622-6623, 4969, 5826
  - Atlanta Penitentiary, 5827
  - Prison of Socrates, 6674
- Punishment for Crime
  - Capital Punishment, 1185
    - Electrocution, 2191
    - Garrote, 2696
    - Guillotine, 2980
    - Hanging, 3036, 1745
      - Tyburn Tree, 7331
    - Lethal Gas, 1186
    - Shooting, 1186
  - Exile, 2343-2344
    - Deportation, 2343
  - Indeterminate Sentence, 3377
  - Ostracism, 5267
    - Asistides, 381
    - Cimon, 1425-1426
    - Themistocles, 7140
  - Pillory, 5616
    - Stocks, 5616
  - Rack, 5933
  - Stocks, in England, 1745
  - Torture, 7221-7222, 5825
    - Nine Implements (Illustrated), 5825
    - Treadmill, 7254
    - Wheel, 7737
    - Whipping Post, 7741
  - Reprieve, 6062
  - Requisition, 2349
- Specific Crimes and Misdemeanors**
  - Abduction, 8
    - Kidnaping, 8, 3772
  - Arson, 421-422
  - Assassination, 456
    - Assassins, 456
  - Assault and Battery, 456
  - Bigamy, 735
  - Blackmail, 783
  - Blasphemy, 787-788
  - Bootlegging, 6655
  - Bribery, 945
  - Burglary, 1026
  - Conspiracy, 1624
  - Contempt of Court. [See WITNESS, page 7816.]
  - Counterfeiting, 1720
  - Embezzlement, 2219
    - Distinguished from Larceny, 2219, 3878
  - Felony, 2393
    - Compounding a Felony, 2393
  - Forfeiture, 2541
  - Forgery, 2542
  - Fraud, 2600
  - Homicide, 3214
    - Manslaughter, 4269
    - Murder, 4746
  - Kidnaping, 3772, 8
    - Abduction, 8
  - Larceny, 3878
  - Libel, 3961
    - Slander, 6636-6637
  - Malice, 4239-4240
  - Manslaughter, 4269
    - Homicide, 3214
  - Mayhem, 4355
  - Misdemeanor, 4533
    - Fine, 2419
  - Murder, 4746
    - Homicide, 3214
  - Negligence, 4870
  - Nuisance, 5111
    - Abatement of, 3
  - Peace, Breach of the, 5425
  - Perjury, 5489
  - Piracy, 5627
  - Polygamy, 5716-5717
    - Polyandry, 5716
  - Riot, 6134
  - Robbery, 6146
    - Differs from Burglary, 1026
  - Sedition, 6479
    - Alien and Sedition Laws, 221
  - Slander, 6636-6637
    - Libel, 3961
  - Smuggling, 6655
    - Bootlegging, 6655

Customs Duties, 1793  
 Port of Entry, 5749  
 Tariff, 7021-7024  
 State's Evidence, 2337  
 Suicide, 6914-6915

Hará-Kiri, 6914, 3039  
 Treason, 7254-7255  
 Wager, 7574  
 Warrant, 7621  
 Arrest, 420

## Laws and Court Decisions

Adamson Law, 35  
 Agrarian Laws, 88  
 Air Commerce Act, 130  
 Alien and Sedition Laws, 221  
 Amnesty Act, 2904  
 Anti-Polygamy Law, 1470, 5716  
 Bill of Rights, 739  
   American, 248, 739, 1640-1641  
   Declaration of Rights, 739  
 Bland-Allison Act, 786-787, 3057  
 Blue Laws, 805  
 Blue-Sky Laws, 806, 3739  
 Boston Port Bill, 879  
 British North-America Act, 971, 1141  
 Chinese Exclusion Act, 1470, 3058  
 Civil Rights Bill, 3686  
 Civil Service Act, 426, 1449  
 Compromise of 1850, 1595  
 Conscription Laws, 1622, 7888  
 Corn Laws, 1694  
 Curtis Act, 3430  
 Dartmouth College Case, 1830  
 Draco's Laws, 480  
 Dred Scott Decision, 2031, 7014  
 Embargo Act, 2219, 3651, 7396, 7602  
 Esch-Cummins Act, 5982  
 Ex Post Facto Laws, 2347  
 Federal Reserve Acts, 608  
 Force Bills, 2530  
 Fugitive Slave Laws, 2631  
 Game Laws, 2673  
 Geary Act, 1402  
 Gold Standard Act, 4190  
 Harrison Drug Act, 1516  
 Homestead Laws, 3213-3214  
 Independent Treasury Act, 7452  
 Interstate Commerce Act, 3490  
 Intolerable Acts, 3492  
 Jones Law, 3696  
 Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 3746, 5607  
 Labor Legislation, 3822-3824  
   Clayton Act, 7284, 3824  
   Eight-Hour Day, 3824, 2156-2157  
   Decisions of Courts, 3824  
   Labor, Department of, 3821  
   Labor Day, 3822  
 Magna Charta, 4215-4216  
   John, King of England, 3681  
 McFadden-Pepper Act, 610

Marketing Act, 4294  
 Macon Act, 7602  
 Migratory Bird Law, 766  
 Missouri Compromise, 4558, 1459, 4605, 7397  
 Morrill Act, 89  
 Navigation Acts, 4841-4842  
 New York Children's Court Act, 3727  
 Non-Importation Act, 7602  
 Non-Intercourse Act, 5040  
 Omnibus Bill, 5199-5200  
 Ordinance of 1787, 5242  
 Panama Canal Act, 5332  
 Payne-Aldrich Act, 7001  
 Poor Laws, 5729-5730  
 Presidential Succession Law, 5801-5802  
 Pure Food Laws, 5884  
 Quarantine Laws, 5903  
 Quartering Act, 6072  
 Quebec Act, 5918, 1139  
 Seamen's Bill, 3840  
 Silver Purchase Law, 1471, 3055, 3057, 4189  
 Smith-Hughes Act, 6652, 89  
 Stamp Act, 6796-6797  
 Standard Juvenile Court Act, 3726  
 Sumptuary Laws, 6920-6921  
 Tariff Legislation, 7021-7024  
   American System, 7022  
   Dingley Bill, 7023  
   Fordney-McCumber Act, 7023  
   Hawley-Smoot Bill, 7023  
   McKinley Bill, 7023  
   Mills Bill, 7023, 1470  
   Morrill Act, 7022  
   Payne-Aldrich Bill, 7023, 7002, 7004  
   Tariff of Abominations, 7022  
   Underwood-Simmons Act, 7023, 7782  
   Walker Act, 7022  
   Wilson Bill, 7023, 7778  
 Tenement-House Regulation, 7093  
 Tenure of Office Act, 7110  
 Test Acts, 7117  
 Townshend Act, 6072  
 Trust Legislation, 7284  
   Clayton Act, 7284, 3824  
   Sherman Anti-Trust Law, 7284, 3055  
 Union, Act of, 7353  
 Volstead Act, 7565  
 Wilmot Proviso, 7776, 5709  
 Wilson Tariff Act, 1471

# LITERATURE

## An Introductory Survey

### What Literature Is

Generally, the Total Writings in a Given Language, 4047

Specifically, Those Writings Notable for Content and Style, 4047

Tests of Good Books, 6007

Belles Lettres, Writings That Appeal to Emotion and Imagination, 705

A Fine Art, or Writings Which Furnish Beauty and Harmony, 2419

Classics, or Books of the Highest Rank, 1456

### The Earliest Forms

Religious Utterances, 4047-4048

The Origin of Ancient Greek Drama, 2023

The Vedas, 6378, 7469

The Gathas, 5496

The Bible, 723

### War Songs

The Mahabharata, 4221

The Shahnameh, 5496

The Iliad, 4047-4048

Beowulf, 2267, 711

### The Spread of Literature

#### By Word of Mouth

Bards, Early Celtic Wandering Poets, 619

Jongleurs, Professional Singers, 7276

Mastersingers, a German Association, 4338

Minnesingers, Wandering Poets, 4511

Minstrels, Wandering Poet Musicians of England, 4523

Blondel, in Scott's Talisman, 796

Troubadours, Lyric Singers of Southern France, 7276

Trouvères, Epic Singers of Northern France, 7277

By Manuscript, 4273-4274

[See Outline on *Language*, in this GUIDE.]

By the Printing Press, 851-852

Its Influence on Prose, 5104

Caxton's Service to English Literature, 1263

The Modern Multiplicity of Books, 852, 5817

### Literary Material Widely Used in Poetry and Prose

Mythology, 4787-4800

Quotations and References, 12, 246, 279, 318, 343, 379, 380, 872, 2218, 2645, 2681, 3014, 3123, 3124, 3128-3129, 3162, 3156, 3315, 3512, 3618, 4371, 5165, 5197, 5397, 6506, 7026, 7156, 7348-7349

Medieval Legend, Chivalry, and Romance, 3923, 1404, 6167

Quotation and References, 165, 221, 240, 1404, 1924, 2162, 2362, 2800, 2847, 3203, 3851, 4110, 4143, 4410, 5013, 5627, 5808, 6149, 6163-6164, 6329, 6602, 7014, 7015, 7089, 7134, 7225, 7590, 7591, 7683

### The World of Nature

Birds, in Quoted Passages: 811, 2872, 3880, 5278, 5447, 5519, 5612, 6003, 6148, 6365, 6945, 6946, 7163, 7741

Other Animals, 1743, 3596, 3749, 4038, 5209, 6333, 6658, 6789, 6792, 7316

Plants and Flowers, 346, 454, 1805, 2490, 2495, 3301, 3532, 3596, 3640, 3975, 4005, 4117, 4118, 4292, 4471, 5131, 5240, 5341, 5739, 5812, 6202, 6205, 6927, 7165, 7290

Trees, 1349, 5128, 5319, 5320, 5622, 7258, 7260

Miscellaneous, 347, 1818, 2628, 5984, 5986, 7750

### The World of Man

Famous Places, in Quoted Passages: 409, 933, 1827, 2897, 3123, 3168, 3748, 4282, 5097, 5100, 5293, 5722, 6087, 6088, 6234, 6330, 6331, 6440, 6441, 6944, 7445, 7474, 7485, 7669.

Famous Persons: 23, 982, 1827, 2011, 2990, 3238, 3551, 3771, 3901, 4319, 4357, 5299, 6069, 6113, 6123, 6150, 6317, 6380, 6403

### The World of Abstract Ideas

Ambition, 245

The Meaning of Death, 1849



The Delusion of Dreams, 2030  
 Fashion, 2375  
 Imagination, 3366-3368  
 Immortality, 3368  
 The Charm of Music, 415', 4164, 4759  
 Patriotism, 5417-5418  
 The Blessings of Sleep, 6641  
 Thought, 7158  
 Thrift, 7160-7161  
 The Months of the Year in Appropriate Verse  
 January, 3619  
 February, 2388  
 March, 4286  
 April, 332  
 May, 4353  
 June, 3715  
 July, 3711  
 August, 501  
 September, 6498-6499  
 October, 5158  
 November, 5109  
 December, 1858  
 Special Days in Literary Programs  
 Arbor Day, 345  
 Bird Day, 767  
 Christmas Day, 1415, 1417  
 Columbus Day, 1576  
 Dickens' Day, 1940

Empire Day, 2229  
 Flag Day, 2456  
 Hallowe'en, 3022  
 Independence Day, 3376  
 Lanier's Birthday, 3871  
 Lee's Birthday, 3921  
 Lincoln's Birthday, 4019  
 Memorial Day, 4387  
 Mother's Day, 4684  
 New Year's Day, 4964  
 Thanksgiving Day, 7135-7136  
 Valentine's Day, 7441  
 Washington's Birthday, 7654  
**Literary Awards and Honors**  
**Prizes**  
 Nobel, 5036-5037  
 Pulitzer, 5877  
**Membership in Literary Associations of**  
 Highest Rank,  
 The Athenaeum, 479  
 The American Academy of Arts and Let-  
 ters, 247  
 The French Academy, 3468  
**Honor Conferred by King**  
 Poet Laureate, 5679  
**Fame**  
 Bibliomania, 732-733  
 Literary Shrines, 2108, 869

## The Study of Literature

### Its Aim

To know "the Best Utterance of the Human  
 Mind," 4049, 6006

### Its Gifts, 4048-4049

Pleasure, 4049

Information, 4049

Suggestions as to Informative Literature,  
 6006-6007

Inspiration, 4048-4049

Phoebe Cary's Poems, 4049

Henley's Invictus, 4049

### Methods of Study, 4049

Danger of Too Formal Study, 4049, 6010

Suggestions for Pleasurable Study, 4050,  
 6010, 6011, 6012

### The Supervision of Children's Reading, 4050

### The Aim

To Teach the Love of Good Books, 4050,  
 3859

To Teach Good Language Habits, 3859

### The Problem of Selection, 4050

The Necessity of Suiting the Child's Taste,  
 6007, 6009, 6010

The Various Stages in a Child's Taste,  
 6007, 6008

Desirable Qualities in Children's Books,  
 6008

Useful Types at Various Ages, 4050, 4051,  
 4052

### List of Suggested Reading, 4052-4053

For Younger Children, 4052

For Older Children, 4052-4053

Rhymes of Childhood, 6101-6106

## Poetry

### Its Ancient Lineage, 5679

### Its Technique, 5679

Essentials of Form, 5679

Rhythm, 6106, 4422

Irregular Forms

Psalms, 5679-5680, 5861

Free Verse, 260

Meter, 4421-4422

Kinds of Feet in English Verse, 4422

Iambic, 4422

Coleridge's Ancient Mariner, 275

Trochaic, 4422

Tennyson's What Does Little Birdie  
 Say, 3863

Dactylic, 4422

Longfellow's Evangeline, 2330

Anapestic, 4422

Larcom's Brown Thrush, 3866

Amphibrachic, 4422

Scott's Lullaby of an Infant Chief,  
 4422

Kinds of Lines according to the Num-  
 ber of Feet, 4422

Dimeter, 4422

- The Queen of Hearts, 3862
- Trimeter, 4422
  - Stevenson's *The Swing*, Lines 2 and 4, 3862
- Tetrameter, 4422
  - Stevenson's *The Swing*, Lines 1 and 3, 3862
- Pentameter, 4422
  - Milton's *Sonnet*, 6688
- Hexameter, 4422
  - Longfellow's *Evangeline*, 2330
- Heptameter, 4422
- Special Verse Forms
  - Blank Verse, 787
    - Bryant's *Thanatopsis*, 787, 254
  - Spenserian Stanza, 6757
    - Byron's *Childe Harold*, 7484, 7485
- Ornaments of Verse Form**
  - Rhyme, 6101
  - Figures of Speech, 2414-2415
    - Alliteration, 226-227
    - Hyperbole, 3318
    - Metaphor, 4417
    - Metonymy, 4423-4424
    - Simile, 6614
    - Synecdoche, 6985
- Narrative Poetry**, 5680, 2277
  - Epics, Lofty Recitals of Great Exploits, 2277
    - National Epics, 2277
      - Homer's *Iliad*, 3349
      - Homer's *Odyssey*, 5162
      - The *Nibelungenlied*, 5013-5014
      - The Poem of the *Cid*, 1424
      - Song of Roland, 6163-6164
      - Beowulf, 711
      - Kalevala, 2422
    - Literary Epics, 2277
      - Vergil's *Aeneid*, 67
      - Dante's *Divine Comedy*, 1822-1823
      - Milton's *Paradise Lost*, 5357
  - Metrical Romances, 6167
    - Medieval Popularity, 6167, 2268
    - Story Cycles of Arthur, 430
      - Richard the Lion-Hearted, 6113
    - Alexander the Great, 199
    - Roland and Charlemagne, 6163-6164, 1312-1313
  - Rhyming Chronicles, History in Verse, 2268
    - Layamon's *Brut*, 2268
  - Idylls, Scenic Stories in Small Compass, 3346

- Pastoral Setting, 5412
- Tennyson's *Idylls of the King*, 3346, 3347
- Ballads, Folk-Tales in Verse, 583
  - Early Crude Forms, 583
    - Geste of Robin Hood, 583, 6149
  - Chevy Chase, 583
  - Later Literary Forms, 583
    - Coleridge's *Ancient Mariner*, 275
    - Longfellow's *Wreck of the Hesperus*, 583
- Lyric Poetry**
  - Songs, the Original Lyrics, 4165, 5680
    - Love Songs, 6385, 7276
      - Sappho, 6385
      - Catullus, 1259
    - Troubadours, 7276
      - Burns, 1036
    - Religious Songs, 3316-3318
    - Carols, Songs of Rejoicing 1205
    - National Hymns, 3316
      - [See Outline on *Music*, in this GUIDE.]
  - Elegies, Poems of Mourning, 2198
    - The Meditative Type, 2198
      - Gray's *Elegy*, 2920
    - The Pastoral Type, 5412, 2198
      - Milton's *Lycidas*, 2198
    - Roman Use of Term, 2198
      - Catullus, 1259
  - Sonnets, Fourteen-Line Lyrics, 6688
    - Italian Origin, 6688
      - Petrarch, 5519
    - Introduction into England by Surrey, 6688
    - Milton's *Sonnet on His Blindness*, 6688
    - Lizette Woodworth Reese's *Tears*, 6035
  - Odes, Lyrics Which Commemorate, 5161
    - Modern Type, 5161
      - Bryant's *To a Waterfowl*, 5161
      - Lowell's *Commemoration Ode*, 4140
    - Ancient Greek Type, 5161
      - Sappho's *Odes*, 6385
      - Pindar's *Songs*, 5620
- Unclassified**
  - Didactic or Instructive Poetry, 5680, 1943
    - Vergil's *Georgics*, 1943, 7495
    - Pope's *Essay on Man*, 1943, 5736
  - Satires, Poems Ridiculing Men and Manners, 5680, 6397
  - Limericks, Nonsense Verses of Special Form, 4007
  - Acrostics, Trick Verse, 23

## Prose

- Its Late Origin as Literature**, 5847, 5680
  - Increased Importance through Printing Press, 5847
- Its Usual Classification**, 5847
- Fiction**, Imaginative Prose Narratives, 2406
  - Fables, Stories with Labeled Morals, 2356
    - Ancient Oriental Origin, 2357
      - Hindu Source, 2356
    - Aesop's Fables, 2356, 69, 6860, 6854
    - Later Imitations, 2357

- Horace's *City Mouse and Country Mouse*, 6869
- Andersen's *Ugly Duckling*, 6854
- Ade's *Fables in Slang*, 44
- Folklore, Traditional Tales, 2506
  - Earliest Collections, 2508
    - Grimms' *Kinder und Hausmarchen*, 2508, 2966
    - Perrault's *Mother Goose Tales*, 4683, 5491

- Later Examples, 2508
  - Croker's Fairy Legends, 2508
  - Andersen's Fairy Tales, 275
- Legends, 3923
  - Exact Use, 3923
    - Romulus, 6181-6182
    - Wilhelm Tell, 7089-7090
    - Arnold von Winkelried, 7795
    - Johann Faust, 2383
  - Broad Use, 3923
    - Chaucer's Legend of Good Women, 3923, 1322
    - Golden Legend, 3923
- Prose Romances, 6167
  - Medieval Types, 6167
    - Prose Versions of Metrical Romances, 6167
    - Malory's Morte D'Arthur, 4240
  - Modern Types, 6167
    - Adventurous Stories Akin to Novels, 6167
    - Stevenson's Treasure Island, 6833
    - Scott's Kenilworth, 3753-3755
- Mystery Stories, 4786
  - The Supernatural Type, 4786
    - Dickens' Mystery of Edwin Drood, 4786, 1938
    - Kipling's Phantom Rickshaw, 3796
  - The Riddle Story, 4786
    - Stockton's Lady or the Tiger, 6843
  - The Detective Story, 4786
    - Doyle's Adventures of Sherlock Holmes, 2018
- Novels, Presentations of Every-Day Life, 5103-5107
  - Forerunners, 5103, 5104
    - Oriental Prose Tales, 5104
      - Cinderella, 1430
    - Greek Tales of Separated Lovers, 5104
    - Prose Romances, 6167
    - Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, 5104, 1321
    - Boccaccio's Decameron, 811-812
    - Addison's De Coverley Papers, 37
  - The Earliest English Novels, 5104
    - Defoe's Robinson Crusoe, 5104, 6150
    - Richardson's Pamela, 5104, 6115
    - Fielding's Tom Jones, 5104, 2411
  - Differentiation into Various Types, 5106
    - The Novel of Character, 5106
      - George Eliot's Romola, 2208
    - The Novel of Manners, 5106
      - Frances Burney's Evelina, 5106
    - Austen's Pride and Prejudice, 506
    - The Novel of Plot, 5106
      - Walpole's Castle of Otranto, 7587
    - The Historical Novel, 5106
      - Scott's Talisman, 6450, 6451
    - The Crusading Novel, 5106
      - Dickens' Little Dorrit, 1937
  - English Novelists of the Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries, 5106
    - [See *English Literature*, below.]
  - American Novelists, 5106

- Pioneers, 5106
  - Charles Brockden Brown, 5106
  - James Fenimore Cooper, 1659
- The Master, 5106
  - Nathaniel Hawthorne, 3089
- Twentieth-Century Developments, 5106
- Ten Famous Novels, 2407
  - A List of Famous Novelists, 5107
- Short Stories, Fiction in Miniature, 5106, 2406, 2407
  - Their Origin, 4349
    - Guy de Maupassant, 4349
  - American Masters, 5106
    - Edgar Allan Poe, 5106, 5679
    - Nathaniel Hawthorne, 5106, 3090
  - English Masters, 3796, 629
    - Rudyard Kipling, 3796
    - James Matthew Barrie, 629
- Non-Fiction, the Prose of Actualities, 4049
- Orations, Eloquent Speeches, 5236
  - Greek Origin, 5236
    - Demosthenes' Philippics, 5236, 1890
  - Types of Orations, 5236
    - Address to Soldiers, 5236
    - Court Appeals, 5236
      - Cicero against Verres, 1424
    - Political Orations, 5236
      - Webster's Reply to Hayne, 5236, 7696
  - Great Periods, 5236
- Letters, Private Communications, 3944
  - Early Examples, 3944
    - Some Famous Letters, 3944
      - Swift's Journal to Stella, 6962
      - Chesterfield's Letters, 1348-1349
      - Lady Montagu's Letters, 4609
- Essays, Informal Discussions, 2298-2299
  - Their Origin with Montaigne, 2298, 4609
  - Their Development in England, 2298
    - Earliest Masterpieces, 2298
      - Bacon's Essays, 565
        - Of Studies, 2298-2299, 565
    - Later Masterpieces, 2298
      - Spectator Papers, 37
      - Lamb's Essays of Elia, 3846-3847
      - Macaulay's Milton, 4170
      - Carlyle's Burns, 1201
      - Stevenson's Familiar Studies of Men and Books, 6833
  - Their Development in America, 2298
    - Earliest Masterpiece, 2298
      - Irving's Sketch Book, 2298
    - Later Masterpieces, 2298
      - Emerson's Self-Reliance, 2221
      - Holmes' Autocrat Series, 3199, 3200
      - Lowell's My Study Windows, 4141
      - Thoreau's Walden, 7156-7157
      - Agnes Repplier's Convent Days, 6059
- Biographies, Written Lives, 744-748
  - Early Forms, 744
    - Bible Accounts of Patriarchs, 744, 724
    - Greek and Roman Myths, 744, 4787
    - Greek and Roman Masterpieces, 744
      - Tacitus' Agricola, 744, 6995

Plutarch's Lives, 744, 5664  
 Medieval Biography, 744  
 Modern Biography, 744-746  
 Masterpieces, 744  
   Boswell's Life of Johnson, 880  
   Lockhart's Scott, 744  
   Mrs. Gaskell's Life of Charlotte  
     Bronte, 974  
   Franklin's Autobiography, 2594,  
     532

The Twentieth-Century Realism, 745  
 Strachey's Queen Victoria, 6872  
 Sandburg's Abraham Lincoln, 6362  
 Ludwig's Napoleon, 744  
 Biographical Elements in Fiction,  
   744  
 Dickens' David Copperfield, 1937  
 Goethe's Sorrows of Werther, 2853  
 Atherton's The Conqueror, 744,  
   484

## Both Poetry and Prose

Dramas, Stories for the Stage, 2022-2027  
 The Contribution of the Greeks, 2022  
   Originated the Drama, 2022, 2023, 2026  
   The Chorus, 1408, 7236, 2023  
   Development by Thespis, 7148  
   Further Development by Aeschylus and  
     Sophocles, 2026, 68, 6689  
 The Technique of the Drama, 2022  
 Main Divisions, 2022  
   Tragedy, 2022, 7236  
   Comedy, 2022, 1580  
 Masterpieces of Tragedy, 68, 2026, 7236  
   Aeschylus' Prometheus Bound, 68  
   Sophocles' Antigone, 6689  
   Euripides' Medea, 2316  
 Masterpieces of Comedy, 381, 382, 2027  
   Aristophanes' The Clouds, 381, 382,  
     2027  
 The Medieval Drama, 2027  
   Its Religious Origin, 2027, 4785, 4786, 4647  
   The Easter Mass, 2027, 4786  
   The Christmas Mass, 2027, 4786  
   Transference to Guilds, 2027, 4786, 4528  
   Its Main Divisions, 2027  
     The Mystery Play, 2027  
     The Passion Play at Oberammergau,  
       4786, 5408  
     The Miracle Play, 2027, 4528-4529  
     The Morality Play, 2027, 4647  
 Minor Developments of the Drama  
   Farce, Extravagant Comedy, 2026, 1580  
   Burlesque, Satirical Travesty, 1028-1030  
   Gilbert and Sullivan's The Mikado, 1030  
   Masque, 4324  
   Milton's Comus, 4324  
 Revival of Greek Drama in the Fifteenth  
   Century, 2027  
 The Classic Dramas of England, 2027  
   The Best Elizabethan Dramas, 2027, 6524,  
     6527-6538  
   Shakespeare's Comedies, 1580  
     As You Like It, 6527, 6530  
     Twelfth Night, 6527, 6538  
     Merchant of Venice, 6527, 6534  
   Shakespeare's Tragedies, 7236, 6527  
     Hamlet, 7236, 6531  
     Macbeth, 7236, 6533  
     King Lear, 7236, 6532  
     Othello, 7236, 6535  
 Eighteenth-Century Comedies, 1580

Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer,  
   2863  
 Sheridan's The Rivals, 6556-6557  
 Sheridan's School for Scandal, 6556-  
   6557  
 Classic Dramas of Other Nations, 1580  
   Plautus' Miles Gloriosus, 5655  
   Molière's Imaginary Invalid, 1580, 4575  
   Racine's Andromaque, 5932  
   Corneille's Le Cid, 1692-1693  
   Goethe's Faust, 2383, 2854  
   Schiller's Wallenstein, 6412  
 American Drama of the Nineteenth Cen-  
   tury, 2023  
   The Rural-Character Type, 2023  
   Thompson's Old Homestead, 2023, 7154  
   Herne's Shore Acres, 2023, 3162  
   Thomas' Arizona, 7152, 2023  
   Belasco's Girl of the Golden West, 690  
 War Plays, 2023  
   Howard's Shenandoah, 2023  
   Gillette's Secret Service, 2808  
 Entertaining Comedies, 2023  
   Howard's The Henrietta, 2023  
   Gillette's Private Secretary, 2808  
 Dramas of Social Life, 2023  
   Fitch's The Truth, 2447  
   Walter's The Easiest Way, 2023  
 Vivid Characterizations, 2023  
   Sheldon's Romance, 6551  
   Moody's Great Divide, 4637  
 The Modern Drama, 2023, 2027, 1580  
   Pioneers, 3325, 6454  
   Ibsen, Creator of the Social-Problem  
     Drama, 3325  
   Scribe, Master of Technique, 6454  
 Characteristics, 2023, 3325  
   Revolt against Conventional Ideas, 3325  
   Ibsen's Ghosts, 3325  
   Shaw's Arms and the Man, 6545  
   Statement of a Social Problem, 2023  
   Galsworthy's Justice, 2669  
   Statement of a Mental Problem, 2023  
   O'Neill's Anna Christie, 2023  
   Excellent Technique, 2023  
   Ibsen's Pillars of Society, 3325  
   Exposition of Woman Psychology, 3325  
   Barrie's What Every Woman Knows,  
     630  
 Lists of Notable Dramatists, 2023, 1580

- Epistles, Communications for the Public**, 2281,  
3944  
Pliny's *Epistolae*, 2281  
The Epistles of the Bible, 728, 730, 3944  
Horace's *Epistolae*, 3945, 3238  
**Epitaphs, Memorial Inscriptions to the Dead**,  
2281  
Greek Masterpiece, 2281  
Simonides on the Heroes of Thermopylae,  
2281  
Other Interesting Epitaphs, 2281-2282  
Shakespeare's, 2281, 2282  
Franklin's, 2282  
Stevenson's, 2282  
**Epigrams, Concise Thoughts Clearly Expressed**,  
2279-2280  
Greek Origin, 2280  
Perfection by Romans, 2280  
Catullus, 1259  
Martial, 4307  
The English Master, Pope, 2280  
Essay on Criticism, 5736

- Essay on Man, 5736  
Proverbs, an Extended Meaning, 2280, 5854  
Source Books of Proverbs, 5854  
Book of Proverbs, 5854  
Don Quixote, 5854, 2011  
Poor Richard's Almanac, 5854, 5730  
**Narratives**  
Allegories, Stories with Symbolic Theme,  
224  
Wealth of English Allegories, 224  
Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress*, 224, 1022-  
1024  
Spenser's *Faerie Queene*, 224, 6757  
Parables, 5354, 224  
Famous Bible Parables, 5334  
Parodies, Comic Imitations, 5397  
In Prose, 5397  
Irving's *Knickerbocker's History*, 3560  
Harte's *Condensed Novels*, 5397, 3063  
In Verse, 5397  
Ben King's *If I Should Die Tonight*,  
5397

### Ancient Greek Literature

- Its Importance**, 2953, 2954, 4048  
Masterpieces of Many Types, 2953, 2954,  
4048  
Their Use as Models, 4048  
**Lyric Poets**, 2954  
Sappho, the Tenth Muse, 2954, 6384-  
6385  
Pindar, the Supreme Lyricist, 2954, 5619-  
5620  
Triumphant Songs, Hymns, Odes, Elegies,  
5619  
Simonides, Rival of Pindar, 2954, 6615  
Anacreon, a Lyric Poet, 270  
**The Pastoral Poet**, 7141  
Theocritus, Founder of Pastoral Poetry,  
7141, 5412  
**The Didactic Poet**, 7141  
Hesiod, Father of Didactic Poetry, 3168  
**The Epic Poet, the Glory of Greece**, 2954  
Homer, the Unsurpassed, 2954, 3210-3211  
The Epics Ascribed to Him, 3210  
The *Iliad*, 3210, 7278, 3349-3350  
The *Odyssey*, 3210, 5162  
The Modern Debt to the Epics, 3211  
**The Dramatists**, 2954  
Thespis, the Father of Tragedy, 7148  
Aeschylus, First of the Great Triad, 2954, 68  
Seven Extant Tragedies, 68  
Prometheus Bound, Translated by Mrs.  
Browning, 5840, 68  
Sophocles, Second of the Triad, 6689  
Best-Known Tragedies, 6689  
Antigone and Oedipus Tyrannus, 6689,  
5165  
Euripides, the Third in Rank, 2316, 2954  
His Extant Plays, 2316  
Aristophanes, Greatest Writer of Comedy,  
2954, 381

- Characteristics of Style, 381  
His Best-Known Plays, 382  
The Clouds, a Satire on Socrates, 382  
The Frogs, a Satire on Euripides, 382  
**The Historians**, 2954  
Herodotus, the Father of History, 3164  
Thucydides, First of Critical Historians,  
7164  
Xenophon, Follower of Thucydides, 7915-  
7916  
His Experiences in the Expedition against  
Artaxerxes, 7915-7916  
Their Relation in the Anabasis, 7915, 270  
Polybius, Exponent of the Pragmatic Meth-  
od, 5716  
**The Philosophers, Textbook Writers for the  
World**, 2954  
Socrates, the Pioneer of the Great Triad, 6673  
Discourses, 6673  
Their Recording by Plato, 5653  
Plato, the Supreme Thinker, 5652-5653  
His Famous Books, 5633  
The Republic, His Masterpiece, 5652-5653  
Aristotle, the Organizer, 382  
Longinus, a Follower of Plato, 4105  
[See Outline on *Philosophy*, in this GUIDE.]  
**The Orators**, 2954  
Demosthenes, Defender of Athenian Lib-  
erties, 1890  
Aeschines, Opponent of Demosthenes, 68  
Isocrates, Teacher of Oratory, 3568  
**The Biographer**, 2954  
Plutarch, Writer of Model Biography, 5664  
**Other Writers of Prose**, 2954  
Aesop, Traditional Originator of the Fable,  
69  
Strabo, Most Important Geographer of An-  
cient Times, 6872

## Latin Literature

**The Early Literary Period, 3886**

The Poet Ennius, 3886

The Famous Dramatists

Plautus, Great Comedy Writer, 5655

Terence, Dramatist of Greek Life in the Third Century, B.C., 7110

**The Augustan Age, or the Golden Age, 3886, 86**

Vergil, the Supreme Poet of Rome, 7494-7495

Work on Aeneid, 7495

Literary Achievements, 7495

The Eclogues, or Bucolics, 7495

The Georgics, 7495, 2329

The Aeneid, 67, 1219, 7496, 1943

Ovid, a Narrative Poet, 5277

Catullus, Lyric Poet, 1259

Horace, Lyric Poet, 3237, 3886

Lucretius, Philosophical Verse, 4144

Cicero, Master of Prose in Oratory and

Philosophy, 3886, 1423-1424

Orations against Catiline, 1424, 1247

Philippics against Mark Antony, 1424

Essays: Friendship, Old Age, etc., 1424

Caesar, Master of Historical Prose, 3886, 1068

Commentaries, 1068

Livy, Most Eminent Roman Historian, 4062

Sallust, First Roman Historian, 6333

Varro, Cyclopaedia Writer, 7465

**The Period of Decline, 3886**

Juvenal, Poet and Satirist, 3725

Martial, Writer of Epigrams, 4307

Tacitus, Historian and Biographer, 6995

Quintilian, Critic and Orator, 5923

Seneca, Dramatist and Philosopher, 6491

Pliny the Elder, Scholar and Historian, 5658-5659

Pliny the Younger, Famous Scholar, 5659

Marcus Aurelius, Philosopher, 504-505

**Medieval Latin Literature, 6056**

Church Literature, Devotional, 6417, 6056

Saint Jerome's Vulgate, 3657

Saint Augustine's City of God, 502

Saint Augustine's Confessions, 502

Saint Chrysostom's Homilies, 1419

Saint Gregory's Book of Pastoral Rule, 2962

Eusebius' History of the Christian Church, 2329

Thomas à Kempis' Imitation of Christ, 7153

Saint Teresa's Mystic Treatises, 7143

The Literature of Scholasticism, 6417, 6056

Saint Thomas Aquinas' Summa Theologiae, 338

Saint Ignatius Loyola's Constitutions and Spiritual Exercises for the Jesuits, 4143

Duns Scotus' Commentaries, 2056

Roger Bacon's Opus Majus, 566

The Latin Literature of the Renaissance

Erasmus' Praise of Folly, 2284

Erasmus' Colloquia, 2284

More's Utopia, 4650, 7436

Francis Bacon's Instauratio Magna, 565

## The Literature of France

**Its Early Rise to World Influence, 4048, 2613**

Its Supremacy in Style, 2613

Its Excellence in Many Fields, 2613

**The Medieval Period, 2613, 6167**

Chanson de Geste, or Folk-Epic, 2613

Song of Roland, 2613, 6167, 6163-6164

Stories of King Arthur, 2613, 4240

The Love Songs of the Troubadours, 2613, 7276

The Court Songs of the Trouvères, 2613, 7277

The Letters of Héloïse to Abelard, 8

The Prose Chronicles of Froissart, 2613, 2627

Histories of Chivalrous Adventure, 2627

Mystery Plays, 2613, 4785, 4786

**The Period of the Renaissance, 2613-2614**

François Villon, the Vagabond Poet, 7529

François Rabelais, Humorist and Satirist, 5927-5928

Michel Montaigne, Originator of the Essay, 2614, 4609

John Calvin, the Great Reformer, 1100-1101

**The Golden Age, 2614**

Jean Baptiste Poquelin Molière, 2614, 4575-4576

Brilliant Social Comedies, 4575-4576, 2614

Portrayal of Character, 4575

Pierre Corneille, Father of French Classical Tragedy, 2614, 1692-1693

Dramas of Great Heroes and Heroic Deeds, 1693

Le Cid, 1693, 1424

Jean Baptiste Racine, Writer of Poetic Tragedies, 2614, 5932-5933

Jean La Fontaine, Creator of Matchless Fables, 2614, 3840

Nicholas Boileau, Censor of Literary Style, 2614

Madame de Sévigné, Letter Writer, 2614

Charles Perrault, Mother Goose Stories, 2614, 5491

François Fénelon, 2394

The Heptameron, Romantic Tales, 3150

**The Age of Criticism and Satire, 2614**

François Voltaire, Exponent of the Destructive Criticism, 2614, 7565-7566

Charles Montesquieu, Satirist and Philosopher, 2614, 4623

Alain Le Sage, Novelist and Dramatist, 3943, 2614

Gil Blas, 3943

Pierre Beaumarchais, 2614, 664-665

- The Barber of Seville, 665  
 The Marriage of Figaro, 665, 2414  
**The Romantic Movement**, 2614, 6170  
 Jean Jacques Rousseau, the Voice of Revolutionary Ideas, 2614, 6218  
 Émile, New Principles in Education, 6218  
 Confessions, the Story of His Life, 6218  
 François Chateaubriand, Pioneer in Romanticism, 2614, 6170  
 Madame de Staël, Champion of Romanticism, 6790, 6792  
 Madame Roland, Disciple of Rousseau, 6164  
 Jacques Saint Pierre, Pioneer in a Simple and Natural Style, 6327  
 Victor Hugo, the Supreme Romanticist, 3277-3279, 2614  
 His Poetic Genius, 3277, 3278, 3279  
 His Career as a Dramatist, 3278  
 His Novels, 3277, 3278, 3279  
 Les Misérables, an Epic of Regeneration, 3279, 3943  
 Claude Gueux, 3278  
 The Man Who Laughs, 3279  
 Toilers of the Sea, 3279  
 Historical Romances, 3278, 3279  
 Notre Dame de Paris, 3278  
 Ninety-Three, 3279  
**The Nineteenth Century**, 2614  
 The Poets, 2614  
 Alphonse Lamartine, 2614, 3846  
 Alfred de Musset, 2614, 4781  
**The Fiction Writers**, 2614  
 Honoré de Balzac, Master of Realistic Fiction, 591-592  
 Émile Zola, a Novelist of Sordid Life, 7977-7978  
 Alphonse Daudet, the French Dickens, 1833  
 George Sand, an Emotional and Descriptive Novelist, 6361-6362  
 Guy de Maupassant, Master of the Short Story, 4349  
 Alexander Dumas, the Elder, Master of Historical Romance, 2053  
 Famous Historical Novels, 2053  
 The Three Guardsmen. and Sequels, 2053, 2700

- The Man in the Iron Mask, 3551-3552  
 The Count of Monte Cristo, 2053  
 Jules Verne, the Romancer of Modern Science, 7503-7504  
 Eugene Sue, the Romancer of the Uncanny, 6903  
 Pierre Loti, Fact and Fiction about Himself, 4117  
 Prosper Mérimée, Novelist and Historian, 4410  
 Ludovic Halévy, Author of L'Abbé Constantin, 3016  
**The Dramatists**, 2614  
 Eugène Scribe, Founder of Modern Technique, 6454  
 Victorien Sardou, Witty Dramatist of Sordid Life, 6387  
 Edmond Rostand, Romantic Dramatist and Poet, 6212-6213  
 Alexander Dumas, the Younger, Stern Moralist, 2054  
 Camille, 2054, 1109  
 Ludovic Halévy and Henri Meilhac, Collaborators, 3016  
**The Non-Fiction Writers**, 2614  
 Charles Sainte-Beuve, Leading Critic and Essayist, 6306  
 Henri Fabre, the Homer of the Insect, 2357  
 Hippolyte Taine, Famous Historian and Literary Critic, 7007  
 François Guizot, Leader in Historical Study, 2982  
 Jules Michelet, Emotional Historian, 4456  
 Ernest Renan, Unorthodox Writer on Church History, 6056-6057  
**Pioneers of the Twentieth Century**, 2614  
 Anatole France, Brilliant, Versatile Modernist, 2614, 2589  
 Maurice Maeterlinck, French-Belgian Dramatist and Philosopher, 4209, 4210  
**New Developments**, 2614  
 The Prevalence of War Themes, 2614  
 Emphasis on Introspection, Impressionism, and Analysis, 2614  
 Marcel Proust, Novelist, 2614  
 André Maurois, Biographer, 2614

### Italian Literature

- The Pre-Literary Language**, 3569, 3571  
 Lack of a Literary Language, 3569, 3571  
 Book of Marco Polo, Written in French, 5714  
**The Earliest Literary Period**, 3571  
 The Development of a Literary Language, 3569, 3571  
 Dante Alighieri, the Supreme Genius of Italy, 1821, 664, 3571  
 Beatrice, His Inspiration, 1821, 664  
 His Masterpiece, the Divine Comedy, 1821  
 Francesco Petrarch, Lyric Poet and Sonneteer, 5518-5519, 3571  
 His Love for Laura, 5518, 3571

- His Influence on the Poets of Europe, 5519  
 Giovanni Boccaccio, Father of Classic Italian Prose, 3571, 811, 812  
**The Renaissance Period**, 3571, 6056  
 New Interest in Greek and Latin, 3571, 6056  
 Retarded Growth of a Literary Italian Language, 3571  
**The Second Period of Literary Activity**, 3571  
 Ludovico Ariosto, Romantic Poet of Dignified Style, 3571  
 Torquato Tasso, Poet of Epic Grandeur, 3571, 7029  
 Benvenuto Cellini, Artist and Writer, 1269

- Niccolo Machiavelli, Political Writer, 4179  
**The Period of United Italy**, 3571  
 Vittorio Alfieri, Dramatic Poet and Pioneer  
 in Nationalism, 203-204  
 Guglielmo Ferrero, Historian and Political  
 Writer, 3571, 2398

- Gabriele D'Annunzio, Dramatist and Novel-  
 ist, 3571, 295, 296  
 His Love Affair with Eleanora Duse, 295,  
 296, 2058  
 His Intense Nationalism, 296  
 List of His Novels and Plays, 296

### English Literature

- The Anglo-Saxon Period**, 2267  
 The Strange Language of the Period, 2266,  
 2267  
 The Minstrels as the First Poets, 2267  
 The Extant Literature of the Period, 2267  
   Beowulf, the Epic, 2267, 711  
   Caedmon's Paraphrase of the Scriptures,  
   2267, 1066  
   Bede's Ecclesiastical History of England,  
   671  
   King Alfred's Translations, 2267, 205  
   The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, 2267, 288  
**The Anglo-Norman Period**, 2267  
 The Shaping of the English Language, 2266,  
 2267  
 The Dominance of French at Court, 2266  
 Popular Types of Literature, 2268  
   Metrical Romances in Cycles, 6167, 2268  
   Rhyming Chronicles, 2268  
     Geoffrey's History of the Kings of  
     Britain, 2721  
     Source Book of Arthur Legends,  
     2721  
     Layamon's Brut, 2268  
     Religious Poems, 2268  
**The Age of Chaucer**, 2268  
 Geoffrey Chaucer, the Father of English  
 Poetry, 2268, 1321  
 His Crystallization of the English Lan-  
 guage, 2268  
 His Native English Period, 1322  
   Canterbury Tales, a Masterpiece, 1322,  
   1176, 1265  
 William Langland, Satiric Poet, 3857  
   The Vision of Piers Plowman, 3857  
 John Mandeville, Prose Narrator, 4253  
 John Wycliffe, Religious Writer, 2268, 7902,  
 7903  
**The Renaissance Period**, 2268  
 Its Lack of Great Literature, 2268  
 Writers of Minor Importance, 2268  
   Thomas Malory, Prose Romancer of  
   Chivalry, 2268, 4240  
   Morte D'Arthur, a Source Book of  
   Arthurian Legends, 2268, 4240  
   Tyndale, Religious Writer, 2268, 7337  
     His Translation of the New Testament,  
     2268, 7337  
   Scotch Poets, Writers of Ballad Cycles,  
   2268  
 Preparation for Greatness of Elizabethan  
 Period, 2268  
 Surrey's Introduction of Blank Verse,  
 2268, 787

- Surrey's Introduction of the Italian  
 Sonnet, 6688  
 Caxton's Work with the Printing Press,  
 1263  
**The Elizabethan Age**, 2268  
 The Dramatic Poets, 2268  
 The Superlativeness of Its Literature, 2268  
 Shakespeare, the Greatest Genius of the  
 English People, 2268  
   His Rural Environment, 6524, 6525  
   His London Years, 6525, 6526  
   Ben Jonson's Tribute to Him, 6526  
   His Non-Dramatic Works, 6526  
     Venus and Adonis, The Rape of  
     Lucrece, 6526  
     His Sonnet Sequence, 6526, 6688  
 Classification of Dramas, 6527, 6528  
   The Period of Experimentation, 6527  
   Period of Greatest Comedies, 6527  
   Period of Greatest Tragedies, 6527  
   The Period of Serenity, 6527-6528  
 The Sources of His Material, 6528  
   Holinshed's Chronicles, for Macbeth  
   and King Lear, 6528, 3195  
   Plutarch's Lives, for Julius Caesar  
   and Anthony and Cleopatra, 6528,  
   5664  
   Italian Romances, for Romeo and  
   Juliet, 6528  
   The Judgment of Time, 6528, 6525  
   The Baconian Theory, 6528  
   The Synopses of Thirty Shakespearean  
   Plays, 6528-6538  
 Christopher Marlowe, Poetic Dramatist of  
 Second Rank, 4295-4296  
 His Powerful Tragedies of Greed, 4296  
   Tamburlaine the Great, Greed for  
   Power, 4296  
   Doctor Faustus, Greed for Knowl-  
   edge, 4296  
   The Jew of Malta, Greed for Money,  
   4296  
 Ben Jonson, Rival of Shakespeare and  
 Upholder of the Classical Writers,  
 3696-3697  
   His Famous Song, Drink to Me Only  
   with Thine Eyes, 3697  
 Beaumont and Fletcher, Dramatists of the  
 Decline, 665  
 George Chapman, Dramatist and Trans-  
 lator, 1304  
**The Non-Dramatic Poets**, 2268  
 Edmund Spenser, the Poets' Poet, 2268,  
 2269, 6756, 6757



- The Faerie Queene, an Allegory, 6757  
 Spenserian Stanza, 6757, 2884  
 Sir Philip Sidney, Poet and Flower of Chivalry, 6594, 6595, 2268  
 Sir Walter Raleigh, Lyric Poet and Historian, 2268, 5991  
 The Prose Writers, 2268  
 Sir Francis Bacon, Master of Prose Style, and Essayist, 2268, 565  
 Raphael Holinshed, Author of Shakespearean Source Book, 3195  
 Richard Hakluyt, Geographer and Historian, 3014  
**The Puritan Age, 2268**  
 Its Gloomy and Argumentative Tendencies, 2268  
 John Milton, Its Epic Poet, 2268, 4491-4494  
 Wordsworth's Sonnet to Milton, 4491  
 Milton's Musical and Classical Education, 4491, 4492  
 Hymn on the Nativity, 4491  
 His Horton Period of Preparation for Literature, 4492  
 L'Allegro, a Happy Man's Day, 4494  
 Il Penseroso, a Thoughtful Man's Day, 4494, 5026  
 Comus, a Masque on the Power of Virtue, 4494, 5862  
 Lycidas, an Elegy on the Death of Edward King, 4494  
 His Prose Period, 4492, 4494  
 His Sonnets, Only Poetic Production at This Time, 4494, 6688  
 His Sonnet on His Blindness, 6688  
 His Epic Period, 4492, 4494  
 Paradise Lost, a Masterpiece of Sublimity, 4494, 5357  
 Paradise Regained, an Epic of Man's Regeneration, 4494  
 Samson Agonistes, a Dramatic Poem, 4494  
 Excerpts from His Writings, 6688, 4494, 3120  
 John Bunyan, Author of Prose Allegories, 1022  
 The Pilgrim's Progress, an Allegory of Christian Life, 1022, 1024  
 Jeremy Taylor, Clerical Writer of Poetic and Eloquent Prose, 7036-7037  
 The Carolinian, or Metaphysical, Poets, 2268  
 Some Popular Poems, 6902  
**The Restoration Period, 2268**  
 Reaction against Puritanism, 2268  
 Butler's Hudibras, a Satire of the Puritans, 2268, 1040  
 Prevalence of Frivolity and Immorality in the Drama, 2268  
 Dryden's Comedies, 2042, 2027  
 Vanbrugh's Witty Plays, 7449  
 John Dryden, Literary Dictator of a New School, 2041  
 His Heroic Dramas, 2042  
 His Didactic and Satiric Verse, 2042  
 Annus Mirabilis, 2042  
 His Immortal Lyrics, 2042  
 Song for Sainte Cecilia's Feast, 2042, 1265  
 Alexander's Feast, 2042, 1265  
 His Introduction of Modern Prose, 2042  
 His Popularization of the Heroic Couplet, 2042  
 Samuel Pepys, Classic Diarist, 5481  
 Izaak Walton, the Father of Angling, 7589, 3594  
 Wentworth Roscommon, Poet and Critic, 6201  
 Thomas Rymer, Historiographer, 6288  
 Two Epoch-Making Books, 3188, 4962  
 Thomas Hobbes' Leviathan, 3188  
 Isaac Newton's Principia Mathematica, 4962  
**The Early Eighteenth Century, the So-Called Augustan Age, 2269**  
 Its Devotion to Formalities and Prose, 2269, 5736  
 Alexander Pope, Its Brilliant Versifier of Argument and Satire, 2269  
 His Elegant and Quotable Couplets, 5736, 1206  
 His Masterpiece, The Rape of the Lock, 5736  
 The Essay on Criticism, 5736  
 The Essay on Man, 5736  
 The Dunciad, a Brilliant Satire, 5736  
 His Translations of the Iliad and the Odessey, 5736  
 Daniel Defoe, the First Journalist, 1873  
 Robinson Crusoe, His Masterpiece, 1873, 2269, 6150  
 Other Masterpieces of Realistic Fiction, 1873  
 Richard Steele, the Creator of the Newspaper Essay, 2269, 6822  
 His Founding of the Tatler and the Spectator, 6822  
 Joseph Addison, Master of Elegant Prose, 2269, 37  
 His Contributions to Steele's Journals, 37  
 The Famous Sir Roger de Coverley Papers, 37  
 Jonathan Swift, Keen Satirist, 2269, 6962  
 Gulliver's Travels, His Masterpiece, 2269, 6962, 2983  
 The Tale of a Tub, Satire on Sects, 6962  
 John Gay, a Minor Poet and Dramatist, 2707  
 The Beggar's Opera, a Witty Play, 2707  
 Lady Mary Wortley Montagu, Literary Letter Writer, 4609  
**The Late Eighteenth Century, 2269**  
 The Last of the Classicists, 2269, 6170  
 Samuel Johnson, Literary Dictator, 2269, 3689, 3690  
 James Boswell, Famous Biographer, 3690, 880  
 Edmund Burke, Master of Eloquent Argument, 1028

- Edward Gibbon, *Classic Historian*, 2801, 2802  
 Lord Chesterfield, *Arbiter of Elegance*, 1348  
 Other Classics of the Period,  
   Hume's *Treatise Upon Human Nature*, 3285  
   Locke's *Essay Concerning the Human Understanding*, 4075  
   Malthus' *Essay on the Principles of Population*, 4242  
   Adam Smith's *The Wealth of Nations*, 6647  
   The *Junius Letters*, 3719  
**The Beginnings of Romanticism**, 2269, 6170  
 A Return to Spenser and Shakespeare, 6170  
 James Thomson, *Nature Poet*, 7155  
 Thomas Gray, *Herald of the New Movement*, 2920-2921  
 William Cowper, *Religious Poet and Lover of Nature*, 1729  
 William Blake, *Mystic and Imaginative Poet*, 786  
 Robert Burns, *Poet of Universal Appeal*, 1034  
   The *Cotter's Saturday Night*, 1034  
   Tam O'Shanter, a Jolly Tale, 1034  
   Songs the Whole World Sings, 1036  
   *Nature Lyrics of Tenderness and Pathos*, 1036  
**The First Novelists**, 5104  
   Samuel Richardson, 5104, 6115  
     His *Experience as a Letter Writer for Girls*, 6115  
     Pamela, the First Real Novel of Plot and Character, 6115  
   Henry Fielding, a *Novelist of First Rank*, 2411, 5104  
     His *Derision of the New Form*, 5104  
     Joseph Andrews, Part Burlesque, 5104  
     *Novels of Contemporary Life*, 5104, 2411  
     Tom Jones, *Autobiographical*, 2411, 5104  
     Amelia, a *Tribute to His Wife*, 2411, 5104  
   Tobias Smollett, a *Novelist of Exaggerations*, 6655  
   Laurence Sterne, *Creator of the Sentimental Novel*, 6831  
**Dramatists of Unusual Power**, 2027  
   Oliver Goldsmith, *Versatile Humorist*, 2863-2864, 2269  
     *She Stoops to Conquer*, 2863  
     *The Vicar of Wakefield*, 2863-2864  
     *The Deserted Village*, 2864  
   Richard Sheridan, *Comedies of Manners*, 6556-6557  
     *The Rivals*, Featuring Mrs. Malaprop, 6556-6557  
     *The School for Scandal*, a *Satire on Gossip*, 6557  
 Other Well-Known Works  
   Young's *Night Thoughts*, 7951
- Horace Walpole's *Castle of Otranto*, 7587  
 Baron Munchhausen's *Narratives*, 4740, 4741  
**The Romantic Age**, 2269, 6170  
 Its *Characteristics*, 2269, 6170  
   *Free Expression of Individual Genius*, 2269  
   *Interest in the Past*, 6170  
   *Appreciation of Nature*, 2269, 6170, 7847  
   *Human Sympathy*, 2269, 7847  
   *Lack of Affectation*, 2269, 7847  
 Its *Master Poets*, 2269, 6170  
   William Wordsworth, *High Priest of Nature*, 7845-7847  
     His *Life in the Lake Country*, 7846, 7847  
     *Lyrical Ballads*, 7846, 7847  
     *Others of His Masterpieces*, 7847  
   Samuel Coleridge, the *Poet of the Supernatural*, 1535  
     His *Share in Lyrical Ballads*, 1535  
     *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner*, 1535, 275  
   George Gordon, Lord Byron, 1054  
     *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*, 1054  
     *Much Quoted Descriptions*, 1565, 66-67  
     *The Prisoner of Chillon*, 1382  
     *Don Juan*, *Story of a Love Pirate*, 1054  
   *Oriental Narrative and Dramatic Poems*, 1054, 1055  
     *Famous Lyrics*, 6492, 2942  
   Percy B. Shelley, the *Poet of Ethereal Beauty*, 6553-6555  
   John Keats, *Painter and Musician in Words*, 3751  
**Minor Poets of the Period**, 2269  
   Robert Southey, 6722  
   Thomas Campbell, *Writer of Battle Songs*, 1113-1114  
   Thomas Hood, *Spokesman for the Downtrodden*, 3223  
   Mrs. Felicia Hemans, *Writer of Pleasing Lyrics*, 3136  
   Casabianca, 1225  
   James Montgomery, *Poet and Hymn Writer*, 4630  
**The Fiction Writers**, 2269  
   Sir Walter Scott, *Historical Romancer*, 6448-6451  
     His *Poetic Period*, 6449  
     *Minstrelsy of the Scotch Border*, 6449  
     *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, 2471, 6449  
     *Marmion*, 6449, 1075  
     *The Lady of the Lake*, 709, 6449  
   His *Universally Read Historical Novels*, 6450  
     Ivanhoe, a *Tale of Saxon and Norman*, 6450  
     *Kenilworth*, a *Story of Queen Elizabeth's Court*, 3753-3754

- The Talisman, a Story of the Crusades, 6450  
 Quentin Durward, of Wars in the Netherlands, 6450  
 Famous Ballad: Lochinvar, 4073  
 Jane Austen, Novelist of Small Events, 506  
 Scott's Tribute to Her, 506  
 Modern Influence, 506  
 Her Six Famous Novels, 506  
 Charlotte Bronte, Emotional Novelist, 974  
 Her Gloomy Life, 974  
 Mrs. Gaskell's Life of Charlotte Bronte, 974, 2702  
 Jane Eyre, Her Masterpiece, 974  
 Jane Porter, Writer of Historical Romances, 5746-5747  
 The Essayists, 2269, 2298  
 Charles Lamb, Humorous Essayist and Critic, 3846-3847  
 Tales from Shakespeare, a Collaboration with Mary Lamb, 3847  
 Essays of Elia, the Foundation of His Fame, 3847  
 Thomas De Quincey, Master of Musical Prose, 1912  
 William Hazlitt, Essayist and Critic, 3102-3103  
 Leigh Hunt, Journalistic Essayist and Poet, 3294  
 Walter S. Landor, a Famous Stylist, 3852  
**The Victorian Age, 2269**  
 Significant Characteristics, 2269  
 New Scientific Theories, 2269  
 Changing Social Conditions, 2269  
 A Tendency to Analyze and Moralize, 2269  
 Progress in Democracy and Humanitarianism, 2269  
**The Poets of the First Rank, 2269**  
 Alfred Tennyson, 7105-7107  
 His Best Youthful Lyrics, 7106  
 The Lady of Shalott, 7106  
 The Palace of Art, 7106  
 The Lotus-Eaters, 7106, 4118  
 A Dream of Fair Women, 7106  
 Oenone, 7106  
 His Period of Deepening Thought, 7106  
 Locksley Hall, 7106  
 Morte d'Arthur, 7106  
 Ulysses, 7106  
 The Princess, 7106  
 In Memoriam, His Masterpiece, 7106  
 The Period of His Laureateship, 7106  
 Maud, a Dramatic Poem, 7106  
 The Idylls of the King, 3347, 6217, 430, 2842, 2342, 2659-2660  
 Enoch Arden, 7106  
 The Charge of the Light Brigade, 575, 1310  
 Robert Browning, Philosopher Poet, 979  
 His Dramatic Monologues, Revelations of Character, 980  
 His Poetic Dramas, 980  
 Some Famous Poems, 980  
 Rabbi Ben Ezra, a Philosophy of Life, 980  
 Delightful Narrative Poems for Children, 980  
 The Pied Piper of Hamelin, 5604  
 An Incident of the French Camp, 6011  
 How They Brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix, 980  
 Herve Riel, 980  
**Other Significant Poets, 2269**  
 Elizabeth Barrett Browning, 979  
 Aurora Leigh, 979  
 Sonnets from the Portuguese, 979  
 Charles Swinburne, Melodious and Unconventional Poet, 6967  
 The Pre-Raphaelite Group, 5799  
 William Morris, Poet of Medieval Romance, 4662  
 Dante Rossetti, Creator of Word Pictures, 6211  
 Christina Rossetti, Religious Mystic, 6211  
 W. S. Gilbert, Creator of Light-Opera Librettos, 2806-2807  
 Edward Fitzgerald, Translator and Scholar, 2447-2448  
 The Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam, 2447-2448, 6221-6223  
 Matthew Arnold, a Scholarly and Correct Poet, 419-420  
**Some Minor Poets**  
 Jean Ingelow, Descriptive Lyricist, 3451  
 Seven Times One, 3863  
 Francis Thompson, Religious Poet, 7154  
 Alfred Austin, a Poet Laureate, 507  
 Robert Bridges, a Poet Laureate, 954  
 William Henley, 3141  
 Invictus, the Song of an Unconquered Soul, 3141  
 A Quotation, 4049  
 Edwin Arnold, Poet of Oriental Thought, 419  
 Edward Bulwer-Lytton, 1021  
 Lucile, 1021  
**The Classic Essayists, 2269**  
 Matthew Arnold, 419-420  
 Thomas Carlyle, 1200-1201  
 His Inspiring and Influential Creed, 1200  
 Works Showing His Interest in German, 1201  
 Famous Expressions of His Philosophy, 1201  
 Sartor Resartus, 1201  
 Heroes and Hero Worship, 1201, 851  
 Essay on Burns, 1201, 2298  
 The French Revolution, 1201  
 Thomas Macaulay, Master Essayist, 4170-4171  
 His Famous Ballads for Schoolboys  
 Lays of Ancient Rome, 4171, 1233  
 His Popular Essays on Milton, Addison, Clive and Hastings, 2298

- The History of England from the Accession of James II, 4171  
 John Ruskin, Art Critic and Social Reformer, 6255-6256  
 His Critical Works on Art, 6255, 6256  
 His Social and Ethical Works, 6256  
 His Poetic and Picturesque Prose, 6256  
 John Newman, Theologian and Master of Style, 4934-4935  
 Lead, Kindly Light, His Famous Hymn, 4935  
 The Classic Novelists, 2269  
 Charles Dickens, 1936-1941  
 The Unmatched Popularity of His Novels, 1936  
 His Famous Character Creations, 1936, 1939  
 His Crusades for Needed Reforms, 1936  
 His Sympathy and Love for Humanity, 1936  
 His All-Prevailing Humor, 1936  
 Literary Training, 1936-1937  
 Outstanding Novels, 1937  
 David Copperfield, Somewhat Autobiographical, 1937, 1938  
 Tale of Two Cities, 1937  
 Pickwick Papers, 5603  
 Oliver Twist, 2361  
 Nicholas Nickleby, 5021  
 Bleak House, 1937  
 Little Dorrit, 1937  
 Old Curiosity Shop, 1937  
 His Books with an American Setting, 1937, 1938  
 Martin Chuzzlewit, 1937, 1938  
 American Notes, 1938  
 The Betterment of Conditions for Children through His Novels, 1939-1940  
 Modern Criticism of Dickens and an Impartial Estimate, 1940-1941  
 William Thackeray, 7132-7134  
 His High Rank, 7132  
 His Hatred of Sham and Pretense, 7132  
 His Realism, 7132  
 His Brilliant Wit and Satire, 7132  
 His Masterly Style, 7132  
 His Outstanding Novels, 7132  
 Vanity Fair, 7132, 668-669  
 Pendennis, Somewhat Autobiographical, 7132  
 Henry Esmond, an Historical Novel, 7132  
 The Newcomes, Containing His Finest Character, 7132  
 His Clever, Entertaining Essays, 7132  
 The English Humorists of the 18th Century, 7132  
 The Four Georges, 7132  
 George Eliot (Mary Ann Evans), 2208-2209

- Her Literary Career, 2208  
 The Sad Fortunes of the Reverend Amos Barton, Her First Story, 2208  
 Adam Bede, 2208  
 The Mill on the Floss, 2208  
 Silas Marner, 2208  
 Romola, 2208, 6403  
 Three Other Novels of English Life, 2209  
 George Meredith, a Writer of Character Analysis, 4408-4409  
 Thomas Hardy, the Last of the Victorians, 3044  
 His Outstanding Novels, 3044  
 Tess of the D'Urbervilles, a Tragedy, 3044  
 The Return of the Native, 3044  
 Jude the Obscure, 3044  
 Far from the Madding Crowd, 3044  
 Robert Louis Stevenson, 6832-6834  
 His Sojourn in Samoa, 6832-6833  
 Vailima Letters, 3945  
 His Famous Romances, 6833  
 Treasure Island, 3772, 6833-6834  
 Kidnapped, 6833  
 David Balfour, a Sequel, 6833  
 Weir of Hermiston, 6833  
 Short Stories of Excellent Technique, 6833  
 New Arabian Nights, 6833  
 Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde, 6833  
 Collections of Essays, 6833  
 Poems for Children, 6833  
 A Child's Garden of Verses, 6833, 3862, 3865, 3866  
 Minor Realistic Novelists, 2269  
 Anthony Trollope, 7273-7274  
 Barchester Towers, Story of a Cathedral Town, 7274  
 Elizabeth Gaskell, 2702  
 Maarten Maartens, Novelist of Dutch Middle-Class Life, 4167  
 Walter Besant, Novelist of the Poor and Oppressed, 721  
 Benjamin Disraeli, Portrayer of Public Men and Life, 1965  
 Margaret Oliphant, 5192  
 Justin McCarthy, 4173  
 Minor Romantic Novelists  
 Charles Reade, 6006  
 Charles Kingsley, 3796  
 Wilkie Collins, Mystery Stories, 1539  
 Richard Blackmore, 783  
 Lorna Doone, a Famous Romance of Exmoor, 783  
 Edward Bulwer-Lytton, Historical Romances and Drama, 1020  
 Frederick Marryat, Spirited Sea Stories, 4301  
 Stanley Weyman, 7726  
 Anthony Hope Hawkins, Sparkling Romances, 3088  
 Rider Haggard, Weird Thrillers, 3003

George du Maurier, *Portrayer of Studio Life*, 2054  
 Sentimental and Sensational Novelists  
 Hall Caine, *Depicter of Manx Life*, 1069  
 Marie Corelli, *Dabbler in Mysticism*, 1675  
 Augusta Evans Wilson, *Once Popular*, 7777  
 Frederick Fargus (Hugh Conway), *Sea Yarns*, 2370  
 Beatrice Harraden, *a One-Book Author*, 3050  
 Louise de la Ramée (Ouida), *International Novelist*, 5992  
 Juvenile Literature  
 Lewis Carroll, *Creator of Immortal Nonsense*, 1985  
 Alice's *Adventures in Wonderland*, 1985  
 Through the *Looking-Glass*, 1985  
 The *Hunting of the Snark*, *Verse*, 1985  
 Dinah Mulock Craig, 1731-1732  
 John Halifax, *Gentleman*, 1732  
 George Henty, *Favorite of Boys*, 3149-3150  
 Thomas Hughes, *Novelist of School Life*, 3277  
 Tom Brown at Rugby, 3277, 6237-6238  
 Tom Brown at Oxford, 3277  
 Louise de la Ramée (Ouida), 5992  
 Charlotte Yonge, 7945  
 Epoch-Making Books in Science and Philosophy  
 Charles Darwin's *Origin of Species*, 1830  
 Herbert Spencer's *Synthetic Philosophy*, 6755-6756  
 Alfred Wallace's *Theory of Natural Selection*, 7583  
 Henry Drummond's *Natural Law in the Spiritual World*, 2040  
 John Tyndall's *Lectures on Light, Sound, etc.*, 7337-7338  
 Classics in Literary Criticism  
 Edward Dowden's *Shakespeare: His Mind and Art*, 2017  
 Frederick Furnivall's *Six-Text Edition of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales*, 2654  
 Edmund Gosse's *Studies in the Literature of Northern Europe*, 2878  
 Andrew Lang's *Custom and Myth*, 3857  
 Walter Skeat's *Etymological English Dictionary*, 6630  
 Classics in History and Political Economy  
 James Bryce's *American Commonwealth*, 988  
 James Anthony Froude's *History of England*, 2628-2629  
 John Green's *Short History of the English People*, 2956  
 George Grote's *History of Greece*, 2968  
 Henry Hallam's *Middle Ages*, 3020  
 William Lecky's *Rise and Fall of Rationalism in Europe*, 3916  
 James Mill's *History of India*, 4485

John Stuart Mill's *Principles of Political Economy*, 4485-4486  
 Other More or Less Popular Writings  
 Walter Crane's *An Artist's Reminiscences*, 1734  
 Harry Furniss' *Burlesques*, 2646  
 Douglas Jerrold's *Mrs. Caudle's Curtain Lectures*, 3657  
 George Lewes' *Studies in Philosophy and Criticism*, 3955  
 John Morley's *Biographies in Men of Letters Series*, 4653  
 David Livingstone's *Missionary Travels and Researches in South Africa*, 4061-4062  
 Sir Henry Stanley's *In Darkest Africa*, 6802-6803  
 Sidney Smith's *Humorous Essays in the Edinburgh Review*, 6652  
 Samuel Smiles' *Didactic Essays*, 6647  
 John Wilson's (Christopher North's) *Witty Essays, Noctes Ambrosianae*, 7778  
 The Twentieth Century, 2269  
 Its *Restless Activity in Every Field of Literature*, 2269  
 The *Impossibility of Safe Judgment*, 2269  
 Recognized Leaders in Fiction, 2269  
 Rudyard Kipling, 3796-3797  
*Soldiers Three, and Other Stories*, 3796  
 Kim, *a Longer Narrative of India*, 3797  
 Some Classic Short Stories, 3796, 3797  
 His *Stories for Children*, 3796-3797  
 His *Popular Poems*, 3797  
 Mandalay, 1030, 1032  
 The *Recessional*, 3797  
 James Matthew Barrie, 629-630  
 His *Classic Short Stories of Scotch Village Life*, 629  
 His *Famous Novels, Realism with Romance*, 629  
 His *Unique Plays*, 630  
 Peter Pan, *a Fairy Play*, 630  
 John Galsworthy, *Ranking Novelist and Dramatist*, 2668-2669  
 His *Significant Novels*, 2669  
 The *Forsyte Saga*, 2669  
 The *White Monkey, The Silver Spoon, The Swan Song, Sequels*, 2669  
 His *Impressive Plays*, 2669  
 Justice, *a Tragedy of the Victims of the Law*, 2669  
 The *Skin Game, a Study of Class Feeling*, 2669  
 Old English, *a Character Portrayal*, 2669  
 Joseph Conrad, *a Polish Master of English Style*, 1621  
 Arnold Bennett, *Chronicler of the Five Towns*, 709  
 The *Old Wives' Tale, a Classic*, 710

- Clayhanger, Hilda Lessways, and These Twain, a Trilogy, 710  
 Milestones, a Play, 710  
 H. G. Wells, Forceful Novels on Social Problems, 7707  
 The Outline of History, a Best Seller, 7707  
 Other Claimants for Honors, 2269  
 Hugh Walpole, Vigorous, Interesting Realism, 7588  
 Maurice Hewlett, Interpreter of Medieval Life, 3170  
 Mrs. Humphry Ward, Writer of Thoughtful Novels, 7595  
 Anne Sedgwick, Analyst of Character, 6479  
 W. H. Hudson, Charming Nature Fiction, 3271  
 John Watson (Ian Maclaren), Scotch Village Life, 7680  
 Israel Zangwill, Interpreter of the Jew, 7969  
 Arthur Conan Doyle, Master Craftsman of the Detective Story, 2018  
 Mrs. Pearl R. Craigie (John Oliver Hobbes), Cynicist and Wit, 1731  
 Eden Phillpotts, Chronicler of Devonshire Folk, 5564-5565  
 Arthur T. Quiller-Couch, 5922  
 Michael Arlen, Radical Modernist, 403  
 Gilbert K. Chesterton, Versatile Wit and Humorist, 1349  
 Jerome K. Jerome, Humorist, 3656-3657  
 Robert Hichens, Romancer of the Orient, 3174-3175  
 Rafael Sabatini, Historical Romances, 6290

- Edgar Wallace, Popular Mystery Stories, 7583  
 Coningsby Dawson, Sentimental Magazine Stories, 1842  
 Laurence Alma-Tadema, Writer of Light Novels, 231  
 Elinor Glyn, Sensational Novelist, 2846  
 The Distinctive Modern Dramatists, 2269  
 George Bernard Shaw, Leading Wit and Satirist, 6545  
 His Masterpieces in the Drama, Iconoclastic Satires, 6545  
 Arms and the Man, 6545  
 Man and Superman, 6545  
 Candida, 6545  
 Saint Joan, 6545  
 The Apple Cart, 6545  
 Henry Arthur Jones, 3695  
 Arthur W. Pinero, 5624  
 John Drinkwater, 2037  
 Oscar Wilde, 7761-7762  
 The Leading Poets, 2269  
 John Masefield, a Poet of the People, 4320  
 Thomas Hardy, 3044  
 The Dynasts, an Epic Drama, 3044  
 Some Remarkable Lyrics, 3044  
 Time's Laughing-Stocks, 3044  
 Satires of Circumstance, 3044  
 Alfred Noyes, Lyrics and Patriotic Verse, 5111  
 Richard Le Gallienne, Writer of Graceful Lyrics, 3922  
 Modern Biographers  
 Lytton Strachey, Realist with a Fiction Style, 6872  
 Margot Asquith, English Political Life, 455  
 Wilfred Grenfell, 2963

### American Literature

- The Colonial Period, 253  
 The Early Historical and Religious Writers, 253  
 John Smith, 6650  
 A True Relation of Virginia, 6650  
 William Bradford, 915  
 The History of Plymouth Plantation, 915  
 John Winthrop, 7800  
 His Journal, a Source Book on Colonial Life, 7800  
 John Eliot, 2209  
 Translation of the Bible, 2209  
 Roger Williams, 7772-7773  
 Anne Bradstreet, 915-916  
 John Cotton, Theologian, 1718  
 Increase Mather, 4345  
 Cotton Mather, Crusader against Witchcraft, 4345  
 Jonathan Edwards, 2135  
 Benjamin Franklin, Editor, Humorist, and Biographer, 2593-2597

- Poor Richard's Almanac, 2594-2595, 5730, 231  
 Popular Quotations, 2594, 2595, 5730  
 His Autobiography, a Masterpiece in Style, 2594, 253  
 Revolutionary Literature, 253  
 James Otis' Speech against Writs of Assistance, 5271  
 Patrick Henry's Speech in the Virginia Convention, 3148  
 Thomas Paine's Common Sense, Rights of Man, and Age of Reason, 5297-5298  
 The Federalist, 2389-2390  
 The Declaration of Independence, 1865  
 The Federal Constitution, 1635  
 The Earliest Writers of Imaginative Literature, 253  
 Philip Freneau, Poet, 253  
 Charles Brockden Brown, Author of Morbid Romances, 253, 5106  
 The National Period, 253-254  
 Literary Pioneers, 253-256

- William Cullen Bryant, Father of American Poets, 987-988  
 Thanatopsis, 988  
 His Famous Reflective Nature Poems, 987  
 To a Waterfowl, 5161  
 To the Fringed Gentian, 2719  
 The Death of the Flowers, 987  
 Washington Irving, the First Recognized Genius in Prose, 3559-3560  
 Rip Van Winkle and Legend of Sleepy Hollow, from the Sketch Book, 3560  
 James Fenimore Cooper, 1660-1661  
 The Spy, His First Successful Novel, 1661  
 The Pilot and The Red Rover, Sea Tales, 1661  
 Leather Stocking Series, 1659, 1661  
 Edgar Allan Poe, an Original Genius, 5678-5679  
 His Popular Poems, Marvels of Melody, 5678  
 His Short Stories, Masterpieces of Technique, 5679  
 The Classic New England Group, 254  
 Ralph Waldo Emerson, Philosopher, Essayist, and Poet, 2221-2222  
 Nathaniel Hawthorne, America's Greatest Fiction Writer, 3089-3091  
 His Literary Career, 3090  
 Twice-Told Tales, 3090  
 Grandfather's Chair, 3090  
 Mosses from an Old Manse, 3090  
 The Scarlet Letter, 3090  
 The House of Seven Gables, 3090  
 The Blithedale Romance, 3090, 975  
 The Marble Faun, 3090, 2383  
 The Wonder Book, and Tanglewood Tales, for Children, 3090  
 Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, Children's Poet, 4101-4105  
 His Popular Narrative Poems, 4102  
 Evangeline, 2329, 6514, 2332, 14  
 Hiawatha, an Indian Legend, 4102, 3172  
 The Courtship of Miles Standish, 1724, 195, 6800  
 Tales of the Wayside Inn, 4103, 1758  
 His Best-Known Short Poems, 4102, 4104  
 John Greenleaf Whittier, the Quaker Poet, 7754-7756  
 His Interest in Abolition, 7755  
 His Best-Known Poems, 7755, 7756  
 His Qualities of Style, 7755-7756  
 James Russell Lowell, Poet and Critic, 4139-4141  
 His Anti-Slavery Sentiments, 4140  
 Tribute to William Garrison, 2695-2696  
 His Literary Career, 4140-4141  
 The Biglow Papers, 4140, 736

- The Vision of Sir Launfal, 4140  
 Fable for Critics, 4140  
 Commemoration Ode, a Masterpiece, 4140  
 Fireside Travels, Delightful Prose Essays, 4141  
 Among My Books, Critical Essays, 4141  
 Oliver Wendell Holmes, Humorous Poet and Witty Essayist, 3199-3200  
 His Contributions to the Atlantic Monthly, 3200  
 Elsie Venner, a Psychological Novel, 3200  
 His Best-Known Poems, 3200, 1630  
 Henry David Thoreau, Naturalist and Essayist, 7156-7157  
 George William Curtis, Transcendentalist and Essayist, 1791  
 Sarah Fuller Ossoli, Transcendentalist and Brilliant Critic, 5267  
 Amos Bronson Alcott, Leader in Transcendental School, 195  
 Other Poets of the Period, 256  
 Walt Whitman, Pioneer in Modern Poetic Tendencies, 256, 7753  
 Leaves of Grass, His Collection of Poems, 7753  
 Oh Captain, My Captain, Tribute to Lincoln, 7753  
 Sidney Lanier, a Melodious Poet of the South, 256, 3871-3872  
 Song of the Chattahoochee, 2758  
 Paul Hamilton Hayne, Laureate of the South, 3099-3100  
 William G. Simms, Early Poet of the South, 6615  
 Joseph Rodman Drake, Patriotic Poet, 3020  
 Fitz-Greene Halleck, Patriotic Poet, 3020  
 Nathaniel P. Willis, Popular Poet, 7774  
 Richard Henry Stoddard, a Sincere Poet, 6843  
 Nathan H. Dole, Translator and Poet, 1996  
 Alice and Phoebe Cary, 1224-1225  
 Francis Scott Key, Author of the Star-Spangled Banner, 3769-3770, 6812  
 John H. Payne, Author of Home, Sweet Home, 5423-5424  
 Julia Ward Howe, Author of The Battle Hymn of the Republic, 3267, 653  
 Thomas B. Read, Author of Sheridan's Ride, 6005-6006  
 Samuel F. Smith, Author of America, 6651-6652  
 Famous Orators  
 Henry Clay, the Great Pacificator, 1459-1460  
 John Calhoun, Advocate of States' Rights, 1078-1079  
 Daniel Webster, Eloquent and Finished Debater, 7696

- Edward Everett, One of the Greatest Orators, 2334-2335  
 Abraham Lincoln, Master of Style, 4017  
 The Gettysburg Address, 4017, 2793  
 A Hundred Years of History  
 William Prescott, 5801  
 George Bancroft, 597  
 John Motley, 4685-4686  
 Francis Parkman, 5382-5383  
 John Fiske, Philosopher and Scholar, 2446  
 John Bach McMaster, 4194  
 John Ridpath, 6122-6123  
 Theodore Roosevelt, 6194  
 Woodrow Wilson, Scholar, 7786-7788  
 Henry Cabot Lodge, 4085-4086  
 Hendrick Willem Van Loon, 7463  
 Writers of Travel, Nature, and Biographical, Critical, and Reflective Prose  
 Bayard Taylor, Traveler, Essayist, and Translator, 7036  
 Charles Dudley Warner, 7601  
 John Burroughs, Nature Essays, 1038  
 John Muir, Naturalist, 4732-4733  
 Jane Addams, Famous Social Reformer, 36  
 Helen Keller, Brilliant Deaf-Mute, 3751  
 Edward Bok, Dutch Immigrant and American Editor, 816  
 Jacob Riis, Danish Immigrant, 6127  
 Booker T. Washington, Negro Educator, 7634-7636  
 Robert R. Moton, Negro Educator, 4686-4687  
 Brand Whitlock, 7752  
 Walter Hines Page, 5296  
 Charles Lindbergh, Famous Aviator, 4030  
 Ida M. Tarbell, 7020  
 John Hay, Diplomat, 3092  
 William Ellery Channing, Preacher and Essayist, 1303  
 Ignatius Donnelly, Promoter of the Baconian Theory, 2011  
 Elbert Hubbard, 3269  
 A Message to Garcia, 2683  
 Hamilton W. Mabie, Editor and Essayist, 4167  
 Brander Matthews, Critic of the Drama, 4346  
 Donald G. Mitchell (Ik Marvel), 4561  
 Ray Stannard Baker, 574  
 Henry Van Dyke, Essayist, 7461-7462  
 Agnes Repplier, Essayist, 6059  
 Christopher Morley, Essayist, 4652  
 Henry Mencken, Radical Satirist, 4390  
 Humorists of Yesterday and To-Day  
 Benjamin P. Shillaber, Creator of Mrs. Partington, 6561  
 Henry W. Shaw, Creator of Josh Billings, 6545  
 Charles F. Browne, Creator of Artemus Ward, 978-979  
 David R. Locke, Creator of Petroleum Vesuvius Nasby, 4075  
 Charles G. Leland, 3928  
 Marietta Holley, Creator of Samantha, 3197  
 Opie Read, 6005  
 Edgar Wilson Nye, 5126-5127  
 Robert J. Burdette, 1025  
 Peter F. Dunne, Philosopher in Irish Brogue, 2055  
 James Montgomery Flagg, Illustrator and Wit, 2461  
 Irwin S. Cobb, 1514-1515  
 Wallace Irwin, 3561  
 H. C. Witwer, Baseball Wit, 7817  
 Nina W. Putnam, Humorist in Slang, 5890  
 Ring Lardner, Humorist of Illiteracy and Conceit, 3879  
 Will Rogers, Cowboy Wit on All Subjects, 6163  
 The Drama from the Early Sentimental Type to the Modern Problem Play  
 James A. Herne, Quaint Rural Comedies, 3162-3163  
 Denman Thompson, Actor and Dramatist of Rural Types, 7154  
 Augustus Thomas, Master of Technique, 7152  
 Clyde Fitch, Social Comedies, 2447  
 William H. Gillette, War Plays, 2808  
 David Belasco, Playwright, 690  
 George Ade, Humorous Playwright, 44-45  
 Jane Cowl, Actress and Collaborator, 1728  
 George M. Cohan, Actor and Humorous Playwright, 1531  
 Edward Sheldon, Realistic Drama, 2023  
 Eugene Walter, 2023  
 William Vaughn Moody, Notable and Distinctive Dramatist, 4637  
 Percy Mackaye, Poetic Drama, 260, 2023  
 Eugene O'Neill, Leader of Modern Dramatists, 5200-5201  
 Fiction for Children and Young People  
 Louisa M. Alcott, 194-195  
 Isabella Alden (Pansy), 195  
 Mary Jane Holmes, 3198  
 Mrs. A. D. T. Whitney, 7753-7754  
 Rebecca Harding Davis, 1840  
 Jacob Abbott, Travel and History, 3  
 Horatio Alger, Stories of Poor Boys, 217  
 Hezekiah Butterworth, 1051  
 Kirk Munroe, Adventure Stories, 4744  
 Oliver Optic, Pioneer in Boys' Serials, 5193  
 Mayne Reid, 6046  
 John T. Trowbridge, 7277  
 Walter Camp, Sport Editor and Authority, 1112  
 J. G. Holland (Timothy Titcomb), 3196  
 Frances Hodgson Burnett, 1033  
 Little Lord Fauntleroy, 1033  
 Alice Hegan Rice, 6113  
 Kate Douglas Wiggin Riggs, 6126  
 Gene Stratton Porter, 5746  
 Joel Chandler Harris, 3052



Two Beloved Poets for Children and Child-Lovers  
 Eugene Field, 2409-2410  
 James Whitcomb Riley, the Hoosier Poet, 6127-6129  
 Writers of Sentimental Lyrics  
 Paul Laurence Dunbar, 2054-2055  
 Frank Lebby Stanton, 6804  
 Robert Loveman, 4138  
 Two Popular Poets of Everyday Life  
 Will Carleton, 1199  
 Edgar Guest, 2977-2978  
 The Modern Group of Poets, 260  
 A New Interest in Reading Poetry, 260  
 Harriet Monroe, Editor of Poetry, 260, 4601  
 The Vogue of Free Verse, 260  
 The Vogue of the Emotional Lyric, 260  
 The Use of All Topics as Poetic Material, 260  
 The Transition Poets  
 Cincinnatus (Joaquin) Miller, 4487  
 William Vaughn Moody, 4637  
 Ella Wheeler Wilcox, 7760  
 Edwin Markham, 4294-4295  
 E. C. Stedman, Poet and Critic, 6822  
 Richard W. Gilder, 2807  
 The War Poets, 260  
 Alan Seager, Lyricist Killed in the War, 6484  
 Joyce Kilmer, Victim of the War, 3774  
 Trees, a Poem Popular the World Over, 3774, 7258  
 The Leaders, 260  
 Edgar Lee Masters, Expert in Satiric Free Verse, 4337-4338  
 The Spoon River Anthology, 4337  
 A Typical Epitaph, 260  
 Carl Sandburg, Chicago Poet of Industrial Life, 6362  
 Vachel Lindsay, 260  
 Amy Lowell, 260  
 Louis Untermeyer, 260  
 Conrad Aiken, 260  
 Sarah Teasdale, 7052  
 Lizette Woodworth Reese, 6035  
 Edna St. Vincent Millay, 4486-4487  
 Early Leaders in Modern Fiction, 254  
 Samuel L. Clemens (Mark Twain), Classic Humorist, 1463-1464  
 The Adventures of Tom Sawyer, 1463  
 Huckleberry Finn, 1463  
 Innocents Abroad, 1464  
 A Connecticut Yankee at King Arthur's Court, 1464  
 Puddin' Head Wilson, 1464  
 The Prince and the Pauper, 1464  
 William Dean Howells, 3267-3268  
 Contributions to Harper's Magazine, 3268  
 His Dignified Novels of the American Middle Class, 3268

Henry James, International and Psychological Novelist, 3614  
 Thomas Bailey Aldrich, 197  
 Frank R. Stockton, a Humorous Weaver of Fancies, 6842-6843  
 Robert Grant, a Beginner in the Problem Novel, 2899  
 Propaganda and Moralizing Novelists, of Yesterday and To-Day, 254  
 Edward Everett Hale, 3015  
 The Man without a Country, 3015-3016  
 Harriet Beecher Stowe, Abolitionist, 6871-6872  
 Uncle Tom's Cabin, 6871  
 Helen Hunt Jackson, 3604  
 Ramona, a Story of Indian Wrongs, 3604  
 Elizabeth S. P. Ward, 7594  
 E. P. Roe, Clergyman and Novelist, 6159  
 Upton Sinclair, Reform Advocate, 6616  
 Frank Norris, Student of Wheat Speculation, 5044  
 Novelists Using Historical Events and Backgrounds  
 Silas Weir Mitchell, Physician, Novelist and Poet, 4561  
 James Maurice Thompson, Hoosier Novelist, 7154  
 Thomas Dixon, Jr., Southern Novelist, 1983  
 Paul Leicester Ford, Historian, 2531-2532  
 Mary Johnston, Colonial Times, 3691  
 Charles Major, Romancer of History, 4235  
 Winston Churchill, 1420  
 Richard Carvel, The Crisis, The Crossing, Novels of American Colonial and Pioneer Days, 1420  
 Coniston, a Novel of New England Politics, 1420  
 Amelia Barr, Versatile Novelist, 628  
 Emerson Hough, Building of the West, 3260  
 Irving Bacheller's A Man for the Ages, a Story of Lincoln, 563  
 Lew Wallace, 7583-7584  
 Ben-Hur, a Tale of Christ, 7584, 1310, 708  
 Cyrus T. Brady, Vigorous War Tales, 916  
 Stephen Crane, Brilliant, Descriptive Novelist, 1733-1734  
 Novelists Treating of Special Localities  
 Mary E. Wilkins Freeman, New England Types, 2602-2603  
 Joseph Lincoln, Cape Cod Folk, 4021  
 William Sydney Porter (O. Henry), Writer of Popular Short Stories, 5747  
 Richard Harding Davis, New York's Aristocracy, 1840  
 Irving Bacheller, the Adirondacks, 563  
 Elsie Singmaster, Pennsylvania Dutch, 6622  
 Thomas Nelson Page, Virginia Types, 5296  
 Francis Hopkinson Smith, Southern Novelist, 6649

William G. Simms, *Border Romances of the South*, 6615  
 George Cable, *Old New Orleans*, 1059  
 James Lane Allen, *Artistic Interpreter of Kentucky Life*, 224-225  
 John Fox, Jr., *Kentucky Mountaineers*, 2555  
 Mary N. Murfree (Chas. Egbert Craddock), *Tennessee Types*, 4746  
 Octavus Roy Cohen, *Negro Dialect*, 1531  
 Ellen Glasgow, *the Old South*, 2831-2832  
 Edward Eggleston, *Early Days in Indiana*, 2139  
 Hamlin Garland, *the Middle West*, 2604  
 Alice French (Octave Thanet), *the Middle West*, 2606  
 William Allen White, *Editor*, 7746  
 Francis Bret Harte, *Mining Days in California*, 3063-3064  
 Owen Wister, *Life in the West*, 7813  
 Mary Hallock Foote, *Western Stories*, 2529  
 Zane Grey, *Adventure in the West*, 2965  
 Jack London, *Klondike Life*, 4099  
 Stewart Edward White, *Michigan Lumber Camps*, 7746  
 James Oliver Curwood, *the Frozen North*, 1791  
 Rex Beach, *Alaskan Stories*, 656  
 Randall Parrish, *Adventure Stories*, 5399  
 Fanny Heaslip Lea, *Hawaiian Back-grounds*, 3901  
 Richard H. Dana, *Sea Stories*, 1817  
 Marion Crawford, *Modern Roman Life*, 1735  
 Lafcadio Hearn, *Japanese Life*, 3107  
 Distinctive Leaders in the New School of Fiction, 5106  
 Gertrude Atherton, *Independent and Forceful Realist*, 483-484  
 James Branch Cabell, *Subtle, Satiric Novels*, 1058  
 Dorothy Canfield, *Modern Life and Its Problems*, 1170  
 Willa S. Cather, *Novelist of Finished Technique*, 1247  
 Margaret Leland, *Student of Social Conditions*, 1876  
 Theodore Dreiser, *Novelist of Sordid Themes*, 2031-2032  
 Edna Ferber, *Novelist of Everyday Life*, 2394  
 Zona Gale, *a Transition Novelist*, 2661-2662

Joseph Hergesheimer, *Colorful and Spirited*, 3162  
 Robert W. Herrick, *a Frank Analyst*, 3166  
 Fannie Hurst, *Depicter of Everyday Life*, 3296  
 Sinclair Lewis, *Satirist*, 3956  
 Charles Norris, *Social Studies*, 5043  
 Booth Tarkington, *Realist and Idealist*, 7024  
 Edith Wharton, *Finish and Characterization*, 7730  
 Ben Ames Williams, 7771-7772  
 Other Popular Authors of the Last Few Decades  
 Josephine Daskam Bacon, 565  
 Frances Hodgson Burnett, 1033  
 Robert W. Chambers, 1299  
 George Randolph Chester, 1348  
 Julian Hawthorne, 3091  
 William H. Irwin, 3561  
 Corra Harris, 3052  
 Rupert Hughes, 3277  
 Peter B. Kyne, 3820  
 George H. Lorimer, 4110  
 George Barr McCutcheon, 4175  
 Gouverneur Morris, 4661-4662  
 Meredith Nicholson, 5021  
 Sophie Kerr, 3768  
 David Graham Phillips, 5564  
 Kathleen Norris, 5043-5044  
 Mary Roberts Rinehart, 6129  
 Grace S. Richmond, 6118  
 Amelia Rives (Princess Troubetzkoy), 6138  
 Arthur S. Roche, 6152  
 Mary V. Terhune (Marion Harland), 7111  
 Albert Payson Terhune, 7111  
 Henry Kitchell Webster, 7697  
 Harold Bell Wright, 7896  
 The New Vogue of the Detective Story  
 Anna Katharine Green Rohlf, 6163  
 Mary Roberts Rinehart, 6129  
 Arthur B. Reeve, 6035  
 Arthur Train, 7239  
 S. S. Van Dine (Willard H. Wright), 7459-7460  
 The Philo Vance Stories, 7460  
 Contributions to Literary Scholarship  
 H. H. Furness' *Variorum Shakespeare*, 2646  
 R. G. White's *Studies in Shakespeare*, 7745-7746  
 Bliss Perry's *Cambridge Edition of the Poets*, 5491

## Canadian Literature

### French Canadian

**Literary Productions before Britain's Conquest**, 1152  
 Chroniclers of Exploration, 1152  
 Jacques Cartier, 1155

Samuel de Champlain, 1155, 1301-1302  
 Louis Hennepin, 3141  
 Historians, 1152  
 Marc Lescarbot, 1155  
 Pierre Charlevoix, 1155  
 Jesuit Relations, 1152

- Breton and Norman Folk Songs, 1152  
**The Period after the Conquest, 1152**  
 Early Patriotic Histories and Speeches  
 Louis J. Papineau's Political Speeches, 1152  
 Michel Bibaud's History of Canada, 1152  
 François X. Garneau's Histoire du Canada 1152, 1155  
**Later Historians and Their Works, 1152**  
 Benjamin Sulte, 6917  
 Henri R. Casgrain, 1155  
 Sir James Le Moine, 1155  
 Henri Bourassa, 1152, 1155  
 Other Historians and Publicists, 1152  
**The Earlier Poetry of the Period, 1152**  
 Octave Cremazie, 1152  
 Leon Le May, 1152  
 Louis Honoré Fréchette, Distinguished French-Canadian, 1152  
 Benjamin Sulte, a Minor Poet, 1152, 6917  
 Other Minor Poets, 1152  
**The Modern School of French-Canadian Poetry, 1152**  
 Émile Nelligan, 1155  
 Albert Lozeau, 1155  
 Paul Morin, Scholar and Traveler, 1152  
**The Earlier Fiction Writers of the Period, 1152**  
 Philippe de Gaspé, 1152  
 Antoine Gerin Lajoie, 1152  
 Jean Rivard, 1152  
 Joseph Marmette, 1152  
 Pierre J. O. Chauveau, Author of Charles Guerin, 1152  
 Ernest Choquette, Author of Claude Paysan, 1152  
**The Recent Writers of Fiction, 1152**  
 Mme. Laura Conans, Author of L'Oublie, 1152  
 Judge Adolphe Routhier, Historical Novelist, 1152  
 Louis Hémon, a Visiting French Author, 1152  
**Miscellaneous Writers and Their Works, 1155**  
 English-Canadian  
**The Period of Exploration, 1152-1153**  
 Alexander Henry, 1155  
 Samuel Hearne, 1155  
 Sir Alexander Mackenzie, 4185  
**The Period of Struggle for a Responsible Government, 1153**  
 Speeches and Writings of a Political Nature, 1153  
 John Richardson, First Novelist of Importance, 1153  
 Thomas Chandler Haliburton, Humorist and Novelist, 1153  
**The Period of Established Union and National Feeling, 1153**  
 Brilliant Speechmakers, 1153  
 The Development of 19th-Century Fiction, 1153  
 James de Mille, Romanticist, 1153

- William Kirby, Romanticist, 1153  
 Sara Jeannette Duncan, Humorist, 1153  
 Gilbert Parker, Historical Novelist, 1153, 5382  
 Charles W. Gordon (Ralph Connor), 1153, 2874-2875  
 Robert Barr, 628  
**Twentieth-Century Fiction, 1153**  
 Basil King, a Sociological Novelist, 1153  
 Frederick Niven, 1156  
 Robert J. C. Stead, 1156  
 Bertrand Sinclair, 1156  
 Arthur Stringer, 1153  
 Ernest Thompson Seton, 6506  
 Wild Animals I Have Known, 6506  
 The Biography of a Grizzly, 6506  
 Charles G. D. Roberts, Novelist and Poet, 6146-6147  
 Marshall Saunders, 1153  
 Stephen Leacock, 1153, 3901-3902  
 L. M. Montgomery, 1153  
 Marian Keith, 1153  
 Isabella E. MacKay, 1153  
 J. G. Sime, 1153-1154  
 Laura Salverson, 1154  
 Winifred E. Reeve (Onoto Watanna), 1154  
 Mazo de la Roche, 1154  
 Marjorie Pickthall, 1154  
 L. Adams Beck (E. Barrington), 1154  
 Susanna Moodie, 4637  
 Isabel Paterson, Historical Novelist, 1154  
 W. H. Blake, Translator, 1154  
 Two Recent Novels on Canadianization, 1153  
 Hansen, by Augustus Bridle, 1153  
 Redemption, by Beckles Willson, 1153  
**Prose Writers of Canadian History and Pioneer Life, 1154**  
 William Kingsford, Accurate Historian, 1154  
 George Bryce, Interesting Historian, 1154  
 Charles Roberts, Novelist and Historian, 1154, 6146-6147  
 Lawrence Burpee, 1154  
 Beckles Willson, 1154  
 Agnes Laut, 3895  
 Susanna Moodie, 4637  
 Catherine Traill, Pioneer Life, 7237  
 Agnes and Elizabeth Strickland, 7237  
 James Mavor, Economist and Educator, 4350  
 Arthur G. Doughty, 1154, 1155  
 Oscar D. Skelton, 1154, 1155  
 William Bennett Munro, 1154, 1155  
 William H. Wood, 1154, 1155  
 William P. Kennedy, 1154, 1155  
**Important Series of Biographical and Historical Narratives, 1154**  
 The Publications of the Champlain Society, 1154  
**The Poets of the Period, 1154**  
 Charles Sangster, the Earliest Poet, 6374, 1154  
 Charles Mair, Poet and Dramatist, 1154  
 Isabella Crawford, 1154

Archibald Lampman, Nature Themes, 3848, 3850  
 Charles D. G. Roberts, Versatile Writer, 1154, 6146-6147  
 Bliss Carman, Lyric Poet, 1154, 1201-1202  
 William W. Campbell, Poet of the Lakes, 1154, 1114  
 Duncan C. Scott, Poet of Nature and Patriotism, 1154, 6447  
 Pauline Johnson, the Indian Poet, 1154-1157  
 Frederick G. Scott, a Reflective Poet, 1157  
 Robert Norwood, a Religious Poet, 1157

Marjorie Pickthall, Lyric Poet of Spiritual Meanings, 1157  
 John McCrae, a War Poet and War Victim, 1157, 4174-4175  
 Robert Service, the Canadian Kipling, 1157, 6505  
 William H. Drummond, 1157  
 A List of Minor Poets, 1157  
 John Bengough, Humorous Poet and Satirist, 708  
 Alexander Muir, Author of The Maple Leaf Forever, 4281

### Irish Literature

**The Old Gaelic Literature**, 2658, 3532  
 Inscriptions from the Fifth Century, 3532  
 Gaelic Manuscripts on the Continent, 2658  
 The Few Gaelic Manuscripts in Britain, 2658  
 The Vogue of Ballads and Epics of Heroes, 3532  
 The Characteristics of the Early Gaelic Literature, 3532, 2658  
**The Gradual Dying Out of the Gaelic Language**, 3532  
 Prose Extinct in Seventeenth Century, 3532  
 Poetry in Use till Nineteenth Century, 3532  
**The Gaelic Revival in the Early Twentieth Century**, 3532-3533  
 The Gaelic League, 3532-3533  
**The Development of an English Literature in Ireland**, 3533  
 The Earlier Period of National Consciousness, 3533  
 A Beginning with Ballads, 3533  
 The Wearin' o' the Green, 3533  
 Thomas Moore, Distinguished Song-Poet, 3533, 4645

Irish Melodies, His Best Collection, 3533  
 Maria Edgeworth, Famous Prose Writer, 3533  
 Samuel Lover, Novelist and Song Writer of Irish Peasant Life, 3533, 4138  
 Charles J. Lever, Adventure and Irish Life, 3533, 3951-3952  
 Dion Boucicault, Popular Dramatist of Irish Themes, 894  
**The Irish Literary Revival**, 3533  
 William Butler Yeats, Poet and Dramatist, 3533, 7931-7932  
 His First Poetic Plays, 7931  
 His Associations with Lady Gregory and the Irish Literary Theater, 7931  
 His Honors in Ireland, and the Nobel Prize, 7931  
 John Millington Synge, Sad Poet and Dramatist, 6985  
 Deirdre of the Sorrows, a Masterpiece, 6985  
 The Playboy of the Western World, 6985  
 Riders to the Sea, 6985

### German Literature

**Its Late Development**, 2675  
**Its Greatness**, 2765-2766  
 The Profundity of Its Scholars, 2765  
 Its Exquisite Lyrics and Songs, 2765  
**The Early Period**, 2766  
 The Minnesingers, 2766, 4511-4512  
 Walther von der Vogelweide, 4511  
 Wolfram von Eschenbach, 4511  
 His Epic Parzival, 4511, 3203, 5401  
 Influence on Wagner's Parsifal, 4511, 3203, 5401  
 The Development of the Nibelungenlied, 2766, 5013-5014  
 The Tale of Till Eulenspiegel, 2315  
 The Mastersingers, 2766, 4338  
**The Reformation Period**, 2766  
 A Monopoly of Religious Themes, 2766  
 Martin Luther, Greatest Literary Figure, 2766, 4158-4159  
 His Translation of the Bible, 4159, 4383  
 His Beautiful Hymns, 4159

Johann Maier von Eck, Debater and Writer, 2094  
 Philipp Melanchthon, 4382-4383  
 Hans Sachs, Most Famous Mastersinger, 4338, 6293  
**The Early Eighteenth Century**, 2766  
 The Growth of National Feeling, 2766  
 Abundant Literary Activity, 2766  
 Gottlieb Klopstock, First Master of the Modern German Lyric, 2766  
 Christoph Wieland, Versatile Poet and Fiction Writer, 2766, 7757-7758  
 Gotthold Lessing, 2766, 3944  
 Johann Herder, a Pioneer in New Fields, 2766, 3158  
 His Translation of Folk Songs of Many Nations, 3158  
**The Golden Age**, 2766  
 Johann Wolfgang von Goethe, the Universal Genius, 2766, 2853-2854  
 His Lyrics in the New Mode, 2853

His Period of Italian Influence, 2853  
 The Change in His Style and Spirit, 2853  
 His Friendship with Schiller, 2853-2854  
 The Apprenticeship of Wilhelm Meister, 2853-2854  
 Its Famous Lyric, Kennst du das Land, 2854  
 Hermann and Dorothea, an Epic of Peasant Life, 2854  
 The Final Period of His Literary Career, 2854  
 The First Part of Faust, 2854  
 Elective Affinities, a Novel, 2854  
 Truth and Fiction Relating to My Life, an Autobiography, 2854  
 Oriental Lyrics, 2854  
 The Second Part of Faust, 2854  
 An Estimate of His Work, 2854  
 Johann Friedrich von Schiller, Poet and Dramatist of First Rank, 6411-6412  
 An Estimate of His Rank with Goethe, 6412  
 Johann Paul Richter (Jean Paul), 2766, 6120  
 Jacob and William Grimm, Collectors of German Folk Lore, 2966  
 Kinder und Hausmärchen, 2966, 2508  
 Epoch-Making Books in Philosophy and Education, 2766  
 Immanuel Kant's Critique of Pure Reason, 3746  
 Johann Fichte's Critique of All Revelation, 2406  
 The Nineteenth Century, 2766

The Prevalence of Propaganda Literature, 2766  
 Heinrich Heine, 2766, 3127  
 Paul Johann Heyse, Master of the Novelette, 3170  
 A Nobel-Prize Winner, 3170  
 George Ebers, Novelist and Egyptologist, 2092  
 An Egyptian Princess, Uarda, and The Sisters, 2092  
 Friedrich Max Müller (Max Müller), Famous Orientalist, 4735  
 Epoch-Making Books in Various Fields  
 Arthur Schopenhauer's The World as Will and Idea, 6429  
 Karl Marx's Das Kapital, 4309  
 Friedrich Nietzsche's Thus Spake Zarathustra and the Will to Power, 5023  
 Ernst Haeckel's The Riddle of the Universe, 3001-3002  
 Theodor Mommsen's History of Rome, 4578  
 Leopold von Ranke's Civil Wars and Monarchy in France, 5994  
 Justus Liebig's Chemistry of Food and Chemical Letters, 3977  
 The Modern Period, 2766  
 The Dramatists of the New School of Iconoclasts, 2766  
 Gerhart Hauptmann, 3074  
 Hermann Sudermann, Investigator of Social Life, 6902-6903  
 War Poems, 2766  
 Lissauer's Hymn of Hate, 2766  
 The New Biography, 2766  
 Emil Ludwig's Napoleon, 2766

### Dutch Literature

The Limitations of Its Fame, 4888  
 Famous Writers in the Latin Language, 4888  
 Desiderius Erasmus, 2284  
 Baruch Spinoza, a Philosopher on Religion, 6766  
 Hugo Grotius, Founder of International Law, 2968  
 Famous Writers in the Dutch Language, 4888  
 Joost van den Vondel, a Dramatist, 4888

Jakob Cats, a Poet, 4888  
 Willem Bilderdijk, a Poet, 4888  
 Hendrik Tollens, Writer of Lyrical Romances, 4888  
 Jakob van Lennep, the Dutch Walter Scott, 4888  
 Nikolaas Beets, Descriptive Sketches, 4888  
 Louis Couperus, a Modern Novelist, 4888  
 Petrus J. Blok, a Modern Historian, 4888

### Scandinavian Literature

#### Icelandic

The Period of the Skalds, 6630  
 The Sagas, Prose Epics of Icelandic Heroes, 6296, 3333  
 Their Recording in Manuscripts, 6296  
 Famous Sagas, 6296  
 The Eddas, Two Ancient Literary Works, 2106  
 The Elder, or Poetical, Edda, 2106  
 The Younger, or Prose, Edda, a Guide to Young Poets, 2106

#### Danish

The Earliest Contributions in Manuscripts, 1894  
 Works in Latin of the Twelfth Century, 1894  
 Ballads of Heroes, Love, and Historical Events, 1894  
 The Earliest Printed Contribution to Literature, 1894  
 Christian Pedersen's Translation of the Bible, 1894  
 Writers of More than Local Influence, 1894

- Ludwig Holberg, Founder of Danish Literature, 1894  
 Johannes Ewald, Greatest Lyric Poet, 1894  
 Adam Oehlenschläger, Poet and Dramatist, 1894  
 Hans Christian Andersen, Creator of Fairy Tales, 275  
 His Love for the Theater, 275  
 His Travels and Travel Stories, 275  
 His Volumes of Fairy Tales, 275  
 The Ugly Duckling, 6854-6856  
 The Fir Tree, 6860-6861  
 The Little Match Girl, 6864  
 The Constant Tin Soldier, 6866-6867  
 Five Out of One Shell, 6868-6869  
 The Discontented Stonecutter, 6866  
 His Interesting Novels, 275  
 Georg Brandes, Literary Critic of World Importance, 923  
 His influence on Danish Literature, 923, 1894  
 His Criticism of World Literature, 923  
 Important Books, 923  
 Herman Bang, Important Writer of the Nineteenth Century, 1894  
 Edward Brandes, a Dramatist, 1894  
 Knud Rasmussen, an Authority on Eskimos, 5998  
 His Valued Ethnological Contributions, 5998  
 His Translated Works, 5998
- Norwegian**
- The Period of the Skalds, 6630  
 The Sagas, or Epic Narratives, 5082, 6296  
 The Songs, 5082  
 The Period of Union with Denmark, 5082  
 No Distinct Literature, 5082  
 The Nineteenth Century, 5082  
 Henrik Wergeland, First Great Poet, 5082  
 The Revival of Folk Songs and Ballads, 5082  
 Bjørnstjerne Bjørnson, 778  
 His Plays, 778  
 His Novels, 778  
 Many Poems, 778  
 His Nobel-Prize Award, 778  
 Henrik Ibsen, Iconoclastic Dramatist and Poet, 3325  
 His World Fame, 3325  
 His Poetic Dramas, 3325  
 Brand, an Arraignment of Pietism, 3325  
 Peer Gynt, an Exposition of Character, 3325  
 His Prose Social Dramas, 3325  
 The League of Youth, a Satire, 3325  
 Pillars of Society, A Doll's House, and Ghosts, Forerunners of Feminist Movement, 3325  
 The Wild Duck, the Tragedy of an Incapable Idealist, 3325  
 Rosmersholm, a Study of an Individual Struggle, 3325

- Hedda Gabler, a Portrait, 3325  
 The Master Builder, a Message of Encouragement, 3325  
 Little Eyolf, the Tragedy of a Guilty Conscience, 3325  
 When We Dead Awaken, a Lesson on Values, 3325  
 Sigrid Undset, Novelist of Psychological Insight, 7351  
 Her Re-creation of Medieval Life, 7351  
 Jenny, Her First Famous Novel, 7351  
 The World-Famous Trilogy, Kristin Lavransdatter, 7351  
 Other Novels, 7351  
 The Nobel-Prize Award, 7351
- Swedish**
- The Earliest Literature, 6950  
 The Written Laws of the Thirteenth Century, 6950  
 The Popular Ballad and Folk Song of the Fifteenth Century, 6950  
 The Golden Age, 6950  
 Gustavus III, Writer and Patron of the Arts, 6950  
 Bellman, National Poet, 6950  
 Emanuel Swedenborg, Philosopher and Religious Enthusiast, 6950, 6958-6959  
 Karl von Linné (Linnaeus), Father of Modern Botany, 6950, 4032  
 The Early Nineteenth Century, 6950  
 Esaias Tegner, a Poet of National Themes, 7056  
 His Three Masterpieces, 7056  
 Longfellow's Translation of The First Communion, 7056  
 Two Other Important Poets of the Period, 6950  
 Pehr Ling, a Minor Poet, 4032  
 The Later Nineteenth Century, 6950  
 The Modern Spirit of Modern Realism, 6950  
 August Strindberg, Dramatist, Novelist, Theorist, 6879  
 Master Olof, First Important Play, 6879  
 The Red Room, First Important Novel, 6879  
 Its Effect on Swedish Literary Traditions, 6879  
 A Romantic and Optimistic Note, 3840  
 Selma Lagerlöf, Novelist of Swedish Life, 3840-3841  
 The Story of Gösta Berling, 3840  
 The Miracles of Anti-Christ, 3840  
 The Wonderful Adventures of Nils, 3841  
 Other Important Books, 3841  
 The Nobel-Prize Award, 3841  
 Minor Literary Developments  
 The Work of Oscar II, 5264  
 Lyric Poems, Translations, Memoirs of Charles XII, 5264  
 Baron Nordenskiöld's Records of His Explorations and Discoveries, 5041

## Russian Literature

**The Earliest Forms, 6277**

Folk Tales and Songs of Wandering Singers, 6277

The Annals, Crude Attempts at History, 6277

The Campaign of Igor, an Epic Poem, 6277

**The Medieval Period of Militarism and Oppression, 6277****The Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries, 6277**

A Period of Preparation, 6277

Establishment of an Alphabet by Peter the Great, 6277

Formulation of a Russian Grammar by Lomonosov, 6277

Founding of the Russian Theater, 6277

Translation of Greek, English and German Classics, 6277

Awakening of National Consciousness by Karamzin, 6277

**The National Period, 6277**

Distinctive Characteristics of the Age, 6277

Banning of Politics and Substitution of Literature, 6277

Use of Literature as a Criticism of Life, 6278

Supremacy of the Novel, 6278

**The Leading Writers of the Period, 5888**

Alexander Pushkin, Creator of Modern Russian Literature, 5888

Nikolai Gogol, Humorist and Novelist, 2854

Feodor Dostoievsky, Novelist of Sympathetic Insight, 2014

Count Lyoff Tolstoi, Novelist, Essayist, and Moral Philosopher, 7203-7205

His Marriage, and Great Creative Period, 7204

War and Peace, 7204

Anna Karenina, a Masterpiece, 7204

Death of Ivan, and The Power of Darkness, 7204

A Confession, and My Religion, 7204

His Life of Simplicity, 7204

An Estimate of His Theories and His Work, 7204-7205

Ivan Turgenev, Sympathetic Novelist of Peasant Life, 7300

Maxim Gorki, or Gorky, 2876-2877

Meaning of Fictitious Name, 2876

Dramas, Including the Lower Depths, 2877

Later Biographical Works, 2877

Peter Kropotkin, Nihilist, Explorer, Writer, 3816

Minor Well-Known Writers of the Period, 6278

Ivan Goncharov, Novelist, 6278

Alexander Griboyedov, Dramatist, 6278

Alexander Herzen, Writer of Beautiful Prose, 6278

Ivan Krylov, Translator, 6278

Mikhail Lermontov, Poet of the Caucasus, 6278

Dmitri Merezhkovsky, Novelist, Critic, Religious Poet, 6278

Nikolai Nekrasov, 6278

Alexander Ostrovsky, Founder of Modern Realistic Comedy and Drama, 6278

Mikhail Saltykov, Satirist, 6278

Feodor Sologub, Novelist and Lyric Poet, 6278

Alexei Tolstoi, Dramatist and Poet, 6278

**The Modernist Period, 6278-6279**

The Unsettled Political Conditions, 6278

Characteristics of the Younger Modernistic Writers, 6278

Writers Best Known to American Readers, 6279

Leonid Andreyev, 6279

Mikhail Artsybashev, Novelist and Extremist, 6279

Anton Chekhov, Dramatist and Short Story Writer, 6279

Alexander Kuprin, Writer of Joyous, Lively Stories, 6279

Boris Savinkov, a Modern Realist, 6279

## Spanish Literature

**The Earliest Period of Natural Literature, 6726**

Romantic Songs and Tales, 6726

Amadis of Gaul, 240

Heroic Ballads of Charlemagne and the Cid, 6726

The Poem of the Cid, 1424

Two Distinguished Writers: Juan Ruiz and Juan Manuel, 6726

**The Golden Age of Spanish Literature, 6726**

Lope de Vega Carpio, Dramatist and Poet, 7470

Unparalleled Creative Power, 7470

Miguel de Cervantes Saavedra, Great Novelist, 1291

Literary Career, 1291

Some Sonnets and Galatea, a Pastoral Novel, 1291

A Long List of Plays, Rather Unsuccessful, 1291

Don Quixote, His Masterpiece, 1291, 2011

Exemplary Tales, 1291

Journey to Parnassus, 1291

Calderon de la Barca, Poet and Dramatist, 6726

Invention of the Picaresque, or Rogue, Novel, 6726

Gil Blas de Santillana, Masterpiece and Model, 6726

- A Period of Decline, 6726  
 The Modern Period, 6726  
   Preëminence of the Novel, 6726  
   Vicente Blasco Ibanez, Famous throughout the World, 3323-3324  
   His Famous Novels, 3323-3324

- The Four Horsemen of the Apocalypse, 3323-3324  
   Meaning of Its Title, 3324  
   Its Use in Motion Pictures, 3323  
   Mare Nostrum, and Blood and Sand, 3324

### Miscellaneous Authors of Importance

- Maurus Jokai**, Hungarian Novelist and Dramatist, 3693  
   His Important Novels and Dramas, 3693  
     The Hungarian Nabob, The New Landlord, Black Diamonds, The Modern Midas, The Comedians of Life, 3693  
   History of Hungary, a Reputable Work, 3693  
   King Koloman and The Martyrs of Szigetvar, Fine Dramas, 3693  
**Henryk Sienkiewicz**, Polish Writer of Historical Romances, 6596

- Quo Vadis**, World-Famous Story, 6596  
   The Tatar Bondage, 6596  
   A Trilogy of the Struggle between the Poles and the Cossacks, 6596  
     With Fire and Sword, The Deluge, Pan Michael, 6596  
   Children of the Soil, 6596  
   Knights of the Cross, 6596  
   His Nobel-Prize Award, 6596  
**Johann Pestalozzi**, Swiss Educator and Reformer, 5513-5514  
   His Political and Educational Writings, 5514

### Oriental Literature

- Sanskrit Classics**, 6377, 6378  
   The Vedas, 6378, 7469-7470  
     Their Four Parts  
       The Rig-Veda, Hymns of Praise for Gods, 7469  
       The Yajur-Veda, Hymns for Sacrificial Rites, 7469  
       The Sama-Veda, the Hymns of the Yajur-Veda Set to Melodies for Chanting, 7470  
       The Atharva-Veda, Hymns of Blessing, Curses, and Charms against Witchcraft and Magic, 7470  
   The Secular Epics, 6378  
     The Ramayana, Written by the Poet Valmiki, 5992  
     The Mahabharata, 4221  
   Other Epics, Lyric and Didactic Poetry, and Narratives, 6378  
   The Sanskrit Dramas, 6378  
   The Beast Fable and Fairy Tales, 6378  
     The Sanskrit Fables as a Source Book for Aesop's Fables, 2356  
     The Arabian Nights Tales, Probably of Hindu Origin, 6378, 340-341  
     Some of the Popular Stories, 2716-2718, 3065, 220-221, 165  
**Modern Indian Literature of World Fame**  
   Sir Rabindranath Tagore, Poet and Philosopher, 7006  
     His Patriotic Poems and Songs, 7006  
     His Spiritual Interpretation of Nature, 7006  
     His Interpretation of the Soul of the East, 7006  
**Persian Contributions**, 5496  
   The Zend-Avesta, Sacred Book of Zoroaster, 5496, 7971-7972

- Its Five Parts  
     The Yasna, Liturgy of the Parsees, 7972  
     The Vispered, Shorter and Minor Text, 7972  
     The Vendidad, a Priestly Code, 7972  
     The Yashts, Songs of Praise, 7972  
     The Khordah, Book of Short Prayers, 7972  
   The Shahnameh, a Great Epic by Firdausi, 5496, 2425-2426  
   A Tale of Persian Deeds of Valor, 5496, 2425-2426  
   Mystic Poetry, 5496  
     Jalaluddin Rumi's Masnavi, 5496  
     Sa'di's Odes, 5496  
   Other Works by Sa'di, 6295  
   Omar Khayyám's The Rubaiyat, 5199, 5496  
     Its Translation by Edward Fitzgerald, 5199  
     Its Themes: Love of Nature, Regret for the Swiftiness of Life, the Pleasures of Love, 5199  
   Hafiz's Lyrics, 3002  
**The Chinese Contribution**, 1605  
   The Nine Books of the Confucianist Bible, 1605  
**The Japanese Contribution**, 3625  
   Its Imitation of Chinese Literature, 3625  
   Types: Stories, Plays, History, Geography, and Recent Scientific Works, 3625  
   The Modern Influence of the Russian and Other European Literatures, 3625  
**The Hebrew Contribution**  
   The Bible, 723-732  
     Its Use as Literary Material by Other Writers, 728  
     Its Own Literary Forms, 728-729  
   The Beauty of the Language, 729



Its Appeal to Children, 729  
 A List of Twenty Best Short Stories in the Bible, 729  
 Portions of Exceptional Literary Beauty  
   The Psalms, 5861  
   Solomon's Song, 6684  
   The Book of Job, 3680  
 Josephus' Jewish Antiquities, 3702  
 The Talmud, the Jewish Book of Civil and Religious Law, 7010

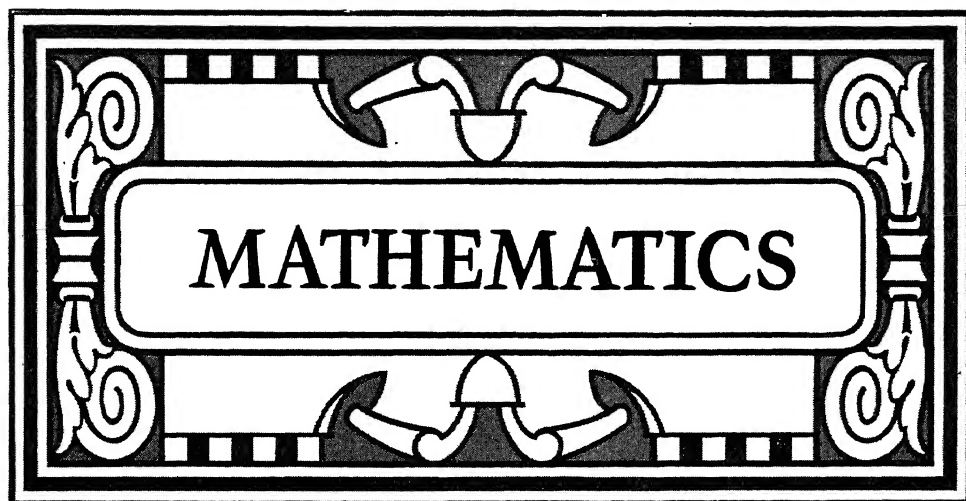
Its Two Divisions  
   The Mishna, Written Traditional Laws, 7010  
   The Gemara, Later Comments on the Mishna, 7010  
 Its Use by Modern Scholars, 7010  
**The Arabic Contribution**  
 The Koran, the Sacred Book of the Mohammedans, 4568, 4570-4571, 3813-3814  
 Its Teachings, 4570-4571

### Famous Masterpieces

#### List of Works Reviewed

Aeneid, 67  
 Aesop's Fables, 69  
 Alice's Adventures in Wonderland, 1985  
 All's Well That Ends Well, 6528  
 Ancient Mariner, 275  
 Anglo-Saxon Chronicles, 288  
 Antony and Cleopatra, 6528-6529  
 Arabian Nights, 340-341  
 As You Like It, 6530  
 Autocrat of the Breakfast Table, 532  
 Barbara Frietchie, 616-617  
 Ben-Hur, 708-709  
 Beowulf, 711  
 Bible, 723-732  
 Book of Job, 3680  
 Canterbury Tales, 1176-1177  
 Christmas Carol, 1417  
 Cid, 1424  
 Comedy of Errors, 6530  
 Coriolanus, 6530  
 Courtship of Miles Standish, 1724-1726  
 Cymbeline, 6530-6531  
 Don Quixote, 2011  
 Edda, 2106  
 Evangeline, 2329-2332  
 Frankenstein, 2592  
 Gettysburg Address, 2793  
 Grimms' Fairy Tales, 2966  
 Gulliver's Travels, 2983  
 Hamlet, 6531  
 Henry IV, Parts I and II, 6531  
 Henry V, 6531-6532  
 Henry VI, Parts I, II, III, 6532  
 Henry VIII, 6532  
 Hiawatha, 3172  
 Idylls of the King, 3347  
 Iliad, 3349-3350

Julius Caesar, 6532  
 Kenilworth, 3755  
 King John, 6532  
 King Lear, 6532  
 Koran, 3813-3814, 4570-4571  
 Les Miserables, 3943  
 Lochinvar, 4073  
 Love's Labour's Lost, 6532-6533  
 Macbeth, 6533, 4171-4172  
 Mahabharata, 4221  
 Measure for Measure, 6533-6534  
 Merchant of Venice, 6534  
 Merry Wives of Windsor, 6534  
 Midsummer Night's Dream, 6534  
 Mother Goose, 4683-4684  
 Much Ado about Nothing, 6534-6535  
 Nicholas Nickleby, 5021  
 Odyssey, 5162  
 Othello, 6535-6536  
 Paradise Lost, 5357  
 Pickwick Papers, 5603  
 Pied Piper of Hamelin, 5604-5605  
 Poor Richard's Almanac, 5730  
 Psalms, 5861  
 Richard II, 6536  
 Richard III, 6536  
 Rip Van Winkle, 6135  
 Robinson Crusoe, 6150  
 Romeo and Juliet, 6536  
 Saga, 6296  
 Solomon's Song, Song of Songs, 6684  
 Taming of the Shrew, 6536  
 Tempest, 6536-6537  
 Twelfth Night, 6538  
 Two Gentlemen of Verona, 6538  
 Utopia, 7436  
 Winter's Tale, 6538  
 Zend-Avesta, 7971-7972



## Its Place in Our Lives

**Mathematics, 4343-4345**  
 Applied Mathematics, 4344  
 Pure Mathematics, 4344  
 Universal Value  
   Cultural Qualities, 385  
   Disciplinary Value, 4345  
   Practical Uses, 4345

**The Branches of Mathematics**  
 Arithmetic, 383-388  
 Algebra, 206-216  
 Geometry, 2745-2749  
   (Plane and Spherical)  
 Trigonometry, 7268  
 Calculus, 1074

## Historical Development

### Ancient Contributions

Egypt, 4344, 2151  
   Mathematical Accuracy of the Pyramids, 5894  
   Ptolemy's Astronomical Observations, 468, 5871  
 Babylonia, 4344  
 Phoenicia, 5569  
 Greece, 4344  
   Archimedes, Greatest Ancient Mathematician, 358, 2746  
   Euclid of Alexandria, "Father of Geometry," 2313, 2746  
   Plato, Used Geometry in Philosophy, 2746  
   Pythagoras, 5898  
     Pythagorean Theorem, 2746, 7265  
   Thales, Figured Dates of Eclipses, 7134

### The Orient

Arabs, 342, 4344  
 Hindus, 4344  
 The Persian, Omar Khayyam, 4344, 5199

### More Modern Developments

Denmark  
   Brahe, the Mathematics of Astronomy, 916

### France

Arago, Measured Spherical Surfaces, 343  
 Descartes, Inventor of Analytical Geometry, 1913  
 Laplace, Wrote Celestial Mechanics, 3874  
 Legendre, Originator of Metric System, 4424

### Germany

Einstein, Discoverer of Einstein's Theory, 2157, 2162  
 Kepler, the Planetary Theory, 3766  
 Leibnitz, Principles of Differential Calculus, 3925

### Great Britain

Napier, Inventor of Logarithms, 4805, 4090  
 Newton, Formulated Laws of Gravitation, 4960, 4962, 2916

### Italy

Galileo, Creator of Experimental Science, 2664, 5456  
 Da Vinci, Universal Genius, 7530  
 Tartalea, Solution of the Cubic Equation, 206

## Arithmetic

**Explaining the Nature and Properties of Numbers, 4344, 7162**  
 All Need Arithmetic, 383, 384  
 Logistics, 386

Montessori Method, 4623-4628  
 The "Children's House," 4624  
   The Frames, 4625  
   Education of the Senses, 4625

Scientific Aspects, 4627  
Present-Day Tendencies, 385

The History of Arithmetic, 386  
National Development, 386, 37

## Divisions of Arithmetic

**Notation and Numeration**, 5091

Digits, 5092  
Hindu Notation, 5091-5092

**Fundamental Processes**

**Addition**, 37-44

Abacus, 2  
Calculating Machines, 1073  
Checking Addition, 42  
Bean Bag Game, 40-41  
Casting Out Nines, 1975  
Tests for Addition, 1975  
Counting among Native Tribes, 37  
Exercises with Squares and Circles, 40, 42, 43  
First Counting by Children, 37  
Counting Pennies, 38  
Variations in Counting, 38  
Games for Interest and Quick Response, 40  
Measuring the Garden, 38  
Number Cards, 41  
Outline on Addition, 44  
Practical Suggestions for Work, 39  
Processes in Addition, 41  
Special Methods, 43  
The Grocery Bill, 39  
The Hundred Combinations, 42  
Visualizing Addition, 40  
Use of Dominoes, 41

**Subtraction**, 6895-6897

Casting Out Nines, 1975  
Combinations in Subtraction, 6895  
Steps in Learning Subtraction, 6897  
Suggestions for Rapid Work, 6896

**Multiplication**, 4736-4739

Casting Out Nines, 1975  
Checking Multiplication, 4738  
Commutation, 4736  
Multiplier and Multiplicand, 4736  
Some Quick Multiplications, 4738

**Division**, 1976

Divisibility of Numbers, 1974  
Tests, 1975  
Casting Out Nines, 1975  
Division with Reduction, 1978  
Meaning of Remainder, 1979  
Short Methods in Division, 1980  
Transition from Multiplication, 1976  
Sources of Problems, 1980

**Common Fractions**, 2557-2567

Parts of a Fraction, 2557  
Reduction to Higher and Lower Terms, 2558  
Addition of Fractions, 2558  
Common Denominator, 2558  
Addition of Mixed Numbers, 2560  
Subtraction of Fractions, 2560  
Subtraction of Mixed Fractions, 2561  
Addition and Subtraction of Unit Fractions, 2561

Multiplication of Fractions, 2561

Division of Fractions, 2563

Complex Fractions, 2565

Fraction as an Expressed Division, 2566

**Decimal Fractions**, 1860-1865

Origin of Decimal Point, 1861  
Notation and Numeration, 1860  
Reduction of Decimal Fractions, 1861  
Multiplication of Decimals, 1863  
Division of Decimals, 1864

**Common Applications of Above Principles**

Cancellation, 1163-1164  
Purpose, Principles, Problems, 1163  
Factoring, 2358  
Composite Number, 2358  
Prime Factors, 2358  
Use of Tests for Divisibility, 2358, 1974  
Separating a Number into Prime Factors, 2358  
Common Factor, 2359  
Greatest Common Factor, 2359, 2932  
Numbers Prime to Each Other, 2359  
Greatest Common Divisor, 2932  
Least Common Multiple, 3907

**Denominate Numbers**, 1898-1903

Addition of, 1902  
Division of, 1902  
Multiplication of, 1902  
Reduction of, 1901  
Subtraction of, 1902  
Longitude and Time, 4106  
Latitude, 3888  
Longitude, 4106  
Degrees of, Illustrated, 4106  
Meridian, 4409  
Prime Meridian, 4409  
Greenwich, 2245, 2246

Degree, 1874

Minute, Second, 4526

**Weights and Measures**, 7702

Angular Measurements, 1900, 2746  
Circle, 1432-1434  
[See *Surface Measurements*, below.]  
Degree, 1874  
Minute, Second, 4526  
Table for, 1901

Counting, Table for, 1900

Cubic Measure, 1779, 1899

Containers

Barrel, 629  
Bushel, 1038  
Cylinder, 1797  
Gallon, 1900, 2667, 4426  
In Metric System, 4426  
Liter, 4046  
Quart, 5906  
Solid Measurements, 1799, 2746  
Definition of a Solid, 6680

Cone, 1600  
 Right Circular Cone, Altitude,  
 Slant Height, Frustrum, 1600-  
 1601  
 Rules for Determining Solid Con-  
 tents, 1601  
 Cube, 1775  
 Cube Root. [See *Powers and Roots*,  
 below.]  
 Prism, 5823-5824  
 Pyramid, 5892  
 Frustrum of a Pyramid, 5893  
 Sphere, 6757  
 Practical Applications, 1779  
 Practical Problems, 1780  
 Measures for Crops, 1780  
 Short Methods, 1779  
 Dry Measure, 1900  
 Barrel, 629  
 Bushel, 1038  
 In Metric System, 4426  
 Quart, 5906  
 Table for, 1900  
 Electrical Units of Measurement  
 Ampere, 265  
 Farad, 2370  
 Kilowatt, 3775  
 Ohm, 5178  
 Volt, 7565  
 Watt, 7681  
 [See, also, Outline on *Physics*, subhead  
*Electricity*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Linear Measure, 1898  
 Chain, 1295  
 Fathom, 2379  
 Foot, 2520  
 Furlong, 2646  
 Geometry, 2745-2749 [See *Surface*  
*Measurements*, below.]  
 In Metric System, 4425  
 Meter, 4421  
 Kilometer, 3775  
 Knot, 3807  
 League, 3903  
 Mile, 4473  
 Nautical Mile, 4474  
 Tables  
 Common Linear Measure, 1898  
 Surveyor's Linear Measure, 1899  
 Liquid Measure, 1900  
 Barrel, 629  
 Gallon, 2667  
 Imperial Gallon, 2668  
 Hogshead, 3193  
 In Metric System, 4425  
 Liter, 4046  
 Quart, 5906  
 Table of Liquid Measure, 1900  
 Mensuration, 4393-4395  
 [Its various divisions appear in alpha-  
 betical order in sections on *Surface*  
*Measure* and *Cubic Measure*.]  
 Metric System, 4424-4426

Of French Origin, 4424  
 Extent of Adoption, 4424  
 Extent of Use in United States, 4424  
 How the System Is Organized, 4424  
 Meter, Unit of Length, 4424, 4421  
 Centimeter, 1286  
 Kilogrammeter, 3775  
 Kilometer, 3775  
 Are, Hektare, Units of Surface, 4425  
 Liter, Unit of Capacity, 4425, 4046  
 Hektoliter, 4425  
 Gram, Unit of Weight, 4425, 2890  
 Kilogram, 4425, 3775  
 Kilogrammeter, 3775  
 Microgram, 4425  
 Tables in the System  
 Measures of Length, 4425  
 Surface Measure, 4425  
 Cubic Measure, 4425  
 Measures of Capacity, 4426  
 Measures of Weight, 4426  
 Metric and English Equivalents for  
 All Measures, 4426  
 [For other terms in Metric Measure-  
 ments, see Outline on *Physics*, subhead  
*Electricity*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Money Tables, 1898  
 Equivalent Values, 1898, 4589, 4590  
 [See, also, Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE,  
 for full outline on the subject.]  
 Paper Measure, 2506  
 Table for Paper Measuring, 1900  
 Surface Measurements, or Square Meas-  
 ure, 1898-1899, 4393  
 Acre, 22  
 Circle, 1432  
 Area of Circle, 1433  
 Problems, 1434  
 [See, also, *Angular Measurements*, above.]  
 Geometry, 2745-2749. [See *Geometry*,  
 below.]  
 In Metric System, 4425, 4426  
 Parallelogram, 4393  
 Polygon, 5717  
 Quadrilateral, 5900  
 Isosceles, 5900  
 Rectangle, 5900, 4393, 6024  
 Rhomboid, 5900 (Illustration)  
 Rhombus, 5900, 6100  
 Square, 6784, 6024  
 Square Root. [See *Powers and*  
*Roots*, below.]  
 Trapezium, 5900, 7253  
 Trapezoid, 5900  
 Rule for Finding Area, 4394  
 Triangle, 7264, 4393  
 Definition and Illustrations, 4393-  
 4394  
 Terms Relating to, 7264  
 Equilateral, Isosceles, Scalene,  
 Right Triangle, Obtuse Triangle,  
 Acute Triangle, Base, Altitude,  
 Hypotenuse, 7264-7265

Pythagorean Theorem, 7265, 5898  
 Solution of, 7265  
 Rules for Finding Area, 4394, 7266  
 Triangular Measurements, 7266  
 Problems in Surface Measurements, 4394  
 Table of Common Surface Measure, 1898  
 Table of Surveyor's Surface Measure, 1899  
**Time Measures**  
 Table for Time Measures, 1900  
 Day, 1842  
   Dawn, 7331  
   Night, 1842  
   Solar Day, 7179  
   Twilight, 7331  
 Daylight Saving, 1843  
 Summer Time, 1843  
 Differences in Time between Cities, 7179  
 International Date Line, 3484  
 Longitude and Time, 4106  
 Measures through the Ages, facing 7180  
 Minute, Second, 4526  
 Month, 4630  
   Anomalistic, Calendar, Lunar, Solar, Synodical Month, 4630  
 Sidereal Time, 6594  
   Sidereal Year, 6594, 7930  
   Sidereal Day, 7179, 1842  
   Sidereal Month, 4630  
 Standard Time, 6799  
   Who May Order Changes, 6800  
   Five Zones, 6799, 6800  
**Time, 7179**  
   Greenwich Meridian the Base, 7180  
   Where Time Corrections Are Made, 7180  
   Meridian Circle, 7180  
   Various Views of Time, 7179  
**Week, 7700**  
   Origin of Names of Days of, 7700  
   The Days of the Week  
     Sunday, 6925  
     Monday, 4581  
     Tuesday, 7289  
     Wednesday, 7690  
     Thursday, 7165  
     Friday, 2622  
     Saturday, 6398  
**Year, 7930**  
   Annunciation Day, 7930  
   Calendar Year, 7930, 1075  
   Leap Year, 7930, 3906  
   Months of the Year  
     January, 3618  
     February, 2386  
     March, 4284  
     April, 330  
     May, 4351  
     June, 3713  
     July, 3709, 1075  
     August, 499

September, 6499  
 October, 5156  
 November, 5110  
 December, 1859  
 Sidereal Year, 7930  
 Solar Year, 7930  
 Year of the Ancients  
   Egyptian, 1075  
   Greek, 1075  
   Mohammedan, 7930, 1076  
   Hegira, 3125  
   Roman, 7930  
**Terms Relating to Time Measures**  
 Age, 86  
   Geologic Ages. [See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]  
   Historic Ages, 86  
   [See Outline on *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Calendar, 1075  
   Ancient, 1075  
   Ecclesiastical, 1076  
   Gregorian, 1076  
   Gregory XIII, 2962  
   Hebrew, 1076  
   Julian, 1075, 3709  
   Mohammedan, 1076, 7930  
   Perpetual, 1076-1077  
   Proposed Change in, 1077  
 Calends, 4630  
 Christian Era, 1412  
 Chronology, 1418  
 Clock, 1485  
   Hour Glass, 3260  
   Clepsydra, facing 7180  
   Sundial, 6927, 6928  
 Equinox, 2283  
 Ides, 4630  
 Nones, 4630  
 Olympiad, 5195  
 Seasons, 6472  
**Percentage, 5481-5484**  
 Symbol of Per Cent, 5481  
 To Find Any Per Cent of a Number, 5482  
 Applications of Percentage  
   Discount, 1957  
   Bank, 1957  
   Trade, 1957  
   Insurance, 3472  
   Interest, 3474  
   Methods of Computing, 3474  
     The 6% Method, 3474  
     The Thousand-Day Method, 3475  
   Taxes, 7032, 7033  
**Powers and Roots**  
 Involution, 3501  
 Evolution, 2341  
 Power, 5792  
 Root, 6197  
   Cube Root, 1776-1779  
   Square Root, 6784  
**Proportion, 5847**  
**Ratio, 6000-6001**

## Algebra

### Algebra, 206-216

- The Cubic Equation, 206
- The Step from Arithmetic to Algebra, 207
- Equation, the Mathematical Sentence, 208
- The Problem Stated in Equation, 209
- Negative Quantity, 209
- Foundations of Algebra, 210
  - Coefficient, 210
  - Signs of Parentheses, 210
  - Numerical Values of Letters, 211

- Binominal, 741
- Fundamental Processes in Algebra
  - Addition, with Problems, 211
  - Subtraction, with Problems, 212
  - Multiplication, with Problems, 212
  - Division, with Problems, 213
- Simple Equations, 214
- Two Unknown Quantities, 215
  - Addition, Subtraction, Substitution, 215
- Three Unknown Quantities, 216

## Geometry

### Geometry, "Science of Space," 2745-2749

- In Ancient Days
  - Egypt, 2746
    - The Nile Made It Necessary, 2746
- Greek Contributions
  - An Early Master, 2745, 358
  - Euclid, 2746, 2313
  - Pythagoras, 2746, 5898
    - Pythagorean Theorem, 2746, 5898, 7265
  - Thales, 2746, 7134
- Concerns Itself with—
  - Points, Lines, Surfaces, Solids, 2746
- Branches of Geometry, 2746-2747
- How Geometry Proves Things, 2748
  - Reduction to an Absurdity, 2748
- Some Famous Theorems, 2748
  - "Pons Asinorum" (Asses' Bridge), 2748
  - Pythagorean Theorem. [See above.]
- Terms Employed
  - Angle, 284
    - Acute, Curvilinear, Obtuse, Perigon, Reflex, Rectilinear, 284
  - Area, 372
  - Axiom, 548
  - Circle. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
  - Cone. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]

- Corollary, 2747
- Cube. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Curve, 1791
- Cylinder. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Degree. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Demonstration, 2747
- Ellipse, 2213
- Hypothesis, 2747
- Line, 4031
- Mensuration. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Plane, 5643
- Polygon. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Postulate, 2747
- Prism. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Proposition, 2747
- Pyramid. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Q. E. D., 2747
- Q. E. F., 2747
- Quadrilateral. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Rectangle. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Sphere. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Spheroid, 6758
  - Oblate, Prolate, 6758
- Square. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Triangle. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Trapezoid. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]
- Trapezium. [See *Arithmetic*, above.]

## Higher Mathematics

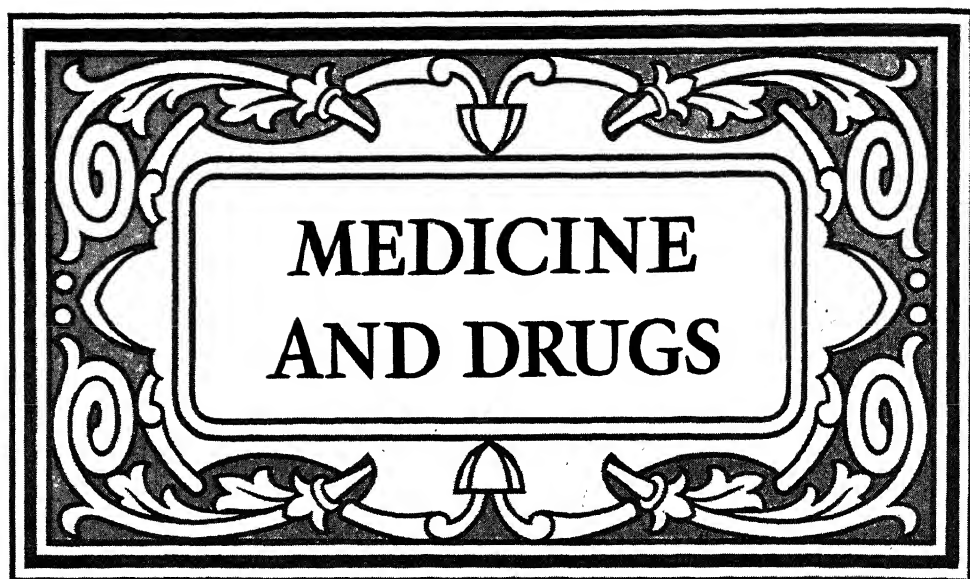
### Trigonometry, 7268

- Plane, Spherical, 7268
- Logarithms, 4089

- Triangulation, 7270
- Practical Uses, 7268
- Calculus, 1074

## Great Mathematicians

[The men who have given to the world the great underlying principles of Mathematics are listed in this GUIDE in the Outline on *Biography*.]



## Definitions

**Materia Medica**, Material Used for the Alleviation and Cure of Disease, 4343, 4374-4377  
**Pathology**, the Science Treating of Disease, 1958-1960

**Surgery**, Mechanical or Operative Measures Used in Treatment, 6942-6943  
**Therapeutics**, Known as the Science of Healing, 7142

## Nature of Disease and Classification

**What Disease Is**, 1958  
**Why Diseases Change**, 1959  
**The Ideal System of Control**, 1959  
**Various Types of Disease**  
    Infectious, Caused by Germs  
        Germ Theory of Disease, 1959  
            Work of Koch, 3811  
            Work of Pasteur, 5411  
            Why the Term Is a Misnomer, 1959  
        Three Facts Necessary to Prove Germ Origin of a Disease, 1960  
        How Germs Enter the Body, 1960  
        Formation of Toxins, 7229  
        Prevention of Germ Diseases. [See *Prevention of Diseases and Epidemics*, below.]  
    Virus, Another Name for a Microörganism Producing Disease, 7547  
    Bacteria, Germs of Plant Origin, 566-568  
        Minute Bits of Protoplasm, 566, 5852  
        One-Celled Plants, 566, 1268  
        Measured by the Micron, 566

Reproduction by Cell Division, 566  
    Also Called Microbes, 1959  
    Bacteriology, the Study of Bacteria  
        Preparation of Nourishing Media, 568  
        Multiplying of Colonies, 568  
        The Pure Culture, 568  
        Microscopic Study, 4469, 568  
        Staining, 568  
        Work of Anton van Leeuwenhoek, 568  
    Germs of Animal Origin  
        Cause of Protozoan (Parasitic) Diseases, 5365, 5853  
        Amoebic Diseases, 7984  
    Degenerative Diseases, 1959, 1873  
    Deficiency Diseases, 1959  
        Due to Lack of Vitamins, 7549-7550  
    Diseases Caused by Plant Parasites, 5365  
        Blastomycosis, Actinomycosis, 5365  
        Ringworm, 6130-6131  
    Diseases Caused by Animal Parasites, 5365  
    Others. [See sections below.]

## Symptoms and Treatment of Pathological Conditions

**Diseases of the Alimentary System**  
**Mouth and Throat**  
    Mumps, 4740  
    Pharyngitis, Inflammation of the Pharynx, 5533

Pyorrhoea, 5892  
    Care of the Teeth, 7056, 3989  
    Quinsy, Abscess in the Region of the Tonsils, 5923  
    Thrush, 7163-7164  
    Tonsillitis, Infected Tonsils, 7210, 2124

**Liver, Gall Bladder, Kidneys**

Cirrhosis of the Liver, 1435

Gall Stones, 2666

Nephritis, 4877, 3772

Acute Bright's Disease

Albumin and Casts in Urine, 956

Chronic Bright's Disease

Worst Form Accompanied by Dropsy

and Anaemia, 956, 2038

Uraemia Apt to Occur, 7419

**Peritoneum**

Peritonitis, 5489

**Stomach and Intestines**

Appendicitis, Inflammation of the Vermiform Appendix, 321-322

Dyspepsia, 2070

Suggestions as to Diet, 3983-3985, 1944

Gastritis, 2703-2704

Hernia, Rupture of the Abdominal Wall, 3163

**Diseases of the Circulatory System**

**Affecting the Blood**

Anaemia, 270

Pernicious Anaemia

Decrease in Red Blood Corpuscles and Hemoglobin, 270

Use of Liver as a Corrective, 271

Chlorosis

Decrease in Hemoglobin, 271

Leukemia

Increase in White Blood Cells, 271

Polycythemia, Thickened Blood, 800

Blood Poisoning, 798

Distinction between Toxemia and Septicemia, 800

**Affecting the Blood Vessels**

Arteriosclerosis (Hardening of the Arteries), 423

Connection with High Blood Pressure, 423, 801

Suggestions for Avoiding Strain, 3990

Varicose Veins, 7464

Piles (Hemorrhoids), Varicose Veins of the Rectum, 5615

**Affecting the Heart**

Angina Pectoris, 284

How to Distinguish from False Angina, 284

Other Diseases of the Heart

Prevalence and Control, 3111

Special Forms: Myocarditis, Endocarditis, Pericarditis, Hypertrophy, 3111

**Diseases of the Respiratory System**

**Adenoids, Excessive Growth of Glandular Tissue, 45-46**

Effects on Breathing, Hearing, etc., 45, 2124

**Asthma, 464**

**Bronchitis, 974**

**Coryza, or Common Cold, 1701**

Suggestions for Prevention, 1702, 3982

Chronic Colds May Be Due to Tonsils, 2125

Economic Loss from Colds, 1702

**Croup, 1757-1758**

**Hay Fever, 3099**

Pollen of Ragweed Important Cause, 5972

Experiments with Proteins, 3099

**Influenza, or Grippe, 3449-3450**

**Laryngitis, Inflammation of the Larynx, 3881, 3882**

**Pleurisy, Inflammation of the Pleura, 5658**

**Pneumonia, 5676-5677**

Importance of Hygienic Measures in Control and Prevention, 5677, 4156

**Sinusitis, Congestion of the Sinus Membranes, 6624**

Neglected Colds a Common Cause, 5091, 1701

**Whooping Cough, Highly Contagious Children's Disease, 7756**

**Diseases of the Brain and Nervous System**

**Aphasia, a Brain Disorder, 317**

Forms: Amnesic and Ataxic Aphasia,

Agraphia, Paragraphia, Paraphasia, 317

**Apoplexy, or Stroke, 318-319**

Three Common Causes

Cerebral Hemorrhage, 318

Thrombosis, 318

Embolus, 319

Danger of High Blood Pressure, 319, 801, 423

First-Aid Measures, 319, 2439

**Locomotor Ataxia, a Disease of the Spinal Cord, 4082**

**Meningitis (Brain and Cord), 4392**

Epidemic Cerebrospinal Meningitis Caused by Germ, 4392

**Saint Vitus's Dance, or Chorea (Brain and Cord), 6329**

Relation to Heart Disease, Rheumatism, and Diseased Tonsils, 6329, 2124, 2126

**Nerve Troubles**

Neuralgia, 4896

How It Differs from Neuritis, 4896, 4897

Facial Neuralgia, or Tic Douloureux, 7170

Sciatica, 4896

Neuritis, Nerve Inflammation, 4897

Herpes, or Shingles. [See *Pathological Conditions of the Skin*, below.]

**Neuroses (Psychoneuroses)**

Acquired by Neurotic Persons, 4897-4898

May Be Caused by Complexes, 1593

Common Neuroses

Amnesia, 317

Catalepsy, 1238

Epilepsy, or Falling Sickness

Convulsions and Unconsciousness Occur in Grand Mal, 2280

Milder Symptoms in Petit Mal, 2280

Habit Spasms, 2126

Hysteria, 3322

Kleptomania, 3803

Monomania, 4598

Morbid Fears, 2126

Fear in Childhood, 2383-2385

Insomnophobia, Fear of Insomnia, 3467



Neurasthenia  
 Typical Symptoms, 4896  
 Nightmare May Occur, 5027  
 Insomnia, 3467  
 Fatigue, 2379  
 Causes, 4896-4897  
 Condition May Begin in Childhood, 2125-2126  
 Importance of Good Posture, 3985, 3988  
 Shell Shock, 4897  
 Stammering add Stuttering  
 Distinction between the Terms, 6795  
 Development of Speech Disorders, 6795-6796  
**Psychoses**, Forms of Insanity, 3458  
 Psychosis the Medical Term, Insanity the Legal Term, 3458  
 Types of Psychoses  
 Paranoiac States  
 Delusions and Hallucinations, 3458, 3022-3023  
 Mania-Depressive States  
 Emotional Excitement, or Melancholia, 3458  
 Dementia Praecox, or Juvenile Insanity  
 Tends to Grow Worse, 3458  
 Typical Manifestations in Youth, 4399  
 Involutional Melancholia, 3458  
 Paresis, 3458  
 Senile Dementia, 3458  
 Delirium Tremens, 1885  
 Modern Treatment of the Deranged, 3458  
 Training of Feeble-Minded (Idiots and Imbeciles), 2391  
**Diseases Pertaining to the Ductless Glands**  
**Thyroid Disturbance**, 2830  
 Goiter, Enlarged Thyroid, 2854  
 Prevalence in Certain Areas, 2855  
 Lack of Iodine a Cause, 2855, 3502  
 Myxoedema, 2855  
 Cretinism, 2855, 2830, 7985  
**Disturbance of the Pituitary Body**, 2830, 7985  
**Lack of Internal Secretion of the Pancreas**, 2830, 5339  
 Causes Diabetes Mellitus, 1927  
 Dietary Routine of the Diabetic, 1928  
 Use of Insulin, 3470, 7985  
**Pathological Conditions of the Skin**  
**Acne**, 22  
**Baldness**, 577  
 Causes and Prevention, 577, 3007  
 Dandruff, 1820  
 Ringworm, 6131  
**Bites and Stings of Insects and Arachnids**  
 Bees, 675  
 Fleas, 2468  
 Jigger (Chigger or Chigoe) Flea, 3676  
 Hornets, 3242  
 Jiggers (Harvest Mites), 3676  
 Mosquitoes, 4675, 4676  
 Scorpions, 6435-6436

Tarantulas, 7020  
 Ticks  
 Miana Bug, 7171  
 Wood Ticks, 7171  
**Boil**, Abscess of the Skin, 813-814  
**Carbuncle**, 814  
**Chilblain**, 1369  
**Corn**, 1691  
 Importance of Sensible Shoes, 2521  
**Dandruff**, 1820  
 May Be Due to Seborrhoea, 1820  
 Importance of Keeping the Head Clean, 3007  
**Eczema**, 2106  
**Frostbite**, 2628  
**Herpes**, or Shingles, 3166  
**Hives** (Urticaria), 3187, 7422  
 Also Called Wheals and Nettle Rash, 3187  
**Itch**, 3588-3589  
 Barber's Itch, 3589  
 A Form of Ringworm, 6131  
 Scabies, 3589  
 Caused by the Itch Mite, 4562  
**Lupus**, 4157  
 Caused by the Tubercle Bacillus, 7287  
**Ringworm**, 6130, 6131  
 Caused by Fungi, 6130, 2637, 5365  
**Wart**, 7622  
**Wen**, 7708

#### Defects and Diseases of the Eye and Ear

**Defects of Sight**, 2352  
 Astigmatism, 464-465  
 Defects Due to Imperfections of the Lens, 2352  
 Myopia, 4784  
 Defective Eyesight among School Children, 2354, 2125  
 Color Blindness, 1564  
 Squint (Strabismus), 6788  
 How to Avoid Eyestrain, 2352-2353  
**Blindness**, 791-792  
 Common Eye Diseases  
 Conjunctivitis, 791  
 Trachoma, or Granulated Eyelids, 791, 2908  
 Ophthalmia Neonatorum, 791  
 Iritis, 791  
 Traumatic Iritis, Result of Injury, 791  
 Glaucoma, 791  
 Cataract, 791-792, 1239-1240  
 Retinitis, 792  
 Atrophy of the Optic Nerve, 792  
 Amblyopia, 792  
 Ectropion, 2102  
**Accidental Injuries**  
 In the Iron and Steel Industries, 792  
 From Explosions, 792  
 From Dust, Cinders, etc., 792  
**Precautionary Measures**  
 Avoidance of Infection, 2353  
 Use of Spectacles, 6747, 6749  
 Correction of Defects by Special Lenses, Including Bifocals, 6749

Consultation with Opticians, Oculists, or  
Optometrists, 5230  
**Deafness**, 1846  
Causes of Congenital Deafness, 1846  
Causes of Acquired Deafness, 1847  
Care of the Ear, 2078

**Diseases Due to Internal Animal Parasites**

(NOT INCLUDING GERMS)

**Bilharziasis**, Caused by the Blood Fluke, 7985  
**Elephantiasis**, 2202, 2204  
Caused by a Threadlike Worm, 2204  
Transmitted by Mosquitoes, 4675  
**Hookworm Disease**, 3223, 3225  
Sanitary Measures Important, 3225, 3989  
**Tapeworm**, 7018  
Zoölogical Characters, 7018  
Importance of Securing the Head, 7018  
**Trichinosis**, 7267  
Caused by the Trichina, 7267  
Importance of Cooking Pork, 7268, 5744

**Constitutional Diseases**

**Dietetic**

**Beriberi**, Due to Lack of Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>, 7549,  
6110  
**Gout**, Due to Faulty Oxidation of Protein,  
2882  
**Pellagra**, 5448  
Diet Should Include Foods Containing  
Vitamin B<sub>2</sub>, 7549  
**Rickets**, 6121  
Due to Lack of Vitamin D, 7550  
Cod-Liver Oil, Sunlight, and Irradiated  
Food as Remedies, 1525, 3283-3284,  
7348  
**Scurvy**, 6462-6463  
Due to Lack of Vitamin C, 7550  
Infantile Scurvy, or Barlow's Diseases,  
6463

**Hemophilia**, 789, 797

**Obesity**, 5138-5140

Reducing Diets, 5139

**Rheumatism**, 6086-6087

**Acute Forms**

Acute Inflammatory, 6086

Muscular, 6086

Wryneck, 6086

Lumbago, 4145

**Chronic Forms**

Rheumatoid Arthritis and Other Joint  
Diseases, 6086-6087

Importance of Warding off Infection of Teeth  
and Tonsils, 6086, 7210, 3989

**Specific Germ Diseases**

(NOT OTHERWISE CLASSIFIED)

**Anthrax**, 308

Called Wool-Sorter's Disease, 308

Infected Bristles a Source, 957

**Chicken Pox**, 1368

**Cholera (Asiatic)**, 1407

**Dengue**, 4675

**Diphtheria**, 1954-1955

Prevention. [See *Prevention of Diseases and  
Epidemics*, below.]

**Erysipelas** (Saint Anthony's Fire), 2291

**German Measles**, 4359

**Hydrophobia (Rabies)**, 3308-3309

Pasteur Treatment for Bitten Persons, 3309

**Infantile Paralysis** (Anterior Poliomyelitis),  
3446-3447

**Leprosy**, 3938-3942

Treatment and Control, 3938, 3942

Care of Lepers at Carville, 3939-3941

Other Colonies, 3942, 3076

Chaulmoogra Oil, 3942

**Lockjaw (Tetanus)**, 4075-4076

**Malaria**, 4236-4237

Caused by a Protozoan Organism, 7984

Transmitted by Bites of Anopheles Mos-  
quitoes, 4236, 4676

Experiments Testing the Theory of Its  
Origin, 4676

Quinine a Specific Remedy, 4237

Prevention. [See *Prevention of Diseases and  
Epidemics*, below.]

**Measles**, 4358-4359

Black Measles a Rare Form, 4359

**Plague**, 5641

The Black Death of the Fourteenth Century,  
5641

Called Bubonic Plague from the Formation  
of Buboes, 5641

Transmitted from Rodents by Bites of Fleas,  
5999, 2468

**Scarlet Fever**, 6409-6410

Also Called Scarlatina, 6409

**Treatment**

Antitoxin Produced by George and Gladys  
Dick, 6410

Work of Drs. Dochez and Blake, 6410

**Scrofula**, 6454-6455

Formerly Called King's Evil, 6455

Story of Samuel Johnson, 3690

**Sleeping Sickness**, 6641-6642

African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis),  
6641

Caused by a Protozoan Organism, 7984

Transmitted by Bites of Tsetse Flies, 7285

Encephalitis Lethargica, 6642

Organism Not Yet Isolated, 6642

**Smallpox**, 6645

Prevention by Vaccination. [See *Prevention  
of Diseases and Epidemics*, below.]

**Tuberculosis**, 7286-7288

Other Names: Phthisis, Consumption, White  
Plague, 7286

Caused by a Bacillus Isolated by Dr. Robert  
Koch, 3811

**Typhoid Fever**, 7340-7341

Menace of Flies, 2499

How to Avoid Typhoid Fever, 7341, 3989

**Typhus Fever**, 7341, 7343

Organism Transmitted by Lice, 4137  
**Yellow Fever**, 7932-7933  
 Jaundice a Symptom, 3641  
 Transmitted by Mosquitoes (Aëdes), 4676, 4678  
 Experiments of the Sternberg Commission, 4678  
 The Walter Reed Commission, 7933

**Pathological Conditions and Symptoms**

**Abscess**, 11  
**Atrophy**, 494  
**Auto-Intoxication**, 533-534  
**Bunion**, 1021  
 Foot Hygiene, 2520-2521  
**Cancer** (Carcinoma), 1164-1166  
 Forms of Cancer  
     Epithelioma, Cancer of the Skin, 1165-1166  
     Sarcoma (Malignant Tumor), 1166  
     Scirrhus, Hard Cancer, 1166  
     Encephaloid, Soft Cancer, 1166  
**Canker**, 1170  
**Catarrh**, 1240  
**Colic**, 1536  
**Constipation**  
     Originates in Large Intestine, 3491-3492  
     Cause of Headache, 3103  
     Thorough Evacuation Important, 3984-3985  
**Cough**, 1720  
**Diarrhoea**  
     In Cholera Morbus, 1407  
     In Cholera Infantum, 1407  
**Dropsy**, 2038  
     Edema, Dropsy of the Skin, 2038  
     Anasarca, General Dropsy, 2038  
**Fatigue**, 2379-2380  
**Fatigue and Nervousness among Children**, 2380-2381  
**Fever**, 2404  
**Food Poisoning**  
     Ptomaines and Botulism, 5871  
     Poisonous Mushrooms  
         The Death Cup and Its Effects, 4756, 4758  
         The Fly Mushroom, 4758  
**Gangrene**, 2680-2681  
     Raynaud's Disease, 2681  
**Granulation**, 2908  
**Headache**, 3103-3104  
 Kinds  
     Migraine (a Neurosis), 3103  
     Constipation Headaches, 3103  
     Eyestrain Headaches, 3103-3104  
     Fatigue Headaches, 3104  
     Symptoms of Disease, 3104  
**Hiccough**, 3174

**Inflammation**, 3448-3449  
 Forms: Acute, Adhesive, Catarrhal, Chronic, Specific, Suppurative, Toxic, 3448-3449  
 Checked by Resolution, Suppuration, or Ulceration, 3449  
 Formation of Pus, 5888  
**Insomnia** (Sleeplessness), 3467  
 Purpose of Sleep, 3467, 6641  
 Healthful Sleeping, 3990-3991  
**Jaundice** (Icterus), 3641  
 Connection with Bile, 737  
**Nausea**, 4833  
**Palpitation of the Heart**, 5323-5324  
**Paralysis**, 5362  
**Poisoning from Chemicals**  
 Classed as Irritants, Nerve Poisons, and Poisonous Gases, 5682  
 Use of Antidotes, 309  
 First Aid in Poisoning, 309  
 Specific Treatment  
     Alcohol Poisoning, 309  
     Poisoning with Acids, 309  
         Oxalic, Carbolic, 309  
     Poisoning with Alkalies, 309  
     Bichloride of Mercury, or Corrosive Sublimite, 309, 1699  
     Carbon-Monoxide Poisoning (Asphyxiation), 309, 455, 1194, 2700  
     Chloral (Knock-Out Drops), 309, 1404, 1406  
     Arsenic, Rough-on-Rats, Paris Green, 309-310, 421  
     Metallic Poisons, 310  
         Lead, 310, 3903  
         Borax, 310  
         Chlorine, 310  
         Poison Gas, 5683  
         Coal Oil, 310  
         Cocaine, 310, 1516  
         Opiates (Narcotics), 310, 4809  
         Morphine, 4661  
         Phosphorus, 310, 5575  
         Iodine, 310  
         Strychnine, 310, 6880  
**Poisoning from Contact with Plants**  
     Belladonna, 704  
     Poison Ivy, 3593-3594  
     Poison Sumac, 6918  
**Seasickness**, 6472  
     Symptoms and Probable Cause, 6472, 2076  
**Sneezing**, 6662-6663  
**Spasm**, 6745  
**Tumor**, 7292  
**Uraemia**, 7419-7420  
**Vertigo** (Dizziness), 7510  
**Vomiting**, 7568

**Therapeutics**

**Curative Systems and Theories**

**Chiropractic**, Adjustment of Vertebrae, 1403  
 Discovered by D. D. Palmer, 1403

**Faith Cure**, 2363-2364

**Fasting**, 2376

**Homeopathy**, 3210

Founded by Samuel C. Hahnemann, 3005

Distinguished from Allopathy, 3210  
**Heliotherapy**, Sun Bathing, 3130-3131  
 Work of Dr. Niels Finsen, 3130  
 Use of Ultra-Violet Rays, 7346, 7348  
 Youthful Patients in Artificial Sunlight, 7347  
 Effect of Light upon Vitamins, 3283  
**Hydrotherapy**, 3311  
 Noted Watering Places, 3311  
 Turkish Baths, 650  
 Baths for the Sick, 651  
 Mineral Waters, 4500  
**Hypnotism**, 3319-3320  
 Influence of Mesmer's Cures, 3319  
 Use To-Day in Mental Healing, 3321  
**Massage**, 4336  
**Naprapathy**, 4808  
 Correction of Diseased Ligaments, 4808  
 Originated by Dr. Oakley Smith, 4808  
**Osteopathy**, 5267  
 Founded by Dr. Andrew T. Still, 5267

**Psychoanalysis**, 5864-5865  
 Views of Sigmund Freud, 5869  
**Serum Therapy**, 6504-6505  
 Antitoxic and Antibacterial Serums, 6504  
 Antitoxin, 313  
 Therapeutic Instruments and Devices  
**Mercury-Vapor Lamp**, 2181  
 Use in Producing Ultra-Violet Rays, 7346, 7347  
 Rays Transmitted through Fused Quartz, 5906  
**Microscope**, 4469  
 Use in Bacteriology, 568  
**Ophthalmoscope**, 5226  
**Stethoscope**, 6831  
 Use in Examining Sounds of the Heart, 3110  
**Phonendoscope**, 6831  
**Thermometer**, Clinical, 7144  
**X-Ray Tubes**, 6159

## Medicines and Drugs

**Pharmacology**, 5531-5532  
 Began with the Rise of Chemistry, 5531, 1337  
 Purpose of Pharmacal Materials  
 To Cure, Relieve, Diagnose, Prevent  
 Disease, 5532  
 Work of Paul Ehrlich, 5532  
**Pharmacopoeia**, 5532  
 U. S. Pharmacopoeia Made the Legal Standard, 5532  
**Duties of the Druggist, or Pharmacist**, 2039  
**Medical Schools**, 4372-4373  
 A Doctor's Qualifications, 4373  
**The Nature of Medicine and Drugs**, 4374-4377  
 Sources of Medicinal Agents  
 Medicinal Plants, 4374, 4375  
 Poisonous Plants, 5683  
 Animal Products  
 Cod-Liver Oil, 1524-1525  
 Insulin, 3470  
 Pancreatin, 5340  
 Thyroid Gland of Sheep, 4375  
 Medicine Made by the Body, 4375-4376  
 Anti-Bodies Formed by Vaccination, 7439, 4376  
 Metals Dug from the Earth, 4376  
 Compounds of Chemicals, 1337  
 Examples of Remedies That Are Not Cures, 4376  
 Salicin, from the Willow, 4376, 7775  
 Alkalies and Acids, 4376  
 Ether, 2304, 4376  
 Medicines to Avoid  
 Secret Remedies (Patent Medicines), 4377  
**Classes of Medicine; Accessory Preparations**  
 Alkaloids, 223  
 Anesthetics. [See under *Surgery*, below.]  
 Anodynes, 296  
 Antidotes, 309-310  
 Antiseptics, 313  
 [Also, see *Surgery*, below.]

Antitoxins, 313  
 Use in Diphtheria, 1954  
 In Lockjaw, 4076  
 In Scarlet Fever, 6410  
 In Snake Poisoning, 6661 (6)  
 In Erysipelas, 2291  
 Preparation of Antitoxic Serums, 6504  
 Astringents, 466  
 Bitters, 777  
 Disinfectants. [See below, under *Prevention of Diseases and Epidemics*.]  
 Elixirs, 2209  
 Emetics, 2222  
 Emulsions, 2231  
 Gargles, 2693  
 Narcotics, 4809-4810  
 Salts, 6347  
 Sedatives, 6478  
 Serums, Anti-Bacterial, 6504  
 Flexner's Serum, 4392  
 Tonics, 7209  
**Medicines in General Use**  
 Acetanilid, 18  
 Derivative of Coal Tar, 19  
 Aconite, 22  
 Contains Aconitin, 22  
 Derived from Root of Aconitum Napellus, 22  
 Adrenalin, 51-52  
 Active Principle of the Adrenals, 2830, 7085  
 A Powerful Astringent, 466  
 May Cause Revival of Heart Action, 52  
 Agrimony, Dried, 106  
 Aloes, 233  
 Alum (Potash Alum), 238  
 Used as an Astringent, 466  
 A Remedy for Canker, 1170  
 Amyl Nitrite  
 A Remedy for Angina Pectoris, 284

Antipyrine, 311  
 A Powerful Derivative of Coal Tar, 311, 1508  
 Arnica, 418  
 Derived from Arnica, Found in Mountain Arnica, 418  
 Arsenical Compounds, 421  
 White Arsenic, 421  
 The Specific "606," 421  
 Tryparsamide, 6642  
 Asafetida, 438  
 Derived from Root of an Asiatic Plant, 438  
 Aspirin, 455  
 Analgesic Anodyne, 296  
 Should Be Used Sparingly as a Headache Remedy, 3104  
 A Compound of Carbon, Hydrogen, and Oxygen, 455  
 Balsam of Peru, 587  
 Bayer 205 (Composition Unknown), 6641-6642  
 Belladonna, 704  
 Derived from the Deadly Nightshade, 704, 705  
 Bismuth Compounds, 775  
 Use of Bismuth as a Sedative, 6478  
 Bittersweet, 777  
 Boneset Tea, 836  
 Derived from Boneset, or Thoroughwort, 836  
 Boracic (Boric) Acid, 862, 864  
 A Compound of Boron, 862  
 A Constituent of Borax, 864  
 Bromide of Potassium, 973  
 Caffeine, 1068  
 The Bitter Principle in Coffee, 1527  
 A Constituent of Tea, 7042  
 Calomel, 1099-1100  
 A Compound of Mercury and Chlorine, 1099, 4407  
 Camphor, 1115-1116  
 Derived from the Camphor Laurel, 1116  
 Spirits of Camphor Common Liquid Form, 1116  
 Carboic Acid (Phenol), 1191-1192  
 Caution as to Use, 1192  
 Carbon Tetrachloride  
 Remedy for Hookworm, 3225  
 Cardamom Oil, 1195  
 Cascara Sagrada, 1226  
 Derived from Dried Bark of the Cascara Sagrada, 1226  
 Purshianin, the Medicinal Principle, 1226  
 Castor Oil, 1233-1234  
 Obtained from Seeds of the Castor-Oil Plant, 1233, 1234  
 Chamomile, or Camomile, 1301  
 Derived from Common (Roman) Chamomile, 1301  
 Chaulmoogra Oil  
 A Remedy for Leprosy, 3942  
 Chloral, Hydrate of, 1404, 1406

May Be Poisonous and Habit-Forming, 1404, 1406  
 Compound of Chlorine, 1406  
 Chlorine (Mixed with Air), 1406  
 Chloroform, 1406  
 Used for Liniments, Mouth Doses, and Inhalation, 1406  
 Cinchona, or Chinchona, 1426  
 Less Powerful than Quinine, 1426  
 Obtained from Jesuits' and Peruvian Bark, 1426  
 Citrates  
 Citric-Acid Compounds, 1436  
 Cloves, Oil of, 1496  
 Cocaine, 1516  
 An Alkaloid from Cocoa Leaves, 1516  
 A Vicious Habit-Forming Drug, 1516, 5226  
 [See, also, *Anesthetics*, below.]  
 Cod-Liver Oil, 1524-1525  
 A Nutrient in Wasting Diseases, Especially Rickets, 6121, 1525  
 Contains Vitamin D, 7550  
 Colchicum, 1532  
 Colchicine Obtained from Seeds and Root, 1532  
 Creosote, 1741  
 Obtained by Distillation of Wood Tar, 7019  
 Cubebs, 1775-1776  
 Digitalis, 1947  
 Derived from Leaves and Stems of the Purple Foxglove, 2555  
 Dogbane Root, 1993  
 Ergot, 2285  
 Gelsemium, 2711  
 Ginger, 2809  
 Glycerine, 2846  
 Derived from Fats and Fatty Oils, 2846  
 Hartshorn, 3065  
 Ammonia the Active Ingredient of the Modern Product, 262  
 Hashish, 3069  
 Cannabis Derived from a Related Plant, 3069  
 Hellebore, Black, 3134  
 Hemlock (Poison Hemlock), 3138  
 Heroin, 3164  
 Horehound, 3238-3239  
 Insulin, 3470  
 Discovery of F. G. Banting, 614  
 Remedy for Diabetes, 1928  
 Iodine, 3501-3502  
 Tincture of Iodine a Cure for Ringworm, 3502, 6130  
 Potassium Iodide an Antidote for Lead or Mercury Poisoning, 3502  
 Iodine a Remedy for Goiter, 3502, 2855  
 Ipecac, 3513  
 An Emetic Used in First Aid in Poisoning, 309  
 Ipecac and Opium Form Dover's Powder, 3513, 5226  
 Jalap, 3611

Laudanum, 3892  
 Tincture of Opium, 5226  
 Lunar Coustic (Nitrate of Silver), 4154  
 Magnesia, 4216  
 Male Fern, 2397  
 Menthol, 4403  
   Derived from Peppermint, 5480  
 Mercury Compounds, 4407  
 Morphine, 4661  
   The Principal Alkaloid in Opium, 5226  
   Legitimate Use, 4661  
   Measures in Overdoses, 4661, 310  
 Mustard, 4782  
   Mustard Water an Emetic, 2222  
 Myrrh, 4784-4785  
 Nux Vomica, 5126  
   Source of Strychnine. [See below.]  
 Opium, 5226-5227  
   Obtained from the Asiatic Poppy, 5737  
   The Fight against Opium, 5226-5227  
   Harrison Law, 5226  
 Oxygen, 5282  
 Pancreatin, 5340  
 Paregoric, 5367, 5226  
 Pepper, 5479  
 Peppermint, 5480  
 Pepsin, 5480  
 Peptones, 5481  
 Phenacetin, 5534  
   A Derivative of Coal Tar, 1508  
 Pokeweed, 5683, 5685  
 Potassium Permanganate, Used as a Stomach  
   Wash in Counteracting Poisons, 310, 6918  
 Quinine, 5923  
   An Alkaloid Obtained from Peruvian  
   Bark, 5513, 1426  
   A Specific for Malaria, 4237  
 Radium, 5969-5970  
   Cure for Early Cancer and Some Other  
   Growths, 5969, 1165  
   Use of Radon, 5969-5970  
 Rhubarb of Pharmacy, 6101  
 Roentgen (X-) Rays  
   Valuable in Diagnosis, 6160

Used to Cure Skin Affections, Nervous  
 Diseases, and Malignant Growths, 6162,  
 1165  
 Sal Ammoniac, 6331  
 Salicylic Acid, 6332  
   Ingredient of Aspirin and Salol, 455, 6339  
 Salol, 6339  
 Salt (Chloride of Sodium), 6342  
 Salts, 6347  
   Epsom Salt, 2282-2283  
   Sulphate of Magnesium, 4216  
   Glauber's Salt, 2842  
   Sodium Sulphate, 6676  
   Seidlitz Powders, 6484  
   Rochelle Salts and Bicarbonate of Soda,  
   6484, 6675  
 Sassafras, 6396  
 Scammony, 6409  
 Senna (from Cassia), 1230  
 Smelling Salts, 6646  
 Snakeroot Medicines, 6662  
 Sodium Bicarbonate (Soda), 6675  
 Squill, 6788  
 Stramonium, 6873-6874  
 Strychnine, 6880  
   Obtained from Nux Vomica, 5126  
 Sulphonal, a Sedative, 6478  
 Sulphur, 6916  
 Tartar Emetic, 7025  
 Thymol (from Thyme), 7165  
 Tragacanth, 7236  
 Turpentine, 7321  
   Rectified Spirits of Turpentine the Phar-  
   macal Product, 7321-7322  
 Ultra-Violet Rays, 7346-7348  
   [See *Heliotherapy* and *Rickets*, above.]  
 Vaseline, 7465  
 Veronal, a Sedative, 6478  
 Wintergreen, Oil of, 7800  
 Witch-Hazel (Hamamelis), 7816  
 Wormwood, 7892  
**Therapeutic Value of Foods**  
 [See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this  
 GUIDE.]

## Dentistry

**Surgical Dentistry**, 1903  
   Emphasis on Saving the Teeth, 1903  
**Oral Surgery**, 1903  
**Painless Dentistry**, 1904  
   [See, also, *Anesthetics*, below.]  
**Prosthetics**, 1904  
   How Artificial Teeth Are Made, 1904  
   Use of Bridge Work, 1904  
**Work of Dental Mechanics**, 1904

**Orthodontics**, 1904, 2125  
**Preventive and Children's Dentistry**, 1904-  
 1905  
   Importance of Cleaning the Teeth, 1904,  
   7054, 7056  
   Examination and Care of Children's Teeth,  
   1904-1905, 2125  
**Antiquity and History**, 1905  
**Dental Schools**, 1905

## Surgery

**Three Great Modern Discoveries**, 6942  
**What Surgery Owes to Anesthetics**, 6942, 279-

**Pioneers in the Field of Anesthetics**  
 Sir Humphry Davy, 280, 1840  
 Horace Wells, 280

Crawford W. Long, 4100  
 W. T. G. Morton, 4666  
 Sir James Y. Simpson, 6615-6616, 1406  
**Types of Anesthesia, and Drugs**  
 General Anesthesia, 280  
     Use of Nitrous Oxide (Laughing Gas), 280, 5035  
     Use in Dentistry, 1904  
 Chloroform, 280  
     Compared with Ether, 1406  
     Why Dangerous, 1406  
 Ether, 280  
     Safer than Chloroform, 2304  
     Effects and After-Effects, 2304  
 Ethylene, 280, 6942  
     Medicinal Properties Made Known by Luckhardt and Carter, 2308  
     Advantages in Its Use, 2308, 280  
 Local Anesthesia, 280  
     Use in Dentistry, 1904  
     Infiltration Anesthesia, 1904  
     Conductive Anesthesia, or Nerve Block, 1904, 280  
     Cold-Freezing, 280  
     Intraspinal Anesthesia, 6942  
     Use of Cocaine, 1516  
     Use of Novocaine (Procaine), 5110-5111  
 Twilight Sleep, 280  
     Partial General Anesthesia, 280  
     Scopolamine and Morphine Injected Hypodermically, 280  
 General Statements as to Use of Anesthetics, 280  
**What Surgery Owes to Antiseptics**, 6942, 312  
     Definition of Antiseptic, 312  
     Distinction between Antiseptic and Disinfectant, 1964  
     Louis Pasteur's Discovery of the Bacterial Origin of Putrefaction, 6942, 5890  
     Sir Joseph Lister's Introduction of Antiseptic Surgery, 312, 6942, 4045  
         Use of Carbolic Acid, 312  
     Aseptic Surgery the Modern Method, 312, 6942  
         Use of Dakin's Fluid during the War, 312, 7893-7894  
         Sterilization Routine in the Modern Hospital, 312  
     Importance of the Discovery of Antiseptic Action, 312  
**What Surgery Owes to X-Rays**, 6942, 6160, 6162  
     Revelation of Hidden Fractures, Objects, and Conditions, 6942, 6160  
     Aid in Diagnosis, 6942, 6160  
     Avoidance of Unnecessary Operations, 6942  
     Use in War Surgery, 6162  
**The Scope of Modern Surgery**, 6943  
     Treatment of Abdominal Diseases, Brain Diseases, and Eye Defects, 6943  
 Blood Transfusion  
     Direct, or Immediate, and Indirect, 800  
     Necessity of Using Blood of the Right Type, 800

Skin-Grafting, 6635  
 Transplanting of Organs and Tissues, 6943  
     Work of Dr. Alexis Carrel, 1216  
 Gland Transplanting  
     Work of Dr. Eugen Steinach, 2830  
 Amputation, 266-267  
     Artificial Limbs, 433  
         Mechanism and Attachment of Legs and Arms, 433  
     Replacement of Other Body Parts, 433-434  
**First Aid to the Injured**, 2436-2439  
 Effects of Accidents  
     Shock, 2436  
         Importance of Heat, Stimulants, and Calmness, 2436  
     Unconsciousness, 2438  
         First Aid in Fainting, 2438-2439, 2361  
         Use of Smelling Salts, 6646  
         How to Carry an Unconscious Person, 2439  
 Asphyxiation, 454  
     Causes, 455  
     Treatment, 2439  
         [See *Drowning*, below.]  
 Bleeding, or Hemorrhage. [See *Wounds*, below.]  
 Burns and Scalds, 1036  
     Classed as First, Second, or Third Degree, 1036, 2438  
     First-Aid Treatment, 1036, 2438  
     Preparations, 1036, 2438  
         How to Prepare and Apply Ambrine, 2438  
         Carron Oil, 1036  
         Vaseline, 7465, 1036  
         Others, 2438  
     Importance of Using Sterile Preparations, 1036  
     Distinction between Acid and Alkali Burns, 1036  
 Dislocations, 2438, 3693  
 Drowning, 2038-2039  
     Effects from Immersion in Water, 2038  
     Methods of Rescue, 2038-2039  
     First Aid in Reviving  
         The Schaefer, or Prone-Pressure, Method, 2039  
         Importance of Draining the Water, 2039  
         Use of the Pulmotor, 2039, 5878-5879  
 Electrocution, Accidental, 2191  
     Emergency Directions, 2191  
     Lightning Shock Similarly Treated, 4003  
 Fractures, 2567  
     Bones Most Easily Fractured, 2437  
     How to Make a First-Aid Splint, 2437-2438  
 Nosebleed, 2437  
 Snake Bite, 6661  
     Six Forms of First Aid, 6661  
 Sprains, or Strains, 6778  
     Injury to Ligaments, 3992-3993  
     Frequency of Ankle Sprains, 6778  
     Method of Treatment Used at Pennsylvania University, 6778

Ordinary First-Aid Measures, 2437  
 Sunstroke, 6929  
 Heat Stroke  
     Importance of Cooling the Body, 6929  
     Hot-Weather Diet, 6929  
 Heat Exhaustion  
     Rest and Stimulation Important, 6929  
 Wounds, 7893-7894  
     Healing by First Intention, 7893  
     Healing by Secondary Intention, 7893  
         Granulation, 2908  
 How to Keep Wounds from Being Infected, 7893, 2436  
     Importance of Heat as a Germ Killer, 2436  
     Germicides for Abraded Surfaces, 2436  
         Iodine, 3502  
         Iodoform, 3502  
         Mercurochrome, 2436  
 Bleeding as a Disinfectant, 7893

Importance of Blood Clotting, 797, 789, 7893  
 How to Control Hemorrhage  
     Arterial Bleeding, 789, 7893  
     Venous and Capillary Bleeding, 789  
     Bleeding in Incised Wounds, 2436-2437  
         Use of Pressure and Styptics, 2437  
     Control of Bleeding by Finger, Bandage, or Tourniquet, 789, 2436, 7893, 7226  
     Use of Iodoform Gauze, 3502  
 Methods of Supporting the Injured, 2439  
     Support by One Person, 2437  
     The Fireman's Lift, 2437  
     Support by Two Bearers, 2438  
     Three Persons as Bearers, 2439  
 How to Make Bandages, 598-599  
 Accident Prevention, 15-16  
     Learn Safety; Avoid Sorrow (Color Plate), opposite 16

## Prevention of Diseases and Epidemics

### Some Basic Principles

Prevention of Germ Diseases, 1960  
 Causes and Prevention of Epidemics, 2279  
 Sanitary Science, 6374-6375  
 Public Hygiene, 3313-3314  
 Prevention of Dietetic Diseases, 2279, 1944, 3983-3985, 7549  
 Life Extension, 3980-3981  
 [See, also, *Hygiene*, in the Outline on *Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene*, in this GUIDE.]

### Agents and Methods of Prevention

Board of Health, 808  
 Warfare against Germs  
     Sunlight as a Germ Killer, 568  
     Ultra-Violet Rays Have Destroying Effect, 3996  
     Heat as a Germ Killer, 568  
     Sterilizing and Pasteurizing Milk, 4482  
     Pasteurized Milk and Tuberculosis, 7288  
     Why Water Becomes Contaminated, 7664  
     When It Should Be Boiled, 568  
     Preservation of Food by Canning, 2514  
     Killing Germs by Cookery, 1649  
     Cold as an Enemy of Germs  
     Electric Refrigeration, 6041  
     Dehydration, 1875  
     Disinfectants, 1964  
         Value of Disinfection in Checking Epidemics, 1964  
     Important Chemical Disinfectants  
         Corrosive Sublimate, or Bichloride of Mercury, 1964, 1699-1700  
         Carbolic Acid, or Phenol, 1964, 1191-1192  
         Chloride of Lime, or Bleaching Powder, 1964  
         Formaldehyde, 1964, 2542  
         Water Solution Called Formalin, 1964

Formacone Made from Solution, 2542  
 Potassium Permanganate, 1964  
 Fumigation, 2635  
 Fighting Carriers of Disease  
     The Common Fly, Carrier of Germs and Filth, 2499, 7340  
     Killing the Winter Fly, 2499-2500  
     Destroying Refuse, 2500  
     Catching Young Flies, 2501  
     Summary, 2501-2502  
     The Tsetse Fly, Carrier of African Sleeping Sickness, 7285-7286, 6642  
     The Typhus-Fever Louse ("Cootie"), 4137  
     Delousing Method, 7343  
     Disease-Bearing Mosquitoes, 4674-4675  
     Malaria Mosquito, 4676, 4236  
     Yellow-Fever Mosquito, 4676, 4677, 7932-7933  
     Fighting Mosquitoes in the Canal Zone, 4678, 5332  
     Work of Dr. Gorgas, 2875  
     Campaign Methods  
         A Community Campaign, 4678  
         Using Natural Enemies, 4678-4679  
         The Gambusia, 4679, 7985  
     Plague-Bearing Rats, 5999, 5641  
     How to Get Rid of Rats, 5999-6000  
     Germs Transmitted to Man by Fleas, 5641, 2468  
 Preventive Inoculation, 3457  
     Methods, 3457  
     Hypodermic Injection, 3321  
 Vaccination, 7439  
     To Prevent Smallpox, 6645  
     To Prevent Typhoid, 7341  
     Pasteur Treatment for Hydrophobia, 3308-3309  
 Prevention of Diphtheria  
     Susceptibility Determined by the Schick Test, 1954-1955



Injection of Toxin-Antitoxin, 1955  
 Principles of Immunity, 3369  
**Quarantine and Isolation**  
 International Quarantine, 5903  
 Bill of Health, 739  
 Clean and Foul Bill, 5903  
 State and Community Quarantine, 5903  
 Household Quarantine, 5903-5904  
 Quarantine of Plants and Animals, 5904  
 As in the Control of Foot and Mouth Disease, 2521-2522  
**Safeguarding Water Supplies**  
 City Water Works, 7676  
 Maintaining Purity of Water, 7678-7679  
 Filtration, 2419  
 Aqueducts, 335-337  
 Reservoirs, 6065

Artesian Wells, 424  
**Sewage and Sewerage**, 6511-6514  
**Maintenance of Public Baths**  
 Open-Air Baths, 649  
 Public Bathhouses, 649-650  
**Government Regulation and Inspection of Food**  
 Pure-Food Laws, 5884  
 Inspection of Meat Products, 4365, 4368  
 Adulteration of Foods, 55-56  
**Medical Inspection in Schools**  
 Growth of the Movement in American Cities, 6425  
 Scope of Physical Examinations, 6425, 2124-2126  
**Activities of the Public-Health Nurse**  
 In Connection with Schools, 5116  
 Other Social-Service Work, 5116

### Progress through the Ages

**Development of Anatomical Knowledge from Earliest Times**, 273  
 Claudius Galen, Early Authority on Anatomy, 2662  
 Bartolommeo Eustachio, Discoverer of the Eustachian Tube, 2329, 2075  
 William Harvey, Discoverer of the Circulation of the Blood, 3068-3069  
**Progress in Medicine and Surgery**  
 Hippocrates, the Father of Medical Science, 3182  
 The Hippocratic Oath, 3183  
 Paracelsus, Who Laid the Foundation of Cure by Specific Remedies, 5356  
 Edward Jenner, Discoverer of Vaccination, 3655, 7439  
 Rudolph Virchow, Father of Modern Pathology, 7534  
 Sir James Y. Simpson, Discoverer of the Anesthetic Qualities of Chloroform, 6615-6616  
 Crawford W. Long, Who Introduced Ether into Surgery, 4100  
 W. T. G. Morton, Who Brought Ether into General Use, 4666  
 Developed in the Laboratory of Charles T. Jackson, 4666  
 Louis Pasteur, Father of Bacteriology, 5411-5412  
 Sir Joseph Lister, Father of Antiseptic Surgery, 4045  
 Robert Koch, Investigator in Bacteriology, 3811  
 [See, also, references to modern investigators, in *Diseases*, above.]  
**The Debt of Medical Science to Vivisection**, 7550  
**Societies and Foundations for Medical Research**  
 American Association for the Study and Prevention of Infant Mortality, 554  
 American Medical Association, 560

Children's Bureau of the Federal Office of Education  
 Research in Connection with Infant Mortality, 1376-1377  
 Life Extension Institute, 3981  
 Analysis of Physical Examinations, 3981  
 Mayo Clinic at Rochester, 4355  
 Achievements of William J. and Charles H. Mayo, 4355-4356  
 Affiliated with the University of Minnesota, 4513  
 Pasteur Institute, 5412  
 Production of Drug for African Sleeping Sickness, 6642  
 Rockefeller Foundation, 6154, 2129  
 Achievements in the Conquest of Yellow Fever, 7933  
 Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, 6154-6155, 2129  
 United States Public Health Service  
 Performs the Duties of a National Board of Health, 808  
 Work in Connection with Pellagra in the South, 5448  
 Has Charge of International Quarantine, 5903  
**Studies in Vital Statistics**, 7548  
 How Rates Are Determined, 7548-7549  
 Registration Areas in the United States, 7549  
 Birth Registration, 7549  
 Purpose of Statistics, 7549  
 Duration of Human Life, 3979  
**Scientific Care of the Sick**  
**Hospitals**  
 Organization and Equipment of the Modern Hospital, 3256  
 Internes, 3256  
 Nurses, 5116-5117  
 Classes of Hospitals, 3256  
 History of the Institution, 3256-3257  
 Sanitariums, 6374  
 Sanatoriums, 6374



## The Nature and Meaning of Music

- What Music Is, 4759
- How It Differs from the Other Arts, 4759
  - Symbols Must Be Translated into Sounds, 4759
- Music as Education and Culture
  - Classed as an Educational Subject by Pythagoras, 386
  - Importance in Ancient Greece, 2940, 4762
  - Musical Knowledge Necessary to a Broad Education, 4760
  - Value as Entertainment in School Life, 7051
  - In Singing Games, 2676-2677
- Music the Fourth Need of Man, 4759
  - Its Value as Expressed by Shakespeare, Carlyle, Addison, 4759
- Music as an Inspiration in War
  - Marseillaise, 4303, 4759
  - Songs of Tyrtaeus and the Spartan Victory, 4759-4760
  - Influence of the Welsh Bards, 619

## The Study and Appreciation of Music

- Ability to Appreciate Good Music an Objective, 4760
  - Understanding Essential to Creative Listening, 4774
  - Intelligent Listening as Important as Performance, 4760
- What a Musical Composition Reveals
  - Sounds of Nature Rarely Portrayed, as in Beethoven's Pastoral Symphony, 4774
  - Rossini's Overture to William Tell, 4774
  - Most Music Portrays the Mood, as Mendelssohn's Spring Song, 4774, 4391
  - Compositions Portraying Emotions, 4774
- Emotional Response not Enough
  - Pleasure to Be Derived from Intellectual Interest, 4774-4775
- Architectural Characteristics of Old Folks at Home, 4775
- The Basis for Intellectual Appreciation of Music
  - Importance of Cultivating the Habit of Active Listening, 4775
- Types of Musical Training, 4760
- Forms of Instruction
  - In Conservatories, 1624
  - Group Method in Schools, 4774
  - Voice Training
    - The Anatomical Mechanism of the Voice, 7559
    - Vibration of the Vocal Cords, 3882, 6619
    - Importance of Controlled Breathing, 6619, 7559

## A Course of Lessons

- Purpose and Scope of the Lessons, 4763
- Nature of Tones
  - A Blending of Sounds, 4763
  - Distinction between Music and Noise, 6694
  - Effect of Vibrations, 4763, 6694
- How Tones Differ, 7208
  - Intensity, 4764, 6692
  - Size of Vibrations Essential Factor, 4764
  - Terms Indicating Intensity: Fortissimo, Forte, Mezzo, Piano, Pianissimo, Mezzo Forte, Mezzo Piano, Crescendo, Decrescendo, Diminuendo, Sforzando, 4764
  - Quality, or Timbre, 4764, 6694,
  - Pitch, 4764, 6692, 6694
- The Tuning Fork, 7293
  - Duration, 4764
- A Lesson on the Staff
  - What a Staff Is, 4764
  - Notes, 4764
  - Treble and Bass Staves, 4764
  - Treble (G) Clef, 4765, 7258
  - Bass (F) Clef, 4765
  - Degrees of the Treble Clef or Staff, 4765
  - The Octave, 4765
- A Lesson on Notes and Rests
  - Duration Indicated by Form, 4765
  - Kinds of Notes, 4765
  - Kinds of Rests, 4766

**Measures and Time, 4766****Musical Accent**

Compared with Poetic Meter, 4766, 4421-4422

Divided Beats and Broken Measures, 4766

Ties and Slurs, 4767

**Ragtime**

Shifting of Accents, or Syncopation, 4767

Popularity of Jazz, 4767, 3645

Tempo, 4767-4768, 7092

The Metronome, 4427

Terms Denoting Tempo: Adagio, Allegretto, Allegro, Andante, Andantino, A Tempo, Larghetto, Largo, Lento, Moderato, Poco a Poco, Rallentando, Ritardo, 4768

**Rhythm, 6106**

In Dancing, 1818

In Poetry, 5680

Why the Drum Is an Ancient Instrument, 2040

Rhythm Elevated to a Science by Aristoxenus, 382

**A Lesson on the Major Scale, 4768, 6407**

Steps and Half-Steps, 4768

Keynote, or Tonic, 4768, 3769

The So-called Natural Key, 4768

The Scale of C on the Keyboard, 6694

Syllable Names: Do, Re, Mi, Fa, Sol, La, Ti, Do, 4768

Working out Other Scales, 4768-4769

Meaning and Use of Flats and Sharps, 4769

**How to Remember Scales, 4769**

Key Signatures for Scales Using Flats and Sharps, 4770

How to Recognize a Key from Its Key Signature, 4770

**The Chromatic Scale, 4770, 1417**

Syllable Names: Do, Di, Re, Ri, Mi, Fa, Fi, Sol, Si, La, Li, Ti, Do, 4771

**The Minor Scale, 4771****A Lesson on Harmony, 4772, 3047**

Principles of Harmonics

The Fundamental and Harmonic Tones, 3047

Intervals in the Octave, 4772

**Chords**

The Triad, Chord of Three Tones, 4772

Full Chord, Four Tones Combined, 4773

How Four-Part Harmony Is Developed, 4773

Three Primary Triads in a Key, 4773

**Musical Forms****Cantata, 1176**

Compared with Oratorio and Opera, 1176

Cantatas by Dudley Buck

The Golden Legend, The Light of Asia, King Olaf's Christmas, The Voyage of Columbus, 994-995, 1176

The Walrus and the Carpenter, by Percy E. Fletcher, 1176

Kenilworth Cantata, by Sir Arthur Sullivan, 6915

Queen Esther, The Rose Maiden, From Olivet to Calvary, 1176

**Carol**

The First Christmas Carol, 1205

A Famous Carol by Dinah M. Craik, 1206

**Chorus**

Sung by a Group of Voices, 1408

**Famous Choruses**

Pilgrim's Chorus from Tannhäuser, by Wagner, 1408, 5224, 7575

Soldiers' Chorus from Faust, by Gounod, 1408, 2881, 5216

Hallelujah Chorus from The Messiah, by Handel, 1408, 3034

How Choral Music Is Written, 1408

**Concerto**

Written for Solo Instrument with Orchestral Accompaniment, 1596

**Fugue**

Significance of Name, 2631

**Form**

Theme, or Subject, 2631

Counter-Subject, 2632

A Double Fugue, 2632

Influence of Bach, 563, 2632

**Hymns and Hymn Tunes**

Hebrew Origin of Christian Hymns, 3316

Psalms of the Bible, 5861, 3317

Songs of the Reformation, 3317

Hymns of Luther, 4159, 3317

Hymns of Milton and Taylor, 3317

Isaac Watts as a Hymn-Writer, 7683, 3317

Charles Wesley, 7710, 3317

American Hymn-Writers

Philip P. Bliss, 3317

Phillips Brooks, 976-977

Hezekiah Butterworth, 1051

Phoebe Cary, 1225

Fanny Crosby, 1755-1756

Charles M. Gabriel, 3317

Julia Ward Howe, 3267

Moody and Sankey, 4637

Ray Palmer, 3317

Harriet B. Stowe, 3317, 6871

John G. Whittier, 7754-7756

**Ten Famous Hymns**

Jesus, Lover of My Soul, by Charles Wesley, 3317, 7710

Rock of Ages, by A. M. Toplady, 3317, 7211-7212

Abide with Me, by Henry F. Lyte, 3317

Just As I Am, by Charlotte Elliott, 3318

Nearer, My God, to Thee, by Sarah F. Adams, 3318

Onward, Christian Soldiers, by Baring-Gould, 3318

Music by Sullivan, 6915  
 From Greenland's Icy Mountains, by  
 Reginald Heber, 3318, 3120  
 My Faith Looks up to Thee, by Ray  
 Palmer, 3318  
 Stand Up, Stand up for Jesus, by Dr.  
 George Duffield, 3318  
 Lead, Kindly Light, by John H. Newman,  
 3318, 4934-4935  
**Other Notable Hymns**  
 There Is a Land of Pure Delight, by  
 Watts, 3317, 7683  
 One Sweetly Solemn Thought, by Cary,  
 3317, 1225  
 Safe in the Arms of Jesus, by Crosby,  
 3317, 1755-1756  
 I Love to Steal Awhile Away, by Phoebe  
 H. Brown, 3317  
 Awake My Soul, by Philip Doddridge,  
 3317  
 A Mighty Fortress Is Our God, by Luther,  
 3317, 4159  
 Sun of My Soul, by John Keble, 3317, 5280  
 Come, Thou Fount of Every Blessing, by  
 Robert Robinson, 3317  
 Sunset and Evening Star, by Alfred Tenny-  
 son, 3317, 7105  
 How Happy Is the Pilgrim's Lot, by John  
 Wesley, 3317, 7708  
 Blest Be the Tie That Binds, by John  
 Fawcett, 3317  
 Oh, For a Closer Walk, by William Cow-  
 per, 1729  
**Special Sacred Music**  
 Ave Maria, 547  
 Recessional, by Kipling, 3797  
 Te Deum, 7053  
**Hymns of the Nations**  
 Influence of Patriotic Songs, 3316  
 Four Stages in the Development of National  
 Music, 3316  
**Accepted National Hymns**  
 Belgium, Brazil, Canada, Czechoslovakia,  
 Denmark, Greece, Holland, Italy, Japan,  
 Mexico, Norway, Poland, Spain, Swe-  
 den, Yugoslavia, 3316  
 France: The Marseillaise, 4303  
 Written by Rouget de Lisle, 4303  
 Germany: Wacht am Rhein, 7573  
 Words by Schneckenburger, 7573  
 Music by Karl Wilhelm, 7573  
 Great Britain: God Save the King, 2852  
 Probably Written by Henry Carey, 2852  
**Patriotic Songs of the United States**  
 America, 247  
 Words by Samuel F. Smith, 6651-6652  
 Battle Hymn of the Republic, 653  
 Words by Julia Ward Howe, 3267  
 Dixie, 1981  
 Hail Columbia, 3006  
 John Brown's Body, 3682  
 Star-Spangled Banner  
 How It Came to Be Written, 6812, 6813

The Author, Francis S. Key, 3769-3770  
 Air Composed by John Stafford Smith,  
 6812  
 Yankee Doodle, 7928-7929  
 Words by Richard Schuckburgh, 7929  
**Intermezzo**, 3482  
 Famous Intermezzi by Beethoven, Schubert,  
 Mendelssohn, 3482  
 Intermezzo for Cavalleria Rusticana, 5216  
 Intermezzo by Richard Strauss, 6876  
**Opera**. [See section below.]  
**Oratorio**, 5236  
 Dignified Character, 5236  
 First Produced in 1600, 4762  
 Origin of Name, 5236  
 Famous Oratorios  
 Passion According to Saint Matthew  
 (Bach), 563, 5236  
 Messiah (Handel), 3034, 5236  
 Creation (Haydn), 3092, 5236  
 Elijah (Mendelssohn), 4391, 5236  
 Golden Legend (Sullivan), 6915, 5236  
**Sonata**  
 Movements, 6688  
 Beethoven's Moonlight Sonata, 686-688  
**Songs (Other Than Hymns)**  
 Folk Songs, 4762  
 Songs by Great Composers  
 How Art Thou, My Queen? by Brahms,  
 918  
 Erilking, Hark, Hark, the Lark, Serenade,  
 by Schubert, 6429  
 Songs of Schumann, 6430  
 Songs the World Loves  
 Annie Laurie  
 Words by Douglas, Music by Spottis-  
 wood, 294  
 Auld Lang Syne (Old Scottish Air), 504  
 Possibly Written by Burns, 1034  
 Drink to Me Only with Thine Eyes, by  
 Ben Jonson, 3697  
 Home, Sweet Home, by John Howard  
 Payne, 5423-5424  
 Silver Threads among the Gold, by Eben  
 Rexford, 6083  
 Songs by Stephen C. Foster  
 My Old Kentucky Home, Old Folks at  
 Home, O Susanna, Old Black Joe,  
 etc., 2550-2551  
 Songs by Thomas Moore  
 Believe Me If All Those Endearing  
 Young Charms, Last Rose of Summer,  
 Oft in the Stilly Night, The Harp  
 That Once through Tara's Halls,  
 4645, 3048, 3533  
 Sweet and Low, by Tennyson, 7106  
 The Lost Chord, by Sullivan and Procter,  
 6916, 5829  
 The Rosary, by Nevin and Rogers, 4906,  
 6201  
 Wearin' O' the Green, 3533  
 When the Swallows Homeward Fly, by  
 Abt, 12

**Symphony, a Sonata for the Orchestra**, 6984,  
6688  
Development by  
Beethoven, 686, 5238  
Berlioz, 718, 5238  
Haydn, 3092, 5238, 6984  
Liszt, 4046

Mendelssohn, 4391  
Mozart, 4730, 5238  
Schubert, 6429  
Strauss, 6876  
Till Eulenspiegel, 2315  
Tschaikovsky, 7285  
[See ORCHESTRA, 5238.]

## Operatic Forms

**Characteristics of Opera**, 5213-5214

**Grand Opera**, 5214

**Light Opera**

Opéra Comique, Opéra

Bouffe, Opéra Bouffa, 5214

Comic Opera, 5214

Gay's Beggar's Opera, 2707

As Written by Gilbert and Sullivan, 2807,  
6915

The Mikado, 4472

Reginald De Koven's Robin Hood, 1875,  
6149

Operetta

Blossom Time, The Student Prince, 5214

Balfe's Bohemian Girl, 578-579

Musical Comedy, 5214

Compositions of Victor Herbert, 3154

**Some Famous Grand Operas**

Aida, by Verdi, 7492-7493, 5214-5215

Barber of Seville, by Rossini, 6212, 5215

(La) Bohème, by Puccini, 5874, 5215-5216

Carmen, by Bizet, 778, 5216

Founded on Mérimée's Novel, 4410

Cavalleria Rusticana, by Mascagni, 4320,  
5216

Faust, by Gounod, 2881, 5216

Literary Background, 2383, 2853

(The) Flying Dutchman, by Wagner, 7575-  
7577, 5216-5217

Based on Heine's Version of a Legend,  
3127

Fra Diavolo, by Amber, 5217

Girl of the Golden West, by Puccini, 5874,  
5217-5218

Founded on a Play by Belasco, 690

(The) Huguenots, by Meyerbeer, 4450, 5218

Jewels of the Madonna, by Wolf-Ferrari,  
5218

Juggler of Notre-Dame, by Massenet, 4336-  
4337, 5218-5219

Based on a Novel by Anatole France,  
2589

Lohengrin, by Wagner, 7575-7577, 5219-  
5220

Lucia di Lammermoor, by Donizetti, 2010-  
2011, 5220

Based on Scott's Bride of Lammermoor,  
6450

Madame Butterfly, by Puccini, 5874, 5220

Based on a Novel by John L. Long, 4100

Manon, by Massenet, 4336-4337, 5220-5221

Based on the Novel of Prévost, 5220

Martha, by Flotow, 2485-2486, 5221

Mignon, by Ambroise Thomas, 5221

Based on Goethe's Wilhelm Meister, 2853-  
2854

Pagliacci, by Leoncavallo, 5221-5222

Parsifal, by Wagner, 7575-7577, 5401, 4511

Founded on the Legend of the Holy Grail,  
3203

Rigoletto, by Verdi, 7492-7493, 5222

Salome, by Richard Strauss, 6876, 5222

Founded on the Story of John The Bap-  
tist, 3691-3692

Book by Oscar Wilde, 7761-7762

Samson and Delilah, by Saint-Saëns, 6328,  
5222-5223

Founded on the Story of Samson, 6357

Tales of Hoffmann, by Offenbach, 5165,  
5223

Based on Three German Tales, 5223

Tannhäuser, by Wagner, 7575-7577, 5223-  
5224

Based on Stories of Competing Minne-  
singers, 4511

(La) Tosca, by Puccini, 5874, 5224

Based on a Drama by Sardou, 6387

(La) Traviata, by Verdi, 7492-7493, 5224

Based on Camille, by Dumas the Younger,  
1109, 2054

Tristan and Isolde, by Wagner, 7575-7577,  
5224-5225

(Il) Trovatore, by Verdi, 7492-7493, 5225

**Other Operas**

(The) Cid (Massenet), 1424, 4337

Cyrano de Bergerac (Damrosch), 1817, 6212

Don Giovanni (Mozart), 2011, 4731

Elektra (Strauss), 2167, 6876

Falstaff (Verdi), 2369, 6531, 6534, 7493

Figaro (Mozart), 665, 2414, 4731

Götterdämmerung (Wagner), 5013, 7576

Hänsel and Gretel (Humperdinck), 3287

Herodias (Massenet), 3163, 4337

Iphigénie en Aulide (Gluck), 2845, 3513

Iphigénie en Tauride (Gluck), 2845, 3513

Lady of the Lake (Rossini), 6212, 6449

Medea (Cherubini), 1344, 4372

Nero (Rubinstein), 4879, 6235

Oberon (Weber), 6534, 7695

Orfeo ed Euridice (Gluck), 2329, 2844, 5261

Otello (Rossini), 6212, 6535

Otello (Verdi), 7493

Paris and Helen (Gluck), 2845, 3128, 5371-  
5372

Romeo and Juliet (Gounod), 2881, 6536

Scarlet Letter (Damrosch), 1817, 3090, 6410

Siegfried (Wagner), 5013, 7576  
 Snow Maiden (Humperdinck), 3287  
 Thaïs (Massenet), 2589, 4337

Die Walküre (Wagner), 7443, 7576  
 Werther (Massenet), 2853, 4337  
 William Tell (Rossini), 6212, 7089-7090

### Musical Instruments

**Accordion**, 16  
 Relation to Concertina, 1596  
**Aeolian Harp**, 67  
**Bagpipe**, 572  
**Banjo**, 601  
 Relation to Guitar, 601  
**Bassoon**, 645-646, 5239  
**Bass Viol**, 646, 5239  
 Relation to Viol, 7532  
**Bugle**, 1008-1009  
 United States Army Bugle Calls, 1009  
 Relation to Trumpet, 7282  
**Calliope**, 1099  
**Chimes (Bells)**, or **Carillon**, 702  
 In Singing Tower, 6621  
**Clarinet**, 1454, 5239  
**Concertina**, 1596  
**Cornet**, 1693, 5239  
**Cymbals**, 5239  
**Drum**, 2040  
 Bass, or Turkish; Snare, or Side; Kettle-  
 drums, or Tympani, 2040, 5239  
**Dulcimer**, 2051  
**Fife**, 2412  
 Relation to Flute, 2497  
 Relation to Piccolo, 5602  
**Flageolet**, 2461  
 Relation to Flute, 2497  
 Relation to Piccolo, 5602  
**Flute**, 2497, 5239  
 Attributed to Euterpe, 2329  
 Also to Minerva, 4501  
**Guitar**, 2981-2982  
 Relation to Banjo, 601  
 Relation to Viol, 7532  
**Hand Organ**, 3036  
 Hurdy-Gurdy, 3036  
**Harmonica**  
 Franklin's Harmonica, 3046-3047  
 Mouth Organ, 3047  
**Harp**, Oldest Stringed Instrument  
 Invention by Jubal, 3048  
 Emblem of Ireland, 3048, 3533  
 Double (or David's) Harp, 3048-3049  
**Harpichord**, 3050  
 Relation to Piano, 5598  
**Horn**  
 French Valve Horn, Natural Horn, Hunter's  
 Horn, 3240-3241  
 Seven Members of the Horn Family, 3240  
**Jew's Harp**, 3676  
**Lute**, 4157-4158  
**Lyre**, 4164-4165  
 Myth of Mercury and Apollo, 4407  
 Symbol of Apollo, 4165  
 Longfellow's Story of the Lyre, 4164  
 Relation to the Mandolin, 4253

Relation to the Zither, 7976  
**Mandolin**  
 Relation to the Lute, 4253  
 Serenade for Mandolin in Don Jaun, 4254  
**Oboe**, 5140  
 Sometimes Called Hautboy, 5140  
**Ocarina**, 5146, 5148  
**Orchestra Bells**, 5239  
**Organ**  
 Parlor, or Reed, Organ, 5252  
 Pipe Organ, 5252-5258  
**Piano**, or **Pianoforte**, 5598, 5600-5601  
 Relation to the Dulcimer, 2051  
 Invented by Bartolommeo Cristofori, 5598  
 Relation to the Harpsichord, 3050, 5598  
 Contributions of Hawkins and Chickering,  
 5598, 5600  
**Piccolo**, 5602  
 Relation to the Flute, 2497  
 Organ Stop also Called Piccolo, 5602  
**Saxophone**, 6407  
 Popularity in Jazz Music, 6407, 4767  
**Tambourine**, 7011  
**Theremin**, 7142-7143  
**Triangle**, 5239  
**Trombone**, 7274  
 Relation to Trumpet, 7274, 7282  
**Trumpet**, 7282  
 Relation to Bugle, 7282, 1008  
 Relation to Trombone, 7274  
 Relation to Cornet, 7282  
**Tuba**, 5239  
**Ukulele**, 7346  
**Viol**, 7532  
**Violin**  
 Importance, 7532  
 Mechanism, 7532-7533  
 Famous Violin-Makers  
 Amati, 241, 7533  
 Guarneri, 7533  
 Stradivarius, 6872, 7533  
**Violoncello**, or **Cello**, 7533, 5239  
**Xylophone**, 7917, 5239  
**Zither**, 7976  
**Instruments as Played in Groups**  
**Band**, 597  
 Distinguished from Orchestra, 5237  
 Fife and Drum Corps, 598  
 The Spirit of '76, 2412  
 Brass Band, 598  
 Military Band, 598  
 Patrick S. Gilmore, 598  
 John Philip Sousa, 598, 6696  
**Orchestra**  
 Various Applications of the Term, 5237  
 A Page of Orchestral Instruments, 5239  
 Chamber Music, 4775

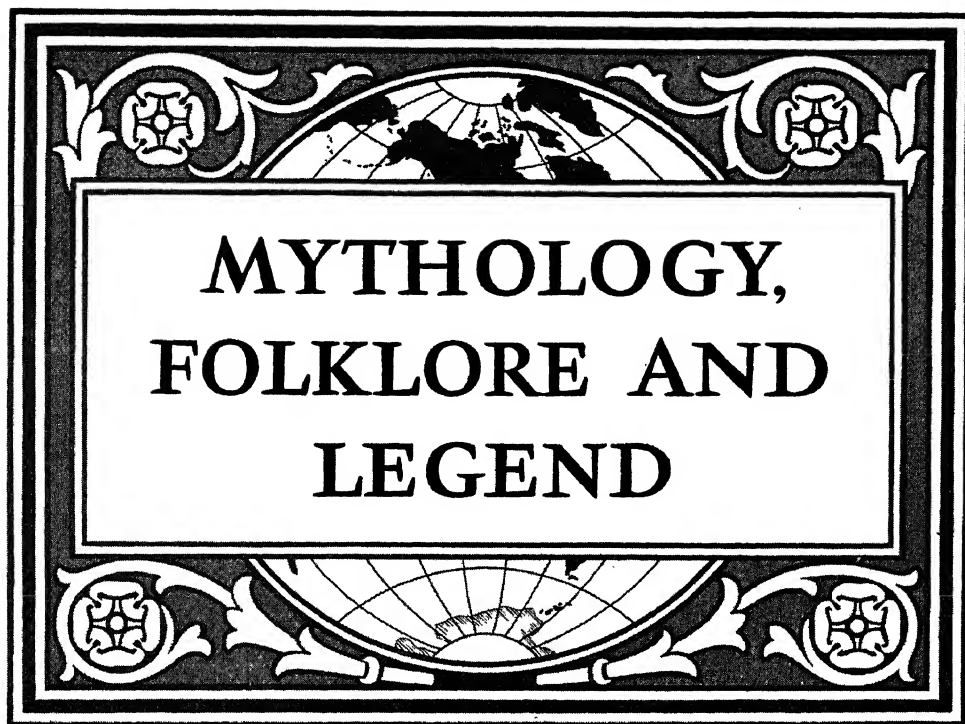
- History of the Orchestra, 5238
- The Symphony Orchestra, 5238
- How to Enjoy a Symphony Concert, 5238, 5240
- Recording Instruments**
- The Phonograph, 5572-5574
- Edison's Contribution, 5573, 2109

- The Graphophone of Bell and Tainter, 5573
- The Gramophone of Emile Berliner, 5573, 717-718
- The Electric Phonograph, 5573-5574
- Sound-Recording in Moving Pictures, 4720
- The Player Piano, 5600-5601
- Radio as a Transmitter of Music, 6695**

### Historical Review

- Music of Primitive Peoples, 4760**
- Accompaniment to Native Dances, 2040, 3406
- Ancient Egyptian Music**
- Influence on the Greeks, 4760
- Athor, Goddess of Music, 487
- Ancient Greece and Rome**
- A Means of Heightening the Effect of Greek Poetry, 2954, 3210, 4760, 5161, 5680
- Hymn to Apollo, only Known Example of Pre-Christian Music, 4762
- Use of the Lyre, 4165
- Romans Introduced Trumpet and Tuba, 4762
- Invented a Crude Organ, 4762
- Deities of Music**
- Apollo, 318
- Midas as Judge between Apollo and Pan, 4469-4770
- Calliope, 1099, 4753
- Euterpe, 2329, 4753
- Orpheus, 5261
- Polyhymnia, 4753
- Terpsichore, 7113, 4753
- Rise of Sacred Music, 4762**
- Psalms of David, 1836, 5861
- Song of Deborah, 1853-1854, 3122
- Early Christian Music, 4762
- Gregorian Chant, 4762
- Beginning of Harmony and Invention of the Staff, 4762
- Contribution of Guido of Arezzo, 2978
- Rise of Folk Music, 4762**
- Bards, 619
- Mastersingers, 4338
- Hans Sachs, 6293
- Minnesingers, 4511

- Minstrels, 4523, 2267
- Blondel, 796
- Skalds, 6630, 5082
- Troubadours, 7276, 2613
- Trouvères, 7277, 2613
- Growth Toward Modernism**
- Development of Counterpoint by the Dutch, 4762
- Popularity of the Madrigal, 4762
- Palestrina and His Influence, 4762, 5316-5317
- Peri, Writer of First Opera, 4762
- Monteverde, Founder of Modern Harmony, 3047
- The Modern Period, 4763**
- Germany's Contribution to the Symphony
- Beethoven, 686, 4763, 5238
- Haydn, 3092, 4763, 5238
- Mozart, 4731, 4763, 5238
- Weber, 7695
- Oratorio**
- Bach, 563, 4763
- Handel, 3034, 4763
- Haydn, 3092, 4763
- Fugue**
- Bach, 563, 4763
- Sonata**
- Beethoven, 686, 4763
- "The Moonlight Sonata," 687
- [See, also, above, *Musical Forms and Some Famous Grand Operas.*]
- The Other Nations, 4763
- [See *Musicians*, in the Outline on *Biography* in this GUIDE, for references to biographies of composers, players, and vocalists of the various countries.]



### Origin and Study of Mythology

Explanation of Natural Phenomena, 4787  
 Similarities in Myths of Different Peoples, 4788  
 Common Ancestry or Similar Problems Pro-  
 ducing Like Solutions, 4788

Comparison with Indian (Hindu) Mythol-  
 ogy, 3380  
 Object of the Study of Mythology, 4787  
 Reveals Old States of Civilization, 4787

### Classification of Myths

Explanatory Myths, 4787-4797  
 Creation of the World, 4788-4789  
 Greek and Roman Idea, 4788  
 Chaos, Father of Erebus, 2285  
 Erebus (Darkness), 2285  
 Father of  
 Charon, Boatman of the Styx, 1319  
 Somnus (Sleep), 6687  
 Gaea, or Terra (Mother Earth), 4788,  
 2732  
 Wife of Uranus, 7421  
 Mother of Titans, 7184  
 Nox (Night), 4788  
 Mother of  
 Somnus, 6687  
 Titans, 7184  
 Giant Sons and Daughters of  
 Uranus, 7420  
 Gaea, 4788  
 Cronus, 3319  
 Cyclopes, 1796  
 Forged Thunderbolts for Jupiter,  
 318

Made Helmet of Invisibility for  
 Pluto, 5664  
 In the Odyssey, 5162  
 Polyphemus, 5718  
 Hyperion, 3319  
 Iapetus, Father of Prometheus, 5839  
 Rhea, Goddess of Nature, 6084  
 Mother of  
 Ceres, 1291  
 Hades, 3000  
 Wife of Saturn, 7185  
 Cured Bacchus of Madness, 562  
 Saturn (Greek Kronos), 6398  
 Father of  
 Ceres, 1291  
 Chiron, the Learned Centaur,  
 1403  
 Jupiter, 3720  
 Overthrown by Jupiter, 3720, 4788,  
 7185  
 Imprisoned in Tartarus, 7184  
 Saturnalia, the Feast to Honor,  
 6398, 6399



Uranus (Heaven), 7420, 2732  
     Father of  
         Furies, 2645  
         Titans, 7184  
     Husband of Gaea, 4788  
 Norse Idea, 4789  
     Adhumbala, 4789  
     Bori, 4789  
     Odin, 5162  
     Vili, 4789  
     Ve, 4789  
     Yggdrasil, 7944  
         Abode of Hel or Hela, 3128  
         Norns or Fates, 5043  
         Niflheim at the Roots of, 5023  
     Ymir, 4789  
 Egyptian Idea  
     Re, 6005  
 Hindu Idea  
     Brahma, 916-917  
 Creation of Man, 4789  
 Greek and Roman Idea, 4789  
     The Story of Pandora, 4796-4797  
     Deucalion, 1924  
 Norse Idea, 4789  
     Odin Fashioned Man from an Ash (Ask)  
         and an Elm (Embla), 4789  
 Hindu Idea, Manu, 4270  
 Change of Seasons, 4790  
 Greek and Roman:  
     The Underground Queen, 4790-4792  
     Adonis, 51  
 Norse  
     The Death of Balder, 4792-4793  
 Heat and Drought, The Story of Phaethon,  
     4793-4795  
**Sin and Punishment**, 4789-4790  
 Greek and Roman, 4789  
     Pandora's Locked Box, 4796-4797  
 Flood Myth and Preservation of  
     Deucalion and Pyrrha, 4789, 1924, 1887  
     Python Remained after the Flood, 5899  
**Typical Myths Involving Punishment**  
     Actaeon, 23  
     Aesculapius, 68-69  
     Ajax the Lesser, 154  
     Andromeda, 279  
     Arachne, 343  
         The Arachne Myth, 6764  
     Atlas, 491  
     Bellerophon, 705  
     Cassandra, 1229  
     Circe, 1432  
     Daedalus and Icarus, 1804  
         Early Efforts to Fly, 113  
     Echo, 2094  
     Fates, 2378-2379  
         Atropos, 2378  
         Clotho, 2378  
         Lachesis, 2378  
     Furies, 2645  
         Alecto, 2645  
         Megaera, 2645

    Tisiphone, 2645  
     Galatea, 2661  
     Harpies, 3050  
     Jason, 3640  
     Laocoön, 3873  
     Medea, 4371  
     Medusa, 4379  
     Midas, 4469-4470  
     Narcissus, 4808-4809  
     Nemesis, 4876  
     Niobe, 5033  
     Orion, 5259  
     Phaedra, 5530  
     Phaethon, 5530, 4793-4795  
     Polyphemus, 5718  
     Prometheus, 5839-5840  
     Pygmalion, 5891  
     Semele, 6487  
     Sisyphus, 6628  
     Tantalus, 7016  
         Origin of Word Tantalize, 7016  
 Norse, 4790  
     Lok, or Loki, 4790, 4090  
     Ragnarök (Twilight of the Gods), 4790  
 Egyptian  
     Set, the God of Evil, 5265  
**Esthetic Myths, Romantic and Historic**, 4797  
**Typical Greek and Roman**  
     Alcestis, 192  
     Andromache, 279  
     Antigone, 310  
     Arethusa, 372  
     Argonauts, 379  
     Ariadne, 380  
     Atalanta, 478, 4798-4799  
         Atalanta's Race, 4798  
     Baucis and Philemon, 653  
     Cadmus, 1065  
     Calypso, 1101  
     Castor and Pollux, 1233  
     Daphne, 1826  
     Egeria, 2135  
     Endymion, 2234  
     Europa, 2316  
     Eurydice, 2329, 5261  
     Ganymede, 2681  
     Hercules, 3156-3157  
         The Twelve Labors, 3156  
     Hero, 3163  
     Iphigenia, 3513  
     Oedipus, 5165  
     Orestes and Electra, 2167, 5251-5252  
     Pylades, 5252  
     Orpheus, 5261  
     Penelope, 5457  
     Perseus, 5493-5494  
     Pomona, 5719  
     Psyche, 5861-5862  
     Scylla, 6463  
     Theseus, 7147  
     Ulysses 7348  
 Norse, 4797  
     Fenris Wolf, 4797-4798

## The Gods

[The names in parentheses are the Greek counterparts of Roman names.]

### Greek and Roman, 4790

Major Gods Whose Home Was Olympus, 5197

Aphrodite, Greek Counterpart of Venus. [See below.]

Awarded the Apple of Discord by Paris, 5371

Apollo, God of Light, 318

Brother and Twin of Diana, 1933

Husband of Clymene, 4793-4794

Father of

Aesculapius, 68

Phaethon, 5530

Identified with Hyperion, 3319

Granted the Sibyl the Power of Prophecy, 6591

Killed

Cyclopes, 1796

Python, 5899

Loved

Calliope, 1099

Cassandra, 1229

Daphne, 1826

Punished Midas, 4469

Tricked Diana into Killing Orion, 5259-5260.

Oracle of Apollo at Delphi, 1885, 5231

Laurel Sacred to Apollo, 3893

Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165

Ares, Greek Counterpart of Mars. [See below.]

Artemis, Greek Counterpart of Diana. [See below.]

Athene, or Pallas Athene, Greek Counterpart of Minerva. [See below.]

Angered When Paris Awarded the Golden Apple, 5371

Athenaeum Temple Dedicated to Athene, 479

Palladium a Statue of Pallas Athene, 5317

Statue in Temple of Nike Apteros, 5028

Diana (Artemis), Goddess of the Hunt, 1933-1934

Identified with Egyptian Isis, 1933, 3564

Twin Sister of Apollo, 318

Attended by

Arethusa, 372

Echo, 2094

Hounds, 1933

Loved Orion, 5259-5260

Punished Iphigenia, 3513

Succeeded Luna as Moon Goddess, 4154

Temple to Diana Built by the Amazons in Ephesus, 242, 2277

One of the Seven Wonders of the World, 6508-6509

Symbols of Diana

Bow and Arrow, 1933

Crescent, 1933

Quiver, 1933

Hephaestus, Greek Counterpart of Vulcan. [See below.]

Hera, Greek Counterpart of Juno. [See below.]

Attended by Iris, 3532

Angered When Paris Awarded the Golden Apple, 5371

Cruelty to Hercules, 3156

Jealous of Io, 3501

Hermes, Greek Counterpart of Mercury. [See below.]

Mother of Pan

Rescued

Io from the Hundred-Eyed Argus, 3501

Ulysses from Calypso, 1101

Ulysses from the Circe, 1432

Juno (Hera), Queen of the Gods, 3720

Wife of Jupiter, 3720

Mother of Vulcan, 7571

Set the Argus to Guard Io, 380

Part in the Trojan War, 7278-7280

Cuckoo and Goose Sacred to Juno, 3720

Jupiter (Zeus), King of the Gods, 3720

Son of Saturn, 7184

Dethroned Saturn and Ruled the Universe, 7184

Husband of Juno, 3720

Father of

Apollo, 318

Bacchus, 562

Diana, 1933

The Three Fates, 3120, 2378-2379

Hebe, 3120

Helen of Troy, 3128

Mars, 4303

Minerva, 4501

Tantalus, 7016

Vulcan, 7571

Hurled Lightning at Phaeton, 4795

Imprisoned the Titans in Tartarus, 7026

Sent Venus as a Wife to Vulcan, 7490

Fell in Love with Semele, 6487

Visited Baucis and Philemon, 653, 6864-6866

Aegis, Jupiter's Shield, 67

Symbols of Jupiter

Eagle, 3720

Thunderbolts, 3720

Mars (Ares), the God of War, 4303

Son of Jupiter, 3720

Brother of Eris, 2289

Father of

Cupid, 1785

Romulus and Remus, 6181-6182

Love Affair with Venus, 7488

Released Death Whom Sisyphus Had Bound, 6628

Temple to Mars Built by Amazons in Ephesus, 242

Symbols of Mars  
 Shield, 4303  
 Spear, 4303  
 Mercury (Hermes), God of Commerce and Peace, Messenger of the Gods, 4407-4408  
 Son of Jupiter, 3720  
 Father of Pan, 5324  
 Helped Ceres to Recover Proserpina, 4792, 5848  
 Assisted Ulysses in His Wanderings Told in the Odyssey, 5165  
 Beheaded the Hundred-Eyed Argus, 380  
 Delivered Pandora to Epimetheus, 4796-4797, 5340  
 Presented Perseus with Winged Sandals, 5493  
 Returned Sisyphus to Hades, 6628  
 Visited Baucis and Philemon, 653, 6864-6866  
 Temple of Mercury Near Circus Maximus, 4408  
 Symbols of Mercury  
 Caduceus, a Magic Wand, 4408  
 Winged Staff and Sandals, 4408  
 Minerva (Athene or Athena), Goddess of Wisdom, Science, and Arts, 4501  
 Daughter of Jupiter, 3720  
 Gave Divine Assistance to Bellerophon in Killing the Monster Chimaera, 705  
 Orestes, 5252  
 Ulysses in Killing the Suitors of Penelope, 7349  
 Contest with Arachne, 343, 4795-4796  
 Disguised as Mentor, 4403  
 Lent Perseus the Magic Shield, 5493  
 Tamed Pegasus, 5442  
 Took Vengeance on Laocoön, 3873-3874  
 Wooden Horse Presented as an Offering to Minerva, 7831, 7279-7280  
 Part in the Trojan War, 7278-7280  
 Olive Tree Sacred to Minerva, 4501  
 Symbols of Minerva  
 Aegis Shield, 67  
 Guilt Helmet, 4501  
 Venus (Aphrodite) Goddess of Love and Beauty, 7488-7490  
 Wife of Vulcan, 7490  
 Mother of  
 Aeneas, 67  
 Cupid, 1785  
 The Three Graces, 2884  
 Fell in Love with Adonis, 51  
 Jealous of Psyche, 5861-5862  
 Punished Pygmalion, 5861-5862  
 Part in the Trojan War, 7278-7280  
 Temple to Venus Built in the Forum by Hadrian, 7490  
 Symbol of Venus  
 Magic Girdle, 7490  
 Vesta, Goddess of the Hearth, 7511  
 Vestalia, the Festival of Vesta, 7512

Vulcan (Hephaestus), God of Fire, 7571  
 Husband of Venus, 7490  
 Created  
 The Aegis Shield for Jupiter, 67  
 Pandora, the First Woman, 4796, 5340  
 Restored Orion's Sight, 5259  
 Zeus, Greek Counterpart of Jupiter. [See above.]  
 Father of  
 Castor and Pollux, 1233  
 Hercules, 3156  
 Minos, 4522  
 Muses, 4753  
 Perseus, 5492, 5493  
 The Three Graces, 2884  
 Fell in Love with Io, 3501  
 Minor Gods of Olympus  
 Aeolus, God of the Winds, 68  
 Father of Boreas, 865  
 Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5162  
 [Aeolus Built His Palace on the Aeolia Islands, not Olympus.]  
 Aesculapius, God of the Art of Healing, 68-69  
 Father of Hygeia, 3312  
 Symbol of Aesculapius  
 Knotted Staff Entwined with a Serpent, 69  
 Aurora (Eos), Goddess of the Dawn, 505, 4795  
 Mother of Boreas, 865  
 Boreas, North Wind, 865  
 Son of Aeolus, 68  
 Cupid (Eros), God of Love, 1785  
 Husband of Psyche, 5861-5862  
 Symbols of Cupid  
 Bow and Quiver, 1785  
 Heart, 1785  
 Eos, Greek Counterpart of Aurora. [See above.]  
 Eris, Goddess of Discord, 2289  
 Part in the Trojan War, 7278  
 Eros, Greek Counterpart of Cupid. [See above.]  
 Fates, Goddess of Destiny, 2378, 4792  
 Atropos Cut the Thread of Life, 2378  
 Clotho Spun the Thread of Life, 2378  
 Lachesis Traced the Fate of Man, 2378  
 Ganymede, Cupbearer of the Gods, 2681  
 Poured the Nectar, 4869  
 Succeeded Hebe, 3120  
 Graces, The Three, 2884  
 Aglaia (Brightness), 2884  
 Euphrosyne (Joy), 2284  
 Thalia (Bloom), 2884  
 Hebe, Goddess of Youth and Cupbearer of the Gods, 3120  
 Daughter of Jupiter, 3720  
 Wife of Hercules, 3157  
 Poured the Nectar, 4869  
 Succeeded as Cupbearer by Ganymede, 2681  
 Helios, God of the Sun, 3130

Son of Hyperion, 3319  
 Father of Circe, 1432  
 Hesperus or Vesper, Evening Star, 2334  
 Mother of Arethusa, 372  
 Hygeia, Goddess of Health, 3312  
 Snake, Symbol of Healing Power, 3312  
 Hymen, God of Marriage, 3315  
 Failed to Bless Nuptials of Orestes and Eurydice, 5261  
 Iris, Goddess of the Rainbow, 3532  
 Mnemosyne, Goddess of Memory, Mother of the Muses, 4753  
 Muses, Deities of Arts and Sciences, 4753  
 Children of Jupiter, 3720  
 Enchanted Pegasus, 5442  
 Identification of the Muses  
 Calliope, Muse of Epic Poetry, 1099, 4753  
 Clio, Muse of History, 4753  
 Erato, Muse of Love Poetry, 4753  
 Euterpe, Muse of Lyric Poetry, 2329, 4753  
 Melpomene, Muse of Tragedy, 4753  
 Polyhymnia, Muse of Sacred Poetry, 4753  
 Terpsichore, Muse of Dancing, 7113, 4753  
 Urania, Muse of Astronomy, 7420, 4753  
 Nemesis, Goddess of Vengeance, 4876  
 Nike Apteros, Goddess of Victory, 5028  
 Orion, Son of Neptune, a Mighty Hunter, 5259  
 Favored by Aurora, 505  
 Phosphorus or Lucifer, Morning Star, Same Planet as Evening Star, 2334  
 Vesper. [See above, *Hesperus*.]  
 Zephyrus, West Wind, Son of Aeolus, 68  
 Brother of Boreas, 865  
 Gods of the Earth  
 Bacchus (Dionysus), God of Wine, 562-563  
 Son of Semele, 6487  
 Father of the Three Graces, 2884  
 Attended by  
 Satyrs, 6399  
 Silenus, 6602  
 Cured of Madness by Rhea, 6084  
 Bacchanalia, or Dionysia, the Feasts to Honor Bacchus, 563  
 Ceres (Demeter), Goddess of Agriculture, 1291  
 Mother of Proserpina, 5848  
 Story Told in the Underground Queen, 4790-4792  
 Cerealia, the Festival to Honor Ceres, 1291  
 Demeter, Greek Counterpart of Ceres. [See above.]  
 Mother of Plutus, 5665  
 Dionysus, Greek Counterpart of Bacchus. [See above.]  
 Gave Midas the Golden Touch, 4469

Nymphs Guarded the Different Realms of Nature, 5127  
 Dryads, or Hamadryads, Wood Nymphs, 2041  
 Naiads Presided over Trees and Woods, 4801-4802  
 Oreads Presided over Hills and Mountains, 5127  
 Prominent Nymphs  
 Arethusa, 372  
 Coronis, Mother of Aesculapius, 68  
 Desire, Nymph Attending Venus, 7488  
 Echo, Nymph Attending Diana, 2094  
 Rejected by Narcissus, 4808-4809  
 Leiriope, Mother of Narcissus, 4808  
 Love, Nymph Attending Venus, 7488  
 Oenone, Wife of Paris, 5371  
 [See, also, under heading *Gods of the Waters, Nereids, Nymphs, Oceanids*. In this list see *Fauns, Pan, Satyr, Silenus*.]  
 Pan, God of Hunters, Fishermen, and Shepherds, 5324  
 One of the Satyrs, 6399  
 Son of Mercury, 4408  
 Danced with the Dryads, 2041  
 Musical Contest Judged by Midas, 4469  
 Satyr, a God of the Woods, 6399  
 Prominent Satyrs  
 Pan, 5324  
 Silenus, 6602  
 Silenus, Demigod and Satyr, 6602, 6399  
 In the Garden of Midas, 4469  
 Gods of the Underworld  
 Dis, One of the Greek Names for Pluto. [See below.]  
 Furies, Attendants of Proserpina, 2645  
 Alecto, 2645  
 Megæra, 2645  
 Tisiphone, 2645  
 Drove Orestes Insane, 5252  
 Sprang from the Blood of Uranus, 7421  
 Hades, One of the Greek Names for Pluto, 3000. [See below.]  
 Hecate, Goddess with Power of Wealth, Victory, Wisdom, Good Luck, Magic, and Witchcraft, 3123  
 Minos, a King of Crete, a Judge of the Underworld, 4522  
 Father of  
 Ariadne, 380  
 Phædra, 5530  
 Mors, God of Death, Brother of Somnus, 6687  
 Orcus, One of the Greek Names for Pluto. [See below.]  
 Pluto (Dis, Hades, Orcus), God of Riches, Ruler of the Lower World, 5664-5665  
 Angered That Aesculapius Could Restore Life, 69  
 Seized Proserpina, 4790-4792, 5848  
 Released Sisyphus from Hades, 6628

Lent Perseus the Helmet of Invisibility.  
5493  
Judges of Pluto Assigned Places in  
Elysium, 2218  
Pluto's Dog Cerberus, 1290  
Charmed by the Music of Orpheus, 5262  
Styx River Flowed through Realms of  
Pluto, 6884  
Symbol of Pluto  
Helmet of Invisibility, 5664  
Plutus, Greek God of Wealth, 5665  
Proserpina (Persephone), Goddess of  
Death and Spring, 5848  
Daughter of Ceres, 1291  
Wife of Pluto, 5665  
Attended by Furies, 2645  
Charmed by Music of Orpheus, 5262  
Rescued by Mercury, 4408  
Story Told in the Underground Queen,  
4790-4792  
Somnus, God of Sleep, 6687  
Morpheus, Protector of Slumbers, 4660-  
4661  
Gods of the Waters  
Alpheus, a River God, Courtied Arethusa,  
372  
Amphitrite, Wife of Neptune (Poseidon),  
4879  
Mother of Triton, 7271-7272  
Atlas, Bore the Heavens on His Shoulders,  
491  
Father of  
Hesperides, 3168  
Pleiades, 5658  
Turned to Stone (Atlas Mountains) by  
Head of Medusa, 491  
See Perseus, 5493  
Cepheissus, a River God  
Father of Narcissus, 4808  
Gorgons, Frightful Monsters, 2875  
Euryale, Sister of Medusa, 4379  
Medusa, 4379  
Head of Medusa  
On the Aegis (Shield), 67  
In a Constellation by the Star,  
Algol, 220  
Killed by Perseus, 5493  
Turned Atlas to Stone, 491  
Stheno, Sister of Medusa, 4379  
Graeae, Three Hideous Sisters with but  
One Eye and One Tooth, 5493  
Perseus Snatched the Eye, 5493  
Harpies, Ministers of Divine Vengeance,  
3050  
Neptune (Poseidon) God of the Waters,  
4877  
Attended by Nereids, 4879  
Father of  
Orion, 5259  
Polyphemus, 5718  
Commanded Aeolus to Release the  
Winds, 68  
Symbol of Neptune

Trident, 4878  
Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5162-5165  
Nereus, Minor Deity of the Sea, 4879  
Father of  
Galatea, 2661  
Nereids, 4879  
Nymphs, Guarded Realms of Nature, 5127  
Nereids, Sea Nymphs, 4879  
Offended by Andromeda, 279  
Reared Vulcan, 7571  
Oceanids, Ocean Nymphs, 5127  
Other Prominent Sea Nymphs  
Calypso, 1101  
Mentioned in Odyssey, 5165  
Daphne, 1826  
Turned into a Laurel, 3893  
Egeria, 2135  
Galatea, 2661  
Wife of Pygmalion, 5891  
Hesperides, 3168  
Agle, 3168  
Arethusa, 3168  
Erytheia, 3168  
Hesperia, 3168  
Nereus Knew Garden of, 4879  
Guarded Golden Apples, 3168  
Hesperis, Mother of Hesperides, 3168  
Hyades, Sisters of Pleiades, 5657-5658  
Perse, Mother of Circe, 1432  
Pleiades, 5657-5658  
Mentioned under Medusa, 4379  
Turned into Pigeons When Orion  
Pursued Them, 5260  
Thetis, 7148  
[See, also, under the heading *Gods of  
The Earth.*]  
Peneus, River God, Father of Daphne,  
1826  
Phorcys, Sea God, Father of Gorgons, 2875  
Medusa, 4379  
Poseidon, Greek Counterpart of Neptune.  
[See above.]  
Proteus, 5852  
Scylla, a Six-Headed Sea Monster, 6463  
Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165  
Sirens, 6626  
Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165  
Triton, 7271-7272  
Roman Gods not Known in Greece  
Fauns, Gods of the Woods and Herds, 2383  
Corresponds to Satyrs of Greece, 6399  
Flora, Goddess of Springtime and Flowers,  
2472  
Fortuna, Goddess of Chance, 2546  
Corresponds to Greek Tyche, 2546  
Janus, God of Beginnings, 3618  
January Named for, 3618  
Symbol of Janus  
Keys, 3616  
Lares and Penates, Deities of the Family  
and State, 3879  
Luna (Phoebe or Selene), Goddess of the  
Moon, 4154

- Pomona, Goddess of Fruit and Flowers, 5719  
 Quirinus, Third Highest God, 5923  
     Romulus Deified, 6182  
 Saturn, God of Agriculture, 6398  
     Identified with Greek God, Kronos, 1403  
 [See above, *Classification of Myths, Creation of the World.*]  
**Norse Gods, 4790**  
 Balder, God of the Sun and Summer, 576-577  
     Balder the Beautiful, 4792-4793  
     Death of Balder Plotted by Loki, 4090  
 Frey, God of Rain, Sunshine, and Fruitfulness, 2621  
 Freyja, Goddess of Love and Beauty, 2621  
     Sister of Frey, 2621  
 Frigga, Spirit of Life, 2623  
     Wife of Odin, 4792  
     Mother of Balder, 576  
 Heimdall, Watchman of the Gods, 3127, 4793  
 Hel, or Hela, Goddess of the Region of the Dead, 3128  
     Plead for Balder's Return, 4793  
     Story Told in Fenris Wolf, 4797  
 Hoder, God of Winter, Blind Brother of Balder, 4792-4793  
 Lok, or Loki, God of Strife and Evil, 4090  
     Enemy of Balder, 576-577, 4792-4793  
     Father of Hel, or Hela, 3128  
     Stole the Hair of Thor's Wife, 7155  
     Story Told in Fenris Wolf, 4797-4798  
 Njörd, Sea God, Father of Frey, 2621  
 Norns, Three Fates of the Norse, 5043  
     Skuld, the Future, 5043  
     Urd, the Past, 5043  
     Verdandi, the Present, 5043  
 Odin, Ruler of the Gods, and Personification of Universal Wisdom and Victory, 5162  
     Husband of Frigga, 2623  
     Father of  
         Balder, 576  
         Thor, 7155  
     Story Told in Fenris Wolf, 4797-4798  
     Valhalla, the Court of Odin, 7443  
 Thor, God of Thunder, War, and Agriculture, 7155  
     Son of Odin, 5162  
     Story Told in Fenris Wolf, 4797-4798  
 Tyr, God of Battles, 4790  
     Conquered Fenris Wolf, 4797-4798  
 Valkyrs, Warlike Divine Maidens, 7443  
     Chose the Bravest Military Heroes, 7443  
     Carried the Dead Heroes over the Bridge Bifröst, 7443  
     Woden, or Wodin [See *Odin.*]  
**Egyptian Gods**  
 Ammon, King of the Egyptian Gods, 261-262  
     Ram, Sacred to, 262  
 Anubis, 316  
     Assisted Osiris at the Final Judgment, 316, 5265  
 Apis, a Sacred Bull, 317

- Soul Inhabited by Osiris, 5265  
 Name Compounded with Osiris to Make Serapis, 6502  
 Athor, or Hathor, Goddess of Music, Dance, Joy, and Love, 487  
     Sent by Re to Destroy Mankind, 6005  
 Horus, Son of the Day, God of Silence, 6758  
     Son of  
         Isis, 3564  
         Osiris, 5265  
 Isis, Goddess of Agriculture, Magic, and Healing, 3564  
     Identified with Greek and Roman, Diana, 1933  
     Wife of Osiris, 5265  
     Led a Rebellion against Re, 6005  
     Temple on Island on Philae, 5546  
 Mut, Goddess of Womanhood, Wife of Ammon, 262  
 Osiris, King of the Egyptian Gods before Ammon, 5265  
     Assisted by Anubis, 316  
     Husband of Isis, 3564  
     Name Compounded with Apis to Make Serapis, 6502  
     Soul of Osiris Inhabited Apis, the Sacred Bull, 317  
     Succeeded by Ammon, 261  
 Re, or Ra, God of the Sun, 6005  
     Isis Led a Rebellion against Re, 6005  
 Serapis, 6502  
     Compound of  
         Osiris, 5265  
         Apis, 317  
     Never Recognized by True Egyptians, 6502  
 Set, God of Evil, Opposite of Osiris, 5265  
 Thoth, God of Wisdom, Author of Art, Science, Speech, and Letters, 7158  
**Hindu Gods**  
 Brahma, Supreme Being of Orthodox Hindus, 916  
     Destroyed by Siva, 6629, 917  
     Sarasvati, His Consort, 917  
 Sarasvati, Goddess of Eloquence, Consort of Brahma, 917  
 Siva, Third God of Hindu Triad, the Destroyer, 6629  
     Destroyed Brahma, 917  
 Vishnu, Second God of Hindu Triad, the Preserver, 7548  
     Reincarnations of Vishnu  
         Krishna, 7548  
         Rama, 7548  
         Ramayana, Epic Poem, 5992  
     Rode the Garuda, Half Bird, Half Man, 7548  
**Other Gods**  
 Astarte, Phoenician Goddess of Fruitfulness and Fertility, 463  
     Ishtar, or Ashtoreth, Assyria and Babylonian Counterpart of Astarte, 463

**Functions and Attributes of the Gods**

**Agriculture**

- Ceres (Roman), 1291, 4790-4792
- Demeter (Greek). [See CERES, 1291]
- Isis (Egyptian), 3564
- Minerva (Roman), 4501, 4796
- Osiris (Egyptian), 5265
- Saturn (Roman), 6398

**Art**

- Personified by Daedalus (Greek), 1804
- Siva (Hindu), 6629

**Arts**

- Athene (Greek). [See MINERVA, 4501]
- Minerva (Roman), 4501, 4796
- Muses (Greek and Roman), 4753

**Astronomy**

- Urania (Greek and Roman) Muse of, 7420, 4753

**Banquet**

- The Three Graces (Greek), 2884

**Beauty**

- Aphrodite (Greek). [See VENUS, 7488]
- Freyja (Norse), 2621
- Venus (Roman), 7488

**Beginnings**

- Janus (Roman), 3618

**Births**

- Juno (Roman), 3720

**Blacksmith**

- Vulcan (Roman), 7571

**Boxing**

- Pollux (Greek and Roman), 1233

**Carpentry**

- Daedalus (Greek), 1804

**Chance**

- Fortuna (Roman), 2546
- Tyche (Greek), See Fortuna, 2546

**Comedy**

- Thalia (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 4753

**Commerce**

- Mercury (Roman), 4407-4408

**Dance**

- Athor (Egyptian), 487
- The Three Graces (Greek), 2884
- Terpsichore (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 7113, 4753

**Darkness**

- Erebus (Greek), 2285

**Dawn**

- Aurora (Roman), 505, 4795

**Dead, Region of**

- Hades (Greek). [See PLUTO, 5664-5665]
- Hel, or Hela (Norse), 3128
- Persephone (Greek). [See PROSERPINA, 5848]
- Pluto (Roman), 5664-5665
- Proserpina (Roman), 5848
- Attended by Furies, 2645

**Death**

- Mors (Greek), Brother of Somnus, 6687
- Siva (Hindu), 6629

**Destiny**

- The Three Fates (Greek and Roman), 2378

**Discord**

- Eris (Greek), 2289

**Domestic Life**

- Vesta (Roman), 7511

**Eloquence**

- Sarasvati (Hindu), Mythical Consort of Brahma, 917

**Epic Poetry**

- Calliope (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 1099

**Evil**

- Lok, or Loki (Norse), 4090
- Set (Egyptian). [See OSIRIS, 5265]

**Family**

- Lares and Penates (Roman), 3879

**Fire**

- Vulcan (Roman), 7571

**Flowers**

- Flora (Roman), 2472
- Pomona (Roman), 5719
- Proserpina (Greek and Roman), 5848

**Fruit and Fruitfulness**

- Astarte (Phoenician), 463
- Frey (Norse), 2621
- Pomona (Roman), 5719

**Gates**

- Janus (Roman), Guardian of, 3618

**Good**

- Osiris (Egyptian), 5265

**Good Luck**

- Hecate (Greek), 3123
- [See Luck, below.]

**Graciousness**

- The Three Graces (Greek), 2884

**Healing**

- Aesculapius (Greek and Roman), 68-69
- Isis (Egyptian), 3564

**Health**

- Hygeia (Greek), 3312

**Hearth**

- Vesta (Roman), 7511

**Heaven**

- Hera (Greek). [See JUNO, 3720]
- Juno (Roman), 3720
- Jupiter (Roman), 3720
- Uranus (Greek), 7420-7421
- Zeus (Greek). [See JUPITER, 3720]

**Herds**

- Fauns (Roman), 2383

**Hills and Mountains**

- Oreads (Greek and Roman). [See NYMPHS, 5127]

**History**

- Clio (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 4753

**Home**

- Lares and Penates (Roman), 3879

**Horsemanship**

- Castor (Greek and Roman), 1233

**Hunting**

- Artemis (Greek). [See DIANA, 1933]
- Astarte (Phoenician), 463
- Diana (Roman), 1933

**Joy**

- Athor (Egyptian), 487

Euphrosyne (Greek), One of the Graces, 2884  
**Life**  
 Frigga (Norse), 2623  
**Light**  
 Apollo (Greek and Roman), 318  
**Love**  
 Aphrodite (Greek). [See VENUS, 7488]  
 Athor (Egyptian), 487  
 Cupid (Roman), 1785  
 Eros (Greek). [See CUPID, 1785]  
 Freyja (Norse), 2621  
 Venus (Roman), 7488  
**Love Poetry**  
 Erato (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 4753  
**Luck**  
 Fortuna (Roman), 2546  
 Tyche (Greek). [See FORTUNA, 2546]  
 [See *Good Luck*, above.]  
**Lytic Poetry**  
 Euterpe (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 2329  
**Magic**  
 Isis (Egyptian) Skilled in, 3564  
**Marriage**  
 Hymen (Greek), 3315  
 Juno (Roman), 3720  
**Medicine**  
 Aesculapius (Greek and Roman), 68-69  
**Memory**  
 Mnemsoyne (Greek and Roman) Mother of the Muses, 4753  
**Messenger**  
 Hermes (Greek). [See MERCURY, 4407-4408]  
 Mercury (Roman), 4407-4408  
**Moon**  
 Astarte (Phoenician), 463  
 Luna (Roman), 4154  
 Succeeded by Diana (Roman), 4154  
**Mother Earth**  
 Gaea, or Ge (Greek), Mother of the Cyclopes, 1796  
 Wife of Uranus, 7421  
 Terra (Roman), 7184  
**Music and Song**  
 Apollo (Greek and Roman), 318  
 Athor (Egyptian), 487  
**Nature**  
 Hecate (Greek) Had All Power of, 3123  
**Navigation**  
 Athene (Greek). [See MINERVA, 4501]  
 Minerva (Roman), 4501  
**New Year**  
 Janus (Roman), 3618  
**Night**  
 Nox (Greek), Mother of Somnus, 6687  
 Nyx (Greek), Sister of Erebus, 2285  
**North Wind**  
 Boreas (Greek and Roman), 865  
**Ocean and Seas**  
 Neptune (Roman), 4877-4878  
 Oceanids (Greek and Roman). [See NYMPHS, 5127]  
 Poseidon (Greek). [See NEPTUNE, 4877-4878]

[See, also, *Sea*.]  
**Peace**  
 Mercury (Roman), 4408  
**Poetry**  
 [See in this list, *Epic Poetry*, *Love Poetry*, *Lytic Poetry*, and *Sacred Poetry*.]  
**Political Progress**  
 Apollo (Greek and Roman), 318  
**Preservation of Life**  
 Vishnu (Egyptian), 7548  
**Productiveness**  
 Rhea (Greek and Roman), Mother of the Gods, 6084  
**Rain**  
 Frey (Norse), 2621  
**Rainbow**  
 Iris (Greek), Personification of, 3532  
**Riches**  
 Pluto (Roman), 5664-5665  
**Rivers, Springs, and Fountains**  
 Naiads, Nymphs (Greek and Roman), 4801-4802  
**Sacred Poetry**  
 Polyhymnia (Greek and Roman), Muse of, 4753  
**Science**  
 Athene (Greek). [See MINERVA, 4501]  
 Minerva (Roman), 4501  
**Sea**  
 Nereids (Greek and Roman) Sea Nymphs, 4879, 5127  
 Njord (Norse) Father of Frey, 2621  
 Proteus (Greek), 5852  
 [See, also, *Ocean*.]  
**Sleep**  
 Somnus (Greek), 6687  
 Morpheus (Greek) Protector of, 4660-4661, 6687  
**Social Matters**  
 The Three Graces (Greek), 2884  
**Soul**  
 Psyche (Greek), Typified Human Soul, 5861-5862  
 [See, also, CUPID, 1785.]  
**Sports (Manly)**  
 Castor and Pollux (Greek and Roman), 1233  
**Spring**  
 Flora (Roman), 2472  
 Persephone (Greek). [See PROSERPINA, 5848]  
 Proserpina (Roman), 5848, 4790-4792  
**Strife**  
 Lok, or Loki (Norse), 4090  
**Summer**  
 Balder (Norse), 576-577, 4792-4793  
**Sun**  
 Apollo (Greek and Roman), 4794  
 Balder (Norse), 576-577  
 Helios (Greek), Son of Hyperion, 3319  
 Hyperion (Greek), 3319  
 Re, or Ra (Egyptian), 6005  
**Sunshine**  
 Frey (Norse), 2621



**Thieves**

Mercury (Roman), 4408

**Thunder**

Jupiter (Roman), 3720

Thor (Norse), 7155, 4797

Zeus (Greek). [See JUPITER], 3720

**Time**

Saturn (Roman) Personified, 6398

**Tragedy**

Melpomene (Greek and Roman) Muse of, 4753

**Trees**

Dryads (Greek and Roman), 2041

**Underworld**

Hades (Greek), 3000. [See PLUTO, 5664]

Pluto (Roman), 5664

**Vengeance**

Harpies (Greek), 3050

Nemesis (Greek), 4876

**Victory**

Hecate (Greek), 3123

Nike Apteros (Greek), 5028

**War**

Ares (Greek). [See MARS, 4303]

Ares (Greek), See Mars, 4303

Mars (Roman), 4303

Thor (Norse), 7155

Tyr (Norse), 4790, 4798

**Wealth**

Hecate (Greek), 3123

Pluto (Roman), 5664-5665

Plutus (Greek), 5665

**West Wind**

Zephyrus (Greek), One of the Sons of Aeolus, 68

**Wickedness**

Lok, or Loki (Norse), 4090

Set (Egyptian). [See OSIRIS, 5265]

**Winds**

Aeolus (Greek), 68

[See, also, *North Wind*, *West Wind*.]

**Wine**

Bacchus (Roman), 562

Dionysus (Greek). [See BACCHUS, 562]

**Winter**

Hoder (Norse) Blind Brother of Balder, 4792-4793

**Wisdom**

Athene (Greek). [See MINERVA, 4501]

Metis (Roman) Wife of Jupiter, 3720

Minerva (Roman), 4501

Thoth (Egyptian), 7158

**Witchcraft**

Hecate (Greek), 3123

**Womanhood**

Hera (Greek). [See JUNO, 3720]

Juno (Roman), 3720

**Woodlands**

Fauns (Roman), 2383

Pan (Greek), 5324

Satyr (Greek), 6399

**Youth**

Hebe (Greek), 3120

**Food of the Gods**

Ambrosia, 246

Nectar, 4869

**Oracles**, Replies of the Gods to Inquiries, 5230-5231

**Identification of Other Mythological Characters**

**Greek and Roman**

Absyrtus, Brother of Medea, 4371

Achates, a Trojan Hero, 20

Follower of Aeneas, 20

Achaeus, Grandson of Hellen, Ancestor of Achaeans, 20

Achilles, a Greek Hero of the Trojan War, 20-21

Son of Peleus, 20

Thetis, 20, 7148

Invulnerable Except in the Heel, 21

Angered When Agamemnon Took Briseis, 21

Contest between Ajax and Ulysses, 154, 7348

Won by Ulysses, 7348

Part Taken in Trojan War, 7279-7280

Shot in the Heel and Killed by Paris. 21, 5372

Acis, Husband of Galatea, 2661

Acrisius, Grandfather of Perseus, 5494

Actaeon, Hunter and Worshiper of Diana, 23

Admetus, King of Thessaly, Husband of Alcestis, 192

Cattle of, Stolen by Mercury, 4407

Adonis, Beautiful Youth Loved by Venus, 51, 7488

Aegeus, Father of Theseus, 7147

Aegisthus, Lover of Agamemnon's Wife, Clytemnestra, 84, 1497

Killed by Orestes, 5252

Aeneas, a Trojan Hero, 67

Son of Anchises and Venus, 67

Came to the Cross-Roads of Elysium and Tartarus, 7026

Part in the Trojan War, 7280

Story of His Wanderings in the Aeneid, 67 By Vergil, 7494-7496

Aeson, King of Iolcus in Thessaly, Father of Jason, 3640

[See below, under *Jason*.]

Aethra, Mother of Theseus, 7147

Agamemnon, King of Mycenae and Argos, 84

Brother of Menelaus, 4391

Carried Cassandra to Greece, 1229

Husband of Clytemnestra, 1497

Father of

Electra, 2167

Iphigenia, 3513

Orestes, 5251

Part in the Trojan War, 7279

Agenor, Father of Cadmus, 1065

Ajax, the Greater, or Telamonian Ajax

Greek Hero of the Trojan War, 154

Son of Telamon, King of Cyprus, 154

Combat with Ulysses for Arms of Achilles, 154, 7348  
 Ajax, the Lesser, or the Locrian Ajax, Greek Hero of the Trojan War, 154  
 Rivalled Achilles in Swiftmess, 154  
 Alcestis, Wife of the Admetus King of Thessaly, 192  
 Alcmena, Mother of Hercules, 3156  
 Amazons, a Race of Warlike Women, 242  
 Defeated by Hercules, Seeking the Girdle of Hippolyta, 3157  
 Established the City Ephesus, 242, 2277  
 Amazon Race Exterminated by Theseus, 242  
 Amphion, King of Thebes, Husband of Niobe, 5033  
 Anchises, Father of Aeneas, 67  
 Loved by Venus, 7490  
 Andromache, Wife of Hector of Troy, 279  
 Andromeda, Favorite Heroine of Greek Mythology, 279  
 Rescued by Perseus, 5493-5494  
 Antigone, Attractive Heroine of Greek Mythology, 310  
 Daughter of Oedipus, 5165  
 Entombed Alive, 310  
 Story Told in Antigone by Sophocles, 310  
 Arachne, a Girl Skilled in Weaving, 343  
 Contest in Weaving with Minerva (Athene), 4795-4796  
 Turned into a Spider by Minerva, 343, 4796  
 Argonauts, Greek Heroes in Search of the Golden Fleece, 379  
 Argo, Ship of the Argonauts, 379  
 Built from Wood from Mount Pelion, 5448  
 Construction Directed by Minerva, 4501  
 Companions in the Search, 379  
 Castor, 379, 1233  
 Hercules, 379, 3156-3157  
 Jason, the Leader, 379, 3640  
 Aided by Medea, 4371  
 Nestor, 4883  
 Orpheus, 5261  
 Pollux. [See CASTOR AND POLLUX, 1233]  
 Theseus, 379, 7147  
 Golden Fleece, 2861  
 Ariadne, Daughter of Minos, King of Crete, 380  
 Sister of Phaedra, 5530  
 Aided Theseus to Kill the Minotaur, 4523, 7147  
 Dancing Place for Ariadne Built by Daedalus, 1804  
 Atalanta, Grecian Huntress, 478  
 Required Her Suitors to Defeat Her in a Race, 4798-4799  
 Hippomenes Won, 478, 4799  
 Atreus, Son of Pelops, 5449  
 Baucis and Philemon, 653, 6864-6866  
 Bellerophon, a Greek Hero, 705  
 Minerva Tamed Pegasus, 5442

Killed the Monster, Chimaera, 1383  
 Cadmus, a Greek Hero, 1065  
 Brother of Europa, 2316  
 Father of Semele, 6487  
 Founded Thebes, 7140  
 Sent to Rescue Europa, 1065  
 Calais, Son of Boreas, 865  
 Cassandra, the Unbelieved Prophetess, 1229  
 Daughter of Priam, 5809  
 Ill-treated by Ajax, 154  
 Prophesied about Paris, 5371  
 Cassiopeia, Mother of Andromeda, 279  
 Castor and Pollux, Twin Sons of Zeno and Leda, 1233  
 Sailed on the Argonautic Expedition, 379  
 Symbol of Castor and Pollux  
 Snow-White Steeds, 1233  
 Cephalus, Favored by Aurora, 505  
 Cepheus, King of Ethiopia, Father of Andromeda, 279  
 Charis, Wife of Vulcan, 7572  
 Charon, Ferryman of the Styx, 1319  
 Ferried Shades of the Dead across the Rivers  
 Acheron, 20  
 Styx, 6884  
 Obolus, a Coin Taken as a Fee, 1319  
 Charybdis, Monster, Neighbor of Scylla, 6463  
 Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165  
 Chloris, Mother of Nestor, 4883  
 Daughter of Niobe, 5933  
 Chronos, Father of Hades, 3000  
 Circe, a Beautiful Sorceress, 1432  
 Changed Men into Animals, 1432  
 Scylla into a Sea Monster, 6463  
 Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165  
 Warned Ulysses of the Sirens, 6626  
 Clymene, Wife of Apollo and Mother of Phaethon, 5530  
 Clytemnestra, Unfaithful Wife of Agamemnon, 1497, 84  
 Mother of  
 Electra, 2167  
 Orestes, 5251  
 Murdered  
 Agamemnon, 84  
 Cassandra, 1229  
 Killed by Orestes, 5252  
 Curetes, Priest of Rhea, 6084  
 Cybele, Phrygian Name for Rhea, 6084  
 Daedalus, Greek Sculptor, Architect, and Artisan, 1804  
 Danaë, Mother of Perseus, 5493  
 Daphne, Daughter of the River God Peneus, 1826  
 Changed into a Laurel Tree, 1826  
 Deianira, Wife of Hercules, 3157  
 Diomedes, King of Thrace, Horses Stolen by Hercules, 3156  
 Attempted to Take Statue from Palladium, 5317  
 Assisted by Ulysses, 7348

Doris, Mother of Galatea, 2661  
 Nereids, 4879  
 Electra, Greek Heroine, 2167  
 Sister of Orestes, 5252  
 Wife of Pylades, 2167  
 Avenged the Death of Her Father, Agamemnon, 2167, 5252  
 Killed Clytemnestra, 5252  
 Rescued Orestes, 5251  
 Endymion, Youth Who Had Eternal Slumber, 2234  
 Diana Kissed, 2234  
 Epaphus, Son of Io, Reputed Founder of Memphis, Egypt, 3501  
 Epimetheus, Brother of Prometheus, 5839  
 Husband of Pandora, 5340, 4796-4797  
 Eteocles, Son of Oedipus, 5165  
 Europa, Daughter of Phoenix, King of Phoenicia, 2316  
 Jupiter, as a White Bull, Carried Her to Crete, 2316  
 Mother of Minos, 4522  
 Sister of Cadmus, 1065  
 Sought by Cadmus, 1065  
 Eurydice, Wife of Orpheus, 2329, 5261-5262  
 Eurynome, Mother of the Three Graces, 2884  
 Eurystheus, King of Argos, Imposed Twelve Labors on Hercules, 3156-3157  
 Cerberus Brought to Eurystheus, 1291  
 Glaucé, Wife of Jason, 3640  
 Poisoned by Medea, 4371  
 Glaucus, King of Corinth, Father of Bellerophon, 705  
 Gordius, Tied the Gordian Knot, 2874  
 Father of Midas, 2874, 4469  
 Hector, a Trojan Hero, 3124  
 Son of Priam, 5809  
 Killed Patroclus, Friend of Achilles, 21, 3124  
 Part in Trojan War, 7279  
 Slain by Achilles, 21  
 Hecuba, 3124  
 Second Wife of Priam, 5809  
 Mother of  
 Cassandra, 1229  
 Paris, 5371  
 Helen of Troy, Fairest Woman of the Ancient World, 3128-3129  
 Daughter of Jupiter and Leda, 3128  
 Sister of Castor and Pollux, 1233  
 Wife of Menelaus, 4391  
 Cousin of Penelope, 5457  
 Abducted by Paris, 5372  
 Caused Trojan War, 7278-7280  
 Courted Unsuccessfully by Theseus, 7147  
 Hercules, Greek Hero, 3156-3157  
 Son of Zeus and Alcmene, 3156  
 Educated by Chiron, 1403  
 Husband of  
 Deianira, 3157  
 Hebe, 3120, 3157  
 Megara, 3156  
 Defeated the Amazons, 242

Sailed in the Argonautic Expedition, 379  
 Killed  
 Iphitus, 3157  
 Megara, 3156  
 Neleus, the Father of Nector, 4883  
 Accomplished the Twelve Labors  
 1. Killed the Nemean Lion, 3156  
 2. Slaughtered the Hydra, 3156, 3302  
 3. Captured the Golden-Horned Stag of Cerynea, 3156  
 4. Captured the Wild Boar of Erymanthus, 3156  
 5. Cleansed the Augean Stables, 498, 3156  
 6. Destroyed the Brazen-Clawed Birds of Lake Stymphalus, 3156  
 7. Captured the Mad Bull of Crete, 3156  
 8. Delivered the Fearful Steeds of Diomedes to Eurystheus, 3156  
 9. Obtained the Girdle of Hippolyta, Queen of the Amazons, 3157, 242  
 10. Captured the Oxen of Geryon, 3157  
 11. Procured the Golden Apples of the Hesperides, 3157, 3168  
 Aided by Nereus, 4879  
 12. Fetched Cerberus from the Underworld, 3157, 1290-1291  
 Condemned to Serve Omphale, Queen of Lydia, 3157  
 Tortured by Poisoned Robes, 3157  
 Zeus Returned His Soul to Abode of the Gods, 3157  
 Samson Is Called the Jewish Hercules, 6357  
 Hero, Priestess, 3163  
 Leander, Her Lover, Swam the Hellespont, 3163  
 Hippodamia, Wife of Pelops, 5449  
 Hippolytus, Spurned Love of Phaedra, 5530  
 Hippomenes, Won Atalanta, 478, 4799  
 Iasion, (Roman Jason), Father of Plutus, 5665  
 Icarus, Son of Daedalus, 1804  
 His Daughter Penelope Married Ulysses, 7348  
 Io, Daughter of the King of Argos, 3501  
 Guarded by Argus, 380  
 Iobates, King of Lycia, Commissioned Bellerophon to Kill the Chimaera, 1383  
 Iolaus, Assisted Hercules to Kill the Hydra, 3302  
 [See Color Plate, opposite 3156]  
 Iphigenia, Daughter of Agamemnon, 3513  
 Part in Trojan War, 7279  
 Iphitus, Friend of Hercules, 3157  
 Revenged by Nestor's Father, 4883  
 Ismene, Daughter of Oedipus, 5165  
 Ixion, Chained to a Wheel by Mercury (Hermes), 4408  
 Charmed by Music of Orpheus, 5262  
 Jason, Son of Aeson, Leader of Argonauts, 3640, 379

Husband of  
 Glaucē, 3640  
 Medea, 4371  
 Overthrew Pelias, the Usurper of His Throne, 3640  
 Revenged for Desertion of Medea, 3640  
 Sought the Golden Fleece with the Argonauts, 379, 2861  
 Jocasta, Queen of Thebes, Wife of Oedipus, 5165  
 Laestrygonēs, Cannibal Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5162  
 Laius, King of Thebes, Father of Oedipus, 5165  
 Laocoön, Priest of Neptune or Apollo, 3873  
 Part in Trojan War, 7279  
 Warned Trojans against Wooden Horse, 7831-7832  
 Revenged for Warning the Trojans, 3874  
 Laomedon, King of Troy, Father of Priam, 5809  
 Walls of His City Built by Neptune, 4878  
 Latona, Greek Name for Leto, Mother of Apollo and Diana, 1933  
 Leander, Lover of Hero, 3163  
 Swam Hellespont, 3163  
 Leda, Mother of Castor and Pollux, 1233  
 Helen of Troy, 3128  
 Leto, or Latona, Mother of Apollo, 318  
 Diana, 1933  
 Insulted by Niobe, 5033  
 Medea, a Sorceress, 4371  
 Wife of Jason, 3640  
 Aided the Argonauts, 379  
 Attempted to Poison Theseus, 7147  
 Obtained the Golden Fleece, 4371  
 Poisoned Her Rival Glaucē, 4371, 3640  
 Megara, First Wife of Hercules, 3156  
 Menelaus, King of Sparta, 4391-4392  
 Brother of Agamemnon, 84  
 Husband of Helen of Troy, 3128  
 Paris Stole Helen of Troy, 5372  
 Trojan War Resulted, 7278-7280  
 Memnon, King of the Ethiopians, 4387  
 Famous Colossi of Memnon, 4386  
 Mentor, the Goddess Minerva in Disguise, 4403  
 Guarded Ulysses' Son, Telemachus, 4403  
 Mermaid and Merman, Mythical Creatures of the Sea, 4410  
 Merope, One of the Pleiades, 5658  
 Loved by Orion, 5259  
 Metis, First Wife of Jupiter, 3720  
 Mother of Minerva, 4501  
 Midas, Phrygian King with the Golden Touch, 4469-4470  
 Son of Gordius, See Gordian Knot, 2874  
 Bathed in the River Pactolus in Lydia, 4162  
 Captured, Silenus, Tutor of Bacchus, 4469  
 Punished by Apollo, 4469-4470  
 Rewarded with Golden Touch by Bacchus, 4469

Narcissus, a Vain Youth, 4808-4809  
 Loved by Echo, 2094  
 Turned into a Flower, 4809  
 Nausicaä, Befriended Ulysses, See Odyssey, 5165  
 Neleus, King of Pylos, Father of Nestor, 4883  
 Related to Niobe, 5033  
 Neoptolemus, Son of Achilles, Killed Priam, 5810  
 Nestor, a Greek Hero and Hunter, 4883  
 Portrayed as Wisest of the Greek Council, 4883  
 Niobe, Daughter of Tantalus, 5033, 7016  
 Children Killed by Apollo, 318, 5033  
 Turned into Stone, 5033  
 Nyx, Sister of Erebus, Represented Night, 2285  
 Odysseus, Greek Form of Ulysses, 7348-7349  
 Oedipus, Unfortunate Hero of Greek Legend, 5165  
 Father of Antigone, 310  
 Guessed Riddle of the Sphinx, 6758  
 Oenopion, King of Chios, Angered by Orion, 5259  
 Oileus, King of Locris, Father of Ajax the Lesser, 154  
 Omphale, Queen of Lydia, Served by Hercules, 3157  
 Orestes, Son of Agamemnon and Clytemnestra, 5251-5252, 1497  
 Avenged the Death of His Father, 5252  
 Brother of  
 Electra, 2167  
 Iphigenia, 3513  
 Orithyia, Wife of Boreas, 865  
 Orpheus, Famous Musician and Poet, 5261-5262  
 Son of Calliope, 1099  
 Charmed Cerberus, 1290  
 Husband of Eurydice, 2329  
 Who Died, 2329, 5261  
 Marriage not Blessed by Hymen, 5261  
 Sailed with the Argonauts, 379  
 Sought Eurydice in the Underworld, 5262  
 Palamedes Urged Ulysses to Enter the Trojan War, 7348  
 Pandora, the First Woman Created, 5340  
 Box of Pandora, 4796-4797  
 Paris, Trojan Hero, 5371-5372  
 Son of Priam, 5809  
 Awarded the Apple of Discord, 329, 5371  
 Apple Thrown by Eris, 2289  
 Abducted Helen of Troy, 3129  
 Wife of Menelaus, 4391  
 [See, also, ULYSSES, 7348]  
 Caused the Trojan War, 7278  
 Killed Achilles, 21  
 Wounded by Philoctetes, 5372  
 Patroclus, Companion of Achilles, 21  
 Killed by Hector, 3124  
 Mourned by Achilles, 21  
 Part in Trojan War, 7279  
 Peleus, Father of Achilles, 20

Part in Trojan War, 7278  
 Pelias, Usurping Uncle of Jason, 3640  
 Killed by Medea, 4371  
 Sent Jason and the Argonauts for the Golden Fleece, 379, 2861  
 Pelops, Son of Tantalus, 5449, 7016  
 Peloponnesus Named for, 5449  
 Served as a Feast to the Gods, 5449, 7016  
 Penelope, Grecian Princess, 7348, 5457  
 Mentioned in Odyssey, 5165  
 Wife of Ulysses, 7348  
 Perseus, Grecian Hero, 5492, 5493-5494  
 Married Andromeda, 5493-5494  
 Rescued Andromeda, 279  
 Slew Medusa, 4379  
 Turned Atlas to Stone, 491  
 Phaedra, Daughter of Minos, 5530  
 Phaethon, Son of Apollo and Clymene, 5530  
 Rode the Chariot of the Sun for One Day, 4793-4795, 5530  
 Philemon. [See BAUCIS AND PHILEMON, 653]  
 Philoctetes, Friend of Hercules, 3157  
 Wounded Paris, 5372  
 Philyra, Mother of Chiron, 1403  
 Phoenix, Father of Europa, 2316  
 Pollux. [See CASTOR AND POLLUX, 1233]  
 Polybus, King of Corinth, Adopted Oedipus, 5165  
 Polynices, Brother of Antigone, 310  
 Son of Oedipus, 5165  
 Polyphemus, a Cyclops, 5718  
 Blinded by Ulysses, 5718. [See ODYSSEY, 5162-5163]  
 Rejected by Galatea, 2661  
 Polyxena, Daughter of Priam, 5809  
 Sought by Paris, 5372  
 Priam, King of Troy, 5809-5810  
 Husband of Hecuba, 3124  
 Father of  
 Cassandra, 1229  
 Hector, 3124  
 Paris, 5371  
 Part in the Trojan War, 5809-5810, 7278-7280  
 Prometheus, Grecian Hero, 5839-5840  
 Created Men from Clay, 5839  
 Father of Deucalion, 1924  
 Gave Fire to Man, 5839, 4789, 4796  
 Pandora Sent to Punish, 5340, 4796  
 Tortured Daily by a Vulture, 5840  
 Rescued by Hercules, 5840  
 Protesilaus, a Greek in the Trojan War, 5852  
 Psyche, Beautiful Princess, 5861-5862  
 Gods Jealous of Her Beauty, 5861  
 Attempted to Kill Her Lover Cupid, 5861, 1785  
 Made Immortal, 5862  
 Typifies the Soul, 5862  
 Pygmalion, Mythical Greek Sculpturer, 5891  
 Carved a Statue of Galatea, 5891  
 Fell in Love with Statue, 5891  
 The Statue Given Life, 5891  
 Pyrlades, Husband of Electra, 2167

Accompanied Orestes, 5252  
 Pyramus and Thisbe, Unfortunate Lovers, 5896  
 Pyrrha, Wife of Deucalion, 1924  
 Semele, Daughter of Cadmus, 6487  
 Mother of Bacchus, 562  
 Wife of Jupiter, 6487  
 Juno Jealous of, 6487  
 Burned to Death, 6487  
 Sibyl, a Prophetess, 6591  
 Sinon, Trojan Traitor Connected with the Wooden Horse, 7832  
 Sisyphus, Mythical King of Corinth, 6628  
 Bound Death, 1849  
 Charmed by Music of Orpheus, 5262  
 Condemned to Roll a Large Stone up Hill, 6628  
 Sphinx, Wicked Being of Peculiar Form, 6758  
 Riddle of the Sphinx, 6758  
 Guessed by Oedipus, 6758, 5165  
 Talos, Pupil of Daedalus, 1804  
 Tantalus, a Grecian King, 7016  
 Charmed by Music of Orestes, 5262  
 Served His Son Pelops to the Gods, 5449  
 Punishment for, 7016  
 Telamon, King of Cyprus, Father of Ajax the Greater, 154  
 Telemachus, Son of Ulysses, 7348  
 Penelope, 5457  
 In the Care of Mentor, 4403  
 Theseus, King of Athens, 7147  
 Killed the Minotaur, 4523  
 Aided by Ariadne, 380  
 Loved Phaedra, 5530  
 Sailed with the Argonauts, 379  
 Thisbe. [See PYRAMUS AND THISBE, 5896]  
 Thyestes, Son of Pelops, 5449  
 Titanides, Name of the Female Titans, 7184  
 Tithonus, Son of King Laomedon of Troy, Loved by Aurora, 505  
 Ulysses Greek Hero of the Trojan War, 7348-7349  
 Husband of Penelope, 5457  
 Blinded Polyphemus, 5718  
 Contest with Ajax, 154  
 Detained by Calypso, 1101  
 Escaped Spell of Circe, 1432  
 Stole the Palladium, 5317, 5319  
 Favorite Warrior of Minerva, 4501  
 Part in the Trojan War, 7278-7280  
 Suggested the Wooden Horse, 7831, 7348, 7279  
 Warned of the Sirens, 6626  
 Story of Wanderings Told in the Odyssey, 5162-5165  
 Vertumnus, Lover of Pomona, 5719  
 Zetes, Winged Warrior with the Argonauts, Son of Boreas, 865  
**Norse**  
 Alf, Stepfather of Sigurd, 6602  
 Angerbode, or Angurboda, 4797  
 Mother of Hel, or Hela, 3128  
 Wife of Lok, or Loki, 4797

Brunhilde, Loved by Sigurd, 6602  
 Mentioned in Nibelungenlied, 5013  
 Gerda, Wife of Frey, 2621  
 Gudrun, Wife of Sigurd, 6602  
 Gunnar, Brother of Sigurd's Wife, 6602  
 Gymer, Father of Frey's Wife, 2621  
 Hermod, the Nimble, 4793  
 Gnomes, Dwarfs Who Guarded Mines and Miners, 2847  
 Hiortis, Mother of Sigurd, 6602  
 Nanna, Wife of Balder, 4792, 4793  
 Nibelungs, Visited by Sigurd, 6602  
 Oder, Husband of Freyja, 2621  
 Regin, Tutor of Sigurd, 6602  
 Sif, Wife of Thor, 7155  
 Sigmundr, Father of Sigurd, 6602  
 Sigurd, Warrior and Hero of Volsunga Saga, 6602  
 Skuld, One of the Norse Fates or Norns, 5043  
 Means Future, 5043  
 Verdandi, One of the Norse Fates or Norns, 5043  
 Means Present, 5043  
 Urd, One of the Norse Fates or Norns, 5043  
 Means Past, 5043

#### Fabulous Creatures

Argus, Hundred-Eyed Monster, 380  
 Guarded Io, 3501  
 Killed by Mercury, 4408  
 Argus, the Dog of Ulysses, 7349  
 Calydonian Boar, Hunted by Castor and Pollux, 1233  
 Nestor, 4883  
 Centaur, Half Man, Half Horse, 1285  
 [See *Chiron*, *Nessus*, below.]  
 Cerberus, Pluto's Three-Headed Dog, 1290  
 Charmed by Calliope, 1099  
 Music of Orestes, 5261-5262  
 Guarded the Gates of the Underworld, 1290  
 Fetched from Hades by Hercules, 3157  
 Charybdis, Monster and Siren Who Dwelt near Scylla, 6463

Made Whirlpools of the Sea, 6463  
 Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165  
 Chimaera, Monster with Head of a Lion, Body of a Goat, and Tail of a Serpent, 1383  
 Killed by Bellerophon, 705  
 Chiron, Famous Learned Centaur, 1403  
 Lived on Pelion Mountain, 5448  
 Teacher of  
 Aesculapius, 69  
 Hercules, 3156  
 Fafnir, Dragon Destroyed by Sigurd, 6602  
 Gadfly, Tormenter of Io, 3501  
 Garuda, Half Bird, Half Man, Ridden by Vishnu, 7548  
 Hydra, Many-Headed Monster of Lake Lerna, 3302  
 Killed by Hercules in His Second Labor, 3156  
 Ladon, Sleepless Dragon Assisting Hesperides, 3168  
 Minotaur, 4523  
 Killed by Theseus, 7147  
 With the Aid of Ariadne, 380  
 Nessus, Centaur Whose Blood Poisoned Hercules, 3157  
 Pegasus, Winged Steed, 5442  
 Made from Blood of Medusa, 4379-4380, 5493  
 Ridden by Bellerophon, 705  
 Phoenix, Bird Sacred to Egyptians, 5571  
 Python, Serpent Born from Mud and Foul Water, 5899  
 Killed by Apollo, 318  
 Pythian Games Named for, 5898  
 Roc, Huge Bird Able to Carry an Elephant, 6150  
 Scylla, Six-Headed Sea Monster, 6463  
 Seized Men and Animals from Ships, 6463  
 Sleipnir, Odin's Eight-Footed Steed, 4793  
 Unicorn, Animal with Head and Body of a Horse, 7352  
 [See the heading *Gods of the Sea* for the Gorgons: Euryale, Medusa, and Stheno, the Harpies.]

#### Geography of Mythology and Legend

Abyla, African Pillar of Hercules, 3157  
 Acheron, a River of the Underworld, 40  
 Ferried by Charon, 1319  
 Aeaea, Home of Circe, 1432  
 Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5165  
 Aegean Sea, 66-67  
 Aeolian Islands, 68  
 Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5162  
 Aganippe, Fountain in Boeotia, 85  
 Alpheus, the River Diverted through Augean Stables, 498  
 Alpheus, the River Diverted through Augean Stables, 498  
 Fifth Labor of Hercules, 3156  
 Story of Its Course under Arethusa, 372  
 Arethusa, River Flowing from the Underworld, 4791

Argolis, Home of the Hydra, 3302  
 Part of Peloponnesus, 5449  
 Map of Arcadia, 348  
 Argos, the Kingdom of Agamemnon in Greece, 84  
 Asgard, Home of the Norse Gods, 439  
 Odin Ruled, 5162  
 Bilskirnir (Lightning), Thor's Palace in Asgard, 7155  
 Valhalla, Odin's Palace, 7443, 5162  
 Astolat, Home of Elaine, 2162, 3851  
 Athens, Capital of Attica, 480  
 Cecrops, the First Legendary King, 1265  
 Theseus, Famous Legendary King, 7147  
 Atlantis, 491  
 Atlas Mountains, in Northern Africa, 491  
 Atlas Turned to Stone, 491

**Avalon**, Famous in Legends of King Arthur, now Glastonbury, 2842  
**Avernus**, 547  
**Caerleon-on-Usk**, Court of King Arthur in Wales, 430  
**Calpe**, European Pillar of Hercules, 3157  
**Calydon**, a City of Aetolia, Visited by Castor and Pollux, 1233  
     Nestor, 4883  
**Chios**, Island off Asia Minor. See Orion, 5259  
**Colchis**, Location of the Golden Fleece, 2861  
     Destination of Argonauts, 379  
**Colonus**, a Village near Athens, Visited by Oedipus, 5165  
**Crete**, Island in the Aegean Sea, 1742  
     Home of Ariadne, 380  
     Minos, King of, 4522  
**Cyane**, River in Sicily, Story of the Underground Queen, 4790  
**Cythera**, Island in the Aegean Sea, near Birthplace of Venus, 7488  
**Dardanelles**, in Myth and Story, 1827  
**Delos**, One of the Cyclades, 1795  
     Birthplace of Apollo, 1795  
**Delphi**, 1885  
     Seat of the Oracle of Apollo, 1885  
**Ephesus**, City of the Amazons in Asia Minor, 242, 2277  
     Temple of Diana, 1933-1934, 2277  
     Ephyra, Ancient Corinth, 1676  
**Euxine (the Black Sea)**, Sailed by the Argonauts, 379  
**Hercules**, Pillars of (Strait of Gibraltar), 3157  
     Atlantis Near, 491  
**Fountain of Youth**, 2552  
**Hellespont**, now the Dardanelles, 3134, 1827, 3163  
**Hippocrene**, Sacred Fountain Made by Pegasus, 5442  
**Ilium**, Another Name for Troy, 7278  
**Iolcus**, a Town in Thessaly, Ruled by Jason, 3640  
     Aeson, Father of Jason, 379, 3640  
**Ismarus**, City in Thessaly, Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5162  
**Ithaca**, One of the Ionian Islands, 3503  
     Birthplace and Home of Ulysses, 7348  
     Mentioned in the Odyssey, 5162  
**Lake Lerna**, in Argolis, Home of the Hydra, 3302  
**Lake Stymphalus**, in Arcadia, Greece, Visited by Hercules, 3156  
**Lemnos**, an Island in the Aegean Sea, 67  
     Where Vulcan Landed When Put Out of Heaven, 7571  
**Lethe**, One of the Five Rivers of Hades, 3944  
**Locris**, near Arcadia, 348 (Map)  
     Kingdom of Oileus, Father of Ajax, 154  
**Lorelei**, 4110  
**Mount Caucasus**, in Caucasia, 1259  
     Where Prometheus Was Chained, 5840  
**Mount Helicon**, 3130  
     Hippocrene Fountain Made by Pegasus, 5442

    Now Called Palaeovouno, 3130  
**Mount Ida**, in Asia Minor near Troy. [See PARIS, 5371, 7278]  
**Mount Latmos**, Home of Endymion, 2234  
**Mount Oeta**, between Thessaly and Aetolia, Scene of Hercules' Funeral Pile, 3157  
**Mount Ossa**, near Pelion in Thessaly, 5448  
**Mount Parnassus**, in Phocis, 5396-5397  
     Deucalion's Landing Place after the Flood, 1924  
**Mount Pelion**, in Thessaly, 5448  
     Home of Chiron, 1403  
**Mount Sipylus**, Final Abode of Niobe, 5033  
**Mycenae**, a City in the Peloponnesus, 4784  
     Home and Kingdom of Agamemnon, 84  
     Clytemnestra, 1497  
**Naxos**, Island in the Aegean, 563  
     Where Bacchus Found Ariadne, 563  
**Nemean Forest**, in Argolis, Scene of the Nemean Games, 4875-4876  
     Visited by Hercules, 3156  
**Olympus**, Home of the Greek and Roman Deities, 5197, 4790  
**Pactolus**, a River of Lydia, 4162  
     Sands Gold from Baths of Midas, 4469  
**Peneus**, a River of Thessaly, 7148  
     Modern Salambria River, 7148  
     Turned through Augean Stables, 498  
**Phaeacia**, an Island in the Ionian Sea, Visited by Ulysses, 5165  
**Philae**, 5546  
**Phlegethon**, River Surrounding Tartarus, 7026  
     Furies Ushered the Ghosts Across, 2645  
**Phrygia**, West-Central Part of Asia Minor, 5586-5587  
     Home of Gordius, Famous for Gordian Knot, 2874  
     Midas, King of, 4469  
**Pillars of Hercules**. [See *Hercules*, *Pillars of*.]  
**Pirene**, Fountain near Corinth, Where Pegasus Drank, 5442  
**Pylos**, Kingdom of Neleus, 4883  
**Scyros**, Island in the Aegean Sea, Where Theseus Was Exiled, 7147  
**Scythia**, in Asia Minor, Orestes Sent to, 5252  
**Strait of Messina**, 4413  
     Home of Scylla and Charybdis, 6463  
**Styx**, the River of Hades, 6884, 4794  
     Charon, Boatman of the Styx, 1319  
**Tauris**, in Scythia, Visited by Orestes, 5252  
**Thebes**, an Ancient Greek City, 7140  
     Founded by Cadmus, 1065  
**Thebes**, an Ancient Egyptian City, 2144  
     Home of Sphinx near, 6758  
     Niobe's Husband, Amphion, King of, 5033  
     Seat of Worship of Ammon, 261  
**Thermodon**, a River in Asia Minor, Home of the Amazons, 242  
**Thessaly**, Northern District of Greece, 7148  
**Trinacria**, the Present Island of Sicily. [See ODYSSEY, 5165]  
**Troy**, an Ancient City of Asia Minor, 7278

# Legend and Legendary Characters

## Difference between Legend and Mythology, 3923

Myths Deal with Supernatural Beings, 3923  
Legends Deal with Mortals, 3923

## Relation of Legend and History, 3923

Legendary History of Rome, 6171  
Aeneas, Founder of the Italian Nation, 67, 6171

Romulus, First Legendary King, 6181

Son of Mars by Rhea, 4303

Founded Rome, 6171

Worshipped as Quirinus, 5923

Numa Pompilius, Second Legendary King, 5112

Husband of Egeria, 2135

Tullus Hostilius, Third Legendary King, 6171

Ancus Martius, Fourth Legendary King, 6171

Tarquinius Lucius, Surnamed Priscus  
Fifth Legendary King, 7025

Acquired Sibylline Books, 6591

Attacked Lucretia, 7025

Servius Tullius, Sixth Legendary King, 6505

Tarquinius Lucius, Surnamed Superbus,  
Last Legendary King, 7025

Horatius, 3238

## Legendary History of Athens, 480

Cecrops, First Legendary King, 480, 1265

Codrus, Last Legendary King, 1525

Theseus, Famous Legendary King, 7147

[See, also, above, *Identification of Other Mythological Characters.*]

Trojan War, 7278-7280

[For the principal characters of the Trojan War, see above, *Identification of Other Mythological Characters.*]

## Legendary History of Sparta, 6743

City Founded by Lacedaemon, 6743

## Swiss Legend of Wilhelm Tell, 7089

## Other Characters Famous in Legend

### American

Virginia Dare, 1827-1828

Barbara Frietchie, 616

Hiawatha, 3172

Minnehaha, Wife of Hiawatha, 3172

Rip Van Winkle, 6135

### British

King Arthur, 430

Hero in Tennyson's *Idylls of the King*, 3347

Malory's *Morte d' Arthur*, 4240

Glastonbury, 2842

Elaine, Died for Love of Lancelot, 2162, 3851

Sir Galahad, 2659

Awarded the Siege Perilous at the Round Table, 6217

Lady Godiva, 2851

Gog and Magog, 2854

Guinevere, Wife of Arthur, 430

Love Affair with Lancelot, 3851

Lancelot, 3851

Hero of *Idylls of the King*, 3347

Sir Launfal, Member of King Arthur's Round Table, 430

Earl Leofric, Husband of Lady Godiva, 2851

Merlin a Magician, 4410

Maker of King Arthur's Round Table, 6217

Modred, Nephew of King Arthur, 430

Robin Hood, 6149

Robinson Crusoe, 6150

By Daniel Defoe, 1873

Saint George and the Dragon, 6307

Saint Patrick, 5416

### French

Roland, 6163

### Germanic and Norse

Brunhilde, Character of the *Nibelungenlied*, 5013

Etzel, King of the Huns. [See *NIBELUNGENLIED*, 5013-5014]

Gunther, Associated with Siegfried in *Nibelungenlied*, 5013-5014

Hagen, Vassal of Gunther, 5013

Kriemhild, Wife of Siegfried in the *Nibelungenlied*, 5013

Nix, a Water Sprite, 5035

Santa Claus, 6380

Siegfried, Hero of the *Nibelungenlied*, 5013

### Greek

Damon, Lover of Pythias, 1816

Dionysius, the Younger, 1954

Lotus-Eaters, 4118

Mentioned in *Odyssey*, 5162

Pythias. [See *DAMON AND PYTHIAS*, 1816]

Seven Sleepers, 6506

### Roman

Amulius, Uncle of Romulus, 6181

Apus Claudius, Lover of Virginia, 7534

Faustulus, Shepherd Who Discovered Romulus, 6181

Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus, Husband of Lucretia, 4143

Lucius Virginius, Father of Virginia, 7534  
Lucretia, 4143

Marcus Claudius, Lover of Virginia, 7534

Numitor, Grandfather of Remus, 6181

Orlando, Italian Counterpart of Roland, 6163

Remus, Brother of Romulus, 6181

Son of Mars and Rhea, 4303

Rhea Silvia, Mother of Romulus and Remus, 6181

Sabines, 6290

Romulus at War with, 6182

Virginia, 7534

### Spanish

Don Juan, 2011



- The Cid, 1424  
 Others  
   Amadis of Gaul, 240  
   Wilhelm [William] Tell, 7089-7090  
   Arnold von Winkelried, 7795-7796
- Legend in Religion**  
   Golden Legend, 3923
- Other Legendary Topics**  
   Holy Grail, 3201-3203  
   Mouse Tower, 4702  
   Sodom, Apple of, 6676  
   Werewolf, 7708
- Legend and Mythology in Literature**
- Great Epic Poems**  
   Greek and Roman  
     Aeneid, 67  
       Story of the Poem, 67  
       Written by Vergil, 7495-7496  
   Iliad, 3349-3350  
     Story of the Poem, 3350  
       Trojan War, 7278-7280  
     Written by Homer, 3210-3211  
   Odyssey, 5162-5165  
     Described Wanderings of Ulysses, 7348-7349  
     Story of the Epic, 5162-5165  
     Written by Homer, 3210-3211  
   [For the principal characters of these epics, see above, *Identification of Other Mythological Characters.*]
- Hindu**  
   Mahabharata, the Mythological History of India, 4221  
     Written in Sanskrit, 6378  
   Ramayana, the Story of Rama, 5992  
     Written in Sanskrit, 6378
- German and Norse**  
   Nibelungenlied, 5013  
   Volsunga Saga, 6602
- Spanish**  
   The Cid, 1424
- King Arthur Tales**  
   Idylls of the King, 3347  
     Based on Morte d' Arthur, by Sir Thomas Malory, 4240  
     Holy Grail, 3201  
     Round Table, 6217  
     Story of King Arthur and His Knights, 430  
     Written by Tennyson, 7105-7107  
   Morte d' Arthur, by Sir Thomas Malory, 4240  
     Lancelot, the Hero of, 3851  
   The Vision of Sir Launfal, by James Russell Lowell, 4140  
   King Arthur, 430  
   [For characters in the Arthur legends, see above, *Other Characters Famous in Legends.*]
- Other Mythological Characters in Literature**  
   Alcestis, a Drama by Euripides, 192  
     Translated by Browning and Called Balaustion's Adventure, 192

- Antigone, a Story by Sophocles, 310  
 Arethusa, a Poem by Shelley, 372  
 Balder Dead, a Poem by Matthew Arnold, 577  
 Bellerophon, The Chimaera, by Nathaniel Hawthorne, 705  
 Cassandra, Poem by Schiller, 1229  
 Castor and Pollux, in Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome, 1233  
 Chimaera. [See above, *Bellerophon.*]  
 Endymion, Poem by Keats, 2234  
 Eurydice and Orpheus, Story in Vergil's Georgics, 2329  
 Fauns, Hawthorne's Marble Faun, 2383, 3090  
 Helen of Troy, Tennyson's A Dream of Fair Women, 3128  
 Iphigenia, Immortalized in Plays by Euripides, Racine, Goethe, and Schiller, 3513  
 Medea, a Drama by Euripides, 4371  
 Nymphs, Story of Rhœcus by Lowell, 5127  
 Oedipus Tyrannus and Oedipus at Colonus by Sophocles, 5165  
 Phaedra, a Drama, Phèdre, by Racine, 5530  
 Hippolytus, by Euripides, 5530  
 Psyche, a Poem, Comus, by Milton, 5862  
 Prometheus Bound, by Aeschylus, 5840  
   Translated by Mrs. Browning, 5840  
   Prometheus Unbound, by Shelley, 5840  
 Sigurd the Volsung by William Morris, 6602  
 Wilhelm Tell, Drama by Schiller, 7090

#### Folklore and Fairy Tales

- Folklore, 2506-2508**  
   Relation of Folklore and Superstition, 2506  
   Folklore of Salt, 6934  
   Vampires, 7449  
   Propagated by Tradition, Dances, and Song, 2508  
   Ballads, 583  
   Edda, 2106  
   Epic Poems, 2277  
   [See above.]  
   Folk Dances, Primitive or National Dances, 1819  
   May Pole, 4351, 4354  
   Folk Songs, 4762  
   Minstrels, 4523  
   Mother Goose, 4683-4684  
     History, 4683  
     Mother Goose Up to Date, 4684  
   Proverbs, 5854  
   Saga, 6296
- Moral Aspect**  
   Allegory, 224  
   Fable, 2356-2357  
   Aesop's Fables, 69
- Survivals of Folklore**  
   Christmas Tree, 1415-1416  
   Easter Eggs, 2088  
   Hallowe'en, 3022, 3023  
   May Customs, 4351, 4354  
   Santa Claus, 6380

- Stork, 6850
- Valentine Day, 7441
- [See, also, Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]
- Fairy Tales, 2362-2363
- Value of Fairy Tales
  - Amusing, 2363
  - Stimulate Imagination, 2363
- The Grown-Up Phase of Fairy Lore, 2363
- Common Characters in Fairy Tales
  - Banshee, 614
  - Brownie, 979
  - Dwarfs, 2363
  - Fairies, 2362
    - Variety of Forms, 2362
  - Genii, 2716, 2718
  - Giants, 2801
  - Gnomes, 2847. [See *Dwarfs*, above.]
  - Kobold, the Brownie of German Fairy Tales, 979
  - Lorelei, a Water Sprite in Fairy Tales, 2363
  - Man in the Moon, 4642
  - Nixies, 2363
  - Puck, a Mischievous Sprite, 5875
  - Pygmies, 5891
  - Robin Goodfellow, Brownie of English Fairy Tales, 979
    - Sometimes Called Puck, 5875
  - Trolls, 2363
- Writers of Fairy Tales and Their Stories
  - Hans Christian Andersen, 275
    - Five Out of One Shell, 6868
    - The Constant Tin Soldier, 6866-6868
    - The Fir Tree, 6860-6863
    - The Little Match Girl, 6863-6864
    - The Ugly Duckling, 6854-6857
  - Thomas C. Crocker, 2508
    - Fairy Legends, 2508

- Charles Lutwidge Dodgson [Lewis Carroll], 1985
  - Alice's Adventures in Wonderland, 1985
  - The Hunting of the Snark, 1985
  - Rhyme and Reason, 1985
  - Sylvie and Bruno, 1985
  - Through the Looking Glass, 1985
- Jakob and Wilhelm Grimm, 2966
  - Grimms' Fairy Tales, 2966
- Charles Perrault, 5491
  - Bluebeard, 803
  - Cinderella, 1431
  - Diamonds and Toads, 5491
  - Little Red Riding Hood, 2508, 5491
  - Mother Goose, 4683-4684
  - Puss in the Boots, 5491
  - Sleeping Beauty, 5491
- Giovanni Straparola, 2508
- Other Fairy Tales and Wonder Stories
  - A Little Dutch Hero, 6857-6858
  - Androcles and the Lion, 6559
  - Arabian Nights, 340-341
    - Aladdin, 165
    - Ali Baba, 220
    - Barmecide's Feast, 623
    - Genii, 2716-2718
    - Morgiana, 221
    - Magnetic Mountain, 341
    - Old Man of the Sea, 341
  - Belling the Cat, 6869
  - The Ant and the Grasshopper, 6860
  - The City Mouse and the Country Mouse, 6869
  - The Coming of the Corn, 6858-6859
  - The Discontented Stone Cutter, 6866
  - The Larks in the Corn Field, 6860
  - The Wind and the Sun, 6854
  - Why the Bear Has a Stumpy Tail, 6870

# PHILOSOPHY

## A General Survey

### Fundamental Concern of Philosophy

- To Find the Meaning of the Universe, 5566
- Varying Conceptions, 7414
- From the Ideas of Ptolemy, 468
- To Those of Einstein, 2161

### How Philosophy Differs from Science

- One Emphasizes Interpretation, 5566
- The Other Discovers, Classifies, 6433-6434

### Fields of Investigation

- Logic, 4090
- Esthetics, 2300
- Ethics, 2304-2305
- [See Outline on *Ethics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Politics, 5566
- [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]
- Metaphysics, 4417

## Logic

### Character and Scope of Logic

- Deals with Ideal Thought Method, 5566
- Logician Interested in Correct Thinking, 7159
- Logic Synonymous with Pure Reasoning, 4090

### The Process of Reasoning, 6018

- Two Steps
- Comparison of Two Judgments, 6018, 3705
- Reaching a Conclusion, 6018, 7159
- The Formal Statement, or Syllogism, 6018
- The Validity of the Conclusion, 6019
- Fallacies, or Incorrect Conclusions, 2365-2366

- Reasoning from Cause to Effect, 6019-6020
- From Effect to Cause, 6020

### Inductive Reasoning, 4090

- Developed by Francis Bacon, 565
- From Individual to General Ideas, 3432

- Conclusion a Generalization, 2714-2715
- General Ideas (Concepts) Formed by Observation, 1596

### Deductive Reasoning, 4090

- Originated by Aristotle, 4090, 382
- From the General to the Particular, 1860

### A Combination of the Two Methods

- Path of Uranus Deduced, 470
- By Applying Law of Gravitation, 2916
- Observations of Planet's Irregularities, 470, 2916
- Neptune's Position Charted by Induction, 470, 472, 5643

### Development of Logical Reasoning

- By Participation in Debates, 1851
- By Training in Independent Thinking, 6020
- By Training in Observation, 1596
- [See, also, Outline on *Psychology*, in this GUIDE.]

## Philosophical Schools and Leaders

### Ancient Greek and Roman Philosophy

#### Ionian School, 5566

- Founded by Thales, 7134
- One of the Seven Wise Men, 6508
- Regarded Water as the Primary Element, 7134
- Rejected Mythological Explanation of Things, 5566

### Pythagorean School

- Founded by Pythagoras, 5808
- Originator of Pythagorean Theorem, 2746
- Taught Transmigration of the Soul, 7246
- Believed Earth a Revolving Sphere, 5808

### First Metaphysical School, 4417

- Represented by Anaxagoras, 274
- Interest Centered on Thought, 274

Atomic Theory Originated, 492, 1329  
**The Sophists**, 6689  
 Akin to Modern Agnostics, 87  
**Socrates and the Cynics**, 5566  
 Ideal of Socrates: Self-Knowledge, 6673  
 His Ethical Teachings, 6673  
 [See Outline on *Ethics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 The Socratic Method  
 Truth Revealed by Cross-Examination, 6675  
 The Cynic School  
 Due to Influence of Socrates, 5566  
 Founded by Antisthenes, 1798  
 Virtue the Chief End of Life, 1798  
 Diogenes, an Extremist among the Cynics, 1953  
**Plato, Greatest Disciple of Socrates**  
 The Essence of Platonism, 5652-5653  
 An Idealistic Philosophy  
 Emphasis on the Moral Ideal, 5652  
 Permanency of General Concepts, 5653  
 Exaltation of Reason, 5653  
 Plato's Academy, 13  
**Aristotle, Pupil of Plato**  
 Founder of the Peripatetic School, 382  
 Emphasis on Observation of Facts, 5488, 382  
 First Systematic Organization of Philosophy, 5488  
 Aristotle a Forerunner of Francis Bacon, 382, 565  
**Epicurus and the Epicureans**  
 Epicurus, Philosopher and Teacher, 2277  
 His Many Pupils, 2279  
 Tenets of Epicureanism  
 Exaltation of Pleasure, 2279  
 Theory of Hedonism, 3125  
 Feelings the Test of Moral Truth, 2279  
 No Absolute Right and Wrong, 2279  
 Soul Dissolved at Death  
 Fear of Death an Unnecessary Evil, 2279  
**Zeno and the Stoics**  
 Zeno, Philosopher and Teacher, 7972  
 Public Lectures in the Stoa, 6843  
 Tenets of Stoicism  
 Virtue the Highest Good, 6843  
 All Reality Animated by God, 6843  
 Repression of Emotion Exalted, 6843  
**Skepticism**, 5566  
 A Philosophy of Denial, 5566  
**The Roman Philosophers**  
 Influence of Epictetus, 2277, 6844  
 Eclectic School, 5566  
 Adopted Ethics of Stoics, 6844  
 Famous Leaders  
 Cicero, 5566, 1423  
 Seneca, 6491  
 Marcus Aurelius, Flower of Stoicism, 6844, 504-505  
**Neo-Platonism**, 5566  
 Typified by the Gnostics, 2847  
 Hypatia, a Famous Neo-Platonist, 3318

**Philosophy in the Middle Ages**  
**The Rise of Scholasticism**, 5566  
 An Attempt to Correlate Christian Theology and the Logic of Aristotle, 6417  
**The Great Scholastics**  
 Pierre Abelard, 8  
 Albertus Magnus, 6417, 193  
 Anselm, 5566  
 Thomas Aquinas, 338  
 Roger Bacon, 565  
 Duns Scotus, 2056  
**Transitional and Modern Philosophy**  
**The Spirit of a New Age**  
 The Intellectual Rebirth, 6055-6056  
 The Influence of Scientific Discovery  
 Copernicus, 1666  
 Proved the Earth Revolves, 468  
 Kepler, 3766  
 His Planetary Laws, 3768  
 Basis of Gravitation Theory, 2916  
 Galileo, 2664  
 Opened Era of Modern Astronomy, 2665  
 Newton, 4960  
 Formulated Law of Gravitation, 2916  
 Harvey, 3068, 273  
 Laid Foundation of Modern Medicine, 3068  
 Gilbert  
 Discoveries in Electricity and Magnetism, 2172, 4217  
 Huygens, 3300  
 Discoveries in Astronomy, 3300  
 Wave Theory of Light, 3993  
**The Philosophy of Experience**  
 Called Empiricism, 2229  
 Francis Bacon, Its Exponent, 565, 5566  
 Reasoning from Known to Unknown, 5566  
 Inductive Method, 3432  
**The Philosophy of Rationalism**, 6001  
 Introduced by Descartes, 1913  
 Fundamental Principles of Descartes  
 Doubt Everything, 1913  
 One's Existence as Doubter the Only Known Fact, 1913  
 The Principle of Innate Ideas, 1913  
 Descartes Compared with Bacon, 5566  
 Spinoza, Follower of Descartes, 6766  
 His Development of Pantheism, 5341  
 His Philosophy an Abstract Monotheism, 6766  
**Correlation of Empiricism and Rationalism**  
 Attained by Locke, 4075  
 Knowledge Dependent on Experience, 4075  
 The Mind a Blank at Birth, 4075  
 Ideas the Basis of Knowledge, 4075  
**Revival of Skepticism**  
 Hume the Exponent, 3285  
 All Ideas Derived from Sense Impressions, 3285  
 A Denial of Supernaturalism, 6931

**The School of Critical Philosophy**

Founded by Kant, 3746

Basic Kantian Principles

Perception of the Mind Distinguished from  
Perception of Things, 3746Essentially a Philosophy of Transcenden-  
talism, 7242

Intuition Emphasized, 3492

A Denial of Materialism, 4343

Einstein's Concepts of Time and Space  
in Agreement with Kant's Philosophy,  
2160

Followers of Kant

Fichte, 2406

Hegel, 3125

The Apostle of Idealism, 6429

**The Philosophy of Pessimism, 5513**

Opposed to Optimism, 5227

Schopenhauer Its Exponent, 6429

Fundamental Principles

World an Idea of the Mind, 6429

Will the Only Necessary Reality, 6429

Happiness Lies in Nirvana, 6429

Similar to Buddhist Doctrine, 999

**The Philosophy of the Will to Power**

Nietzsche Its Exponent, 5023

Exaltation of the Superman, 5023

A Denial of Christian Ideals, 5023, 3668

**The Philosophy of Positivism**

Founded by Comte, 1595

Basic Principles

Human Knowledge Limited to Objective  
Existence, 1595Positive, the Last Stage of Man's Develop-  
ment, 1595

A Philosophy Akin to Empiricism, 2229

**Evolutionism**

The Influence of Darwin, 1830, 2337

Spencer's Application of Evolution to Politi-  
cal, Social, and Ethical Fields, 6756**Recent European Philosophers**

Bergson, 712

Theory of Time as Duration, 712

Eucken, 2313

Advocated an Idealistic Philosophy, 2313

Opposed to Mechanism, 4370

**American Philosophy and Philosophers, 5567**

American Transcendentalism, 7242, 5567

Emerson, 2221-2222

Sarah Margaret Fuller Ossoli, 5267

Thoreau, 7156-7157

Pragmatism, 5793-5795, 5567

Emphasis on Practical Consequences, 5793

William James Its Exponent, 3614-3615

The New Empiricism

Developed by John Dewey, 1927, 5567

# PHYSICS

## Its Nature and Scope

- What Physics Is, 5594
- Five Major Departments, 5594
  - Mechanics, 4370
  - Acoustics, or Sound, 22, 6692-6696
  - Thermatics, or Heat, 3111-3115
  - Optics, or Light, 3993-3998
  - Electricity and Magnetism, 2171-2178, 4216-4218
- What We Learn from Physics, 5594
  - Answers to Questions That Constantly Perplex Us, 5594, 5596
- How Man Makes Use of Physics, 5595
- The Progress of Physics, 5594, 5596
  - Revolutionary Discoveries and Theories, 5596
  - Great Physicists. [See list, in Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]

## Nature and Properties of Matter

- Definition of Matter, 4345
- Its Electrical Basis, 4346
  - Minute Charged Particles, 4346
    - Protons, 4346, 2168, 2176
    - Electrons, 4346, 1789, 2168, 2176
- Structure of Matter
  - Atom, 492, 1329, 4574
    - Representation of an Atom, 1330
  - Molecule, 4574
    - Molecular Force, 4575
    - Molecular Weights, 4575
- States of Matter
  - Solid, 6680
  - Liquid, 4041, 4042, 2496
  - Gaseous (Gas), 2698-2699
- Properties of Matter, 4346
  - General Properties
    - Density, 1903
      - Specific Gravity, 2918. [See below.]
    - Elasticity, 2162, 2470
    - Spring, 6779
    - Extension, or Volume, 2348
      - Extension Units, 2348
        - Meter, 4421
        - Yard, 1898
    - Inertia, 3446, 4346
    - Porosity, 5744
    - Weight, 7702
      - The Measure of the Earth's Attraction, 7702
    - Weighing Scale, 7701
      - Balance, 575
      - Spring Balance, 575
    - Steelyard, 6822
  - Special Properties
    - Ductility, 4346, 2050
      - Platinum Most Ductile, 2050, 5652
    - Flexibility, 2470
    - Elasticity. [See above.]
    - Hardness, 3044
      - How Measured, 3044
      - Sclerometer, 3044
      - Scale of Hardness of Minerals, 3044
    - Malleability, 4346, 4240
      - Substances Highly Malleable, 4240
    - Tenacity, 7092
      - [See *Strength of Materials*, below.]
  - Measurement of Matter. [See Outline on *Mathematics*, in this GUIDE, subhead, *Weights and Measures*.]

## Mechanics: Force and Motion

- Definitions
  - Dynamics, 2064, 4370, 2530
  - Kinetics, 4370
    - Kinetic Energy, 2235, 4578, 7475

- Fallacy of Perpetual Motion, 2235, 5491
- Statics, 6816
- Equilibrium, 6816, 2918, 3951
- Kinematics, 3792
- [See *Characteristics of Motion and Moving Bodies*, below.]
- The Nature of Force**, 2529-2530
- Forces of Attraction, 497
  - Adhesion, 46, 497
  - Cohesion, 1531, 46, 4575, 497
  - Electrical Attraction, 497
  - Electricity (Facts Long Known), 2172
  - [See *Electricity and Magnetism*, below.]
  - Gravitation, 2916-2917
  - Gravity, Center of, 2917-2918
  - Law of Gravitation, 2916
  - Isaac Newton, 4960-4963
  - Differences in Weight at Varying Distances from Earth's Center (Illustration), 2916
  - Theories of Newton and Einstein, 2917
  - Einstein's Theory (Tests of), 2161
  - Magnetic Attraction, 497, 4216-4217
  - [See *Electricity and Magnetism*, below.]

- Units of Force
  - Dyne, 2070
  - Poundal, 2529
  - Foot-Pound, 2529
- Composition of Motions and Forces, 1593
- Parallelogram of Forces, 5362
- Examples, Illustrated, 1594, 5362
- Strength of Materials, Resistance to Forces, 6878-7879
- Newton's Laws of Motion**, 2530
- Characteristics of Motion and Moving Bodies**
  - Velocity (Rate of Motion), 7475
  - Velocity of Falling Bodies, 2366
    - Laws of Falling Bodies, 2366-2367
  - Momentum (Quantity of Motion), 4578
  - Oscillation (Pendulum), 5456
    - Amplitude of, 5456
    - Laws of the Pendulum, 5456
  - Curvilinear Motion
    - Centrifugal Force, 1289
  - Machines Utilizing It, 1289
  - Centripetal Force, 1289
  - Friction, 2622
  - Einstein's Theory, 2157-2162
  - Kinematics, 3792

## Mechanics: Work, Power, and Energy

### Definition and Measurement of Work

- Foot-Pound, 2529
- Foot-Poundal, 2529
- Erg, 2529

### Measurement of Power (Rate of Doing Work)

- Horse Power, 3252-3253
- Kilowatt
  - Unit for Measuring Electrical Energy, 3775
- Watt, 7681

### Energy, Nature and Kinds of, 2235-2236

- Potential Energy, 2235
- Kinetic Energy, 2235
  - Compared with Momentum, 4578
  - Velocity, 7475
- Kinetic Theory of Gases, 2699
- Transformation of Energy, 2235
- Conservation of Energy, 2235
- Energy and Matter, 2236
- Problems in Energy, 2235-2236
- Perpetual Motion, 2235, 5491
- Quantum Theory, 5902-5903

### Transference of Energy by Machines

- Six Mechanical Powers, 4368, 4369
  - Lever, 3950-3951, 4369
  - Wheel and Axle, 7737-7739, 4369
  - Pulley, 5877-5878, 4369
    - Movable Pulley, 5878
      - Block and Tackle, 795
  - Inclined Plane, 3373, 4369
  - Wedge, 7698, 4369
  - Screw, 6453-6454, 4369
- [For many applications of the principles of the six mechanical powers, see Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]

### Mechanics of Liquids and Gases

#### Hydraulics (Laws of Flowing Liquids), 3305-3306

- The Laws Stated, 3305
- Artesian Well, 424
- Fountain, 2551
  - Noteworthy Fountains
    - Buckingham (Illustration), 1354
    - Spirit of the Great Lakes (Illustration), 6997
- Siphon, 6625
- Flow of Water in Rivers, 3305
- Water Supply of Cities, 3305
- Applied to the Automobile (Illustration), 3306

#### Molecular Motion in Liquids

- Absorption of Gases, 11
- Capillarity, 1184
  - (Illustrations in Nature), 1184
- Adhesion, 46
- Attraction, 497
- Cohesion, 1531-1532
  - Matter, 4346
- Molecular Force, 4575
- Diffusion, 1945-1946
- Evaporation
  - Saturation Point, 2333
  - Humidity, 3285-3286
  - Dew Point, 2333
  - Vapor, 7463-7464
  - Sublimation, 6886, 2333, 7464
- Osmosis, 5266
- Solution, 6685
  - Solvent, Salute, 6685

Colloids, 1539  
**Hydrostatics** (Laws of Liquids at Rest), 3309-3311  
 Once Known as Pneumatics, 3309  
 Three Laws  
   Pascal's, 3309, 5407  
   Second Law, 3309  
   Archimedes' Principle, 3309, 358, 2918  
 Gravity, Specific, 2918  
**Nature of Gases**, 2698  
**Gas Laws**  
 Avogadro's Law, 4575  
 Gay-Lussac's Law of Volumes, 2707  
 Laws of Pressure and Elasticity  
   Kinetic Theory of Gases, 2699  
   Charles' Law, 2699, 3309  
   Boyle's Law, 2699, 3309  
 Air Pressure, 109, 2698  
   Barometer, 625-627  
     Torricelli's Experiment, 626, 7220  
     Barometer and Weather, 626, 7687  
     Isobars, 3567  
     Measuring Altitude, 626, 4696  
     Kinds of Barometers, 626, 627  
 Air Compressor, 1594-1595  
 Air Engine, 1595  
 Compressed-Air Drill, 1594  
 Air Brake, 111-112

Invented by Westinghouse, 111, 7714  
 Details of Mechanism, 112  
 Pneumatic Tires, 5670-5675  
 Pneumatic Tools, 5675  
 Pneumatic Tubes, 5675-5676  
 Pumps, 5880-5881  
   Lift, or Suction, Pump, 5880  
   Force Pump, 5880-5881  
   Centrifugal Pump, 5881  
     Centrifugal Force, 1289  
   Turbine Pump, 5881  
   Direction-Action Pump, 5881  
   Power Pump, 5881  
   Air Pump, 151-152  
     An Air Compressor, 151, 1594  
 Vacuum, 7439-7440  
 Applications  
   Barometer, 625-627  
   Electric Light, 2178-2179  
   Thermometer, 7145  
   Thermos Bottle, 7146  
   Vacuum Cleaner, 7440  
   Vacuum Pan, 7441  
   Vacuum Tubes  
     Audion Tube, 5945  
     Coolidge Tube, 6159-6160  
     Crookes Tube, 1754, 6159, 1247  
     Worlds' Largest X-Ray Tube, 6161

## Heat and Its Properties

**Heat, or Thermodynamics**, 3111-3115  
**Molecular Theory of Heat**, 3111  
**Sources of Heat**, 3111-3112  
 Sun, 3111, 6921-6925  
 Thermal (Hot) Springs, 7143  
 Geysers, 2793-2797  
   Where Found, 2797, 5002, 3332, 7935  
   Illustration, 7937  
   Diagram of a Geyser, 2796  
 Volcanoes, 7560-7564  
   Named from Vulcan, 7560-7571  
   Eruptions, and Causes, 7562  
   Products of  
     Ash, 7562  
     Lava, 7562, 3895-3896  
   Zone of Volcanoes, 7563  
 Electric Current, 1789-1790  
   Electromotive Force, 1789, 2195  
   Production and Measurement, 1789  
     Ohm, 5178  
     Volt, 7565  
   Effects of Current, 1789-1790  
   Direction of Current, 1790  
     Commutator, 1790, 2069  
 [See, also, *Electricity and Magnetism*, below.]  
 Friction, 2622, 3111  
 Compression, 3111-3112  
 Chemical Action, 3112  
 Combustion, 3112, 1580  
   Fire, 2426-2428  
   Flame, 2462-2463

Spontaneous Combustion, 1580  
**How Heat Travels**, 3113-3114  
 Convection, 3113  
 Conduction, 3113  
 Radiation, 3113  
**What Heat Does**, 3114  
 Produces Expansion, 3114  
 Water an Exception, 7665  
 Changes Solids to Liquids, 3114  
   Melting Point, 4385, 2605  
   Relation to  
     Freezing, 2605  
     Ice, 3325-3329  
     Regelation, 6044  
 Changes Liquids and Solids to Vapor, 3114, 7463  
 Distillation, 1967-1968  
   Fractional Distillation, 1967-1968  
   Destructive Distillation, 1968  
 [See, also, Outline on *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Evaporation, 2333, 3114, 1967  
   Saturation, or Dew Point, 2333, 3286  
   Humidity, 2333, 3285-3286  
   Hygrometer, 3286, 3314-3315  
 Liquid Air, 4042-4044  
 Sublimation, 6886, 2333, 7464  
 Steam, 6817-6819  
   Watt Discovering Power of Steam (Illustration), 6818  
   James Watt, 7681  
   Steam Engine, 6819-6820



[See, also, Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Vaporization, 7464  
 Evaporation. [See above.]  
 Boiling, 7464  
   Boiling Point, 815  
 Heat Produces Light, 3114-3115  
 Flame. [See above.]  
 Electric Light. [See *Electricity and Magnetism*, below.]  
**Heat and Temperature**, 7090-7091  
   Measured by Thermometer, 7090, 7144-7145  
   Thermometer Scales, 7090, 7145  
   Centigrade, 7090, 7145, 1286

Boiling Point, 1286, 815  
 Freezing Point, 1296, 2605  
 Fahrenheit, 7090, 7145, 2361  
 Boiling Point, 1286, 815  
 Freezing Point, 1286, 2605  
 Zero, 7973, 7144, 7090  
 Absolute Zero, 7090, 3111  
**Specific Heat**, 7665  
   Measurement  
     Calorie, 1100  
     Great Calorie, 1100  
     Used in Food Values, 1100, 2511-2512, 7360  
 British Thermal Unit, 7360, 1100

## Principles of Sound

**Nature of Sound**, 6692-6695  
   Wave Motion, Illustrated, 6692-6693, 6695  
**Reaction of Ear to Sound Waves**, 2076, 2078  
   Explained by Anatomy of the Ear, 2075-2076  
**Intensity of Sound**, 6692  
**Pitch of Sound**, 6692, 6694  
   In Music, 4764  
   As Applied to Stringed Instruments, 6693  
   Siren, 6625-6626  
**Distinction Between Noise and Music**, 6694  
   Intensity, or Loudness, 4764, 6692  
   [See, also, Outline on *Music*, in this GUIDE.]

**Quality of Sound**  
   Overtones, 6694  
**Reflection of Sound**, 6036  
   Acoustics, 22, 5594, 2094  
   Echo, 2093-2094  
   Putting the Law to a Test (Illustration), 2093  
**Sympathetic Vibration**, 6694  
**Velocity of Sound**, 6694-6695  
**How Radio Transmits Sound**, 6695, 5943, 5946, 5949  
   [See, also, Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Where There's No Ear to Hear**, 6695

## Light and Its Phenomena

**Nature of Light**, 3993-3998  
   A Servant of Man (Illustration), 3995  
   Young's Wave-Motion Theory, 3993, 5936  
**How the Eye Perceives Light**, 3994, 2351  
   How It Receives Light (Illustration), 2352  
   Comparison with the Camera (Illustration), 2353  
**Electromagnetic Theory of Light**, 3994, 2194  
   Advanced by Maxwell, 3994, 5936  
   Other Forms of Electromagnetic Radiation. [See below.]  
**Light Affected by Gravitation**, 3994, 2917  
   Newton and Einstein, 2917  
   Einstein's Theory, 2157-2161  
**Length of Light Waves and the Phenomenon of Color**, 3994-3995  
   Color, 1550, 1551-1553  
   Newton's Experiment, 1551, 4962-4963  
   The Spectrum, 1551, 6749-6750, 3998  
     Continuous, Bright-Line, Absorption, 6749  
     Fraunhofer's Lines, 6750  
     The Seven Colors of Sunlight, 1552  
     Uses of the Spectrum, 6750  
     Color Plate, facing 6749  
   Colors Correspond to Wave-Lengths of Light, 1551  
   How to Use Color, 1551-1552  
   Pigments, 1551-1552, 5298

Sources of Pigments (Color Plate), facing 5298  
   Primary Colors, 1552  
   Complementary Colors, 1552  
   How to Use Color Knowledge, 1552  
   Color Science (in Color), facing 1552  
 Absorption, 11-12  
   Osmosis, 5266-5267  
   Osmotic Pressure, 5266  
   Capillarity, 1184  
   Examples of, 1184. [See *Molecular Motion in Liquids*, above.]  
 Fluorescence, 2496-2497  
 Spectrum Analysis. [See *The Spectrum*, above.]  
 Spectroscope, 6749  
 Ultra-Violet Rays, 7346-7348  
   "Artificial Sunlight" Illustrations, 7347  
**Velocity of Light**, 3996  
   Michelson's Experiment, 3996, 4456-4457, 3477  
   Does Not Instantaneously Bridge Space, 3996  
   Star Distances in Light Years, 470  
   Parsec, 470  
**Propagation of Light**  
   A Straight-Line Advance, 3996  
   Diffraction, 3996, 1945  
   Arago White Spot, 1945

- Interference (Interferometer)
  - Invented by Michelson, 3477, 4456-4457
- Shadows, 6523
- Umbra, 6523
- Penumbra, 6523, 5477
- [See, also, diagrams, 2094, 2095.]
- Transmission through Substances**, 3996
- Intensity of Illumination**, 3996
- Law of Intensity, 3997
- Relation of, to Source of Light (Illustration), 3996
- Candle Power, 1166
- Photometry, 5585
- Reflection and Refraction**, 3997, 6036
- Definition of Reflection, 3997
- Angle of Incidence, 3997, 6036, 4531
- Angle of Reflection, 3997, 6036, 4531
- Aberration, 8, 9
- Lens, 3934-3935
- Burning Glass, 3934
- Burning of the Roman Fleet, 6986, 4532
- [See, also, *Optical Instruments*, below.]
- Mirror, 3997 (Fig. 2), 5431-4532
- Mirage, 4529-4530
- Polarization of Light**, 5699-5700
- Methods of Polarizing Light, 5699-5700
- Polariscope, 5699
- Saccharimeter, 5699
- Optical Instruments**
- Camera, 1107-1108
- Principle of the Camera Obscura, 1107, 1108

- Patterned after Principle of Human Eye, 1107
- Illustrations, 2352, 2353
- Photographic Camera, 5579-5584
- How Light Paints a Picture (Illustration), 5580
- Negative and Positive Films (Illustration), 5580
- Making Aerial Photographs, 5582
- Interior of Moving-Picture Camera, 4725
- Millionth of a Second Exposure (Illustration), 1108
- Camera Obscura, 1108
- Camera Lucida, 1108
- Stereopticon, 6828-6829
- Stereoscope, 6829-6830
- Invented by Wheatstone, 6829, 7736-7737
- Microscope, 4468-4469
- Comparison with Telescope, 4468
- Simple Microscope, 4468
- Compound Microscope, 4468-4469
- Its Nineteen Parts (Illustration), 4468
- Path of Light Rays (Diagram), 4469
- Telescope, 7081-7083
- Structure, 7081
- Galileo's First Telescope, 7081
- Great Modern Telescopes, 7082-7083, 5145, 5146
- [See, also, article OBSERVATORY, 5141-5146.]
- Opera Glass, 5225
- Field Glass, 2410-2411

## Electricity and Magnetism

- Nature and Effects of Electricity**
- Revolutionary Changes Wrought**
  - In Industry, Commerce, and the Home, 2171-2172
- Historical Background**
  - Electricity First Produced by Friction
  - Thales, Discoverer of the Attractive Properties of Amber, 2172, 244, 7134
  - Pliny the Younger, 2172
  - Gilbert's Discoveries, 2172, 4217
  - First Electric Machine, 2172, 2182
  - Eighteenth-Century Advancement
  - Production of Current Electricity, 2172, 1789-1790
  - Galvani and Volta, 2172, 7565, 2669
  - Correlation of Lightning and Electricity, 2172, 4001
  - Contribution of Franklin, 2597
  - Modern Discoveries, 2172
  - [See *The Nature of Electricity*, below.]
- Basic Electrical Phenomena**
  - Positive and Negative Electricity, 2172, 2174
  - Conductors and Non-Conductors, 2174
  - Insulators, 3468, 3470
  - Dielectric, 1944
  - Static and Dynamic Electricity, 2174
- Current Electricity**, 2174-2175, 1789
  - Cause of Flow of Current
  - Electromotive Force, 1789, 2195
  - Measurement of Current, 2183
  - Units of Measurement
  - Ampere (Unit of Intensity), 265-266, 7565
  - Ohm (Unit of Resistance), 5178-5179
  - Volt (Unit of Pressure), 7565, 1789
  - Other Units
  - Coulomb, 1720
  - Farad, 2370
  - Microfarad, 2370
  - Watt, 7681
  - Kilowatt, 3775
  - Measuring Instruments
  - Galvanometer, 2670
  - Ammeter, 266
  - Voltmeter, 7565, 7566-7567
  - Laws Relating to Measurement
  - Ohm's Law, 5178
  - Ampere's Law, 266
  - Law of Mutual Relationships, 1789
  - Effects of Electric Currents, 1789
  - Heating Effect, 1789, 2171
  - Basis of Electrical Devices, 2171
  - Electric Light, 2178-2182. [See below.]

Chemical Effect, 1789  
 Electrolysis, 2192-2193  
 Magnetic Effect, 1789  
 Electromagnetism, 2194-2195. [See below.]  
 Direction of Electric Currents, 1790  
 Direct, 1790, 2066, 2175  
 Alternating, 1790, 2066, 2175  
 Production of Electric Currents  
 Electric Battery, 2168-2170  
 Produces Current by Chemical Action, 2168  
 Voltaic Cell, 2174, 2168, 2669  
 Electrodes, 2168, 2191-2192  
 Anodes, Cathodes, 2191  
 Electrolyte, 2168, 2193  
 Function of Ions, 2168, 3502  
 Polarization, 2169  
 Closed-Circuit Cells, 2169  
 Gravity Cell, 2169, 2175  
 Daniell Cell, 2169  
 Edison-Lalande Cell, 2169-2170  
 Open-Circuit Cells, 2169, 2170  
 Leclanché Cell, 2170  
 Dry Cell, 2170, 2175  
 Leyden Jars Connected in Series, 3960  
 Secondary, or Storage, Cells, 2175, 6849-6850  
 Edison Storage Battery, 6849-6850  
 Uses of Storage Batteries, 2175, 6850  
 Dynamo, 2175, 1789, 2066-2070  
 Transforms Mechanical into Electrical Energy, 2175. [See below.]  
 Thermoelectricity, 7144  
**The Nature of Electricity, 2176**  
 Crookes' Theory of the Composition of Cathode Rays, 2176, 1754  
 Thomson's Discovery of the Electron, 2176  
 Development of the Electron Theory, 2176  
 Roentgen, 2176, 6162, 1247  
 Becquerel, 2176, 5934  
 The Curies, 2176, 1787, 5969  
 Rutherford, 2176, 1330  
 Millikan, 2176, 4489-4490  
**Fundamentals of the Theory**  
 Electrons and Protons, 2176, 4346  
 Constituents of All Atoms, 1329-1330  
 Conduction through Metals  
 Explained by Electron Theory, 2176, 1789, 2168  
 Conduction in Electrolytes, 2193, 2192  
 Electrostatic Induction  
 Illustrated by Experiment, 3431-3432  
 Action of the Electroscope, 2195-2196  
 [See, also, Outline on *Chemistry*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Nature and Effects of Magnetism**  
**Discovery of Magnetite, 4216**  
 Its Attractive Power, 4216, 4218, 3535  
 Artificial Magnets, 4216  
 Magnetic Needle, 4218  
 The Lodestone, a Natural Magnet, 4216, 4218

Basis of Mariner's Compass, 1592  
**Experiments of Dr. Gilbert, 4217**  
 Polarity of Magnets, 4217  
 Temporary and Permanent Magnets, 4217  
**The Earth's Magnetism, 4218, 2082**  
 Magnetic and Geographic Poles, 4218, 5700  
 Magnetic Declination, 4218  
 Dipping Needle, 1956  
**Theory of Molecular Magnetism, 4218**  
 Explains Magnetic Induction, 4218, 4217  
**Electromagnetism**  
**Relation between Electricity and Magnetism, 2194-2195, 2175**  
 Contributions of Oersted and Faraday, 2175, 2370  
**Electromagnetic Radiations**  
 Seventy Octaves Identified, 5937  
 Cosmic Rays, 1703, 5934, 5937, 6160  
 Gamma Rays, 5934, 5937, 6160  
 Roentgen (X-) Rays, 6159-6160, 5937  
 Ultra-Violet Rays, 7346-7348, 3995  
 Infra-Red Rays, 5937, 3996  
 Visible Light Rays, 3995-3996, 5937  
 Hertzian Waves, 5937, 2194  
**Electromagnetic Theory of Light 2194, 3994**  
 Young's Theory of Wave Motion, 2194  
 Maxwell's Theory, 2194, 3994, 5936-5937  
 Hertz's Experimental Proof, 2194, 5937  
**Electrical Devices and Applications**  
**Crookes Tubes, 1754**  
 Geissler's Tubes, 2709-2710  
**Dynamo, 2066-2070**  
 Types of Generating Dynamo, 2060  
 Principle of the Dynamo  
 E.M.F. Generated by Electromagnetic Induction, 2066, 2194  
 Essential Parts  
 Electromagnet, 2067, 2193-2194  
 Armature, 2067, 407, 2174  
 Alternators, 2067  
 Single-Phase and Three-Phase, 2070  
 Direct Current Generators, 2070  
 Illustrations of Parts, 2068, 2069  
 Application, 2070, 7063  
**Electric Battery. [See above.]**  
**Electric Bell, 2170-2171**  
**Electric Heaters, 2171**  
**Electrical Household Devices, Twelve Illustrations, 2177**  
**Electric Light, 2178-2182**  
 Incandescent Light, 2178  
 Nernst Lamp, 2180-2181  
 Mercury-Vapor Lamp, 2181  
 Arc Light, 2181  
**Electric Machine, 2182**  
**Electric Meter, 2183-2184**  
**Electric Motor, 2184-2187**  
 Operation of a Motor, 2186  
 Counter E.M.F., 2186  
 Types of Motors, 2186-2187  
 Uses of the Electric Motor, 2187

Electric Railway, 2187-2190  
 Electric Refrigerator, 6041-6042  
 Electric Welder, 2190  
     Use of Electric Arc, 2190, 2181  
     Metallic-Arc Welding, 7703  
     Carbon-Arc Welding, 7703  
 Electrolysis, 2192-2193  
 Electroplating, 2195  
 Electromagnet, 2193-2194  
 Electroscope, 2195-2196  
 Electrotyping, 2196-2198  
 Induction Coil, 3432  
 Leyden Jar, 3960-3961  
 Magneto-Electric Machine, 4219

Radio Telephone and Telegraph. [See Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Storage Battery. [See *Electric Battery*, above.]  
 Telegraph and Telephone. [See Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Transformer, 7243  
 Vacuum Cleaner, 7440

---

[The reader is referred to the section on *General Science*, in Part II of this GUIDE, for much additional material on the subjects of Electricity and Magnetism.]

# PSYCHOLOGY

## Its Scope, Theories, and Methods

**Definition: The Science of Mind**, 5865  
Former Branch of Metaphysics, 4417, 5865

**Mind**, 4497

Fundamental Principle in Human Beings, 4497

Mind and Matter, 4345, 4497

Vital Connection with the Body, 4497

Origin of Emotional States, 4497

Seat of the Mind, 4881

The Brain, 918-921

Powers of the Mind, 7158

Feeling, 2391

Intellect, 7158

Will, 7763-7765

A Storehouse of Knowledge, 7158

**Early Views of Mental Activity**, 5865

Animism, the Ancient Belief, 292, 5866

Distinct Faculties or Powers, 5865

**Nineteenth-Century Development**, 5865

First Psychological Laboratory, 5865

A New Psychology Developed, 5865

William James' Epochal Work, 3614, 5865

**Modern Psychology**, 5865-5869

Mind Considered as a Unit, 5865

Mind and Body Interdependent, 4497

Development of Mental Powers, 5865

Feeling and Will, 2391, 7763-7765

Observation, 1596, 5865

Memory, 4388-4389

Imagination, 3366-3368

Thought, 7158-7159

Reason, or Reasoning, 6018-6020

**Modern Movements in Psychology**, 5866-5869.

[See subhead, below.]

**Classification of the Science**, 5865

Child Psychology, 5865

Child Study, 1369-1374

Educational Psychology, 5865

Pedagogy, 5439

Physiological Psychology, 5865

Relation of Mind to Nervous System, 4881

Social Psychology, 6671

Study of Personality, 6671

Behavior of Groups, 6672

**Physiologic Factors of Psychology**, 5865

The Nervous System, 4881-4883

Includes Brain and Nerves, 918, 4880

Chart of Main Divisions, 4882

The Brain, 918-921

Center of Nervous System, 4881

Structure and Parts, 918-920, 4385

Centers of Action, 5865

Reflex Centers, 6036

The Nerves, 4880-4883

Transmit Impulses from Brain, 920, 4880

How Sensations Travel, 4882

Structure of Nerve Tissue, 4881

Neurones, 4881, 4882

Three Systems of Nerves, 4881-4883

Central Nervous System, 4883

Brain and Spinal Cord, 918, 6765

Spinal Fluid, 6765

Peripheral Nervous System, 4882

Reflex Actions, 6036

Sympathetic System, 4883

Hygiene of the Nervous System, 4883

Sleep, 6641

Breath and Breathing, 939-940

Health Habits, 3104-3106

Life Extension, 3980-3992

Hygiene of Education, 2123-2126

Nervous Disorders, 2125-2126

Glands and the Nervous System, 2830,

4497

Ductless Glands, 2830

Hormones, 2830, 4497

[See Outline on *Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene*, in this GUIDE.]

**Senses and Sensations**, 6492-6493

Special, or Exterior Senses, 6492

Sight, or Vision, 7548

Eye, Organ of Sight, 2349-2354

How We See, 2351  
 Sight and Intelligence, 2352  
 Hearing, 2075  
 Ear, Its Organ, 2075-2078  
 How We Hear, 2076, 2078  
 Smell, 6645-6646  
 Sense That Distinguishes Odors, 6645  
 Cause of the Sensation, 6645  
 Nose, 5090-5091  
 Taste, 7029, 7031  
 How and Where Taste Sensations Are Formed, 7029  
 Mouth, 4702-4703  
 Palate, 5309  
 Tongue, 7208-7209  
 Mucous Membrane, 4385, 4732  
 Touch, 7224  
 The Tactile Sense, 7224  
 End-Organs for Perception, 7224  
 Skin, 6632-6635  
 Epidermis, 6632  
 Glands, 6634  
 Warm and Cold Spots, 7224  
 Muscle, or Muscular, Sense, 4751  
 The So-Called Sixth Sense, 4751  
 Control of Muscles, 4749, 4751

Reflex Action, 6036  
 Muscular Control, 1372  
 General, or Interior, Sensations, 6492  
 Conveyed to Brain by Sensory Nerves, 6492  
 Hunger, 322, 6492  
 Appetite, 322  
 Thirst, 7149-7150  
 Fatigue, 2379-2380  
 Pain, 6492  
 How Special and General Sensations Differ, 6493  
 Development of the Senses, 1370-1371  
 Sense Perception, 5484-5485  
 Sensation Plus Experience, 5484  
 Mind Recalls Past Experiences, 5865  
 Illusion and Hallucination, 3023, 5485  
 Mirage, 4529-4531  
 Joan of Arc's Visions, 3677  
 Optical Illusion, 5227, 5230  
 Apperception, 322  
 Laws of Association, 458  
 Attention, 494-497  
 Interest, 3476-3477  
 Rule for Securing Interest, 3477  
 William James, 3614-3615

### Activities of the Mind

**Mental Experiences**, 4395-4403, 4497, 7158  
 Mind in General, 4497  
 Habit, 2997-2998  
 Habits in Childhood, 2998-2999  
 Imagination, 3366-3368  
 A Psychologist's View, 3367  
 Relation to Memory, 4388  
 Imagination in Childhood, 3367  
 Value of Imagination, 1305-1306  
 Imagination in Maturity, 3367-3368  
 Its Work with Reason, 3368  
 Good and Bad Products, 3368  
 In Literature, 3368, 4047  
 Poetry, 5679-5680  
 Fiction, 2406-2407  
 The Novel, 5103-5107  
 Progressive Laws, 3368  
 Fear, 2385, 3368  
 Fear in Childhood, 2383-2385  
 Worry, 2385, 3368  
 Memory, 4388-4389  
 Memory and Imagination, 4388  
 Helping the Memory, 4389  
 Attention, 494  
 Interest, 3476  
 Training All Senses, 4389  
 Memorizing, 4389  
 Former Views of Memory, 5865  
 Intuition, 3492  
 Instinct a Related Power, 3467  
 Feeling, 2391  
 Element of All Mental Acts, 2391  
 Consciousness of Sensations, 2391  
 Feelings of Special Senses, 6492

Emotions, 2228. [See below.]  
 Characteristics of the Feelings, 2391  
**Higher Mental Activities**, 7158, 6018, 7763-7765  
 Thought, 7158-7159  
 Mental Concentration on Ideas, 7158  
 Concept, or Idea, 1595-1596  
 Steps in the Thought Process, 7158  
 Analysis, or Abstraction, 272  
 Synthesis, 6986  
 Reasoning, 6018  
 Effect on the Body, 7158  
 Influence on Character, 7159  
 Association of Ideas, 458  
 Reason, or Reasoning, 6018-6020  
 Final Step in Thinking, 6018  
 Comparison of Judgments, 6018  
 Judgment, 3705  
 Perceptions, 5484  
 Concepts, 1596  
 Inductive and Deductive Reasoning, 6019  
 Inductive Method, 3432-3433  
 Deductive Method, 1869  
 Cause and Effect, 6019-6020  
 Independent Thinking, 6020  
 Logic, or Pure Reasoning, 4090  
 [See Outline on *Philosophy*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Will, 7763-7765  
 Mental Power of Choice and Action, 7763  
 Inhibition, 7764-7765  
 Self-Control, 7765  
 Development of Will, 7765  
 Attention (Active), 495

Moral Training, 2305  
 Ethics, 2304-2305  
 Breaking the Will, 7765  
**Emotions**, 2228  
 Intellectual, or Ideal, Feelings, 2391  
 Influence on the Body, 2228, 4497  
 Emotional States, 2228  
 Anger, 282  
 Anger in Childhood, 282, 284  
 Effect on Bodily Secretions, 282  
 Fear, 2228  
 Fear in Childhood, 2383-2385  
 Morbid Fears, 2126

Tender Emotions, 2228  
 Egoism, 238  
 Mood, 4636-4637  
 Complex, 1593  
 Discoverable by Psychoanalysis, 5864  
 Healthy Mental Attitude, 3991  
**Influences Affecting Mental Traits**, 3160, 3158  
 Heredity, 3158-3161  
 Inheritance of Intellectual and Moral Traits, 3160-3161  
 Environment, 2275-2276  
 [See Outline on *Sociology* in this GUIDE.]

### Subconscious Mentality

**The Subconscious**, 6884-6886  
 Habits by Subconscious Guidance, .2997, 6884  
 Subconscious Conditions or States, 6884-6885  
 Absent-Mindedness, 6884  
 Dreams, 2030  
 Freud's Theory, 2030  
 Sleepwalking, 6687  
 Talking in Sleep, 6885  
 Hypnosis, 3319-3321  
 Hypnotic Stages, 3320  
 Mesmerism, 4412  
 Suggestion, 6912-6914  
 Dissociation, 317  
 Amnesia, 317  
 Subvoluntary Mental Operations, 6885  
 Mind Reading, 4497-4498  
 Table Movements, 6767-6885  
 Ouija Board, 6885  
 The Patience Worth Case, 6885  
 Medium, 4379  
 Subconscious Processes in Waking Life, 6885  
 Normal and Abnormal Characters, 6886  
 Mental Conflict, 4395-4396  
 Freud and Freudian Views, 2030, 6886  
 Sigmund Freud, 2030, 5869  
 View of the Subconscious, 6886  
 Psychoanalysis, 5864, 5869  
 Analysis of Subconscious Conflicts, 5864  
 Founded on Freud's Views, 2030, 5869, 6886  
 Use in Hysterical Cases, 5869, 6886  
 In Criminal Detection, 5864  
 Nature of the Subconscious, 6886

**Suggestion**, 6912-6914  
 Power of Suggestion, 2228, 6914  
 Mechanism of Suggestion, 6913  
 In Inducing Belief, 6913  
 Psychology of Conjuring, 1612-1613  
 Suggestion in Many Practices, 6913  
 Faith Cure, 2363-2364  
 Hypnotism, 2228, 3319-3321  
 Hypnosis in Medical Practice, 3321  
 Persuasive Suggestion, 6913  
 Child Guidance by Suggestion, 1306, 6913  
 Psychology of Advertising, 62-64, 6913  
 Selling Psychology, 62  
 Attention, 494-496, 7765  
 Interest, 3476-3477  
 Desire and Conviction, 64, 7764  
 Suggestive Advertising, 64  
 Mental Tendencies That Influence Action, 6913  
 Appeals to Reason, 64  
 Psychology of Public Speaking, 5872-5874  
 Influence of the Spoken Word, 6913  
 Mark Antony's Oration, 314, 6913  
 Value of Sincerity, 5873  
 Auto-Suggestion, 6913-6914  
 Mental Suggestion to Oneself, 6913  
 Technique Similar to Suggestion, 6913  
 Combating Undesirable Suggestions, 6913  
 Fighting the Fear-Thought, 6913, 2384  
 Substitution of Faith-Thought, 2384  
 Preventing Fear in Children, 2384  
 Coue's Use of Auto-Suggestion, 6914  
 Socialized Suggestion, 6914  
 When Hypnosis Is Needed, 3321, 6914

### Recent Developments

**Modern Movements in Psychology**, 5866-5869  
 Animism, 5866  
 Structuralism, 5866  
 Gestalt Psychology, 5866-5867  
 Behaviorism, 5868-5869  
 Behavior in Childhood, 1374-1375  
 Affected by Gland Secretions, 1374  
 Glands and Their Action, 1374-1375, 2830

Anger in Childhood, 282, 284  
 Dishonesty in Children, 1962-1964  
 Fatigue and Nervousness, 1373, 2380-2382  
 Habits in Childhood, 2998-2999  
 Heredity, 3158-3161  
 Mental Conflict, 4395-4396  
 Character Training, 1304-1308  
 Child Study, 1369-1374

**Mental Measurement**, 4399-4403  
 Function of Applied Psychology, 4399, 5865  
 Where Tests Are Used, 4400  
 Study of Personal Characteristics, 4400-4401  
 Measurement of Intelligence, 4401-4403  
 Suggested by Francis Galton, 2669

The Binet-Simon Method, 4399-4400, 4401  
 How the Scale Is Used, 4401-4402  
 Modern Improvements, 4402  
 The Intelligence Quotient (IQ), 4402  
 Uses of Intelligence Tests, 4402-4403  
 Measuring Results of Education, 2118-2123

### Abnormal Psychology

**Mental Disturbances**, 3458, 4395-4399  
 Causes of Mental Disturbances, 6672  
 Fear and Worry, 2385, 4895  
 Hysteria, 3322  
 Neurasthenia, 4896-4897  
 Neurosis, 4897  
 Insanity, 3458  
 Kleptomania, 3803

Treatment of Mental Disturbances, 3458, 6672  
**Mental Conflict**, 4395-4396  
 Dishonesty in Children, 1962-1964  
 Complicating Factors, 4396  
 Treatment of Mental Conflict, 4396  
**Mental Handicaps**, 4397-4399  
**Mental and Moral Degeneration**, 1874

### Realm of the Occult

**The Occult and Pseudo-Science**, 5148, 6434  
 Caballah, or Secret Tradition, 5148  
 Revivals and Survivals, 5148  
 Theosophy, 7142  
 Madame Blavatsky, 788  
 Annie Besant, 721  
 Psychical Research, 5862  
 Investigation of the Occult, 5148, 5862  
 Pseudo-Sciences, 6434  
 Psychology and Pseudo-Science, 6938  
 Alchemy, 192-193, 1328  
 Astrology, 466-467  
 Clairvoyance, 1452, 7067  
 Conjuring, 1612-1613  
 Demonology, 1890  
 Divination, 1972-1973  
 Magic, 4212-4215

Mesmerism, 4412  
 F. A. Mesmer, 3319-3320, 4412  
 Hypnotism, 3319-3321  
 Mind-Reading, 4497-4498  
 Telepathy, 7067. [See below.]  
 Necromancy, 4868  
 Palmistry, 5322-5323  
 Phrenology, 5585-5586  
 Physiognomy, 5597-5598  
 Spiritualism, 6767-6768  
 Superstition, 6931-6938  
 [See Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Telepathy, 5862, 7067  
 Intuitive Mental Impressions, 7067  
 Percipients, 5862  
 The Scientific View, 5863

### Noted Psychologists

**Ancient and Medieval Philosophers**, 5566  
 [See Outline on *Philosophy*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Modern Psychologists**, 5567, 5869  
 Alfred Binet, 4399  
 Charles R. Darwin, 1830-1831  
 John Dewey, 1927  
 Johann G. Fichte, 2406  
 Sigmund Freud, 5869  
 Francis Galton, 2669  
 G. Stanley Hall, 3019-3020  
 G. W. F. Hegel, 3125  
 Herman von Helmholtz, 3136  
 Johann F. Herbart, 3153-3154  
 David Hume, 3285  
 William James, 3614-3615  
 Immanuel Kant, 3746  
 Kurt Koffka, 5866

W. Köhler, 5866  
 John Locke, 4075  
 William McDougall, 5866  
 Friedrich A. Mesmer, 3319, 4412  
 Max Meyer, 5868  
 James Mill, 4485  
 John Stuart Mill, 4485-4486  
 Max Müller, 4735  
 Marquis de Peysegur, 3319  
 Arthur Schopenhauer, 6429  
 Thomas Simon, 4401  
 Herbert Spencer, 6755-6756  
 E. B. Titchener, 5866  
 John B. Watson, 5868  
 M. Wertheimer, 5866  
 Wilhelm Wundt, 5865, 7901

### Related Sciences

Philosophy, 5566-5567  
 Physiology, 5598

Sociology, 6671-6673  
 [See Outlines on these sciences, in this GUIDE.]



# RELIGION

## General Introduction

Belief in Powers and Beings, 6050

Church, 1420

Derivation of Word Religion, 6051

Origin of Religion, 6050

Religion, 6050

Religions of the World, 6051

Classification

Monotheistic

Monotheism, 6050, 5718

Belief in One God, 5718

God, 2850

The Christian Idea of God, 2851

Polytheistic

Polytheism, 5718, 6050

Belief in Many Gods, 5718, 6050

The Heathen Gods, 2850

Beliefs of Savages, 6050

Primitive Religions

Indians, Early Mexico and Early Peru,

Polynesians, 6050

More Advanced Culture

Assyria, 460, 6050

Assur, 460

Babylonia, 561

Baal, 552

China, 1393

Egypt, 2143

Anubis, 316

Ammon and Mut, 261-262

Athor, 487

Isis, 3564

Greece, 2940

Persia, 5496

Rome, 6176, 6177

## Religions of the World

Christian Religions

Christianity, 1412-1413

Apostles' Creed, 1413, 320

Coptic

Copts, 1670, 2143

Fasts, Festivals, and Special Days, 2376, 2401

All Saints' Day, 228

All Souls' Day, 228

Apostles' Days, 2401

Ascension Day, 439

Holy Thursday, 439

Ash Wednesday, 440

Assumption, Feast of the, 460

Christmas, 1415-1417

Easter, 2088

Origin of Name, 2088

The Annual Date, 2088

Program for Easter, 2088

Epiphany, 2281

Eucharist, 2313

Lord's Supper, 2313

Blessed Sacrament, 2313

Good Friday, 2869

Holy Week, 3204

Innocents, Feast of Holy, 3457

Childermas, 3457

Innocents' Day, 3457

Lent, 3935

Ash Wednesday to Easter Sunday, 3935

Mardi Gras, 4288

Martinmas, 4308

Maundy Thursday, 4349

Holy Thursday, 4349

Derivation of Maundy, 4349

Michaelmas, 4453

Palm Sunday, 5323

Sunday Preceding Easter, 5323

Passion Week, 5411, 3668

Passover, 5411

Ceremonies, 5411

Pentecost, 5476

Feast of Weeks, 5467  
 Whitsunday, 5477  
 Rogation Days, 6162  
 Shrove Tuesday, 4288  
 Tabernacles, Feast of, 6994  
 Thanksgiving, 7135-7136  
 Trinity Sunday, 7270  
 Greek Church, 2951  
   Called Eastern Church, 2951  
   Patriarch, 5415  
   Seven Rites  
     Baptism, 615, 6165  
     Confirmation, 6165  
     Eucharist, 2313  
     Penance, 6165  
     Extreme Unction, 6165  
     Holy Orders, 6165  
     Matrimony, 2951  
     Metropolitan, 4427  
 Great Schism, 2951  
   Photius, 2951, 5575  
   Cecilius, 2951  
 In Greece, 2951, 2944  
 In Rumania, 2951, 6245  
 In Russia, 2951, 6267  
 In Turkey, 2951  
   Treaty of Lausanne, 2951, 3895  
 In Other Countries, 2951  
 Protestantism and Protestant Churches, 5852  
   Adventists, 57-58  
   Amana, 240-241  
   Anabaptists, 269  
   Anglican Church, 285  
     Church of England. [See below.]  
   Baptists, 615-616  
     Secession from Separatists, 616  
     Pilgrims, 5616, 1545, 5665, 1606  
     First Church in America, 616  
     Roger Williams, 7772-7773  
     Baptist Young Peoples' Union, 616  
   Brethren, Church of the, 941  
     Dunkers, Dunkards, Tunkers, 941  
   Christian Catholic Church, 2018  
   Christian Endeavor, Young Peoples' Society of, 1412  
   Francis E. Clark, 1455  
   Christian Science, 1413  
   Teachings in Science and Health, A  
     Key to the Scriptures, 1413  
   Mary Baker Eddy, 1413, 1415  
   Illustrations, 1414  
   Church of England, 1421  
     Augustine Joined It to Rome, 1421, 502  
     Henry VIII Dissolved Roman Connection, 1421, 3144  
   Doctrines, 1421  
     Thirty-Nine Articles, 7150  
   Book of Common Prayer, 1421  
   Hampton Court Conference, 3030  
   Organization  
     Archbishop, 356  
     Canterbury, 356, 1421  
     York, 356, 1421

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints. [See *Mormons*, below.]  
 Congregational Church, 1606  
   Origin of Modern, 1606  
     Separatists, 1606, 1545, 5615, 5665  
   Schools Established by, 1606  
     Amherst College, 261  
     Andover Theological Seminary, 1606  
     Dartmouth College, 1830  
     Yale (College) University, 7924  
 Disciples of Christ, 1956  
   Thomas and Alexander Campbell, 1956  
   Alexander Campbell, 1957  
 Dukhobors, 2051  
 Dunkers. [See *Brethren, Church of the*, above.]  
 Episcopal Church, 2281  
   In America, Protestant Episcopal, 2281  
 Epworth League, 2283  
 Evangelical Alliance, 2329  
 Evangelical Church, 2329  
 Federal Council of Churches of Christ in America, 2389  
 Latter Day Saints, Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of, 3889  
   Dissenters from Mormon Church, 3889  
   Frederick M. Smith, 3889  
 Lutheran Church, 4159-4160  
   Established by Martin Luther, 4159  
   Luther, Martin, 4158  
   Augsburg Confession, 498-499  
 Mennonites, 4393  
   Invited to United States by William Penn, 4393, 5461  
   Where Strongest, 4393  
   Beliefs and Practices, 4393  
 Methodists, 4422-4423  
   African Methodist Churches, 84  
   African Methodist Episcopal, 84  
   Colored Methodist Episcopal Church in America, 84  
   African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church, 84  
   Other Churches  
     Colored Methodist Episcopal, Union American Methodist Episcopal, African Union Methodist Protestant, Reformed Zion Union Apostolic, African American Methodist Episcopal, Reformed Methodist Union Episcopal, 84  
   Free Methodists, 2603  
     Dissenters from Methodist Episcopal, 2603  
     Formerly Nazarites, 2603  
   Methodist Episcopal Church, 4423  
     Epworth League, 2283  
     Lovely Lane Meeting House (Illustration), 4423  
   Methodist Episcopal Church South, 4423  
   Methodist Protestant Church, 4423  
   Wesleyan Methodists, 7710

Organized by John Wesley, 7710  
 Charles Wesley, 7708, 7710  
 Moravian Brethren, 4649  
 First Known as Hussites, 3298  
 Comenius, 4649, 1580  
 Christian David, 4649  
 Mormons, 4653-4656  
 Joseph Smith, Founder, 4653, 6650  
 Revelation of Joseph Smith, 4654  
 The Book of Mormon, 4654  
 Church Organization and Growth, 4654  
 At Fayette, N. Y.; Kirtland, O.;  
 Independence, Mo.; Far West, Mo.;  
 Nauvoo, Ill.; Salt Lake City, Utah.  
 4654-4655  
 The Sect in Utah, 4655, 7427  
 Church Government, 4653  
 Stakes, 4654  
 Doctrines of the Church, 4653  
 Pioneer Day, 4655  
 Tabernacle (illustration), 4655  
 Temples (Illustration), 4656, 1142  
 Sidney Rigdon, 4655  
 James J. Strang, 4655  
 Wilford Woodruff, 4653  
 Brigham Young, 4655, 7950  
 Lion House (Illustration), 4656  
 Presbyterian Church, 5799  
 History  
 Reformed Church, 5801, 6041  
 Calvin, John, 5801, 1100-1101  
 Waldenses, 5801, 7578  
 Covenanters, 5801, 1726  
 United Free Church of Scotland, 5801  
 The Church in America, 5801  
 Quakers (Society of Friends), 5901-5902  
 Founded by George Fox, 5901, 2555  
 Marked Peculiarities, 5902  
 In the United States  
 William Penn, 5901, 5460, 5470  
 Elias Hicks, 5902  
 Hicksites, 5902  
 A Quaker President, 3227  
 Reformed Church, 6041  
 Adhere to Calvinistic Creed, 6041, 1101  
 Salvation Army, 6350-6351  
 Founded as the Christian Mission, 6350  
 Booth Family, 6350, 860-861  
 Edward J. Higgins, New Leader, 3177  
 Map: World-Wide Influence, 6351  
 [See *Volunteers of America*, below.]  
 Shakers, 6524  
 Swedenborgians, 6958  
 New Jerusalem Church, 6958  
 Founded by Swedenborg, 6958-6959  
 Tunkers. [See *Brethren, Church of the*,  
 above.]  
 Unitarians, 7360  
 In the United States, 7360  
 William E. Channing, 7360, 1303  
 Ralph Waldo Emerson, 7360, 2221  
 United Brethren in Christ, 7361  
 William Otterbein, Martin Boehm, 7361

United Church of Canada, 1150  
 Universalists, 7414  
 John Murray, Founder, 7414  
 Volunteers of America, 7568  
 Dissenters from Salvation Army, 7568,  
 6350  
 Ballington Booth, Maud Ballington  
 Booth, Founders, 7568, 860  
 Roman Catholic Church, 6164-6167  
 Early Christian Organization, 6166  
 Embraced by Constantine, 1625  
 Secular Control in Middle Ages, 6166  
 Struggle with Holy Roman Emperors, 6166  
 Holy Roman Empire, 3203  
 Concordat of Worms, 6166  
 Concordat, 1597  
 Loss of Temporal Power, 6166, 3583, 5343  
 Restoration of Temporal Power, 6166, 7468  
 Vatican City, 7468  
 Doctrines, 6164  
 Apostles' Creed and Variants, 320  
 Nicene Creed, 5019  
 Other Creeds, 6164  
 Vulgate, 7572  
 Douai Bible, 725  
 Hierarchy, 6164, 3175  
 Pope, 6164, 5730-5735  
 College of Cardinals, 6164, 1195-1196  
 Pope and the Papacy, 5730-5735  
 Endurance through the Ages, 5730  
 Declared Successor of Saint Peter,  
 5730  
 How Elected, 5731, 1596  
 Conclave, 1596  
 College of Cardinals, 5731, 1195-1196  
 New Pope Assumes New Name, 5731  
 History of the Papacy, 5731-5732  
 About A.D. 64 Peter Went to Rome,  
 5731, 320  
 Spread of the Faith, 5732  
 Benedictine Monks, 5732, 707  
 College of Cardinals Instituted, 5732  
 Removal of Power to Avignon, 5732  
 Palace at Avignon, 5733  
 Papal States, 5732, 5343  
 Seized by Napoleon, 5732, 831  
 Restored in 1815, 5732  
 Seized by Italy, 5732, 3583  
 Restoration of Temporal Power, 5732  
 Vatican City, 5732, 7468, 3573  
 Income of the Pope, 5734  
 Peter's Pence, 5734, 5516  
 Names of All the Popes, 5734-5735  
 Anti-Pope, 5735  
 Priesthood, 6166, 5811  
 Sacraments, 6164-6165  
 Other Beliefs and Ceremonies, 6166  
 Mass, 4324  
 Purgatory, 5887  
 Veneration of Saints, 6166  
 Six Forceful Precepts, 6166  
 Hear Mass, 6166, 4324  
 Receive Communion at Easter, 6166

Observe Fasts, 6166, 2376  
 Make Confession, 6166  
 Contribute to Support of Church, 6166  
 Refrain from Forbidden Marriage, 6166  
 Orders and Societies  
   Benedictines, 707  
   Capuchins, 1188  
   Carthusians, 1220  
   Charity, Sisters of, 1312  
   Dominicans, 2009  
     Great Names in the Order, 2009  
   Franciscans, 2590  
     Saint Francis of Assisi, 2591  
   Friars, 2621  
   Hermits, 3162  
     Paul of Thebes, 3162  
     Saint Anthony, 307  
   Jesuits, 3661-3662  
     Founded by Loyola, 3661-3662, 4142  
     Called Society of Jesus, 3661  
     Identified with Counter-Reformation, 3662, 1721, 6040  
     Educators and Missionaries, 3662  
     Saint Francis Xavier, 3662, 7915  
     Father Marquette, 4298  
     Winter Quarters, 4299  
   Knights Hospitalers of Saint John, 3805  
   Knights of Columbus, 3805  
   Mendicant Orders, 4391  
   Mercy, Sisters of, 4408  
   Monasticism, 4579-4580  
     Monastery, 4579  
     Saint Anthony, 307  
     Saint Basil, 4580  
     Saint Benedict, 4580, 707  
     Saint Pachomius, 4580, 5116  
     Saint Simon Stylites, 4580  
     Important Orders, 4580  
     Map: French Monasteries, 4580  
   Nuncio, 5116  
   Paulists, 5421  
   Templars, Knights, 7091  
     Crusades, 1761-1764  
   Trappists, 7253-7254  
     Named for the Abbot of LaTrappe, 7253  
   Ursulines, 7422  
     Saint Ursula, 7422  
 Terms Associated with the Church  
   Abbey, 3  
   Abbot and Abbess, 3  
   Angelus, 282  
   Archbishop, 356  
   Asceticism, 439  
   Ave Maria, 547  
     [Colored Illustration, facing 547.]  
   Ban, 594  
   Beads, 656  
   Benefit of Clergy, 707  
   Bishop, 774  
   Breviary, 942  
     Missal, 942, 4533  
     Ritual, 942

Bull, 1017, 2861  
 Canonization, 1176  
 Canon Law, 1176  
 Cardinal, 1195-1196, 5731  
 Censer, 1282  
 Conclave, 1596, 5731  
 Concordat, 1597  
   Of Worms, 6166  
     With Italy, 5732, 3573, 7468  
 Constance, Council of, 3682  
 Constantinople, Council of, 3337  
 Counter Reformation, 1721  
   Trent, Council of, 7262  
 Elevation of the Host, 2204  
 Encyclical, 2233  
 Eucharist, 2313  
 Excommunication, 2342  
   Ancient Bells, 702  
 Fasts, 2376  
 Heresy, 3161  
 Holy Office, 3457  
 Holy Orders, 6165  
 Holy Water, 3204  
 Holy Week, 3204  
 Incense, 3372  
 Index Expurgatorius, 3377  
 Indulgence, 3433  
   Plenary, Partial, 3433  
   Tetzel, Johann, 7117  
 Inquisition, 3457  
   Holy Office, 3457  
 Lateran Councils, 3884  
 Legate, 3923  
 Limbo, 4006  
 Litany, 4046  
 Liturgy, 4058  
 Magnificat, 4219  
 Marriage, Banns of, 614  
 Mass, 4324  
 Missal, 4533  
 Monk, 4595  
 Nicaea, Councils of, 3337, 5019  
 Nun, 5116  
 Nuncio, 5116  
 Priest, 5811  
 Purgatory, 5887  
 Rosary, 6201  
   The Song, 6201  
 Sacrament, 6293  
 Sacred College, 6294  
 Saint Bartholomew's Day, 6302-6303  
 Unction, 7350  
 Vatican, 7465-7468  
   Illustrations, 7467  
 Vatican Council, 7469  
 Vatican City, 7468  
   Benito Mussolini, 4782  
   Italy, 3573  
   Papal States, 5343  
   Illustration, Boundaries, 7468  
 Non-Christian Religions  
   Babism, 553  
   Brahmanism, or Hinduism, 917

Religious and Social System, 917  
 No Definite Founder, 917  
 Named for the Brahmins, 917  
 Brahma, Supreme Being, 916-917  
 Castes, 917  
   Castes in India, 1231  
 Number of Followers, 6051, 917  
 Stages toward Perfection, 917  
 Triad, 917  
   Brahma, 916  
   Siva, 917, 6629  
   Vishnu, 917, 7548  
   Krishna, 3816  
 Vedas, 7469  
   Brahmanas, 7470  
 Buddhism, 999-1000  
   Founded by Buddha, 1000  
   Siddhartha Gautama, 1000  
   Moral Code Second to Christianity, 1000  
   Nirvana, the Chief Good, 999  
   Transmigration of the Soul, 999, 7244, 7246  
 Confucianism, 1605  
   Confucius, Founder, 1605  
 Hinduism. [See *Brahmanism*, above.]  
 Judaism (Jewish)  
   Jews, or Israelites, 3672, 3674-3676  
   Founders Were Hebrew Prophets, 3675  
   Yahweh, National City, 3674-3675  
   Jehovah, 3675  
   God, 2850  
   Literature of Judaism, 3121-3122  
     Old Testament, 3122, 724  
   High Priest, 3178  
   Rabbi, 5925  
   Synagogue, 6984-6985  
   Tabernacle, 6993  
     Ark of the Covenant, 396  
   Zionist Movement, 7975, 3661  
 [See *Basis of Beliefs*, below; *Story of the Jews*, in the Outline on *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Mohammedanism, 4569-4571  
   Mohammed, Founder, 4569, 4567  
     The Hegira, 4568, 3125  
     Ali, Husband of Fatima, True Successor, 4571  
   Called Islam by Mohammed, 4569, 3564  
   The Koran. [See *Basis of Beliefs*, below.]  
   Cardinal Principles, 4570  
   Caliph and Caliphate, 4571, 1007  
     Sunnites, 4571  
     Shiites, 4571, 6560  
   Al-Borak, 4568  
   Allah, 223  
   Derrish, 1913  
   Fakir, 2364  
   Hadj, 3000  
   Kaaba, 3729  
   Madhi, 4222  
   Mosque, 4674  
   Muezzin, 4497  
   Pilgrimage to Mecca, 4368

Map: Mohammedan Countries, 4571  
 Number of Adherents, 4569, 6051  
 Parsees, 5401, 3382, 7228  
   Modern Followers of Zoroaster, 5401  
   Zend-Avesta, 7971-7972  
   Beliefs and Customs, 5401  
     Towers of Silence, 7227-7228, 5401  
 Shintoism, 6561, 3624  
   Beliefs, 6561  
   Sun Worship, 6561  
   Ancestor Worship, 6561, 274  
 Taoism, 7016  
   Lao-tse, Founder, 7016, 1605  
 Zoroastrianism, 7987  
   Zoroaster, Founder, 7987  
   Ghebers, 2797  
   Parsees, Modern Followers, 5401  
**Other Beliefs and Practices**  
 Agnosticism, 87  
   Agnostic, 87  
   Sophists, 6689  
 Ancestor Worship, 274  
 Animal Worship, 292  
   Transmigration of the Soul, 7244, 7246  
 Animism, 292  
 Atheism, 479  
   Robert G. Ingersoll, 3451  
 Demonology, 1890  
 Devil Worship, 1924  
 Druids, 2039-2040  
 Faith Cure, 2363  
 Fatalism, 2378  
 Fetishism, 2402  
 Fire Worship, 2435  
 Free Thinkers, 2603  
   Anthony Collins, 2603  
   John Toland, 2603  
   Voltaire, 2603, 7565-7566  
 Idolatry, 3346  
   Idol, 3345-3346  
   Mohammed; Dread of, 3346, 4571  
   Iconoclasts, 3346, 3336-3337  
 Incantation, 3372  
 Lamaism, 3846  
 Mysticism, 4786  
 Nature Worship, 4833, 4787, 4790  
 New Thought, 4960  
 Nonconformists, 5040  
 Pantheism, 5341  
 Spiritualism, 6767-6768  
   One of the Pseudo-Sciences, 6767, 6434  
   Seances, 6767  
     The Cabinet, 6767  
     Ectoplasm, 2101  
     Trance Mediums, 6767, 6768  
   Mesmeric States, 6767, 4412  
 Theosophy, 7142  
   Annie Besant, 7142, 721  
   Madame Blavatsky, 788  
   Jakob Boehme, 7142  
 Witchcraft. [See Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Voodooism, 7568

## The Foundations of Beliefs

- Bible, The, 723-732  
 Best-Selling Book in the World, 724  
 Work of About Forty Authors, 725, 730  
   In Aramaic, 343, 3121  
   In Hebrew, 3121  
   In Greek, 725  
 Septuagint, 725, 6499  
 Vulgate and Douai Bible, 725, 7572  
   Council of Trent, 725, 7262  
 English Bible Helped to Crystallize the  
   Language, 725  
   Coverdale's, 1726  
   Tyndale's, 7337  
   Wycliffe's, 7903  
 Accepted English Versions, 725-726  
   King James', 725, 3613  
   Revised Version, 726  
 Other Modern Versions  
   American Authorized Version, 726  
   Goodspeed's, 726, 2870  
 Divisions of the Bible, 726, 728  
   Old Testament, 726, 730  
     Books of the Law, 726, 728  
       Genesis, 2715  
       Exodus, 2344  
       Leviticus, 3955  
       Numbers, 5113  
       Deuteronomy, 1924  
     Books of History  
       Joshua, 3702  
       Judges, 3705  
       Ruth, 6282-6284  
       Samuel (I, II), 6357, 6359  
       Kings, (I, II), 3795  
       Chronicles (I, II), 1418  
       Ezra, 2355  
       Nehemiah, 4872  
       Esther, 2299-2300  
     Books of Poetry  
       Job, 3680  
       Psalms, 5861  
       Proverbs, 5854  
       Ecclesiastes, 2092  
       Song of Solomon, 6684  
       Lamentations, 3847  
     Books of Prophecy  
       Isaiah, 3562  
       Jeremiah, 3655-3656  
       Ezekiel, 2354-2355  
       Daniel, 1820-1821  
       Hosea, 3255-3256  
       Joel, 3680  
       Amos, 730  
       Obadiah, 730  
       Jonah, 3694  
       Micah, 4453  
       Nahum, 4801  
       Habakkuk, 2996  
       Zephaniah, 7972  
       Haggai, 3003  
       Zechariah, 7971  
       Malachi, 4236  
     Authors of the above, 730  
   New Testament, 728, 730  
     Matthew, 2878, 320  
     Mark, 2878, 4294  
     Luke, 2878, 4144  
     John, 2878, 319  
     Acts of the Apostles, 23  
     Epistles of Paul, 730, 5420  
       Romans, 6169  
       Corinthians (I, II), 1677  
       Galatians, 2661  
       Ephesians, 2276-2277  
       Philippians, 5548  
       Colossians, 5420  
       Thessalonians (I, II), 7148  
       Timothy (I, II), 7180  
       Titus, 7189  
       Philemon, 5546  
     James, 3614  
     Peter (I, II), 5515, 320  
     John (I, II, III), 320  
     Jude, 3704  
     Hebrews, 3122  
     Revelation, 6068-6069  
       The Apocalypse, 318  
     Authors of the above, 730  
   Chronology of the Bible, 729, 4959  
   Famous Versions of the Bible, 730  
     Breeches Bible, 730  
     Bug Bible, 730  
     Caxton Memorial Bible, 730  
     Gutenberg Bible, 732  
     Mazarin Bible, 730  
     Treacle Bible, 730  
     Vinegar Bible, 730  
   The Bible as Literature, 728  
   Unmatched in Literary Forms, 728-729  
   The Bible for Children, 729  
   Twenty Excellent Stories, 729  
   The Canon, 728  
   The Apocrypha, 728, 318  
 Koran, The, 3813-3814  
   Revelation of God to Mohammed, 3813  
   Mohammed, 4567-4568  
   Mohammedanism, 4569-4571  
   [See *Non-Christian Religions*, above.]  
 Talmud, 7010, 3121  
   Mishna, 7010, 3121  
   Gemara, 7010, 3121

## Men and Women of the Bible

Aaron, 2, 4672  
 Abel, 8, 24  
 Abimelech, 3561

Abraham, 10, 2715, 3561-3562, 3608  
 Absalom, 10  
 Adam, 24

Adonijab, 6681  
 Ahab, 107, 2207, 3653  
 Ahasuerus, 107, 2299, 3024  
 Ahaz, 108, 3170  
 Amos, 3656  
 Ananias, 272  
 Annas, 3668  
 Apostles, The Twelve, 319-320  
   Andrew, 319  
   Bartholomew, 319  
   James, 319  
   James the Greater, 319  
   John, 319-320  
   Judas, 320  
   Judas Iscariot, 320  
   Matthew, 320  
   Peter, 320  
   Philip, 320  
   Simon, 320  
   Thomas, 320  
 Artaxerxes, 270, 1800, 4872  
 Balaam, 574  
 Balok, 574  
 Barabbas, 616  
 Barak, 1853  
 Barnabas, 623, 5419  
 Bathsheba, 6681  
 Belshazzar, 706, 1820  
 Benjamin, 709, 3700, 5932  
 Bildad, 3680  
 Boaz, 6284  
 Caiaphas, 3668  
 Cain, 1068, 24, 8  
 Daniel, 1820, 706, 4866  
   In the Den of Lions (Illustration), 1821  
 David, 1834-1836, 5861, 6681, 6684, 6359, 6399  
 Deborah, 1853  
 Delilah, 1885, 6357  
 Eli, 2207, 6359  
 Elijah, 2207, 2209, 107  
 Eliphaz, 3680  
 Elisha, 2209  
 Ephraim, 3700  
 Esau, 2292, 3607  
 Esther, 2299, 3024, 108  
 Ethbaal, King of Tyre, 107  
 Eve, 24  
 Ezekiel, 2354  
 Ezra, 2355  
 Festus, Porcius, 2402, 5420  
 Gabriel, 2656  
 Gad, 2657  
 Gamaliel, 2672, 5419, 6374  
 Gedaliah, 3656  
 Gideon, 2805  
 Goliath, 2868, 1834, 2704  
 Habakkuk, 2996  
 Hagar, 3562, 10  
 Haggai, 3003  
 Ham, 5036  
 Haman, 3024, 2299  
 Hannah, 6359  
 Heber the Kenite, 1853

Herod, 3163  
   Herod the Great, 3163  
   Herod Antipas, 3163, 3692  
   Herod Agrippa I, 3163  
   Herod Agrippa II, 3163  
 Herodias, 3163, 3692  
 Hezekiah, 3170, 3562  
 Hilkiah, 3655, 3702  
 Hosea, 3255-3256  
 Isaac, 3561-3562, 10, 2292  
 Isaiah, 3562  
 Ishmael, 3563, 3562, 10  
 Jacob, 3607, 2292  
 Jael, 1853  
 James, 3614  
 Japheth, 5036  
 Jehoiaxim, 2996  
 Jehoram, 3653  
 Jehoshaphat, 3653  
 Jehu, 3653  
 Jeremiah, 3655, 2354  
 Jeroboam, 3656  
 Jesse, 1834  
 Jesus Christ, 3662-3671  
   Greatest Influence upon Humanity, 3662  
   Early Years, 3666  
     Mary, the Virgin, Mother of Jesus, 3666,  
       4309-4310  
     Joseph, the Carpenter, 3666, 3698  
   Early Ministry  
     Baptized by John the Baptist, 3666, 3692  
     Retirement to the Wilderness, 3666  
     Selection of Disciples, 319-320  
   Second Year's Ministry, 6668  
     Sermon on the Mount, 3668  
     Performed Miracles, 3668, 4528  
   The Last Months, 3668  
     In the Garden of Gethsemane, 3668, 2792-  
       2793  
     The Betrayal and Arrest, 3668  
       Judas Iscariot, 3668, 320  
     Hearings before Annas, Caiaphas, and  
       Pontius Pilate, 3668, 5615  
     The Crucifixion, 3668  
   His Resurrection, 3671, 6066  
   The Transfiguration (Illustration), 3670  
   Events in the Life of Christ, 4959  
   Other Illustrations  
     The Assumption, 459  
     The Last Supper (in Color), facing 7530  
     The Sistine Madonna, 5996  
     The Crucifixion, 3669  
     Christ Blessing Little Children, 3667  
     The Entry into Jerusalem, 3665  
     Christ before Pilate, 3665  
     Finding Christ in the Temple, 3664  
     Casting Out the Money Changers, 3664  
     The Miraculous Draft of Fishes, 3664  
     The Arrival of the Shepherds, 3663  
     The Good Shepherd, 3663  
 Jethro, 4471  
 Jezebel, 107  
 Job, 3680

- Joel, 3680  
 John the Baptist, 3691, 3666  
     Herod Antipas, 3163  
 Jonah, 3694-3695  
 Jonathan, 1835, 6399  
 Joseph, 3698-3700  
     Son of Jacob, 3698-3699  
     Brother of Benjamin, 709  
     Sold into Egypt, 3699  
     Became Prime Minister under Pharaoh,  
         3700, 5531  
     The Famine in Canaan, 3700  
     Brothers Appear before Joseph, 3700  
     The Family Reunited, 3700  
 Joseph, Husband of Mary, 3666, 3698  
 Joseph of Arimathea, 3702, 3668  
     Connected with the Holy Grail, 3201  
 Joshua, 3702  
 Josiah, 3702, 2709, 463  
 Judah, 3704  
 Judith, 3706  
     *Judith* Is a Book of the Apocrypha, 318  
 Keturah, 4471  
 Laban, 3607, 5932  
 Lazarus, 3901  
 Leah, 3607, 7970, 2657  
 Levi, 3952  
 Malachi, 4236  
 Manasseh, 3700, 2807  
 Mary, the Virgin, 3666, 4309-4310  
 Mary Magdalen, 4318  
 Matthias, 4173  
 Methuselah, 4423  
 Micah, 4453  
 Michael, Saint, 4453  
 Moab, 4563  
 Mordecai, 3024, 2299  
 Moses, 4670-4674  
 Naboth, 107  
 Nahum, 4801  
 Naomi, 6282. [See *Ruth*, below.]  
 Nathan, 5354, 6681  
 Nebuchadnezzar, 4864-4866, 562, 4801, 7092  
 Nehemiah, 4872  
 Nimrod, 5032  
     Founder of Nineveh, 5032, 462-463  
 Noah, 5036, 343, 7175, 2715  
     Illustration of Ararat, facing 343  
 Obadiah, 730  
 Og, 5166  
 Paul, 5419-5421  
     In Early Life Saul of Tarsus, 5419  
     Conversion at Age of Thirty-two, 5419  
     Missionary Journeys, 5419-5420  
     Coworker with Timothy, 7180  
     Events in the Life of Paul, 4959  
     Pharaoh, 5531, 3700, 4670, 6682  
     Philip the Evangelist, 5546  
     Pilate, Pontius, 5615, 3668, 3702  
     Rachel, 5932, 3607, 3700  
         One of the Wives of Jacob, 3607  
         Tomb (Illustration), 5933  
     Rebecca, 3562  
     Rehoboam, 6684  
     Ruth, 6282, 6284  
         Ruth and Naomi (Illustration), 6283  
     Salome, 3692, 3163  
     Samson, 6357, 1885, 2708  
         The Opera Samson and Delilah, 5222  
     Samuel, 6357, 6359, 1834  
     Sapphira, 272  
     Sarah, 10, 3562  
     Sargon, 462  
     Saul, 6399, 1835, 240  
         Witch of Endor, 6399  
     Sennacherib, 462, 3172  
     Sheba, Queen of, 2305, 6683  
         Illustration, 6682  
     Shem, 5036  
     Sisera, 1853  
     Solomon, 6681-6684  
         Son of David, 6681, 1836  
         Third King of Israel, 6681  
         His Dream, 6681-6682  
         Built the Temple, 6682, 7092, 5570  
         Married a Pharaoh's Daughter, 6682  
         Jerusalem Fortified, 3660  
         His Surroundings of Splendor, 6682-6683  
         The Wisdom of Solomon, 6683  
         Visit of the Queen of Sheba, 6683, 2305  
         Writer of Songs and Poetry, 6683, 6684,  
             728, 5855  
         A Man of Many Wives, 6683  
     Stephen, 6827  
     Timothy, 7180  
     Titus, 7189  
     Uzziah, 3562, 2704  
     Vashti, 2299  
     Zadok, 6681  
     Zebulun, 7970  
     Zechariah, 7971  
     Zedekiah, 7971  
     Zephaniah, 7972  
     Zerubbabel, 7092, 3003  
     Zilpah, 2657  
     Zophar, 3680

### Miscellaneous Terms Connected with Religion

- Adonai, 3653  
 Alpha and Omega, 233  
 Altar, 237  
 Amalekites, 240  
 Amen, 246  
 Angel, 281  
     Archangel, 356  
 Antichrist, 308  
 Apocrypha, 318  
 Apostles' Creed, 320  
     Old and New Forms, 320  
 Ark, 396  
     Noah's Vessel, 396, 5036  
     Moses' Cradle of Bulrushes, 396, 4670



- Ark of the Covenant, 396
- Arles, Council of, 1421
- Armageddon, 406
- Ashterah, 463
- Askelon, 2704, 5563
- Astarte, 463, 5569
- Atonement, 493
- Baal, 552, 2207
- Babel, Tower of, 552
- Bashan, 5166
- Beelzebub, 685
- Beersheba, 5312
- Bethel, 5312
- Bethlehem (Illustration), 3666, 5312, 5313
- Bible Society 732
- Bishop, 774
- Blasphemy, 787-788
- Calendar, 1076
- Canaanites, 1116
  - Descendants of Ham, 5036
- Catechism, 1240
- Cathedral, 1243-1246
  - How Great Cathedrals Were Built, 1244
  - Most Famous European, 1246
  - Cathedral Architecture, 1246. [See, also, Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]
- Chaldea, 1296
  - Ur of the Chaldees, 1296
  - A Butcher Bill (Illustration), 350
- Chaplain, 1303
- Cherub, or Cherubim, 1343-1344
- Christian Era, 1412
- Church, 1420
- Cities of Refuge, 1435
- Cloister, 1488
- Commandments, 2344
  - Decalogue, 1855
- Covenanters, 1726
- Creed, 1739-1740
  - Apostles', 320
  - Nicene, 5019
  - Other Creeds, 1739-1740
- Cross, 1756
- Dan, 5312
- Deaconess, 1844
- Deluge, 1886-1887
  - Noah, 5036
  - Ararat, 343
  - Biblical Story Verified, 1886-1887
  - Folklore, 1887
- Devil, 1924
- Eden, Garden of, 2107
- Edomites, 2292
- Eikon, 2157
- Elohim, 2217, 3653
- Endor, Witch of, 2234, 6399
- Esdraelon, Plain of, 2292
- Exegesis, 2343
- Fanatic, 2369
- Font, 2508
- Foreordination, 2532
- Fundamentalists
  - William J. Bryan, 987
- Evolution, 2341
- Galilee, 2663
- Gath, 2704, 2868, 5563
- Gaza, 2708
- Gehenna, 2709
- Gennesaret. [See *Galilee*, above.]
- Gentiles, 2719-2720
- Gethsemane, 2793
  - Illustration, 2792
- Gibeon, 2802
- Gideon, 2805, 2292
  - Gideon's Band, 2805
- Gilead, 2807
  - Balm of Gilead, 587
- Gnostics, 2847
- Gog and Magog, 2854
- Golden Calf, 2861
- Gomorrah, 6676
- Goshen, 2877
- Gospels, The Four, 2877-2878
- Grace, 2884
- Hades, 3000
- Heaven, 3120
- Hebron, 5312
- Hell, 3134
- Hexateuch. [See *PENTATEUCH*, 5476.]
- Hinnom, Valley of, 2709, 3702
- Hittites, 3187
- Hivites, 1116
- Holy City, 3201
- Holy Family, 3201
- Holy Grail, 3201
- Huguenots, 3279-3280
- Hussites, 3298
- Hymns, Famous, 3317-3318
- Iconoclasts, 3336
- Ikon. [See *Eikon*, above.]
- I. H. S., 3349
- Immortality, 3368
- Jaffa (Joppa), 5314, 3694
- Jebusites, 1116
- Jehovah, 3653
- Jericho, 5312
- Jerusalem, 3658-3661, 5316, 7870, 3668
  - Sacred to All Religions, 3658
  - History Traced to 15th Century B.C., 3660
  - During the World War, 3660-3661, 7870
  - Wailing Wall (Illustration), 3659
- Jordan River, 3697-3698, 5314
- Jubilee, 3704
- Judea, 3704
- Kish, 1886-1887, 3797, 6399
- Kosher, 3814
- Leviathan, 3952
- Levites, 3952
- Lollards, 4091
- Lord's Prayer, 4109-4110
- Lucifer, 4143
- Machpelah, Cave of, 10, 3608, 3187
- Manna, 4267
- Mars Hill, 4306, 372, 5420.
  - Areopagus, 372
- Martyr, 4309

- Messiah**, 4413  
**Midianites**, 4471  
**Millennium**, 4487  
**Miracle**, 4528, 3668  
     The Loaves and Fishes (Illustration), 4527  
**Miracle Play**, 4528  
**Missions and Missionaries**, 4533, 4534  
**Moabites**, 4563  
**Moloch**, 4576  
**Myrrh**, 4784  
**Mysteries**, 4785  
**Nazareth**, 5312  
**Nebo (God of Assyria)**, 4854  
**Nebo, Mount**, 4854  
     **Moses**, 4672  
**New Testament Chronology**, 4958-4959  
**New Testament Criticism**, 4959-4960  
**Nineveh**, 462-463, 5032  
**Olives, Mount of**, 5194  
     Gethsemane and the Mount (Illustration), 3661  
**Ophir**, 5225-5226  
**Oxford Movement**, 5280  
**Palestine**, 5310-5316  
     **Cities, Ancient**  
         Acre, 5310  
         Beersheba, Bethel, Bethlehem, Hebron, Jericho, Nazareth, 5312  
         Jerusalem, 3658-3661  
         Samaria, 5314  
     **Cities, Modern**  
         Haifa, Jaffa, 5314  
     Description of the Land, 5314-5315  
     Mandate to Great Britain, 5315, 4253  
**Parable**, 5354  
     Illustration, 5355  
**Paradise**, 5357  
     Heaven, 3120  
**Passion Play**, 5408-5411  
**Patmos**, 5415  
     John the Apostle, 320  
**Patriarch**, 5415-5416  
**Pentateuch**, 5476  
**Pharisees**, 5531, 6295  
**Philippi**, 5420  
**Philistines**, 5563  
**Predestination**, 5797  
**Prophet**, 5847  
     [See *Bible, Books of Prophecy*, above.]  
**Reformation, The**, 6037-6040  
     Martin Luther, Leader, 6037, 4158-4159  
         Opposed Grant of Indulgences, 4158, 3433  
         The Ninety-five Theses, 4158  
         Denied Supremacy of Pope, 4158  
         Burned Papal Bull, 4158  
         Diet of Worms, 4159  
         Organized New Church, 4159  
     Power of Roman Catholic Church, 6037  
         Pope Supreme over Temporal Powers, 6037  
         Condition of Poor Pitiable, 6037  
     Situation in Germany, 6038  
         Peasant War, 6038, 5436  
         Schmalkaldic League, 6038, 6414  
     In Switzerland, 6038  
         John Calvin, 6037, 6039, 1100-1101  
         Ulrich Zwingli, 6037, 7990  
     In France, 6039  
         The Huguenots, 6039, 3279  
         Edict of Nantes, 4805  
     In Scandinavia, 6039  
         Augsburg Confession, 498-499  
     In the Netherlands, 6040  
         William of Orange, 6040, 7771  
     In England, 6040  
         Henry VIII, 6040, 3144  
         Edward VI, 6040, 2133  
         Mary I, 6040, 4310  
         Efforts to Restore Catholicism, 6040  
         Results of the Reformation, 6040  
**Religious Liberty**, 6052  
**Resurrection**, 6066  
     Illustration, 6067  
**Sabbath**, 6290  
**Sacrament**, 6293  
**Sacrifice**, 6294  
**Sadducees**, 6295, 553  
**Samaria**, 5314  
     Illustration of Samaria, 6352  
**Samaritans**, 6353  
**Sanhedrin**, 6374  
     Christ Tried before, 3668  
     Peter Tried before, 320  
     Stephen Tried before, 6374  
     Experience of Paul, 5420  
     Gamaliel, 2672  
**Scapegoat**, 6409  
**Scribes**, 6454  
**Selah**, 6486  
**Septuagint**, 6499  
**Seraphim**, 1343  
**Shinar, Plain of**, 552  
**Sinai**, 6616  
     Decalogue, 1855  
     Moses, 4672  
**Sodom**, 6676  
**Sunday Schools**, 6926  
**Supernaturalism**, 6931  
**Trinity**, 7270  
**Ur of the Chaldees**, 10, 1296  
**Vicar**, 7515  
**Witch of Endor**, 6399, 2234  
  
     **Saints**  
     [See Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]  
  
     **Religious Architecture**  
     [See Outline on *Architecture*, in this GUIDE.]  
  
     **Churchmen**  
     [See Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]

# SOCIOLOGY

## A General Survey

The Province of Sociology, 6671

Related Sciences

Anthropology, 308

Ethnography, 2307-2308

Ethnology, 2308

Biology, 748-749

Civics, 1442

Economics, 2098

History, 3185-3186

Philosophy, 5566-5567

Psychology, 5865

[See Outlines on these subjects, in this GUIDE.]

Development of Sociology as a Science

First Use of Name by Comte, 6671, 1595

Spencer's Application of Evolution to Social

Institutions, 6756

Formal Study of Sociology

Five Chief Classes, 6671

Divisions for Practical Study

Descriptive and Applied Sociology. [See sections below.]

## Descriptive Sociology

The Social Population

What Constitutes Population, 5739

Number and Rate of Increase

Birth Rate and Death Rate, 5739

Infant Mortality, 554, 3447

Average Duration of Human Life, 3978-3979

Factors Tending to Increase the Rate

Accidents in City Streets, 15

Accidents in Industry, 2230, 4506

Epidemics, 2279

Famine, 2369

Suicide, 6914-6915

War, 7591

Factors Tending to Decrease the Rate

Instruction in Accident Prevention, 15-16

Activities of National Safety Council, 4819

Warnings to Be Heeded, 16

Spread of Medical Knowledge and Hygiene, 3980, 3312

[See *Prevention of Diseases and Epidemics*, in the Outline on *Medicine and Drugs*, in this GUIDE.]

Advance of Aseptic Surgery, 6942, 312

Control of Famine

By Irrigation, 3559, 2369

By Flood Control, 2369, 2471

By Transportation Development, 7246

Movement against War, 3488, 5425-5426

Proportion of Sexes

Larger Number of Male Births, 5739, 6521

Overpopulation, 5740

Theory of Malthus, 4242, 5740

Primitive Methods of Control, 5740

Spartan Custom of Infanticide, 6743, 2940

Modern Method of Birth Control, 5740

Margaret Sanger, 6374

Movements of Population

Emigration and Immigration, 2222-2227

From Rural to Urban Areas, 5739-5740

Distribution of Population. [See Outline on *Anthropology*, in this GUIDE.]

Counting of Population

Census-Taking, 1282-1284

Effect of Physical Environment, 2275-2276

Climate, 1482, 2275

Acclimatization, 16

Effect of Adverse Conditions

On Eskimos, 2293-2297, 2275

On Nomads, 5039-5040

On Peoples in the Tropics, 1482, 2275,  
2727

Effect of Favorable Conditions

On Peoples in Temperate Zones, 2275  
Varied Climate of United States, 7367

Effect of Isolated Position

On the English, 2243

Effect of Mountains

On the Scottish Highlanders, 6437

On the Swiss, 6970

On the Ancient Greeks, 2942

Modification of Environment, 2276

Man's Progress in Civilization, 1444-1449

Conquests of the Engineer, 2238, 2240,  
2242

The Development of Transportation,  
7246-7251

[See, in this GUIDE, Outlines on *Agriculture, Engineering, Invention, and Transportation and Communication.*]

### The Nature of Man

#### Man's Position in the Animal Kingdom

Most Highly Organized Animal, 4245

In the Class Mammalia, 4242

In the Order Primates, 5811

#### Man's Inherited Nature, 3159

His Instincts, 3467-3468

Fear, 2385

Pugnacity, 282

Gregarianism, 51

His Capacities

Emotion, 2228

Feeling, 2391

Interest, 3476

Imagination, 1305, 3366-3368

His Tendencies

Toward Altruism, 238, 1304

Toward Egoism, 238

#### Variations in Inborn Nature

Due to Heredity, 3158, 2340, 7986

Inheritance of Intellectual and Moral  
Traits, 3160-3161

Relation between Mind and Body, 4497

Feeble-Mindedness, 2391, 7986

Insanity, 3458, 7986

Efforts to Counteract Defects

Eugenics, Science of Good Birth, 2314-  
2315

Sir Francis Galton, 3159, 2669

[See Outline on *Psychology*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Racial Inheritance

Comparison of Negro and White, 3160

Comparison of Several European Races, 3161

Adaptability, Anglo-Teutonic Trait, 16

#### Acquired Nature of Man

Habits, 2997-2998

Relation to Intuition, 3492

Dependence upon Subconscious, 6884

Habits in Childhood, 2998

During Adolescence, 51

Health Habits, 3104-3106

Degenerative Habits, 2998

Drug Habit, 2998, 4375, 5226

Character Training. [See sections on *Character Training*, Part II, in this GUIDE.]

### Building of Social Life

#### Communication Its Basis

Language, a Measure of Man's Development, 3858-3871

Education, Removal of Mental Barriers,  
2112-2131

Cultural Means of Communication

Drama, 2022-2023

Literature, 4047-4053

Moving Pictures, 4703, 4729

Music, 4759-4776

Painting, 5299-5308

Sculpture, 6455-6462

Typical Inventions

Phonograph, 5572-5574

Photography, 5579-5584

Printing, 5817-5823

Radio, 5935-5968

Telegraph, 7058-7066

Telephone, 7067-7080

Methods of Transportation, 7246-7252

#### Conflict as a Social Process

Between Individuals

Avenger of Blood, 800

Vendetta and Feud, 800, 7476, 4571

Duel, 2050

Between Races

Indians and Americans, 3406-3407

Mongolian and Indo-European

Former Seclusion of Japan, 3636, 5491

Former Seclusion of China, 1394, 1396

Limitation of Oriental Immigration,  
965, 1095

Between Classes

French Revolution, 2615-2619

Russian Revolution, 6270-6272

Between Labor and Capital

Syndicalism, 6985

Strike, 6879, 6985

Sabotage, 6292, 6985

Boycott, 903, 6985

Between City States

Athens and Sparta (Peloponnesian War),  
5448-5488, 2946-2947

Between Nations

World War, 7849-7892

Some Forms of Conflict

Affray, 6134

Raids, 1446

Riots, 6134

Rebellion

Sepoy Rebellion, 6496

Rebellion of 1837, 6020

Saskatchewan Rebellion, 6395-6396

Wat Tyler's Rebellion, 7683

Insurrection

Whisky Insurrection, 7742

Revolution: Anarchical, Constitutional,  
Governmental, 6069

- [See Outline on *History*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Assimilation as a Social Process**  
 Influence of Imitation, 7765  
 Through Advertising, 60-66  
 Through Customs and Traditions. [See Outline on *Anthropology and Manners and Customs*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Through Fashions, 2375-2376, 3008-3009  
 In Slang, 6637  
 Influence of Language, 3858, 3869-3871  
 Influence of Naturalization, 4820-4822  
 Alien, 221  
 Citizen, 1435-1436  
 Americanization, 249, 7367  
 Aids  
 Churches, 249  
 Community Centers, 249, 1588  
 Playgrounds, 249, 5656  
 Social Settlements, 249, 6670  
 Schools, 6418, 6423  
 Influence of Suggestion, 6912, 7765  
 Through Elimination of Illiteracy, 3363-3366  
 [See Outline on *Education*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Coöperation as a Social Process**  
 In Thought  
 Encyclopedia, 2233-2234  
 University, 7414-7417  
 In Effort  
 Army Obeying a Commander, 412  
 Factory Under a Manager, 2359  
 Orchestra Under a Leader, 5237  
 Of Will  
 Legislative Assemblies, 3924  
 Agricultural Coöperation, 1662-1664  
 [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Business Coöperation  
 Partnership, 5404-5405, 6836  
 Joint-Stock Companies, 3693  
 Corporations, 1696, 1698  
 Trusts, 7282-7284  
 [See Outline on *Business*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Consumer Coöperation, 1662  
 Robert Owen, Founder of the Movement, 5277-5278  
 The Rochdale Plan, 1662  
 Economic Coöperation  
 Banks and Banking, 604-613, 1664  
 Building and Loan Associations, 1011-1012  
 Insurance, 3470-3473  
 [See Outline on *Economics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Political Theories of Coöperation  
 Of Anarchism, 272-273  
 Of Communism, 1587  
 Of Socialism, 6668-6669  
 [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Organizations in Social Life

#### Racial Groups

- Family, 4242  
 Dependent on Marriage, 4300  
 Clans or Tribes, 1453-1454

#### Civil Groups

- Aristocracy, 381

#### Examples

- Athens, 381, 480  
 Sparta, 381, 6743  
 Rome, 381

#### Democracy, 1888

##### Examples

- Andorra, 277  
 Canada, 1117  
 France, 2586  
 Germany, 2768  
 San Marino, 6376  
 United States, 7362

#### Empire, 2228

##### Examples

- British Empire, 965  
 Ethiopia, 2305  
 Japan, 3621

#### Monarchy, 4579

##### Examples

- Great Britain, 4579, 2924  
 Sweden, 6953

#### In United States

- County, 1721  
 Parish (in Louisiana), 4130  
 Township, 4742  
 City, 1437  
 Village, 1437, 4742

#### In England

- Borough, 2926, 868  
 Council, 2926  
 Parish, 1587

#### In France

- Arrondissement, 2580, 420  
 Canton, 1587, 1177, 2580  
 Commune, 1587

#### Social Institutions

- The Church, a Spiritual Body, 1420  
 The State, a Governmental Body, 6813-6814  
 The Caste System, 1231-1232  
 In India, 3379  
 The Feudal System, 2402-2404  
 The Peonage System, 5477  
 The Patroon System, 5418  
 Anti-Renters, 311-312

#### Slavery, 6639-6640

- In the Ancient World, 6639, 2942, 1448  
 Helots, Spartan Slaves, 3136, 6744  
 Famous Men Who Were Slaves  
 Diogenes, 1953  
 Epictetus, 2277  
 Terence, 7110

#### Modern Revival, 6639-6640

- In the United States, 7399-7400, 7607  
 In Turkey, Mamelukes, 4242

#### Voluntary Group Organization

##### Athletic Organizations

- Baseball: Major and Minor Leagues, 634  
 Hockey: Amateur Leagues, 3190  
 Tennis: United States Tennis Association, 7105  
 Turnverein, 7321

##### Boys' and Girls' Societies

- Boys' and Girls' Clubs, 903-908

Boy's Corn Clubs, 1688-1691  
 [See Outline on *Agriculture*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Boy Scouts, 909-914  
     Aid in Preventing Juvenile Delinquency, 3728  
     Daniel Carter Beard, 909, 912, 663-664  
     Ernest Thompson Seton, 909, 6506  
 Camp Fire Girls, 1114-1115  
 Girl Scouts, 2814-2817  
     Founded in Savannah, Ga., by Juliette Law, 2814, 3900, 2762  
     Aid in Preventing Juvenile Delinquency, 3728  
 Clubs, 1496  
     Historical, 1496  
         Beefsteak Club and Kit-Cat Club, 1496  
         Literary Club, 1496  
         Samuel Johnson and Joshua Reynolds, 3690, 6084  
     Modern, 1496  
         Business Men's Clubs  
             Civitan, 1452  
             Kiwanis, 3802-3803  
             Lions, 4041  
             Rotary, 6213  
         Women's Clubs, 7826-7827  
 Fraternal Societies, 2598-2599  
     Elks, Benevolent and Protective Order of, 2211  
     Forresters, Ancient Order of, 2533  
     Forresters of America, 2533  
     Forresters, Independent Order, 2533  
 Fraternities, 2599-2600  
 Grange, 1867, 2897, 5740  
 Maccabees of the World; Knights of, 4173  
 Masonry, or Freemasonry, 4322-4324  
     Order of De Molay, 1889-1890  
 Modern Woodmen of America, 7833  
 Moose, Loyal Order of, 4647  
 Odd Fellows, Independent Order of, 5160  
 Pythias, Knights of, 5899  
 Sororities, 6691  
 United Workmen, Ancient Order of, 275  
 Woodmen of the World, 7833  
 Gangs  
     Formed During Adolescence, 51  
     Counteracted by Boy Scout Movement, 909  
 International Organizations  
     League of Nations, 3904-3906  
     International Peace Conference, 5425, 3005  
     Permanent Court, 5489-5490  
 Labor Organizations  
     American Federation of Labor, 3825  
     Industrial Workers of the World, 3445  
     International, 3483-3484  
     Knights of Labor, 3807, 3825  
     Trade Unions and Associations, 3825  
 Mobs: Use Lynch Law, 4163  
 Political Parties, 5703-5706  
 [See Outline on *Civics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Professional Associations  
     American Library Association, 252

American Medical Association, 560  
 National Education Association, 3364, 4814-4815  
 World Federation of Education Associations, 3366  
 Religious Orders, 5241, 4579-4580  
 Robber Bands  
     Apaches of Paris, 316  
     Bandits or Brigands, 599  
     Buccaneers, 989  
     Pirates, 5627  
 Secret Societies of Criminals  
     Camorra, 1109  
     Mafia, 4210  
     Status of Women in Social Life  
 In Primitive Society, 4300  
 In the Ancient World  
     Egypt: Exceptional Privileges, 2151  
     Greece: Very Little Freedom, 2940, 7822  
     Rome: Great Independence, 6178, 6180  
 In England, Canada, and United States  
     Common Law Status of a Married Woman, 3297-3298, 1982  
 Changing Conditions in the Orient  
     In China, 1392  
     In Japan, 3624  
     In India, 3379  
     In Turkey, 7305, 7310, 7314  
 Civil Status  
     Citizenship in the United States, 1436, 4821  
     Citizenship in other Countries, 4820, 4822  
 Political Status  
     Woman Suffrage Movement, 7822-7824  
         In the United States, 7823-7824  
             Susan B. Anthony, 1250, 307  
             Carrie Chapman Catt, 1249-1250, 7825  
             Anna Howard Shaw, 6544  
             Elizabeth Cady Stanton, 6803  
         In Great Britain, 7824  
             Emmeline Pankhurst, 5340  
     National League of Women Voters, 4815-4816  
 In the Labor Movement  
     Women's Trade Union League of America, 7827  
 In the Prohibition Movement  
     Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 7822  
     Frances E. Willard, 7766-7767  
 In Education  
     Maria Montessori, 4623  
     Coeducation, 1525-1526, 1537-1538  
     In Medical Schools, 1538  
     Colleges for Women, 1537  
         Barnard, 1571  
         Bryn Mawr, 989  
         Radcliffe, 3068  
         Smith, 6652  
         Sophia Smith, 6642  
         Vassar, 7465  
         Wellesley, 7705-7706  
 Famous Women. [See Outline on *Biography*, in this GUIDE.]

## Applied Sociology

**Background of Applied Sociology**

The Social Survey, 6671-6672

**Sources of Statistical Information**

Bureau of Labor Statistics, 6672, 3821

Census, 1282-1283

Registration of Births, Deaths, and Marriages, 6045

Vital Statistics, 7548-7549

**Community Organization**

**Social Environment**, 3727, 2276

**The Modern Home**, 1447, 360

[See Outline on *Home Economics*, in this GUIDE.]

**City Planning**, 1440-1441

Apartment Buildings, 1440-1447

Tenements: Regulations for Improvements, 7093, 1440

**Community Interests**, 1588-1590

Community Forum, 1589-1590, 3365

Parks and Playgrounds, 1588, 1311

National Parks, 5383-5391

**Public Baths**

Ancient and Medieval, 651, 2245

Modern, 1311, 649-650

**Bathing Beaches**, 649

In Chicago, 1360

In Los Angeles, 4116

In Lynn, 4163

In Salt Lake City, 6344

In San Francisco, 6373

**Rural Community Activities**

Canning Clubs, 1172-1173

County Agent, 1721

United States Department of Agriculture, 104-106

In Iowa, 3509

**Community Welfare**

**Charity**, 1311-1312

Transition from Relief to Reconstruction, 1311, 6672-6673

Growing Humanitarianism, 6673

Bureaus of Charities, 1311

**Social Work, a Recognized Profession**, 1311-1312

Conference of Social Work, 6672

**Conspicuous Figures in Social Welfare**

Grace Abbot, 3, 1376

Jane Addams. [See *Hull House*, below.]

Sir Wilfred Grenfell, 3827

Julia Lathrop, 3885, 1376

One of Twelve Great American Women, 7825

Seth Low, 4139

Ellen Gates Starr. [See *Hull House*, below.]

Elizabeth Ward, 7594

**Child Welfare**

American Association for the Study and

Prevention of Infant Mortality, 554

Baby Clinics, 558, 560

Child Guidance Clinics, 4400

Child Labor, 1375-1376

Children's Bureau, 1376

Aid in Prevention of Infant Mortality, 554

George Junior Republic, 2753-2754

William George, 1305

Junior Police (Racine), 5933

**Legal Relationship**

Between Parent and Child, 5369

Between Teacher and Child, 5369, 1696

Orphanages or Foundling Hospitals, 5261

**Juvenile Delinquency**, 3726-3728

**Causes**

Environment, 3726-3727

Anger in Childhood, 282

Mental Conflict, 4395-4396

Dishonesty in Children, 1962-1964

Fatigue and Nervousness Among Children, 2380-2382

Fear in Childhood, 2383-2385

Habits in Childhood, 2998

Mental Handicaps, 4398

Physical Defect, 3727

**Prevention**, 3728

Agencies of Correction

Juvenile Courts, 1376, 3725, 3726, 3353

Judge Benjamin B. Lindsey, 3726, 4030-4031

Probation System, 3727, 4031

Boys' Farm (Cleveland), 1476

Cottage System, 3727

Institute for Juvenile Research (Chicago), 3353

Mental Clinics, 3727

Industrial Schools, 3445, 1747

Reform Schools, 6041

At Elmira, New York, 2216, 3377, 4968

Progress in California, 1082

[See *Charitable and Penal Institutions in the United States*, below.]

**Criminology**

Relation to Sociology, 1747

[See *Criminal Law*, in the Outline on *Law*, in this GUIDE.]

**Aids in Correcting Criminal Tendencies**, 1747

Courts, 1747

Morals Court, 4648

Modern Ideals and Reforms, 1748

Indeterminate Sentence, 3377, 1748

Parole, 5398

Prison Self-Government, 1747, 5826-5827

Sing Sing, 6622

Convict Labor, 1647

**Pauperism**, 5421

**Pensions**, 5475-5476

Mothers' Pensions, 4685

Aid in Preventing Juvenile Delinquency, 3728

Old-Age Pensions, 5189-5190

Soldiers' Pensions, 5475-5476

**Social Legislation, 5008**

**Welfare Organizations**

**Foundations, 2128-2131**

Carnegie, 2128, 2129-2130

Commonwealth Fund, 2128, 2130

Milbank Memorial, 2128, 2131

Rockefeller, 2128, 2129

Russell Sage, 2128, 2130-2131, 6256-6257, 6671

Wilder Charities, 6324

**Humane Societies**

American Humane Association, 1376, 3282

Royal Humane Society of England, 3282

Societies for Children, 1376, 3282

Society for Prevention of Cruelty to Animals, 1760, 3282

Founded by Henry Bergh, 712, 1760, 3282

Audubon Society, 498, 766

Singing Tower, 6619-6621

**Social Settlements, 6670**

Hull House (Chicago), 3280-3281, 1360, 6670

Jane Addams, 3280, 3281, 35, 1360, 6670, 7825

Ellen Gates Starr, 3280, 35, 6670

Toynbee Hall (London), 6670

University Settlement (New York), 6670

Kingsley House (New Orleans), 4948

Chicago Commons, University of Chicago Settlement, and Northwestern University Settlement, 1360

American Legion, 250-252

Aid in Elimination of Illiteracy, 3364

Anti-Cigarette League of America, 309

Anti-Saloon League, 312

Cleveland Community Fund, 1476

Jewish Aid Society (Chicago), 1360

National Congress of Parents and Teachers, 5369-5370

Aid in Elimination of Illiteracy, 3364

Red Cross Societies, 6025-6031

Peace-Time Relief Measures, 6030

Aid in Elimination of Illiteracy, 3364

Junior Red Cross, 6030-6031

United Charities (Chicago), 1360

World Illiteracy Commission, 3366

**Charitable and Penal Institutions in United States**

[See each State article.]





# TRANSPORTATION AND COMMUNICATION

## Transportation by Land

**Primitive and Historic Means, 534, 5983, 7250,**  
7251

Carrying the Pack, 7246, 7251

Pack Train of Prehistoric Man, 5983

Beasts of Burden, 7251

Ass, or Donkey, 455-456

Camel, 1103-1106

Carabao, 1188

Dog, 701, 1988, 2297

Eskimo Dog, 2297

Malamute, 1988

Labrador Huskie, 1988

Dromedary, 2037

Elephant, 2198-2202

Horse, 3243-3251

Indian Water Buffalo, 1003

Llama, 4064-4065

Ox, 1250, 7247

Zebu, 7970

Caravan, 1189-1190, 7247

Palanquin, 5309

Sledge, 7250, 7251

Dog Sledge, 5983

Handcarts, 7249

Jinrikisha, 3677

Oxcarts, 5983, 7251

Indian Oxcarts, 7247

Nicaraguan Oxcart, 7248

Wagon, 7250

Mexican Carretta, 7250

Prairie Schooner, 3739, 7250

The Conestoga Wagon, 7238

Stage Coach, 5983, 7237

**Nineteenth-Century Developments, 7246**

Railroad, 5973-5984

Locomotive, 4076-4082

Automobile, 534-546

Bicycle, 733-734

Motorcycle, 4688-4689

Electric Railways, 2187-2190

**Twentieth-Century Development, 7246**

Aircraft, 112-151

[See *Transportation by Air*, below.]

### Railroad Transportation

**Railroad, or Railway, 5973-5984**

**Railroads in the United States, 5976-5977**

**American and European Railways Compared,**  
5977-5978

**Modern Railroad Construction, 5978-5980**

[See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUIDE.]

**Railroad Operation, 5980-5982**

Safety Devices, 5981

Air Brake, 111-112

George Westinghouse, 7714

Block-Signal System, 5981

Semaphores, 5982

**Locomotive, 4076-4082**

Steam Engine, 6819-6820

James Watt, 6818, 6819-6820

Newton's Idea, 4079, 4960

Pioneer Locomotive Builders, 4076, 4077

Early Locomotives, 4077, 4079, 4081  
 First Engine Run on Rails, 4076  
 George Stephenson's Rocket, 4076, 4078, 6828  
   His First Locomotive, 5983  
 First Locomotive Built in America, 4078  
   The Best Friend, 4078  
 Peter Cooper's Tom Thumb, 1661, 5974  
 The John Bull, 4077  
 The De Witt Clinton, 4079, 5975  
 The Atlantic (B. & O.), 4081  
 The Thomas Jefferson, 4081  
 Early Baldwin Locomotives, 578, 5983  
   Matthias Baldwin, 577-578  
 Early American Trains, 5973-5977  
   The De Witt Clinton Train, 5976  
   First B. & O. Passenger Car, 5975  
   Early Train on the B. & O., 5975  
   Original New York Central Train, 5983  
   First Erie & Kalamazoo Train, 5977  
   First Pullman Sleeping Car, 5981  
 Locomotive Structure and Working Parts, 4078  
 Types of Steam Locomotives, 4078-4082  
   Passenger Service, 4080, 5980  
   Freight Service, 4080, 4082, 5983  
   The 9000 Type, Union Pacific, 4077  
   A Northern Pacific Giant, 4078  
   Locomotives of Twentieth-Century Limited, 5980  
 Electric Locomotives, 2188, 2189, 4080, 4082  
   Oil-Burning Electric, 4082  
**Electrification of Steam Roads**, 2188, 4082  
   Chicago, Milwaukee, St. Paul & Pacific, 2188  
   Electric Locomotives and Train, 2189  
   Norfolk & Western, 2188  
   Virginian Railway, 4082  
   Suburban Electrifications, 2188  
   Illinois Central, Chicago, 1362  
   New York City, 4992  
   Cleveland, Ohio, 2188  
   Electrification in Europe, 2188  
**Laws Affecting Railroads**, 5982  
   Adamson Law, 35  
   Eight-Hour Day, 2156-2157  
   Esch-Cummins Act, 5982  
   Interstate Commerce Act, 3490  
   Interstate Commerce Commission, 3490-3491, 5982  
   Eminent Domain, 2227  
   Common Carrier (Obligations), 1585-1586  
**Government Ownership and Operation**, 5982, 5984  
   Railroads Owned by United States  
     Alaska Railroad, 172-174  
     Panama Railroad, 5335-5336  
**Railroads of the World**, 5984  
 [See subhead *Transportation*, in the article on each country.]  
**Railways of Canada**, 1132-1133  
   Canada's First Engine and Coach, 4077  
   Early Train on Champlain & St. Lawrence, 1132

Government Ownership and Subsidies, 1132  
   Canadian National Railways, 1132  
   Canadian Pacific Railway, 1132  
**Baghdad Railway**, 3517  
**Cape-to-Cairo Railway**, 1181-1182  
**Trans-Siberian Railway**, 6264, 6589, 7252-7253  
   Value to Russia, 7252-7253  
   Suburban Lines Electrified, 6264  
   A Siberian Railway Station, 6590  
**Express**, 2347-2348  
 [See *Parcel Post*, under *Post Office*, below.]  
**Electric Railways**, 2187-2190  
 [See subhead *Transportation*, in articles on important cities.]  
 The Electric Car, 2188  
   Electric Motor, 2184-2187  
   Systems of Operation, 2188, 2190  
**Elevated Railways**, 2204  
**Monorail Railroad**, 4599-4600  
**Subway, or Underground Railway**, 6897-6900

### Road Vehicles

**Automobile**, 534-546  
 Pioneers of the Automobile Age, 536  
   Sir Isaac Newton, 535, 4961  
   Trevithick's Road Locomotive, 535  
 Late Nineteenth-Century Development, 537  
   Internal-Combustion Engine, 2700-2701  
   Gasoline, 2703  
 Genesis of the Horseless Carriage, 536  
   George B. Selden's Basic Patent, 536  
 First Builders of Automobiles, 536  
   Elwood Haynes, 3100  
   Charles B. Duryea, 536  
   Alexander Winton, 536  
   Frank B. Stearns, 536  
   R. E. Olds, 536  
   Henry Ford, 2531  
   His First Car, 536  
 Edward VII's First Motor Car, 536  
 Invention of Pneumatic Tires, 5670-5675  
 Present-Day Motor Cars, 537-543  
 [See *Automobile*, under *Machines*, in Outline on *Inventions and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Electric Automobiles, 543  
   Storage Battery, 6850  
 The Automobile in War, 543  
   Tanks, 543  
   Taxicabs, 7034-7035  
   Standard Highway Markings, 546  
**Bicycle**, 733-734  
**Motorcycle**, 4688-4689  
   Gas Engine, 2700-2702  
**Roads and Streets**, 6140-6145  
   Trails of Early Days, 7237-7239  
   Periods of Road-Making, 7237-7238  
     The Turnpike Period, 6140, 7237  
     Modern Public Roads, 7238  
   Braddock's Road, 7238  
   Cumberland Road, 1784, 6140  
   Lancaster Turnpike, 7238  
   Mohawk Trail, 7238

Oregon, or Overland Trail, 7238  
 Pennsylvania State Road, 7238-7239  
 Santa Fe Trail, 7238, 7239  
 Wilderness Road, 7239  
 Improved Roads and Pavements, 6141-6142  
 [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Roads of Yesterday and To-Day (Illustrated), 6142  
 Road-Making in China, 6144  
 The Good Roads Movement, 6142-6145  
 National and International Highways, 6145  
   Dixie Highway, 1982-1983  
   Scenery, 1982-1983

Mammoth Cave, 4243-4245  
 Lookout Mountain, 4109  
 Jackson Highway (Project), 4024  
 Lincoln Highway, 4022-4024  
   The End of the Trail (Statue), 4024  
 Main Street of America, 4232-4233  
 Meridian Road, 6145  
 National Parks Highway, 6145  
 Other Highway Projects, 4024  
 American Highway Association, 6145  
 Standard Highway Markings, 546  
 Roads in Canada, 6140-6141, 6145

### Transportation by Water

#### Historic Means, 6562

Noah's Ark, 396, 5036  
 Dugout, 1175, 7251  
 Birch-Bark or Skin-Covered Canoe, 1175  
 Raft, 1521, 4150, 6562  
 Rowboat, 6218  
 Galley, 2666, 4850  
   Bireme, 2666  
   Trireme, 7271, 7272  
 Gondola, 2868-2869, 7484  
 Sailing Ships, 6566-6568, 7251  
   Caravel, 1190  
     Columbus' Ships Reproduced, 1574  
   Frigate, 2622-2623  
     The Constitution (Old Ironsides), 1630-1631  
   Full-Rigged Ship, 6569  
   Clipper Ships, 6567

#### Modern Developments, 6562-6564

The Steamship, 6562-6566, 7251  
   First Successful Steamboat, 2634  
     The Clermont, 2634, 2635  
   First Steamer to Cross Atlantic, 6565  
     The Savannah, 6567  
 Transatlantic Liners, 6562-6564  
   Majestic, 6562  
   Leviathan, 4405, 6562  
     Speed in Knots, 3807, 6564  
   Other Large Steamships (List), 6564  
   The Torpedoed Lusitania, 6570, 7879, 7884  
 Longitudinal Section of Modern Steamship, 6564-6565  
 Graphic Illustration of Steamship Lengths, 6568  
 Rotor Ships, 6215-6216, 6568  
**Merchant Marine, 4404-4406**  
 Navigable Waters, 1161, 2731, 3842, 6136-6138  
   Ocean, 5149-5154, 5154  
   Seas, Gulfs, and Bays, 2731  
   Lakes, 3841-3844  
   Rivers, 6135-6138

#### Canals, 1157-1162

Invention of the Canal Lock, 1158  
 Canals of the United States, 1158-1159, 1161  
 Canals of Canada, 1130-1131, 1161  
 Canals of Europe, 1159-1160, 1161  
 Some Foreign Canals, 1161  
 Panama Canal, 5331-5337  
 Suez Canal, 6903-6904  
   Length, Depth, and Cost, 1161  
   Ferdinand de Lesseps, 3943-3944  
 [See Outline on *Engineering*, in this GUIDE.]

#### Navigation, 4840-4841

Instruments Used by Mariners, 4841  
   Compass, 1591-1592  
   Log, 4087-4088  
   Chronometer, 1418  
   Sextant, 6521-6522  
 Latitude and Longitude, 3888, 4106  
 Lighthouses and Lightships, 3998-4001  
 Mariner's Charts, 1319  
 Nautical Bell, 6568  
 Signaling at Sea, 6598-6600  
 Sounding, 6606  
   Sounding Lead, 3903  
 Starboard and Port, 6570  
 Wireless Telegraphy (Radio), 4841, 5935, 6598

#### Ancient Mariner Using an Astrolabe, 4840

#### Ocean Routes, 5152, 5154

#### Ship Tonnage Measurement, 7209

#### Disasters to Ships, 6570

#### The Titanic, 7184

#### Ferry, 2398

#### Motor Boat, 4687-4688

#### Canoe and Canoeing, 1174-1175

#### Sailboat and Sailing, 6301-6302

#### Yacht and Yachting, 7918-7923

[See Outline on *Games and Recreations*, in this GUIDE.]

### Transportation by Air

#### The Story of Aircraft, 1112-151

Air Mastery Long Sought, 113  
 Daedalus' Legendary Flight, 584, 1804

#### Archytos' Wooden Bird, 113

#### The Balloon, 113-115, 584-586

Montgolfier Brothers' Experiments, 113, 585

- Cruikshank's Prophetic Cartoon, 114
- Modern Balloons, 585-586
- Balloon Records, 585-586
  - Andree's Attempt to Reach Pole, 279, 585
  - Altitude Record, 115, 147
  - Long-Distance Record, 586
- Aircraft Lighter Than Air, 115-118**
  - Dirigible Types of Airship, 115
  - Gas-Bags and Inflation, 115
  - Helium, 3131-3134
  - Hydrogen, 3307
  - Inventors of Dirigibles, 115
  - Santos-Dumont, 6382-6383
  - Lebaudy Brothers, 115
  - Count Zeppelin, 7972-7973
  - Zeppelin Type Aircraft, 115-118, 7973
  - The Graf Zeppelin, 117, 137-138, 7973
  - Flight to the North Pole, 142, 144
  - The Norge (Dirigible), 143
  - Amundsen and Ellsworth, 142-144, 268
  - Zeppelins in the World War, 7878
- Aircraft Heavier Than Air, 118-151**
  - The Airplane, 118-139
  - Early Experiments in Flight, 118
  - The Langley Airship, 122, 3857
  - S. P. Langley, 3857
  - Wright Brothers Solve the Problem, 118-121, 7896-7897
  - Wright Gliders, 119-120
  - First Power Machine, 120, 121
  - Why the Airplane Flies, 121-124
  - Airplane Construction, 124-126

- Parts of a Monoplane, 124
- Motor Development, 125-126, 7876
- Flying Boat, or Seaplane, 1791
- Glenn H. Curtiss, 1791
- The Helicopter, 138
- The Autogyro, 138-139
- Aircraft in the World War, 127-129, 7876
- Great Factor in Development, 127
- The Liberty Motors, 7876, 7878
- United States Air Service, 128
- Aircraft Carriers, 126-127
- First Great Feats in Flying, 139-151**
  - First Crossing of Atlantic, 140
  - Early Cross-Continent Trip, 140
  - Around-the-World Flight, 140-141
  - First Hawaiian Flight, 141-142
  - North Polar Explorations, 142-144
  - Great Flights of 1927, 144-151
  - Lindbergh's Atlantic Conquest, 147-151
  - Charles A. Lindbergh, 4025-4030
  - Chamberlin and Levine, 144
  - The Byrd Enterprise, 144-146
  - Richard E. Byrd, 1053-1054
  - Flight to Honolulu, 146
  - Attempt at World Flight, 146
  - Nungesser-Coli Disaster, 146
  - A South-American Attempt, 146-147
  - Four-Continent Flight, 147
  - Elder-Haldeman Flight, 147
  - Mrs. Grayson's Attempts, 147
  - Some Later First Events, 151
- Commercial Flying, 129-139**

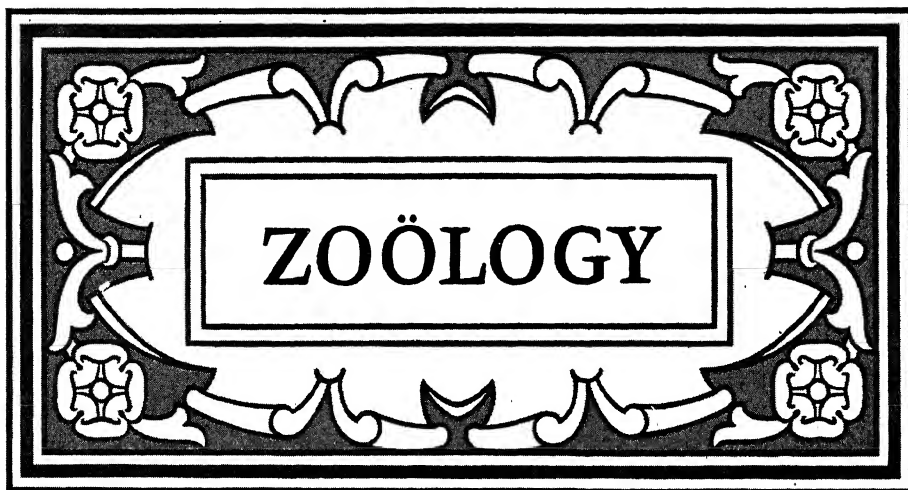
## Communication

- Ancient and Historic Means, 5935**
  - Signaling and Signals, 5935, 6598, 7061
  - Messengers and Couriers, 5771
- Nineteenth-Century Developments, 5935**
  - Government Postoffices, 5771
  - Telegraph, 7064
  - Telephone, 7077
  - First Wireless Telegraph, 4287
- Twentieth-Century Developments, 5935**
  - Radio Communication, 5935-5968
  - Trans-Atlantic Telephony, 5942, 7077
  - The Air Mail, 129
- Old and New Methods (Illustrated), 7061**
- Story of the Postoffice Department, 5771-5777**
  - Postage and Postage Stamps, 5768-5770
  - Foreign Stamps (Color Plate) and Finding List, between 5768-5769
  - Stamp-Collecting, or Philately, 5770-5771
  - International Postal Union, 5771
  - United States Postoffice Department, 5772-5777
  - Postmaster-General, 5772
  - Postoffice Development, 5774
  - Benjamin Franklin, 2596
  - Money Orders, 4592, 5772
  - Railway Postoffice, 5776
  - Classes of Postoffices, 5776-5777
  - Parcel Post, 5366-5367

- The Air Mail, 129-130
- Dead-Letter Office, 1845, 5772, 5774
- Mail Delivery to Airplanes, 5777
- Pony Express, 5728
- Pneumatic Tubes, 5675
- Communication by Audible or Visible Signs, 6598**
- Signaling and Signals, 6598-6601**
  - Marine Signaling, 6598-6600
  - Flag Signal System, 6598-6599
  - The Story of Flags, 2449
  - National Flags, 2450-2461
  - Flags of the British Empire, 2456-2459
  - Dominion Flags, 2458-2459
  - Flags of Continental Europe, 2459-2460
  - Flags of Central and South America, 2460
  - Flags of Asia, 2461
- Semaphore, 6598
- Sound Signals, 6600
- Fog Horns, 2505
- Sirens, 6626
- Whistles, 6600
- Distress Signals, 6598
- S O S, 5940, 6598
- Flag Upside Down, 6600
- Radio Equipment for Ships, 6598
- Military Signaling, 6600-6601

Signal Corps, 6597-6598  
 Types of Signals Used  
   Radio, 5940-5941  
   Telephone and Telegraph, 7058, 7067  
 Cipher Codes, 6600-6601  
 Signaling by Aircraft, 6601  
 Railroad Signals, 5981, 5982  
**Telegraph**, 7058-7067  
   Principle of the Telegraph, 7060-7062  
   Development of the Telegraph, 7058-7059  
   Samuel F. B. Morse, 4664  
   The First Message by Wire, 4664  
   First Morse Recorders, 7059  
   Modern Key, Sounder, and Relay, 7062  
 Printing Telegraphs, 7059  
   Simplex and Multiplex Printers, 7059  
   Stock Ticker, 6840-6842  
 Newspaper Telegraph Service, 7060  
   Pictures by Wire, 7064, 7074-7076  
 Telegraph Codes, 7063  
 Duplex and Quadruplex Systems, 7063  
 Ocean Telegraphy  
   Submarine Cable, 1060-1063  
   First Atlantic Cable, 1062  
   Cyrus W. Field, 2408  
   Lord Kelvin, 3752  
   The Great Eastern, 7066  
   Principal Ocean Cables (Map), 1062  
   Sending and Receiving a Cablegram, 7065  
 Historical Sketch of Telegraphy, 7064, 7066  
 Wireless Telegraphy. [See *Radio Communication*, below.]  
 Telautograph, 7057  
 Teletype, 7083-7084  
**Telephone**, 7067-7080  
   An Early Enthusiast's Experience, 7067  
   The First Bell Telephone, 7068, 7080  
   Alexander Graham Bell, 703  
   Elisha Gray, 2919  
   First Telephone Exchange, 7078  
   Extent of Telephone Service, 7080  
   Description of Modern Telephone, 7068-7071  
   The Switchboard, 7070-7071  
   Automatic Telephone, 7071-7073  
   Special Applications of Telephone, 7073-7077  
   Photography by Telephone, 5583  
   Transatlantic Telephony, 5942-5943  
   Television, 7075-7076, 7084-7086  
   Telex, 7087-7089  
   Robot, or Mechanical Man, 1222, 7088, 7089  
**Radio Communication**, 5935-5968  
   Scientific Basis of Radio, 5936-5937  
   Principles of Electromagnetism, 2194, 5936

Electromagnetic Theory of Light, 2194  
   Hertzian Waves, 2194, 5937  
   Wave-Length and Frequency, 5936  
 Marconi's Wireless Telegraph, 5938  
 Guglielmo Marconi, 4287-4288  
 How the Electromagnetic Wave Is Used, 5938  
   Transmitter, 5938, 5943  
   Aerials and Antennae, 5955-5956  
   Receiving Set, 5946  
   Crookes (Vacuum) Tubes, 1754  
   Audion, or Detector, 5945  
   Lee De Forest, 1873, 5946  
   Conversion of Signals into Sound, 5940  
   Loud Speakers, 5940, 5958  
   Transmission of Voices, 5940  
 Radio in Modern Life, 5940-5943  
 Broadcasting, 5941, 5962-5963  
   The First Station, 5935  
   Federal Radio Commission Created, 5941  
   Chain-Station Broadcasting, 5963  
   Public Entertainment, 5962-5963  
   Wave Channels, 5963  
   Advertising by Radio, 62  
   Other Developments, 5942  
   Transatlantic Telephony, 5942  
   Weather Service by Radio, 5942, 7690, 7692  
   Aircraft Equipped with Radio, 5942, 7692  
 Apparatus for Radio-Telegraphy, 5943-5948  
 [See Outline on *Invention and Applied Mechanics*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Conditions and Varieties of Radio-Telephony, 5960-5966  
 Transmission of Pictures, 5583-5584, 5963-5964, 5966  
   Picture-Producing Mechanism, 5584, 5964  
   Photoradiogram Requirements, 5966  
 Illustrations of Radio  
   Farmers Receiving Market Reports, 5936  
   The Smallest Radio Set, 5937  
   Naval Radio Station at Arlington, 5938  
   Northernmost Radio Station, 5939  
   Japanese Radio Parasols, 5940  
   Freightyard Control by Radio, 5941  
   Transatlantic Radio-Telephony, 5941-5942  
   Radio Apparatus Illustrated, 5943-5958  
   Views of Broadcasting Station, 5961, 5965  
   The Vacuum Tubes, 5959  
   Station Board of the Radio Commission, 5963  
 Symbols used in Radio, 5947  
 Glossary of Radio Terms, 5967-5968



## Animals

- Distinction between Plant and Animal, 289  
 [See Outline on *Botany*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Animal Intelligence and Senses, 290  
 Instinct rather than Reasoning Power, 290,  
 3467-3468  
 Special Senses, 290
- Sight, Hearing, Touch, Taste, and Smell,  
 290-291  
 Migration of Animals, 291  
 Irregular Overflows, 291  
 Periodic Migrations, 291  
 As of the Lemmings, 3928

## Scope and Development of Zoölogy

**Definition:** Science of Animals, 7980

### Historical Development

- Aristotle, Father of the True Science, 7980,  
 382  
 Period of the Renaissance, 7980, 6055-6056  
 Influence of the Medical Man, 7980  
 Effect of the Compound Microscope, 7980,  
 4468-4469  
 Linnaeus' System of Nomenclature, 7980,  
 4032-4033  
 Cuvier's Contributions, 7980, 1794-1795  
 The Theory of Organic Evolution, 7980,  
 2237-2238

[See Outline on *Biology*, in this GUIDE.]

### Subdivisions of Zoölogy

- Anatomy, 7981, 273  
 Ecology, 7981, 2097-2098  
 Embryology, 2220, 7981  
 Histology, 7981, 3185  
 Morphology, 7981, 4661  
 Paleontology, 7981, 5309  
 Pathology, 7981  
 Psychology, 7981, 5865-5869  
 Taxonomy, 7981  
 The Science of Classification, 1456  
 Zoögeography, 7981

## Classification

[Accepted system of classification of all animals found in THE WORLD BOOK.]

### From Lowest Forms to Chordata

- Protozoa, 5853, 7982  
 Sarcodina  
 Amoeba, 265  
 Radiolaria, 5968  
 Infusoria  
 Infusoria, 3450-3451  
 Vorticella, 7568-7569  
 Porifera, 5743, 7982  
 Calcarea, or Limy Sponge, 6774  
 Glassy Sponge, or Venus's Flower Basket,  
 6773, 6774  
 Common Bath Sponge, 6774  
 Coelenterata, 1526, 7982

### Hydrozoa

- Hydra, 3302-3303  
 Medusae, 4380

### Scyphozoa

- Jellyfish, 3654-3655

### Anthozoa

- Coral, 1671  
 Polyp, 5717-5718  
 Sea Anemone, 6463-6464

### Ctenophora, 7982, 3654-3655

- Sea Walnuts and Comb Jellies, 7982,  
 3655

### Platyhelminthes (Flatworms), 7982

- Turbellaria  
 Planarians, 7982

Trematoda  
 Flukeworm, 1961, 7982  
 Cestoda  
 Nemertians, 7982  
 Tapeworm, 7018, 7982, 5365  
**Nemathelminthes** (Roundworms), 7982  
 Nematoda, 7982  
 Eelworm, 2135  
 Filaria, 7982, 2204  
 Hookworm, 3223, 3225  
 Trichina, 7267, 5365  
 Gordiacea, 7982  
 Hairworm, 3009-3010, 7982, 7892  
**Trochelminthes** (Wheel Worms), 7982  
 Rotifera, 7982  
**Molluscoida**, 7982  
 Polyzoa, 7982  
 Phoronida, 7982  
 Brachiopoda, 7982  
**Echinodermata**, 7982, 2093  
 Asteroidea  
 Starfish, 6810-6811  
 Echinoidea  
 Sea Urchin, 6475  
 Holothurioida  
 Sea Cucumber, 6464, 7264  
 Crinoidea  
 Sea Lily, 6470-6471  
**Annulata** (Ringed Worms), 7982, 2086  
 Chaetopoda  
 Earthworm, 2086-2087  
 Lobworm, 4071  
 Hirudinea  
 Leech, 3921  
**Arthropoda**, 7982, 424, 3459  
 Crustacea, 7982, 1765, 424  
 Barnacle, 623  
 Crab, 1730-1731  
 Crawfish, or Crayfish, 1735  
 Daphnia, or Water Flea, 1826  
 Fiddler Crab, 2408  
 Hermit Crab, 3162  
 Horseshoe Crab, 3254  
 Land Crab, 3852  
 Lobster, 4068-4071  
 Shrimp, 6579-6580  
 Myriapoda, 7982, 424  
 Centipede, 1286  
 Insecta, 7982, 3459-3464, 424  
 Aptera, 3463  
 Springtails, 3463  
 Euplexoptera, 3463  
 Earwig, 2087  
 Orthoptera, 5263, 3463  
 Cockroach, 1518  
 Cricket, 1743-1745  
 Grasshopper, 2912, 2914-2915  
 Katydid, 3748-3749  
 Leaf Insect, 3903  
 Locust, 4048-4085  
 Mantis, 4269-4270  
 Mole Cricket, 4574  
 Walking Stick, 7582-7583

Ephemerida, 3463  
 May Fly, 4353-4355  
 Odonata, 3463-3464  
 Dragon Fly, 2020  
 Plecoptera, 3464  
 Stone Fly, 6847  
 Isoptera, 3464  
 Termites, 7111-7112  
 Mallophaga, 3464  
 Bird Lice, 3464  
 Corrodentia, 3464  
 Book Lice, 3464  
 Neuroptera, 3464  
 Ant Lion, 313  
 Lace-Winged Flies, 3833-3834  
 Mecoptera, 3464  
 Scorpion Fly, 6436  
 Trichoptera, 3464  
 Caddis Fly, 3464  
 Coleoptera, 3464  
 Boll Weevil, 823-825  
 Bark Beetle, 621  
 Bean Beetle, 658  
 Beetle, 688-689  
 Bookworm, 858  
 Burying Beetle, 1038  
 Carpet Beetle, 1211  
 Click Beetle, 1479  
 Curculio, 1786  
 Elm Leaf Beetle, 2216  
 Firefly, 2433  
 Flour Beetle, 2490  
 Goldsmith Beetle, 2864  
 Grain Weevils, 2889-2890  
 Hercules Beetle, 3157  
 June Bug, or May Beetle, 3713, 3716  
 Ladybird, 3837  
 Potato Bug, or Colorado Beetle, 5781-5782  
 Rose-Chafer, 6205  
 Scarab, 6409  
 Stag Beetle, 6792  
 Sugar-Maple Borer, 4280  
 Water Beetle, 7665  
 Weevil, 7701  
 Wireworm, 7801  
 Thysanoptera, 3464  
 Thrips, 3464  
 Hemiptera, 3464, 1008  
 Aphides, 317  
 Bedbug, 670  
 Chinch Bug, 1401  
 Cicada, 1422  
 Louse, 4137  
 Phylloxera, 5587  
 San Jose Scale, 6375  
 Scale Insect, or Bark Louse, 6407  
 Squash Bug, 6787  
 Water Bug, 7665  
 Lepidoptera, 3464, 3938  
 Army Worm, 418  
 Brown-Tail Moth, 980-981  
 Butterfly, 1044-1050

Cankerworm, 1170-1171  
 Caterpillar, 1241  
 Clothes Moth, 4682-4683  
 Codling Moth, 1524, 7586  
 Corn Borer, 1691-1692  
 Corn Earworm, 1692  
 Cutworm, 1794  
 Death's-Head Moth, 1850  
 Earth-Measuring Moths, 4681-4682  
 Gypsy Moth, 2993-2994  
 Hawk Moth, 3088, 4682  
 Leaf Rollers, 4682  
 Measuring Worm, 4360  
 Moth, 4680-4683  
 Peach Moth, 5429  
 Pink Bollworm, 5625  
 Silkworm, 6604, 4682  
 Tent Caterpillar, 7109-7110, 4280-4281  
 Tiger Moth, 4682  
 Tussock Moth, 7329  
 Diptera, 1956, 3464  
 Apple Maggot, 327  
 Blowfly, 802  
 Botfly, 892-893  
 Fly, 2498-2508  
 Fruit Flies, 2630  
 Gnat, 2847  
 Hessian Fly, 3169-3170  
 Horse Fly, 3251-3252  
 Mediterranean Fruit Fly, 4379  
 Mosquito, 4674-4679  
 Tsetse Fly, 7285-7286  
 Siphonaptera, 3464  
 Flea, 2468  
 Hymenoptera, 3464, 3315-3316  
 Ant, 296-303  
 Bee, 672-682  
 Hornet, 3242  
 Ichneumon Fly, 3336  
 Wasp, 7658-7661  
 Yellow Jacket, 7933  
 Arachnida, 7982, 424, 343  
 Cattle Tick, 1258-1259  
 Daddy-Long-Legs, 1804  
 Jigger, or Chigger, 3676-3677  
 King Crab, 3793-3794  
 Mites, 4561-4562  
 Itch Mite, 3589  
 Scorpion, 6435-6436  
 Spider, 6760-6764  
 Tarantula, 7020  
 Tick, 7170-7171  
 Trapdoor Spider, 7253  
 Mollusca, 4576, 7982-7983  
 Amphineura  
 Chitons, 1403-1404  
 Gastropoda, 2704  
 Abalone, 2-3  
 Conch, 1596  
 Limpet, 4008  
 Slug, 6645  
 Snail, 6657-6659

Pelecypoda  
 Clam, 1453  
 Mussel, 4780-4781  
 Oyster, 5282-5286  
 Scallop, 6408  
 Cephalopoda, 1290  
 Cuttlefish, 1794  
 Nautilus, 4834-4835  
 Octopus, 5159-5160  
 Squid, 6788

**Chordata**

**Hemichordata**, 7983  
**Urochordata**, 7983  
 Sea Squirts, or Ascidians, 6473, 7983  
**Cephalochordata**, 7983  
 Amphioxus, 7983  
**Vertebrata**, 7983, 7508, 7510  
 Cyclostomata (Lampreys), 7983, 7510  
 Petromyzonidae  
 Lamprey, 3850  
 Pisces (Fish), 7983, 2440-2445, 7510  
 Selachii  
 Squali  
 Dogfish, 1993, 1995  
 Shark, 6543  
 Raji  
 Sawfish, 6404-6405  
 Skate, 6630  
 Sting Ray, 6835  
**Teleostomi**  
 Chondrostei  
 Acipenseridae  
 Sturgeon, 6882-6883  
 Holostei  
 Lepidosteidae  
 Gar, 2682  
 Teleostei  
 Cyprinidae  
 Barracuda, 628  
 Carp, 1206  
 Goldfish, 2862-2863  
 Mullet, 4735  
 Sucker, 6901-6902  
 Siluridae  
 Catfish, 1242  
 Elopidae  
 Tarpon, 7024-7025  
 Clupeidae  
 Alewife, 198  
 Herring, 3166-3167  
 Menhaden, 4392  
 Sardine, 6386  
 Shad, 6522-6523  
 Sprat, 6778  
 Argentiniidae  
 Candlefish, 1166-1167  
 Smelt, 6646-6647  
 Salmonidae  
 Grayling, 2921  
 Salmon, 6333-6339  
 Salmon Trout, 6339  
 Trout, 7276-7277



Trout Perch, 7277  
 Whitefish, 7747  
 Esocidae  
   Muskellunge, 4777  
   Pickerel, 5602  
   Pike, 5613-5614  
 Amblyopsidae  
   Blindfish, 790, 2442  
 Exocoetidae  
   Flying Fish, 2504  
 Myctophidae  
   Lantern Fish, 3873  
 Anguillidae  
   Eel, 2135  
 Leptocephalidae  
   Eel, 2135  
   Electrical Eel, 2168, 2135  
 Gasterosteidae  
   Stickleback, 6834  
 Syngnathidae  
   Hippocampus, or Sea Horse,  
     3182  
   Pipefish, 5626  
 Anarrhichadidae  
   Wolf Fish, 7819  
 Carangidae  
   Bluefish, 805  
   Pilot Fish, 5616-5617  
   Pompano, 5719-5720  
 Centrarchidae  
   Bass, 645  
   Sunfish, 6927  
 Cottidae  
   Sculpin, 6455  
 Cyclopteridae  
   Lumpfish, 4153-4154  
 Gadidae  
   Cod, 1522-1523  
   Haddock, 2999-3000  
   Hake, 3014  
   Paddlefish, 5294  
 Haemulidae  
   Grunter, 2971  
 Labridae  
   Redfish, 6031  
 Latilidae  
   Tilefish, 7177  
 Percidae  
   Perch, 5485  
 Pleuronectidae  
   Flatfish, 2465  
   Flounder, 2486  
   Halibut, 3017-3018  
   Turbot, 7299-7300  
 Sciaenidae  
   Redfish, 6031  
 Scombridae  
   Mackerel, 4186-4187  
   Tunny, 7297  
 Serranidae  
   Jewfish, 3672  
 Soleidae  
   Sole, 6680

Xiphidae  
   Swordfish, 6982  
 Dipnoi, 4154  
   Lungfish, 4154  
 Amphibians, 266, 7083, 652  
 Apoda, or Coecilians  
   Coeciliidae  
     Blindworm, 794  
 Caudata  
   Proteida  
     Mud Puppy, or Water Dog, 4732  
   Salamandridae  
     Newt, 4958  
     Salamander, 6329-6330  
   Bufonidae  
     Tadpole, 6997  
     Toad, 7189, 7191-7193  
   Hylidae  
     Tree Frog, or Toad, 7261-7262  
   Ranidae  
     Bullfrog, 1019  
     Frog, 2625-2626  
 Reptilia, 6062, 7983  
 Testudinata  
   Chelydridae  
     Snapping Turtle, 7325  
   Kinosternidae  
     Box Tortoise, or Box Turtle, 7326  
     Mud Turtle, 7325-7326  
     Terrapin, 7326  
   Testudinidae  
     Tortoises, 7326  
   Chelonidae  
     Sea Turtles, 7326, 7328  
 Crocodyliformes  
   Gavialidae  
     Gavial, 2707  
   Crocodylidae  
     Crocodile, 1749-1750  
 Squamata  
   Chamaeleontidae  
     Chameleon, 1299-1300  
   Geckonidae, 4064  
     Gecko, 2709  
   Anguinae  
     Blindworm, 794  
     Glass Snake, 2842  
   Varanidae  
     Monitor, 4594-4595  
   Iguanidae  
     Horned Toad, 3242  
     Iguana, 3348  
   Helodermatidae  
     Gila Monster, 2805-2806  
   Teiidae  
     Teju, 7057  
   Boidae, 6661  
     Anaconda, 270  
     Boa, 807  
     Python, 5899  
   Colubridae, 6661  
     Blacksnake, or Black Racer, 784  
     Garter Snake, 2696-2697

Milk Snake, 4484  
 Elapinae  
   Asp, 451-452  
   Cobra, 1515-1516  
 Virperidae, 6661  
   Adder, 36  
   Asp, 451-452  
   Copperhead, 1669  
   Fer-de-Lance, 2394  
   Moccasin Snake, 4565  
   Rattlesnake, 6001-6003  
   Viper, 7533-7534  
 Aves (Birds), 7983, 751-770  
 Neornithes  
   Struthioniformes  
     Struthionidae  
       Ostrich, 5268-5270  
   Rheiformes  
     Rheidae  
       Rhea, 6084  
   Casuariiformes  
     Casuariidae  
       Cassowary, 1231  
     Dromaeidae  
       Emu, 2230-2231  
   Dinornithiformes  
     Dinornithidea  
       Moa, 4563  
   Apterygiformes  
     Apterygidae  
       Apteryx, 333  
   Spenisciformes  
     Speniscidae  
       Penguin, 5457-5458  
   Colymbiformes  
     Gaviidae  
       Diver, or Loon, 1971  
     Colymbidae  
       Grebe, 2937-2938  
   Procellariiformes  
     Diomedidae  
       Albatross, 182  
     Procellariidae  
       Fulmar, 2632, 2634  
       Petrel, 5519  
   Ciconiiformes  
     Anhingidae  
       Darter, or Snake Bird, 1830  
     Ardeidae  
       Bittern, 776  
       Egret, 2140  
       Heron, 3164-3166  
       Night Heron, 5026  
       Shoebill, 6571  
     Ciconiidae  
       Adjutant, 48  
       Jabiru, 3595  
       Marabou, 4280  
       Stork, 6850  
   Fregatidae  
     Frigate Bird, 2623  
   Ibidae  
     Ibis, 3324-3325

Pelecanidae  
   Pelican, 5447-5448  
 Phaethontidae  
   Tropic Bird, 7274, 7275  
 Phalacrocoracidae  
   Cormorant, 1679-1680  
 Plateleidae  
   Spoonbill, 6777  
 Phoenicopteridae  
   Flamingo, 2463  
 Sulidae  
   Gannet, 2681  
 Anseriformes  
   Anatidae  
     Barnacle Goose, 624  
     Brant Goose, 924  
     Canada Goose, 1150-1151  
     Canvasback, 1179  
     Duck, 2046-2049  
     Eider Duck, 2155-2156  
     Gadwall, 2657  
     Goose, 2871-2873  
     Merganser, 4409  
     Shoveler, 6576  
     Swan, 6946  
     Widgeon, 7757  
   Falconiformes  
     Cathartidae  
       Condor, 1606  
       Turkey Buzzard, 7317-7318  
       Vulture, 7572  
     Falconidae  
       Buzzard, 1053  
       Eagle, 2071-2074  
       Falcon, 2364-2365  
       Goshawk, 2877  
       Hawk, 3086-3088  
       Kestrel, or Windhover, 3768  
       Kite, 3802  
       Lammergeier, 3847-3848  
       Marsh Hawk, 4305-4306  
       Sparrow Hawk, 6743  
   Gypogeranidae  
     Secretary Bird, 6477  
   Pandionidae  
     Fish Hawk, 2445-2446  
 Galliformes  
   Phasianidae  
     Francolin, 2592  
     Guinea Fowl, 2981  
     Jungle Fowl, 3716  
     Painted Quail, 5298  
     Partridge, 5405  
     Peacock, 5429-5430  
     Pheasant, 5533-5534  
     Quail, 5901  
     Tragopan, 7236-7237  
     Turkey, 7317  
   Cracidae  
     Curassow, 1786  
     Guan, 2972  
   Megapodidae  
     Mound Bird, 4689-4690

Tetraonidae  
 Grouse, 2969-2971  
 Ptarmigan, 5869  
 Gruiformes  
 Gruidae  
 Crane, 1732-1733  
 Rallidae  
 Coot, or Mud Hen, 1664-1665  
 Gallinule, 2667  
 Rail, 5973  
 Charadriiformes  
 Alcidae  
 Auk, 504  
 Guillemot, 2979-2980  
 Puffin, or Sea Parrot, 5875  
 Aphrízidae  
 Turnstone, 7321  
 Charadriidae  
 Crocodile Bird, 1750  
 Killdeer, 3774  
 Lapwing, 3877-3878  
 Plover, 5659  
 Columbidae  
 Carrier Pigeon, 1216-1217  
 Dove, 2016-2017  
 Passenger Pigeon, 5407-5408  
 Pigeon, 5611-5613  
 Turtledove, 7328  
 Dididae  
 Dodo, 1986  
 Haematopodidae  
 Oyster Catcher, 5286  
 Jacanidae  
 Jacana, 3595  
 Laridae  
 Gulls, 2984-2985  
 Kittiwake, 3802  
 Terns, 7112-7113  
 Recurvirostridae  
 Avocet, 547-548  
 Stilt, 6834  
 Rynchopidae  
 Scissorbill, or Skimmer, 6435  
 Scolopacidae  
 Curlew, 1787  
 Sanderling, 6363  
 Sandpiper, 6365  
 Snipe, 6663  
 Woodcock, 7829, 7831  
 Yellowlegs, 7933  
 Stercororiidae  
 Skua, 6635  
 Cuculiformes  
 Cuculidae  
 Cuckoo, 1782  
 Road Runner, 6139  
 Psittacidae  
 Cockatoo, 1517  
 Lory, 4111  
 Macaw, 4171  
 Parrot, 5399-5400  
 Parrakeet, or Paroquet, 5398  
 Coraciiformes

Alcedinidae  
 Halcyon, 3014  
 Kingfisher, 3794  
 Bucerotidae  
 Hornbill, 3241  
 Caprimulgidae  
 Goatsucker, 2848, 2850  
 Nighthawk, 5024, 5026  
 Whip-Poor-Will, 7741-7742  
 Micropodidae  
 Swift, 6961  
 Momotidae  
 Motmot, 4686  
 Roller, 6164  
 Picidae  
 Flicker, 2470  
 Sapsucker, 6385  
 Woodpecker, 7833-7834  
 Wryneck, 7901  
 Rhamphastidae  
 Toucon, 7222, 7224  
 Strigidae  
 Owl, 5278-5280  
 Trochilidae  
 Humming Bird, 3286-3287  
 Trogonidae  
 Quetzal, or Quezal, 5921  
 Trogon, 7273  
 Upipidae  
 Hoopoe, 3225  
 Passeriformes  
 Alaudidae  
 Lark, 3880-3881  
 Bombycillidae  
 Waxwing, 7684-7685  
 Certhiidae  
 Creeper, 1740  
 Cinclidae  
 Dipper, or Water Ouzel, 1955  
 Corvidae  
 Crow, 1758-1759  
 Jackdaw, 3596  
 Jay, 3643-3644  
 Magpie, 4219, 4221  
 Nutcracker, 5120  
 Raven, 6003  
 Rook, 6183  
 Cotingidae  
 Bellbird, 705  
 Cock of the Rock, 1517-1518  
 Umbrella Bird, 7349-7350  
 Fringillidae  
 American Goldfinch, 248-249  
 Bullfinch, 1019  
 Bunting, 1022  
 Canary, 1162  
 Cardinal Bird, or Redbird, 1196,  
 6025  
 Crossbill, 1756-1757  
 Dickcissel, 1936  
 European Goldfinch, 249  
 Finch, 2419  
 Grosbeak, 2967

Indigo Bird, 3431  
 Junco, 3712  
 Ortolan, 5263  
 Sparrow, 6741-6743  
 Yellow Hammer, 7933  
 Hirundinidae  
   Martin, 4308  
   Swallow, 6946  
 Icteridae  
   Baltimore Oriole, 590-591  
   Bobolink, or Reedbird, 6035, 810-811  
   Blackbird, 779-780  
   Cowbird, 1727-1728  
   Crow Blackbird, or Purple Grackle, 1759  
   Grackle, 2885  
   Meadow Lark, 4358  
   Oriole, 5259  
 Laniidae  
   Shrike, 6579  
 Menuridae  
   Lyre Bird, 4165  
 Mimidae  
   Brown Thrasher, 981  
   Catbird, 1240  
 Mniotiltidae  
   Oven Bird, 5276-5277  
   Redstart, 6034  
   Warblers, 7593-7594  
 Motacillidae  
   Pipit, or Titlark, 5626-5627  
   Wagtail, 7577  
 Nectariniidae  
   Sunbird, 6925  
 Paradiscidae  
   Birds of Paradise, 771-772  
 Paridae  
   Goldtit, or Verdin, 2864  
   Titmouse, 7188-7189  
 Ploceidae  
   Weaver Bird, 7693  
 Ptilonorhynchidae  
   Bower Bird, 898  
 Sittidae  
   Nuthatch, 5120-5121  
 Sturnidae  
   Starling, 6811  
 Sylviidae  
   Kinglet, 3795  
 Tanagridae  
   Tanager, 7012-7013  
 Troglodytidae  
   Mocking Bird, 4565-4566  
   Wren, 7894-7895  
 Turdidae  
   Bluebird, 804  
   Nightingale, 5026  
   Uguisu, 3631  
   Robin, 6148-6149  
   Stonechat, 6847  
   Tailor Bird, 7006-7007  
   Thrush, 7162

Tyrannidae  
   Kingbird, 3793  
   Phoebe, 5568-5569  
   Wood Pewee, 7834  
 Vireonidae  
   Vireo, 7534  
 Mammalia, 4242-4243, 7983  
 Monotremata  
   Echidnidae  
     Duckbill, 2049-2050  
     Echidna, or Spiny Anteater, 2092  
 Didelphia  
   Marsupials (Pouched Mammals), 4306-4307  
   Dasyuridae  
     Tasmanian Wolf, 7028  
   Didelphiidae  
     Opossum, 5227  
   Macropodidae  
     Kangaroo, 3733-3734  
   Peramelidae  
     Bandicoot, 599  
   Phascologyidae  
     Wombat, 7825  
   Phascolarctidae  
     Koala, or Australian Bear, 3811  
 Unguiculata (Clawed Mammals)  
 Insectivora  
   Erinaceidae  
     Hedgehog, 3124-3125  
   Soricidae  
     Shrew, 6578-6579  
   Talpidae  
     Mole, 4573-4574  
 Chiroptera, 1403  
   Pteropidae  
     Bat, 647-648  
     Mastiff Bat, 4338  
   Phyllostomidae  
     Vampire Bat, 7449  
 Carnivora (Flesh-Eating Mammals), 1204  
 Canidae  
   Airedale Dog, 151  
   Beagle, 656  
   Bloodhound, 800-801  
   Bulldog, 1017-1018  
   Chow, 1411-1412  
   Collie, 1538  
   Coyote, 1730  
   Dachshund, 1804  
   Dingo, 1947-1948  
   Doberman Pinscher, 1983-1984  
   Dog, 1986-1992  
   Eskimo Dog, 2297  
   Fox, 2553-2554  
   Fox Hound, 2555-2556  
   Fox Terrier, 2556  
   Great Dane, 2931-2932  
   Greyhound, 2965  
   Hound, 3260  
   Jackal, 3595-3596  
   Mastiff, 4338

Newfoundland Dog, 4916  
 Pekingese Dog, 5446  
 Pointer, 5682  
 Police Dog, 5702  
 Poodle, 5728  
 Pug Dog, 5875  
 Retriever, 6068  
 Saint Bernard, 6303  
 Scotch Terrier, 6436  
 Setter, 6506  
 Shepherd Dog, 6555  
 Skye Terrier, 6636  
 Spaniel, 6738  
 Spitz, 6770  
 Staghound, 6792  
 Terrier, 7113-7115  
 Whippet, 7741  
 Wolf, 7817-7818  
 Wolfhound, 7819-7820  
**Felidae**  
 Cat, 1234-1236  
 Cheeta, 1327  
 Jaguar, 3608, 3611  
 Leopard, 3937  
 Lion, 4037-4041  
 Lynx, 4163-4164  
 Ocelot, 5155  
 Ounce, 5276  
 Panther, 5342  
 Puma, or Cougar, 5879-5880  
 Serval, 6505  
 Tiger, 7173-7175  
 Wild Cat, or Catamount, 7760-7761  
**Hyaenidae**  
 Hyena, 3311-3312  
**Mustelidae**  
 Badger, 570-571  
 Ermine, 2290  
 Ferret, 2398  
 Marten, 4307  
 Mink, 4508  
 Otter, 5274-5275  
 Polecat, 5700-5701  
 Ratel, 6000  
 Sable, 6290, 6292  
 Skunk, 6635-6636  
 Weasel, 7686  
 Wolverine, 7821-7822  
**Odobenidae**  
 Walrus, 7588-7589  
**Otariidae**  
 Eared Seals, 6465-6470  
**Phocidae**  
 True Seals, 6470  
**Procyonidae**  
 Raccoon, 5928  
**Protelidae**  
 Aard-Wolf, 1-2  
**Ursidae**  
 Bear, 659-663  
 Tasmanian Devil, 7028  
**Viverridae**  
 Civet, 1441-1442

Ichneumon, 3335-3336  
 Mongoose, 4594  
**Rodentia (Gnawing Mammals), 6158**  
**Castoridae**  
 Beaver, 665-668  
**Caviidae**  
 Guinea Pig, 2981  
**Chinchillidae**  
 Chinchilla, 1401-1402  
**Cricetidae**  
 Deer Mouse, 1872-1873  
**Dasyproctidae**  
 Agouti, 87-88  
**Dipodidae**  
 Jerboa, 3655  
**Geomyidae**  
 Gopher, 2873-2874  
**Hystriidae**  
 Porcupine, 5741, 5743  
**Leporidae**  
 Hare, 3044-3045  
 Rabbit, 5925-5927  
**Muridae**  
 Hamster, 3031  
 Lemming, 3928  
 Mouse, 4701-4702  
 Muskrat, 4779-4780  
 Rat, 5998-6000  
 Vole, 7564  
**Muscardinidae**  
 Dormouse, 2013-2014  
**Ochotonidae**  
 Pika, 5613  
**Sciuridae**  
 Chipmunk, 1403  
 Ground Hog, 2968-2969  
 Marmot, 4297  
 Prairie Dog, 5795-5796  
 Squirrel, 6788-6790  
 Flying Squirrel, 2504  
**Zapodidae**  
 Jumping Mouse, 1873  
**Edentata, 2107**  
**Bradypodidae**  
 Sloth, 6643-6644  
**Myrmecophagidae**  
 Ant-Eater, 305  
**Orycteropodidae**  
 Aard-Vark, 1  
**Pholidota**  
**Dasypodidae**  
 Armadillo, 406  
**Primates (Mammals with Nails)**  
**Primates, 5811**  
**Cebidae**  
 Monkey, 4595-4597  
 Howlers, 3268  
 Sapajou, 6384  
**Cercopithecidae**  
 Baboon, 553  
 Mandrill, 4254  
**Chiromyidae**  
 Aye-Aye, 549

Hapalidae  
 Marmoset, 4296-4297  
 Hominidae  
 Man, 4245-4246  
 Lemuridae  
 Lemur, 3930  
 Loris, 4110-4111  
 Simiidae  
 Ape, 316  
 Chimpanzee, 1384  
 Gibbon, 2801  
 Gorilla, 2875-2876  
 Orang-Utan, 5235  
 Ungulata (Hoofed Mammals), 7351  
 Artiodactyla  
 Antilocapridae  
 Pronghorn, 5840-5841  
 Bovidae  
 Addax, 36  
 Antelope, 305-306  
 Bighorn, 735-736  
 Bison, 1003  
 Buffalo, 1003  
 Carabao, 1188-1189  
 Chamois, 1300-1301  
 Cow, 1727, 1250-1258  
 Dik-Dik, 1947  
 Eland, 2162  
 Gaur, 2706  
 Gazelle, 2708  
 Gnu, 2847-2848  
 Goat, 2848  
 Hartebeest, 3064  
 Ibex, 3324  
 Koodoo, 3812  
 Karakul Sheep, 3746-3747  
 Musk Ox, 4779  
 Rocky Mountain White Goat,  
 6157-6158  
 Sheep, 6546-6550  
 Springbok, 6779  
 Yak, 7923-7924  
 Zebu, 7970  
 Camelidae  
 Alpaca, 233  
 Camel, 1103-1106  
 Dromedary, 2037-2038  
 Guanaco, 2972  
 Llama, 4064-4065  
 Vicuña, 7523-7524  
 Cervidae  
 Caribou, 1197-1198  
 Deer, 1870-1872

Antler, 1870  
 Elk, 2211  
 Moose, 4646-4647  
 Mule Deer, 4734  
 Musk Deer, 4777  
 Reindeer, 6047, 6049  
 Roebuck, 6159  
 Stag, 6792  
 Giraffidae  
 Giraffe, or Camelopard, 2811, 2813  
 Okapi, 5179-5180  
 Hippopotamidae  
 Hippopotamus, 3183-3184  
 Suidae  
 Babirussa, 553  
 Boar, 807-808  
 Hog, 3191-3192  
 Wart Hog, 7622  
 Tagassuidae  
 Peccary, 5438  
 Perissodactyla  
 Equidae  
 Ass, or Donkey, 455-456  
 Horse, 3243-3251  
 Mule, 4734  
 Zebra, 7969  
 Rhinocerotidae  
 Rhinoceros, 6089-6090  
 Tapiridae  
 Tapir, 7018-7019  
 Proboscidae  
 Elephantidae  
 Elephant, 2198-2202  
 Mammoth, 4243  
 Mastodon, 4338-4339  
 Sirenia, 6626  
 Halicordae  
 Dugong, 2050  
 Manatidae  
 Manatee, or Sea Cow, 4246-4247  
 Cetacea, 1292  
 Odontoceti  
 Delphinidae  
 Dolphin, 2001-2002  
 Grampus, 2893  
 Narwhal, 4810  
 Porpoise, 5744-5745  
 Physeteridae  
 Sperm Whale, 7728  
 Mystacoceti  
 Balaenidae  
 Rorqual, 6200, 7727  
 Whale, 7726-7730

## Zoögeography, or Distribution of Animals

Zones of Animal Life, 7979  
 Distribution of Animals over Earth's Surface, 7979  
 Arctic Lands, 370, 7979  
 Land Mammals  
 Eskimo Dog, 2297  
 Fox, 2554

Lemming, 3928  
 Musk Ox, 4779  
 Polar Bear, 660-661  
 Reindeer, 6047, 6049  
 Sea Mammals  
 Seal, 6466, 6470  
 Walrus, 7588-7589

Whale (Right), 7727  
 Arctic Birds  
   Auk, 504  
   Eider Duck, 2155-2156  
   Fulmar, 2632, 2634  
   Guillemot, 2979-2980  
   Gulls, 2984  
     Kittiwake, 3802  
   Kingfisher, 3794  
   Ptarmigan, 5869  
   Puffin, 5875  
   Raven, 6003  
   Sandpiper, 6365  
   Skua, 6635  
   Snowbird, or Bunting, 1022, 6665  
   Waxwing (Bohemian), 7685  
 Fishes  
   Cod, 1522-1523  
   Halibut, 3017-3018  
   Red Salmon, 6339  
   Trout, 7276-7277  
 Absence of Reptiles, Presence of Insects,  
   7979  
 North Temperate Realm, 7979  
 North America, 5047-5048  
 Mammals  
   Bear (Black and Grizzly), 661  
   Beaver, 665-668  
   Bighorn, 735-736  
   Bison, 1004-1005  
   Caribou, 1197-1198  
   Coyote, 1730  
   Deer, 1870-1873  
     American Elk, 2211  
   Fox (Kit), 2554  
   Gopher, 2873-2874  
   Lynx, 4163-4164  
   Marten, 4307  
   Mink, 4508-4509  
   Moose, 4646-4647  
   Musk Ox, 4779  
   Muskrat, 4779-4780  
   Opossum, 5227  
   Otter, 5275  
   Porcupine (Canadian), 5741-5743  
   Prairie Dog, 5795-5796  
   Pronghorn, 5840-5841  
   Puma, or Cougar, 5879-5880  
   Raccoon, 5928  
   Rocky Mountain Goat, 6157-6158  
   Shrew, 6578-6579  
   Skunk, 6635-6636  
   Timber Wolf, 7817  
   Wolverine, 7821-7822  
 Birds  
   Albatross, 182  
   Baltimore Oriole, 590-591  
   Bobolink, 810-811  
   Cormorant, 1680  
   Cowbird, or Cow Bunting, 1727-1728  
   Crow (American), 1759  
   Crow Blackbird, or Purple Grackle,  
     1759

Cuckoo, 1782  
 Curlew, 1787  
 Dove, 2016  
 Duck, 2048  
 Fish Hawk, 2445-2446  
 Flycatcher, 2503  
 Eagle, 2071-2074  
   Bald Eagle, 2074  
   Golden Eagle, 2072  
 Goose, 2871-2872  
 Grosbeak, 2967  
 Grouse, 2969-2970  
   Partridge, or Pheasant, 2970  
   Prairie Chicken, 2970  
 Gulls, 2984-2985  
 Hawks, 3086-3088  
 Jay (Blue and Canadian), 3643-3644  
 Magpie, 4219  
 Mocking Bird, 4565  
 Owl, 5279  
 Pipit, 5626  
 Quail, 5901  
   Bobwhite, 5901  
 Raven, 6003  
 Sandpiper, 6365  
 Snipe (Wilson's), 6663  
 Terns, 7112  
 Titmouse, 7118  
 Turkey Buzzard, 7317-7318  
 Vulture (Black), 7572  
 Warblers, 7593-7594  
 Waxwing, 7684  
 Wild Turkey, 7317-7318  
 Woodpecker, 7833-7834  
 Reptiles, 5048  
   Alligator, 225-226  
   Snakes  
     Copperhead, 1669  
     Moccasin Snake, 4565  
     Rattlesnake, 6001-6002  
 Mollusks, 5048  
   Mussels, 4780-4781  
 Eurasia  
 Mammals  
   Badger, 570  
   Bear (Brown), 660  
   Chamois, 1300  
   Civet, 1441  
   Deer (Red), 1870  
   Dormouse, 2010  
   Elk, 2211  
   Ermine, or Stoat, 2290  
   Fox (Red), 2554  
   Hares, 3044  
   Hedgehog, 3124  
   Ibex, 3324  
   Leopard, 3937  
   Lynx, 4163  
   Marmot, 4297  
   Marten, 4307  
   Mice, 4701  
   Mole, 4574  
   Otter, 5275

Polecat, 5700  
 Rabbit, 5925  
 Reindeer, 6047  
 Shrew, 6578  
 Squirrel, 6790  
 Tiger, 7173  
 Vole, 7564  
 Wild Boar, 807-808  
 Wolf, 7817  
 Wolverine, 7821

Birds

Canary, 1162  
 Crane, 1732  
 Eagle, 2072  
 Falcon (Peregrine), 2364  
 Finch, 2419  
 Fulmar, 2632  
 Goose, 2872  
 Heron, 3164  
 Kingfisher, 3794  
 Linnet, 4033  
 Magpie, 4221  
 Owls, 5279  
 Pigeon (Rock), 5612  
 Ptarmigan, 5869  
 Raven, 6003  
 Skylark, 3880  
 Sparrow (House), 6741  
 Stork, 6850  
 Thrush, 7163  
 Titmouse, 7189  
 Wagtail, 7577

South American Realm, 7979

Including Central America, Mexico, and  
 the West Indies

Mammals

Agouti, 87  
 Alpaca, 233  
 Andean Bear, 660  
 Ant-Eaters, 305  
 Armadillo, 406  
 Chinchilla, 1401-1402  
 Guanaco, 2972  
 Jaguar, 3608-3611  
 Llama, 4064-4065  
 Monkey, 4597  
 Opossum, 5227  
 Peccary, 5438  
 Puma, or Cougar, 5879  
 Raccoon, 5928  
 Sloth, 6643-6644  
 Tapir, 7018-7019  
 Vampire Bats, 7449  
 Vicuña, 7523-7524

Sea Mammal

Manatee, 4246-4247

Birds

Condor, 1600  
 Curlew, 1787  
 Duck (Muscovy), 2048  
 Fish Hawk, 2445-2446  
 Hawk, 3088  
 Humming Bird, 3286-3287

Parrot, 5399  
 Macaw, 4171  
 Pelican, 5447-5448  
 Spoonbill, 6777  
 Tanager, 7012-7013  
 Toucans, 7222, 7224  
 Aracaris, 6701  
 Trogon, 7273  
 Quetzal, 7273  
 Turkey, 7317

Reptiles

Alligators, 225-226  
 Iguana, 3348  
 Lizard, 4063  
 Snake, 6659-6660  
 Anaconda, 6659  
 Boa, 807  
 Rattlesnake, 6002  
 Turtles, 7326

Fish

Electrical Eel, 2168

Arthropods

Tarantula, 7020

Amphibians

Tree Frogs, 7262

Antarctic, 304

Absence of Land Mammals, 304

Birds

Penguins, 5457  
 Petrel (Wilson's), 5519

Sea Mammals

Whales, 7730

Lemurian Zone, 7979

Comprises Madagascar, 4196

Mammal

Lemur, 3930  
 Aye-Aye, 549

Reptile

Iguana, 3348

Australian Realm, 7979

Mammals

Bandicoots, 599  
 Dingo, 1947-1948  
 Duckbill, or Platypus, 2049  
 Echidna, or Spiny Anteater, 2092  
 Kangaroo, 3733  
 Tasmanian Devil, 7028  
 Tasmanian Wolf, 7028-7029  
 Wombat, 7825

Sea Mammal

Dugong, 2051

Birds

Bell Bird, 705  
 Black Swan, 6946  
 Bower Bird, 898  
 Cassowary, 1231  
 Cockatoo, 1517  
 Emu, 2230-2231  
 Kookaburra, 512  
 Lyre Bird, 4165  
 Parrakeets, 5398  
 Parrots, 5399-5400

Fish



Lungfishes, 4154  
 Reptiles  
   Adder (Death), 36  
   Lizard, 4062-4064  
     Monitor, 4594-4595  
 Indo-African Realm, 7979  
   Including Southern Asia, India and Arabia  
 Mammals  
   Aard-Vark, 1  
   Aard-Wolf, 1-2  
   Antelope, 305-306  
     Gazelle, 2708  
   Buffalo, 1003  
   Camel, 1103-1106  
   Chimpanzee, 1384  
   Civet, 1441  
   Elephant, 2198  
   Giraffe, 2811-2813  
   Gnu, 2847-2848  
   Gorilla, 2875-2876  
   Hippotamus, 3183  
   Hyena, 3311-3312  
   Jackal, 3595-3596  
   Leopard, 3937, 5342  
   Lion, 4037  
   Monkey, 4597  
   Rhinoceros, 6089-6090  
   Tapir, 7019  
   Tiger, 7173  
   Zebra, 7969  
   Zebu, 7970  
 Reptiles  
   Adder (Puff), 36  
   Crocodiles, 1750  
   Lizard, 4062-4064  
     Monitor, 4062, 4594-4595  
 Bird  
   Ostrich, 5268-5270  
 Insects  
   Termites (White Ants), 7111-7112

Tsetse Fly, 7285  
 Water Realm, 7979  
 Typical Examples of the Marine Zones  
   Littoral Fishes, 7979  
     Mullet, 4735  
     Skate, 6630  
     Sole, 6680  
     Sprat, 6778  
     Sting Ray, 6835  
   Pelagic Fishes, 7979  
     Menhaden, 4392  
     Shark, 6543  
     Sunfish, 6927  
     Swordfish, 6982  
   Pelagic Mammals  
     Dolphins, 1292, 2001-2002  
     Porpoises, 1292, 5744-5745  
     Whales, 1292, 7728  
   Bassalian Fishes, 7979  
     Lantern Fish, 3873  
     Tilefish, 7177  
 Fresh-Water Fishes  
   Bass, 645  
   Carp, 1206  
   Catfish, 1242  
   Eel, 2135  
   Electrical Fish, 2168  
   Grayling, 2921  
   Muskellunge, 4777  
   Paddlefish, 5294  
   Perch, 5485  
   Pickerel, 5602  
   Pike, 5613  
   Salmon Trout, 6339  
   Stickleback, 6834  
   Sturgeon, 6882-6883  
   Sucker, 6901-6902  
   Sunfish, 6927  
   Trout Perch, 7277  
   Whitefish, 7747

## Animal Morphology

**Invertebrates**  
 Absence of a Backbone, 3500  
 Include All Animals below Vertebrates, 3501  
 Protozoans, 5853, 7982  
   One-Celled Animals, 5853, 7982, 265  
     Amoeba, 265  
     Infusoria, 3450-3451  
     • Vorticella, 7568-7569  
     Radiolaria, 5968  
 Methods of Reproduction, 5853  
 Importance  
   Chalk Deposits, 5853, 1297, 5968  
   Cause Parasitic Diseases, 5853, 1959, 2279  
 [See *Classification*, above.]  
 Porifera, 5743, 7982, 6772  
   Lowest Form of Many-Celled Organisms, 5743  
 Sponges Constitute the Phylum, 7982, 6772-6777  
   Fastened to Inanimate Objects, 6772

Structure, 6772, 6774  
 Differences between Fresh-Water and Marine Sponges, 6777  
 Coelenterata, 1526, 7982  
   Typical Structure  
     Internal Body Cavity with One Aperture, 7982  
     Tentacles, 7982, 1526, 3302  
   Methods of Reproduction, 3302-3303  
   Ctenophora, 7982, 3654-3655  
   [See *Classification*, above.]  
 Platyhelminthes (Flatworms), 7982  
   [See *Classification*, above.]  
 Nematelminthes, 7982  
   Cause Many Parasitic Diseases, 7982, 5365  
     Elephantiasis, 2202, 2204  
     Hookworm Disease, 5365, 3223, 3225  
     Sereh, 2135  
     Trichinosis, 7267-7268  
   [See *Classification*, above.]

**Trochelminthes**, 7982  
 Locomotion by Means of Cilia, 7982  
**Molluscoida**, 7982  
 Polyzoans, 7982  
 Phoronida, 7982  
 Wormlike Animals, 7982  
 Brachiopoda, 7982  
**Echinodermata**, 7982, 2093  
 "Spiny Skinned" Animals, 7982, 2093, 681I  
 "Water-Vascular System," 7982, 2093  
 Tube Feet, 681I, 6475, 2093, 6464  
 Oviparous Means of Reproduction, 2093  
 Power of Regeneration, 681I  
 [See *Classification* above.]  
**Annulata** (Ringed Worms), 7982, 2086, 7892  
 Segmented Invertebrates, 2086  
 Developed Digestive and Circulatory Systems, 7982  
 [See *Classification*, above.]  
**Arthropoda**, 7982, 424  
 Organisms with Jointed Appendages, 424  
 Development of Circulatory and Nervous Systems, 424  
 Chitinous Exoskeleton, 424, 3459  
 Principal Classes, 7982, 424  
 Crustaceans, 1765  
 Segmented Body and Appendages, 1765  
 Antennae, 307  
 Oviparous Means of Reproduction, 1765  
 Power of Regeneration, 1765  
 Molting, 4577, 4069  
 [See *Classification*, above.]  
 Arachnida, 7982, 343, 424  
 Differences between Arachnids and Insects, 343  
 Parasitic Forms, 343  
 Jigger, 3676-3677  
 Mites, 4561-4562  
 Tick, 7170-7171  
 Cattle Tick, 1258-1259  
 Life Cycle of a Representative Form, 6761  
 [See *Classification*, above.]  
 Myriapoda, 7982, 424, 4784  
 Terrestrial Arthropods, 4784  
 Development of Pair of Antennae and Fangs, 4784, 306-307  
 Body Segments with Leglike Appendages, 4784, 1286  
 [See *Classification*, above.]  
**Insecta**, 7982, 424, 3459-3464  
 "Age of Insects," 3459, 2274  
 Distinguishing Features, 3459  
 Position of the Appendages, 3459  
 Antennae, 306-307  
 Mandibles, 4253, 298  
 Internal Structure, 3459  
 Life Processes, 3460  
 Sense Organs, 3460  
 Habits and Instincts, 3462  
 Diversity in Food Needs, 3462  
 Ant Food, 299, 302  
 Bee Food, 672-673

Solitary Life  
 Bee, 682  
 Wasp, 7660-7661  
 Community Life, 3462  
 Ant, 297, 299, 303  
 Bee, 673-679  
 Wasp, 7660-7661  
 The Developing Insect, 3462  
 Complete Metamorphosis, 3462, 4681, 4416  
 Life Cycle of Moth and Butterfly, 3462  
 Egg, 3462, 2136-2138, 1046  
 Larva, or Caterpillar, 3462, 3881, 4416, 1046, 1241  
 Pupa, 3462, 5884, 4416, 1047  
 Cocoon, 1522, 3462  
 Chrysalis, 1418-1419, 3462  
 Imago, 4416, 1047  
 Life Cycle Illustrated, 4829  
 Life History of a Mosquito, 4675-4677  
 Life History of a Wasp, 7658-7661  
 Life History of a Fly, 2498-2499  
 Life History of an Ant, 298-299  
 Incomplete Metamorphosis, 3462, 4416, 2915  
 Nymphs, 3462, 2915  
 Insects as Crop Enemies, 3462  
 Ravages, 3462-3463  
 Production of Galls, 2668  
 Most Dangerous Pests, 3463, 7985  
 Insects and Disease, 3463, 5363  
 [See *Outlines on Agriculture and Medicine and Drugs*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Insects as Friends, 3463, 2274  
 Pollination, 3463, 5713-5714  
 Products, 3463, 2274, 2668  
 Constructive Power, 3463  
 [See *Classification*, above.]  
**Mollusca**, 7982-7983, 4576  
 Soft-Bodied Organisms, 4576, 5283  
 Shell May or May Not Be Present, 4576, 6551-6553  
 Development of Functional Systems, 4576  
 Oviparous Means of Reproduction, 2136  
 Spawn, 6745  
 Main Classes, 4576  
 Gastropods, 4576, 2704  
 Pelecypods, 4576  
 Cephalopods, 1290, 4576  
 Armed with Tentacles, 1290  
**Chordata** (Lower Forms), 7983  
 Animals Possessing a Notochord, 7983, 7510  
 Nervous System Employing a Brain, 7983, 918-921  
 Division of the Phyla, 7983  
 Hemichordata, 7983  
 Partial Development of Notochord, 7983, 6473  
 Urochordata, 7983  
 Development of Cord Only in Tail, 7983  
 Cephalochordata, 7983

Simple Characteristics of Chordates, 7983

**Vertebrates**

[Higher Chordata]

**Typical Characteristics**, 7510

Possess a Spinal Column, 7510

**Major Classes**, 7510, 7983

Cyclostomata (the Lampreys), 7983

Notochord Enclosed in Sheath, 7983

Ancestor of Vertebral Column, 3850

Habitat of the Lampreys, 3850

Pisces (the Fish), 7983, 2440-2445

Gill-Breathing Vertebrates, 2440, 2808

Process of Respiration, 2808

Protective Layer of Scales, 2440, 6407-6408

Reproduction, 2440, 2441

Spawn, 6745

Parental Care, 2440, 2441

Ovipary and Vivipary, 2440, 2136

Nervous System and Sense Organs, 2440

Food of the Fish, 2440-2441

Carnivorous, Herbivorous, and Omnivorous Types, 2440-2441

Parts of a Fish (Illustrated), 2443

Duration of Life, 3979

[See *Classification*, above.]

Amphibians, 7983, 266, 652

Batrachia, Original Name of This Class, 652

Cold-Blooded Vertebrates, 266

Land and Water Habitats, 7983

Oviparous Means of Reproduction, 266

Spawn, 6745

Respiratory System, 266

Metamorphosis, 4416-4417

Development of a Toad, 4416

[See *Classification*, above.]

Reptilia, 7983, 6062

Lung-Breathing Animals, 6062

Cold-Blooded Vertebrates, 6062

Protective Layer of Scales, 6062, 6407-6408

Molting, 4577, 6659

Ovipary, 6062, 2136-2137

Spawn, 6745

Illustrated Life Cycle of the Frog, 4831

Aves (the Birds), 7983, 751-770

Feathers, the Most Distinguishing Feature, 751, 752, 2385-2386

Molting, 753

Periodic Shedding of Plumage, 4577, 753

Warm-Blooded Vertebrate, 7983

Relationship with Reptiles, 751, 6062

Framework of the Body, 751

Respiration Carried on by Lungs, 751

Reproductive Body

Egg, 2136-2137

Embryonic Organism, 2136

Parts of an Egg, 2136

Hatching, 2137, 754

Number and Size of Eggs, 2137

Power of Flight, 751-752

Wings and Tail Enabling Flight, 751

Length and Speed of Flight, 751

Senses, 753

Highly Developed Sense of Sight and Hearing, 753

Meager Development of Touch, Smell, and Taste, 753

Sense of Direction, 753

Song, 753-754

Syrinx, Vocal Organ, 754

Home Life of Birds, 754

Food, 754-755

Herbivorous, Carnivorous, and Omnivorous Types, 754

Function of the Crop and Gizzard, 755, 2817

Relation to Man, 755

The Study of Birds

Lessons on Birds, 756

Parts of a Bird, 757

Local Protection of Birds, 757-758

Feeding Birds, 758-759

Water for Birds, 759

Shrubby and Trees for Birds, 759

Building Bird Houses, 759-763

Nests, 763

Migration, 764-765

Need of Migration, 764-765

The Process, 764-765

Migratory Lanes, 765

Bird Banding, 765

Duration of Life, 3979

Government Protection, 766

Bird Reservations, 766

Game Laws, 766

Bird Day, 766-767, 770

Classification, 756

Simple Classification, 770

[See *Systematic Classification*, above.]

Mammalia, 7983, 4242-4243

The Ultimate of the Vertebrate Group, 4242

Method of Nourishing the Young, 4242

Hair-Covered Animals, 4242, 7983, 3006-3007

Bristles, 957

Molting, 4577

Similarity of Skeletons, 4242-4243

Circulatory and Respiratory Systems, 4243

Reproductive Body, 2136

Duration of Life, 3979

Principal Orders

Marsupials, 4306

Pouched Mammals, 4306

Variations in Habit and Food, 4306

Chiroptera, 1403

Wide Distribution, 1403, 648

Development of the Fore Limb, 1403, 647

Bats Constitute the Order, 647-648

Social Life, 648

Carnivorous Animals, 1204-1205  
 Flesh Eating Mammals, 1204  
 Land and Water Carnivores, 1204  
 Rodents, or Rodentia, 6158  
 Gnawing Mammals, 6158  
 Variations in Size and Habits, 6158  
 Edentata, 2107  
 Teeth May Be Poorly Developed or  
 Lacking, 2107  
 Primates, 5811  
 Possess Nails, 5811  
 Man and Allied Mammals Included,  
 5811  
 [See Outline on *Anatomy, Physiology,  
 and Hygiene*, in this GUIDE.]  
 Ungulates, 7351  
 Hoofed Mammals, 7351  
 Odd and Even Toed, 7351  
 May Possess Horns, 7351  
 Sirenia, 6626  
 Water Mammals, 6626  
 Special Characteristics, 6626, 4246  
 Cetacea, 1292  
 Warm - Blooded, Lung - Breathing  
 Mammals, 1292  
 [See *Classification*, above.]

#### Terminology

**Acclimatization or Acclimation**, 16  
 Adaptation to Foreign Climate, 16  
 Examples  
 Domesticated Animals, 16  
 Human Race, 16  
**Degeneration**, 1874  
 Progressive Deterioration, 1874  
 Desirable Results from Breeding, 1874,  
 940-941

**Environment**, 2275-2276  
 Conditions under which Animals Live,  
 2275  
 Climatic Factors, 2275  
 Man's Relation to His Environment, 2275-  
 2276  
 [See Outline on *Sociology*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Fauna**, 2382  
 Animal Life Constituting a Region or Period  
 of Time, 2392  
**Hibernation**, 3172-3174  
 Dormant State of Some Organisms through  
 Winter, 3172  
 Estivation, 3172  
 Physiological Condition of the Animals,  
 3173  
 Chief Varieties, 3174  
 Illustrations  
 Winter Home of the Chipmunk, 3172  
 Grizzly Bear in Winter, 3173  
 How the Snake Passes the Winter, 3174  
**Instinct**, 3467-3468  
 Unpremeditated Act, 3467  
 Natural Impulse to Perform an Act, 3467  
 Instinct Distinguished from Reflex Action,  
 3467, 6036  
 Examples of Instinctive Acts, 3467-3468  
**Introduced Species**, 3492  
 Foreign Organisms Introduced to New Re-  
 gion, 3492  
 Examples, 3492  
**Metamorphosis**, 4416-4417  
 Transformation of Larva into an Adult,  
 4416  
 Occurrence, 4416  
 [See *Insects*, above.]  
**Protective Coloration**, 5850-5851

### Related Subjects

**Biochemistry**, 741-743  
 [See Outlines on *Botany* and *Chemistry*, in  
 this GUIDE.]  
**Entomology**, 2274  
 Study of the Insects, 2274, 3459-3464  
 [See *Animal Morphology*, above.]  
**Nature Study**, 4823  
 Nature's Place in Everyday Life, 4823-4825  
 The Teacher and His Equipment, 4825  
 School Equipment, 4826-4827  
 Aquarium, 4826, 333-335  
 Insect Cage, 4826-4827  
 Suggested Studies, 4827  
 Birds, 4828, 751-770  
 Fishes, 4829, 2440-2445

Amphibians, or Batrachians, 4829, 266, 652  
 Reptiles, 4829, 6062  
 Mammals, 4829-4830, 4242-4243  
 Insects, 4830, 3459-3464  
 Books Treating Nature Study and Ele-  
 mentary Science, 4830  
**Ornithology**, 5261, 751-770  
 Study of Birds, 5261  
 Important Contributions, 5261  
**Paleontology**, 2742, 5309, 2548-2550  
 [See Outline on *Geology*, in this GUIDE.]  
**Taxidermy**, 7035-7036  
 Science of Preserving and Mounting Animal  
 Life, 7035  
 Process of Mounting, 7035-7036



*PART TWO*  
GUIDE TO STUDY  
ILLUSTRATIVE UNITS  
OF INSTRUCTION



## Preface to PART TWO

---

THIS section of the Guide volume has been prepared to show how the vast amount of material in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia can be mastered in accordance with modern educational methods. These studies will be valuable to

1. The teacher, for use in connection with required textbooks or courses of study.
2. The student, who can readily follow the lessons without the aid of an instructor.
3. The lay reader, who wishes to refresh or extend his knowledge.

The authors of the several units are outstanding leaders in modern educational thought and are experienced and successful teachers. The lessons have been thoroughly tested in the classroom, especially in the elementary school and the high school of the University of Chicago. Although they represent what is known as the "unit plan" of instruction, they are equally serviceable in connection with the contract plan, the project method, etc. Modern plans of instruction have so much in common that the user may have full assurance that in following the suggestions contained in these units he is complying with the latest and best in educational thought.

The teacher or student who is obliged to follow some special plan or method of instruction will find these studies valuable for organization of subject matter, for the outlines, and for the special devices contained in them.

For years, persistent efforts have been made by educational leaders to base instruction upon logical units rather than upon mere assignments. Originally, the grouping of knowledge around a central idea was designated a "type study." Later terms such as "project" and "problem" came into favor. The *unit plan* is widely recognized as a still further advance in instructional method. The *logical unit* usually requires several lessons for mastery. Details are subordinated and become significant not as facts in themselves, but as steps in the understanding and application of a principle. This places learning on a high plane, making it primarily an affair of intelligence, rather than of memory alone. Not only does the student gain more information, but he remembers it better and is able to use it more effectively. He learns how to study, he becomes able to formulate problems, and he can proceed with their solution by the use of all available material. He acquires power to choose and interpret facts, and is afforded abundant practice in self-expression.

The school program is becoming overcrowded. Selection must be made, or the pupil will be overwhelmed by the great mass of details to be learned. This alone is sufficient reason for the use of large units in instruction in the place of mere lesson assignments. Courses of study and materials of instruction are generally beginning to show the effect of this method.



A more detailed exposition of the unit plan will be found in the introductions to the departments of American History, Community Civics, and General Science in succeeding pages of this volume; also in the article, "Unit Plan of Instruction," by James F. Hosic of Teachers College, Columbia University, in Volume Twelve. These are original contributions to educational literature prepared expressly for THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.

Attention is called to the course in "Character Training," which is an original treatment, adapted for use in either the school or the home. Possibly there is no subject on which parents and teachers will so gladly welcome an organized plan of procedure, nor one on which usable literature is so limited. It is then quite fitting that suggestions for guidance in character training should be included in a publication having the widespread circulation of THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.

M. V. O'SHEA, Editor-in-Chief.

THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

# GUIDE TO STUDY

## ILLUSTRATIVE UNITS OF INSTRUCTION

---

### *Social Studies*

HOWARD C. HILL

Head of the Department of Social Science of the University High School,  
Assistant Professor of the Teaching of Social Science, the College  
of Education, The University of Chicago.

ROBERT B. WEAVER

Instructor in Social Science, University High School, The University of Chicago.

HAROLD A. ANDERSON

Instructor in English and Social Science, University High School, The University of Chicago.

---

### *Natural Science*

FRED G. ANIBAL

Head of Science Department, University High School, The University of Chicago.

JOHN C. MAYFIELD

Instructor in General Science, University High School, The University of Chicago.

BERTHA M. PARKER

Instructor in Elementary Science, University Elementary School, The University of Chicago.

---

### *Character Training*

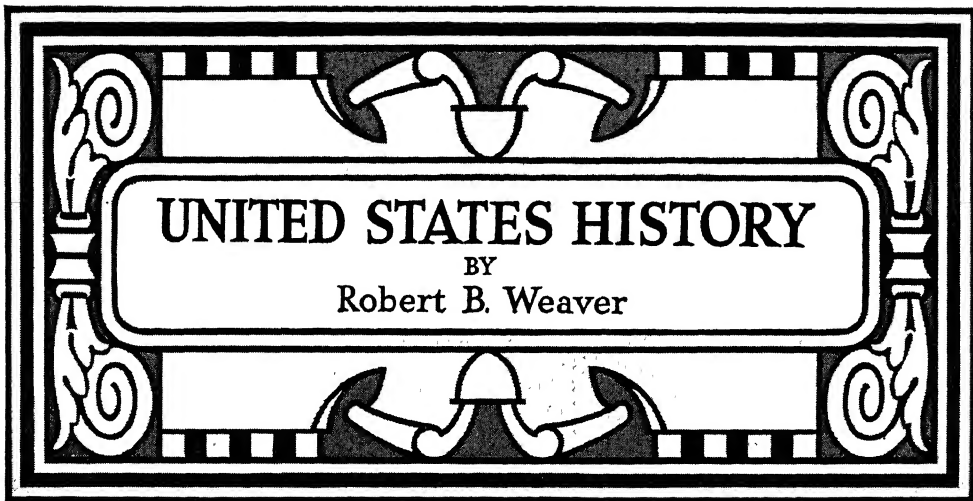
MARY G. KELTY

Formerly Chairman of the Department of Social Studies, State Teachers' College, Oshkosh, Wisconsin.

NELLE E. MOORE

Supervisor of Elementary Education, Public Schools, Wilmette, Illinois.





### For the Upper Elementary School Grades and the Junior High School

In the selection of materials, authors of history textbooks and makers of courses in history have usually been guided by the encyclopedic principle. An organization of this type almost invariably results in a summarization of the entire record of a nation's past, and dates, persons, and events are included because of the intrinsic value of these items as matters of knowledge or information. The main end of an encyclopedic course is therefore memorization or recall.

The course in United States history which is presented in this volume, however, has been organized in accordance with an entirely different principle. Episodes, persons, and details have been selected which serve to interpret or explain nine significant movements which constitute the units of the course. In an encyclopedic organization, the vast array of facts deal with many subjects; in a course built upon the unitary plan, all the assimilative materials focus upon certain definite aspects of an absorbing story. These materials then become important not for themselves alone, but rather as means to an end, the end being the understanding of the unit. The course has for its goal, then, rationalization or understanding.

An examination of courses of study, textbooks, and manuals published in late years shows that the fundamental difference between a unitary course and a course of the encyclopedic type is often unrealized or ignored. In many of these publications, the terms "unit" and "unitary" occur again and again, but the assimilative material presented under such terminology frequently does not conform to the requirements of a true unitary organization. For example, in a recently published manual, the third unit, "The New Nation Established,"

consists of the following questions with references covering in chronological order the period from 1789 to 1825:

1. What part did Washington play in the establishment of the new nation?
2. What were the chief problems in establishing the government during Washington's administration?
3. Why did political parties develop in the new nation?
4. How did the acquisition of Louisiana Territory strengthen the new nation?
5. In what sense did the War of 1812 establish the prestige of the new government?
6. How did the War of 1812 influence the economic independence of the American people?
7. Show how the Monroe Doctrine strengthened the foreign influence of the United States?
8. What was the new conception of the national government brought out by Webster in his "Reply to Hayne"?
9. How was a new national consciousness indicated by democratic tendencies in politics and religion?
10. In what sense are Irving, Bryant, and Cooper called the first American writers?
11. How did John Marshall strengthen the national government?
12. What are the best well-known evidences of American art up to 1825?

If one may judge from the following nineteen standards which the pupils are expected to attain, the main purpose of this division seems to be to present a rather complete story of a *definite period* of the nation's history for learning or memorizing. The manual states that the pupils are expected, among other things, to be able to give the chief events in the "unit" in narrative form, the names of the first six Presidents, the location of all geographic features listed under map work, the

political and economic results of the War of 1812, and the identification of a large number of dates and terms. It is apparent that the assimilative material for this division was selected in accordance with the encyclopedic principle of organization, that a definite period is to be covered, and that the main end is memorization and recall rather than rationalization and understanding.

Pupils studying a true unit of learning entitled, "The New Nation Established," would not be required to find the present value of the Louisiana Purchase territory, or to show how the original Monroe Doctrine has since been expanded, or to explain the effect of the invention of the cotton gin, or to compare the industrial revolution in America with that in England, or to describe colonial architecture, or to identify Gilbert Stuart, or to learn the date of the prohibition of the foreign slave trade—all of which are required in the instance cited but all of which are foreign to the theme suggested by the title of the unit. The title, indeed, indicates a genuine unitary conception, but the details selected for study are in many instances irrelevant or are unrelated to the "unit."

In many courses of study which purport to be unitary, neither the titles nor the contents of so-called "units" are unitary in character. Such is the case in a recently published course of study in which one of the "units" is entitled "The English Colonies in America." The title suggests a stage or period of the nation's history which, apparently, is to be covered. The block of material proposed for study consists of the following series of topics: (1) "Why Europeans Wanted to Come to America," (2) "Ignorance of Conditions in America," (3) "The Settlement of Virginia," (4) "The Story of the Pilgrims and the Beginning of Massachusetts," (5) "Other New England Colonies," (6) "The Middle Colonies," (7) "Colonies South of Virginia," (8) "How People from Many Countries Became Americans," (9) "The Colonies and the Mother Country," (10) "Various Industries in the Colonies," (11) "How Different Governments Developed in the Colonies," and (12) "Life in the Colonies." These topics indicate that the pupils are to study all the colonies in all their aspects. There is no indication that the course-builder attempted to incorporate only such assimilative material as would interpret a *single* significant and comprehensive aspect of some field of knowledge.<sup>1</sup>

The true meaning of the term "unit" apparently is misunderstood. Professor H. C. Morrison states that "the critical difference

between a true unit of learning and a mere chapter heading is the difference between a significant and comprehensive aspect of the environment, or of a science, which can be understood and a mere division of descriptive or expository subject matter which cannot be understood except in relation to other chapters which themselves stand in isolation."<sup>2</sup>

It is in accordance with the interpretation of the unitary principle as set forth in the preceding paragraphs that the following course in United States history has been planned. The course is a modification of a unitary course prepared in the Laboratory School of the University of Chicago by Dr. H. C. Hill and the writer and is adapted to THE WORLD BOOK. Each of the nine units consists of five major divisions: (1) a list of exploration questions; (2) a unit analysis; (3) assimilative material; (4) study directions; and (5) a test in understanding. A brief consideration of each of these divisions follows:

(1) The use of exploration questions to determine the apperceptive basis of pupils for a new unit has become quite general among teachers of the social studies. In meeting his new class, the teacher's first task is to discover just how far the pupils have advanced in the subject, for the highest degree of success in teaching can be attained only when the teacher knows what knowledge and understanding the pupils already possess. Teachers who desire "to teach individuals rather than subject matter" use factual and understanding exploration questions to determine the pupils' previous preparation for the new unit of learning.

A list of exploration questions is given at the beginning of each unit of the course in United States history which follows for the use of the teacher in determining the apperceptive mass of his pupils. Each list of exploration questions is merely suggestive of the type of questions that may be asked before instruction is undertaken. Some of the questions may be omitted if the teacher so desires, and other questions which appear to him to be necessary may be added. Pupils should be assured that their answers to these exploration questions will have no bearing upon their final grades or marks; that the questions are asked solely for the purpose of providing the teacher with evidence concerning their preparation for the new unit in order that he may teach more wisely and intelligently. The questions may be answered orally by the pupils, but written answers from each pupil will provide the teacher with more objective data.

In order to study the exploration test scores, the following record sheet has been employed

<sup>1</sup>The preceding discussion is adapted from an article (by Dr. Howard C. Hill and Robert B. Weaver) which appeared in *The School Review*, XXXVII, No. 4.

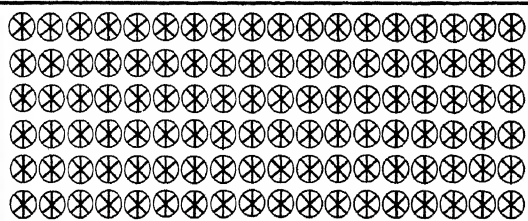
<sup>2</sup>Henry C. Morrison, *The Practice of Teaching in the Secondary School*, p. 177. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

# Cover-the-Ground - content important for itself alone

1492

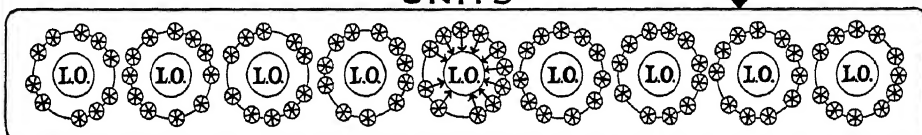
To-day

## STOREHOUSE OF KNOWLEDGE AND INFORMATION



**Unitary—**  
content important as  
means to an end

## UNITS

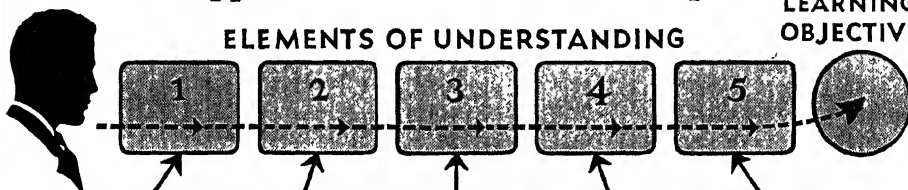


PUPIL

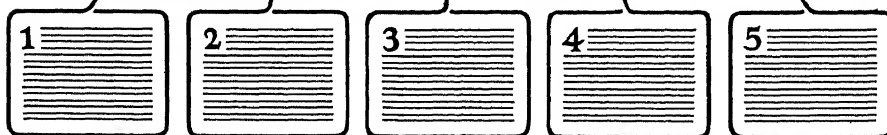
## Application of the Unitary Principle

LEARNING  
OBJECTIVE

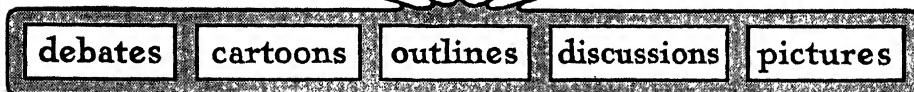
### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING



### ASSIMILATIVE MATERIAL (SUBJECT MATTER)



### STUDY ACTIVITIES



#### EXPLANATION OF THE DIAGRAMS

Above, the diagram illustrates two principles of organization. When the encyclopedic principle is followed, and *ground is covered*, dates, persons and events are included because of the intrinsic value of these items as matters of knowledge or information. When the unitary principle is followed, only subject matter is included which contributes to an understanding of the learning objective in each of the units constituting the course.

Below, subject matter (assimilative material) is made the basis of study activities (outlines, debates, discussions, etc.) the preparation of which enables the pupil to understand the elements and arrive at the learning objective.

with success by many teachers. The column "Number Wrong" indicates the apperceptive basis of each pupil for the new unit, and the column totals indicate the phases of the new unit which are most generally understood by the class, and the phases of the new unit which are the least understood. A teacher cannot help but do better work in the classroom after he has studied the data compiled in a record sheet of this type. Exploration questions may be used later in the unit as check-up questions for review purposes, or may be used as final test questions.

PUPIL'S NAME	QUESTIONS															No. Wrong
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	
A.....	x	x		x	x	x		x		x	x		x	x		10
B.....		x		x		x	x	x		x	x	x		x	x	10
C.....	x	x	x	x		x		x		x		x	x	x		13
D.....				x	x		x	x			x	x		x		7
E.....		x		x	x				x			x			x	6
F.....		x		x	x	x			x			x	x			9
G.....				x	x						x			x	x	5
H.....	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	14
I.....	x			x	x	x					x	x			x	7
J.....	x			x	x		x					x			x	6
K.....	x	x	x	x		x					x	x			x	9
L.....	x			x			x				x	x		x	x	7
M.....	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	15
TOTAL	8	8	4	12	11	6	10	6	4	5	10	11	5	7	11	118

(2) The analysis of each unit appears immediately below the list of exploration questions for the unit. The analysis consists of a learning objective and elements of understanding. The learning objective is a statement in generalized form of the main learning product, intellectually considered, that is desired in a particular unit of learning. The learning objective represents the adaptation which the pupils are expected to make as a result of their study. The elements of understanding are statements in generalized form of the minor understandings which the pupils are expected to acquire as a result of their study. If the study of a unit is likened to a journey or a trip, the elements of understanding may be thought of as the route which is traveled, and the learning objective as the destination. Each analysis is presented as a matter of faith, to some extent, for in no case have the learning objective and the elements of understanding been definitely determined objectively.

Until scientific research has been employed to determine the analysis of a unit, the teacher must assume that the elements of understanding which he uses are the adaptations which will most likely result in the attainment of the learning objective. Only after investigation and experimentation can the course-builder or teacher be certain that an analysis of a unit is superior to other possible analyses of the same

subject of study. What one person considers the learning objective desired in a particular subject of study may be considered by other persons as too difficult, too broad in scope, or too specialized.

When such differences arise over the learning objective, even less agreement may be expected upon the minor understandings to be developed in arriving at the adaptation indicated in the learning objective. Disagreement must be expected until all possible analyses of a given unit have been made, and the educative value of each determined. This, of course, involves teaching a unit analyzed in different ways, and determining the value to the pupils of the different analyses. The essential point is not that agreement must be reached, but rather that a defensible analysis be made before instruction is undertaken.

The analyses given in this course may be modified at the discretion of the teacher by omitting certain elements, by combining elements, or by adding elements which appear to the teacher to be essential. If the teacher desires to give a presentation of the new unit to the pupils, he should follow the analysis in his discussion, and if the pupils are then required to write a presentation paper indicating the intellectual route which is to be followed and the destination, they, too, should follow, in general, the unit analysis.

(3) The subject matter which the pupils are expected to study is given in the third division of each unit under the title "Assimilative Material." The divisions of content indicated in the Assimilative Material correspond to the elements of understanding as outlined in the analysis of the unit. The selection of assimilative material for a unit will be more intelligent if the items are determined upon after the learning objective and elements of understanding are formulated, for the material is then chosen to illuminate the analysis, and is more likely to be illustrative in character than to be material chosen for itself alone. The assimilative material has been selected for its value in illuminating a historical movement, that is, as a means to comprehension. The items included should be thought of as means to an end, not ends in themselves.

(4) Exercises which the pupils are expected to prepare are listed in each unit under the title "Study Activities." The assimilative material of the unit is used in preparing imaginary and historical themes, cartoons, diagrams, debates, charts, outlines, and tabulations. Educators are severe in their criticism of busy-work exercises which appear in many textbooks at the ends of chapters, but no one questions the use of exercises which are planned after a unit analysis has been determined and which focus definitely upon some phase or phases of that analysis.



# Application of the Unitary Principle

## ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. The new government solved difficult financial problems.
2. The new government enforced its laws in spite of armed opposition.
3. The new government maintained its neutrality during a world war regardless of determined efforts to bring it into the struggle as the ally of one of the combatants.
4. The new government survived the conflicts of rival political parties.
5. The new government stood the strain of a foreign war in spite of internal opposition.

During the first twenty-five years of its existence the national government was tested by serious difficulties which it successfully overcame.

## ASSIMILATIVE MATERIAL (SUBJECT MATTER)

1. Finance: Financial problems of the new government—debt, current expenses, income; Hamilton's proposals—foreign debt, domestic debt, tariff.
2. Law and order: Collection of Federal taxes—tariff, whiskey; attitude of the West on whiskey tax; Whiskey Rebellion—causes, chief incidents, action of national government, significance.
3. Neutrality: European war; the people—finance, interpretation of the Constitution, European affairs: Federalists in power—Alien and Sedition Laws; Virginian and Kentucky Resolutions; election of 1800.
4. Political parties: Views of the Barbary pirates; war with England (1812)—causes, military events (invasion of Canada, Perry on Lake Erie, the Constitution and the Guerriere, blockade on the Atlantic coast, burning of Washington, Battle of New Orleans); internal opposition—Hartford Convention; results of the war.
5. War: Quasi-war with France; the Barbary pirates; war with England (1812)—causes, military events (invasion of Canada, Perry on Lake Erie, the Constitution and the Guerriere, blockade on the Atlantic coast, burning of Washington, Battle of New Orleans); internal opposition—Hartford Convention; results of the war.

## STUDY ACTIVITIES

1. Indicate in a discussion of at least two pages how the new government solved difficult financial problems. a. Alexander Hamilton, 3025-3026. b. National Debt, 4814. c. Internal Revenue, 3482-3483. d. George Washington, 7653. e. Bank of the United States, 602. 2. How was the Whiskey Rebellion a test of the new government? Be prepared to discuss this question in class. 7742, 2666, 7654. 4. Do you think that Washington acted wisely in issuing a proclamation stating that America would remain neutral? Indicate in a short paragraph how Washington might have reasoned in arriving at the conclusion that the new nation should stay out of entangling European alliances. 6. The following references show that the new government survived the conflicts of rival political parties. Prepare a sentence outline of this division of the unit, and be prepared to discuss in class the part of the outline which you think most significant in showing the activities of the two major parties. The references for exercise 3 should be reviewed before the outline is made. a. History of Political Parties in the United States, 5705. b. Democratic Party, 1888-1889. c. Aaron Burr, 1037. d. Alien and Sedition Laws, 221. e. Anti-Federalist Party, 310. f. Federalist Party, 2390. g. Jefferson, Secretary of State and Vice-President, 3648. h. Election of 1800, 3648-3650. i. Alexander Hamilton, 3026. j. Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 3765. k. Death of the Federalist Party, 4202. 9. Read the account of "The War of 1812," on pages 7601-7606, and prepare a topical outline of this material. Using your outline as a guide, write a comprehensive story of this phase of the unit, indicating how the war tested the new government.



Each exercise involves the use of essential assimilative material, and is in no way a lesson-learning assignment. Certain exercises may be omitted, if the teacher thinks too much work has been assigned, but care should be taken not to omit all of the exercises which are focused upon a particular element of understanding. As a rule, there are at least two exercises which are expected to bring about an understanding of each element of the unit.

(5) A test in understanding of the multiple-choice type is given at the end of each unit. Four possible answers to each question are given, and the pupils are expected to place a cross (x) before each correct answer and a question mark (?) before each debatable answer. The incorrect answers are not to be marked in any way. If the teacher desires, he may require the pupils to write two or three sentences immediately below each question, and justify his selections. Pupils should not expect to find one correct, one incorrect, and one debatable answer to each question. In some cases, two of the four answers given to a question are correct, and two answers are debatable. In some cases, one answer is correct, one is debatable, and two are incorrect. In fact, all possible combinations of answers are provided, and the pupils should be cautioned against expecting any particular combination.

The test questions for a particular unit are focused upon the analysis of the unit, rather than upon the assimilative material, and are, consequently, understanding questions. Many of the exploration questions are focused upon the assimilative material and are informational in character; but the final test questions develop the pupils' *understanding* of the unit. If

a pupil has not mastered the unit when he takes the test (which will be indicated by his low test score), he should be required to read additional accounts, prepare additional exercises, and take another test in understanding within a few days. The pupils who pass the test in understanding with perfect scores (indicating that they have mastered the unit) are ready to prepare an organization of the unit, and write a recitation paper or give a floor talk.

In organization, each pupil is required, without the use of books, notebooks, or helps of any kind, to make a complete analytical outline of the unit. In writing a recitation paper, or in giving a floor talk, a pupil should present everything he knows about the unit, and should be given as much time for his presentation as he desires. Each pupil should be required to write a recitation paper or give a floor talk for each unit in which the *complete* story of the unit is related.

[A complete description of the Five-Step Procedure of teaching, which has been somewhat modified in the preceding paragraphs, is presented by Professor H. C. Morrison in *The Practice of Teaching in the Secondary School*.]

Before the unitary course which follows is studied, pupils should read the "Summary of United States History," pages 7389-7409 in *THE WORLD BOOK*, to become acquainted with the principal events of our nation's history in the order of their occurrence and to understand the scope of this course. When this has been done, the pupils should be ready to study Unit One, which follows. The units of the course are presented, without further introduction, in the order in which they should be studied.

## UNIT ONE

### How We Became Americans

#### Exploration Questions

1. What was the real motive back of Columbus's desire to cross the ocean?
2. Why did the Pilgrims leave England and Holland to come to the New World?
3. Why did James Oglethorpe bring people to Georgia?
4. What effect did the stories of Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus, and Henry Hudson have on the people of Europe? What were these stories?
5. What are the chief reasons that caused people from Europe to journey to America during the seventeenth century?
6. Of what significance in American history was the capture of Constantinople by the Turks?
7. What did Columbus know about Marco Polo's travels, and how did this influence him?
8. How did the immigration to America change during the latter part of the nineteenth century?
9. How do you account for Columbus's voyages and Hudson's first visit to America?
10. Were the achievements of Columbus and Hudson greater or less than they had expected? Explain.
11. How was life in Europe in the seventeenth century growing hard? How did this affect the history of America?
12. What conditions existed in America during the years preceding the American Revolution that caused Europeans to come to its shores?
13. Explain the influence of European and

American writers in causing people to migrate to America?

14. What was the chief nationality of the American colonists before the Revolutionary War?
15. What nationalities were represented in each of the original thirteen colonies before the Revolution?
16. What kinds of people were represented in the Northern, Central, and Southern colonies from the Revolution to approximately 1880?
17. What were the approximate percentages of the various nationalities living in the United States in 1800, in 1880, in 1900, in 1920? What is the condition to-day?

### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

Since the beginning of settlement, immigrants from many lands have come to America, and as a result the American people are a composite nationality.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. From the beginning of settlement, immigrants have settled in America to escape religious persecution, to be free from political oppression, to make money, and to improve their living conditions.
2. The early settlers were largely from Great Britain.
3. During the century following the American Revolution, the immigrants were largely from the countries of Northwestern Europe, but during the last fifty years many have come from Southeastern Europe and Western Asia.
4. Americans have become a composite people through intermarriage, through common institutions, through westward movements, and through common traditions.

#### Assimilative Material

1. Why white people first came to America: Commerce, Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus, Henry Hudson; religion, the Pilgrims; oppression, James Oglethorpe and Georgia.
2. Kinds of people who came: the settlers at Jamestown; the colonists of Massachusetts; the different nationalities in South Carolina, Delaware, Pennsylvania, New York; the chief nationality in the colonies.
3. Migrations from Europe since the American Revolution: Incomers from Northwestern Europe to 1880—from England, Germany, Ireland, Scandinavian countries; incomers from Southeastern Europe and Asia since 1880—from Italy, Austria,

Hungary, Poland, Russia, Serbia, Greece, Roumania, China, and Japan.

4. The present population: This class; this school; this district; this city; this state; the United States.

### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.]

1. After reading the story of Marco Polo, 5714-5716, 3818, the story of Christopher Columbus, 1572-1577, 5077, and the story of Henry Hudson, 3270-3273, write a paper of at least two pages comparing the influence of these three men in causing people to come to America. Remember, the only parts of the three stories that you care about at this time are the parts which indicate how these three men caused people to come.
2. Read about the Pilgrims, 5615-5616, 4331-4332, and be prepared to write one clear, concise sentence on the blackboard which summarizes this story. The story of the Puritans, 5887, and the story of the Quakers, 5901-5902, may be read to supplement the major assignment.
3. Indicate in a brief discussion whether you think commerce or religion was more important in causing people to settle in the New World.
4. How do the accounts of James Oglethorpe in Georgia, 2759-2762 and 5166-5167, relate to the story of this unit? Be prepared to show the exact relationship of this material to the subject of study.
5. Prepare a diary which might have been kept by a member of the debtor class who sailed for America with Oglethorpe.
6. Read the following accounts and write a comprehensive description of the kinds of people who came to the colonies before the American Revolution. Remember that *kinds* refers to nationality, personality, character, disposition, and occupational activity.
  - a. History of Massachusetts, 4331-4332.
  - b. Massachusetts Bay Colony, 4335.
  - c. Jamestown, 3615-3616.
  - d. History of South Carolina, 6711-6713.
  - e. History of Delaware, 1880.
  - f. Early History of New York, 4976.
  - g. History of Pennsylvania, 5470.
  - h. Immigration, 7367-7368.
7. To test your ability to find reference materials, locate other accounts in THE WORLD BOOK which indicate the kinds of people who came to America before the American Revolution.
8. Does the account of "Colonial Life in America," 1545-1550, give you any indication of the chief nationality in the

colonies? Be prepared to defend your position on this question.

9. After reading the following accounts, make a tabular chart indicating as many differences as you can between the people who came before 1880 and those who came since 1880. Devote one column to the immigration before 1880 and one column to the immigration since 1880.
  - a. The People of the United States, 7367-7368.
  - b. Immigration in the United States, 2224-2226.
  - c. A Citizen of the United States, 1435-1436.
  - d. Chinese Exclusion, 1402.
  - e. Oriental Emigration to California, 1095-1097.
  - f. Edward Bok, 816.
  - g. Carl Schurz, 6431.
10. Pages 2225-2226 indicate the large per cent of foreign-born population. In the discussions of many of the states, you will find a division entitled "Its People." Read as many of these accounts as you think profitable, and make a chart indicating the nationalities which make up the present population. Discussions of the larger American cities also give materials dealing with the question of population. Consult some of these references. Make a survey of your class, your school, and your school district to determine more about the nature of our melting pot.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. What was the chief reason people first came to America?
  - a. Love of pleasure.
  - b. Desire for wealth.
  - c. Ambition for conquest.
  - d. Love of adventure.
2. What conditions in the Old World caused people to leave their native country?
  - a. All property was owned by the government.
  - b. The land was poor and hard to cultivate.
  - c. Governments discouraged commerce.
  - d. Governments oppressed people.
3. What was the policy of European governments that caused this emigration?
  - a. Refusal to permit people to dress as they desired.
  - b. Refusal to permit people to control the selling prices of their goods.
  - c. Refusal to permit people to worship as they desired.

- d. Refusal to permit public gatherings for the purpose of amusement.
4. How did the Turks influence people to come to America?
  - a. They founded a colony in the New World.
  - b. They published books telling about the New World.
  - c. They captured Constantinople.
  - d. They gave young oppressed Turks their freedom.
5. What was the chief nationality of the early settlers?
  - a. The French colonists far outnumbered all other nationalities.
  - b. The English were in the majority, but there were many Swedes, Dutch, French, and Germans.
  - c. The Spanish were the chief peoples in the early colonies.
  - d. The Dutch were the chief colonists, but there were many Englishmen, Spaniards, Germans, and French.
6. How has emigration to America changed during the last one hundred fifty years?
  - a. Previous to 1880, most immigrants reached America from the countries of Northwestern Europe; since 1880, many have come from the countries of Southeastern Europe and Western Asia.
  - b. Previous to 1880, most immigrants came from Italy, Austria-Hungary, and Russia; since 1880, the majority have come from Great Britain, Ireland, and Germany.
  - c. Previous to 1880, most immigrants came from Great Britain, Ireland, Russia, and Germany; since 1880, the majority have come from Ireland and Austria-Hungary (now Austria and Hungary).
  - d. The immigration since 1880 has been the same as the immigration before 1880; there has been no important change during the past one hundred fifty years.
7. Why did most people who came to America after the Revolution settle in the North?
  - a. They desired to be near the Great Lakes.
  - b. They were driven to the Northern coast by ocean currents.
  - c. They did not like the climate of the Southern states.
  - d. They wanted to be away from slave labor.
8. What type of immigrants before the Revolution was the most numerous?
  - a. The nobility.
  - b. Negro slaves.
  - c. Indentured servants.
  - d. Middle class.

9. During what periods have the largest numbers of immigrants arrived?
  - a. Before the American Revolution.
  - b. Between 1880 and 1920.
  - c. Between the American Revolution and 1850.
  - d. Since 1920.
10. What is the present attitude of most of the people of the United States toward immigration?
- a. They think that immigration should be greatly restricted.
- b. They think that immigration should not be restricted.
- c. They think that only immigrants from Southeastern Europe should be permitted to enter the United States.
- d. They think that the immigration question should be decided by the states rather than by the national government.

## UNIT TWO

### Why We Have English Institutions

#### Exploration Questions

1. What parts of North America were claimed by the different Indian tribes?
2. How did the voyages of Columbus give Spain a claim to the New World?
3. How did Pope Alexander strengthen Spain's claim to the New World?
4. How did Ponce de Leon strengthen Spain's claim to the New World?
5. What were England's claims to the New World?
6. By what right did the Dutch claim North America?
7. What territory did Cartier, Champlain, Marquette, and La Salle claim for France?
8. What stirred up the wrath of Spain which prompted the use of the "Invincible Armada" against England?
9. Why was England able to defeat the Armada?
10. In what way did the destruction of the Armada decide the destiny of America?
11. What was the attitude of the people of New Amsterdam toward Peter Stuyvesant?
12. How was New Amsterdam taken by the English?
13. Of what significance was the taking of New Amsterdam by the English?
14. Were the English or the French the aggressors in the early conflicts before the French and Indian War?
15. Why did the English desire to take Port Royal and Quebec?
16. What was the purpose of Washington's expedition to Fort Duquesne? What was the result?
17. What was Braddock assigned to do?
18. Why did Braddock's campaign fail?
19. What changes did William Pitt make in the conduct of the French and Indian War?
20. What major task did Pitt assign to General Wolfe?
21. How did the last stronghold of the French in America pass into the hands of the English?
22. In what ways were Montcalm and Wolfe alike? In what respects were they different?
23. What disposition was made of North America by the Treaty of Paris? What countries controlled territory by terms of the treaty?
24. Did England or France have more people in America at the beginning of the French and Indian War? What was the approximate difference in number?
25. How did English and French settlements differ, from a geographical standpoint?
26. What effect did the nature of the industries in America have upon the conduct and outcome of the French and Indian War?
27. Were the French or the English colonists better trained in self-government? What effect did this have upon the conduct of the war?

#### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

American institutions originated in England and, due to England's victory in the struggle for North America, have continued to be English, with modifications, to the present time.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. By 1600, several European countries had conflicting claims in North America.
2. England defeated Spain and Holland during early struggles for the control of the New World, but was unable to defeat the French for many years.
3. England established its supremacy in the New World by defeating France in the French and Indian War.
4. The English were victorious in North America due to conditions in Europe and in the New World.
5. The majority of American institutions resemble those of England.

## Assimilative Material

1. Early claims to North America: Indian; Spanish, Columbus, Pope's decree, Ponce de Leon; English, the Cabots, Raleigh; Dutch, Henry Hudson; French, Cartier, Champlain, Marquette, La Salle.
2. Early struggles for the control of the New World: Destruction of the Spanish Armada; defeat of the Dutch; early conflicts between the French and the English.
3. The French and Indian War: Washington's expedition to Fort Duquesne; Braddock's campaign; William Pitt; Montcalm and Wolfe; fall of Quebec; treaty of Paris.
4. Why England won North America: Superiority of population in the colonies; character of settlements; nature of industry; character of government.
5. Institutions in America: English language; government; ideas of freedom and law; customs; methods of thought; attitudes toward life.

## Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*.]

1. Read the following accounts of the early claims to North America, and make an analytical outline showing the major claims of the European nations and of the North American Indians.
  - a. Indian Families and Tribes, 3409-3428.
  - b. America Discovered, 1573-1575.
  - c. Line of Demarcation, 1887.
  - d. Ponce de Leon, 5725-5726.
  - e. John Cabot, 1063.
  - f. Sir Walter Raleigh, 5991.
  - g. The Lost Colony of Virginia, 1827-1828.
  - h. Henry Hudson, 3270-3271.
  - i. Jacques Cartier, 1220-1221.
  - j. Samuel de Champlain, 1301-1302.
  - k. Jacques Marquette, 4298-4299.
  - l. La Salle, 3882-3884.
  - m. History of Canada, 1137-1139.
2. Consult the "List of Explorers" on page 747; select those whose explorations illuminate this unit, and read the accounts of their expeditions.
3. Be prepared to give a floor talk on the early conflict between the English and the Spanish for the control of the New World, 405-406, 2022.
4. Imagine yourself an English sailor in the fleet which destroyed the Invincible Armada, and write an account of what took place. Your account will be imaginary, but it must have an historical foundation. Be certain to relate the facts as they were at that time.
5. In an account of the "Early History of New York," 4976, 4994, and in an account of "Peter Stuyvesant," 6883, you will find material dealing with the early conflict between the English and the Dutch for the control of the New World. Read these accounts, and write a discussion of this story.
6. The following accounts tell about the first conflicts between the English and the French for the control of North America, and describe the French and Indian War. Prepare an outline of this material, devoting one major division to the early conflicts, and one to the war itself.
  - a. History of Nova Scotia, 5101.
  - b. The Struggle for New France in Canada, 1139.
  - c. Robert Dinwiddie, 1953.
  - d. The story of the French and Indian Wars, 2607-2609.
  - e. Fort Duquesne, 2544.
  - f. Edward Braddock, 915.
  - g. Blockhouse, 796.
  - h. Comte Louis Frontenac, 2627-2628.
  - i. James Wolfe, 7818-7819.
  - j. Battle of Quebec, 5917-5918.
  - k. Montcalm, 4619.
7. Be prepared to explain why England won North America following the fourth division of the outline (Assimilative Material) included in the third part of this unit. Be certain that you understand the last item, "character of government."
8. Write a paper supporting either side of each of the following questions:
  - a. The English sea-rovers are to be admired.
  - b. England had the strongest claim to the New World.
  - c. If there had been as many French in the New World as English, France would have won the French and Indian War.
9. Write a short paragraph showing how Unit One is related to Unit Two. Indicate why the story of exploration appears in the first rather than the second unit.
10. In a three-page discussion, defend the following statement or show that it is incorrect: "Our language, our government, and the way we look at life are, to a large extent, similar to the views held by the English." A class discussion of this question will precede your writing.
11. Perhaps you have come across some subject during the study of the unit which appeals to you and you desire to prepare a voluntary project. The procedure given below will be suggestive, and should enable you to do a good piece of work. If projects are prepared during

the study of succeeding units, the same general plan should be followed.

- a. First choose a subject which does not have too great a scope—one which can be developed in great detail. The lists of "Related Topics" included at the conclusion of the various articles referred to should prove suggestive.
- b. Read a story which you think covers your subject in a general way.
- c. Make a brief outline of the story you propose to develop, and submit it to the instructor. After you have revised the outline, with the help of the instructor, you should be ready to begin active work on the project.
- d. Read all of the accounts which are available and take notes. At the conclusion of many accounts in *THE WORLD BOOK* we repeat again that you will find the lists of "Related Subjects" very helpful. Two kinds of notes should be taken and, in order to keep them separate, should be written on different colored cards. Notes which are written in your own words should be written on white cards; notes which are exact quotations should be written on buff cards, or cards of some other color, to distinguish them from the white.
- e. After the reading has been completed, review the notes very carefully.
- f. You should now be ready to write the project. In writing the account, consult the buff cards only. This will mean that you must understand the story as it is described on the white cards.
- g. Check what you have written against the notes, both buff and white, read again very carefully, and correct any errors which you have made.
- h. Rewrite the project. It must be understood that a finished piece of work presupposes planning, organizing, reorganizing, collecting materials, writing, rereading, revising, and *rewriting*.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question and a question mark (?) before every answer which is debatable. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. What people claimed North America on the ground that they were the first to occupy the land?
  - a. The French.
  - b. The Indians.
  - c. The Negroes.
  - d. The English.
2. What was the basis for Spain's claim to the New World?

- a. The voyage of John Cabot, and the discovery of Columbus.
- b. The promise of the Indians to give New England to Spain, and the voyage of Raleigh.
- c. The voyages of Columbus and Ponce de Leon and the decree of the Pope.
- d. The promise of Henry VII of England that the English claims to the New World would be withdrawn.
3. What was the basis for England's claim to the New World?
  - a. The voyages of the Cabots and Raleigh.
  - b. The explorations of Henry Hudson, and the decree of the Pope.
  - c. The explorations of La Salle, Champlain, and Marquette.
  - d. The promise of the Indians to give the Atlantic seaboard territory to England.
4. What was the basis for France's claim to the New World?
  - a. The destruction of the Spanish Armada.
  - b. The explorations of La Salle, Champlain, and Marquette.
  - c. The promise of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain that the Spanish claims would be withdrawn.
  - d. A decree of the Pope conferring the region upon France.
5. What established the naval supremacy of England?
  - a. The defeat of the Dutch at New Amsterdam.
  - b. The conflict with the Spaniards in Florida.
  - c. The destruction of the Spanish Armada.
  - d. The conflict with the French in Carolina.
6. What caused the downfall of the Dutch in the New World?
  - a. The conflict with the Spanish in Florida.
  - b. The conflict with the French in the region of the Great Lakes.
  - c. The English-Dutch wars in Europe, and the consequent occupation of New Amsterdam by the English.
  - d. The battle with the Iroquois Indians near Detroit.
7. What was the nature of the early conflicts between the French and the English for the control of North America?
  - a. England and France encouraged their Indian allies to attack frontier settlements.
  - b. England and France fought naval battles off the coast of Virginia.
  - c. England and Holland opposed France and Spain in the region of the Saint Lawrence River.
  - d. France and England brought their arguments before the Pope, with the hope that he would adjust the differences.

8. What change in the conduct of the French and Indian War explains the final British success?
  - a. The French decided to leave the forts which they had built.
  - b. William Pitt became Prime Minister of England and reorganized the army.
  - c. The English sent Washington on a mission to tell the French that they were building on British territory.
  - d. The English changed their plan, and waged a war on the ocean and the Great Lakes.
9. What European nation had the strongest foothold in North America at the opening of the French and Indian War?
  - a. Holland.
  - b. England.
  - c. Spain.
  - d. France.
10. Why did the colonizing efforts of Spain, France and Holland fail?
  - a. They could not get enough people to emigrate to the New World.
  - b. They could not make friends with the Indians.
  - c. They did not have financial backing from Europe.
  - d. They spent their time searching for wealth instead of making homes.

### UNIT THREE

## How America Became an Independent Nation

### Exploration Questions

1. Why were the early American colonists independent?
2. What beginnings did the English colonists make toward political democracy?
3. What was the first constitutional document in the history of America? What was the content of this document?
4. What was the first law-making body in America? How did the representatives receive membership in this assembly? What kinds of laws were passed at its early sessions?
5. What was the make-up of the government in the American colonies?
6. What was the first written constitution in all history made by the people and in the interests of the people? What towns were represented under this constitution?
7. What was the difference between royal, corporation, and proprietary colonies?
8. What did the Navigation Acts purport to do? How did the colonists resist these laws?
9. How did the colonists resist the Stamp Act?
10. What was the success of the Stamp Act?
11. What was the attitude of the English workmen toward the Stamp Act? Why?
12. What was the declaration of the Stamp Act Congress?
13. In what way was the Stamp Act quarrel important?
14. What was the Townshend Act of 1767? How did Massachusetts answer this act? What was England's final decision?
15. What did the Boston Massacre show?
16. What were the Intolerable Acts? Why were they passed?
17. What effect did the Boston Port Bill have on the colonies?
18. Why did England adopt the new plan?
19. Why did General Gage desire to go to Concord with an attachment of troops?
20. What happened to the British troops after they left Concord?
21. What was the significance of the Battle of Bunker Hill?
22. Who wrote the document "Common Sense"? What was its effect?
23. What happened to many of the colonial governors during 1776?
24. What did the Declaration of Independence contain?
25. What are the leading doctrines of the Declaration?
26. What were the disadvantages of the English in the Revolutionary War?
27. What difficulties faced the Americans during the Revolutionary War?
28. What were the important campaigns of the Revolutionary War?
29. What were the terms of the Treaty of Paris which ended the war?

### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

Colonial independence asserted itself when Great Britain attempted to reorganize the old empire, and the American colonists fought the mother country to gain complete freedom.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. The colonies, at a very early date, developed a spirit of independence.
2. The character of the colonial governments in 1760, and the relationship of those governments to the English government, had a great deal to do with the American Revolution.
3. Great Britain saw the need of reorganizing the old empire and took definite steps with this end in view.

4. In four distinct ways, the colonists resisted these attempts of Great Britain.
5. The struggle for independence, a civil war, ended victoriously for the Americans.

#### Assimilative Material

1. Growth of colonial independence: Effect of the ocean and the frontier; development of self-government—House of Burgesses, Mayflower Compact, Connecticut.
2. The colonies in the old British Empire: Character of colonial governments in 1760; relations with the British government—King, Parliament.
3. Attempt of Great Britain to reorganize the old empire: The apparent need of reorganization—effect of the Old French and Indian War; the new Imperial plan—Navigation Acts (Writs of Assistance), taxation (Stamp Act), troops in America (Quartering Acts).
4. Resistance against the new imperial plan: Protests—James Otis and a test case, Stamp Act Congress; violation of law—New York legislature, Boston Tea Party; revolt—Lexington and Concord, Bunker Hill; separation—Declaration of Independence.
5. The struggle for independence—a civil war: In the middle states—Burgoyne's campaign, Washington at Trenton, Howe's campaign; in the west—Clark's campaign; in the south—Cornwallis at Yorktown.

#### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*.]

1. Read the following accounts, and be prepared to discuss the material in class.
  - a. The House of Burgesses, 3616.
  - b. The Mayflower Compact, 5665-5666.
  - c. The Connecticut Charter, 1618.
2. State in a discussion of approximately one page the conclusions you are justified in drawing from your study of the above three references.
3. What is the purpose in including "The Growth of Colonial Independence" as a phase of the story of how America became an independent nation? Be able to answer orally.
4. After you have finished the above three exercises, read the account of Bacon's Rebellion, on page 566, and the account of Sir Edmund Andros, on page 279. Be prepared to tell the class what bearing this material has on the subject of study.
5. Write a discussion of three paragraphs ex-

plaining the difference between the royal, proprietary, and charter colonies. Devote one paragraph to each of the types of colonies. The three references below describe the three types. Find other references in *THE WORLD BOOK* describing them.

- a. Virginia—royal, 7542.
- b. Pennsylvania—proprietary, 5470-5471.
- c. Connecticut—charter, 1618.
6. How is this second division of the unit, "The Colonies in the Old British Empire," related to the first division, "The Growth of Colonial Independence"? Do you think that the existence of three kinds of colonies hastened the Revolutionary War? Be prepared to answer orally in class.
7. Read the following references, and write an account of the third phase of this unit. Include in your paper only material which shows how Great Britain attempted to reorganize the old empire; include nothing about the resistance of the colonies to the plan.
  - a. Causes of the War, 6071-6074.
  - b. Navigation Acts, 4841-4842.
  - c. Writs of Assistance, 7901.
  - d. Stamp Act, 6796-6797.
  - e. Intolerable Acts, 3492.
8. Read page 1028, and indicate in a short theme the position of Edmund Burke regarding the American colonies.
9. Make a list of all of the unpopular measures passed by the English Parliament.
10. Imagine yourself a resident of New York at the time of the quartering acts. Write a letter to a friend in Virginia expressing your political views.
11. Write a one-page organization of a speech against the Stamp Act which might have been given by an American patriot during the period of the American Revolution.
12. Be prepared to give a short floor talk in class entitled "George the Third and American Affairs."
13. Read the following references, and write an account of the fourth phase of this unit. Be careful to note in the first reference (6071-6074) that part of this material explains the preceding division of our unit, and does not belong in this discussion.
  - a. Causes of the War, 6071-6074.
  - b. Samuel Adams, 35.
  - c. James Otis, 5271.
  - d. Stamp Act Congress, 6796-6797.
  - e. Boston Tea Party, 879-880.
  - f. Paul Revere, 6069.
  - g. Thomas Paine, 5297-5298.
  - h. Patrick Henry, 3147-3149.
  - i. Minutemen, 4526.



- j. John Hancock, 3031-3032.
- k. Richard Henry Lee, 3917.
- l. Henry Laurens, 3893.
- m. Declaration of Independence, 1865-1868.
- n. Boston Massacre, 879.
14. Be able to name all of the means used by the colonists to oppose the unpopular measures passed by Parliament.
15. Prepare a list of Revolutionary patriots conspicuous for their service. Indicate the service in each case, and show how it helped to win the American cause.
16. Using the material found on pages 6071-6074, make a tabular chart including in one column the topics which belong in the third division of this unit, and in the other column the material which belongs in the fourth division.
17. Draw a cartoon, a picture, a diagram, or a graph which will portray some phase of the third and fourth divisions of the unit.
18. The following accounts contain illustrative material. Take notes on these accounts and be prepared to discuss them in class:
  - a. William Pitt, 5632.
  - b. Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, 4370-4371.
  - c. Sons of Liberty, 6688.
  - d. History of Ontario, 5210.
19. Read the account of "The Eight Years of the War," on pages 6074-6082, and make a summary of the material included in this discussion.
20. The following accounts illuminate the subject of study. Read them, and prepare for a class discussion based upon this material.
  - a. Benjamin Franklin, 2596-2597
  - b. Horatio Gates, 2704.
  - c. Nathan Hale, 3016.
  - d. Hessians, 3170.
  - e. Thomas Hutchinson, 3300.
  - f. John Paul Jones, 3695-3696.
  - g. Robert Morris, 4662.
  - h. Treaty of 1783, 5380.
  - i. Israel Putnam, 5888-5890.
  - j. Ethan Allen, 224.
  - k. United Empire Loyalists, 7361.
  - l. Marquis de Lafayette, 3838.
  - m. General Gage, 2658.
  - n. General John Burgoyne, 1026-1027.
  - o. Valley Forge, 7445.
  - p. Charles, Marquis Cornwallis, 1694.
  - q. George Washington in the Revolution, 7650-7651.
21. Continue the list of patriots already started. Indicate the service each rendered.
22. Be able to explain the part taken by the Tories in the Revolutionary War.
23. Write an imaginary account of your experiences with Washington at Valley Forge.
24. Be able to explain why you think the Americans won the war.
25. Be prepared to indicate in class why the following statements are called biased views:
  - a. Great Britain had no reason to reorganize the old empire.
  - b. The Navigation Acts were more reasonable than the revenue acts.
  - c. The American colonists won the Revolutionary War because of their superior strength.
26. Be prepared to indicate in class why the following statements are called fundamental misconceptions:
  - a. The king of England was supported unanimously by the people of England in 1776.
  - b. The greater portion of American colonists desired to fight England to gain complete freedom.
  - c. The colonists were afraid to protest until after the Revolutionary War had begun.
27. Some of the statements included below do not belong in the division in which they appear. Put a cross (x) in front of each statement which is misplaced. Reorganize the material so that each statement will appear in the proper division:
  1. Growth of colonial independence.
    - a. Many American colonies were royal.
    - b. The House of Burgesses was in Virginia.
    - c. Self-government developed in the colonies.
    - d. The Stamp Act Congress was important.
  2. The colonies in the old empire.
    - a. Pennsylvania was a proprietary colony.
    - b. The Pilgrims signed the Mayflower Compact.
    - c. Some powers were colonial, and some were central.
    - d. James Otis resisted England.
  3. Attempt of Great Britain to reorganize the old empire.
    - a. The colonists threw tea into the ocean.
    - b. The House of Burgesses met in Virginia.
    - c. England passed the Navigation Acts.
    - d. England passed the Stamp Act.
  4. Resistance against the new plan.
    - a. New York refused to obey the Quartering Acts.
    - b. The colonists signed the Declaration of Independence.
    - c. England passed the Navigation Acts.
    - d. Clark's campaign was in the West.
  5. The struggle for independence.
    - a. The struggle was really a civil war.
    - b. Cornwallis surrendered at Yorktown.
    - c. Burgoyne's campaign was in the middle states.
    - d. Colonists were defeated at Lexington.
28. Some pupils may desire to prepare note-

books based upon one or more of the units already studied, or upon later units. The contents of the notebooks may be as follows:

- a. A collection of pictures, articles, stories, and newspaper clippings; and personal comments for each.
- b. A series of quotations or statements taken from reference books; and personal comments for each.

Each of the above two divisions should constitute a chapter in the notebook. Great care should be given to the selection of materials. It should not be the purpose to prepare a large quantity of material. A small number of pictures, articles, stories, clippings, quotations, and statements carefully selected is far more valuable than a larger number carelessly chosen, *and which have little merit.*

You should give more time and thought to your reactions than to the mere collection of material. There are numerous things that you read and see which *do* at once challenge your thinking. That is the type of material which should be included.

The directions and suggestions given below should be carefully studied and followed, unless you can suggest a better plan:

- a. Each picture, article, or clipping should be given at least one page.
- b. All material which is placed in the notebook should have the source and date of publication. Unless the material can be better arranged, it should be placed at the top of the page and to the right. The title, source, place, and date of publication should be given at the top of the page and to the left, opposite the material. This will leave the bottom of the page for your own opinion, comments, or reaction.
- c. The same form should be observed in respect to the quotations or statements, with the exception that one page will not have to be devoted to each statement and its evaluation. Be careful to quote exactly the material as it is found in the original.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question, and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Do not mark incorrect answers in any way. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. Why did a spirit of independence develop during the colonial period?
  - a. Because the colonists were far removed from England and those highest in authority.
  - b. Because the colonists were closely as-

sociated with England and those highest in authority.

- c. Because the colonists had been conservative and careful in the Old World.
  - d. Because the colonists lived in frontier communities.
2. How did the Pilgrims show their desire for self-government?
    - a. They established a common fund, and required each person to pay in a portion of his earnings.
    - b. They drew up a compact in which they agreed to stand together and obey the laws.
    - c. They kept in contact with the social and religious life of England.
    - d. They planned a convention and invited the other colonists to join in a discussion of problems.
  3. How were the British and the colonists alike?
    - a. They both had common citizenship and the English common law.
    - b. They both had similar ideas of government.
    - c. They both had the same ideas concerning industry.
    - d. They both had the same social interests.
  4. How did the people of Connecticut show their desire for self-government?
    - a. They adopted the first written constitution in America.
    - b. They were the first to defeat the Indians decisively.
    - c. They established the first common warehouse in America.
    - d. They defeated the spirit of independence by popular vote.
  5. What was the underlying cause of the conflict between England and America?
    - a. England tried to force the colonies from the territory west of the Alleghanies.
    - b. England encouraged the governors to quarrel with the colonial assemblies.
    - c. England demanded that the colonies and France cease all friendly relations.
    - d. English leaders tried to enrich the mother country by limiting the economic development of the colonies.
  6. What part did France play in the American Revolution?
    - a. France gave help to England because the rebellious spirit of the Americans was spreading to French provinces.
    - b. France remained neutral; the French government could not take sides without causing a revolution in the French provinces.
    - c. France gave help to the Americans; money and military supplies were followed by an army and a fleet.
    - d. France was divided; consequently, both

- England and the colonies benefited by French aid.
7. What famous quotation expresses the argument used by the colonists in answer to the Writs of Assistance?
    - a. "The child is father of the man."
    - b. "God made the country and man made the town."
    - c. "A man's house is his castle."
    - d. "Nothing great was ever conceived without enthusiasm."
  8. Why were the British regulars sent to Lexington and Concord?
    - a. To provide training for the troops who had been in Boston so long.
    - b. To arrest Hancock and Adams and destroy military supplies that were stored at Concord.
    - c. To capture George Washington and Paul Revere.
    - d. To show the colonists the strength of the English.
  9. What does the Declaration of Independence contain?
    - a. It contains a statement of what the colonies intended to do after they left the mother country, and a request to France to give military and financial aid.
    - b. It contains a long list of things which the English had done that caused the colonists to decide finally to leave the mother country.
    - c. It contains a long and carefully worded statement of what the colonies intended to do after they had separated from the mother country.
    - d. It contains reasons why the colonies wanted to be independent, a statement of the rights of governments and of citizens, and the actual declaration of the colonists.
  10. What was the turning point of the Revolutionary War?
    - a. The victory at Trenton.
    - b. Burgoyne's failure.
    - c. The capture of Philadelphia.
    - d. The capture of Vincennes.

## UNIT FOUR

### How We Secured Our National Government

#### Exploration Questions

1. What colonies were members of the New England Confederation? What value did the colonies see in such a confederation?
2. How did the New England Confederation prove most effective?
3. How long was the New England Confederation in existence?
4. What was the purpose of the Committees of Correspondence?
5. Why did England object to the Committees of Correspondence?
6. What were the contents of the Declaration of Rights, drawn up by the First Continental Congress?
7. What duties did the Second Continental Congress perform that each colony could not have performed for itself?
8. In what respects were the Articles of Confederation weak?
9. Why did the states delay in ratifying the Articles of Confederation?
10. What was the attitude of the people assembled at the Annapolis Convention? How many states were represented at this convention?
11. Who were the chief members of the Constitutional Convention?
12. Why was there friction in the Constitutional Convention?
13. In what ways were the provisions of the Constitution the result of compromises?
14. Who is often called the "Father of the Constitution"?
15. Why was there so much opposition to the ratification of the Constitution?
16. What chief difference do you see between the Constitution and the Articles of Confederation?
17. Why was the Bill of Rights adopted?
18. What part of the Constitution gives Congress almost unlimited power?
19. What serious problem faced the new nation?
20. What was necessary to put the new government in running order?
21. Who made the necessary arrangements for ushering in the new government?
22. Where was Washington inaugurated President of the United States?
23. How was the new Congress organized?
24. How were the Executive departments under Washington formed?
25. How did the members of Washington's Cabinet receive their offices?
26. Who were the members of Washington's first Cabinet?
27. What does the Constitution say about the court system?
28. How were the members of Washington's first Cabinet qualified for their work?

#### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

Our national government is an outgrowth of experience in colonial and Revolutionary

times, deriving its present form from a Constitution drawn up by a convention of delegates from the various states and adopted by the American people.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. The value of united action was seen by the colonists in early unions formed for mutual safety and welfare.
2. The troubles of the Americans under the Articles of Confederation showed them the need for a stronger union.
3. Following preliminary conferences, delegates met in Philadelphia and framed the Constitution of the United States which, after a long struggle, was ratified by the states.
4. The national government was established when officers of the Executive, Legislative, and Judicial departments provided for by the Constitution assumed their duties.

#### Assimilative Material

1. Early attempts at union: New England Confederation; the Albany Plan; Committees of Correspondence; Continental Congress.
2. Articles of Confederation: Drafting; defects; difficulties experienced—revenue, commerce, amendments, order.
3. The making of the Constitution: Annapolis Convention; Constitutional Convention—its purpose, chief members, struggle and compromise, character of Constitution, its ratification.
4. The establishment of the national government: Election of Congress and the President; organization of Congress; inauguration of Washington; organization of the Executive departments; the establishment of courts.

#### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.]

1. The following tabulation is for the purpose of keeping a record of the desirable and undesirable content factors of written expression and errors in English, diction, and composition identified in your written work by the teacher during the study of Unit Four. You will be expected to keep a record of your own work. Place a figure in each column to indicate the number of times you have conformed to desirable content standards, or have experienced difficulty with content or English. In the column marked "Number of Reteachings," place a number showing the number of times you have

required assistance in correcting your work.

Content (desirable)	Exercise 2	Exercise 3	Exercise 4	Exercise 5	Exercise 7	Exercise 8	Exercise 10	Exercise 11	Exercise 13	Total No.
Interpretation of contents										
References to previous units										
Modern parallels										
Content (undesirable)										
Irrelevant details										
Significant facts omitted										
Misplaced topics										
Incorrect statements										
Limited sources										
Biased views										
English, Diction, and Composition										
Sentence structure										
Punctuation										
Spelling										
Grammar										
Neatness and form										
Number of Reteachings										

2. Read the following accounts, and prepare a sentence outline of the material. You should have five major divisions in the outline.
  - a. New England Confederation, 4913.
  - b. Albany Convention, 182.
  - c. Committees of Correspondence, 1585.
  - d. Continental Congress, 1644-1645.
  - e. Articles of Confederation, 432-433.
3. Imagine yourself a person living in Boston at the time of the New England Confederation, and write a letter to a friend in New Haven telling of the disadvantages of the Confederation.
4. In order to test your ability to use reference material, find accounts in THE WORLD BOOK of the early intercolonial wars, and write a short paper showing how these wars were valuable in teaching the Americans to act together.
5. Prepare two briefs, one for each side, of a

debate on the following question: Resolved, that the Committees of Correspondence represented a stronger union than did the First Continental Congress.

6. How did the work of the Second Continental Congress show the value of a strong union? This problem will be discussed in class.
7. Explain in a short paragraph the significance of the Articles of Confederation. Why was the government organized?
8. Indicate in outline or story form three defects of the Articles of Confederation which made necessary the formation of a stronger union.
9. What is the significance of the discussion of the Annapolis Convention on page 292? Be prepared to explain how this story fits into the unit, "How We Secured Our National Government."
10. Write a three-page theme showing how the Constitution was made and adopted. Explain the attitude of the states that opposed the adoption of the Constitution. 1631-1634.
11. How was the national government established? Answer in a theme of not more than three pages. 7651-7653, 5801-5808, 1607-1608, 1722.
12. The following accounts may be read after the above exercises are completed. These accounts are supplementary; although they do not bear directly upon the subject of study, they relate to this unit, and may be read by pupils who complete the regular assigned work before the other members of the class.
  - a. United States Supreme Court, 6940-6942.
  - b. The Cabinet of the United States, 1058-1059.
  - c. Secretary of State, 6814-6815.
  - d. Speaker of the House of Representatives, 6746.
  - e. United States Senate, 6488-6491.
  - f. House of Representatives, 6060-6062.
  - g. Joseph G. Cannon, 1173-1174.
  - h. John Marshall, 4304-4305.
  - i. War Department, 7600.
  - j. White House, 7747-7750.
  - k. Constitution of the United States, 1632-1643.
  - l. Bill of Rights, 739-740.
13. Make a list of all the subject matter which might be included in both the third and the fourth units. Indicate in the case of each item why you think the material is best suited to the unit in which it is included. If you think that an item could be used to better advantage in the unit in which it does not appear, defend your position.
14. Some of the statements below do not be-

long in the division in which they appear. Put a cross before each statement that is misplaced, and an arabic numeral (1, 2, 3, 4, or 5) after the statement indicating the division in which it should appear.

1. The New England Confederation.
  - a. Four colonies were represented.
  - b. An Indian uprising was crushed.
  - c. A Continental Army was provided.
  - d. The Articles of Confederation were provided.
2. The Committees of Correspondence.
  - a. George Washington was given command of the armies.
  - b. Affairs of Parliament were investigated.
  - c. Massachusetts opposed the continuation.
  - d. England objected because the work was secret and intangible.
3. The Second Continental Congress.
  - a. Massachusetts had to pay too much money.
  - b. Massachusetts had to furnish too many men.
  - c. The union provided for a central government during the Revolution.
  - d. An Indian uprising was crushed.
4. The Articles of Confederation.
  - a. Chief work was advising and amending.
  - b. James Madison and John Marshall gave active support.
  - c. Small and large states could not agree.
  - d. Annapolis Convention was held a year before the meeting.
5. The Constitutional Convention.
  - a. The articles of Confederation were provided.
  - b. Laws could not be enforced.
  - c. People realized that the government was tottering.
  - d. The union lasted forty years.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question, and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Do not mark incorrect answers in any way. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. What was the purpose of the New England Confederation?
  - a. Its purpose was for better protection against the Indians, the Dutch, and French.
  - b. Its purpose was to create an attitude of sympathy throughout the colonies for the English government.
  - c. Its purpose was to create an attitude of hatred throughout the colonies for the English government.

- d. Its purpose was to propose ways and means of organizing a national congress.
2. What was the purpose of the colonial Committees of Correspondence?
  - a. To make possible a colonial organization to correspond with England regarding questions of taxation.
  - b. To obtain knowledge of the acts of Parliament, and to keep the colonies in touch with each other.
  - c. To raise money for the payment of foreign debts, and to provide for its distribution.
  - d. To raise money for the support of the state legislatures and to provide for its distribution.
3. What was the purpose of the First Continental Congress?
  - a. To unite the opposition against the activities of the Tories in the colonies.
  - b. To organize a government that could make and enforce laws and ordinances.
  - c. To unite the opposition against the oppressive laws passed by the British Parliament.
  - d. To end at once all trouble with the Indians, and to pay the colonists money which was due them.
4. In what respect was the government under the Articles of Confederation weak?
  - a. The state governments had to depend on the national government.
  - b. The court system which was provided for did not give the judges sufficient pay.
  - c. The national government had no power or means to enforce its acts.
  - d. The court system which was provided for was given too much power.
5. Why was not the Annapolis Convention a success?
  - a. The members who were present were too hostile and bitter.
  - b. The place of meeting was not a central location.
  - c. The English delegates were too severe in their demands.
  - d. Only five states were represented.
6. Why was the Constitutional Convention held?
  - a. People agreed that the Confederacy was tottering.
  - b. The people agreed that the national treasury was too strong.
  - c. The states needed financial aid in order to pay local officers.
  - d. England warned the colonies that a better government was necessary.
7. What percentage of the electors in 1789 voted for Washington?
  - a. About fifty per cent.
  - b. About seventy-five per cent.
  - c. About ninety per cent.
  - d. One hundred per cent.
8. What was necessary to put the new government in running order?
  - a. New offices had to be established and the duties pertaining to them declared.
  - b. The court system had to be entirely reorganized.
  - c. The men who had served in the army had to be given work.
  - d. The Continental Army had to be quartered and kept in training.
9. What does the Federal Constitution say about the judicial power of the United States?
  - a. A certain number of courts shall be provided by Congress.
  - b. There shall be one Supreme Court and others which Congress from time to time may establish.
  - c. The judicial power shall be under the control of the Executive department.
  - d. The judicial power of the United States is not mentioned in the Constitution.

## UNIT FIVE

### How Our National Government Was Tested

#### Exploration Questions

1. What financial problems confronted the new nation during Washington's administrations?
2. What did Hamilton mean by "funding the nation's debts"?
3. What did Hamilton propose to do about the debts that the states had contracted in carrying on the Revolutionary War?
4. How were the new national obligations to be paid?
5. What was the position of Alexander Hamilton concerning a National Bank?
6. What was the attitude of Congress in reference to the payment of the foreign debt? The domestic debt?
7. What was Hamilton's reasoning in reference to the payment of the foreign debt and the domestic debt?
8. Why did many people disagree with Hamilton's proposal in reference to the payment of the domestic debt?
9. What is meant by a tariff? What kind

of a tariff was passed by the first American Congress?

10. What kind of an internal-revenue tax did Hamilton propose?
11. Why was the tariff on goods manufactured in other countries easier to collect than internal-revenue taxes?
12. Why did the national government experience difficulty collecting the internal-revenue tax?
13. How were the revenue collectors received by the farmers of Pennsylvania?
14. What action did Washington take to end the Whisky Insurrection?
15. What was the significance of the Whisky Rebellion?
16. Why were England and France opposed to each other in 1792?
17. What request did France make of the United States that put the latter in a difficult position? Why was that position a difficult one?
18. What policy was stated by Washington in reference to American affairs?
19. What was the attitude of the French minister to the United States? What did he do?
20. What was the attitude of France toward America after Washington's proclamation?
21. How did Federalists and Anti-Federalists differ regarding the assumption of debts?
22. How were the two political parties reconciled on the question of the assumption of debts?
23. Why was the tariff unpopular with a certain element of the American population?
24. Why did the Anti-Federalists oppose the organization of a United States Bank?
25. What did Federalists and Republicans think of the ability of the common people?
26. What was the attitude of Federalists and Republicans toward the French government?
27. What were the Alien and Sedition Laws? Why were these laws passed?
28. What was done by Virginia and Kentucky after the passage of these two acts? Why did not the other states follow the example of Virginia and Kentucky?
29. Who came to the Presidency in 1800? Of what significance was this change?
30. What followed President Adams' announcement that no more representatives would be sent to France until he could be sure they would be properly received?
31. What was the nature of the quasi-war with France?
32. Who were the Barbary pirates? How did the Barbary pirates affect the United States?
33. What is a "paper blockade"? Why did

the United States object to such a blockade?

34. What was England's main chance to crush France?
35. What is meant by the expression, "Free ships make free goods"?
36. Why did England impress American sailors?
37. What was the Chesapeake affair?
38. How did the United States retaliate against England and France?
39. What were the principal reasons we chose to fight England instead of France?
40. What definite indication do we have that the United States was divided, that New England and New York did not want war?
41. What were the chief military events of the War of 1812?
42. What was the significance of the War of 1812?
43. In what way was the War of 1812 a severe test for the newly-organized national government?

### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

During the first twenty-five years of its existence the national government was tested by serious difficulties which it successfully overcame.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. The new government solved difficult financial problems.
2. The new government enforced its laws in spite of armed opposition.
3. The new government maintained its neutrality during a world war regardless of determined efforts to bring it into the struggle as the ally of one of the combatants.
4. The new government survived the conflicts of rival political parties.
5. The new government stood the strain of a foreign war in spite of internal opposition.

#### Assimilative Material

1. Finance: Financial problems of the new government—debt, current expenses, income; Hamilton's proposals—foreign debt, domestic debt, tariff.
2. Law and order: Collection of Federal taxes—tariff, whisky; attitude of the West on whisky tax; Whisky Rebellion—causes, chief incidents, action of national government, significance.
3. Neutrality: European war; proclamation of neutrality; Citizen Genêt; X Y Z affair; avoidance of war with France.
4. Political parties: Views of the people—

finance, interpretation of the Constitution, European affairs; Federalists in power—Alien and Sedition Laws; Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions; election of 1800.

5. War: Quasi-war with France; the Barbary pirates; war with England (1812)—causes, military events (invasion of Canada, Perry on Lake Erie, the Constitution and the Guerriere, blockade on the Atlantic coast, burning of Washington, Battle of New Orleans); internal opposition—Hartford Convention; results of the war.

### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.]

1. Indicate in a discussion of at least two pages how the new government solved difficult financial problems.
  - a. Alexander Hamilton, 3025-3026.
  - b. National Debt, 4814.
  - c. Internal Revenue, 3482-3483.
  - d. George Washington, 7653.
  - e. Bank of the United States, 602.
2. How was the Whisky Rebellion a test of the new government? Be prepared to discuss this question in class. 7742, 2666, 7654.
3. The following references should indicate how the new government maintained its neutrality during a world war regardless of determined efforts to bring it into the struggle as the ally of one of the combatants. Explain in a brief discussion how the government maintained its neutrality.
  - a. Washington's Second Term, 7654.
  - b. Edmund Genêt, 2715.
  - c. X Y Z Correspondence, 7917.
  - d. Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 3650-3651.
  - e. Administration of James Madison, 4202.
  - f. Non-Intercourse Act, 5040.
  - g. Embargo Act, 2219.
4. Do you think that Washington acted wisely in issuing a proclamation stating that America would remain neutral? Indicate in a short paragraph how Washington might have reasoned in arriving at the conclusion that the new nation should stay out of entangling European alliances.
5. What part did Jefferson and Madison play in attempting to carry out the Neutrality Proclamation? Be prepared to discuss in class.
6. The following references show that the new government survived the conflicts of rival political parties. Prepare a sentence outline of this division of the unit, and be prepared to discuss in class the part of the outline which you think most significant in showing the activities of the two major parties. The references for exercise 3 should be reviewed before the outline is made.
  - a. History of Political Parties in the United States, 5705.
  - b. Democratic Party, 1888-1889.
  - c. Aaron Burr, 1037.
  - d. Alien and Sedition Laws, 221.
  - e. Anti-Federalist Party, 310.
  - f. Federalist Party, 2390.
  - g. Jefferson, Secretary of State and Vice-President, 3648.
  - h. Election of 1800, 3648-3650.
  - i. Alexander Hamilton, 3026.
  - j. Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 3765.
  - k. Death of the Federalist Party, 4202.
7. Be prepared to explain before the class exactly how the election of 1800 was a test of the new government.
8. Do you think that the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions were as severe a test for the new government as the Whisky Rebellion? Formulate some basis for a comparison of these two tests, and be prepared to indicate your point of view in class.
9. Read the account of "The War of 1812," on pages 7601-7606, and prepare a topical outline of this material. Using your outline as a guide, write a comprehensive story of this phase of the unit, indicating how the war tested the new government.
10. What importance do you attach to the Hartford Convention, which is discussed on page 3065? Answer in a short paragraph.
11. The following references contain materials which explain how the government was tested by war.
 

Read each account and be prepared to discuss the major points in class:

  - a. James Madison, 4202.
  - b. Oliver H. Perry, 5492-5493.
  - c. Star-Spangled Banner, 6812-6813.
  - d. Treaty of Ghent, 2797.
  - e. James Lawrence, 3900-3901.
  - f. Battle of Lake Erie, 2286-2287.
  - g. Stephen Decatur, 1856.
  - h. James Barron, 630.
  - i. Barbary States, 617-618.
  - j. Black Hawk, 781.
  - k. The Constitution, 1630-1631.
12. Indicate in a composition of at least three pages which of the five tests that the new government overcame was the most severe. Give reasons for your opinions, and include as much history in your paper as you can to support your point of view.



13. Prepare a list of the historical items, events, and personages about which you read during your study of the first four units which are essential to an understanding of the unit "How Our National Government Was Tested."
14. Indicate in a short theme the close relationship between the first and second elements of this fifth unit.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question, and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Do not mark incorrect answers in any way. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. What was the most pressing difficulty which the new government faced during Washington's administration?
  - a. How to limit the powers of the Federal officers.
  - b. How to enlarge the army and navy.
  - c. How to pay its debts.
  - d. How to punish its enemies.
2. What Federal taxes severely tested the national government during Washington's administration?
  - a. Tariffs on imported goods.
  - b. Income taxes.
  - c. Taxes on goods that were produced in America.
  - d. Amusement taxes on certain entertainments.
3. What was the outstanding result of the Whisky Rebellion?
  - a. The national government showed that it could enforce its laws.
  - b. The national government was shown to be unable to enforce its laws.
  - c. Western and Southern landowners became united.
  - d. Jefferson and Hamilton were led to view things in the same way.
4. What caused Citizen Genêt to defy the American government?
  - a. The refusal of the American government to aid England.
  - b. The refusal of the American people to receive him cordially.
  - c. The hatred shown by the officers at Charleston when he landed.
  - d. The refusal of the American government to aid France.
5. What was the attitude of France and England toward the United States during the years 1798-1812?
  - a. Each tried to draw the United States into the war in Europe as its ally.
  - b. Each tried to get the United States to remain neutral.
  - c. Each tried to crush the power of the United States.

- d. Each tried to develop and improve the United States.
6. What was Washington's attitude toward Europe when he was President?
  - a. He favored permanent alliance with the English.
  - b. He advised making treaties with all European countries.
  - c. He declared America neutral.
  - d. He did not express himself on the question of European affairs.
7. What causes contributed to the downfall of the Federalist party?
  - a. The attempt to support the French government.
  - b. The support of the Alien and Sedition Laws.
  - c. The support which they gave to the low tariff.
  - d. The attempt to cause trouble between Virginia and Kentucky.
8. Why were the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions passed?
  - a. To defeat the purpose of the Hartford Convention.
  - b. To organize a strong militia for the two states.
  - c. To oppose the Alien and Sedition Laws.
  - d. To oppose the formation of the National Bank.
9. Why were the Alien and Sedition Laws opposed?
  - a. They gave too much power to the individual states.
  - b. They were unfair to the Western farmers.
  - c. They were disagreeable to the English government.
  - d. They interfered with freedom of speech and the press.
10. How did the War of 1812 test the national government?
  - a. The War of 1812 showed that two parties were undesirable.
  - b. The War of 1812 did not test the government.
  - c. The military forces were given an excellent opportunity to show their strength.
  - d. The machinery of the new government was put to a severe test.
11. What was the effect of the War of 1812 upon America?
  - a. The War of 1812 did much to nationalize the country.
  - b. It did much to strengthen the state governments.
  - c. It caused New England to withdraw from the Union.
  - d. It was of slight consequence, and in no way changed America.

## UNIT SIX

## How Negro Slavery Was Destroyed

## Exploration Questions

1. When were negroes first brought to the colonies? Where were they landed?
2. Why did slavery decline in the South before the invention of the cotton gin?
3. What did Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and other states farther north do about slavery after the Revolution?
4. What is the significance of the date 1808?
5. What is the significance of the slave-trade compromise in the story of this unit?
6. Why did the Southerners say that they couldn't free the slaves?
7. What does the Constitution say about slaves or slavery?
8. How did the invention of the cotton gin affect the institution of slavery?
9. What was the position of slavery in Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina between the years 1783 and 1860?
10. How many of the original thirteen states abolished slavery after the Revolution?
11. Why did the North object to the admission of Missouri into the Union as a slave state?
12. What were the provisions of the Missouri Compromise?
13. What was the Wilmot Proviso?
14. What was the position of Congress regarding the Wilmot Proviso?
15. What is "squatter sovereignty"?
16. What were the provisions of the Compromise of 1850? What was the effect of this Compromise upon the country?
17. Who were Benjamin Lundy and William Lloyd Garrison?
18. What was the "Liberator"?
19. Who were three outstanding statesmen in Congress in 1849?
20. What part did Daniel Webster play in the slavery controversy?
21. What influence did "Uncle Tom's Cabin" have upon the country?
22. What was the "underground railroad"?
23. How did the Kansas-Nebraska Bill conflict with the Missouri Compromise?
24. What part did John Brown play in the slavery controversy?
25. What was the significance of the Dred Scott Decision?
26. How did Stephen A. Douglas offend the North?
27. What chief arguments did Lincoln and Douglas present in their famous debates?
28. What position was Douglas forced to take in the debates with Lincoln that offended the South?
29. What is the story of the organization of the Confederate States of America?
30. What criticism may justifiably be made of President James Buchanan's policy during the slavery controversy?
31. What did Andrew Jackson do during his administration that President Buchanan might have attempted?
32. What was Lincoln's attitude regarding secession when he became President?
33. How did the South justify the act of firing upon Fort Sumter?
34. Why was it impossible for the North to yield Fort Sumter?
35. Why did many white people in the South who did not hold slaves fight in support of the slaveholders?
36. What twelve significant military events and movements explain the general plan of the War of Secession?
37. What did the Emancipation Proclamation propose to the South?
38. What was the great value of the Emancipation Proclamation to the North?
39. How did the War of Secession come to an end?
40. How was negro slavery entirely destroyed?

## Analysis of the Unit

## LEARNING OBJECTIVE

The struggle between the North and the South over the growth of slavery resulted in the secession of Southern states, the War of Secession, and the freeing of all slaves.

## ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. Negro slavery, which was introduced into America at an early date, spread through all the colonies, but disappeared in the North during the Revolution, leaving the country half slave and half free.
2. The settlement of the West by people from the North and the South caused a serious conflict over the extension of slavery into the newly-occupied region.
3. The Southern states, believing that President Lincoln would destroy slavery, left the Union and set up a separate government.
4. The secession of the South brought on a civil war which resulted in the preservation of the Union and the destruction of slavery.
5. The Constitution of the United States was amended to give the negro freedom and citizenship.

## Assimilative Material

1. Early slavery in America: Slavery in colonial Virginia; spread to the other

- colonies; freedom given negroes in the North; the cotton gin and its effect.
2. Contests over the growth of slavery: Balance of power between the free and the slave states; Missouri Compromise; Compromise of 1850; struggle over Kansas; election of 1860.
  3. The secession movement: Causes which led the states to secede in 1860; story of secession—South Carolina, effect on other states, formation of Confederate States of America, Lincoln, and Fort Sumter.
  4. The War of Secession: Comparison of North and South; the work of the Navy; Bull Run; opening of the Mississippi; the siege of Vicksburg; Lee and the Battle of Gettysburg; Sherman's march to the sea; Grant and the fall of Richmond.
  5. The end of slavery: Divided attitude of Northerners on slavery; use made of slaves after the war started; Emancipation Proclamation; Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments.

#### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*.]

1. The following references explain the first division of this unit. Read each account carefully, and make an outline of the material. There should be at least four major divisions in the outline.
  - a. Colonial History of Virginia, 7542.
  - b. Eli Whitney and the Cotton Gin, 1718-1719, 7754.
  - c. War of Secession—Early Slavery in America, 7607.
  - d. Negroes in the United States, 4871.
2. Review the Constitution of the United States, and write the number of every article and section that says anything about slaves or slavery. Be prepared to report the results of your study in class. 1635-1643.
3. The following references explain the second phase of the unit. You are expected to do two things in completing this third exercise: First, read the accounts listed below, and take notes on anything which illuminates the *first* division of this unit; second, prepare an outline of the material which deals with the *second* phase of the unit. Your outline should indicate that the settlement of the West by people from the North and the South caused a serious conflict over the extension of slavery into the newly-occupied region.
  - a. Nullification and States' Rights, 5111-5112, 6815-6816, 3100.
  - b. Abolitionists, 9.
  - c. Horace Greeley, 2954-2955.
  - d. William Lloyd Garrison, 2695-2696.
  - e. Wendell Phillips, 5564.
  - f. Josiah Quincy, 5922.
  - g. Republican Party, 6063-6064.
  - h. Stephen A. Douglas, 2015-2016.
  - i. Dred Scott Decision, 2031, 7014.
  - j. Harper's Ferry, 3050-3051.
  - k. Kansas—Territorial Days, 3739-3742.
  - l. Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 3746.
  - m. Liberty Party, 3965-3966.
  - n. Missouri Compromise, 4558-4559, 4605.
  - o. Sovereignty, 6724.
  - p. Squatter Sovereignty, 6787-6788.
  - q. Charles Sumner, 6920.
  - r. Compromise of 1850, 1595, 5199-5200.
  - s. Story of Henry Clay, 1459-1460.
  - t. John C. Calhoun, 1078-1079.
  - u. Daniel Webster, 7696-7697.
  - v. John Brown, 978.
  - w. Ohio Company, 5177.
  - x. Ordinance of 1787, 5242.
  - y. Harriet Beecher Stowe, 6871.
  - z. Lewis Cass, 1220.
  - aa. Fugitive Slave Laws, 2631.
  - bb. The Story of Millard Fillmore, 2415-2418.
  - cc. Wilmot Proviso, 7776-7777.
  - dd. James Buchanan's Administration, 991-992.
  - ee. Crittenden Compromise, 1749.
  - ff. Free-Soil Party, 2603.
  - gg. The Approaching Crisis, 4012-4015.
  - hh. The Administration of Franklin Pierce, 5607-5608.
  - ii. "Underground Railroad," 7350.
  - jj. John Bell, 703-704.
4. Be prepared to explain orally how the Kansas-Nebraska Act conflicted with the Missouri Compromise.
5. Prepare an outline, a debate, a cartoon, or a play which illustrates the part played by Clay, Webster, and Calhoun in the slavery controversy.
6. Discuss in a paper of not more than four pages the attitude of Lincoln toward the slavery controversy. Indicate his point of view from the time he was a small boy until his death. Remember that his attitude changed at different times during his life.
7. Why did many Southerners contend that slavery could not endure with Lincoln President of the United States? This question will be discussed in class.
8. Prepare an outline of the secession movement. The following accounts contain material dealing with the subject of secession:
  - a. Lincoln, Candidate for President; Administration of Lincoln, 4014-4015.
  - b. Slavery and Secession, 3684.
  - c. The White House of the Confederacy, 6118-6120.

- d. Confederate States of America, 1603-1605.
- e. The Story of Jefferson Davis, 1838-1839.
- f. Fort Moultrie, 2544-2545.
- g. Fort Sumter, 2545-2546, 665.
- h. War of Secession, 7607-7609.
- i. History of Virginia, 7542.
9. In a short paragraph, explain what you consider to be the real significance of the election of 1860.
10. Prepare an outline of the War of Secession, including only subject matter which you think essential to an understanding of the conflict. The following accounts contain material, *some* of which you will want to use in your outline. This is an exercise in selection and discrimination, and does not call for the inclusion of every item given in these references.
  - a. War of Secession, 7609-7621.
  - b. The Story of Grant, 2899-2902.
  - c. Joseph Hooker, 3223.
  - d. Blockade, 794-795.
  - e. Albert Johnston; Joseph Johnston, 3690-3691.
  - f. Story of Robert E. Lee, 3917-3921.
  - g. Navy of the United States, 4846, 4851.
  - h. Lincoln's Administration, 4016-4018.
  - i. Braxton Bragg, 916.
  - j. The Alabama; Alabama Claims, 164.
  - k. Henry Ward Beecher, 683.
  - l. History of Atlanta, 488.
  - m. Charles Francis Adams, 24.
  - n. Stonewall (Thomas J.) Jackson, 3605-3606.
  - o. The Trent Affair, 7262.
  - p. David G. Farragut, 2373.
  - q. Gettysburg Address, 2793-2794.
  - r. Rutherford B. Hayes, 3094-3095.
11. Be prepared to explain orally why the North won the War of Secession. At least five reasons should be included in an adequate discussion of this question.
12. After reading the following references, write a discussion entitled "The End of Slavery." Indicate in your paper why this division of thought is the logical conclusion to the unit.
  - a. Emancipation Proclamation, 7610, 4016.
  - b. Amendments to the Constitution, 246, 1634, 1642.
  - c. References included in the preceding exercises which deal with this subject.
13. Be prepared to show the value and significance of the Emancipation Proclamation. Why were amendments to the Constitution of the United States necessary? This problem will be discussed in class.
14. Reconstruction of the South does not constitute a phase of this unit, as outlined, but this story may be studied as supplementary work. The references given below contain material dealing with the subject of Reconstruction. If a voluntary extra project is prepared on this subject, the directions for preparing an extra project given in Exercise 11, Unit Two, should be reviewed.
  - a. Reconstruction, 6024.
  - b. Tenure of Office Act, 7110.
  - c. Ku-Klux Klan, 3818.
  - d. Negroes in the United States, 4871.
  - e. Liberal Republican Party, 3961.
  - f. Rutherford B. Hayes, 3096.
  - g. Andrew Johnson, 3685-3686.
  - h. Carpetbaggers, 1211.
15. There are five major divisions in this unit: (1) Early Slavery in America; (2) Contests over the Growth of Slavery; (3) The Secession Movement; (4) The War of Secession, and (5) The End of Slavery. Indicate in which division each of the following statements belongs by placing a figure 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 after each:
  - a. The election of Lincoln was the immediate cause of the South Carolina Ordinance of Secession.
  - b. Until the invention of the cotton gin, the great obstacle to success in the cotton trade was the difficulty in separating the cotton seed from the fiber.
  - c. The Missouri Compromise stated that Maine was to be admitted into the Union as a free state, Missouri as a slave state, but the territory included in the Louisiana Purchase was to be forever free.
  - d. The Kansas-Nebraska Act caused much trouble in Kansas.
  - e. Many slaves were brought to this country from Africa.
  - f. William Lloyd Garrison criticized the Constitution because it recognized slavery.
  - g. Southern leaders desired to create new slave states in the west.
  - h. The Compromise of 1850 delayed the War of Secession ten years.
  - i. Southern leaders stated that a state had sovereign power, and could withdraw from the Union when it chose.
  - j. Very early in the nation's history freedom was given to negroes in the North.
  - k. The decisive victories at Gettysburg and Vicksburg encouraged the Union commanders to hope for a speedy conclusion of the war.
  - l. The Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments were added to the Constitution in consequence of the War of Secession.
  - m. The election of 1860 had an important bearing upon the slavery controversy.

- n. Slavery, which was introduced into Virginia, rapidly spread to other colonies.

### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question, and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Do not mark incorrect answers in any way. Be prepared to justify your selections.

1. What caused the increased demand in the Southern states for slaves?
  - a. The cheap slave labor.
  - b. The invention of the cotton gin.
  - c. The unfriendly attitude of the North.
  - d. The high price of slaves in Africa.
2. Why was slavery abolished in the North during the generation following the Revolution?
  - a. Slavery did not pay in the North.
  - b. Slaves were not healthy in the North.
  - c. Slavery was attacked by leading statesmen.
  - d. English laborers influenced Northern business men.
3. What was said about Louisiana Territory in the Missouri Compromise settlement?
  - a. The greater portion was to be slave territory.
  - b. The greater portion was to be free territory.
  - c. The land was to be half slave and half free.
  - d. Nothing should be done about slavery until 1860.
4. What was the effect of the Compromise of 1850?
  - a. The country seemed pleased with the result.
  - b. The North admitted that secession was legal.
  - c. Louisiana territory became all free.
  - d. Lincoln asserted the rights of Illinois.
5. According to the Kansas-Nebraska Act, who was to determine whether Kansas was to be free or slave territory?
  - a. Congress.
  - b. The people of the United States.

- c. The President of the United States.
- d. The people of Kansas.
6. What was the attitude of Lincoln concerning the slavery question?
  - a. He demanded that slavery be abolished at once.
  - b. He demanded that the slave owners be punished.
  - c. He suggested that the negroes be permitted to vote.
  - d. He suggested that slavery be gradually abolished and the slave owners paid.
7. What was the real cause of secession?
  - a. The Southern states desired to protect slavery.
  - b. Lincoln demanded that slavery should be immediately abolished.
  - c. The Southern armies captured Fort Sumter.
  - d. Lincoln obtained English aid to defeat slavery.
8. What was the influence of the blockade?
  - a. It caused the South to win on land.
  - b. It was responsible for England's friendship.
  - c. It aided the North in getting French help.
  - d. It prevented the South from trading with other countries.
9. What was the theory of secession?
  - a. A state may withdraw from the Union whenever it feels its rights are no longer protected.
  - b. The Union may remove a state whenever it feels the state is doing unfair things.
  - c. A Federal officer may resign from office whenever he thinks he has been mistreated.
  - d. Whenever slavery is not acceptable to a given locality, it may be abolished.
10. How was slavery entirely destroyed?
  - a. By the Emancipation Proclamation.
  - b. By the victorious Northern armies.
  - c. By the Thirteenth Amendment.
  - d. By the decline in the price of cotton.

## UNIT SEVEN

### How Americans Won The West

#### Exploration Questions

1. Into what two sections of the country did Daniel Boone move his family?
2. How is the name of George Rogers Clark connected with Kaskaskia?
3. What justification is there for calling David Crockett a pioneer who assisted in opening the West?
4. What regions were explored by Kit Carson?
5. What part did Sam Houston play in the winning of the West?
6. What territory was explored by Zebulon Pike?
7. In what respects did the explorations of John C. Fremont differ from the explorations of the six men referred to in the preceding questions?
8. What is the story of the opening of the territory included in the present state of Utah?

9. What is the significance of the name "Buffalo Bill" in the story of the winning of the West?
10. Why should great honor be paid Robert Fulton?
11. How did the first reaper differ from the modern self-binder?
12. What is meant by the statement that "McCormick did more than just invent the reaping machine"?
13. What is the story of the construction of the first important waterway in the United States?
14. To what extent should De Witt Clinton be given credit for the building of a principal waterway in the United States?
15. What part did the "forty-niners" play in the development of the West?
16. What were the enterprises which culminated in the completion of the Great Northern Railway system?
17. What kind of surveys and investigations did Clarence King make in the West?
18. In what regions did John Wesley Powell do important work? How did he aid in the development of the West?
19. Since the beginning of the nation's history, what has been the policy of the national government concerning lands in the West? How has the policy changed at different times?
20. What is the meaning and significance of the term "conservation"?
21. What is the meaning and significance of the term "frontier"?

### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

The opening and development of the West caused a change in American character, created governmental, as well as social, problems, and resulted in a temporary decline in culture.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. A group of hunters and traders opened the West for settlement and gradually pushed across the continent.
2. The development of the West depended upon means of transportation, government land policies, and inventions of farm machinery.
3. The westward movement across the continent caused many changes which have proved significant in American life.

#### Assimilative Material

1. Pioneers in opening the West: Daniel Boone; George Rogers Clark; David Crockett; Sam Houston; Zebulon Pike; Kit Carson; John Fremont; Brigham Young; Buffalo Bill.

2. Men and events important in developing the West: Robert Fulton and the steamboat; De Witt Clinton and the Erie Canal; Cyrus McCormick and the reaper; James Marshall and the gold rush to California; James Hill and the Great Northern Railroad; Clarence King and the Geological Survey; John Wesley Powell and irrigation.
3. Results of westward expansion: American character; composite nationality; conservation movement; a national democracy; interruption of established culture.

### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.]

1. Prepare a composition entitled "Pioneers Who Opened the West," indicating in the case of each pioneer the territory explored, routes taken, and rôle in the westward movement. The accounts given below are suggestive of the type of material you may include. Other discussions of early pioneers will be found in THE WORLD BOOK. From your study of the six preceding units, you should have a knowledge of many other pioneers, and may include these stories in your paper. For example, Abraham Lincoln moved westward, and Andrew Jackson played a part in the opening of the West; yet these two characters are not included in the references below:
  - a. Daniel Boone, 858-859, 3762.
  - b. George Rogers Clark, 1455, 3360.
  - c. David Crockett, 1749.
  - d. Kit Carson, 1218.
  - e. Sam Houston, 3264-3265.
  - f. Zebulon Pike, 5614.
  - g. John C. Fremont, 2605-2606.
  - h. Brigham Young, 7951; Mormons in Utah, 4655-4656.
  - i. William Cody, 1525.
2. Read the following stories of men who aided in developing the West. Take notes on this material in preparation for the exercises which are to follow:
  - a. Robert Fulton, 2634-2635, 7246.
  - b. Cyrus McCormick and the Reaper, 4174, 6015-6018.
  - c. Erie Canal, 2287-2289, 1158-1159.
  - d. Gold Rush in California, 1093-1094, 2858.
  - e. James J. Hill, 3179.
  - f. Railroads in the United States, 5976-5977.
  - g. Clarence King, 3792.
  - h. Geological Survey, 2731-2732.
  - i. John Wesley Powell and Irrigation, 5791, 3553-3554.
3. On pages 3497-3500 you will find a list of

inventors and their inventions. Select the American inventions which you think influenced the development of the West, and write a short paragraph for each, indicating how the invention aided in this development.

4. The following accounts contain materials relating to the subject of study. Read each one carefully, and be prepared to discuss in class how the subject matter explains this unit:
  - a. Cumberland Road, 1784.
  - b. Lincoln Highway, 4022-4024.
  - c. Trails of Early Days, 7237-7239.
  - d. Water and Rail Transportation, 7380-7385.
  - e. The American Canal at Sault Ste. Marie, 6400.
  - f. Story of Roads in the United States, 6140-6145.
  - g. Railroads in the United States, 5976-5977.
  - h. New York State Barge Canal, 4997-4998.
  - i. Lakes-to-Gulf Waterway, 3845.
5. Illustrate by means of a cartoon or a map the part transportation played in the development of the West.
6. Explain in a short paper the justification for naming one division of this unit "Pioneers in Opening the West," and another division "Men and Events Important in Developing the West." You will be expected to show that the materials of one division do not belong in the other division.
7. Read the story of Conservation on page 1623, and the stories suggested under "Related Subjects." This material will be discussed in class.
8. Study the following sentence carefully and be prepared to discuss it in class: "With the development of the West, a sturdy American manhood developed, a composite nationality formed, the conservation movement was made necessary, a national democracy was realized, and the orderly progress of culture was interrupted."
9. Draw a picture, diagram, or cartoon showing the significance of westward expansion to the Pacific Ocean.
10. Read the discussion "Disposal of Public Lands," page 3853, and write a paper of at least three pages indicating (1) the content of this material, and (2) its significance in the story of "How Americans Won the West."
11. Be prepared to name the problems of the West, and indicate how each affects our national government.
12. Tell why the United States government should enforce a rigid conservation pol-

icy, and indicate how this can be done.

13. Write a two-hundred word reaction to the following statement taken from an editorial, "The New Frontier," which appeared in the *Chicago Tribune*, Sunday, July 6, 1930: "The cities are the frontier of 1930."
14. After you have completed the thirteen preceding exercises, write a comprehensive discussion of any subject listed below. You may desire to follow the directions, "How to Prepare an Extra Project," given in Unit Two. This is supplementary work, for which extra credit will be given:
  - a. Why people went west.
  - b. Kinds of people who went west.
  - c. Routes taken by the pioneers.
  - d. Dangers of frontier life.
  - e. What people did in the West.
  - f. How the frontier people dressed.
  - g. Amusements in the great West.
  - h. Homes on the frontier.
  - i. Methods of travel in the West.
  - j. Education in the new West.
  - k. Hardships of western life.
  - l. Character and ideals of the pioneers.
  - m. How the frontier people wasted natural resources.
  - n. Health in a frontier community.
  - o. Improvements made by the frontiersmen.
  - p. Importance of social gatherings.
  - q. Woodcraft on the frontier.
  - r. Frontier trading.
  - s. Democracy of the frontier.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before each correct answer to a question, and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Do not mark incorrect answers in any way. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. Why did the early pioneers move westward?
  - a. To escape unfair court decisions.
  - b. To find adventure and better living conditions.
  - c. To organize companies to fight the Indians.
  - d. To show England their independent spirit.
2. What was the effect of the frontier on the early pioneers?
  - a. It made them democratic.
  - b. It made them selfish.
  - c. It made them dependent.
  - d. It made them contented.
3. How was the land west of the Appalachian Mountains obtained by the United States?
  - a. England gave the land to the United States by the treaty which closed the American Revolution.

- b. France sold the land to the United States.
- c. By exploration, purchase, conquest, and treaties.
- d. The United States seized the land and settled it.
4. What was the urgent need of the new West?
  - a. The need for internal improvements.
  - b. The need for courageous men and women.
  - c. The need for animals to stock the land.
  - d. The need for negroes to cultivate the soil.
5. How did the Federal government influence the westward movement?
  - a. By selling Western land to corporations.
  - b. By granting democratic government to Western states.
  - c. By giving away the Western land at a cheap price.
  - d. By aiding internal improvements.
6. What was the chief influence of the early railroads?
  - a. They made possible the opening of the country between the Great Lakes and the lower Mississippi.
  - b. They caused big business to lose money, thus developing class spirit in early America.
  - c. They caused England to take a new attitude toward American commerce and trade.
  - d. They made possible the development of great sections which were far from waterways.
7. In what way was the Erie Canal of benefit to the people of the West?
  - a. More water was made available for irrigation purposes.
  - b. Eastern manufactured goods could be bought cheaper.
  - c. The railroads were forced to lower rates.
  - d. Men who were out of employment were given work.
8. What is the conservation movement?
  - a. A movement to tax people who control natural resources.
  - b. A movement to hasten the use of the natural resources.
  - c. A movement to protect natural resources by stopping waste.
  - d. A movement to give big corporations the use of water power.
9. What was the effect of the westward movement upon American nationality?
  - a. It caused the people to broaden their interests and become nationally minded.
  - b. It caused the people to become more conservative and state-minded.
  - c. It caused the people to become more interested in the institutions of Europe.
  - d. It caused the people to become divided on the question of national and state interests.
10. What was the effect of the westward movement upon the established culture of the country?
  - a. It gave that culture to the frontiersmen.
  - b. It interrupted the development of the established culture.
  - c. It greatly improved the culture.
  - d. It had no effect upon the culture.

## UNIT EIGHT

### The Coming of Big Business

#### Exploration Questions

1. How was manufacturing done in the English colonies during the colonial period?
2. What two conditions led to the rapid development of establishments using power machinery rather than hand tools?
3. Why did manufacturing develop early in the states along the Middle Atlantic coast?
4. What was the attitude of the early settlers in Pennsylvania toward the newly found petroleum?
5. What was the condition of industry in Pennsylvania during the Revolutionary period?
6. What was the Astor family in an earlier day called? Why?
7. How did the stony farmlands of Massachusetts affect the development of industry in that state?
8. How did Cornelius Vanderbilt effect a change in the character of American business and industry?
9. What were the steps that led up to the organization of the Standard Oil trust?
10. What effect did the Sherman Law have upon the Standard Oil trust?
11. How is drilling for petroleum done?
12. What were the principal steps in the development of the United States Steel Corporation?
13. Who introduced the Bessemer process into the American steel industry?
14. What tremendous responsibility was placed upon the shoulders of Elbert H. Gary? How was he responsible for the organization of a great and powerful combine of industries?
15. What are the essential steps in the process of manufacturing steel?



16. How would you summarize the condition of America, industrially, in 1860?
17. What five factors were responsible for the change in the character of business and industry following 1860?
18. To what extent had large-scale production been employed in the cloth industry before 1860?
19. What people have been responsible for the development of the moving-picture industry?
20. What justification is there for saying that the development of motion pictures is a phase of the development of big business in this country?
21. How did the first picture trust develop?
22. What figures may be given to show the widespread popularity and the universal use of automobiles?
23. In what respects did the development of the automobile industry differ from the development of other leading industries in the United States?
24. How can the importance of the meat-packing industry be shown?
25. How is the meat-packing industry organized?
26. What assurance do we have that all meat which comes from the packing houses is fit for food?
27. What importance do you attach to railroad refrigeration?
28. What explanation is there for the fact that the modern department store has proved one of the greatest economic successes of the times?
29. What are the advantages and the disadvantages of the chain-store development?
30. What justification is there for saying that organized baseball is a phase of big business?
31. How has agriculture been changed during recent years as a result of the era of big business?

#### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

The change in American business and industry from the period of small factories and individual control to the era of consolidation under large corporations has resulted in many changes significant in the life of the nation.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. During the colonial and Revolutionary days, business and industry were controlled by individuals and small companies.
2. Following the War of Secession, large corporations were formed to develop American business and industry.
3. The development of business and industry,

which is a continuous process, has increased wealth and consolidated fortunes.

4. The development of big business resulted in many changes significant in the life of the nation.

#### Assimilative Material

1. Industrial America in 1860: Natural resources undiscovered; business controlled by individuals and small companies—oil companies of Pennsylvania, mower and reaper companies of New York; ownership of land the chief form of wealth—the Astor family of New York.
2. Change in character of business and industry: Cornelius Vanderbilt and the New York Central Railroad; John D. Rockefeller and the Standard Oil Company; Andrew Carnegie and the development of the steel industry.
3. Development of American business and industry: The meat-packing industry; the department store; the motion-picture industry; the automobile industry; the cloth industry; organized baseball.
4. Results of business and industrial development: Growth of cities; consolidation of fortunes; increase in wealth; improved conditions of life.

#### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.]

1. After reading the following accounts, write a comprehensive discussion of industrial America in 1860 and the change in the character of business and industry during the succeeding years. You are not expected to include all of the material given in the references. Summarize, generalize, and indicate the major understandings:
  - a. Development of Manufacturing Industries, 7377-7380.
  - b. History of Pennsylvania, 5471, 5521, 5467-5468.
  - c. Astor Family, 465.
  - d. History of Massachusetts, 4330-4331.
  - e. History of Virginia, 7541.
  - f. Cornelius Vanderbilt, 7458-7459.
  - g. Railroads in the United States, 5976-5977.
  - h. John D. Rockefeller, 6153.
  - i. Standard Oil Company, 6798-6799.
  - j. The Petroleum Industry, 5522-5529.
  - k. Andrew Carnegie, 1202-1203.
  - l. Elbert H. Gary, 2697.
  - m. The Story of Iron, 3534-3551.
  - n. United States Steel Corporation, 7411-7412.
  - o. Sir Henry Bessemer, 721.
2. There will be a class discussion of the de-

velopment of American business and industry. Read as many accounts of this subject as you can in preparation for the class work. The following accounts are suggestive, but are not the only ones that may be found in THE WORLD BOOK dealing with the subject. Select other accounts which explain this subject, and read them carefully. Keep a list of everything that you read:

- a. The Cloth Industry, 1489-1491.
- b. The Moving-Picture Industry, 4703-4729.
- c. The Story of the Automobile, 534-546.
- d. Meat-Packing Industry, 4361-4368, 6042-6044.
- e. The Department Store, 1910-1911.
- f. Chain Stores, 1295.
- g. Organized Baseball, 634.
- h. The Story of Agriculture, 93-100.
3. Make a two-column tabular chart, and indicate the advantages and disadvantages of corporation control of business and industry. Include the advantages in one column, and the disadvantages in the other column.
4. Write a theme of at least three pages explaining the following statement: "Large-scale development of American business and industry depended upon the vision and energy of leaders in our industrial life."
5. Be prepared to explain in class how American fortunes became consolidated. The accounts you have already read contain material on this subject.
6. Prepare a list of commodities and conveniences manufactured as the result of big business which have improved living conditions. Indicate in each case how living conditions have been improved.
7. Prepare a floor talk entitled "Results of Business and Industrial Development." Include the following topics: Growth of cities, consolidation of fortunes, increase in wealth, and improved conditions of life.
8. Be prepared to show that the development of industrial America is a continuous process. You will be called upon to indicate some important recent developments in business and industry.
9. The following references explain phases of business and industry which are not included in this eighth unit. After reading the accounts given below, write a review of each, indicating the most significant points. You will find some references which might be included in the story of this unit as outlined in the "Assimilative Material," and some accounts which are irrelevant to the story of this eighth unit as outlined. Select those discussions which you think ex-

plain the analysis of the unit just completed, and indicate the element of understanding which each discussion explains.

- a. Board of Trade, 808-810.
- b. Blue Sky Laws, 806.
- c. Bimetallism, 740.
- d. Adamson Law, 35.
- e. Banking in the United States, 606-610, 602-603.
- f. William Jennings Bryan, 986-987.
- g. Story of Tariff in the United States, 7022-7024.
- h. Story of the Thirtieth President, 1651-1659.
- i. Thomas Alva Edison, 2108-2110.
- j. Populist Party, 5740.
- k. Federal Farm Loan Board and Banks, 6251-6252.
- l. Chamber of Commerce of the United States, 1298-1299.
- m. Development of Manufacturing Industries, 7377-7380.
- n. Samuel Gompers, 2868.
- o. Greenback Party, 2956-2957.
- p. Income Tax, 3374-3375.
- q. Interstate Commerce, 3490-3491.
- r. Monetary System of United States, 4586-4589.
- s. Trust Legislation, 7284.
- t. Story of Civil Service, 1449-1451.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before the word or words which complete correct statements and a question mark (?) before the word or words which complete debatable statements:

1. During the early part of the nineteenth century the most important industry was—
  - a. mining.
  - b. steel refining.
  - c. farming.
  - d. cabinet-making.
2. During the War of Secession and the period immediately following, business was controlled—
  - a. by big corporations.
  - b. by government agents.
  - c. by individuals and small companies.
  - d. by Southern plantation owners.
3. The early colonists had to be—
  - a. Jacks of all trades.
  - b. experts in all fields.
  - c. experts in special fields.
  - d. large-scale manufacturers.
4. Work in the colonial time was done—
  - a. by machinery.
  - b. by water power.
  - c. by hand.
  - d. by the Indian slaves.
5. Leaders in the business world have formed combinations—

- a. to gain greater profits through mass production.
- b. to ruin the small business man.
- c. to destroy government control.
- d. to take advantage of the public.
6. The corporation became a common form of business organization—
  - a. immediately following the War of Secession.
  - b. during the Revolutionary War.
  - c. during the colonial period.
  - d. after 1900.
7. Sixty years ago the fresh meats that were served on peoples' tables were, for the most part—
  - a. produced in European countries.
  - b. produced in large cities.
  - c. produced in local communities.
  - d. produced in the Southern states.
8. The importance of the Chicago packers in the business world is due—
  - a. to the demands of Easterners.
  - b. to the invention of the refrigerator car.
  - c. to the invention of the meat cutter.
  - d. to the demands of the far North.
9. In large-scale production—
  - a. by-products are destroyed.
  - b. by-products are used.
  - c. workers are paid low wages.
  - d. railroads cannot be used to advantage.
10. Big business in the United States to-day is—
  - a. confined to the Northern states.
  - b. independent of European countries.
  - c. controlled by Henry Ford.
  - d. developing in all sections of the country.

## UNIT NINE

## How America Became A World Power

## Exploration Questions

1. What was the extent of the territory of the United States at the close of the Revolution?
2. To what extent was American commerce developed at the close of the Revolution?
3. What indication have we of the lack of influence of this country at the close of the Revolution?
4. Why was the American nation surprised at the arrangements by which Louisiana was transferred from French to American possession?
5. What may have been an important factor that caused Napoleon to offer to sell Louisiana?
6. What American began negotiations for the purchase of Louisiana, and because of his work deserves much credit for the achievement?
7. What should be remembered concerning the acquisition of Florida?
8. What were the principal events of Mexican and American history which led up to the establishment of the independent government of Texas?
9. Of what territorial significance to the United States was the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo?
10. What proof do we have that the annexation of Texas was for a time opposed by many Americans?
11. What was the significance of the siege of the Alamo and the destruction of the garrison?
12. What justification was there for President Polk's statement to Congress that war existed "through the act of Mexico herself"?
13. What was the real attitude of President Polk concerning the Texas question?
14. What attitude did the people of Texas take which gave the United States some justification for the annexation of Texas?
15. How was the dispute over the boundary line between Mexico and the United States, which grew out of the treaty which closed the Mexican War, finally settled?
16. What was the extent of United States territory in 1890?
17. What was the country's financial position in 1890?
18. To what extent was industry developed by 1890?
19. At approximately what time did the United States take an active interest in Samoa? What other indications have we of American interest in Samoa? At what time was Samoa acquired by the United States?
20. At approximately what time did the United States show an interest in China by concluding a treaty with that nation?
21. Under whose leadership did the United States first enter world affairs?
22. What islands belong to the United States?
23. Of what particular value to the United States is Tutuila?
24. Which of the American Samoan Islands is the most important?
25. At what time in the nation's history did Commodore Matthew C. Perry visit Japan? What success did Perry have in Japan?
26. In what way did the Hawaiian Islands indicate a desire to be annexed by the United States?

27. At what time and in what manner was Hawaii annexed by the United States?
28. At what time were negotiations begun for the sale of Alaska to the United States? When was the transfer made?
29. Why was the Spanish-American War fought? How did the United States gain by that war?
30. What territory was acquired by the United States at the close of the Spanish-American War?
31. What is the meaning of the term "imperialism"?
32. What was the attitude of Admiral Dewey toward Aguinaldo?
33. How has American control in the Philippines increased the nation's international prestige?
34. What arrangements were made between the United States and Cuba at the close of the Spanish-American War? What have been the arrangements since that time?
35. How did Porto Rico come into the possession of the United States?
36. What justification is there for the statement that the United States was not a world power until after the Spanish-American War?
37. What is meant by "America's peaceful attitude in 1914"? In what particulars did the causes of war accumulate?
38. What led President Wilson to ask Congress to declare that a state of war existed?
39. How did the conduct of the World War bring the nation to a position of world leadership?
40. What is meant by the statement that the United States became a great world power because of the World War?

#### Analysis of the Unit

#### LEARNING OBJECTIVE

America's continuous territorial growth, its trade negotiations since the Revolutionary War, and its activity during the period of the World War made the nation a great world power.

#### ELEMENTS OF UNDERSTANDING

1. At the close of the Revolution, America was unable to command the respect of the world.
2. Through purchase, annexation, and cession, the territory of the United States was extended to the Pacific Ocean.
3. By 1890, the United States had come to a position which commanded the respect of the world.
4. During the nineteenth century, America showed tendencies toward world expansion by entering into treaties and

trade negotiations with the Far East, and by annexation of Atlantic and Pacific possessions.

5. During the World War period, the United States, because of financial, industrial, and commercial leadership, notably improved its standing among recognized world powers.

#### Assimilative Material

1. America at the close of the Revolution: Extent of territory; number of people; extent of commerce; lack of influence.
2. Expansion to the Pacific: Thomas Jefferson and the Louisiana Purchase; John Quincy Adams and the acquisition of Florida; Sam Houston and the annexation of Texas; James Polk and the Mexican Cession; the Gadsden Purchase.
3. Position of America in 1890: Territorial; financial; industrial.
4. Tendency toward world expansion: Treaties with China and Siam; annexation of Atlantic and Pacific islands; relations with Samoa; the opening of Japan to commerce by Perry; annexation of Hawaii; the Alaska purchase; Spanish-American War—Porto Rico, the Philippines.
5. The World War: Causes—commercial rivalry, territorial disputes; the submarine and America's entrance into the conflict; Pershing in France—Château-Thierry, the Argonne; peace; America's position since 1918.

#### Study Activities

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia.]

1. Review the story "How America Became an Independent Nation" (Unit Three) and the story "How We Secured Our National Government" (Unit Four), and write in tabular form items which explain the position of America at the close of the Revolutionary War. Devote one column to "extent of territory," one column to "number of people," one column to "extent of commerce," and one column to "lack of influence." The story of the United States, 7362-7393, contains material useful in the preparation of this exercise.
2. Be prepared to indicate why the story of America at the close of the Revolution as outlined in the preceding exercise is included in this unit. This question will be discussed in class.
3. Write a paper of not more than two pages explaining how the United States secured Louisiana. 4134, 4061, 3650, 7396, 3853.

4. Be prepared to explain in class how the United States secured Florida. 32, 2482, 3853.
5. Prepare an outline of the principal events in the story of the annexation of Texas. 7130, 165, 4430-4432, 5709, 7038.
6. Be prepared to explain the part taken by James K. Polk in the expansion of America to the Pacific.
7. Indicate in a short paragraph the significance of the Gadsden Purchase. 2657.
8. Select the most significant events about which you read in exercises 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7, and write a comprehensive story of the expansion of the nation to the Pacific Ocean. "The History of American Acquisitions," 3853, and the account of "Annexation," 293-294, should be read before the story is written.
9. Review the references you have already read which indicate the position of America in 1890. Prepare a tabular chart similar to the one prepared for Exercise 1, devoting one column to "extent of territory," one column to "financial position," and one column to "industry." The purpose of this exercise is to show the advance made during the period 1789-1890.
10. After reading the following references, write a comprehensive story explaining the tendency of the United States toward world expansion:
  - a. Territorial Expansion, 7386.
  - b. China—Increased Intercourse with the World, 1396.
  - c. John Hay, 3092, 5213.
  - d. History of Siam, 6585.
  - e. Islands of United States (each also listed separately), 3566.
  - f. Samoa, 6353-6356.
  - g. Commodore Perry in Japan, 3636, 5491-5492.
  - h. History of Hawaii, 3084, 3085.
  - i. Alaska Purchase, 175.
  - j. Imperialism, 3370.
  - k. Spanish-American War, 6738-6741, 4190.
  - l. Treaty of 1898, 5381.
  - m. Aguinaldo, 107.
  - n. The Rough Riders, 6188.
  - o. Theodore Roosevelt—Foreign Relations, 6190-6192.
  - p. History of the Philippine Islands, 5556-5563.
  - q. Guam, 2972.
  - r. Manila, 4257-4259.
  - s. Igorote, 3348.
  - t. Richmond Pearson Hobson, 3189.
  - u. History of Cuba, 1772-1775.
  - v. History of Porto Rico, 5755.
  - w. George Dewey, 1926.
  - x. Isle of Pines, 3566-3567.
11. Outline both sides of a debate upon the following subject: "Island possessions of the United States are of great value to our country."
12. Write a two-page reaction to the following statement: "The United States from a very early date in specific instances indicated a desire to enter world affairs."
13. Be prepared to discuss in class whether or not the United States was justified in fighting Spain in 1898.
14. The story of the World War is told in the following accounts. Read each very carefully, and prepare notes indicating the material you think most significant in showing *how America became a world power*. Remember that while much of the material is of interest, it has little value in explaining the learning objective of this unit. Be prepared to show the significance of this last statement.
  - a. The United States in the World War, 7883-7892.
  - b. War Debts, 7595-7600.
  - c. Volunteers, 7567.
  - d. Treaty of Versailles, 7506-7508.
  - e. League of Nations, 3904-3906.
  - f. Mandated Territories, 4253.
  - g. Robert M. La Follette, 3840.
  - h. Count von Bernstorff, 720.
  - i. Conscription in the United States, 1622.
  - j. Edward M. House, 3261.
  - k. Robert Lansing, 3873.
  - l. John J. Pershing, 5494-5495.
  - m. The War in the Air, 127-129.
  - n. Red Cross in the World War, 6026.
  - o. William Gibbs McAdoo, 4167-4168.
  - p. The Story of Herbert Hoover, 3230-3231.
  - q. Armistice Day, 410.
  - r. Permanent Court of International Justice, 5489-5490.
  - s. Dawes Plan, 1841-1842.
  - t. International Settlements, 3488-3489.
15. Prepare a defense for either side of the following question: "The United States was justified in entering the World War."
16. In outline form indicate *exactly* what the United States contributed to the success of the allied nations.
17. Be prepared to tell the class how the World War brought the United States to a position of world supremacy.
18. The following supplementary accounts should be read by pupils who complete the above exercises before other members of their class. A brief summary of each should be written, indicating what phase of the unit the material explains.
  - a. Virgin Islands, 7546-7547.
  - b. Henry L. Stimson, 6835.

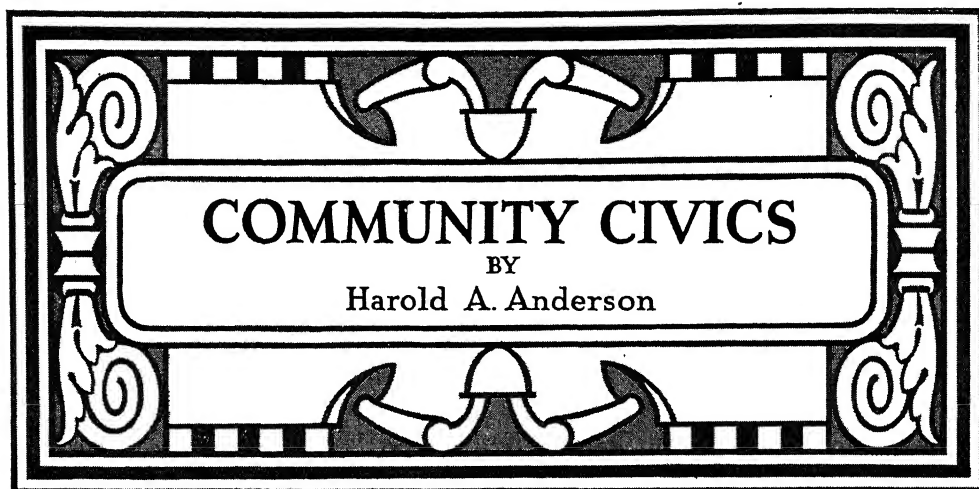
- c. Santo Domingo, 6381-6382.
- d. William Crawford Gorgas, 2875.
- e. History of Haiti, 3012-3013.
- f. Boxer Rebellion, 900-901.
- g. Story of Panama Canal, 5330-5337.
- h. Pan-American Congress, 5337-5338.
- i. Nicaragua Canal, 5018-5019.
- j. Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 1460.
- k. Hay-Pauncefote Treaty, 3101.
- l. Bering Sea Controversy, 713.
- m. John Bassett Moore, 4644-4645.
- n. Monroe Doctrine, 4608.
- o. Dwight Morrow, 4663-4664.
- p. Distinguished Service Medals, 1968-1970.
- q. Northwest Territory, 5079-5080.
- r. Merchant Marine of the United States, 4404-4406.
- s. The Story of Aircraft, 134-151.
- t. Webster-Ashburton Treaty, 7698.
- u. Charles A. Lindbergh, 4025-4030.
- v. American Legion, 250-252.
- w. David Starr Jordan, 3697.
- x. Richard E. Byrd, 1053-1054.
- y. Kellogg-Briand Treaty, 6058-6059.

#### A Test in Understanding

Place a cross (x) before the best answer to each question, and a question mark (?) before each answer which is debatable. Be prepared to justify your selections:

1. What part of the present United States was settled at the close of the Revolution?
  - a. The territory from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River.
  - b. The territory from the Atlantic Ocean to the Alleghanies.
  - c. The territory from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific Ocean.
  - d. The territory from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean.
2. What territory was added to the United States during the administrations of Thomas Jefferson?
  - a. Texas.
  - b. New Amsterdam.
  - c. Oregon.
  - d. Louisiana.
3. In what way did America profit by the war with Mexico?
  - a. Much new territory was added to the country.
  - b. Much gold and silver was paid the government.
  - c. Europe was forced to buy goods from American manufacturers.

- d. The Mexican government offered land to American soldiers.
4. Why did America, during the early years of its existence as a nation, steer clear of entangling relations with other nations?
    - a. Because the people in America respected Washington's advice.
    - b. Because the nation was weak.
    - c. Because Americans hated Europeans.
    - d. Because Americans were busy developing the country.
  5. What indicated America's tendency toward world expansion?
    - a. Treaties with China and Siam.
    - b. Acquisition of Florida.
    - c. Annexation of Hawaii.
    - d. Development of western states.
  6. When did the United States first show its expansive tendencies?
    - a. In 1830 and 1840.
    - b. After 1900.
    - c. During the War of Secession.
    - d. Before the War of 1812.
  7. What part did Perry play in America's expansion policy?
    - a. He established commercial relations with Japan.
    - b. He showed the advantage of a large army.
    - c. He opened the Philippines to commerce.
    - d. He brought Germany to terms.
  8. How was the foreign policy of the United States changed in 1898?
    - a. European friendships were discouraged.
    - b. The money supply was decreased.
    - c. South American friendships were discouraged.
    - d. A program of world expansion was launched.
  9. What caused America to enter the World War?
    - a. Hatred of the German nation.
    - b. Fear of Mexico.
    - c. Submarine warfare.
    - d. Desire for world trade.
  10. What effect did the World War have upon the United States?
    - a. It caused a financial crisis in America.
    - b. It made the United States a selfish nation.
    - c. It caused serious trouble between the United States and England.
    - d. It made the United States a financial, industrial, and commercial leader among nations.



The following outline of Community Civics includes materials usually found in civics courses in junior and senior high schools. The course is divided into five parts, each part representing one of the larger phases of civics—social, community, political, economic, and vocational—ordinarily treated in social-science textbooks.

Part One is devoted to the nature of group and community life and the chief characteristics of three fundamental social institutions,—the family, the school, and the church. Part Two deals with six important problems affecting community welfare, namely, assimilating the immigrant, safeguarding health, protecting life and property, providing recreation, planning communities, and aiding the handicapped. The machinery and functions of American political institutions are discussed in Part Three. Attention is given to how we govern ourselves, how laws are made, how laws are enforced, how laws are applied and interpreted, how we select our officials, how we finance our government, and international relations. Part Four develops the elementary concepts and fundamental principles of economic civics. This section deals with producing goods, exchanging goods, communication, transportation of goods and people, and thrift and conservation. The last division, Part Five, presents the problems of choosing a vocation and making a living.

While the organization follows in general the courses offered in the University of Chicago High School, certain modifications have been made in order to meet the practical classroom needs of the teacher of civics. To this end, thirty-five representative textbooks and manuals in social science were carefully examined. Chapter titles and major topics were tabulated for the purpose of discovering those aspects of civics which are most widely taught in junior and senior high schools. The following study guides should therefore be useful in connection

with any representative textbook in civics.

The course contains twenty-five units, each of which represents not merely a body of subject matter but a significant unit of learning which should generate adaptations to the social environment. Each unit, in turn, has been analyzed into its elemental understandings. Each element is, in a sense, a unit in itself. It is urged, therefore, that the student regard the elements as unit understandings out of which grows the unit-learning.

#### How To Use the Study Guides

**Supplementary Material.** Several purposes have guided the preparation of these study outlines. In the first place, perhaps their greatest value will be found in their use as supplementary material to a basic textbook. The nature of a textbook does not lend itself to a lengthy treatment of even the most important topics. The terse, concise discussion of civics found in textbooks frequently fails to motivate in the pupil an interest in the subject. Furthermore, a textbook must necessarily be limited in its scope, and it cannot contain all of the significant aspects of community civics usually embodied in an encyclopedia. Thus the accounts in *THE WORLD BOOK* may be used advantageously to illuminate and vitalize the text material.

Many procedures are possible in the use of the guides as supplementary material. The alert teacher will use the materials in a way which will best serve the classroom needs. However, certain suggestions will be given here. Except in the case of a few units, the references have been grouped according to the elements of the unit. It is suggested that the student read all of the references of a given element first. Before he proceeds to the next element, he should test his understanding of the materials read by answering the questions listed under Questions, Problems, and Exer-

cises. The questions may be used, too, to stimulate and invigorate class discussion. The problems and exercises should serve several purposes, such as providing opportunities for written work, oral reports, debates, and informal group discussion.

The topics listed under Supplementary Enterprises are intended for students who wish to do voluntary supplementary work. The subjects are adaptable to valuable oral and written reports. The teacher will find the topics helpful in assigning supplementary work to superior students. Pupils who wish to undertake these projects should expect to go beyond the resources of *THE WORLD BOOK*.

**Home Study.** Pupils who for any reason find it necessary or desirable to do a part or

all of their school work in this subject at home will find the study outlines particularly helpful. It should be possible for a capable pupil to complete on his own initiative and under the guidance of these materials a course in community civics. Adults, also, who may wish to further their education at home will find these pages of valuable assistance.

**Other Uses.** A number of additional uses suggest themselves. The course outline and the study helps may be used in connection with Americanization classes, continuation schools and evening schools, adult education, and women's clubs. Wherever there is a quest for information and an intellectual interest in the art of living together, the course outlined in these pages should prove useful.

## Outline of Community Civics

### Part One. Group Life and Social Institutions

#### Unit One. Group Life

- A. How We Depend on Others
- B. How Others Depend on Us
- C. How Our Interests Conflict
- D. How Our Conflicting Interests Are Controlled
- E. Teamwork and Coöperation

#### Unit Two. The Family and the Home

- A. What We Owe to Our Ancestors
- B. How the Family Educates Its Young
- C. Dangers to the Home
- D. How We Can Make Our Homes Ideal

#### Unit Three. The School and Education

- A. How We Learn
- B. Why We Need Schools

- C. How Schools Are Supported and Controlled
- D. Special Kinds of Schools
- E. How To Get the Most Out of School

#### Unit Four. The Church and Religion

- A. What Religion Is
- B. Great Religions of the World
- C. The Christian Religion
- D. What the Church Does for the Community

#### Unit Five. Community Life

- A. Our Relationship to the Community
- B. Early Types of Communities
- C. The Development of a Community
- D. Rural Communities
- E. The Modern City Community
- F. Community Spirit and Neighborliness

### Part Two. Community Welfare

#### Unit Six. The Community and Immigration

- A. Why America Is Called "The Melting Pot"
- B. Our Changing Policy toward Immigration
- C. Contributions of Immigrants to American Life
- D. The Americanization Program

#### Unit Seven. The Community and Health

- A. Importance of Good Health to the Individual and to the Community
- B. What the Community Does to Safeguard Health
- C. Sacrifices and Contributions of Noted Individuals to Public Health
- D. How the Individual Can Coöperate

#### Unit Eight. The Community and Protection

- A. Why We Need Protection
- B. Losses from Fire, Accidents, Crime, Natural Disasters, and Fraud

- C. What the Community Does to Protect Life and Property
- D. What the Individual Can Do

#### Unit Nine. The Community and Recreation

- A. Why We Need Play and More Play Facilities
- B. The Value of Play and Recreation
- C. What the Community Does to Provide Play and Recreation Facilities
- D. Play and Recreation Facilities Provided by Private and Semi-Public Agencies

#### Unit Ten. Civic Beauty and City Planning

- A. The Appeal of Beauty
- B. City Planning in Ancient Times
- C. City Planning in Europe
- D. Well-Planned Cities in America
- E. Regional and Larger Community Planning



**Unit Eleven. The Care and Training of the Handicapped**

A. The Blind and the Deaf

- B. The Mentally Handicapped
- C. Crime and the Criminal
- D. Social Welfare Work

**Part Three. Our American Political Institutions****Unit Twelve. How We Govern Ourselves**

- A. Why We Need Government
- B. Different Forms of Government
- C. Our Local Governments
- D. Our State Government
- E. Our National Government

**Unit Thirteen. How Laws Are Made**

- A. Laws and Why We Have Them
- B. How Constitutions Are Made and Changed
- C. How Statute Laws Are Made

**Unit Fourteen. How Laws Are Enforced**

- A. Enforcing Local Laws
- B. Enforcing State Laws
- C. Enforcing National Laws

**Unit Fifteen. How Laws Are Applied and Interpreted**

- A. What Courts Are and Why They Are Necessary

- B. Local and State Courts
- C. Federal Courts
- D. Court Procedure

**Unit Sixteen. How We Select Our Officials**

- A. Political Parties and Why They Are Formed
- B. Political Parties at Work
- C. How We Elect Our Officials

**Unit Seventeen. How We Finance Our Government**

- A. Why Our Government Needs Money
- B. Sources of Income
- C. Levying and Collecting Taxes

**Unit Eighteen. International Relations**

- A. How Nations Depend on One Another
- B. Our Relations with Other Countries
- C. Movements for International Peace

**Part Four. Economic Civics****Unit Nineteen. Producing Goods**

- A. Why We Work
- B. How We Produce Goods
- C. Industrial Problems

**Unit Twenty. Exchanging Goods**

- A. Why We Exchange Goods
- B. How We Determine the Value of Goods
- C. How We Exchange Goods
- D. How the Government Protects Us

**Unit Twenty-One. Communication**

- A. Early Modes of Communication
- B. Telephone, Telegraph, Television, Radio, and Signaling

- C. The Postal Service
- D. The Newspaper

**Unit Twenty-Two. Transportation of Goods and People**

- A. Early Modes of Transportation
- B. Transportation by Water
- C. Transportation by Land
- D. Transportation by Air
- E. The Government and Transportation

**Unit Twenty-Three. Thrift and Conservation**

- A. How Goods Are Wasted
- B. Conservation of Natural and Human Resources
- C. How We Can Help Save

**Part Five. Occupations****Unit Twenty-Four. Choosing a Vocation**

- A. Why We Need to Work
- B. How To Choose One's Work
- C. How To Prepare for One's Work

**Unit Twenty-Five. Making a Living**

- A. Agriculture
- B. Forestry and Lumbering

- C. Mining and Oil Refining
- D. Fishing
- E. Building
- F. Manufacturing Goods
- G. Transporting Goods and People
- H. Commercial and Clerical Occupations
- I. Working for the Government
- J. The Professions
- K. Home-Making

## Part One. Group Life and Social Institutions

## UNIT ONE

## Group Life

## Elements of the Unit

- A. How We Depend on Others.
- B. How Others Depend on Us.
- C. How Our Interests Conflict.
- D. How Our Conflicting Interests Are Controlled.
- E. Teamwork and Coöperation.

## References

[Read all the references first; numbers indicate pages in THE WORLD BOOK.]

Agriculture: The Adams Family Proves the Value of Agriculture. 92  
 Story of the Ant. 296-303  
 The Story of Bees. 672-682  
 Brook Farm. 975  
 Character Training. 1304-1308  
 Coöperation. 1662-1664, 3445  
 Law. 3897  
 Custom. 4275, 2636, 3073  
 Tattooing. 7030-7031, 5292

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

1. What did the children of the Adams family learn about their relation to the farm? 92
2. List the things you usually eat for breakfast. Then trace each of the items back as far as you can, to show your dependence upon a large number of people. For example, how many people have had a part in the complete preparation of a piece of toast?
3. Does the city resident depend upon more people than the farmer? Is the farmer absolutely independent? Explain.
4. Write a paper explaining how you depend on others for a single article such as a fountain pen, a book, or a football. Mention all the industrial, commercial, and financial establishments you can think of which are in any way connected with the article about which you write.
5. Some of the rules of good health are "Drink plenty of pure water," "Eat wholesome food," and "Breathe deeply and freely of pure air." Do you depend on others in obeying these rules? Explain. Is the country boy more independent than the city boy in this respect? Explain.
6. How many persons are dependent on you? Is the farmer, the grocer, the butcher, the merchant, the manufacturer, or the government dependent on you? Explain. If you drive an automobile, are others dependent on you? How? How do your parents depend on you? Your schoolmates?
7. What is the meaning of the word *interdependence*? (Consult a dictionary.) Are you a member of any group in which there is a great deal of interdependence? Give examples and explain. Do you know of any communities which are interdependent? Any nations?
8. Are individuals, communities, and nations more interdependent or less interdependent now than they were ten or twenty-five years ago?
9. Read carefully the paragraph on *Duties Owed to Others*, 1307. Do you live in a "well-conducted" or an "ill-conducted" community? Give reasons for your answer. Does this paragraph apply equally well to your school? Your family?
10. What is meant by the statement that "Every unprincipled man is a parasite or a sponge"? 1308
11. In what way do you depend upon the past? Read the paragraph on *Our Social Inheritance*, 1308
12. What is meant by the word *coöperative*? Do you know of any organizations in your community which are coöperative enterprises? What is meant by the expression, "joint labor for mutual benefit"? 1662-1664
13. Is there teamwork among ants? Do they depend on one another? Would you call an ant colony a "well-conducted" or an "ill-conducted" community? Why? Are there conflicting interests in an ant colony? 296-303
14. Is there more teamwork and coöperation among bees than among ants? Are bees dependent upon each other? How does the community life of the bees differ from that of the ants? Is there always harmony among bees? 672-682
15. Tell about the experiment in "brotherly coöperation" on the Brook Farm. 975
16. What are some of the difficulties in securing teamwork in a group? Give some examples from your experience. Is selfishness the chief cause of conflicting interests? Explain.
17. Is it true that as civilization develops and individuals and communities become more interdependent, there is also an increase in the number of conflicting interests? Justify your answer by citing several examples.

18. List and discuss several situations in which an individual could not have his own way without doing injustice to others.
19. Explain and illustrate the following statements:
  - a. An individual gains when he conforms to social controls established by the group.
  - b. Society gains when an individual conforms to social controls.
  - c. Social control provides for the greatest good to the greatest number.
20. Define law, public opinion, and custom.
21. Which of the methods of social control mentioned above influences you most? Give reasons.
22. Why do we eat pie with a fork? Why do we drive on the right-hand side of the road?
23. Explain this sentence: "The ant . . . shares with man one dominant trait—it is a strongly social being." 296-299.
24. Do ants and bees have social controls by which they force individual members of their colonies or communities to conform to the wishes of the group? 296-303, 672-682

25. How is the study of the nature of group or community life of value to the individual?

#### Supplementary Enterprises

(For voluntary oral or written reports)

1. Group Life of Insects and Animals.
2. Coöperative Organizations in My Community.
3. The Independence of Robinson Crusoe.
4. Dependence of Wild Animals on One Another.
5. How My Interests Conflict with Those of Others.
6. How We Depend on the Past and How the Future Depends on Us.
7. How the Interdependence of Nations May Lead to World Peace.
8. How We Depend on Other Nations.  
Make a list of the articles which you use daily. In a parallel column, indicate the country from which each article comes.
9. How My Actions Are Influenced by the Thoughts of Others.
10. How I Am Controlled by Law, Public Opinion, and Custom.

## UNIT TWO

### The Family and The Home

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. What We Owe to Our Ancestors.
- B. How the Family Educates Its Young.
- C. Dangers to the Home.
- D. How We Can Make Our Homes Ideal.

#### References

Story of the Ant. 296-303  
 Bee (Development and Care of Young). 676-677  
 "Home Life" of Birds. 754  
 Children's Bureau. 1376-1377  
 Societies for Children. 1376  
 China (Family Life). 1392  
 Homes through the Ages. 1447  
 Clans. 1453-1454  
 Divorce. 1981  
 Heredity. 3158-3161  
 Story of Household Arts. 3262-3264  
 Interior Decoration. 3478-3482  
 Marriage. 4299-4301  
 Mother's Day. 4684-4685  
 Mothers' Pensions. 4685  
 A Neanderthal Family. 4853  
 Parent and Child. 5369  
 Parent-Teacher Associations. 5369-5370  
 John Howard Payne. 5423-5424

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

1. What is the meaning of *heredity*? 3158

2. Are all our peculiarities and characteristics inherited? 3159
3. What are some examples of the social heritage which we receive through the family?
4. List and discuss all the ways in which the family educates its young. 3262
5. Have you ever seen an animal teach its young? If so, tell what you saw.
6. Do birds care for their young? 754. Do ants? 299. Do bees? 676
7. In what ways is the family life of birds like the family life of humans? How is it different? 754
8. Describe the "family life" of ants. 296-303
9. Are ants home-loving and home-building insects? 299
10. Describe the "family life" of bees. 676-677
11. Study the picture of a Neanderthal family. What conclusions do you draw relative to the activities of a family at that time? 4853
12. Describe family life in China. 1392
13. Contrast the home life of colonial times with home life in your community. 1545-1550
14. Who was John Howard Payne? For what is he famous? 5423-5424
15. What right had a father over his children in the time of the early Romans? 5369

16. May the state take a child away from its parents? Why? 5369
17. What is divorce? Why can marriage be dissolved only by legal authority? What are some causes for divorce? Why is divorce forbidden under the laws of the Roman Catholic Church? What state does not permit divorce? 1981
18. Read the accounts under *Character Training*, on pages 1304-1305. How might misfortune or sorrow in the home cultivate such virtues as love, sympathy, and unselfishness? Give illustrations.
19. What is the purpose of mothers' pensions? How can a mother obtain a pension? When was the first mothers'-pension law passed? 4685
20. What is a parent-teacher association? What is its purpose? Do you have one in your school? Ask your parents or your teacher about it. 5369-5370
21. What is the National Congress of Parents and Teachers? Tell its history. What work has it done? 5369-5370
22. What is the program of the National Congress of Parents and Teachers? 5370
23. What is the International Federation of Home and School? When was it organized? What is its purpose? 5370
24. On what day of the year is Mother's Day? When was the day first observed? 4684
25. Write an essay on "Mother's Day." For facts, see page 4684.
26. What is the purpose of teaching household arts in schools? 3262
27. Look up the meaning of *home* and *house*.  
Do they mean the same? If not, what is the difference? The following statement frequently appears in real-estate advertisements: "Own Your Own Home." Is *home* used correctly? Explain.
28. Write a paragraph describing what you think should be the location and surroundings for an ideal home.
29. What can children do to make their homes ideal?
30. Study the picture entitled *Homes through the Ages*, 1447. Report your impressions.
31. After you have read all the references on this unit, write a paper of five to ten pages in length on the following subject: "The Family and the Home." Make an outline of your paper before you write.

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Indian Families and Tribes. 3409-3429
2. Home Life of Birds. 754
3. The Family Life of Animals (or any other insect or animal). 296-303
4. Mothers' Pensions. 4685
5. Home-Making as a Profession. 3205-3210
6. Organizations of Parents and Teachers. 5369-5370
7. How Animals Educate Their Young.
8. What I Owe to My Home.
9. My Ideal Home.
10. Comparison of City-Home Life with Country-Home Life.
11. School Training in Home Duties.
12. Home and Family Life in Different Countries.

### UNIT THREE

#### The School and Education

##### Elements of the Unit

- A. How We Learn.
- B. Why We Need Schools.
- C. How Schools Are Supported and Controlled.
- D. Special Kinds of Schools.
- E. How to Get the Most Out of School.

##### References

Adult Education. 52-54  
 All-Year Schools. 228-230  
 Ambition. 244-246  
 Child Labor. 1375-1376  
 Coeducation. 1525-1526  
 The School as a Community. 1588-1590  
 Continuation Schools. 1645-1646  
 The Story of Education. 2112-2118  
 United States Office of Education. 2127-2128  
 Education Week. 2131  
 Habit. 2997-2998  
 Habits in Childhood. 2998-2999

Harvard University. 3066-3068  
 Illiteracy. 3363-3366  
 Income Distribution. 3373-3374  
 Instinct. 3467-3468  
 Kindergarten. 3776-3791  
 Memory. 4388-4389  
 Moonlight Schools. 4643-4644  
 Nursery Schools. 5117-5118  
 Physical Education. 5587-5593  
 The Story of Schools. 6417-6428  
 School Garden. 6428-6429  
 The Story of the University. 7414-7416

##### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

1. What is the meaning of *education*? How does it differ from *schooling*? 2112-2113
2. What is *instinct*? Is nest-building among birds an instinct? Is the migration of birds instinctive? 763-764, 3467-3468
3. Do instincts help us learn? Mention ways in which instincts are helpful. Are they ever harmful? Explain.

4. What is *habit*? Do we inherit habits? How are they formed? Is habit a good or bad thing? Discuss and give illustrations. 2997-2998
5. When do we acquire most of our habits? How early in life do we begin to form habits? 2998
6. Name some habits which you wish you had. Name some which you wish you could break. Name some things which you do now because of "force of habit." 2997
7. Through which sense do you remember most easily, visual or auditory? What is the best way to learn how to spell a word? 4389
8. What is memory? Upon what does a good memory depend? Which is more important, habit or memory? Give reasons for your answer. 2997, 4388-4389
9. Explain the following statement: "We learn through our own experiences and the experiences of others." List ten things which you have learned through your own experiences and ten which you have learned through the experiences of others.
10. Were the founders of our country interested in schools and education? 6417-6418
11. What are *public* schools? How are they supported? 6418-6420
12. What was the first high school in the United States? When was it established? 6419-6421
13. What were the *dame schools*? 6419
14. Were girls permitted to attend public schools during the colonial period? 6419
15. What is coeducation? Give the arguments for and against coeducation. 1525-1526
16. When may it be said that "universal" education began? 2117
17. How many school teachers are there in New York City? 4980
18. What percentage of the expenditures of the average family goes for education? Is this high or low? Discuss. 3373
19. What is the oldest university in the world? When was it founded? 2117
20. What is the difference between an endowed university and a state university? 7415
21. What is the oldest institution for higher education in America? When was it founded? 3066
22. To what extent does your school give attention to health inspection? 2115
23. What are the aims and objectives, from the point of view of boys and girls, of physical education? To what extent is your personal physical education program meeting the aims and objectives listed on page 5587?
24. How many of the *Simple Home Exercises in Physical Culture* (5590-5591) have you tried? Try each of them for a period of time, and note the effect.
25. To what extent is your school providing opportunity for the activities of physical education listed on pages 5588-5589?
26. What is a *part-time* school? What is its aim? What provisions are there in your community for part-time schools? What relation is there between child-labor laws and continuation schools? 1375-1376; 1645-1646
27. What is *adult education*? Make a survey of your community, and list all the opportunities which are offered for adult education. Is adult education a substitute for regular schooling? 52-54
28. What are *consolidated* schools? What are some advantages of such schools? 6423-6424
29. When, where, and for what purpose were all-year schools started? What are some advantages of the all-year school plan? Some disadvantages? 228-230
30. Is your school building used as a community center? Discuss the question. 1588-1590
31. What is the purpose of nursery schools? Why are they more necessary now than ever before? 5117
32. Read the article on *AMBITION*. What is the derivation of the word *ambition*? What did Quintillian mean when he said: "Though ambition in itself is a vice, yet it is often the parent of virtues"? What is the difference between *ambition* and *emulation*? 244-246
33. Write a paper on "My School Life." Tell (1) where you have gone to school, (2) what subjects you like, (3) what subjects are easy for you, (4) what subjects give you trouble, (5) how long you intend to stay in school, (6) school activities in which you engage, (7) in what respects you would like to improve yourself, (8) what you are preparing for, and (9) how your school life is helping you.

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Famous American Universities: Harvard, 3066-3068; Yale, 7924-7926; University of Chicago, 1366-1367; Princeton University, 5816-5817; Stanford University, 6801-6802; Johns Hopkins University, 3682; Columbia University, 1570-1571
2. Some Famous European Universities: Cambridge, 1103; Berlin, 716; Oxford, 5280-5281; Sorbonne, 6689-6690; Paris, 5381; Heidelberg, 3125-3126; Edinburgh, 2108; Dublin, 2045
3. The Story of the Library. 3967-3972, 3972-3974
4. Nursery Schools. 5117-5118
5. Physical Education. 5587-5593

6. How the Child Learns through His Senses. 1370-1372
7. The Story of the College and the University. 1537-1538, 7414-7417
8. The School as a Community. 1588-1590
9. Correspondence Schools. 1699
10. Rural Education. 6252-6254
11. Scholarships and Fellowships. 6415-6417
12. Moonlight Schools. 4643-4644
13. A Program for Education Week for the Local Community. 2131
14. Some Famous Educators: Horace Mann, 4267; Johann Heinrich Pestalozzi, 5513-5514; Friedrich Wilhelm Froebel, 2624; Henry Barnard, 624-625
15. Pupil-Government in Schools. 2753-2754

## UNIT FOUR

## The Church and Religion

## Elements of the Unit

- A. What Religion Is.
- B. Great Religions of the World.
- C. The Christian Religion.
- D. What the Church Does for the Community.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. What Religion Is:

## References:

- Ancestor Worship. 274  
 Animal Worship. 292  
 Animism. 292  
 God. 2850-2851  
 Indians (Indian Thought). 3403-3404  
 Mythology. 4787-4800  
 Religion. 6050-6051  
 Sun Dance. 6925  
 Totem. 7222-7223  
 Transmigration of the Soul. 7244-7246

1. What does the term *god* mean? 2850
2. Among the heathen, are the gods necessarily better than man? Explain. 2850, 4787-4788
3. What was the Hebrew idea of God? 2850
4. What is the Christian conception of God? 2851
5. What is the meaning of religion? With what is religion concerned? What do we know about the origin of religion? 6050-6051
6. What is the meaning of *morality*? What is the difference between religion and morality? Was there any relation between religion and morality in primitive religions?
7. What is the difference between a *monotheistic* and a *polytheistic* religion? 6050
8. What is animism? 292, 6050
9. What is ancestor worship? How did it originate? What peoples worship their ancestors? 274, 6051
10. What is animal worship? How are animal worship and ancestor worship alike? How are they different? 274, 292, 7244-7246
11. What is a *totem*? 7222-7223
12. Describe the religion of the American Indian. 3403-3404, 6925

13. Read the story of mythology (4787-4800), and explain the relationship between mythology and religion.

- B. Great Religions of the World:

## References:

- Bible. 723-732  
 Brahma. 916-917  
 Brahmanism. 917  
 Buddhism. 999-1000  
 Christianity. 1412-1413  
 Confucius. 1605-1606  
 India (Religion). 3380-3382  
 Jews. 3672-3676  
 Koran. 3813-3814  
 Lamaism. 3846.  
 Mohammed. 4567-4568  
 The Book of Mormon. 4654  
 Religions of the World. 6051  
 Synagogue. 6984-6985  
 Talmud. 7010  
 Vedas. 7469-7470

1. Who was Mohammed? What people worship him? 4567-4568
2. What is Brahmanism? Who was Brahma? Discuss. 916-917
3. Who was Confucius? What peoples worship him? Discuss Confucianism. 1605-1606
4. Who was Buddha? Discuss Buddhism. 999-1000
5. What is the dominant religion in India? 3382
6. What is Judaism? Describe the Jewish Synagogue. 3672-3676, 6984-6985
7. Study the tables which give the distribution of followers of the great religions of the world. Were you surprised in any way? Explain. Which religion has the largest number of followers? Which has the next largest? 6051
8. Compare the following four books: Bible, 723-732; Koran, 3813-3814; Book of Mormon, 4654; and Talmud, 7010
9. What is the Vedas? 7469-7470
10. What is meant by the expression, "religions coextensive with life"? What great religions are coextensive with life? Which ones are not? Explain. 6050-6051

## C. The Christian Religion:

*References:*

Apostles. 319-320

Apostles' Creed. 320

Bible. 723-732

Bible Society. 732

Christian Era. 1412

Christianity. 1412-1413

Creed. 1739

Decalogue. 1855

Federal Council of Churches of Christ in America. 2389

Greek Church. 2951-2952

America's First Brick Church. 3617

Jesus Christ. 3662-3671

Protestant. 5852

Reformation. 6037-6040

Religious Liberty. 6052-6053

Roman Catholic Church. 6164-6167

1. What is the Christian conception of God? 2850
2. What does the word *Christ* mean? 1412
3. Read the article on JESUS CHRIST. Tell briefly the story of His life and work. 3662-3671
4. What is meant by the word *creed*? What is usually contained in a church creed? 1739
5. What is the Apostles' Creed? What does it contain? 320
6. What is the Decalogue? 1855
7. What does the word *Protestant* mean? 5852
8. What was the Reformation? Who was its leader? What was the direct result of the movement? Tell briefly the story of the Reformation. 6037-6040
9. What is the Roman Catholic Church? 6164-6167
10. What is the Greek Orthodox Church? 2951-2952
11. Into what three great branches or factions are the believers in Christianity divided? 2951, 6037, 6164
12. Define *denomination*, *sect*. What is the difference?
13. If you are a member or are interested in a particular religious denomination or sect, read about it. The various denominations and sects are listed under *Related Subjects* for this unit.
14. How many copies of the Bible and of the New Testament are distributed each year? 724
15. What is the American Bible Society? When was it founded? What is its aim? How many copies of the Bible has it distributed? About how many copies does it distribute annually? 732
16. What do B.C. and A.D. mean? 3666
17. What is meant by "religious liberty"? Does the Constitution of the United

States provide for religious liberty? Is there complete religious liberty in the United States? 6052-6053

18. What is the Federal Council of Churches of Christ in America? 2389

## D. What the Church Does for the Community:

*References:*

Charity. 1311-1312

Sisters of Charity. 1312

Knights of Columbus. 3805-3807

The Salvation Army. 6350

Sunday Schools. 6926

Volunteers of America. 7568

Young Men's Christian Association. 7952-7954

Young Women's Christian Association. 7954-7955

1. How does the Church help the community? Would you like to live in a community in which there are no churches? Why?
2. Where did relief work of an organized character have its beginning? 1311
3. In what ways has religion promoted architecture, literature, art, and music? See list of religious pictures at the end of this unit. See also the first project under *Supplementary Enterprises*.
4. How has the Church aided education?
5. Do people who do not belong to a church derive benefits from the presence of churches in the community? Explain.
6. What is your own church doing to promote the social welfare of your community?
7. Who began the Sunday-School movement? When? In what country? 6926
8. What was the first Sunday School called? What was its purpose? What is the purpose of Sunday Schools to-day? 6926
9. What is the purpose of the Young Men's Christian Association? Where was it founded? When? By whom? 7952-7953
10. How large is the membership of the Y.M.C.A.? How wide-spread are its activities? 7953-7954
11. What is the Y.W.C.A.? Tell about its origin. When did it begin its work in the United States? What was its specific purpose? 7954-7955
12. Describe the origin, purpose, and activities of the Knights of Columbus. 3805-3807
13. How many churches are there in New York City? 4980. In Chicago? 1360

**Supplementary Enterprises**

1. Make a study of church architecture. The following references will prove helpful: 362-366, 1113, 1243-1246, 1488, 4380-4382, 4496-4497, 4674, 5093-5095, 6208, 6271, 6321, 6325-6327, 6984-6985, 6993-6994, 7092, 7715-7716

2. Some Great Religions of the World: Brahmanism, 916-917; Buddhism, 999-1000; Confucianism, 1605-1606; Mohammedanism, 4567-4571.
3. The Mormons. 4653-4656
4. Madonna and Her Babe as Subjects for Art. 4205-4208
5. Superstition as an Element in Early Religion. 6931-6938
6. Religion in India. 3380-3382
7. Mythology and Religion. 4787-4800
8. California's Old Missions. 1092-1094
9. Missions and Missionaries. 4533-4534
  - Saint Augustine. 502
  - Saint Boniface. 837
  - Jonathan Edwards. 2134-2135
  - John Eliot. 2209
  - Wilfred T. Grenfell. 2962-2963
  - Reginald Heber. 3120-3121
  - Louis Hennepin. 3141
  - David Livingstone. 4061-4062
  - Jacques Marquette. 4298-4299
  - Saint Patrick. 5416-5417
  - Saint Paul. 5419-5421
  - Marcus Whitman. 7752-7753
  - Francisco de Xavier. 7915
10. Some Great Religious Leaders:
  - John Calvin, 1100-1101
  - Desiderius Erasmus. 2284
  - John Huss. 3298
  - John Knox. 3809-3810
  - Martin Luther. 4158-4159
  - John Wycliffe. 7902-7903
  - Ulrich Zwingli. 7990
6. Colonial Religion. 1549-1550
7. Congregational Church. 1606
8. Fanny Crosby. 1755-1756
9. Disciples of Christ. 1956-1957
10. Episcopal Church. 2281
11. Eucharist. 2313
12. Gentiles. 2719-2720
13. The Gospels. 2877-2878
14. Jerusalem. 3658-3661
15. Jesuits, or Society of Jesus. 3661-3662
16. Latter Day Saints. 3889
17. Lord's Prayer. 4109-4110
18. Lutherans. 4158-4160
19. Methodists. 4422-4423
20. Moses. 4670-4674
21. Presbyterian Church. 5799-5801
22. Quakers, or Society of Friends. 5901-5902
23. Reformed Church. 6041
24. Synagogue. 6084-6085
25. Tabernacle. 6993-6994
26. Unitarians. 7360-7361
27. United Brethren in Christ. 7361
28. Universalists. 7414
29. Zoroaster. 7987

#### Religious Pictures

1. The Arrival of the Shepherds, 3663
2. The Good Shepherd, 3663
3. Finding Christ in the Temple, 3664
4. Casting Out the Money Changers, 3664
5. The Entry into Jerusalem, 3665
6. The Last Supper, 3665
7. Christ before Pilate, 3665
8. Christ Blessing Little Children, 3667
9. The Crucifixion, 3669
10. The Transfiguration, 3670
11. The Madonna, 4207
12. The Mount Where Moses Received the Law, 4673
13. The Worship of the Golden Calf, following page 5300.
14. Ruth and Naomi, 6283

#### Related Subjects

1. Adventists. 57-58
2. Baptists. 615-616
3. Church of the Brethren (Dunkers, Dunkards). 941
4. Christian Science. 1413-1414
5. Church of England. 1421

### UNIT FIVE

## Community Life

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. Our Relationship to the Community.
- B. Early Types of Communities.
- C. The Development of a Community.
- D. Rural Communities.
- E. The Modern City Community.
- F. Community Spirit and Neighborliness.

#### References

Amana. 240-241  
 How Ants Live. 298-299  
 Arabs. 341-343  
 Bee (Life in the Hive). 675  
 Borough. 869

Brook Farm. 975  
 City. 1437-1438  
 The Story of Civilization. 1444-1449  
 Clan. 1453-1454  
 Colonial Life in America. 1545-1550  
 Community Interests. 1588-1590  
 Gary, Indiana. 2697-2698  
 Story of the American Indian. 3401-3429  
 Nomad Life. 5039-5040  
 Oneida Community. 5200

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

1. Membership in the family group, the school community, and the church are important, but it is perhaps equally important



- to be a member of the local community. Discuss the significance of membership in a community or neighborhood.
2. What is a community? A neighborhood? What is the difference? Do you belong to a neighborhood or a community? Explain.
  3. What is a clan? What is a tribe? What is the difference? When did the clan system have its beginning? Describe the life of the clan. 1453-1454
  4. Are clans and tribes forms of community life? Explain. How does a clan or tribe differ from a modern community?
  5. Do bees and ants live in communities? Are they similar to human communities? 298-299, 675
  6. What is *nomadism*? What is meant by *pastoral* life? Is there any difference between nomad life and pastoral life? 5039-5040
  7. Describe the community life of the Arabs. 341-343
  8. Did the American Indians live in communities? Explain. 3401-3429
  9. Describe the community life of an early New England town. Of a frontier community. Why did not towns spring up in the South as readily as in New England during the early colonial period? Was a plantation a community? Explain. 1546
  10. Describe briefly the way in which a city community develops. 1437
  11. Why was the present site of Pittsburgh chosen for a fort? 5637
  12. Why is the location of Chicago so favorable to rapid growth? 1362-1363
  13. Why did Gary, Ind., grow so rapidly as a community? Did the city "just naturally grow up"? Tell about the founding and growth of the city. 2697-2698
  14. Make a study of your own community. Find out all you can about it. Why was the site chosen? Give advantages and disadvantages of the location. What are the possibilities and probabilities of growth? Is it an industrial or a residential community? Explain.
  15. What is a borough? A village? A town? A hamlet? A city?
  16. What is the difference between a *rural* and an *urban* community? In which do you live?
  17. List in parallel columns the advantages and disadvantages of rural and urban community life.
  18. What is meant by the "submerged element" of a community? What should a community or neighborhood do for this element? 1588
  19. What is a Neighborhood Hall? Have you one in your neighborhood? If so, describe its work. 1588
  20. What are the chief arguments for using school buildings as community centers? 1588
  21. Is a school building necessarily being used as a community center simply because "something is going on in the building every evening"? Explain. 1588-1589
  22. Describe a Community Forum. What did former President Wilson say about forum programs? 1590
  23. Plan in detail a Community Forum for your community. Plan the details of the organization, draw up programs, and show how the Forum will help the community.
  24. Memorize the eight lines on *Neighborhood* found on page 1590.
  25. Describe the community life of Brook Farm, Oneida Community, and Amana. 975, 5200, 240-241
  26. In what ways are these communities alike? How different?

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. The School in the Rural Community.
2. The Church in the Rural Community.
3. Community Life of the Clan and Tribe.
4. Colonial and Frontier Communities.
5. Problems of Rural Community Life.
6. My Community and How It Came To Be.
7. How I Can Help Improve My Neighborhood.
8. Community Spirit and Neighborliness.
9. Community Life among the Indians.
10. The Community Center.

### Part Two. Community Welfare

#### UNIT SIX

### The Community and Immigration

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. Why America Is Called "The Melting Pot."
- B. Our Changing Policy toward Immigration.
- C. Contributions of Immigrants to American Life.
- D. The Americanization Program.

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Why America Is Called "The Melting Pot."
- References:*  
 Chicago (The People). 1351  
 Emigration and Immigration. 2222-2225  
 Gary, Indiana. 2697-2698

New York City. 4981-4982  
 San Francisco (Foreign-Colonies). 6368-6370  
 The People of the United States (Immigration). 7367-7368  
 Israel Zangwill. 7969

1. Why is America called a "melting pot"?
2. Who wrote the play entitled *The Melting Pot*? Read it. 7969
3. What is an emigrant? An immigrant? 2222
4. What is the difference between the migration of peoples in ancient times and modern emigration? 2223
5. What other country besides the United States has been called a melting pot? 4239
6. How many immigrants came to the United States between 1790 and 1929? 2225
7. What percentage of the population of the United States is of foreign birth or parentage? What percentage of Chicago's population is foreign-born or of foreign parentage? What percentage is foreign-born? What percentage of New York City's population is foreign-born? 2225, 1351
8. How many different nationalities are represented in the population of New York City? 4982
9. What percentage of the male population in Detroit over twenty-one years of age is foreign-born? In Cleveland? In Chicago? In New York City? 2225-2226
10. What percentage of the population of Gary, Ind., is foreign-born? 2697
11. In what year did the greatest number of immigrants come to the United States? How many? 2225
12. What have been some of the causes for emigration and immigration? 2223, 7367
13. To what countries other than the United States has the flow of immigration been great? 2223

#### B. Our Changing Policy toward Immigration.

##### References:

Alien and Sedition Laws. 221  
 Oriental Immigration. 1095-1097  
 Chinese Exclusion. 1402-1403  
 Emigration and Immigration. 2222-2227  
 Know-Nothings. 3808-3809  
 The People of the United States (Immigration). 7367-7368

1. Read carefully the entire article on EMIGRATION AND IMMIGRATION, 2222-2227
2. Has the United States ever officially encouraged immigration? 2225
3. How did immigration into the United States between 1840 and 1890 differ in

character from that between 1890 and 1920? 2223-2226, 7367-7368

4. What is the meaning of the terms *old* and *new* immigration? Explain fully. 2225
5. What was the Alien Act? What did it provide? 221
6. Who were the Know-Nothings? 3808-3809
7. When did the immigration of Chinese to the Pacific States begin to increase rapidly? 1402
8. When was the Chinese Exclusion Act passed? Why? 1095, 1402-1403
9. How is Japanese and Chinese immigration restricted? 1095-1097, 1402
10. What were the first restrictions placed upon immigration? 2226
11. Make a report to the class on the legislation restricting immigration since 1917. 2226-2227
12. Study the maps on page 2224. What conclusions do you draw relative to the immigration laws of 1917 and 1924?
13. What is the present policy of the United States toward immigration? Are you in sympathy with it? Why?
14. After you have read all the references in this section, write a paper of two to five pages in length on the following topic: "What I Think America's Policy Should Be toward Immigration."

#### C. Contributions of Immigrants to American Life.

##### References:

Louis Agassiz. 85  
 Alexander Graham Bell. 703  
 Edward Bok. 816  
 Andrew Carnegie. 1202-1204  
 John Ericsson. 2285-2286  
 Albert Gallatin. 2666  
 Stephen Girard. 2813  
 Alexander Hamilton. 3025-3026  
 James J. Hill. 3179  
 Samuel Gompers. 3868  
 S. S. McClure. 4173-4174  
 A. A. Michelson. 4456-4457  
 John Muir. 4732-4733  
 Joseph Pulitzer. 5876-5877  
 Jacob Riis. 6127  
 Augustus Saint Gaudens. 6306-6307  
 Carl Schurz. 6431  
 Anna Howard Shaw. 6544  
 Charles Proteus Steinmetz. 6823-6824

1. What is meant by the phrase, "Americans by adoption"?
2. From the list of famous naturalized Americans listed above, choose five and write a fifty-word paragraph about each. Emphasize the immigrant's contributions to American life and the interesting things about his life.

3. Prepare an oral report two to five minutes in length on one of the foreign-born citizens listed above. If possible, consult other sources. Emphasize the contribution of the individual to American life.
4. What were the chief contributions of the *old* immigrants? Of the *new* immigrants?
5. Give the contributions to American life of the following nationalities: English, German, Scandinavian, Russian, Irish, and Polish.
6. In what way have immigrants contributed to American literature, art, music, dress, and the culinary art?

#### D. The Americanization Program.

##### References:

Jane Addams. 35-36

Alien. 221

Americanization. 249

Citizen. 1435-1436

Ellis Island. 2214

Ghetto. 2797-2798

Hull House. 3280-3281

Naturalization. 4820-4822

Social Settlement. 6670-6671

1. What is a citizen? Who are citizens of the United States? Are you a citizen? 1435-1436
2. What is an alien? A foreigner? Are they the same? 221
3. What is naturalization? 4820
4. Is the theory of naturalization a modern development? 4820
5. Who may become naturalized citizens of the United States? Who may not? 4820-4821
6. Can a naturalized citizen become President of the United States? 4821
7. How long must an alien live in the United States before he may "declare his intention" of becoming a citizen? How long must he live there before he may get his "final papers"? Where may he apply for his papers? 4820-4821
8. What are some of the rights of naturalized citizens? 4821
9. How does the naturalization policy of some other countries differ from our own? 4822

10. Assume that a foreigner has written you asking for information as to how he may become a naturalized citizen. Write a letter to him, using a fictitious name, giving as complete information as you can concerning the steps he should take. Use proper letter form. Put the letter in an envelope, address it, and hand it to your teacher.
11. What does Americanization mean? Explain fully. 249
12. Explain the difference between naturalization and Americanization. 4820, 249
13. Who are likely to become Americanized more easily and rapidly, children or adults? Why? 249
14. Do immigrants from Southern and Eastern Europe become Americanized as easily as those from Northern and Western Europe? Explain.
15. What is perhaps the greatest factor in Americanization? 249
16. What agencies in the community are effective means of Americanizing immigrants? Discuss fully. 249
17. How can you, as a native American or as a naturalized American, help to Americanize immigrants? What can you do to help foreigners to understand American ideals of citizenship?
18. What is meant by the word "ghetto"? Have you ever visited one? If so, describe it. Read, if you can, *Children of the Ghetto*, by Zangwill. 2797-2798
19. Make a report on Jane Addams and her work. 35-36; 3280-3281

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Queer Customs in My Ancestors' Native Land.
2. Family Heirlooms Brought across the Sea.
3. Ellis Island.
4. Oriental Immigration.
5. Chicago as a "Melting Pot."
6. New York as a "Melting Pot."
7. The Migration of Peoples.
8. Contributions of Immigrants to American Life.
9. Immigration Legislation throughout America's History.
10. The Americanization Program.

## UNIT SEVEN

### The Community and Health

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. Importance of Good Health to the Individual and to the Community.
- B. What the Community Does to Safeguard Health.

- C. Sacrifices and Contributions of Noted Individuals to Public Health.
- D. How the Individual Can Coöperate.

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Importance of Good Health to the Individual and to the Community.

*References:*

Aesculapius. 68-69

Health. 3104

Hygeia. 3312

Hygiene. 3312-3314

1. Memorize the four lines from the English poet, John Gay. 3104
  2. What is health? Who may be said to be a healthy person? Do many people enjoy perfect health? 3104
  3. What did ancient people regard as the symbol of health? 69
  4. What is *hygiene*? How does hygiene differ from the practice of medicine and surgery? Which is the more important? In this connection discuss the proverb, "An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure." 3312
  5. Into what four main branches may hygiene be divided? What is your relation to each? 3312-3314
  6. Someone has said "On every side, the world over, we are confronted by the fact that health, including normal physical development, longevity, and good bodily resistance is being only very inadequately achieved by millions of people." Why do people neglect their health? 3123
  7. According to Professor Fisher of Yale University, what is the annual financial loss caused by preventable diseases? 3104
  8. What importance does Dr. McBride attach to a strong physical body? 3105-3106
  9. Do you pay more for the things you buy because some people in your community are ill? Explain.
  10. Explain and give illustrations to prove this statement: "Public health is public wealth."
  11. What economic advantages are there in living in a healthy community? Explain.
- B. What the Community Does to Safeguard Health.

*References:*

Adulteration of Foodstuffs and Clothing. 54-56

Aqueduct. 335-338

Bill of Health. 739

Board of Health. 808

Chicago Drainage Canal. 1367-1368

Epidemic. 2279

Hygiene. 3312-3314

Pure-Food Laws. 5884

Quarantine. 5903-5904

Sanitary Science. 6374-6375

Sewage and Sewerage. 6511-6514

Vital Statistics. 7548-7549

Waterworks. 7676-7680

1. What is a "bill of health"? Is it a means

of community protection? 739

2. What is meant by *public hygiene*? With what is it primarily concerned? 3313-3314
3. What is an *epidemic*? An *endemic*? A *pandemic*? Name some diseases that are epidemic in character. 2279
4. What is sanitary science? What is its purpose? 6374-6375
5. What is a board of health? What are the duties of a city board of health? Of a state board of health? Is there a national board of health in the United States? 808, 3314
6. Are there any national agencies which deal with problems of public health? If so, name and describe them. 808
7. What is quarantine? What does the word mean? Discuss the different kinds of quarantine. Why should a person who is not ill be willing to submit to quarantine if he has been exposed to disease? 5903
8. What is meant by vital statistics? Is the keeping of such records an important community service? Why? 7548-7549
9. State briefly what is meant by food adulteration. How does the government protect us from impure or adulterated food? List all the ways mentioned in the article on ADULTERATION OF FOODSTUFFS in which food is safeguarded by law. 54-56
10. When is food said to be adulterated? Misbranded? Which is more harmful? Why? 5844
11. What is the purpose of pure-food laws? 5884
12. When did Congress adopt the Federal Food and Drugs Act? When did the act go into effect? Who enforces pure-food laws? 5884
13. Tell about the construction of the Chicago Drainage Canal. Why was it constructed? What did it cost? How long is it? What is one of the most significant facts about it? 1367-1368
14. Why are communities willing to spend millions of dollars in the construction of aqueducts? How does New York City get its water supply? San Francisco? How much has New York City spent on aqueducts and dams merely to provide a pure water supply? 336, 4994, 6371
15. What is the longest aqueduct in the world? How long is it? What did it cost? 336-337
16. How much water does New York City use daily? Chicago? 1360, 4980
17. Rule a sheet of paper into seven columns and head each one with one of the following community responsibilities: (1) supplying pure water, (2) protecting the air we breathe, (3) protecting our food

supply, (4) preventing the spread of contagious diseases, (5) providing healthful working conditions, (6) providing opportunity for exercise, and (7) protecting our clothing and bedding. Then list in each column the things which the community does to provide each of the seven good health factors.

C. Sacrifices and Contributions of Noted Individuals to Public Health.

*References:*

William Crawford Gorgas. 2875  
Sir Wilfred Grenfell. 2962-2963  
Edward Jenner. 3655  
Joseph Lister. 4045  
Louis Pasteur. 5411-5412

1. Who was Gorgas? For what great achievement is he given credit? Tell about his work. 2875, 5332, 4678, 7932-7933
2. What contribution to human welfare was made by Louis Pasteur? 5411
3. Who was Sir Joseph Lister? For what is he famous? 4045
4. Write a paragraph about each of the men listed above. Tell about their significant contributions. Consult, if you can, other sources.

D. How the Individual Can Coöperate.

*References:*

Diet. 1944  
First Aid to the Injured. 2436-2439  
Food. 2508-2513  
Health Habits. 3104-3106  
Personal Hygiene. 3312-3313  
Length of Life. 3978-3980  
Life Extension. 3980-3992  
Nutrition. 5121-5126  
Sleep. 6641

1. What is the first essential to hygienic living? Is this your personal responsibility? Explain. 3312
2. Discuss the four factors of good health—food, clothing, exercise, and personal cleanliness. What control do you have over these factors? 3312-3313
3. Name five essential health habits. Has the community made it possible for you to form these habits? Explain. 3104-3106
4. What are some important factors to be observed concerning our food? 3104-3105
5. What effect does insufficient sleep have upon our bodies? How much sleep does an adult need? Children from six to ten years? Older children? 3105, 6641
6. Is there any relation between mental habits and health habits? Explain. 3105
7. Does becoming angry or hating someone affect your health? 3105

8. If your health is impaired through anger, fear, worry, grief, or hatred, who is at fault, you or the community? Explain.
9. Does one derive from exercise any benefits other than physical? 3105
10. Read and study carefully the fifteen simple rules for hygienic living found on pages 3982-3991. How many are you following now? Which ones have you neglected? Can you neglect any of them without being a poor citizen? Explain. Read carefully the *Summary* on pages 3991-3992
11. Read the articles on NUTRITION (5121-5126), Food (2508-2513), and DIET (1944)
12. Is flying dust a disease carrier? Explain. How may you as an individual coöperate in reducing the amount of dust in the air? 2059-2060
13. Tell in class the story of Luigi Cornaro's life. 3980
14. What is the meaning of *longevity*? How long do some trees live? How many years may a whale be expected to live? An eagle? A pike? A horse? An elephant? A man? Why is the span of life of man so short as compared with some animals? Do you think the span of life of man will ever reach 200 years? Give reasons for your answer. 3978-3980
15. What countries have a high death rate? Which ones have a low rate? What accounts for the difference? 7549

**Supplementary Enterprises**

1. The Story of Meat Packing with Special Emphasis upon Health Factors. 4360-4368
2. The Story of Medicine and Drugs. 4374-4377
3. The Pasteurization of Milk and Its Important Relation to Health. 4481-4484, 5411, 5412
4. The Mosquito and Its Relation to Health. 4674-4679, 3463, 5332, 2279, 4236-4237, 3314
5. Supplying a City with Pure Water. 335-338, 1360-1362, 2419, 3305-3306, 4439, 6065, 7676-7680
6. Medical Inspection in Schools. 6425
7. The Story of Baths and Bathing. 648-651
8. The Fly, the Deadly Enemy of Man. 2498-2503, 3463
9. Local and International Quarantine. 5903-5904
10. The Story of the Red Cross. 6025-6031, 7881
11. Sewage and Garbage Disposal in Large Cities. 6511-6514
12. The Smoke Nuisance and Health. 6654
13. Some Well-Known Life Savers: Edward

- Jenner, 3655; Joseph Lister, 4045; William Crawford Gorgas, 2875; Sir Wilfred Grenfell, 2962-2963; Louis Pasteur, 5411-5412
14. Great Plagues and Epidemics in History. 5641, 2279
  15. Private Health Agencies Which Promote Health in My Community
  16. How My Community Safeguards My Health
  17. How Yellow Fever Was Conquered. 7932-7933, 2875, 5332, 4674, 4679

## UNIT EIGHT

## The Community and Protection

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Why We Need Protection.
- B. Losses from Fire, Accidents, Crime, Natural Disasters, and Fraud.
- C. What the Community Does to Protect Life and Property.
- D. What the Individual Can Do.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Why We Need Protection.

## References:

Accident Prevention. 15-16

Counterfeiting. 1720-1721

Crime. 1745-1746

Fraud. 2600

1. What is one of the strongest human instincts? 15
2. List four dangers to life in primitive times.
3. List four dangers to life and property which the early colonists in America had to face.
4. List six dangers to life and property to-day which the colonists never had to face.
5. Is the problem of protection of life and property an increasingly serious one? Explain.
6. Do animals protect their young? If so, give examples.
7. What is crime? 1745
8. What is meant by criminal intent? 1746
9. What is meant by the word *fraud*? What is the difference between *actual* and *constructive* fraud? 2600
10. What does *counterfeiting* mean? 1720
11. Is it a crime to paint on a billboard an enlarged likeness of any coin or paper money? 1720
12. What is the penalty for counterfeiting or passing counterfeit money? 1721
13. Is counterfeiting an offense against the state or against the nation? 1721
14. Make a list of all the dangers to life and property which you know.
- B. Losses from Fire, Accidents, Crime, Natural Disasters, and Fraud.

## References:

Accident Prevention. 15-16

Boll Weevil. 823-825

Corn Borer. 1691-1692

Earthquake. 2084-2086

Fire Losses. 2427-2428

Floods. 2471-2472, 4547-4548

Destroyers of the Forests. 2534-2536

Insects as Enemies of Man. 3462-3463

Lightning. 4001-4004

Volcanoes. 7560-7564

Waterspout. 7674-7675

1. What is the value of property destroyed annually by fire? 2426-2428
2. Compare the fire losses in the United States with those in Europe. 2428
3. Why are the losses greater in the United States? 2428
4. What are the annual losses from forest fires? 2534
5. About how many people are killed annually in automobile accidents? 15
6. What are the losses from the ravages of forest insects? 2536
7. What is the estimated money loss caused every year by insects? What would be the total for the United States? What are some of the most harmful insects? Where do they come from? Why are foreign insects sometimes relatively harmless in their native lands but very devastating in America? 3462-3463
8. What is a waterspout? Does it cause damage to life and property? 7674-7675
9. What was the greatest flood in the history of the United States? What losses were suffered? 2471
10. To what extent do volcanoes and earthquakes cause loss of life and property? 2084-2086, 7560-7564

- C. What the Community Does to Protect Life and Property.

## References:

Accident Prevention. 15-16

The War in the Air. 127-129

The Story of the Army. 412-417

Fire Department. 2429-2433

Marine Corps. 4292-4293

National Safety Council. 4819

Navy. 4842-4851

Police. 5701-5702

Quarantine of Plants and Animals. 5904

Secret Service. 6477-6478

Weather Bureau. 7686-7692

1. What is the National Safety Council? What is its object? 4819
2. When did the Secret Service come into existence in the United States? 6477
3. What are the duties of the Secret Service? 6478
4. What were some activities of the United States Secret Service during the World War? 6478
5. Read about the police (5701-5702) and answer the following questions:
  - a. What popular name is usually given to the London police?
  - b. How is the police force organized in the United States?
  - c. What is the difference in the organization of the police force in European countries and in the United States?
  - d. What is the title of the executive head of the police department of your city?
  - e. What are the duties of the police? How do the duties now differ from those in early American history?
  - f. How many police are there in Chicago? In New York City? 1351, 4980
  - g. Why has it been necessary to organize state police?
  - h. Which state was one of the first to maintain a state police force?
6. Read the article on the Fire Department (2429-2433) and answer the following questions:
  - a. What were the fire departments called in the early days in America? Describe such a force.
  - b. When was the first successful steam fire engine used? In what city?
  - c. What are automatic sprinklers?
  - d. Does the law require factories and public buildings to be provided with adequate fire escapes?
  - e. How is a fire alarm given?
  - f. How many firemen are there in New York City? 4980
7. What do the Federal and state governments do to check losses from insects? 3463, 5904
8. How much did Congress appropriate for a campaign against the corn borer? 1691
9. What are the public schools doing to reduce the number of accidents? 15-16
10. What provision does the national government make for protecting life and property in the event of war? 127-129, 412-417, 4292-4293, 4842-4851

#### D. What the Individual Can Do.

##### References:

Fire Losses. 2426-2428  
 Common Precautions against Fire. 2427  
 How to Avoid Being Struck by Lightning. 4003

1. What can you as an individual do to prevent fire losses? 2428
2. From the list of the most important sources of destructive fires on page 2428, what do you conclude as to the ability of the individual to reduce fire losses?
3. What percentage of fires is due to preventable causes? What are your conclusions concerning the individual's responsibility? 2428
4. What should one do to protect himself against lightning? Study the pictures on page 4003.
5. Do you engage in any of the activities listed on page 16 which the National Safety Council has designated as careless actions? If so, which ones?
6. Make a list of all the things which you as an individual can do to prevent losses from fire and accidents.

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. The Story of the Army. 412-417, 1621-1622, 4475-4480, 6597-6601, 7239-7240, 7567-7568
2. The Navy. 4835-4839, 4842-4852
3. The Coast Guard. 1509-1514
4. The Secret Service. 6477-6478
5. The Royal Canadian Mounted Police. 6219-6221
6. Finger-Print Identification. 720, 2420-2421
7. Protection against Natural Disasters: Floods, 2471-2472, 4547-4548; Lightning, 4001-4004; Lighthouse, 3998-4001; Tornadoes, 7212-7213; The Corn Borer, 1691-1692; The Boll Weevil, 823-825; Typhoon, 7341; Earthquake, 2084-2086, 3628, 3637; Insects as Enemies of Man, 3462-3463; Volcanoes, 7560-7564.
8. Crime and Criminology. 1745-1748
9. The Trade-Mark as a Means of Protection. 7233-7235
10. The Four-Footed Police. 5702
11. Carrier Pigeons and Protection. 1216-1217
12. Weights and Measures. 7702
13. Dangers That Most Often Threaten the Safety of Life and Property.
14. The History of Police Organization in America.
15. Fire Protection in Colonial America.
16. Rural Police Protection.

## UNIT NINE

## The Community and Recreation

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Why We Need Play and More Play Facilities.
- B. The Value of Play and Recreation.
- C. What the Community Does to Provide Play and Recreation Facilities.
- D. Play and Recreation Facilities Provided by Private and Semi-Public Agencies.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Why We Need Play and More Play Facilities.

## References:

Amusements. 269

Child Labor. 1375-1376

Eight-Hour Day. 2156-2157

The Story of Play. 5655-5657

1. What does the word *play* mean? In what different ways is the word used? 5655-5656
2. Define the following words: Recreation, amusement, fun, work, labor, play, enjoyment, sport. Consult a dictionary.
3. Is play instinctive? 5656
4. Is play found in all climates and countries?
5. Why do children play? 5656
6. Why do adults play? 5656
7. What is the difference between the play of children and the play of adults? 5656
8. Why do we all need play? 269
9. State and explain the four theories about play given on page 5656.
10. Do all animals play? Do insects play? Describe the play of some animal.
11. Is factory labor more tiresome than the work of a craftsman? Explain.
12. Is change of work in itself recreation? Explain.
13. In what way does the eight-hour day and the five-day week create a demand for more play facilities?
14. Can you see any way in which child-labor laws have affected the problem of providing adequate facilities for recreation? Explain.
15. In general, vacation periods for employees are longer now than ever before. In what way does this affect the community's problem of providing opportunities for play?
16. What other changes in modern life create an increasingly greater demand for play and recreation facilities?

- B. The Value of Play and Recreation.

## References:

The Story of Athletics. 484-487

The Story of Games and Play. 2674-2679

Educational Value of Moving Pictures. 4722-4724

The Story of Play. 5655-5657

Stamp-Collecting. 5770-5771

1. Has play always been looked upon with favor? Explain. 2674
2. What was the attitude toward play among the early Greeks? What games did they play? 2679
3. What are some values of play? 2674, 5656
4. What is the educational value of moving pictures? 4722
5. What are the benefits of athletics? 484-486
6. What are the advantages and disadvantages of high-school athletics? 485-486
7. What value could come to a selfish boy from playing such competitive team games as baseball, football, or basketball?
8. What are some educational values to be derived from the hobby of stamp collecting? Of any good hobby? 5770
9. Debate: *Resolved*, That competitive athletic games, such as baseball, football, and tennis, are more valuable to the individual than competitive mental games, such as chess and checkers.
10. What are some characteristics of good games? 2675
11. Write a paper of two to five pages on the following subject: "The Physical, Educational, and Social Value of Play."

- C. What the Community Does to Provide Play and Recreation Facilities.

## References:

Boston (Parks). 872-873

Chicago (Playgrounds and Beaches). 1360

Chicago (The Park System). 1359-1360

Colonial Life in America (Their Amusements). 1549

Indians (Amusements). 3406

New York City (Parks). 4986

The Story of National Parks. 5383-5391

The Story of Play. 5655-5657

1. What were the amusements of the New England colonists? 1549
2. How did the American Indian spend his leisure time? 3406
3. Who should assume responsibility for providing play facilities for children? Discuss. 5657
4. What is regarded as the national game of Canada? Of the United States? Of England? 484, 3835



5. What is the distinction between "amateur" and "professional" athletics? 484
6. What is the total area in acres of the Chicago parks? 1359
7. What provision has Chicago made for play and recreation? 1360, 2868
8. How many parks are there in New York City? 4980
9. Which city has the oldest public park in America? What is the name of the park? 872
10. Why have the national parks been called "the great summer playgrounds" of the country? Is it the essential purpose of the national government to maintain national parks as places for recreation? 5383
11. What is your community doing to provide play and recreation facilities for both young and old?
12. Should a community provide a year-round recreation program? Why?
13. Plan a year-round recreation program for your community.

**D. Play and Recreation Facilities Provided by Private and Semi-Public Agencies.**

*References:*

The Story of Boy Scouts. 909-914  
 Camp Fire Girls. 1114-1115  
 The Story of Girl Scouts. 2814-2817  
 Hull House. 3280-3281  
 Social Settlement. 6670-6671  
 Young Men's Christian Association. 7952-7954  
 Young Women's Christian Association. 7954-7955

1. What is the aim of the Girl Scouts' organization? 2814
2. Who may join the Girl Scouts? 2814
3. When were the Girl Scouts organized? 2814
4. What is the form of organization of the Girl Scouts? 2814
5. What are the qualities which the Girl Scout

organization aims to develop in girls? 2817

6. Compare the Camp Fire Girls and the Girl Scouts from the following points of view: Aim and purpose, history, size of organization, qualifications for membership, ideals, and value to the girl. 1114-1115, 2814-2817
7. Compare the Scout Law for boys (913) with the Scout Law for girls (2817). Are they exactly alike? How do they differ?
8. What recreation facilities are provided at Hull House? For whom? Is Hull House a private or public institution? Explain.
9. What is a social settlement? What recreational activities are usually carried on there?
10. Does your church provide opportunities for recreation? If so, describe them.
11. Are there any athletic clubs in your community? Any private golf courses?
12. Make a list of all the facilities for recreation in your community which are provided by private or semi-public agencies.

**Supplementary Enterprises**

1. The Olympian Games. 5196-5197
2. The Story of the Girl Scouts. 2814-2817
3. The Story of the Boy Scouts. 909-914
4. The Camp Fire Girls. 1114-1115
5. The Story of Moving Pictures. 4703-4729
6. The Story of Golf. 2864-2868
7. The History of Tennis. 7103-7105
8. The Story of Athletics. 484-487
9. The Story of Baseball. 633-639
10. The History of Basketball. 639-641
11. The Circus as a Form of Amusement. 1434-1435
12. The Story of Football. 2522-2528
13. Stamp Collecting as a Hobby. 5770-5771
14. Facilities for Recreation in My Community.
15. An Ideal Year-Round Recreation Program.
16. The Play of Animals.
17. Play in Colonial Times.
18. Play among Primitive Peoples.

**UNIT TEN**

**Civic Beauty and City Planning**

**Elements of the Unit**

- A. The Appeal of Beauty.
- B. City Planning in Ancient Times.
- C. City Planning in Europe.
- D. Well-Planned Cities in America.
- E. Regional and Larger Community Planning.

**References**

Outdoor Advertising. 61-62  
 Athens. 480-483  
 Canberra, Australia. 517, 1163

Babylon. 560  
 The Story of Chicago. 1350-1366  
 City Planning. 1440-1441  
 Gary, Indiana. 2697-2698  
 Interior Decoration (first paragraph). 3478-3479  
 Paris. 5372-5380  
 Philadelphia. 5540-5541  
 Pittsburgh. 5634-5638  
 Rome. 6170-6181  
 The Story of Washington, D. C. 7636-7644

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

1. What is *beauty*? What is *civic* beauty?
2. Is the love of beauty instinctive? Give reasons for your answer. 3479
3. Did prehistoric man seek beauty and adornment? How do we know? 3478-3479
4. What is the purpose of city planning? 1440
5. Were the cities of Rome, Athens, and Babylon built according to a plan? 6170-6181, 480-483, 560
6. Is Paris a "planned" city? 5372-5380
7. What city in the Orient has recently begun to build according to a plan? 1440
8. Who made the plan for our national capital? 1440, 7636
9. What other men helped to plan the city of Washington? 1440; 7636
10. Who made the plan for Australia's new capital? Why was Canberra sometimes called the "bush capital"? In what ways are Canberra and Washington, D. C., alike? 517, 1164, 1440
11. What is the National Capital Park and Planning Commission? 7636
12. Read *The Story of Chicago* (1350-1366), and list the things which Chicago has done to make the city beautiful.
13. Tell about the founding and growth of Gary, Ind. Was it a planned city? 2697-2698
14. Describe the city plans of Cleveland, Ohio. 1475-1476
15. Who was one of the original city-planners of Philadelphia? Is Philadelphia a well-planned city? 5540-5541
16. Tell about the efforts to make Pittsburgh a beautiful city. 5635-5636
17. Is your city built according to a plan? If so, describe it.
18. What is meant by city zoning? 1440
19. What are some provisions of zoning ordinances? 1440
20. What is a "garden city"? Describe, in detail, a model garden city. Are there any garden cities now in existence? 1440-1441
21. How may beauty and utility be combined? For illustrations, see pages 153, 367, 1355, 1357. Are beauty and utility necessarily antagonistic? Explain.
22. Turn to pages 335, 1350, 1359, 7640, 7641 for illustrations of civic beauty.
23. What objections are there to billboard advertising? What is being done to offset them? 61
24. Is there any relation between economic prosperity and desire for beauty? Explain.
25. How does beauty add to the joy of living?

## Supplementary Enterprises

1. Our Heritage of Beauty.
2. The Story of Architecture. 359-368
3. The Story of Athens. 480-483
4. Great City Planners and Landscape Architects: Daniel Hudson Burnham, 1033; Frederick Law Olmsted, 5194
5. Our National Capital, A Planned City. 7636-7644
6. A Spot of Beauty—The Singing Tower. 6619-6621
7. The Story of National Parks. 5383-5391
8. The Appeal of Beauty.
9. What I Can Do To Make My Community Beautiful.
10. The Billboard Nuisance.
11. City Planning in Ancient Times.
12. City Planning in Europe.

## UNIT ELEVEN

## The Care and Training of the Handicapped

## Elements of the Unit

- A. The Blind and the Deaf.
- B. The Mentally Handicapped.
- C. Crime and the Criminal.
- D. Social Welfare Work.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. The Blind and the Deaf.

## References:

- Alexander Graham Bell. 703  
 Education for the Blind. 792-794  
 Laura Dewey Bridgman. 955  
 The Education of Deaf-Mutes. 1847-1849  
 Helen Adams Keller. 3751  
 Special-Type Schools and Classes. 6424-6425  
 Sign Language. 6601

1. Were there any attempts to educate the blind a century and a half ago? Discuss. 792
2. When was the first school for blind youth opened? By whom? In what country? 792
3. What is the essential difference between the schools for blind in Europe and in America? 792
4. Along what three lines has education for the blind been developed? 792-793
5. What three cities have been pioneers in providing schools for the blind? 793
6. What is a recent development in the education of blind adults? 793
7. What is *braille*? Study the braille alphabet on page 791. What is one of the chief advantages of the braille system? 793

8. Is it possible for a blind person to learn to write? Explain. 793
9. Are there any magazines published in braille? 794
10. How is geography taught to the blind? 793
11. How is natural history taught to blind children? 793
12. Into what occupations do blind children who have had schooling usually go? 792-793
13. Is the number of pupils in schools for the blind increasing? Explain. 794
14. Who was Laura Dewey Bridgman? Tell of her achievements. 955
15. Who is Helen Keller? Tell of some of her achievements. 3751
16. What are deaf-mutes? 1846
17. What treatment did deaf-mutes receive among the Greeks and Romans and in France in early history? 1847
18. Who was probably the first person to have compassion on deaf-mutes? 1847
19. Who was probably the first person to attempt education for the deaf? When? 1847
20. Did the Greeks and Romans recognize that deaf-mutes were normal in intelligence? 1847
21. When was the first school for deaf-mutes established? Where? Who founded it? 1847
22. What state led the way for the instruction of the deaf? In what year? 1847
23. How generally is education for deaf-mutes provided to-day? 1847-1848
24. Is lip-reading for the deaf being carried on successfully? 1848
25. What two general methods of instruction are used in carrying on education for the deaf and dumb? Describe them. 1848-1849
26. What famous deaf-mute has strikingly shown what can be accomplished through education for deaf-mutes? 3751
27. What great American inventor and scientist was interested and active in teaching deaf-mutes to talk? 703

#### B. The Mentally Handicapped.

##### References:

Asylum. 478  
 Feeble-Minded. 2391  
 Idiot. 3345  
 Insanity. 3458  
 Mental Handicaps. 4397-4399  
 Special-Type Schools and Classes. 6424-6425

1. How were mental defectives treated in former times?
2. Why must special attention be given to school children who are slightly deficient mentally? 4397

3. Why do children frequently fail in some school subjects and do very well in others? 4397
4. If a child has difficulty in a single subject, should he be classed as mentally deficient? Explain. 4397
5. Do pupils show mental handicaps because of physical disorders? Explain. 4398
6. What kind of education is best for the slow children? Explain this statement: "A dull lawyer might make a very superior carpenter, or a slow teacher a very excellent mechanic." 4398
7. From a legal point of view, who may be referred to as the insane? 3458
8. Is *insanity* a medical term or a legal concept? 3458
9. Into what three classes are feeble-minded persons usually divided? 2391
10. What kind of education can be given to the majority of feeble-minded pupils? 2391
11. What is meant by the word *idiot*? Can idiots profit from education? Are they accountable for their acts? Why? 3345
12. Distinguish between the following terms: Feeble-minded, moron, imbecile, idiot, insane.
13. Is it important that the community care for the mentally handicapped? Why?

#### C. Crime and the Criminal.

##### References:

Avenger of Blood. 800  
 Capital Punishment. 1185-1186  
 Cities of Refuge. 1435  
 Convict Labor. 1647  
 Crime. 1745-1746  
 Criminology. 1747-1748  
 Felony. 2393  
 Juvenile Court. 3725-3726  
 Juvenile Delinquency. 3726-3728  
 Cesare Lombroso. 4091  
 Manslaughter. 4269  
 Misdemeanor. 4533  
 Morals Court. 4648  
 Parole. 5398  
 Pillory. 5616  
 The Story of Prisons. 5824-5827  
 Reform Schools. 6041  
 Stocks. 6840  
 Vendetta. 7476  
 Whipping Post. 7741, 1745

1. What is crime? What is meant by criminal intent? 1745-1746
2. May an act which is harmless in itself be a crime? Explain.
3. May an act which is not a crime to-day be a crime to-morrow? Is crime the same in all countries? Explain.
4. Define the following terms: Felony, misdemeanor, manslaughter. 1746, 2993, 4533, 4269

5. What is the difference between civil law and criminal law? 1746
6. What is criminology? Give a full definition. 1747
7. What is regarded as "the mother of crime"? Explain. What are some other causes of crime? 1747
8. What is the meaning of the phrase *avenger of blood*? Who assumed responsibility for punishing criminals in primitive societies? 800
9. What were the "cities of refuge"? 1435
10. What is meant by vendetta? 7476
11. Describe the instruments for punishment known as whipping post, pillory, and stocks. 1745, 5616, 6840, 7741
12. Describe the prisons of a few centuries ago. If possible, read Byron's *Prisoner of Chillon*. 1382, 5824
13. What was the old attitude toward criminals? Contrast that with the attitude of to-day. 1748, 5824-5826
14. What is the difference between a prison and a jail? 5824
15. Describe briefly the history of prison reform. 5826-5827
16. Who has direct charge of a state prison? 5824
17. Is the work of the prison chaplain important? Explain. 5825
18. What is the tendency of present-day legislation with respect to the treatment of criminals? 1746
19. Who was Lombroso? For what is he noted? 4091
20. What does parole (in criminal law) mean? What is an indeterminate sentence? 5398, 3377
21. What is meant by convict labor? Describe two types of convict labor. 1647
22. What is capital punishment? 1185
23. What is a morals court? 4648
24. What is juvenile delinquency? Is it a new problem? 3726
25. Is a delinquent child a criminal? Up to what age may children be classed as delinquents? 3726
26. Is wrongdoing instinctive in children? Why do some of them violate the law? 3725
27. What is society's responsibility when a child violates the law? 3725
28. What are some of the causes of juvenile delinquency? What is the modern attitude toward juvenile delinquents? Is juvenile delinquency increasing? Why? 3726-3727
29. What is a juvenile court? When was it originated? What country established the first juvenile court? When was the first one established in the United States? In what city? 3725-3726
30. Is the juvenile court an American contri-

- bution to social progress? What city is noted for its juvenile court? Who is a famous juvenile court judge? 3726
31. What is a reform school? Why are they sometimes called industrial schools? Are they usually located in the city? Why? 6041
32. What efforts are being made in many communities toward the treatment and prevention of juvenile delinquency? 3727-3728

#### D. Social Welfare Work.

##### References:

Jane Addams. 35-36  
 Charity. 1311-1312  
 Sisters of Charity. 1312  
 Hull House. 3280  
 Social Settlement. 6670-6671  
 Applied Sociology. 6671-6673

1. Memorize the four lines from the poet Pope on *Charity*. 1311
2. Why have the expressions *welfare* and *social work* been substituted, in many instances, for *charity* and *relief*? 1311
3. When did relief work of an organized character begin? 1311
4. What is meant by regulated charity? 1311
5. One of the first welfare societies was started in London in 1869. Its main object was "cure, as distinguished from the mere alleviation of distress." Explain that statement.
6. Describe the way in which modern charitable organizations do their work. 1311, 6672-6673
7. Why is social work becoming recognized as a profession? 1311-1312
8. The National Conference of Charities and Correction in the United States has changed its title to the Conference of Social Work. Is this change significant? Explain. 6672-6673
9. What is a social settlement? What activities does it carry on? 6670
10. When was the first social settlement founded? Where? By whom? What is it called? 6670
11. Who is Jane Addams? Tell about her work. 35-36
12. What is Hull House? Describe its work. 3280

##### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Primitive Methods Employed in Punishing Criminals. 800, 6840, 7476, 7741, 1745, 5824-5827
2. The Education of Deaf-Mutes. 1837-1839
3. Modern Methods of Educating the Blind. 703, 792-794
4. The Care and Training of the Crippled

- and the Disabled.
5. Social Welfare Work. 35-36, 1311-1312, 3280, 6670-6673
  6. Juvenile Delinquency and Juvenile Courts. 3725-3728
  7. The Handicaps and Achievements of Helen Keller. 3751

8. Report of a Visit to Schools for Crippled Children.
9. The Care and Training of the Mentally Handicapped. 6424-6425
10. How I Can Aid the Handicapped Members of My Community.
11. Jane Addams and Hull House. 35-36, 3280

### Part Three. Our American Political Institutions

#### UNIT TWELVE

#### How We Govern Ourselves

##### Elements of the Unit

- A. Why We Need Government.
- B. Different Forms of Government.
- C. Our Local Governments.
- D. Our State Government.
- E. Our National Government.

##### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Why We Need Government.

##### References:

- The Story of Civil Government. 1442-1443  
 Government. 2882  
 Mayflower Compact. 5665-5666

1. What is meant by the word *government*? 2882
2. Why do we have government?
3. What is the general purpose of all government? 2882
4. What does government do for people? 2882
5. What was the Mayflower Compact? 5665-5666
6. Why did the Pilgrims draw up the Mayflower Compact? 5666
7. Does the government assume control of any matters directly relating to the welfare of individuals which might be trusted to private enterprise? If so, name some. 2882
8. What is meant by civil government? 1442
9. What is meant by centralized government? Decentralized government? Discuss advantages and disadvantages of each form. 1442-1443
10. What is civics? 1443
11. Discuss the following sentence: "The duties of a citizen toward the government are as much a part of civics as the duties of the government toward the individual." 1443
12. Is government more necessary now than in primitive times? Did the American colonists need government as much as we do? Explain.
13. Will the need for government be greater fifty years hence than at present? Give reasons for your answer.

- B. Different Forms of Government.

##### References:

- Aristocracy. 381  
 Democracy. 1888  
 George Junior Republic. 2753-2754  
 Government. 2882-2883  
 Tribal Government. 3674  
 Principality (Liechtenstein). 3977  
 Monarchy. 4579  
 Oligarchy. 5192  
 Republic. 6062-6063  
 Soviet. 6724  
 Theocracy. 7141  
 Vatican City. 7468, 5343

1. What are the views of socialists concerning government? Of anarchists? 2882
2. What is nihilism? 2882
3. Define and distinguish between autocratic and constitutional governments. Which form do we have? 2882
4. List the countries, if any, which have autocratic governments. 2882-2883
5. What is an aristocracy? What does the term literally mean? Is our own government an aristocracy? 381
6. What is an oligarchy? Is there anything to be said in favor of oligarchical rule? If so, what? 5192
7. Define monarchy. Upon what theory is this form of government based? 4579
8. What is a theocracy? 7141
9. What is meant by *popular* government? 2882-2883
10. Name the ancient country which is usually cited as the most striking example of popular government. 2883
11. Define democracy. What is the difference between a pure democracy and a representative democracy? Name examples of each. 1888
12. What form of government does England in reality have? 2883
13. What is a republic? Describe how such a form of government works. 6062
14. Name nine countries which have a republican form of government. 2883

15. What is the most conspicuous example in the world of a successful republic? 6063
16. What is the largest republic in the world? The smallest? 6063
17. Distinguish between a democracy and a republic. Which form do we have?
18. Describe the present form of government in Italy. 2883

C. Our Local Governments: Town, Village, City, Township, and County.

*References:*

Alderman. 197  
 Charter. 1319  
 City. 1437-1439  
 City Manager. 1439  
 Commission Form of Government. 1584-1585  
 Common Council. 1586  
 Constable. 1624  
 County. 1721  
 Justice of the Peace. 3723  
 Mayor. 4356  
 Municipal Government. 4742-4743  
 Municipal Ownership. 4743-4744  
 Town Meeting. 7228-7229

1. Why do we have local governments? 4742
2. What is meant by municipal government? What is its function? 4742-4743
3. Name five units of local government.
4. Describe the organization of village government. 4743
5. What is a town meeting? What is a township? Describe a town meeting. 7228
6. What is a justice of the peace? What are his duties? How does he obtain office? 3723
7. What is a county? What are its officers, and how are they elected? 1721
8. What is one of the largest villages in the United States? What is its population? 1437
9. What makes a city a city? How many people does it take to make a city? Why are villages eager to incorporate as cities? 1437
10. In what way is the city government different from village government? 4743, 1586
11. What is a charter? Who authorizes it? What does it contain? 4742, 1319
12. Name some public activities with which the city government is concerned. 4743
13. What are some types of city government? 4743
14. What is meant by municipal home rule? 4743
15. What is a city manager? 1439
16. Describe the city-manager plan of government. How extensive is this plan in use to-day? What are some possible advantages of this form of government? 1439, 4743

17. Describe the commission form of government. What was the first city to adopt this form? Why did it do so? How many men usually compose the commission? What are some advantages of the system? Is it a democratic form of local government? Explain. How many cities now use the commission form of government? 1584-1585
18. What is a mayor? How does he obtain office? What are his duties and powers? What salary does he usually receive? Do cities which have adopted the commission form of government or the city-manager plan have a mayor? 4356
19. What is meant by the council-mayor plan of city government? 4743
20. What is the smallest city in the United States? What is its population? 1437
21. Name the officers of a city. 1437-1438
22. What is an alderman? How is he elected and what are his powers? Does he receive a salary? 197
23. Write a paper of a page or two in length on the following subject: "Advantages and Disadvantages of Municipal Ownership." 4743-4744

D. Our State Government.

*References:*

Assembly. 457  
 Governor. 2883  
 Legislature. 3924  
 State House of Representatives. 6062  
 State. 6813-6814  
 State Government. 7389

1. What is the meaning of state? 6813
2. How does the ancient idea of state differ from the modern? 6813
3. Is the use of the word *state* the same to-day as it was in colonial America? What is the difference? 6813-6814
4. Memorize and be able to elaborate the ideas in Sir William Jones' five lines of poetry on page 6813.
5. As an individual citizen, to which are you more closely related, the state government or the national government? Explain. 7389
6. Do the state governments resemble the Federal government? Explain. 7389
7. Discuss the form of state government: its officers, their election, etc. 7389
8. Of what does the state house of representatives consist? 6062
9. What is a governor? What are his duties? How is he elected? What salary does he receive? 2883
10. What is the legislature of the state? What are its duties? 3924
11. Over what matters does the state have control? 7389

12. What is meant by the word *assembly*? 475
- E. Our National Government.  
*References:*  
 Congress. 1606-1607  
 The Story of the American Congress. 1607-1609  
 Constitution. 1629-1630  
 Constitution of the United States. 1631-1634  
 Legislature. 3924  
 President of the United States. 5802-5808  
 House of Representatives. 6060-6062  
 Senate. 6488-6491  
 Speaker. 6745  
 Department of State. 6814  
 Secretary of State. 6814-6815  
 The Federal Government. 7387-7389  
 Congress. 7388  
 Veto. 7514  
 Vice-President. 7515-7516  
 Washington, D. C. (government). 7642
1. Why is the national government called a Federal government? 7387-7388
2. What is the constitution of a nation? 1629
3. Is the Federal Constitution the supreme law in the United States? Is it in Great Britain? 1629
4. What is the relation of the Federal Constitution to the state constitutions? Tell how the relation of a state to the United States differs from the relation of a county to a state. 1721, 1631
5. What provision of the Constitution has received praise from foreign critics? 1632
6. How many members of the Constitutional Convention signed the Constitution? How was it adopted? Which state was the first to ratify it? Which was the last? 1634
7. How does a constitution differ from laws enacted by legislative bodies? Explain. 1629-1630
8. Who may be President of the United States? What are the qualifications? Describe the inauguration of the President. 5802, 5806
9. How many times may a President be re-elected? 5802
10. What are the powers and privileges of the President? 5806-5808
11. What salary does the President receive? 5808
12. What are the qualifications of the Vice-President? What are his duties? 7516
13. What is meant by the phrase *accidental President*? 7516
14. What are the three branches of the national government? What are the duties and powers of each? 7388
15. What is the legal designation of the law-making body of the United States? 7388
16. What does the word *congress* mean? 1606
17. Name some great congresses which have been influential in European affairs. 1607
18. What is the Congress of the United States? Of whom is it composed? 1607
19. What is the legal title of the Congress of the United States? 1607
20. How is Congress organized? Describe. 1607-1608
21. List the powers of Congress. Discuss fully. 1608-1609
22. Explain why Congress is restricted in its powers of legislation. 1608
23. What is the United States Senate? Of what is it composed? What are the qualifications of a United States Senator? How is he elected?
24. The United States Senate is a continuous body. What is meant by that expression? Is this a good condition? 6490
25. What are the duties of the Senate? Who is the presiding officer? What other officers are there? 6490-6491
26. Why is the House of Representatives called the *popular* branch of Congress? 1608
27. What is the presiding officer of the House of Representatives called? 1608
28. Like what foreign law-making body is our House of Representatives? 6060
29. What is the number of Representatives in Congress? How is the number determined? 1606
30. What is the length of term of Representatives in Congress? Why does the Constitution decree such a short term? 6060
31. May all the Representatives in Congress from one state be chosen from a single locality? Explain. 6060
32. What was the membership of the House of Representatives in 1789? In 1911? In 1921? In 1930? 6060-6061
33. Is the membership of the House composed only of Representatives from the states? Explain. 6061
34. Give the qualifications for membership in the House. Are they the same for all states? 6061
35. Is the House a continuous body, as is the Senate? 6061
36. Why has the question of changing the date on which Representatives assume office been seriously considered? Discuss fully. 6061
37. What two powers does the House have that are denied the Senate? Why, do you think, has this provision been made? 6062
38. What is a Congressman at large? 6062
39. What is the presiding officer of the House called? What are his powers and duties? 6062
40. What are the powers and duties of the members of the House? 6062, 1636-1637

41. What is the purpose and function of the Department of State? 6814
42. What is the Secretary of State? What are his duties? Is it an important office? Explain. 6814-6815
43. How is Washington, D. C. governed? 1970, 7642

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Write a paper on the different forms of government. Make a clear distinction between the different forms, and give advantages and disadvantages of each.  
Monarchy. 4579  
Democracy. 1888  
Aristocracy. 381

Oligarchy. 5192  
Government. 2882-2883  
Republic. 6062-6063  
Theocracy. 7141  
Soviet. 6724

2. Various Forms of City Government. 1584-1585, 1437-1439, 1586
3. The Home of Our Federal Government, 7636-7644, 7747-7750, 1970-1971
4. The Constitutional Convention.
5. How Primitive Peoples Govern Themselves.
6. Junior Republic. 2753-2754
7. Why We Need Government
8. School Government.

### UNIT THIRTEEN

#### How Laws Are Made

##### Elements of the Unit

- A. Laws and Why We Have Them.
- B. How Constitutions Are Made and Changed.
- C. How Statute Laws Are Made.

##### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Laws and Why We Have Them.  
*References:*  
Blue Laws. 805  
"Blue Sky" Laws. 806  
Civil Law. 1449  
Code Napoleon. 1523-1524  
Common Law. 1586  
Criminal Law. 1746  
Equity. 2284, 3897  
Geneva Convention. 2716  
"The Legislature of the Everglades." 3427  
International Law. 3485-3487  
Law. 3897  
Lynch Law. 4163  
Martial Law. 4307-4308  
Personal Liberty. 5504  
Statute. 6817
1. What is personal liberty? What happens to one's personal liberty as civilization becomes more complex? How far should one's personal liberty extend? What is the difference between liberty and license? Explain Madame Roland's statement: "O liberty! liberty! how many crimes are committed in thy name!" 5504
2. Are more laws needed in a modern civilization than in a primitive one? Explain.
3. What is law? What purpose does it serve? 3897
4. How does law originate? Explain. 3897
5. Explain the meaning of common law? Upon what is common law usually based? Do we have common law in the United States? 1586, 3897

6. What is meant by statute law? By what bodies is statute law enacted?
7. What is criminal law? 1746
8. What is civil law? Name some offenses which would be prosecuted under civil law. 1449
9. What are "blue laws?" Why were they called "blue" laws? Read the blue laws found on page 805. What do you think of them? Do we have blue laws to-day?
10. What are "blue sky" laws? 806
11. What is martial law? When is it put into force? 4307
12. What is lynch law? How does it operate? Is it just? 4163
13. What is meant by the law of equity? Explain as well as you can. 3897, 2284
14. What is parliamentary law? Should the individual citizen be familiar with parliamentary law? Why? Study this section carefully. Ask your teacher for permission to organize your class according to parliamentary practice. 5395
15. What is the Code Napoleon? 1523-1524
16. Define the following terms: Substantive law, remedial law, public law, private law, constitutional law, administrative law. 3897
17. What is international law? Upon what is it based, or wherein does it originate? With what does it deal? 3485-3487, 3497
18. Give some important distinctions between international and municipal laws? 3485
19. What are the principal sources of international law? How are these laws made? 3485
20. What three great conferences or conventions have been influential in codifying and putting into writing the rules of international law? 3485, 5425-5426, 2716



21. What are some of the duties and rights of sovereign states with which international law deals? 3485-3486
22. What usually happens to international law in time of war? What are some rules of various international conferences for the conduct of warfare on land? For naval warfare? 3486

#### B. How Constitutions Are Made and Changed.

##### References:

Amendment. 246

Bill of Rights. 739-740

Constitution. 1629-1643

1. What is a constitution? 1629
2. Why is a constitution sometimes called a fundamental law? 1629
3. How does a constitution differ from laws enacted by legislative bodies? 1629
4. Describe the Constitution of the United States. Did the framers of this document pattern it after any existing constitution? 1631
5. Read the entire Constitution of the United States. 1635-1643
6. Tell briefly the history of the Constitution. Why was a constitution necessary? When and how was it framed? How long did it take? What difficulties beset the members of Congress during the framing of the Constitution? Discuss some of the conflicts and compromises. 1632
7. Study carefully the Outline of the Constitution. How is the Constitution organized? 1632
8. What happens when a law passed by Congress violates the provisions of the national Constitution? 1632
9. What are the most important provisions of a constitution?
10. Are constitutions easily changed? What does the term *amendment* mean? What is a general rule concerning amendments? 246, 1630, 1634
11. How may the Constitution be amended? What amendments to the Constitution have been made? 1634, 246
12. What is meant by the expression "constitutional changes through interpretation"? Why do such changes have to be made? 1634
13. What Constitutional changes may probably be made within the next few years? 1634
14. What is a Bill of Rights? 739
15. What is the "American Bill of Rights"? 739
16. What does the bill of rights of a state constitution contain? 739

#### C. How Statute Laws Are Made.

##### References:

Bill, in Law. 737

Common Council. 1586

Congressional Record. 1607

Filibusters. 2415

Initiative and Referendum, 3452-3453

How a Bill Becomes a Law, 3898

Legislature, 3924-3925

City Government, 4743

Village Government, 4743

Omnibus Bill, 5199-5200

Recall, 6021

Repeal, 6059

Statute, 6817

Duties of the Senate, 6490

Village Trustees, 7284-7285

Veto, 7514

1. What is statute law? How does statute law differ from common law? Give some illustrations of statute law. 6817
2. What is the legislature? 3924
3. What is the national legislature called in the United States? In England? In Canada? 3924
4. What is the legislature of a state called? 3924
5. What is the purpose of the legislature? 3924
6. What are the two "houses" of the legislature called? 3924
7. Can one house alone enact a law? 3924
8. What is the legislative body of a city? Of a village? 3924
9. What is a "bill"? What is an "omnibus" bill? 737, 5199-5200
10. Who may introduce a bill? Study the paragraph and picture on page 3898. Be able to explain how a bill becomes a law.
11. Make a list of the duties of the Senate. 6490
12. What does the word *veto* mean? 7514
13. To whom is the power of veto given? 7514
14. Define the following terms: Absolute veto, limited veto, pocket veto. 7514
15. May the veto of the President of the United States be overruled? 7514
16. What does the President do when he vetoes a bill? 7514
17. What happens to a bill if the President of the United States fails to sign or veto it within ten days after it has been presented to him? 7514
18. May a governor exercise the power of veto? A mayor? 7514
19. Explain what is meant by repeal; filibustering. 6059, 2415
20. What is the *Congressional Record*? 1607
21. Define and explain initiative and referendum. 3452-3453
22. Explain how a law may be enacted by

means of the initiative. How widely are initiative and referendum laws in force?

3453

23. What is meant by the recall? What is the purpose of the recall? How may an official be recalled? Explain. 6021
24. What is the legislative department of an incorporated village called? Of what does it consist? 7284-7285
25. What is the common council? 1586
26. Who makes the laws for a city? 1437-1438, 4743

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Why Laws Are Necessary.
2. The Unwritten Laws of Primitive Peoples of the World.
3. International Law.
4. Law Schools.
5. Law as a Profession.
6. Making and Changing Constitutions.
7. Making Statute Law.
8. How Ordinances Are Made.
9. Debate: Resolved, That our state should adopt the initiative and the referendum.

### UNIT FOURTEEN

#### How Laws Are Enforced

##### Elements of the Unit

- A. Enforcing Local Laws.
- B. Enforcing State Laws.
- C. Enforcing National Laws.

##### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Enforcing Local Laws.

##### References:

Board of Health. 808  
 Constable. 1624  
 Coroner. 1696  
 County. 1721  
 Fire Department. 2429-2433  
 Justice of the Peace. 3723  
 Mayor. 4356  
 Village Government. 4743  
 City Government. 4743  
 Police. 5701-5702  
 Sheriff. 6557  
 Town Meeting. 7228-7229

1. Explain this statement: "Violation of a just law lessens the liberty of someone else."
2. What is the primary purpose of law enforcement?
3. Should every law be enforced? Give reasons for your answer.
4. Why is there usually an official in athletic games? Would you care to play an important team game without an official? Why?
5. What is good sportsmanship in community life?
6. Why do we need officials to enforce the law? Why are some laws more easily enforced than others? Why are some laws obeyed with apparently no enforcement?
7. Try to find out how many laws there are in your community which are being enforced. Are there any which are not being enforced?
8. Does law enforcement necessarily mean pursuing criminals?

9. Who is responsible for law enforcement in a New England township? 7228-7229
10. What officers are charged with the responsibility of enforcing the law in the county? What are the duties of each? 1721, 6557, 1696
11. Who is the executive head of a village? What are the officers of a village? 4743
12. Who is the executive head of a city? What are his duties? 1437, 4743, 4356
13. Who enforces the laws of a city?

- B. Enforcing State Laws.

##### References:

Auditor. 498  
 Governor. 2883  
 State Attorney-General. 3723  
 Lieutenant Governor. 3978  
 Militia. 4480  
 State Police. 5702

1. Upon whom does the main responsibility for law enforcement in the state rest? 2883
2. What is a lieutenant governor? What are his duties? 3978
3. What are the duties of the state attorney-general? 3723
4. What are the duties of the state police? 5702
5. May the governor call upon the militia for aid in enforcing law? Discuss.
6. What are the duties of a state auditor? 498

- C. Enforcing National Laws.

##### References:

Department of Agriculture. 104-106  
 The President's Cabinet. 1058  
 Cabinet. 1058-1059  
 Civil Service. 1449-1451  
 Department of Commerce. 1583  
 Department of the Interior. 3478  
 Interstate Commerce Commission. 3490-3491  
 Department of Justice. 3722-3723

Department of Labor. 3821  
 Marshal. 4304  
 Department of the Navy. 4852  
 President of the United States. 5802-5808  
 Secret Service. 6477-6478  
 Department of State. 6814-6815  
 Treasury Department. 7255-7256  
 War Department. 7600

1. Who is responsible for the execution of all national laws? 5802
2. What officer in the United States government is one of the most powerful rulers in the world? 5802
3. What are the duties and powers of the President? 5806-5808
4. Who succeeds the President of the United States in case, for any constitutional reason, he is permanently unable to fulfill the duties of his office? 7515
5. Who stands first in the line of succession to the Presidency in the event of the death or permanent disability of the President and Vice-President? 6815
6. Who is fourth in line among Cabinet members for succession to the Presidency? 3723
7. How many departments are there in the Executive branch of the government? Name them in the order in which they were created. 1058-1059
8. What is the President's Cabinet? 1058-1059
9. How do Cabinet members obtain office? 1059
10. How many men comprised Washington's first Cabinet? 1059
11. To which office in the Cabinet is attached the greatest prestige? 1059
12. What salary do Cabinet members receive? 1059
13. What are the duties of the Secretary of State? Explain the importance of his office. 6814-6815
14. Describe the organization of the Department of State. What is the business of the department? 6814
15. What are the duties and powers of the Treasury Department? Discuss fully. 7255-7256
16. What is the Department of Justice? Is it

- the same as the Judicial Department? 3722
17. Who is the head of the Department of Justice? What are the duties of the department? 3722
  18. What are the powers and duties of the War Department? Who is commander in chief of the army? What are the duties of the Secretary of War? 7600
  19. What is the work of the Department of the Navy? 4852
  20. What are the functions of the Department of the Interior? Explain this phrase: "An Act to Establish the Home Department." 3478
  21. Discuss the history and activities of the United States Department of Agriculture. 104-106
  22. What are the activities of the Department of Commerce? 1583
  23. What is the Attorney-General? Is his office an important one? 3723
  24. For what specific purposes was the Department of Labor established? What are the different divisions or bureaus of the department? 3821
  25. What are the duties of the United States Secret Service? 6477-6478
  26. Find the clause in the Constitution which authorizes the President to call out the state militia to enforce national law. 1635-1643
  27. What is the civil service? What does the term mean? 1449
  28. Why was the Civil Service Act passed? What was its purpose? 1449
  29. What is the Civil Service Commission? 1450
  30. What are some advantages in having government positions placed under civil-service regulation?
  31. How may one secure a position in the civil service? Explain fully. 1450
  32. How many employees are necessary to conduct the business of the United States government? 1449-1450
  33. What is meant by civil service reform? Spoils system? The merit system? 1450-1451
  34. What is a United States marshal? What are his duties? 4304

## UNIT FIFTEEN

### How Laws Are Applied and Interpreted

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. What Courts Are, and Why We Need Them.
- B. Local and State Courts.
- C. Federal Courts.
- D. Court Procedure.

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. What Courts Are, and Why We Need Them.
- References:  
 Avenger of Blood. 800  
 Cities of Refuge. 1435

Courts. 1722  
 Lynch Law. 4163  
 Trial by Ordeal and Combat. 5241  
 Sanhedrin. 6374  
 Vendetta. 7476

1. How were disputes settled in primitive societies? Have any of these methods survived? Explain. 800, 1435, 5241, 7476
2. What are courts? 1722
3. At the present time are all disputes settled in courts?
4. Why is the settlement of disputes between individuals not left entirely to the individuals themselves?
5. What is the difference between an offense against the state and an offense against an individual? Give several illustrations of each.
6. If we had no courts, who would fix penalties for violations of the law? Do groups of citizens ever "take the law in their own hands"? Discuss.
7. What is the primary function of courts? 1722
8. Which is the more important function of the courts, fixing penalties for violation of the law or protecting the rights of individuals and society? Explain.
9. What was the Sanhedrin? 6374

#### B. Local and State Courts.

##### *References:*

Court of Chancery. 1302-1303  
 Chief Justice. 1369  
 Court of Common Pleas. 1586  
 County. 1721  
 Courts. 1722  
 States Judicial Systems. 1722-1723  
 Equity. 2284  
 Justice of the Peace. 3723  
 Probate. 5829

1. Distinguish between private law and public law. Which affects the individual most frequently? Explain. 3897
2. Distinguish between original jurisdiction and appellate jurisdiction. What is an appellate court? 1722-1723
3. What is the difference between a crime and a civil wrong? Give illustrations of civil cases and criminal cases. 1745-1746, 7221
4. If a crime has been committed, should a settlement between the parties concerned be made out of court, if possible? Explain.
5. What are the courts of a county? 1721, 1723
6. What is a justice of the peace? What are his duties? 3723
7. What is the highest judicial tribunal in the state? 1722

8. Describe the general features of the state judicial system. 1722-1723
9. What is a chief justice? In most states, who acts as chief justice of the court? 1369
10. What is the court of common pleas? 1586
11. What is a court of chancery? 1302-1303
12. Explain the function of a court of equity. 2284
13. Explain the following statement: "Equity considers that done which ought to be done." 2284
14. What is a probate court? 5829

#### C. Federal Courts.

##### *References:*

Chief Justice. 1369  
 Court of Claims. 1452  
 Constitution (Article III). 1639  
 Court-Martial. 1722  
 United States Judicial System. 1722-1723  
 Supreme Court of the United States. 6940-6942

1. What is the highest judicial tribunal in the American republic? 6940
2. Was the Supreme Court authorized in the Constitution of the United States? 6940
3. To what body was the organization of the Supreme Court delegated? 6940
4. What are the members of the Supreme Court called? 1722, 6940
5. What is the head of the Supreme Court called? 1369
6. Who appoints the members of the Supreme Court? How long is the term of office? What salary does a Justice of the Supreme Court receive? 1722, 6940
7. Read carefully the classes of cases which come under the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court. Explain why such cases should be handled by a Federal Supreme Court rather than a lower court. 1723, 6940
8. What provisions are made in the Constitution for removing members of the Supreme Court from political influences? 6940
9. What power does the Supreme Court possess over legislation, both state and national? Is this an unusual power? 6940
10. Does the Supreme Court have original or appellate jurisdiction? Explain. 1723
11. Describe the organization and jurisdiction of the ten kinds of United States courts. 1723
12. What are the lower, or inferior, Federal courts? 1722, 6940-6942
13. How many circuit courts of appeals are there? Who supervises these courts? 6942

## D. Court Procedure.

*References:*

- Appeal. 321
  - Arrest. 420
  - Attachment. 494
  - Bail. 572
  - Contempt. 1644
  - Court Procedure. 1723-1724
  - Crime. 1745-1746
  - Criminal Law. 1746
  - Demurrer. 1891
  - Evidence. 2336-2337
  - Execution. 2343
  - Felony. 2393
  - Writ of Habeas Corpus. 2997
  - Indictment. 3430
  - Injunction. 3453-3454
  - Judge. 3705
  - Judgment. 3705
  - Jury and Trial by Jury. 3721-3722
  - Law. 3897
  - Mandamus. 4252
  - Misdemeanor. 4533
  - Oath. 5136
  - Trial by Ordeal and Combat. 5241
  - Perjury. 5489
  - Probate. 5829
  - Replevin. 6059
  - Subpoena. 6894
  - Warrant. 7621
  - Witness. 7816
  - Writ. 7897-7898
  - Writs of Assistance. 7901
1. What is the meaning of court procedure? 1723
  2. What is crime? Is an act of omission a crime? Give illustrations of acts of commission and acts of omission which are crimes. 1745-1746
  3. What is meant by the term civil suit? 1854; 1723-1724
  4. What is the first step in a civil suit? 1723-1724
  5. Define and explain the following terms: Writ of summons, defendant, plaintiff, pleadings, issue, demurrer, arrest, examination. 1723-1724, 420, 1891
  6. What is the meaning of writ? 7897
  7. What is a writ of *habeas corpus*? How is it used? Explain fully. 2997
  8. Define and explain the writ of replevin. How is it used? Give an illustration. 6059
  9. When is a writ of mandamus issued? What is its purpose? 4252
  10. How is the writ of attachment used? 494
  11. Define warrant, bench warrant, search warrant. 7621
  12. Who usually makes arrests? May a private citizen make an arrest? Does an arrest deprive a person of his liberty? What may an arrested person do to enjoy full

liberty until his case is called for trial?

13. What is bail? May all persons who are arrested apply for liberty on bail bonds? Why? 572
14. Explain the meaning of subpoena. For what is a subpoena used? What is a subpoena *duces tecum*? 6894
15. What does appeal mean in law? Explain. 321
16. What is a witness? What is the summons by which a witness is ordered to appear in court called? Are all persons competent to give legal testimony in court? 7816
17. What is evidence? Discuss the various kinds of evidence. 2336-2337
18. Explain what is meant by an indictment (in criminal law). What are its purposes? Give the essentials of a valid indictment. 3430
19. What is the meaning of injunction (in law)? Define the following words, used in connection with injunction: Preventive, mandatory, preliminary, interlocutory, and perpetual. Give illustrations of preventive and mandatory injunctions. 3453-3454
20. Define perjury. What is subornation of perjury? What is the punishment for perjury? 5489
21. What is an oath (in law)? What is required of a person who takes a judicial oath? What are extra-judicial oaths? Have you ever taken one? What is the difference between an oath and an affirmation? 5136
22. What are the duties of a judge?
23. What is a jury? A grand jury? A coroner's jury? A petit jury? How many persons are there on each? Who selects them? 3722
24. What is one of the principal objections to the jury system? 3722
25. What is the offense known as contempt of court? Discuss two kinds of contempts of court. 1644
26. Define and explain indeterminate sentence. Discuss its advantages and disadvantages. 3377
27. Follow a hypothetical criminal case through the courts, explaining each of the steps in complete court procedure. Do the same for a civil case.

**Supplementary Enterprises**

1. Trials by Ordeal and Combat. 5241
2. The Courts of Canada and Great Britain. 1724
3. Report of a Visit Made to a Court in Session.
4. Why We Need Courts.
5. Our National Judicial System. 1722-1723
6. The Supreme Court. 6940-6942

## UNIT SIXTEEN

## How We Select Our Officials

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Political Parties, and Why They Are Formed.
- B. Political Parties at Work.
- C. How We Elect Our Officials.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Political Parties, and Why They Are Formed.

*References:*

Anti-Federalist Party. 310  
 Bucktails. 996  
 Democratic Party. 1888-1889  
 Democratic-Republican Party. 1889  
 Federalist Party. 2390  
 Free-Soil Party. 2603  
 Greenback Party. 2956-2957  
 Know-Nothings. 3808-3809  
 Liberal Republican Party. 3961  
 Liberty Party. 3965-3966  
 Loco-Foco. 4076  
 Political Parties. 5703-5706  
 Populist Party. 5740  
 Progressive Party. 5831  
 Prohibition Party. 5833-5834  
 Republican Party. 6063-6064  
 Socialism. 6668  
 Whig. 7740

1. What is meant by the statement that a political party is "a second, or unofficial, government"? 5703
2. Did political parties exist during the colonial period? 5704
3. Approximately what percentage of public officials in the United States is elected by a party vote? Is this peculiar to the United States? 5703
4. To what degree has the party spirit permeated American life? 5703
5. Are there any disadvantages in the party system? Explain. 5703
6. What are the five main objects or lines of action of the party system in the United States? 5703
7. Who were the Whigs? 5704-5705, 7740
8. Who were the Federalists? 2390, 5705
9. Who were the Anti-Federalists? 310, 5705
10. Tell briefly the history of the Democratic party. 1888-1889
11. What is the oldest political organization in the United States? 1888
12. When was the Republican party organized? With what great American problems were the early Republicans concerned? What was the chief plank in its platform in 1856? What were the issues particularly stressed in the last campaign? 6063-6064
13. Are the distinctions between the policies

- of the Republican and Democratic parties as great now as they used to be?
- 14. Who were the Progressives? 5831
- 15. What was the primary object of the Prohibition party? When was it formed? Has the party been influential? 5833-5834
- 16. Who were the Bucktails? How did they derive their name? 996
- 17. What was the Free-Soil party? 2603
- 18. What was the Greenback party? 2956-2957
- 19. Who were the Know-Nothings? Why were they so called? 3808-3809
- 20. What was the Liberty party? 3965-3966
- 21. Tell about the Liberal Republican party. 3961
- 22. Who were the loco-focos? 4076
- 23. Give the history of the Populist party. 5740

- B. Political Parties at Work.

*References:*

Caucus. 1259-1260  
 Machinery of Parties. 5703-5704  
 Primary Election. 5811

1. Who is usually the leader of his party? 5703
2. Who controls the parties? What did James Bryce have to say about political parties? Do you agree with him? 5703
3. What is meant by party machinery? 5703
4. What is the essential difference between the permanent and temporary organization of a party?
5. What are the primary purposes of party committees? 5704
6. What is a party convention? What is done at a party convention? Who attend party conventions? 5704
7. Define primary. Explain fully what is done at a primary election. Are all members of a party entitled to vote at a primary? Explain. 5704, 5811
8. Are primaries restricted to local elections? 587
9. Is the direct primary an American institution? 5811
10. Define caucus. Are caucuses held nowadays? Discuss. 5704, 1259-1260
11. What is the difference between a caucus and a primary?

- C. How We Elect Our Officials.

*References:*

Australian Ballot. 521-522  
 Ballot. 586  
 Constitution. 1641-1642  
 Election. 2164-2165

Electoral College. 2166-2167  
 Electoral Commission. 2167  
 Grandfather's Clause. 2896  
 How a President Is Elected. 5802-5806  
 Short Ballot. 6571-6572  
 Suffrage. 6904-6905  
 Voting Machine. 7569-7571  
 Woman Suffrage. 7822-7825

1. What is the meaning of suffrage?
2. Who may vote for public officials in the United States? 6905
3. May a person be a citizen and yet not have the right to vote? Explain.
4. What percentage of the population during the early years in the United States was permitted to vote? Explain. 6905
5. What is a ballot? 586
6. What is the derivation of the word *ballot*? 586
7. Describe the methods of voting by ballot used in ancient Athens. What methods did the Romans use? 586
8. What is the Australian ballot? How did it get its name? When was it first used in the United States? What are its two essential features? 521-522
9. Describe the method of voting before the introduction of the Australian system. 521, 586
10. Who furnishes the ballots under the Australian system? Why? 521
11. Describe some of the features of the Australian ballot used in Canada. 521
12. What is meant by "voting a straight ticket"? 521
13. What is meant by "scratching" the ballot? 521
14. Be able to explain fully the correct procedure in marking a ballot. 521
15. Explain the procedure used in counting the ballots. 521-522
16. What is meant by the short ballot? What are the proposals of the short-ballot movement? Discuss the advantages of the short ballot. 586, 6571-6572
17. What is a voting machine? Has it been used widely in the United States? Ex-

plain how the machine works. What advantages are claimed for it? 7569-7571

18. Define the following terms as used with respect to elections: Direct, indirect, representative, national, state, and provincial. 2165
19. What is meant by registration? 2165
20. Who bears the expense of elections? 2165
21. What does the term *blackballed* mean? 586
22. Explain how the President of the United States is elected. Be sure to read carefully the selection entitled "Six Roads to the White House." 5802-5806, 1641-1642
23. What is the difference between the popular vote and the electoral vote? By which is the President elected? Do the citizens vote for President or for electors? Explain. 5806, 2166-2167
24. What is the Electoral College? How many electors are there in the Electoral College? 2164, 2166
25. Who are the electors and how are they chosen? What are their duties? 1641-1642, 2164, 2166-2167, 5802-5806
26. Do the electors have the right to cast their ballots for whomsoever they choose? 2166
27. What is woman suffrage? Tell the history of the woman suffrage movement in the United States. 7822-7824
28. Tell the history of suffrage in the United States. 6904-6905

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. The History of Political Parties in the United States. 5704-5706
2. National League of Women Voters. 4815-4816
3. Woman Suffrage. 7822-7825
4. The Work of Political Parties.
5. Why We Have Political Parties.
6. Early Methods of Voting. 586, 6905
7. The History of Suffrage in the United States. 6904-6905; 7822-7825
8. Jefferson and Hamilton as Leaders of Our First Political Parties.

### UNIT SEVENTEEN

## How We Finance Our Government

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. Why Our Government Needs Money.
- B. Sources of Income.
- C. Levying and Collecting Taxes.

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Why Our Government Needs Money.

#### References:

National Debt. 4813-4814

#### Tax and Taxes. 7032-7033

1. Why should the citizen pay revenue to the government? 7033
2. List all the services which the local, state, and national governments perform for you. Who are on the payroll of these governments?
3. What are the expenses of local governments, such as town township, county, village, and city?

4. What are the chief expenses of the state government?
5. What are the services which the national government performs which cost money?
6. What were the expenditures of the national government in 1916? In 1919? Now? 3375, 3483
7. Why does it cost more to run governments to-day than a century ago?
8. What was the United States public debt in 1928? How does the country accumulate such debts? 4814
9. How much, in money, did the World War cost the United States? 7891
10. What was the annual cost of maintaining the regular army before 1917? How much is it now? 416
11. How much did Congress appropriate in 1916 for the construction of naval vessels? 4848

#### B. Sources of Income.

##### *References:*

Customs Duties. 1793

Escheat. 2292

Franchise. 2589-2590

Income Tax. 3374-3375

Inheritance Tax. 3451-3452

Internal Revenue. 3482-3483

License. 3974-3975

Poll Tax. 5714

Sales Tax. 6331-6332

Single Tax. 6621-6622

Story of the Tariff. 7021-7024

Tax and Taxes. 7032-7034

1. Discuss four means by which revenue to defray governmental expenses can be secured. 3483
2. What is the chief source of income for all the units of government? 7033
3. What is a tax? 7032
4. How long has taxation as a means of obtaining revenue been employed? Discuss. 7032
5. What is the present theory of taxation? 7033
6. What are some principles which should govern taxation? 7033
7. What is the chief difference between direct and indirect taxes? 7032
8. What is an income tax? Upon what theory are incomes below a certain amount exempt from taxation? Tell the history of the income tax in the United States. 3374-3375
9. What is an inheritance tax? How long has this source of government revenue been in use? How widely is this form of taxation used? Do all states levy an inheritance tax? What do economists think of it? 3452
10. What is the single tax? State the theory

of the single tax. What are some objections that have been advanced against it? 6621-6622

11. What effect would the adoption of a national single tax have upon other sources of income? What are some of the obstacles in the way of a national single tax? What advantages do advocates of the national single tax claim for it? 6621-6622
12. What is internal revenue? Distinguish between internal revenue and foreign revenue. 3482-3483
13. Upon what articles is an internal-revenue tax usually placed? What are some objections to internal-revenue taxes? 3483
14. Why does the country resort to internal-revenue taxes during time of war? 3483
15. Has the United States ever levied direct taxes upon property? 3483
16. Do license fees help pay the expenses of the government? Explain. 3974-3975
17. Do franchises form a source of revenue for the government? 2589-2590
18. What is a poll tax? Is it an important source of revenue? 7032
19. Define and discuss escheat. 2292
20. What is a sales tax? 6331-6332
21. Define tariff. For what purposes are tariffs levied? Is the practice of collecting revenue by means of tariffs of recent origin? When was the first national tariff law passed in the United States? 7021-7022
22. Tell the history of tariff in the United States. 7022-7024
23. Is insurance on parcel-post packages a tax?
24. Have you ever purchased an article on which there was a government stamp? Does this stamp represent a tax?

#### C. Levying and Collecting Taxes.

##### *References:*

Assessor. 457

Budget. 1000-1001

Taxation in Practice. 7033

Treasury Department. 7255-7256

1. What two fundamental questions must be answered before money can be raised by property taxes? Explain. 7033
2. Read carefully the selection entitled *The Mathematics of Taxes*. 7033-7034
3. Study carefully the diagram on page 7032.
4. Does the Federal government levy taxes? 7389
5. What Executive department of the United States government collects all taxes levied by Congress? 7255
6. What kinds of taxes are levied by Congress? 7255
7. Explain how internal-revenue taxes and fees are collected. 7255



8. What is a budget? What is the purpose of a budget? Tell how the United States adopted the budget plan for governmental expenses. 1000-1001
9. What is an assessor? What are his duties? Is he a local, state, or national officer? 457

## Supplementary Enterprises

1. How the Local Government Pays Its Bills.
2. How the Federal Government Collects Revenue.
3. The History of Tariff. 7021-7024
4. Community Expenses.
5. Kinds of Taxes.

## UNIT EIGHTEEN

## International Relations

## Elements of the Unit

- A. How Nations Depend on One Another.
- B. Our Relations with Other Countries.
- C. Movements for International Peace.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. How Nations Depend on One Another.

## References:

Languages of the World. 3860-3871  
 International Bureau of Weights and Measures. 4426  
 Nobel Prizes. 5036, 5037

1. Make a list of all the articles which we could not have if all imports from foreign countries should cease.
2. List the articles in your home which came wholly or in part from foreign countries. You will need to investigate carefully.
3. Is the United States more closely related to the rest of the world than is any other single country? Explain.
4. Are the countries of the world more closely related to each other to-day than the states of the Union were one hundred years ago? Explain.
5. To what extent was America dependent upon other nations during the colonial period?
6. In what ways are the nations of the world now interdependent in science, art, music, medicine, literature, and invention? 3485
7. What effect has the development of communication and transportation had upon international relations?
8. Name five books, five musical selections, and five works of art for which we are indebted to foreign countries.
9. Discuss the significance of the Nobel Prizes. 5036, 5037
10. Have any attempts been made to formulate a "world language"? Why? 3860-3871
11. Why is it increasingly necessary to have an international system of weights and measures? Have any attempts been made in this direction? 4426

- B. Our Relations with Other Countries.

## References:

Ambassador. 243  
 Minister. 243

Attaché. 494

Chargé d' Affaires. 1310

Consul. 1643

Diplomacy. 1955

Exterritoriality. 2348

Foreign Office. 2532

The International. 3483-3484

International Institute of Agriculture. 3485

International Law. 3485-3487

International News Service. 3487

International Relations. 3487-3488

International Postal Union. 5771

Department of State. 6814-6815

Trade-Mark (International Regulations). 7235

1. What is international law? 3485
2. Did primitive communities observe rules comparable to international law?
3. Explain the differences between international and municipal laws. 3485
4. Is international law as we know it to-day of recent origin? Explain. 3485
5. When was the great work of writing and codifying the rules of international law undertaken? 3485
6. What happens to international law in time of war? 3486
7. What are our representatives to foreign countries called? What are their duties? 243, 494, 1310, 1643
8. What is the meaning of exterritoriality? Give your opinion of this doctrine. 2348
9. Explain what is meant by diplomacy. Name the agents of the diplomatic service. 1955
10. Distinguish between the consular service and the diplomatic service. 1643, 1955
11. What office in the United States is comparable to the Minister of Foreign Affairs in Europe? 2532
12. What are the functions of the Department of State? 6814-6815
13. Tell about the work of the International Institute of Agriculture. 3485
14. What are the international regulations with respect to trade-marks? 7235
15. Does the United States government protect American citizens in foreign lands?

## C. Movements for International Peace.

*References:*

International Arbitration. 344  
 Limitation of Armaments. 406-407  
 Bering Sea Controversy. 713  
 Geneva Convention. 2716  
 Geneva Arbitration. 2716  
 The Hague. 3003-3005  
 Interparliamentary Union. 3489-3490  
 League of Nations. 3904-3906  
 Locarno Conference. 4071-4073  
 International Peace Conference. 5425-5426  
 Permanent Court of International Justice. 5489-5490  
 Red Cross Societies. 6025-6031  
 Treaty of Versailles. 7506-7508

1. Read the poem on page 1588.
2. What is arbitration? Do individuals frequently submit their disagreements to arbitration? How? Do states? Do nations? 344, 713, 2716
3. If nations wish to settle their disputes by arbitration, to what court can they go? Explain. 344
4. How was the Bering Sea controversy settled? Describe the procedure. 713
5. What initiative has the United States taken in promoting arbitration as a means of settling international disputes? 344
6. Tell about the attempts which have been made toward the limitation of armaments. 406-407
7. Discuss the terms of agreement of the first and second Geneva conferences. Do you think similar agreements should be reached concerning food ships? 2716

8. For what is The Hague famous? Describe the Palace of Peace at The Hague, and tell about the famous conferences which have been held there. 3003-3005, 5425-5426
9. Describe the organization and function of the Interparliamentary Union. 3489-3490
10. What are the chief objects of the League of Nations? Describe the organization of the League. 3904-3906
11. Where is the city of Locarno located? In what year did the Locarno Conference take place? What were the real accomplishments of the Locarno Conference? 4071-4073
12. Compare the League of Nations and the Locarno Conference.
13. What is the chief difference between the Hague Tribunal and the Permanent Court of International Justice (World Court)?
14. What was the Treaty of Versailles? What objection did the United States Senate have to it? 7506-7508

**Supplementary Enterprises**

1. Our Imports and Exports.
2. Our Foreign Representatives.
3. Organizations for the Peaceful Settlement of International Disputes.
4. How We Depend on Other Nations for Art, Music, and Literature.
5. Recent Achievements in the Air and Their Relation to World Peace.
6. The Family of Nations.
7. International Law. 3485-3487
8. American Winners of the Nobel Prize. 5036, 5037, 4489-4490, 1216, 7778-7788, 6185-6197, 6197-6198.

**Part Four. Economic Civics****UNIT NINETEEN****Producing Goods****Elements of the Unit**

- A. Why We Work.
- B. How We Produce Goods.
- C. Industrial Problems.

**Questions, Problems, and Exercises**

- A. Why We Work.

*References:*

Capital. 1184-1185  
 Invention. 3493  
 Profit. 5830  
 Value. 7447-7448  
 Wages. 7574-7575  
 Wealth. 7685

1. Define *work* and *play*. Consult a good dictionary or a book on economics.

Why do people work? Is it always from a desire to satisfy their material wants? What is the chief difference between work and play? Thomas A. Edison once said: "I think I have never done a day's work in my life." What did he mean?

2. Do primitive peoples work as much as civilized people? Explain.
3. What is the primary motive for invention? 3493
4. Make a list of twenty-five things which we now use or enjoy which did not exist when our fathers were young. Add to the list twenty-five things which our grandfathers knew nothing about. Add ten more things which our great-grandfathers did not have. 3493

5. What were some of the first inventions of man? 3494
6. Debate: *Resolved*: That Necessity Is the Mother of Invention.
7. What is capital? 1184
8. What is wealth? What three attributes must an article have to be classed as wealth? 7685
9. What is profit? Are profits the same as wages? Explain. 5830
10. Does a man work whose business is that of exchanging goods? Explain.
11. What is the difference between free goods and economic goods? Give several examples of each. Do we work for free goods? Explain. 7685
12. What is the meaning of utility? 7748

#### B. How We Produce Goods.

##### *References:*

Arts and Crafts. 437  
 Factory and Factory System. 2359-2360  
 The Story of Invention. 3493-3500  
 Division of Labor. 3821-3822  
 Changes Made by Machinery. 4180  
 Standardization in Industry. 6797-6798  
 Development of Manufacturing Industries. 7377-7380

1. What is a factory? What is the essential feature of the factory system? How many men does it take to make a factory? 2359
2. When did the factory system of production begin? What helped stimulate its growth? 2359-2360
3. Where were the early factories located? Why? 2360, 7377
4. List the benefits and evils of the factory system. 3822, 2360
5. What is usually the aim of a group of persons who organize an industrial enterprise? 3445
6. What is meant by "standardization in industry"? 6797
7. What are some values of standardization? Some disadvantages? 6797
8. What is mass production?
9. What is the function of the Division of Simplified Practice of the United States Department of Commerce? 6798
10. What is meant by "division of labor"? 3821
11. Explain this statement: "Formerly, the watchmaker was a craftsman; to-day he is chiefly a mechanic or an engineer."
12. What is the purpose of the Arts and Crafts Movement? 437

#### C. Industrial Problems.

##### *References:*

Adamson Law. 35  
 Industrial Arbitration. 344

Capital. 1184-1185  
 Child Labor. 1375-1376  
 Collective Bargaining. 1536  
 Eight-Hour Day. 2156-2157  
 Employer's Liability. 2220-2230  
 Benefits and Evils of the Factory System. 2360  
 Samuel Gompers. 2868  
 Industrial Workers of the World. 3445  
 Knights of Labor. 3807  
 Department of Labor. 3821  
 Labor Day. 3822  
 Labor Legislation. 3822-3824  
 Labor Organizations. 3825-3826  
 Minimum Wage. 4501-4502  
 Open Shop. 5213  
 Profit Sharing. 5830  
 Sabotage. 6292  
 Socialism. 6668-6669  
 Strike. 6879  
 Sweatshop System. 6948  
 Wages. 7574-7575

1. Has the factory system widened or narrowed the gulf between labor and capital? Explain. 2360
2. Describe labor conditions under the sweatshop system. 6948
3. Describe the conditions of labor in England in the last half of the eighteenth century. 3822, 3825
4. What is meant by "labor legislation"? 3822
5. In what country did modern labor legislation begin? 3822
6. When was the first factory act in England passed? What were its provisions? Describe the laws which were passed during the following century. What were the chief provisions of the laws? 3823
7. Why and how has labor legislation in the United States differed from that in Europe? 3823
8. Tell about the first outstanding decision on labor legislation by the United States Supreme Court. 3824
9. Describe the most important labor laws which have been passed in the United States. 3824
10. What are some purposes of labor organizations? What is the difference between trade-unions and associations? 3825
11. Discuss the criticisms which have been directed against trade-unions. 3825
12. What is sabotage? 6292
13. What is a strike? Define the following terms: Sympathetic strike, general strike, lockout, picketing, injunction. 6879
14. What is meant by open shop? 5213
15. What is a minimum wage? 4501
16. What is meant by collective bargaining? 1536

17. What was the Adamson Law? Under what stress was it passed? 35
18. What are labor banks? What have been their benefits? 3825
19. What do we mean by the term "workmen's compensation"? Discuss the problem of employer's liability. 2229-2230
20. What are the functions of the Department of Labor? 3831
21. What is the membership of the American Federation of Labor? 3825
22. Who was Samuel Gompers? Tell about his service to labor. 2868
23. What is the International Labor Organization? 3825

## UNIT TWENTY

## Exchanging Goods

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Why We Exchange Goods.
- B. How We Determine the Value of Goods.
- C. How We Exchange Goods.
- D. How the Government Protects Us.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Why We Exchange Goods.

## References:

The Story of Commerce. 1582-1583

1. What does the word *commerce* mean? Distinguish between trade and commerce. 1582
2. What percentage of the goods you use do you produce yourself? What percentage is produced in your community? In your state? In this country?
3. List twenty-five articles you use, and indicate in a parallel column the place from which each comes.
4. Give some of the reasons why we buy and sell.
5. Show the relation between climate and the exchange of goods.
6. Why does specialization of industry stimulate the exchange of goods?
7. What effect did the Crusades have upon the exchange of goods? 1582

- B. How We Determine the Value of Goods.

## References:

Supply and Demand. 6939

Value. 7447-7448

1. Read very carefully the article on *Value*. 7447-7448. What is value? What is price? Explain this statement: "There can never be a universal rise in values; but a universal rise in the prices of commodities is possible." 7447
2. What governs the value of a commodity? Be able to explain fully by giving illustrations. 6939, 7447
3. What determines the value of goods? 7448
4. Do air and sunlight have commercial value? Explain.
5. What is the labor theory of value? 7448
6. What does the economist mean by supply? By demand? Explain the relation between the two. 6939

7. What causes prices to go up and down?
8. How does advertising create a demand for goods? Does advertising affect the price of goods? Explain.

- C. How We Exchange Goods.

## References:

Banks and Banking. 604-613

Barter. 631

Bimetallism. 740

Board of Trade. 808-810

Bullion. 1019

Check. 1323-1325

The Story of Commerce. 1582-1583

Credit. 1738

Letter of Credit. 1739

The Story of Economics. 2098-2099

Gresham's Law. 2063

Legal Tender. 3923

Mint. 4523-4525

Monetary Conferences. 4581

The Story of Money. 4582-4592

Weights and Measures. 7702-7703

1. How did primitive peoples exchange goods?
2. How important are weights and measures in facilitating the exchange of goods? Are weights and measures used among primitive peoples? 7702
3. How did men in early times estimate length and distance?
4. What is barter? What is the difference between barter and sale? Have you ever exchanged goods by means of barter? Do people in the United States to-day use barter as a method of exchange? Cite examples. 631; 1582
5. Is there any difference between the methods of exchanging products in rural communities and urban communities? Explain.
6. Who were perhaps the first merchants? Who were the greatest merchants of ancient times? 1582
7. What is money? 4582
8. Why is money such an important aspect of political economy? 2098
9. Do people use real money in buying and selling? Explain. 2098-2099
10. Does money itself have a price? Is it always worth the same? 4582

11. Did primitive man have use for money? Explain. 459<sup>1</sup>
12. Name some of the things used as substitutes for money to-day and in the past. 459<sup>0</sup>
13. Give four reasons why standard metals have been chosen for the world's money. 458<sup>5</sup>
14. What is the unit of the monetary system of the United States? 458<sup>2</sup>
15. What has been the object of the four international monetary conferences? Is the object an important one? Is it becoming less or more important? Explain. 458<sup>1</sup>
16. How long have people used money? 459<sup>1</sup>
17. Explain the difference between standard coins and token coins. 458<sup>3</sup>-458<sup>6</sup>
18. What provisions does the United States government make to safeguard against counterfeiting or defacing money? 458<sup>6</sup>
19. What is Gresham's Law? 206<sup>3</sup>
20. What is meant by bimetallism? State the argument for and against this system. 74<sup>0</sup>
21. What is bullion? 101<sup>9</sup>
22. State briefly why credit is important in modern industry and commerce. 173<sup>8</sup>
23. What is a letter of credit? What are traveler's checks? 173<sup>8</sup>-173<sup>9</sup>
24. What is a check? Is a check money? Will a check buy goods and pay debts as well as gold? Explain. What precautions should you take in signing a check? What is the difference between "endorsement in blank" and "endorsement in full"? 132<sup>3</sup>-132<sup>5</sup>, 209<sup>9</sup>
25. Give arguments for and against the purchase of goods on the installment plan. 173<sup>8</sup>
26. Give two important functions of a bank. 604
27. How old is banking? What were the first bankers called? When did modern banking begin? Where? 606
28. Give a brief historical sketch of banking in the United States. 606-610
29. Be able to answer all the questions on banks and banking on page 611.
30. Have Christian people ever been forbidden to accept interest in return for the use of their money? 610
31. What is a mint? Do individuals have a right to coin money? 452<sup>3</sup>-452<sup>5</sup>
32. What is legal tender? 392<sup>3</sup>
33. How does the Board of Trade facilitate the exchange of goods? Explain. 808-810

## RELATED SUBJECTS

Chamber of Commerce. 129<sup>8</sup>  
 Chamber of Commerce of the United States. 129<sup>8</sup>-129<sup>9</sup>  
 Free Trade. 2604

Balance of Trade. 576  
 Exchange. 234<sup>2</sup>  
 Trade Acceptance. 723<sup>3</sup>  
 Bank of the United States. 602-603  
 Bank of England. 601-602  
 Clearing House. 1461-1462  
 Fiat Money. 240<sup>5</sup>  
 Bill of Sale. 740

## D. How the Government Protects Us.

*References:*

Department of Commerce. 1583  
 Commercial Law. 1584  
 Counterfeiting. 1720-1721  
 Denominate Numbers. 1898-1903  
 Federal Trade Commission. 2390  
 Fraud. 2600  
 Interstate Commerce Act. 3490-3491  
 Metric System. 4424-4427  
 Standard Time. 6799-6800  
 Trade-Mark. 7233-7234  
 Weights and Measures. 7702-7703  
 Wildcat Banks. 7761

1. What is the function of the Department of Commerce? 1583
2. How does the international metric system facilitate the exchange of goods between nations? 4426
3. Show the relationship between the exchange of goods and the Interstate Commerce Act. 3490-3491
4. What is commercial law? To what extent is it concerned with the exchange of goods? 1584
5. When you buy a pound of meat from the butcher, what assurance do you have that you receive a pound?
6. Ask your grocer or butcher how often his scales are inspected by government authorities.
7. Is a gold coin worth more because it has the government stamp on it? Is a silver coin worth more because of the government stamp? Explain.
8. What were the "wildcat" banks? Why is it necessary to have banking laws? 7761, 604-613
9. In what way does the government protect our bank savings?
10. What is counterfeiting? How is it punished? Why is the punishment so severe? 1720-1721
11. What is a trade-mark? May a trade-mark be registered in the Patent Office? How do trade-marks help you? 7233-7235

## Supplementary Enterprises

1. How Primitive Peoples Exchange Goods.
2. Substitutes for Money. 4590
3. Foreign Monetary Units. 4589-4590, 4592  
 (See reference for each monetary unit.)
4. How the Crusades Affected the Exchange of Goods.

5. Foreign Commerce.
6. The Effect of Advertising upon the Exchange of Goods.
7. Coins of Olden Times: Denarius, 1891; Drachma, 2018; Ducat, 2045; Florin, 2485; Obolus, 5140 and 1319; Pine-Tree

- Shilling, 5624; Talent, 7007; Wampum, 7589.
8. The Board of Trade. 808-810
9. The Story of Money. 4582-4592
10. Banks and Banking. 604-613

## UNIT TWENTY-ONE

## Communication

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Early Modes of Communication.
- B. Telephone, Telegraph, Television, Radio, and Signaling.
- C. The Postal Service.
- D. The Newspaper.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Early Modes of Communication.  
*References:*  
Code Writing. 1524  
Cuneiform Inscriptions. 1784-1785  
Hieroglyphics. 3175-3177  
Language. 3858  
Sign Language. 6601  
Old and New Methods of Communication. 7061  
Writing. 7898

1. What does *language* mean? 3858
2. How many different spoken languages (approximately) are there in the world today? 3858
3. What is meant by a grammarless tongue? 3858
4. What is picture-writing? What is ideographic writing? 3176
5. How did the Indians send messages? 7898
6. What are cuneiform inscriptions? 1784-1785
7. What is sign language? When was it used as the chief means of communication? 6601
8. Turn to the pictures entitled. *Old and New Methods of Communication*, on page 7061. Are all these methods in use to-day?
9. How long has code writing been practiced? 1524
10. Describe the attempts which have been made to create a universal language. 3869-3870, 7560, 2298

- B. Telephone, Telegraph, Television, Radio, and Signaling.

*References:*

Cable. 1060-1063  
The Story of Radio. 5935-5968  
Signal Corps. 6597-6598  
Signaling and Signals. 6598-6601  
The Story of the Telegraph. 7058-7066  
Telephone. 7067-7080  
Television. 7084-7087

1. Who invented the telephone? In what year? 7067
2. Read the article quoted from a Boston daily newspaper. Did you realize before that the telephone was such a recent invention? 7067
3. When were photographs first successfully transmitted by telephone? 7074
4. What does the word *telegraph* mean? 7058
5. Who invented the telegraph? When? 7058
6. Give one or two incidents illustrating the speed with which news can be spread throughout the world by means of the telegraph. Compare this with colonial days. 7058
7. How long does it take a telegram sent from New York City to reach Sydney, Australia, a distance of twelve thousand miles? 7058
8. How many miles of line are used for telegraph purposes throughout the world? 7058
9. Enumerate the ways in which the telegraph is being used to-day. 7059-7060
10. See the map on page 1062 for the principal ocean cables.
11. When was the first public demonstration of television made? 7087
12. What is meant by the statement: "The radio is shrinking the world."
13. Do all nations have the same signal for a call for help?

- C. The Postal Service.

*References:*

The Air Mail. 129-131  
Dead-Letter Office. 1845  
Postage and Postage Stamps. 5768-5770  
International Postal Union. 5771  
The Story of the Postoffice Department. 5771-5777

1. What is the origin of the word *post*? What does it mean? 5771
2. In what century was the postal service first used by private individuals? 5771
3. In what year was the first postoffice established? 5774
4. Is the United States postal service a money-making enterprise? 5772
5. How many postoffices are there in the United States? How many employees? 5772

6. How many letters does the United States postal service handle per second? Per minute? Per hour? Per day? Per year?
7. How many postage stamps are sold each year in the United States? 5772
8. What is the Dead-Letter Office? How many letters go to it each year? Why? Whose fault is it? Is this an additional expense imposed upon the government? 5772, 1845
9. What is meant by free delivery? 5774
10. What is the International Postal Union? What is its purpose? 5771
11. When was air-mail service begun in the United States? 129-130
12. In how much less time is a letter carried from coast to coast by air than by rail? 129
13. What is the present flying schedule between New York and San Francisco? Compare this time with the time required in 1850, 1860, 1876, and 1923. 130
14. How many people in the United States are directly reached by air-mail service? 131

#### D. The Newspaper.

##### References:

Advertising. 60-66

Associated Press. 458

International News Service. 3487

Linotype. 4033-4036

The Story of Newspapers. 4953-4958

1. What did Napoleon Bonaparte mean when he said, "Four hostile newspapers are more to be feared than a thousand bayonets." 4953
2. What means of communication does the newspaper depend upon? 4953

3. When and where were the earliest attempts made to circulate news? What kind of news did those newspapers contain? 4956
4. In what year was the first serial newspaper of modern style printed in Europe? In what country? 4956
5. In what year was the first newspaper in America started? Was it successful? 4957
6. What are tabloid newspapers? Describe a tabloid, and if possible, bring one to class. Are there any tabloids to-day of wide circulation?
7. What is meant by direct-mail advertising? Is this a modern method of communication between the producer and consumer? To whom is it most advantageous? Discuss. 62
8. What is the Associated Press? How many newspapers are included in its membership? 458

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Some Well-Known Newspaper Men. (See list of *Related Subjects*, on page 4958.)
2. Signaling and Signals. 6597-6601
3. Some Pioneers in the Development of Modern Means of Communication: Joseph Henry, 3147; Samuel F. B. Morse, 4664; Cyrus W. Field, 2408; Mathew Fontaine Maury, 4350; Marconi, 4287-4288
4. Code Writing. 1524
5. A Universal Language. 3869-3870, 7560, 2298
6. Laying Ocean Cables. 1060-1063
7. The Air-Mail Service. 5776-5777
8. Television. 7084-7087
9. The Radio. 5935-5968

## UNIT TWENTY-TWO

### Transportation of Goods and People

#### Elements of the Unit

- A. Early Modes of Transportation.
- B. Transportation by Water.
- C. Transportation by Land.
- D. Transportation by Air.
- E. The Government and Transportation.

#### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. Early Modes of Transportation.

##### References:

The Story of the Automobile. 534-535

Caravan. 1189-1190

Cumberland Road. 1784

Trails of Early Days. 7237-7239

Transportation. 7246

Transportation and Commerce. 7380-7385

1. Were there any horses in America before

the white man arrived? Did the Indians use wheels before the white man arrived? 3406

2. What were the principal modes of travel used by the American Indians? 3406
3. What is perhaps the oldest agency of travel? 6562
4. Read carefully the article on *Transportation*. 7246-7251
5. Read the first paragraph of the section on *Transportation and Commerce*. What change in conditions of life is largely the result of improved transportation? Has the change in the conditions of life resulted in improved transportation, or has the development of transportation resulted in these changes in our way of living? Discuss. 7380

6. Read page 534 and the first column of page 535. Does climate and geographical location affect modes of transportation? Explain. Describe the mode of transportation of the Serbian peasant. Are we, with our swift-moving automobiles, more contented than he?
7. What means of transportation was developed first in early colonial America, water or rail? 7381
8. What two means of transportation became the first bonds of union between the East and the West? 7380
9. When was the first railroad in the United States begun? How long was it? 7380
10. In pioneer days, what was the chief motive power for the transportation of goods and people? 7237
11. Discuss the three periods or stages of road-making mentioned on pages 7237-7238.
12. What eight pioneer trails are historically important for their influences in the development of early American life? 7258-7259
13. Could George Washington in his day travel more rapidly than Julius Caesar or King Solomon? Explain. 7246
14. Describe a caravan journey across the deserts of Asia or Africa. 1189

#### B. Transportation by Water.

##### *References:*

The Old-Time Canal. 1157-1162  
 The Great Lakes Commerce. 2935  
 Lakes-to-Gulf Waterway. 3845  
 Leviathan. 3952-3953  
 Merchant Marine. 4404-4406  
 New York State Barge Canal. 4997-4998  
 The Story of the Panama Canal. 5331-5337  
 The Story of Ships. 6562-6570  
 Suez Canal. 6903-6904

1. Which is more expensive, transportation by land or by water? Why? 7381
2. How long have navigation canals been in operation for purposes of transportation? 1158
3. Is transportation by canals now used extensively in the United States? 1159, 4998
4. What is the trans-Atlantic speed record for steamships? When was it made? 6564
5. Is interest in inland waterways increasing or decreasing? Discuss. 3845
6. How extensive is commercial transportation over the Great Lakes? 2935

#### C. Transportation by Land.

##### *References:*

The Story of the Automobile. 534-546  
 Bicycle. 733-734  
 Electric Railway. 2187-2190

Lincoln Highway. 4022-4024  
 Locomotive. 4076-4082  
 Main Street of America. 4232-4233  
 Monorail Railroad. 4599-4600  
 Railroad. 5973-5984  
 Bureau of Public Roads. 6139  
 The Story of Roads and Streets. 6140-6145  
 Subway or Underground Railway. 6897-6900

1. What has been the immediate cause of the universal demand for good roads? Explain. 7237
2. What are some of the benefits of good roads? 6143-6144
3. What is the annual expenditure for public roads? 6145
4. How many passenger motorbusses are now in use in the United States? 7381
5. What is the "Main Street of America"? 4232-4233
6. What is the "Main Street of the United States"? 4024
7. What was the automobile speed law which was enforced in England until 1896? 535
8. How many people in the United States are employed on its railroads? 5980
9. How many miles of rails are there in the United States? 3490
10. How many tons of freight are carried by the railroads annually? How many passengers? 3490

#### D. Transportation by Air.

##### *References:*

The Story of Aircraft. 112-151  
 The Story of the Balloon. 584-586  
 Lindbergh, Charles A. 4025-4030  
 Zeppelin, Ferdinand. 7972-7973

1. How long have men thought of the possibilities of flying? 113
2. What may be said to be the three stages in the development of flying? 113
3. Who invented the balloon? In what year? 113
4. What is the mechanical difference between a balloon and a flying machine? Explain. 584
5. Who were the first passengers to have a balloon ride? 584
6. What are some of the valuable uses of balloons? 115, 585
7. Is air navigation by means of balloons commercially significant to-day? 586
8. When did the first passenger Zeppelin reach America? 116
9. In speaking of lighter than air aircraft, what does "ZR" mean? 116
10. What happened to the *Shenandoah*? 116
11. How did America get its *Los Angeles*? 117
12. Who were two American pioneers in the field of aviation? 118-120



13. What is the Air Commerce Act? When was it passed? 130-131
14. Why has the development of commercial aviation, until recent years, been more rapid in Europe than in America? 129-131
15. How many air lines are in regular operation in the United States? 131
16. How many miles do the regular air lines authorized in the United States cover? What is the total approximate mileage covered in a year by all scheduled flights? 131
17. What university in this country offers a four-year aeronautical engineering course which leads to a "flying" degree? 132
18. Is it safe to travel by air? Base your answer on the facts found in *Safety of Air Travel*. 132
19. What is a seadrome? Describe one. 134
20. What are some of the values of rapid freight transportation? 134-135
21. Has air-passenger transportation been developed in Europe to any great extent? Discuss. 136-137
22. Tell about the trip of the first ocean airliner. When was it made? How many passengers did the air-liner carry? Between what two points was the trip made? 137-138
23. When was the first flight around the world made? 140
24. Tell about Lindbergh's famous Atlantic conquest. 147-150, 4025-4030

#### E. The Government and Transportation.

##### References:

Common Carrier. 1585-1586  
 Franchise. 2589-2590  
 Interstate Commerce Act. 3490-3491  
 Monopoly. 4599  
 Municipal Ownership. 4743-4744  
 Public Utilities. 5872  
 Esch-Cummins Act. 5982  
 Government Ownership and Operation. 5982-5984

1. What is a common carrier? 1585
2. Under what two obligations does the common law place the carrier? Are they regulated by statute law? 1585
3. Write a paper of one page explaining in your own words the responsibilities of carriers of goods and passengers. 1585-1586
4. What is the Interstate Commerce Act? Why was it passed? Has it been successful? What are some of the distinctive features of the act in its present form? 3490
5. What is the Interstate Commerce Commission? How many members are on the Commission? How are they appointed? What are the duties? 3490
6. What is the Esch-Cummins Act? What are its purposes? 5982
7. Does the government now own and operate any railroads? 5982
8. State the arguments for and against government ownership of railroads. 5983-5984
9. What is a monopoly? How does it apply to transportation? 4599, 4743-4744
10. What is meant by municipal ownership? Discuss the arguments for and against municipal ownership. 4743-4744
11. What is a franchise? Discuss fully. 2589-2590

#### Supplementary Enterprises

1. Great Pioneers and Heroes in Transportation: George Stephenson, 6828; Robert Fulton, 2634-2635; Samuel P. Langley, 3857; Orville and Wilbur Wright, 7896-7897; Charles A. Lindbergh, 4025-4030; Richard E. Byrd, 1053-1054.
2. Early Modes of Travel.
3. Modes of Travel in the Orient.
4. The Pony Express.
5. Travel in Colonial Days.
6. The Proposed Great Lakes Waterway.
7. Air Transportation.
8. How the Government Aids Transportation.

### UNIT TWENTY-THREE

#### Thrift and Conservation

##### Elements of the Unit

- A. How Goods Are Wasted.
- B. Conservation of Natural and Human Resources.
- C. How We Can Help to Save.

##### Questions, Problems, and Exercises

- A. How Goods Are Wasted.

##### References:

Accident Prevention. 15-16  
 Fire Losses. 2427-2428

Destroyers of the Forests. 2534-2536

Income Distribution. 3373-3374

1. What percentage of the average family's income is wasted? (See expenditure chart, on page 3373.) If your family is an average family, how many dollars did it waste last year?
2. Review Element B, Losses from Fire, Accident, Crime, and Natural Disasters, in Unit Eight, The Community and Protection. Why should these losses be counted as waste?

3. It has been estimated that the chimneys in Chicago throw out nearly 180,000 tons of solid matter in a year. Does this represent a waste of natural resources? Explain. 6654, 6689
4. Is child labor wasteful? Explain.
5. Explain how unemployment is a source of waste.
6. Make a list of all the instances of wastefulness which you have seen in your home, school, and community.
7. What is a bargain? Is it sometimes wasteful to buy bargains? Explain.

#### B. Conservation of Natural and Human Resources.

##### References:

Alberta (Natural Resources; Irrigation). 185, 186-188

Government Protection of Birds. 766-770

Boulder Dam. 895-896

Child Labor. 1375-1376

Coolidge Dam. 1659

The Story of Conservation. 1622-1623

Dam. 1814

Elephant Butte Dam. 2202, 2203

The Story of Forests and Forestry. 2533-2541

The Story of Irrigation. 3553-3559

Minimum Wage. 4501-4502

Gifford Pinchot. 5619

Reclamation Service. 6022-6024

Natural Resources. 7368-7373

1. What is the meaning of conservation? 1622
2. What are natural resources? Name four. 1622
3. Has the United States government been active in conserving natural resources? Tell the history of the conservation movement. 1623
4. How is fire prevention related to conservation?
5. Tell about the work of the government in protecting birds. 766-770
6. How many acres of forests are destroyed annually by fire? What is the annual loss of forests from the ravages of forest insects? 2534, 2536
7. How much forest is consumed in one issue of a great city Sunday newspaper? 2536
8. Is America consuming forest lands faster than they are being grown? Discuss. 2538
9. What country has been a leader in forest conservation? 2538
10. Should the government be as interested in the conservation of human life as in natural resources? Explain. What does the government do to conserve human life?
11. In what way does legislation requiring safety appliances and sanitary conditions

in places of employment conserve human resources?

12. How do minimum wage laws conserve human resources? 4501-4502
  13. What is irrigation? Is it a recent development? Discuss. 3553
  14. Tell about the development of irrigation in the United States. 3553-3558
  15. What is the purpose of the United States Reclamation Service? 6022-6024
- #### C. How We Can Help to Save.

##### References:

Savings Banks. 610-613

Thrift. 7160-7162

1. What is the meaning of thrift? 7161
2. Why should we avoid waste? Is it true that the more we waste the more we must work? Answer in terms of your understanding of wealth, work, utility, capital, supply, demand, and goods.
3. Is thrift a virtue, as love, loyalty, and sympathy are? Explain.
4. Explain Cicero's statement: "Economy is of itself a great revenue."
5. Explain this old Latin proverb: "No gain is more certain than that which proceeds from the economical use of what you have."
6. Read carefully the statements on thrift made by Simon W. Straus, Lord Rosebery, and Woodrow Wilson. Which statement do you like best? Why? 7161
7. Describe what is being done in America to promote thrift. 7161-7162
8. Have you ever made a budget for your own expenditures? Try it.
9. What are school savings banks? Do you have one in your school? 613
10. What can you do to help save natural resources?
11. How can you help save your own "human resources"?
12. Is time valuable? How much of it do you waste? Do you have a schedule which you follow in preparing your school work? If not, "budget" your time and follow the plan regularly. Report your experiences to the class.
13. List all the ways in which an individual may be thrifty without being "stingy."

##### Supplementary Enterprises

1. The Conservation of Natural Resources. 7368-7373; 1622-1623
2. The United States Reclamation Service. 6022-6024
3. Large Dam Projects in the United States. 895-896, 1814, 390, 3341, 3766, 3767. 4751-4753, 1659, 2202, 2203
4. The Conservation of Human Resources.
5. Evidences of Waste in My Community.
6. An Ideal Family Budget.

## Part Five. Occupations

## UNIT TWENTY-FOUR

## Choosing a Vocation

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Why We Need to Work.
- B. How To Choose One's Work.
- C. How To Prepare for One's Work.

## Questions, Problems, and Exercises

## References:

Ambition. 244-246

Industry. 3445-3446

The Story of Manual Training. 4270-4272

Technical and Industrial Education. 7052-7053

The Story of Vocational Guidance. 7551-7555

Determination of Vocational Aptitudes. 7555-7559

1. Why do we need to work? Why do we have to work for some things and not for others?
2. Should everyone work who is physically and mentally able? Why? Discuss this statement: "There are two classes of social parasites: the hobos and the idle rich."
3. Approximately how many young people each year face the problem of choosing and entering an occupation? 7555
4. List five occupations that help to satisfy your daily wants. Name five which contribute in no way to fulfilling your desires. Are the latter *unproductive* occupations? Explain.
5. Name five new occupations which have originated within the last ten years.
6. Explain this statement: "It takes all kinds of people to make up this world." 7551
7. What is meant by the expression, "Jack-of-all-trades"?
8. Do you think most people can do several things equally well, or is there "one best vocation for each individual"?
9. Why is the choice of an occupation more difficult to-day than ever before? 7551
10. Should one choose a highly specialized vocation early in life, perhaps while one is still in high school? Give reasons. 7551
11. Discuss two purposes of vocational guidance. 7551-7552
12. What is the meaning of *vocational aptitudes*? Why has there been but little concern over vocational aptitudes until recently? What change in our industrial life has created a need for the study of qualifications for a particular job? 7555
13. How do physical and economic factors sometimes hinder one from entering the occupation of his choice? 7556-7557
14. Discuss three things which a boy or girl may do to become acquainted with various occupations. 7552
15. Which is more difficult to analyze and understand, the occupations of the world or the human beings in it? Explain. 7552
16. What is the best method of learning about vocations? Is this always possible? 7552; 7555
17. Is intelligence the most important factor in determining success in an occupation? Discuss. 7557
18. What occupations, according to the chart at top of page 7557, require the highest intelligence? The lowest?
19. Do some people have too much intelligence for their jobs? Explain. 7557
20. Name and discuss three aptitudes other than physique and intelligence which have vocational value. 7557-7558
21. In choosing a vocation, should you depend entirely upon the advice of your parents, teachers, and friends? Why? 7554
22. What is a "blind-alley" job? 7554
23. Read carefully the suggestions found at top of page 7555.
24. Describe the provisions made in the public schools for vocational guidance. 7552, 7555-7556
25. Choose a vocation in which you are interested, and evaluate it by means of the score card on pages 7553-7554. After you have studied the vocation, study yourself in relation to it. Answer all the questions in the score card on page 7554. Did the vocation prove to be a good one? Are you qualified to pursue it?
26. Interview twenty-five working people, and ask them whether or not they are satisfied with their work. Formulate ten or fifteen questions to ask in your interview. Try to discover their fitness for their occupations by keeping in mind the two score cards on pages 7553-7554. Report your results to the class.
27. Make a Career Book. First choose an occupation in which you are interested. Then find out all you can about it through reading, observation of men on the job, and interviews. Next evaluate the vocation by means of the score card found on page 7553. Discuss each item at length. Complete your study with an analysis of your own characteristics and aptitudes. Consult the score card on page 7554. Put the material together in an attractive booklet entitled "My Career Book."

## UNIT TWENTY-FIVE

## Making a Living

## Elements of the Unit

- A. Agriculture.  
*References:*  
 Agricultural Education. 88-90  
 Agricultural Experiment Station. 90-91  
 Agricultural Extension Work. 91  
 The Story of Agriculture. 92-104  
 Agronomy. 106-107  
 The Story of Boys' and Girls' Clubs. 903-908  
 Breeding. 940-941  
 The Story of Canning Clubs. 1172-1173  
 Cattle. 1250-1258  
 Dairying. 1807-1811  
 Dry Farming. 2042-2044  
 Farmers' Institute. 2371  
 The Story of Gardening. 2683-2687  
 Horticulture. 3255  
 Intensive Farming. 3473-3474  
 The Story of Irrigation. 3553-3559  
 Landscape Gardening. 3854-3855  
 The Story of Poultry. 5787-5790  
 Rotation of Crops. 6213-6214  
 Wealth in Farms. 7373-7377
- B. Forestry and Lumbering.  
*References:*  
 The Story of Forests and Forestry. 2533-2541  
 Lumber. 4145-4153  
 The Story of Trees. 7258-7261
- C. Mining and Oil Refining.  
*References:*  
 The Story of Coal. 1497-1507  
 The Story of Conservation. 1622  
 Copper. 1666-1669  
 Diamond. 1928-1933  
 Gold. 2855-2860  
 Minerals and Mineralogy. 4498-4500  
 The Story of Mining. 4502-4508  
 Petroleum. 5520-5529  
 Quarry and Quarrying. 5904-5906  
 Salt. 6340-6344  
 Silver. 6613-6614  
 Utah (Mining). 7432-7433

## D. Fishing.

*References:*

The Story of Fishes. 2440-2445  
 Salmon. 6333-6339  
 Whale. 7726-7730

## E. Building

*References:*

The Story of Architecture. 359-368  
 Brick and Brick-Laying. 945-946  
 Bridge. 948-953  
 Brooklyn Bridge. 976  
 Building. 1009-1011  
 Carpentry. 1207-1211  
 Concrete Construction. 1598-1600  
 The Story of Engineering. 2237-2242  
 The Story of Invention. 3493-3500  
 The Story of Iron and Steel. 3534, 3551  
 Plumbing. 5663-5664  
 Surveying. 6943-6944  
 Wood Carving. 7829

## F. Manufacturing Goods.

*References:*

Books and Bookbinding. 851-858  
 Boots and Shoes. 861-862  
 Cloth. 1489-1491  
 Costume. 1706-1708  
 The Story of Dress. 2033-2036  
 Electroplating. 2195  
 Engraving. 2272-2274  
 Factory and Factory System. 2359-2360  
 The Story of Iron and Steel. 3534-3550  
 Lithography. 4054-4055  
 Photo-Engraving. 5579  
 Printing. 5817-5820  
 Printing Press. 5820-5823  
 Standardization in Industry. 6797-6798  
 Textile. 7130-7132  
 Weaving. 7693-7695

## G. Transporting Goods and People.

*References:*

The Story of Aircraft. 112-151  
 The Story of the Automobile. 534-546  
 Electric Railway. 2187-2190  
 Locomotive. 4076-4082  
 Navigation. 4840-4841  
 Railroad. 5973-5984  
 The Story of Ships. 6562-6570  
 Transportation. 7246-7251

## H. Commercial and Clerical Occupations.

*References:*

Accounting. 17-18  
 Advertising. 60-66  
 The Story of Banking. 604-613  
 Bookkeeping. 838-850

Chain Stores. 1295  
 Department Store. 1910-1911  
 Shorthand Writing. 6572-6574  
 The Story of the Telegraph. 7058-7066  
 Telephone. 7067-7080

I. Working for the Government.

*References:*

The Story of the Army. 412-417  
 The Story of Civil Service. 1449-1452  
 Coast Guard. 1509-1514  
 Fire Department. 2429-2433  
 Marine Corps. 4292-4293  
 Military Academy. 4475-4477  
 Naval Academy. 4835-4839  
 Navy. 4842-4851  
 Police. 5701-5702  
 The Story of the Postoffice Department.  
     5771-5777  
 Secret Service. 6477-6478

J. The Professions.

*References:*

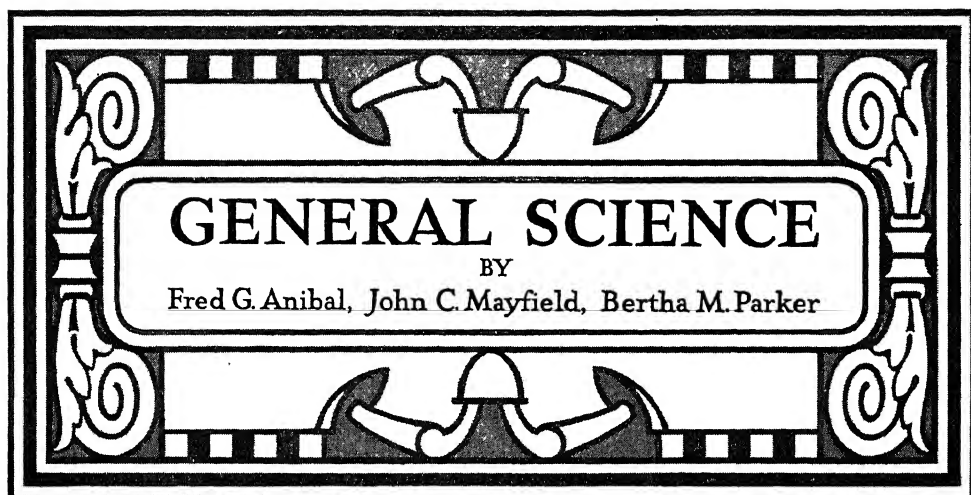
Dentistry. 1903-1905

Druggist or Pharmacist, 2039  
 Law. 3897-3899  
 Medical Schools. 4372-4373  
 The Story of Newspapers. 4953-4958  
 Story of the Opera. 5213; 5225  
 The Story of Painting. 5299-5308  
 Schools for Teachers. 6426-6427  
 The Story of Sculpture. 6455-6462  
 Theater. 7136-7140

K. Home-Making.

*References:*

The Story of Cookery. 1649-1650  
 Costume. 1706-1708  
 Domestic Art. 2003-2009  
 Food. 2508-2513  
 Preservation of Food Products. 2514-2519  
 The Story of Home Economics. 3205-3210  
 The Story of Household Arts. 3262-3264  
 The Story of Industrial Art. 3433-3444  
 Interior Decoration. 3478-3482  
 Nutrition. 5121-5126  
 Sewing. 6514-6519  
 Sewing Machine. 6519-6520



### Introduction

In this section there are presented twenty-two units in natural science. Each unit consists of a block of material, all of which relates directly to one central idea. This group of units may serve as a syllabus for a one-year course in general science such as is commonly taught in public schools, but preferably should be a basis for a three-year course. The material has been selected and organized for the use of pupils in the upper grades of the elementary school, the junior high school, and the earlier years of the senior high school before the special sciences are introduced as organized courses. The easier units have been placed first, and those which require more mature thinking are placed last. The units have been prepared for use independently, so it is not necessary that they be taken up in the order in which they appear.

It is not presumed that this material covers the whole field of general science. Significant and interesting aspects of the everyday world with which we are constantly in touch have been selected and organized. The scientific importance of each point which is included has been developed and explained as it relates to the other factors and to the general meaning of the unit as a whole. Many more units could be selected and organized, as the field of elementary science is exceedingly fruitful, and the material contained is intensely interesting and significant in a modern scientific age.

Each block of material is organized in accordance with a plan which is consistent throughout the section. At the beginning are listed the main understandings. This list of understandings does not represent the outline of the matter treated in the body of the unit. The separate ideas listed here express the entire content of the unit in very concise statements. A study of the material in the body of the unit is intended to furnish the learner with

a background for a full understanding of the significance of each idea stated here as a main understanding. For the teacher using this material, these statements are the concrete aims for the study of the unit.

A story introduces each unit. The purpose of this story is to prepare the way for a more detailed study of the references listed later. This presentation story serves to bind all of the ideas together and to stimulate further investigation by calling attention to the significant and interesting features of science which are more fully explained on the pages indicated in the references. The story is not intended to take the place of the subject matter of any science textbook. It is a bare framework, to which are to be added the many and extensive ideas which are gained as a result of more extended study.

The main body of the unit is the Study Outline. The material is here arranged in a logical order under appropriate headings to facilitate study. Questions are placed in this division for the purpose of giving definite guidance for the study of the articles contained in the main body of this encyclopedia. It is felt that this type of study will result in a better grasp of the material than reading without there being definite points in the reader's mind to be cleared up. As far as possible, questions which can be answered by 'yes' or 'no' have been avoided. In a great many instances, definite page references to *THE WORLD BOOK* have been given after a question. The answer to that question is to be found on that page. Where no page reference is given, the answer is included either in the material referred to for the answer to the previous question or in the general references at the beginning of that particular section.

Following the Study Outline is a Things To Do section. Here are included projects, problems, games, and puzzles, all dealing directly with the material of the unit. After a study of

the unit, the reader can test his ability by trying to do the things suggested in this section. This part is, in a sense, an extension of the unit for the benefit of the reader who cares to go further with the study of the ideas introduced before. Answers to the less obvious puzzles and problems are added so that the reader can check up on his accuracy.

The units may be made use of in three ways: (1) for independent study, (2) by a pupil in conjunction with his regular school work, and (3) by a teacher in preparing material for a class of pupils in general science.

The content material of these units is drawn from a field which is of tremendous importance to anyone who desires to know more about the scientific significance of his surroundings. All of the problems are problems of everyday life. Constantly are we brought into contact with the workings of natural science. A systematic study of this field will be of real value to one who has never had the opportunity to take courses dealing with science. The organization is well suited for the person who desires to study independently. The introductory story presents the general idea of the whole unit. The Study Outline can be easily followed, as it is arranged logically. The questions bring out the interesting and important points to be found in the references to which the reader is directed. The last section furnishes an excellent type of test and a means of making use of the science information which has been gained.

The alert pupil who is studying general science as a regular school subject either in the elementary school or in the high school will find a wealth of organized material in these units which will be a constant help in understanding the regular course. The Things To Do section is full of suggestions for interesting projects, both very simple and more extensive. In many cases, the units are identical with the

units in the regular school course, as far as general ideas are concerned, and much additional interesting reference matter can very quickly be located by turning to the pages indicated.

The teacher will find the organization of the material very helpful. The units are the result of actual class-room experience and have proven successful. The main understandings at the beginning of each unit are the unit objectives. The presentation stories make convenient introductions to similar units, even though the text-book organization of the unit may differ from the one offered here. Much valuable enrichment material is contained in the Things To Do sections at the end of each unit. Here will be found suggestions for the faster workers who desire additional work and care to undertake projects. Both very simple and quite extensive problems and projects have been included. Puzzles and interesting class exercises and games will be found here which will make the general science course intensely interesting and instructive. The reference material has been carefully selected to suit the abilities of general science pupils. It can easily be read and understood by elementary-school pupils. The units may be used in whole or in part, and since each unit is complete in itself, it is not necessary to take into consideration the units which may precede it in the order presented here.

It is hoped that the use of this material will stimulate both the pupil and the teacher, and will lead to further exploration into the field of natural science. This whole section of organized material barely touches the surface. There is a wealth of material in *THE WORLD BOOK* alone, and Nature is continually presenting new and more interesting problems. Once started, the investigations into Nature's secrets will be an absorbing pastime which will yield valuable returns.

## UNIT ONE

### Rocks as Records of the Earth's History

#### Main Understandings

1. The earth is very old, and its history is a history of great change.
2. Rocks furnish the sole record of the history of the earth before the age of man.
3. Different kinds and arrangements of rocks tell different chapters of the story of the earth.

#### Stories the Rocks Tell Us

Imagine for a moment that the clock of the ages has been turned back so that you have a glimpse of the earth as it was at one time in the Age of Reptiles, many millions of years ago. You notice at once the great reptiles roaming about. The growls of some of them may frighten you; no wonder, for one of these reptiles is the greatest flesh-eating animal of

all time, an ugly beast nearly forty feet long, with huge jaws filled with sharp teeth. Many of the reptiles you see, however, are placid, plant-eating animals. Some of the land plants may look familiar, but many are strange to you.

In our imagination, let us take an even longer trip into the past and see the earth as it was a few hundred million years earlier. How much sea there is; much of the dry land of modern

times is covered by it! At the water's edge there are starfish, mollusks with shells fifteen feet long, trilobites, and many other marine animals which have no common names because they lived and died millions of years before there were any people on earth to name them. No matter where you look, you find no trees or grass or flowers. Indeed, much of the land is bare rock. No animals scamper over the rocks, and no birds fly overhead. Not a sound do you hear but the roar of the waves, the rustle of the wind, and the rolling of an occasional rock down hill. The animals themselves make practically no noise; no animal with a voice has yet appeared on earth. A queer world indeed compared to the world of to-day!

Even if you turn the clock of the ages back to this time of long ago, you are not turning it back to the time when the earth was new. The earth was already many, many million years old.

How, you may wonder, do we know about the earth as it was millions of years ago? No people lived to leave records during the Age of Reptiles or before that time. The answer is that scientists have learned to read the story of the earth from the rocks. They have found in the rocks many fossils, which are traces of the plants and animals of long ago. They know where the old seas and lakes used to be by studying the rocks. These rocks show that some regions of the earth have sunk below the water and have risen from the water time after time. Scientists have found out about volcanoes and lava flows of long ago by finding volcanic rocks. Rocks show that there have been great mountain ranges where there are no high mountains now, and that there are mountains now where there were no mountains a few million years ago. Rocks tell, too, that there have been changes of climate—that there have been times when the heat-loving magnolias of the south grew as far north as Greenland, and other times when great ice sheets covered millions of square miles of what is now cultivated land. Forest regions have changed to deserts, and deserts to forest regions, according to the records of the rocks.

Rocks have not told us all that we should like to know about the earth's history (probably they will never be able to do so), but day by day scientists are finding out more about the story of the earth before men lived here.

If you are interested in the story the rocks tell, you will find much more about it in the volumes of *THE WORLD BOOK*. In some of the many articles you will see that names are given to different periods of the earth's history. It is not important for you to try to remember these names. The story of the earth is so long that scientists have divided the time that it covers into periods and have given these

periods such names as Ordovician, Permian, and Triassic.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK* Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

I. **Our Changing Earth.** See *THE STORY OF GEOLOGY* (Nature and Scope of Geology, 2732; Work of the Atmosphere, 2732-2733; Work of the Hydrosphere, 2733-2734; The Work of Plants and Animals, 2734; Earth Movements and Volcanoes, 2734; Mountains and Plateaus, 2737); *EARTHQUAKES\**, 2084-2086; *FAULTS*, 2382; *VOLCANO*, 7560-7564; *GLACIERS*, 2820-2822; *GLACIAL EPOCH*, 2817-2819; *ORDOVICIAN PERIOD*, 5242; *PERMIAN EPOCH*, 5490-5491.

1. "Geologists find the clue to what has taken place in the past by observing the forces now at work in changing the surface of the earth." What forces are now at work changing the surface of the earth? 2732-2734
2. If rivers are constantly carrying material to the sea, why does not the earth become a shoreless ocean? 2732
3. Is the land rising anywhere at present? 2734
4. Why isn't "burning mountain" a good name for a volcano? 7562
5. What is an active volcano? An extinct volcano? 7563
6. Can lava come only out of a mountain? 2560
7. How are mountains made? 2737
8. How was the mountain shown in the illustration on page 7561 probably made?
9. What changes do earthquakes make in the earth's surface? 2084
10. What is a fault? 2382
11. How did the Greeks explain volcanoes? 2742
12. In what sorts of places may glaciers be found to-day? 2820
13. What are crevasses? 2820
14. How can the movement of a glacier be measured? 2822
15. What does a glacier do to the regions over which it passes? 2822
16. Are all glaciers like rivers of ice? 2822
17. Can trees grow on glaciers? 2822
18. Has the part of North America which is now dry land always been dry land? 5242



19. Will there ever be another ice age? 2819
20. What are some of the great changes which took place in the period of the earth's history called the Permian Epoch? 5491, 2741

**II. The Book of the Earth.** See THE STORY OF GEOLOGY (The Book of the Earth, 2732; Reading the Rocks, 2737-2738; Duration of Eras, 2738); HIEROGLYPHICS, 3176.

21. What are the "pages" of the earth? 2732
22. How long has the earth book been in the making? 2738
23. What is the "geologic column"? 2738
24. Probably scientists will never be able to read the complete story of the earth from the rocks. Why? 2732, 2338
25. We do not need rocks to tell us the story of important changes after men began keeping records of such changes. What is the probable date of the earliest known writings of man? 3176. Must rocks tell the larger or the smaller part of the story of the earth?

**III. Reading the Book of the Earth.**

**A. Rocks Which Tell Us of the Lakes and Seas of Long Ago.** See SEDIMENTARY ROCKS\*, 6479; LIMESTONE, 4007; ORDOVICIAN PERIOD, 5242; DEVONIAN PERIOD, 1925; TRIASSIC PERIOD, 7266-7267; SHALE, 6538-6539; STRATIFIED ROCKS, 6875; DIP, 1954.

26. Of what is limestone made? Sandstone? Shale? Conglomerate? 6479
27. How are these rocks usually arranged? 6479, 6875
28. Acid is used as a test for limestone. What happens when acid is dropped on limestone? 4007
29. Chalk and coral are made of what? 4007
30. How was marble formed? 4007
31. Knowing how limestone is made helps you to read what story from a layer of limestone?
32. What do the thick layers of limestone mentioned on page 7267 tell?
33. What can you tell about the county Devon region during the Devonian Period? 1925

34. What rock especially tells of the submergence of great areas of North America in the period called the Ordovician? 5242
35. What is slate? 6539
36. Do all layers of rock lie in a horizontal position? Explain your answer. 1954
37. The diagram on page 2739 shows one way in which mountains are made. Notice the layers of rock.

**B. Rocks Which Tell Us of Volcanoes and Lava Flows of Long Ago.** See LAVA\*, 3895-3896; TRIASSIC PERIOD, 7267; BASALT, 632-633; IGNEOUS ROCKS, 3347; GRANITE, 2898; CRYSTALLINE ROCKS, 1765; DIABASE, 1927; OBSIDIAN, 5146.

38. What does lava form when it cools? 3895
39. Find, from the references given above, the names of five rocks which tell scientists about the volcanoes and lava flows of long ago.
40. Does lava always reach the surface when it is forced up? 3896
41. How would you account for finding granite between layers of sedimentary rocks? 3896.
42. How were the Palisades along the Hudson River made? 7267
43. Of what rock are the Palisades made? 633
44. How do we know that there were great lava flows long ago in Northwestern United States and in India? 633
45. When were the crystals formed in granite? 1765
46. What is peculiar about the volcanic rock, obsidian? 5146
47. What are the three minerals commonly found in granite? 2898

**C. Fossils and the Stories They Tell.**

See DINOSAURIA\*, 1948-1952; FOS-SIL\*, 2548-2550; ICHTHYOSAURUS\*, 3336; IGUANODON, 3348-3349; MAMMOTH\*, 4243; MASTODON\*, 4338; PTERODACTYL\*, 5869-5870; EVOLUTION (Conclusions from Fossils), 2338; GEOLOGY (The Book of the Earth), 2732; GLYP-TODON, 2846-2847; HORSE (Evo-lution and History), 3243, 3246.

48. What are fossils? 2548, 2338

49. Have there always been animals with backbones on the earth? 2550, 2338
50. How can you account for the finding of fossils of sea animals in the rocks on land? 2549
51. Does it surprise you that the fossil fish pictured on page 2550 was found embedded in limestone? Why or why not? 2548
52. What would finding fossils of sea animals in the rocks of a region tell about that region?
53. How do we know that there once lived such an animal as the glyptodon? 2847
54. Can we tell the whole story of the plants and animals of long ago from fossils? 2338
55. Fossils of what kinds of animals are found in the oldest rocks containing fossils? 2338
56. In what kinds of rocks would you look for fossils? 2338, 2548
57. On page 2735 there are eight illustrations, all but one of which are pictures of fossils. Which one is not a fossil?
58. The diagram on page 2739 shows that the first-known traces of fishes were found in a layer of rock lower than that in which the first-known traces of birds were found. How do you account for this?
59. What does the word "dinosaur" mean? 1948
60. What proofs do scientists have that dinosaurs really lived? 1948
61. Which of the following statements is true? 1948  
All dinosaurs were very large.  
All dinosaurs were very ferocious.  
All dinosaurs had heads which were very small in comparison with the sizes of their bodies.
62. What evidence do you get from the picture on page 1948 that such a skeleton as that shown on page 1949 is difficult to assemble?
63. Why must the picture on page 3336 be labeled as the "supposed" form of the ichthyosaurus?
64. What impresses you as being the most interesting fact about the iguanodon? 3348-3349

65. Are we more or less sure of how the mammoth looked than of how the dinosaurs looked? 4243
  66. At what time did the mammoths live? 4243
  67. What other extinct animal was very much like the mammoth? 4338
  68. How do you account for the fact that no common name is given for the pterodactyl? 5870
  69. What do fossils tell about the horse? 3243, 3246
- D. The Story of Coal.** See COAL (The Story of Coal, 1497-1498; Proof of the Origin of Coal, 1498); CARBONIFEROUS PERIOD, 1194; GEOLOGY (The Story by Eras), 2741.
70. How long ago is the coal age supposed to have been? 1498
  71. How was coal made? 1497
  72. How can coal be rightly called "buried sunshine"? 1497
  73. How can scientists tell how coal was formed? 1498-1499
  74. Why do we find coal in veins? 1497
  75. Coal was formed chiefly of what plants? 2741, 1194
  76. What animals were on the earth during the great coal age? 1194
- E. The Great Ice Age.** See GLACIAL EPOCH\*, 2817-2819; MORAINES\*, 4647; GLACIERS, 2822; THE STORY OF GEOLOGY (The Story by Eras), 2741.
77. Was the region where you live covered by ice during the great ice age? 2818
  78. How thick was the ice sheet which covered Northern North America during this Glacial Epoch? 2818
  79. Did the ice sheets advance only once? How was this discovered? 2818-2819
  80. About how much of North America was covered by ice sheets at the time of their greatest extent? 2818
  81. What animals were common at that time? 2819
  82. What did the glaciers leave to prove that there was a great ice age? 2818
  83. What is a terminal moraine? 2818, 2822

84. What is glacial drift? 2818
85. What marks do glaciers leave on rocks? 2822
86. How do the terminal moraines left by the glaciers of the great ice age look now? 4647
87. Did man live on the earth during this glacial epoch? 2819
88. Has there ever been an ice age in Southern continents? 2741

### Things to Do

1. Make plasticine models of some of the animals of long ago. The pictures on pages 1948-1952 will be very helpful.
2. Draw in color a picture similar to the one on page 7561. Color the hot lava red.
3. Start a rock and mineral collection. Prepare a box for your collection.
4. Make alum crystals in this way: Heat a cupful of water in a pan. As soon as the water boils, remove it from the fire, and add powdered alum to the water, little by little, until no more will dissolve. Put in the solution a string on which the crystals may form. Stand the solution aside to cool. It should cool slowly. Examine the resulting crystals. Are they all the same shape?

### 5. A Puzzle: Jumbled Letters.

- (1) N D O A S R U I
- (2) E D P A R S L F
- (3) S E A R O M I N
- (4) D I S B O N A I
- (5) M T O O A D S N

Arrange the letters in (1) to spell the name of an animal of long ago.

Arrange the letters in (2) to spell the

name of one of the minerals in granite. Arrange the letters in (3) to spell the name for hills of rock rubbish left by glaciers.

Arrange the letters in (4) to spell the name of a volcanic rock sometimes called "volcanic glass."

Arrange the letters in (5) to spell the name of extinct animals somewhat like elephants.

6. Imagine you have turned the clock of the ages back to the great ice age; tell what you would see.

7. Draw a picture to give an idea of the depth of the ice sheets during the great ice age, as compared with our highest skyscraper.

8. Put a drop of weak hydrochloric acid on a piece of limestone. Notice the bubbles which arise. Test chalk and coral in this way.

9. Put a few drops of water on a piece of shale. Notice the smell. Do all rocks smell like mud when wet?

10. The accompanying diagram, first illustration, tells the beginning of the story of how coal was made. Plants, among them giant rushes, are growing in a swamp.

The second diagram shows the next step in the story. The others should continue the story, and show why coal is found deep in the ground.

Answers:

5. (1) D I N O S A U R
- (2) F E L D S P A R
- (3) M O R A I N E S
- (4) O B S I D I A N
- (5) M A S T O D O N

## UNIT TWO

### Magnets

#### Main Understandings

1. There are two kinds of magnets: permanent magnets and electromagnets.
2. All magnets attract iron and steel.
3. Magnets have poles. Unlike poles attract each other; like poles repel each other.
4. The earth acts as a huge magnet with magnetic poles.
5. Electromagnets are much more important than permanent magnets, because their magnetism can be controlled absolutely by manipulation of the electric current.

### The Magic of Magnets

Probably you have played with small horseshoe magnets and have found out many things about magnets by doing so. You doubtless know that with one of these magnets you can pick up small bits of iron and steel, and that the magnet holds these bits until you shake or pull them off. You may have learned, too, that the force of a magnet extends for some distance from it; that a nail becomes a magnet when it is touching a magnet; that a magnet will act through materials such as paper, wood,

and glass, which it does not attract; and that with one magnet you can make other magnets. Perhaps from experiments with two magnets you have discovered how magnets act toward one another.

The horseshoe magnets which are common toys are permanent magnets, that is, they keep their magnetism for a long time. Permanent magnets need not be horseshoe shaped. Indeed, the most useful permanent magnets are straight, not bent. These most useful permanent magnets are the needles of compasses.

If you have read Rudyard Kipling's "Puck

of Pook's Hill," you surely remember that the voyages of Witta the Dane were guided by a "wise iron" which pointed always to the south, and that Witta explained its action by saying that there was an evil spirit in the iron which strove night and day to return to the country in the south from which it had come. Of course, you understand that the "wise iron" was merely a little permanent magnet fastened in such a way that it was free to act as a compass. In the early days of compasses, before scientists had discovered that the earth is a huge magnet which pulls a compass needle into a north-south position, people may well have thought that sorcery had something to do with the way a compass needle works.

We who live in this age of electricity are far more likely to be amazed at other things magnets can do than at the way compasses act. It does seem almost like magic to see a magnet lift a load of twenty thousand pounds of iron and drop it at the exact time and place the operator wishes. Lifting red hot blocks of steel, breaking up scrap iron by dropping a huge pear-shaped iron weight called a "skull-cracker" on it, removing bits of iron and steel from wheat which is to be ground into flour, unloading barrels of nails and heavy machinery, separating scraps of iron and steel from scraps of other metals, and sweeping up the bits of steel at the end of a day's work in a needle factory are other tasks that these modern magnets are called upon to do. It is not to be wondered at that magicians find them useful in some of their tricks.

The magnets which are among the marvels of to-day are not permanent magnets, but electromagnets. In many ways they are like the little permanent magnets with which you are familiar. As you may guess from its name, however, an electromagnet is a magnet only when a current of electricity is flowing through its wires. As soon as the current of electricity is shut off, it loses its magnetism.

At first thought it may seem that a magnet which loses its magnetism as soon as the current is shut off would be less useful than one which keeps its magnetism. But think for a moment of how little use a magnet would be which could lift ten tons of iron but could not be made to drop its load.

No permanent magnet, moreover, can lift as much as a powerful electromagnet.

Another advantage of an electromagnet is that its strength can be regulated. The same big lifting magnet which lifts six steel rails in one load can be used to lift only one rail as its next load. This is done merely by changing the strength of the electric current. How efficient a servant an electromagnet may be is shown by the fact that, in a test, a wagon which was loaded by two men in four hours

was unloaded by one man with an electromagnet in two minutes and a half.

Even if the electromagnet were useful only in the ways which have been mentioned, it would rank as an important invention. Only a very small part of the story of the importance of the electromagnet, however, has been told. More important by far than the uses which have been mentioned are its uses as parts of other electrical devices. Motors, generators, bells, buzzers, telegraph sounders, and radio loud-speakers are among the pieces of electrical apparatus which are built partly of electromagnets. In fact, so many of our very valuable electrical devices contain electromagnets that the electromagnet is called, in one volume of this encyclopedia, the "foundation of nearly all the great electrical inventions."

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Kinds of Magnets. See ELECTROMAGNET\*, 2193-2194; MAGNET AND MAGNETISM\*, 4216-4218.

1. What kind of magnets were the first magnets? 4216
2. How did magnets get their name? 4216
3. What is "lodestone"? 4216
4. What is the best material for permanent magnets? 4217
5. How can permanent magnets be made? 4217
6. What is the chief advantage of an electromagnet over a permanent magnet? 2194
7. Who invented the electromagnet? 2193
8. Of what is the core of an electromagnet made? 2193

#### II. How Magnets Act. See MAGNET AND MAGNETISM\*, 4216-4218; ELECTROMAGNETISM, 2194-2195; ELECTROMAGNET, 2193-2194.

9. What materials other than iron and steel do magnets attract? 4216
10. What are the ends of a magnet called? 4217
11. What is the advantage of making a magnet horseshoe shaped? 4217
12. What is the law of the poles? 4217
13. What parts of magnets are strongest? 4217
14. Why is one pole of a magnet marked N and the other S? 4217
15. What is a magnet's magnetic field? 4217
16. What does Fig. 2 on page 4217 show? 4217
17. What happens when the current is shut off from an electromagnet? 2194

18. How could you change the poles of an electromagnet? 2195
19. Sometimes the steel of watches becomes magnetized. How can a magnetized watch be demagnetized? 2195

### III. The Earth as a Magnet. See MAGNET AND MAGNETISM (The Earth's Magnetism), 4218.

20. Where is the earth's north magnetic pole? 4218
21. Where is the earth's south magnetic pole? 4218
22. Is there any magnet more powerful than the earth? 4218

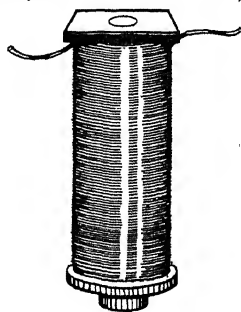
### IV. Magnets as Our Helpers. See MAGNET AND MAGNETISM, 4216-4218; COMPASS\*, 1591-1593; ELECTROMAGNET, 2193; MAGNETO-ELECTRIC MACHINE, 4219; TELEPHONE, 7068; TELEGRAPH (The Principle of the Telegraph), 7060-7062; STOCK TICKER, 6841; ELECTRIC MOTOR, 2184, 2187; DYNAMO, 2069; ELECTRIC BELL, 2170-2171; ASTRONOMY (The Contribution of Astronomy to Human Welfare), 475.

23. What had magnets to do with the discovery of America? 4216
24. Why doesn't a compass needle always point exactly north and south? 4218
25. What does "boxing the compass" mean? 1592
26. How does a mariner's compass differ from an ordinary pocket compass? 1591-1592
27. Why must correction charts for mariners' compasses be made? 1592, 475
28. What compasses are there which do not make use of magnetism? 1592
29. Examine the picture on page 2193. Could a permanent magnet be used for this work instead of an electromagnet? Why or why not?
30. Why isn't it possible to use a permanent magnet instead of an electromagnet in an ordinary electric bell? 2170-2171
31. Of what telephone instrument is a magnet an important part? 7068
32. Of what use is the electromagnet in a telegraph sounder? 7060
33. What is a magneto? 4219
34. What evidence that electromagnets are very important do you find in the pictures on pages 2184, 2187, 2069, and 6841?

#### Things to Do

1. Make an electromagnet by winding insu-

lated wire around a soft machine bolt. If the machine bolt is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches long, about ten yards of no. 24 double-cotton-covered magnet wire will be needed. At each end of the wire leave about a foot of wire for making connections. When you connect the completed magnet to a dry cell, the magnet will pick up bits of iron and steel. When you break the circuit, the magnet will drop its load. Your completed magnet should look somewhat like the figure shown. A U-shaped electromagnet may be made according to the directions given on pages 7060 and 7061 for making a magnet for a telegraph sounder.



AN ELECTROMAGNET

2. Magnetize a steel darning needle by stroking it with one pole of a magnet. Stick the point of the needle into a flat cork. Let the cork float on water in a pan or bowl. If the needle is well magnetized, one pole of a magnet will pull the cork and needle toward it; the other will chase it away.

3. Try to pick up a piece of paper with a magnet. Put some small pieces of iron or steel under the paper. Try again to pick up the paper with the magnet.

4. Put a pocket compass flat on a table. Move a magnet around under the table close to the compass. What happens?

5. Connect an electromagnet to a dry cell. Find how many nails it will pick up. Put a second cell in the circuit. Is the magnet stronger? Do not leave the magnet connected to the dry cells except when actually using it.

6. Build a toy movable derrick. Attach a small electromagnet to the derrick in such a way that the magnet can be raised and lowered. Use the derrick and magnet for moving scraps of iron from one place to another.

7. On a map of the world, mark the north magnetic pole and the south magnetic pole. Page 4218 tells you where the magnetic poles are.

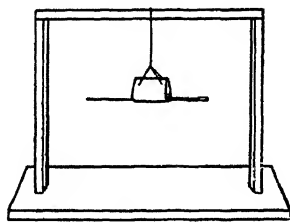
8. After you have connected an electromagnet to a dry cell, find out which pole of the electromagnet attracts the south pole of a permanent magnet. Then disconnect the wire which is attached to the positive pole of the cell, and attach it to the negative pole, and change the other wire from the negative pole to the positive pole. Does the pole of the electromagnet which did attract the south pole of the permanent magnet still attract it? What is the effect?

9. Make a compass in the following way: Magnetize a darning needle and put it in a paper stirrup. Hang the stirrup by a silk

thread to a wooden support, as shown in the accompanying picture. Glue the pieces of wood together instead of nailing them together.

10. Match the parts of sentences in the first list with those in the second.

- a. In most cases cases the core of an electromagnet.
- b. Like poles.
- c. Unlike poles.
- d. Magnets.
- e. Steel.
- f. The earth.
- g. The poles of an electromagnet.
- h. Magnetic compasses.
- i. Electromagnets.
- j. Neither kind of magnet.



NEEDLE IN PAPER STIRRUP

- a. repel each other.
- b. attract iron and steel.
- c. acts as a magnet with north and south magnetic poles.
- d. can be changed.
- e. can be made to lose their magnetism instantly.
- f. holds magnetism better than soft iron.
- g. is made of iron.
- h. attract each other.
- i. attracts all metals.
- j. contain permanent magnets.

Answers:

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| a and g. | f and c. |
| b and a. | g and d. |
| c and h. | h and j. |
| d and b. | i and e. |
| e and f. | j and i. |

### UNIT THREE

## Animal Communities

### Main Understandings

1. Many animals are helped in their struggle for existence by banding together.
2. Community life among animals ranges from mere gregariousness to an elaborate division of labor, resulting in the dependence of the individual upon the community as a whole.

### Animals as Social Beings

What, as you read the following paragraph, do you think it describes?

"There is much activity among the several thousand members of the colony. Some of the workers are busily engaged in bringing in food. Others are cleaning house and can be seen carrying out refuse. Builders are at work. Some of them are merely patching holes with bits of material which they have gathered together. Some of the workers are acting as guards to keep out unwelcome visitors. Others are busy ventilating the dwelling. Nurses may be seen feeding their young charges. The queen journeys about, surrounded by her 'ladies-in-waiting,' who are careful never to turn their backs upon her."

How very much like the activities of a community of people these activities sound! The paragraph was written, however, to describe the activities which go on in a hive of honeybees.

People, you see, are not the only animals that live in communities. Perhaps the simplest form of community or social life among animals is such a banding together as we find in flocks of sheep, schools of dolphins or porpoises, and herds of buffalo. Many birds which live in pairs through the season of raising their young gather into great groups when the time for migrating approaches. The big flocks of wild ducks and geese flying southward in

the fall are well known in many parts of the country.

You have doubtless read about the very interesting life of a beaver colony. Although the community life of the beaver is simple in comparison with that of the honeybee, it is considerably more advanced than that of sheep or porpoises.

The remarkable feature of the bee colony is that there is a division of labor—there is a distinct worker class, and some workers carry on certain tasks while other workers carry on other tasks. We expect that some of the workers in a community of people will be doing one kind of work, and others will do other kinds, but many of us are surprised when we find such a division of labor among the insects. Our wonder at the division of labor in a beehive increases when we discover that there is no directing head in a bee colony. Even without directions, moreover, no bee seems to be in any doubt as to what his work is, and no bee seems to try to shirk doing his share. Perhaps making comb is an easier task than ventilating the hive, but, if so, no worker appears to try to avoid the harder task.

In the simple animal communities there is little, if any, division of labor. It is true that one animal from a flock of Rocky Mountain sheep may serve as a lookout while the others of the flock are grazing, and that some birds seem to serve as leaders to decide upon the

course of flight during migration, but for the most part, all the animals of a group have much the same tasks. Scientists call animals which come together into simple communities *gregarious*.

The honeybee is not the only insect which has gone far past mere gregariousness in its social life. The ants, the termites, and the social wasps have communities in which the tasks are divided among the members, as in the bee colony. Whole books have been written about the lives of these insects.

It is easy to see that some animals, by banding together, have a better chance of surviving than they would have otherwise. As you probably know, more animals are produced than can possibly live. For this reason, there is going on all the time what scientists call the "struggle for existence." The records of the rocks tell us of many animals which have disappeared entirely. The help that animals in a group can give to one another is an advantage in the struggle for existence. A prairie dog helps his neighbors in a prairie dog village by uttering shrill cries at the approach of an enemy. A pack of hungry wolves can separate a big animal from a herd and kill it, while a single wolf could not do so. A community of beavers can build a dam, and can thereby assure the whole community suitable homes.

This is the age of insects. If man, by his intelligence, had not become the dominant form of animal life, insects surely would bear that distinction. They are man's real rivals. Some scientists have even gone so far as to suggest that in time the insects may win the struggle with man for supremacy. The success of some insects is doubtless due in part to their well-organized community life. The termite is a defenseless insect and one which is considered a delicious morsel by many insect-eating animals, but this defenseless creature has been able to hold its own in the struggle for existence. The care of the young in such a community as a termite community is extremely important.

Great as the success of the communal insects has been, we may well be glad that people are not organized into communities of exactly the same kind. Such an organization, although good for the community as a whole, is not a very good one for the individual. A bee which is sick is promptly thrown out of the hive; an unneeded queen is stung to death or smothered. An ant which is taken away from its community is likely to die; it is not possible for it to live a Robinson Crusoe existence. We see that, although these insect communities are extremely successful, they do not represent the highest form of community life. Man's communities, where there is much division of labor, but where the individual does not depend wholly upon

the group, represent a much higher type of social life.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

- I. **Insect Communities.** See ANT\*, 296-303; BEE\*, 672-682; ARMY WORM, 418; HORNET, 3242; TERMITE\*, 7111-7112; WASP (The Social Wasps, 7660); YELLOW JACKET, 7933.
  1. Why are some bees called "social" bees? 673
  2. How many classes of honey bees are there in a hive? 674
  3. What remarkable structures do worker bees possess to fit them for the work they have to do? 674
  4. Why has the word "drone" come to mean a person who does not do his share of work? 674
  5. How many queens does a hive need? 675
  6. What work does a queen bee do? 676
  7. Of what use is the sting of the worker bee? 675
  8. Of what use is the queen bee's sting? 675
  9. About how many honeybees are there in a swarm? 675
  10. What change must take place in flower nectar before it is honey? 676
  11. What is remarkable about the cells of honeycomb? 676
  12. What is the first work which a worker bee does? 677
  13. What kinds of work does the worker bee next learn to do? 677
  14. What work does a worker bee do during the latter part of its life? 677
  15. How are bees which do not belong in a particular hive kept out? 676
  16. How is a new queen produced? 677
  17. Why do bees swarm? 678
  18. How do honeybees spend the winter? 678
  19. What are the four stages in the life of a honeybee? 676
  20. How does a bumblebee community differ from a honeybee community? 679
  21. What strange guest may be found in a bumblebee's nest? 679
  22. In what respect do ants rank next to man in the animal world? 296
  23. What change in the habits of ants has made it possible for ants to live in large colonies? How has it made this possible? 297
  24. What are the three classes of ants? 297
  25. Is there only one queen in an ant community? 297
  26. How is a new ant colony started? 298-299

27. What are the duties of the worker ants? 299
28. What are the "ant cows"? 301-302
29. How do ants take care of their "cows"? 301-302
30. Are farmers glad or sorry that ants take care of their "cows" so well? 303
31. How did umbrella ants get their names? 302
32. Of what use are the fungus gardens some ants raise? 302
33. What are ant "slaves"? 303
34. What is remarkable about the habits of the driver ants? 303
35. How many classes of termites are there? 7112
36. Do termites resemble the ants and bees in the care they take of the young insects? 7111
37. What determines whether a termite egg will become a soldier, a worker, a king, or a queen? 7112
38. In what ways is a community of social wasps like a community of honeybees? 7660
39. What are some of the ways in which the communities differ? 7660
40. How did the army worm get its name? 418

- II. Other Animal Communities.** See BEAVER\*, 665-667; BIRD (Migration of Birds, 764-765); BUFFALO (American Buffalo or Bison, 1003-1005); CHAMOIS, 1300-1301; PELICAN, 5447-5448; PENGUIN, 5457; PRAIRIE DOG, 5795-5796; SEAL (Life Habits, 6466); WOLF, 7817; SPIDER, 6760-6764; LION, 4037-4040.
41. From the references given above, find which ones of the following animals live in communities: Penguin, pelican, spider, lion, seal, prairie dog, beaver, bison.
  42. In what way is the community life of the beaver more advanced than that of the penguin or seal? 666-667, 6466, 5457
  43. What kind of a house does the beaver build? 666
  44. In what ways do beavers help each other? 666, 667
  45. Of what use are the dams which beavers build? 667
  46. What do you consider the chief difference between the community life of the beaver and that of the honeybee? 674-675, 666-667
  47. In what ways does a beaver in a cage sometimes show its community instincts? 667
  48. How may one chamois help others of the group? 1301
  49. At what season do many birds organize

- themselves into communities? 764-765
50. What accounts for the disappearance of the mighty herds of buffalo which once roamed over the Great Plains? 1003
51. In what way do the pelicans of a colony help one another? 5448
52. In a penguin colony is there a worker class which corresponds to the worker class of honeybees? 5457
53. At what season of the year are wolves gregarious? 7817
54. What advantage is there in their banding together at this season? 7817
55. What is a seal "rookery"? 6458

### Things to Do

1. A "Suggest" Puzzle. Each word or phrase in the first column should suggest one of the animals named in the second column. Copy the two columns, and draw lines connecting the words or phrases of the first column with the names of the animals they suggest.

DAMS	TERMITES
PAPER NESTS	BEAVERS
POLLEN BAGS	BEES
APHID COWS	SOCIAL WASPS
NESTS TALLER	ANTS
THAN A MAN	

2. Read "Red Dog" in Kipling's "Jungle Book." Of course, part of this story is not true, but it gives a good idea of how powerful great communities of animals may be.

3. Make a formicarium similar to the one shown on page 302.

4. Examine some honeycomb in a frame. Notice the shape of each cell. Of what material are the cell walls made? Does the honey leak out before the comb is cut? Are there any cells containing eggs in the comb you are examining?

5. Watch the bees entering and leaving a beehive. Can you see why a "bee line" means a straight line? Demonstration hives may be bought which permit the work going on inside the hive to be observed. Watch the bees at work in one of these hives, if possible.

6. Try to answer the questions given on pages 300 and 301. Keep score for yourself. If you can answer them all, your score is 50, because there are fifty questions. If there are ten you cannot answer, your score is 40. All of these questions are answered in the article about ants. If, therefore, there is any doubt in your mind as to whether you know the answer to a question, you can find the answer in the text. Play the same game with yourself with the questions about bees, given on pages 680 and 681.

7. Hidden in the following square are the names of five animals which are gregarious in



habit. Begin with the letter at the upper left-hand corner. Move from letter to letter in any direction until you have spelled the name of the first animal. Move one move in any direction from the last letter in the first word to find the first letter of the second word. Do not use any of these thirty-six letters twice.

S E N D E R  
S A E I E P  
I L R I A R  
O N I R I E  
M C U E P D  
A H G N G O

8. **A Group Game.** Make a set of fifty questions about animals which live in communities. The questions should be questions which can be answered in one word. The answer to a question may be "Yes," "No," or any other single word. You may take questions from pages 680, 681, 667, 500, and 501, if you wish. Use these questions in playing a spell-down game. A leader is needed. The other players are divided into two groups of equal size. If the group cannot be divided evenly, the extra person acts as a referee whose duty it is to look up in the encyclopedia any answer about which there is a dispute. If there is no referee, the leader must settle disputes. The leader then asks the questions one after another, as in a spelling match. A person who cannot answer or who answers incorrectly is out of the game. A "yes-or-no" question, if missed, is not passed on to the next person in order, because after it has been

missed the answer is obvious. The side which has the larger number remaining in the game after all the questions have been asked wins.

9. Find out on page 1523 how many eggs a single codfish can produce at one spawning period. Suppose that all these eggs hatch and grow to maturity, and that half the number are female codfish. How many eggs could these codfish produce at a single spawning period? How do you account for the fact that artificial propagation must now be practiced to keep the codfish from losing ground in its struggle for existence?

10. Read what there is in this encyclopedia about Fabre, a famous scientist who found out much about the community life of various insects. You will find a list of his more important books at the end of the article.

#### Answers to Puzzles

- |    |              |         |              |
|----|--------------|---------|--------------|
| 1. | DAMS         | suggest | BEAVERS      |
|    | PAPER NESTS  | "       | SOCIAL WASPS |
|    | POLLEN BAGS  | "       | BEEES        |
|    | APHID COWS   | "       | ANTS         |
|    | NESTS TALLER |         |              |
|    | THAN A MAN   | "       | TERMITES     |
| 7. | SEAL         |         | PENGUIN      |
|    | REINDEER     |         | CHAMOIS      |
|    | PRAIRIE DOG  |         |              |

9. 3,645,000,000,000 eggs produced by 1,350,000 codfish.

## UNIT FOUR

### Bird Migration

#### Main Understandings

1. Many birds migrate.
2. Migration accounts for the fact that the bird population of a locality changes to a considerable extent with the seasons. Some birds stay in one region the year round, while others stay for the summer only, for the winter only, or for only a few days during periods of migration.
3. The problem of why birds migrate has not been fully solved, but the instinct to migrate doubtless originated in attempts to find better surroundings than could be had otherwise.
4. How birds are guided in their travels is another problem which has not been fully solved.

#### The Wonderful Journeys of the Birds

A bobolink in January! What a surprising sight that would be to us in regions of snow and ice! A bobolink in July wouldn't be nearly so much of a surprise. Of course, the reason that we do not expect to see bobolinks in January is that the bobolink belongs to that great group of birds which travel to the south to spend the winter. If you should take a census of the birds in your locality in January and another in July, you would find that the bird population changes greatly with the seasons. Some birds, however, you would find on both your lists, for some birds stay with us

the year round. The crow, the cardinal, the bluejay, and the English sparrow are permanent residents in a large part of the United States.

In many places, the number of permanent bird neighbors is small in comparison with the number of birds which spend only a part of the year in those regions. A list made a few years ago of the birds which had been seen at some time during the year near New York City included one hundred eighty. Of these, thirty-seven birds were permanent residents, and one hundred forty-three were visitors for only a part of the year.

Many birds spend the summer with us and

go south for the winter, as the bobolink does. Some of our bird visitors stay with us for the winter months only, and journey farther north for the summer. In many parts of the United States, it would be as much of a surprise to see a junco in June as to see a bobolink in January.

There is a third group of visitors who remain with us for only a very short time on their way north in the spring and again on their way south in the fall. Many of the warblers, for example, spend their summers in Northern United States and Canada and go for the winter to Central or South America. In most parts of the country, their visits are merely stop-overs on their long journeys.

The trips which birds make from their summer homes to their winter homes and from winter homes to summer homes are called *migrations*. Although other animals migrate, the migrations of the birds are the most wonderful of all migrations.

If you had never heard that many birds have winter homes in one place and summer homes in another, you might be very much puzzled by the changes in the bird population. It is interesting that, before people knew about bird migration, they made up stories to account for the absence of some species of birds during certain parts of the year. One of these stories was that some birds buried themselves in the mud during the winter. Another was that certain birds changed to other birds at the approach of cold weather, and a third was that some birds spent the winter on the moon.

People were slow to learn about bird migration, because we seldom see the smaller birds migrating. Having seen large birds, such as ducks and geese, flying southward in flocks, people probably first got the idea of bird migration, and when they watched closely they found that migration is very common among birds. Marking birds with bands on their legs has helped scientists to find out much about their migration. Now we know not only which birds migrate, but also where most of them go, and about how long it takes them to make their trips.

Although we are no longer puzzled by the sudden appearance and disappearance of many of our bird neighbors, there are two questions which have puzzled scientists ever since they have studied bird migration: Why do birds migrate? How do they find their way?

The long journeys which birds take are often dangerous. Sometimes a storm kills hundreds of migrating birds at one time. Some birds are believed to get so tired from their long journeys that they drop dead on the way. Then, too, many birds become lost from their flocks. Thousands of birds dash against lighthouses and other bright lights and are killed. Of course, hunters' guns kill thousands of large

birds during migration. To lead them to brave such dangers as these, the necessity for migrating must be, or must have been at some time in the past, a very great necessity. Probably you think you can give the reason why birds need to migrate. Whatever you think is the reason, your conclusion is practically certain not to explain all that we know about the journeys birds make. All that scientists can be sure of is that birds have a feeling or instinct which makes them migrate. Migration doubtless originated in attempts of birds to find better surroundings for themselves. But exactly what led to the development of this phenomenon remains a mystery—one of the great mysteries of the animal world.

Birds which fly over the land may be guided on their journeys by such surface features as big rivers. The problem of how the birds which fly for thousands of miles over the ocean find their way is very puzzling. Scientists have found that birds have a very keen sense of direction. Perhaps this is a large part of the answer to the question of how they find their way.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Our Changing Bird Neighbors. See

THRUSH, 7162-7163; WOODPECKER, 7833-7834; WARBLER, 7593-7594; BALTIMORE ORIOLE, 590-591; MARTIN, 4308; CATBIRD, 1240; BROWN THRASHER, 981; WAXWING, 7684-7685; SWALLOW, 6946; BRANT GOOSE, 924; CROW BLACKBIRD, 1759; REDSTART, 6034; NUTHATCH, 5120-5121.

- i. From the references given above find out whether each of the following birds, if it can be found in your locality, is a permanent resident, a summer resident, a winter resident, or a visitor for only brief periods at the times of migration: Wood thrush, downy woodpecker, hairy woodpecker, myrtle warbler, Baltimore oriole, purple martin, catbird, brown thrasher, Bohemian waxwing, barn swallow, Brant goose, bronzed grackle, white-breasted nuthatch, redstart.

#### II. Bird Travels. See BIRD (Migration of

Birds\*, 764-765; Flight, 752); SWALLOW, 6946; BOBOLINK, 811; PLOVER, 5659; TERNS 7112-7113; PASSENGER PIGEON, 5407; GOVERNMENT PROTECTION OF BIRDS, 766; HUMMING BIRD, 3287; BLUEBIRD, 804; YELLOWLEGS, 7933; CURLEW, 1787.

2. What bird travels farthest in the course of a year? 7113, 765, 752

3. How do the migration flights of some birds differ from those of other birds? 765
4. In what order do birds usually fly during migration? 765
5. At what rate do they fly? 752
6. Why do birds usually fly at a different rate during their fall migration than in the spring? 765
7. How do scientists account for the long stop-overs which some birds make during their southward journeys? 765
8. What is the average height at which birds fly during migration? 752
9. How do the apparently feeble birds which we see making only short flights from one tree to another manage to reach distant places?
10. How does bird-banding help us find out about bird migration?
11. Why do so few people see birds migrating? 752, 764, 765
12. What is the "migratory bird law"? 766
13. How much dependence can be put in the regularity of the migration of the purple martin? 753
14. How does the bobolink's plumage differ at the two migration periods? 811, 753
15. Why does the bobolink make long stop-overs on its trip to its winter home? 765
16. How far does the yellowlegs travel each year in its migration? 7933
17. Where does the ruby-throated humming bird spend the summer? The winter? 3287
18. How far does the barn swallow fly in its yearly migration? 6946
19. Do all bluebirds go to the same region for the winter? 804
20. How do the travels of the golden plover compare with the travels of the bluebird? 5659, 804
21. What is remarkable about the plover's journey? 765
22. What accounts, at least in part, for the fact that the Eskimo curlew is almost extinct? 1787
23. What was remarkable about the migration of the now extinct passenger pigeon? 5407

**III. Puzzles about Bird Migration.** See BIRD (Migration of Birds\*, 764-765; Senses, 753).

24. What evidence have we that birds do not migrate merely to escape from the cold? 764
25. How important is the need for food in accounting fully for migration? 764
26. What do scientists think the ice age

- may have had to do with bird migration? 764
27. What is the best answer which scientists are now able to give to the question of why birds migrate? 764
28. What may account for the seven "trunk lines" along which many birds migrate? 765
29. Can scientists account for the routes of the ocean-going birds? 765
30. What is the so-called "sixth-sense" of birds?

**Things to Do**

1. Read MIGRATION OF ANIMALS, page 291, to find out about other animal migrations.
  2. Draw in color two pictures of a male bobolink, one to show the bobolink's plumage at the time of the fall migration, and the other to show his plumage at the time of the spring migration.
  3. Pretend you are one of the birds whose migration journey is very long, and describe the trip you take each year.
  4. A Puzzle. If you guess correctly the names of the birds described below and write the names in order, the initial letters will spell the name of a bird which, because it has its summer home in the far north and its winter home in the far south, has more hours of daylight in a year than any other living creature. (The birds of this puzzle are all named on page 770, and descriptions of them may be found by looking up the names.)
    - a. The large sea bird which played so important a part in Coleridge's *Ancient Mariner*.
    - b. A warbler which, because of its bright salmon red markings, looks like a little oriole.
    - c. A "sea duck" which is highly valued as food.
    - d. The bird family to which the robin and bluebird belong.
    - e. One of the beautifully colored buntings.
    - f. A long-legged wading bird which has suffered much from hunters' guns during its migrations.
    - g. The commonest of American vultures.
    - h. A bird which has been used as a symbol of strength and courage.
    - i. A very common bird and one of the first to come back from the south in the spring.
    - j. A bird which is a relative of the whip-poor-will and which may be seen after sunset flying high in the air after insects.
  5. Make a bird puzzle similar to the one given above.
  6. The map on page 765 of THE WORLD BOOK shows the migration route of one of the following birds: Catbird, bluebird, Brant goose, Baltimore oriole, golden plover.
- Which bird's route does it show? You can find the answer by reading about these birds in THE WORLD BOOK.

7. Make a similar map to show the migration of some other bird.

8. Keep a record of the dates in the spring when you first see the common summer-resident birds of your locality.

9. Choose ten common migratory birds, and make a table showing where each of these birds spends the summer and where it spends the winter.

10. A Bird Game. The person who is "it" says, "I am thinking of a bird which is a permanent bird resident here (or summer resident, winter resident, or visitor for a short time)". The others who are playing take turns asking questions which can be answered by

"yes" or "no," in order to find out what bird has been chosen. If they succeed in guessing the bird in twenty or fewer questions, the one who guesses the bird is "it." If they cannot guess in twenty questions, the one who chose the bird is "it" again.

Answers:

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 4. a. Albatross.   | f. Curlew.         |
| b. Redstart.       | g. Turkey buzzard. |
| c. Canvasback.     | h. Eagle.          |
| d. Thrush.         | i. Robin.          |
| e. Indigo bunting. | j. Night hawk.     |
| 6. Golden plover.  |                    |

## UNIT FIVE

### Conduction of Heat

#### Main Understandings

1. Heat travels through materials from one place to another.
2. Some substances are better conductors of heat than others.
3. Poor conductors can be used to keep heat from traveling rapidly either into or out of a material.
4. Good conductors permit heat to travel rapidly into or out of a substance.
5. How warm any object feels to the touch depends partly upon how good a conductor of heat it is.

#### Good and Poor Conductors, and How We Make Use of Them

Probably you have never been foolish enough to touch your tongue to a metal doorknob, an iron fence, or a skate-runner on a very cold winter day. Asking a child to do this is a rather common, but cruel, joke. What happens is that the metal carries the heat away from the tongue so rapidly that the moisture on the tongue freezes and holds it fast to the metal. If you touch your tongue to a piece of wood instead of to a piece of metal, this will not happen, because wood cannot carry the heat away as rapidly as metal does.

Whether you have had this experience or not, you surely have had many experiences which show you that heat can travel through materials from one point to another, and that heat travels through some materials more rapidly than through others. You know, for example, that the handle of a silver spoon gets hot when you are eating hot soup with the spoon. You know, too, that you can use a cloth pad to protect your hand when you are lifting a hot cooking pan, and that a fur coat will keep you warm even on a very cold day.

If heat travels rapidly from particle to particle of a substance, we say that that substance is a good conductor of heat. If it doesn't travel rapidly from particle to particle of the substance, we say that the substance is a poor conductor of heat. Although there are many good conductors of heat, these good conductors are not all equally good. Copper is a very good conductor of heat, but it is not as good

a conductor as silver. Lead is a good conductor, but it is not as good as copper. In the same way, not all of the poor conductors are equally poor. Hard wood, for example, is a poor conductor, but it is a better conductor than wool.

People have learned to use good conductors when they wish heat to travel into or out of a substance rapidly. We make most of our cooking utensils of metal not only because the metal will not burn, but also because the heat from the fire travels quickly through the metal into the food which is to be cooked. When food has been cooked and we wish it to cool rapidly, we put it into a metal pan so that the heat will travel out of it rapidly. One reason the pans which hold the ice cubes in an electric refrigerator are made of metal is because the heat can travel through the metal rapidly, and the water will freeze more quickly than if some material such as glass, which is not a good conductor, were used.

Notice that the last paragraph tells you that food and water become cold when heat travels from them. Cold cannot travel into or out of anything. Of course, cold air, cold water, and other substances which are cold may travel from place to place, but, to make a substance cold, we must cause heat to travel from it.

Whenever you wish to shut heat either in or out of anything, you should use a poor conductor. Thermos bottles, fireless cookers, and refrigerators are a few of the many applications of our knowledge about using poor conductors to keep heat from traveling rapidly.

Would you be surprised to find ice wrapped

in a woolen blanket to keep it from melting? Wool, of course, is what we wear to keep ourselves warm in winter, and no one wishes to keep ice warm. However, many people do wrap ice in wool, if they have no refrigerators and have to keep it in a pan or a tub. The point is that wool can shut heat out as well as shut it in. You wear woolen clothing in winter to keep in the heat of your body; ice is wrapped in wool to shut the heat out. Wool does not make things warm; it merely keeps heat from escaping rapidly. In the same way, wrapping a cold brick in fur would not make the brick warm, but if the brick were warm, it would keep the heat from traveling away rapidly.

Knowing about conduction of heat should also help you to understand why we cannot tell temperature accurately by feeling. Suppose water and air are both exactly 70 degrees Fahrenheit. The water would feel cooler than the air because it is a better conductor than air, and it would carry the heat away from your body faster than the air would. In winter a cold hard-wood floor feels colder than an equally cold woolen rug, even when the two are the same temperature, because the wood carries the heat away from your body faster. If wood and brass were both equally hot but both hotter than your hand, the brass would feel hotter because it would carry heat to your hand faster. This explains why a cake pan which has been in a hot oven feels much hotter than the cake in the pan feels. In the study of conduction of heat, therefore, we find part of the answer to the question of why we must depend upon thermometers to tell temperature.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Good and Poor Conductors of Heat. See HEAT (Conduction, 3113).

1. Which of the following statements are true? 3113
  - All solids are good conductors of heat.
  - All gases are good conductors of heat.
  - All liquids are good conductors of heat.
  - All gases are poor conductors of heat.
  - All metals are good conductors of heat.
2. Which of the following substances are good conductors, and which poor: Air, wool, silver, glass, paper, iron, wood? 3113
3. As you have been told, if you touch a good conductor which is warmer than your hand, it feels warmer than a poor conductor of the same temperature. Which, then, would feel warmer to your hand, a piece of hot silver or a piece of stone equally hot?

4. Remember that a good conductor feels colder than does a poor conductor to a hand warmer than it is. Which, then, would feel colder to your hand, a piece of cold iron or a piece of equally cold wool?

#### II. How We Use Good and Poor Conductors of Heat. See THERMOS BOTTLE\*, 7146;

- FIRELESS COOKER\*, 2433-2434; REFRIGERATION, 6042; INSULATOR, 3468-3470; ASBESTOS, 438; ICE CREAM (Freezer), 3331; SAFETY LAMP, 6295; STOVE, 6870; HEAT (Conduction), 3113; ICE, 3327.
5. Why can a thermos bottle keep hot things hot? 7146
  6. Why can the same thermos bottle keep cold things cold? 7146
  7. What keeps the heat from escaping from a thermos bottle? 7146
  8. Why are the glass walls of a thermos bottle silvered? 7146
  9. How long will a thermos bottle keep hot things hot or cold things cold? 7146
  10. Of what importance is the fact that asbestos is a poor conductor of heat? 438, 7146.
  11. Does a fireless cooker make food hot or keep it hot? 2433
  12. How does a fireless cooker differ from a thermos bottle? 2433, 7146
  13. Name five materials which can satisfactorily be used in the walls of a fireless cooker. 2433-2434
  14. Ice cream is sometimes carried to picnics in fireless cookers. Why will a fireless cooker keep ice cream from melting rapidly?
  15. What is wrong with the statement, "Cold is put into the foods kept in a refrigerator"? 6042
  16. What use of a poor conductor of heat do you find in the diagrams on page 3327?
  17. What uses of heat insulators are shown on page 3469?
  18. Why do farmers sometimes store vegetables in the ground? 3468
  19. Why should air spaces be left in the walls of refrigerators? 3113
  20. Why does woolen clothing keep us warm? 7146
  21. Why is a down comforter likely to keep one warmer than an equally heavy cotton blanket? 7146
  22. Why do many pots and pans have wooden handles? 7146
  23. What has the working of a safety lamp to do with conduction of heat? 6295
  24. What rôle does a good conductor play in an ice cream freezer? 3331

25. Of what material are most wood- and coal-burning cooking stoves made? Is this material a good or a poor conductor of heat? 6870
26. After what you have read about conduction of heat, which of the following suggestions do you consider sensible?
  - (a) Carry ice cream in a metal bucket on a hot day.
  - (b) Use a woolen holder to lift a hot skillet off the stove.
  - (c) Put warm lemonade in a thermos bottle if you wish it to cool quickly.
  - (d) Carry your skates by the runners instead of by the straps on a cold winter day if you are not wearing gloves.
  - (e) Use a wooden spoon for stirring jam if it has to be stirred often while it is cooking.
  - (f) Put newspaper between a plant and a window on a cold night to keep the plant from freezing.

#### Things to Do

1. Make a fireless cooker according to the directions given on page 2434.
2. Take a thermos bottle apart. How many of the parts labeled in the diagram on page 7176 can you find?
3. Light a match. Hold it until you have to drop it because of the fire. It should be dropped into a pan of water. Does the experiment show you that wood is a good or a poor conductor of heat? Do not confuse the movement of the flame along the stick with the heat through the stick.
4. With sealing wax fasten a marble about six inches from one end of a piece of wire. Hold the end of the wire in a flame. What happens to the marble? Why?
5. Secure a piece of glass tubing about eight inches long. Smooth the ends by holding them, one after the other, in a gas flame until the glass just gets red hot. After both ends are cold, hold one end of the tube in each hand and hold the middle of the tube over the flame. Turn it slowly. When the glass is soft, bend it slightly to make a lemonade straw. Is glass a good or a poor conductor?

6. Stand a tumbler of water aside until a thermometer shows that it has the same temperature as the air in the room. Hold one of your hands in the water and the other in the air. Which feels cooler, the water or the air? Which is the better conductor?

#### 7. A Pyramid of Poor Conductors:

R I A  
R E P A P  
T I N G E A R  
N A I L O R P E C  
M E N R A I L O O W L

Arrange the letters of each row so that they spell the name of a poor conductor of heat.

#### 8. Another Puzzle:

Hidden in the square below are the names of five good conductors of heat. Begin with the S in the upper left-hand corner. Move in any direction one letter at a time until you have spelled the name of a good conductor. Cross off the letters as soon as you have used them. No letter is to be used twice. From the last letter in the first word move in any direction to find the first letter of the next word.

S L V L D  
D I E O M  
E A R G E  
L O I C R  
N R Y R U

9. Find as many materials as you can which are used as heat insulators.

10. Take a piece of paper about four inches by six inches. Fold it lengthwise twice. Fill a test tube about one-fourth full of water. Put the folded strip of paper around the top of the test tube. Use the ends of the paper as a handle with which to hold the test tube. Hold the test tube at an angle in the flame of a burner. Can you hold the paper handles while the water boils? What does this show you about the ability of paper to conduct heat?

Answers:

7.

A I R  
P A P E R  
G R A N I T E  
P O R C E L A I N  
M I N E R A L W O O L

8. Silver, gold, mercury, iron, lead.

## UNIT SIX

### Air Pressure

#### Main Understandings

1. Air exerts pressure
2. The fact that air exerts pressure helps explain many common phenomena.
3. Air pressure can be made to help us in many ways.
4. Air pressure can be measured with a barometer.
5. Weather varies with variations in air pressure.

### The Importance of Air Pressure

On the cover of an old German science book there is a picture of a famous experiment—an experiment so remarkable that even the emperor of Germany was asked to see it. This experiment was performed nearly three hundred years ago by the German scientist, Otto von Guericke. He had made two iron hemispheres which fitted smoothly together to form a ball about two feet in diameter. There was one opening in the ball, an opening which could be closed with a valve. These hemispheres were heavy enough to fall apart of their own weight. When, however, von Guericke pumped a large part of the air out of the hemispheres with the new air pump which he had invented, and closed the valve so that no more air could get in, the air on the outside of the hemispheres pushed so hard that when eight horses were harnessed to each hemisphere, the sixteen horses could hardly pull the hemispheres apart.

Think how remarkable this experiment must have seemed at a time when few people understood that air weighs something, and that it presses with great force upon objects on the surface of the earth. Torricelli, the famous Italian scientist, had only recently made the discovery that air does exert pressure. Most of the people of that time didn't even think of air as being a substance which takes up space. Of course you know that air takes up space just as water does—no one could live in this age of automobiles and ride about on tires inflated with air without realizing it. A so-called empty bottle is not empty—it is full, as you very soon find out when you try to fill it with something else without allowing the air to escape.

You have felt the pressure of rapidly moving air, and you have seen evidences after storms that winds may exert tremendous pressure, but you may not have known that still air exerts great pressure, too.

We still use in science laboratories smaller hemispheres like those made by von Guericke to show that air exerts pressure. If hemispheres only five inches across are used, two people cannot pull them apart after a large part of the air has been pumped out. This is not surprising, for the pressure on the outside of the hemispheres is more than a thousand pounds. When the hemispheres are filled with air, the pressure from the inside out is as great as the pressure on the outside, and the hemispheres can be pulled apart very easily.

Of course, a cubic foot of air is not nearly as heavy as a cubic foot of water; but, since we are at the bottom of a great ocean of air, there is so much air above us that it weighs a great deal, and because there is so much of it, it presses upon things with great force.

Knowing that air exerts pressure helps to explain many common things which may have puzzled you. Why, if you turn a bottle full of water upside down, with the opening below the surface of water in a pan, does the water stay in the bottle? The answer is that the air pressing on the surface of the water in the pan holds the water in the bottle. Why will a little bottle from which you have "sucked" the air stick on the end of your tongue? Air pressure holds it there. Why does water gurgle as it flows out of a bottle with a small neck? The air pressing on the liquid in the bottle keeps it from flowing out smoothly because it must get in to take the place of the water. Why does ink run uphill into your self-filling fountain pen when you fill it? Air pressure pushes the ink up into the pen. The pen does not fill itself; air pressure does most of the work.

Whether or not you have understood before that air exerts pressure, you are practically sure to have used air pressure to help you. Whenever you have used a pump to lift water from a well, a lemonade straw to lift lemonade to your mouth, a pipette to get medicine from a bottle, a suction cap to fasten a small electric lamp to the wall, a siphon, or a vacuum cleaner, you have used the pressure of the atmosphere to help you.

Air pressure can be measured with a barometer. Of course, it wouldn't be necessary to have a device for measuring air pressure if it were always the same in all places. But even if air pressure does change, what good does it do to measure exactly what it is? The pressure of the atmosphere is never so low that you can't drink lemonade through a straw, or use a vacuum cleaner; and it is never so high that there is any danger of its crushing you. Why know exactly what it is? One important reason for having barometers is that they are useful in predicting the weather. When the air pressure is rising, you may expect quite a different sort of day from one on which the air pressure is falling rapidly. The barometer is the most important instrument to be found in a weather bureau, and many people have barometers in their houses so that they may do their own weather forecasting. A barometer is a much more accurate weather prophet than one of the common little figures whose dress is supposed to be blue when it is to be a fair day, and pink when there is likely to be a shower.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

- I. The Great Pressure of the Air. See AIR (Weight; Buoyance), 109; VACUUM\*, 7439-7440; AIRCRAFT (Problems to Be Solved), 117.

1. With how much force is the air pressing down on this page? 109
  2. What makes it possible for you to lift the page? 109
  3. What does the word "atmosphere" mean? 109
  4. Why does the atmosphere exert pressure? 109
  5. What is a vacuum? 7439
  6. Can a perfect vacuum be obtained? 7440
  7. What is the most nearly perfect vacuum which can be obtained? 7440
  8. What does the illustration on page 109 show?
  9. What is the atmospheric pressure per square inch at sea level? 109
  10. Is atmospheric pressure the same everywhere on the earth? 109
  11. Is atmospheric pressure always the same in any one place? 109
  12. Why aren't you mashed by air pressure? 109
  13. How does the fact that air pressure changes make the problems of dirigible balloons more complicated? 117
  14. Suppose you are holding in your hand a bucket eight inches in diameter. The air is pushing down on the bottom of the bucket with a force of more than 700 pounds. Why doesn't the air push the bucket out of your hands?
  15. What do you think would happen to you if the air pressure on the outside of your body were very greatly and suddenly reduced?
- II. Using Air Pressure to Help Us.** See VACUUM\*, 7439-7440; VACUUM CLEANER\*, 7440; SIPHON\*, 6625; PUMP (The Lift Pump; The Force Pump), 5880; DIVING (The Diving Bell), 1974; CAISSON, 1070-1071.
16. How can a vacuum cleaner be used to help solve crimes? 7440
  17. Is dirt pushed or pulled into a vacuum cleaner? Explain. 7440
  18. What has the working of a vacuum cleaner to do with air pressure? 7440
  19. Of what use is the fan in a vacuum cleaner? 7440
  20. Why must the bag of a vacuum cleaner be porous? 7440
  21. What has air pressure to do with the working of a lift pump? 5880
  22. Why must a lift pump have two valves? 5880
  23. How high can a lift pump lift water? Why not higher? 5880
  24. In what way is a force pump better than a lift pump? 5880
  25. What has air pressure to do with the working of a siphon? 6625
  26. Can gasoline be siphoned from a gasoline can on the ground up into the gasoline tank of a car? Why or why not? 6625
  27. Can water be siphoned over a hill twenty feet high? Why? 6625
  28. Can water be siphoned over a hill forty feet high? Explain. 6625
  29. What has air pressure to do with drinking lemonade through a straw? 7440
  30. Could you drink lemonade through a vertical straw thirty-five feet long? Why do you think this way?
  31. What keeps the water out of a diving bell? 1974
  32. What has air pressure to do with a pneumatic caisson? 1071
  33. Of what use is such a caisson? 1071
- III. Measuring Air Pressure.** See BAROMETER\*, 625-627; TORRICELLI, 7220-7221.
34. How does an aviator know how high above the earth he is? 626
  35. What does the word "barometer" mean? 626
  36. Why is mercury a more satisfactory liquid than water for a barometer? 626
  37. How tall must a mercury barometer be? 626
  38. How tall was von Guericke's water barometer? 626
  39. How tall was Pascal's wine barometer? 626
  40. What is a barograph? 626
  41. Do all barometers contain some liquid? Why is this possible? 627
  42. Who invented the barometer? 7220
  43. If the mercury in a mercury barometer rises, what does that indicate about the air pressure? 626
  44. Would you expect a week's air pressure record on a barograph chart to be a straight line? Why or why not?
- IV. Air Pressure and the Weather.** See BAROMETER\*, 625-627; ISOBARS\*, 3567.
45. People with rheumatism are likely to be more uncomfortable on stormy days than on clear days. Why? 626
  46. Of what use are the barometers which many people have in their houses? 626
  47. If the mercury in a mercury barometer is falling rapidly, what kind of weather are we likely to have? 626



48. If the mercury in a barometer is rising, what kind of weather are we likely to have? 626
49. On what kind of a map are isobars found? 3567
50. Do winds blow toward or away from areas of low pressure? 3567

#### Things to Do

1. With a rubber tube siphon water from one tumbler to another. Be sure to fill the siphon with water before you try to make it work. When does the siphon stop flowing if the tumblers are level? Put one tumbler on a block of wood about an inch high. When does the water stop flowing through the siphon? You will find a picture of a simple siphon on page 6625.

2. Fill a bottle with water. Put a cork in the neck of the bottle. Turn the bottle upside down, put the neck of the bottle below the surface of the water in a pan, and remove the cork. Does the water in the bottle stay in or fall out? What has air pressure to do with this experiment? Read about the mercury barometer to find an explanation of this experiment.

3. Turn an ordinary glass tumbler upside down and force it straight down into a pan of water. Does water come up far on the inside of the tumbler? Was the tumbler empty when you began your experiment?

4. For this experiment you need a milk bottle, a hard-boiled egg from which the shell has been removed, and a match. Light the match, and drop it into the milk bottle. Then put the egg in the neck of the bottle. Watch what happens to the egg. To explain the result, you have to know that air expands when heated and contracts when cooled, and that air exerts pressure.

5. Fill a tumbler level full of water. Put a piece of writing paper over the top of the tumbler. Moisten the edges of the tumbler, and be sure that the paper touches the edge all the way round. Then turn the tumbler upside down. What keeps the water from falling out?

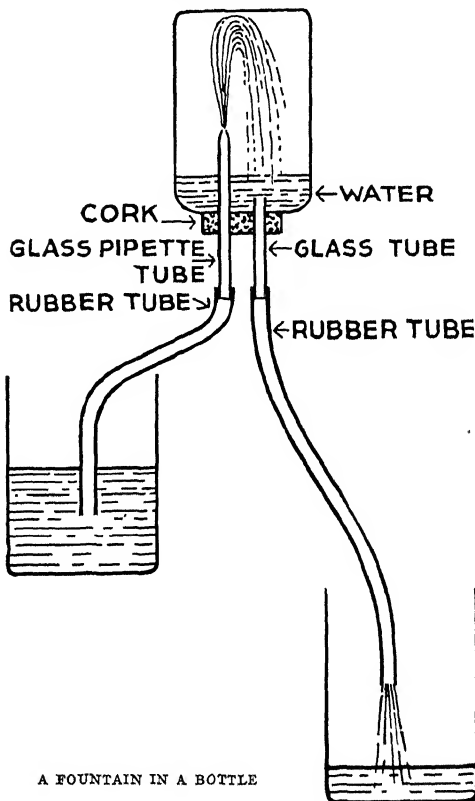
6. **A Sentence-Matching Game:** In the first group below, there are the first parts of ten sentences. In the second group are the last parts of these sentences. Match the parts of the sentences in the first list with those in the second list so that you have ten true statements.

- (1) A space from which practically all the air has been pumped
- (2) Air pressure
- (3) Barometers
- (4) Air pressure at sea level
- (5) Air pressure high in the air
- (6) Gravity
- (7) Mercury
- (8) Water

- (9) Isobars
- (10) Falling air pressure
  - (a) is about fifteen pounds per square inch.
  - (b) measure air pressure.
  - (c) connect places of equal pressure on weather maps.
  - (d) indicates the approach of bad weather.
  - (e) is called a vacuum.
  - (f) is sometimes spoken of as suction.
  - (g) is less than at sea level.
  - (h) is used in many barometers.
  - (i) makes the air weigh something.
  - (j) can be siphoned over hills if they are not too high.

7. The area of a grown person's body is somewhere near 2,000 square inches. Figure with how much force the air is pressing on a body of that size.

8. From the description given on page 1071,



A FOUNTAIN IN A BOTTLE

draw a diagram of a pneumatic caisson. Be sure to show the air lock.

9. Put a glass lemonade straw in water in an upright position. Then put one finger over the upper end of the tube, and lift the tube from the water. Air pressure pushing up on the water in the straw keeps the water from falling out. Remove your finger from the upper end of the straw. What happens?

10. Make a fountain in a bottle according to the plan shown above. Of course this

fountain is really nothing but a self-starting siphon. There should be about an inch of water in the bottle.

Answers:

6. (1) with (e).                      (2) with (f).

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| (3) with (b). | (7) with (h).  |
| (4) with (a). | (8) with (j).  |
| (5) with (g). | (9) with (c).  |
| (6) with (i). | (10) with (d). |

## UNIT SEVEN

### Green Plants as Starch and Sugar Factories

#### Main Understandings

1. We are absolutely dependent upon green plants for food.
2. Only green plants can manufacture starch and sugar from carbon dioxide and water.
3. Plants can manufacture starch and sugar only in the presence of sunlight, or the right kind of artificial light.
4. Plants throw away oxygen as waste during the manufacture of starch and sugar, and so serve to keep the supply of oxygen in the air from becoming exhausted.

#### The World's Most Wonderful Factories

A world without green plants would be a world without people! This is true because people could not possibly live on a diet of salt and water, and there would be no other food if there were no green plants. Of course, we do not get all that we eat directly from green plants, but if you trace any food far enough, you come to green plants. Butter, for example, doesn't come directly from green plants, but it does come from milk from cows, and they depend directly upon green plants for food.

Two of the food materials which we get directly from green plants are starch and sugar. If you scrape off a bit of potato and look at it under a microscope, you see grains of starch. All of our cereals and many of our vegetables are among the plants which furnish us with starch. You do not need to be told that fruits furnish us with sugar. There is sugar, too, in many vegetables where you may not expect to find it, and of course we derive large quantities of sugar from sugar cane and maple trees.

From where do the starch and sugar which we find stored in these plants come? Everything which a plant makes must come originally from the air or from the soil. Sugar and starch cannot be found naturally in either the soil or the air. If they could be found in either of these places, we might get them for ourselves from the soil or the air, instead of from plants.

The answer to the puzzling problem of where the plants get the starch and sugar which they store is that green plants *make* these food materials from materials which they can get from the soil and from the air. In the so-called starch and sugar factories, starch and sugar are merely obtained from plants and are put in packages for sale. Green plants are the *real* starch and sugar factories.

To inspect a real starch or sugar factory you need a microscope, for many of the interesting parts of the plant factory cannot be seen without a microscope. A potato plant is an excellent example of a starch factory. Let us find out something about this factory and the work which is going on in it.

With a microscope we find that this factory is divided into rooms, just as are most factories. The rooms, however, are very, very small. Scientists call them cells. They are much too small to be seen without the help of a microscope. Most of the work of making starch is going on in the cells of the leaves. In most of the leaf cells, as well as in some of the cells of the stem, there are little green bodies which we may think of as the machines which do the work. To these "machines" the needed materials must be brought from the soil and the air to be made into good food. We find that the plant first makes sugar, and then changes it into starch for storage. We see in the skin of the leaf tiny "doors" through which the air enters, so that the plant may take from it what it needs. We find "pipes" which lead from the roots up through the stem and to all parts of the leaves, so that the plant may get what it needs from the soil.

This plant factory shuts down at night, just as do most man-made factories. The setting of the sun is like the turning off of the current in a factory whose machines are driven by electric motors.

While this plant factory is making starch and sugar, a waste product is formed that is given off into the air and that we need as much as we need the food the plant makes.

In this potato factory, starch is stored in underground storage rooms, which are really parts of the underground stem. As more and more starch is made by the plant, the storage space underground is made larger, to take care of it. When this factory is closed for the

season, it is destroyed except for the "tubers," or potatoes, the parts of the underground stem in which the starch is stored.

An apple tree is a factory very much like the potato plant factory, except that sugar is stored in the storage rooms instead of starch, and these storage rooms are not underground.

In fact, all green plants are alike in that they can make starch and sugar; they must have light in order to work, they all use the same materials, and they throw off the same material as waste.

It may seem queer that when scientists know much about how green plants make starch and sugar, they cannot yet make starch and sugar from these materials as easily as plants can. Many scientists have tried over and over again, and some of them have been able to carry out certain steps in the process. In time we may be able to buy starch and sugar which have been made entirely in man-made laboratories rather than in plants, but until that time, we shall have to depend upon corn, potatoes, apple trees, sugar cane, and other green plants for the starch and sugar which we need.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Our Absolute Dependence upon Green Plants. See PLANT (Importance of Plants, 5647); BOTANY (The Contribution of Botany to Human Welfare, 889-890); MUSHROOM (How the Mushroom Gets Its Food, 4755); ANIMAL, 289; BIOCHEMISTRY (Derivation of Energy, 743).

1. How can we argue with reason that farmers and gardeners are really the most important members of human society?
2. Make a list of everything you had to eat for dinner yesterday. Show that without green plants you could not have had anything on your list with one possible exception.
3. What is the chief difference between plants and animals? 289, 743
4. What are carbohydrates? 889
5. Of what importance are carbohydrates?
6. Why are we absolutely dependent upon green plants for food?
7. Do all plants make starch and sugar? 3913
8. Many of us like mushrooms. If there were no green plants on earth, why couldn't mushrooms furnish us with food? 4755
9. Of what importance is it that people should know a great deal about the manufacture of starch and sugar in plants?

#### II. The Manufacture of Starch and Sugar.

See STARCH\*, 6809; SUGAR, 6906-6911; OXYGEN (How Oxygen Supports Life, 5281-5282); CARBONIC ACID GAS (Interchange between Plants and Animals, 1193); BOTANY (The Contribution of Botany to Human Welfare, 889-890); CHLOROPHYLL, 1406; LEAVES (The Work of the Leaf\*, 3913-3915; How the Leaf Is Made, 3912); BIOCHEMISTRY (Photosynthesis, 743; Conversion of Carbonic Acid, 743).

10. In what sense is the factory pictured on page 6911 not a real sugar factory?
11. Does the large picture on page 6907 show a real sugar factory?
12. How fully do scientists understand the process by which starch and sugar are made in green plants? 743
13. What are the raw materials which the plant factory uses in making starch and sugar?
14. What furnishes the energy needed for the factory?
15. What is the by-product of the making of starch and sugar?
16. As a rule, in what part of the plant is most of the starch- and sugar-making carried on?
17. What is the green coloring matter in plants called?
18. How do the materials which plants need for making starch and sugar get to the leaf?
19. Is carbon dioxide a liquid, a solid, or a gas when it enters the plant? 1193
20. How much carbon dioxide, on the average, is there in air?
21. All animals breathe out carbon dioxide. Why isn't there, therefore, a great deal of carbon dioxide in the air?
22. From what other sources besides animals does carbon dioxide get into the air? 1193, 743
23. If all the carbon dioxide in the air were used up, what would happen? Why?
24. "The pores in the skin of a leaf are doors through which water is supposed to enter the leaf." Why is this statement untrue?
25. Is all the water which a plant takes in used in making starch and sugar?
26. All animals need oxygen. Why isn't the supply of oxygen in the air exhausted? 1193, 3913
27. What part of the air, on the average, is oxygen? 5281
28. Why do green plants always throw away oxygen? 3913
29. Why can't plants make starch and sugar at night?

**Things to Do**

1. Put a drop of iodine solution on a slice of raw potato. (This iodine solution may be obtained from any drug store; it is called tincture of iodine.) The blue color which you see shows that there is starch in the potato. Put a little corn starch in a test tube. Add water and a drop or two of the iodine solution. Notice the color.

2. By testing with iodine, find out whether or not tapioca, rice, wheat flour, gelatine, and apples contain starch.

3. Test apple for sugar by boiling a small piece in water to which a few drops of Fehling's solution has been added. (Fehling's solution may be obtained at a drug store.) What color results? This color shows the presence of sugar.

4. Test onions, orange juice, and potatoes for sugar.

5. Heat a small amount of dry corn starch in a test tube. Notice the black material left in the test tube. This is carbon. It came from the carbon dioxide which the plant used in making starch. Notice, too, the drops of water which appear on the sides of the test tube.

6. Dissolve a teaspoonful of baking soda in about a fourth of a tumbler full of water. Add two or three teaspoonfuls of vinegar. The bubbles which arise are bubbles of carbon dioxide, the gas which plants take from the air in making starch and sugar. Hold a lighted match in the upper part of the tumbler. What

happens? Carbon dioxide is a good fire extinguisher.

7. Fill a test tube or a tumbler about one-third full of limewater, which may be bought at a drug store. Through a lemonade straw blow your breath into the limewater. Notice that the limewater becomes milky. This shows that you are breathing out carbon dioxide.

8. By means of a wire, lower a lighted candle into a bottle. Cover the bottle. When the candle goes out, remove it from the bottle and pour limewater in the bottle. Shake the limewater and notice that it becomes milky. This shows that the candle, when it burns, gives off carbon dioxide.

9. If you have an aquarium in which some water plants are growing, set the aquarium in the sun, and watch for bubbles to rise from the plants. The bubbles are bubbles of oxygen which the plants are throwing away as they make starch and sugar.

10. If you have a microscope, mount the leaf of a small water plant on a glass slide and examine it with your microscope. Can you see the cells, and the small green dots in the cells? If the leaf is thin, you should be able to do so.

Examine a few grains of starch from a potato with your microscope.

Remove a small piece of skin from the leaf of some such plant, as a paper white narcissus, and examine it with your microscope. Can you find any pores?

**UNIT EIGHT****Adaptations of Animals to Their Environment****Main Understandings**

1. Many animals show marked structural adaptations to their environments.
2. Protective coloration is an important phase of adaptation to environments.
3. Many animals have well-developed habits which help to adapt them to the environments in which they live.

**How Animals are Fitted for Their Environment**

"As lost as a fish out of water" is an old saying, and a very useful one, when we are trying to describe something which is in altogether the wrong surroundings. Although some fishes have been known to climb upon bushes near the water's edge, nothing could be more out of place than the ordinary fish out of water. In fact, a fish out of water is so very much "lost" that, as a rule, it can live for only a very short time. However, a fish out of water is no more out of place than a camel would be in the middle of the sea.

If you were asked to make a list of the ways in which a fish and a camel are alike, you might think at first that you could find no ways. Studying these animals, however,

would show that they are alike in many ways. Both of them have backbones—there are thousands of animals without backbones. Both have brains. Both have heads and tails. Both have ears and eyes. They have hearts, and blood which their hearts pump through their bodies. They both have skin and muscles. Both have stomachs. They do many of the same things. They move about from place to place, they eat, and they breathe. This list of ways in which these animals are alike might be made very long.

Of course there are many ways in which a camel and a fish are not alike. They differ markedly in shape. A camel has legs instead of fins. A camel is covered with hair, while a

fish, as a rule, is covered with scales. A fish has gills, while a camel has lungs for breathing. A fish has eyes, as a camel has, but no eyelids. A camel has special devices for storing water; the ordinary fish has none. A fish has nostrils, but they are of no use in breathing. There are other ways, too, in which these animals differ.

It is easy to see one reason why a fish and a camel should differ in so many ways: the fish is fitted for living in the water, and the camel is fitted for living in very dry regions on land.

As we look about us, we see many ways in which animals are specially fitted for the surroundings in which they live. These ways in which animals are specially fitted for living in the surroundings where they are found are called adaptations to environment. We find that some animals are fitted for living in water, others on dry land, and still others in the air. We find that some animals are able to live where it is very cold, while others are fitted for living where it is very warm. Some animals are fitted for living in very dry regions, while others can thrive only where there is much moisture. Some water animals are fitted for living where there is little pressure, others where the water pressure is terrific. All animals must have food, water, and oxygen, and different animals are fitted for getting these necessities of life under differing conditions.

One of the very striking ways in which an animal may be fitted for living in a particular environment is its color. Some animals are so colored that they look very much like their surroundings. If an enemy fish swims under a trout, for example, the light underside of the trout does not look very different from the sky. To an enemy bird flying overhead, the trout looks much like the pebbles at the bottom of the water. If the colors of this fish were reversed, what a plain target it would be for its fish and bird enemies! Many other animals are equally well protected by their colors.

An animal which seems very conspicuously colored when we take it away from its home may be very hard to see in its natural surroundings. A polar bear in a zoo stands out very clearly, but a polar bear on a cake of ice in the arctic regions is not easily seen.

Most remarkable among the animals whose color helps fit them for their surroundings are the animals which change color. Many of the changes in color are seasonal changes. Think how much better the weasel fits into its surroundings than it would if it stayed the same color the year round. Even more remarkable are the animals which change color quickly, as the chameleons do.

There are many animals which live parts of their lives in one set of surroundings but which are not fitted for living their whole lives in those surroundings. The body of the mos-

quito, for example, changes as the mosquito ceases to be a water animal and becomes an animal of the air.

Some animals which are very well fitted for living in certain regions during one season of the year, may not be well fitted for living in those surroundings in another season. Certain animals have solved this problem by traveling from place to place to find suitable conditions. Others have solved it by sleeping during the unfavorable season. Seasonal migration and hibernation are only two of the many habits which help fit animals for their environment.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

- I. Ways in Which the Bodies of Certain Animals Are Specially Fitted for the Surroundings in Which They Live. See ENVIRONMENT (Adaptation to Environment, 2275; Man and Adaptation, 2276); GILLS\*, 2808; LUNGS, 4154; OCEAN (Plant and Animal Life), 5150; PROTECTIVE COLORATION\*, 5850-5851; BADGER, 570; BAT, 647; BIRD (Framework of the Body, 751; How Birds Breathe, 751; Flight, 751-752; Feathers, 752); CAMEL\*, 1103-1106; CHAMELEON, 1299-1300; ERMINE, 2290; FISH, 2440-2444; FROG\*, 2625-2626; FLYING SQUIRREL, 2504; FUR, 2638; FLOUNDER, 2486; GIRAFFE, 2811-2813; GRASSHOPPER, 2914; ICHTHYOSAURUS, 3336; LEAF INSECT\*, 3903; MOLE, 4575; MONKEY (Monkeys at Home), 4596; MOSQUITO (A Mosquito's Biography, 4675; Life History of the Mosquito, 4677); PTARMIGAN, 5869-5870; SEAL (What a Seal Looks Like, 6465; Where Seals Live, 6465; The Fur Seal, 6466); SLOTH\*, 6643-6644; SNAIL, 6657-6659; SQUID, 6788; TREE FROG, 7261-7262; TROUT, 7276; WALKING STICK\*, 7582; WATER BEETLE, 7665; WEASEL, 7686; WHALE, 7726-7730.

1. In what ways is the camel fitted for life in a desert? 1104, 1105
2. How long can the camel travel, as a rule, without drinking? What enables it to do this?
3. Why is a camel's hump lean and shrunken at the end of a hard journey?
4. What do we mean by the phrase, "the survival of the fittest"? 2275
5. What animal has been most successful in adjusting himself to different kinds of surroundings? 2276
6. How does being boat-shaped help a fish? 2440
7. What serves as a fish's propeller? How does a fish guide itself?

8. Are all fish fitted for living in exactly the same environment? 2442
9. Can you see any reason for a flounder's having both eyes on the same side of its head? 2486
10. How does a fish "breathe"? 2486
11. Why would the squid's ink bag be an equally effective means of protection on land? 6788
12. Animals with gills are fitted to live where? 2808
13. What is an amphibian? 266, 2625
14. How does a tadpole breathe?
15. How does a full grown frog breathe?
16. In what ways are most birds specially fitted for a life in the air? 751
17. How do the feathers of warm-climate birds differ from the feathers of birds of colder regions?
18. What is the reason for the saying, "runs off like water from a duck's back"? 751
19. To what parts of our bodies do the wings of birds correspond?
20. How does the giraffe's long neck help to make it possible for this animal to live on dry plains where there is likely to be little grass? 2811
21. Of what help is it to a giraffe to have nostrils which can be closed?
22. How do you account for the fact that the ichthyosaurus, although a reptile, looked very much like a fish? 3336
23. Whales are fitted for living in what sort of environment? 7726
24. Do you think that a whale is as well fitted for living in the ocean as is a codfish? Why, or why not? 7729
25. What serves to keep the whale warm in the cold Arctic seas?
26. What ability of the whale to adjust himself to his environment puzzles scientists?
27. With what organ does a whale breathe?
28. With what organs do you breathe? 4154
29. In what ways are water beetles specially fitted for living in the water? 7665
30. What are phosphorescent fish? Where are they fitted for living? 5150
31. If you should bring a deep-sea fish to the surface of the water, what would happen? Why?
32. For what sort of environment is the brook trout fitted? 7276
33. When and where are the best furs obtained? Why? 2638
34. Are bats birds? What makes some people think that they are? 647
35. In what way are monkeys specially fitted for living in trees? 4596-4597
36. Where do most seals live? What

37. Has a live seal the beauty and gloss of a sealskin coat?
38. Where do mosquito larvae live? How do they breathe? How do they get their food? 4675, 4677
39. Where do full-grown mosquitoes live? How do they get their food?
40. How is the sloth specially fitted for living where it does?
41. How are tree frogs able to cling to smooth bark? 7262
42. How are moles fitted for living a large part of their lives underground? 4574
43. Do all snails live in the same kind of environment? Explain. 6658
44. In what way are a squid and a tree frog like a chameleon? 7261, 6788, 1299-1300
45. How can we account for the brilliant colors of tropical fishes? 2441
46. How do the little green plants which grow in the hair of the sloth help it? 6644
47. Why should two pictures of each animal pictured be given on the color plate opposite page 5850?
48. Why is one of the butterflies of India called the "dead leaf" butterfly?
49. How do scientists explain the fact that most animals of the desert are mottled-gray or grayish-brown?
50. Did the ancestors of the goldfish in our aquaria differ in color from our goldfish? Which would be better fitted for living out of doors in natural surroundings? 2862
51. Does the ptarmigan change color in the same way that a chameleon changes color? 5869-5870, 1299-1300
52. How do the colors of the viceroy butterfly help protect it? 5851
53. Can animals change their colors whenever they wish to do so? How, then, do scientists explain the fact that so many animals match their environment in color?
54. Where does a flying squirrel live? Of what color is it? 2504
55. Where are leaf insects usually found? Why is it difficult to see one? 3903
56. Why have most of the ermines which have been killed for their fur been killed in the winter time? 2290
57. What does the badger do to avoid fighting? 570
58. In what way are the walking sticks remarkable?
59. How do grasshoppers escape from their enemies?

60. What does the illustration on page 7686 show?

## II. Habits Which Help Fit Animals for Their Environment.

See ANIMAL (Migration of Animals), 291; BEAR (Winter Habits, 660); Kinds of Bears, 660-661; CAMEL, 1104; DORMOUSE, 2013; GROUND HOG, 2968-2969; HIBERNATION, 3172-3174; LUNGFISH, 4154; PRAIRIE DOG, 5795; SALMON, 6334; SQUIRREL, 6788-6790.

61. How did the dormouse get its name? 2013  
 62. What does the word "hibernation" mean? 3172  
 63. What is the usual food of hibernating animals?  
 64. What are animals trying to avoid when they hibernate?  
 65. Does the chipmunk sleep continuously throughout the winter?  
 66. Why should animals be thin after hibernating?  
 67. Why may the rude awakening of a hibernating animal cause death?  
 68. Does the polar bear hibernate? What does the polar bear eat? What have these two facts to do with each other? 661  
 69. How does a bear's hibernation differ from that of a snake?  
 70. Does the badger hibernate? Why? 570  
 71. How does the chipmunk get its food during its long stay underground? 1403  
 72. Where does the ground hog spend the winter? Does it lay stores of food for winter use? 2969  
 73. How do squirrels prepare for winter? 6789  
 74. How does the lungfish prepare for the dry season? 4154  
 75. What enables the camel to brave the terrible sand storms of the desert? 1104  
 76. How does the prairie dog prevent its home from being flooded during heavy rains? 5795  
 77. Name four animals which migrate at the approach of cold weather. 291  
 78. What do salmon do in order to find the right environment in which their eggs may be hatched? 6334

### Things to Do

1. Draw a picture of a goldfish. Your drawing should show at least four ways in which a goldfish is fitted for living in the water.
2. List five ways in which a bird and a fish are alike.
3. List five ways in which a bird and a fish are different. Does adaptation to environ-

ment explain the differences you have listed?  
 4. Each word or phrase in the first column should suggest one of the animals named in the second column. Copy the two columns. Draw lines connecting the words or phrases in the first column with the names of the animals they suggest.

Wings but no feathers	Monkey
A house on its back	Whale
A body shaped like a twig	Tree frog
A white winter coat	Ermine
Blubber	Walking stick
A tail which serves as another hand	Snail
Toes with sucker pads at the ends	Fish
Fins	Bat

5. A Jumbled Letter Puzzle. Arrange each of the following groups of letters to spell the name of an animal which hibernates:

- a. R A B E
- b. R G O F
- c. P E R H O G
- d. R E D B A G
- e. R E Q U I R L S
- f. S O M E R O D U

6. One of the following words is omitted from each of the sentences below: Migrates, migrations, environment, hibernates, hibernation. Put the right word in each blank.

The word \_\_\_\_\_ means surroundings.

The seasonal journeys of the codfish are called \_\_\_\_\_.

A long winter sleep is called \_\_\_\_\_.

The ground hog \_\_\_\_\_.

The caribou \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Draw a picture in color of a walking leaf insect, to show how the insect matches its environment.

8. Another Puzzle. When the names of the animals described below are written in order, the initial letters will spell the name of the animal sometimes called the "ship of the desert."

- a. A lizard remarkable for its ability to change its color.
- b. A fish which migrates to fresh water to lay its eggs.
- c. A hoofed animal of the far north.
- d. An animal which changes color with the seasons.
- e. A fish which makes itself a cocoon in which to spend the dry season.

9. Make a puzzle similar to the one given above.

10. Find out about the "suicide" migrations of the lemmings of Norway and Sweden.

### Answers:

4. Wings but no feathers suggests Bat  
 A house on its back " Snail  
 A body shaped like a twig Walking Stick

- |                                     |           |                  |              |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|------------------|--------------|
| A white winter coat suggests        | Ermine    | c. GOPHER.       | e. SQUIRREL. |
| Blubber                             | Whale     | d. BADGER.       | f. DORMOUSE. |
| A tail which serves as another hand | Monkey    | 6. environment.  | hibernates.  |
| Toes with sucker pads at the ends   | Tree frog | migrations.      | migrates.    |
| Fins                                | Fish      | hibernation.     |              |
| 5. a. BEAR                          | b. FROG.  | 8. a. Chameleon. | d. Ermine.   |
|                                     |           | b. Alewife.      | e. Lungfish. |
|                                     |           | c. Muskox.       |              |

## UNIT NINE

### The Place of Our Earth in the Universe

#### Main Understandings

1. The earth is a member of the solar system, which consists of the sun and the bodies that travel in space around the sun.
2. The revolution and rotation of the earth give us our basic units of time.
3. Many of our common phenomena are caused by the movements of the earth and the moon.
4. Our solar system is an extremely small part of the known universe.

#### The Sun's Family, and Its Place among the Stars

Do you like to travel fast? Would you like to travel two hundred times as fast as the fastest airplane can fly through the air? Whether you think you would like to do it or not, you are doing it; at this moment you are traveling at the rate of somewhat more than a thousand miles a minute. The earth is going at this tremendous speed in its journey around the sun, and, of course, as it hurls itself through space it is carrying you with it. While you have been reading this paragraph, you have traveled at least three hundred miles.

Surely you knew that the earth travels around the sun, but its speed may have surprised you. It may surprise you, too, to know that the earth is only one of a family of planets which travel around the sun. Mercury, Venus (the earth's twin), Mars, the giant Jupiter, Saturn with its marvelous rings, Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto belong to the sun's family, too, and journey around the sun without ceasing. Some travel faster than the earth; others more slowly. What a tremendous collision if the earth should run into one of the other planets! But there is no danger that it will. Each planet has its own path and the paths of the planets do not cross one another. Even distant Neptune, so far away that if you could travel to it in the fastest airplane you could not reach it for several thousand years, is kept in its path by the same forces which keep the earth in its path.

The planets are not the only members of the sun's family. There are moons which travel around the planets as the planets travel around the sun; little planets, called planetoids or asteroids; meteors; and meteorites, which we call shooting stars when they come close enough to us to become white hot as they fall

through the air; and comets, which remain much of a mystery even to our best scientists. The sun and all the planets, moons, meteors, meteorites, planetoids, and comets which travel around it form the "solar system."

Unless you picture everything in the solar system as moving at a terrific speed, you haven't an accurate picture of the sun and its family. The earth not only travels around the sun, but it turns on its axis as it travels. Moreover, the whole solar system is shooting through space. Suppose you were spinning a top on a train bound for California. The top would be turning on its axis, it would be traveling about on the floor, and at the same time it would be going toward California. Thinking of that top may help you to understand the movements of the earth. Without understanding something of the movements of the members of the solar system, we cannot understand many of our ordinary happenings: the rising and setting of the sun, moon, stars, and planets; tides, eclipses, change of seasons, and the apparent changes in the shape of the moon. The movements of the earth have given us, too, our important units of time, the day and the year.

A scientist once called the earth a "second-rate planet of a second-rate sun." This scientist was thinking only of size. Four of the planets in our solar system are much larger than the earth. But how can he call the sun a second-rate sun? It is more than a million times as big as the earth. Is there anything bigger? The answer is that many of the stars are larger. Stars are suns much like our own sun. Although many of them are larger than our own sun, they are so far away that they look small. For all we know, many of these stars may be the centers of solar systems like our own. The stars are so far away that the distance from the sun to Neptune is just a



step compared with the distance to the nearest star. Huge as our solar system is, it is a very small part of the universe. We can easily understand why a Chinaman in a recent story was made to say, as he looked up at the sky, "I feel like one tiny grain of sand."

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. The Sun's Family. See SOLAR SYSTEM\*, 6679.

##### A. The Sun, the "Center" of the Family.

See THE STORY OF THE SUN\*, 6921-6924; SPECTROSCOPE, 6749; SPECTRUM ANALYSIS, 6748-6750; LIGHT (The Spectrum), 3998.

1. If a model of the sun were made as large as a tennis ball, how large should the model of the earth be made? 6921
2. How long would it take the sound of an explosion on the sun to reach the earth if it were possible for it to travel through the space between the sun and earth? 6921
3. How much would you weigh on the sun? 6922
4. How much ice could the concentrated rays of the sun melt in one second? 6922
5. Sometimes dark spots may be seen on the sun by looking at it through a piece of smoked glass. What is the nature of these spots? 6922, 6923
6. Do sunspots have any influence on the earth? 6924
7. Does the sun turn on its axis? 6922
8. What substances found on the earth are known to be in the sun, too? How do scientists know this? 6922, 3998, 6748-6750

##### B. The Planets, the Big Brothers and Sisters of the Sun's Family. See

- PLANET\*, 5643-5645; EARTH, 2082; GRAVITATION, 2916; CENTRIFUGAL FORCE, 1289; HERSCHEL, 3167-3168; JUPITER\*, 3720-3721; MARS\*, 4301-4302; MERCURY\*, 4406-4407; NEPTUNE\*, 4878-4879; SATURN\*, 6398-6399; URANUS\*, 7420; VENUS\*, 7488.
9. How can one tell a planet from a star if he does not have a telescope? 5643
  10. Why do the planets not go wandering off into space away from the sun? 2916
  11. Why do they not fall into the sun? 1289

12. Which is the largest planet, and which the smallest? 5643
13. Which planet has the longest year, and which has the shortest? 5643
14. What are the rings of Saturn? 6398
15. What planet did Sir William Herschel discover? 3167-3168
16. How was Neptune discovered? 4879, 7420, 470
17. Give the most striking facts about each of the known planets. 2082, 3720-3721, 4301-4302, 4406-4407, 4878-4879, 6398-6399, 7420, 7488
18. Do scientists know how long each planet's day is? How do they discover this?
19. On which planets might life possibly exist?
20. Do astronomers think that Mars is inhabited? 4302

#### C. The Lesser Members of the Sun's Family. See ASTEROIDS\*, 463-464; COMET\*, 1581-1582; METEORS\*, 4419-4421.

21. How many asteroids are known? 463
22. How are asteroids discovered? 464
23. What does a comet look like? 1591
24. How would you tell a comet from a meteor? 1591, 4419
25. What would happen if the earth ran into a comet? 1582
26. Why do many meteors disappear before they reach the earth?
27. What damage do meteors do on the earth? 4421.
28. What are shooting stars? 4419.

#### D. The Planets' Families of Moons. See MOON\*, 4638-4642; SATELLITE, 6307; SOLAR SYSTEM, 6679; JUPITER (Satellites of), 3721; GALILEO, 2665; TELESCOPE, 7081.

29. Which planet has the most moons, and which ones have none so far as we know? 6397
30. How does our moon compare in size with the moons of other planets? 4643, 468
31. "Moonlight is really second-hand sunlight." Why is this true? 4640
32. If a man could be shot to the moon in a rocket, would he be able to explore it? Why or why not? 4638, 4640
33. For what are the satellites of Jupiter noted? 3721

34. What did Galileo discover about our own moon? 2665
35. Why do you think Galileo was first to discover satellites of any planet other than our own? 7081

**E. Early Ideas of the Solar System and How They Changed.** See **PTOLEMY**, **CLAUDIUS PTOLEMAEUS**, 5871; **COPERNICUS**, 1666.

36. Did Ptolemy believe that the earth traveled around the sun, or that the sun traveled around the earth? 5871
37. What mistakes did Ptolemy make in his list of planets? 5871
38. Why were not Neptune and Uranus included in his list?
39. How did Copernicus change scientists' ideas of the solar system? 1666

**II. How We Are Affected by the Movements of the Earth and the Moon.**

**A. Time.** See **CALENDAR**, 1075-1077; **DAY**, 1842-1843; **EARTH** (The Earth as a Clock), 2082; **STANDARD TIME**, 6799-6800; **SUNDIAL**, 6927; **TIME**, 7179-7180; **YEAR**, 7930.

40. What are the two units of time from which all others are made? 1075
41. Which motion of the earth has given us the first unit you have named? Which motion has given us the second? 1842, 7930, 7179
42. How do astronomers get the exact time? 2082
43. Why must we have leap years? 7930
44. What is the advantage of a system of standard time? 6799
45. What would be the advantages of the new calendar which has been suggested? 1077
46. Does a sun-dial always give correct time? Explain fully. 6927

**B. Phases of the Moon.** See **MOON** (Orbit, Size, and Distance, 4638; Phases of the Moon, 4640-4642).

47. Why does the moon seem to change shape? 4640
48. Why can we not see the actual "new" moon? 4640
49. When the moon is full, what are the relative positions of the earth, sun, and moon? 4640
50. How long a time is it from one new moon to the next? 4638

**C. Eclipses.** See **ECLIPSE**, 2094-2097; **CORONA**, 1694.

51. What causes an eclipse of the moon? 2095
52. How long may a total eclipse of the moon last? 2095
53. At what phase of the moon may it be eclipsed? 2095
54. What causes an eclipse of the sun? 2096
55. How long may a total eclipse of the sun last? 1694
56. What is the difference between a total eclipse and a partial eclipse of the sun? 2096
57. What part of the sun is studied by astronomers during total eclipses? 2096, 1694

**D. Tides.** See **AMAZON RIVER**, 242; **BORE\***, 865; **FUNDY, BAY OF**, 2636; **GRAVITATION**, 2916; **TIDES\***, 7171-7172.

58. Which two heavenly bodies help cause the tides? 7171, 2916
59. Which motion of the earth causes the tides to rise and fall at any city on the ocean? 7172
60. Why are the tides not always the same height? 7172
61. How do tides help man? 7172
62. How may tides be a hindrance to man? 2636, 865, 242
63. Are there tides in lakes? What evidence have you?

**E. Apparent Movement of Heavenly Bodies.** See **ASTRONOMY**, 468; **SUN**, 6922; **STAR**, 6806.

64. What movement of the earth accounts for the rising and setting of the sun, moon, planets, and some of the stars? 6806
65. What is the apparent movement of the Big Dipper? 468
66. What causes this apparent movement? 468
67. Does the north star rise and set? What causes this?
68. What accounts for the apparent northward and southward movements of the sun in our sky? 6922

**F. Seasons.** See **SEASONS**, 6742.

69. What has the traveling of the earth around the sun to do with the seasons? 6742
70. If the earth's axis were not tipped, what would the effect be on the change of seasons?

**III. Our Solar System in the Universe.**

**A. Stars.** See **STAR\***, 6804-6809; **ANTARES\***, 305; **BETELGEUSE\***, 722; **ASTRONOMY**, 468-478; **FIXED STARS\***,

2448; SIRIUS\*, 6626; CONSTELLATION\*, 1629.

71. With what member of our solar system can stars best be compared? 6804, 468
72. How does Betelgeuse compare in size with our solar system? 722
73. Are the stars really "fixed"? 6805, 2448. How do we know?
74. What is the largest star known? 305, 6808
75. What is the brightest star? 6626
76. What do we mean when we say that Rigel is a star of the first magnitude? 6806
77. What is a constellation? 1629, 473
78. Why will the constellations change? 6806
79. What is the brightest constellation? 474

**B. Star Distances.** See ASTRONOMY (Distances That Defy the Imagination\*), 469-470; UNIVERSE, 7414

80. A light year is how many miles? 7414
81. Why is the light year used in measuring star distances? 470
82. How long would it take an airplane flying at the rate of one hundred miles an hour to fly a light year?
83. How far away is the nearest star beyond the sun? 470
84. How far away is the nebula of Andromeda? 470
85. How is it possible that we may see some stars which have ceased to exist? 470

**C. Our Universe.** See MILKY WAY\*, 4485; NEBULA, 4867; STAR (Stars in Space), 6805.

86. What is the real nature of the Milky Way? 6805, 4485
87. How many stars are there in our stellar universe? 6805
88. How large is our stellar universe? 4485
89. Where is our solar system in this universe? 4485
90. At what speed is our solar system moving through the universe? 6805
91. What is the nebula of Andromeda? 4867, 6805

**Things to Do**

1. Make a model of the solar system. Make a plasticine model of the earth  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch in diameter. Make plasticine models of the other planets on the same scale. Use very tiny balls of plasticine to represent the moons and the planetoids. Make a cardboard circle to repre-

sent the sun. Why not make the model of the sun of plasticine?

2. Play the "Name on the Back" game with names of heavenly bodies. Pin the name of some heavenly body on the back of the person who is "it." If this person can guess in twenty questions what heavenly body is named, he chooses the next person to be "it," and pins a name on his back. If he cannot guess in twenty questions, he must be "it" again. The questions must be questions which can be answered by "yes" or "no."

3. If you could travel to the sun for three cents a mile, how much would it cost you to get there?

4. Match these parts of sentences so that you have five accurate statements:

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| a. The change of phases of the moon | a. never rises nor sets.                                     |
| b. Sun spots                        | b. are supposed to be fragments of heavenly bodies.          |
| c. The north star                   | c. is much larger than the earth.                            |
| d. Meteors                          | d. are caused by the traveling of the moon around the earth. |
| e. Jupiter                          | e. are more numerous at some times than at others.           |

5. **A Puzzle.** When you have guessed correctly the names of the heavenly bodies described below, and have written the names in order, the initial letters will spell the name of a well-known constellation.

- a. The first star group beyond Neptune that anyone can see. 469
  - b. The eighth planet from the sun.
  - c. The brightest star of the Great Bear. 472
  - d. A first magnitude star in the constellation Orion. 473
  - e. The brightest constellation in the sky. 474
  - f. The smallest planet of our solar system.
  - g. One of the planetoids. 464
  - h. The common name for Sirius.
  - i. A brilliant star in The Scorpion. 472
6. Consult the star maps on pages 472 and 473 to find what constellations will be visible to-night. List five of these constellations, and try to find them to-night.
7. Write a story of an imaginary trip to the moon. Be sure, in your story, to describe conditions on the moon as they actually are.

8. **Another Puzzle.** The initial letters in this puzzle spell the name of the planet which Herschel discovered.

- a. "The works of creation taken as a whole." 7414
- b. A star in The Lion. 472
- c. A brilliant star in The Bull. 473
- d. The name given to huge masses of

- gaseous matter among the stars. 4867  
 e. A constellation near Orion. 473  
 f. The brightest star with the exception of the sun. 474

9. Make a sky puzzle similar to the one given above.  
 10. Arrange the letters in each of the following groups to spell the name of a famous astronomer:

- a. P E R L E K  
 b. A I L L O G E  
 c. S U P E R I N C O C  
 d. M O P T Y L E  
 e. H E A R B  
 f. C H E E R S H L

Answers:

- |                   |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 4. a and d        | d and b     |
| b and e           | e and c     |
| c and a           |             |
| 5. Alpha Centauri | Mercury     |
| Neptune           | Eros        |
| Dubhe             | Dog Star    |
| Rigel             | Antares     |
| Orion             |             |
| 8. Universe       | Nebulae     |
| Regulus           | Unicorn     |
| Aldebaran         | Sirius      |
| 10. a. Kepler     | d. Ptolemy  |
| b. Galileo        | e. Brahe    |
| c. Copernicus     | f. Herschel |

## UNIT TEN

### Seeds and Gardening

#### Main Understandings

- Most of our cultivated plants are seed plants.
- A seed contains a tiny plant and food for that plant.
- Pollen and ovules are necessary for seed formation.
- For germination seeds require warmth, air, and moisture.
- Cultivation is an important part of gardening.
- Hybridization is one way of getting new kinds of plants.

#### What Every Young Gardener Should Know

If you were asked to name ten useful plants, it is very probable that every one you named would belong to that great group of plants which produce seeds. There are many, many kinds of plants which cannot produce seeds, but almost all of the plants which men have found to be worth cultivating are seed plants. Thus, although mosses, ferns, and other seedless plants are sometimes found in gardens, gardening is largely a matter of planting and caring for seed plants.

The fact that a plant is a seed plant doesn't mean in all cases that the plant can be raised only from seeds. Geraniums and tulips, for example, are seed plants, but the first can be raised easily from cuttings, and the latter from bulbs. However, most of our common garden flowers and vegetables must be raised from seed.

If all young gardeners understood what a seed is, they would make fewer mistakes than they do in plantings seeds. Every seed contains two things—a tiny plant and food for that plant. In order to grow, the little plant in a seed needs exactly the same things that a young animal needs—food, water, and air. Gardeners without thinking of the little plants in the seeds, sometimes drown these little plants by filling the soil so full of water that there are no air spaces between the soil particles.

Another mistake often made is to plant seeds at the wrong depth. As soon as a little green plant appears above the surface of the ground,

it is ready to begin making its own food out of carbon dioxide from the air and water and other materials from the soil. Until it is ready to make food for itself, it must depend upon the food in the seed. If such a tiny seed as a sweet alyssum seed were planted three inches deep, the small amount of food in the seed could not feed the plant long enough for it to grow to the surface of the soil. On the other hand, there is much food stored in a bean seed, and there is a distinct advantage in planting it deep; heavy rains might wash the soil away from such a big seed if it were planted close to the surface.

Planting seeds so thickly that the little plants which grow from them are seriously crowded is another common error.

Some young gardeners think that their task is completed when they have planted their seeds. Planting is only one step in gardening. The seedlings which succeed in reaching the surface of the soil have little chance of growing to be strong, healthy plants without the gardener's help in the battle against weed and insect enemies.

Perhaps you are interested chiefly in raising flowers. If so, you may have learned from experience that the flowers of some kinds of plants should be picked frequently, if the plants are to continue to bloom. To understand this, you should know something of the part which flowers or blossoms play in the life of a seed plant. Of course, we raise flowers because they are beautiful, but the plants pro-

duce flowers for themselves, not for us. The purpose of flowers is to produce seeds. If the flowers are not picked, and the seeds are allowed to ripen, there is no longer any need for the plant to bloom.

The flowers of vegetables, although not so beautiful, are just as important to the plants as are the flowers of sweet peas and marigolds, for example. If the plants do not bloom, there will be no seeds from which new plants may grow. Seeds of vegetables are important to us, too. If bean and pea and corn plants did not bloom, there would be no peas or beans or corn for us to eat, since we eat the seeds of these plants. If tomatoes and peppers did not bloom, no red seed-containing fruits would be produced. And of course, if vegetables did not bloom, there would be no seed from which to raise next year's crop. In our gardens we seldom see the flowers of certain kinds of vegetables, because we destroy the plants and eat the parts which we wish before they have reached the stage of blooming.

Knowing how seeds are produced has made it possible for skilful gardeners to create new varieties of plants. A sweet pea, which we may take as an example of a simple flower, has a green calyx made of sepals, a gay-colored corolla made up of petals, stamens with bags full of yellow pollen, and a pistil containing tiny ovules. The pollen and the ovules have the major rôles to play in seed production. This is true of all flowering plants. An ovule grows to be a seed after the contents of a grain of pollen have united with the contents of the the ovule. Grains of pollen must fall on or be brought to the tip of the pistil, so that they can grow down to the ovules.

A gardener who is trying to get a new variety of plant may take pollen from one kind of plant and put it on the pistil of another kind. The seeds produced in this way will contain little plants with parents of two different kinds. When these plants grow, they may differ considerably from both of the parent plants. Crossing two kinds of plants in this way has given us many of our present varieties of flowers and vegetables and some entirely new kinds of plants. The process sounds somewhat simpler than it is, but anyone who understands how seeds are formed may carry on experiments in crossing with some hope of success. Only plants which are closely related can be crossed, however, so there is no hope of your being able to startle the world with a vegetable which is a cross between beans and corn, for instance, which do not belong to the same plant family, or with a new flower which is a cross between a lily and a rose. But there is always a chance of getting new varieties of plants which are better than any plant of the kind which has yet been produced.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

**I. The Importance of Seed Plants.** See SEEDS, 6479; Use of Seeds, 6481; GRAINS, 2888-2889; FRUITS, 2629; COTTON (In a Cotton Field of the South, 1710-1712); TOBACCO, 7194; ALFALFA, 202; FLAX, 2465.

1. Wheat, oats, corn, cotton, tobacco, alfalfa, apple, orange, rice, and flax are ten important crop plants. How many of them are seed plants? 2888, 2629, 2465, 1710, and 202
2. Name four groups of plants which do not produce seeds. 6479
3. For what purpose are seeds used in greatest quantity? 6481

**II. Seeds and How They Are Produced.** See SEEDS, 6479-6483; ANGIOSPERMS, 284; BEE (What Is Its Use, 679); BOTANY (Why Plants Need Insects, 884-885); COMPOSITE, 1593; CROSS-POLLINATION\*, 1757; FLOWER (Flower Structure, 2491; Variation in Flowers, 2491-2492); GERMINATION\*, 2789-2790; POLLEN AND POLLINATION, 5713; WHEAT, 7731.

4. Examine the diagram of a wheat seed on page 7731. What are the parts of a wheat seed?
5. What is the embryo in a seed? 2789
6. What are cotyledons?
7. Where, in a bean seed, is the food needed for the little plant in the seed stored?
8. On what basis are all flowering plants divided into three great divisions? 6480
9. Of what use is the seed coat of a seed?
10. How do you account for the fact that seeds can withstand conditions which would kill most plants? 6479, 6481
11. For how long a time have seeds been known to remain in excellent condition?
12. What do you think is the chief purpose of the illustration on page 6483? Of that on page 6482?
13. What is the real purpose of flowers?
14. Of what use is the calyx of a flower? 2490, 1593
15. What are the separate "leaves" of the calyx called?
16. What purposes do the petals serve?
17. What name is given to all the petals of a flower?
18. Why are the stamens of a flower important? 2491
19. In what place in a flower should you look for the pistil?
20. Of what importance are the ovules?

21. What must happen before ovules can become seeds?
22. Where may ovules be found?
23. What is a composite?
24. Name two common composites.
25. Why is pollination important? 2492
26. What is cross-pollination? 284, 1757, 5713
27. What is self-pollination? 1757, 5713
28. What are nature's chief pollen carriers?
29. What prevents self-pollination in the willow?
30. How is milkweed pollen carried from flower to flower?
31. What do the illustrations on page 5713 show?
32. What insect is the most important pollen-carrying insect?
33. What purpose do the bright colors and sweet scents of many flowers serve? 5713, 284
34. Some flowers are especially fragrant at night. Why should they be?
35. Corn is wind pollinated. Corn produces much pollen. How does one of these facts help to explain the other?
36. On page 884 you will find the paragraph heading, "Why Plants Need Insects." Why do they need insects?
37. Of what importance are wasps to figs?
38. How is the pollen of the gladiolus carried from flower to flower? 5714
39. Why were bumblebees taken from this country to Australia and New Zealand? 679

- III. Gardening. See ANNUALS\*, 295; FLOWER (Planting Table for Flowers, 2493); GARDENING (The Site and the Plan, 2684; Getting the Soil Ready, 2685; Planting the Seed, 2685; When to Plant, 2685; What Cultivation Means, 2686; Protecting the Garden, 2686); GERMINATION\*, 2789-2790; SEEDS, 6480; VEGETABLES, 7470; WEEDS, 7699-7700
40. What does the word "germinate" mean? 2789
  41. Under what conditions do seeds germinate? 2789, 6480
  42. Why is too much moisture dangerous for seeds?
  43. Do all seeds sprout in the same length of time after being planted? How much variation is there? 2790
  44. What is an ideal location for a garden? 2684
  45. How should the soil be prepared for a garden?
  46. Petunia seeds are very tiny seeds. How should they be planted?

47. What do we mean by "transplanting"? 2686
48. For what two reasons is it necessary to hoe a garden after the plants have come up? 2686, 2493
49. What is a weed? 7699
50. Why are weeds injurious? 2686
51. What are the two chief enemies of garden plants?
52. What animals may serve as assistant gardeners?
53. What is an annual? 295
54. Name five common garden plants which are annuals.
55. Some vegetables should be transplanted; others may be sown in the place where they are to remain. From the planting table given on page 7471 find five vegetables which may be planted in your gardens in May and which will not have to be transplanted.
56. Look at the planting table for flowers on page 2403. Notice that the depth at which the seed should be planted, the distance apart of the rows, and the distance apart of the plants in the rows vary with different flowers.

- IV. Getting New Kinds of Plants by Crossing. See BURBANK\*, 1024-1025; BREEDING (Plant Breeding, 940); HYBRID, 3302
57. What is a hybrid? 940
  58. In what way are hybrid plants produced?
  59. What advantages may be gained by crossing two kinds of plants? 940, 3302
  60. What is a citrange? 941
  61. What was gained by crossing the English walnut with the California black walnut? 3302
  62. What was gained by crossing the common pear with the Chinese sand pear?
  63. What was gained by crossing the American grape with the grape of Europe?
  64. For what kind of work is Burbank renowned? 1024
  65. What is Burbank's most famous hybrid flower? 1025
  66. Name four hybrid fruits produced by Burbank.

#### Things to Do

1. Make a collection of as many kinds of seeds as possible.
2. Take apart a four o'clock seed which has been soaked in water for at least an hour. You will find a heavy outer seed coat, a thin inner seed coat, a tiny plant with two leaves,

and a little ball of food. Examine a bean seed in the way described on page 1719.

3. Make a list of ten vegetables. Tell what part of each plant we eat.

4. A Relay Race. This is a group game. A blackboard is needed for it. The players are divided into two groups of equal size. The leaders of the two groups go to the blackboard. Everyone who has studied about flowers should know the following eight words: Stamens, pollen, pistil, ovules, corolla, petal, calyx, sepal. When the starting signal is given, each leader writes one of the eight words on the board. He then takes the chalk to the next person in order on his side. The second player then runs to the board and, if the leader wrote his word correctly, writes another of the eight words. If a player spells a word incorrectly, the next player must correct the mistake instead of writing a new word. The second player on each side gives the chalk to the third player, and the game continues until one side has succeeded in writing the eight words correctly.

5. With a microscope examine pollen from different kinds of flowers.

6. Make plasticine models of pollen grains of different kinds.

7. Find in a simple flower such as a pansy, tulip, or petunia the calyx, corolla, stamens, and pistil. Take apart a flower head of some such composite as the daisy or dandelion. Examine the separate flowers.

8. Four of the plants named in the following list are seed plants; the other four are not. Look these plants up in *THE WORLD BOOK*, and see which ones are seed plants.

Boston fern.	Horsetail.
Kelp.	Moss.
Marigold.	Wheat.
Onion.	Orchid.

9. Plant a garden of your own. Follow the suggestions given in the article about GARDENING, on pages 2683 to 2687.

10. An Endless Chain of Garden Plants. If the plants suggested by the following phrases are named rightly, the final letter of each name except the last one will be the first letter of the following name. The final letter of the last name will be the first letter of the first name on your list.

- a. A flower created by the genius of Luther Burbank.
- b. A plant whose edible roots resemble sweet potatoes.
- c. A yellow-flowered plant which can be raised easily from seeds in ordinary garden soil.
- d. Another name for larkspur.
- e. A climbing plant whose funnel-shaped blossoms close when the sunlight is strong.
- f. A flowering plant which flourishes in desert regions.
- g. One of the vegetables shown on the color plate opposite page 7470.
- h. A vegetable whose seeds must be started in a hot house or cold frame.
- i. A vegetable which was formerly called "love apple" and was considered poisonous.
- j. A plant sometimes called gumbo which is cultivated in many countries chiefly for its green pods.
- k. A popular garden composite which blooms late in the summer.
- l. A very common spring vegetable of which we eat the root.
- m. A well-known garden flower which can easily be raised from seed, but which does not, as a rule, bloom until the second year.
- n. A vegetable which has been developed from the cabbage plant.
- o. A plant whose beautiful flowers are unusual because the sepals, the petals, and the divisions of the upper part of the pistil are all petal-like.

#### Answers:

#### 8. Seed Plants

Marigold	Wheat
Onion	Orchid

#### 10. An Endless Chain of Garden Plants

a. Shasta daisy.	i. Tomato.
b. Yam.	j. Okra.
c. Marigold.	k. Aster.
d. Delphinium.	l. Radish.
e. Morning glory.	m. Hollyhock.
f. Yucca.	n. Kohl rabi.
g. Artichoke.	o. Iris.
h. Eggplant.	

## UNIT ELEVEN

### Our Food

#### Main Understandings

1. Our food is all made by plants although we secure some of it indirectly by using animals which live on plants.
2. We need food to build up the body, to provide it with energy, and to regulate its activities.
3. Different kinds of food are needed to meet the different needs of the body.
4. Pure food is needed to insure good health.
5. Food should be chosen with care.

### The Things We Eat

Of course, you know that food is important, but did you know that more than one-fourth of all the grown people in America are kept busy growing and preparing food for us to eat? It must be grown, and packed, and shipped. It must be sold, and cooked, and carried to the table for over one hundred million people in the United States. The fisheries of Alaska, the orchards of California, the forests of the tropics, the irrigated deserts of New Mexico and Arizona, the warm states of the South, the cool states of the North, distant lands, and the islands of the sea are all producing food for our everyday use. Surely we ought to know a lot about food.

One might live forty days or more without eating, but he could not play, nor work, nor grow much after he stopped eating. It is pleasant, too, to eat, especially after we have been exercising rather strenuously. Those who know best are constantly trying to make mealtime the happiest and most pleasant hour of the day. The food is varied and attractive. Music and conversation are often employed to help us enjoy this part of the day.

Food is even more attractive when we think of it as stored sunshine. Perhaps you hadn't thought of it in that way before. The toast you probably had for breakfast this morning was made from wheat bread. Some grains of wheat had been planted in the earth. The warmth of the sunlight made them grow, and the tiny plants pushed up to the surface and spread their leaves out in the light. The sunlight shining on the leaves caused them to turn green because one of the most wonderful materials in the world is in them. This material is called *chlorophyll*, from two Greek words meaning *the green of leaves*. As the sun shone on the chlorophyll, it was able to make food from some common chemicals and the sunshine. This food made the wheat plant grow until the summer. Then a whole group of seeds or grain was formed. In each seed was a store of food which would help the next little plant grow until it could get up to the sunlight. The farmer cut the wheat, threshed out the grain, and, instead of planting it, sent it to the miller. The miller ground it into flour and sent it to the baker. The baker made it into bread and sent it to your home. Your mother toasted it for you. You ate it so that your body might have the energy of the sunshine to grow and work and play.

For dinner we may have some meat. Can that be made from plants, too? Let us see. The farmer grew corn and hay in his sunny fields. These he fed to cattle, which used the food to grow and build up their bodies. Then he sold these cattle to the meat packers. The packers sold the beef to your meat market,

and you again eat food to get the energy of sunshine which was captured and stored by plants.

Not only must our food be cared for and prepared so that it will be pleasant and nourishing, but it must be kept pure. There are all sorts of disease germs which might get into it, and all sorts of ways by which they can get in. There are many people who, if they are allowed to do so, will put harmful chemicals into food to make it look nice or to preserve it. To protect us from these dangers, national, state, and city governments have made many laws about the care and sale of food. Packing plants, restaurants, and dairies are carefully inspected. In the home we are very careful to preserve and care properly for our food.

When we are children, our parents choose and prepare our food for us. When we grow older, we often have the opportunity to choose what we shall eat and what we shall prepare for others to eat. Nothing is more important than to eat the right amount of the right things. **THE WORLD BOOK** can help you to learn more about the different kinds of food, why you need them, and how to choose your food properly. The outline and questions will guide you in finding out the most important things.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in **THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia**.]

#### I. Where Our Food Comes From.

**A. Food-Making in Green Plants.** See **BIOCHEMISTRY** (Photosynthesis, 743); **BOTANY** (Contributions to Human Welfare), 889; **CHLOROPHYLL**, 1406; **PLANTS** (Importance of), 5647-5648; **STARCH**, 6809.

1. What plant process is the basis of all plant and animal life?
2. Compare the process of food-making in green plants with the work of a factory.
3. Where do the plants get the energy which they store in food?
4. From what one type of food material are all others made?
5. How and where are the others made?
6. What is the source of minerals for plants?

**B. Food for Non-Green Plants.** See **FUNGI**, 2637; **PARASITE** (Plant), 5363-5365.

7. If you eat mushrooms is it correct to say that your food all came from green plants? Why?

**C. Food for Animals.** See **ANIMAL**, 289; **BOTANY** (Contributions to Human Welfare), 889; **BIOCHEMISTRY** (The Derivation of Energy), 742-743.



8. What is the most important difference between plants and animals?
9. Do animals make protein?
10. If you eat beef, is it correct to say that all your food came from green plants? Why?

**D. The Business of Food Production.** See AGRICULTURE, 93-104, and the lists of topics, outline, and questions accompanying that article.

**II. Why the Body Needs Food.** See ADULTERATION OF FOODSTUFFS AND CLOTHING (Foods), 54-56; BIOCHEMISTRY (The Derivation of Energy), 742-743; FOOD (Work of the Body), 2509; FOOD (as Fuel), 2511; METABOLISM, 4413-4414; NUTRITION (The Human Body Like a Steam Engine), 5121-5122.

11. What is a food?
12. Is water a food?
13. Give two different facts to illustrate each important need for food in the body.
14. How do scientists find out how much energy a person uses in a day?
15. How is the human body not like a locomotive in its use of fuel?
16. Under what conditions does the body need the most energy-producing food?
17. At what time of life does the body need the most growth-producing food?
18. How can you show that the body needs minerals?
19. What happens to food when more is eaten than the body needs?

**III. Kinds of Food Substances Needed by the Body.** See ADULTERATION OF FOODSTUFFS (Foods), 54-55; BIOCHEMISTRY (Substances in Animals and Plants), 742-743; FOOD (Chemistry of, Proteins, Fats, Inorganic Substances, Water, Refuse, Vitamins), 2509-2511; METABOLISM, 4413-4414.

**A. Carbohydrates.** See CARBOHYDRATES, 1190-1191; GLUCOSE, 2845; STARCH, 6809-6810; SUGAR, 6906-6910.

20. How many kinds of carbohydrates can you name?
21. Why are these food substances called carbohydrates?
22. Which carbohydrate commonly found in food is insoluble, but easily digested?
23. Which carbohydrate does not need digesting?
24. How can one test a food to find if it contains starch?

25. To what use are carbohydrates put in the body?
26. If too much carbohydrate is eaten, what does the body do with it?
27. List five common foods which are rich in carbohydrates.

**B. Fats.** See FAT, 2376-2378, and list of references at the end of that article.

28. Why is fat a wintertime food?
29. List three values of fat in the diet?
30. What becomes of the fat we eat which is not needed by the body?
31. List five common foods which are rich with fat.

**C. Proteins.** See PROTEINS, 5851.

32. How are proteins distinctly different from fats, and from carbohydrates?
33. Could one get along without eating any protein at all?
34. Name five foods which rank high in protein content.
35. What effect does the eating of too much protein have on the body?

**D. Minerals.** See FOOD (Inorganic Substances, 2511); NUTRITION (Milk a Unique Food, Mineral Substances in Food, 5124).

36. Through what foods do we obtain the largest amounts of minerals?

**E. Vitamins.** See VITAMINS, 7549-7550.

37. What is a vitamin?
38. Why are babies given cod liver oil?
39. Make a table in which you give the known vitamins, their especial value to the body, and two foods in which each one is rather abundant.

**IV. Purity of Food.** See ADULTERATION OF FOODSTUFFS AND CLOTHING (Food, 54-56); HEALTH HABITS (Food Habits), 3104-3105.

40. Make a list of the impurities which might be found in food.
41. Which kind of impurities are most dangerous?
42. How may germs be kept off food?
43. How may bacteria in food be killed?

**V. Choosing Our Food.** See CALORIE, 1100; FOOD (Quantity of), 2511-2512; HEALTH HABITS (Food Habits), 3104-3105; NUTRITION, 5122-5126.

44. Is it important for you yourself to know something about choosing food? Why?
45. What is a calorie?
46. How many calories a day should you eat?
47. How much water should you drink?
48. Are taste and appetite good guides for choosing food? Why?

49. Why should one choose a wide variety of food?
50. Which food material is apt to be eaten in too great a quantity?

### Things to Do

1. Cover a plant with a light-tight box for several weeks to see how it will change.

2. Match the following parts of sentences to make correct statements:

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| a. Proteins | a. are fuel and energy foods.                                   |
| b. Starches | b. produce more heat per ounce in the body than any other food. |
| c. Fats     | c. turn blue when iodine is put on them.                        |
| d. Sugars   | d. are the building and repair materials of the body.           |

3. Find out where all the food you eat during one day came from.

4. Mix a few drops of tincture of iodine (from a drug store) with a tablespoonful or two of water in a small bottle. With a medicine dropper put a little of the mixture on as many different kinds of food as you can collect. Which have much starch? Which have none that you can see? (Starch turns blue when iodine is put on it. Nothing else will do that.)

5. If you can find a compound microscope to use, scrape a tiny bit of starch from a cut potato into a drop of water on a piece of glass. Put a piece of thin glass on top of it and examine the starch grains. Scrape some from the inside of a cooked bean. Are the grains like those of the potato? In the same way, examine starch from other foods.

6. Examine the edge of very thin slices of apple, potato, tomato, or the very thinnest skin of an onion under the microscope. What strange things do you see?

7. Cut a crisp celery stalk from the bunch, and place the cut end immediately in water colored with red or blue ink. Leave it for an hour or so. What has happened? Cut across the stalk a few inches from the bottom and examine the cut end.

8. Put a small piece of bread in an old iron spoon. Heat it over a flame until the bread has all burned away. What is left?

9. Make a list of foods which we use that were really stored in the plant for its own future use.

10. Make a list of foods that are fruits whose attractiveness aids in the scattering of plant seeds.

11. Make a list of foods which are the leafy parts of plants.

12. Play a spelling game with the names of foods. Each person must spell the name of a food which begins with the last letter of the one before; thus, p-o-t-a-t-o, o-k-r-a, a-p-p-l-e, etc.

13. Have a contest in food geography. Choose sides. The chooser of one side names a food, and the chooser of the other side must tell from what state or foreign country it comes. If he cannot, he must drop out. The next person on his side then names a food for the second one on the other side, etc. The side wins which has the most members standing at the end.

14. Make a special study of one of the following topics. Write a report for your teacher, telling her what you have learned.

a. Fruit as food. See FRUIT, 2629, and topics listed at the end of that article.

b. Nuts which are important as food. See NUT, 5119-5120, and list of topics at end of the article.

c. How we get our meat. See BEEF, 683-685; CATTLE, 1250-1258; MEAT AND MEAT PACKING, 4360-4368, and list of references.

15. Prepare a booklet on—

a. Wheat. See page 7736 for suggestions.

b. Sugar. See page 6910 for a suggestive outline.

Answers to section 2, above:

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 2. a with d. | c with b. |
| b with c.    | d with a. |

## UNIT TWELVE

### Our Weather

#### Main Understandings

1. Weather is the condition of the atmosphere.
2. The sunlight warms our atmosphere.
3. Warmth, or heat, causes water vapor to form and mix with the air; when sufficiently cooled, the vapor condenses into dew, frost, clouds, rain, or snow.
4. Air moves from one place to another because cool, dry air is heavier, or more dense, than warm, moist air.
5. Great areas of cloudy and clear weather move across the country in a general easterly direction; this makes it possible to forecast the weather quite accurately for several hours.

#### How Our Weather Is Made

Would there be any weather if we lived on the moon? Scientists who for many years have been looking for signs of wind, clouds,

and snow on the moon tell us that they haven't been able to find any indications of such signs. They tell us, too, that it is because the moon has no air around it that it can have no weather. Here on the earth we do have air, a great

ocean of it, which may be 200 miles deep. In this ocean of air, our weather is made.

Strange as it may seem to you, the sun causes all our weather changes. You can easily see how some of our days are bright and warm when the sun is high in the sky and there are no clouds to hide it. The warming rays shine out to us through the millions of miles of empty space. They pass right through the air without warming it very much. But they do warm the soil and stones and plants on the earth. When these are warm, their heat is given to the air and this warms it.

It is not easy to understand how the warmth of the sun can cause clouds and rain. Far away in the South, perhaps, the water of the sea was warmed by the sun. The heat made the water evaporate and mix with the air. Then a wind blew the air from the sea miles and miles across the earth toward where you live. In making this long trip, the water vapor rose higher and higher in the air, until it was up where the air is cold and cannot hold so much moisture as invisible gas. The only thing some of the vapor could do was to change back into water, billions of tiny droplets of it. These minute droplets form the clouds which float in the air and sometimes hide the sun from you. If the air had become still cooler, these droplets would have grown into larger drops and become too heavy to stay in the clouds, and then they would have fallen as rain. If there had been no heat from the sun, the water would not have evaporated and there would therefore have been no clouds and no rain.

The sun's heat makes the wind blow, too. The earth gets much warmer in some places than in others. The air over a warm place will expand and get lighter, or less dense, as it is warmed. The air over a cooler place will still be heavy, or dense. It will push toward the warm air harder than the warm air will push toward it. The warm air will have cooler air pushing in from all sides and will have to go straight up. If you should be standing between the warm spot and a cooler one, you will feel the cool air blowing past you as it pushes in toward the warm air. Winds are all caused in much the same way, but it is not always easy to find out where they come from or where they go.

If the sun is the cause of the weather, does the weather man look at the sun to tell when a cold wave or a rainy day is coming? That really wouldn't help much, for the sun changes very little from day to day. The weather man in America has helpers scattered all over our country and even nearby countries. At certain times every day, these helpers find out all about the weather where they are and send their reports to the weather man. When he gets all this information and studies it carefully,

he finds that large areas are covered by cloudy weather, where it is warm and toward which the wind is blowing from all directions. Other large areas have cool, clear weather, with the wind blowing outward in all directions. He knows that these great spots of cloudy and of clear weather move along certain paths. Thus he can predict that to-morrow will be a fine day for picnics, although it may be raining to-day. Or he can tell that a cold wave will arrive to-night, because it was on its way last night. By his knowledge, he is able to save many lives and millions of dollars' worth of property each year.

The references and questions will help you to learn from *THE WORLD BOOK* many more interesting things about weather and the work of the weather man.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. What Weather Is, and How It Affects Us.

See *CLIMATE*, 1482; *WEATHER BUREAU*, 7686-7687

1. What is weather?
2. How is weather different from climate?
3. Why is it said that the weather is the biggest thing in the United States?

Review *AIR*\*, 108-111.

#### II. Heat, the Energy Which Causes Weather Changes.

##### A. Its Source. See *HEAT* (Where Heat Comes From), 3111; *SUN* (Composition and Heat of the Sun), 6922.

4. Of all the sources of heat named in the discussion of heat, which is most important in weather? Which others do you think have some effect?

5. How much heat does the earth receive from the sun in a year?

##### B. Its Distribution. See *AIR* (What the Air Does for Us), 111; *HEAT* (How Heat Travels), 3113-3114; *MOON* (Atmosphere), 4638-4639.

6. How does heat get to us from the sun?
7. How is heat carried about after it has reached the earth?
8. What would be the result if the earth did not rotate?
9. The atmosphere is sometimes said to act as a blanket about the earth. In what two ways does this blanket make us more comfortable?

##### C. Its Measurement. See *TEMPERATURE*\*, 7090-7091; *THERMOGRAPH*\*, 7144; *THERMOMETER*\*, 7144-7145.

10. What substances are commonly used in thermometer tubes?
11. Are Fahrenheit or Centigrade thermometers used in weather observations in the United States?
12. For what purpose would you use a thermograph?
13. Where is the coldest known place in the world? How cold does it get there?
14. What is the highest official record of temperature?

### III. Moisture in the Atmosphere.

A. **Evaporation.** See CLOUD, 1492; EVAPORATION\*, 2333; HEAT (What Heat Does), 3114; RAIN (What Is Rain?), 5984.

15. Where does the most of the water vapor in the air come from? Why?
16. How can ice and snow evaporate without melting?
17. Why are wet clothes usually cooler than dry ones?

B. **Measuring Atmospheric Moisture.** See HUMIDITY\*, 3285-3286; HYGROMETER\*, 3314-3315.

18. What do the following terms mean: *Humidity, low humidity, high humidity, humid, saturated, dew point, relative humidity*?
19. How can one tell without a hygrometer that the air is humid?
20. Why is the wet bulb of a hygrometer cooler than the dry one?
21. Will the difference between the wet bulb thermometer and the dry one be greater when the air is very humid or when it is very dry?

C. **Condensation, or Precipitation of Moisture.** See CLOUD\*, 1491-1494; CLOUD-BURST\*, 1494; DEW\*, 1925-1926; DUST, ATMOSPHERIC, 2058; FOG\*, 2505-2506; FROST\*, 2628; HAIL\*, 3005-3006; RAIN\*, 5984-5986; RAINBOW\*, 5986-5987; RAIN GAUGE\*, 5987; SNOW\*, 6664.

22. What change in air will cause water vapor to condense?
23. Make a list of the forms which condensed atmospheric moisture may take.
24. How does atmospheric dust help to form clouds?
25. Why are clouds constantly changing in form?
26. Make a list of the different kinds of clouds, and describe each one in a single sentence.
27. Is frost frozen dew? Why?
28. Where are fogs more commonly formed, and why?

29. Why does it hail but never snow when the weather is hot?
30. Why do not all clouds produce rain?
31. What would you think of a snow-storm if you had never seen one?
32. Is snow always white?
33. Of what advantage is it to have the tube of a rain gauge only one-tenth as large in area as the funnel which catches the rain?

### IV. Wind, the Carrier of Heat and Moisture.

A. **Air Pressure and Its Measurement.** See AIR (Weight), 109; BAROMETER\*, 625-627.

34. How many pounds of air are there above one square inch of the surface of the ocean?
35. Is there more or less air above a square inch of earth where you are than above the same area of the ocean? Why?
36. For what purposes are barometers chiefly used?
37. Why does the mercury stay up in the tube of a mercury barometer?
38. Why does the mercury not always stay at the same height in the tube of a barometer?
39. What advantages has a barograph over the ordinary mercury barometer?
40. What is an aneroid barometer?

B. **How Heat Causes Wind.** See HEAT (Convection), 3113; LAND AND SEA BREEZES\*, 3851-3852; WIND, 7789-7791.

41. How does heat make air lighter, or less dense?
42. Will a barometer ordinarily stand higher in a warm area or in a cold one?
43. Do winds blow toward warm areas or away from them? Illustrate your answer by giving actual examples.
44. What is an anemometer?

C. **The Importance of Wind.** See BLIZZARD\*, 794; CHINOOK\*, 1402-1403; CLIMATE (Winds), 1483; MONSOON\*, 4609; PREVAILING WESTERLIES\*, 5809; RAIN, 5984-5986; SIMOON\*, 6615; TORNADO\*, 7214; TRADE WINDS\*, 7235-7236; WHIRLWIND\*, 7742; WIND (Effects of Wind), 7790.

45. Make a list of the effects of wind, giving, if possible, a real instance of each effect.

### V. Cyclones and Weather Forecasting.

A. **Cyclonic Storms, or Storm Areas.** See CYCLONE (3), 1796; HURRICANE\*, 3296; TYPHOON\*, 7341.

46. How is a cyclone different from a tornado?
47. Is it usually cloudy or clear in a cyclone? Why?
48. What direction do the cyclones in our country move? Why?
49. What kind of weather prevails in an anticyclone?
50. How can a barometer indicate the approach of a cyclone or anticyclone?

**B. Weather Forecasts.** See METEOROLOGY\*, 4418; WEATHER BUREAU\*, 7686-7692.

51. How often are the weather conditions of the United States surveyed?
52. How many observing stations are there?
53. What does a weather map show?
54. If you were examining a weather map which had just been published and discovered a strong low pressure area or cyclone some hundreds of miles to the west of your city, what kind of weather would you predict for the next twelve hours?
55. How accurately can the "weather man" forecast the weather?
56. Do you believe that the elaborate organization of the United States Weather Bureau is justified?

#### Things to Do

1. Make a collection of weather signs and proverbs. Mark with a star the ones you think are at least partly scientific.

2. Find out how a rainbow is formed. (See RAINBOW, 5986-5987.) Why does no one ever reach the end of a rainbow?

3. Make a weather vane according to these directions: Cut the shaft and head of an arrow about 18 inches long out of a board one-half inch thick. Make the tail of the arrow of very thin wood, and tack it to the shaft. At the point where the arrow balances, bore a hole a little larger than a nail or burn it through with a red-hot nail. Drive a nail through this hole into the smooth top of an upright stick. If the nail fits loosely, the arrow should point in the direction from which the wind is coming.

4. Watch an icicle during a cold spell, to see if it evaporates without melting. You can make a convenient icicle outside a north window when the weather is cold. Arrange a

sloping board a foot long, so that you can set a can of cold water at the upper end of it. Have a very small hole in the side of the can near the bottom, so that the water can run slowly down the board and freeze at the lower end.

5. Test your knowledge of weather by matching these parts of correct sentences:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a. A falling barometer means that               | a. from the sea to the land.                 |
| b. A fog is the same as                         | b. the air is cooled.                        |
| c. Late at night a breeze blows                 | c. a cloud near the ground.                  |
| d. Winds are useful because they carry moisture | d. the weather will probably soon be stormy. |
| e. Moisture often condenses when                | e. from the land to the sea.                 |

6. Count the seconds between a flash of lightning and the thunder caused by it. How far away was the flash. See SOUND (Speed of Sound), 694-695.

7. Send to the nearest Weather Bureau office for its daily weather map. (The cost is 20 cents a month.) Trace the paths of "lows" and "highs" across the country. Try to forecast the weather from the map before you have read the weather man's forecast.

8. Do you know your weather instruments?

- |                 |             |                    |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| a. Barometers   | } measure { | a. humidity        |
| b. Anemometers  |             | b. air pressure    |
| c. Rain gauges  |             | c. temperature     |
| d. Hygrometers  |             | d. wind velocity   |
| e. Thermometers |             | e. amount rainfall |

9. Read about one of the following topics and prepare a paper on it.

- a. Hurricanes, tornadoes, and cyclones. See CYCLONE, 1796; HURRICANE, 3296; TORNADO, 7214; WATERSPOUT, 7674; WHIRLWIND, 7742.
- b. Important winds of the earth. See the list of references under the topic, "The Importance of Winds," in the Study Outline for this unit.
- c. The causes of deserts. See CLIMATE (Mountains and Rainfall), 1483; DESERT, 1916; SAHARA (Climate), 6299.
- d. Cloud forms. See CLOUDS (Every Cloud Has a Name), 1492-1493.

#### Answers:

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 5. a and d. | 8. a and b. |
| b and c.    | b and d.    |
| c and a.    | c and e.    |
| d and e.    | d and a.    |
| e and b.    | e and c.    |

## UNIT THIRTEEN

## The Water Supply of Modern Homes and Cities

## Main Understandings

1. A source which supplies plenty of fairly pure water at low cost is desirable.
2. Water must sometimes be purified before being used in homes.
3. Facilities for securing and distributing water are necessary.
4. Many devices help control the water in the home.
5. To protect ourselves and others, the waste water must be carefully disposed of.

## How Our Modern Water Supply Developed

You might live forty days or more without food, but within a few hours after you had taken a last drink of water you would be in great discomfort, and within three days you would probably be dead. Civilized man needs much water for washing himself and his clothing, as well as for drinking. Small wonder it is, then, that the first settlers built their cabins near springs or streams, or that, lacking these sources, each pioneer made great haste to dig a well or a cistern.

Such simple sources as springs and shallow wells served their purpose until the country became more thickly populated. Then the streams and the soil became impure from the wastes of homes and stables. Now deep wells are almost a necessity. They are quite satisfactory, too, for country and village homes.

So much water is needed in cities, and there is so much danger from impurities, that it becomes a great problem to get enough pure water to use. Even in Biblical times, great stone or brick and cement troughs were built, and tunnels were hewn through solid rock to bring water to cities from clean streams. The emperors of Rome built eleven great aqueducts, each several miles long, and some of them are still used for carrying water to that city. Small cities may get their water from very deep wells or from artesian wells, but such cities as New York, Chicago, and Saint Louis must take their supply from streams or lakes, in order to get enough at a reasonable cost. Sometimes the cities are far from suitable streams, and great aqueducts must be built to carry water from these streams to the cities, as in the case of Los Angeles or New York. There are a number of aqueducts over a hundred miles long which are used to bring water to American cities.

Rain water is the purest natural water known, for it is really distilled by nature. Just as soon as it condenses, however, it collects particles of dust and also dissolves gases from the air, and just as soon as it falls on the earth it becomes quite impure. It gets muddy with tiny pieces of the soil on which it falls. If there are disease germs about, they will be in the water, too. Mineral matter from the soil and rocks dissolve and go along with it. These

minerals make the water "hard," and also help to increase the saltiness of the ocean.

We may drink water from most wells without danger, especially if we know that they are in constant use. This water has been purified by filtering through the soil and rocks. Any other water in a well-settled country should be boiled before it is used. This makes sure that there are no live germs left in it.

Large cities couldn't very well boil all their water. Besides that, boiling wouldn't take the mud out of it, so they must commonly strain it through filters of sand and use chlorine gas to kill any germs which may get through the sand. Sand filters must let the water go through rapidly when they are used for such large cities, and so chemicals are used to help clean the water. When a small quantity of either aluminum sulphate or iron sulphate is dissolved in water, a strange thing happens. The water seems to get cloudy and more impure than it was at first. A great many jelly-like flakes form in the water and slowly settle to the bottom. Then it is seen that the water is much cleaner than before, for these sticky flakes take the dirt and bacteria with them as they settle. When the water goes to the filter, some of these flakes settle on top of the filter sand and help to strain the water.

The pioneer took his bucket to the spring and dipped up the water, or if he had a well, he tied the bucket to the end of a rope, and letting it down in the well, drew it up again full of water. Then he carried it into the house. In time, pumps became common, but the water still had to be carried inside. Many country homes now have windmills or gasoline engines to pump the water and pipes to carry it from place to place. Sometimes there is a tank in the attic or on a high tower, so that when it is filled the water will run down to the places where it is needed. The most modern way is for the farmer or suburban dweller to have a large air-tight tank in the basement. As the water is pumped into the tank, the air which was in the tank is compressed. This air pushes the water out again with great force when a faucet is opened.

Modern cities must have pressure to send the water to homes and factories and to put out fires. Reservoirs are constructed high in the mountains, into which the water of pure

streams runs. Gravity then carries the water from the reservoir down into the city. If there is no source from which the water can run down into a city, pumps must constantly force the water to the homes. In Chicago, a single great centrifugal pump can take 40,000,000 gallons of water a day from Lake Michigan and send it through the pipes at a pressure of 40 pounds per square inch. This would furnish 250 gallons of water for 160,000 people. Yet this great city must have thirty or more such pumps to keep everybody supplied with water.

In other days, if you had had water piped into your home, the pressure might not have been very high, and you might have used a wooden plug or a wooden spigot to stop up the end of the pipe when you wanted no more water. To-day the pressure is so high that we must have a metal faucet with a screw or lever which forces the stopper into the opening. We even have some which automatically stop up the pipe when we let loose of them or when the vessel is full. There is needed, besides faucets on the ends of the pipes, valves in the pipes, so that if there are repairs to be made the water in the entire system can be shut off.

We are not any better satisfied with cold water only than we are to get along with wooden faucets. We must, therefore, have a separate set of hot-water pipes and a heater to heat the water that goes through them. The result is that when a modern house is built, a great deal of plumbing and many devices for using water go into it.

To-day, too, we must be careful not to throw all the waste water and sewage out on the ground or into streams where it will spoil our own drinking water or that of other people. For this waste, a third set of pipes is installed in the modern home and throughout each city. The outflow of such a set of pipes, whether from a city or from a home, should be into a septic tank or sewage disposal plant where bacteria are allowed to destroy the harmful wastes.

THE WORLD BOOK will tell you more about the interesting phases of our water supply. Follow the guide outline and references, and see if you can answer all the questions.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Sources of Water for Home Use.

##### A. Requirements for Desirable Sources.

See WATER (Sources and Kinds of Water), 7664; WATERWORKS, 7676.

1. What is the most important characteristic of a good water supply?
2. What other matters do you think should be considered in choosing a source of water either for a home or for a city?

B. Kinds of Sources. See AQUEDUCT, 335-338; ARTESIAN WELL\*, 424; CHICAGO (How the City Gets Its Water), 1360-1362; GEOLOGY (Work of the Hydrosphere—*Water Table*), 2733; MINERAL WATERS\*, 4500; SPRING\*, 6778-6779; WATER (Sources and Kinds of Water), 7664; WATERWORKS, 7676; WELL BORING\*, 7705.

3. Make a list of all the different sources you know from which water may be taken for home use.
4. Of the sources you have listed, which are ordinarily suitable for a single home and which are suitable for a large city?
5. What is a water table? What connection has a well with a water table?
6. Where is the deepest well in the world and how deep is it?
7. How are artesian wells different from ordinary wells?
8. Where in the United States is the largest number of artesian wells?
9. Where does the water of a spring come from?
10. Where is the largest limestone spring in America?
11. Why may we say that the ocean is the source of all our water?
12. Kansas City, Cincinnati, and Saint Louis take their supply of water from large rivers. Think of two good reasons for this plan.
13. Why has New York gone to so much trouble and expense to secure water from mountain streams many miles away when the Hudson River flows right through the city?

#### II. The Purification of the Water Supply.

A. Sources and Kinds of Impurities. See RESERVOIR, 6065; SOLUTION\*, 6685; TYPHOID FEVER\*, 7340-7341; WATER (Sources and Kinds of Water), 7664; WATERWORKS, 7676.

14. List the different kinds of impurities which may be found in water.
15. Which kinds are really harmful?
16. Which kinds make water unpleasant to use?
17. What is the difference between dissolved impurities and suspended impurities? Which is more easily removed?
18. What is "hard" water? Where does it get its hardness?
19. Is there such a thing as absolutely pure water?

20. How do disease germs, such as those of typhoid fever, get into a water supply?
- B. Filtration. See FILTER\*, 2419.
  21. What kinds of material are commonly used for filters?
  22. What kinds of impurities do filters remove from the water?
  23. Why may well water be considered filtered water?
  24. Is it always safe to drink filtered water?
  25. How large may a city filtration plant be?
- C. Boiling.
  26. When should drinking water be boiled?
  27. Why does boiled water have a flat taste?
- D. Chemical Treatment. See CHLORINE, 1406; WATERWORKS, 7676.
  28. What dangerous kind of impurity does chlorine get rid of?
- E. Distillation. See DISTILLATION\*, 1967; WATER (Sources and Kinds of Water), 7664.
  29. What two processes are included in distillation?
  30. Why does distillation purify water?
  31. Why may rain water be considered distilled water?
  32. What common uses of artificially distilled water do you know?

### III. Storage, Transportation, and Distribution of the Water Supply.

- A. Reservoirs. See DAM, 1814; RESERVOIR, 6065.
  33. List the different kinds of reservoirs.
  34. What difficulty has been experienced with standpipes? How would you overcome it?
- B. Aqueducts and Water Mains. See AQUEDUCT\*, 335-338; SIPHON\*, 6625; WATERWORKS\*, 7676-7680.
  35. Make a table in which you give the important modern aqueducts and such important facts about them as length, diameter, capacity, material, and date constructed.
  36. Why were ancient aqueducts carried across bridges instead of going down into the valleys and up the other side as they do to-day?
  37. How many miles of water mains may a large city need?
- C. Pressure for Distribution. See AQUEDUCT, 335-338; HYDRAULIC RAM\*, 3304-3305; PUMP, 5880-5881; RESERVOIR, 6065; WATERWORKS, 7676.

38. Why will not a lift pump work without air pressure?
39. What did Galileo notice about pumps?
40. Would you use force pumps, centrifugal pumps, or lift pumps for a city water supply? For a farm water supply?
41. Name two cities which use gravity to provide their water pressure.
42. Why do cities which get their water by gravity sometimes need a pumping system, too?

### IV. Disposal of Waste Water. See CHICAGO (How the City Gets Its Water), 1360-1362; SEWAGE AND SEWERAGE, 6511-6514.

43. Do sewers ordinarily carry rain water from the streets of a city? Why or why not?
44. What is the commonest way of disposing of sewage?
45. Why is this method often objectionable?
46. How are sewer gases kept from coming up through sinks and wash bowls?
47. Where is the largest activated sludge sewage disposal plant in the world?
48. How should a farm or suburban home dispose of its sewage? Do bacteria help in this, too?

### Things to Do

1. Does your drinking water contain any impurities? Pour a quart of it into a pan (a dark-colored enamel one is best), and heat it until it has all evaporated. Any impurities of the water will be left on the bottom of the pan. Catch a quart of rain water and evaporate it to find if there is any difference. Are these impurities harmful?
2. Visit the waterworks of your city to find how they purify and pump your water. The engineers of most city pumping stations are glad to tell visitors about their work.
3. Plan a water-supply and plumbing system for a country house or farm house.
4. Find out how a hydraulic ram pumps water. See HYDRAULIC RAM, 3304-3305.
5. Make a filter, and see if you can make muddy water clear. You may follow these directions: Take a tall lamp chimney or a tall bottle with the bottom broken out of it. Tie a fine piece of cloth over the top, turn it upside down, and fill it with fine washed sand. Support your filter in some way, and pour the muddy water in the top. Catch it as it comes out the bottom, and see if it is clear. Sometimes the first water that comes through will be rather muddy, and then after the filter has



been used a little while the water will come out quite clear.

6. Which of the pumps shown in the diagrams would pump water successfully and which would not?

7. Using sand and clay, make a model of a hill and valley so that there will be a spring on the hillside when you pour water on the hill.

8. Devise a way of distilling water, and make enough distilled water to taste.

9. If air pressure will not force water up a pipe more than fifty feet when the pump at

11. Prepare a report on one of the following topics:

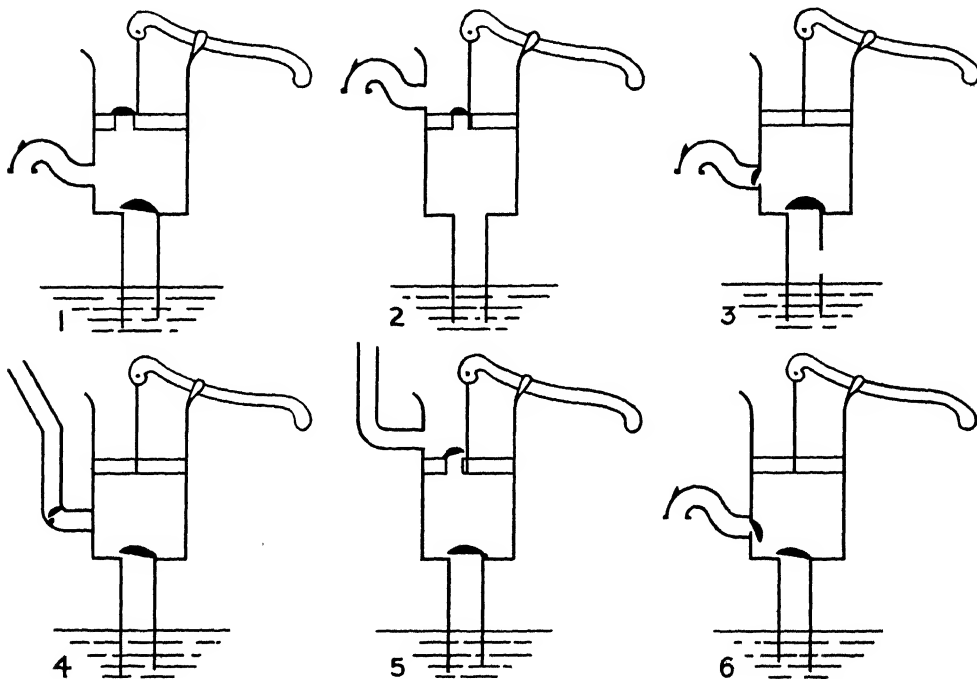
a. The differences between ancient and modern aqueducts. See AQUEDUCTS, 335-338.

b. The purification of water. See topics under "The Purification of the water Supply" in the Study Outline.

c. How water is put under pressure to force it through the pipes of cities and homes.

12. Put the following topics in their correct order:

a. Controlling water in the home.



DIAGRAMS OF THE PUMPS

the top is working, how can the water be pumped from a well 100 feet deep?

10. Take an old faucet apart, and learn how to repair others like it when they get leaky.

b. Forcing water through the pipes.

c. Disposing of waste water.

d. Taking water from a suitable source.

e. Purifying water.

## UNIT FOURTEEN.

### The Nature and Control of Fire

#### Main Understandings

1. To produce fire a combustible material must be raised to its kindling temperature in the presence of oxygen.
2. Fire is a chemical process in which some substances are used up and new ones are produced.
3. Fire is regulated through the supply of fuel or oxygen and extinguished by the removal of any one of the three essentials.
4. Fire has made civilization possible.

#### Servant or Master?

Among the myths of the ancient Greeks, there is one which tells how man came to

possess fire. In the beginning, fire belonged only to the gods. Prometheus, one of the gods, was an especial friend of man. He wanted to make man superior to the animals,

which then had many gifts greater than man himself possessed. Prometheus, therefore, stole a bit of fire from the chariot of the sun, and gave it to man. Zeus, the king of heaven, was very angry when he discovered that man had come into possession of what had previously belonged only to the gods, so Prometheus was chained to a mountain, where a vulture fed on his liver every day. Man, with the help of fire, was able to advance far beyond the animals.

The early Romans made the keeping of fire a religious rite. They had a temple presided over by Vesta, the goddess of the hearth. In this temple young girls, called vestal virgins, kept a fire burning night and day.

Such stories and customs show how high a value people placed on fire in ancient days, but important as it was to them, it is even more so to us. Not only does it cook our food, keep us warm, and light our homes in a better way than it did theirs, but it does three-fourths of the mechanical work of the world. It releases the energy stored in fuels by the sun, and we have heat to make iron and steel. It furnishes power to drive our automobiles, trains, and ships, and to turn the wheels of our factories.

So easily do we call fire to our service to-day that we do not realize how serious a matter was its production in early times. Fuel could be had in abundance, and the air provided plenty of oxygen for the fire, but to get these materials hot enough to start burning was difficult. An early settler would ride miles through snow drifts to borrow fire from a neighbor after his own had gone out in the night. Others were fortunate enough to have flint and steel, which when struck together threw sparks into finely shredded grass or other tinder and caused it to catch fire. A single penny will now buy sixty matches, each of which will strike fire in an instant.

Fire is very mysterious, too. Light a candle with one of those wonderful matches. Set it on a table, and watch it carefully. Fresh air moves in, giving it a constant supply of oxygen. The beautiful flame grows brighter, and gives a steady light. Above it you warm your hands. The wax slowly melts away. Some may run down and harden again but, if you wait, you can see that the candle is slowly disappearing. Before your eyes a chemical process is taking place. The wax of the candle and the oxygen of the air are together forming new gases, carbon dioxide and water vapor, which go away in the air. When this happens, heat and light are given off, and we say there is a fire.

Helpful and interesting as is this process, it becomes a devouring demon when once it is out of control. In the United States property worth over three hundred millions of dollars is destroyed by fire every year. The most important way for you to help curb this great

waste, and possibly prevent the destruction of your own home, is never to give fire a chance to get out of control. If it does get started, you should be prepared to deal with it immediately and sensibly. As quickly as possible, do one of three things: shut off the fire's supply of air, cool it down until it goes out, or remove its fuel supply. A blanket, rug, sand, or fire extinguisher acts in the first way, and a bucket of water will, in most cases, cool a small amount of burning material until the flame is extinguished. The third method is more commonly used in the case of great oil-well or forest fires which have gotten far out of control, but you should be ready to use it if the situation so demands. Quick action will often stop the fire before it has made much headway. If it gets beyond your control, get help.

The following Study Outline refers you to many articles in *THE WORLD BOOK* which tell about fire and its work.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. The Essentials of Fire.

A. Combustible Material. See CANDLE AND CANDLE POWER, 1166; CARBON, 1192; CHARCOAL\*, 1308-1309; COAL\*, 1497-1507; COKE\*, 1532; DISTILLATION (Fractional, Destructive), 1967-1968; EXPLOSIVES, 2345-2347; FUEL\*, 2631; GAS, 2698-2700; GASOLINE\*, 2703; GUNCOTTON, 2986-2987; GUNPOWDER, 2987-2988; NATURAL GAS\*, 4819-4820; PEAT\*, 5436; PETROLEUM, 5520-5529; TREE, 7258-7261.

1. How long ago was coal known? 2631
2. Why do you think coal is considered the standard fuel?
3. Why has there been a great change in the fuels used in America?
4. What fuels may help supply the future needs of the country?
5. What advantages have oils as fuel?
6. What was the first use of petroleum in America? 5520
7. How long has petroleum been known? 5520-5521
8. How long has petroleum been a commercial product? 5521
9. Why is kerosene sometimes called "coal oil"?
10. How is petroleum now treated to obtain valuable fuels? 1967-1968, 5526
11. Why is gasoline a very important fuel? 2703
12. How did it happen that the word gas originally meant *ghost* or *spirit*? 2698

13. Make as long a list as you can of the gases which are fuels. 2699-2700
14. What did the Indians do with natural gas? 4819
15. What are the uses of charcoal as a fuel, and why? 1309, 2631
16. Why has coke replaced charcoal in smelting iron ores? 1309, 1532, 2631
17. What chemical element is very important in most all fuels? 1192
18. What branch of chemistry deals with compounds of this element? Why is it so named? 1192
19. What is the chemical name for the compounds contained in petroleum? 1192
20. Where are all our fuels really manufactured? 889
21. How are explosives different from fuels? 2345-2347
22. Who first told how to make gunpowder? When? 2987
23. What is guncotton? 2986
- B. Oxygen.** See OXYGEN, 5281-5282.
  24. How did oxygen get its name? Can you tell why it was wrongly named?
  25. What fraction of the air is oxygen? What fraction of rock is oxygen?
  26. How does a match burn in pure oxygen?
  27. Why do you suppose iron burns in pure oxygen but not in the air?
  28. How is oxygen prepared for commercial uses?
  29. What are its uses?
- C. Heat for Ignition.** See ARCHIMEDES, 358; COMBUSTION (Spontaneous), 1580; DUST EXPLOSIONS, 2060; FIRE, 2426; FLINT, 2470; FUSE, 2654; GAS ENGINE (How Ignition or Explosion Is Produced), 2702; GREEK FIRE, 2952; HEAT (Where Heat Comes From), 3111-3112; LENS, 3934; LIGHTNING, 4001-4004; MATCHES, 4339; MUSKET, 4777-4778.
  30. How did Archimedes set fire to the Roman ships which attacked Syracuse? 358
  31. Why is a lens sometimes called a burning glass? 3934
  32. What causes spontaneous combustion? 1580
  33. How was a musket fired? 2470, 4777-4778
  34. What devices use the musket method of ignition to-day?
  35. Give three different types of ignition by electricity. 2654, 2702, 4001-4002

36. In what way is the whirling stick of the savage like the modern match? 2426, 4339
37. How did an instantaneous light box start a fire? 4339
38. Why will a safety match strike fire only on the box? 4339-4343

## II. The Nature of Fire.

**A. Oxidation, a Chemical Change.** See CHEMISTRY (Chemical Compounds), 1335; COMBUSTION, 1580; FIRE, 2426; OXIDATION, 5281.

39. What becomes of wood when it burns? 1193, 2426, 5281
40. What name is given to the products of oxidation? 5281
41. What sort of material is the oxide of carbon? 1193
42. How is fire different from slow oxidation? 2426, 5281

**B. Flame.** See FLAME, 2462.

43. What kind of material is burning when there is a flame?
44. What gives a candle flame its yellow color?
45. How can the temperature of a flame be increased?
46. Why does a flame sometimes smoke?

**C. Types of Fire.** See CHARCOAL (Uses), 1309; COKE, 1532; COMBUSTION, 1580; DUST EXPLOSIONS, 2060; EXPLOSIVES, 2345-2347; FLAME, 2462; HYDROGEN, 3307.

47. What different types of fire can you find by reading the references given above?

**III. The Products of Fire.** See ASH, 439-440; CARBONIC-ACID GAS, 1193; CARBON MONOXIDE, 1194; CHARCOAL; FIRE, 2426; FLAME, 2462; HEAT (Where Heat Comes From [5]), 3112; LAMPBLACK\*, 3848; OXIDATION, 5281; SMOKE, 6654; SOOT, 6680.

48. What are ashes? 439-440
49. When is carbon monoxide formed? 1194
50. What are the sources of danger of poisoning by carbon monoxide? 1194
51. Is charcoal a product of true burning? 1308
52. What uses has carbon dioxide? 1193
53. Is carbon dioxide poisonous? Why? 1193
54. What name do miners give to carbon dioxide? Why is it dangerous? 1193
55. What is the principal use of the flame of a candle or lamp?

56. How is lampblack made? 3848
57. What pigment is made from soot? 6689
58. Which product of fire do you consider to have the highest value?

IV. Control of Fire. See BUNSEN BURNER AND BATTERY, 1021-1022; FIRE, 2426-2428; FIRE DEPARTMENT\*, 2429-2433; FIREPROOFING\*, 2434; FORESTS AND FORESTRY, 2534-2541; FURNACE, 2646; STOVE, 6870-6871.

59. How does one regulate the rate of burning in a stove or furnace?
60. How is the rate of burning regulated in an oil lamp? Does this regulate air or fuel?
61. How is the temperature of a gas flame increased in the case of a bunsen burner?
62. Which of the essentials are regulated to control the burning in an automobile motor?
63. How long a street of buildings is burned in the United States each year? 2426-2428
64. List ten measures of fire prevention. 2428.
65. List five ways of smothering fires.
66. How does water put out an ordinary fire?
67. What is the danger of using water on an oil or gasoline fire?
68. How long have special fire pumps been known? 2432
69. How fast do modern engines pump water? 2432
70. How do firemen fight skyscraper fires? Why? 2432
71. What is the advantage of chemical extinguishers? 2432

V. The Value and Uses of Fire. See BOILER, 814-815; BRICK AND BRICK-MAKING, 945-946; CAMP (Camp Fires), 1110-1111; CEMENT, 1270-1282; CIVILIZATION, 1444-1449; FIREARMS, 2429; FIREBALL, 2429; FIREWORKS, 2435; FIRE WORSHIP, 2435-2436; IRON AGE, 3534; IRON AND STEEL, 3534-3551; GLASS, 2832-2841; HEATING AND VENTILATION, 3115-3118; LAMP, 3848; LOCOMOTIVE (Structure), 4078; STEAM ENGINE, 6819; AUTOMOBILE (Engine), 540; GAS ENGINE, 2701-2702.

72. Tell why each of these references was given to illustrate the value or use of fire.

### Things to Do

1. Study a candle flame to see if you can observe the things described in the article FLAME, 2462.

2. Hold a match stick through the middle of a candle flame until it is ready to start burning. Remove it, and see if you can determine which part of the flame was hottest.

3. See how long you can hold a match head in the center of a bunsen burner flame without its burning.

4. See if you can lead unburned paraffin vapor out of the center of a candle flame. Hold a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch glass tube, which has been heated, in a sloping position with one end in the center of the flame. If you are successful, you should be able to light the gas at the upper end of the tube.

5. Learn to make a fire with a whirling stick. See a Boy Scout Manual.

6. Get pieces of flint and steel. See if you can make sparks with them.

7. Use a burning glass to start a fire. A large reading glass will do nicely. Focus the rays of the sun on a piece of very dry rotten wood or punk. From the glow started in this, start larger and larger bits of material.

8. Learn how to make successful campfires. See CAMP (Campfires), 1110-1111.

9. Allow a candle to burn for some time so that the flame gets as large as possible. Blow the fire out quickly. Immediately bring a lighted match slowly down toward the smoking wick. Watch closely to see what happens. Why does it do this?

10. Study a spark-ignited cigarette lighter or gas lighter to see how the sparks are produced.

11. Learn how the different kinds of fire extinguishers work.

12. Prepare an oral or written report on one of these topics:

- a. Fire and Civilization.
- b. The Burning of a Candle.
- c. Fuels.
- d. By-products of Coal. (See COAL, 1497-1507.)
- e. Gaseous Fuels.
- f. Petroleum and Its Products.
- g. The Products of Fire.
- h. Explosives at Work.
- i. Fire Prevention in the Home.

## UNIT FIFTEEN

### Heating and Ventilating Our Buildings

#### Main Understandings

1. The most of the heat which keeps our buildings comfortable in winter is produced by fire.
2. Heat travels away from fire and other places of high temperature by three methods: Conduction, convection, and radiation.

3. Heating devices use the three methods of heat transfer to carry heat from the fire to the air of our rooms.
4. In addition to being warm, the air should have the correct amount of humidity, and should be in motion.

### How We Make a Summer Climate in Winter Homes

Before the discovery of fire, savage man had either to stay where it was warm all the time or find caves which did not get cold. He had to find a place to live where the natural climate was suitable. But as soon as he had learned how to start a fire and keep it going, he could make the climate warmer inside his crude shelters, and so make it possible, if not comfortable, to live in places where the natural climate was unfavorable. With a fire near him, the savage man was so much more comfortable that he did not mind some smoke in his eyes nor some cold air on his back. Of course, he did not need to worry about ventilation, for there were plenty of crevices and openings through which fresh air could come.

As time passed, man learned how to build better and better houses and how to make himself more comfortable in other ways. He was careful to build a special place in the wall for his fire, and have a chimney through which the smoke could escape. The heat from a great log fire in such a fireplace would make a room quite comfortable, but sometimes the smoke would blow out in the room. He also had to have a great store of wood to keep the fire going all winter.

About the time America was discovered, men sought better ways of heating their rooms. They knew how to use iron, and they made rather crude iron boxes, sometimes with only three sides, and in these they built their fires. Benjamin Franklin made one of the first of these crude stoves ever used in America. Such simple stoves took less fuel, and they heated the rooms better than fireplaces could do it, because less heat went up the chimney. They were gradually made better and better. One improvement was to move them out in the room, and use a pipe to carry the smoke to the chimney. Later, a jacket of sheet iron was put around them so that the cool air would enter the jacket at the bottom, be warmed and then pushed out at the top by more cool air coming in. In this way most of the air in the room was circulated through the jacket and warmed. The best stoves in use to-day are of this type.

People wanted their houses more and more comfortable, and also beautiful. In order to warm the whole house, several stoves were needed, and each had to have fuel carried to it. Each separate stove took up space, and needed to be kept clean. The next step, then, was to put a very large stove in the basement and have a pipe to carry warm air up to each room. Such pipes have to be quite large, and

so they take up much space. Any strong wind blows the warm air all to one side of the house and leaves the other side cold, so this plan is not entirely satisfactory. In spite of its drawbacks, it is widely used in private homes because of the low cost of installing it. It is also used in many school buildings because it provides a convenient method of ventilation.

Men who could afford to do so, tried making their furnaces water-tight and arranged two pipes leading from the jacket to an iron "radiator" in each room. Then, when the whole system was filled with water, and the fire was started, the water in the jacket got warm. The cold water in the radiators was then more dense than that in the jacket, and it flowed down through the lower pipes, at the same time pushing the warm water up into the radiators. The heat from the warm or hot water in the radiators warmed the rooms. Such a plan proves quite satisfactory for a small building in moderate climates, but the rooms cannot be heated very rapidly, and the water does not circulate well if the pipes are too long.

Where hot-water systems do not work well, steam may be used. In this system the heater or boiler is only partly filled with water. When the water boils, steam fills the upper part of the boiler and creates quite a high pressure. This pressure enables it to push the air out of the pipes and radiators through special air vents in the radiators. When the hot steam finally reaches the valves they close because of the heat, and consequently the steam is kept in the radiators to heat the rooms. A great deal of heat had to be put into the water just to change it to steam, and so, when the steam changes back into water in the radiators, all this heat is given to the radiator to heat the room. Thus, steam radiators heat quickly, and, because the pressure makes the steam travel through the pipes very rapidly, the radiators may be a mile away from the boiler, if necessary. For these reasons steam heat is used in most large buildings in America.

The problem of heating is to get the heat from a fire into the air of a room as quickly and economically as possible, and keep it there. Heat travels in three different ways. You have probably read about conduction already. (See Unit Five.) Sometimes the material which is hot is pushed away from the place where it got its heat and carries the heat to a cooler place. This method of heat transfer is called *convection*. The third method is *radiation*, which occurs when the heat "shines" out in straight lines through space. Radiation does not heat anything between the source and the object receiving the heat. For this reason, the heat of the sun may shine through air which

is far below zero, through a cold windowpane, and finally warm the floor of a room without having warmed either the air or the windowpane. Every heating system must use one or more of these ways to carry the heat where it is wanted.

The open fire and the fireplace heat by radiation chiefly, and so the air of a room which has only a fireplace becomes warm very slowly. The convection current from the fire carries much of the heat up the chimney. In the case of the stove, the heat is conducted through the wall of the stove. The hot wall of the stove heats the air by conduction, causing it to move away to other parts of the room in convection currents, and it also radiates heat to the walls and objects in the room. All the more complicated systems put in additional steps, the principal one of which is the carrying of heat from the furnace to the room by convection currents in air, water, or steam. Each different system has the essential parts for carrying the heat to the room, and also a number of auxiliary parts which help to regulate the fire and increase the heating efficiency of the plant.

Since fuel has become so costly, it pays owners of buildings to go to a great deal of expense to keep the heat in a room once it is there. Most modern buildings are, therefore, carefully insulated. That is, the walls and roof have material in them that are poor conductors of heat. The windows are also often made double and air-tight, to keep the heat inside. Such construction not only keeps the heat in when it is cold, but aids in keeping the heat out in summer.

When cold air is heated, its ability to absorb water vapor is increased a great deal. Therefore, the air in a room which is artificially heated absorbs moisture very rapidly from the skin and linings of the nose and bronchial tubes. The rapid evaporation cools us so fast that we want the room warmer than it should be. The nose and breathing spaces become dry, and seem to be more easily attacked by germs. To overcome this condition, moisture should be added to the air in some way, until it has at least 50 per cent of all it can hold. On the ordinary cold winter day, the warm air from a furnace or radiator has not more than 15 per cent of all it can hold. Our artificial climate is much more healthful when the humidity is thus increased.

Perfectly still air does not provide the greatest comfort. The air in a room should always be moving slowly, in such a way as to carry away from the body some moisture and heat, and any odors and dust which may be present.

There are many variations of heating systems and many ways of providing moisture and of circulating the air of buildings. THE

WORLD BOOK, with the Study Outline which follows, will give you a start toward learning about the different ways of heating buildings, and the devices which are used. Then you will be prepared to learn from the heating systems themselves, and will be better able to help solve the heating and ventilating problems of your own home.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Heat for Our Buildings.

A. Amount Needed. See HEATING AND VENTILATION, 3115-3116; LIFE EXTENSION (Rule 1), 3982.

1. What is the object of heating?
2. How important is a thermometer in a room? 3982
3. Why isn't it necessary for a room to be kept at body temperature?
4. What room temperatures are common in America?
5. How warm do North Europeans have their buildings?
6. What temperatures are best for health? 3982
7. What becomes of the heat in a warm room when we cease to add more?
8. By what paths does the heat escape?
9. How can this heat loss be reduced? 3116, 3469

B. Possible Sources. See ELECTRIC HEATING, 2171; HEAT (Where Heat Comes From), 3111-3113; HEATING AND VENTILATION (Heating the Home by Electricity), 3117-3118.

10. Which of the six sources of heat listed in the article are helpful in heating our buildings? Which is most important?

C. Fuels. See COAL, 1497-1507; COKE, 1532; FUEL\*, 2631; GAS (Illuminating), 2699-2706; HEATING AND VENTILATION (Oil Heating, Heating by Gas), 3116-3117, 3118; PEAT, 5436-5437; PETROLEUM, 5520-5529; STOVE, 6870-6871.

11. How long has coal been known? 2631
12. How much more effective than a pound of wood is a pound of coal?
13. Give five advantages of oil for fuel.
14. What is the best fuel for home heating?
15. Under what circumstances is wood used for fuel?
16. What fuel resources of the United States are not being used to any great extent?

17. Why may we say that the real source of heat for our homes is the sun? 1497

## II. How Heat Travels.

A. Conduction. See Study Outline and Questions on CONDUCTION OF HEAT, Unit Five.

B. Convection. See Study Outline and Questions on the Weather (Air Pressure and Winds), in this General Science section; EXPANSION, 2344; HEAT (How Heat Travels), 3113; WIND, 7789.

18. Why does heat cause substances to expand? 2344
19. How does expansion make substances become less dense? 3113
20. What is a convection current?
21. Explain why we say convection carries heat from one place to another.
22. Does warm air rise of its own accord, or is it pushed up by the more dense cool air around it? 7789
23. Make a list of ten common examples of the transfer of heat by convection.
- C. Radiation. See HEAT (How Heat Travels), 3113-3114.
24. How is radiation different from conduction and convection?
25. If a stove is still radiating heat when it becomes cooler than your body, why do you not feel the radiated heat?
26. Is "indirect radiation" in heating really radiation or not? Why? 3116
27. Make a list of ten common examples of the transfer of heat by radiation.

## III. How Heating Devices Work.

A. The Stove. See STOVE\*, 6870-6871.

28. What are the essential features of a stove?
29. What materials have been used to make stoves?
30. What fuel do you consider best for heating stoves?
31. Copy the diagram of a stove given below. Show, by the use of differently colored pencils, where radiation helps to transfer heat from the fire to the room, where convection helps, and where conduction helps. You might use straight lines for radiation, arrows for convection, and dots for conduction.

B. The Warm-Air Furnace. See FURNACE, 2646; HEATING AND VENTILATION (Warm-Air Heating), 3116.

32. How does a warm-air furnace differ in principle from a stove?

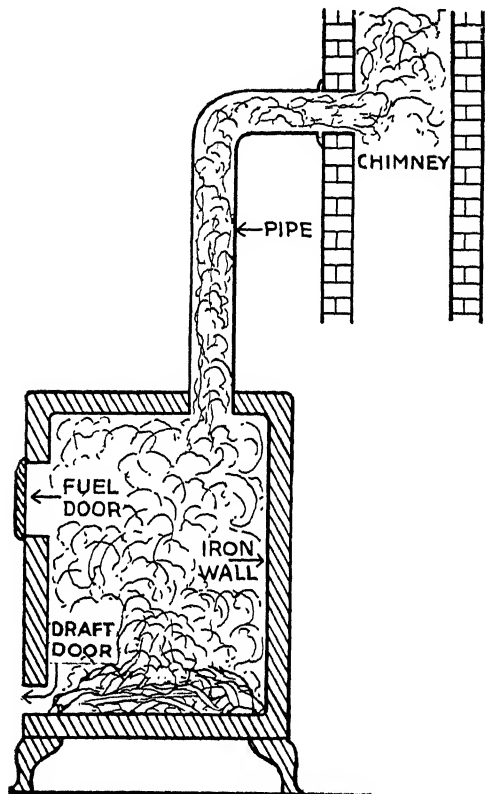


DIAGRAM OF A STOVE

The walls are shown much thicker than they really are.

33. What advantages can you discover for the use of a furnace?
34. What is the most serious disadvantage of warm-air heating? 3116 (Hot-Water and Steam Heating?)

C. Hot-Water and Steam Systems. See BOILER, 814-815; GAUGE\*, 2705; HEATING AND VENTILATION (Hot Water and Steam Heating), 3116; STEAM, 6817-6819; SAFETY VALVE\*, 6295-6296; VALVE (Illustration), 7448.

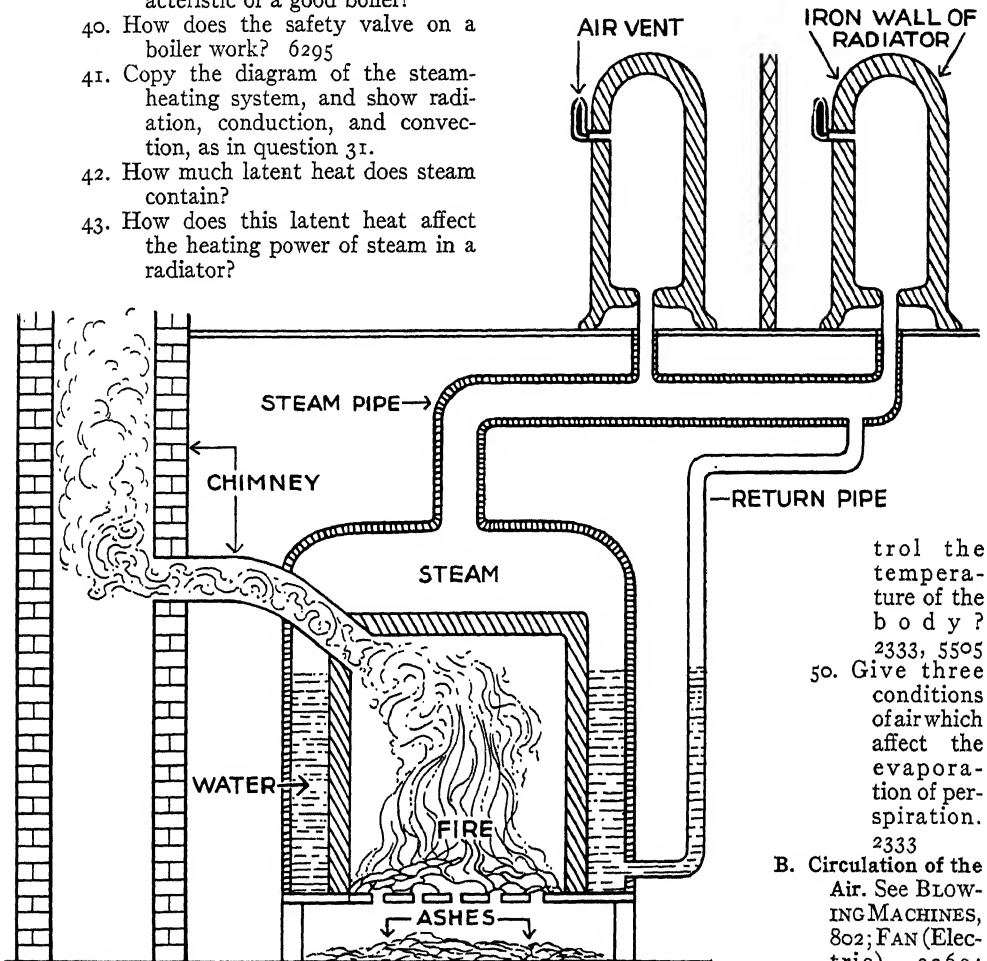
35. Give four reasons why these systems are better than warm-air systems.
36. Give three advantages of hot-water heating over steam.
37. Give three advantages of steam systems over hot-water systems.

See story preceding this outline, and 3116.

38. What is the use of the steam dome in a boiler? 814
39. What is the most important characteristic of a good boiler?
40. How does the safety valve on a boiler work? 6295
41. Copy the diagram of the steam-heating system, and show radiation, conduction, and convection, as in question 31.
42. How much latent heat does steam contain?
43. How does this latent heat affect the heating power of steam in a radiator?

(Recirculated Air), 3119-3120; PERSPIRATION, 5505.

48. Give reasons for each of the chief needs in ventilation.
49. How can perspiration help to con-



SIMPLE DIAGRAM OF A ONE-PIPE STEAM-HEATING SYSTEM

trol the temperature of the body?

- 2333, 5505
50. Give three conditions of air which affect the evaporation of perspiration.

2333

**B. Circulation of the Air.** See BLOWING MACHINES, 802; FAN (Electric), 2369; HEATING AND VENTILATION

(The Ventilating Problem), 3118-3120; LIFE EXTENSION (Rule 1), 3982.

51. What causes the air in a room containing human beings to become foul?
52. How should a window be arranged for the best ventilation?
53. How may strong winds be tempered for a bedroom when the window is open?
54. How dangerous are drafts?
55. Describe two ways in which disc blowers are used to produce circulation of the air.
56. Where are centrifugal, or fan, blowers commonly used? 802, 3120

**IV. Keeping Warm Air Agreeable and Healthful.**

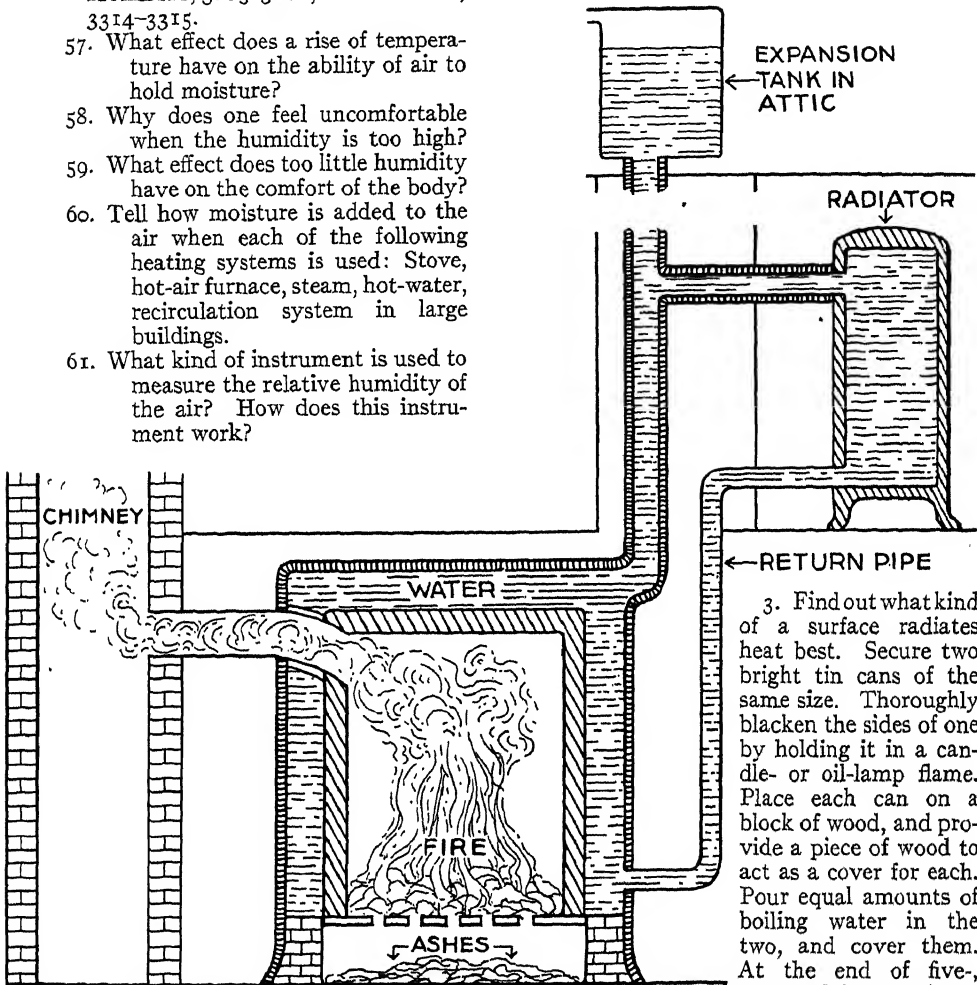
**A. The Requirements.** See EVAPORATION, 2333; HEATING AND VENTILATION



C. **Moisture in the Air.** See HEATING AND VENTILATION (Warm-Air Heating, Recirculated Air), 3116, 3119-3120; HUMIDITY, 3285-3286; HYGROMETER, 3314-3315.

57. What effect does a rise of temperature have on the ability of air to hold moisture?
58. Why does one feel uncomfortable when the humidity is too high?
59. What effect does too little humidity have on the comfort of the body?
60. Tell how moisture is added to the air when each of the following heating systems is used: Stove, hot-air furnace, steam, hot-water, recirculation system in large buildings.
61. What kind of instrument is used to measure the relative humidity of the air? How does this instrument work?

is not warm, it does not have a tendency to rise, but follows any air currents which may exist.



SIMPLE DIAGRAM OF A HOT WATER-HEATING SYSTEM

### Things to Do

1. Carry out the experiment described on page 2700. If you do not have a clay pipe and can get a test tube, stopper, and glass tube, they will serve very well, when used as shown in the diagram.

2. Construct a smoke-maker like the one shown in the diagram below. Use this to test the air currents about doors and windows and near warm objects or cold objects. See if there is a convection current above you in a room where the temperature is about 70° F. The smoke made by this device has the advantage of not being so warm as that from a smoking cotton cord or a joss stick, which might be used instead of the smoke-maker. Because it

3. Find out what kind of a surface radiates heat best. Secure two bright tin cans of the same size. Thoroughly blacken the sides of one by holding it in a candle- or oil-lamp flame. Place each can on a block of wood, and provide a piece of wood to act as a cover for each. Pour equal amounts of boiling water in the two, and cover them. At the end of five-, ten-, and fifteen-minute periods, take the temperature of the water in each can. Which kind of surface would be better for the radiator of a heating system?

You could carry out experiments in the same way by painting the cans with different colors of dull-finish paint.

4. Find out all about the heating system in your school building. Write a description of it, and explain how it operates. Diagrams save much writing. (The janitor or engineer of the building will probably be willing to show you about and explain it, if he knows that you really want to learn about the system.)

5. Look in magazines for advertisements of heating systems. Write to a number of companies asking for catalogs or pamphlets describing their systems. Study them to find

out the newest and best types. The things you learn could be written up as a special report for your teacher.

6. If you have an electric fan, try it out in wintertime to see if it will improve the atmospheric conditions of your living room. Try putting it on the radiator; on the floor, blowing toward the radiator; near the ceiling, blowing downward away from the radiator, etc.

7. Make a hygrometer something like that shown in Fig. 2, page 3315. The thermometers chosen should read alike at room temperature. Any soft, water-absorbing material may be used for a wick around the "wet" bulb. A bottle and tin reservoir could be used to hold the water for the "wet" bulb. Write to the Taylor Instrument Companies, Rochester, N. Y., for their pamphlet, *Tables for Use with Mason's Hygrometers*. This will give directions for finding the relative humidity of the air.

8. Provide some means of humidifying the air in your home. The ordinary pan for furnace or radiator does not provide nearly enough evaporating surface. A wick of absorbent material should be arranged to draw the water up where it will be exposed to the air. This wick should reach to the bottom of the container. Test out its effectiveness by comparing the amounts of water evaporated with and without it.

If you have

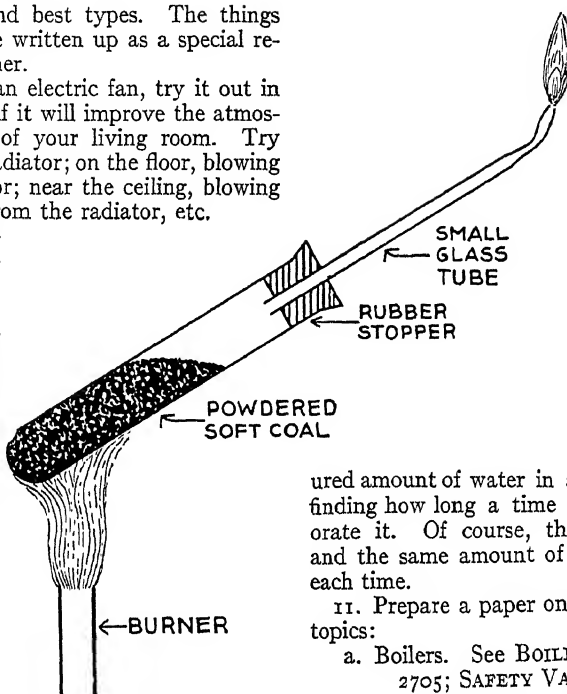


FIG. 2. SIMPLE APPARATUS FOR DISTILLING COAL

ured amount of water in a saucer or pan and finding how long a time is required to evaporate it. Of course, the same-sized saucer and the same amount of water should be used each time.

11. Prepare a paper on one of the following topics:

a. Boilers. See BOILER, 814-815; GAUGE, 2705; SAFETY VALVE, 6295-6296.

b. The advantages and disadvantages of different types of heating systems.

c. The heating and ventilation of . . . (Name of some building of which you have knowledge can be inserted here).

Any large modern building will provide good material for such a paper. It may be a schoolhouse with heating device of the highest type, or a modern church, or a commercial building in your city. Ask the persons in charge for permission to study it, and for information which will aid understanding.

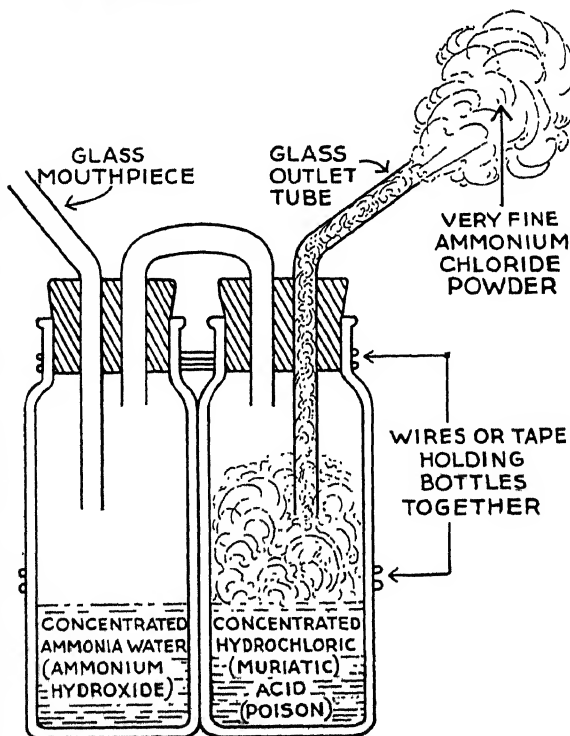


FIG. 3. DIAGRAM OF A SMOKE-MAKER

## UNIT SIXTEEN

## The Work of the Body

## Main Understandings

1. The body secures energy to carry on its many activities by the oxidation of food (or of protoplasm) in its cells.
2. Food to keep the oxidation going on is prepared and supplied to the body by the digestive system.
3. A supply of oxygen is provided by the lungs.
4. Materials of all kinds are carried from place to place within the body by the blood or circulatory system.
5. The waste products of the body's activity are removed by a number of organs.
6. The nervous system keeps the different parts of the body working together.

## The Activity Going On in the Body

What is the most wonderful thing you know? Many thoughtful people consider man's brain the most marvelous thing known. We look with awe at the great machines which carry us across land and sea and through the air. We marvel at the radio, the telephone, and the printing press. Yet every one of these was planned by man's brain, and the brain is only a part of man's body. Of course, it controls and directs the other parts of the body, but it is absolutely dependent on them for the energy with which to think.

The body needs energy with which to move and to send messages from one part to another. Energy is also necessary to carry on the thinking activity of the brain. Where and how does it get this energy? Your thoughts may already have gone back to what you know about food; how it contains the energy of the sunlight stored there by the green leaves of plants. But do you know how the body gets the energy out of the food?

You have often watched a fire burn. The oxygen from the air unites very rapidly with the wood, and a great deal of energy which was stored in the wood is released as heat and light. The wood disappears, and only ashes are left. A similar thing happens in the body, except that the food, which is the body's fuel, is used up much more slowly, and there is no real fire. Whenever oxygen unites with another material, we call the process *oxidation*. We shall, therefore, call this use of food and release of energy in the body slow oxidation, or just oxidation. We must not call the process *burning*, because it would be incorrect to say burning when there is no fire.

Think of the fire in a stove. Fuel must be put in, air must be let in through the bottom to give its oxygen to the fire, the gases must be let out, and some one must regulate it so it will not burn too rapidly, nor go out. Every little part of the body, every muscle cell, every nerve fiber, and every gland cell, must have energy with which to work. That means that it must oxidize some food or some of its own substance.

Just as the stove was supplied with fuel and air, had its wastes carried away, and was regu-

lated to keep the fire burning properly, so every cell in the body must be supplied with food and oxygen, must have its wastes carried away, and these processes must be carefully regulated. The wonder of it all is that the body does all this work for itself. It has a whole set of digestive organs, whose business it is to change food and dissolve it so it can soak or diffuse into the cells. The lungs are special organs, whose business it is to supply plenty of oxygen for every part of the body. There are billions of cells which need food and oxygen. They cannot all get close to the intestine to get food and close to the lungs to get oxygen, so food and oxygen must be carried to them. The body does this with its blood system. That is why blood is so important. Without it, the cells starve and, at the same time, are suffocated. The blood must also carry the wastes of oxidation away from the cells and give these wastes to the organs whose business it is to take them out of the body. Some of these organs help do other work, and some do nothing but take wastes out of the blood.

Then, the nervous system, the telephone system of the body, connects all these different parts and makes them work together and at the proper rate. No part of the body could get along for a single hour without the service of every one of these sets of organs.

For a long time, scientists have been using their brains to find out how every part of the body does its work. Every one of us should know many of the things they have learned, so that our brains can give our bodies sensible care and cooperation. THE WORLD BOOK contains much of what is known about the work of the body. The Study Outline and the questions will help you find this information. As you read and learn, do not forget that what THE WORLD BOOK is telling you about is going on right inside you all the time.

## Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

- I. Oxidation, the Release of Energy for the Work of the Body. See BIOCHEMISTRY (The Derivation of Energy), 742-743; CELLS, 1268; FOOD (The Work of the

Body), 2509; OXIDATION, 5281; OXYGEN (How Oxygen Supports Life), 5281; PROTOPLASM, 5852-5853.

1. Food contains stored energy. When and how was it stored there? (See unit on *Our Foods*.)
2. Why is the oxidation in the body called "slow oxidation"?
3. What materials are used up in oxidation?
4. What materials are formed?
5. Why is oxidation necessary in the body?
6. Where in the body does oxidation take place?

## II. Food in the Body. See NUTRITION, 5121-5126.

A. Digestive Organs. See ABDOMEN, 7; ALIMENTARY CANAL\*, 221-222; INTESTINE\*, 3491-3492; LIVER, 4058-4059; MOUTH, 4702-4703; PANCREAS, 5339; STOMACH\*, 6844-6845.

7. Make a list of all the organs which you think are really digestive organs.
8. Make a diagram of the alimentary canal stretched out almost straight. Show that it is a tube. Make each part the correct length in proportion to the others.
9. Describe the wall of the stomach.
10. Is the wall of the small intestine much different from that of the stomach?

B. The Digestion of Food. See BILE, 736-737; DIGESTION\*, 1946; MASTICATION\*, 4338; also the references under *Digestive Organs*, above.

11. What is digestion, scientifically speaking?
12. Make a list of the digestive juices.
13. How much bile is secreted in a day?
14. What do the digestive juices do?
15. How do the muscles of the alimentary canal aid in digestion?
16. Does any digestion go on in the large intestine?
17. Tell what happens to a piece of food containing carbohydrates, fats, and proteins from the time it is put into the mouth until it is digested.

C. Absorption. See ABSORPTION (In Physiology), 12; DIGESTION, 1946.

18. In what condition must food be before it can be absorbed?
19. Why is digestion necessary?
20. Where is the most of our food absorbed?
21. What is absorbed in the large intestine?

22. What becomes of the parts of the food that cannot be absorbed?

III. Getting Oxygen. See ABSORPTION (In Physiology), 12; BREATH AND BREATHING (What Breathing Accomplishes), 939-940; LUNGS\*, 4154-4156.

23. How many air cells are there in the lungs?
24. How does air get into so many air sacs?
25. How large are air sacs?
26. How is the blood brought close to the air in the air sacs?
27. What makes air go into the air sacs?
28. How does the oxygen get into the blood from the air sacs?
29. Draw a diagram to show your idea of an air sac with its bronchial tube and capillaries.

## IV. Transportation; the Railroad System of the Body.

A. The Blood Vessels or Tracks. See ARTERIES\*, 423; BLOOD (Circulation of), 798-799; CAPILLARIES\*, 1183-1184; VEINS\*, 7473.

30. Are arteries, veins, or capillaries largest? Which are smallest?
31. Of what use are arteries? Veins? Capillaries?
32. Why are the capillary walls very thin?
33. Why cannot one see capillaries in his skin as he can see veins?
34. Which blood vessels have valves in them?

B. The Blood, or Train. See BLOOD, 796-800.

35. How much blood does your body contain?
36. Give five reasons why the blood is very important in the work of the body.
37. Is food carried in the corpuscles or in the plasma of the blood?
38. In which part of the blood is oxygen carried?
39. Why does blood have a lighter color at some times than at others?

C. The Heart. See HEART, 3108-3111.

40. What does the heart do?
41. Why are there valves in the heart?
42. What two sounds of the heart can the doctor hear?
43. Why are the two sides of the heart completely separate from each other?
44. How much work does the heart do in a day?

D. The Circulation. See BLOOD (Circulation of), 798-799.

45. How long does it take a corpuscle

to make a complete journey from the left ventricle through the circulatory system and back again to the left ventricle?

46. Under natural conditions, do red blood corpuscles ever leave the blood vessels?
47. Name the blood vessels through which a corpuscle would pass on a complete journey, as in Question 45. Thus, heart, artery, etc.
48. Where does the blood get food? Oxygen? Waste materials?
49. Where does the blood leave food? Oxygen? Waste materials?

V. Getting Rid of Waste Materials. See INTESTINE (Large), 3491-3492; KIDNEYS\*, 3772; LIVER, 4058-4059; LUNGS, 4154-4156; PERSPIRATION, 5505; SECRETION, 6477; SKIN, 6632; URINE\*, 7421.

50. What is the difference between secretion and excretion?
51. Of all the organs which help eliminate waste material, all but one have their wastes brought to them by the blood. Which one does not?
52. Carbon dioxide is formed by oxidation in the cells. How does it get out of the body?
53. How does the liver help the kidneys take the wastes of proteins out of the body?
54. Of what value is perspiration to the body?
55. Why is the urine such an important indicator of health or disease?

VI. Control of the Body. See BRAIN, 918-921; NERVES\*, 4880-4881; NERVOUS SYSTEM, 4881-4883; REFLEX ACTION, 6036.

56. Why is the nervous system said to be the telephone system of the body?
57. How is a nerve like a telephone cable? (See illustrations of telephone cables, 7079, 7080.)
58. How many cells are there thought to be in the brain?
59. What is a reflex act? How is it different from a voluntary act?
60. Are digestion, breathing, and circulation controlled by reflex acts or voluntary acts? Why is this better?

#### Things to Do

1. Chew up a cracker but do not swallow it. Note the taste carefully. Keep on chewing it as long as you can. Does the taste change? Why?

2. Put a spoonful of sugar in a half glassful

of water. Watch it carefully while stirring. What becomes of the sugar? Taste the water.

3. Get a small bottle of hydrochloric (muriatic) acid at the drug store. Be careful not to have any of it get on your skin. Break a piece of marble or limestone into small pieces with a hammer. Put them in a third of a glass of water, or in some water in a test tube. Shake or stir them up occasionally, for a day. Do they dissolve? Add a teaspoonful or more of the acid. Do they dissolve now?

4. Find a partner who is interested in finding out about the organs of the body. Have him put on some old dark clothes. Take a piece of chalk and draw the outline of his lungs, heart, stomach, large intestine, and kidneys on his clothes. Let him do the same for you.

5. Of course, you have felt your pulse in the groove near the upper inside part of your wrist. Try to find other places where you can feel the pulse. There are a great many of them. (Use a finger rather than a thumb when feeling for the pulse.)

6. Put the following organs in their correct order: Salivary glands, pancreas, oesophagus, large intestine, liver, stomach, small intestine, mouth. Place parentheses around the ones which are hollow to hold the food.

7. Take a dull pin and touch it lightly to the skin on the back of the hand. Can you find any place where you cannot feel it?

8. Get a friend or so to do this with you. Count your heart beats for a minute while you are both standing. Who has the most? Now lie down for five minutes and count them for a minute again (while still lying down). Run upstairs together and count again. What do you find out about your heart?

9. Have two or three friends sit at a table, each with a light stick or ruler held a foot above the table. Tell them that when they see you raise your pencil off the table they are to strike the table as quickly as possible. Do they all strike at the same time? Who is quickest? The time between the signal and the movement is called the *reaction time*. You can think of other ways of testing it. Try a sound as a signal when you are behind those you are testing.

10. Have a friend face the window in bright daylight. Cover one of his eyes with a dark card for a half minute. Take it away suddenly and watch the pupil of the eye closely. What it does is called a reflex action.

11. Sit upright in a chair and cross one knee over the other. Strike the knee lightly with the side of your hand just below the knee cap. Can you make your foot kick out even though you try to hold still? This is a reflex action called the knee jerk, and is used by doctors to test your health.

12. Have a contest to see who can make the most dots on a piece of paper in a half minute.

One person should tell when to start and when to stop by tapping on the table with a ruler.

13. Another test of muscular control is to see who can draw the straightest line across a piece of paper.

14. The following are good topics for compositions:

- a. Advantages and disadvantages of oxidation. Besides the references in the Study Outline, see COMBUSTION, 1580; LINSEED OIL, 4036; OILS (Drying), 5179; PAINT, 5298; RUST, 6281.
- b. The work of the white corpuscles. See BLOOD, 797.

- c. The heart. See HEART, 3108-3111.
- d. The senses. See SENSES, SPECIAL, and references given at end of the article.
- e. Wonders of the eye. See EYE, 2349-3454.
- f. How we hear. See EAR, 2075-2078.
- g. How muscles and bones work together. See MUSCLES, 4749-4751; SKELETON, 6631-6632, and lists.

Answers:

6. Mouth, (salivary glands), oesophagus, stomach, (liver), (pancreas), small intestine, large intestine.

## UNIT SEVENTEEN

### Dependent Plants

#### Main Understandings

1. Most dependent plants get food from other plants or animals because they lack the chlorophyll with which to make their own.
2. There are many different kinds of dependent plants.
3. In securing their food, dependent plants are both helpful and harmful to man.

#### Plants Which Use Prepared Food

It is summer time. Green color is everywhere. Lawns and gardens, fields and forests are clothed in it. It is pleasant and restful to our eyes and so common that our attention is immediately drawn to the flowers of different color that blossom among the green leaves. Those of us who have been curious enough have found in this green color a wonderful secret of nature—it helps plants use sunlight to make food. Animals do not have the green chemical called *chlorophyll*, and so they must get their food from plants.

There are many plants, too, which do not have chlorophyll. If you have eyes for surprises, you have often had a pleasant little thrill as you passed a familiar lawn. There, after a warm, damp night, an impertinent mushroom had pushed its head up through the earth. It may even have had a spear of grass sticking on its cap. Why wasn't this mushroom green? Where were its leaves?

That is another of nature's secrets. The mushroom is never green, and lacking green color, it has no use for leaves to catch the sunlight. It belongs to a group of plants which have no real leaves or roots or stems, or even seeds. And, what is more, the mushroom you saw wasn't the real plant at all. It was just the fruit. If you had dug down in the dark soil under the mushroom, you would probably have found a rotten stick or a mass of decaying leaves. Around and through the mass of material would have been something that you would have taken for mold. This was the real mushroom plant. It had to be there, for it was getting its food from the wood or leaves of some other plant.

It is not strange, either, that the real mushroom plant looks like mold, for the molds that grow on rotting fruit, on bread and cheese and old shoes, are its cousins. There are other cousins, too, whose threadlike growth is never seen, but only their fruit, as we see that of the mushroom. These cousins are the rusts of grains and grasses and many other plants, and the smuts of corn, wheat, and oats, which do so much harm. The red masses of the rusts and the black of the smuts are the spores of the plants. The real plants grow inside the tissues of the green plants and steal nourishment from them.

All these strange plants and others which do not have chlorophyll, or leaves, or stems, or roots, and which have spores instead of seeds, are called fungi. There are so many different kinds of fungi that no one has ever been able to study or even to name all of them. Scientists think that there must be at least 250,000 of them. They grow almost everywhere, and their spores are always floating as dust in the air, so that they may grow wherever they find the right conditions. \*

Bacteria are also plants which do not have chlorophyll, and so must depend on other plants, or on animals, for food. They are the smallest plants known. No one can see any of them without a microscope, and the smallest of them cannot even be seen with the most powerful microscope ever made. No one knows how many different varieties of bacteria there are. They, like the spores of fungi, are almost everywhere, inside us and on us, in the air and in soil and water.

A number of seed plants are also dependent on other plants for a part or all of their food. The mistletoe, which helps make Christmas a

romantic holiday, is a parasite. Although it is green, it grows on the wood of trees and gets some of its food and moisture from them. Dodder, a light-orange twining vine, is a parasite, which grows from a seed like any other plant. As soon as it touches a suitable plant, little suckers are formed to gather food from its neighbor, and then the root of the dodder dies. This plant often does much damage by killing the clover and alfalfa in hayfields. In the woods, one sometimes finds a snow-white or somewhat colored cluster of "Indian pipes" sticking up through the leaves. These are the stems and flowers of another plant which cannot make food. Besides these, there are a number of others which are not often seen.

Did you know that there are plants which catch and digest insects? In some swampy places or bogs, plants find it hard to get enough nitrogen to grow well. We find there a whole group of plants which have traps of various kinds for catching insects. Such plants have chlorophyll, and they make carbohydrates, but they seem to find it necessary to get their nitrogen from animals. The better-known insect-eating plants are the pitcher plants, the sundew, and the Venus's flytrap.

Dependent plants are interesting, not only because they are different, but because they are important. As they use parts of animals and plants for their food, they decompose them and help them to change back into soil. If it were not for fungi and bacteria, the whole earth would be littered with the bodies of dead animals and with the leaves and limbs and stumps of trees. Sometimes, too, in getting what they need to live, these plants make chemical substances which we want. The yeast in the bread dough uses sugar, but makes carbon dioxide, which raises the bread. Yeast in cider spoils the cider, but makes from it alcohol. Then bacteria change the alcohol into vinegar. Certain molds give cheese a flavor that many people like. Bacteria in the soil make it fertile, and help plants to grow. So you see we couldn't very well get along without them.

On the other hand, there are a great many of the fungi and bacteria that we would like to get along without. In securing food for themselves, some spoil the meat, bread, and fruit that we want for food. Others rot our fences, boats, and buildings. Still others grow on the green plants that make our food. Some kill our shade trees and our flowers. Certain kinds make our pets and livestock sick. Some even grow on our skins and in us, and make us sick. These are plants we have to fight against all the time.

If you wish to know more about these strange plants, turn to the references in the Study Outline, below, and read the articles about them in *THE WORLD BOOK*.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. How Dependent Plants Get Food.

A. Their Inability to Make Food. See Study Outline on Food (Where Our Food Comes From) and references there; FUNGI, 2637; MUSHROOMS (How the Mushroom Gets Its Food), 4755.

A. 1. What is the most important difference between dependent plants and independent plants?

2. Where do fungi get their food?

B. Parasites and Saprophytes. See BACTERIA (Activities of Bacteria), 567; FUNGI, 2637; PARASITES (Plant), 5363-5365.

3. What is the difference between parasites and saprophytes?

4. Name three plant parasites and three saprophytes.

5. What are the largest plant parasites of the United States?

6. What kind of plants are the smallest parasites?

#### II. Kinds of Dependent Plants.

A. Bacteria. See BACTERIA AND BACTERIOLOGY, 566-567; BOTANY (Thallophytes), 888.

7. How large is a bacterium?

8. What different shapes do bacteria have?

9. How do some bacteria move?

10. How many bacteria could come from a single parent in twenty-four hours, if conditions were favorable?

11. Name a disease caused by 1 bacilli, one caused by 1 spirilla, and one caused by micrococci.

12. Why are bacteria placed in the group of plants called thallophytes?

13. How can bacteria be grown for study?

14. What is a pure culture of bacteria?

15. How do bacteriologists tell the tuberculosis bacilli from other kinds?

B. Fungi. See BOTANY (Thallophytes), 888; FUNGI\*, 2637; LICHENS\*, 3975; MILDEW, 4473; MOLD\*, 4572-4573; MUSHROOMS, 4754-4758; RUSTS\*, 6281-6282; SLIME MOLDS\*, 6642; SMUTS, 6656; YEAST, 7930-7931.

16. How are fungi different from rose bushes?

17. Where are slime molds found?

18. Do you think that you have ever seen slime mold? How do you know?

19. Where have you ever seen mold growing?
20. Why does mold grow on bread that has been unwrapped and not on that which is carefully wrapped?
21. What kind of cheese owes its flavor to mold?
22. What part of the plant is the mushroom that we see growing in the ground or on stumps?
23. What is the food of the mushroom?
24. What is a young mushroom called?
25. Do mushrooms ever grow on living plants? How does this fact classify them?
26. What is mushroom spawn?
27. Where are the gills of a mushroom, and what are they for?
28. What is a fairy ring of mushrooms? How is it formed?
29. How many kinds of mushrooms are known?
30. Which kind of mushroom is star shaped?
31. Which kind of mushroom has a poison that acts like the poison of a rattlesnake?
32. Which mushroom is said to have killed a czar of Russia?
33. Are mushrooms really a very nourishing food? Why are they eaten?
34. Why are some fungi called rusts?
35. How does rust spread from one plant to another?
36. What effect does black stem rust have on wheat?
37. How can one recognize smut on grain plants?
38. Of what two kinds of plants are lichens made?
39. Would you say that lichens are really dependent plants?
40. What is yeast?
41. How could you get yeast plants without buying yeast from a store?
42. How many cells do most spores have?
43. How could you tell a seed from a spore? See SEEDS (Parts), 6479-6480; SPORE\*, 6777.

**C. Seed Plants.** See DODDER\*, 1984-1985; MISTLETOE\*, 4560; also BLADDERWORT\*, 785; BUTTERWORT\*, 1051; CARNIVOROUS PLANTS\*, 1205; PITCHER PLANTS\*, 5630; SUNDEW\*, 6926; VENUS'S FLYTRAP\*, 7490.

44. How does dodder begin its life?
45. How do dodder plants get their nourishment?
46. How does dodder spread after it has started its growth?

47. Where does mistletoe grow?
48. Why is mistletoe not an entirely dependent plant?
49. How do birds help mistletoe?
50. What is a carnivorous plant?
51. Where do carnivorous plants grow?
52. Do you think carnivorous plants should be called dependent plants?
53. Which plant do you think has the best method of capturing insects?

**III. The Importance of Dependent Plants.** See BOTANY (Contribution to Human Welfare), 892; FERMENTATION\*, 2396; LEGUMINOUS PLANTS 3925; PARASITIC DISEASES, 5365; RINGWORM, 6130-6131; VINEGAR, 7531; also the references under the preceding topics.

54. Make two lists, one of all the helpful activities of dependent plants you can find, and then another list giving harmful activities. Which list is longer?
55. Do bacteria themselves cause fermentation or do chemicals which they make cause the process? Explain.
56. How do bacteria help make vinegar?
57. How does yeast make bread rise?
58. How are clover plants helped by bacteria?
59. What kind of a plant causes ringworm?
60. Would you be willing to have all bacteria and fungi destroyed if that were possible? Why?

#### Things to Do

1. Dig up any clover or bean plant with a shovel or trowel. Wash off the soil and examine the roots for little lumps called *nodules*, formed by nitrogen-gathering bacteria.

2. Grow some bread mold. Do this by turning a small plate upside down in the bottom of a saucepan. Cut a slice of bread and allow some dust to fall on it. Then place it on the bottom of the plate in the pan. Put the pan in a warm place, where it will not be disturbed. Pour a little water in the bottom of the pan, but do not let it come up to the bread, although it will help if you sprinkle the bread with a little of the water. Cover the pan with a larger plate, and do not disturb for three or four days.

It would be interesting to prepare another slice of bread like the first and try to keep the mold spores out. Take a loaf of bread which has never been unwrapped, and cut off two slices with a clean knife. Have your pan prepared and covered. Place the second slice in the pan, and cover it immediately. Put



this pan in the warm place with the first one, and see if there is any difference in the amount of mold that appears.

3. Make a "spore print" from a mushroom. This is done by cutting the cap of a mushroom from the stalk or stipe, so that it can be placed flat on a piece of clean paper. If the mushroom is of the proper age and is left on the paper for a time, the spores will form a clear pattern on the paper. This pattern is different and of different colors when made with different kinds of mushrooms. Perhaps you can find a way to preserve spore prints and make a collection of them.

4. Would you like to catch some yeast? Probably the first thing to do is to grow some yeast, so you can tell how it acts. You may grow yeast by putting a small spoonful of corn syrup in a glass of warm water and stirring it until the water and syrup are thoroughly mixed. Put a small piece of a cake of compressed yeast in the mixture and stir it up. Set your culture in a warm place, and examine it from time to time. Look for bubbles and for the appearance of a yeasty odor.

To catch yeast from the air, you may prepare a second glass of sweetened water like the first. Allow this glass to stand uncovered so that the dust from the air will fall into it for several hours. Then put it in a warm place and see if it will act like the one in which you put the yeast. If you are successful, it will probably take longer than it did with the first glass, but it will act similarly.

5. Make some apple vinegar. Run one or two apples through a food chopper and strain the juice out of the pulp with a small strainer or piece of cloth. Let this stand in the open for a few hours, and then cover with a cloth and put in a warm place. It should ferment and act much like the sugar solution in which you placed the yeast. The sugar will have been changed into alcohol when the fermentation ceases. The fermented juice should now be placed in a large bottle, but not corked. If left for a month or so, it should change into vinegar by the action of bacteria. This change may be speeded up by putting some "mother," or slimy material from vinegar, into the juice.

6. Make a collection of all the different kinds of fungi you can find. Dry them and keep them in cardboard boxes. Each specimen should be labeled with the date and place where you found it, the kind of material or plant on which it was growing, and the name, if you can find it. Some botany teacher or agricultural agent will probably be glad to help you name some of them. Look for rusts, smuts, and mildews on plants, as well as for the better-known mushrooms and puffballs.

7. If you can get a microscope to use, examine tiny bits of mold to see what they look like. Can you see the spores? Look at differ-

ent kinds of molds and other fungi. Look at a drop of the cloudy material from your yeast cultures. If your microscope is powerful enough, you should be able to see the tiny oblong yeast plants and perhaps the buds which grow from them to make new plants.

8. Make a collection of lichens. These are the gray and greenish crusts which grow on undisturbed rocks, on old tombstones, on tree trunks and rotting logs in the woods, and sometimes on the ground. They may be preserved in the same way as the fungi. Look particularly for lichens with spore cups on them.

9. Fill in the blanks in the following ten statements so that each sentence will read correctly. Use only one word where each blank appears:

- a. Most dependent plants do not have \_\_\_\_\_ with which to make food.
- b. A parasite gets its food from \_\_\_\_\_ plants or animals, but a saprophyte lives on \_\_\_\_\_ plants or animals.
- c. Rod-shaped \_\_\_\_\_ are called bacilli.
- d. Mold is spread by means of \_\_\_\_\_, but dodder grows from \_\_\_\_\_.
- e. \_\_\_\_\_ are grown from spawn which the grower buys.
- f. Most diseases of men and animals are caused by \_\_\_\_\_.
- g. Such plants as mushrooms, rusts, smuts, and mold are all members of a large group of simple plants called \_\_\_\_\_.
- h. Bread rises because \_\_\_\_\_ in the dough makes a ferment which changes \_\_\_\_\_ into alcohol and \_\_\_\_\_.
- i. Dependent plants cause \_\_\_\_\_ and thus destroy the bodies of dead plants and animals.
- j. Plants which catch and digest insects are called \_\_\_\_\_ plants.
10. Write an essay for your teacher on one of the following topics. Use the references given in the Study Outline. Prepare an outline of what you are going to write before you start writing.
  - a. How Insect-Eating Plants Catch Their Food.
  - b. What Would We Do without Dependent Plants?
  - c. Plant Diseases.
  - d. Plant Parasites.
  - e. The Kinds of Fungi.

#### Answers:

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 9. a. chlorophyll. | f. bacteria.                     |
| b. living, dead.   | g. fungi.                        |
| c. bacteria.       | h. yeast, sugar, carbon dioxide. |
| d. spores, seed.   | i. decay or decomposition.       |
| e. mushrooms.      | j. insectivorous or carnivorous. |

## UNIT EIGHTEEN

## Germs and the Body

## Main Understandings

1. Germs are unicellular (one-celled) plants and animals which cause disease.
2. Germs are carried from sick persons to well ones in many ways.
3. When germs get into the body they injure it by destroying cells or by producing poisons.
4. The body has ways of protecting itself against the entrance and action of disease germs.
5. We can help the body protect itself against germs.

## What We Know about Germs

A Dutchman, born nearly three hundred years ago, was the first person who ever saw a microbe. This man, whose name was Leeuwenhoek (*la' ven hook*) made microscopes "just for fun," and learned to make better ones than had ever been known. One day he was looking through one of his microscopes at a drop of water and discovered that it was full of tiny living things. After that he looked for microbes almost everywhere—and found them! Men said they grew from the soups and slime and water in which they were found, for in those days they even believed that if a pile of rags and some grain were placed in a corner, mice would be produced. In time scientists proved that either mice or microbes could be produced only from mice or microbe parents.

Two hundred years after Leeuwenhoek had discovered the existence of microbes, an obscure German doctor, named Koch, neglected his patients to work with a microscope his wife had given him on his twenty-eighth birthday. He proved that a terrible disease called anthrax, which killed both men and animals, was caused by microbes similar to those which Leeuwenhoek had seen. A Frenchman, Pasteur, had already proved that a certain silkworm disease was caused by germs, and that it could be controlled by being careful to raise young silkworms from healthy parents in places where there were none of the germs. He had predicted that men would soon discover that the diseases which spread so mysteriously over Europe were caused by germs. After Koch had discovered the cause of anthrax, Pasteur found a way to weaken the germs so that they would make sheep or other animals only a little sick, and then, when the animals got over the slight attack, they couldn't take the genuine disease. Koch, too, kept on working, and he discovered that tuberculosis, which in those days caused one death out of every seven, was due to a certain kind of germ. Still later he found that the Asiatic cholera germ was a peculiar comma-shaped germ.

We now know that each of many diseases is caused by a certain kind of germ which the bacteriologists and doctors can recognize. Certain diseases seem to act just as if they were caused by germs, but if they are, the germs are too small to be seen with a micro-

scope, and they can pass right through a filter made of porcelain. The material which causes such a disease is, therefore, called a filterable virus. A few terrible infections, such as blood poisoning and lockjaw, are caused by bacteria often found in the soil.

Communicable diseases could be kept from spreading and could be conquered if we could only keep the germs or viruses from getting from sick persons to well ones. This is not as easy as you might think. Some bacteria form tiny spores which live a long time and resist drying and heat. Certain germs or their spores get into drinking water and food. Others float in the air as dust and in little drops of moisture ejected from the noses and mouths of sick people. Still other germs are carried by insects that bite us and get on our food. Having discovered these facts, we try to exterminate insects; we shut sick people away from well ones; we purify our drinking water and cook our food; we use antiseptics on our bodies, and disinfect places where germs may live. By taking such precautions, we have greatly reduced the number of cases of germ diseases.

Germs make us sick in at least two ways. Some kinds feed on the cells of which the body is made, and thus injure or destroy them. This, of course, weakens the body so that it cannot do its work well. Other kinds do not destroy so many cells, but they produce poisons, or toxins, which in some cases are more deadly than the venom of a rattlesnake. The germ of lockjaw, for instance, may grow in a thorn-prick in the foot. The deadly toxin the germs make travels up through the nerves to the spinal cord and brain. It injures the nerve cells, and these make the muscles draw the body into terrible positions until death relieves the person's suffering.

Our bodies are not powerless before the attacks of all germs, however. If we are in very good health all the time, such germs as those of pneumonia and tuberculosis find it almost impossible to make us sick. The skin is a barrier to germs. If we take care to kill any germs that may get into cuts, about the only way they can then get into the body is through natural openings like the mouth, nose, and eyes. Even if the germs do get inside the body, they are met by a great army of microbes, called white corpuscles, which move about and

do their best to swallow the invaders. The body also manufactures chemicals to help overcome the germs and their poisons. Some of these chemicals, which are called antibodies, actually dissolve germs; others make the germs appetizing to the white corpuscles, and still others make them stick together so that they are easier for the white corpuscles to swallow. Other chemicals, known as *antitoxins*, are able to neutralize the toxins and keep them from doing serious injury.

After a person's body has overcome a particular kind of germ disease it is full of the chemical defenders, and the germs of the particular disease from which the person has recovered will not be able to hurt him as long as these defenders remain on guard. This fact gave Pasteur and other scientists a clue to another way to fight disease. If they could get the body to make the chemicals without being very sick, then it would be protected from the disease for a long time. So now doctors put weak or dead germs or small amounts of toxin into our bodies and are quite successful in protecting us from such diseases as smallpox, typhoid fever, and diphtheria. They even treat horses with toxins, and get the horses' bodies to make a great deal of antitoxin. Then they take the antitoxin from the horses' blood and use it to help cure disease in human beings.

Since the days of Pasteur and Koch (Koch died in 1910), thousands of men all over the earth have been constantly working over test tubes and microscopes, and making experiments to learn the secrets of germs. Many of them have contracted the diseases they were studying, and some have died. But the knowledge which has been gained has saved the lives of millions of people. Where a thousand died from the attacks of germs a few years ago, only about four hundred die now. But we don't yet know enough, and we haven't been careful enough, completely to wipe out these enemies of man. Most of us have colds or the "flu" each year. One of every six hundred people in the United States dies from tuberculosis or pneumonia during every twelve months. One in each nine hundred dies from some other germ disease. Then, too, while the scientists are finding out how to prevent or cure the diseases which they already know, new ones appear, and new battles must be begun.

To do your share in this war against germs, you should know as much as you can about them and their effects. You should use that knowledge to protect yourself and others from them. A few hours of reading and study of THE WORLD BOOK articles relating to germs will add much to your knowledge. See related subjects under the article GERM, and those under BACTERIA AND BACTERIOLOGY.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. The Nature of Germs.

A. The Cause of Disease. See DISEASE (Germ Theory of Disease), 1959-1960; PARASITIC DISEASES, 5365.

1. Who proved that diseases are caused by germs?
2. Why is "germ theory" not a good term?
3. What two kinds of germs are there?
4. How do scientists prove that a certain germ will develop a disease?
5. What kinds of diseases are not considered germ diseases?

B. Bacteria. See BACTERIA AND BACTERIOLOGY, 566-569.

6. How large are bacteria?
7. Are they plants or animals?
8. How are bacteria able to move about?
9. What is the difference between bacilli and micrococci?
10. Name one disease caused by each of the three types of bacteria.
11. What are pathogenic bacteria?
12. What are the three most effective ways of killing bacteria?
13. How do bacteriologists tell the tuberculosis germ from other kinds?
14. What is a filterable virus? See VIRUS\*, 7547.

C. Protozoa. See PROTOZOA, 5853; ZOOLOGY (The Work of Parasites), 7984.

15. What are protozoa?
16. Name three diseases caused by protozoa.
17. How do protozoa multiply?
18. Why are ticks and mosquitoes very necessary to some protozoa that cause disease?

#### II. Preventing Transmission of Germs. See DISEASE (Prevention of Germ Disease), 1960.

A. Prevention of Contact and Direct Communication. See accounts of diseases referred to below, especially TUBERCULOSIS (Transmission), 7287, (Prevention), 7288; QUARANTINE\*, 5903-5904.

19. Make a table with two columns. On one side make a list of all the ways germs may be passed from one person to another. In the second column, opposite each way you give, tell how to prevent the spread of germs in this way.
20. What is quarantine?

21. For what diseases are homes commonly quarantined?
  22. How do quarantines help to stop the spread of disease?
  23. Why doesn't the quarantining of all cases of disease stop its spread immediately?
  - B. **Combating Insects.** See FLEA, 2468; FLY\*, 2498-2503; INSECTS (and Disease), 3463; LOUSE, 4137; TICK, 7170-7171; TSETSE FLY\*, 7285-7286.
  24. What diseases are carried by each of the insects listed in the references?
  25. Describe two experiments which helped to prove that mosquitoes carry malaria.
  26. Give three ways in which the malaria mosquito differs from the common variety.
  27. How was it proven that mosquitoes carry yellow fever?
  28. How long did it take to make the Panama Canal Zone a fit place in which to live?
  29. What man had the most to do with the sanitation of the Canal Zone?
  30. How is the fly's method of carrying disease germs different from that of the mosquito?
  31. Why is the common house fly sometimes called the typhoid fly?
  32. Can the house fly bite?
  33. If no flies were killed, how many descendants might one fly have in six months?
  34. What do you think is the most important single means of controlling the fly?
  35. Where does the tsetse fly live?
  36. Are ticks dangerous to men? Why?
  37. How do fleas aid in spreading the plague?
  - C. **The Use of Germicides.** See ANTISEPTIC\*, 312-313; BORACIC ACID, 862-864; CARBOLIC ACID, 1191-1192; CHLORINE, 1406; CORROSIVE SUBLIMATE, 1699-1700; DISINFECTANTS\*, 1964; FIRST AID TO THE INJURED (Infection), 2436; FORMALDEHYDE, 2542; FUMIGATION, 2635; HYDROGEN PEROXIDE; IODINE, 3502.
  38. What, in general, is the difference between antiseptics and disinfectants?
  39. Which germicides are suitable for killing the germs which may be found in a cut?
  40. Which germicide is commonly used in drinking water?
  41. What gas is best for fumigating a sickroom?
- III. **How Germs Make Us Sick.**
- A. **The Effects of Germs.** See ANTITOXIN, 313; DISEASE (Germs in the Human Body), 1960; LOCKJAW, 4075-4076; SERUM THERAPY, 6504; TOXINS\*, 7229; TUBERCULOSIS (Cause), 7287.
  42. In what two ways may germs injure the human body?
  43. What is a toxin?
  44. Give two examples of the effect of toxins on the body.
  45. Which effect of germs do you think is more noticeable in advanced cases of tuberculosis?
  - B. **Kinds of Diseases.** See CHICKEN POX\*, 1368; CORYZA\*, 1701-1702; CHOLERA\*, 1407; BOIL\*, 813-814; DIPHTHERIA\*, 1954-1955; EPIDEMIC\*, 2279; ERYSIPELAS, 2291; HYDROPHOBIA, 3308-3309; INFANTILE PARALYSIS, 3446-3447; INFLUENZA, 3449-3450; LEPROSY, 3938-3942; LOCKJAW, 4075; MALARIA, 4236; MEASLES, 4338-4359; MENINGITIS, 4392; MUMPS, 4740; PLAGUE, 5641; PNEUMONIA, 5676-5677; SCARLET FEVER, 6409-6410; SLEEPING SICKNESS (African), 6641-6642; SMALLPOX, 6645; TUBERCULOSIS, 7287-7288; TYPHOID FEVER, 7340-7341; TYPHUS FEVER, 7341-7343; WHOOPING COUGH, 7756; YELLOW FEVER, 7932-7933.
  46. Name two great epidemics of disease which have swept whole countries or the world.
  47. Name two diseases:
    - a. Caused by a known form of bacteria.
    - b. Caused by a known form of protozoa.
    - c. Caused by a filterable virus.
    - d. Always fatal.
    - e. Carried by mosquitoes.
    - f. Noticeable skin eruption.
    - g. Serious after-effects.
    - h. Produce permanent immunity.
    - i. Seldom serious, if cared for.
    - j. Principal effects are on the nervous system.
  48. From the list of diseases to which reference is given, pick the three that you believe most harmful to the people of the world.
- IV. **The Body's Defenses.**
- A. **The Skin, a Barrier.** See DISEASE (Germs in the Human Body), 1960; SKIN, 6632-6634.
  49. What part of the skin do you think is most effective in keeping germs out of the body?
  50. What natural openings through the skin often allow germs to enter the body?

**B. The White Corpuscles.** See BLOOD (Composition of), 797.

51. How do the white corpuscles help the body in its efforts to fight germs?

**C. Chemicals.** See ANTITOXIN, 313; MEDICINE (How the Body Makes Its Own Medicine), 4375-4376.

52. What causes the body to manufacture antitoxin?

#### V. Helping the Body Defend Itself.

**A. Maintaining High Vitality.** See CORYZA, 1702; INFLUENZA, 3450; LIFE EXTENSION (Fifteen Rules), 3982-3991; PNEUMONIA, 5677; TUBERCULOSIS (Prevention), 7288.

53. When are the germs of such diseases as pneumonia and tuberculosis most likely to make a person ill?

54. List three health habits which you think are most important in keeping up one's resistance to disease.

**B. Use of Artificial Antitoxins.** See ANTITOXIN\*, 313; IMMUNITY (In Medicine), 3369; SERUM THERAPY, 6504; and the diseases listed under III, B, (Kinds of Diseases).

55. How is antitoxin secured in large amounts?

56. For what diseases do we have effective antitoxins?

57. What is your understanding of passive immunity?

58. For how long will diphtheria antitoxin make a person passively immune?

**C. Production of Active Immunity.** See DIPHTHERIA (Prevention), 1954-1955; IMMUNITY (In Medicine), 3369; INOCULATION, 3457; MEDICINE AND DRUGS (Vaccination), 4376; VACCINATION, 7439.

59. What is active immunity? How is it produced?

60. What is the difference between the ways of producing active immunity for smallpox, for diphtheria, and for typhoid?

61. How long after being administered does the protection of the toxin-antitoxin treatment for diphtheria last?

#### Things to Do

1. Read the book called *Microbe Hunters*, written by Paul de Kruif.

2. Survey your neighborhood for fly- and mosquito-breeding places. First prepare a large map of your block or home neighborhood. As you make the survey, mark on the map the suspicious places you find, using different marks

to indicate whether it is a fly- or mosquito-breeding place.

3. Destroy these fly- and mosquito-breeding places in your neighborhood, if possible.

4. Make a flytrap, and see how many flies you can catch.

5. Try to raise some mosquitoes in an aquarium made from a glass or jar. It will probably be necessary to put a leaf or some grass in the aquarium and set it outdoors until some mosquito lays eggs on the water. Be sure not to let mosquitoes into your home. Cover the glass with a piece of thin cloth.

6. Look up statistics on the causes of deaths. Which germ diseases seem to be the most dangerous? Make a graph (see GRAPH, 2911, for three different styles) showing what you have found.

7. Make a scrap book of significant articles relating to germ diseases, epidemics, quarantines, etc. Such articles may be found in many magazines and in newspapers. Bind your book neatly, after providing fly-leaves, title page, and table of contents. To make a table of contents which will be satisfactory, it will be necessary to arrange your articles systematically.

8. Ask your family doctor to let you watch him give treatments such as vaccination for smallpox or toxin-antitoxin injections for diphtheria. Perhaps he would let you have a bottle or package after it has been emptied.

9. Prepare a paper on one of the following topics:

- a. Leaders of the war against disease. See GORGAS, 2875; KOCH, 3811; LISTER, 4045; PASTEUR, 5411-5412.

- b. The kinds of germs. See references in section on *Medicine and Drugs*, earlier in this volume.

- c. Germicides. See the same references as above.

- d. The treatment and prevention of disease by the use of inoculation and antitoxin injections.

- e. Insect carriers of disease.

10. Test yourself by matching the following terms and phrases:

- |               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| a. Protozoa   | a. are round.                |
| b. Bacilli    | b. are animals.              |
| c. Bacteria   | c. are pathogens.            |
| d. Cocci      | d. are poisons.              |
| e. Spirilla   | e. are cork-screw-shaped.    |
| f. Germs      | f. are rod-shaped.           |
| g. Toxins     | g. are plants.               |
| h. Antitoxins | h. produce passive immunity. |

#### Answers:

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| 10. a and b. | e and e. |
| b and f.     | f and c. |
| c and g.     | g and d. |
| d and a.     | h and h. |

## UNIT NINETEEN

## Simple Machines for Doing Work

## Main Understandings

1. Work is the overcoming of resistance.
2. A machine is a device which increases the effectiveness of a force in doing work.
3. There are but a few types of simple machines.
4. Complicated machines are made up of a number of simple machines.
5. Machines increase the effectiveness of forces (a) by increasing the amount of force but lessening the distance it can go, (b) by increasing the distance a force can go, but lessening its amount, and (c) by changing the direction in which a force moves.
6. Some of the work put into a machine is always lost in friction; that is, we never get out of a machine as much usable energy as we put in.

## The Importance of Simple Machines

You have often heard it said, no doubt, that this is a "machine age." But did you ever think that man is a machine-using animal, and that the machine age really began when man himself appeared on the earth? If not, it is probably because you did not know just what a machine is. Such crude things as sticks, stone axes, oars and arrow heads are just as truly machines as the most up-to-date reaper, typewriter, or sewing machine. They are machines because they help in doing work. Man has always used them, for he has intelligence enough to know that they help him, and he has hands with which to use them. The chief differences between the intricate machines of the present day and the crude implements and tools which the savage used, lie in the number of parts of which the machines are made, and in the materials out of which they are constructed. Early man did not know how to find and use the metals which are the materials best suited for the making of machines. Neither did he know how to put complicated machines together, even if he had felt the need for them.

If you will look closely at a great machine, you will soon begin to see that it is made up of different simple parts, each of which resembles, at least in principle, some common device or tool. Many of the parts of a complicated machine can be grouped in a class with the brake and the gearshift levers of a car. Others operate like the steering wheel or the crank of a car. Then there may be cutting or splitting devices, sloping surfaces, screws and bolts, and pulleys. These six groups are known to scientists as the six types of simple machines, which they name levers, wheels and axles, wedges, inclined planes, screws, and pulleys.

Many of our very commonest devices are simple machines. Oars and crowbars are levers; chisels and knives are wedges; door knobs and screw drivers are wheels and axles; stairways and sloping walks are inclined planes; screws and pulleys can be recognized all about us. But some of our other very common devices are combinations of simple machines.

For instance, a can opener must have at least a wedge-like cutter and a lever to give force enough to cut the metal of the can. Even a pair of scissors consists of two levers and two wedges, and is usually held together by a screw which is another type of machine.

You will probably not be able to classify all the parts of every machine into the six groups of simple machines, for simple devices other than simple machines are used. Such devices as belts, chains, rods, and gears transmit force from one part to another. Springs and weights store energy temporarily. Brakes use friction to control force. Various kinds of shutters and valves open and close passageways. Wheels, rollers, and balls are used to reduce friction. There are good reasons for not including these various parts among the simple machines.

Scientists have discovered that the six types of simple machines help to do work in just three really different ways. In the first place, they may let a small force move through a long distance and change it into a very great force which moves something for a short distance. A hammer used in pulling a nail out of a board is an example of this. The hand, which alone could not pull the nail, may force the end of the hammer handle to move a distance of eighteen inches. The hammer head then exerts a very great force on the nail and draws it out about two inches. In the second application, a machine may do just the opposite by changing a great force which moves a short way into a much smaller one which moves something a long distance. The forearm acts as a simple lever on which the biceps muscle pulls with a force of about sixty pounds for a distance of two inches to lift a ten-pound weight in the hand as much as twelve inches. Acting in the third way, many simple machines change a force moving an object in one direction into a force which moves something in a different direction. See if you can think of some machines which do this. Some simple machines may even help in two ways at once, but they never act in all three ways at the same time. Can you see why?

Up to this point you may have thought that machines themselves save work. That, how-

ever, is a wrong idea. A locomotive is a great machine, but you may set it on a track and it will never move an inch of its own accord. It must have energy from fuel before it can move. Then it uses that energy to do the work of pulling a train. Likewise, a great printing press seems to be doing work of its own accord, but it is only using the energy of an electric current to do the work of printing and folding newspapers or magazines. You must, therefore, be careful not to confuse energy and machines. Machines themselves do not have energy and thus do not save work. They only help to make effective use of the energy from other sources which does save work.

Careful experimentation also shows that a machine does not make good use of all the energy or work that it receives. We may think of a crowbar as receiving work from a man's hand at the end of the longer arm and using it to lift a log on the short arm. Between the two arms, however, it must rest on something; a stone or another log may serve. At that point there will be friction, that is, resistance to motion. Some of the work done by the man's hand must be used to overcome this friction, and so cannot help lift the log on the other end of the lever. It is used up before it gets there. All machines have some friction, although it may be very slight. For that reason, there is no machine which can give back quite as much work or energy as is put into it.

Now you will want to read more about the different kinds of simple machines and look at pictures of them so that you will be able to recognize them and understand how they work. The Study Outline tells where to look for such articles and pictures in *THE WORLD BOOK*. It also tells where to look for pictures of some of the complicated machines. If you wish to find more, look up the ones named in the list following the article on *MACHINE*.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Work. See *FOOT-POUND\**, 2529; *FORCE*, 2529-2530

1. What is work?
2. How does the scientist's definition of work differ from your previous idea of work?
3. How does one measure the amount of work done?
4. What is a foot-pound?
5. How much work does an elevator do in lifting a 150-pound man a distance of 65 feet?
6. How much work do you do in climbing 12 feet up a ladder?
7. A horse draws a loaded wagon with a force of 125 pounds a distance

of 3,500 feet. How much work does he do?

#### II. Types of Simple Machines.

##### A. The Lever. See *BALANCE*, 575; *LEVER\**, 3950-3951; *MECHANICAL POWERS*, 4368-4369; *SAFETY VALVE*, 6295; *STEELYARD*, 6822-6823.

8. What is a lever?
9. Make a list of ten common levers.
10. What is the force arm of a lever? The weight arm?
11. If, in the use of a lever, the force moves much farther than the weight (or resistance), how do the force and weight compare?
12. If the weight or resistance moves farther than the force, how do the two compare?
13. How would you arrange a ten-foot bar to lift 90 pounds with a force of ten pounds? (That is, tell where you would place the fulcrum, and how long each arm would be, and why.)
14. Does a lever furnish any of the work required to overcome a resistance? Problem (2), 3951.
15. If the valve of the lever safety valve shown on page 6295 is three inches from the fulcrum, and the weight of 16 pounds is hung 21 inches from the fulcrum, how much force of steam will be required to open the valve?
16. The weight on the beam of the steelyard, page 6823, is 21 ounces, and it is one foot from the fulcrum. The large hook on which an object was hung to be weighed, is  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches from the fulcrum. How many pounds did the object weigh?

##### B. The Wheel and Axle. See *MECHANICAL POWERS*, 4368-4369; *WHEEL AND AXLE\**, 7737-7738.

17. Compare the wheel and axle with a lever.
18. If, in Fig. 3, page 7737, the rail and water weighs 40 pounds, how hard would one need to pull on the other rope to lift the water? The radius of the axle is 5 inches and that of the wheel is 22 inches.
19. Make a list of ten wheels and axles which you can find in your home or in common use about you.

##### C. The Pulley. See *MECHANICAL POWERS*, 4368-4369; *PULLEY\**, 5877-5878.

20. Why is a pulley a simple machine?
21. What are the two types of pulleys?

22. What advantage has the first type?  
The second?
23. Why is it easier to lift an object with a movable pulley?
24. In the arrangement shown in Fig. 3, page 5877, how far will the hand need to move to lift the weight one foot?

**D. The Inclined Plane.** See **INCLINED PLANE\***, 3373; **MECHANICAL POWERS**, 4368-4369.

25. Make a list of ten inclined planes in common use.
26. How does the distance one moves in pushing a weight up an inclined plane compare with the vertical distance the weight is lifted?
27. If a barrel which weighs 240 pounds is rolled up a board 12 feet long into a doorway 2 feet high, how much force would be required?
28. Is the incline of a toboggan slide used to gain force or distance? (Compare the length of the slide with the height of the upper end.) 5916

**E. The Screw.** See **MECHANICAL POWERS**, 4368-4369; **SCREW\***, 6453-6454.

29. Explain why the screw is often considered an inclined plane.
30. What is the pitch of a screw?
31. Why is such a device as a jackscrew able to lift such a tremendous load?
32. List ten common uses of screws.

**F. The Wedge.** See **KNIFE (Illustration)**, 3804; **MECHANICAL POWERS**, 4368-4369; **WEDGE\***, 7698.

33. Do you consider the wedge a true inclined plane or not? Why?
34. Why can the mechanical advantage of a wedge not be calculated by the use of a mathematical formula?
35. List ten types of wedges.

**III. Combinations of Simple Machines.** See **BLOCK AND TACKLE**, 795-796; **WEIGHING SCALE**, 7701-7702; Illustrations on pages 537-544, 626-627, 863, 1102, 1486, 1714, 1737, 1952, 2487, 2705, 2709, 2837, 2989, 3494-3496, 3884, 4033-4036, 4054, 4081, 4147, 4283, 4504-4505, 5821-5823, 6014-6019, 6112, 6513, 6519.

36. How does a block and tackle differ from a pulley?
37. What are blocks?
38. What is the tackle?
39. How much will a force of 20 pounds lift with the aid of a block and tackle having three movable pulleys?

40. How many levers are shown in the diagram of the weighing scales?
41. Choose a picture or diagram of a complicated machine which is of interest to you. See how many types of simple machines and how many examples of each type you can find.
42. How many different devices can you find which are used to connect simple machines together? Make a list of them.
43. State two advantages of combinations of machines over simple machines used alone.

**IV. The Advantages Given by Simple Machines.** See **GEARING (Illustration)**, 2709; **INCLINED PLANE**, 3373; **MECHANICAL POWERS**, 4368; **LEVER**, 3950-3951; **PULLEY**, 5877-5878; **SCREW**, 6453-6454; **WEDGE**, 7698; **WHEEL AND AXLE**, 7737-7738.

**A. Mechanical Advantage.**

44. What is meant by the mechanical advantage of a simple machine? 4368
45. How great is the mechanical advantage of a simple machine which uses a force of 50 pounds but overcomes a resistance of 300 pounds?
46. What is the mechanical advantage of a machine which uses a force of 150 pounds to overcome a resistance of 15 pounds? (The mechanical advantage may be less than one. It could be one-fifth, for instance.)

**B. Increased Force.**

47. When a machine uses a small force to overcome a great resistance, is the mechanical advantage more or less than one?
48. What is sacrificed to gain force? 3950, 3951
49. Give an example to show how each of the six simple machines is used to increase force.
50. Describe two cases where you know of a very small force being used to overcome a very great resistance.

**C. Increased Distance.**

51. Give an example of each of the following machines used to increase distance moved or speed: Lever, 3951; wheel and axle, 2709, 7738; inclined plane, 5916, 6633
52. A case of a screw used to increase speed is shown in the figure of the cream separator, page 1737. Can you tell how it works?



53. How does the mechanical advantage of a machine used to increase distance differ from that of a machine that is used to increase force?

**D. Changed Direction of Action.**

54. The lever and pulley are the simple machines most commonly used to change the direction in which a force acts. Find three examples of each.

**V. Friction and Machines.** See ENERGY, 2235; FRICTION\*, 2622; HEAT [Where Heat Comes From (4)], 3111-3112; LEVER (Application), 3951; SCREW (Application), 6453; WEDGE, 7698; WHEEL AND AXLE, 7738.

55. What is friction? 2622  
 56. When is friction an advantage to us? When is it a disadvantage? 2622  
 57. Why is it necessary that all machines have some friction?  
 58. In several places in the references given above, it is said that a certain thing will be true if friction be disregarded. Will the force required to overcome a certain resistance be greater or less if friction be taken into account? Will the mechanical advantage be more, or will it be less? 6453  
 59. It is believed that energy cannot be destroyed, but its form may be changed. What becomes of the energy or work used up in overcoming friction in a machine? 3111-3112  
 60. Considering your answers to the preceding questions, tell why the work put into a simple machine by the force must always be greater than the work it does in overcoming resistance.

**Things to Do**

1. With any straight stick and a one-pound weight, weigh a package. First balance the stick on a triangular block, or hang it up by a cord tied once around it at the balancing point. Then hang the weight on one side of the center, using a loose loop of cord and, in the same way, hang the package on the other side. Shift them back and forth until they are exactly balanced. Carefully measure the distances of the weight and the package from the point of support and work out the weight of the package by the plan explained on page 3951.

2. Get a friend who has studied machines to watch the erection of a new building with you

See which can get the longer list of simple machines used by the workmen.

3. Nearly every garage has a differential pulley for lifting the motors of cars. Get permission to examine one of these pulleys to see how it works. You might even be able to calculate what its mechanical advantage ought to be. See pages 795-796.

4. Have a contest to see who can write, in five minutes, the most names of different devices whose principle is the simple lever. The same kind of game can be played using names of devices which employ the other types of machines.

5. Measure a jackscrew, and calculate how much weight you could lift with it. See page 6453.

6. Which of the following ten statements are true, and which do you find to be untrue?

- Every part of any machine belongs to one of the six classes of simple machines.
- Machines are very useful to man because they help him do work.
- Savages used simple machines a great deal.
- If two unequal weights are balanced on a lever, the larger will be on the longer arm.
- Wheels and axles are much like levers in principle.
- Wedges and screws are really inclined planes.
- If the force acting on a machine moves a shorter distance than the resistance is moved, the resistance is less than the force.
- Friction increases the amount of resistance that a simple machine can overcome.
- If an automobile is stuck in the mud, it will require a smaller force to pull it out if a rope is run from the car through a pulley fastened to a post ahead of the car.
- Machines make energy.

7. Prepare a paper on one of the following topics:

- The Simple Machines That Are Used in My Home.
- The Simple Machines I Found in an Automobile.
- Ancient and Modern Uses of Simple Machines.
- How Machines Help Us.

**Answers:**

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 6. a. Untrue. | f. True.   |
| b. True.      | g. True.   |
| c. True.      | h. Untrue. |
| d. Untrue.    | i. Untrue. |
| e. True.      | j. Untrue. |

## UNIT TWENTY

## Harnessing the Energy of Nature to Do Man's Work

## Main Understandings

1. Great streams and stores of energy exist in nature.
2. Man has learned to harness the energy of inanimate nature to the machines which do his work.
  - a. Windmills use the energy of the wind.
  - b. Waterwheels convert the energy of running and falling water into useful work.
  - c. Steam and gasoline engines harness the energy released from fuel by fire.
3. The work done by man's harnessed energy provides him with luxuries and leisure.

## Putting Nature to Work for Us

A rich nobleman of old could enjoy many comforts and luxuries because he had all the slaves and servants he wanted. When he needed light, they brought candles or lamps; when it was hot, they fanned him; if he wished for jewels and robes from foreign lands, they brought them; if he wished to travel, they might even carry him; when he returned, tired and restless, they made soothing music, or amused him with strange tales. If you are an average American, you need not envy him, for you have the equivalent of countless slaves at your beck and call. The touch of your finger brings light far better than was ever dreamed of a hundred years ago, and currents of air more cooling than those from the fans of many slaves; you have heat or cold at your command; you have luxurious palaces to carry you hither and yon with magical smoothness and speed; magic music, too, comes at a touch, and all about you are books and magazines with stories of every kind; you have leisure for reading and study, while great schools and universities offer you the learning of the ages. All this luxury and opportunity, far beyond anything the rich nobleman of old could ever wish for, is yours because men have learned how to make nature do their bidding.

All about us there are supplies of energy whose limits we cannot comprehend. The sun sends to the earth hundreds of times more energy than will ever be needed or used. This radiant energy warms the earth; and the air, receiving heat from the earth, is set in motion, producing winds. The warmth also evaporates the water of the ocean and the moisture of the land. The vapor is carried to distant highlands, there to fall as rain or snow and run down the rivers to the sea. Both the wind and the running water have energy and can do work. The sunlight captured and stored by the green leaves of plants gives them, and animals, too, the means of living. The energy of sunlight ages-old lies deep in the earth in the coal and oil which were formed from the bodies of buried plants and animals.

For thousands of years men did not know what all the energy about them could do. At first they used only the work of their own muscles. Gradually they learned to use the

strength of animals by devising harness to make them carry burdens and draw plows and wagons. They learned to make the wind move their boats along and turn windmills to pump water and grind grain. They also learned to make the streams turn wheels for doing work.

Then for a long, long time they apparently made little progress in the use of nature's wealth of energy. In fact, however, they were laying the foundations for greater discoveries. They were learning how to make things of metal, and make them well. They were uncovering stores of iron ore, of coal, and oil. They were finding out that the heat set free from fuels by fire was energy, and that it could make things move.

Then, shortly before the Revolutionary War, a period of rapid progress in the use of nature's energy began. James Watt made a really successful steam engine. Other men invented cotton ginning and spinning and weaving machinery to be run by engines. Steam power was applied to boats and railways and to the driving of great hammers for forging machinery. All these made great changes in the life of the world, but not so great as were yet to come.

About sixty years ago, two other very important steps in power development were taken. One of these was the discovery of a way to harness the energy of fuel by burning it in the cylinder of an engine. Of course, only certain kinds of fuel were suitable for this use, but this invention made the automobile and airplane possible. The second important step was not really a new way to harness energy, but a new way to carry it from one place to another after it was harnessed. It was really a series of discoveries of how to generate and use electric current successfully. The energy of a great waterfall could be harnessed and turned into electric current. The current could be carried many miles to do work in a more convenient place. There arose a great demand for water-power to produce electric energy. Improved water wheels of metal were made larger and larger, until to-day a single wheel can produce over 50,000 horse power.

This great series of discoveries of ways to make nature run our machines and of better machines to do our work has made the difference between the rich nobleman and you. It is not a completed story, however. Inventors

and scientists are seeking for new ways to make energy do work. New kinds of steam and gasoline engines are being made. A great plant has been built in Cuba at a cost of more than a million dollars in an attempt to use the heat of the ocean for power. In other places, men are trying to drive airplanes and automobiles with rockets. Thus it may be that the work of the future will be done by a form of power quite different from any that we now know.

This story has not told you much about how modern power devices work, but you can find articles about windmills, waterwheels, engines, and many other interesting things in *THE WORLD BOOK*. The references to these are given in the Study Outline.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. The Energy of Nature.

A. The Nature of Energy. See *ENERGY*, 2235.

1. What is energy?
2. What is the difference between potential and kinetic energy?
3. What is the source of most of the energy available to man?
4. Give three common instances of the transformation of energy.

B. The Wind. See *ENERGY*, 2235; *WIND*, 7789-7791.

5. Is the energy of wind kinetic or potential energy?
6. Where does the wind get its energy?

C. Running and Falling Water. See *NIAGARA* (The Falls and Whirlpool), 5010; *WATERFALLS*, 7666-7668; *WATER POWER* (The Water Power of the World), 7672.

7. How much water power is estimated to exist in the world? 7672
8. How many pounds of water go over Niagara Falls in a minute? How far does it fall?

D. Fuels. See *COAL* (Quantity of Coal), 1500-1503; *GASOLINE* (The Work It Can Perform), 2703; *PETROLEUM* (Distribution of Deposits, Nature and Location, Petroleum from Coal), 5522, 5529.

9. Why is coal called "buried sunshine"? 1497
10. How much coal is there believed to be in the world? 1503
11. At the present rate of consumption, how long will the world's coal supply last?
12. How much work can a gallon of gasoline do? 2703
13. What is believed to be the origin of petroleum? 5522

14. What do you think the world will do for gasoline when the oil supply gives out?

E. Sunlight. See *ENERGY*, 2235; *SOLAR ENGINE*, 6678; *SUN* (Composition and Heat of), 6920.

15. What fraction of all the energy of sunlight which strikes the earth would you suppose is not used in any way on the earth?

F. Heat. See *HEAT* (Where Heat Comes From [1], [5]), 3111, 3112-3113.

16. Why is heat important in power production?

#### II. Harnessing the Wind.

A. Windmills. See *WINDMILL*, 7791-7792.

17. Where are windmills commonly used?
18. Why does the wheel of a windmill turn?
19. Why is a vane necessary for the success of the common windmill?
20. How much power does an ordinary windmill develop?
21. What is the most recent development in windmills?

B. Sails. See *ICE YACHTING*, 3334-3335; *SAILBOAT AND SAILING\**, 6301-6302; *SHIP* (Sailing), 6566-6567; *YACHT AND YACHTING*, 7918-7923.

22. How does a sailboat sail against the wind?
23. Why is tacking necessary when sailing into the wind?

III. Water Power. See *KEOKUK*, 3766, 3767; *MUSCLE SHOALS*, 4751-4752; *NIAGARA FALLS AND RIVER* (Water Power), 5013; *TURBINE WHEEL\**, 7298-7299; *WATER POWER\**, 7670-7674; *WATER WHEEL\**, 7674-7676.

24. Which type of old-fashioned water wheel has been used most widely? 7676
25. Which type of wheel is shown in the picture on page 2255? What does it seem to have been used for?
26. What is the simplest type of turbine wheel? 7298
27. How does a water motor work? 7299
28. How is a turbine wheel different from the older wheels?
29. How do the guide blades of a turbine help to increase its efficiency? 7299
30. How much head do the turbines at Niagara have? 7299, 7671
31. Why is water power less expensive than other methods of operating machinery? 7670

32. What is meant by the cascade arrangement of water power plants?
33. What two facts about a waterfall or dam must be considered in estimating the amount of power it can produce? 7670
34. What per cent of all the power of the water do most wheels use? What per cent do the very best wheels use? 7671
35. Where are "high-head" water power plants most common? 7671
36. What influences have encouraged the development of hydroelectric plants?
37. What are the principal uses of hydroelectric power? 7672
38. Why do you think it is difficult to harness the energy of waves? 7674
39. How many lamps will a single generator at Keokuk light? 3766
40. How sensitive are the governors at Keokuk? 3766
41. How much power will the water wheels at Muscle Shoals develop? What will the power be used for? 4751
42. How is the water used for power at Niagara? 5013
43. Why may the power companies not take all the water they want from Niagara River?

#### IV. Power from Fuels. See ENGINE, 2236.

- A. Producing and Harnessing Steam. See BOILER\*, 814-815; GOVERNOR\*, 2883; LOCOMOTIVE, 4076-4082; RAILROAD, 5973-5984; SHIP, 6562-6570; STEAM\*, 6817-6819; STEAM ENGINE\*, 6819-6820; STEAM HAMMER\*, 6820-6821; STEAM SHOVEL\*, 6821; TURBINE (Steam), 7299.
44. What is the appearance of true steam? 6819
  45. What causes the pressure of steam? 6819
  46. What is superheated steam? 6819
  47. Why is a boiler a necessary part of a steam power plant?
  48. What are the important parts of a boiler? 814
  49. What is the difference between a fire-tube boiler and a water-tube boiler? 814
  50. What is the most important characteristic of a boiler? 814
  51. How is mercury vapor used for power? 815
  52. Trace the energy of a lump of coal to the piston of a steam engine. 6819

53. Did air pressure or steam do the work of the Newcomen engine? How? 6820
  54. How did Watt reduce the cost of operating the steam engine? 6820
  55. What was Watt's second important improvement of the steam engine? 6820
  56. Which way would the piston in the diagram on page 6819 be moving if steam were furnished to the engine? How do you know?
  57. When the piston reaches the end of the cylinder what changes will take place?
  58. How does the used steam get out?
  59. What is a compound engine? 6820
  60. How is a turbine different from the ordinary steam engine? 6820, 7299
  61. For what important uses are turbines employed? 6820
  62. How does a governor control the speed of an engine? 2883
  63. How closely can the force of a steam hammer be regulated? 6821
  64. What are the important parts of a locomotive? 4078
  65. What are the differences between fast passenger locomotives and those used to pull freight trains? 4078-4082
  66. How much power is used to drive the largest steamships? 6562
  67. What form of engine is used? 6565
- B. Internal Combustion Engines. See AIRCRAFT, 112-151; AUTOMOBILE, 534-536; CARBURATOR\*, 1194-1195; DIESEL ENGINE\*, 1944; GAS ENGINE\*, 2700-2702; SHIP (Motor), 6566; TRACTION ENGINE, 7233.
68. Why is a gas engine called an internal combustion engine? 2700-2702
  69. What advantages does the internal combustion engine have for small power jobs? 2702
  70. When is liquid fuel better than gas for use in an internal combustion engine? 2702
  71. A collar or breast strap for the horse to push against is a very important part of a harness. What, in a gas engine, corresponds to the horse collar? 3048 (picture), 2701, 2702
  72. Give a connected account of what happens in the cylinder of a gas engine during two revolutions of the crank shaft. 2701, 2702
  73. How is too much fuel prevented from entering the carburetor? 1195

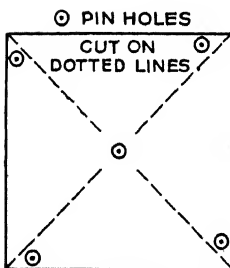
74. What makes the fluid flow through the nozzle of a carburetor? 1195
75. How much power has been developed by a single gas engine? 2702
76. What part does a flywheel play in the operation of a gas engine? 540-541
77. How does the clutch drive a car? Why is it necessary? 542
78. Give two uses of the differential. 542
79. In what ways are tractors better than horses for farm work? 7233
80. Why are spark plugs not needed on Diesel engines? 1944
81. How does the Diesel engine compare with the steam engine in efficiency?
82. What are the advantages of Diesel engines?

**V. Measuring Power.** See HORSE POWER, 3252-3253.

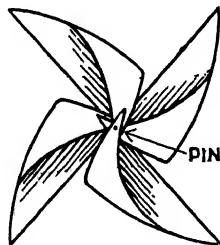
83. How was the size of a horse power decided upon? 3252
84. How much is one horse power? 3252
85. If an engine lifts 1,320 pounds 100 feet in a minute, how many horse power is it delivering?
86. Which method of determining the horse power of an engine gives the amount actually delivered? 3253

**VI. How the Harnessed Energy of Nature Changes Our Lives.** See AUTOMOBILE, 534-535; AIRCRAFT, 112-113; MACHINE, 4180; RAILROADS, 5973-5974; SHIP, 6562-6568

87. Choose what seems to you to be the most important influence of the development of water power, of steam power, and of gasoline power on your life. Tell why you choose each one.



Plan for Cutting Paper



Completed Pinwheel

**A PAPER WINDMILL**

**Things to Do**

1. Make a toy windmill. The diagram shows you how to do it. If you like to make models,

you can plan a working model of a wooden or metal windmill. Do not forget that it must be free to turn toward the wind.

2. Make an undershot water wheel. Use a cylindrical block of tough wood for the hub. Cut paddles of sheet iron or tin, and push them into knife cuts or narrow saw cuts in the hub. Two nails driven into the ends of the hub will serve as a shaft. Make a square wooden trough to fit your wheel. Set the trough on a slope, and let water from a faucet, hose, or pump run rapidly through it. If you live near a stream, you may be able to arrange it so the running water will turn it. Perhaps you can plan an overshot wheel and build a little dam to supply water to run it.

3. Make a collection of strange and unusual ways of harnessing energy. The following references will give you a start: BARKER'S MILL, 621; HYDRAULIC RAM, 3304-3305; ROCKET, 6155; SOLAR ENGINE, 6678. Look in science magazines in a public library or a school library for others. You will not find examples in every issue.

4. Read magazines of science and invention, to find the latest improvements of engines and water wheels.

5. Put an inch of water in the bottom of a test tube. Push a cork or rubber stopper lightly into the opening of the tube. Bend a strip of cardboard about the top for a holder. Hold the tube in a sloping position, with the top away from you, and heat the bottom until the water boils. If the steam does not leak past the stopper you will get results. Do not push the stopper in too tightly.

6. Fill in the missing parts of the steam engine shown in the diagram. Label the important parts.

7. Do you know your engines? To which kind of engine does each of the following belong:

- a. The name of its inventor?
- b. A "steam windmill"?
- c. Water-cooling system?
- d. One push for each two revolutions?
- e. One push for each revolution?
- f. Two pushes for each revolution?
- g. Four pushes for each revolution?
- h. Compression of 500 pounds to the square inch?
- i. Carburetor?
- j. Slide valve?
- k. Spark plug?
- l. Eccentric?
- m. Timing gears?

8. Prepare an interesting paper on one of the following topics. References for most of them will be found in the Study Outline.

- a. What Power Means to the World.
- b. The Sun as a Source of Energy.
- c. The Importance of Heat.
- d. Power from Water.
- e. The Work of Explosives. (See EXPLO-

SIVES, 2345, and list of references accompanying the article.)

- f. Transformations of Energy in Power Devices.
- g. The Work of Gasoline Engines.
- h. The Work of Steam Engines.

Answers:

- a. Diesel engine.
- b. Steam turbine.
- c. Any internal-combustion engine.
- d. One-cylinder, four-stroke cycle gas engine or Diesel.

- e. Two-cylinder, four-stroke cycle, or a one-cylinder two-stroke cycle gas engine.
- f. Steam engine, or four-cylinder four-stroke cycle, gas engine.
- g. Four-cylinder four-stroke cycle gas engine.
- h. Diesel engine.
- i. Gas (gasoline) engine.
- j. Steam engine.
- k. Gas engine.
- l. Steam engine.
- m. Gas engine.

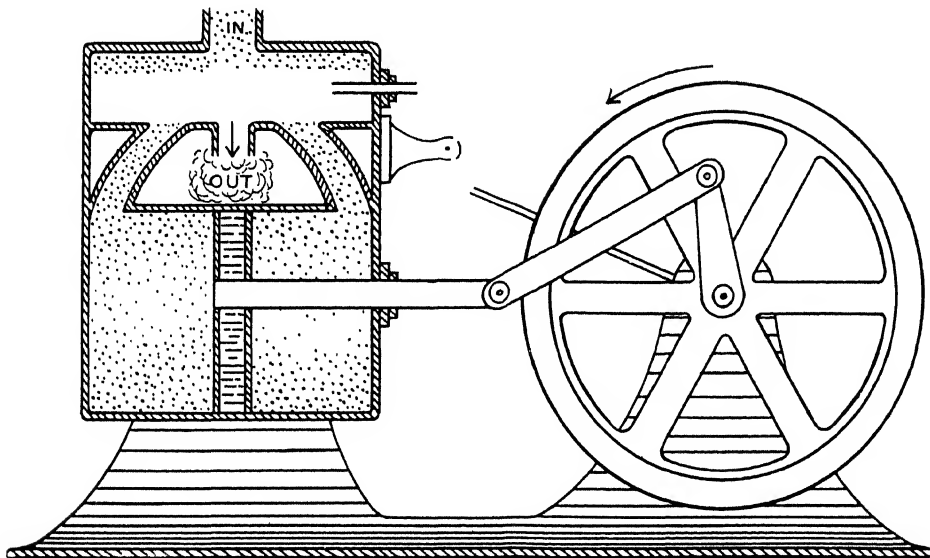


DIAGRAM OF A STEAM ENGINE

## UNIT TWENTY-ONE

### Generating and Using Electric Currents

#### Main Understandings

1. An electric current is a stream of electrons flowing through a circuit.
2. The electrons are commonly caused to flow through the circuit by chemical or magnet action (energy).
3. Electric currents have chemical, magnetic, and heat effects.
4. The electric current is a convenient method of transferring energy from one place to another.

#### Electricity at Work

Electricity is a magic servant, responsive to the slightest sound or the merest shimmer of light, yet quick as lightning and stronger than any giant. It carries the power of the distant waterfall into the heart of a city or throws the voice of man across the ocean. Almost unknown a hundred years ago, it has become our most useful helper.

Now that scientists have learned to control electricity and to make it work for us, they have come to believe that everything is made

of two kinds of very tiny electrical particles, *protons* and *electrons*. In some materials, such as copper or iron, there are electrons which can be got loose from their places and made to move along in a stream through the material. Such a material we call a *conductor*, and the stream of moving electrons is an *electric current*. When we wish to have an electric current move over a long distance, we provide a long, narrow path of conducting material, a wire, and surround it with some other kind of material, called an *insulator*, through which the electrons do not move easily. This will force

the stream of electrons to stay in its path. However, if the electrons are made to flow through such a path, there will soon be a

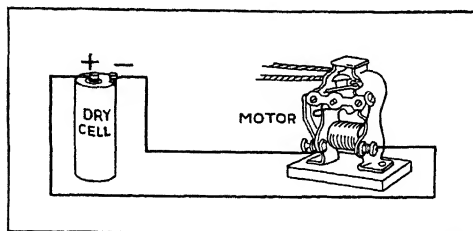


FIG. 1. A. SIMPLE ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

scarcity of them at one end and an over-supply at the other. There will then be such

come back through the moist soil. This is done in some telephone and telegraph systems.

A simple circuit, to be of any use, includes something, such as a "dry cell," to make the electrons move; a wire to conduct them to the place where they are to do work; a motor, or other device, in which they can work; and a wire to bring them back again (Fig. 1). But suppose you want the moving electrons to do two kinds of work at once, how will you arrange your circuit? That is not so hard, for you can just have the electrons go through a motor and turn it, through a lamp and light it, and then return to the starting point (Fig. 2). This kind of an arrangement is a series circuit, because the electrons go through one thing after another in a series. To be sure, it will take more force to push them through, but

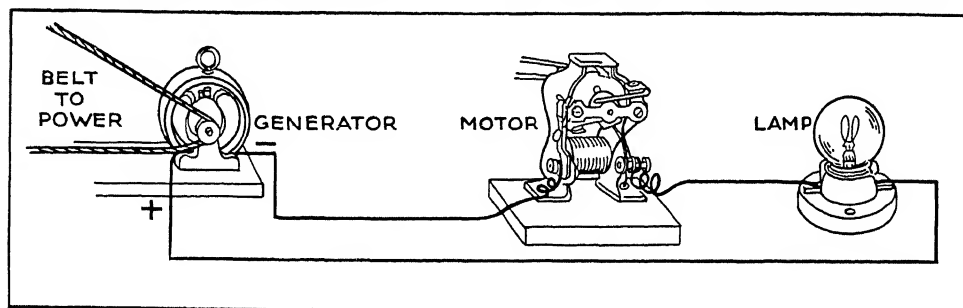


FIG. 2. A SERIES CIRCUIT

a high electrical pressure at the over-supplied end that we can not make any more electrons move, and the current will stop. When we use a current we must, therefore, have a return path as well as a going path, that is, there must be a complete circuit so that the electrons can

they are doing more work in operating two devices instead of one.

There is a second way to arrange for the current to do several things at once. You may divide it, and send part of the electrons through each division (Fig. 3). This arrange-

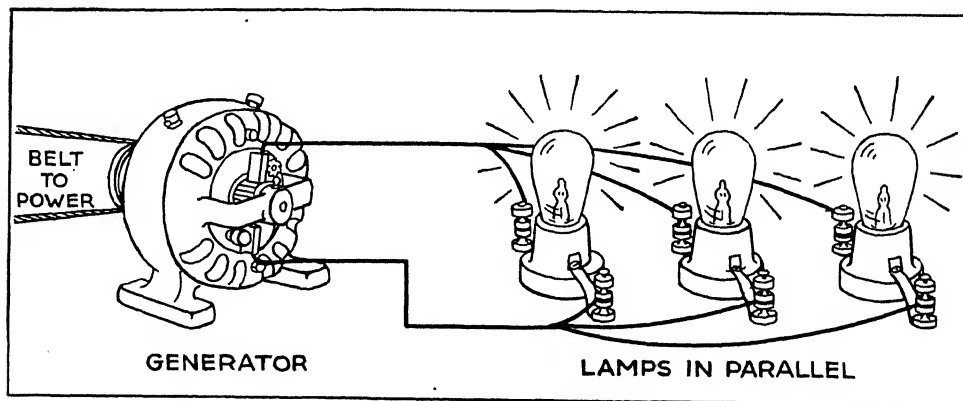


FIG. 3. DIVIDED OR PARALLEL CIRCUIT

go out to the place where they do work, and then come back to the place from which they started. We may make the entire circuit of insulated wire, or we may connect one end of the wire with the earth and let the electrons

ment makes a divided, multiple, or parallel circuit, and is used in all our house wiring. It takes more electrons to light three lamps than one, but the pressure does not have to be any greater.

There are series and parallel connections for batteries, too, but the same principles hold true. If all the electrons are made to go through all the cells, they will *gain* more pressure (Fig. 4), but if each cell alone forces some of the electrons around, there can be more of them, but the pressure will be lower.

You already know that there must be some kind of an electrical pump to make the electrons move in a current. Chemical action makes an electric current by which chemical energy is changed into electrical energy. Devices that do this are called *cells*, or more commonly, *batteries*. Magnets also produce elec-

can be readily used. It is, therefore, used to produce electric currents which carry the energy to cities hundreds of miles from the waterfalls and dams. The shipping of coal is very expensive and laborious, and to avoid this difficulty, the energy of the coal is often changed into electric current and sent over wires to run machines, pull trains, and light homes in distant places. The human voice can be heard only a few hundred feet, but its energy is changed into quiverings of electric current and sent half way round the world.

Many people find the study of electricity and electric experimentation a most absorbing

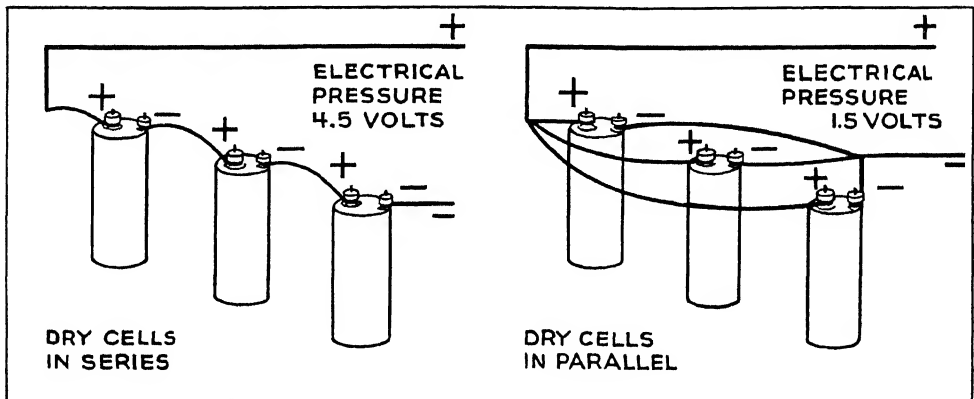


FIG. 4. CELLS CONNECTED IN SERIES AND IN PARALLEL

trical pressure in coils of wire which are moved past them. To produce current in this way, we have magnetos using permanent magnets, and generators using electromagnets. Some source of power, such as a water wheel or a steam engine, must be used to move either the coils of wire or the magnets. The work which it does is changed into electrical energy by the generators and sent out over wires.

Electrons do three kinds of work, and so we have three groups of devices for using electric currents. In passing through a wire, the movement of the electrons will heat it, and the wire will become very hot, if it strongly resists their passage. This heating effect is used in all such devices as electric lights, toasters, and irons. Moving electrons also cause chemical processes to take place in most solutions through which they are sent. Their chemical work is used to charge storage batteries, plate our silverware, and manufacture many kinds of chemicals. Finally, they may do mechanical work by means of the magnetic forces which they produce. As a result, we use electromagnets in all motors, electric bells, telephone and telegraph systems.

The greatest service of electric current to-day is that of carrying energy from one place to another. There is an abundance of water power, but it is not usually in places where it

pastime. If you are interested you can find many helpful articles in *THE WORLD BOOK*. These articles explain the telegraph and telephone, motors and generators, and the more recent radio and television. Use the Study Outline to guide your study.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

#### I. Electric Currents.

A. **Their Nature.** See *CURRENT, ELECTRIC*, 1789; *ELECTRICITY* (Electricity in Motion, What Is Electricity?) 2174-2175, 2176

1. What is an electron? 2176
2. What is a proton? 2176
3. How heavy is an electron?
4. How heavy is a proton?
5. What is an electric current? 1789
6. What is meant by "generating an electric current"?
7. Why is it incorrect to apply the term electricity to a current of electrons?
8. Where do the electrons of an electric current come from? 2176

B. **Their Paths.** See *ELECTRICITY* (Conductors and Non-Conductors, What Is Electricity?), 2174, 2176; *ELEC-*



TRODE\*, 2191-2192; ELECTROLYTE\*, 2193; INSULATOR (Electric), 3468-3470; LIGHTNING (Explanation), 4001-4002.

9. Why can one charge a glass rod with electricity when it is held in the hand, but not a metal rod similarly held? 2174
10. Name five good conductors and five good insulators. 2174, 3468
11. When is water a good conductor and when not? 3470
12. Name a solution which is not an electrolyte. 2193
13. What makes a substance such as copper a good conductor? 2176
14. What makes a substance an insulator?
15. How is conduction in an electrolyte different from conduction in a metal? 2193
16. What is an electrode? 2191-2192
17. What happens when electrical pressure becomes too great to be held in by an insulator? 4001-4002
18. What is an electric circuit?
19. What is the difference between series connections and parallel connections in electric circuits?

C. **Their Direction.** See CURRENT, ELECTRIC (Direction of Current), 1790; DYNAMO (Applications), 2070; ELECTRICITY (Electricity in Motion, What Is Electricity?), 2174-2175, 2176.

20. Which way do electrons really move in a wire connected to a simple cell? 2174-2175, 2176
21. What is a direct current? 1790
22. What is a. e. c. current? 1790, 2070
23. Which kind of current is used most widely? Why? 2070

D. **Their Measurement.** See AMPERE\*, 265-266; CURRENT, ELECTRIC (Production and Measurement), 1789; ELECTRIC METER, 2183-2184; GALVANOMETER\*, 2670; KILOWATT\*, 3775; OHM\*, 5178; VOLT\*, 7565; WATT\*, 7681

24. What is an ampere? A volt?
25. How many volts are produced by a dry cell? 1789
26. What is a watt?
27. Which is larger—a kilowatt or a horse power? How much?
28. How many watts of power are used by a light drawing one ampere at 110 volts?
29. Suppose the first dial of a meter stood at 3, the second at 8, and the third at 3 when the first reading was taken. Two weeks later the dials stood at 3, 9, and 5, respectively. How many kilo-

watt hours had been used during the interval?

30. What is the use of a galvanometer?
31. How does a galvanometer differ from an ammeter?

## II. Creating Electric Currents.

A. **By Chemical Action.** See CURRENT, ELECTRIC (Production and Measurement), 1789; ELECTRIC BATTERY\*, 2168-2170; ELECTRICITY (Electricity in Motion), 2174-2175, STORAGE CELL, 6849-6850

32. What are the most important devices for causing electrons to flow? 1789
33. Who first produced a steady current of electricity? 2174
34. What parts are necessary to make a simple electric cell? 2174
35. How does the cell get the energy to make the current? 2175
36. Where are cells most useful as producers of current? 2175
37. Why are cells not practical for large currents? 2175
38. What are the sources of large currents?
39. Which of the plates in a simple cell really receives the larger number of electrons when there is not a complete circuit? 2168
40. What different materials may be used for the plates of a cell? 2168
41. What is polarization of a cell? 2169
42. Why does polarization reduce the current?
43. How is polarization prevented in a closed circuit cell? 2169
44. Why is a "dry cell" not really a dry cell? 2170
45. What does manganese dioxide do in a dry cell?
46. What changes take place when a storage cell is discharged?
47. In what form is the energy stored in a storage cell?
48. What are the two types of practical storage cells?
49. What voltage does each produce?
50. Make as long a list as you can of the uses of storage cells.

B. **By Magnetic Action.** See DYNAMO\*, 2066-2070; ELECTRICITY (Electricity and Magnetism), 2175-2176; MAGNETO-ELECTRIC MACHINE\*, 4219; WATER POWER (Hydroelectric Development, Uses of Hydroelectric Energy), 7671-7672.

51. Who first showed that magnetism could be used to produce electric current? 2175

52. Under what conditions does magnetism produce a current of electricity? 2175
53. How does a magneto generate an electric current? 2066, 4219
54. For what purposes are magnetos used? 2066, 4219
55. What two types of commercial generators are used? 2066
56. How is the energy for running a generator commonly provided? 2066
57. Why will apparatus diagrammed in Fig. 2, page 2067, produce an alternating current?
58. What is an alternator? 2067
59. What is a cycle in electric current? 2067
60. How many cycles are commonly produced per second for house lighting? 2067
61. Where is the current secured for the field magnets of an alternator? Of a d.c. generator? 2067, 2070
62. Why are generators so important in the development of water power?

**C. By Heat.** See THERMOELECTRICITY, 7144.

63. How can one produce electric current directly from heat?
64. How is this principle used?
65. How can one detect the heat from the body of a fly?

**III. Use of Electric Current.**

**A. For Heating.** See ELECTRIC HEATING, 2171; ELECTRIC LIGHT, 2178-2182; ELECTRIC WELDING, 2190; HEATING AND VENTILATION (Heating the Home by Electricity), 3117-3118.

66. What causes the production of heat by an electric current? 2171
67. Why does an electric light filament give more light than a toaster wire? 2171
68. How does the filament differ from the wire that brings the current to the bulb? 2171
69. Why is electric heating not commonly used for houses? 2171
70. Make a list of the common uses of electric heating.
71. Why is the air removed from an electric light bulb? 2178-2179
72. What advantages have tungsten filaments over carbon filaments? 7179
73. How does the economy of a nitrogen-filled lamp compare with the plain tungsten and carbon filament lamps? 2179

74. How does a mercury-vapor arc lamp work? 2181
75. What color is the light from a mercury-vapor lamp?
76. How is an ordinary arc lamp made? 2181
77. Why is it called an arc lamp? 2181
78. How hot is the crater of an arc lamp? 2181
79. How is a flame arc produced? 2181
80. What are the two methods of electric welding? 2190

**B. Energizing for Magnets and Magnetic Devices.** See AUTOMOBILE (Electric), 543; DYNAMO (Applications), 2070; ELECTRIC BELL\*, 2170-2171; ELECTRIC MOTOR\*, 2184-2187; ELECTRIC RAILWAY, 2187-2190; ELECTROMAGNET\*, 2193; ELECTROMAGNETISM\*, 2194-2195; INDUCTION COIL\*, 3432; LOCOMOTIVE (Electric), 4882; TELEGRAPH, 7058-7066; TELEPHONE, 7067; TELETYPE, 7083-7084; TRANSFORMER, 7243.

81. How can one show that there is magnetic force around an electric current? 2194
82. What kind of a magnetic field is there about a magnet supplied with a c. current? 2195
83. What effect would this have on a compass needle?
84. How can one demagnetize a watch?
85. How is an electromagnet made? 2193
86. How does the electromagnet in a telephone receiver make sound waves?
87. Why does the clapper of an electric bell strike the bell once and stop? 2170
88. What is the purpose of the telegraph key? 7060
89. Why does a sounder make two clicks each time the telegraph key is pressed? 7060
90. What is the real difference between a dot and a dash? 7062
91. How are telegraphic messages sent to-day? 7059
92. What causes the suspended wire in Fig. 1, page 2164, to rotate?
93. Why does not the armature of a motor stop when it has moved as far as the magnets will pull it? 2186
94. What is counter electromotive force? What effect has it? 2186
95. What is a series motor? 2186-2187
96. How is the power for driving an electric automobile provided? 543
97. How does the current used by a

- street car get back to the power house? 2188
98. How much more powerful than steam locomotives are the electric locomotives of the Chicago, Milwaukee, Saint Paul, and Pacific Railway? 2188
  99. What per cent of the power used by electric locomotives is given back to the trolley in going down hill? 2188. How is this possible? 2066
  100. How is the primary of an induction coil able to generate a higher voltage in the secondary than in the primary? 3432
  101. What are the uses of an induction coil? 3432
  102. How much wire has been wrapped on the secondary of a coil? 3432
  103. How long a spark did this produce? 3432
  104. Why are transformers needed in modern electrical transmission? 2070, 7243
  105. How do they work?
  106. How are the coils different in step-up and step-down transformers?
  107. Is the picture on page 7243 that of a step-up or a step-down transformer?
- C. For Producing Chemical Reactions. See ELECTRO CHEMISTRY\*, 2190-2191; ELECTROPLATING, 2195; ELECTROLYSIS, 2192-2193; ELECTROTYPING, 2196-2198; STORAGE BATTERY, 6849.
108. What effect has the current on the plates of a storage battery while it is being charged? 6849
  109. How would you plate a knife with silver? 2195
  110. Give an example of the injurious effects of electrolysis. 2193
  111. Explain why electrolysis is a very valuable process in industry. 2190-2191, 2192-2193

### Things to Do

1. Make a simple voltaic cell as described on page 2168. A simple way to test for a current is by tasting the electricity. Have the wires 12 to 18 inches long. Be sure that the free ends are quite clean. Holding them about a third of an inch apart with the fingers of one hand, touch the ends of both wires to the tongue. With the other hand lift the electrodes out of the electrolyte, taking care that they do not touch each other. Can you tell by the taste when there is a current and when not?
2. Try a variety of solutions such as vinegar, salt, soda, sugar, or plain water in your cell. Be sure to wash out the old solution thoroughly

when changing to a new one. Can you taste the current from all?

3. Make a cell from a lemon by cutting two slits in the rind and pushing your electrodes in.

4. Make an electromagnet as described in the unit on *Magnets* (Things to Do). Try your simple cells with it. By laying your electromagnet on the table in an east and west line and placing a compass needle a few inches from the end of it, you will have a crude galvanometer. A very slight current in the magnet will pull one end or the other of a needle toward it. The amount the needle turns and the end which points toward the magnet will indicate which kind of cell gives the most current, and whether it goes in the same direction all the time.

5. Make a storage cell, and use it as directed on page 6849.

6. Make a telegraph set according to the directions on pages 7060-7062.

7. Draw a diagram to show how you would connect a push button at your front door so that it would ring two bells at the same time, one upstairs and one down. If you have batteries and bells try your arrangement to see if it will work.

8. Draw a diagram to show how a button at the front door and one at the back would both ring the same bell. Try this out, too, if you can.

9. What outstanding discovery was made by the man whom each of the following terms honors:

- a. Ampere.
- b. Galvanism.
- c. Ohm.
- d. Volt.
- e. Watt.

10. Which of the following statements are right and which are wrong?

- a. Electrons really flow through a wire from the negative to the positive pole of a battery.
- b. Dry cells change electric energy into chemical energy.
- c. Electric motors are used as brakes on some trains.
- d. Electric power is measured in amperes.
- e. Direct current generators can be used in motors.
- f. Electrical pressure is measured in volts.

11. Learn to read your electric meter and check your home light bills.

12. Learn where and how to cut off the electric current in your home by opening the main switch near the meter.

13. Learn the location of the fuses which protect the wiring in your home. Learn how to replace them when they are "blown."

14. The following topics are suitable for oral or written reports:

- a. The men who made electricity our serv-

- ant. See the list of names on page 2178.
- b. Uses of electric current.
- c. Electron pumps.
- d. Batteries.

- e. Magnetism and electric currents.
- f. The most wonderful use of electric currents.
- g. Electrons and protons.
- h. Electric lights.

## UNIT TWENTY-TWO

### The Benefits of Light

#### Main Understandings

1. Light is a form of energy travelling at the rate of 186,300 miles per second.
2. This light energy is in the form of waves of different lengths, each length distinctive of some color.
3. Light coming from objects enables us to see them.
4. Light produces chemical effects which are used in photography and similar processes.
5. Light waves may be controlled for our better use by means of instruments such as telescopes, microscopes, spectacles, etc.
6. Light energy produces electrical effects which are utilized in the electrical transmission of images.

#### The Work of Waves of Light

We are turning our nights into days! Light is so necessary to our activities that we are extending the hours of light far into the night by artificial means. All during the hours of sunlight, travelling with the greatest speed known, countless trillions of little light waves are streaming straight to us across space from the sun millions of miles away. What would you do without them? A world without color! Even if you could see, this would probably be a very unattractive world. The reason we have color is because each tiny light wave represents a different color than a wave of any other length. When we have a complete assortment of all the lengths, then we have white light, such as the sun furnishes us.

Some people used to believe that there was a very mysterious force which went out from the human eye when a person gazed steadily at some object. To this mysterious force was attributed the power of the animal trainer to subdue wild beasts and to make them do his bidding. But lion tamers have several times come to disastrous ends when, in the act of putting their pets through stunts, suddenly the lights went out. Where, then, had gone the mysterious force?

It is only by means of the light waves reaching the eye that we are able to see things. Some things, like the sun or a candle flame, send us these waves directly, but most objects reflect the light to us second-hand. Sometimes the objects do not send to us the same full assortment of length of light waves which they receive, and then we do not get white light; so we say the object has color. An object can at best reflect only the light which it receives; therefore, if it does not receive all the colors, its color, as we see it, will depend on the light we are using. Most artificial lights do not send out waves of violet light, and consequently many things have a different color at night,

when we see them by electric light, than they do when we see them by sunlight.

Light waves are exceedingly wonderful artists. They paint pictures which are absolutely correct in every detail, and they do it all in a fraction of a second. But we must furnish the material for the light waves to work with. The waves enter the lens of a camera and paint the picture on the film. The film is coated with a chemical substance which is changed in proportion to the amount of light which falls upon it. We merely arrange the camera so that the light from the scene we wish to record will pass through the lens and fall upon the plate in exactly the same way that light from an object passes through the lens in the eye and paints a picture on the inside. There are ways of taking photographs in true colors, using the same chemical substances that are used for ordinary photographs.

By simply reversing the process of taking photographs by means of light, we can use light waves to project the original scene on a screen. This is made use of in the moving-picture industry. Pictures in their true colors can be shown on a screen, and by taking advantage of the speed of light and the slowness of our eyes, we can make the pictures seem to move. What would you do for entertainment if it were not for light? Light waves are even being used to record and reproduce sound waves. Many of our "talking pictures" are made through the recording of sound on the film by means of light waves.

We also make use of waves of light to prepare plates for printing pictures in newspapers, books, and magazines. The pictures reproduced in this way may be taken either from true photographs or from drawings. There are even engraving processes for reproducing paintings and photographs in all their original colors using different colored inks. These very intricate processes also use the energy of light waves.

By means of instruments which bend and sort and otherwise modify light waves, we are able to see things which formerly were entirely invisible to people. Telescopes enable us to distinguish objects which are millions and millions of miles away. Since the discovery of the telescope, we have found out that many of the planets have moons. Telescopes are being made larger and better all the time, so there is no possibility of knowing what wonderful sights are yet to be seen in the heavens. Microscopes have brought to view many thousands of living things which never before had been seen. By the use of these wonderful instruments, medical science has been able to pry into the habits of disease germs and to plan a campaign which has enabled us to gain some control over infectious disease, and perhaps scientists will eventually show us the way to stamp it out entirely.

If you were not able to hear, you could tell what people were saying by watching the movement of their lips. But what would be the benefit of light to you if you could not see? You have certainly learned that the production of all our food depends on the light which the green leaves of plants use to manufacture starch. Even our drinking water is made safe for use by the action of light waves in killing dangerous disease germs which might be lurking there, unseen to the naked eye.

And do you realize the benefits of invisible light?—light which cannot be seen! If it were not for such light, we couldn't even get sunburned. Special sources of light are used to produce artificial sunburn because of the health-producing activity of the invisible light waves on the skin. Even foods are being irradiated with these light waves in order to make them more healthful.

Follow the Study Outline and the references in *THE WORLD BOOK* if you want to know more about these wonderfully active, beneficial and almost unthinkable speedy little waves of light.

### Study Outline

[Numbers refer to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*. Articles starred (\*) are to be read in full.]

**I. Physical Nature of Light.** See *LIGHT\**, 3993-3998; *NEWTON, SIR ISAAC*, 4960-4963; *ELECTROMAGNETIC THEORY OF LIGHT\**, 2194; *MICHELSON, ALBERT A.*, 4456.

1. What kind of waves are light waves? 2194
2. At about what speed does light travel? 4456
3. What is the latest method for the determination of the speed of light? 4456
4. Who first made the discovery that

light was not instantaneously transmitted? 3721

5. How was this discovery made?
6. In what way are light waves related to heat waves, radio waves, and ultra-violet waves? 2194
7. How does a light wave differ in form from a water wave?
8. What is the "unsolved problem" concerning the theory of light propagation? 5903
9. It would take light four and a half years to come to us from the nearest star. How many miles away is that star?

**II. How We See.** See *EYE\**, 2349-2353; *REFLECTION\**, 6036; *MIRAGE\**, 4529; *SENSES\**, 6492.

10. What do you think of the possibility of training wild animals by means of the "force of sight" which comes from the human eye?
11. Why can't we always believe what we see? 2352
12. Why is it true that everybody is partly blind? 2353
13. How does the sense of sight compare in importance with the other human senses?
14. Why can't you see in the dark?
15. Why can't you see around the corner of a building?
16. It is said that when a person who has been blind from infancy suddenly receives his sight, the objects he sees seem to him to be right in the middle of his head. Can you explain this? 5484
17. See if you can discover why objects which you see do not seem to you to be in the middle of your head.
18. What is the difference in the way we are able to see a self-luminous object and one which is not self-luminous?
19. Explain why a mirage over the desert usually appears as a body of water? 4529
20. Since an image on the retina is inverted, why do not objects look upside down to us?

**III. Cause of Color and Our Use of Color.** See *COLOR\**, 1550-1553; *DIFFRACTION\**, 1945; *DRESS (Color Combinations)*, between 2034 and 2035; *RAINBOW\**, 5986; *SPECTRUM ANALYSIS\**, 6749.

21. What are the primary colors? 1552
22. Why is it unsatisfactory to try to match colors by ordinary artificial light?

23. What is the distinction between tint and shade? 1552
24. Why does the sun appear red when it sets?
25. If the sun is white at noontime on a clear day, what color do you think it would appear if you could ascend above the air and look at it?
26. Which color is on the outside band of a rainbow? 5986. Can you explain why this is true?
27. Under what conditions would it be possible for a rainbow to appear to be a complete circle? 5986
28. Why is it possible for the moon to cause a rainbow?
29. Why are bright colors which are complementary not very good color combinations for dress materials?
30. What element was discovered on the sun by means of the spectro-scope? 3131

#### IV. The Use Made of Lenses and Mirrors.

- See CAMERA\*, 1107-1108; FIELD GLASS\*, 2410; LENS, 3934; MIRROR\*, 4531; MOVING PICTURES (The First Steps) 4704, (Moving Picture Apparatus), 4724-4725, 4728-4729; MICROSCOPE\*, 4468-4469; SPECTROSCOPE\*, 6749; TELESCOPE\*, 7081-7083; SPECTACLES\*, 6747-6749.
31. Why does a camera have to be focused in order to take a clear picture?
  32. Why is it true that you could not see a perfect mirror? 4531
  33. How could Archimedes have set fire to the Roman fleet by the use of mirrors? 4531
  34. What kind of mirrors could he have used?
  35. We are told that we are in total darkness half the time we are in a moving-picture theater viewing a picture. Why is this true? 4704
  36. In what ways has the use of the microscope revolutionized the science of medicine? 4469
  37. What objects cannot possibly be seen without the aid of a micro-scope?
  38. How is it possible for scientists to determine the composition, direction of motion, and rate of motion of a star by means of the spectro-scope? 6749
  39. What were the first heavenly bodies ever viewed through a telescope? 7081, 3721
  40. How was the principle of the tele-scope accidentally discovered?

41. Where is the largest refracting tele-scope in the world. 7083
42. What is the size of the mirror in the largest reflecting telescope?
43. How do bifocal spectacles aid one to see both distant and close objects? 6749
44. What style of lens is used in spec-tacles for nearsightedness? 6747
45. What was the use made of the camera obscura, which was the forerunner of our modern cam-era? 1109
46. What are some of the important industrial uses of the camera?

#### V. The Making of Pictures.

A. Photography. See PHOTOGRAPHY\*, 5579-5584; DAGUERRETYPE\*, 1805-1806; CAMERA\*, 1107-1108.

47. To what man is credited the first practical photographic inven-tion? 1805
48. Chemicals which are a compound of what metal are commonly asso-ciated with photography?
49. What is a "tintype"? 1806
50. What relation does the "tintype" bear to the daguerreotype?
51. What is a photographic "negative," and why so called?
52. What are the three steps which are ordinarily followed in the proc-esses of photography? 5580
53. What is "mosaic" photography? 5582
54. How is it possible to take pictures in color? 5584
55. What is the "color filter" used in color photography?
56. To what extent is it possible to make moving pictures in natural color? 4722

B. The Making of Plates for Printing Pic-tures. See COLOR PRINTING, 5818-5819; HALF-TONE\*, 3016-3017; PHOTO-ENGRAVING\*, 5579; ROTO-GRAVURE\*, 6214; ZINC ETCHING\*, 7974.

57. The effect of light rays on what kind of substances is utilized in photo-engraving processes? 5579
58. For what kind of illustrations are zinc etchings used? 7974
59. What is the significance of the term "halftone"? 3016
60. In a halftone reproduction, about how many lines of dots are there to the inch?
61. How is it possible to reproduce the many colors of an original paint-ing by the use of only three or four colors of ink? 5818-5819

62. What is the rotogravure process, and what is its distinct advantage over ordinary halftone work? 6214
  63. What two colors usually identify rotogravure work?
  64. Distinguish between relief and intaglio processes of reproducing pictures for magazine illustrations. 5579.
- C. Transmission of Pictures by Electricity.  
See TELEVISION\*, 7084-7087
65. What portion of a picture is lighted at any one instant when the picture is being transmitted by electric means? 7085
  66. What is the source of light used at the receiving station for transforming electric impulses into light waves? 7086
  67. How is it possible to transmit a scene in its natural color by means of electric impulses?

### Things to Do

1. Using the information given at the top of page 4457 and the bottom of page 6921, calculate the time that would be required for light to reach us from the sun.
2. Using one of the volumes of THE WORLD BOOK, examine the pictures carefully (using a small hand lens, if you care to) and see if you can distinguish between zinc etchings, or line cuts, and copper engravings, or halftones.
3. Look directly into a large mirror. Move your right arm and you will notice that the left arm of your reflection moves. Can you explain this? Now explain why the same reversing is not the case in the vertical relationship; that is, why isn't the reflection of your head where the reflection of your feet appears?
4. Astonish your friends with the appearing penny trick. With a bit of chewing gum, some wax, or other sticky material, fasten a penny to the bottom of a granite pan or a deep dish (a cup may be used). The position of the penny should be in the center of the pan and the pan should be so placed that the coin is just concealed from view by the side of the

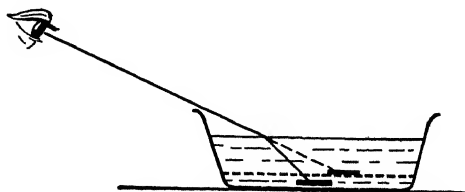


FIGURE FOR APPEARING PENNY TRICK

pan nearest the observer. When water is poured slowly into the pan, the penny will gradually come into view! The explanation of this phenomenon is shown in the diagram. As

the light rays from the penny emerge from the water into the air, they are refracted, or bent, and the penny appears to move out of its true position.

5. To show that light rays will actually bend around a corner to some extent, try the experiment with the ball-bearing (page 1945).

6. Make for yourself a microscope. The materials needed are a piece of glass, some oil or vaseline, and some water. Clean the glass thoroughly, and coat one side with the oil. When a drop of water is allowed to fall on the oil, it will assume a form having a convex surface, and if handled carefully, will magnify objects surprisingly.

7. Make for yourself a camera obscura similar to the one shown on page 1109. For a lens you can use a reading-glass. A mirror is placed in the position shown at the back of the box, and above the mirror is a piece of clear glass with thin drawing paper on it. In place of a lens, a thin opaque paper with a pinhole may be substituted.

8. Find the blind spot in your eye. On a white piece of paper make a large black spot a quarter to half an inch in diameter. About four inches to the left of this spot make a small cross. Hold the paper so that the cross will be in front of the left eye, and the spot in front of the right eye. Close the left eye, and look at the cross with the right eye. Look steadily at the cross, and move the paper slowly toward you from a distance of about eighteen inches. The black spot will entirely vanish when you find the right distance. The reason the spot cannot be seen at this position is because light from around that area of the paper is falling on the blind spot in your eye and you cannot see with that portion of the retina (see page 2353). The blind spot in the left eye may be discovered by turning the paper around and looking at the cross with the left eye while keeping the right eye closed.

9. To prove to yourself that half the time you are looking at a moving picture you are in total darkness, try this experiment the next time you go to a "movie." Move your hand rapidly before your eyes at a distance of about a foot. It will seem to move in short jerks, since you see it for a moment and then it is invisible; when you see it again it has moved.

10. To find out what colors are complements of others, try the following experiment: Select objects having a very clear distinctive color, such as a brilliant red book or a green book. Colored cards are ideal. Station yourself in front of a clear white wall. Look steadily for about a minute at the colored object, and then look steadily for the same length of time at the white background: An image of the object will gradually take form and will be in color which is complementary to the color of the object itself.



## An Activity Program for School and Home

The subject of "character training" or "character education" has during recent years come to occupy a very important place in educational literature, and the need for it is acknowledged by practically all leaders in educational thought.

An investigation of state, city, and county courses of study shows that character education is quite generally required in American schools, but that very few of these courses provide adequate material for the use and guidance of the teacher. This investigation shows further that, although more than two score studies have been made in the field of character traits, there

is scarcely any literature available which is sufficiently specific and definite to be used in the home, where the subject of character education is of paramount importance. Through reference to the following pages, parents can supplement the work being done by the school or plan independently with their own children such activities as will readily suggest themselves.

This course of character training, using material in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia* as a basis, is therefore offered in the expectation that it will prove exceedingly valuable both for school and for home use.

### I. The Objectives of Character Education

The objectives of character education necessarily determine the materials and the procedure. To assemble the best possible objectives, an examination was made of the extensive literature on scientific investigations in the fields of character traits and the activities in which citizens need to engage. The results were tabulated.

From the composite tabulation thus derived, the most important traits were chosen (based on degree of agreement among the studies); and from this list those were selected which in the judgment of the authors related closely to children's needs and experiences. The traits were then combined and classified in the list that is presented below. The list is organized on two levels, one somewhat more complex than the other. Each level might well constitute one or two years of training; thus the entire list might be used as a basic training, beginning with individuals who have sufficient intelligence to do independent reading. This will make the beginning at about the fourth grade, and the use of the list might continue in any grade even into junior high school. Children with a reading ability lower than

OBJECTIVES OF CHARACTER TRAINING

<i>Lower Level</i>	<i>Upper Level</i>
Steadfastness and Obedience	Honesty and Justice
Fair Play and Good Sportsmanship	Courage
Cleanliness	Thoroughness
Gratitude	Appreciation of Service
Self-Control	Initiative and Vision
Friendliness	Coöperation
Thrift	Ambition
Trustworthiness and Willingness to Serve	Loyalty and Patriotism
Kindness and Sympathy	Unselfishness and Generosity
Industry and Perseverance	Self-Reliance and Independence



fourth grade may work on the same traits, but will not be able to carry out the suggested supplementary readings.

Junior high-school grades will probably carry

on their character-training work in connection with their self-government plans or in home-room organizations. They may, however, utilize the same objectives and readings.

## II. Some Problems Connected with the Programs of Character Training

The fact that the foregoing objectives are given in list form is not to be interpreted as implying that on the first month the teacher is to concern herself with steadfastness only, entirely disregarding situations which arise that show a need for thrift or friendliness. Neither should the list of objectives be interpreted to mean that at the end of the first month the teacher can abandon the trait of steadfastness, feeling that she has "taught" it and that it needs no further attention.

No character trait is unitary or general in its nature. For example, there is no general habit or attitude of honesty (as Hartshorne and May's studies show so plainly); there is one attitude of honesty in regard to copying from some one's else paper, another in regard to other people's money, another in regard to telling the age of children when traveling, and so on.

But if the teacher wishes to make the habit or attitude as general as possible, she will set the stage or condition the response so that children may be exposed to as many of the specialized honesty-situations as possible. Such procedure requires careful planning and time for execution. Moreover, specific attention must be given to the same sorts of situations often enough and repeatedly enough to allow for growth.

The recommendation is made, therefore, that the conscious thought of the group be directed for at least a month at a time toward each one of the listed objectives. During this

period the teacher will, of course, utilize for training purposes the important situations of the children as they arise, both those which refer to the particular objective toward which she is aiming, and any others that hold value for children.

Is character training, then, to appear on the program as a separate "subject"? Obviously, if such training is to function, it should permeate every period of the school day and of the child's out-of-school activities. A "character period" of twenty minutes is therefore an anomaly. The spirit of honesty, friendliness, independence, initiative, and so on should be manifest in every activity with which the school is connected.

Nevertheless, it is helpful to turn the attention of the group at intervals specifically to the consideration of certain traits and of problems connected with those traits. The occasions should probably be in connection with the children's group life as members of a "Citizenship Club" (or whatever name the children may select). The activity should probably not be labeled as "character training."

A suggested procedure for use at such club meetings of children in the elementary school follows. One objective is carried through a series of meetings for a month or two months. Only one meeting a week is necessary for specific consideration of problems, but the training should be continuous and it should be cumulative.

## III. A Method of Procedure for Use in Developing Character Traits in Children of the Elementary School

The general method suggested for each trait consists of the following steps:

(1) The awakening in the child of interest in the trait; (2) finding the direct application of the trait to the children's own life-situations; (3) observing this trait as it abounds in the lives of the people of the community; (4) reading about a variety of situations in which this trait has been displayed; (5) practicing the trait assiduously in as many specific situations as may be possible (children are asked to list the possible situations, and choose for practice particularly those in which they feel themselves weak); (6) considering the problems that are likely to be encountered in attempting to live up to the ideal; (7) stating as a summary the resulting generalizations or conclusions.

### Proposed Plan for the Meetings of the Citizenship Club

#### First Meeting.

1. *Introduce the trait to be considered for the month through a quotation or short poem on the board.*

Children discuss the meaning. Questions and directions: "Does this thought apply in any way to your own life? List the ways in which it does." (The teacher writes on the board as the children enumerate.)

2. *Recall of observed acts and the setting of problems.*  
"Have you observed acts of others in which the same trait appeared?" (Make a second list of situations observed by the children.)

"Watch for acts of people in your community which show that they have this trait." (Post on the bulletin board the lists already given.) Ask each child to make an additional list of situations he has observed during the week.

"At the next meeting of our Citizenship Club, a week from to-day, we will hear your reports"

### 3. Suggested Reading.

"Here is a list of stories about people who have met the same kind of problems as those we have been discussing. Should you like to know what they did in each case?" (The books will be freely available to the children during their free-reading periods throughout the week.)

### Second Meeting.

#### 1. Hear the reports of the observations.

Compile one list from all the reports, and add it to the material on the bulletin board.

#### 2. Hear the reports of some of the stories.

3. *Planning for practice.* During the last ten minutes of the meeting, children decide what are the most important ways in which they can practice this trait in their daily living. The bulletin-board lists will give assistance. Each child makes a copy of the full list, and decides which point he most needs to practice. He makes a copy of this point to take home to show his mother and father, and asks them to help him practice it during the week.

4. *Assignment:* "At our next meeting we will finish telling the stories read, and those children who wish to do so, may tell us about their experiences."

### Third Meeting.

#### 1. Reports.

Hear the reports of experiences of pupils in trying to carry out the activities they chose to practice.

#### 2. Checking lists and setting more problems.

Directions: "Take out your complete list. Check those traits in which you think you have improved during the week; notice those in which you are still weak. Take home a copy of the complete list this week, and ask your mother and father to help you to remember to practice all the acts mentioned on it. If you experience any trouble or difficulty in carrying out these activities, make note of it, and bring your question to class next week, or to the teacher at any time, or put it in the question box.

#### 3. Hear the remainder of the stories.

### Fourth Meeting.

#### 1. Problem Solving.

- Read the problems that have been presented.
- List all arguments on one side of each case
- List all arguments on the other side.
- Come to a conclusion as to what should be done.

2. Write the general conclusion in the form of a generalization.

## IV. Specific Examples of the Working Out of Each Trait

### LOWER LEVEL: UNIT ONE

### Steadfastness and Obedience

#### 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be aroused through the story of "The Little Dutch Hero," page 6857; "Leonidas," page 3937, "Theodore Roosevelt: His Boyhood and Youth," page 6186, or the story of Edward W. Bok, page 816.

#### 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which the traits steadfastness and obedience appear. A few examples of such situations follow:

- Arriving at school on time regularly.
- Working out a long, hard report for a class project.
- Practicing a music lesson.
- Keeping appointments with playmates, members of the family, or teachers.
- Obedying traffic regulations.
- Solving a hard problem in arithmetic.
- Keeping a garden free from weeds.

#### 3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

The children report instances in which they have seen steadfastness and obedience displayed. Examples such as pupils may report are these:

- Mother getting dinner for the family, even though she is tired.
- Father working patiently on the job, day after day.

The postman delivering the mail, rain or shine.  
The newsboy staying at his stand, in spite of cold and sleet.

The traffic officer always on duty, helping little children across the street.

Drivers stopping for traffic lights.

Firemen reporting promptly at a signal of fire, facing danger without wavering.

Stores, banks, schools opening promptly at stated hours.

#### 4. Reading about people who are steadfast and obedient.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

#### STEADFASTNESS

Allen, Ethan, 224  
Atlas, 491  
Calhoun, John C., 1078-1079  
Cato the Elder, 1248  
Daniel, 1820-1821  
Evangeline, 2329-2332  
Huss, John, 3298  
Jackson, Thomas J., 3605-3606  
Jerome of Prague, 3657  
Jesus Christ, 3662-3671  
John the Baptist, 3691-3692  
Joshua, 3702  
Kossuth, Louis, 3814-3815  
Laurens, Henry, 3893

#### OBEDIENCE

Aaron, 2 (negative)  
Alden, John, 195  
Casabianca, 1225  
Joan of Arc, 3677-3679  
Leonidas, 3937

Lee, Robert E., 3917-3921  
Lincoln, Abraham, 4011-  
4019

Montcalm, Louis J., 4619  
Roosevelt, Theodore, 6185-  
6190

Schurz, Carl, 6431  
Story-Telling: A Little  
Dutch Hero, 6857-6858  
Thomas, George Henry,

7152-7153  
Tyndale, William, 7337-7338  
Verdun, 7493-7494  
Washington, George, 7644-

7657  
Winthrop, John, 7800

### Quotations

Let us do our duty in our shop or our kitchen, or in the market, the street, the office, the school, the home, just as faithfully as if we stood in the front rank of some great battle and knew that victory for mankind depended on our courage, our strength, our will. When we do that, the humblest of us will be serving in that great army which battles for the welfare of the world.

—Theodore Parker.

This above all: to thine own self be true,  
And it must follow, as the night the day,  
Thou canst not then be false to any man.

—Shakespeare.

So nigh is grandeur to our dust,  
So near is God to man,  
When Duty whispers low, *Thou must*,  
The youth replies, *I can*.

—Emerson.

Theirs not to reason why,  
Theirs but to do and die.

—Tennyson.

## LOWER LEVEL: UNIT TWO

### Fair Play and Good Sportmanship

#### 1. Arousing interest in the traits.

Interest may be aroused through a discussion of the Boy Scout Law. The Scout Law is presented in admirable detail in the article BOY SCOUTS OF AMERICA, page 913 of THE WORLD BOOK.

#### 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The pupils make coöperatively a list of situations such as follows:

Playing games according to rules, preferring to lose a point rather than to break a rule.

Keeping one's promises or his agreements in a trade.

Keeping in the game in good spirits, even though losing.

Accepting no unfair advantage of an opponent in a contest, even though such an opportunity is open.

Carrying on class work faithfully in the absence of the teacher.

Obedience alone gives the right to command.  
—Emerson.

#### 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the list suggested under (2) those points on which they think themselves weak. A pupil, if he wishes, may write down the points selected to show his parents, in order that they may help him with the practice.

#### 6. Problems encountered in practicing steadfastness and obedience.

Children discuss their problems, and the teacher and the class try to help decide what should be done in the different cases. Problems such as the following may be presented:

Should I be required to study one hour every evening, whether I have assignments needing study or not?

Often I can't be on time for school without missing my breakfast. Which is better, to miss breakfast or be tardy?

Is it a good idea to have a set time to practice my music lesson? If I do, I often miss good times.

Why is it wrong to return to the classroom after school for materials which have been forgotten?

I am editor of the school paper; should I be required to put the paper out at a set time?

#### 7. Generalizations.

People have confidence in those who are steadfast and reliable, and the confidence of others brings satisfaction.

By steady trying you reach the goal you set out to reach.

If distasteful tasks are promptly done, there is time for more pleasant occupations.

#### 3. Observing the trait in the lives of the people in the community.

The children are asked to refer to their past experiences and then suggest instances in which they have seen fair play and good sportmanship displayed. Suggestions such as the following may be given:

A ball player refusing to claim a run, though no one else knew that he had not touched second base.

A losing ball team accepting the umpire's decision without complaint.

Clerks in a store working faithfully in the absence of the employer.

The driver of an auto dimming his lights on approaching a car traveling in the opposite direction.

A camp leader refusing to accept for himself any easier conditions that will add to his comfort or convenience than he can give the other members of the camp.

4. Reading about others who have practiced fair play and good sportsmanship.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Arbitration, 344  
 Arbutus, 346  
 Baden-Powell, 570  
 Beard, Daniel C., 663-664  
 Boy Scouts of America, 909-914  
 Burke, Edmund, 1028  
 Camping: Camp Discipline, 1112  
 Camp Fire Girls, 1114-1115  
 Catt, Carrie Chapman, 1249-1250  
 Debate, 1851-1853  
 Games and Play, 2674-2679  
 Girl Scouts, 2814-2817  
 Golden Rule, 2862  
 Hart, Albert B., 3063  
 Income Tax, 3374  
 Massasoit, 4336  
 May, 4351  
 Mitchell, John, 4561  
 Nelson, Horatio, 4875  
 Norway: Travel in Norway, 5084  
 Olympian Games, 5196-5197  
 Patent, 5412-5414  
 Penn, William, 5461  
 Consolidated Schools, 6423-6424  
 Scott, Sir Walter: Struggle against Financial Difficulties, 6450-6451  
 Seton, Ernest Thompson, 6506

William I, Prince of Orange, 7771  
 Williams, Roger, 7772-7773  
 Woman Suffrage, 7822-7825  
 Wrestling, 7895-7896

5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those points on which they find themselves weak. If they wish to do so, they ask parents and teachers to help them remember to practice the acts they select.

6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

The children discuss their problems, and the teacher and the class try to help them decide what they should do in such cases. Examples of problems children may report follow:

If the umpire in a game renders an unjust decision against you, what should you do?

If you overhear a conversation which gives you information which you should not have, what should you do?

In a game of croquet you accidentally touch your ball and it rolls into a position with an advantage to you; no one saw the accident. What should you do about it?

7. Generalizations.

Self-respect is worth more than high scores in the game.

Playing the game according to the rules brings a feeling of pride and satisfaction.

LOWER LEVEL: UNIT THREE

Cleanliness

1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be aroused by health posters such as are available in generous quantity and in a variety of appropriate subjects from the United States government and state and city boards of health, but especially by subject matter in THE WORLD BOOK which will be found particularly appropriate on topics pertaining to cleanliness of the person and of surroundings. Reference is made to some of these subjects in (4), appearing later on this page.

2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

Children make coöperatively a list of situations, such as—

Bathing frequently.  
 Brushing teeth after each meal.  
 Washing hands before eating.  
 Keeping finger nails clean.  
 Shampooing the hair frequently.  
 Wearing clean clothing.  
 Keeping rooms free from dust.  
 Keeping toilet rooms clean, toilets flushed, bowls scrubbed.

3. Observing the trait in the lives of people in the community.

Children report instances in which they have seen cleanliness displayed, such as—

Fresh, clean clothes hanging on the line.  
 Scrubbing floors of public rooms.  
 Hauling away the garbage from closed cans.  
 Burning trash from alleys.  
 Sprinkling the streets.  
 Washing windows.  
 Putting screens to windows and doors.  
 Cleaning carpets, rugs, furniture.  
 Scalding dishes.

4. Reading and reporting about cleanliness.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Acne, 22  
 Baby: Cleanliness, 555  
 Baths and Bathing, 648-651  
 Bedbug, 670  
 Cleaning Processes, 1460-1461  
 Fly: Preventive Methods, 2499-2500  
 Hygiene: Personal Hygiene, 3312-3313  
 Itch, 3588-3589

Life Extension: Keep the Teeth, Gums, and Tongue Clean, 3989-3990  
 Panama Canal: Sanitary Triumphs, 5332  
 Philippine Islands: Sanitation, 5561  
 Sewage and Sewerage, 6511  
 Skin: Care of the Skin, 6634  
 Teeth: Care of the Teeth, 7054  
 Typhoid Fever: Prevention, 7340  
 Vacuum Cleaner, 7440  
 Waterworks, 7676  
 Wounds: First Aid to the Injured, 7893

#### Quotations

Cleanness of body was ever esteemed to proceed from a due reverence to God, to society, and to ourselves. —*Bacon*.

Cleanliness is indeed next to godliness. —*Wesley*.

#### 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the list which they made under (2) the points in the practice of

which they find themselves careless. They begin to apply the practices suggested. If they wish to do so, they enlist the help of parents and teachers.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the trait.

Children discuss their problems and seek help in finding solutions to such questions as these:

One of our neighbors throws garbage in the alley back of our house. What can we do about it? Should I eat in a restaurant in which there are flies? Should we buy the bread from a merchant who keeps unwrapped bread on an open counter?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Cleanliness is essential to good health.

A clean person is more attractive than an unclean one.

One can be proud of living in a clean community.

### LOWER LEVEL: UNIT FOUR

#### Gratitude

##### 1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be awakened through the use of quotations, or through the poem, "Thanksgiving," by Ellen I. Tupper, page 7135. Interest may be more easily aroused if the study of this trait is presented at Thanksgiving time.

##### 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

Children make coöperatively a list of situations in which the trait appears. The list may contain such situations as the following:

Reading poems or stories and singing songs to express gratitude for blessings received.

Showing kindness to the unfortunate.

Caring for the things in nature which contribute to our comfort and happiness—the grasses, the trees, the flowers, the birds.

Expressing thanks by words and actions to parents, relatives, and friends for their love and thoughtfulness.

Refraining from acts which will hurt those to whom we owe gratitude.

##### 3. Observing acts of gratitude in the lives of people in the community.

Children suggest a list of instances in which gratitude has been observed. Examples from such a list follow:

A man caring for an aged parent.

People protecting trees and flowers,

A family caring for a dog that is no longer useful, because of his past usefulness.

A woman repaying a friend's kindness.

People attending services in the community at which gratitude for blessings is expressed.

The community erecting monuments to the memory of public servants or heroes who have died.

##### 4. Reading and discussing examples of gratitude.

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD Book Encyclopedia*:

Absalom, 10 (negative)

May: Special Days, 4354

Passion Play, 5408-5411

Pension, 5475-5476

Riley, James W., 6127-6129

Singing Tower, 6619-6621

Soldiers' Bonus, 6670

Soldiers' Homes, 6680

Spanish-American War: Maine Memorial, 6740

Thanksgiving Day, 7135

Unknown Soldier, 7417

Valley Forge, 7445

Veterans' Bureau, 7512, 7514

Victoria Cross, 7522

Washington Monument, 7657

Whitlock, Brand, 7752

Willard, Frances E., 7766-7767

#### Quotations

A thankful heart is not only the greatest virtue, but the parent of all the other virtues.

—*Cicero*.

Gratitude is the fairest blossom that springs from the soul.

—*Ballou*.

It is very nice to think

The world is full of meat and drink,

With little children saying grace

In every Christian kind of place.

—*Stevenson*.

##### 5. Practicing the trait.

Children are asked to choose from the list suggested under (2) points in which they find

themselves weak, and begin expressing their gratitude as they see opportunities.

**6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.**

Children present problems they have encountered and ask the teacher and the class for help in finding solutions.

Ingratitude is shown in our town by careless picking of wild flowers, by defacing public buildings, by cutting souvenirs from monuments. What can we do about such action?

**7. Generalizations.**

The world is a better place in which to live because of the gratitude of man.

**LOWER LEVEL: UNIT FIVE**

**Self-Control**

**1. Arousing interest in the trait.**

Interest may be aroused through the quotation, "Careful with Words," by Carleton, page 1199.

**2. Applying the trait to life-situations.**

Children suggest a list of situations in which self-control is practiced, such as—

- Keeping back angry words when provoked.
- Refusing to strike one who struck you.
- Speaking the truth, even though it causes you discomfort.
- Refraining from repeating reports that will harm others.
- Keeping your head in an emergency—calling the doctor and giving first-aid treatment.

**3. Observing self-control in the lives of people in the community.**

Children suggest instances in which they have seen people showing self-control, such as these:

- A clerk remaining calm in spite of the angry statements of a customer.
- A man speaking kindly of a neighbor who had abused him.
- A telephone operator in a burning building staying at her switchboard long enough to warn everyone in the building.
- A driver acting quickly to save the life of a child who ran in front of his car.
- A man refusing to make an attractive-looking investment until he carefully investigated the facts concerning the enterprise.

**4. Reading about others who practice self-control.**

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

- Achilles, 20 (negative)
- Antony, 313-314 (negative)
- Athletics: Training, 484-485
- Brahmanism, 917
- Buddhism, 999-1000
- Bunyan, John, 1022-1024
- Cynic School of Philosophy, 1798
- Diogenes, 1953
- Fasts and Fasting, 2376

Galahad, Sir, 2659-2660

Gandhi Mohandas, 2679-2680

Gough, John B., 2879

Holy Grail, 3201-3203

Jujutsu, 3708

Lindbergh, Charles A., 4025-4030

Nursery Schools, 5118

Prison Reforms, 5826-5827.

Theodore Roosevelt: His Boyhood and Youth, 6186

Sparta: Training the Spartan Boy, 6743-6744

Taft, William Howard: In the Cabinet, 7000

Willard, Frances E., 7766-7767

Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 7822

**REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS**

Anger in Childhood, 282

Corporal Punishment, 1696

**5. Practicing the trait.**

From the list of situations made by the pupils under (2), children choose points upon which they are weak and begin to practice upon them. The interests of both parents and teachers may be enlisted to give assurance that opportunities for practice are not neglected.

**6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.**

Children seek the aid of the teacher and the group on problems, such as the following:

- If you don't fight back when a boy hits you, the other boys call you a coward.
- Why does being frightened make me forget how to swim?
- You are told in confidence something which would help a friend of yours. Should you tell him?

**7. Generalizations.**

One who possesses self-control can command circumstances; one who lacks it is commanded by them.

Self-control is gained only by constant practice.

Losing control of yourself makes you unhappy afterwards.

LOWER LEVEL: UNIT SIX

Friendliness

1. Arousing interest in the trait.

Emerson said, "The only way to have a friend is to be one." This quotation invites discussion by the pupils. Is Emerson right? How can one be a friend? The story of "Damon and Pythias," page 1816, may arouse interest in friendliness.

2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

Children make a list of situations in which friendliness is shown. A few are given below:

- Planning a pleasant evening for people you like.
- Sending books or flowers to a member of the class who is sick.
- Protecting a younger child from danger.
- Sharing your toys or books with others.
- Helping a strange pupil to get acquainted in the school.
- Being cheerful and pleasant to those with whom you live and work.
- Exchanging letters, pictures, and products with pupils of other lands.

3. Observing friendliness in the lives of people in the community.

Children make a list of examples of friendliness which they have observed. The list may contain the following instances:

- Picnics at which all members of the community join in having a good time.
- A man building a bird bath in his yard.
- A neighbor helping to nurse a sick child.
- Making calls upon friends or to welcome newcomers in a community.
- Clubs entertaining speakers from a foreign country.

4. Reading about friendliness.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

FRIENDLINESS WITH OTHERS

- Auld Lang Syne, 504
- Boswell, James, 880
- Courtship of Miles Standish, 1724-1726
- Damon and Pythias, 1816
- David: David and Jonathan, 1835
- Hallam, Henry, 3020
- Howells, William D., 3267-3268
- Johnson, Samuel, 3689-3690
- Lamb, Charles, 3846-3847
- Ohio: Agriculture (Johnny Appleseed), 5170
- Rhinoceros Bird, 6090
- Saint Bernard, Great, 6303
- Schumann-Heink: Gift to Soldiers, 6430

FRIENDLINESS WITH OTHER NATIONS

- Alabama: Alabama Claims, 164
- Alaska: Boundary Dispute, 175-176
- Argentina: Christ of the Andes, 377

- Armaments, Limitation of, 406-407
- Bering Sea Controversy, 713
- Carnegie, Andrew, 1202-1203
- Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1203
- Liberty, Statue of, 3963-3965
- Morrow, Dwight W., 4663-4664
- Norway: Travel in Norway, 5084
- Olympian Games, 5196-5197
- Pan-American Union, 5339
- Rhodes Scholarships, 6099
- Roosevelt, Theodore: Exploring Again, 6194
- Saint Valentine, 7441
- Vancouver: An International Memorial, 7455
- Wordsworth, William, 7845-7847

FRIENDLINESS WITH OTHER RACES

- Eliot, John, 2209
- Massasoit, 4336
- Penn, William, 5460-5462
- Pocahontas, 5677-5678
- Rosenwald, Julius: The Rosenwald Fund, 6206

Thanksgiving Day: The First in the New World, 7135

Xavier, Saint Francis, 7915

REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS

Suggestions for Valentine Observance, 7442

Quotations

- Life is to be fortified by many friendships.  
—*Sidney Smith.*
- The only way to have a friend is to be one  
—*Emerson.*

5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the full list of situations which they list under (2) the points on which they feel weak. They plan to practice being friendly in such ways during the week. If they desire to do so, they may enlist the help of their mothers and fathers in their practice.

6. Problems encountered in being friendly.

Children discuss their problems, and the teacher and the group try to decide how to solve such problems as the following:

- You help a little child across the street, and the other boys laugh at you.
- You find a stray dog on the street; you help it find its home, only to be accused of trying to steal the dog.
- You speak pleasantly to an acquaintance on the street, but get a gruff answer.
- Should you chum with a boy who has habits you do not like?
- Should you continue being friendly to a person who is unfriendly to you? To one who is not unfriendly but makes no effort to be friendly?

## 7. Generalizations.

The world is a happier place if people are friendly.

People are usually friendlier to you if you are friendly to them.

## LOWER LEVEL: UNIT SEVEN

## Thrift

## 1. Awakening interest in thrift.

See the quotation given below, or find the Boy Scout Code on thrift in the Boy Scout Manual or in the Scout Law, on page 913 in *THE WORLD BOOK*.

## 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

Children make coöperatively a list of situations such as those listed below:

Keeping personal accounts, and saving something regularly.

Working steadily on your tasks, so that no time is wasted.

Going to bed early enough to get the proper rest, in order to save energy.

Keeping clothes clean and mended.

Doing work thoroughly, so that it will not need to be done over again.

Considering the cost of articles purchased, and buying the ones that will last the longest and give the most pleasure or service to all persons concerned.

## 3. Observing thrift in the lives of people in the community.

Children report instances such as the following, in which they have seen thrift displayed:

A family making a budget and living so that some money is saved each month.

A family planning its vacation and considering how to get the most enjoyment for all members on the money they have to spend.

A student concentrating upon his work, in spite of noise around him.

A housekeeper planning her meals to use leftovers in dishes the family will like.

Planting new trees in a forest as old ones are cut down.

## 4. Reading and reporting on thrift in the lives of others.

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

## SAVING MONEY

Banks and Banking: Savings Banks, 610, 613

Budget, 1000-1001

Christmas Carol, 1417 (negative)

Franklin, Benjamin, 2593-2597

Old Age Pensions, 5189-5190

Poor Richard's Almanac, 5730

Good-Roads Movement, 6142 (wise spending)

The Ant and the Grasshopper, 6860

Thrift, 7160

Woolworth, Frank W., 7844

## SAVING NATURAL RESOURCES

Agriculture: Other Lands, 101

Arbor Day, 344-346

Arbutus, 346

Canning Clubs, 1172-1173

Conservation, 1622-1623

Forests and Forestry: Destroyers of the Forests, 2534-2541

Irrigation, 3553-3559

Izaak Walton League, 3594

Lumber: Utilizing Waste, 4150, 4152

Meat and Meat Packing: Products and By-Products, 4365

Michigan: Forests, Fisheries, 4461-4462

Minnesota: Forests, Agriculture, Game and Fish, 4518

New Hampshire: Forests, 4921

New Jersey: Forests, 4929-4930

New York: Forests, 4972

North Carolina: Forests, 5058

Norway: Forests, 5086

Paper Conservation, 5351

Parks, National, 5383

Reclamation, 6022

Seal: Fur-Seal Legislation, 6468

Texas: Irrigation, Forests, 7124

United States of America: Forest Resources, 7369

Irrigation and Dry Farming, 7374

Utah: Agriculture and Irrigation, 7430

Virginia: Wild Life, 7541

West Virginia: Forests, 7720

Wisconsin: Forests, 7806-7807

Yellowstone National Park, 7935

## REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS

Home Economics, 3205-3210

Thrift, 7160

## Quotation

Remember that time is money.—*Franklin*.

## 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose points on thrift on which they know they are weak and begin to practice being thrifty. (See list made by children under (2) above.)

## 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children discuss problems which they have encountered or noticed others encountering, such as the following:

The nurse says we should have the dentist look over the teeth once every six months. If your



teeth are in good condition, why spend that money?

Suppose you find that the budget you have made doesn't allow enough for your expenses. There is a temptation to spend some of your savings. Should you do this?

I budgeted my time for a week, but other people bothered me so many times that I couldn't keep my schedule.

### 7. Generalizations.

Thrift brings happiness and success; extravagance and waste lead to want.

Thrift is more than saving; it is spending wisely.

One should be thrifty in regard to time, energy, and health, as well as thrifty in regard to money.

## LOWER LEVEL: UNIT EIGHT

### Trustworthiness and Willingness to Serve

#### 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be aroused through the quotation from the Bible, "He that would be first among you let him be the servant of all." Children may name examples of characters that have been honored because of their faithful service. Read "Incident of the French Camp," page 6011.

#### 2. Applying the traits to life-situations.

Children make a list of situations in which the traits appear. The list may contain situations such as these:

Doing well a task which you are trusted to do without inspection.

Accepting an office in your club and performing your duties promptly and well.

Accepting responsibility for certain home duties and performing them faithfully, not waiting to be reminded of them by others.

Protecting younger children from harm.

Helping to keep the city streets clean.

Selling Red Cross seals, and promptly turning in the report of sales and the sum collected.

#### 3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

Children suggest instances like the following, in which they have seen the traits displayed:

Town officers and school-board members serving the community without pay.

Women of a church holding dinners, fairs, and similar enterprises to earn money to support the church.

Firemen risking their lives to save others.

Life-saving crews who face great danger that others may be safe.

Scout leaders and other club advisers who give time and energy to making the lives of others happy.

Nurses and doctors who work long hours to save lives.

#### 4. Reading about people who have served willingly and faithfully.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

#### WILLINGNESS TO SERVE IN WAR

Barry, John, 630-631

Barton, Clara, 632

Crusades, 1761

Lee, Richard Henry, 3917

Nightingale, Florence, 5026-5027

Red Cross, 6026-6030

Ross, Betsy, 6208

#### WILLINGNESS TO SERVE IN PEACE

American Association of University Women, 247-248

Benton, Thomas H., 710

Bible Society, American, 732

Booth Family, 860-861

Cartwright, Peter, 1223

Civitan Clubs, 1452

Deaf and Dumb: Education, 1847-1849

Gorrie, John F., 2877

Hadley, Arthur T., 3000

Hale, Edward Everett, 3015-3016

Hampton Normal and Agricultural Institute, 3030

Hoover, Herbert C., 3226-3235

Hull House, 3280

Jay, John, 3644

Koch, Robert, 3811

Lathrop, Julia, 3885

Pasteur, Louis, 5411-5412

Pestalozzi, 5513-5514

Red Cross: Junior Red Cross, 6030-6031

Reindeer, 6047

Rhodes Scholarships, 6099

Seton, Ernest Thompson, 6506

Social Settlements, 6670

Taft, Lorado, 6998

Volunteers of America, 7568

Wanamaker, John, 7590

Webster, Daniel, 7696-7697

#### TRUSTWORTHINESS

Arthur, King, 430

Cleveland, Grover, 1467-1472

Dog: A Tribute to a Dog, 1987

Franklin, Benjamin, 2593-2597

Grenfell, Sir Wilfred, 2962-2963

Hay, John, 3092

Livingstone, David, 4061

Rasmussen, Knud, 5998

Root, Elihu, 6197

Saint Bernard, Great, 6303

Taft, William Howard, 6998-7005

## Quotations

If a task is once begun,  
Never leave it till it's done;  
Be the labor great or small,  
Do it well, or not at all.

—*Phoebe Cary.*

So long as we love, we serve.

—*Stevenson.*

Small service is true service while it lasts.

—*Wordsworth.*

They also serve who only stand and wait.

—*Millon.*

## 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose points on which they need to be more trustworthy in rendering service, and begin practicing as opportunities are found. The help of parents and teachers may be enlisted, if the pupils prefer to have their aid.

## 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children bring to the class the problems which they encounter. The teacher and the

class help to decide desirable courses of action. The cases to be considered are of great variety; some of them are here suggested:

Is there any dishonor in borrowing money from a fund entrusted to you by the club, though you expect to pay it back before it is needed?

Should a class officer have privileges not granted to all members of the club?

Should a pupil accept the position as editor of the class paper and then neglect the duties of the office?

Is it right for some pupils to clean up scraps left on the playground or thrown on the street by others?

Should a reward be accepted for returning a lost article to its owner? For selling Red Cross Christmas seals? For getting your mother to join the parent-teacher organization?

## 7. Generalizations.

The satisfaction which comes from rendering service brings its own reward.

Self-respect and the respect of others are better than power or riches.

## LOWER LEVEL: UNIT NINE

## Kindness and Sympathy

## 1. Arousing interest in the traits.

Through stories such as "Baucis and Philemon," page 653, and "Androcles and the Lion," page 685, interest may be aroused.

## 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

Children make an extensive list of situations in which kindness and sympathy may be shown. A few examples such as children may suggest are listed below:

A boy rescuing a cat from an angry dog.

A girl caring for a sick baby while the mother gets some rest.

Children sending scrapbooks to the hospital for the enjoyment of crippled children.

Providing food for birds on snowy days.

An older child comforting a little child who is cross or frightened.

A boy helping a classmate to deliver papers in order that the latter may have time to practice for a class play or an athletic contest.

A boy doing an unpleasant task without a complaint.

## 3. Observing kindness and sympathy in the lives of others.

Children make a list of instances in which they have seen these traits displayed. The list may contain such items as these:

Neighbors cutting the wheat for a sick farmer.

A women's club sewing for the children in a poor home in which the mother is ill.

The community providing food and clothing for its needy citizens.

A man giving money to a hospital, so that people who are sick may be properly cared for.

## 4. Reading and reporting about acts showing kindness and sympathy.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Asylum, 478

Aurelius, Marcus, 504

Balder, 576-577

Baltimore, Sir George Calvert, 590

Baucis and Philemon, 653

Bible: I Corinthians, 726

Dostoevsky, 2014

Dunbar, Paul L., 2054

Fox, George, 2555

Froebel, Friedrich, W., 2624

Furness, Horace H., 2646

Gamaliel, 2672

Hood, Thomas, 3223

Hospice, 3256

Israels, Josef, 3569

Jackson, Helen Hunt, 3604

Lafayette, Marquis de, 3838-3839

Nightingale, Florence, 5026-5027

Oglethorpe, James, 5166-5167

Old-Age Pensions, 5189-5190

Patti, Adelina, 5418

Pestalozzi, Johann Heinrich, 5513-5514

Red Cross, 6025-6030

Russell Sage Foundation, 6256-6257

Schumann-Heink: Gift to Soldiers, 6430

Sidney, Sir Philip, 6504

Institution of Charities: See discussions under the stories of the different states: 4326, 4514, 4535, 4551, 4856, 4919, 4927, 4968, 5066, 5169, 5465, 7120, 7625

Underground Railroad, 7350  
 Van Dyke, Henry, 7460, 7462  
 Wandering Jew, 7590-7591 (negative example)  
 Wesley, John, 7708-7710  
 Wesley, Charles, 7710  
 Whittier, John G., 7754-7756  
 Wilberforce, William, 7758, 7760  
 Wordsworth, William, 7845-7847

#### KINDNESS TO ANIMALS

Albatross, 182  
 Ancient Mariner, 275  
 Audubon Society, 498  
 Bergh, Henry, 712  
 Birds: Building Bird Houses, 759  
     Government Protection of Birds, 766  
 Coleridge, Samuel T., 1535  
 Cruelty to Animals, Society for the Prevention  
     of, 1760  
 Humane Societies, 3282  
 Androcles and the Lion, 6859  
 Singing Tower, 6619-6621

#### Quotations

There's no dearth of kindness  
 In this world of ours;  
 Only in our blindness  
 We gather thorns for flowers.

—Massey.

The world is happy,  
 The world is wide;  
 Kind hearts are beating  
 On every side.

—James Russell Lowell.

#### 5. Practicing the traits.

From the list of situations in which kindness

and sympathy may be practiced [see (2) above], children choose points on which they find themselves weak, and plan to practice the traits in such situations.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideals.

Children present the problems arising in their practice for the teacher and the group to help solve. They may have such problems as the following:

I saw a boy in trouble to-day. I could have helped him, but last week he struck my little brother. You don't think I should have helped him, do you?

I could have helped my sister wash the dishes this morning so that she could get to school on time, but my older brother says that housework is for girls. He never does any of it; why should I?

I stopped at a man's house to tell him that his cow was in his garden; he scolded me for ringing the bell and disturbing his wife, who was asleep.

The citizenship club put me on a committee to decide how to spend the \$15 which we have in our treasury. The committee wants to use the money to help boys and girls less fortunate than we are. How shall we go about it?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Helping others bring happiness to one's self. People are kinder to you when you are kind to them.

It is easier to be kind when you think how you would feel if you were in the other person's place.

### LOWER LEVEL: UNIT TEN

#### Industry and Perseverance

##### 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be secured through reading and discussing the poem, "Columbus," by Joaquin Miller, page 1574, and stories of the work of Thomas A. Edison, master mind in the electrical field, whose industry has given the world so much comfort and happiness, told on pages 2108-2110.

##### 2. Applying the traits to life-situations.

Children make coöperatively a list of situations showing industry and perseverance. A few examples are given below:

Doing out-of-school practice to learn multiplication facts.

Working extra hours in the school shop to make an article of furniture for the home.

A ball team practicing more vigorously because of a defeat.

Selling papers before and after school in order to be able to stay in school and finish the course.

Finishing a story for the school paper instead of playing ball.

##### 3. Observing industry and perseverance in the lives of people in the community.

Children make a list of instances in which they have seen the traits displayed. Such a list may contain the following facts:

A college student working as a waiter in a tea room to be able to finish the course.

A business man getting up at five o'clock to care for his lawn and garden.

A mother sewing for others in order to keep her children in school.

A bank clerk working nights in a studio to learn to paint.

##### 4. Reading.

About people who have achieved great things through industry and perseverance.

References in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia to achievements through perseverance are listed below:

#### INVENTION AND SCIENTIFIC DISCOVERY

Aircraft: Aircraft Heavier than Air, 118-121

Arkwright, Richard, 403  
 Bell, Alexander Graham, 703  
 Field, Cyrus W., 2408  
 Holland, John P., 3195-3196  
 Morse, Samuel F. B., 4664  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 4960-4963  
 Palissy, Bernard, 5317  
 Telegraph: Historical Sketch, 7064, 7066  
 Wright, Orville and Wilbur, 7896-7897  
 Zeppelin, Ferdinand, Count von, 7972-7973

#### DISCOVERY AND COLONIZATION

Columbus, Christopher, 1572-1577  
 De Soto, Fernando, 1917-1918  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 2806  
 Henry the Navigator, 3149  
 La Salle, René, Sieur de, 3882-3884  
 Magellan, Ferdinand, 4211-4212  
 Plymouth Colony, 5665-5669  
 Smith, John, 6650

#### EXPLORATION

Aircraft: Lindbergh's Atlantic Conquest, 147-151  
 Lindbergh, Charles A., 4025-4030  
 Amundsen, Roald, 268-269  
 Arctic Exploration, 5692-5695  
 Antarctic Exploration, 5696-5699  
 Shackleton, Sir Ernest, 6522  
 Stefánsson, Vilhjalmur, 6823

#### CREATIVE WORK IN ART, LITERATURE, MUSIC

Handel, George F., 3034  
 Michelangelo, Buonarroti, 4453-4456  
 Millet, Jean François, 4488-4489  
 Milton, John, 4491-4494  
 Murillo, Bartolomé, 4746-4748  
 Sabatini, Rafael, 6289-6290  
 Schubert, Franz Peter, 6429-6430

#### COLLECTING AND PUBLISHING INFORMATION

Audubon, John J., 498  
 Parkman, Francis, 5382  
 Stefánsson, Vilhjalmur, 6823

#### OVERCOMING HANDICAPS

Bridgman, Laura, 955  
 Keller, Helen, 3751  
 Pulitzer, Joseph, 5876-5877  
 Riis, Jacob, 6127  
 Roosevelt, Theodore: Boyhood and Youth, 6186  
 Washington, Booker T., 7634-7636

#### SERVICE TO NATION AND MANKIND

Alfred the Great, 205  
 Bruce, Robert, 982  
 Bryan, William J., 986-987  
 Demosthenes, 1890  
 Foch, Ferdinand, 2505

Garfield, James A., 2689-2693  
 Garibaldi, Giuseppe, 2693-2694  
 Grant, Ulysses S., 2899-2908  
 Joan of Arc, 3677-3679  
 Joffre, Joseph, 3680-3681  
 Luther, Martin, 4158-4159

#### Quotations

Honor lies in honest toil.

—Cleveland.

He only is a well-made man who has a good determination.

—Emerson.

If a task is once begun,  
 Never leave it till it's done;  
 Be the labor great or small,  
 Do it well or not at all.

—Phoebe Cary.

Let us then be up and doing,  
 With a heart for any fate;  
 Still achieving, still pursuing,  
 Learn to labor and to wait.

—Longfellow.

I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer.

—Grant.

Be strong!  
 It matters not how deep entrenched the wrong;  
 How hard the battle goes, the day how long;  
 Faint not—fight on.  
 Tomorrow comes the song.

—Babcock.

Everyone is the son of his own works.

—Cervantes.

#### 5. Practicing the traits.

From the list made under (2) above, children choose the points on which they find themselves weak, and begin to practice them. In almost all cases, a pupil may secure the help of the parent in carrying out the practice faithfully.

#### 6. Problems encountered in practicing the traits.

Children tell of their problems and seek help in finding solutions. Here are a few that are typical:

My mother wants to help me with hard problems before I have seriously tried to solve them alone.

What should I do about it?

My mother tells me to go to bed at nine o'clock, even though I want to solve a problem, write a report, or practice on some drill work. Should I obey?

I want to learn to read better, but I haven't any good books.

I can't find any place to study at home.

I can get a job at \$8 a week. My mother needs the money. Should I leave school to take the job?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Work as well as play brings pleasure.

A task completed well brings a feeling of satisfaction.

Work is like a game; you are always hoping you can win.

## UPPER LEVEL: UNIT ONE

## Honesty and Justice

## 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be awakened through the use of such stories as "Incidents in the Early Life of Abraham Lincoln," pages 4009-4010; incidents from Franklin's "Autobiography"; "The Bell of Atri," or stories from Robin Hood.

## 2. Applying the traits to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves may practice honesty and justice, such as follow:

- Correcting our own work fairly.
- Returning the surplus, if too much change is given us.
- Admitting our faults.
- Bringing honest excuses for absence.
- Telling who is to blame if some one else is to be punished for our wrong-doing.

## 3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

The children suggest instances in which they have seen honesty displayed, such as the following:

- People who sell goods, giving full weight.
- Children paying their way at performances instead of trying to slip in unobserved.
- People returning borrowed articles in good condition.
- Children telling their parents the full truth about difficulties they encounter at school.

## 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have practiced honesty and justice, and other topics which disclose the same traits.

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

## JUSTICE

- Aristides, 381
- Belgian Congo: Story of Development, 691
- Confucius, 1605-1606
- Equity, 2284
- Galsworthy, John, 2668-2669
- Hammurabi, 3029
- Harun-al-Rashid, 3065
- Landis, Kenesaw M., 3852
- Lincoln, Abraham, 4016-4018
- Reading, Rufus, 6013
- Public Schools: Consolidated Schools, 6423
- Workmen's Compensation Laws, 7847

## HONESTY

- Canute, 1179
- Coligny, 1536
- Crockett, David, 1749
- Diogenes, 1953
- Fillmore, Millard, 2415-2419

- Guest, Edgar, 2977-2978
- Hamilton, Alexander, 3025-3026
- Harrison, Benjamin, 3053-3059
- Hayes, Rutherford B., 3093-3099
- Hill, James J., 3179
- Hippocrates, 3182
- Hoover, Herbert C., 3226-3235
- Houdini, Harry, 3259-3260
- Hughes, Charles E., 3276-3277
- Norway: Travel in Norway, 5084
- Roosevelt: President of the New York Police Commission, 6188; Governor of New York, 6188
- Scott, Sir Walter: Struggle against Financial Difficulties, 6450-6451
- Stimson, Henry L., 6835
- Taft, William Howard: On the Federal Bench, 6999-7000
- Tweed, William M., 7330 (negative example)

## IN BUSINESS

- Adulteration of Foodstuffs and Clothing, 54-57
- Banks and Banking: The Case of Joseph Robins, 604
- "Blue Sky" Laws, 806
- Receiver, 6022

## IN GOVERNMENT AND POLITICS

- Alaska: Development of Coal Lands, 176
- Australian Ballot: Greater Honesty in Elections, 522
- Permanent Court of International Justice, 5489-5490

## REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS

- Dishonesty in Children, 1962-1964
- Honor, 3221-3222
- Kleptomania, 3803

## Quotations

- Dare to be true; nothing can need a lie;  
A fault which needs it most gains nothing thereby.  
— *Herbert.*
- He who feeds men, serveth few;  
He serves all, who dares be true.  
— *Emerson.*
- Truth crushed to earth shall rise again;  
The eternal years of God are hers.  
— *Bryant.*
- Truth is as impossible to be soiled by any outward touch as the sunbeam.  
— *Millon.*
- This above all; to thine own self be true,  
And it shall follow, as the night the day,  
Thou canst not then be false to any man.  
— *Shakespeare.*

## 5. Practicing the traits.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those points on which they find themselves weak. If they wish to do so, they

enlist the help of parents and teachers. Over a period of time, they practice individually to improve in these specific instances.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideals.

Children discuss their problems, and the teacher tries to help them to decide what they should do in such cases as the following:

How much help should a child receive from his parents in doing his home work?

If you see another child cheating, what should you do about it? What should you do if you injure public property?

If a friend asks how you like her dress and you do not like it, what should you say?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Our own self-respect is worth more than the articles we are tempted to take from other people.

Honesty gives us a feeling of satisfaction.

### UPPER LEVEL: UNIT TWO

#### Courage

##### 1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be awakened through the quotations given in this unit, or through the use of such stories as Arnold von Winkelried, pages 7795-7796; "Leonidas at the Pass of Thermopylae," pages 3937, 7146; "Horatius at the Bridge," page 3238; Joan of Arc, pages 3677-3679; "David and Goliath," pages 1834-1835, etc.

##### 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations, such as follow:

Going upstairs to bed alone and in the dark.

Telling the truth even when we know we will be punished.

Saying our prayers when we stay all night with children who do not.

Preventing a group of children from teasing an animal, or some unfortunate child.

##### 3. Observing the trait in the lives of the people in the community.

The children suggest cases which they have observed, such as these:

Doctors and nurses going into homes in which there are dangerous diseases.

Firemen entering burning buildings.

Policemen arresting desperate criminals.

Telephone operators remaining at their posts to notify people of fires or floods.

Life guards risking their own lives to rescue drowning persons.

##### 4. Reading:

Stories about people who have been courageous, and other articles which relate instances of courage.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

##### PHYSICAL COURAGE

Abruzzi, 10

Aeneid, 67

Aircraft: Early Efforts, the Balloon, 113, 114;

First Great Feats in Flying, 139-151

Alamo, 165-166

Alexander the Great, 199-201

Amundsen, Roald, 268-269

Armada, 405-406

Bainbridge, William, 573

Balaklava, 574-575

Boone, Daniel, 858-859

Bozzaris, Marco, 914

Byrd, Richard E., 1053-1054

Carnegie Hero Funds, 1204

Charge of the Light Brigade, 1310

Clark, George Rogers, 1455

Coast Guard, 1509-1512

Cook, James, 1649

Cortez, 1700-1701

Croix de Guerre, 1751-1752

Custer, George A., 1792-1793

Decatur, Stephen, 1856

Dewey, George, 1926-1927

Distinguished Service Medals, 1968-1970

Drake, Sir Francis, 2022

Emmet, Robert, 2227-2228

Erie: Battle of Lake Erie, 2286-2287.

Farragut, David G., 2373

Foreign Legion, 2532

Gordon, Charles George, 2874

Gustavus Adolphus, 2988-2989

Hale, Nathan, 3016

Hannibal, 3037-3038

Hector, 3124

Hercules, 3156-3157

Hobson, Richmond P., 3189

Horatius, 3238

Hudson, Henry, 3270-3271

Jones, John Paul, 3695-3697

Judith, 3706

Kane, Elisha Kent, 3732-3733

Lawrence, James, 3900

Lee, Henry, 3916-3917

Legion of Honor, 3924

Lewis and Clark Expedition, 3956-3959

Lindbergh, Charles A., 4025-4030

Livingstone, David, 4061-4062

MacMillan, Donald Baxter, 4194

Magellan, Ferdinand, 4211-4212

Marco Polo, 5714, 5716

Massachusetts: History, 4331-4332

Modern Lighthouses (Grace Darling), 4000  
 Moses, 4670-4674  
 Mosquito: The Tiny Mosquito and the Big  
 Panama Canal, 4678  
 Nelson, Horatio, 4872-4875  
 Peary, Robert Edwin, 5435-5436  
 Pitcher, Molly, 5630  
 Plymouth Colony, 5665-5666  
 Polar Exploration, 5691-5699  
 Pontoon, 5727  
 Royal Canadian Mounted Police, 6219-6221  
 Saint Bernard, Great, 6303  
 Scott, Robert Falcon, 6448  
 Secord, Laura, 6476-6477  
 Shackleton, Sir Ernest, 6522  
 Sheridan, Philip Henry, 6555-6556  
 Stanley, Sir Henry Morton, 6802  
 Stefánsson, Vilhjálmur, 6823  
 A Little Dutch Hero, 6857-6858  
 Wallace, Sir William, 7584  
 Wayne, Anthony, 7685  
 Wilkins, Sir George Hubert, 7763  
 Winkelried, Arnold von, 7795-7796  
 Wolfe, James, 7818

#### MORAL COURAGE

Adams, John, 24  
 Adams, John Quincy, 30-34  
 Albert I, 183  
 André, John, 278  
 Anthony, Susan B., 307  
 Beethoven, 686-688  
 Brandeis, Louis D., 922  
 Brewster, William, 944  
 Frohman, Charles, 2626-2627  
 Grenfell, Sir Wilfred, 2962-2963  
 Hampden, John, 3029-3030  
 Hancock, John, 3031-3032  
 Henley, William E. 3141  
 Knox, John, 3809-3810  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 4011-4019  
 Lloyd George, 4065-4067  
 Luther, Martin, 4158-4159  
 Saint Paul, 5419-5421  
 Theodore Roosevelt: Governor of New York,  
 6188; the Administration of Theodore Roose-  
 velt, 6190  
 Schurz, Carl, 6431

#### Quotations

The bravest are the tenderest,  
 The loving are the daring.

—Taylor.

In the world's broad field of battle,  
 In the bivouac of life,

Be not like dumb, driven cattle—  
 Be a hero in the strife.

—Longfellow.

I dare do all that may become a man;  
 Who dares do more is none.

—Shakespeare.

Dream not helm and harness  
 The signs of valor true;  
 Peace hath higher tests of manhood  
 Than battle ever knew.

—Whittier.

Did you tackle that trouble that came your way  
 With a resolute heart and cheerful?  
 Or hide your face from the light of day  
 With a craven soul and fearful?  
 Oh, a trouble's a ton, or a trouble's an ounce,  
 Or a trouble is what you make it;  
 And it isn't the fact that you're hurt that counts,  
 But only how did you take it?

—Edmund Vance Cooke.

An ounce of pluck  
 Is worth a pound of luck.

I have no fear. What is in store for me  
 Shall find me ready for it, undismayed.  
 God grant my only cowardice may be  
 Afraid—to be afraid.

—Appleton.

#### 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those points on which they find themselves weak. If they wish to do so, they enlist the help of parents and teachers, and over a period of time they practice individually to improve themselves.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children discuss their problems and the teacher tries to help them decide what should be done. Typical problems are the following:

Should we insist on doing what we know to be right, if the others of our group do the contrary thing?

How can we be sure our ideas are right if almost everybody else believes differently?

Won't we be forced to play alone if our ideas of moral courage are different from those of our friends?

Should we try to force other people to have the same ideas of moral courage as we have?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Moral courage, rather than physical, is the type demanded to-day.

If we do not show that we are afraid, our fears will lessen.

### UPPER LEVEL: UNIT THREE

#### Thoroughness

##### 1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be awakened through the use of such stories as those of Booker T. Washing-

ton (see the incident about sweeping floors. in "Up from Slavery"); Roosevelt's struggle for health; George Washington as manager of

a plantation; Edison's search for material for the electric lamp.

## 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves need to exercise the virtue of thoroughness. A few examples follow:

- Washing the dishes clean.
- Cutting all of the lawn, including the clipping of grass near the sidewalk.
- Keeping at lessons until they are thoroughly understood.
- Finishing the volunteer projects undertaken.
- In sewing or in manual training, properly finishing the edges and the insides of projects.

## 3. Observing the trait in the lives of people in the community.

The children suggest cases which they have observed, such as the following:

- Gardeners pulling weeds in a garden.
- Women moving the furniture in a room, in order to sweep or clean thoroughly.
- Girls washing out the dishcloth after washing the dishes.
- Boys cleaning and polishing the automobile, sweeping the floor, and dusting the seats.

## 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have been thorough in their work, and articles emphasizing the trait.

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

- Appian Way, 322
- Archimedes, 358
- Augustus, 502-504
- Aurelian, 504
- Bach, 563
- Balzac, 591-592
- Bancroft, George, 597
- Bede, 671
- Calvin, John, 1100-1101
- Carlyle, Thomas, 1200-1201
- Carnegie, Andrew, 1202-1203
- Champlain, Samuel de, 1301-1302
- Charlemagne, 1312-1313
- Coolidge, Calvin, 1651-1659
- David, King of Israel, 1834-1836
- Frederick II, 2600-2601
- Galton, Sir Francis, 2669
- Goethals, George W., 2852-2853
- Gorgas, William C., 2875
- Greene, Nathanael, 2957
- Harper, William R., 3049-3050

- Joffre, Joseph J., 3680-3681
- Kemal, Mustapha, 3752-3753
- Kitchener, Horatio H., 3798-3799
- MacMonnies, Frederick, 4195
- Marconi, Guglielmo, 4287-4288
- Mayo Brothers, 4355
- Naval Academy: Entrance Requirements and Studies, 4835, 4839
- Panama Canal: Sanitary Triumphs, 5332
- Peter the Great, 5515-5516
- Postoffice Department: Railway Postoffice, 5776
- Railroad: Modern Railroad Construction, 5978-5980
- Antarctic Explorations, 5696-5699
- Rainier (Guides), 5987
- Rasmussen, Knud, J. V., 5998
- Reaping Machine: Combined Harvester Thrasher, 6016
- Good-Roads Movement: Results Already Accomplished, 6144-6145
- Root, Elihu, 6197-6198
- Ships: Construction, 6564-6565
- Signaling and Signals, 6598-6601
- Victoria, 7517-7519

## 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those points on which they decide that they are weakest. If they wish to do so, they may enlist the help of parents and teachers while they are attempting to form the specific habits on their list. Over a period of time they practice, individually to improve themselves.

## 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children discuss the problems they have encountered in attempting to carry the ideal into practice, and the teacher attempts to help them decide what should be done. Some typical problems are given below:

- Is it worth while to be thorough in every act we undertake?
- How can we find time to play if we attempt to do all our work thoroughly?
- Can one person be thorough if none of his companions or brothers and sisters are?
- Is it better to do a few things very well, or many things fairly well?

## 7. Generalizations.

Being thorough in the work you are doing now makes the work that comes later easier to do.

Thoroughness usually leads to success.

# UPPER LEVEL: UNIT FOUR

## Appreciation of Service

### 1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be awakened through such stories as "Androcles and the Lion," on page

4038, "The Nuremberg Stove," or Emerson's "Essay on Friendship." The last two may be found in nearly all school libraries.



2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves need to exercise the virtue of appreciation or gratitude. A few examples follow:

Letting father know that I am trying to work hard at school because he is spending money to keep me there.

Showing mother I appreciate her work for me by helping her without being asked to.

Thanking the teacher for extra help given.

Writing a letter of appreciation to a speaker who has talked to the class.

Voting a privilege to some member of the group who has merited special honors.

3. Observing the trait in the lives of people in the community.

Typical examples are the following:

People thanking a street-car conductor for waiting for them.

A woman thanking a stranger for having opened a door for her.

Children thanking the maid for helping them mend their toys.

Pupils thanking the janitor for adjusting playground equipment.

Neighbors sending small gifts of flowers, etc., to those who helped them during sickness.

4. Reading.

Stories about people who have appreciated service rendered to them, and articles which emphasize service to mankind.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Arlington, 403-405

Confederate Army Societies, 1602-1603

Grand Army of the Republic, 2893-2894

Hall of Fame, 3022

Madonna of the Trail, 7239

Stevenson, Robert L.: His Place in Literature, 6833

Thomas, Theodore, 7153

Van Dyck, Sir Anthony, 7460

Verdi, Giuseppe, 7492

Virginia: The New Era, 7545

Wilson, Woodrow: The Private Citizen, 7786

Wood, Leonard, 7828

Wright, Orville and Wilbur, 7896-7897

Quotations

And how can man die better

Than facing fearful odds

For the ashes of his fathers

And the temples of his gods?

—Macaulay.

Let the man who would be grateful think of repaying a kindness, even while receiving it.

—Seneca.

5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those observances which they themselves habitually neglect. Over a period of time they attempt to develop the attitudes and appreciations mentioned.

6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children discuss the problems they have encountered in attempting to put the ideal into practice. The teacher helps them decide what should be done. Some typical problems follow:

How can we express appreciation for services rendered us by the whole community—for example, the use of the parks or the public library?

How can a bashful child express his appreciation? Are words or deeds better expressions of appreciation?

What should we do when people make fun of us for expressing appreciation?

7. Generalizations.

One method of showing appreciation is by a smile and a word of thanks.

Doing things for others is a good way of showing appreciation of what others have done for us.

UPPER LEVEL: UNIT FIVE

Initiative and Vision

1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be awakened through such stories as "James Watt and the Teakettle," page 6818; Joan of Arc, 3677-3679; the life of Tolstoi, 7203-7205; the life of Walt Whitman, 7753; Woodrow Wilson, 7778-7788; and the League of Nations, 3904-3906.

2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves may exercise the virtues of initiative and vision. A few examples are given here:

Plan how to solve a bad situation which arises on the school playground.

Plan means by which it would be possible to have supervised play for a short time after school each day.

Plan how to beautify the schoolroom.

Plan how to beautify the school yard.

Arrange for a school exhibit for the benefit of the parents.

3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

Observe how the members of your church plan its support.

Notice how your parents plan to improve or beautify your home.

Notice how people in the community try to persuade the citizens to vote for such improvements as parks, new schools, etc. Notice that certain children plan new games or new ways of amusing the group.

#### 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have had initiative and vision, and articles which provide examples of the traits.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

#### VISION

Bacon, Francis, 564-565  
Columbus, Christopher, 1572-1577  
Curie, Pierre and Marie, 1787  
Darwin, Charles, 1830-1831  
Descartes, 1913  
Faraday, Michael, 2370  
Galileo, 2664-2665  
Henry, Joseph, 3147  
Hippocrates, 3182  
Langley, Samuel P., 3857  
Lavoisier, Antoine, 3896-3897  
Lenin, Nikolai, 3930-3932  
Marconi, Guglielmo, 4287-4288  
Montessori Method, 4623-4628  
Pasteur, Louis, 5411-5412  
Pericles, 5487-5488  
Radio: Scientific Basis of Radio, 5936  
Radium, 5969-5971  
Steinmetz, Charles P., 6823-6824  
Stephenson, George, 6828  
Telegraph: Historical Sketch, 7064  
Telephone, 7067  
Televox, 7087  
Watt, James, 7681-7682

#### INITIATIVE

Barnum, Phineas T., 625  
Blackwell, Elizabeth, 784-785  
Comenius, 1580-1581  
Dalton School Plan, 1813-1814  
Dürer, Albrecht, 2056-2057  
Edison, Thomas A. 2108-2110  
Ericsson, John, 2285-2286  
Ford, Henry, 2531  
Gluck, Christoph W., 2844-2845  
Gompers, Samuel W., 2868

Gordian Knot, 2874  
Haynes, Elwood, 3100-3101  
Ito, Hirobumi, 3589  
Jetty: The Mississippi Jetties, 3671  
Keeley, Leslie, 3751  
McCormick, Cyrus H., 4174  
Minnesota: Transportation (J. J. Hill), 4518-4519  
Morse, Samuel F. B., 4664  
Muir, John, 4732-4733  
Pullman, George M., 5878  
Reaping Machine, 6014  
Stephenson, Robert, 6828  
Strauss, Johann, 6875  
Strauss, Richard, 6876

#### Quotations

*Impossible*—let me never hear that foolish word again. —*Mirabeau*.

They can conquer who believe they can.

—*Emerson*.

Men may rise on stepping-stones of their dead selves to higher things. —*Tennyson*.

#### 5. Practicing the traits.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those possibilities for developing the qualities of initiative and vision which they think they can apply to their own lives.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to these ideals.

Children discuss the problems which they have encountered in attempting to put these ideals into practice. The teacher helps them to decide on the answers to the problems. Some typical questions are the following:

Can everyone be a leader?

Should you follow your own ideas, if those of another person are better?

How can you develop initiative and at the same time obey the rules laid down by parents and teachers?

How can you keep your friends if you develop initiative?

Will they always let you do the planning?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Initiative can be developed by beginning along only a few lines.

One who wishes to be a leader part of the time must also be willing to be a follower part of the time.

### UPPER LEVEL: UNIT SIX

#### Coöperation

##### 1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be awakened through many stories that may be found in school libraries, such as "The Bundle of Sticks" ("Aesop's Fables"), "The Discontented Pendulum" (in Poulsson's "The Child's World"), "The Blind

Men and the Elephant," and Kipling's "The Ship that Found Herself." Read, also, "Androcles and the Lion," page 6859.

##### 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves need to

coöperate as members of a group. A few examples are given herewith:

- Organize a volley-ball team.
- Organize a second team to give the first team adequate practice.
- Take part in the meetings of the citizenship club.
- Keep the floor clean near your seat.
- Take whatever part is assigned to you in a class dramatization.

### 3. Observing the trait in the lives of people in the community.

- Tell specific instances in which members of a base-ball team helped each other in the game.
- Observe how neighbors in your community help one another in times of sickness or fire.
- Observe how homes in which there is disease try to keep the malady from spreading through the neighborhood.
- Observe how workers in one department of a factory depend on the work of other departments.
- Notice how the janitor and the teachers of your school help each other.

### 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have coöperated with one another, and articles which emphasize the trait.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Agriculture: The Adams Family, 92  
 Arbitration, 344  
 Articles of Confederation, 432 (negative)  
 Basket Ball, 639-641  
 Brook Farm, 975  
 Cincinnati, Society of the, 1430  
 Cincinnati, 1430  
 Collective Bargaining, 1536  
 Community Interests, 1588-1590  
 Coöperation, 1662-1664  
 Gary, Elbert H., 2697  
 George Junior Republic, 2753-2754  
 Grange, 2897-2898  
 Grotius, 2968  
 Husband and Wife, 3297-3298  
 Insurance, 3470-3472  
 International Law, 3485-3487  
 Kiwanis International Clubs, 3802-3803  
 Labor Organizations, 3825-3826  
 League of Nations, 3904-3906  
 Lions Clubs, 4041  
 Massasoit, 4336  
 National Education Association, 4814-4815  
 National League of Women Voters, 4815-4816  
 National Research Council, 4816, 4819  
 National Safety Council, 4819  
 Olympian Games, 5196-5197  
 Owen, Robert, 5277-5278  
 Pan-American Congress or Conference, 5337-5338  
 Parent-Teacher Associations, 5369-5370  
 Passion Play, 5408-5411

Peace Conference, 5425-5426  
 Permanent Court of International Justice, 5489-5490  
 Police: Organization in the United States, 5702  
 Postoffice Department, 5771-5777  
 Red Cross, 6025-6030  
 Junior Red Cross, 6030-6031  
 Rotary Clubs, 6213  
 Royal Canadian Mounted Police: Duties, 6220-6221  
 Russell Sage Foundation, 6256-6257  
 Saint Lawrence Waterway, 6314-6315  
 Sociology: Community Organization, 6673  
 Sons of Liberty, 6688  
 Standardization in Business, 6797-6798  
 Thrift (American Society for Thrift, International Congress of Thrift), 7161-7162  
 Trails of Early Days: Santa Fe Trail, 7239  
 United States of America: Relations with Canada, 7363  
 Utopia, 7436  
 Women's Clubs, 7826-7827  
 World War: The Navy at Work, 7889; Soldiers in Europe, 7890; Americans in Battle, 7890; "Citizen Soldiers" at Home, 7890-7892

### REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS

Character Training: Team Work, 1308  
 Education: Emphasis upon the Social Phase of School Life, 2114-2115  
 Sociology, 6671-6673

### 5. Practicing the trait.

Children choose from the full list suggested under (2) those particular situations in which they feel that they have difficulty. If they wish to do so, they enlist the help of parents and teachers in developing these specific habits of coöperation.

### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children discuss the problems which they have encountered in attempting to coöperate. The teacher helps them decide what they should do in each case:

- If my neighbor absolutely refuses to coöperate with me, what should I do?
- How can we keep the school yard clean and neat when other groups besides our own use it?
- Should I coöperate with children who are doing things that are wrong?
- Should I sell tickets in order to coöperate when I do not like to ask people to buy?

### 7. Generalizations.

The work of the whole group suffers unless each individual does his best.

Coöperation makes possible many undertakings which could not be accomplished otherwise.

## UPPER LEVEL: UNIT SEVEN

## Ambition

## 1. Awakening interest in the trait.

Interest may be awakened through the article on AMBITION, pages 244-246, or through such stories as "Dick Whittington and His Cat"; the life of Charles Dickens, pages 1936-1941; Robert Bruce, 982; Alexander the Great, 199-201.

## 2. Applying the trait to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves may find spurs to ambition. A few examples are given herewith:

Talk with parents about qualities which lead children to success.

Talk with children who have done some especially meritorious piece of work, to find out how they did it.

Select some attainable object and work on it all year until we achieve it. Then tell the class what it was.

Select one school subject and work on it until we are able to bring up our grade.

From our reading, select a character that we should like to resemble.

## 3. Observing the trait in the lives of people in the community.

Notice a store or a building which has just been remodeled.

What is the owner's ambition?

Observe athletes practicing to attain certain skills in running, jumping, etc.

Find out the ambitions of older brothers or sisters.

From the way in which the school building and grounds are kept, what can we judge about the ambition of the children and the teachers?

## 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have been ambitious, and articles which point to the development of the trait.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Ambition, 244-246

Air Brake, 111

Alabama: Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute, 157

Continuation Schools, 1645-1646

Moonlight Schools, 4643-4644

Evening Schools, 6423

Fraternity: Origin, 2599

## AMBITION IN LEADERS, STATESMEN, WARRIORS

Augustus, 502-504

Bonaparte, Napoleon, 828-833; 4807-4808

Caesar, Julius, 1066-1068

Calles, Plutarco, 1098

Clovis, 1496

Mussolini, Benito, 4781-4782

Peter the Great, 5515

Philip II, 5546

Richelieu, 6115-6117

## AMBITION IN SOCIAL AND PERSONAL ACHIEVEMENT

Amundsen, Roald, 268-269

Barton, Clara, 632

Conrad, Joseph, 1621

Curtis, Charles, 1790-1791

Dickens, Charles, 1936-1941

Muir, John, 4732-4733

Nightingale, Florence, 5026-5027

Peary, Robert Edwin, 5435-5436

Scott, Robert Falcon, 6448

Thomas, Theodore, 7153

## AMBITION OF LITERARY CHARACTERS

Arachne (negative example), 343

Becky Sharp (negative example), 668-669

Macbeth, 4171

Midas, 4469

Phaethon, 5530

The Coming of the Corn, 6858-6859

The Fir Tree, 6860-6863

## Quotations

Too low they build who build beneath the stars.  
—Young.

## 5. Practicing the trait.

From the full list suggested under (2), the children select a particular ambition to develop. They may confide their ambitions to their parents or to the teacher, and may report to the class when success has been achieved. The object is to make ambition a habit.

## 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideal.

Children discuss the problems which they have encountered in attempting to realize this ambition. The teacher tries to help them to decide on the answers. Typical problems are the following:

Must one become great in order to realize an ambition?

Is ambition always a good thing?

Must one change his business to war or politics if he wishes to achieve an ambition?

Can one achieve his ambition, and yet be unselfish and friendly?

What should one do if he fails to achieve his life's ambition?

## 7. Generalizations.

Ambition may be either good or bad, depending on the results to ourselves and to other people.

Selecting an ambition early in life helps one to work harder.

## UPPER LEVEL: UNIT EIGHT

## Loyalty and Patriotism

## 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be awakened through the quotations on page 5417 and such stories as David Farragut, page 2373; William Tell, 7089-7090; Simon Bolivar, 817; "The Story of Roland," 6163; "The Story of the Cid," 1424

## 2. Applying the traits to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves may practice loyalty and patriotism. A few examples are given herewith:

Speaking respectfully of our parents.

Behaving on the street in such a way that the townspeople will think well of the children in our school.

Obedying the traffic rules and the city ordinances about trespassing.

Supporting the school officers that we have selected, when they try to improve the school.

Helping our church in its services.

## 3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

Notice how members of certain families help one another and speak courteously to one another.

Notice how certain church members attend the services of their church and work in its interest.

Observe how careful some men are to obey all of the traffic rules, even when no policeman is near.

Find out about the work of the nearest post of the American Legion.

## 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have showed loyalty and patriotism, and articles in which these traits are emphasized.

References below are to pages in THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia:

Abraham, 10

Achates, 20

Arnold, Benedict, 418-419 (negative)

Bismarck-Schönhausen, 774-775

Blondel, 796

Cavell, Edith, 1263

Galahad, Sir, 2659-2660

Garcia: A Message to Garcia, 2683

Hezekiah, 3170-3172

Ruth, 6282

Leonidas, 3937

## LOYALTY

Acadia, 14

America, 247

Ben-Hur, 708-709

Bible: The Bible for Children, 729

Blenheim, Battle of, 790

Catacombs, 1236-1238

Dante Alighieri, 1821

Stephen A. Douglas, 2015-2016

Elizabeth, Queen, 2209-2210

Flag, 2449-2456

Gallatin, Albert, 2666

Gettysburg Address, 2793

Man without a Country (negative example), 3015-3016

Hindenburg, Paul von, 3181

Howe, Julia Ward, 3267

Naturalization, 4820-4821

Paderewski, 5294-5295

Patriotism, 5417

Peter the Great, 5515

Star-Spangled Banner, 6812, 6813

Tell, William, 7089-7090

United Empire Loyalists, 7361

## SERVICE IN WAR

American Legion, 250-252

Army, 412-417

Battle Hymn of the Republic, 653

Bolivar, Simon, 817

Davis, Jefferson, 1837-1839

Foch, Ferdinand, 2505

Garibaldi, Giuseppe, 2693-2694

Hale, Nathan, 3016

John Sobieski, 3682

Jones, John Paul, 3695-3696

Kosciusko, Thaddeus, 3814

Lincoln, Abraham, 4011-4019

Navy of the United States, 4846-4848

Otis, James, 5271

Perry, Oliver Hazard, 5492-5493

Pershing, John Joseph, 5494, 5495

Poincaré, Raymond, 5681-5682

Red Cross in the World War, 6026, 6027, 6028, 6029

Revere, Paul, 6069

Taylor, Zachary, 7037-7039

Volunteers, 7567-7568

Warren, Joseph, 7621-7622

Wellington, Duke of, 7706-7707

Wood, Leonard, 7828

## SERVICE IN PEACE

Adams, John, 24-29

Adams, John Quincy, 30-34

Addams, Jane, 35-36

Americanization, 249

Armstrong, Samuel, 411

Boys' and Girls' Clubs, 903-908

Boy Scouts of America, 909-914

Bradford, William, 915

Bright, John, 955-956

Daughters of the American Revolution, 1833-1834

Dawes, Charles G., 1840-1841

Gladstone, William E., 2829

Jefferson, Thomas, 3646-3651

MacDonald, J. Ramsay, 4175-4176  
 Marshall, John, 4304-4305  
 National Hymns, 3316  
 Penn, William, 5460-5462  
 Root, Elihu, 6197-6198  
 Stimson, Henry L., 6835  
 Taft, William Howard, 6998-7004  
 Venizelos, 7487  
 Washington, Booker T., 7634, 7636  
 Willard, Frances E., 7766-7767  
 Young, Owen D., 7952

#### Quotations

I pledge allegiance to the flag of the United States of America, and to the Republic for which it stands; one nation, indivisible, with liberty and justice to all.

And thou, my Country, write it on thy heart,  
 Thy sons are they who nobly take thy part;  
 Who dedicates his manhood at thy shrine,  
 Wherever born, is born a son of thine.

—Henry Van Dyke.

Breathes there the man with soul so dead,  
 Who never to himself hath said,  
 This is my own, my native land?  
 Whose heart hath ne'er within him burned,  
 As home his footsteps he hath turned,  
 From wandering on a foreign strand?

—Sir Walter Scott.

Your flag is my flag!  
 And oh, how much it holds—  
 Your land and my land  
 Secure within its fold.  
 Brave men who work while others sleep,  
 Who dare while others fly,  
 They build a nation's pillars deep,  
 And lift them to the sky.

—Ralph Waldo Emerson.

#### THE MESSAGE OF THE FLAG

My Stars and my Stripes are your dreams and your labors. They are bright with cheer, brilliant with courage, firm with faith, because you have made them so out of your hearts. For you are the makers of the Flag.

—Franklin K. Lane.

#### 5. Practicing the traits.

From the full list suggested under (2), above, the children select the specific habits of loyalty and patriotism which they feel they most need to cultivate. Over a period of time, they endeavor to improve themselves in each of those respects.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideals.

Does being loyal to his church make one an enemy of the other churches?

Does being loyal to our friends mean that we must not see their faults?

Is the belief that other countries are ahead of the United States in some ways, a lack of patriotism? Should we obey laws which we cannot help but observe that many other people are breaking continually?

How can we show patriotism in times of peace?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Loyalty in deeds is even more important than loyalty in words.

Patriotism demands that we obey our country's laws and try to improve its life in every way.

### UPPER LEVEL: UNIT NINE

#### Unselfishness and Generosity

##### 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be awakened through such stories as that of Oliver Goldsmith, pages 2863-2864; the story of Lafayette, 3838-3839; the story of Pierre and Marie Curie, 1787; the story of Stephen Girard, 2813.

##### 2. Applying the traits to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves may practice the virtues of unselfishness and generosity. A few examples are given below:

Giving up the best chairs in the room to our parents.

Allowing our companions to share the use of our toys.

Giving to charity a sum of money which we ourselves have earned.

Allowing other children to have their turns as leaders in the games.

Sharing our candy with our friends.

##### 3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

Notice that certain members of a family go without new clothes so that other members may have what they need.

Notice how adults share the pages of the newspaper.

Observe that certain members of the community refuse to believe evil stories about others. (Generosity in thought.)

Notice that younger people give up their seats in street cars to older people.

Notice that many poor people give money regularly to the church or to charity.

##### 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have been unselfish and generous, and articles in which the traits are seen.

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

#### UNSELFISHNESS

Abelard, Pierre, 8

Alcestis, 192

Amundsen, Roald, 268-269

Apple: Johnny Appleseed, 324  
 Augustine, Saint, 502  
 Esther, 2299-2300  
 Francis of Assisi, 2591  
 Godfrey de Bouillon, 2851  
 Lamb, Charles, 3846-3847  
 Livingstone, David, 4061  
 Marquette, Jacques, 4298  
 Nightingale, Florence, 5026-5027  
 Ohio: Agriculture (Johnny Appleseed), 5170  
 Red Cross, 6025-6031  
 Saint Bernard, Great, 6303  
 Sidney, Sir Philip, 6594, 6595  
 Story-Telling: Baucis and Philemon, 6864  
 Waldenses, 7578-7579

#### GENEROSITY TO INSTITUTIONS

Carnegie, Andrew, 1202-1203  
 Carnegie Libraries, 1204  
 Cooper, Peter, 1661  
 Cornell, Ezra, 1693  
 Eastman, George, 2090  
 Educational Foundations: Rockefeller Benefactions, 2129  
 Carnegie Benefactions, 2129-2130  
 Harvard, John, 3065-3066  
 Hearst, Phoebe A., 3107  
 Hewitt, Abram S., 3170  
 Peabody, George, 5425  
 Peabody Education Fund, 5425  
 Rochester: Education, 6152-6153  
 Rockefeller Foundation, 6154  
 Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, 6154-6155  
 Rockefeller, John D., 6153  
 Rockefeller, John D., Jr., 6153-6154  
 Rosenwald, Julius, 6205-6206  
 Rosenwald Industrial Museum, 6206  
 Russell Sage Foundation, 6256  
 Smithsonian Institute, 6652  
 Vanderbilts, 7458-7459  
 Vanderbilt University, 7459  
 Yale, Elihu, 7926

#### GENEROSITY TO OTHER PEOPLE

Cyrus the Great, 1799-1800  
 Girard, Stephen, 2813  
 Gould (Helen Miller Gould Shepard), 2880-2881  
 Hirsch, Maurice, 3185  
 Joseph, 3698-3700  
 Porto Rico: History, 5755-5756  
 Pulitzer, Joseph, 5876-5877

Pulitzer Prizes, 5877  
 Pullman, George M., 5878  
 Rosenwald, Julius, 6205-6206  
 Rosenwald Fund, 6206  
 Scholarships and Fellowships, 6415-6417  
 Schumann-Heink: Gift to Soldiers, 6430  
 Singing Tower, 6619

#### REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS

Altruism, 238  
 Character Training: Unselfishness, 1304  
 Charity, 1311

#### Quotations

No one is useless in the world who lightens the burden of it for anyone else.

—*Dickens.*

Charity and personal force are the only investments worth anything.

—*Whitman.*

Not what we give, but what we share,  
 For the gift without the giver is bare.  
 Who gives himself with his alms feeds three—  
 Himself, his hungering neighbor, and Me.

—*Lowell.*

#### 5. Practicing the traits.

From the full list suggested under (2), the children select the specific habits in which they feel themselves weakest. If they wish to do so, they ask the assistance of parents and teachers while attempting to develop the new habits and attitudes.

#### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideals.

Children discuss the problems which they have encountered in attempting to live up to their ideals. The teacher tries to help them decide what should be done. Typical problems are given below:

How can we help ourselves remember to be unselfish?

Can one person be unselfish when his companions are selfish?

Should we give our money to charity when we have very little for ourselves?

Should we continue to give money, or to do services for people who do not appreciate them?

Should we give food to strangers who come to our doors?

#### 7. Generalizations.

Unselfishness brings us satisfaction.

Generosity in thought and deed makes us happy.

### UPPER LEVEL: UNIT TEN

#### Self-Reliance and Independence

##### 1. Awakening interest in the traits.

Interest may be awakened through such stories as those of Robinson Crusoe, page 6150;

Don Quixote, 2011; "The Ugly Duckling," 6854-6857; Benjamin Franklin, 2593-2597; Alfred the Great, 205; Robert Bruce, 982.

## 2. Applying the traits to life-situations.

The children make coöperatively a list of situations in which they themselves may practice the virtues of self-reliance and independence. A few examples follow:

Doing our school work without asking for more help than is needed.

Not asking questions about matters we could find out for ourselves.

Doing what we think is right (for example, refusing to "copy" lessons), no matter what others do.

Taking care of our own clothing (hanging clothes on hangers, pressing them, putting soiled clothing in the hamper, etc.).

Performing our tasks without waiting to be told.

## 3. Observing the traits in the lives of people in the community.

Notice that your parents discuss their problems and then decide for themselves what must be done.

Notice how certain pupils do all their work themselves and refuse to look on any one else's paper.

Notice that business men have to decide for themselves what kind of goods to buy, whether to give certain families credit, etc.

Observe that certain families have family prayers, even though none of their friends do.

## 4. Reading.

Stories about people who have been self-reliant and independent, and articles in which stories of these traits are developed.

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

### SELF-RELIANCE

Aguinaldo, 107  
 Aircraft: Early Efforts:  
   The Balloon, 113, 115  
   First Great Feats in Flying, 139-151  
 Archimedes, 358  
 Aristotle, 382  
 Astor, Lady Nancy, 465  
 Baldwin, Matthias William, 577-578  
 Brandeis, Louis D., 922  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 1752-1754  
 Emerson, Ralph W., 2221-2222  
 Gorki, Maxim, 2876  
 Hannibal, 3037-3038  
 Jackson, Andrew, 3597  
 Johnson, Hiram W., 3689  
 Lindbergh, Charles A., 4025-4030  
 Livingstone, David, 4061  
 Nightingale, Florence, 5026-5027  
 Nursery School, 5118  
 Ruffo, Titta, 6237  
 Smith, John, 6650  
 Story-Telling: The Larks in the Cornfield, 6860  
 Watauga Association, 7661  
 Westinghouse, George, 7714-7715  
 Whitman, Walt, 7753  
 Whitney, Eli, 7754  
 Wilson, Woodrow, 7778-7788

### INDEPENDENCE IN THOUGHT

Atherton, Gertrude, 483-484  
 Bacon, Roger, 565-566  
 Barnard, George Gray, 624  
 Bebel, Ferdinand, 668  
 Borah, William E, 864  
 Borglum, Gutzon, 866  
 Copernicus, 1666  
 Declaration of Independence, 1865-1868  
 George, Henry, 2752  
 Harvey, William, 3068-3069  
 Hipparchus, 3182  
 Hutchinson, Anne, 3299-3300  
 Ibsen, Henrik, 3325  
 Jenner, Edward, 3655  
 Kepler, Johann, 3766, 3768  
 Luther, Martin, 4158-4159  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 4960-4963  
 Sandburg, Carl, 6362  
 Shaw, George B., 6545  
 Thomas, Theodore, 7153  
 Voltaire, 7565-7566  
 Wallace, Alfred Russel, 7583  
 Wren, Christopher, 7895  
 Wycliffe, John, 7902-7903

### INDEPENDENCE IN ACTION

Austin, Stephen, 507  
 Bacon's Rebellion, 566  
 Debs, Eugene V., 1854  
 Hearn, Laicadio, 3107  
 Henry, Patrick, 3147-3149  
 Houston, Sam, 3264-3265  
 Independence Day, 3376  
 La Follette, Robert M., 3839-3840  
 Mascagni, Pietro, 4320  
 Millet, Jean F., 4488-4489  
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 6185-6197  
 Schurz, Carl, 6431  
 Tyler, John, 7332-7337  
 Victor Emmanuel II, 7517  
 Wagner, Richard, 7575-7577  
 Whistler, James M., 7743-7744

### REFERENCES FOR PARENTS AND TEACHERS

Adolescence: Moral Conditions, 50;  
 Social Instincts, 51  
 Project Method in Teaching, 5834-5839

#### Quotations

I would rather be right than be President.

—Clay.

They are slaves who dare not be  
 In the right with two or three.

—Lowell.

## 5. Practicing the traits.

From the full list suggested under (2), the children suggest the specific habits in which they feel themselves to be weak. If they desire to do so, they freely ask the assistance of parents and teachers in developing these habits.



### 6. Problems encountered in living up to the ideals.

Children discuss the problems which they have encountered in attempting to live up to the ideals. The teacher tries to help them decide what should be done in each case. Typical problems are given below:

If we follow the advice of older or wiser people, are we failing to be independent?

How can we be self-reliant when we live at home with our parents?

How can we be independent, and yet at the same time coöperate with others?

In order to be self-reliant and independent, must we always be different from other people?

### 7. Generalizations.

Self-reliance does not mean that we must always have things our own way.

Independence does not mean that we must decide all questions without help.

### METHODS OF CHARACTER TRAINING

References below are to pages in *THE WORLD BOOK Encyclopedia*:

Allegory, 224

All-Year School, 228

Biography: Biography for Children, 745

Character Training, 1304-1308

Emotions, 2228

Ethics, 2304-2305

Fatigue and Nervousness among Children, 2380-2382

Habit, 2997-2999

Heredity, 3158-3161

Interest (in Psychology), 3476

Juvenile Court, 3725-3726

Juvenile Delinquency, 3726-3728

Kindergarten: Value of Home Play, 3784-3786

Direction of Development, 3790

Library, 3967-3972

Literature: The Study of Literature, 4048-4049

How Literature May Be Studied, 4049-4050

Literature for Children, 4050-4053

Manual Training, 4270-4272

Mental Conflicts, 4395-4396

Mental Handicaps, 4397-4398

Mentally Deficient Children, 4398-4399

Mental Measurement, 4399-4403

Montessori Method, 4623-4628

Nervous System, 4881-4883

Nursery Schools, 5117-5118

Necessity of Play, 5656-5657

Pestalozzi, 5513-5514

Project Method of Teaching, 5834-5835

Psychoanalysis, 5864-5865

Psychology, 5865-5869

Children's Reading, 6007-6008

Selections for Study, 6009-6012

Story-Telling, 6852-6853

Vocational Guidance, 7551-7559

Will, 7763-7765







UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



126 184

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY